

いま・び

今日

unofficial /djt/ rendition:

imabi.net



お前には無理だから諦めとけ

第1~50課: Beginners I

第51~100課: Beginners II

第101~150課: Intermediate I

第151~200課: Intermediate II

第201~250課: Advanced I

第251~300課: Advanced II

第300~336課: Classical

Kanji

Beginners II is an intense course about the fundamentals of the Japanese language. There are 50 lessons that begin at pronunciation and end with the potential.

Features:

There are increasingly more sections of practice that primarily have questions concerning the section you're working on. However, review is mixed in them all the time because I want to see if you can use Japanese rather than manufacture it.

The extensive information that you get here is beyond almost all other programs available. It may be hard, but this site is dedicated to making it easier to learn more Japanese more quickly. The site is open to change, so you can trust this curriculum to be continuously improved on a daily basis.

がんばってください Ganbatte kudasai (Good luck)

初級 I

第1課: Pronunciation

第2課: Kana I: ひらがな Hiragana

第3課: Kana II: カタカナ Katakana

第4課: Kana III: Basic Kana Orthography

第5課: 漢字

第6課: 10 Major Aspects

第7課: Nouns & Pronouns

第8課: だ & です

第9課: The Particles が & は

第??課: Negative & Past

第10課: Adjectives I: 形容詞

第11課: Adjectives II: 形容動詞

第12課: The Particle を I

第13課: Regular Verbs I: 一段 Verbs

第14課: Regular Verbs II: 五段 Verbs

第15課: The Particle か

第16課: The Particle も

第17課: The Irregular Verbs する & 来る

第18課: こそあど I: Basic Expressions

第19課: Basic Daily Expressions
第20課: The Particle て I
第21課: Numbers I: Sino-Japanese Numbers
第22課: Numbers II: Counters and Native Numbers
第23課: The Particle の I
第24課: The Particle に I
第25課: The Particle へ
第26課: The Particle で I
第27課: The Particle て II: Final Particle
第28課: ある & いる
第29課: ～ている
第30課: ～てある
第31課: Nationalities, Languages, Fields of Study, & the Planets
第32課: The Particle と I
第33課: The Particle に II
第34課: Interrogatives I
第35課: The Copula II
第36課: The Particle から
第37課: The Particle まで
第38課: Adverbs I
第39課: Adverbs II: From Adjectives
第40課: Adverbs III: Syntax Agreement
第41課: 擬声語 I: 擬音語 I
第42課: から, ので, & のだ
第43課: のに
第44課: The Date & Telling Time
第45課: Basic Absolute Time Phrases
第46課: Before
第47課: After I
第48課: When: 時
第49課: Relative Time
第50課: Transitivity I: Different Transitive & Intransitive Forms

第1課: Pronunciation

Pronunciation is perhaps the most important part of learning a language. It is also one of the hardest parts of a foreign language to learn because not every sound will be shared with your first language, and the ones that they have in common may not be exactly the same.

This lesson is not meant to scare you into thinking Japanese is impossible to pronounce, nor will it tell you about every little detail. The purpose of this lesson is to introduce you to not just what the sounds are but the basic fundamentals of how to use them. If Japanese were pronounced similarly to English, we would not need to introduce any new terms. We don't have that luxury, but any new term will always be defined.

To begin learning how to speak Japanese to over 120 million speakers, we need a base line for spelling words in a way that is familiar enough to you as an English speaker. We can't go over Japanese script in a page because there is no alphabet, and the script is totally different to anything found in Europe. So, we'll use English letters, which are called Rōmaji. This does not mean that this will completely reflect the true pronunciation of sounds, nor does it mean we'll be using it from here on out. Once we get to Lesson 2, you will begin to learn actual Japanese writing.

Vowels

We now need to learn the sounds behind the (C)V structure. Unlike English which has so many vowels, Japanese only has 5! They're pronounced clearly and sharply *like* the American English approximates below. You won't sound native in a day, but following these guidelines will ensure that you'll at least be understood.

Another thing that we can't ignore even at the very beginning is the Japanese pitch accent system. In English, each word has a particular stress pattern to it. Japanese has each syllable be either low or high pitch.

Lesson Note: Rises in pitch will be marked in **bold** and pitch drops will be marked with ↓. This is because Japanese has a pitch accent system. This will be used for **ALL WORDS** in this lesson. We will not focus heavily after this lesson on pitch accent, but it is not an arbitrary part of pronunciation!

A	Like the a sound in "buy".	<i>Ta</i> ↓ (field)
I	Like the i in "police".	<i>Ki</i> ↓ (tree)
U	Like the "oo" in mood. Compress your lips without protruding them.	<i>Uta</i> ↓ (song)

E	Like the e in "set".	Ike ↓ (pond)
O	Like the o in "oh".	Oka (hill)

American English happens to have each vowel in its inventory more or less except u. No form of English actually has the Japanese u, which is why you're instructed to utter it with the above pronunciations. The exact pronunciation of the rest of the vowels are still not just like the American or British pronunciations. Example words have been chosen as being those which are generally pronounced the same across the English speaking world.

When a word has two vowels side by side, you don't fuse them together. In reality, especially with a and i next to each other, it may sound like they are pronounced together. Speakers, though, hear them as being separate. So, be careful!

Ai	Love/indigo	Ii	Good	Au	To meet	Uo	Fish	Iu	To say
-----------	-------------	-----------	------	-----------	---------	-----------	------	-----------	--------

Exception Note: *Iu* is actually pronounced as "*yuu*". Exceptions are not fun, but this is one that just cannot be ignored. So, this rule is not optional to learn!

What Makes Up a Syllable

When we talk, we put sounds together to make coherent units of speech that we then use to make words. In English, vowels (sounds like a, i, u, e, and o) and consonants (sounds like b, d, g) can be put together in various ways to make syllable. For instance, in the word "blond", we have the structure CCVCC. Though the vowel in the middle may sound different depending on where you are, in this word, the syllable structure is the same. Words like "English" are problematic because it isn't clear where each syllable starts. If you were to say the syllables are "Eng-lish" or "En-glish", you wouldn't be wrong.

Japanese, similarly, also puts sounds together, but it usually only allows CV or V syllables. Also unlike English, syllables don't bleed into each other because each syllable is pronounced ideally with the same amount of time just like a beat. This equal unit of time is formally called a mora, but you don't need to know this word to remember how this system works. So, if we have a word like katana (sword), even if you don't know how to say it, you at least know it has to be broken up as ka-ta-na and that no sound in particular is longer than the others.

Long Vowels

Long vowels are **twice** as long as short vowels. This may not seem like a big deal, but vowel length contrasts words in Japanese like in the words below. Even if you don't accidentally say

another word, you'll be essentially saying a nonexistent word. So, it's important to not mess up. Mistakes at the beginning are inevitable, but as you listen to more Japanese, take note into not just pitch going up and down but also the length of all the vowels.

Short A	Obasan (aunt)	Long A	Obaasan (grandma)
Short I	Ie (House)	Long I	Iie (no)
Short U	Yuki ↓ (snow)	Long U	Yuuki (courage)
Short E	E ↓ (Painting)	Long E	Ee/ee (yes)
Short O	Ton (ton)	Long O	Toon (tone)

Practice: Try pronouncing the following words.

1. **Koohii**(Coffee)
2. **Chiizu**(Cheese)
3. **Chuugoku**(China)

Spelling Issues: "ei" & "ou"

Sometimes, what is spelled as "**e+i**" is normally pronounced as a long e, but it can always be pronounced as "e" followed by "i". Similarly, "ou" is often a long o, but it is often just "o+u"! When we get into Japanese writing, we'll learn exactly how to know when to use which!

Practice: Try pronouncing the following words.

"Long e" or "e+i": **Sensei**(Teacher) Always "e+i": **Mei**(Niece)

Always "long o": **Ou** (king) Always "o+u": **Omou**(to think)

Consonants

Pronunciation approximation is based on American English. Most consonants are very similar, but attention to those in bold. More example words of all these consonants follow the chart along with more detailed information about how to say the sounds.

Terminology Note: Voiced sounds--g, z, d, etc.--are made by vibrating your vocal folds.

K	As in " k ite"	Ka ↑	Mosquito
G	As in " g o". It can sound like ng inside phrases.	Kage	Shadow
S	As in " s ad". Before i, it becomes SH.	Asa	Morning
SH	As in " sh in". It's closer in the mouth than English.	Ashi ↓	Foot/leg
Z	As in " z en". zi → ji.	Kaze	Wind

J	As in "jeep".	<i>Aji</i>	Flavor
T	Blade of tongue behind upper teeth. tu → tsu; ti → chi.	<i>Te</i> ↓	Hand
D	Voiced form of t.	<i>Sokudo</i>	Speed
CH	As in " ch in".	<i>Ocha</i>	Tea
TS	As in "its".	<i>Tsukau</i>	To use
DJ	Voiced form of ch but now just a j.	<i>Hana(d)ji</i>	Nosebleed
DZ	Voiced form of ts but now just a z.	<i>Tsu(d)zuki</i>	Continuance
N	As in "not".	<i>Neko</i>	Cat
H	As in "high". As in "hue" with i or y. hu → fu.	<i>Hada</i>	Skin
F	Blow air through your lips. No teeth!	<i>Fune</i>	Boat
B	As in "big".	<i>Baka</i>	Idiot
P	As in "pig". Not as much air comes out.	<i>Pajama</i>	Pajama
M	As in "mat"	<i>Mune</i> ↓	Chest
Y	As in "you".	<i>Yakusoku</i>	Promise
R	Like the t in water.	<i>Karada</i>	Body
W	Compress the lips rather than protrude them outward.	<i>Yowai</i>	Weak
N'	See below.	<i>Kan</i>	Can

Pronunciation Notes:

1. N is made with the blade of the tongue on the back of the upper teeth with a, e, and o, behind the ridge of the mouth with i (like in news), and behind the teeth with u (like in noon).
2. Sh, j, ch, dz, and dj are all made by placing the tongue right behind the alveolar ridge in your mouth, which is the ridge that you can feel where the sockets of your teeth are.
3. Y is only used with a, u, and o. W is only used with a and o, but most people replace "wo" with "o". Excluding N', which is special because it's spoken with the same amount of time as everything else, all other consonants can be used with all vowels. Be careful with "i", which changes some consonants.

Practice Words

Don't mix up d and r. Also, don't mess up tsu with su. The following chart shows some pairs of these showing how costly a mistake it would be to mix them up.

Kami	God	Kami	Hair; paper	Shimbun	Newspaper	Pan	Bread
Sushi ↓	Sushi	Hiru	Noon	Nihon	Japan	En	Yen
Inu ↓	Dog	Yubi ↓	Finger	Kangae	Idea	Kawa ↓	River
Katsu	To win	Baka	Idiot	Mura ↓	Village	Muda	Useless

Practice: Try saying the following words out loud.

Ni ↓ (2) **Tana**(Shelf) **Umi**(Sea) **Kage**(Shadow)

N'

N' is pronounced as m before p, b, and m, n before t and d, ng before k and g, and elsewhere like an n-sound made in the back of the throat. Pronounce N' with the same amount of time as any other sound. **It does not start any words** in Standard Japanese.

Kin'en = No smoking	Kinen = Commemoration	Kan'i = Easiness	Kani = Crab
----------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------

Questions (1): Describe how the following words are pronounced.

1. *Shimbun* 2. *Kangae* 3. *Kin* 4. *Sensei*

Additional Consonants: Palatalized Sounds

The palatalized (made with contact with the roof of the mouth) sounds are ky, gy, sh, j, ch, ny, hy, by, py, my, and ry. Except for sh, j, and ch, they're only used with a, u, and o.

Hyou	Vote	Kyaku	Visitor	Shuu	Week	Kyuu	9
Myou	Weird	Hyaku ↓	100	Kyou	Today	Myaku	Pulse
Ryuu	Dragon	Byouki	Illness	Gyaku	Reverse	Shashin	Photo

っ: Long Consonants

っ doubles the length of a consonant, making it sound harder. It may also show an audible stop at the end of a word. For romanization, consonants will be doubled with exceptions to sh (ssh), ch (tch), and ts (tts). When showing an audible stop at the end of a word, it will be left in Kana,

which is why it's shown.

<i>Shippai</i>	Failure	<i>Kitchin</i>	Kitchen	<i>Yokka</i>	4 days	<i>Zasshi</i>	Magazine
----------------	---------	----------------	---------	--------------	--------	---------------	----------

Usage Note: Don't double n or m. G, z, d, h, f, b, r, w and y are only doubled in loan words or exaggerated spellings.

Devoiced Vowels

Devoiced vowels are vowels that sound silent. In fact, it's often the case that there's essentially no trace of the vowel in pronunciation. The one thing to be careful is that you don't simplify the 'syllable' count. So, if you have "de-su" and the u goes away, you don't simplify it to "des". Rather, it would be "de-s".

The vowels I and u *may* **sound silent between and or after** k, s, sh, t, ch, ts, h, f, and p. They are more likely devoiced the faster you speak. For example, "good morning" sounds like "o-ha-yo-o go-za-i-ma-s". However, not all speakers do this.

Practice: Try pronouncing the words with the underlined vowel(s) devoiced.

Kushami (Sneeze) *Tafu* (Tough) *Sukiyaki* *Hito* (↓) (Person)

Pitch Accent

Words are often distinguished by **pitch** (height/depth of a sound). *Ame* means "rain" when the high pitch is on *a* but "candy" when on *me*. Although pitch-accent varies in Japan, knowing the basics will help you sound more natural. There are four basic patterns that affixes (things attached) + words can take.

1	The pitch starts high , drops, and stays low.	↘	háshì (chopsticks)
2	The pitch rises, peaks, then drops suddenly.	↗	hàshí (bridge)
3	The pitch rises then drops on an attached element.	↗ (↘)	otoko (man)
4	The pitch rises from start to end .	↗ (↗)	hashi (edge)

Pitch gets more complicated in full sentences. It's important to learn the pitch of new words, but imitating others is perhaps more efficient and productive than strict memorization.

More Examples

Pattern	Word	Meaning	Pattern	Word	Meaning
1	I nochi	Life	2	Ko k oro	Heart
3	A k arui ↓	Bright	4	E mpitsu	Pencil

Table of Contents

Keys

Questions 1 (Free-Response):

1. It sounds like shimbun.
2. The n in kangae sounds like ng. So, it's more like /ka.ng.ga.e/.
3. It sounds like /ki.n/, but the n is not the English n because it doesn't stop air flow.
4. The n is like a nasal vowel and "ei" can make a long e. So, it sounds like /se.n.sē/.

Questions 2:

1. 4 morae
2. 3 morae
3. 3 morae
4. 4 morae

第2課: Kana I : ひらがな Hiragana

Japanese is spelled with three writing systems put together. Two of these systems are called Kana, and they correspond to individual syllables (morae), which is unlike an alphabet which breaks up things into individual consonants and vowels. So, rather than alphabets, the Kana are syllabaries. The two systems of Kana are called Hiragana and [Katakana](#). Kana stand for either a consonant + vowel (CV) or a vowel (V) with exception to n' (C).

Chinese characters called Kanji are also used to write Japanese, but we will look at Kana first. We will devote this first lesson to Hiragana and the basic rules for using it.

Pitch Note: Pitch will be represented with bold かな.

Pronunciation Note: You cannot refer to Hiragana and Katakana any other way if you intend on being understood. That means, no saying Hirogama or Katana, or anything else.

Hiragana ひらがな

Kana, first and foremost, represent the sounds of Japanese mora by mora. Remember that a mora is an equal time unit of speech and is more correct than syllable in referring to Japanese. A sentence written entirely in Hiragana would look something like the following.

かれは**かんこく**じんです。

He is a Korean.

You may sometimes find spaces inserted to identify word boundaries, especially in texts oriented towards children. However, these word boundaries are based on functional units of a sentence. So, if you were a game coder for a game oriented at kids 5~10, you would want this line of text to look like the following.

かれは かんこくじんです。

This line reads "**K**are wa **kankoku**jin desu". If there were long vowels, we could mark them with macrons. Long vowels are fully written out in Kana because they're two morae. This line, thus, clearly has eleven morae. None of the characters, though, have intrinsic meaning in the same way the letter q has no intrinsic meaning. This is unlike Kanji, which we will begin to look at in Lesson 4.

Kana can be organized very systematically into the Gojuuonzu, which means the table of 50 sounds despite the fact that it is a few shy of 50. Extensions include the rest of the important sounds. First, we will simply look at the basic sounds, which are all unvoiced (seion), of Japanese.

あ A	か KA	さ SA	た TA	な NA	は HA	ま MA	や YA	ら RA	わ WA	ん N'
い I	き KI	し SHI	ち CHI	に NI	ひ HI	み MI		り RI	ゐ (W)I*	
う U	く KU	す SU	つ TSU	ぬ NU	ふ FU	む MU	ゆ YU	る RU		
え E	け KE	せ SE	て TE	ね NE	へ HE	め ME		れ RE	ゑ (W)E*	
お O	こ KO	そ SO	と TO	の NO	ほ HO	も MO	よ YO	ろ RO	を (W)O	

Usage Notes:

1. * marks obsolete sounds that no longer occur in Standard Japanese. However, you may still see these old characters in literature, so it's nice to at least know that they're out there.
2. For spaces not filled, that means the sound doesn't exist. "
3. As for を, it is usually pronounced as "o". However, some still pronounce it as

wo", especially in singing and dramas.

4. An interesting thing about the character ん is that can't begin a word in *Standard* Japanese, and it's the only consonant that can end a word.

Below are some example words.

かたち (Form; shape) ゆめ↓ (Dream) にほん (Japan) ふつう
(Usual) おわり (End)

The next sounds are called voiced sounds (dakuon). These sounds are made by vibrating the vocal folds in one's throat. They are all written in Kana with a character from above plus

゛ or ゜ .

G	Z	D	B	P
が GA	ざ ZA	だ DA	ば BA	ぱ PA
ぎ GI	じ JI	ぢ (D)JI	び BI	ぴ PI
ぐ GU	ず ZU	づ (D)ZU	ぶ BU	ぷ PU
げ GE	ぜ ZE	で DE	べ BE	ぺ PE
ご GO	ぞ ZO	ど DO	ぼ BO	ぽ PO

The ゛ is either called a **だくてん** or a **にごり↓**, and the ゜ is called a **はんだくてん**. Below are some example words.

Pitch Note: **だくてん** may also be **だくてん**.

ポケモン (Pokemon) だいがくせい (College student) かず (Number)

The last group of sounds are palatal sounds, which utilize the roof of the mouth. These sounds can either be voiced or not voiced. They are written with an i-sound Kana and a small や, ゆ, or よ.

きゃ	ぎゃ	じゃ	ぢゃ	にゃ	ひゃ	びゃ	ぴゃ	みゃ	りゃ
KYA	GYA	JA	DJA	NYA	HYA	BYA	PYA	MYA	RYA
きゅ	ぎゅ	じゅ	ぢゅ	にゅ	ひゅ	びゅ	ぴゅ	みゅ	りゅ
KYU	GYU	JU	DJU	NYU	HYU	BYU	PYU	MYU	RYU
きょ	ぎょ	じょ	ぢょ	にょ	ひょ	びょ	ぴょ	みょ	りょ
KYO	GYO	JO	DJO	NYO	HYO	BYO	PYO	MYO	RYO

Usage Notes:

1. ぢゃ, ぢゅ, & ぢょ are normally pronounced as ja, ju, and jo and are usually replaced with じゃ, じゅ, & じょ. They still occasionally show up.
2. The ry-sounds tend to be the most difficult for learners to make.

Practice: You need to do these by hand. Use the charts to help you.

Part I: Change the following words in Roomaji into ひらがな.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Kemuri (smoke) | 2. Amagumo (rain cloud) |
| 3. Uta↓ (song) | 4. Sekai (world) |
| 5. Karate | 6. Hajimemashite (Nice to meet you) |

Part II: Change the following words in ひらがな into Roomaji.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. かのじょ (She) | 2. しょだな (Bookshelf) |
| 3. にほんご (Japanese language) | 4. さかな (Fish) |
| 5. にんげん (Human) | 6. だいがく (College) |
| 7. ひと (Person) | 8. こんにちは↓ (Good afternoon) |
| 9. あした↓ (Tomorrow) | |

Pronunciation Note: The は in #8 is actually pronounced as わ.

Applications

ひらがな is used for words (normally) not written in かんじ, except loanwords. かな that show conjugation are called おくりがな. ふりがな or ルビ (rubi) are かな used to show how かんじ are read.

ひらがな Spelling: しわ Wrinkle (Writing something complicated in かんじ in ひらがな)

かんじ Spelling: 皺

か
変わらない = To not change (おくりがな)

かんじ
漢字 Kanji (ふりがな)

Spelling Note: Some words have several spellings, which makes おくりがな less straightforward.

Question: Get a dictionary and give the readings of the following words in ひらがな.

1. 顔 (Face)
2. 韓国語 (Korean)
3. 鳥 (Bird)
4. 友達 (Friend)

Punctuation Note: There are no spaces because the mixed script and grammar make word boundaries obvious. The period is 。, the comma is 、, and the quotation marks are 「」.

Terminology Note: ふりかんじ also exists. This is printing Chinese characters as ruby characters. You will rarely see this, but it does get used every now and then.

ひらがな Stroke Orders

n	w-	r-	y-	m-	h-	n-	t-	s-	k-	
ん N	わ WA	ら RA	や YA	ま MA	は HA	な NA	た TA	さ SA	か KA	あ A
	ゐ WI	り RI		み MI	ひ HI	に NI	ち CHI	し SHI	き KI	い I
		る RU	ゆ YU	む MU	ふ FU	ぬ NU	つ TSU	す SU	く KU	う U
	ゑ WE	れ RE		め ME	へ HE	ね NE	て TE	せ SE	け KE	え E
	を WO	ろ RO	よ YO	も MO	ほ HO	の NO	と TO	そ SO	こ KO	お O

Handwriting Notes:

1. Make sure that the end of the second stroke in あ is crossing the curve of the final stroke.
2. Make sure that い is written such that the two sides go up to the right hand corner diagonally.
3. Make sure that the final stroke in け is slightly farther down than the first.
4. For せ, the second stroke usually doesn't have a hook.
5. For い, こ, た, ふ, り, and ゆ, it is generally not accepted to connect the strokes together in manuscript.
6. For む, if you connect stroke 2 and 3 together, you do not add another dot.
7. Make sure the stroke 3 for お is not positioned far away from the rest of the character.
8. In more proper handwriting, the last stroke in さ and き is not connected with the rest, and there is a small hook on the preceding stroke leading to the final stroke.

Exercises:

1. Make flashcards with the ひらがな on the front and the Roomaji on the back.
2. Find something in Japanese and see if you can read all the ひらがな!

3. しりとり is a game where the next word starts with the last かな of the last word. Try it.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice

Part I:

1. けむり 2. あまぐも 3. うた 4. せかい 5. からて 6. はじめまして

Part II: If you have been taught to use other conventions in romanization, go by what you're teacher says to do. There are plenty of correct ways to romanize Japanese.

1. Kanojo 2. Shodana 3. Nihongo 4. Sakana 5. Ningen 6. Daigaku 7. Hito 8. Kon'nichi wa
9. Ashita

Question

1. かお 2. かんこくご 3. とり 4. ともだち

第3課 : Kana II: カタカナ Katakana

Katakana was once referred to as otokode (men's hand) because it was primarily used by educated men. The script comes from manuscript Kanji, which explains the shape of the characters. Nothing is different about the sounds in Katakana. It is simply another syllabary used in different situations.

Some students ask how does one know which is being spoken to me. This, though, is a flawed question. These syllabaries are writing systems, not the spoken word. So long as you learn how to spell and pronounce words together, you shouldn't have any problems.

カタカナ

It is important to reiterate that the sounds in Katakana are no different than they are in ひらがな. It is simply another syllabary for other situations, which will be discussed in detail in this lesson. Because we have gone through the different kind of sounds in Japanese in Lessons 1 and 2, the Katakana letters will be grouped in a ごじゅうおんず just like we did for ひらがな but with all of the sounds together in one chart.

	ア A	イ I	ウ U	エ E	オ O	ヤ YA	ユ YU	ヨ YO
K	カ KA	キ KI	ク KU	ケ KE	コ KO	キャ KYA	キュ KYU	キョ KYO
S	サ SA	シ SHI	ス SU	セ SE	ソ SO	シャ SHA	シュ SHU	ショ SHO
T	タ TA	チ CHI	ツ TSU	テ TE	ト TO	チャ CHA	チュ CHU	チョ CHO
N	ナ NA	ニ NI	ヌ NU	ネ NE	ノ NO	ニャ NYA	ニュ NYU	ニョ NYO
H	ハ HA	ヒ HI	フ FU	ヘ HE	ホ HO	ヒャ HYA	ヒュ HYU	ヒョ HYO
M	マ MA	ミ MI	ム MU	メ ME	モ MO	ミャ MYA	ミュ MYU	ミョ MYO
Y	ヤ YA		ユ YU		ヨ YO			
R	ラ RA	リ RI	ル RU	レ RE	ロ RO	リャ RYA	リュ RYU	リョ RYO
W	ワ WA	ヰ (W)I		ヱ (W)E	ヲ (W)O			
					ン N'			
G	ガ GA	ギ GI	グ GU	ゲ GE	ゴ GO	ギャ GYA	ギュ GYU	ギョ GYO
Z	ザ ZA	ジ^ JI	ズ^ ZU	ゼ ZE	ゾ ZO	ジャ JA	ジュ JU	ジョ JO
D	ダ DA	ヂ^ DJI	ヅ^ DZU	デ DE	ド DO	ヂャ DJA	ヂュ DJU	ヂョ DJO
B	バ BA	ビ BI	ブ BU	ベ BE	ボ BO	ビャ BYA	ビュ BYU	ビョ BYO
P	パ PA	ピ PI	プ PU	ペ PE	ポ PO	ピャ PYA	ピュ PYU	ピョ PYO

Usage Notes:

1. ヲ is no longer really used because the sound is typically just for the particle を (which is usually written as so in ひらがな). In loanwords, the sound "wo" is written as ウオ. For example, stopwatch is ストップウォッチ. The small ッ lengthens the following consonant. Other instances of ヲ are usually in people's names with the pronunciation "o".
2. The sound "wa" may be alternatively written as ウア in loanwords, but this is not really common.
3. ヱ and ヲ are obsolete Kana and were once pronounced as "we" and "wi". When you see them used today, they are read as "e" and "i" respectively. You may still find these characters in names. For example, エビス is a name of a beer company.

Practice (1):

Part I: Spell the following words in カタカナ.

1. Piano 2. Tesuto (Test) 3. Gorufu (Golf) 4. Miruku (Milk) 5. Kamera (Camera)

Part II: Romanize the following words. Any system is fine so long as you are consistent.

1. スリル (Thrill) 2. シネマ (Cinema) 3. マスコミ (The media) 4. キャビン (Cabin) 5. パリ (Paris)

Additional カタカナ for Foreign Phrases

Although ひらがな isn't normally used to write foreign words, the same methods of making Kana extensions apply. Consonants that are **not** in Japanese are replaced with approximations in pronunciation. For instance, Japanese doesn't have a v sound. So, even when you use v-sound Kana, the pronunciation is still "b".

	Y	W	V	SH	J	T	D	CH	TS	F	KW	GW
A			ヴァ						ツァ	ファ	クァ・クワ	グァ・グワ
I		ウィ	ヴィ			ティ	ディ		ツイ	フィ		
U			ヴ			トゥ	ドゥ					
E	イエ	ウエ	ヴェ	シェ	ジェ			チェ	ツエ	フェ		
O		ウォ	ヴォ						ツォ	フォ		

Curriculum Note: Visit Extra Katakana to see more Kana extensions for foreign transliterations.

Regardless of whether some of these sounds were once in the language or not in the past, these are all "new" sounds in respect to today's Japanese. So, many loanwords that came into the language before these sounds were available exist as well. So, if a loanword had a "tu" sound, then it would be represented with ツ. So, tour guide is ツアーガイド. You may find old spellings for some loans. For instance, whiskey was once spelled as ㇿスキー before the spelling ウィスキー was available.

ハイウェイ

Highway

モーツァルト

Mozart

プレッツェル

Pretzel

カフェ

Cafe

ファン

Fan (Supporter)

Practice (2): Spell the following words in カタカナ.

1. Fea (Fair)
2. Baiorin/vaiorin (Violin)
3. Wirusu/Uirusu (Virus)
4. Shefu (Chef)
5. Kariforunia (California)
6. Chesu (Chess)

Applications

Katakana is primarily used to write *foreign expressions such as science terms*. Katakana may also replace complicated Kanji. For instance, the word for skin is ひふ. In Kanji it is spelled as 皮膚. Because the second character is considered to be complex, the word may be seen spelled as 皮フ. Usually, however, ひらがな is used to replace complicated Kanji.

As Japanese doesn't allow final consonants or consonant clusters with exception to ン, **vowels are**

inserted. U is often inserted, but o is used after t and d. There are exceptions like suit **スーツ** (pronounced as スウツ) and cake **ケーキ** (pronounced as ケエキ).

ネコ ホモ・サピエンス

Cat Homo sapiens

フエイ **Punctuation Note:** ・ separates unfamiliar loan words or
ク options.

Fake

Application Note: You do not normally write out full sentences in カタカナ. This is done in telegraphs (as all telegraph messages are written in カタカナ) and sometimes done artistically in titles, but this is about it. カタカナ is meant to stand out, so if you were to write everything out in カタカナ, it may give off a foreign impression.

カタカナ is used for **some Japanese companies**. カタカナ is also used to write onomatopoeia (sound effects) and stylistically by authors to *italicize* words. This can be often seen on billboards.

トヨタ ゴミ ホンダ メガネ

Toyota Trash Honda Glasses

Practice (3): Transcribe (write out) the following words to the best of your abilities into カタカナ.

1. Wikipedia 2. America 3. France 4. Mexico

Questions:

1. The company name Mizuho is written in ひらがな. Write it in カタカナ.
2. Change the following sentence into ひらがな. キミダケヲアイシテイル。
3. What would be the difference between writing the word neko (cat) in ひらがな and カタカナ?

カタカナ Stroke Orders

Be careful with stroke order for characters that look similar.

n	w-	r-	y-	m-	h-	n-	t-	s-	k-	
ン N	ウ WA	ラ RA	ヤ YA	マ MA	ハ HA	ナ NA	タ TA	サ SA	カ KA	ア A
	ヰ WI	リ RI		ミ MI	ヒ HI	ニ NI	チ CHI	シ SHI	キ KI	イ I
		ル RU	ユ YU	ム MU	フ FU	ヌ NU	ツ TSU	ス SU	ク KU	ウ U
	エ WE	レ RE		メ ME	ヘ HE	ネ NE	テ TE	セ SE	ケ KE	エ E
	ヲ WO	ロ RO	ヨ YO	モ MO	ホ HO	ノ NO	ト TO	ソ SO	コ KO	オ O

Exercises: Do the same things you did for ひらがな with カタカナ. Review frequently.

Tip: Practice differentiating シ、ツ、 and ン.

Your Name

なまえ means name. Japanese names are normally in かんじ, but some have かな in their names.

Basically everyone has かんじ in their family name (みょうじ). Foreign names are usually

transliterated phonetically into カタカナ with the ordering of first and last name based on the original language. Chinese names are usually left in かんじ and read with Japanese readings, but they can also be read with Japanized, Modern Chinese readings. The latter choice is becoming more prevalent, but doing so requires a knowledge of newer Chinese readings.

Consider the sounds **closest** to those in your name. Go by pronunciation rather than spelling.

There can be **several ways** to render your name. Some names have standardized transliterations, and you may be instructed by your teacher to spell your name in a certain manner.

Spelling Note: Use — to make a long vowel and ツ to make a long consonant.

アウン・サン・スー・チー

Aung San Suu Kyi

ビル

Bill

イエス・キリスト

Jesus Christ

ベンヤミン・ネタニ

ヤフ

Benjamin

Word Note: Comes from Portuguese.

Netanyahfu

キム・ソン

Seon Kim

フランソワ・フィヨ

ン

François Fillon

カズオ・イシグロ

Kazuo Ishiguro

バラック・オバマ

Barack Obama

Note: カズオ・イシグロ is a famous JapaneseEnglish writer. His name is often written in カタカナ with a Western order.

ニコラ・サルコジ

Nicolas Sarkozy

オースティン

Austin

Cultural Note: ~さん after a name is like Mr. or Mrs. in English. ~さま shows more respect, and ~ちゃん is a childish version of ~さん. Don't use these after your own name unless you refer to yourself in third person. Titles like せんせい come after one's name.

Exercises:

1. Try writing your full name in カタカナ.
2. Find a Japanese name online and write it out in ひらがな.
3. Practice endings like ~さん in the real world.
4. If you have a pet, start calling your pet~ちゃん.
5. If you haven't been calling your teacher with their surname + せんせい, start.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

Part I:

1. ピアノ
2. テスト
3. ゴルフ
4. ミルク
5. カメラ

Part II:

1. Suriru
2. Cinema
3. Masukomi
4. Kyabin
5. Pari

Practice (2)

1. フェア
4. ヴァイオリン・バイオリン
3. ウィルス・ウイルス
4. シェフ
5. カリフォルニア
6. チェス

Practice (3)

1. ウィキペディア
2. アメリカ
3. フランス
4. メキシコ

Questions

#3 is free-response.

1. ミズホ
2. きみだけをあいしている。
3. ねこ would be used on a normal basis, but ネコ would be used in scientific situations.

第4課: Kana III: Basic Kana Orthography

Though this should not be a surprise, despite the simple phonetic nature of かな, not all words are written out exactly how they sound in Japanese. As we saw in [Lesson 1](#), the verb meaning to "say" is pronounced as "yuu" but spelled as いう. Colloquially, you see it spelled as ゆう, but いう is nonetheless exceptional.

Orthography means "application of a writing system". Now that you know ひらがな and カタカナ, you'll learn about the basic rules that govern their usage. There is a lot that can be said about any of the broad topics this lesson will cover, but you will leave this lesson with a good sense of how Kana works overall.

If you still haven't quite gotten both Kana systems down yet, don't worry. Because we primarily studying how long vowels and consonants are written, pay very close attention to the length of sounds!

Curriculum Note: Once there are fifty new lessons made, this lesson will become Lesson 4.

Long Vowels

Long vowels are crucial to speaking Japanese properly, and you cannot leave them unaccounted for in writing. If you remember the romanization used in Lesson 1 for long vowels, this information will make this section easier.

Simple Long Vowel Spelling

Long vowels are typically spelled in ひらがな in the following way. Simply doubling the vowel as seen below is rare for words written in カタカナ. It is not impossible, though. Writing long vowels by doubling a vowel カタカナ has been discontinued since World War II for something we'll see later on in this lesson. So, we will temporarily avoid カタカナ until then.

ああ いい うう ええ おお
 アア イイ ウウ エエ オオ (Rare)

ああ

ああ is essentially not found in words from Chinese (Kango), although there are some.

		Kango?			Kango?
ああ	Ah	No	おかあ さん	Mom	No
ばあ い	Situation	No	たあい	Altruism	Yes → 他愛
おばさ ん	Aunt; middle-aged woman	No	おばあ さん	Grandmother/elderly woman	No

いい

いい is more common in native words, but it is seen in words from Chinese. This long vowel happens to be the one most likely accidentally shortened by foreigners.

		Kango?			Kango?
いい	Good	No	しいて き	Arbitrary	Yes → 恣 意的
ミイラ	Mummy	No	ちい	Status	Yes → 地位
おじさ ん	Uncle/middle-aged man	No	おじい さん	Grandfather/el- derly man	No

うう

う う is not that common in native words. If it is present, it is usually in the latter part of the final form of a verb. Otherwise, however, it is numerously encountered in words from Chinese.

		Kango?			Kango?
すう	To suck; inhale; absorb	No	くうかん	Space	Yes → 空間
すうがく	Math	Yes → 数学	ぬう	To sew	No
ふうふ	Married couple	Yes → 夫婦	ぎゅうにく	Beef	Yes → 牛肉

ええ

え え is seen in native words. It is not seen in a lot of words, but those that it exists in happen to be quite common expressions.

		Kango?			Kango?
おねえさん	Older sister/young lady/miss	No	いいです ねえ	That's good, isn't it?	No
せえの	Altogether now!	No	へえ	Oh, really?	No

おお

お お is found in native words and present in words in which the second o was actually originally a ほ or を. This explains why, as you will see, there is an alternative Kana combination that may stand for a long o sound.

		Kango?			Kango?
こおり	Ice	No	おおきい	Big	No
ほお	Cheek	No	とお	Ten (things/years)	No
とおい	Far away	No	おおい	Many	No

Irregularities: えい & おう

We also have the spellings えい and おう that **sometimes** stand for a long e and long o respectively. Things get a little complicated with these exceptions, so pay close attention to detail.

えい

えい in Sino-Japanese words (Kango = 漢語) is typically pronounced in Standard Japanese as a long e sound. However, as the spelling suggests, it can be pronounced as “e+i”, pronouncing each vowel as is written. This is especially common in singing as singers tend to be trained to be more conservative in pronunciation. It’s important to note, though, that in non-Sino-Japanese words, えい is never a long e.

Chart Note: はつおん = Pronunciation

	Kango?	Meaning	はつおん		Kango?	Meaning	はつおん
めいし	Yes → 名刺	Business card	Mēshi/Meishi	えいが	Yes → 映画	Movie	Ēga/Eiga
せいしょ	Yes → 聖書	The Bible	Sēsho/Seisho	えい	No	Ray (animal)	Ei
スペイン	No	Spain	Supein				

おう

おう is somewhat more complicated. When you see this at the end of a Japanese verb, the vowels are pronounced separately. And, when the vowels are separated as separate readings of Chinese characters next to each other, they should be pronounced separately and not as おお.

Otherwise, whenever you see this combination in other words, those native and Sino-Japanese, it stands for a long o. One exception is the capital of South Korea, Seoul, which in Japanese is spelled as ソウル and pronounced as "so.uru".

	Kango?	Meaning	はつおん		Kango?	Mean- ing	はつおん
こう えい	Yes → 光 栄	Honor; glory	Kōē/Kōei	えい きょう	Yes → 影響	Influ- ence	Ēkyō/Eikyō
もう	No	Already	Mō	そう	No	(Like) so	Sō
おと うさん	No → お父 さん	Father	Otōsan	がっ こう	Yes → 学 校	School	Gakkō

Practice (1):

1. Spell the Sino-Japanese word saikyou (strongest) in ひらがな.
2. Spell omou (to think) in ひらがな.
3. Spell ohayō gozaimasu (good morning) in ひらがな.
4. Spell the Sino-Japanese word keiki (opportunity) in ひらがな.
5. Spell Tokyo in ひらがな.

Other Long Vowel Representations

For カタカナ, long vowels are typically represented with a mark that looks similar to a hyphen: —. Depending on who you ask, this has a few potential

names. Starting from the most common name to the least common name, you may hear it be called the ^{ちょうおんぷごう}長音符号, which means “long vowel symbol”, ^{ちょうおんぷ}長音符, which is short for the first, and ^{ぼうび}棒引き, which means “drawing a bar”.

As カタカナ is used primarily to write foreign words, you are primarily going to use and see this with foreign words. However, there are some emphatic instances where regular ひらがな long vowel representations are changed to use the ^{ちょうおんぷ}ちょうおんぷ instead. A great example is the word for cellphone, which in Kana is spelled as けいたい but colloquially spelled as ケータイ.

If not used in カタカナ, it is always emphatic. It is something that you would not see in academic writing of any sort. As for the classroom, you should refrain from using it outside of カタカナ.

テーブル	Table	インターチェンジ	Inter-change	コーチ	Coach
ソーダ	Soda	コンピューター	Computer	ホース	Hose
レール	Rail	セール	Sale	メール	Email
オレンジジュース	Orange juice	チーズ	Cheese	アイスクリーム	Ice cream
ダウンロード	Download	ページ	Page	フィナーレ	Finale
アイスティー	Ice tea	ヴァージニア	Virginia	コーヒー	Coffee

Word Note: Coffee is an older loan, so that is why it isn't コーフィー.

Exception Note: Sometimes you get words like ボウル・ボール for "bowl". The reason for the first spelling being possible is that it better reflects the actually

English pronunciation. Another similar exception is Seoul/soul, which is spelled as ソウル.

Practice (2):

Katakanize the following words.

1. Steak
2. Cake
3. Privacy
4. Rouge
5. Key

Trailing: Small Vowel Kana

Small かな--あ, い, う, え, お—represent trailing. You may often see these at the end of sentences to show a trailing off effect. This is similar to long vowels, but in this case it is not meant for word distinction. Rather, it demonstrates a manner of speaking.

きれいだねえ。

It's pre~tty, isn't it?

Long Consonants

っ doubles a consonant and is placed before a given consonant. It is most frequently used in Sino-Japanese words, loanwords, and conjugations, but even so, basically all instances of it come from some sort of contraction.

Never double n and m with っ. This is NEVER done, not even in loanwords. To get around this, you have to use ん before a n or m sound. Phonetically, however, they end up being double consonants. The spelling is just different.

ちよつ と	A little	マット	Mat	はっぴよ う	Announcement
ホッケ ー	Hockey	しっぱ い	Failure	よっか	Fourth day (month); four day period
まった	Waited	カッタ ー	Cutter	がっこう	School
サッカ ー	Soccer	ロボッ ト	Robot	Internet	インターネット
ジェッ ト	Jet	しっと	Jeal- ousy	まっか	Deep red

G, z, d, h, f, b, r, w and y can be seen doubled, but they are almost always either used in loan words or in exaggerated spellings.

バッグ	Bag	iPad (アイパッ ド)	iPad	バッハ	Bach
すっご い	Cool!/Amaz- ing!	レッドペッパー	Red pep- per	アッラ ー	Allah (From Is- lam)
ベッド	Bed	ホットドッグ	Hot dog		

Audible stops may be written with っ too. This audible stop has a more correct name, glottal stop. The glottis is a part of your throat, and if you're a native English speaker, an easy phrase to practice making this sound is "uh-oh", in which each vowel is actually preceded by a glottal stop. Most vowel-initial words in Japanese actually begin with a glottal stop, too. However, this is never written.

The only time when an glottal stop is written down is at the end of a word as such.

あっ = Ah (with a glottal stop at the end)

いたっ = Ouch!

Practice (3):

1. Find an incorrect usage of つ.

はっぱ かつな きった はっけん

Curriculum Note: There are other peculiarities about using かな that we will study when they become relevant.

じ VS ぢ & ず VS づ

し and す are voiced as じ and ず. つ and ち are voiced as ぢ and づ. However, づ and ぢ are pronounced the same as ず and じ respectively by most speakers. Exact pronunciation has already been covered in Lesson 1 in regards to these sounds, but it is important to know that distinguishing the four is no longer important in Standard Japanese. There are some places where they are all distinguished from each other, but this shouldn't concern you at this moment.

What should concern you in the meantime is the spelling issue of keeping the old distinctions somewhat relevant in writing. When characters are used phonetically, づ and ぢ are never used. However, they are typically used in compounds in which つ or ち is the initial sound of the second element and subsequently becomes voiced. Another instance is when a sound gets doubled and voiced at the same time.

漢字	かな	Meaning	漢字	かな	Meaning
鼻血	はなぢ	Nosebleed	指示	しじ	Instruction

縮み	ちぢみ	Shrinkage	鈴	すず	Bell
続き	つづき	Continuation	独り占め	ひとりじめ	Monopoly

Words normally don't begin with ぢ or づ, but some do. For example, づら (wig). Of all words, hemorrhoids 痔 is often written as ぢ. Also, ぢ and づ are typically only used with native words. There are, of course, those rare exceptions.

Practice (4):

1. The verb tsuzuru means "to spell". How would it be spelled in ひらがな?
2. Write the family name Suzuki in ひらがな.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1): 1. さいきょう 2. おもう 3. おはようございます 4. けいき 5. とうきょう

Practice (2): 1. ステーキ 2. ケーキ 3. プライバシー 4. ルージュ 5. キー

Practice (3): かな

Practice (4): 1. つづる 2. すずき



第5課: 漢字

漢字かんじ are Chinese characters used in writing Japanese,

but the two languages are unrelated to each other. Japanese has received major influence from Chinese but is believed to be in its own language family, the Japonic language family. It is related to branch-off languages spoken in Okinawa. It's very similar to languages like Korean and Turkish, but no genetic (linguistic) relation has been successfully attested.



Which words are the original words of Japanese (words not from other languages) is unknown, and the writing doesn't help solve the mystery. Writing, though, is China's greatest contribution to Japan. This writing system was designed for Chinese. So, it has been greatly modified for Japanese use. Thus, we get a mixed script that utilizes both 漢字 and かな.

漢字 have meaning(s) and sound(s) attributed to them, creating a complex puzzle of **many meanings** and **many readings** with **exceptions**. This lesson will focus on what 漢字 are and how to address them, and the coverage will continue in later lessons.

A Short History

You do not have to remember any of the history. It's just interesting to know. You certainly don't have to remember the Kanji spellings for all these words now.

Chinese Origin

漢字 originated in China over 4000 years ago. Characters were originally

written on the soft sides of turtle shells for oracle purposes. These early forms of 漢字 are called kōkotsubun for short (亀甲獣骨文字 *kikōjūkotsu moji*). Other scripts such as the bronze script (金文 *kimbun*), seal script (篆書(体)・篆文 *tensho(tai)/tembun*), clerical script (隸書(体)・隸文 *reisho(tai)/reibun*), regular script (楷書(体) *kaisho(tai)*; which is what you as a student of Japanese wish to follow), cursive script (草書(体) *sōsho(tai)*), and semi-cursive script (行書(体) *gyōsho(tai)*) would develop and be pretty much developed before ever reaching Japan.

漢字 came to Japan with Chinese and Korean immigrants. This introduction started around 2,000 years ago, though we'll never know for certain when it truly began.

漢文 → 万葉仮名 → 漢字かなまじり

Back then, Japanese had no attested writing system. 漢字 were initially used in Japan to write Classical Chinese, which was called Kanbun (漢文). Over time, 漢字 began being used to write Japanese. At the beginning, 漢字 were almost always used for the phonetic value rather for their meaning.

This early system of using 漢字 syllabically is called Man'yōgana (万葉仮名), named after the first full-fledged compilation in Japanese. The 漢字かな script would then emerge once かな were derived from this early system. The following chart from Wikipedia shows which 漢字 each かな is derived.

Kana Development Chart											
Hiragana					平仮名	Katakana					片仮名
あ	安	い	以	う	宇	え	衣	お	於	ア	阿
か	加	き	機	く	久	け	計	こ	己	カ	加
さ	左	し	之	す	寸	せ	世	そ	曾	サ	散
た	太	ち	知	つ	川	て	天	と	止	タ	多
な	奈	に	仁	ぬ	奴	ね	祢	の	乃	ナ	奈
は	波	ひ	比	ふ	不	へ	部	ほ	保	ハ	八
ま	末	み	美	む	武	め	女	も	毛	マ	末
や	也			ゆ	由			よ	与	ヤ	也
ら	良	り	利	る	留	れ	礼	ろ	呂	ラ	良
わ	和	ゐ	爲			ゑ	恵	を	芒	ワ	和
		ん	无								
										ン	尔

Chart Note: The カタカナ for yi, ye, and wu were coined during the start of Japan's industrial revolution to complete the chart despite the fact that these sounds aren't used. So, you can ignore them.

和製漢字わけいかんじ: Japanese-made 漢字

Some 漢字 were eventually created in Japan (国字 *kokuji*). Though the Japanese have made thousands of their own 漢字, you will find out over time in your studies that very few have made it to this day as essential characters.

Simplification

Japanese writing as a whole was majorly simplified after World War II. This involved simplifying the use of かな and simplifying the forms of over 1,000 漢字. Many older Japanese still know the old forms of characters, and old forms are still found in literature and used artistically for various reasons. They are also periodically found in people's names. For the mean time, though, we will simply go over the current, modern forms of each 漢字 that we go over.

Ultimate Goal

Although only 2,136 漢字 are 常用漢字(じょうようかんじ)(general use characters), due to the ease of use that typing has provided, most Japanese speakers know 3,000+ characters nowadays, and this trend is expected to continue. As a beginner, however, you shouldn't stress about the enormity of information that is being presented to you. If you put in the effort necessary to acquire this beautiful yet complex writing system, you will come out strong and full of 漢字 floating in your mind.

ON and KUN Readings

漢字 not only symbolize meaning, but they also carry sound. This sound, referred to as ON readings (音よみ), is reflected in thousands of words that have been borrowed into Japanese from various stages of China over the course of several centuries.

Reading 漢字 is actually the hardest part about them because there are so many potential readings for any given 漢字. Despite the overall patterns that you will be introduced to, there are still many exceptions and no fool-proof way to know how to read any given word at any given time. Educated guessing will be the best skill that you'll get out of analyzing how reading 漢字 works.

Spelling Note: *ON readings are in カタカナ; KUN readings are in ひらがな in this section. In reality readings are normally only given in ひらがな unless the word is a loan.*

オン READINGS

オン readings(音オン読み) come from China. All words with them are Chinese in origin except when the readings are used for phonetic reasons only. All 漢字 made in China have ON reading(s), as you would expect. Even some 国字 have オン読み.

オン読み are usually used in **words with 2+漢字**--熟語ジュクゴ. オン読み are also sometimes used in isolation, especially when the word doesn't have a Japanese equivalent. It is also possible for a character to have more than one オン読み. It's often the case that they have different meanings.

Examples of オン読み

Example	Reading	Meaning	Example	Reading	Meaning
知識	チシキ	Knowledge	天	テン	Heaven
円	エン	Yen	評価	ヒョウカ	Evaluation
理由	リユウ	Reason	工場	コウジョウ	Factory
知事	チジ	Governor	死	シ	Death

くん READINGS

訓読 くんよみ are generally **native** words applied to 漢字. 北 = north and its 音読み is ホク. Japanese has its own word for north, きた. So, it's the 訓読み. 漢字 may have many 訓読み, some that are 5 morae long. 訓読み are common in isolation, but many are used with 送おくりがな or in compounds.

Example	Reading	Meaning	Example	Reading	Meaning
雨	あめ	Rain	雨雲	あまぐも	Rain cloud
日傘	ひがさ	Parasol	日	ひ	Day; sun
思い	おもい	Thought	歌う	うたう	To sing
小山	こやま	Hill	高い	たかい	High

オンくん & くんオン COMPOUNDS

At times オン and くん readings are used *together* to make a compound. These readings are called 重箱読ジュウバコよみ (オンくん) and 湯桶読ユトウよみ (くんオン) respectively. ジュウバコ and ユトウ are examples themselves.

Example	Reading	Meaning	Example	Reading	Meaning
場所	ばしょ	Place	路肩	ロかた	Road shoulder
身分	みぶん	Position; status	台所	ダイどころ	Kitchen
消印	けしん	Postmark	見本	みほん	Sample

Practice:

Classify the following words by reading: 音読み, 訓読み, 重箱読み, or 湯桶読み. As you have only been introduced to 漢字, use a dictionary resource like jisho.org to look up the readings of the words and of the individual characters. As you do this, if you find any peculiar things, take note of them as those notes may be of great help to you in future sections.

1. 美しい
2. 花
3. 新聞
4. 番組
5. 手帳

Exercises:

1. 漢字 are typically written top-down and left to right. This is largely simplified, but it can prevent frivolous errors. Whenever you learn stroke orders, notice recurring parts. Use a dictionary resource like jisho.org to look up the following 漢字.

生 雨 長 金 風 中 円 魚 日 刀 土 小 上 山 女 男 子
海 耳

2. Write out the 漢字 above 10 times.
3. Write out the readings, meanings, and examples on another sheet of paper.

Radicals 部首(ぶしゅ)

Radicals are the building blocks of characters. All 漢字 are composed somehow with one or more of 214 radicals. Kanji can be broken up into six kinds of characters. Some are pictographs, some are ideographs, some have a mixture of meaning and sound parts. You don't need to know the six kinds of characters by heart, but they will be touched on again in Lesson 190.

漢字 with the **same radical** usually have **similar meaning**. 語, 訳, 訓, and 許 have the radical for

speech, 言, and have meanings related to it. Radicals are like building blocks, but they may or may not contribute to meaning and or sound.

Some radicals are used for phonetic purposes. In other words, there is a part of the character that hints at what the ON reading is supposed to be. So, 漢字 with the **same phonetic** often have **similar ON readings**. 時, 持, and 侍 have the reading ジ as the phonetic 寺's ON reading is ジ. There are exceptions. For example, 待 and 特 have the readings of タイ and トク. Phonetics themselves may not always play a semantic role and don't help with KUN readings.

Radicals do have names. However, it isn't essential for you to know what the names of the building blocks are. It is beneficial, though, to take note of what the components of the characters you learn are.

Curriculum Note: The 漢字 curriculum is still currently in its infancy, so there will eventually be more coverage concerning radicals.

Exceptional Readings

Even as you reasonably progress in acquiring the 音読み 訓読み of 漢字, you will come across many words that have irregular meanings. There are different kinds of irregularities that you will come across, but for you as the beginner, you need to simply realize that there will be words that will not have readings corresponding to the given readings of the characters.

Example	Reading	Meaning	Example	Reading	Meaning
今日	きょう	Today	昨日	きのう	Yesterday
大人	おとな	Adult	合羽	かっぱ	Raincoat

Spelling Problems

交 まぜ書かき is when a character not in the list is replaced with かな, leaving a word half 漢字-half かな. **書かき換かえ** is when 漢字 not in the list were replaced with a similar sounding one.

交ぜ書き	Traditional	Reading	Meaning	書き換え	Traditional	Reading	Meaning
破たん	破綻	はたん	Bankruptcy	防御	防禦	ぼうぎょ	Defense
漏えい	漏洩	ろうえい	Leaking	注文	註文	ちゅうもん	Order

第6課: The 10 Major Aspects

にほんご
日本語, which is formally read as にっぽんご, is the **eighth** most spoken language in the world. Japan is called 日本, which is normally read as にほん but also as にっぽん in formal contexts. Japan is said to have been founded by Emperor Jimmu (じんむてんのう
神武天皇) on February 11, 660 B.C. The Japanese flag ひの
まる
丸 shown in the left-hand corner is an outline of the rising sun.

In this lesson, you'll learn about the ten major aspects of Japanese. They do not completely describe Japanese. Rather, they're meant to help you analyze the language. This lesson does not require to magically be expert at the points mentioned. What this lesson is meant to you is showcase how the language will work so that hopefully there won't be many huge surprises.

Before we get to the ten major aspects, though, here are some key, everyday phrases to practice saying. These phrases are given in polite speech so they are of best use to you at this point in time.

Good morning	おはようございます	Good afternoon/hello	こんにちは
Good evening	こんばんは	Excuse me/sorry	すみません
How are you?	おげんきですか	You're welcome	どういたしまして
Nice to meet you	はじめまして	Thank you	ありがとうございます

I: Word Order

In Japanese, the subject is typically followed by the object, and the verb is always last. If you don't know what a subject or object is, don't

worry. The definitions are below, and if this doesn't help, the example sentences that follow should make things clearer.

Subject: *The item of discussion in a sentence.*

Object: *What an action is directed at.*

Verb: *An action or state of being.*

The subject and object may flip, and the simplest sentence **only needs a verb. Particles go after** words to show grammatical function. Particles make up a part of speech that English lacks. These words often equate to prepositions in English but not always. In proper speech, you should expect a particle (small word) to be in between the major noun phrases to string the sentence together. Below are various word orders showcasing the flexibility of the Japanese sentence.

SPOPV

わたし うみ およ
私 + は + 海 + で + 泳 ぎました。

Literally: I ocean in swam.

Translation: I swam in the ocean.

SPOV

わたし にほんじん
私 + は + 日 本 人 + です。

Literally: As for me, Japanese am.

Translation: I am Japanese.

OPV

ボール + を + な
 投 げました。

Literally: Ball threw.

Translation: I threw the ball.

V

うた
歌 いました。

Literally: Sang.

Translation: I sang.

Practice (1): Rearrange the following sentences into a **Japanese-like** word order.

1. He played in the mud.

2. You went by car?

3. I sang to-

day.

II: Macro-to-micro

The **most important things in a sentence come first**. Japanese allows its word order to be flexible to prioritize things out of semantic necessity. For instance, if the verb comes to mind first, you can say it first and have the rest of your statement be an afterthought. Now, don't get carried away with this as people don't purposely always speak with inverted sentences.

This hierarchy even explains why one's family name comes first. However, Japanese actually respects the names of people and places from other languages. Many learners feel like inverting their name to be more Japanese, but this is not necessary and may end up confusing Japanese people who anticipate the first part of your name to be your given name.

ふじわらはなこ
1. 藤原花子 Hanako Fujiwara

2. ヒラリー・クリントン
Hillary Clinton

Punctuation Note: A なかぐろ 中黒 , ・ , is placed in between two uncommon foreign words.

III: Endings and Bases

It's important to know that conjugation is done via chains of endings. The thought of using "base + ending" is very confusing to a lot of people, mainly because the names of the bases are added to the discussion and most people often never bother to learn how things go together. Because Japanese is what we call an agglutinative language, one which likes to add endings in chains, it's actually beneficial to know how the system works. If you do, there really isn't any memorization to conjugation.

To showcase what is to come, say you wanted to say "not go". First, you would need to know the verb for go, which is iku. You would then need to know

that you must change the base to be able to attach the negative ending, -nai. You can't just say ikunai and be done. Luckily, there is a base almost always used with the negative ending. So, let's just call it the negative base for now as negative base + negative ending sounds very reasonable. This base ends in the vowel a for iku. So, iku → ika- + -nai = ikanai.

This example should not have been painfully difficult. Conjugation really is this simple. You might be wondering how many bases and endings there are. Although there are many endings that you can use, only six bases exist. For any given verb/adjective class, the bases might not all look different, which makes memorization easier. Certain ones are used a whole lot more than others, meaning you won't be responsible for the entire system until later on in your studies.

IV: Parts of Speech

Japanese relies a lot on part of speech and context to distinguish homophones. So, it's no surprise that there are 11 different parts of speech. Word classes can either be independent (can be used by themselves) or dependent (must be used with something else), and they may either conjugate or not conjugate.

The chart below may not seem of any help to you. After all, there are no words or example sentences of these parts of speech. However, learning how to use them all in one go is not wise. We will need time to look at them individually. Most of them you, though, should already sound familiar to you from knowing English. For now, it's alright to equate these classes with those of English and any differences will be mentioned in due time.

Class	Function	Class	Function
Nouns (名詞・めいし)	Person, place, thing	Pronouns (代名詞・だいめいし)	I, you, he, etc.
Verbs (動詞・どうし)	Action/process	Adjectives (形容詞・けいようし)	Condition
Adjectival Nouns (形容動詞・けいようどうし)	Condition	Auxiliary Verbs (助動詞・じょどうし)	Verbal modifiers
Particles (助詞・じょし)	Grammatical markers	Interjections (間投詞・かんとうし)	Express emotion

Conjunctions (接続詞・せつぞくし)	Connect clauses	Attributives (連体詞・れんたいし)	Modify nouns
Adverbs (副詞・ふくし)	Modify verbs/adjectives		

Notes:

1. Only particles and auxiliaries are **dependent**.
2. Only verbs, adjectives, and auxiliary verbs **can conjugate**. Adjectival nouns need an auxiliary to conjugate.

Particle Note: Particles are **always after what they modify!** Particles in Japanese are traditionally classified under six types. However, all of these types are not necessarily relevant to Japanese studies or even necessarily existent as a separate "class" of particles. So, we will only deal with four kinds that you will immediately come in contact with. Just like above, there aren't any examples of these kind of particles in the chart below.

Particles are extremely difficult to get right, so it would be meaningless to list them all now and go through their usages. Instead, focus on what to expect particles to do in a sentence. If you know now how they could act and how varied they are, you won't be so confused on why so many particles have different classes and thus very different usages, nor will you grapple with the definition of what a particle is.

Case 格助詞 かくじ よし	These always come after noun phrases (things that are nouns are have become nouns) to show their grammatical role in a sentence. Whether it's a subject, object, etc is determined by such particles.
Con- junc- tive 接続助詞 せつぞく じよし	Connects clauses together like "and" and "but" in English.
Final 終助詞	These are particles at the end of sentences or individual phrases to show emotional information. Think of them as verbal emoticons. They are very important for making your Japanese sound natural.

しゅう じょし	
Adver- bial 副助詞 ふくじ よし	Translated as adverbs but they aren't independent words like actual adverbs. Because these particles are not case particles, they can be used after a lot more various things to show all sorts of grammatical emphasis roles.

Practice (2):

Categorize the following words by part of speech.

1. ひ 日 (Day)
2. ああ (Ah)
3. おもう (To think)
4. そして (And)
5. わたし (I)

What is a Word?

Japanese is an agglutinative language because affixes (things that attach) attach to things. So, where do you draw the lines to count words? As you can see, there are several ways of counting the words in this simple sentence translated as "I saw a gull at the beach".

All affixes separated	わたし + は + かいがん + で + かもめ + を + み + まし + た	9 Words
Only particles separated	わたし + は + かいがん + で + かもめ + を + み ました	7 Words
Only phrases separated	わたしは + かいがんで + かもめを + みました	4 Words

V: Vocabulary

Words in Japanese come from three sources. **Sino-Japanese** words are from Chinese readings of 漢字 and make up ~60% of Japanese. **Native** words are original Japanese words. Although only 30% of words are native, they're the most common. **Loan** words come from other modern languages.

Believe it or not, knowing where a word comes from will help you in many ways later on. Phrasing and style of diction often have different percentages of these kinds of words. For instance, Sino-Japanese words are usually more formal but native words are predominant in the spoken language.

Sino-Japanese	Meaning	Native	Meaning	Loan	Meaning
かざん	Volcano	ひと	Person	ケーキ	Cake
にがつ	February	うま	Horse	ズボン	Pants
ほん	Book	はな	Flower	ドア	Door
すうがく	Math	みず	Water	チーズ	Cheese

VI: Politeness and Dialects

Formality is determined by the relationship between the **speaker and listener**. Plain speech is used in novels, songs, essays, articles, towards people you're close to and is often grammatically necessary. Polite speech shows deference between the speaker and listener. Honorifics is often used with superiors, but you will first be introduced to plain and polite speech.

By no means should you skip to other lessons and learn these styles all at once now. Learning how to master the different politeness levels of Japanese is hard even for native speakers, so be content with the basic outlines of them now and to come until we are able to look at them in greater detail.

Japanese has many dialects. As a beginner, you should focus on **Standard Japanese**. Significant dialect remarks will be made on occasion. Sometimes

comments will be made about grammaticality in the context of dialectical variation. However, if you are to ever come across dialectical speech that is otherwise incorrect in Standard Japanese, it is best to not mimic in situations in which you should use proper Japanese.

VII: Articles, Number, and Gender

Articles (a, an, the) **don't exist**. Nouns have no number (singular and plural forms). There are plural suffixes, but they work differently. Japanese nouns don't have grammatical gender, but some words should only be used by men or women.

Practice (3): Make these English sentences even more Japanese-like.

1. The water covers the trees.
2. I hate ants.
3. I love dogs.
4. An animal is in the house.
5. The school is big.

VIII: Writing Systems

かな and 漢字 are used to write Japanese. 2,136 漢字 are designated as general use characters necessary for literacy. Even English letters to a small extent, are also used with 漢字. The かな are organized into a chart

called the ^{ごじゅうおんず}五十音図 seen in [Lesson 2](#). Many people know 3,000+ 漢字 and 7,000+ characters can be applied, but going this far is not necessary.

Practice (4): Look up and give the readings for the following words. This will help you with the 漢字 to learn.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. 花火 (Fireworks) | 2. 火山 (Volcano) | 3. 三月 (March) |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|

4. 水曜日 (Wednesday)
anese person)

5. 女王 (Queen)

6. 日本人 (Jap-

IX: Quality: Emotion

Describing one's emotions is different than describing someone else's. Tone of voice and choice of final particles reflect one's attitude. Emotion is put into words more explicitly in Japanese than in English.

X: Punctuation

There are no spaces between words, and you write to the next line even if this breaks up a word. Text may go down from left to right or down from right to left. Horizontal text was historically right to left.

、	The comma	。	The pe-riod	!	The exclamation mark	?	The question mark
---	-----------	---	-------------	---	----------------------	---	-------------------

Punctuation marks are written with the same space as regular characters. Commas are often where particles are omitted. ! and ? have been borrowed for emphatic purposes to further demonstrate tone and emotion.

3. わたし 私 は (、) これが好きです。

I like this.

4. なに？

What?

5. はい！

Yes!

Table of Contents

Keys

Read the instructions. The keys to 1 and 3 are not reflective of natural English but what English would look like if it placed words in a Japanese word order. The entire purpose of those exercises is for you to get used to how words are placed in a Japanese sentence. Just looking at the keys and not the questions is irresponsible. Please do not be that student.

Practice (1)

1. He mud in played.
2. You car by went?
3. I today sang/Today I sang.

Practice (2)

1. Noun
2. Interjection
3. Verb
4. Conjunction
5. Pronoun

Practice (3)

1. Water trees covers.
2. I ants hate.
3. I dogs love.
4. Animal house in is.
5. School big is.

Practice (4)

1. はなび
2. かざん
3. さんがつ
4. すいようび
5. じょう
6. にほんじん

第7課: Nouns & Pronouns

Nouns are the easiest words to learn in a foreign language. Memorizing them all isn't easy, but at least they're simple to use.

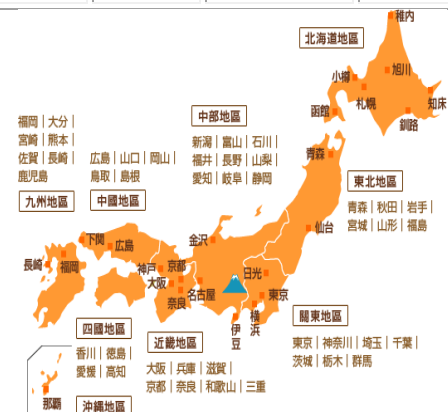
Nouns

Most nouns represent people, places, events, or things. Japanese isn't related to English, but there are plenty of loanwords from English and loanwords from Japanese in English.

Karaoke	カラオケ	Ramen	ラーメン	Karate	空手	Tōkyō	東京
Anime	アニメ	Manga	マンガ	Sushi	すし	Sake	酒

Geography Note: 本州 is the main island of Japan.

The top island is 北海道, and the other two major islands are 四国 and 九州.



Exercises:

1. Think of all the things you know in Japanese.
2. See if you know any places in Japan on a globe/map.
3. Research who the Prime Minister of Japan is.

Nouns have no number or gender, and there are no articles. Making things nominal is very important to Japanese. So, saying nouns are either people, places, or things is no good. The definition of a noun may be difficult, but you'll learn what things are nominal.

Pluralization Note: You can generally use ～たち to make things plural, but this suffix usually points out a group of things/people. In this sense, it is not like the simple "-s" suffix for plurals in English.

女たち

Women

男たち

Men

犬たち

(A group of) dogs

Loan Words

There are many loanwords from English in Japanese. The chart below has several, ignoring those that have drastically changed. They are Japanese words now, so don't use English pronunciations.

アイスクリー ム	Ice cream	ビデオゲー ム	Video game	オレンジジュ ース	Orange juice
パイ	Pie/pi	コーラ	Cola	アイスティー	Ice tea
ソファ	Sofa	ポイント	Point	ペン	Pen
メートル	Meter	バス	Bus	ヴァン	Van

Pronouns

Japanese has many pronouns that differ in politeness, gender orientation, etc. All pronouns come from words that referred to people. Because you don't have the framework to make sentences yet, only the most essential pronouns will be mentioned.

Pro- noun	Polite	Notes
--------------	--------	-------

I	わた (く) し	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. わたくし is respectful and わたし is polite/neutral. 2. In 漢字 both are 私. 3. Stick to わたし until you understand others. 4. わたくし can sound pompous outside of honorifics. 5. Outside of polite speech, わたし sounds slightly feminine.
You	あなた	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The most neutral word for "you" is あなた. 2. It is direct, so use a name if possible instead. 3. It can mean "dear" when used by women to their spouses.
He	彼	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 彼 can be used to mean boyfriend in casual speech.
She	彼女	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 彼女 can mean "girlfriend" in casual speech. 2. 彼 and 彼女 often refer to friends/acquaintances but can indifferently refer to people.

第8課: だ & です

Up to now, you have seen a few sentences in Japanese. A lot goes into a sentence, but perhaps the most fundamental kind of sentence is "X is Y". In Japanese, though, just a bit more has to be considered. If you want to say "is", you have to think about politeness.

The Bases: Starting Points

First off, what is a base? A base is a very important strategic location in strategy and war. We take this analogy to describe the starting point for all addition to a verb phrase of any kind in Japanese. From one of a few kinds of bases (starting points), everything in conjugation is built. To know how to make the most basic "is" phrases like "X is/am Y", "X is/are not Y", "X was Y", and so on, we need only two of these starting points.

So, what is a copula? All copula means is the "to be" verb. In Japanese, this is である. We won't see it now because it's not useful, but it will be soon for grammar reasons. However, you will hear its contracted form だ. This is the plain form. Japanese has plain and polite speech. Polite speech is used to be polite to those who aren't close to you. So, you need to also know that だ is replaced with です in polite speech.

In this lesson, we will look at only だ and です. To use them, we will need only one base and that's the one they're already in. This base is simply called the しゅうしけい. If you just want to refer to it the basic form, that's fine too!

Basic

Japanese has two basic tenses: non-past and past. Non-past refers to the present or future depending on context. The non-past is just the base form. In this lesson, all examples will be in the non-past tense so that you get used to using だ & です. All example sentences will be "There is" or "It is" kind of "X is Y"

sentences so all you need to say is Y だ・です. This allows us to avoid any grammar we haven't seen yet.

Examples

1. あした 明日 だ。 (Plain)
It('ll be/'s) tomorrow.

2. 犬です。
That is/it is a dog.

3. じかん 時間 です。
It's time.

4. あ、ネコだ！
Ah, a cat!

5. そうです。
That's so.

6. えっと、 にほんじん 日本人 です。
Um, I'm Japanese.

Meaning Note: Conceptualizing the word "to be" in all its facets with だ・です will be bad. In harder sentences like "I like being a doctor", the correct way to say it would not necessarily have or require だ or です. Always pay attention to how Japanese phrases things. This is more important than just learning individual words and hoping it'll be correct once you do an appropriate rearranging.

第9課: The Particles が & は

Differentiating が or は(pronounced wa) **can't** be defined by rules.

They **aren't** the same kind of particle, and **がは** and **はが** are consequently **impossible**. Particles show function, so focus on this. This lesson does not discuss all the usages of the two. This lesson simply gives you the gist of how to use the two in basic sentences.

The Case Particle が

In this lesson, many adjectives and some verbs will be used in the examples. Because we have not discussed how to conjugate more than the basic forms of things (which involves doing nothing) and have not learned how to deal with adjectives or verbs, they will only be used in the non-past tense, which again, involves no additional grammar know-how.

Specificity

が is **specific**. The **subject** is identified and the statement (predicate) tells something **new** about **it**. が may mark a person/thing carrying something out as a **phenomenon occurs**. The action is not habitual with が. It may also reveal the **existence** of something.

1. あたま
頭 がいい。

(You're) smart.

Literally: (Your) head is good.

2. なみ たか
波 が 高い。

The waves are high.

3. そら あお
空 が 青い。

It is the sky which is blue.

Nuance Note: が may particularly point something out as the focus of one's statement, and in doing so, a small pause typically follows が. Commas aren't necessary for this, but you may see them used here.

New information does not equate to contrast. So, it's not that the sentence below equates to either *the **bird** is blue* or *the bird is **blue***. Providing details is something we do all the time in a conversation, but it's not the case that we make each detail a topic of discussion. If we do, we return later and address them as topics of a new paragraph or statement (if you're talking). が does have an emphatic usage, but the contexts are not the same. We will see this soon.

4. その ^{とり}鳥 が赤い。

The bird is red.

Sense of Discovery

が may show what's found out, whether it be the beginning of a story, discovery itself, etc.

5. ああ、これが ^{ゆき}雪 だ！

Ah, this is snow!

もんだい
問 題 がある。

There is a problem.

かね
お 金 がある。

There is money; to have money.

けいかん
警 官 がいる。

There is a police officer.

The Particle は

Conversations have a **topic**, which is somewhat familiar to the speaker and listener(s). は doesn't show new information. So, "A は B だ" shows something of conversational value. To better show how this differs with "A が B だ", compare the following.

6. リンゴが赤い。

The apple is red.
apples, they are red.

7. リンゴは赤い。

Apples are red/an apple is red/as for

7. 彼が悪い。

He is bad.

8. 彼は悪い。

As for him, he's bad.

In 7, the listener(s) may not know him or about this "bad" quality. In 8, both the speaker and listener(s) know the topic, him, very well.

は and が are called the *topic* and *subject* markers respectively with the understanding that if either is absent, the topic and subject may coincide with each other. If は were replaced by が, が would change the topic into the **focus**. Focus doesn't mean contrasting with anything. Rather, it draws attention to a statement, and this is in line with everything we've seen about が thus far. Try not to dwell on the names of these particles. Topic and subject don't help us a whole lot in using these particles perfectly 100% of the time, but they do help us grasp them well for the meantime.

Intonation Note: There is normally a small pause that accompanies は when showing a topic.

Examples

10. リンゴは ^{ちい}小 さい。 (Apples would already be the topic of discussion)
Apples are small.

11. これは ^{むずか}難 しい。
This is difficult.

12. 私はお ^{ちゃ}茶 です。
Tea for me.

Meaning Note: This sentence doesn't mean "I am tea". は doesn't specifically link the subject with the verb.

Topic は Subject が X

X is an adjective or verb, and the topic and subject can flip depending on importance. Typically, though, this is the most natural ordering. This pattern is used to discuss a matter concerning the topic.

13. ゾウは ^{はな}鼻 ^{なが}が 長 い。
As for elephants, their noses are long.

14. ^{にほん}日本 は ^{じんじゃ}神 社 ^{おお}が 多 い。
Japan has many shrines.

Expressing Nationality and Occupation

は is used when expressing nationality or occupation.

Nationalities	Occupations (Plain)	Occupations (Polite)
フランス人 = French person	教師 (きょうし) = Teacher	先生 = Teacher
アメリカ人 = American person	学生 = Student	学生さん = Student
イギリス人 = English person	医者 (いしゃ) = Doctor	お医者さん = Doctor
中国人 = Chinese person	銀行員 (ぎんこういん) = Banker	銀行員さん = Banker

Usage Note: The polite occupations aren't used in reference to oneself.

15. かれ^{かれ}は日本人です。 (Polite)
He is Japanese.

16. 彼女は^{ちゅうごくじん}中国人です。 (Polite)
She is Chinese.

17. 彼女は先生です。 (Polite)
She is a teacher.

Questions: Translate the following.

- I'm not Japanese. (Polite)
- I am Chinese.
- Yes, the book is difficult.

Part II: Fill in the appropriate particles.

4. リンゴ__3つあります。あれ__赤いです。
There are three apples. That's a red apple.

5. あの人__学生です。

That person (over there) is a student.

Table of Contents

Keys

You may use かんじ. Different (polite) variants are not listed, but they would still be right.

1. 私は日本人ではありません。

2. 私は中国人です。

3. はい、その本は難しい。

4. が; は

5. は

第??課: Negative & Past: ~ない & ~た

You know what **だ** and **です** are. You know the particles **は** and **が**. Now, it's time to learn about how to say "not" and how to say things in past tense.

X is not Y

Let's assume first that all examples in this lesson are in contexts in which we are talking about a topic and giving a statement that it is not such and such. So, we know that we have X **は**. Now, we have **だ** and **です** so far for "is", and we only know the end form: しゅうしけい. So, we'll need to learn a new base to make the negative. This base is called the れんようけい.

だ → で

We only need to know the one for **だ** to make the negative. Politeness has to be reconfigured in the phrase because of this. Now that we have the starting point, we need to use an ending to finish what we've started. That ending as you say in the title of this lesson is **~ない**. A lot of the world's words for not start with a n, so it should be easy to remember. But, we normally never use **でない**. Instead, we say **ではない**. **ではない** in speech often becomes **じゃない**, but it still means the same thing!

1a. それはペンだ。

1b. それはペンじゃない。

1a. That is a pen.

1b. That is not a pen.

2. 犬じゃない。

(That) is not a dog.

Sentence Note: A secondary interpretation of 2 is "I am not a dog" because the subject is not stated and we don't have the actual context for this sentence.

Polite Negative Forms

To make a polite negative phrase, you have two options. You can simply add です to ~ない. When you do this, you aren't actually saying "is" again. In this case, です's meaning is just showing politeness. Or, you can use ~ {では・じゃ} ありません. If you remember from Lesson 8 that だ comes from である and that it will be important to know this later on, the time is now. Polite conjugations using it are "more polite" than just using です. So, they are best used with people whom you should show more respect.

Plain	Polite	More Polite
{では・じゃ} ない	{では・じゃ} ないです	{では・じゃ} ありません

Form Note: We not only have ~ではありません, but there is also ~であります that you can use to make more polite "is" statements. Try using this and ~ではありません with your teacher!

Politeness Note: Using では is naturally more polite.

3. 虫じゃないです。

It's not a bug.

4. リーさんは学生ではありません。

Lee-san is not a student.

5. いいえ、そうじゃありません。

No, it isn't.

7. リーさんは^{がくせい}学 生 ではありません。(Polite negative)

Mr. Lee isn't a student.

8. いいえ、そう**じゃありません**。(Polite negative)

No, it isn't.

7. リーさんは ^{がくせい}学 生 **ではありません**。(Polite negative)

Mr. Lee isn't a student.

8. いいえ、そう**じゃありません**。(Polite negative)

No, it isn't.

7. リーさんは ^{がくせい}学 生 **ではありません**。(Polite negative)

Mr. Lee isn't a student.

8. いいえ、そう**じゃありません**。(Polite negative)

No, it isn't.

7. リーさんは ^{がくせい}学 生 **ではありません**。(Polite negative)

Mr. Lee isn't a student.

8. いいえ、そう**じゃありません**。(Polite negative)

No, it isn't.

Past: ～た

So, to use ～た we need to use the れんようけい again. You will see over and over again that it is this single form of a verb that is used to make almost everything. This time, we'll need to learn the れんようけい of だ and です. We'll also need to learn how to say past tense for the "more polite" phrases. First, let's learn how to construct the れんようけい for だ and です when we use ～た.

だ → だっ ○ / で X → + ～た → だった

です → でし → + ～た → でした

As you can see, **だ** has two forms for the れんようけい. So, don't use **で** with **～た**. If it helps you remember what this base does, you can call it by the English name "continuative form". It just continues to tell you more about what's going on in the sentence. Now, what do we do about "not" and **～た**. The same thing applies. We need to use the same form of **ない** that we used for **だ** and **です**.

～ない → ～なかつ → +～た → ～なかった

Now that you've learned how to construct the past phrases, we'll look at the plain, polite, and more polite past tense phrases for positive and negative sentences in the chart below.

	Plain	Polite	More Polite
Was	だった	でした	でありました △
Was- n't	{では・じゃ} なかつた	{では・じゃ} なかった です	{では・じゃ} ありませんでした

△: Though this exists, it's really old-fashioned and not used anymore.

Variant Note: Some speakers use **～だったです** rather than **でした**, but the latter is still felt by most speakers to be the most natural phrasing.

The last column is the hardest to explain with what we've learned up to now. But, the same things apply. We know what **～た** attaches to. **～ます** in **～であります** shows politeness in verbs just like **です** shows politeness for other things. That's all what's going on!

6. それは水じゃなかった。

That wasn't water.

7. 田中さんは先生ではありませんでした。

Tanaka-san was not a teacher.

8. 日本人はふたりでした。

There were two Japanese people.

9. あれは学校でした。

That over there was a school.

10. 彼は子どもだった。

He was a kid.

Sentence Note: Past tense often is used to not mean the past but show confirmation, which is how Ex. 10 would most often be used for.

Table of Contents

第10課: Adjectives I: 形容詞

There are two classes that differ only in conjuga-

tion: けいようし 形容詞 and けいようどうし 形容動詞. We will only cover the first class in this lesson. For 形容動詞, see [Lesson 11](#).

形容詞: How to Conjugate

新しい means "new". Adjectives act like verbs in Japanese, so they can be used as *predicates*. In "the fish is blue", "is blue" is the predicate. This "sentence final form" is the しゅうしけい.

1. この本は新しい。(Plain)

This book is new.

An adjective is in the れんたいけい (attribute form) when used to modify a noun. For this class, the しゅうしけい and れんたいけい look the same, but the grammar is still different.

2. 新しい本

A new book

形容詞 have two れんようけい, which is used with endings for things like tense, conjunction, etc. The < base is in "< + ない" to make the negative. So, 新しくない = not new. The かり base is "かり → かつ + ~た" for the past tense. So, 新しかった = was new.

	形容詞	れんようけい I	れんようけい II
Example Word	新しい	新しく	新しかり

Polite Forms

The chart below shows the basic conjugations with ^{あたら}新 しい, meaning "new" in both plain and polite speech. Some of the items in the polite forms will be explained once we study verbs.

Tense	Plain	Polite Speech	More Polite
Non-past	新しい	新しいです	新しくあります *
Past	新しかった	新しかったです	新しくありました
Negative	新しいくない	新しいくないです	新しくありません
Negative Past	新しくなかった	新しくなかったです	新しくありませんでした

Grammar Notes:

1. は may be inserted after < for emphatic purposes.
2. * this is possible as well as the plain equivalent 新しくある. In fact, some of the bases come from this combination. However, <ある・<あります are **essentially never used in speaking and are old-fashioned**, and it would be exceptionally awkward for a foreigner to use them. There are times when they are grammatically necessarily reserved for the written language that we will learn about later.

Common Adjectives

Beautiful	美しい	Ugly	みにくい	Strong	強い	Weak	弱い
Delicious	おいしい	Early	早い	Wide	広い	Difficult	難しい
Fast	速い	Late/slow	おそい	New	新しい	Old	古い
Happy	うれしい	Sad	悲しい	Close	近い	Far	遠い
Hot	あつい*	Cold (weather)	寒い	Cold	冷たい	Strict	厳しい

Spelling Note: あつい in respect to weather is written as 暑い and as 熱い for "hot" in general.

かれ やさ
3. 彼 は 優 しくない。

He isn't nice.

たの えいが
4. 楽 しい映 画 だ。

It's a great movie.

きび
5. 山田先生は 厳 しいです。

Professor Yamada is strict.

いそが
6. 忙 しくありませんでした。

I was not busy.

たてもの
7. その 建 物 は高いです。

That building is tall.

8. そのテレビは高いです。

That TV is expensive.

Word Note: 高い may mean "tall" and "expensive". "Tall" as in a person = 背が
高い。背 means "back/height".

よい → いい

いい means "good/fine", but when you conjugate it, you have to use the older form よい. よい itself is more formal, but in different forms, it's just normal. Do not run with this to mean adjectives ending in the sounds いい conjugate this

way. This is ONLY in reference to いい・よい the word whether it is by itself or in some compound.

9. それはよくないです。

That's not good.

10. ^{きょう}今日^{てんき}はよいお天 気 ですね。(Very polite)

Today's weather is good, isn't it?

11. 今日は天気がいいですね。(Polite)

The weather is good today, isn't it?

Practice (1): Translate the following.

1. The sea is blue.

2. The sea is wide.

3.

This is old.

4. Annoying children.

5. It isn't wide.

6. The

car is small.

7. The room is bright.

8. Winter is cold.

Adjectives in Slang

いい can also become ええ in slang. In fact, ai, oi, and ii at the end of adjectives contract to ē in slang. "Ye" and "we" aren't possible in Standard Japanese, so in this case y and w are dropped.

強い (strong)	つよい → つえー	怖い (scary)	こわい → こえー
新しい (new)	あたらしい → あたらしえー	赤い (red)	あかい → あけー

Other Attributive Forms

Certain 形容詞 have another common additional attributive form that is not conjugatable. Remember that attribute phrases go before a noun to modify its qualities. That is what an attribute is. There is no chart for conjugations for these alternate forms because there are none. That is what is meant by not being conjugatable.

Adjectives with alternative forms that can conjugate do not count. For these three, the special commonality is that the alternative forms below are limited. As far as nuance is concerned, with them being special, they are minutely different from the 'normal' forms. These forms tend to be more subjective in nature.

小さい・小さな	おかしい・おかしな	大きい・大きな
---------	-----------	---------

12. 小さな海

A small sea

13. おかしな^{はなし}話だね。

It's a funny story, isn't it?

14. おお^{ひかり}きな光

A big light

~しの?

Though this is almost always a mistake made by Japanese learners, there are rare instances when an adjectival phrase ends up having の attached to it to regain its use as an attribute phrase. A major example of this is 仲良し. You can actually see 仲良しな and 仲良しの, but both ways are still grammatically weird.

15. いちばんなかよ^い 仲^な 良^よ しの 友^{とも} 人^{じん} (Not spoken language)

Closest friend

Practice (2):

1. How do you conjugate いい?
2. What is the difference between the しゅうしけい and the れんたいけい?
3. What is the difference between 熱い and 暑い?
4. Conjugate 小さい into the plain past and polite negative past forms.
5. Conjugate 楽しい into the plain past and polite negative past forms.

Just the Root: It's not to say that the root of an adjective is not used alone. In fact, in an interjectory sense, this is done all the time. The root can also be used in compound words.

16. ああ、暑っ！

Ah, it's hot (outside).

17. ふる^{ふる} 古^{ふる} い + しんぶん^{しんぶん} 新^{しん} 聞^{ぶん} → ふるしんぶん^{ふるしんぶん} 古^{ふる} 新^{しん} 聞^{ぶん} (Old newspaper)

18. うれしい + なみだ^{なみだ} 涙^{なみだ} → うれし涙^{うれしなみだ} (Tears of joy)

Table of Contents

Keys

が and は are determined by context. So, quite a few of these simple sentence translations may be too vague to decide between the two. Use as many 漢字 as you can.

Practice (1)

1. 海は青い。 2. 海は広い。 3. これは古い。 4. うるさい子ども（たち）
5. 広く（は）ない。 6. その車は小さい。 7. そのへやは明るい。 8. 冬は寒い。

Practice (2):

1. You must use the original form よい and treat it as any other adjective.
2. The しゅうしけい is the form at the end of a sentence. The れんたいけい modifies noun phrases.
3. The first is hot as in things being hot while the second refers to the weather being hot.
4. 小さかった; 小さくなかったです・小さく（は）ありませんでした
5. 楽しかった; 楽しくなかったです・楽しく（は）ありませんでした

第11課: Adjectives II: 形容動詞

This is the second class of adjectives in Japanese. You will soon realize that you use familiar grammar with this class of adjectives.

形容動詞

形容動詞 come from **abstract nouns** + the copula. However, not all 形容動詞 may be used as nouns such as those that end in か are always adjectives. This, though, is a minor issue. Dictionaries label those that can be used as nouns with 名・形動.

If you look below, you'll see that 形容動詞 themselves do not conjugate, which is why the copula is needed for that role. Thus, all the conjugations you learned in [Lesson 8](#) apply with no alteration.

	だ	です
Non-Past	静かだ	静かです
Past	静かだった	静かでした
Negative	静かではない	静かではないです
Negative 2		静かではありません
Negative Past	静かではなかった	静かではなかったです
Negative Past 2		静かではありませんでした

Contraction Note: では may be replaced with じゃ in the forms above.

Base Note: Since the bases for these are all from だ, it's only "な" before nouns.

Practice (1): Using a dictionary or previous lessons, translate the following.

1. The problem is what's easy. 2. The room is quiet. 3.
The old temple is not quiet.

Common 形容動詞

Modern	モダンな	Unique	ユニークな	Easy	かんたんな
Safe	安全な	Important	大切な	Pretty	きれいな
Useless	だめな	Healthy	健康な	Serious	まじめな

1. 彼はまじめな人です。
He's a serious person.
2. 彼は大切な人です。
He is an important person.
3. この部屋は ^{へや しず} 静 かではありません。
This room is not quiet.
4. ^{びょういん あんぜん} 病 院 は 安 全 です。
The hospital is safe.
5. ^{ちゅうごくご かんたん} 中 国 語 は 簡 単 じゃありません。
Chinese is not easy.

**おな
同 じ**

同じ means "same" and became a 形容動詞 but kept some 形容詞 conjugations. The negative is 同じじゃない and the past tense is 同じだった. However, its

attributive form is just 同じ. It still retains the form 同じく and 同じき, a rarer れんたいけい. It may also be pronounced as おんなじ.

6. 同じ学校に ^{かよ}通 う。

To go to the same school.

7. 同じ ^{あな}穴 のムジナ

Literally: Badgers of the same hole.

Equivalent: Birds of a feather.

8. 同じ ^{とし}年

Same age

Variant Note: This can also be seen as 同い年, with 年 being read as どし.

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. The same bug.

2. The same person.

3. The

same time.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice (1):

1. 問題が簡単（なもの）だ。 2. ヘやは静かだ。 3. 古（い）寺が静かじゃない。

Practice (2):

1. 同じ虫

2. 同じ人

3. 同じ時

第12課: The Particle を I

を, pronounced as "o" by most speakers, is used primarily to mark the direct object of a sentence. This lesson will solely be about this main primary usage, but do know that there are other usages.

The Case Particle を

を marks a **direct object** with **transitive verbs**. A direct object is *what is being acted upon*. In the sentence "I threw a *rock*", rock is the direct object. A transitive verb is a (willful) act that takes a direct object. を may mark a direct object once per clause (part of a sentence).

Particle Notes: がを X をが X. Something can't simultaneously be a subject and object. は + を makes をば, which is old-fashioned and replaced with just は. を is often casually dropped.

1. ほん^{ほん} を^う売る。

To sell a book.

2. ワードプロ^うセッサを打つ。

To type on a word processor.

3. ケーキ^たを食べる。

To eat cake.

4. いわ^なな 岩^な を投げる。△

To throw a rock.

Word Note: 岩 is the kind of rock that is large and difficult to carry. Use 石 instead.

5. ゆか は 床 を掃く。

To sweep the floor.

6. こくばん け 黒 板 を消す。

To erase a blackboard.

7. しょうり めざ 勝 利 を目指す。

To aim for victory.

8a. ゆ わ お湯を沸かす。○

8b. 水を沸かす。X

To boil water.

Word Note: The word for hot water, お湯, should be used instead of 水 because boiling water is hot.

9. かね み お 金 を見つけた。

I found money.

10a. 日本語を分かる。 X

10b. 日本語が分かる。 ○

I understand Japanese.

Grammar Note: ～を分かる is starting to be used rarely by the younger generation due to Western influence, and you may see it often when more stuff is added to the verb. However, traditionally, you do not use the particle を with 分かる. Instead you must use が to mark what would be the direct object in English. The reason behind this has to deal with [transitivity](#), which we'll cover later on.

11. じかん {が ○・を X} 要る。

Time is needed/(I/we) need time.

12. テレビを^み見る。

To watch TV.

13. 本を^よ読む。

To read a book.

14. コーヒーを^の飲む。

To drink coffee.

15. 漢字を^{べんきょう}勉強する。

To study Kanji.

Practice: Translation the following.

1. To throw a stone. 2. To sing a song. 3. To drink wine.

Questions:

1. What is a direct object?

2. What is wrong about ^{いわ な}岩 が投げる?

3. What is wrong about ^{いぬ か}犬 がを飼う?

4. The verb to wait, 待つ, is transitive in Japanese. So, how do you say, "I'll wait for you".

5. Why does を normally not have a translation?

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice

1. 石を投げる。
2. 歌を歌う。
3. ワインを^の飲む。

第13課: Regular Verbs I: 一段 (いちだん) Verbs

Japanese verbs are very **regular**. So, irregular forms are very rare. However, things that would be separate words in English often attach to verbs. So, "I did not go" would be realized as one phrase in Japanese. Additionally, Japanese takes politeness into account for conjugation. Conjugation for verbs is just like it is for adjectives and the copula. So, you don't have to learn new base terminology. The bases look different, but their functions are all the same.

This lesson is about る verbs (一段 verbs), which constitute half of all verbs. Before we look at what the bases are and how to conjugate with them, get acquainted with the following terms.

Verb	An action or state of being.
Base	Forms of the verb which take particular endings. What they are is determined by class.
Auxiliary	A dependent ending . <i>They have bases like adjectives, verbs, or unique looking bases.</i>
Ending	A blanket term for stuff that attaches to things and could be a mix of a lot of things.

In Japanese, auxiliaries/endings attach after something. They are never attached before something. Also, bases are nothing to be scared or confused about. There are only six in Japanese, and only four of them will be relevant for quite some time. These terms help us see that instead of there being tons of conjugations, there are very few kinds of conjugations. 6 processes is a lot better than thinking there is a separate one for each and every ending.

Conjugation

The Bases

Almost all conjugations can be made in Japanese with just four of the six bases that exist. For る verbs, there are two classes that differ only in the (initial) vowel in the bases. ^{かみいちだん}上 一 段 verb **stems** end in い, and ^{しもいちだん}下 一 段 verb stems end in え. かみ (upper) and しも (lower) refer to い coming before え in the ^{ごじゅうおんず}五十音図, which is the chart of the "50 sounds of かな.

Base	Class 上	Class 下	Usage
みぜんけい 未然形	い-	え-	Negative endings are attached to this.
れんようけい 連用形	い-	え-	Most conjugations are added to this.
しゅうしけい 終止形	いる	える	The basic form of a verb.
れんたいけい 連体形	いる	える	The participial/attributive base; it's identical to the 終止形.

What the bases do is not that hard to manage, but understanding how the names tie back to their usages will make things clearer.

Let's start with the **未然形**. The first character, 未, which is always read as み in compounds, is used here as a prefix to mean "un-". 然 has meanings related to being "as such" and is read as ぜん here. Put together, 未然 means that something has not become so. This is why negative endings attach to it. Negative statements express things that have not or won't come to be. 形, read as けい, in all of these words means "form".

Next is the **連用形**. 連, which is read as れん, gives a sense of "connecting" and "going along". 用, which is read as よう, means "usage". Together, 連用 refers to "continuous use". Most endings attach to this form because most endings

have something to deal with a process being/about to be carried out or has already taken place.

The **終止形** is perhaps the easiest base as it is the basic form of a verb. 終 means "finish" and is read as しゅう in this word. 止 means "end/stop" and is read as し in this word. Together, 終止 means "stop/termination". Most importantly, it notes the stop of a sentence or clause. Because of this, any conjugated form at the very end of a phrase is in this form.

The only character in **連体形** not explained is 体, read as たい in this word, which not only means "body" but also "appearance/condition". So, when you use it without some word, you are expanding upon the details surrounding the thing in question. Luckily, in appearance, it looks the same as the 終止形 for verbs.

Basic Verbs

The following verbs below constitute a handful of the most frequently used verbs in Japanese, not just in their verb classes. After this we will learn how to conjugate them into their basic forms.

To eat	た 食べる	To seek	もと 求め る	To change	か 変え る	To begin (trans.)	はじ 始め る
To sleep	ね 寝る	To for- get	わす 忘れ る	To live	い 生き る	To go out	で 出る
To teach	おし 教え る	To help	たす 助け る	To close	と 閉じ る	To finish (trans.)	お 終える

Grammar Note: Trans. stands for transitive verbs, which are verbs that have a direct object (thing being acted upon).

Basic Conjugations

The two tenses are non-past and past. The plain non-past tense form is just the 終止形. Negativity and politeness are expressed slightly differently for verbs than with adjectives. So, be careful.

Form	Ending	Base	Example Verb: 生きる
Plain Past	～た	連用形	生きた
Plain Negative	～ない	未然形	生きない
Plain Negative Past	～なかった	未然形	生きなかった
Polite Non-Past	～ます	連用形	生きます
Polite Past	～ました	連用形	生きました
Polite Negative	～ません	連用形	生きません
Polite Negative Past	～ませんでした	連用形	生きませんでした

Grammar Notes:

1. ～た is an auxiliary and may show confirmation as in "what was it?" and urgent command. Ex. どいた! (Move it).
2. Auxiliaries, again, have bases, which explains how to use ～ます, ～ない (adjectival), and even ～た.
3. You may also see ～ないです ～なかったです, which are less polite.
4. Dialectical and older variants will not be discussed in this lesson.

Derivation Note: ～ました is the 連用形 of ～ます + ～た. ～ません is the 未然形 of ～ます + ～ん.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. To not change jobs.
2. I do not teach Chinese. (Polite)
3. To look outside.
4. It didn't fall.
5. I'll memorize (it). (Polite)

The Original 一段 Verbs

Many 一段 verbs exist today, but excluding compound verbs, only ten have always been 一段 verbs throughout written history. There are many now because a verb class collapsed into this category. Some of these original one are not that common anymore. For instance, 干る and 鋳る aren't really used, but the rest are.

み見る	To see	いる	To be (animate); to have (living thing)
に似る	To resemble	きる	To wear
い鋳る	To cast	い射る	To shoot
もち用 いる	To use	ひき率 いる	To lead (a group)
ひ干る	To dry up	に煮る	To boil

Examples

1. わだい か
話 題 を変えませんでした。

I didn't change the topic.

2. わたし にほんご
私 は日 本 語 を教えます。

I teach Japanese.

3. そと 外 を見る。

To look outside.

4. お 降ります。

I'm getting off.

5. あのネズミを食べたネコはあそこにいる。

The cat that ate that mouse is over there.

Base Note: 食べた is in the れんたいけい because the verb phrase is modifying the noun ネコ.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice (1)

1. 仕事()を変()えない。

2. 私()は中国語()を教()えません。

3. 外()を見()る。

4. 落()ちなかった。

5. 覚()えます。

第14課: Regular Verbs II: 五段 Verbs

う verbs, which are more correctly known as ^{ごだん}五段 verbs (^{ごだんかつよう}五段活用 ^{どうし}動詞 godan conjugating verbs), are harder than 一段 verbs. Unlike 一段 verbs, the roots (not in reference to the bases) end in consonants. This is the larger and original verb class of Japanese.

五段 Verbs

The Bases

The bases are made by adding vowels to the final consonant of the root. The class is called 五段 because all of the vowels can be seen making the bases of these verbs. Combined with "u", which makes the しゅうしけい・れんたいけい, these verbs end in either **う, く, す, つ, ぬ, む, る, ぐ, or ぶ**. These endings form five sub-categories based on sound changes when used with ～た (past tense).

Group	Fi- nal Sound	未然 形	連用 形	終止 形	連体 形	已然 形	命令 形	Example Verb
1	う	わ-	い-	う	う	え-	え	買う (to buy)
1	つ	た-	ち-	つ	つ	て-	て	待つ (to wait)
1	る	ら-	り-	る	る	れ-	れ	走る (to run)
2	く	か-	き-	く	く	け-	け	動く (to move)
3	ぐ	が-	ぎ-	ぐ	ぐ	げ-	げ	急ぐ (to hurry)
4	す	さ-	し-	す	す	せ-	せ	壊す (to break/de- stroy)
5	ぬ	な-	に-	ぬ	ぬ	ね-	ね	死ぬ (to die)
5	ぶ	ば-	び-	ぶ	ぶ	べ-	べ	選ぶ (to choose)

5	む	ま-	み-	む	む	め-	め	飲む (to drink)
---	---	----	----	---	---	----	---	---------------

Base Notes:

1. The vowel お will appear in conjugation for these verbs later on.
2. A **w** actually ends the stems of verbs that end in う. It only remains spoken in the みぜんけい.
3. Don't use a polite ending in the れんたいけい. Though we will see instances of this rule being violated, it is not supposed to occur. So, something like "Verb + ます + Noun" would be bad.

Verb Note: The only verb in Standard Japanese that ends in め is 死ぬ^し "to die".

Conjugating 五段 Verbs

All endings up to this point apply to 五段 verbs. However, the plain past tense is more complicated because of sound changes. First, though, look at the following forms with the verb 話す (to speak).

Form	Ending	Base	Example
Plain Past	～た	れんようけい	話した
Plain Negative	～ない	みぜんけい	話さない
Plain Negative Past	～なかった	みぜんけい	話さなかった
Polite Non-Past	～ます	れんようけい	話します
Polite Past	～ました	れんようけい	話しました
Polite Negative	～ません	れんようけい	話しません
Polite Negative Past	～ませんでした	れんようけい	話ませんでした

Base Note: Endings have their own bases. For instance, ～ます uses its みぜんけい, ませ-, with ～ん. The polite negative past irregularly adds でした.

Practice (1): With the aid of a dictionary and or past lessons, translate the following.

1. I buy. (Polite)
2. You die. (Plain)
3. I broke the watch. (Plain)
4. He didn't talk. (Polite)
5. To not run. (Plain)

れんようけい Changes with ～た

When the り in the original form ～たり dropped, ～た was born. For verbs with a k and g at the end of the root, the consonant dropped. For g, though, the voicing shifted onto ～た. Thus, you get およいだ from およぎた. For the other verbs, i dropped out from the 連用形, and further changes occurred. Whether all this internal change happened before り dropped or not is not important.

So, consider 買った. As the original form shows, there was a consonant as implied by ひ. If the consonant was "t", "f", or "r", this changed to a small っ. For those whose roots end in "n", "m", or "b", た voices to だ.

Verb	Original Form → Modern Form	Change Description
聞く	聞きたり → 聞いた	Medial k in 連用形 dropped
急ぐ	急ぎたり → 急いだ	Medial g in 連用形 dropped and ～た became voiced ～だ
買う	買ひたり → 買った	ひ (fi sound at time) contracted to っ

待つ	待ちたり → 待った	ち contracted to っ
売る	売りたり → 売った	り contracted to っ
死ぬ	死にたり → 死んだ	に contracted to ん and ~た became voiced ~だ
呼ぶ	呼びたり → 呼んだ	び contracted to ん and ~た became voiced ~だ
読む	読みたり → 読んだ	み contracted to ん and ~た became voiced ~だ

Exception Note: Using ~た after う is common for 問う (to ask), 乞う (to beg), おお 覆う (to cover), お 負う (to bear), etc. Many speakers don't do this for even these verbs, but examples pervade literature. This exceptional pattern comes from Kansai Dialects.

Common 五段 Verbs

Below are even more common verbs to add to your vocabulary. Try to conjugate them into the different forms introduced thus far. You will need to have remembered the sound changes for ~た above for those that don't end in す. So, be careful.

To fight	戦う	To kill	殺す	To win	勝つ	To chat	しゃべる
To sit	座る	To connect	繋ぐ	To say	言う	To steal	盗む
To hear	聞く	To call	呼ぶ	To run	走る	To go	行く
To sell	売る	To take	取る	To talk/speak	話す	To think	思う

To shine; glisten	光る	To savor	味わ う	To enshrine	祭る	To oc- cur	起こる
----------------------	----	----------	---------	-------------	----	---------------	-----

Word Note: 言う is pronounced as ゆう even though its reading is いう. For many speakers, its past tense becomes ゆった instead of いった, though it is never spelled this way.

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. He read the newspaper. (Plain)
2. I sold the fish. (Polite)
3. The man died. (Plain)
4. I bought a car. (Polite)
5. He didn't take it. (Plain)

Slight Irregularities

1. The past tense form of 行く is 行った. いく may also poetically be ゆく. ゆいた is old-fashioned.
2. The negative of ある is ない.
 1. そんなことはない。
There isn't such thing (event).
 2. 僕は学校に行った。(Guy speech)
I went to school.

Conjugation Review

So, we've seen a lot of interesting things about this verb class. Now, it's time to go over the conjugations for this class one last time with the following verbs.

Plain Non-Past	歌う (to sing)	知る (to know)	立つ (to stand)	泳ぐ (to swim)	死ぬ (to die)
Polite Non-Past	歌います	知ります	立ちます	泳ぎます	死にます
Plain Past	歌った	知った	立った	泳いだ	死んだ
Polite Past	歌いました	知りました	立ちました	泳ぎました	死にました
Plain Negative	歌わない	知らない	立たない	泳がない	死なない
Polite Negative	歌いません	知りません	立ちません	泳ぎません	死にません
Plain Neg. Past	歌わなかった	知らなかった	立たなかった	泳がなかった	死ななかった
Polite Neg. Past	歌いませんでした	知りませんでした	立ちませんでした	泳ぎませんでした	死にませんでした

Examples

3. バターを^うりました。

I sold butter.

4. その^{しま}島は^{しず}んだ。

The island sank.

5. 手紙^{てがみ}をもらいました。

I received a letter.

6. 彼女は本を^よ読まなかった。

She didn't read the book.

7. 議^ぎ席^{せき}を^{あらそ}争^いいませんでした。

They didn't contest the seat.

8. 彼はそう^い言いました。

He said so.

Word Note: "To say" in Japanese can only refer to what people say. Personified objects can be used with ^いいう, but for other situations you have to use other phrases.

9. くすり^の薬^を飲む。

To take medicine.

Translation Note: 飲む may mean "to drink", "to have (a drink)", "to take (medicine)", "to swallow (pill, etc.)", "to suck", or "to eat (soup)".

10. {コーヒー・水・ミルク} を飲む。

To drink [coffee/water/milk].

五段 Verbs Ending in -いる & -える

No verb stems actually end in -eru or -iru. Rather, either -ru or -u follows the root of a verb. Verbs that are homophones almost always have different conjugations and pitches.

To return	返る	To go home	帰る	To enter	入る
To cut	切る	To run	走る	To need	要る

11. まち はし
町 を 走 る。

To run through the town.

12. かれ かえ
彼 は 帰 りませんでした。

He didn't come home.

13. たす い
助 けは要らない。

I don't need help.

Practice (3): Translate the following.

1. I saw the dog. (Plain)

2. I ran. (Polite)

3. It didn't fall. (Polite)

Part II: Conjugate the following verbs in the tense in parentheses.

4. おそ
教 わる…To be taught/learn (Polite negative past)

5. ね
寝 る…To sleep (Polite past)

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. 買います

2. (あなたは) 死ぬ

3. (私は) 時計を壊した。

4. 話しませんでした。

5. 走らない。

Practice (2)

1. 彼は新聞を読んだ。
2. 私は魚を売りました。
3. 男は死んだ。
4. 私は車を買いました。
5. 彼は取らなかった。

Practice (3)

1. その犬を見た。
2. 走りました。
3. 落ちませんでした。
4. 教わりませんでした。
5. 寝ました。

第15課: The Particle か

Making questions in Japanese isn't really similar to how they're made in English. You don't have to worry about any change in word order, but you should usually expect a particle at the end of a sentence marking that it is a question. The main particle for this is か.

The Final Particle か

か with high intonation at the end of a sentence marks a question. In plain/causal speech, か can be dropped. In polite speech, it follows some sort of predicate. So, you get examples like #1 where です is obligatory before か. In plain speech, things get more complicated as you will see.

1. サラダが^す好きですか。

Do you like salad?

2. これは^{なん}何ですか。

What is this?

だか at the **end** of a sentence is ungrammatical. If you just use か, the question is typical of casual male speech. Dropping か altogether is the norm for casual speech, and when you drop it, the pitch on the final sound rises. However, か with a falling intonation responds to new information.

3. あの人^だは山田さんか。

Is that person over there Mrs. Yamada?

4. それはシャープペンシル（か）？

Is that a mechanical pencil?

5. これ、何？（Familiar; casual）

What is this?

6. ええ、来たか。

Huh, so you came?

7. ああ、そうか。

Ah, really?; I see.

Just using だ for a question is more common in male speech, but it could also be rude.

8. これは何だ？ (Casual; slightly masculine; potentially rude)

What is this?

Exception Note: One noticeable exception to だか being ungrammatical is どうだか, which is used when you don't outright call someone a liar. It is an abbreviation involving the adverbial particle か (see below), with which だか is permissible--どうだか知れたものではない (Not known for what it is). This is where the sense of disbelief comes from, implicating that it mustn't be true.

じゃないか

"Isn't it?" can be expressed in Japanese by using じゃないか and its variants.

9. 山田さんじゃないか。

Isn't he Mr. Yamada.

10. きんようび
金曜日 ではありませんか。

Isn't it Friday?

～ないか

A negative question can also be used to make a suggestion, but context matters. You don't have to use this pattern, though, to make such a suggestion. This is just a common and basic way.

11. テレビを見ませんか。

Why not watch TV?; You don't watch TV?

12. どうぶつえん
動物園に行かない (か) ?

How about going to the zoo?

13. かげん
いい加減にしないか。(Set Phrase)

Can't you give me a break?

14. もういいか。(Set phrase)

Enough already.

15. ちょっと遊びませんか。

How about having some fun?

Punctuation Note: ? is typically used to give a sense of astonishment and or when か is dropped.

Practice: Translate the following. You may choose any speech style.

1. How are you?

2. Is Tokyo pretty?

3.

Isn't it tomorrow?

4. Is it hot outside?

5. Are there three books?

More on が VS は

A lot can be said about the difference between が and は. So, let's look at more minute differences.

16. 何が ^{もんだい} 問題 ですか。

What is problematic?

は is used with a question word (interrogative) when used as a **predicate**. So, は will come first. You cannot attach は to a question word in a question statement. Why? Its purpose is not to seek new information. That's が's role. So, when you phrase with "something + は + question word ?", you're emphasizing what you want known, not putting focus on the question word.

17. 問題は ^{なん} 何 ですか。 (Polite)

What is the problem?

Literally: The problem is what?

18. お名 ^{なまえ} 前 は(何ですか) ?

Your name is (what)?

Questions:

1. Which is wrong? 誰は本を読む? or 誰が本を読む?

2. What is the difference between 犬は歩く and 犬が歩く?

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice: No speech style was required, but the following answers will be in polite speech.

1. お元 ^{げんき} 気 ですか。

2. 東京はきれいですか。

3. ^{あした}明日じゃないですか。

4. ^{そと}外 ^{あつ}は 暑 いですか。

5. (^{ほん}本 ^が) ^{さんさつ}三 冊 ありますか。

Questions:

1. 誰は本をよむ？ X

2. 犬は歩く = dogs walk. It's a general statement. 犬が歩く = The dog(s) walk. This is not a known fact when said.

第16課: The Particle も

Although this won't be the last time that you learn about the particle も, this lesson will introduce you to its most important usages.

The Adverbial Particle も

も means "also/too". も isn't used with が or は. をも is old-fashioned, so just use も. However, you will see をも in slightly old-fashioned literature, documents, set phrases, and what not. Again, similar to は, it emphasizes lack in negative sentences. も often just softens the tone.

1. (お) ^{てんき}天気もいいですね。

The weather's good, too.

2. 私 ^{なかす}もお腹が空いた。(Idiomatic)

I'm hungry too.

3. 一センチ ^{うご}も動かない。

To not move even a centimeter.

4. 東京も京都も雨だ。

There's rain in Tokyo and in Kyoto.

5. ^{せいこう}成 功 も ^{だいせいこう}成功、大 成 功 だ。

What a success, it was a great success.

6. あのコンピューターは5万円もかからない。

That computer doesn't even cost 50,000 yen.

Wording Note: This explicitly states cost (purchasing, repair, etc.). あのコンピューターは五万円もしない doesn't.

7. なんさつ
何冊 もあります。

I have many books.

Grammar Note: なん
何 + counter + も = many. 何十 + counter + も = tens
(~dozens).

8. ごじかん ま
五時間も待った。

I waited at least/about five hours.

Particle Note: も here implies perhaps a much longer wait. も emphasizes the amount.

Practice: Translate the following in polite speech.

1. I am a student. He is also a student.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. 私()は学生()です。彼()も学生()です。

第17課: The Irregular Verbs する & 来る

する (to do) and 来る (to come) are irregular because their bases for conjugation are irregular.

する To Do

する means "to do" and makes other nouns into verbs. It has three みぜんけい, but you will only learn about the one used with ～ない in this lesson. The endings for conjugation aren't different.

みぜんけい	Plain	れんようけい	Polite	しゅうしけい・れんたいけい
い	Neg.	い		い
し-	しない	し-	します (Non-past) しました (Past) しません (Neg.)	する・する

The Most Important Usages of する

する may either be transitive or intransitive depending on the usage. Because these terms are so important, here is a quick definition for them.

Transitive Verb (他): An action that is imposed on something or someone else. Look for を.

Intransitive Verb (自): An action that has no direct object. Look for が.

Grammar Note: を with intransitive verbs means "through". Remember that objects can be dropped!

- To do X.....他

- Shows phenomenon (related to the senses). Ex.においがする = "to smell".....自
- Shows a condition. Ex. ^{みおと}見劣りがする = To not be as good as..... 自
- To cost (price).....自
- To last (time).....自
- To be X (role). Ex. ^{きょうし}教師をする = To be a teacher.....他
- To wear X (rings, gloves, ties, etc.).....他

Examples

1. 強いにおいがしました。

I smelled a strong odor.

2. ^{かな}悲しい^{きもち}気持ちがする。

To have sad feelings.

3. ^{こんやでんわ}今夜電話しますね。

I'll call you tonight.

4a. ^{にほんご}日本語の^{べんきょう}勉強をする。

4b. 日本語を勉強する。

To study Japanese.

Sentence Note: 4a focuses on studying while 4b focuses on what's being studied.

5. ^{いき}息をする。

To breathe.

6. ゆびわ 指輪をする。

To wear a ring.

7. {まるい・しかく 四角い} かたち 形をした建物

A [round/square] shaped building

8. はやお 早起する。

To wake up early.

9. そのゲームはいくらした？

How much was that game?

To play

To "play/do games/sports/activities" you use the verb 遊ぶ rather than する ^{あそぶ}.

生け花をする	To make flower designs	フットボールをする	To play football
バスケットボールをする	To play basketball	野球をする	To play baseball
サッカーをする	To play soccer	ビデオゲームをする	To play video games

Word Note: The verb やる can be used to mean "to play" too, and it's a little more casual.

10. スポーツは何を {しました・やりました} か。

What sport did you play?

11. パチンコをする。

To play Japanese pinball.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. To wear a necktie.
2. To study Korean.
3. The video game cost 5000 yen.

来る To Come

The bases for 来る as follows. It is like a stem changing verb in European languages. Unlike する, its bases are not problematic at all. It also helps that the meaning of the verb itself is straightforward.

みぜんけい	れんようけい	しゅうしけい	れんたいけい
こ-	き-	くる	くる

12. ちゅうもん 注文した CD が来た。

The CD I ordered came.

13. たいふう 台風が来なかった。

A typhoon didn't arrive.

14. く ひ 来る日も来る日も

Day after day

15. ついに春が来た。

Spring has finally arrived!

16. でんしゃ 電車来ないよ。(Casual)

The train won't come!

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. He didn't come today. (Polite)
2. The teacher has come. (Polite)
3. Night after night

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. ネクタイをする。 2. 韓国語かんこくごの勉強をする; 韓国語を勉強する。
3. ビデオゲームは5000円()した。

Practice (2)

1. 彼は、今日（は）来ませんでした。 2. 先生が来ました。 3. 来る夜よも来る夜も

第18課: こそあど I: Basic Expressions

こ そあど are words that equate to things like "this" and "that". These words are called demonstratives because they show spatial information to direct the listener to what is being referred to. In Japanese, these words have nominal forms you can use like any other noun. To use them in the sense of "this book", you have to use separate attribute forms involving the particle の. The attribute forms are very similar to how articles work.

The name こそあど comes from the fact that the categories begin with こ, そ, あ, and ど. As a beginner, these words are crucial to you. So, now, you have no choice in learning them.

こ stands for things close to the speaker.
そ stands for things close to the listener.
あ stands for things away from the speaker and listener.
ど stands for things of question.

Curriculum Note: A か group will also be discussed.

Basic こそあど

The fundamental こそあど represent this, that, that over there, and which. The nominal forms *may* be made plural with ～ら. Notice that the attributive forms are made with の. However, it is not the case that you drop れ to add の. れ is actually another ending. This means that you can get ～れの phrases. We'll see later how they differ!

NOMI-NAL		例	ATTRIB-UTE		例
これ	This	これはペンです。	この	This	このペン

それ	That	それはペンです。	その	That	そのペン
あれ	That over there	あれはペンです。	あの	That over there	あのペン
どれ	Which?	どれがペンですか。	どの	Which...?	どのペンですか。
かれ	He*	かれはジェームズです。	かの	That	かの作家 (Author)

Usage Notes:

1. それ and あれ both mean "that". When the object isn't present, それ shows that only one party is familiar with it and あれ shows that both are.
2. かの often refers to "that" which isn't familiar to the speaker or listener.
3. かれ isn't used to mean "that over there", but the meaning "he" came about from this original meaning.
4. どれ and どの may be replaced by いずれ and いずれの respectively. See how we get ~れの? If we look at point 3 again, we see that かれの (his) exists as well as かの. They don't mean the same thing, of course, but they both exist. So, start thinking about how これの and the like would be used.
5. それは can be used to refer to what was just stated. For example, someone might tell you that they just got a new job. You would say それはおめでとうございます.

Examples

1. これは英和辞典です。
えいわじてん

This is an English-Japanese dictionary.

2. かつてこの辺りは静かなところでした。
あた しず

This neighborhood was once a quiet place.

3. それは要りません。
い

I don't need that/that's not necessary.

Word Note: This いる is from the verb 要る, which is a 五段 verb and shows the necessity of things.

4. あれはカフeteriaです。

That over there is a cafeteria.

5. あの病院のサービスは素晴らしいです。
びょういん すば

That hospital's services are wonderful.

6. この列車は次の駅には停まりません。
れっしゃ つぎ えき と

This train does not stop at the next station.

7. 「あれは何ですか」 「鯉幟です」
こいのぼり

“What is that?” “It's a koinobori”.

Culture Note: A 鯉幟 is a giant paper carp flown on top of poles next to houses that are celebrating Children's Day on May 5th with male children.

Grammar Note: There are times when これの and the like are acceptable. これ would be treated as a noun phrase no different than 犬. For instance, これのどこが違ふ? is acceptable and would actually sound weird with この. This example

translates to "where in this is wrong?". In case you're wondering, どこ is anotherこそあど word that we'll get to soon!

Contraction Note: You may see これは, それは, and あれは respectively contracted to こりゃ (あ) , そりゃ (あ) , and ありゃ (あ) in rougher/casual/dialectal speech. In some dialects, they are contracted further to こら, そら, and あら respectively.

8. こらおもろいわ。(Dialectical)

This is funny/interesting!

9. そりゃ変だよ。

That's weird/strange.

こそあど for Place

こ そあど that show location and direction include words such as here, there, over there, and where. These words also have other important usages.

Here	There	Over There	Where?
ここ	そこ	あそこ	どこ

To use these as attribute phrases like in "the school here", you just add の. These words may also be used in a less physical sense of place.

10. 銀行はどこですか。

Where is the bank?

11. トイレはここにあります。

The toilet is here.

12. あそこに動物園があります。

There is a zoo over there.

13. そこに小学校があります。

There is an elementary school.

The next set of *こそあど* to look at are polite forms of above. Unlike the above phrases, though, they have more usages. This series has an identical colloquial equivalent.

Formal	こちら	そちら	あちら	どちら
Colloquial	こっち	そっち	あっち	どっち

Aside from showing direction, they may also refer to person. *こ* stands for first person, *そ* stands for second person, and *あ* stands for third person. *どちら* is seen as *どちらさま* when used to ask "who". This series of words may also be polite forms of *これ*, *それ*, *あれ*, and *どれ* respectively. *どちら* is used usually to mean "which" out of two things, though 2+ may be implied in certain contexts. This is not the same as *どれ* which requires the "which" to be several. If *どちら* is used 90% of the time in just contexts of 2, *どっち* is 100% of the time.

Examples

14. どうぞこちらへ。

Come this way, please.

15. こちらはきのう、ひどい雨でした。

It rained heavily here yesterday.

16. こちらはジョーンズ^{ふじん}夫人です。

This is Mrs. Jones.

17. ^{しゃちょう}社長はあちらです。

That person over there is the company president.

18. どちらの日でもけっこうです。

Either day is OK.

19. ^{せかい}世 界^をあちこち ^{りょこう}旅 行^{して} ^{まわ}回 った。

I traveled around the world.

20. どっち、どっち？

Which, which?/Where is it, where is it?

21. どっちの本が ^{ぼく}僕 のですか。

Which book is mine?

Table of Contents

第19課: Basic Daily Expressions

The material in this lesson is very sensitive to speech level. As there is so much that can be said about any given topic, we will see later how speech style affects such phrases.

Greetings and Salutations

Polite greetings are important to daily life in Japan. おはようございます is "good morning", and many people who don't speak Japanese know about 今日は (good afternoon) and 今晩は (good evening). These two came about from people greeting each other with comments about the weather. As you may already know, 今日は can also be used when there is no exact sense of time of day.

Good night is お休みなさい. It can not only be used when parting with someone at night, but it is also used towards those who have passed away. The more honorific お休みなさいませ, though, cannot be used in the latter way.

Farewell/See you later

Japanese has lots of farewell phrases. First, "see you tomorrow" can simply be また明日 (ね). You may just want to say じゃ (あ)、あとで (see you later). またいずれ means "see you sometime". In casual daily life, じゃあね, じゃあな (masculine), またね, and またな (masculine) are very common. バイバイ is also common among young people.

As you can imagine, these don't fly in truly polite and formal situations. (それでは、) 失礼します is a great way to politely leave and give adequate respect to the addressee. When in a hurry, どうも may also suffice. それでは (また) is also common, but it is used more by men.

さよ (う) なら doesn't simply mean "goodbye". Your teacher may say it to you, but you shouldn't use it towards your teacher. It often has the meaning that

you won't see the person, especially when you are equals. This is because the pattern is not really polite.

Introducing Oneself

A common ^{じこしょうかい}自己紹介 (self-introduction) has the following.

1. 自己紹介させていただきます = Allow me to introduce myself.
2. ^{はじめ}初めまして = Nice to meet you
3. A greeting based on the time of day
Good morning: おはようございます Good afternoon: こんにちは Good evening: こんばんは
4. Name/age.
5. 出身 Ex. 東京の出身です。
6. Occupation/education status Ex. 学部の一年生です。 (I'm a first year undergraduate student).
7. 終わりの^{ことば}言葉 (Ending phrase)
8. (どうぞ) よろしく (お^{ねが}願い[します・いたします])

Word Note: よろしく alone is casual. お願い {します・いたします} is like "keep me in mind".

Culture Note: If you meet someone again in the same day, you may simply bow respectfully (^{えしゃく}会釈). When meeting someone during the day, it is also common to say things like いいお天気ですね.

^{たかぎ}高木 :

はじめまして、おはようございます。

私 (^{なまえ}の名前は) 高木です。/私は・・・大学の#年生で、高木と申します。

どうぞよろしくお願いします。

ふじわら
藤原：

はじめまして、おはようございます。

私（の名前は）藤原です。/私は・・・大学の#年生で、藤原と申します。

こちらこそどうぞよろしくお願いします。

Definition Note: こちらこそ = Likewise. .

おげんきですか & ひさしぶりですね

Whenever we meet someone, we often ask, "How are you?". In Japanese, you ask お元気ですか. Other phrases exist, but this is the most fundamental one. The response to this could be 元気です or だいじょうぶです respectively. だいじょうぶですか = Are you all right?

The default way to say "long time no see" is （お）^{ひさ}久しぶりです（ね）. You can also say しばらくでした (it's been a while). When you feel like it's your fault for having not seen someone, you can say ^{ぶさた}ご無沙汰しました.

Yes and No

	Very Polite	Polite	Plain	Casual
Yes	はあ	はい	ええ	うん
No		いいえ	いえ・いや	ううん

Usage Note: Yes is often used to show that you're listening, not agreeing. Also, for example, when you ask, "So I can't go the party", a response verifying this would be, “Yes, you can't go”.

1. はい、そうです。

Yes, that is so.

2. ううん、そうじゃない。

No, that's not it.

3. いいえ、^{たい}大したことではありません。

No, it's not a big deal at all.

4. いや、^{もんだい}問題じゃないよ。

No, it's not a problem at all.

Thank You and You're Welcome

Respectful	Thank you very much	どうもありがとうございます
Polite	Thank you	ありがとうございます
Plain	Thank you	ありがとう
Plain	Thanks	ありがと

When in a rush, どうも suffices. You're welcome is simply どういたしまして. Thank you very much is often "^{まいどおお}毎度大きに" in many regions of Japan.

Pardon

There are plenty of ways to apologize in Japanese. After all, it has such a complex honorific system. Perhaps the most polite way to apologize would be 大変申し訳ございません. When you are apologizing to a customer, ^{まこと もう わけ}誠に申し訳
ございません would be perfect.

From there, 申し訳ありません is still very polite. すみません is not as polite, but it is extremely common. すみませんでした is not used as much as it is treating

the situation as a past event. To colleagues and what not, ごめんなさい is also appropriate. This gets contracted to ごめん in casual speech.

5. ^{ほんとう}本 当 にごめんなさい。

I'm really sorry.

6. ^{ちこく}遅 刻 してすみません。

I'm sorry for being late.

Entering

Saying ^{しつれい}失 礼 {します・いたします} when you enter or leave a place is very polite. When you enter the 玄関 (entryway), you may say ^{じゃま}お 邪 魔 します. If you are not greeted by someone, you should say ごめんください.

The most polite phrase that you could be greeted with is ようこそ {お越し・おいで} くださいました. It's very common to hear よくいらっしゃいました. The casual form of this is よく来たね and is somewhat masculine.

い らっしゃいませ may also be heard, but it is also widely used by merchants welcoming customers. A more casual form of this is いらっしゃい. While you are coming in the door, the owner of the residence may continue to invite you in with どうぞどうぞ. A more casual form of this is さあどうぞ.

Arriving and Leaving the Home

Towards a superior when going home, you may say お先に失礼 {します・いたします} . お先にします is a broken down variant. The response will be on the lines of お {疲れ・ご苦労} さま. If you say something like では、これで (終わります), the nuance that you're leaving before others go away.

When entering a home, say いただきます. To be more polite, you may add 帰りました or 戻りました. It is a cultural norm for those at home to respond with お帰り(なさい). When you leave the home, say 行ってきます. Casually, you can say 行ってくる (よ) and 出かけるよ. If you say something like じゃ行くよ, you may sound like you're going on some sort of trip. Saying something like 行くからね (because I'm going), you imply that you want the listener to watch your place. As someone responding to someone leaving, it is standard to say 行ってらっしゃい (ませ)

Receiving Food

When you are given food or when you are about to partake in a meal, say いただきます. Once you are finished with your meal, say ごちそうさまでした to thank the person that gave the meal. The phrase may be manipulated as usual for more casual settings.

Congratulations

Congratulations is おめでとう (ございます) and can be seen in other congratulatory expressions.

たんじょうび
7. 誕生日 おめでとうございます。

Happy birthday!

あ
8. 明けましておめでとうございます。

Happy New Year's.

第20課: The Particle て

て will be the first major conjunctive particle that you will need to know in Japanese. Conjunctive particles correspond to words like "and" and "but" within sentences in English. So, as you will soon see, you cannot use て for the *and* as in "And, I saw him" or "dogs *and* cats do this".

A resulting phrase with て is said to be in the て^{けい}形. This is sadly not the easiest thing in Japanese, and there are many grammatical patterns that utilize it. So, you will continue to learn more about it in future lessons.

The Conjunctive Particle て

て attaches to the れんようけい of verbs and adjectives. The changes with ～た apply. There are no differences.

一段	食 ^て	五段	聞 ^て	する	し ^て	来る	来 ^て
行く	行 ^て	形容詞	赤 ^{くて}	形容動詞	簡単 ^で	だ	で

Usage Notes:

1. て may be で due to contraction rules for ^{ごだん}五段 verbs that end in certain sounds.

泳ぐ (To swim) → 泳 ^い で	読む (To read) → 読 ^ん で	^{さけ} 叫ぶ (To shout) → 叫 ^ん で
------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---

2. The て形 of だ is the contraction of に + て.

3. くて is not what connects adjectives. Only て is the ending. The < is part of the れんようけい for adjectives.

4. There is a select amount of verbs that て may simply follow the 終止形 such as 負う, 問う, etc. However, this is usually only seen in writing. It is not typically reflected in the speech of Tokyo speakers.

5. The copula is used in its て form to list things with "to be". So, this applies to けいようどうし as well. You don't use the particle と for this.

て **connects two or more phrases**. て can also implicitly indicate reason. However, the action in the latter part(s) can't contain volition. Things that may be seen when indicating a reason include feelings, states, and the past. When using reason to express volition (one's will, a request, etc.), you must use other things such as the particle から.

1. ニュースを聞いて、びっくりした。

I was surprised to hear the news.

2. この日本語の文章は複雑で、よく分かりませんでした。

The Japanese was complicated, so I didn't understand it well.

て can **list actions or qualities**, and **indicate a method for action** (like putting sugar in tea and drinking it).

3. そのリンゴは赤くて、大きいです。

The apple is red and big.

4. 日本語は ^{かんたん}簡単で、^{すば}素晴らしいです。

Japanese is easy and awesome.

5. 川田さんの ^{いえ}家は新しくて、^{きれい}綺麗ですね。

Mrs. Kawada's house is new and pretty, isn't it?

6. 東京は賑^{にぎ}やかで面白^{おもしろ}い。

Tokyo is lively and interesting.

7. このクラスは宿^{しゅくだい}題^{しけん}が多くて、試験も難しかったです。

The class had a lot of homework, and the exams were difficult..

8. 彼は彼女の家に寄^よって、手紙を届^{とど}けた。

He stopped by her house and delivered a letter.

9. あの人は優^{やさ}しくて頭がいいです。

That person is kind and smart.

10. 立ち止^どまって^{あた}辺^{みまわ}りを見^{みまわ}回^{まわ}す。

To stop and look around.

Verb Deletion

What if you are just repeating the same verb over and over again? You can delete all but the last, and you can even delete the particle that goes with it except in the last clause.

11a. ランスはフランスへ行^{ちゅうごく}って、セスは日本へ行^{ちゅうごく}って、アンドリューは中^{ちゅうごく}国^{こく}へ行^{ちゅうごく}きました。

11b. ランスはフランスへ、セスは日本へ、アンドリューは中国へ行きました。

11c. ランスはフランス、セスは日本、アンドリューは中国へ行きました。

Lance went to France, Seth went to Japan, and Andrew went to China.

There are two possible negative ～て forms: ～ないで and ～なくて. ～ないで comes from ～なくて, and it means "without" as in without doing something. ～ないで may infer that you didn't do something expected of you. If you go to the vet "without your dog", that will be a big waste of time. ～なくて can mean "without" but refers to state--"being without".

12. 辞書^{じしょ}を {使^てわないで・引^かかないで}、手紙^{てがみ}を書いた。

I wrote a letter without using a dictionary.

13. 友^{とも}だちが来^こなくて、困^{こま}りました。

My friend didn't come, and I was upset.

14. 寝^ねないで待つ。

Wait without sleeping.

15. 今日は電^{でん}車^{しゃ}に^の乗^のらないで、歩いてきました。

I came by walking instead of riding the train today.

More Examples

16. 私は昼^{ひる}ご飯^{はん}を食^くべて、テレビを^{おん}見^{がく}て、音^{おん}楽^{がく}を^{おん}聞^{がく}いて、帰^{かえ}りました。

I ate lunch, watched TV, listened to music, and came home.

17. 私は夏^{なつ}服^{ふく}を^し閉^しまって、秋^{あき}の^{ふく}服^{ふく}を出^でしました。

I put up my summer clothes and got out my fall clothes.

18. さくら^{さくら}の^ち花^{はな}が散^ちって、若^{わか}葉^はが^ば出^でました。

The cherry blossoms have scattered, and the leaves have appeared.

19. はたら つか
働いて、疲れた。

I worked and got exhausted.

Practice (1): Translate the following.

1. The street is dirty, narrow, and it smells.
2. He is not smart, short, and ugly.
3. She is beautiful, tall, and cute.
4. I went without eating.

Listing Adjectives

As mentioned before, the method of listing adjectives involves ～て, and the means of conjugation are as follows.

古い (終止形・連体形)	→	古くて	簡単な (連体形)	→	簡単に
--------------	---	-----	-----------	---	-----

The **last adjective will end normally** in the 終止形. If the adjectives are of different classes and there are only two adjectives, changing one to the 連体形 (which is in the chart) is not necessary. This is not the case for the predicate condition, and this is only really the case when a 形容詞 precedes a 形容動詞 when modifying a noun. Sometimes, though, you find that for whatever reason, two 形容詞 phrases can modify a noun without either changing. If in doubt, just list adjectives like below.

20. かぜ
風が強くて寒い日

A cold day where the wind is strong

21. やさ
山田さんはきれいで優しいです。

Ms. Yamada is pretty and nice.

22. ジェシカさんはきれいで、^{しんせつ}親切な人です。

Jessica is a pretty and kind person.

23. 美しくて静かな女

A beautiful, quiet woman

Word Note: Due to political correctness, the more formal term ^{じょせい}女性 is now more prevalent. Girl is typically 女の子. Man is 男. Male is ^{だんせい}男性. Boy is 男の子. The terms 男の人 and 女の人 can also be used as the polite forms of "man" and "woman" respectively.

24. 世界は^{すば}素晴らしくて、おもしろい。

The world is wonderful and interesting.

25. ^{かる}軽くて（かっこいい・スマート）なケータイがほしいです。

I want a light and stylish cell phone.

Word Note: The word スマート is out of fashion at the moment and may never regain its power.

26. 暑くなりましたね。

It's become hot, hasn't it?

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. The dog is cute and big.
 2. The girl is short and smart.
 3. The bird is small and red.
 4. The not smart, ugly bird is annoying.
-

～て Phrases Deemed as One Word

There are a few instances when ～て phrases result in single vocabulary items. In Ex 27., treating the verb with ～て separately is not possible. This shows how fused set-phrases work.

28a. 真^{しん}意^いを見て取る。○

28b. 真意を見ても取る。X

To grasp the real sense.

29. 選^{せん}挙^{きょ}に打^うって出^でる。

To make one's debut in an election.

30. 急^{いそ}いで取^とって返^{かえ}す。

To hurry and come back.

Grammar Note: When ～て ends a sentence, it could be like "so..." with something implied after it. Or, it could be the final particle て.

Orthography Note: For verbs like 話す and 光る, using the れんようけい in this way means keeping the おくりがな. However, when the 連用形 results in a noun, you don't use the おくりがな. Thus, you get 話 (talk; conversation) and 光 (light).

Table of Contents

Keys

Like previous lessons, you should try to use 漢字 that you've learned up to this point. You may choose whichever speech style you would like if it is not specified. If a dictionary is allowed, the answers will be written normally even if the 漢字 haven't been covered yet.

Practice (1)

1. この道は汚くて、^{せま}狭くて、^{くさ}臭い。
2. 彼は頭が悪くて、^せ背が^{ひく}低くて、^{みにく}醜い。
3. 彼女は美しくて、背が高くて、かわいい。
4. 食べないでいた; 食べないで行った。

Note: The translation was left to interpretation as in to what it meant. So, the two answers do not mean the same thing.

Practice (2)

1. この犬は大きくてかわいい。
2. この女の子は背が低くて頭がいい。
3. その鳥は小さくて、赤い。
4. その頭の悪い (、) ^{みにく}醜い鳥がうるさい

Note: #4 is the most difficult problem in this lesson. The particle の is actually used a lot in attribute verbal/adjectival phrases instead of が, but because of this, using the particle て would be wrong.

第21課: Numbers I: Sino-Japanese Numbers

Sino-Japanese numbers come from Chinese and are the most important kind of numbers in Japanese. Number(s) in Japanese is ^{かず}数. A similar word is ^{すうじ}数字. 数字 refers to units and or the characters that right out units. So, 数 doesn't always been the same thing as 数字.

Sino-Japanese Numbers

1~10

Though we are dealing with numbers that come from Chinese, some such as those in bold are actually native words treated as Sino-Japanese numbers. 4 is usually **よん** because し is homophonous with ^し死 (death). 9 is usually きゅう because < is homophonous with [<]苦 (suffering). し and < are hardly ever in big numbers. 7 is often **なな**, and you don't hear しち after the tens as an initial digit.

1	一 (いち)	2	二 (に)	3	三 (さん)	4	四 (よん ・し)	5	五 (ご)
6	六 (ろく)	7	七 (なな ・しち)	8	八 (はち)	9	九 (きゅう・く)	10	十 (じゅう)

Zero Note: Zero can be ゼロ, れい (零), or 〇 (まる). まる means "circle" and is like "o" for zero. ゼロ is written as 0 in numbers. れい is Sino-Japanese and is also common.

11~100,000

Because this system is broken up by powers of four, big numbers are easy. 11 is "ten one". 200 is "two hundred". 10,000 is the fourth power, so the unit

changes. To raise the power further, you add 十, 百, and 千 in that order. This doesn't stop where the chart stops, but it's all you need to know for now.

11	十一 (じゅういち)	12	十二 (じゅうに)	20	二十 (にじゅう)
30	三十 (さんじゅう)	100	百 (ひゃく)	300	三百 (さんびゃく)
600	六百 (ろっぴゃく)	800	八百 (はっぴゃく)	1,000	(一) 千 ((いっ) せん)
3,000	三千 (さんぜん)	4,000	四千 (よんせん)	7,000	ななせん
8,000	八千 (はっせん)	10,000	一万 (いちまん)	100,000	十万 (じゅうまん)

Number Notes:

1. いっせん really isn't ever used unless a number precedes it. So, if you want to say 11,000, you should say いちまんいっせん.
2. Due to certain phonetic rules, 300, 600, 800, 3,000, and 8,000 seem irregular.

Practice (1):

Part I: Write out the following numbers in 漢字.

1. 3,004
2. 684
3. 10,563
4. 24
5. 795
6. 18,974
7. 100,674
8. 201,345

Part II: Write out the following numbers in Arabic numerals.

1. 五百六十七
2. 四十五万六千七百八十九
3. 三十五
4. 八千九百五十九
5. 二百十
6. 四十七
7. 十万二百四十
五

Part III: Write out the following numbers in かな.

1. 四十
2. 七千六百三十八
3. 二千三百四十六
4. 三百五十三
5. 百二
6. 八百九十三

Spelling Numbers

The most common way to write numbers is using 0, 1, 2, etc. 漢字 are still used in vertical texts, set phrases, and what not but not in the realm of math. 漢字 spellings can be used like Arabic numerals, which is common in pricing and literature. Units like 万 can be in 漢字 like in 2万2千 (22,000), which is common in news reports.

Arabic Numerals	Traditional	Kanji like 0, 1, 2, 3...	Abbreviated 1, 2, 3...
203	二百三	二〇三	2 0 3
5,843	五千八百四十三	五八四三	5 8 4 3
9,630,000	九百六十三万	九六三〇〇〇〇	9 6 3 万

Practice (2): Write the following numbers in a different way.

1. 100
2. 6万7370
3. 七〇四三〇〇

Note: Add マイナス (－) to the front to make negative numbers. So, -5 would be マイナスご.

Phone Number

For phone numbers (でんわばんごう 電話番号) simply read out the numbers. One mora numbers may become two morae long. So, に → にい. 4, 7, and 9 are normally よん, なな, and きゅう respectively. For zero, you can hear ゼロ, れい, or まる. まる is especially preferred by clerks. In conversion, ゼロ is the most common. On TV, you may often hear れい especially in formal situations like NHK news announcements. の stands for a dash, but not everyone includes it. This is just like how English speakers optionally say space or dash.

「電話番号は何番ですか。」 「3056-7735です。」

"What is your phone number?" "It's 3056-7735".

You could also say XXXX 番の XXXX. 番 is the #. , 2 and 10 may be ふた and とお respectively with -番. In fact, ひゃくとおばん, #110, is the Japanese equivalent of 911. #119 is used to call firefighters, etc.

Practice (3): Write out the following made-up phone numbers in かな.

1. 977-947-4773 2. 6734-8539 3. 36-463-7574 4. 64-64-647
5. 6766-7744

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

Part I

1. 三千四 2. 六百八十四 3. 一万五百六十三 4. 二十四 5. 七百九十五
6. 一万八千九百七十四 7. 十万六百七十四 8. 二十万 (一) 千三百四十五

Part II

1. 567 2. 456,789 3. 35 4. 8,959 5. 210 6. 47 7. 100,245

Part III

1. よんじゅう 2. ななせんろっぴゃくさんじゅうはち 3. にせんさんびゃくよんじゅうろく 4. さんびゃくごじゅうさん
5. ひゃくに 6. はっぴゃくきゅうじゅうさん

Practice (2)

1. 一〇〇、百、1百 2. 六七三七〇、六万七千三百七十、67,370 3. 704,300、七十万四千三百、70万4千3百

Practice (3)

1. きゅう なな なな (の) きゅう よん なな (の) よん なな なな さん
2. ろく なな さん よん (の) はち ご さん きゅう
3. さん ろく (の) よん ろく さん (の) なな ご なな よん
4. ろく よん (の) ろく よん (の) ろく よん なな
5. ろく なな ろく ろく (の) なな なな よん よん

第22課: Numbers II: Counters & Native Numbers

Counters (じょすうし 助数詞 **count things**, but they're very hard. Only a few are frequently used, but the ones that are are very important. Some are described as generic counters, but don't ignore the rest. This lesson will introduce you to native numbers as well. Knowing which form of a number to use will be difficult.

Counters

Below are the most important counters. Understand that counters count the things they represent. So, 円 counts an amount of yen. However, rarely is the counter ever the same as the noun it stands for. For instance, 小動物 is "small animal(s)", but the counter for small animal(s) is 匹.

～円 (えん)	Yen	～課 (か)	Lessons
～階 (かい)	Floors	～個 (こ)	Small/round things
～冊 (さつ)	Books/magazines	～歳・才 (さい)	Years old (living things)
～台 (だい)	Big machines/devices	～足 (そく)	Footwear
～頭 (とう)	Large animals	～人 (にん)	Person
～本 (ほん)	Long, thin things	～杯 (はい)	Cups, squids, boats, etc.
～匹 (ひき)	Small animals	～ページ	Pages
～歩 (ほ)	(Foot)steps	～枚 (まい)	Flat/clothing items

Usage Notes

1. 4 is よ when the counter begins with n. It's also よ with 円. し is rarely used with counters.
2. < is not as common as きゅう for 9.
3. Foreign counters are seldomly used with foreign numbers. So, ワン, ツー, スリー etc.
4. ~人 has several exceptions. The options in bold are the preferable readings.

1 Person	一人、独り	ひとり	2 People	二人	ふたり
4 People	四人	よにん	7 People	七人	しちにん ・ななにん
9 People	九人	くにん・ きゅうにん	14 People	十四人	じゅうよにん
19 People	十九人	じゅうくにん ・じゅうきゅうにん	24 People	二十四人	にじゅうよにん

Variation Note: Speakers in some parts of Japan may use みたり and よ(っ)たり for 3 and 4 people respectively.

Reading Note: 万人 is read as either ばんじん or ばんにん and means "all people" whereas 一万人 is read as いちまんにん and means ten thousand people.

No Number?

Not all number-counter series are created equal. Sometimes, numbers are substituted with different characters, but the rest of the series is completely normal. Take for instance the hierarchy of siblings in Japanese. Children are not re-

ferred by first born, second born, etc (though there are words for this) in disregard of gender. So, you if you are the second born, you may still be the "oldest daughter".

	Sons	Daughters
Eldest	長男（ちょうなん）	長女（ちょうじょ）
Second	次男（じなん）	次女（じじょ）
Third	三男（さんなん）	三女（さんじょ）
Fourth	四男（よんなん）	四女（よんじょ）
Fifth	五男（ごなん）	五女（ごじょ）
#～	～男（なん）	～女（じょ）

No Counter?

Since counters specifically count certain things, the actual item(s) they are counting may be omitted from the sentence so long as that information is contextually obvious or recoverable information.

1. 「犬は何匹いますか」「5 匹いますよ」

"How many dogs are there?" "There are five of them".

When a word doesn't have a particular counter, using the word as the counter is very common, specially with words from Chinese/foreign origin.

2. 5 家族

Five families

3. 3 パーセント

Three percent

Noun or Adverb Phrase?

Counter phrases may function as nouns or adverbs depending on the sentence structures. For example, "ten dogs" = 10 匹の犬 (noun)/犬 10 匹 (adverbial).

Practice (1): What is the most reasonable counter for 1. Camels 2. Dollars
3. Textbook?

4. ペンが 3 ^{ほん} 本 あります。(Polite)

I have three pens.

5. シャツが 2 枚ある。

I have two shirts.

6. 魚が 5 匹います。(Polite)

There are five fish.

7. ^{いっそくか} 1 足 買う。

To buy one pair.

8. あなたは 15 歳ですね。(Polite)

You're 15 years old, right?

9. ^{いっとう} 1 頭 のゾウ

An elephant

Question Form

The prefix ^{なん} 何 + counter means "how many...?". Just "how many" is いくつ.

10. なんにち
何 日 かかるか。

How many days will it take?

11. 何時ですか。(Polite)

What time is it?

12a. 何歳ですか。(Polite)

12b. とし
年 はいくつですか。(Polite)

How old are you?

Reading Note:

何+千+本 = なんぜんぼ ん	何+百+本 = なんびゃく ほん	何+万+本 = なんまん ぼん
--------------------	---------------------	--------------------

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. How many people?

2. How many books?

3. How many cows?

4. How many pens?

5. How many sheets?

Sound Changes in Counters

These rules explain the sound changes in counter phrases including big numbers. These rules usually only affect Sino-Japanese counters.

	Rules	Examples
1	いち → いつ before k, s, sh, t, ch, h, and f. H & f → P	いつかい; いつぶん
3	H → B/P and F → P	さんぼん; さんぱい; さんぷん
4	*H → P	よんぶん

6	ろく → ろっ before k, h, and f. H & f → p.	ろっかい; ろっぶん (6 min.)
8	Same as 1. はち → はっ.	はっさい; はっぶん (8 min.)
10	Same as 1. じゅう → じゅっ.	じゅっかい; じゅっさい; じゅっぽ
100	Same as 6. ひゃく → ひゃっ.	ひゃっかい; ひゃっぴき
1000	Same as 3	せんぼん; せんぱい; せんぷ ん
万	Same as 3.	いちまんぼん; いちまんぶん
何	Same as 3.	なんぼん; なんぱい; なんぷ ん

*: H → p is wrong most of the time. よんぴき X よんぼん X よんぴゃく X

**: Originally, h → b only existed. Today, there is confusion on when to use

which. H → b is used with 本, 匹, 杯 when used with 3 and なん 何. Despite this, h → p can be seen with a few counters like 杯. .

Preference Note: じゅっ is prevalent and じっ is old-fashioned. You'll often hear no contractions with 8. All of these rules are often ignored by the elderly. Exceptions to these exceptions exist. For example, ～ 服 (doses) is usually only irregular with 1. Then again, each counter has its quirks. 何服 isn't even really used.

Practice (3): Translate the following. Write counter phrases in ひらがな.

1. Three dogs

2. 20 yen

3. 100 machines

4. 100 cows

5. 1,000 pens

6. Seven cupfuls

Counters with Native Numbers

Native numbers are hardly ever used past 10. After 10 any instance is limited to set expressions. The **native counter** -**つ** is seen with 1~9 and can count **almost** anything. After 10 use Sino-Japanese numbers +**の** + object. It is like -**個**, but it's used more often and has an even broader application. Use it if you don't know the appropriate counter or if a counter is seldom used.

Warning Note: Don't use つ if there is a specific, frequently used counter.

0	なし	1	ひとつ	2	ふたつ	3	み(っ)つ	4	よ(っ)つ
5	いつつ	6	む(っ)つ	7	ななつ	8	や(っ)つ	9	ここのつ
10	とお	20	はたち	1000	ち	10000	よろず	?	いくつ

Word Note: はたち = "twenty years old". はた in this case is an old word for 20, and -ち is a form of the native counter once used for 20, 30, 40, etc.

13. 一つ^た食べる。

To eat one.

14. 二つ^{えら}選ぶ。

To choose two.

Native Numbers with Other Counters

Many counters are used with native numbers, but the forms that are allowed and when is really confusing. You basically have to memorize the readings of counter phrases one counter at a time. It doesn't help that there are many variants. For instance, 1 箱 (one box) is mainly pronounced as いっぱこ or ひとつはこ, but the rare いちはこ lurks around. Usually, if a counter is used with native

numbers, at least ひと and ふた will be used. Some accept み (3) and よ (4), but there is a lot of speaker variation.

～足（あし）	Footsteps	～晩（ばん）	Nights	～文字（もじ）	Characters
～箱（はこ）	Boxes	～そろい	Sets	～品（しな）	Kinds of dishes
～切（き）れ	Slices	～組（くみ）	Groups	～間（ま）	Rooms

Usage Notes: It's fair to say that there is a lot of info to remember for each counter, so don't feel like you have to learn all the details now. The information below is simply necessary to fully grasp these counters.

1. ひとあし and いっぽ are essentially synonymous and really only differ in the set phrases that they're used in. However, ～あし is essentially limited to the numeral 1.

2. 品 may also be read as ひん. So, what is the difference between いっぴん and ひとしな? They can both be used to count dishes (food), but the latter is often felt to be a little more formal. When reading out 1 品, 2 品, 3 品, they're typically read as ひとしな, ふたしな, みしな (more by older people)/さんしな (more by younger people). Both can also be used to count articles of things, but this usage is not as common. It's also the cause that speakers don't like ひん at all.

3. 晩 is only used with 1 (ひと) and 2 (ふた). You can find it also in the set phrase 三日三晩（みっかみばん） meaning "three days and three nights".

Practice (4): Translate the following. Write in ひらがな. Several answers may be acceptable.

1. One character
2. Two boxes.
3. Two nights.
4. Three slices.

Resource Note: <http://www.trussel.com/jcount.htm> will help you a lot with this.

Counters with Numbers

The counter phrases that you do need to know the readings for from 1-10 will be shown below. Any special sound change will be listed in bold. All the other example counters in this lesson are not expected of you to remember at this time. Refer to this chart for the exercises in this lesson.

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	?
つ	ひとつ	ふたつ	みっつ	よっつ	いつつ	むっつ	ななつ	やっつ	ここのつ	とお	いくつ
切れ	ひときれ	ふたきれ	みきれ	よ (ん) きれ	ごきれ	ろっきれ	ななきれ	はちきれ	きゅうきれ	じゅっきれ じっきれ	なんきれ
箱	ひとはこ いっばこ	ふたはこ	さんばこ みはこ さんはこ	よんばこ よんはこ よはこ	ごはこ	ろっばこ	ななはこ	はっばこ はちはこ	きゅうはこ	じゅっばこ じっばこ	なんばこ
冊	いっさつ	にさつ	さんさつ	よんさつ	ごさつ	ろくさつ	ななさつ	はっさつ	きゅうさつ	じゅっさつ	なんさつ
歩	いっぽ	にほ	さんぽ	よんほ	ごほ	ろっぽ	ななほ	はっぽ	きゅうほ	じゅっぽ	なんぽ
本	いっぽん	にほん	さんぽん	よんほん	ごほん	ろっぽん	ななほん	はちほん はっぽん	きゅうほん	じゅっぽん	なんぽん
匹	いっぴき	にひき	さんびき	よんひき	ごひき	ろっぴき	ななひき	はっぴき	きゅうひき	じゅっぴき	なんびき
足	いっそく	にそく	さんぞく さんそく	よんそく	ごそく	ろくそく	ななそく	はっそく	きゅうそく	じゅっそく	なんそく
杯	いっぱい	にはい	さんぱい	よんはい	ごはい	ろっぱい	ななはい	はっぱい	きゅうはい	じゅっぱい	なんぱい
頭	いっとう	にとう	さんとう	よんとう	ごとう	ろくとう	ななとう	はっとう	きゅうとう	じゅっとう	なんとう
個	いっこ	にこ	さんこ	よんこ	ごこ	ろっこ	ななこ	はっこ	きゅうこ	じゅっこ	なんこ
階	いっかい	にかい	さんがい さんかい	よんかい	ごかい	ろっかい	ななかい	はっかい	きゅうかい	じゅっかい	なんがい
人	ひとり	ふたり	さんにん	よにん	ごにん	ろくにん	ななにん	はちにん	きゅうにん くにん	じゅうにん	なんにん

Table of Contents

Keys

Note: You are free to use any correct spelling or counter for the exercises. Not all possible answers will be given here since there are so many.

Practice (1)

1. 頭、匹 2. ドル 3. 冊

Practice (2)

1. 何人
2. 何冊
3. 何頭・何匹（の牛）
4. 何本（のペン）
5. 何枚（のシート）

Practice (3)

1. さんびき（の犬）
2. にじゅうえん
3. ひゃくだい（の機械）
4. ひゃくとう・ひゃっぴき（の牛）
5. せんぼん（のペン）
6. ななはい

Practice (4)

1. ひともし
2. ふたはこ・にはこ
3. ふたばん
4. みきれ

第23課: The Particle の I

No, the particle の is **not the word no!** The word for "no" is generally いいえ, although there are definitely other words for it depending on the situation you're in. This particle is one of the fundamental particles of Japanese. However, this lesson will only be about its most important *usage*, which is its role as an attribute marker.

The Case Particle の

の makes an **attribute** between two noun phrases. Its role is to tell you that the first noun is an attribute of the next, but the next noun is the head/main noun of the resultant compound noun phrase that you create. Connecting it to the word "of" may be tempting, but because the English word "of" has other usages and because の itself has more refined properties and usages, we will not equate the things. Knowing what の does is more important.

So, what is an attribute? We have seen already how to use adjectives and verbs in this way. All we do is change it into the 連体形, which is simply the name of the form when they go before a noun phrase to modify it. In the English phrase "blue sky", blue is an attribute of sky. In Japanese, all attribute phrases go before the noun. So, keep this in mind!

の can create the possessives (わたしの = my), which is an attribute function. All you are doing is stating person as an attribute, and we attribute this (no pun intended) to possession. It is not a separate function of の. You can also use it with time phrases like の後 (after). Again, the same principle applies. When you say after 3, the word after is the most important word. The exact time is an attribute/description of when "after" is. So, in Japanese, you would have to say 3 時の後.

Notice how in all the examples below, の helps *qualify* the noun that follows.

1 . たかだい たてもの
高台の建物

A building on high ground

2 . こおり すべ
氷の上を滑る。

To slide on top of ice.

3. ニューヨークの冬はとても寒いですね。

New York winters are really cold, isn't it?

4. ハワイの かいがん
海岸はきれいです。

The Hawaiian coast is pretty.

5. (私は) 彼の時計の じこく なお
時刻を直しました。

I fixed the time on his watch.

Word Note: 時刻 is used rather than 時間, which only refers to a period of time.

Also note that 時計 is read as とけい.

6. 私はクラスの いいん つと
委員を務めました。

I served on the class committee.

7. 世界 (の) へいわ
平和をもたらす。

To achieve world peace.

Particle Note: At times の is dropped. This is common in long chains of Sino-Japanese words. Particles are dropped when the grammatical relation the particle marks is obvious in context. In this context, の's role is obvious. So, it may be dropped. Japanese has a lot of compound nouns, so those would be examples of の not being needed. When in doubt, use の. It's not a guarantee what you'll say is 100% natural, but it will guarantee that you're being grammatically correct.

8. ひしよ じょうし 秘書の上司 VS 上司の秘書

The secretary's boss VS The boss's secretary.

Phrase Note: The difference between these phrases is simply the relationship you're trying to show. Switch the nouns and you'll switch the roles. The particle の doesn't change at all.

9. きせつ うつ か おもしろ 季節の移り変わりは面白い。

The changing of the seasons is interesting.

10. 指 (の) 先を火 傷 やけど する。

To burn the tip of one's fingers.

11. ふぶき そうさく 吹雪の中を 捜 索 する。

To search through the blizzard.

12. おおがた しゅつげん 大型 (の) クラゲが 出 現 した。

A big jelly fish appeared.

13. その赤ちゃんの顔は日焼けしている。

The baby's face is sunburned.

14. わたしあて 私宛 のメッセージはありますか。

Are there any messages for me?

Definition Note: 宛(て) is "for" as in directed to.

の can also follow other case particles--never が or に. It can also be after some adverbs. When this happens, it is best to treat the adverb as a nominal phrase.

15. 神への道

Road to God/the gods

16. 母からの手紙

A letter from my mother

17. しばらくの間

For a while

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. To fix part of a computer.
2. She is the secretary of the company president.
3. A person with pretty eyes.
4. Takamura the bank employee.
5. This is a Japanese textbook.
6. Hokkaido in the winter.
7. I have three children.
8. Her house is beautiful.

We can describe の in the following situations. Remember that these are just different situations of の qualifying a noun to describe what its attributes are. The grammar is the same.

1. Shows the **nature of something**.

- It may mark possession. Ex. 私の^{とけい}時計 = **my** watch.
- It may mark location or time. Ex. 夏のテキサス = Texas in summer.
- It may mark a characteristic. Ex. 木の^{はし}橋 = wooden bridge.
- It may mark quantity. Ex. 3つの大学 = three colleges.

- It may indicate position. Ex. ^{しゃちょう}社 ^{まさき}長の正木 = Masaki the company president.

2. Shows the **standard for a relative relationship**.

- It may show a part related to a whole. Ex. ペンの^{さき}先 = tip of pen.
- It may show a relative placement. This placement may be physical, temporal, etc. Ex. ^{あと}の後 means "after". It is also how you show the location of something.

3. Shows the **characteristics of affairs**.

- It can show solid information about a matter. Ex. ^{じこ}事故の^{ほうこく}報告 = accident report.
- It may show purpose. Ex. ^{しゅつちょう}出張の^{じゅんび}準備 = business trip preparations.
- It may show the object of action. Ex. 日本語の勉強をする = to study Japanese.

Conflicts with Other Means of Making Attribute Expressions

Adjectives also make attributes. There are also words like 特別 in which な or の are OK to use it as an attribute. One form may be more common than the other, but there may also be meaning differences.

ばかな人 VS ばかの人

The first is "stupid person", but the second sounds like "the person of an idiot", which isn't something you'd necessarily say. Verbs can be used as attributes as well. So, we get some variation in phrases such as in どしゃ降りの雨 and どしゃ降る雨 being acceptable for "pouring rain", though the first is more proper. In similar expressions, both may be fine or be narrowed in usage.

18. 平等の権利を与える。

To give equal rights.

19. 平等な {扱い・世界・社会・問題・ルール}

Fair {treatment/world/society/problem/rule}

Part of Speech Note: There are rare expressions with の after verbs to make an attribute phrase. Treat these instances as separate words. You don't have to bother yourself with this example, but it is grammatically intriguing.

20. なぐ け ぼうりよく う
殴る蹴るの 暴力 を受ける。

To receive violence of punches and kicks.

Set Phrase Note: 這う這うの 体^{てい} is a set phrase composed of the verb 這う (to crawl) doubled with a sound change from はう to ほう, followed by の, and then ending with noun 体^{てい}, which is another word for appearance. Some speakers voice the doubling of 這う, but this is deemed to be a mistake. This phrase is seen in sentences like 這う這うの体^にで逃げる (to run away in a fluster).

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. コンピュータ (一) の一部を直す。
2. 彼女は社長の秘書です。
3. きれいな眼の人。
4. 銀行員^{ぎんこういん}の高村。
5. これは日本語の教科書だ。

6. 冬の北海道。

7. 子供が三人いる。

8. 彼女の ^{いえ} 家は美しい。

第24課: The Particle に I

に is the particle of "**establishment**" of place, time, direction, and destination. This may make absolutely no sense to you, but as you learn more of its usages, you will see how this is in fact the case.

The Case Particle に

に shows deep establishment of an action or state. It is for the most part equivalent to "at". The next sections describe the most important usages of に.

- に may show where something exists or occurs and even mark the person of possession. With this comes a strong sense of relation between the verb and what に attaches to.

1. 彼には子どもがいる。

As for him, he has children.

2. この ^{にわ}庭 に花はない。

There aren't any flowers in this garden.

3. ^{しょうがっこう}小 学 校 はどこ {にあります・です} か

Where is the elementary school?

Phrase Note: どこにありますか and どこですか are "where is it at?" and "where is it" respectively. At times, they really aren't different. However, there are situations where one is more appropriate than the other. The same goes for the English equivalents.

4. ^{とし}都市にたくさんの ^{たてもの}建 物 を建てる。

To build a lot of buildings in the city.

5. いすに座る。 ^{こし}腰 をかける。

To sit on a chair.

Word Note: 腰 is "waist" and かける is "to hang on". So, the second is just "to sit on".

6. ^{げんかん}玄 ^{いっぴき}関 に犬が 一 匹 いる。

There is a dog at the door.

7. 彼は ^{だいどころ}台 ^{とぐち}所 の戸 口 にいます。

He is in the kitchen doorway.

8. ^{こおり}氷 は水に ^う浮く。

Ice floats on water.

9. ^{たいよう}太 陽 は東に ^{のぼ}昇 ります。

The sun (always) rises in the east.

10. 太陽は西に ^{しず}沈 む。

The sun sets in the west.

11. 彼女は男の子に ^{にんき}人 気 がある。

She is popular with boys.

12. 私は ^{こんなん}困 難 に ^{おちい}陥 った。

I fell into difficulties.

Word Note: Notice that 陥る is used instead of ^お落ちる. The words are related to each other. You would be right in thinking the おち in these words is the same thing.

13. 私の学校には韓国人の先生がいます。

There is a teacher who's Korean in my school.

14. 東京に^す住んでいますか。

Do you live in Tokyo?

Definition Note: 住む is "to live (somewhere)" and denotes the moment of moving in. ～ている shows the state of living there. 住む isn't used for ani-

mals. 生^{せい}息^{そく}する is.

15. この^{ぞう}象はインドに生息する。

This elephant lives/inhabits India.

- Shows **destination or the direction of an action or goal!** As an extension, it also marks **indirect objects**. Both usages are used with intransitive verbs.

16. 彼に会う。○ 彼を会う。X

To meet him.

17. 雪が^ふ降って、^{なだれ}雪崩^あに遭った。

Snow fell and then we got caught in an avalanche.

18. 私はいところに手紙を書きました。

I wrote a letter to my cousin.

19. ^{われわれ}我々は^つニューヨークに着きました。

We arrived in New York City.

20. ^{へや}部屋に^{もど}戻る。

To return to a room.

21. ^{うち}家に帰る。

To return home.

22. ^{きみ}君に^{でんわ}電話だよ。(Masculine; casual)

There's a phone call for you.

23. 友だちがカリフォルニアに来ます。

My friend is coming to California.

24. スポーツに^{ねっちゅう}熱中する。

To be bent on sports.

25. 日本に^{りょこう}旅行する^{きかい}機会に任天堂の^{ほんしゃ}本社に行く。

Taking the opportunity of traveling to Japan and going to the headquarters of Nintendo.

Word Note: The word "旅行" does mean "journey or travel" but more in the

sense of a physical "travel" or "trip". The word ^{たび}旅 means the same thing as 旅行 but it also implies more than the physical aspects of "travel"; it also can include the emotional, psychological and other abstract feelings that are sometimes involved in a "journey".

26. バスが来なくて、授業に^{おく}遅れました。

The bus didn't come, and so I was late to class.

27. 我々は一つの^{けつろん}結論に^{たっ}達しました。

We arrived at a conclusion.

28. ^{こんき}今期の^{りえき}利益は百億円に達しました。

This term's profits reached ten billion yen.

29. 彼女は ^{えき} 駅 に ^{とうちゃく} 到着 しました。

She arrived at the station.

30. 今日、 ^{じゅぎょう} 授業 に行きます。

I will go to class today.

- Shows the **effect, condition, state, or goal of an action**, including going somewhere. It may also show pretext as in "you make your hands **as** a pillow".

31. 彼女は ^{びょうき} 病 気 になった。

She became sick.

Word Note: 病気 refers to an "illness" worthy of going to the hospital. When you

don't feel well, say something like ^{きぶん} 気分が悪い or (体の) ^{ちょうし} 調子 が悪い.

32. ^{しごと} 仕事 に出かける。

Start to go to work.

33. 彼らは ^{わかもの} 若 者 を ^{こうほしゃ} 候補 者 に ^た 立てた。

They put a young person as the candidate.

34. 手を ^{さゆう} 左 右 に ^ふ 振った。

I waved my hands left and right.

35. ^{けいさつ} 警察 は ^{きゅうじょ} 彼らの 救 助 に行った。

The police went to their rescue.

36. 私は ^{おきなわりょこう} 沖縄 旅行 の ^{みやげ} お土産 にシーサーを買いました。

I bought a shisa as a souvenir of the trip to Okinawa.

Culture Note: A shisa is a guardian dog/lion hybrid often seen in statues and souvenirs in Okinawa. シーサー comes from the Okinawan word for lion, which is シシ in Japanese.

Table of Contents

第25課: The Particle へ

The particle へ, which is pronounced "e", is interchangeable with に for one usage. This particle is much easier.

The Case Particle へ

へ shows the direction of an action to somewhere and is interchangeable with に. **It must not be used to replace に for any other usage!** へ is often associated with extravagant distances. However, this is by all means not always the case. へ must never be replaced by に when preceded by の since に can't be used with の. Lastly, へと is a much stronger variant that emphasizes direction.

1. 私は ^{おおさか}大阪 へ行きます。

I'm going to Osaka.

2. 私は明日徳島へ行きます。

I will go to Tokushima tomorrow.

3. ^{こうべ ふね}神戸へ 船 を見に行きました。

I went to Kobe to see the boats.

4. 彼女はドアのところへ走って行った。

She ran to the door.

5. よく中国へ行きますか。

Do you often go to China?

6. ^{しょくどう}食堂 へ行きませんか。

Why don't we go to the restaurant?

7. ^{まが}左へ 曲 ってください。

Please turn left.

8. 川へ^{とこ}飛び込む。

To jump in the river.

9. 机の上 {に ○・へ △・X} ^{きょうかしょ}教科書^おを置く。

To place a textbook on top of the desk.

11. 学校へ行く ^{とちゅう}途中だ。

I'm on my way to school.

12. ^{へいわ}平和^{あゆ}への歩み

Steps toward peace

13. 私は^{すしや}寿司屋へ行きました。

I went to a sushi restaurant.

14a. よくこの^{いざかや}居酒屋へ来るんですか。X

14b. よくこの居酒屋に来るんですか。○

Do you often come to this pub?

Word Note: An 居酒屋 is a Japanese style pub where you can order a wide variety of foods and drinks for a low cost. They often have times or special deals for

^{ほうだい}飲み放題 (all you can drink) and 食べ放題 (all you can eat).

Particle Note: へ shows direction in going away to somewhere. Here, then, doesn't count in the last sentence because the addressee is already there.

15. 彼は^ま間もなくここへ来ます。

He will be here shortly.

16. ここへ座って話を^き聴いてください。

Come and sit down here and listen.

17. 去年イギリスへ行きました。オランダ（へ）も行きました。

Last year, I went to England. I also went to Holland.

Particle Note: Notice how へ isn't needed when followed by も.

18. 私はニューヨークを^た発^むってシドニーへ向かいました。

I left New York for Sydney.

19. 東京へ^{しゅっちょう}出^張します。

I will take a business trip to Tokyo.

Culture Note: Presenting business cards, ^{めいし}名刺, is extremely important to business etiquette. You should present your card with both hands and take it out of a business card box, and you are to receive the other person's card, read it, and say ^{ちょうだい}頂戴します. When exchanging cards with someone of higher status, you should make sure yours is below the other. You should place business cards in the back of your leather case, and if you are at a table, wait until the meeting is over before putting it in. Don't write on, damage, or fold business cards, at least not in front of the person.

20. 日本へ帰りたい。

I want to return to Japan.

Culture Note: The above phrase is very weird for a non-Japanese person to say. It's even wrong if someone Japanese is not actually born in Japan. The reason is that 帰る = "to go home". So, in the case that you want to say that you want to go Japan again, you should say something like 日本へまた行きたいです. Another

way to say to return to one's country is 帰国^{きこく}する. This phrase is used more when referring to other people going back home.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. I'm going home.
2. This is a present to you.
3. A letter to my mother
4. I'm going to Tokyo.
5. To go to the left.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. 家に帰る。or 家へ帰る。
2. これは君へのプレゼントだ。
3. 母への手紙; お母さんへの手紙
4. 東京に行きます。or 東京へ行きます。
5. 左 {に・へ} 行く。

第26課 : The Particle で I

In this lesson we'll study another crucial particle of Japanese, で. Many confuse it with に. However, after this lesson, you will realize that it is not the same thing.

The Case Particle で

1. It doesn't help that で comes from に. The two have evolved to represent different things. Both mean "at" most of the time when translated into English. However, as for で, there is no deep connection as there is with に. The best example of contrast is "to work".

1. ここで ^{はたら}働きます。 VS ここに ^{つと}勤めています。
I work here. I work here.

There is something missing in translation though. The first one says that you just work there. You may just be an extra hand, someone that just does things, or the job may just be temporary. The second says that you have been working there; you're employed there. It's the kind of work where you are going to probably be there for a long time. For example, ^{かいしゃ}会社 に勤めている。

に relates to the state of something whereas で relates to the occurrence of something. That is why に is used with verbs like ある, いる, and 勤める and で is used verbs like 働く, 会う, etc. However, it is very possible that you will have to use both in the same sentence because they do not cover the same things.

2. 学校で勉強します。
I study at school.

3. ^{としょかん}図書館 で勉強しました。
I studied at the library.

4. えきまえ 駅 前 で 買い 物 (を) する。

To shop in front of the train station.

Culture Note: There are almost always lots of shops in and around train stations in Japan.

5. じむしょ 事 務 所 で 電話を かけます。

I will make a call at the office.

6. 彼女は海で泳いだ。

She swam in the sea.

Particle Note: 海に泳ぐ in Modern Japanese is not used and is deemed incorrect by the majority of speakers. When you use で, you are specifying the location of swimming. Otherwise, you would say 海を泳ぐ.

7. 私はいまびというサイトで日本語を勉強しています。

I'm studying Japanese at IMABI.

8. こども 子 供 たち が 庭 にわ で遊んでいる。

The children are playing in the garden.

9. 北海道で じしん 地 震 がありました。

There was an earthquake in Hokkaido.

Practice (1): Translate the following in polite speech.

1. I study at the library.
2. I will meet you at the train station.
3. I didn't swim in the sea.
4. There was a big earthquake in Kyoto yesterday.
5. There are cats in the building.

2. で shows the condition or method in which something is done--"of/with/by".

10. 日本語で話してください。

Please speak in Japanese.

11. 電話で話す。

To speak over the telephone.

12. ハサミで ^{ゆび}指 を切ってしまった ^{こども}子供 は ^{びょういん}病院 に ^{はこ}運 ばれました。

The child that accidentally cut his finger with scissors was sent to the hospital.

13. 子供がカエルを ^{ぼうぎ}棒 ^つ切れ で突いた。

The kid jabbed the frog with a stick.

14. お金の ^{りょうがえ}両 替 はどこでできますか。

Where can I exchange money?

15. ステレオで ^{おんがく}音 楽 を聞く。

Listen to music with a stereo.

16. ^{おおごえ}大 声 で ^{さけ}叫 ぶ。

To shout with a loud voice.

17. 彼は ^{はやくち}早 口 でしゃべった。

He chattered in rapid fashion.

18. ^{くしょう}苦 笑 で ^{こた}答 えました。

He answered with a bitter smile.

19. けっこんしき きもの
結婚式に着物で行きます。

I will go to the wedding in kimono.

20. 雨の日にはバスで学校に行きますか。

Do you go by bus to school on a rainy day?

21. かみ つく
僕は紙でカモを作った。

I made a duck out of paper.

22. ちかてつ
地下鉄で行きます。

I('ll) go by subway.

23. このCDを3千円で買った。

I bought this CD for 3 thousand yen.

24. デパートで働いていません。

I don't work at the department store.

25. われわれ とうひょう き
我々は投票で決めました。

We decided by voting.

26. ナイフで にく
肉を切りました。

I cut the meat up with a knife.

27. は
刃で切る。

To cut with a blade.

28. みせ しんぶん
店の新聞でその記事を読みました。

I read that in the newspaper in the store.

29. ち 血で血を あら 洗 う。

To wash blood with blood.

30. じぶん 彼は自 分の血で 手 紙 てがみ を書いた。

He wrote a letter with his own blood.

31. でんき うご 電 気で 動 きます。

It works with electricity.

32. みなみさんりくちょう つなみ まちぜんたい かいめつ
南 三 陸 町 は津 波で 町 全 体が 壊 滅 した。

The entire town of Minamisanriku Town got completely destroyed by the tsunami.

History Note: The 東日本大震災 (The Eastern Japan Big Earthquake Disaster) occurred on March 11, 2011 and killed thousands and left many more homeless. The magnitude was 9.0, the worst natural disaster in the nation's history.

33. い お茶は要りません。水でけっこうです。

I don't need/want tea. I'm fine with water.

34. たまご 卵 でケーキを作ります。

You make cake with eggs.

35. はし 箸 で食べる。

I eat with chopsticks.

Culture Note: Never point chopsticks completely vertically in a bowl of rice as this looks like burning incense sticks in funerals. Don't pass food with chopsticks because this is how bones are handled. Pass food by placing it on a small plate or using the ends. Mismatched chopsticks aren't used. Pointing chopsticks at someone may be considered a threat.

Practice (2): Translate the following into English.

1. テレビで見た。
2. 新聞で読みました。
3. 私は自^{じてんしゃ}転車^でで大学に来ます。
4. ガソリンで走らない。
5. 京都に車でいきます。

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. 私は図書館で勉強します。
2. 私はあなたと駅で会います。
3. 私は海で泳ぎませんでした。
4. 昨日、京都で^{おおじしん}大地震がありました。
5. 建物に^{ねこ}猫がいます。

Practice (2)

1. I watched on TV.
2. I read it in the newspaper.
3. I come to the college by bicycle.
4. It doesn't run on gasoline.
5. I('ll) go to Kyoto by car.

第27課: The Final Particle て

Particle classification is very important to keep in mind as you learn more about particles. The particle て discussed in this lesson is a final particle and mustn't be confused with the conjunctive one. Although the conjunctive て may be at the end of a sentence in the instance that the remaining part of a sentence is not said, overall context should always help you differentiate between the two.

The Final Particle て

The main purpose of the final particle て is to **make a light command**. This is the contraction of ～てください, the polite command. Likewise, the negative of this is ～ないで (ください) , making the absence of ください a contracted form of the pattern. Thus, its absence for both the affirmative and negative makes it go from polite to plain speech. A more polite form of both can be made by changing ください to くださいませんか.

1. ちょっと待って。(Casual)

Hold on.

2. はら もど
払 い 戻 ししてください。

Please refund this.

3. たす
助 けて！

Help!

4. 教科書を {閉じて・しまって} テストを受けてください。

Please do your test by closing your textbooks.

5. やめて！

Quit!

6. これを見て。

Look at this.

7. タクシーを^よ呼んでください。

Please call a taxi (for me).

8. はやく^{いそ}急いで！

Hurry quickly!

9. もっとゆっくりと話してください。

Please speak more slowly.

10. ^{はや}速くしてよ！

(Do it) faster!

11. まっすぐ行ってください。

Please go straight.

12. ^{ざぶとん}座布団^しを敷いてください。

Please sit on a cushion.

Culture Note: 座布団 are floor cushions used instead of chairs in traditional Japanese rooms.

Contraction Note: ～てて is the contraction of ～ていて. ～ている means "-ing".
～ていて creates a command similar to "be...-ing!".

In women's speech, ～(っ)てよ asserts opinion. However, this phrase has essentially disappeared in the younger generations and is most likely to be used by older women or seen in literature dating back a few decades ago. It is replaced by things such as ～てるよ.

13. あたくし、ちつとも酔^よってなんかなくてよ。

I'm not even the least bit drunk.

From 永すぎた春 by 三島由紀夫.

Particle Note: なんか is essentially a filler word here.

14. かまわなくってよ。

I don't care.

～て, with a high intonation, can make a question. These two usages, though, are **hackneyed yet refined**. This, too, would be replaced with something like ～てる？.

15. あなた、私のいうことがわ^わかって？

Do you understand what I'm saying?

It is to note that ～てよ is used by everyone to make a command. The sound of your voice is what matters.

～て may also follow things like だ・じゃ to **tell someone to do** something or **give some sort of instruction/warning**. This, though, is uncommon.

16. たいへん^{たいへん} 変なことじゃて。 (Old person; dialectical)

That's a horrible thing!

Practice: Translate the following.

1. Wait for her.
2. Wait for her!
3. Please swim.
4. Be talking.
5. He didn't come and is at his home.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. 彼女を待ってあげてね。
2. 彼女を待ってあげて！
3. 泳いでください。
4. 話していて（よ）
5. 彼は来なくて、（家に）帰っていた。

Grammar Note: The first two require あげる at the end to imply favor.

第28課: ある & いる

ある and いる contrast each other in many ways. There are some important exceptions to conjugation that you need to keep in mind.

Verb	Class	Plain Negative	Polite Negative	Plain Negative Past
ある	五段	ない	ありません	なかった
いる	一段	いない	いません	いなかった

Grammar Note: The negative of ある is **ない**, not あらない. This is not the only anomaly in regards to conjugation for these two verbs, but for now, just keep this in mind.

ある

Both ある and いる show that **there is something**. They may or may not be interchangeable depending on their use. Even when we can choose between the two, one will **always** be more prevalent/natural than the other. ある normally shows **existence of things besides people and animals**. そんざい 存在する is more appropriate, especially with non-physical items, for the explicit meaning of "to exist".

Particle Note: に, not で, should be used with existential verbs. で shows location of action, not state. Existing in a place is a state of being. Furthermore, をある and をいる are always wrong.

Examples

- そこに さいふ 財布 がありました。

There was a wallet there.

2. 高い木があります。

There is a tall tree.

3. 高い木が公園にたくさんあります。

There are a lot of tall trees in the park.

4. こうしゅうでんわ
公衆電話はありますか。

Is there a public telephone?

5. とかいびょういん
都会に病院がある。

There is a hospital in the city.

6. ほんしゃ
本社は東京にあります。

The main office is in Tokyo.

7. しんせいひん しさくだんかい
新製品は試作段階にない。

The new product is not in the trial stage.

8. りょうこくかん
両国間には国交がありません。 (Not Spoken Language)

There isn't any diplomatic relations between both of the nations.

9. こうさてん こうばん
日本では交差点に交番があります。

There are police stations at intersections in Japan.

10. なごやじょう
名古屋には名古屋城がある。

In Nagoya, there is the Nagoya Castle (but not anywhere else).

Culture Note: The Nagoya Castle was one of the most important stops on the Minoji 美濃路 Highway which was a major roadway in the Edo Period. The castle is historically significant.

11. あの車には 頑^{がんじょう} 丈^と な取っ手^てがあるんじゃないか。

Isn't there a firm handle in that car?

Practice (1):

Part I: Translate the following.

1. There is not a dog.
2. There is not a tree.
3. There aren't trees here.
4. There was a school here ten years ago.
5. Where is it?

Part II: Choose particle(s) that complete the statement.

6. 大学__日本語__ 図^{としょかん} 書 館 __あります__?
7. 机__クラス__中__ある__、椅子^{いす}(chair)__クラス__外^{そと} __あるよ。
8. 何__ (__) ありますか。
9. 日本の人口__ 減^{げんしょう} 少^{けいこう} (decline)__ 傾 向 (trend)にあります。
10. 眼 鏡^{めがね} (glasses)__テーブルの上__あります。

Possession and Occurrence

ある may also show the **possession of inanimate non-living and non-physical things**. This usage may also show *physical* attributes of people and things. It can even mean "to occur". Depending on the usage of "to occur", there are alternative ways to say it. 発^{はっせい} 生 する is "to occur" as in a break out of some kind. 起^{おこ}る means "to occur" as in some event. For this usage で can be used because "to occur" is not existential.

12. きん じかん
金 も 時 間 も たっぷり ある 王

A king ample in both gold and time

13. す きら
好 き 嫌 い が ある。

To have one's likes and dislikes.

14. 彼女の ぶんしょう
文 章 にはユーモアがある。

There is humor in her composition.

15. 奈良で じしん
地 震 が あり ました。

There was an earthquake in Nara.

16a. 事故があつた。

16b. 事故に遭つた。

16a. There was an accident.

16b. I was in an accident.

17. はっぴょう
発 表 が あつた。

There was an announcement.

18. なや
悩 み が ある。

To have worries.

19. その どうぶつ たいじゅう
動 物 は 体 重 が 200 キロ も ある。

The animal has a weight of at least 200 kilograms.

20. たが めんしき
互 い に 面 識 が ある。

To have an acquaintance with each other.

21. きょうよう
教 養 がある。

To have an education.

22. に ば
もう逃げ場はありません。

There is nowhere to hide.

23. 高さは六十メートルある。

The height is 60 meters.

24. ざいさん
財 産 がありますか。

Do you have assets?

25. ふろづ へや
風呂 付きの部屋がありますか。

Do you have a room with a bath?

26a. 私には、強い味 方 がある。？
みかた

26b. 私には、強い味方がいる。

As for me, I have a strong ally.

Usage Note: This ある would most certainly almost always be replaced with いる today.

27. ぎゅうにゅう
牛 乳 がありますか。

Do you have milk?

28. じこくひょう
時 刻 表 がありますか。

Do you have a timetable?

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. We don't have time.
2. I have money.
3. I didn't have a *pen* yesterday.
4. I have a lot of books.
5. I don't have trees in my yard.

Other Usages

Old Usages: ある may be used in the introduction of characters, but **いる** is **pre-dominant** in this case. More so literary, ある may show that someone is in a certain position/role. Again, いる is more common here. It may also be used in this manner with things, in which case いる would not be applicable.

29a. おおむかし、あるところにおじいさんとおばあさんがありました。？

29b. 大昔、ある所におじいさんとおばあさんがいました。

30c. 大昔、ある所におじいさんとおばあさんがおりました。

Long time ago, there was an old man and an old woman.

Usage Note: This usage is no longer used in the spoken language. This nostalgic line is now normally stated with either いました or おりました (a dialectal and or humble version of いる) instead of ありました。

The last old usage that we will look at is とある. This is not used in the spoken language. However, you can find it in the written language a lot in contexts such as in Ex. 30.

30. せいしよには「はじめにかみてんちそうぞう
聖書には「初めに神は天と地とを創造された」とある。

It is written in the Bible that, "In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth".

いる

いる shows that an **animate and alive** thing exists in a certain location. It may also show the possession of something animate and alive.

31. さとう いえ
佐 東 さんは 家 にいませんでした。

Mr. Sato was not home.

32. 犬がいません。

I don't have a dog (since it left somewhere).

Nuance Note: Using が here makes it sound like either there isn't a dog, and in the case of ownership, something happened to the dog, like it ran away, was stolen, or died. If you were to say 犬はいません, you would be able to say I don't have a dog, but it sounds like you may own something else like a cat. You could say 犬を飼っていません to avoid this extra nuance. 飼う means "to raise an animal". You could just also naturally respond with いません or 飼っていません.

33. わ や さんば
我が家には鳥が 三 羽 いる。

We have three birds in our house.

34a. よい みようじょう
宵 の 明 星 が いる。?

34b. 宵の明星が出ています。○

34c. 宵の明星が見えます。○

There is the evening Venus.

Sentence Note: Ex. 34a is an example of いる in literary language that wouldn't be used in the spoken language. Originally, this usage was meant to show something that normally moves but is not.

In reality, natives don't all agree with each other on case by case instances of ある VS いる. What do you use with words like 家族, バス, エレベーター, 人形, or a dead cat? None of these example nouns are necessarily straightforward.

35. 家族が {いる・ある} 。

I have a family.

Sentence Note: More speakers would choose いる. However, ある is not strange at all.

36. 神が {ある・いる} 。

There is God/god/kami.

Sentence Note: Ignoring the various interpretations of the word 神, describing such a spiritual force's existence with いる is most common today, but ある does get used. It may sound less religious, stiff, or old-fashioned, but this Japanese does exist.

37. 私 (に) は ^{きょうだい}兄 ^{にん}弟 が 3 人 { (△・X) ある・○ いる} 。

I have three siblings.

Sentence Note: Using ある for people causes heart attacks for Japanese learners, but the reality is that there are speakers who find this instance of ある perfectly fine, though even these individuals will admit that it is old-fashioned. Of course, you find those that don't. Originally, as we know, the current criteria for choosing ある and いる was different. So, you still see ある used for inanimate and animate objects in (old and somewhat old) literature.

38. 私の 2 人の兄弟は神奈川に {○ います・X あります} 。

My two siblings are in Kanagawa.

39. ^{にんぎょう}人形 がいっぱい {いる・ある} ね。

There are a lot of dolls, aren't there.

Sentence Note: いる would most especially be used when in contact or in the vicinity of the dolls, but it's important to know that speakers use both. The decision hinges on how human-like you wish to view dolls.

40. あそこにロボットが {います・あります} 。

There is a robot over there.

Sentence Note: If you use いる, the robot is in service and is truly human-like. If you use ある, it's in the same position as a regular inanimate object.

41. あそこにバスが {○・△ いる・○ ある・○ 止まっている} 。

There is a bus over there.

Sentence Note: いる has the nuance of that it is in service, but some speakers still think that this is wrong. Other speakers think that this is even OK for elevators and what not in service, but others still disagree and believe you should use 止まっている when its stopped there indefinitely. If you wanted to show it's just stopped there, the particle に should be changed to で. If you use ある, you would simply state that there is a bus/elevator, and it would most certainly mean it's not in service.

42. と^と捕^みらわれの身 {○ にある・X でいる} 。

To be in captivity.

Sentence Note: This is a set phrase, but the grammar is also a little tricky because にある is actually the original copula. It shows up here as set phrases tend to hold onto old grammar. However, when we try replacing it with grammar we've learned today, we see that the result is ungrammatical.

What if something is dead? Certainly, when you use words such as 死体 or 遺体 which mean corpse, you use ある. When discussing the existence of dead people, いる is overwhelmingly used. However, consider this counterexample.

43. ピーナッツアレルギーで死んだ人が {いました・ありました}。

There were people who died from peanut allergies.

Many speakers would not like ありました. Those that do, though, would say it is rarer, but it is more emphatic and focusing on the severity of the matter than いました. What about dogs and cats? Generally, people would hate using ある for dead dogs and cats. But, if you really hate either or, you could use ある. This would imply you don't value them as much.

44. どくい 毒 入りのものを食べて、死んだ ^し猫 ^{ねこ} が {○ いた・△ あった}。

There was a dead cat that ate a poison-laced item.

What about a dead fly? The phrase 死んだハエ is possible. Most would still say いる is OK and ある is not so OK, but saying 死んだハエがいる is not practical. Thus, some say that a sentence like below would be more practical.

45. コップの中に死んだハエが入っている。

There is a dead fly in my cup.

Another word to consider is けが人 (injured). It turns out that even if the noun is a person noun, if the concept is abstract, it can still take ある. Or, if there is any wavering of whether something exists or not, ある more easily appears.

46. 乗客の中にけが人は {ありません ○/X・いません○} でした。

There were no people injured among the passengers.

Practice (3): Translate the following

1. There is a turtle here.
2. I don't have a cat.

3. There is a God.
4. There aren't Japanese people here.
5. I'm lonely without you.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. 犬がない。
2. 木がない。
3. ここには木がない。
4. 十年前にここに学校があった。
5. どこにある（か）？；どこ（だ）？
6. に、の、は、か
7. は、の、に、が、は、の、に
8. か、が
9. は、の
10. は、に

Practice (2)

1. われわれ じかん 我々 は時間がない。
2. お金がある；お金を持っている。
3. 昨日、ペンはなかった；昨日、ペンは持っていなかった。
4. 本がたくさんある；たくさんの本がある △；本が^{たすう}多数ある；多くの本を持っている。
5. （私の）庭に木がない。

Practice (3)

1. ここにカメがいる。

2. ^{ねこ}猫 を飼っていません。

3. ^{かみ}神 はいる; ^{かみ}神 は ^{そんざい}存 在 する。

4. ここに日本人はいない。

5. ^{きみ}君 がいなくて、^{さび}寂 しい。

第29課: ~ている

いる works quite differently whenever it is after the particle て. In this instance, いる functions as a supplementary verb. In Japanese a supplementary verb is a *verb that loses some or all of its literal connotations to serve (a) specific grammatical purpose(s)*.

~ている

Correct interpretation of ~ている depends on the verb being used. So, pay attention to the kinds of verbs used for each meaning.

-ing

The first usage of ~ている equates to "-ing". You're doing something, thus it is a continuation in the present time. This is also linked to ongoing action, which is typically expressed with verbs of process--食べる、飲む、走る.

1. ^{たろう}太郎 は朝ご飯を食べています。

Taro is eating breakfast.

2. ^{きょうし}教師 をしています。

I am a teacher.

Phrase Note: Remember that using ~をする in this manner shows profession and is more appropriate in this situation than です.

Habit

Then there are instances when the action is not literally being done now, but it's a habit of some sort.

3. A 学校に行っています。

I go to School A.

4. てんさい 天才 はいつも勉強に打ち込んでいる。

Geniuses are always diving into studies.

State of Being

When used with verbs like 着る (to wear), it shows a state of being dressed. This is in contrast to putting clothing on, which has to be expressed differently to avoid ambiguity as 着ている さいちゅう 最 中 . Other verbs are just like this.

5. ネクタイが まが 曲 っている。

His necktie is tangled.

6. ふるぎ 古 着 を着ています。

I'm wearing old clothes.

State: Motion Verbs

For verbs of motion like 行く and 帰る, it shows state of having done that movement. Interpret it as a completed action and the result being the state in effect.

7. 彼女は東京に来ています。

She has come to Tokyo.

8. 彼はもう帰っている。

He's already gone home.

More Examples

9. 赤い顔をしている。

To have a red face.

10. 彼女は長い ^{かみ}髪 をしている。

She has long hair.

11. 私は東京 ^{えき}駅 の近くに住んでいます。

I live near Tokyo Station.

12. 彼は ^{かいちょう}会 長 をしていた。

He had been the chairman.

Nuance Note: 会長 is a chairman of an organization; ^{ぎちょう}議長 is a chairman of an assembly.

13. お ^{かあ}母 さんによく ^に似ています。

You resemble your mother well.

Word Note: お母さん is used instead of 母 because the speaker is referencing the listener's mother.

14. その ^{はし}橋 は石でできている。

The bridge is made of stone.

15. この机は ^{こわ}壊 れています。

This desk is broken.

16. さとう はい
砂糖 はもう 入 っています。

Sugar has already been put in.

17. 今日も おだ
穏 やかなお天気が続いていますね。

The moderate weather is continuing today, isn't it?

18. こや めん
小屋は山へ 面 している。

The lodge faces the mountain.

19. 彼は通りをのそのそと歩き続けていた。

He continued to flop along the street.

Grammar Note: 続ける can attach to the 連用形 of another verb to mean “to continue to…”.

20. その教科書は しょうがくしゃ てき
初 学 者 に 適 しています。

The textbook is suitable for beginners.

21. ふろ わ
お風呂はもう沸いていますか。

Is the bath hot yet?

21. とけい ごぶんすす
その時 計 は五 分 進 んでいます。

The clock is five minutes fast.

22. 私は車を持っています。

I own a vehicle.

23a. 木になっていたリンゴを集めた。○

23b. 木にあったリンゴを集めた。X

23c. 木にあったリンゴを集めた。??

I gathered the apples that were on the tree.

Word Note: This なる is 生る, which means "to bear fruit". So, this sentence more literally reads "I gathered the apples that ripened on the tree". If you were to say the third line, it sounds like the apple is somehow out of place inside a tree. It definitely isn't talking about picking apples from an apple tree.

24. 町は ^{たに} 谷 ^{いち} に位置している。

The town lies in the valley.

25. 山がそびえている。

The mountain towers above (everything).

漢字 Note: そびえる in 漢字 is 聳える, but you don't need to know this spelling for now.

26. ^{つか} 疲 れています。

I'm tired.

27. 明治大学で ^{ほうりつ} 法 律 を勉強しています。

I am studying law at Meiji University.

28. ^あ 今晩空いている ^{へや} 部屋はありますか。

Do you have any vacant rooms this evening?

29. この ^{きんがく} 金 額 は ^{そうごうほけん} 総 合 保 険 を ^{ふく} 含 んでいますか。

Does the price include fully comprehensive insurance?

30. 彼は ^{でんりゅう} 電 流 を ^{なが} 流 している。

He's passing an electric current.

31. 通りは込んでいる。

The road is crowded.

Attribute Note: When 込んでいる is an attribute, it's often just 込んだ. Also, you wouldn't use 込む to describe Tokyo or Japan. You could say 東京はどこへ行っても 込んでいる, which means "Tokyo is crowded wherever you go".

Spelling Note: This usage of the verb 込む can also be spelled as 混む.

32. ^{そんざい}存 在 している。 ?

Phrase Note: The above phrase is only used when telling for how long something has existed.

33. ^{かず}数 では ^{あつとう}圧 倒 している ^{じょうたい}状 態 だ。

It's an overwhelming situation with the numbers.

～ている Negation

The negative is ～ていない, but ～ず (に) いる and ～ないでいる mean "without...-ing". ～ず (に) いる is used in more formal, poetic-like speech.

34. 覚えていません。

I don't remember.

35. ^{ぼく}僕 は何もしていません。(男性語)

I'm not doing anything.

36. ^{けっ}決 して病気になるないでいることは ^{ふかのう}不 可 能 だ。

It is impossible to stay never getting sick.

37. 彼はいつも ^{お っ}落 ち 着 かないでいる。

He is always ill at ease.

38. 彼女は ^{かよ}通えないでいる。

She has not been able to go to school.

Grammar Note: 通える is the potential form of the verb 通う.

Contractions

～ている is often contracted to ～てる. Even in polite speech, it is not uncommon to hear people get a little lazy and say ～てます. It's fair to say, though, that in such situations, there is more familiarity between the speakers. Otherwise, in truly polite situations such as being in an interview, it is NG (エヌジー = No good) to use it.

Dialect Note: It may also be ～とる and ～ちよる in other regions of Japan. This is a contraction of ～ておる, which in Standard Japanese is the plain humble form of ～ている. However, in the dialects this is used, it is the standard non-honorific form of the pattern.

39. 今の、聞いてましたか。(ちょっとくだけた話し言葉)

Were you listening to what I was saying just now?

40. 父は私が何を勉強してるか知らない。

My dad doesn't know what I am studying.

41. 動いてる！

It's moving.

Word Note: 動く is "to move "as in about, not "to move to a different house".

That is 引っ越^こす.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. I'm in a hurry.
2. It had been raining.
3. The lights are on.
4. She isn't singing.
5. I went without eating.

States & Appearances 状態・様子

わ たまご 割れた 卵 A broken egg.	卵が割れている。 The egg is broken.	卵が割れた。 The egg broke.
すがた やせた 姿 の A slim figure	姿がやせている。 To have a slim figure	姿がやせた。 Figure got skinny.
ふと 太 った彼 He, who is fat	彼は太っている。 He is fat.	彼は太った。 He got fat.
あな あ 穴 が開いたポケ ット A pocket with a hole	ポケットに穴が開いてい る There's a hole in my pocket	ポケットに穴が開いた。 A hole opened up in the pocket.
ゆが みかた 歪 んだ見 方 A distorted view- point	見方が歪んでいる。 Your viewpoint is dis- torted.	
くさ はし 腐 った 橋 の A rotten bridge	橋が腐っている。 The bridge is rot- ting/rotten.	橋が腐った。 The bridge rotted.

腐っている橋 A rotting/rotten bridge		
へこ 凹 んだドア A dented door	ドアが凹んでいる。 The door is dented.	ドアが凹んだ。 The door got dented.
こお 凍 った川 A frozen river	川が凍っている。 The river is fro- zen/freezing.	川が凍った。 The river froze.
かわ すな 乾 いた 砂 の Dry sand	砂が乾いている。 The sand is dry/dry- ing.	砂が乾いた。 The sand dried.
ひびが入った かべ 壁 の Cracked wall	壁にひびが入っている。 There are cracks in the wall.	壁にひびが入った。 Cracks have gotten in the wall.
曲がった ほそみち 細 道 の A twisted narrow path	細道が曲がっている。 The narrow path is twisted.	
か ちゃわん 欠けた 茶 碗 A chipped teacup	茶碗が欠けている。 The teacup is chipped.	茶碗が欠けた。 The teacup got chipped.

Grammar Notes:

1. ～た is often preferred over ～ている when used as an attribute. You can substitute it and still create a grammatical phrase, but 90% of the time, ～た is used.

2. Context determines whether 〜ている is the 進行形 (progressive) or the 完了形 (perfect tense).

漢字 Note: やせる has 漢字 spellings 痩せる・瘦せる・瘠せる, and they are listed in usefulness. But, you're not responsible for any of them. They all show up in books, though. ひび has the spelling 罅, which is cool looking but not very useful to remember.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. 急いでいる。
2. 雨が降っていた。
3. 電気がついている。
4. 彼女は歌っていない。
5. 食べないで行った; 食べないでいた; 食べずに行った; 食べずにいた。

Note: The answers for #5 are not all synonymous because of the vague nature of the original English sentence.

第30課: ~てある

~てある is quite different from ~ている, but it is often confused with it. With て, ある and いる function as supplementary verbs. In Japanese a supplementary verb is a verb that loses some or all of its literal meaning(s) to serve a specific grammatical purpose.

~てある

As you should know by now, て follows the 連用形. ~てある is exclusively used with verbs.

Class	Example Verb	+ ~てある	Class	Example Verb	+ ~てある
上一段			下一段	伝える	伝えてある
五段	洗う	洗ってある	サ変	する	してある
力変	来る	来てある X			

Grammar Note: For grammatical reasons to be discussed, 来てある is ungrammatical.

What is ~てある?

~てある shows a *current* state caused by someone's action. This state results from purposeful action done by someone, not something. It's used with transitive verbs, but を is not used for this usage. The basic pattern is (だれかに)XがYである.

花が^い生けてある means that "the flowers have been arranged (by someone)" and the flowers are still arranged as such. 生ける is transitive. Do not confuse with 生きる.

The following example gives a static nuance. It shows that arrangements have already been made. So, the action is done by "someone", which is to "to inform". The resultant state is "to have informed".

1. 彼女には前もって ^{つた} 伝 えてある。

To have informed her beforehand.

Similarly, ～ことにしてある has it that something is deemed as such by someone but really isn't. ～にする means "to make as..". For example, ばかにする means "to make an idiot of". Similarly, "Verb + ことにする" means "to decide that". Together, you can make sentences like the one below.

2. ^{げんき} 元 気でいることにしてある。

I decided to (make myself out to) be well (even though I'm really not).

Let's put some context to this statement. Your friend is in a stressful situation at home. In order to not worry her family, she has decided to be spirited on the phone to keep them at ease. This wouldn't be referring to actually seeing them in person.

Examples

3. その時 計は五 分 ^{とけい ごぶんすす} 進 めてあります。

(I) have set the clock five minutes forward.

State: The state is that the clock has been set five minutes forward.

Sentence Note: Ex. 3 shows that this pattern occasionally implies that the speaker is who did the action.

4. ガラスが割^わってある。

The glass has been broken (because of the actions of someone and still is broken).

State: The glass is still broken due to the fact that someone purposely broke it in the first place.

5. アンケートは集^{あつ}めてある。

The questionnaires have been gathered.

State: The questionnaires are now gathered due to the actions of a person or people.

6. 窓^{まど}が開けてあります。

The window is open (by someone).

State: The window has been left open by someone.

7. ストーブがつけてあります。

The heater was turned on (by someone) and has been kept that way.

State: The heater has been turned on by someone.

8. 木が倒^{たお}してある。

The tree has been toppled down (by someone).

State: A person knocked the tree down and the tree is still on the ground.

9. 彼の熱^{ねつ}はか^{はか}は計^{はか}ってある。

His temperature was checked (by someone).

State: The person's temperature has been checked.

10. 晩^{ばん}ご^ご飯^{はん}が作^{つく}ってある。

Dinner has been made.

State: The dinner is made.

11. シャツが^{あら}洗 っ てる。

The shirt has been washed.

State: The shirt is washed.

12. 机に本が置いてある。

The book was placed on the desk (by someone).

13. 荷物^{にもつ}が^{らんざつ}乱 雑 ^つに積 ん である。

The luggage was piled up in a clutter (by someone).

Practice: Translate the following.

1. パンが買ってあります。

2. レストランの^{よやく}予 約 がしてあります。

3. ^{でんき}電 気 がつけてあります。

4. 机に本が置いてある。

5. 作 っ てる。

Other Conjugations

～ である has other conjugations. For instance, you can still see ～ であつた and ～ でない. The grammar will distinguish the latter from the contracted form of ～ っていない, ～ ない, which will be discussed in this lesson.

14. 一階は古本屋^かに貸 して あつた。

The first floor [had been/was] rented to an old book store.

15. 新聞に書いてあった。

It [had been/was] written in the newspaper.

16. あまり^{かぐ}家具が置いてありません。

There isn't much furniture placed.

Other Supplementary Usages of ある

In である, a more ceremonious copula or in "連^{れん}用^{よう}形^{けい} + (は) ある" with adjectives. Again, in case you have forgotten what the 連用形 is, here is a brief summary of how to construct it.

Class	終止形	連用形
形容詞	美しい	美しく
形容動詞	綺麗だ	綺麗に

So, in case if you haven't noticed, you use ある in constructing the negatives with adjectives. ある → ない. So, Adj → 連用形 + (は) + ない. That has been the process all along. Now you have the option of lengthening the non-past form to 連用形 + (は) + ある, which is more likely to be used in longer phrases and in the written language. Again, as this is the supplementary verb ある at play, you should not think literally. Nor should you be thinking that English grammar would match the Japanese grammar as that's usually never the case.

17. ワニは^{れいけつ}冷^ど血^{ぶつ}の動^{どう}物^{ぶつ}である。

Alligators are cold-blooded animals.

18. 人^{にんげん}は^{かんが}考^{あし}える^{あし}葦^{あし}である。

Man is the reed of thinking.

19. 悲しくはあるが、^{くや}悔しくはない。

Although sad, but I have no regret.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. Bread has been bought.
2. A restaurant reservation has been made.
3. The lights have been turned on.
4. The book has been placed on the desk.
5. It has been made.

第31課: Nationalities, Languages, Fields of Study, & the Planets

This lesson is meant to be a break from hardcore grammar studies. These topics are for gathering more useful and easy to ascertain vocabulary.

Nationality

To express nationality, simply add - 人^{じん} to the name of the country or group.

Japanese	日本人	にほんじん	American	アメリカ人	アメリカじん
British	イギリス人	イギリスじん	Chinese	中国人	ちゅうごくじん
French	フランス人	フランスじん	Australian	オーストラリア人	オーストラリアじん
Canadian	カナダ人	カナダじん	Korean	韓国人	かんこくじん
Russian	ロシア人	ロシアじん	What nationality?	何人	なにじん

Note: To say that someone is of a certain heritage, use 系 (けい) . A French American would be フランス系アメリカ人. However, a person of Japanese descent is just called a 日系人 (にっけいじん) .

Cultural Note: It is generally better to ask お国はどちらですか than 何人ですか. However, the latter is not rude to say.

Nationalities in Japan

The majority are Japanese. There are many Chinese and Korean residents and other foreign nationals. The original inhabitants of Japan were the 縄文^{じょうもん}人^{じん} .

The Japanese ancestors were the やよいじん 弥生人 . The 縄文人 descendants are the アイヌ人, who mainly still live in ほっかいどう 北海道 .

Languages

The name of a げんご 言語 (language) in Japanese has the suffix ~ご. A language is sometimes a ことば 言葉, especially when similar to others in the same language family. For example, the Yaeyama and Yonaguni languages of Japan are often called やえやまことば やなぐにことば "八重山言葉" and "与那国言葉". ~語 is still OK.

Examples

Japanese	日本語	にほんご	English	英語	えいご
French	フランス語	フランスご	Korean	韓国語	かんこくご
Spanish	スペイン語	スペインご	Italian	イタリア語	イタリアご
Thai	タイ語	タイご	Vietnamese	ベトナム語	ベトナムご
Swedish	スウェーデン語	スウェーデンご	Turkish	トルコ語	トルコご
Malay	マレー語	マレーご	Polish	ポーランド語	ポーランドご
Hebrew	ヘブライ語	ヘブライご	Hindi	ヒンディー語	ヒンディーご
Cantonese	広東語	かんとんご	Persian	ペルシア語	ペルシアご
Taiwanese	台湾語	たいわんご	Norwegian	ノルウェー語	ノルウェーご
Chinese	中国語	ちゅうごくご	Portuguese	ポルトガル語	ポルトガルご
Arabic	アラビア語	アラビアご	Greek	ギリシア語	ギリシアご
German	ドイツ語	ドイツご	What language?	何語	なにご
Tokyo Dialect	東京弁	とうきょうべん	Russian	ロシア語	ロシアご

Romanian	ルーマニア語	ルーマニア語	Icelandic	アイスランド語	アイスランド語
----------	--------	--------	-----------	---------	---------

Word Note: Korean is 韓国語^{かんこくご} in reference to South Korea and 朝鮮語^{ちょうせんご} in reference to (North) Korea. コリア語 is neutral.

Languages Spoken in Japan

The national language or "国語"^{こくご} of Japan is Japanese. However, there are other recognized languages of Japan. These languages are "aynu itak" meaning "the Ainu language", 津軽語^{つがるご}, ケセン語^ご, 奄美語^{あまみご}, 沖縄語^{おきなわご}, 国頭語^{くにがみご}, やえやまご^{やえやまご} 八重山語 and 与那国語^{よなぐにご}. All but Aynu itak are Japonic languages.

Dialect

方言 means "dialect"; it's often a controversial labeling. Most dialects are labeled with ~ 弁^{べん}. There are many dialects in Japan, but many historical differences between them are being lost as Standard Japanese is being diffused throughout Japan. Some areas are left with just a few words or なま^{なま} 訛^{まじり} (accent). Some dialects are also referred to as 言葉. This is a little confusing, so if this word is used, it is usually to specific ones.

Fields of Study 専門 (せんもん)

医学	いがく	Medical science	科学	かがく	Science
----	-----	-----------------	----	-----	---------

化学	かがく	Chemistry	数学	すうがく	Mathematics
物理学	ぶつりがく	Physics	音楽	おんがく	Music
建築学	けんちくがく	Architecture	工学	こうがく	Engineering
電気工学	でんきこうがく	Electrical engineering	土木工学	どぼくこうがく	Civil engineering
機械工学	きかいこうがく	Mechanical engineering	遺伝子工学	いでんしこうがく	Genetic engineering
電子工学	でんしこうがく	Electronics	哲学	てつがく	Philosophy
言語学	げんごがく	Linguistics	社会学	しゃかいがく	Sociology
法学	ほうりつがく	Law	経済学	けいざいがく	Economics
生物学	せいぶつがく	Biology	地学	ちがく	Geology
教育学	きょういくがく	Education	体育学	たいいくがく	Physical education
農学	のうがく	Agriculture	心理学	しんりがく	Psychology
美術	びじゅつ	Fine arts	芸術	げいじゅつ	Art
経営学	けいえいがく	Business administration	文学	ぶんがく	Literature
天文学	てんもんがく	Astronomy	宗教学	しゅうきょうがく	Theology
薬学	やくがく	Pharmacology	生化学	せいかがく	Biochemistry

環境 科学	かんきょう かがく	Environmental science	コンピュー ター科学	コンピュ ータ ーかがく	Computer sci- ence
地理 学	ちりがく	Geography	国際関係学	こくさいかん けいがく	International relations

Word Note: Science is ^{かがく}科学. In reference to courses, it's ^{りか}理科. "Science department" is ^{りがくぶ}理学部. "Science course" is ^{りかけい}理科系. 理系, an abbreviation, is used in expressions such as ^{がくせい}理系の学生. 理学部の学生 is a "science major".

The Planets

Mercury	水星	すいせい	Venus	金星	きんせい
Earth	地球	ちきゅう	Mars	火星	かせい
Jupiter	木星	もくせい	Saturn	土星	どせい
Uranus	天王星	てんのうせい	Neptune	海王星	かいおうせい
Pluto	冥王星	めいおうせい			

第32課: The Particle と

There is a lot to know about the particle と. However, this lesson will only focus on the case particle と. If you don't quite remember what a case particle is, don't worry. These particles simply show basic grammatical relationships in a sentence.

The Case Particle と

Noun + と + Noun(と)

と's basic meaning is "and" when placed **in between nominal phrases**. If you want to use something else, it has to become a noun first. と can't be used at the beginning of a sentence. In that case, you should use something like そして. When listing more than two things, consecutive と may be omitted, and this is usually the most natural thing to do. と is typically not used after the last item, but it can be in older language.

Grammar Note: Again, this meaning is for when と is between two or more nouns! 1a is wrong because this rule is violated in a more complicated way. In English "I am Japanese and a doctor" is technically short for "I am Japanese and I am a doctor". Here it is clear that you are actually connecting two predicate phrases, not two simple noun phrases. If you wanted to say that "X and Y are doctors", you would use と.

1a. 私は日本人と医者です X

1b. 私は日本人**で**医者です。 O

I am Japanese and a doctor.

2a. すばしっこいと茶色の^{きつね}狐^とはのろまな犬を^と飛び越^こえた。 X

2b. すばしっこい茶色の狐はのろまな犬を飛び越えた。 O

The quick brown fox jumped over the lazy dog.

Examples

3. リンゴとブドウがテーブルの上にあります。

There are apples and grapes on the table.

4. これとそれは同じです。

This and that are the same.

5. ノートと^{きょうかしょ}教科書と^{じしよ}辞書を持ってきてください。

Please come with your notes, textbook, and dictionary.

6. 犬と猫がいる。

I have a dog and a cat; there is a dog and a cat.

7. 犬と猫を^か飼っている。

I have a dog and a cat.

8. 日本語のクラスにはアメリカ人と、イギリス人と、カナダ人がいます。

There are Americans, English, and Canadians in (my) *Japanese* class.

9. 朝と夜はちょっと寒いです。

Morning and night are a little cold.

Practice (1): Translate the following.

1. There is a dog and cat at home.

2. Cows and rabbits

3. You and I.

4. I bought games and CDs.

5. I broke a door and chair.

Particle Note: This pattern used to be X と Y (と) for "X and Y". If you ever see something like X と Y とが, you're not seeing a typo. This is not ancient, but it is not frequently used.

With

と may show the partner in which a person of interest is doing an *action* **with**. Both the "and" and "with" definitions can be in the same sentence as they're not the same and have different requirements. The word after と when it means "with" is not part of the same phrase as と.

10. {両親・父と母} と公園に行きます。

I'm going to the park with my father and mother.

11. 犬と^{さんぽ}散歩に出かけた。

I went out on a walk with my dog.

と^{いっしょ}一緒に and と^{とも}共に both may mean "together" or "jointly". と一緒に is only used with two compatible nouns that are same in status and kind. You can't use it in "I talked together with my teacher". ご一緒にする is honorific but means "to go with". とともに is more formal and shows that things/people are doing something or in the same state together.

12. 彼女と彼は結婚する。 (Don't need 一緒に)

He and she will marry (each other).

12. 宏と花子は同時に^{けっこん}結婚する。 (Simultaneously as 同時に makes more sense)

Hiroshi and Hanako will marry together.

14. 彼らは一緒に ^{てき} 敵 と ^{たたか} 戦 っていた。

They fought the enemy together.

15. 彼らは敵と一緒に戦っていた。

They fought mutually with the enemy.

16. あたしは日の出とともに ^で ^お 起きます。(Feminine)

I rise with the sun.

17. ^{ふうふ} 夫婦ともに元気です。

The couple are both fine.

18. 誰かと悲しみを共にすることはおかしいことではない。(Lyrical/poetic)

誰かと悲しみを共有することはおかしいことではない。(Normal)

It is not strange to share sadness with someone.

19. (あなたと) 一緒に行きます。

I am going together (with you).

20. あの二人はいつも一緒です。

Those two are always together.

21. 私は父と電話で話しました。

I talked with my father on the telephone.

22. ^{かれし} 彼 氏 と一緒に ^{しゅくだい} 宿 題 をした。

I did homework together with my boyfriend.

23a. 同じ ^{はね} 羽 の鳥と一緒に ^{あつ} 集 まる。

23b. ^{るい} 類 は ^{とも} 友 を呼ぶ。

Birds of a feather flock together.

24. 一緒に来ませんか。

Won't you come with me?

25. 彼は ^{きょうふ} 恐怖 と戦って、ついに勝った。

He fought against his fears, and he finally won.

26. 彼女と時々けんかする。

I sometimes argue with her.

27. 車とぶつかった。

I collided with a car.

28. 子供と遊ぶ。

To play with a child.

29. 彼と ^{しょくじ} 食事 をともにした。

I had dinner with him.

30. ^{ともだち} 友達 と会う。

To meet with a friend.

Grammar Note: と会う shows that both sides move (to see one another) while に会う shows that only one party moves, thus leading to meeting the person. Due to this discrepancy, for "to happen to meet someone/encounter someone", you can see X {と・に} ばったり (と) [会う・出会う].

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. I ate with my mom.

2. I swam with frogs.

3. The birds and bugs sang.

4. I went to the theater with my little brother and little sister.

5. She danced with her husband.

Comparing

と may mark a subject being compared. As for ^に似る, ~に似る and ~と似る are possible but slightly different. と in this case marks one side of a mutual relation(ship) whereas に only shows the standard of comparison. They both, though, make the second person the basis of comparison when the pattern is XはY {に・と} 似ている. Consider the following.

- 31a その父と子は似ている。○
31b. その子はお父さんと似ている。○
31c. その子はお父さんに似ている。○
31d. その父は息子と似ている。X
31e. その父は息子に似ている。X

The last is wrong because the son isn't the source of the father's traits. With と you don't have this problem. It just states that someone resembles the other, and the statement then could go either way.

- 32a. この事^{じけん}件は以^{いぜん}前とは異^{こと}なる。
32b. 以前の事件とは異なる。
32c. 以前の事件とは^{ちが}違^うう。

The case is different from before.

33. Xと^{くら}比^{べる}べる

To compare with X.

34. 彼と同じ考えです。

That is the same idea as his.

35. 人間と ^{どうぶつ}動物 との違い

The difference between humans and animals.

Particle Note: The second instance of と here is not optional. The different と are different. The first is "and" and the second is "with" used here to show comparison, or in this case the opposite of comparison.

36. スペイン語と日本語はまったく似ていません。

The Spanish and Japanese don't resemble/match each other anymore.

Particle Note: We've seen XはYと似ている and but XはYに似ている, but XとYは似ている exists too. If the referents weren't mentioned, then you'd need something like お互いに for "each other", but you don't use the word every time you use 似ている.

Practice (3): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. Did you compare it with the translation?
2. What is the difference between McDonald's and Burger King?
3. He resembles his father.
4. My house resembles his house.

Content of a Result

と and に are sometimes similar, but there is always a difference. と may show the result of something. It's used with verbs like 決める (to decide) and なる (to become). As for なる, になる and となる are possible. However, になる shows an **end point** of some change. Therefore, there is a duration to it. As for となる, it shows the content/substance of a result.

So, と shows a **discrete** change. This means that it shows the result of something not from a continuous process. と often sounds more stiff and formal.

Another verb where there is this contrast is ^{あらた}改める (to reform; revise). This means that there are some phrases where と doesn't make a lot of sense.

37. いよいよ ^{うんどうかい}運動会の日となりました。

Field day has come at last.

38. ^{きまつしけん}期末試験は ^{にしゅうかんご}二週間後と決まった。

It's been decided that the final test will be in 2 weeks.

39. ^{こさめ}小雨となった。

It became a drizzle.

40a. 元気となる。△

40b. 元気になる。○

To become better.

41. みぞれが雪となりました。

The sleet turned to snow.

漢字 Note: みぞれ is rarely written in 漢字 as 霰.

Practice (4): Translate the following.

1. He became a teacher.

2. I became a teacher.

3. She became sick.

4. To get well.

^{かかく}
5a. 価格を 2000 円にするのはだめだ。

5b. 価格を 2000 円と決めるのはだめだ。（ちょっと不自然）

Practice (5): Translate the following.

1. もう先生と会わない。
 2. 昨日、公園で先生に会いませんでした。
 3. さとし なづ
智 史 と名付けた。
-

Table of Contents

Keys

There are certainly alternative ways to translate. If you believe that your translation is also correct, you should have it checked.

Practice (1)

1. 家に犬と猫がいる。
2. 牛とウサギ
3. あなたと私
4. ゲームと CD を買った。
5. ドアと椅子を ^{いす こわ}壊 した。

Practice (2)

1. (私は) 母と食事を (ともに) した。
2. カエルとともに泳いだ。
3. 鳥と虫が (ともに) 鳴いた。
4. 弟と妹と (一緒に) 映画館に行った。
5. 彼女は旦那さんと (一緒に) ^{おど}踊 った。

Practice (3)

1. ^{ほんやく} 翻訳 と比べた（か）？
2. マクドナルドとバーガーキングとの違いは何？
3. ^{ちちおや} 父親 に（よく）似ている。
4. 僕の家は彼の家と似ている。

Practice (4)

1. 彼は先生になりました。
2. （私は）^{きょうし} 教師 になった。
3. 彼女は病気になった。
4. 元気になる。
5. Setting the price at 2,000 yen is bad.

Practice (5)

1. I won't meet with the teacher.
2. Yesterday, I didn't meet the teacher in the park.
3. I named him Satoshi.

There is a lot to learn about the particle に. So, instead of having to go through it all in one lesson, this lesson will go over the rest of the basic information that you should know about it.

More on the Case Particle に

A を B にする

"A を B にする" is "to make/have A be a B way". You can alternatively see the particle と instead, but the difference between the two is that に shows the endpoint of a duration of some sort whereas と shows the content/substance of a result. This may seem arbitrary, but it will become more important later on.

"A を B {に・と} する" may also show what someone deems as or decides on. Using と sounds more formal and rigid due to its aforementioned quality. This is most prominently seen in こと {に・と} する.

This pattern may use the れんようけい of adjectives. In actuality, the に-れんようけい of だ is the particle に. So, for 形容詞 you would alternatively use ～くする, not ～くにする, which would be trying to attach a れんようけい to another れんようけい of another part of speech, which causes problems. This can also be the case for と, which also happens to be the れんようけい of タル形容動詞, an old class of adjectives of limited function.

- さつがいじけん しょうせつ
1. 殺 害 事 件 を 小 説 にする。

To make the murder case into a novel.

- おんがく
2. 音 楽 を高くする。

To make the music louder.

3. 彼は彼女を ^{しあわ}幸^せにした。

He made her happy.

4. ^{いもうと}妹^{へや}が部屋をきれいにしました。

My younger sister made the/her room clean.

5. ^{こども}子^{まんがか}供を漫^が画^か家にする。

To have a kid become a manga artist.

6. ^{におくえん}2億^{みのしろきん}円を身^{しろきん}代^{きん}金とする。

To use 200 million yen as ransom money.

7. ^{じっぱひとから}十^ぱ把^{ひとから}一^ぱ絡^絡げにする。

To lump together.

8. ^{しゃしん}写^{しゅみ}真を趣^{しゅみ}味にする。

To do pictures as a hobby.

9. すしを昼^{ひる}ご飯^{ごはん}にする。

To have sushi for lunch.

10. ポンドを円に ^{りょうがえ}両^{がえ}替^{がえ}してください。

Please change these pounds into yen.

11. ^{いわ}岩^{まくら}を枕^{ねむ}にして眠^{ねむ}る。

To sleep with a rock as a pillow.

Grammar Note: There are instances in Japanese where certain adjective れんよ
うけい do become functional nouns such as 近く (vicinity) and 遠く (afar). This,

though, combined with this phrase, which is possible, would not cause any structural problems given the definitions.

Curriculum Note: There will be more things discussed about とする over time.

- Shows the **standard of action, condition, or state**. Ex. "to lack **in** creativity".

12. じんこう かくよねんかん ばい ぞうか
人 口 は過去 4 年 間 に 3 倍 に 増 加 しました。

The population has increased three times in the last four years.

Word Note: 人口 is either おお 多い or すく 少ない, not 大きい or 小さい. Although the last sentence was different, you definitely need to know this.

13. よふ
夜更かしは体によくありません。

Staying up late is not good for your health.

14. いちにち さんかいさんぽ
僕は 一 日 に 3 回 散 歩 に行く。 (Guy speech)

I go on a walk three times a day.

15. 私の家は駅に近いです。

My house is close to the train station.

16. しょうぶ
勝 負 に勝ったよ！

I won the match!

Word Note: 勝つ should only be used to mean "to win" when talking about games of some sort. If you want to say, "to win the lottery", you need to say something like "くじがあたる".

- Shows **what brings about some sort of measure, feelings, situation, or work**. It is "by" as in "to be...by..." and the "from" in receiving.

17. ひろし 宏 にしばしば はら 腹 を立てる。

I frequently get angry at Hiroshi.

18. きみ 君 に どうじょう 同情 する。

I sympathize with you.

19. そば 祖母 僕は 小 こづか 遣 いをもらった。

I received some spending money from my grandmother.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. To answer the question.
2. I shivered in the cold.
3. He became a frog.
4. Where is the hotel?
5. There isn't a dog in the park.

More Usages

- Shows direct time. Although true, it is not used after 今日, 去年, 翌年, 来月, etc.

20. まいあさ 学校は 毎 朝 8時15分 に はじ 始 まります。

School begins every morning at 8:15.

21. かいぎ 会議 は 2時 に 終わります。

The meeting will end at 2.

22. おおさか たいざい 私は五月の終わりに 大 阪 に 滞 在 しました。

I stayed in Osaka at the end of May.

- Shows **respect** to the subject. This is used in very honorific expressions. You are not expected to know how to use the grammar, but you are responsible for the last two.

23. お宅の^{たく}皆^{みな}さまにもお^か変わりはございませんか。(Honorific)

Have there been any happenings in your family?

24. 先生にはお^{げんき}元^す氣^かでお^{よし}過^よごしの^ゆ由。(Very Honorific; quite literary sounding)

I hope that you (teacher) are all right and have been faring well.

25. 先生にもお元氣のことと思います。(Very honorific)

I presume that you are well.

- Creates pairs with a deep connection. It's often in set phrases. This is also actually used in ordering items as well.

26. 新^{しん}郎^{ろう}に新^{しん}婦^ぷ。

A bridegroom and a bride.

27. おに^お鬼^にに^{かな}金^ぼ棒^う。

A demon and a metal club.

28. 多^た勢^{ぜい}に無^ぶ勢^{ぜい}。

To be outnumbered.

Definition Note: 多勢 = "a lot of people"; 無勢 = "few people".

- Verb in れんようけい + に + same verb creates a special emphasis.

29. 待ちに待つ。

To wait and wait.

30. 赤ちゃんは泣きに泣いた。

The baby cried and cried.

Practice (2): Translate the following in polite speech (if possible). You may use a dictionary.

1. I am going to France next week.
2. Class starts at 9:00.
3. It will start in 5 minutes.
4. He went to Hawaii.
5. I brush my teeth twice a day.
6. I'll go home at 8.
7. I'll go to school on Monday.
8. **To** live in Washington.
9. I wrote a letter to my father.
10. The baby cried and cried this morning.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. 質問しつもんに答こたえる。 2. 寒さに震ふるえた。 3. 彼はカエルになった。 4. ホテルはどこにあるか; ホテルはどこ (か)。

5. 公園に犬は (一匹) いない。

Practice (2)

1. 来週 (に) フランスに行きます。
2. クラスは9時に始まります。
3. 5分に始まります。
4. ハワイに行きました。
5. 私は一日に二回歯を磨きます。

6. 私は8時に帰ります。

7. 月曜(日) (に) 学校に行きます。

8. ワシントンに住む。

Grammar Note: You could also say ワシントンで生活する and ワシントンで暮らす which focus on making a life at a location, which is why you use で. However, you can never say ～で住む.

9. 私は {お父さん・父} に手紙を書きました。

10. 赤ちゃんは今朝泣きに泣きました。

第34課: Interrogatives

ぎもんし
疑問詞 means "interrogatives", which are question words. The grammar for these words is a little different. So, don't assume that Japanese questions are constructed similarly. This lesson will go over the words for who, what, when, where, and why.

Who, What , When, Where, Why?

In English interrogatives should be sentence/clause initial, but there is no such rule in Japanese. They may be at the beginning of an utterance, but this is not obligatory. They're in the same place as their non-interrogative counterparts. You will also see sentences with more than one interrogative. Below are the equivalents of who, what, when, where, and why based on politeness level.

	Respectful	Polite	Plain
Who?	どなたでしょうか	だれですか	だれ
What?	何でしょうか	何ですか	何（なに）・何（なん）だ
When?	いつでしょうか	いつですか	いつ
Where?	どちらでしょうか	どこですか	どこ
Why?	なぜでしょうか	どうしてですか	どうして・何（なん）で

Usage Notes:

1. "Why" sentences normally end with a form of ～んですか to seek reasoning.
2. なぜ may have a harsh tone, especially by itself. It is still seen in more honorific language, but the overall tone would be ceremonious. It is often overused by learners. When in doubt, it is best to choose どうして.
3. 何で may also mean "how" as in means. Here, 何 replaces a noun otherwise used with で.

Examples

1. なんしんぶん と
何 新 聞 を取っていますか。

What newspapers do you get?

2. スミスさんはどこで何を壊しましたか。

What did Smith break and where?

3. 彼が雪の中でたきぎを なんぼん あつ
何 本 か 集 めた。

He gathered several pieces of firewood in the snow.

4. その たな じてん なんさつ
棚 には 辞 典 が 何 冊 か置いてありました。

There were some dictionaries on that shelf.

5. え、何ですか。

Eh? What?

6. 誰が病院でシアン化物を注射してもらったのか。

Who received a shot of cyanide at the hospital?

7. ぎんこう とうどり
銀 行 の 頭 取 はどなたですか。

Who is the bank president?

8. X 行きの しはつ さいしゅう
始 発 ・ 最 終 バスはいつですか。

When is the first/last bus to X?

9. じゅうしょ
住 所 はどこですか。

Where is your address?

10. 日本はどちらですか。

Depending on context this may "Where are you from in Japan?" or "Where is Japan?".

11. あの ^{かた}方 はどなたですか。

Who is that person?

12. 誰が ^{しゃちょう}社長 ですか。

Who is the company president?

13. ^{だれ}誰 がどこで ^{なに}何を ^{ばくはつ}爆 発 させたんですか。

Who detonated what and where?

14. バスの ^{あんないじょ}案内 所 はどこですか。

Where is the bus information booth?

15. いつアメリカに来ましたか。

When did you come to America?

16. いつ誰が何でどこへ逃げましたか。

Who ran away where and when by using what?

17. ^{てあら}お手 洗 いはどこですか。

Where is the restroom?

18. その ^{じこ}事故 はいつ ^お起こったか。

When did the accident occur?

19. ハワイ行きの ^{ふね}船 はいつ ^{しゅっこう}出 港 しますか。

When does the ship sail for Hawaii?

20. 今、何時ですか。

What time is it now?

21. なぜ ^{まち} 街 へ行ったのですか。

Why did you go to town for?

Meaning Note: どうして may mean "how" in some contexts.

22. どうして行かないの？ (Casual)

Why won't you go?

23. どうして彼は ^{ひざ} 膝 ^す を ^む 擦り剥いたのか。 (Rough)

How did he scrape the skin on his knees?

24. ^{なん} 何 ^{れっしゃ} で ^お 列 ^く 車 になり ^{おく} 遅 れたんですか。

Why did you miss the train?

25. チェックインカウンターはどこですか。

Where is the check-in counter?

26. どうして分かるの？ (Casual)

How do you know?

27. チェックアウトの ^{じこく} 時 刻 は何時ですか。

What's the check-out time?

Word Note: ^{じこく} 時 刻 is "time" as in a certain "instant" and should not be confused

with ^{じかん} 時 間 . Aside from these instances like in ^{じこくひょう} 時 刻 表 meaning "timetable", it is hardly used in speech.

Why Not?

"Why not" is often used in the sense of "why" in English. So, it is usually なんで in Japanese. However, when used in positive situations where one is agreeing to something, it is actually correct to use something like うん、いいね. This shows us that we should not just plug-and-chug Japanese from English. We need to think of how exactly the English words are being used before choosing the right Japanese phrase.

28. 「居酒屋に行かない？」 「うん、いいね」

"How about we go to an izakaya?" "Sure, why not".

29. 「僕の猫は肉を食べないよ」 「えっ、どうして？」 「ベジタリアンの猫だからさ」

"My cat doesn't eat meat" "What, why not?" "It's a vegetarian cat"

第35課: The Copula II

This is one of the shortest lessons in IMABI. So, feel relaxed as you go through more information about the copula in Japanese.

A Closer Look at である, だ, and です

である

である is quite **ceremonious** and normal in writing, but when it's spoken, it's forceful by presenting things as fact. A funny example is the title of a book by the famous writer ^{そうせき}漱石.

- わがはい ねこ
1. 我輩は猫である。

I am a cat.

Word Note: わがはい is a very pompous, old-fashioned pronoun, and it is well-known from this title. Aside from this title, never use this pronoun. No one uses it. We just need some comic relief.

2. 「あの君島という人は、そっちの会社の人なわけですね」

So, that Kimishima guy is someone from that company, no?

From 顔に降りかかる雨 by 桐野夏生.

Grammar Note: The reason why this example is cited is because of a peculiar avoidance of である due to formality. The 連体形 of the copula can be expressed in one of two ways depending on the situation: である and な. We know that the latter is used with 形容動詞. For instance, you say ばかな人 for "stupid person", although ばかである人 is still grammatically correct.

When you wish to use something like んだ・のだ, which is for explicit emphasis, to "nominalize" an entire phrase, な is obligatory after a noun if it is the final word. So, if you have それは魚 and want to add んだ, you have to say それは

魚なんだ。In this example, two regular nouns 人 and わけ find な in between him. It's clear in context that [そっちの会社の人] is modifying わけ. Yet, わけ is being treated a lot like の in のだ. Thus, we have yet another instance of な being more appropriate than である.

だ & です

As far as usage is concerned, both だ and です make a declarative sentence. Also, both can act as a final particle to strengthen an appeal to the listener.

3. 日本語は簡単です。

Japanese is easy.

4. 明日は休みだ。

Tomorrow is a break.

5. ぼくはアイスティー（です）。

Note: This sentence can be interpreted differently depending on context. It could show that you want to drink iced tea, brought iced tea, etc.

6. げんき。

I'm fine.

Grammar Note: The omission of the copula is allowed, but the statement loses some of its assertiveness, which could be helpful to not sound rude or blunt in the case of だ.

7. まあ、^{しゅくだい}宿題だ。

Well, it's homework (time).

8. さあ、^{しゅっぱつ}出発です。

Well, it's (time to) depart.

9. そこでだ、^{きみ}君はだね

So, you

Grammar Note: Here, the copula is used as a filler word. The same can be done with です.

10. あっかんべーだ。

Culture Note: あっかんべー is where you stick out your tongue while pulling down your eyelid.

11. 明日はですね。

So, tomorrow.

です can make some conjugations polite whereas だ doesn't! だ is plain and the basic form of adjectives and verbs are already plain.

12. 簡単ではないだ X 簡単ではないです。 O

It's not easy.

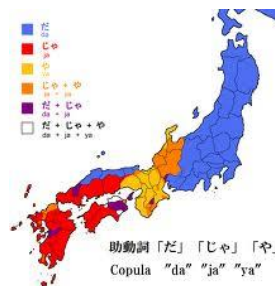
Questions:

1. What is the non-past tense?
2. What are the names of the six bases?
3. Why is かんたんです本 wrong?
4. How do you conjugate である with -た?

Variants of the Copula

The copula can look quite different depending on where you are and what speech style you are using. Aside from である, だ, and です, the following variants are important to keep in mind, but the only extra two that you will be immediately responsible for are や and じゃ. The honorific variants will be touched on at a later time.

Kansai	や	South	や、じゃ、ちや
Western	や、じゃ	Colloquial	っす
Old people	じゃ	Classical	にあり
Plain	だ	Polite	です
Respectful	でいらっしゃる	Humble	でござる



13. うそ**や**。(Kansai)

That's a lie.

14. 私は田中良治**でございます**。(Humble)

I am Ryoji Tanaka.

15. 黒木社長**でいらっしゃいます**。(Honorific)

(He) is President Kurogi.

16. 本当**だ**。(Plain)

It's real.

17. 簡単**っす**。(Colloquial)

It's easy.

Table of Contents

Keys

Questions

1. The しゅうしけい. It is either like the present or future tense depending on the context.
2. みぜんけい、れんようけい、しゅうしけい、れんたいけい、いぜんけい、めいれいけい。
3. です doesn't have a れんたいけい.
4. You change である to であり, then り becomes っ when you add -た, which gives であった.

第36課: The Particle から

Although there is a lot to know about the particle から, it is generally easier than other particles such as で for most students.

Keep in mind that there are also nouns that are homophonous (sound the same) with the particle から: 殻 (shell); 唐 (old name for China); 空 (empty). The first and last words are very important, and you will encounter them. As the grammar for nouns and particles are completely different, you should be able to distinguish them even in a spoken setting.

The Case Particle から

から means "from". Just as in English it may mark a point of transit or starting, place of departure, starting time, order, in X から Y まで to mean "from...to...", cause as in "due to", and is also the "from" used with "change", "made", "receive", "hear from", etc. This mainly goes after nominal phrases, but it is also possible for it to come after temporal adverbial expressions.

1. 左から (左 is a noun)

From the left

2. せいごま 生後間もなくから (間もなく is adverbial)

Not long after birth

Particle Notes:

1. As for "receive", から can show receiving from anything whereas に is limited to people. Thus, one could say that に shows a closer relationship as it is limited to human interaction.

2. When used to show the place of transit or departure, it may be replaced by を.

Examples

3. 太陽は東から昇ります。
たいよう ひがし のぼ

The sun rises in the east.

4. 隙間から放射線物質が漏れる恐れがあります。
すきま ほうしゃせいぶつしつ も おそ

There is a fear that radioactive material is leaking from an opening.

5. 震源は仙台から数キロ離れています。
しんげん せんだい はな

The epicenter is a couple kilometers from Sendai.

6. ヨーロッパからブラジルへ船で行きました。

I went to Brazil from Europe by boat.

7. 日本語の授業は朝9時から始まります。
じゅぎょう

Japanese class begins at 9 o'clock in the morning.

8. 会議は3時から始まります。
かいぎ

The meeting will begin at 3 o'clock.

9. 来年から開始します。
かいし

We will start next year.

10. 子犬から育てたよ。
そだ

I raised it from (since it was) a puppy.

11. 私はアメリカからです。

I'm from America.

12. 彼女はウェイトレスからそのレストランの^{しはいにん}支配人になりました。

She became (rose) from a waitress to the manager of that restaurant.

13. ハーバート・フーヴァーは^{しょうむちょうかん}商務長官から^{だいとうりょう}大統領になりました。

Herbert Hoover rose from the Secretary of Commerce to the presidency.

14. その^{きじ}記事を^{すみ}隅から隅まで読んだ。

I read that article from beginning to the end.

15. ^{にさい}二歳から^{ろくさい}六歳までの^{こども}子供がいた。

There were children from two to six years old.

16. この川からあの山まで走れ！

Run from this river to the mountain over there!

17. 彼は^{せきにんかん}責任感から^{じしよく}辞職した。

He resigned from office due to a sense of responsibility.

18. ^{さいばんかん}裁判官は^{めつ}目付きから^{かがいしゃ}加害者の^{はんだん}判断をした。

The judge judged the assailant from his looks.

19. ^{おとな}大人から^{しんさつ}診察します。

I will examine people starting from the adults.

20. これらのコンピューターは^{かくしゅ}各種50000円からです。

These computers start at 50,000 yen.

21. パンは^{こむぎこ}小麦粉から^{つく}作る。

You make bread out of/from flour.

22. 彼は^{ふちゅうい}不注意で^{かいだん}階段から^お落ちた。

He fell down the staircase due to carelessness.

23. 台座を^{だいざ}銀^{ぎん}から作る。

To make a pedestal from silver.

24. 日本は北海道、本州、九州、四国という四つの大きい島からなっています。

Japan consists of four large islands Hokkaido, Honshu, Kyushu, and Shikoku.

25. その話は先生から聞きました。

I heard that story from my teacher.

Particle Note: から is interchangeable with に in the sense of receiving.

26. ^{きのう}昨日からずっとここにいる。

I have been here since yesterday.

27. ^{はんげき}反撃が^{みなみ}南から来た。

A counterattack came from the south.

28. ^{ふちゅうい}不注意から来る^{しょうとつ}衝突

A collision (coming) from carelessness

Practice (1):

Part I: Translation

1. I go from Tokyo to Osaka every day.
2. The sun rises in the east.
3. The sun is rising in the east.

4. The meeting starts at 8.

5. 椅子^{いす}から立ち上がった男^{だんせい}性は鈴木さんです。

Part II: Questions

6. When may から and に be used interchangeably?

7. What is the difference between クラスに出る, クラスを出る, and クラスから出る?

8. Rather than from, how would you appropriately translate から in "5時からクラスに出られます (can attend)"?

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. 島から島へと飛^とんだ。

2. 昨日の夜からずっと寝^ねていません。

3. 嬉^{うれ}しさから泣き出した。

4. 本は紙からできています。

Table of Contents

Keys

There is no single right answer to the problems in this lesson. Some are free-response, and others may have many possible correct translations. Any speech style is allowed, so do not fret when the keys may not match what you wrote.

Practice (1)

1. (私は) 毎日東京から大阪まで行きます。

2. ^{たいよう}太 陽 ^{のぼ}は東に 昇 る。

3. 太陽が東に昇る。

4. 会議は 8 時に始まります。

5. The man that just got up from the chair is Mr. Suzuki.

6. から and に may both show where one receives something. They may also be used in relationship to time and distance, but から specifically shows starting point.

7. クラスに出る means "to attend class", but クラスから出る and クラスを出る means "to leave class".

8. After

Practice (2)

1. I flew from island to island.

2. I haven't slept since last night.

3. I burst into tears due to happiness.

4. Books are made from paper.

第37課: The Particle まで

The particle まで often goes hand in hand with から, with it being the "to" in "from X to Y". Don't let classification confuse you as this particle is either a case or adverbial particle.

Pronunciation Note: Do not pronounce this like the English word "maid". Don't even think about it. It's just so bad that it could cause a Japanese's ear to bleed. Seriously, don't.

The Case Particle まで

The particle まで is most commonly seen in the pattern から...まで, which means "from...to...". This can be used to refer to temporal, locational, spatial, or quantity boundaries. So, this pattern can be used in situations like "from 1 to 3 o'clock", "from the car to the street", or "from 1 meter to 4 meters".

まで is the equivalent of "to/until/till". This particle is seen a lot after nouns and temporal adverbial nouns like 今. However, it may also be seen after verbs but never in the past tense.

With Nouns	N + まで	明日まで; 京都まで; そこまで; 1 リットルまで
With Verbs	Non -past V (連体形) + まで	終わるまで; 消えるまで; 歌い始めるまで

Tense Note: Do not use it with the past tense. This doesn't make sense because "until" is describing an event that has yet to actually happen. So, it's illogical to use the past tense which refers to something already done/taken place.

Examples

1. 9時から5時まで仕事をします。

I work from nine to five.

2. 僕は9歳^{さい}までローマで^{そだ}育ちました。

I was raised in Rome until I was nine.

3. さいきん^{さいきん}最近までアメリカに住んでいました。

I was living in America until recently.

4. 仕事が始まるまでの休み時間は^{すば}素晴らしい。

The free time until work starts is wonderful!

5. さいご^{さいご}の^{ひとつぶ}一粒まで食べてください。

Eat to the last grain.

6. いつまでここにいるのか。(Harsh)

Until when are you going to be here?

7. 足の下の^{たたみ}畳^ひまでが冷えて来るので、一人で^ゆ湯に行こうとすると、

「待って下さい。私も行きます。」と、今度は女が^{すなお}素直について来た。

As I was trying to go bathe alone because even the tatami mat underneath my feet was getting cold,

she then this time came and said meekly, "Wait for me. I'm going too".

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

Grammar Notes:

1. When reading things from actual books, you are going to inevitably encounter grammar you've not seen before. In this sentence, ～までが shows us that particles like が and を can follow まで even though まで is a case particle. This, though, has to deal with the fact that this particle was once a noun. In which,

this wouldn't be that exceptional. This pattern is somewhat uncommon. However, you should know that these phrases are possible and are occasionally used.

2. **ので** shows reason in this sentence.

3. **行こうとすると** is a combination of several things, but the phrase as a whole shows that when the speaker starts to try to go, the following thing happens.

までに

Be careful in adding the particle **に** to **まで**. **までに** = "by (the time)", which is quite different. This can be seen after stuff as simple as **一時**. So, **一時までに** = by 1 o' clock. It could also be after the non-past form of a verb, such as in **死ぬ(とき)までにやりとげる** = to accomplish by (the time) one dies. Note that you can also easily add **とき** in case this makes things easier. This pattern shows the time for which something is to be realized.

8. ^{れいじ} 零時 ^{さんさつ} までに 三冊 読む。

To read three books by midnight.

9. 日が出るまでに寝る。

To sleep until the sun rises.

10. ^{さんこう} ご 参 考 まで(に)

For your information/reference

Particle Note: This phrase is so common that it might as well be viewed as a set phrase. It is a little more polite with **に**. The role of **まで(に)** loosely falls under the usages described thus far. The idea is that the speaker is trying to indirectly suggest a reference, and if the listener gets to the point by which it would be useful to use, that person can do so.

Practice (1): Translate the following.

1. こども おとな
子 供 から 大 人 まで
2. 1 時から 2 時まで勉強をした。
3. Please do your homework by tomorrow.
4. I'll come home by 10 o' clock.
5. I will wait until noon.

Culture Section: Trains

Trains are the most popular way to get anywhere in Japan. The 新幹線 (bullet train) continues to connect more and more of Japan. 緑の窓 口 ^{まどぐち} is the "Green Window" and is where you buy reserved seat tickets (^{していけん} 指 定 券) as well as long distance tickets. Most stations also have a machine to do this as well. However, you're more likely to find about deals if you go to an actual window. You can buy tickets in ticket vending machines (^{けんばいき} 券 売 機). ^{にゅうじょうけん} 入 場 券 let you see people off on the platform, ^{ていきけん} 定 期 券 are season tickets, ^{かいすうけん} 回 数 券 are discounted tickets.

11. 大阪までの ^{きっぷ} 切 符 を 4 ^{まい} 枚 ください。

Four tickets to Osaka please.

12. オースティンからダラスまで 4 時間半かかる。

It will take 4 and a half hours from Austin to Dallas.

13. 私たちは ^{いっしょ} 一緒に駅まで行きました。

We went together up to the train station.

14. このバスは ^{きょうと} 京都まで行きます。

This bus goes (up) to Kyoto.

15. 新宿までいくらですか。

How much is it to Shinjuku?

Geography Note: 新宿 is a major commercial and administrative center.

16. 一週間までの間で名古屋に ^{なごや} ^{さんぱく} 三泊した。

I stayed three nights in Nagoya in a span of up to one week.

Counter Note: The counter for overnight stays is ～泊.

^{さんこう}
ご参考まで

For your information

ご参考までに (A little more polite than if it were without に)

For your reference

The Adverbial Particle まで

The adverbial particle まで exemplifies an extremity. This is by nature showing degree, but extremity has a great sense of intensity to it. The emotional aspect separates it from the case particle. Aside from that, it also has peculiar usages. Even so, when just after a noun or verb, it's not that obvious that it's any different from what you've just seen above.

17. オレのガールフレンドまでもオレを ^{うたが} 疑ってるんだよ。 (Masculine; rough)

Even my own girlfriend doubts me.

18. どこまでオレを^{にく}憎むのか。(Masculine; rough)

To what extent do you detest me?

19. 今まで（に）見たこともない^{けしき}景色だよ。

I've never seen such scenery before.

20. 私は今までずっとスウェーデンに住んでいます。

I've been living in Sweden all this while.

（ほど）までに

When it is after the 連体形 of a verb or in （ほど）までに, it shows to what extent something has reached. Unlike the case までに, what it is after isn't necessarily the actual end point. For instance, the speaker in the example obviously didn't actually die. Having ほど there, which is a particle from a noun meaning "extent", helps. However, the sentence could easily not have it.

21. 死ぬほどまでに^{くる}苦しんだ。

I suffered to the point of death.

～までも・～までもを

～までも, of course, is quite emphatic, but you may be surprised to find out that ～までも and ～までもを also exist, and if your teachers deny it, they need to face reality the same way people need to recognize that "ain't" is indeed a word in the English speaking world.

Remember that we are using the adverbial particle まで. When being very formal in one's speech, the particle を surfaces in this pattern. Why? With the

change in category, no matter how arbitrary it may seem, it is a logical trigger for を to appear.

Some speakers don't like either patterns, which is fine. If speakers just don't like one of them, it'll be ～までもを that they don't like. Compounds like までに are fine, but other combinations like はを or もに are just wrong. These facts lead to speakers' opinions of liking ～までもを but not ～までもを.

Nevertheless, both are and have been used, and even the egregious ～までもを appears in the famous novel 海辺のカフカ by the renowned author 村上春樹. This man is no idiot, and although this doesn't mean he never messes up his grammar, it's highly likely that he thinks it's quite OK and probably used it on purpose.

22. 日本人までも ^{みりよう}魅 ^{いぶんか}了 ^{しゅうかん}した異文化の習 ^{かん}慣

A tradition of another culture that has even fascinated Japanese people

23. あの ^{せんそう}戦 ^{おっと}争 ^{しゅうせんご}で愛する ^{こんらん}夫 ^{こんらん}と父をなくし、終 ^{こんらん}戦 ^{こんらん}後 ^{こんらん}の混 ^{こんらん}乱 ^{こんらん}の中で母 ^{こんらん}までも ^{こんらん}をなくし、あわただしい結婚生活の中で子どもをもうけるいとまなく、

^みいらいてんがい ^{まい}こどく ^{まい}の身を ^{まい}かかえて生きて ^{まい}参 ^{まい}りました。(Humble, written speech)

I lost my beloved husband and father in that war, and I even lost my mother in the turmoil after the end of the war, and with there being no time to bear a child in my busy married life, I have since picked myself up and lived on alone with no relatives.

From 海辺のカフカ 上 by 村上春樹.

Translation Note: If you go word for word in the original Japanese, you'll see that it doesn't match literally with the English translation. However, if you were to give a literal English translation, you'd end up with a bad translation. Sometimes you have to take liberties in translating, and that's completely fine so long as you still captivate the meaning of the original text as best as can be done.

～てまで

Some people get utterly confused when they see this pattern. Nothing has really changed, but the implication of using this is slightly different than a phrase with just "Non-past+まで". This shows that one goes all the way to doing action X. This is often used with the particle *のに*, which means "although".

24. ^{けんみんたいかい} 県民大会 ^{ひら} を開いて ^{はんたい} まで反対 ^{うった} を訴えた ^{はいび} のに、オスプレイは配備されてしまった。

Although we voiced our protest by going as far as to open a meeting of the prefecture citizens, the Ospreys ended up being deployed.

From NHK on January 22, 2012.

25. 10万ドル ^{はら} 払ってまで UT 大学に入りたくないよ。

I don't want to go to UT to the point of paying 100,000 dollars.

26. 体を壊してまで、仕事を続ける。

To continue the/a job until one hurts one's health (literally: until one breaks one's body).

27. 「苦肉の策」は自分の身を傷めてまでも敵を欺くことを指す言葉です。

"Kuniku no saku" is a phrase that refers to deceiving an enemy even to the point of hurting oneself.

～まで（のこと）だ

～まで（のこと）だ shows that nothing else extends out of the action in question. This can be used with the past tense because the particle is literally only being used in the sense of "extent". So, just as you can "to the extent I have done"

in English, you can say in Japanese したまでだ. This, though, does not negate the fact that there are still situations just like earlier in which using the past tense with まで would be unnatural. The のこと that is optional in the phrase is essentially just a filler phrase.

28. かんが ごと
考 え 事 をしていたまでです。

I was just thinking (and nothing more).

29. たかが しけん う
試 験 に受かったまでのことではないか? (Somewhat mean)

Isn't it that you merely passed the test?

Used with the negative, まで shows a meaning of "no need to do so". With this, there are two important situations. ～まで (のこと) もない means "there's no need to..." and ～ないまでも means "even though it's not necessary to...at least...". ～たまで is impossible.

30. それをするまでもない。

There's no need to do that.

31. てがみ
手 紙 に書くまでもないことだから、 でんわ つた
電 話 で 伝 える。

Because it's not necessary to write a letter, I'll tell you on the telephone.

32. たし
確 かめるまでもなく あき
明 らかだった。

It was clear without even having to make sure.

33. それは言うまでもないよ。

That goes without saying.

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. それまでだ。

2. そんなことはいうまでもないが。

3. にゅういん 入院 しないまでも、きゅうよう ひつよう 休 養 が 必 要 です。

4. どこまで行くのか。

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. From children to adults

2. I studied from 1 to 2 o' clock.

3. 明日までに しゅくだい 宿 題 をしてください。

4. 十時までに帰ります。

5. しょうご 正 午 まで待ちます。

Practice (2)

1. That's the end of it.

2. It goes without saying that, but...

3. It's not that you need to be hospitalized, but you do need rest.

4. How far will you go?

第38課: Adverbs I

Adverbs (副詞) modify verbs or adjectives, and although adverbs may show up in various places in a sentence, they are typically used at the beginning of a sentence. This isn't a rule, and you still see adverbs just about anywhere. It is simply a trend that you will become familiarized with. Adverbs come from various sources. So, not every kind of adverb will be discussed in this lesson, and we will continue learning more about adverbs in consecutive lessons.

The first thing you need to know about 副詞 is that there are also four main kinds from a grammatical standpoint. Although you're not responsible for knowing the names provided below, you should know what they refer to.

じょうたいふくし 状態副詞	Used with verbs to show condition.	まだ = Still
ていどふくし 程度副詞	Used with adjectives to show degree.	もっと = More
じょじゅつ ちんじゅつ { 叙述・陳述・ こおう 副詞 呼応 }	Are used with the predicate in a specific conjugation.	決して (~ない) = Never
しじふくし 指示副詞	Those that describe how something is (done).	こう (like this); そ う (like that)

状態 means "condition" and 程度 means "degree". The overwhelming majority of adverbs will qualify something in these manners. The words 叙述, 陳述, and 呼応 are not quite the exact same thing. However, they all refer to adverbs that must take ない.

陳述 stresses that one is declaring forthright the negation is to be so. So, it's a perfect word for something like 決して. 叙述 is descriptive. So, it makes sense to call something like 全然 one because it means "not at all". 呼応

means "agreement" in the sense of grammar. So, it is the blanket term of the three and accounts for any adverb that must take ない.

Adverbs

Most adverbs come from nouns. This sometimes makes it hard to tell when an adverb phrase is actually being used as a noun or not, which can cause some particle problems. However, we'll learn more about how to discern between the two parts of speech when a word can be either or. You've actually already gotten used to such words. **Temporal words** and **counters** are great examples of things that can be nouns or adverbs.

Only a handful of adverbs are true adverbs--もう (already). A "true adverb" can never be used as nouns, and not surprisingly, they don't appear to come from nouns at all.

Below are some of the most common adverbs in Japanese. Before we get to example sentences, we'll need to take into account the notes that follow the chart.

Now	今	Today	本日、今日	Yesterday	昨日
Tomorrow	明日	Already	もう	Still; yet	まだ
At that time	その時	A little	少し、ちょっと	Sometimes	時々
Immediately	すぐに	Fairly; quite	かなり	Almost	ほとんど
Again	また	Completely	まったく	Suddenly	とつぜん

Usage Notes:

1. The general reading for 今日 is きょう. こんにちは is formal and usually expected if used in formal writing. In general speech, it is usually limited to こんにちはは. こんにちは is a rather outdated reading that you should not expect to see.
2. 本日 is read asほんじつ, not ほんにち. It is very formal and usually treated as a

書き言葉.

3. 明日 is formally read as みょうにち. あす is slightly more formal than あした, but both are common readings in the spoken language.

4. 昨日 is formally read as さくじつ. However, this is usually restricted to very honorific speech or writing. Its normal reading is きのう.

Examples

1. 彼女はまだ時計の^{みかた し}見方を知らない。

She still doesn't know how to tell time.

2. とりわけ今日は寒い。

Today is particularly cold.

3. ^{きゅうきゅうしゃ}救急^{にだいき}車が二台来ました。(Polite)

Two ambulances came.

4. ついに^{ふゆ お}冬も終わった。

Winter has finally ended.

5. ^{やくひん}薬品は^{げんざい}現在かなり^{やすね}安値ですね。(Formal)

Pharmaceuticals are currently fairly cheap, aren't they?

6a. ちょっと^{あたた}暖かいね。(Casual)

6b. {すこし・ちょっと} 暖かいですね。(Polite)

It's a little warm, isn't it?

Vocab Note: あたたかい is written as 温かい in reference to heat of touch or emotion and 暖かい as in reference to climate, body temperature, and even color. あたたかい may also be あたたかな or even あったか {い・な} in casual speech.

Remember that な is used before nouns. As for "hot", 熱^{あつ}い refers to things being hot and 暑^{あつ}い refers to the weather being hot.

7. 役^{やく}に立つ調^{ちよう}理^り法^{ほう}がこの本にはたくさんありますか。

Are there are a lot of useful recipes in *this* book?

Grammar Note: たくさん may either be used as a noun or an adverb. Never say たくさんな when using this as a noun quantifier. However, this is used in sentences like the following. The な below is replacing である to mark the relative clause.

8. 写真が沢山な本

A book with a lot of pictures

9. メニューがたくさんなレストラン

A restaurant with a lot of menus

Word Note: 今 = now. 今に = before long. 今にも = at any time; nearly. Whatever you do, don't mix them up. Exs. 今に見てろ! = You'll see!; 今すぐ = Right now.

もう VS もっと

Both have meanings of "more". The first, though, can be used in the sense of "once more/further" and the second is "more" as in the degree of something. Aside from that, もう also means "already" and "shortly".

10a. もう 一^{いっかい}回 ○

10b. もっと一回 X

Once more

11. もっと時間が^{ひつよう}必要だ。

I need more time.

12. ^{すし}寿司をもう食べた。

I already ate the sushi.

13. もっとお金が^{ひつよう}必要です。

More money is necessary.

14. もう一つ上のクラスに^{うつ}移った。

I've already switched to a class above (the previous one).

15. もうすこしがんばって。

Just keep on a little bit more.

16. もう終わった。

It has already ended.

Adverbs from the Particle て

Some て phrases are adverbial. These phrases have no "conjunctive" role as the literal grammatical function of て has been lost in them. It is best to treat them as separate words in your vocabulary. See ～て II for a more detailed grammatical description on this phenomenon.

17. 歩いて10^{ぶん}分 かかります。

It will take 10 minutes by foot.

18a. それは初めて聞く話です。

18b. それは初めて聞きました。

18c. それは初耳です。(Idiom)

That's a new story to me/That's first in my ears.

Table of Contents

第39課: Adverbs II: From Adjectives

This lesson is about how you can get adverbs out of any adjective in Japanese. It'll be easy!

Adjective → Adverb

Using the 連用形, you can make adverbs out of adjectives. For ^{けいようどうし}形容動詞, use に, and for ^{けいようし}形容詞, use く. These adverbs are normally translated with "-ly".

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
強い	Strong	強く	Strongly	静か (な)	Quiet	静かに	Quietly
弱い	Weak	弱く	Weakly	かんたん (な)	Easy	かんたんに	Easily
遅い	Late	遅く	Late	まじめ (な)	Serious	まじめに	Seriously
小さい	Small	小さく	Small	きれい (な)	Pretty; nice	きれいに	Nicely

1. ^{かんたん}簡単に ^{せつめい}説明する。

To easily explain.

2. ^す楽しく休日 ^すを過ごす。

To spend the holidays merrily.

3. 彼女は ^{おろ}愚かに ^{だいとうりょう}大統領に手紙を { ^{おく}出しました・送りました } 。

She foolishly sent a letter to the president.

4. 何かを小さく切る。

To cut something into small pieces.

5. 彼女は毎日静かに勉強します。

She studies everyday quietly.

6. インディゴで ^{せんめんだい}洗 ^そ面 台 が青く染まった。

The washbasin was dyed blue by indigo.

7. あの電気が赤く ^{かがや}輝 いた。

That light over there shined red.

Phrase Note: "(Adjectival) adverb + なる" = "to become...". For exam-

ple, ^{しんごう}信 号 が青くなった means "the light turned green". 青, not ^{みどり}緑, is the color used for streetlights for "green". The opposite of this grammar pattern is "(Adjectival) adverb + する", which means "to make..." as in implementing a change.

8. ^{あね}姉 は ^{やさ}優 しくなりました。

My older sister became nice.

9. 静かに ^{すわ}座 っている。

To be sitting silently.

10. もう少し静かにしてください。

Please be more quiet

11. 冬には ^{たいよう}太 陽 は早く ^{しず}沈 む。

The sun sets early in the winter.

12. ふか いき す
深く 息を吸う。

To take a deep breath.

Caution Note: Not all adverb phrases will be made similarly. For example, ひつ
よう
要に is not used. "Necessarily" is instead かならず 必ず.

Exception Note: Although けっこう may be used as a 形容動詞, it's adverbial form is just けっこう.

13. 今日はけっこう寒いです。

Today is quite cold.

Exception Note: 少しく happens to be a word too, and it means "just a little", which is very similar to 少し. It is not very common, but you can still come across it. The word comes from when 少し was an adjective.

14. すこ
少しく思うところを述べる。

To state a little bit of what you think.

15. やまい すこ い くわ
病は少しく癒ゆるに加わる。 (Set Phrase)

Just when you get a little better, you have another illness.

Sentence Note: Set phrases often have older forms of many words. In Modern Japanese, 癒える is used instead of 癒ゆる.

Practice (1): Translate the following.

1. 説明を みじか
短くする。

2. It became large.

3. 安くしてください。

4. Please clean up your room.

5. ^{かみ}髪 を長くします。

Part of Speech Note: This process is not the only way to make adjectives into adverbs. There are other endings that can derive adverbs, but they will be discussed later on in IMABI.

たし 確 か VS 確かに

確か means "certain", but as an adverb, it's often paired with だろう・でしょう to mean "if I'm not mistaken". The other adverb form 確かに means "certainly". So, they're slightly different.

16. ^{せかい}世界の人口は、確か 70 億ぐらいでしょう。

The population of the world, if I'm not mistaken is around 7 billion people.

Grammar Note: Notice the absence of the counter ～^{にん}人. The key word is "population".

17. 確かに木が^{たお}倒れるでしょう。

The tree will certainly fall.

18. 確か（か）？

Is that for certain?

19. 確かな^{けっこん}血 痕 があります。

There are definite blood stains.

Nuance Note: 多分 is less certain than 確か and きっと is more certain than 確かに.

よく

Depending on context, よく either means "well" or "often". The deciding factors include where it is placed in the sentence and what verb it is used with. When よく is closer to the start of a sentence, it is normally interpreted as "well". Context also helps.

20. よくある ^{もんだい} 問題

Frequent/common problem

21. 彼は英語を {よく・^{じょうず}上手に} 話します。

He speaks English well.

22. {よく・注意して} 聞いてください。

Please listen carefully/well.

23. 東京によく行く。

To go to Tokyo often/frequently.

24. 「よく日本に来ますか。」 「いいえ、あまり来ません。」

"Do you come to Japan often?" "No, I don't come very often".

25. よく東京に行く。

To go to Tokyo nicely.

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. I know him well.

2. They play a lot/often.

3. ^{もんだい} 問題をよく見る。

4. ^{じしん} 地震がよくありますか？

5. よくインスタント ^{しょくひん}食 品 を食べる。
6. よくお酒を飲む。
7. よくやった。
8. よく考えてください。
-

Ends in に but not from 形容詞

Even though an adverb may end in に, this doesn't mean it necessarily comes from an adjective. Though this is usually the case, there are still very commonly used exceptions to this.

26. ^{げんじょう}現 状 は ^{ただ}直 ちに問題はありません。

There are no problems present right now.

27. レンタカーで直ちに ^{くうこう}空 港 を出発しました。

(I/we) immediately left the airport in a rental car.

Adverbs from Doubling Verb/Adjective Roots

There are actually a handful of adverbs made this way. Examples in-

clude ^{たかだか}高 々 (と) (very high/at most), ^{かるがる}軽 々 (と) (easily/lightly), ^{と と}飛び飛び
(に) (scattered here and there), and ^{か が}代わる代わる (alternately).

There also rarer ones from the doubling of the 終止形 of verbs such as 泣く
泣く (in tears; reluctantly). Note that the と & に in these adverb phrases are not
grammatically necessary but are common.

28. 私たちは高々と旗を上げました。

We hoisted the flag high.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1)

1. To cut the explanation short.
- 2.大きくなった。
3. Please make it cheaper.
- 4.部屋へやをきれいにしてください。
5. To have one's hair long.

Practice (2)

- 1.彼をよく知っている。
- 2.彼らはよく遊ぶ。
3. To closely look at the problem; to look at the problem well.
4. Are there often earthquakes?
5. To often eat instant food.
6. To drink a lot.
7. Well done.
8. Please consider it well.

第40課: Adverbs III: Syntax Agreement

Syntax agreement is just a fancy phrase used to describe in this instance adverbs that have specific meanings when used in a positive or negative sentence, and the adverb may specifically require being in a negative sentence.

Positive & Negative

Some adverbs must be used in a negative sentence. Others can be in either positive or negative sentences, but translations change. This can get quite tricky.

Adverb	Positive	Negative
全然	Extremely/a lot (Colloquial)	Not at all
絶対に	Absolutely	Never
あまり	Quite/too	Not quite/very
決して		Never
もはや	Already	No more
[すこし・ちっと]も		Not a bit

Point 1: Examples of the colloquial usage of 全然 include 全然 ^{だいじょうぶ} 大丈夫 (completely fine), 全然 ^{ゆかい} 愉快だよ (I'm completely happy).

Point 2: Examples of ^{ぜったい} 絶対 (に) include the following.

1. 絶対に ^{かくしん} 確信 があります。

I'm absolutely sure.

2. 絶対に ^{ゆる} 許 さない。

I will never allow/forgive.

3. 絶対に ^{ちが}違 う！

Absolutely not!

Point 3: あまり is more common in negative contexts. あんまり is a colloquial variant due to ん insertion. In positive contexts, it implies that a limit has been passed, making it similar to 非常に (very/greatly/much/quite).

4. あまりうまくない。

I'm not really good.

5. きのうは、あまりいい天気だったね。

Yesterday was quite good weather, wasn't it?

6. あんまり分かんない。(Colloquial; 東京弁)

I don't quite understand.

7. あんまり ^{うんどう}運 動 しません。(More spoken)

I don't exercise much.

Point 4: With negative expressions とても means "not at all". とっても is a more forceful variant.

8. とてもできない。

I simply can't/I can't at all.

9. とても疲れた。

I'm very tired.

10. 中国語はとっても難しい！

Chinese is very difficult!

Point 5: ^{けっ}決 して may be casually pronounced as けして.

More Examples

11. 全然分からない。

I don't understand at all.

12. ドアは閉^しまらない。

The door won't shut.

13. 彼らは一切テレビを見ません。

They don't watch television at all.

14. その日はちょっと...

That day is a little...

Culture Note: Japanese is indirect and so are the people that speak it. When people want to decline an invitation, they often say ...はちょっと with a very reluctant tone.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. I don't understand a bit.

2. 絶対（に）そうじゃない。

3. あまり背^せは高くない。

4. あまり図書館に行かない。

まだ VS ぜんぜん

In a negative sentence, まだ means "yet; still hasn't". ぜんぜん is "not at all".

15. まだ雨が降っています。

It's still raining.

16. 「もう書きましたか」「いいえ、まだ書いていません」

"Have you written it?" "No, I haven't written it yet".

17a. まだ^ね寝ていません。？

17b. まだぜんぜん寝ていません。○

I still haven't slept (at all).

Grammar Note: In English in the sentence above, "at all" is understood when told "I still haven't slept". However, in Japanese for its own semantic reasons, simply using まだ alone sounds unnatural in this context. Compare this, though, with the following two examples.

18. まだ寝ない。

I still won't sleep.

19. ぜんぜん寝ない。

I won't sleep at all.

Misconceptions on 全然

In school Japanese are taught that 全然 should be used with the negative. Although this is the prescriptive rule for Japanese today, in actuality it has never had this restriction. The word is relatively new through borrowing from Edo Period Chinese. At the time, it was given the translations 根っから and すっかり which both roughly equate to "completely", but the first one is most like 全然, being used with both positive and negative sentences.

Getting closer to modern times, the meaning changed to show that "although one thought one recognized a little bit, one actually doesn't comprehend anything". Because this became the taught definition in schooling since, this has been ingrained in the minds of most people.

Now the word has changed its meaning again in spoken casual language to mean とても. So, now you get sentences like ぜんぜんおいしい and ぜんぜん大丈夫. The former, though, may sometimes have the nuance of "not thinking it would be delicious but turns out it is quite alright".

So, can you use it in a positive sentence? Yes. Should you use it in official documents or formal writing? No. You must go with the standards of the times.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice (1)

1. {少しも・ちっとも} 分からない。
2. Definitely not.
3. He's not very tall.
4. He doesn't often go to the library.

第41課: 擬声語 I: 擬音語

Japanese has a lot of onomatopoeic words that not only describe sound but also physical and mental states. Unlike English, they are more numerous and found in all sorts of speech for reasons you will learn in this lesson. These words are often hard to translate, but don't let this be a problem for you.

Onomatopoeia: What are They?

The Japanese word for onomatopoeia is typically ^{ぎせいご}擬声語, although オノマト (ペ・ペー・ペア・ピーア) exist, which are various attempts at transcribing the English word. However, as you will learn, English and Japanese 'onomatopoeia' are quite different. So, we will say that the foreign term refers to onomatopoeia in an English-sense: the imitation of sounds.

In Japanese, ^{ぎせいご}擬声語 is a blanket term for three types of onomatopoeic words. This lesson will be about the first kind, but the three types are ^{ぎおんご}擬音語 (imitate sound), ^{ぎたいご}擬態語 (imitate states), and ^{ぎじょうご}擬情語 (imitate emotion).

Spelling is a tricky matter. These words are typically written in かな. However, it is the writer's choice which one you choose. Some can be written in 漢字. These spellings are mainly あて字.

擬音語

The definition of a ^{ぎおんご}擬音語 is directly tied to what it's used with. Most onomatopoeic expressions in Japanese have several usages, and not all might fall into the same category. Because we are only dealing with ^{ぎおんご}擬音語 in this lesson, we will not see usages of any word introduced that fall out of this category.

Common 擬音語

ぺこぺこ (と・に)	Being hungry	がらがら (と・に)	Rattling
ドキドキ (と)	Heart beating	しくしく (と)	Silently (weeping)
ぺらぺら (と)	Fluently	ざーざー (と)	Raining very hard

1. **ぺこぺこ**: With と it refers to being servile or dented.
2. **がらがら**: When followed by と, it refers to the sound of something solid crashing, a tire revolving, gargling, clattering, or rattling.
3. **ぺらぺら (と)**: This may also be the sound of flipping pages.
4. **ざーざー**: It can also refer to the sound of radio static.

Part of Speech Note: Some verbs are based off of onomatopoeia. Ex. はためく (to flutter)

Voicing Note: Voiced onomatopoeia often have a more serious or dramatic tone to them versus their very similar non-voiced counterparts. They are often antonyms. For instance, からから can refer to clattering, but がらがら can refer to solid crashing or really loud clattering (at the least).

Various Realization

Let's say that a common property of onomatopoeic expressions is that there is a root. This root can be doubled and result in something like しくしく. Now, not all onomatopoeia will have as many possible forms as others. So, you should learn onomatopoeia one at a time, but you can always look to see if a certain form exists.

To look at the wide variety of things that can happen, we will use □□ (sound of something rolling) as an example.

コロッ(と)	Insertion of ッ after root	Looks like it's going to roll
コロン	Insertion of ン after root	Bounces back and rolls
コロリ	Insertion of リ after root	Rolls once and stops
コロコロ	Duplication of root	Rolls in succession
コロンコロ ン	Duplication of root + ン	Rebounds with more momentum while rolling
コロリコロ リ	Duplication of root + リ	Intermittent rolling

Derivation Note: There are cases when a ッ may be inserted inside the root, but this can't happen here because the consonant inside the root is r.

Of course, there can always be other words derived from onomatopoeia. Please note that you always have your irregularities. Sometimes different forms have different nuances, although always related. This does not include non-onomatopoeic words with repeating elements. This is really just something you have to mess around with and test the limits of.

Examples

1. 日本語がぺらぺらですね。

You speak Japanese very fluently, don't you?

2. シャリン 車輪 はくるくる かいてん 回転 した。

The wheels turned around.

3. しとしとと雨が ふう 降る。

To drizzle.

4. ごそごそし（と）している虫

Bugs squirming around

5. 女性^{じょせい}たちががやがやと話していた。

The women were talking loudly.

6. お腹^{なか}がぺこぺこだよ。

I am very hungry!

7. ゴロゴロと^{かみなり}雷が鳴っている。

Thunder is rumbling.

8. 大きな木がどさっと倒れた。

The large tree thudded down.

9. ぱたんと^し閉める。

To shut with a bang.

10. しんとした森

A silent forest

11. 滴^{しずく}がぽたぽたと落ちていた。

The drops were plopping down.

12. 雨が^{やね}屋根を^うパラパラと打っていた。

The rain was pattering on the roof.

13. ぐつぐつ（と）^に煮る。

To simmer.

14. ざわざわ（と）する

To hum

15. 風がぴゅうぴゅうと吹^ふいている、寒い日でしたね。

It was a cold day with the wind really blowing, wasn't it?

Grammar Note: The last example shows how a verbal expression can be used as an attribute when another attribute is used at the same time. Notice the use of the comma.

Saying

To harp	くだくだ（と）い う くどくど（と）い う	To nag	がみがみ （と）する	To be fluent	ぺらぺら （と）
To mur- mur	ぶつぶつ（と）い う	To buzz	がやがや	To be out- spoken	ぽんぽん （と）いう
To chat- ter	ぺちやくちゃ （と）しゃべる べらべら（と）し ゃべる	To scold	がんがん （と）いう	To swallow	ぼそぼそ （と）いう
To whis- per	ひそひそ（と）い う	To grunt	ぶうぶう （と）いう	Noisily	わいわい （と）

Eating & Drinking

To gulp	ごくごく（と）飲む がぶがぶ（と）飲む ぐっと飲む	To guzzle	がつがつ（と）食べる
Crunchy	こりこり（と）する	Scraping; hard to the teeth	ごりごり（と）
To gobble	ぱくぱく（と）食べる	To suck	ちゅうちゅう（と）吸う
To swallow	ごくり（と）飲む ごくん（と）飲む	To gnaw	がりがり（と）かじる

Laughter

To sneer	せせら笑う	To chuckle	くすくす（と）笑う	Laughing Sounds	あはは: いひひ うふふ: えへへ おほほ: ははは ひひひ: くっくっ
To cackle	けらけら（と）笑う	To guffaw	げらげら笑う		

Laughing Sounds Notes: Each of the different options in the lower right hand corner have different nuances. The first is a rather happy laugh; the second is more sinister; the third is a feminine chuckle; the fourth is used when you're embarrassed; the fifth gives an impression of rich people; the sixth is a loud laugh; the seventh is like the second; the last is a stifled laughter.

With 来る

With onomatopoeia and と, 来る shows some sort of reaction. This may be a physical or an emotional reaction. Whatever the case may be, the verb still keeps its sense of "to come".

16. わさびが ^{はな}鼻 につんと来たよ。

Wasabi got in my nose big time!

17. ^{せいでんき}静電気がびりっと来る。

For static electricity to shock you.

18. ぼくにはしっくり来ない。

It doesn't fit well with me.

19. ぴったり来る音楽

Agreeable music

20. カチンと来る。

To get angry.

第42課: から, ので, & のだ

Showing reason is a very complex matter in Japanese, but these three items, two of which are related to each other, will give you a basic understanding of how to do this.

から

The most important usage of the conjunctive particle から is to connect clauses to mean "because". It shows reason and may solicit a response, suggest something, or any means that appeals to the listener. If the sentence is polite, the clause it modifies should be too.

から doesn't have to be used after a dependent clause to show reason. It may also be at the end of a sentence. When at the end of the sentence and followed by だ, you can make a strong assertion. Without a copula, though, you show reason with more emotional appeal. Regardless, if から is used with nouns or 形容動詞, it **must** be preceded by the copula!

から goes after the 終止形. So, you should use it after verbs, adjectives, or a copula phrase.

だ	だから	ですから	形容詞	いいから	形容動詞	静かだから	動詞	するから
---	-----	------	-----	------	------	-------	----	------

In Standard Japanese, you cannot say なから. However, it does exist in certain dialects. For the purposes of Tokyo speech, it is deemed incorrect.

Examples

- じかん きゅうけい
1. 時間があるから、休憩をしない？

Since we have time, how about taking a break?

2. 機械が壊れたからです。
きかい こわ

It's because the machine broke.

3. 明日、試験があるからです。
しけん

It's because I have an exam tomorrow.

4. 簡単だからだ。
かんたん

It's because it's easy.

5. あいつが馬鹿だからだな。 (Masculine)

It's because he's an idiot, you know.

のだ VS のだから

から can mean "because" and のだ strongly shows reason. Thus, んだから has it that the listener knows the "why". The speaker, then, **reasserts**. If the listener doesn't know the "why", then it's extremely pushy. A clause following のだから often expresses the speaker's judgment, intent, wish, etc.

6. 間に合わなきやいけないから、急いで！時間はたっぷりねーんだよ。間に合わなきやいけねーんだから、急げ！ (Casual; vulgar)
ま いそ

We have to make it on time, so hurry! We don't have any time. We have to make it, hurry!

～ なきやいけない is a casual form of ～なければいけない, which means "to have to/must". ねーんだよ is the same thing as ないんだよ. It is just more vulgar. 急げ is the imperative form of "to hurry" and is more forceful than 急いで.

ので

ので, んで in casual speech, is used to show reason or cause. Unlike から, it must only be used in this way. So, you should not use it with an imperative of any sort. Also unlike から, ので is used to show reason of present circumstance where there is no control in the matter on your part. It is objective in nature, and so it's also weaker. Appropriate translations include "since", and "because".

Unlike から, ので follows the 連体形 of adjectives, verbs, and copula phrases.

だ	なの	で	です	ので	形容	よいの	形容動	静かなの	動	するの
	で	す	*		詞	で	詞	で	詞	で

だ ので is actually seen every now and then, but it feels like old-fashioned speech or dialectical speech to Tokyo speakers. Because you can find it in literature and even in manga and video game text at times, it's important to note that it does exist.

Another important thing to note is the status of です。 It is technically incorrect Japanese, but it has become frequently used to the point that is now correct Japanese. What makes it technically problematic is the fact that polite phrases should not have a 連体形 because politeness shouldn't be expressed in an attribute.

This rule, though, is relatively new in Japanese, and it really has no bearing over ので. In fact, you can also find ～ます。 This, however, will be considered ungrammatical by more speakers than です。 Why this is the case is not clear, but it probably has to do with part of speech and the formal nature of ので. If someone doesn't like ～ます, the person is probably from West Japan.

Examples

7. 今日は暖かいので、桜も満開になるでしょう。

Since it is warm today, the cherry blossoms will likely be in full bloom.

8. 宿題をし終わったので、外へ遊びに行った。

Since I finished my homework, I went to play outside.

9. その料理は思ったよりおいしくなかったので、^{ひとくち}一口しか食べませんでした。

Since that dish wasn't as good as I thought it would be, I didn't eat more than a bite.

10. 彼が^{びじゅつかん}美術館に行きたいというので、^{あんない}案内してあげた。

Because he said he wanted to go to an art museum, I took him around.

11. あまりに寒いので、ストーブをつけた。

Since it was so cold, I turned on the heater.

12. 日本語が上手になりたいので、^{いっしょうけんめい}一生懸命勉強します。

As I want to become good at Japanese, I'll study with all my might.

13. 「^{つつ}包みは^{こうくうびん}航空便でいくらですか」「600グラムですので、1500円になります」

"How much will it cost (to send) for the package?" "Since it is 600 grams, it will be 1500 yen".

Grammar Note: The latter part of Ex. 13 in more traditionally correct Japanese would be 600グラムなので、1500円です. This is because the use of になります in this way is a recent invent inspired by business-style honorifics, and a lot of older speakers still don't like it. Its usage, though, is very pervasive.

When at the end of a sentence, *ので* is either preceded by *in the sentence* or the conversation, whether implied or explicitly said, and is essentially a softer version of *のだ*.

14. すまない、もう先約があるんで。

Sorry, I've got a commitment.

15. 終電に乗りたいので。

I need to catch the last train.

Sentence Note: Ex. 15 is in response to a question.

つつ こうくうびん
「包みは航空便でいくらですか」「600グラムですので、1500円になります」

“How much will it cost (to send) for the package?” “Since it is 600 grams, it will be 1500 yen”.

のだ

のだ **decisively shows reason**. It may strongly emphasize an *exclamation, reasoning, cause, grounds, or desire*. It is used when, for instance, you are responding to having been asked for a reason or explanation. のだ allows the speaker to

not become detached in conversation. However, it can't be used to just state a fact. It's going to show reasoning of some sort.

You can see it as のだ (more literary), んだ (spoken), のである (literary), and のでございます (honorific form). It must follow the れんたいけい 連体形 of an adjective or verb. So, use なのだ with a noun.

Noun	けいようし	けいようどうし	Verb
犬 な のだ	新しいのだ	だめ な のだ	見るのだ

のか・[のですか・んですか] is the question form, which inquires **why** and is perfect for asking for a reason or explanation. In certain situations it may not be appropriate because of tone. の alone can also make a question in casual speech.

It shows reason with a falling intonation in feminine speech. As expected, のだ may be used to create a blunt question.

Tenses

The following chart lists the following *potential* conjugations involving tense and or negation for 〜のだ. The chart below shows these forms for when 〜のだ is used with a nominal phrase. For anything else, simply take away any existing な. As will be discussed in more detail, this chart does not imply each form below is equally used and natural in any circumstance. It is important to not go and run with this but be cautious as to what is frequently used and when.

	Plain	Polite
Non-past	〜なのだ	〜なのです
<i>Past</i>	〜なのだっ	〜なのでした
Past	〜だったのだ	〜だったのです
Negative	〜なのじゃない	〜なのじゃないです
Negative	〜じゃないのだ	〜じゃないのです
<i>Negative Past</i>	〜なのじゃなかった	〜なのじゃなかったです
Negative Past	〜じゃなかったのだ	〜じゃなかったのです

This chart is for the sake of having all of these basic forms represented. It does not imply that all of these phrases above could even work with any given noun such as 犬. All of these forms are grammatically correct, though some of them would need a lot of context to be natural, and the language for some of them may have to be more old-fashioned to work.

Patterns italicized are rarer and literary. If bold and italicized, it means that it is rare/older as shown, but it may be frequently used with ～ん instead of ～の. ～のだった is like a rather forceful and also explanatory "it so happened that".

～ のじゃない, just like ～じゃない, is often used to ask for verification, but in this sense you are wanting explanation. Even so, you'd be hard pressed to hear ～のじゃない?. Instead, you would hear ～んじゃない? If you wanted the の, ～のではないか would be your next best option. However, this form is more indicative of 書き言葉 or very serious utterances. You should separate this from the の じゃない that comes about from using の as a dummy noun and then following it with the copula.

～ のじゃなかった is like "it wasn't that". Again, in actually speaking this form as well is usually んじゃなかった. This is the case for all of these forms.

ん is 話し言葉的 and の is 書き言葉的. This statement is for this grammatical circumstance, but it is also true that ん is more colloquial in nature where ever it shows up in Japanese. This statement does not also deny the potential of の being used in these forms at all in the spoken language. As you will see, ～のです and ～のですか do get used in careful politeness speech, but ～んです and ～んですか are certainly more prevalent.

Examples

16. 負けなかったんだ。

I didn't lose.

17. もうすこし安いのはないんですか。

Do you not have a cheaper one?

18. 行かないんじゃない?

You're not going, right?

19. 行くんじゃない？

Aren't you going?

20. あの水は飲むんじゃないかった。

That water was not to drink.

21. この ^{つぎ} 次 ^{どようび} の土曜日に来るんですか。

Will you be coming next Saturday?

22. ^{かぜ} 風邪 ^ひ を引いたんだ。

I caught a cold. (Reason)

23. 今はコーヒーを飲みません。もうすぐ ^ね 寝るんです。

I won't drink coffee now. I am going to bed soon.

24. すみません、^の 乗り ^{おく} 遅れたのです。

Sorry, I missed my ride (vehicle).

25. ^{つゆ} 梅雨はいつ終わるんですか。

When is the rainy season over?

26. 「どうして納豆がすきなんだ？」 「おいしいんだ」

"Why do you like natto?" "It's delicious."

27. 友だちが待っているんです。

My friend is waiting.

Particle Note: The particle **ので** is actually just the **-て** form of this. It shows specific reasoning and is translated as "because/since".

Practice: Translate the following into English. You may use a dictionary.

1. できなかったんだ。
2. 暑いので、^{がいしゅつ}外 出 はだめです。
3. この手紙、^{きみ}君 が書いたんですか。
4. お金をかりました。車を買うんです。
5. どうして行かないの？ (Feminine)
6. 買ったのが悪いんですよ。
7. 私の名前は山田です。
8. 本当だったのか。

Table of Contents

Key

Practice (4)

1. (Because) I couldn't do it.
2. Since it's hot, going out is useless.
3. This letter, was it you who wrote it?
4. I borrowed money. So, I'm buying a car.
5. Why won't you go?
6. The one I bought is bad.
7. My name is Yamada.
8. Was it really?

第43課: The Particle のに

This particle is very similar in grammar to **ので**. However, it serves a different function.

のに

～**のに** follows the 連体形 of a conjugatable part of speech. So, when using the copula, say ～**なのに**. Because it wants the 連体形, it wants to be after a predicate phrase. So, this particle never actually attaches to nouns. Rather it attaches to the copula verb used with the noun. Thus, ～**なのに** is not a separate point at all and is merely a product of following the rule of how to connect things with ～**のに**.

～ **のに** shows that the latter statement differs from the former, "although". Again, the second clause has to be contrary to what is expected from the first clause. If not, ～**が** or ～**ても** should be used. It is not uncommon to see it used as a final particle.

Nouns	犬 な のに	Must use copula
形容詞	新しい い のに	Must not use copula
形容動詞	簡単 な のに	Must use copula
Verbs	食べる る のに	Must not use copula

Grammar Note: ～**のだに** is a combination of **の** and **に**. ～**だのに** is used by some speakers and is viewed as being rather dialectical. Do not use it in Japanese class because you would be marked wrong.

1. あら、もう ^{さんばい}三杯 も食べた**のに**、また ^かお代わり？ (Somewhat feminine)

My goodness, you've already had three helpings, but you want another one?

2. 信じていたのに、^{うらぎ}裏切られた。

Although I believed in him, I was betrayed by him.

3. 急いでいるのに、バスが来なくて、困りました。

Although I was in a hurry, the bus didn't come, so I was troubled.

4. 彼はとても年を取っているのに元気ですよ。

Although he's very old, he's healthy!

5. あれだけ言ったのに私の生徒たちはみなこの前の試験に合格しませんでした。

Despite after what all I said, all my students didn't pass the last exam.

6. 怪我をしているのに、（^{しゅうい}周^{はんたい}囲の）反^{けが}対をおして怪我をしているのに、^{たたか}戦い続けた。

Despite voices of opposition around me and my injuries, I continued to fight.

7. ぼろなのにまだ一番だ。

Although it's shabby, it's still the best.

Spelling Note: ぼろ can also rarely be written in 漢字 as 襤褸.

8. 姉は75歳になるのに、まだ^{こじんきょうじゅ}個人教授をしている。

Although my older sister turns 75, she still does tutorials.

Spelling Note: せっかく can be written as 折角.

9. 食べないの。せっかく作ったのに。

You're not going to eat it? Even though I went through all the trouble of making it?

10. あれほどまでしてできたのに。

If only I could have done it like that.

11. 早く雨が上がるといいのに。

It would be good for the rain to let up quickly...

～たらいいのに

～ たらいいのに shows regret. It is often used with the potential. It can also be used in proposal of ideas. It is normally translated as "if only".

12. ^{たいきん}大金があつたらいいのに。

If only I had a lot of money.

13. (お) 金持ちだったらいい。

It would be nice if I were rich.

Translation Note: Notice the slight change in translation without のに in Ex. 13.

14. あなたは日本へ行ったらいいのに。

It would be nice if you went to Japan.

15. 彼ともう一度会えたらいいのに。

I wish I was able to meet with him one more time.

～ばいいのに

～ ばいいのに・ばいいのだが・ば{なあ・ねえ} are like "although it would be good if you". This suggests that the person is doing the contrary. "You" doesn't have to be the only subject. It could be an "it".

16. 雨がやめばいいのだが。

Although it would be nice for the rain to end...

17. 彼はもう少しゴルフがうまければなあ。

If only he could be a little better at golf.

18. 「このごろ 太^{ふと}っちゃって...」 「もっと 運^{うんどう}動（を）すればいいのに。テニスとかバスケとか（して）はどう」

"I've been getting fat recently" "It would be nice if you exercised more. How about doing tennis, basketball, or something?"

19. 「漢字が覚えられないんです」 「辞^{じしょ}書（を）引けばいいのに」

"I can't remember Kanji" "It would be nice if you used a dictionary".

20. 「漢字が覚えられないんです」 「毎日読めばいいのに」

"I can't remember Kanji" "It would be nice if you read".

21. 前^{まえむ}向（き）に考えればいいのに。

It would be nice if you thought positively.

22. 「試^{しけん}験（てん）の点（てん）が悪くて...」 「もっと勉強すればいいのに」

"I did bad on my exam" "It would be nice if you studied more".

Nuance Note: ～ばいいのに is a little cold. So, more nicer patterns to suggest

things to people or your friends include ～たらどうですか and ～たらいいと^{おも}思（い）います. You can also add context to make the suggestion more 柔らかい "soft".

23. 「お金がなくて、困^{こま}ってるんだ」 「仕事を探せばいいのに。最^{さい}低^{てい}運^{うん}賃^{ちん}で
も一^{いち}文^{もん}なしよりいい（ん）だろう」

"I'm troubled because I don't have any money" "It would be nice if you got a job. Minimum wage is better than being penniless".

24. 一日 40 時間あればいいのに。

I wish there was 40 hours in a day.

25. 雨が^{はげ}激しく降ればよかったのに。

I wish it would have poured.

Table of Contents

第 44 課: The Date & Telling Time

In this lesson you will learn about dates and telling time. Some words are very similar, so try not to confuse things with each other.

The Days of the Week 曜日

The ^{ようび}曜日 come from the seven luminous bodies: the sun, moon, Mars, Mercury, Jupiter, Venus, and Saturn in that order.

Sunday	日曜日	にちようび	Monday	月曜日	げつようび
Tuesday	火曜日	かようび	Wednesday	水曜日	すいようび
Thursday	木曜日	もくようび	Friday	金曜日	きんようび
Saturday	土曜日	どようび	What day?	何曜日	なんようび・なにようび

The days of the week may be abbreviated to just the first characters on signs, calendars, etc. You can also hear the -び dropped too.

1. それは、月曜日に^お起こった。

That happened on Monday.

2. いっしゅうかん ま なか
一 週 間の真ん 中 の日は何曜日ですか。

What is the day of the week that is in the middle of the week?

3. これは ^{しんぶん}新 聞 の ^{にちようばん}日 曜 版 の ^{りょこうとくしゅう}旅 行 特 集 です。

This is a travel supplement of the Sunday newspaper edition.

4. 火曜日から木曜日まで働きます。

I work from Tuesday to Thursday.

5. 明日は何曜（日）ですか？

What day of the week is tomorrow?

6. 今日は何曜日ですか。

What's today?

7. 木曜日は水曜日の^{まえ}前ですか、^{あと}後ですか？

Is Thursday before or after Wednesday?

8. ^{あさって}明後日は土曜です。

The day after tomorrow is Saturday.

9. なぜ日曜日には^{せいと}生徒は学校に行かないんですか。

Why don't the students go to school on Sunday?

10. 水曜日に来てください。

Please come on Wednesday.

11. 日曜日は一週間の始めの日で、土曜日は終わりの日だ。

Sunday is the first day of the week, and Saturday is the last day.

Exercises:

1. Try to use the Japanese days of the week rather than in English. Get others involved to help you remember them.

2. Write out the days of the week in order 10 times.

Months and Days

The months are simply made by using Sino-Japanese numbers with 月（がつ）.

January	一月	February	二月	March	三月
---------	----	----------	----	-------	----

April	四月	May	五月	June	六月
July	七月	August	八月	September	九月
October	十月	November	十一月	December	十二月

Pronunciation Note: April, July, and September are しがつ, しちがつ, and くがつ specifically. So, do not use the other readings.

The days of the month are have many exceptions from native words.

1st	一日	ついたち	2nd	二日	ふつか	3rd	三日	みっか
4th	四日	よっか	5th	五日	いつか	6th	六日	むいか
7th	七日	なのか	8th	八日	ようか	9th	九日	こののか
10th	十日	とおか	11th	十一日	じゅういち にち	12th	十二 日	じゅうにに ち
13th	十三 日	じゅうさんに ち	14th	十四日	じゅうよっ か	15th	十五 日	じゅうごに ち
16th	十六 日	じゅうろくに ち	17th	十七日	じゅうしち にち	18th	十八 日	じゅうはち にち
19th	十九 日	じゅうくにち	20th	二十日	はつか	21st	二十一 日	にじゅうい ちにち
22nd	二十二 日	にじゅうにに ち	23rd	二十三日	にじゅうさ んにち	24th	二十四 日	にじゅうよ っか
25th	二十五 日	にじゅうごに ち	26th	二十六 日	にじゅうろ くにち	27th	二十七 日	にじゅうし ちにち
28th	二十八 日	にじゅうはち にち	29th	二十九 日	にじゅうく にち	30th	三十 日	さんじゅう にち
31st	三十一 日	さんじゅうい ちにち	?	何日?	なんにち?			

Word Notes:

1. **ついたち** is a contraction of つきたち, meaning the start of the month. The 1st may also be いっぴ in business/law.
2. The 2nd~10th, and 20th deal with native numbers. Sound changes in a few of them make this less obvious.
3. **七日** is なぬか in older speech. Be careful on how to read 四, 七, and 九.
4. The last day of a month is ^{みそ}晦・^か三十日 and New Year's Eve is ^{おおみそ}大晦日. For counting days in general, the regular counter -にち is used.
5. The first three days of the New Year is (^{しょうがつ}正月) ^{さん}三 ^{にち}が日. 三が日 may also be spelled as 三箇日.

Practice (1): Translate the following. Give the days of the month in かな.

1. Excuse me. What day is it?
2. Today is the March 25th.
3. It is May 1st.
4. I came to Japan on the 10th.
5. 四月ばか

Hours, Minutes, and Seconds

The hours of the day are made with ～時 (じ) . The 24 hour system is often used in Japan.

0 : 00	零時	れいじ	1 : 00	一時	いちじ	2 : 00	二時	にじ
3 : 00	三時	さんじ	4 : 00	四時	よじ	5 : 00	五時	ごじ
6 : 00	六時	ろくじ	7 : 00	七時	しちじ	8 : 00	八時	はちじ
9 : 00	九時	くじ	10 : 00	十時	じゅうじ	11 : 00	十一時	じゅういちじ

12 : 00	十二 時	じゅうに じ	14 : 00	十四時	じゅうよじ	17 : 00	十七 時	じゅうしち じ
19 : 00	十九 時	じゅうく じ	24 : 00	二十四 時	にじゅうよ じ	?? : 00	何時	なんじ

Word Note: "Midnight" is either 零時^{れいじ}, 黄昏^{たそがれ}, or 夜中^{よなか}. However, the word 黄昏 is like "twilight" in the sense that it is not frequently used in the spoken language.

"Minutes" is 分^{ふん} and there are sound changes with certain numbers that you have to be aware of. However, "seconds" is 秒^{びょう} and there are no sound changes to worry about. As for minutes and seconds, 4, 7, and 9 are usually よん, なな, and きゅう.

1 min.	一 分	いっぶん	2 min.	二 分	にぶん	3 min.	三 分	さんぶん
4 min.	四 分	よんぶん	6 min.	六 分	ろっぷ ん	7 min.	七 分	ななぶん
8 min.	八 分	はっぶん・は ちぶん	9 min.	九 分	きゅう ぶん	10 min.	十 分	じゅうぶん・じ つぶん
100 min.	百 分	ひゃっぶん	1000 min.	千 分	せんぷ ん	? min.	何 分	なんぶん

Reading Note: More and more speakers are starting to pronounce 四分 as よんぶん. To a lesser degree, 三分 is starting to be pronounced as さんぶん by some people. In the coming years, these pronunciations will become more common. In the mean time, use the standard pronunciations above.

Periods of Time

To count period of days, hours, minutes, seconds, months, or years, use ～
にちかん じかん ふんかん びょうかん かげつかん
日 間 , ～時 間 , ～分 間 , ～秒 間 , and ～ヶ 月 間 , and 年間 respec-
tively. As for 4, 7, and 9, よ and しち are used with hours, but よん, なな, きゅう,
are pretty much the dominant variants. 間 is only required in 時間.

～間 can also follow exceptional variants for days. Instead of ～にち間, you can
see the irregular native words. For example, みつか
三日 (間) can be read as such in-
stead of as さんにち (かん) .

12. じゅっかげつかん
十 ヶ 月 間

A period of 10 months

13. じゅういちがつにじゅうきゅうにちげつようびしちじななふん
十 一 月 二 十 九 日 月 曜 日 七 時 七 分

Monday the 29th of November at 7:07.

14. なんにち
何 日 ですか。

What's the date?

15. ろくがつはつか ひづけ はい
六 月 二 十 日 の 日 付 が 入 っている。

It's dated as June 20th.

16. ねんがっぴ ねん がつ にち
年 月 日 は 2010 年 4 月 22 日 です。

The date is April 22, 2010.

17a. つぎ でんしゃ
次の電車は何時ですか。

17b. 次の電車はいつですか。

When is the next train?

18. その3日後^ごに

Three days after

19. いっかげつ やくよんしゅうかん
一ヶ月には約四週間ありますよ。

There are about four weeks in a month.

20. にかげつぶん はら
2ヶ月分を払う。

To pay 2 months' worth.

21. はちじだい ばんぐみ
8時台の番組

Eight o' clock program

22. 中2日

Two days in between

Phrase Note: Using なか before such a time phrase shows a period of time sandwiched in between two time points. Say you write a blog post on the 5th and make another on the 8th. That period of time in between can be referred to with 中3日. The same readings for the days of the month are used.

23. 一両日中に

In a day or two

Phrase Note: This phrase is formal and read as いちりょうじつちゅうに. 両 is used to show repetition of a day, which would then be "two days".

The Suffix ～旬

～旬 means "tens days of a month" and is used in the following phrases.

上旬	じょうじゅん	First ten days of the month
中旬	ちゅうじゅん	Middle ten days of the month
下旬	げじゅん	Last ten days of the month

24. ^{らいげつじょうじゅん はっぴょう}来 月 上 旬 に 発 表 します。

We will announce it in the first ten days of next month.

25. ^{がつちゅうじゅん しゅっちょう}7 月 中 旬 に 出 張 することになりました。

It has been decided that I am to go on a business trip in the mid-September.

26. 2012 年 11 月下旬

The latter part of November in 2012.

Phrase Note: You may also see 月のはじめ and 月の終わり.

A.M & P.M and Other Time Specifying Phrases

A.M and P.M are replaced by 6 expressions that come first in a time phrase. They may either be used as nouns or adverbs. As nouns they refer to the time of day.

Morning	5 to 11 AM	午前、朝	ごぜん、あさ	Noon	12 PM	昼	ひる
After-noon	1 PM~evening	午後	ごご	Evening	Evening	夕方	ゆうがた
Night	Night~12 AM	夜	よる	Dusk	12 AM~4 AM	深夜	しんや

Word Note: This process can be simplified by simply using 午前 for a.m and 午後 for p.m.

Quarter and Half

Half Past (...:30)	半 (はん)
Quarter Past (...:15)	過 (す) ぎ
Quarter To (...:15)	前 (まえ)

Meaning Note: The latter two words 過ぎ and 前 are given ballpark estimates of the general time most people think is implied when you use them.

27. 今は午前 7 時半です。

It is 7:30 a.m now.

28. 午後 3 時過ぎ

Quarter past 3 p.m

29. 夜 10 時前

Quarter to 10 p.m

The Date

In Japanese the date is made by saying the year first, month second, and day last with no use of particles. This all agrees with "macro vs micro" syntax hierarchy. There is a traditional way of forming the date, but we will see this later on. Dates are normally written in Arabic numerals, but you can still see instances that the date is written in 漢字. For instance, the date on a coin is always in 漢字.

30. 二千九年八月十日

August 10, 2009

31. 二千十年二月二十四日

February 24, 2010

32. 二千七年九月九日

September 9, 2007

Word Note: 世紀 means century and we are in the 21 世紀. The 21 century began on 2001 年 1 月 1 日.

Table of Contents

Exercises

Change the time into Japanese (1-5)

1. 12:45 A.M

2. 12:45 P.M

3. 4:38 A.M

4. 6:50 P.M

5. 7:39 A.M

6. List the days of the week in Japanese.

7. List the months in Japanese.

Change the dates into Japanese (8-10)

8. April 25, 1978

9. November 4, 2006

10. May 28, 1894

第45課: Absolute Time I: Basic Phrases

Absolute time expressions indicate a relatively exact time frame and are often sensitive to tense. They are generally adverbial nouns. This means that they usually can either function as nouns or adverbs depending on context. So, pay attention to how this affects particle usage.

Absolute Time

The following table shows many single word absolute time phrases in Japanese. Patterns to be discussed in this lesson help fill in the gaps. Take note of patterns. There are word notes after the chart. So, be sure to not overlook them.

Chart Note: Variants are listed from most to least polite. ▽ stands for rare.

時間帯	2...ago	Last...	This...	Next...	2...from now
Day	一昨日 いっさくじつ おととい	昨日 さくじつ きのう	本日、今日 ほんじつ、 こんじつ ▽ こんにち きょう	明日 みょうにち あす あした	明後日 みょうごにち あさって
Morn- ing		昨朝 さくちょう	今朝 こんちょう う ▽ けさ	明朝 みょうち よう	
Even- ing	一昨晚 いっさくばん	昨晚・タベ さくばん・ゆうべ	今晚 こんばん	明晩 みょうばん	

Night	一昨夜 いっさくや	昨夜 さくや	今夜 こんや	明夜 みょうや	
Week	先々週 せんせんし ゅう	昨週、先週 さくしゅう ▽、 せんしゅう	今週 こんしゅ う	来週 らいしゅ う	再来週 さらいしゅう
Month	先々月 せんせんげ つ	先月 せんげつ	今月 こんげつ	来月 らいげつ	再来月 さらいげつ
Year	一昨年 いっさくね ん おとし	昨年、去年 さくねん、きょね ん	今年 ことし	来年 らいねん	明後年、再来年 みょうごねん、さ らいねん

Word Notes:

1. 先日^{せんじつ} means "the other day". 本月^{ほんげつ} (this month) and 本年^{ほんねん} (this year) exist, but they are very formal and typically in written addresses. However, note that although 本朝^{ほんちょう} exists, it means "our nation" instead of "this morning".

2. Changing 一昨^{いっさく} to 一昨々^{いっさくさく} creates "3...ago". However, the Chinese readings are not used in the spoken language and should be reserved for the written language. For the native words おととい and おとし, you can さき to get さきおととい (three days ago) and さきおとし (three years ago) respectively. It is these native readings that should be used in actual practice.

3. "3 days from now" can be 明々後日^(しあさって・みょうごにち) or 明日^{あした}の
よくよくじつ
翌々日^{ふたふたにち}.

4. 今年 may be read as **こんねん** in certain contexts such as in the phrase **今年度** (this fiscal year).

5. It's funny to note that **明々後日** exists too, and its native counterpart is **やのあさ** って. These words are not really used that often because **4 日後** is much easier.

6. 昨 can sometimes be very formal. For instance, **去年** will be used most of the time when speaking. The words **昨春**, **昨夏**, **昨秋**, and **昨冬** are all **書き言葉**.

Making other Absolute Time Expressions

The following expressions are very important when you can't use a specific, one word time expression like the ones above. Some of these expressions are not really used and some may be more formal than others. All of these details are discussed in the word notes following the chart.

3...ago	一昨昨+Time Word	2...ago	一昨	Last...	この前の
This/next...	今度の	Today's...	今日の	Next...	この次の
1 after next	翌々 (の)	Day	日	Morning	朝, 午前
Evening	夕方, タベ, 夕暮れ, 晩, 夕	Night	夜, 夜間	Week	週(間)
Month	月, 月間	Year	年, 年(間)		

Word Notes:

1. **夜間**, **週間**, **月間**, and **年間** are all formal and more likely to be used in the written language. **週間** and **年間** are common in the spoken language, but they are still more formal.

2. The differences between the words for "evening" are subtle. **タベ** is often poetic, but it may also refer to an event held at night. So, "music night" would be **音楽のタベ**. **夕** is essentially the same as **夕方**, but it's often used in set phrases. **夕暮**

れ is very commonly used, and as the character 暮 suggests, it especially refers to the time when the sun is actually going down. Lastly, 晩 is the closest equivalent to the generic English word "evening" and is a commonly used word.

3. You may use よく^{よく} ~ for "next" for expressions that use 来^{らい} ~. Frequency of use depends on the expression. The difference between 翌週 and 来週 would be the same as the difference between "the next week" and "next week" in English. This is the same for the other expressions.

4. 翌々 is usually used without a の. You can use it with days, months, and years. Something like 翌々2016年 would it equate to "2016, the year two years from now". The word is not quite that common, and you are more likely to see it in writing.

5. 一昨々 has the reading いっさくさく. It is not used in the spoken language, and neither are other Sino-Japanese phrases made with it such

as いっさくさくじつ 一昨々日 and いっさくさくしゅう 一昨々週. For 一昨々日 and 一昨々年, there are the native readings さきおととい and さきおとし respectively, and they're actually used. So, say you wanted to say Monday three days ago, you would need to say さきおととい げつようび 一昨々日の月曜日.

6. 一昨 for "2...ago" is read as いっさく and is rare. This is mainly due to the fact that it is Sino-Japanese. When it is used, it is appended without the particle の to a time phrase. So, you get phrases like 一昨^{みっか}3日 meaning "the third, which was two days ago".

7. If you want to realistically go past two units of time either direction (past or future), it is more practical to say things 5年前 (five years ago) or ^{みっかまえ}3日前 (three days ago). Of course, sometimes one of these cooler phrases like さきおととい (=

3 日前). Nevertheless, # + Time Phrase + 前(before)/^ご後 (after) is more frequently used once you leave the sphere of the common words like きのう, きょう, あした, etc.

Examples

1a. さくばん じ ね
1a. 昨 晩 12時に寝た。 (More common)

1b. 昨晚零時に寝た。

I went to sleep at midnight last night.

書き言葉 Note: 零時 is often very formal. It is frequently used, though, to tell when an event is.

2. アニメクラブは7時から^{れいじ} 零 時 までです。

Anime club is from 7 to midnight.

3. きのう仕事を休みました。

I took a break from work yesterday.

漢字 Note: Words like きょう and きのう are usually written in ひらがな due to ambiguity in reading caused by 漢字.

4. 今年は^{せいさんだか お} 生 産 高 が落ちた。

Production has gone down this year.

5. 彼女は一昨年^う 生 まれ ました。

She was born the year before last.

6. 翌日の^{じゅぎょう よしゅう} 授 業 の 予 習 をする。

To prepare for the next day's lessons.

Classroom Note: You should always 予習 before your Japanese class to get more out of what your teacher says.

7. ^{こんしん}懇親の夕べを過ごした。(Somewhat formal)

We spent a social evening.

8. 今朝はたいそう寒かったですね。

This morning was quite cold, wasn't it?

9. この前の火曜日に面白い^{えいが}映画を見ましたよ。

I saw an interesting movie last Tuesday!

10. 明日の朝8時に^お起こしてください。

Please wake me up at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning.

11. あの人は瞬^{しゅんじ}時に(して)猿^{さる}になった。

That person became a monkey in an instant.

12. 「今年^{ことし}の冬^{ふゆ}は寒^{さむ}いでしょうか」 「天^{てん}気^き予^よ報^{ほう}では寒いかどうか分かりません」

"Will this winter be cold?" "I don't know whether or not it's going to be cold in the weather forecast"

Times

Times (Frequency): The Counters ~度 VS ~回

Many Japanese speakers when asked what the difference between ^{いちど}一度 and ^{いっかい}一回 are often said to be the same. However, natives unknowingly make distinctions. What might those distinctions be? First, consider the following sentence where they are completely interchangeable.

13. 私はその本を {2度・2回} 読んだ。

I read that book twice.

14. {2度・2回} の^{ふわた}不渡り

Second bouncing/non-payment

Despite the fact that they both count the number of times an action occurs, there are instances where you choose them liberally. One restriction is that ～度

can't be used with ^{だい}第 ～ or ^{ぜん}全 ～. ～度 is also not used with decimals.

15. 6回^{れんぞく}連続で^{さんか}参加している。(6回 → 6度 ?)

I've been participated six times consecutively.

16. 今年は^{まつ}祭りが2度やってくる。(2度 → 2回 ?)

The festival will come twice this year.

17. 第4回^{かんけいかくりようきようぎ}の関係閣僚協議 (第4度 X)

The fourth relations cabinet conference

18. 週3.7回の^{へいきん}平均

An average of 3.7 times a week

19. ^{ぜん}全20回20回のコンサート

All 20 concerts

20. 2度の^{たいけん}体験をよい学習として^い生かす。(2回 ?)

To use the second experience as a good lesson.

When the number is more than 10, some of these restrictions go away. It's also interesting to note that ～度目 is used twice as much as ～回目. Remember that example with 6 回連続? Something like 5 年連続 100 度目 would be completely fine. For instances where they are interchangeable, 回 is more common. However, 度 is particularly common with the number 2. Also, as the number gets larger, 回 is less frequent. So, if a headline were to have "third non-payment" in it, odds are that it would have 3 回. If a company somehow did this for the 15th time, we would expect to see 度.

When counting the frequency/repetition of an action in a particular time frame, use ～回. This is in terms of years, days, etc. and doesn't take on details such as minutes, etc. In such case, you'd expect 度. Something like 月に三度 is possible, but this doesn't show frequency.

21. 毎年、この村では祭りを 3 回行います。

We have festivals three times annually in this village.

～度 would count repetition that is uncertain and or irregular. Other expressions that deal with series or segmenting statistically prefer ～回. One last thing to consider is that ～度 is often used in regards to things that are hard to predict and ～回 is preferred overwhelmingly when the number of times of something can be known beforehand.

22. 10 度目の ^{ゆうしょう}優 ^{めざ}勝 を目指す。

To aim for the tenth victory.

23. 3 年 ^{れんぞく}連 ^め続 3 度目の ^{ゆうしょう}優 ^{めざ}勝

The third consecutive victory in three years

Frequency Note: Remember that ～度目 is generally twice as common as ～回.

24. 4度目の^{ふっかつ}復活は難しい。

A fourth restoration is difficult.

25. 3回のセミナー

The third seminar

26. ^{さいかいご}再開後6回目の^{かくじっけん}核実験

The sixth nuclear tests after restart

Table of Contents

第46課: Before

Using before is not all that hard in Japanese.

Before: 前

When used as a temporal word, 前 means "before". It can be used with verbs in the non-past tense or with other nouns. Because 前 is also noun, you need to use the particle の when it is after another noun phrase.

1. それはどのくらい前のことでしたか。

How long ago was that?

2. 私は ^{りょこう}旅行 に行く前に、トラベラーズ・チェックを買いました。

I bought traveler's checks before I went on my trip.

重言 Note: Some speakers use 旅行に行く, but this is traditionally incorrect. It is more correctly 旅行（を）する. This is because 旅行 literally means "going on a trip".

3. 私は日曜日 ^{ごと}毎 ^{きょうかい}に 教 会 へ行きます。

I go to church every Sunday.

4. ^{かいがい}海 外 ^{りょこう}旅行 の前に、パスポートを ^と取る。

To get a passport before going abroad.

5. 食べる前に、手を ^{あら}洗 います。

I wash my hands before I eat.

6. ^{ぼく}僕 が帰る前に、ホストファミリーのお ^{かあ}母 さんは ^{りょうり}料 理 をしました。

Before I got home, my host family mother cooked.

7. これは 11 年前の新聞だ。

This is a newspaper from 11 years ago.

8. 日本に行く前に、ちょっと日本語を勉強しました。

I studied some Japanese before going to Japan.

9. 彼は 3 年前に死んだ。

He died three years ago.

10. 彼は 3 年前に死んでいた。 (今になってわかったこと)

He's been dead for three years.

11. 彼は 3 年前に死んでいる。

It's been three years since he died.

Word Note: 亡^なくなる is more neutral than 死ぬ for when someone passes away.

前: ぜん

前 also has the reading ぜん. When used as a suffix after Sino-Japanese words, it is a very formal and suitable for 書き言葉. Its usage is almost unheard of the spoken language, but it is part of the official reading of many phrases in the jargon of many fields.

12. いちにち 1 日 3 回 食 前^{しよくぜん} に 服 用^{ふくよう} してください。

Please take (medicine) three times a day before eating.

Word Note: 服用する is more formal than 飲む and is used in settings in which medical terminology is most appropriate.

Reading Note: 一日 is not read as ついたち when 一日 is used to mean "a day".

13. 使用前自主検査 ^{じしゅけんさ}

Independent/autonomous inspection before use

14. 期日前投票

Early voting

Reading Note: Many people would think きじつぜんとうひょう meant 期日全投票. So, in the spoken language, this word should be read as きじつまえとうひょう.

15. 出生前診断

Prenatal diagnosis

Reading Note: 出生 is usually read as しゅっしょう. However, some organizations use the reading しゅっせい. For instance, in medical terminology 出生届 (birth registration) is read as しゅっせいとどけ despite the fact that most people say しゅっしょうとどけ. In the spoken language, 前 would be read as まえ as expected.

As a prefix, it is used to mean "ex-". However, it comes with the word 元-, which also means "ex-" but implies that other "ex-..." have existed before. This, though, is not sufficient in distinguishing them all the time. Someone who has stepped back from his position would be 前〇〇. Before this person, anyone with the title would be 元〇〇. What if you had a boat and there were no person to carry the legacy after the vessel sunk? You would use 元船長 ^{せんちょう} instead of 前船長.

16. 現社長 ^{げんしゃちょう} が前社長 ^{ぜんしゃちょう} を殺害 ^{さつがい} したという事態 ^{じたい} が明らか ^{あか} になりました。

The state of affairs of the current company president having murdered the ex-company president
has come to light.

17. どうしても元カノを気にしてしまうよ。

My ex-girlfriend always gets to me no matter what.

Contraction Note: カノ is a contraction of 彼女 when used to mean "girlfriend".

Final Note: Aside from this, 前 read as ぜん exists in other time phrases such as

前日^{じつ} (the other day).

直前

Right before can be expressed with the word 直前. The word also has the literal direction meaning of "right in front of". When used in a temporal sense, it is frequently appended to nouns without the need of の. However, the use of の is most certainly appropriate in the spoken language.

18. 帰京^{ききょう}する飛行機^{ひこうき}の直前に到着^{とうちゃく}する時刻^{じこく}のバスにしか間に合^まわなかつた^あこともあります。(Written)

I've also only managed to make it by bus with an arrival time right before my flight back to Tokyo.

Word Note: 帰京する = 東京に帰る.

19. 車の直前に人が突然^{とつぜん}飛び出してきた。

A person suddenly dashed out right in front of the/my car.

20. 爆発^{ばくはつ}直前^{ちよくぜん}にガソリンが気化^{きか}したような臭^{にお}いがしていた。

There was a smell of gasoline vaporizing right before the explosion.

漢字 Note: 臭い gives a nuance of stench whereas 匂い is any given smell. The word is also frequently spelled in ひらがな.

Table of Contents

第47課: After I

"After" is not an easy thing to say in Japanese. There is not one phrase for it, and there are minute differences that you need to know about the various ways to say it. So, pay attention as always.

後

"Verb A + た ^{あと}後 (で) + Verb B" states that B happens after A. However, there are several other similar expressions in Japanese. So, pay close attention to the differences discussed later on.

As for this basic pattern, the verb before 後 must be in the past tense. Yet, ~ていた後 is ungrammatical because it needs to show the end of an action. Other grammatical issues that the example sentences and subsequent explanation will show is that whether to use で, に, or no particle is somewhat difficult. However, it's important to see examples first.

1a. ^{ざっし}雑誌を読んでいた後で、アニメを見た。 X

1b. 雑誌を読んだ後で、アニメを見た。 O

I watched anime after reading a magazine.

2a. ^{ひゃっかてん}百貨店があった後で、^{えき}駅ができた。 X

2b. 百貨店 {があった・の} 後に、駅ができた。 O

A train station was built where a department store had been.

3. 昨日は ^{じゅぎょう}授業の ^{あと}後、^{うち}家に帰らないで ^{えいが}映画を ^み観に行った。 O

Yesterday I went to go see a movie instead of going home after class.

漢字 Note: 観 *can* be used instead of 見 when one is watching a program of some sort such as a movie, a TV show, play, drama, Family Guy (I love this show), etc.

4. 学校のあと、ふと^め目まい目まいがした。○

I felt dizzy all of a sudden after school.

Spelling Notes: 後 is occasionally written in ひらがな as the character has several readings and some speakers just like to write it in ひらがな to disambiguate as habit. Lastly, 目まい may seldom fully be written in 漢字 as 眩暈・目眩.

Ex. 2a is ungrammatical because ある is existential, and to clearly show the location in which the train station has now taken the place of the department store, you need to use the particle に. Even so, verbs of condition can be used with 後 as long as the "end" of the state is clearly instantiated correctly.

5. しばらくギリシャにいた後、トルコへ^{わた}渡った。

After being in Greece for a while, I crossed over to Turkey.

6. ^{たいへん}大変だった後は、^よ良いことがあるのかな。

I wonder if there can be anything good after having been terrible.

Many other particles can follow 後. You should not be surprised to a sentence where に, は, や, と, or から follow it. After all, it is a noun. When showing the condition after a change, then 後は is perfect to use. Verb B after 後は should deal with duration or condition.

7. 勉強をしたあとは、^{つか}疲れて何もできない。(X) → (後で)

After studying, I'm tired and can't do anything.

Ex. 7 is not plausible to some speakers as being unable to do anything due to studying isn't a state of change over any serious duration of time. Studying is usually not long in duration and is realistically a temporary state of action. Now, if you are exaggerating things, then it would be more OK.

8. けんがい ひ こ けん 外 に引っ越した後は、 ゆうじん きかい へ 友 人 と会う機 会 が減った。

After having moving out of the prefecture, chances to meet friends have decreased.

Word Note: 友人 is more frequently used in written.

9. K ポップをき 聴いた後は、 きもち 気持ちがよくなります。

I feel better after having listened to K-pop.

Pronunciation Note: Pronounce K as ケイ.

後 は can also be used to show that something is done after another action habitually. It's also very important to have this form when you want to conjoin multiple 後 expressions for topicalization/emphasis.

10. は みが 歯を 磨 いた後はすぐ寝ます。

I go right to sleep after I brush my teeth.

11. はたら 働 いた後や勉強した後はカラオケ！

Karaoke after working and or studying!

後 に can be used in a sense of time, and in doing so it is more punctual. But, there are many more examples where it is used in the sense of location as well.

12. ぼく は食べた後 (に) みが 歯を 磨 いた。

I brushed my teeth after I ate.

13. ともだち 友 達 が帰った後には、ゴミがたくさん落ちてた。(Casual)

There was a lot of trash dropped after my friends went home.

14. 花が咲いた後に、実ができて、その中に種ができる。

After a flower blooms, a fruit forms, and inside that seeds form.

15. そつぎょう 卒 業 (を) した後に、仕事をさがします。

After graduating, I'll look for a job.

16. 子供が寝た後に、映画を見ました。

I watched a movie after my child went to bed.

17. 昼ご飯の後に、その町を見物しました。

We went sightseeing in the town after lunch.

As 後 is a noun, ～後だ can also be seen at the end of a sentence or clause. So, it could be that で in 後で is the て Form of だ, which will show in context and intonation. You can also see あとの N. As far as 後から is concerned, it uses the physical sense of the word. から means "from". So, imagine that there is something that comes about from the end of an action A.

18. けっか 結果 分かるのは、ちょうさ 調査 の後だ。

We'll know the results after the investigation.

19. 子供が帰ったあとからはま～るい大きなお 月 様！

From after the children have gone home, the round, big moon comes out!
From the lyrics of 夕焼け小焼け.

～後に

〜^ご後に also means "later". This attaches to Sino-Japanese words involving time. It is sometimes formal such as in Ex. 22 and 23, but there are also instances in which it is quite normal like when it is paired with 週間 as in Ex. 20 and 21.

20. 三時間^{はとやま}後に^{そうりだいじん}鳩山総理大臣^{なりたくうこう}は成田空港^{とうちゃく}に到着します。

Prime Minister Hatoyama will arrive in Narita Airport in 3 hours.

Person Note: Yukio Hatoyama (鳩山由紀夫) was the Prime Minister of Japan from 2009 to 2010.

21. 2 週間後に帰ります。

I'll return in two weeks.

22. 食^{しょくご}後に^{くすり}薬を飲む。

To take medicine after a meal.

Sentence Note: Ex. 22 would be most expected of a doctor to say or write.

23. 帰宅^{きたくご}後に^おメイクを落とす^{じょせい}女性

Women who take off their make-up after arriving home

Word Note: 帰宅後 = 家に帰った後

〜のち

後 may also be read as のち. のち may be used in the same sense as 後 and may be used just like 〜後に in the sense of 〜あとに and 〜ごに. However, it is more formal and is most likely to be in the written language. のちに may also be used in the sense of "henceforth".

24. それをずっとのちに知りました。

I knew of that long afterwards.

25. さんかげつ ぐ・のち りだつ
三ヶ月 後 に離脱。

Defecting after three months.

26. 大学を卒業した のち えんげきかい
後、演劇界に入った。

After graduating, I entered the world of theatre.

27. は くも
晴れのち 曇り

Fine, cloudy later

Sentence Note: Ex. 27 is an example of common messages you might find watching a Japanese weather report.

～てから

～てから shows what you do after something else. This goes in hand when showing the starting point of something. In this case, it's the starting point of the new action *after* the previous one. So, once the first action is established, then that sets up the starting point for the next action. This pattern is very good for showing sequence.

28. ゆうしょく ね じかん
夕食 を食べてから寝る前の時間が長すぎる。

The time before I go to bed after eating dinner is too long.

29. わか
別れてから会っていない。

I haven't met her since we split up.

30. 私は勉強を始めてから、多くのことを学びました。

I've learned a lot of things since I started studying.

31. よく考えてから 答^{こた}えます。

I will answer after some thought.

32. 日本に来てからもう 10 年になります。

It has already been ten years since I came to Japan.

33. 日本に来てからずっと日本語の勉強をしています。

I've been studying Japanese ever since I came to Japan.

34. 高校を 卒^{そつぎょう}業してから、大学に行かないで仕事をする人も多い。

There are also a lot of people that work instead of going to college after graduating high school.

Phrase Note: 入^{にゅうがく}学する = "to be admitted", which can also be used in reference to middle and high school in Japan. So, using this instead of 大学に行く may not be a smart idea if you don't have the context. Now, 大学に入学する would still mean "to be admitted into college", but it doesn't describe going to four years of college like the above sentence does.

35. 入^{はい}ってから出るまで、怖^{こわ}かった。

I was scared from when I entered until I left.

Particle Note: Other particles like は and の can follow ~てから. You can even see だ after it.

Tense Note: You should not use this pattern with ~ている. So, ~ていてから X.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. バスに乗ってから、食べます。

Culture Note: It's not acceptable to do the above in Japan.

2. クラスが終わってから、宿題をします。

3. ^お起きてから、仕事に出ます。
4. 学校を出てから、働いている。
5. 彼が来てからの話だ。

～後で VS ～てから

There are many instances where using ～後で can be unnatural or even ungrammatical. At other times, they're interchangeable. Consider the following examples.

36. 買い物を {してから・した後で} 映画を見ました。

I watched a movie after shopping.

37. ^{きっぷ}切符を買っ {てから ○・た後に ○・た後で △} ポケットの中に入れた。

After I bought the ticket, I put it inside my pocket.

Grammar Note: 後で is unnatural because Action B happens right after Action A as a consequence of B. The same problem exists for Ex. 38.

38. ちょっと口をすすい {でから ○・た後に ○・だ後で △} 歯を磨く。

To brush one's teeth after rinsing one's mouth a little.

漢字 Note: すすぐ may rarely be written as 漱ぐ in this context.

39. 卒業し {てから ○・た後で X} 、彼には会っていない。

I haven't met with him since graduating.

Grammar Note: You should never use ない as the latter condition (state/action B) with 後で. So, in the sense of "since", you should use ～てから rather than ～後で.

40. あき 秋 が来 {てから ○・た後で X}、 きゅう 急 に ひととお 人 通 りが少なくなった。

Street traffic suddenly got deserted since fall came.

Table of Contents

Key

1. After I get on the bus, I'll eat.
2. After class ends, I'll do my homework.
3. After I wake up, I'll go to work.
4. I've been working since I left school; I am working after school.
5. It's a discussion for after he arrives.

第48課: Absolute Time VI: When: 時

時 is a noun literally meaning "time". It is most frequently used after dependent clauses to mean "when" as in "when one does" and not as the question "when". Despite being easy to translate, usage is actually complex due to tense differences. Pay attention to notes on particles and parts of speech as both issues are extremely relevant to this discussion.

The Complicated Grammar of 時

時 literally means "time". It's used to mean "when" when used with time phrases. The tense and part of speech used with 時 is very important as you will see throughout this lesson.

Tense not like English

As mentioned in the introduction, 時 is complicated because of tense. Why? Considering that the following combinations are possible, it's easy for students to get them all confused.

～するとき、～する	～するとき、～した	～したとき、～する	～したとき、～した
-----------	-----------	-----------	-----------

English likes tense to be consistent in a sentence, so the first and last combinations tend to be easier for students to acquire. The middle ones, though, are different to say the least.

1. ご飯を食べるとき、いつも手を洗います。

When(ever)/before I eat a meal, I always wash my hands.

2. ご飯を食べ始めるとき、「いただきます」という。

You/we say "Itadakimasu" when(ever)/before we start eating a meal.

3. 日本に帰ったとき、まず(お)寿司を食べました。

I first ate sushi right when/after I returned home to Japan.

4. 昨夜、ご飯を食べるとき、手を洗いませんでした。

Last night, before I ate, I didn't wash my hands.

5. ご飯を食べ終わったとき、いつも「ご馳走さまでした」と言います。

You/we say "Gochisou-sama deshita" after finishing a meal.

It's not that the other combinations can't be translated into English. From these last two examples, it looks as if there is a before-after relation being made in the dependent clause in relation to the main clause. This is often the case, but as you will see, it is not the only possible situation.

Consider the difference between the following two sentences.

6. ベトナムへ行く時に、ベトナム語を少し習いました。 (日本で)

Before going to Vietnam, I studied a little Vietnamese.

7. ベトナムへ行った時に、ベトナム語を少し習いました。 (ベトナムで)

When I went to Vietnam, I studied a little Vietnamese.

The only thing different was the form of 行く before 時. The distinction does not tell whether the sentence is in the past or not because that's already evident. What the tense distinction in the subordinate clause shows is whether the action in that clause has realized or not. Thus, 時 functions as the base time, and the action in the clause before it may either happen before or after the action of the main clause.

前後関係 and 時

There are instances when ignoring this 前後関係 (before-after relationship) can cause ungrammaticality.

8. 朝起きるときに、口をすすぐ。X

Before I wake up in the morning, I rinse my mouth. X

9. 寝たときに、犬を外に行かせる。X

I make the dog go outside after I go to sleep. X

When 時 is used to show a 前後関係 such as in the previous examples, each verb can be viewed as being independent from each other. For those that have a problem with a future event being used with the past tense, more thought into “after” statements in English needs to be made.

10. ソウルの空港に着いたときに、電話します。

I'll call you after I arrive in the Seoul Airport.

X & Y → Instantaneous

It so happens, though, that when action X and Y are instantaneous and seem to happen at the same time, both the non-past and past tense seem to be able to be used interchangeably before とき without a change of meaning. However, note the detail in this situation. You shouldn't run with this and apply it haphazardly to everything else mentioned in this lesson to the contrary.

11. そのボールが ^は{爆ぜる・爆ぜた} とき、がちゃんと大きな音がした。

There was a big bang right when the ball exploded.

As stated earlier, there are situations where 時 does **not** express a 前後関係. This is evident when both actions X and Y essentially happen simultaneously.

12. 中国 ^{たいざいちゅう} 滞在 中、中国料理を食べるときは、^{はし} 箸 を使いました。

When I was in China, I used chopsticks whenever ate Chinese food.

13. 神戸へ出張するときは、新幹線に乘りました。

I rode the Shinkansen when I went to Kobe.

14. 僕んち（に）入るときは、いつも 裏^{うらぐち} 口 から入ってたんだけど、やめて。(Very colloquial)

Whenever you enter my house, you've always come through the back, but quit it.

Tense Interchangeability

Time phrases in addition to 時 allow for variation in tense before 時. For instance, notice how the word いつも allows either the non-past or the past to be used before 時 though the final verb in the sentence is in the past tense. This is possible because no specific event of the past is being cited. If it were a specific event, the past tense would inevitably be used.

15. 韓国の方とビビンバを {食べる・食べた} ときは、いつも 銀^{ぎんせい} 製 のお箸で食べました。

Whenever I ate bibimbap with Koreans, I always ate with silver chopsticks.

Word Note: 方 = 人. This is a formal word. You could also say 韓国の人 or 韓国人.

16. 小林さんが 講^{こうえんかい} 演 会 を開くときは、多^{たしょう} 少 遠くてもいつも聴^ききに行きました。

Whenever Mr. Kobayashi opened a lecture seminar, no matter if it was far, I always went to go listen (to his lectures).

17. 雪が {降る・降っている} ときは、図書館で 研^{けんきゅう} 究 書^{しよ} を読んだ。

Whenever it {snowed/was snowing}, I read studies at the library.

18. 電気が {切れる・切れている} ときは、^{かいがん}海 岸 に泳ぎに行った。

When the electricity {cut off, was cut off}, I went to the beach to swim.

Other Grammatical Situations

There are still more grammatical situations to consider. How does 時 work with nominals and adjectives? いる becomes problematic. And, let's not forget that other particles can follow 時. After all, it is a noun.

With Adjectives

Adjectives are used similarly with 時 to the last verbal situation mentioned above. When the main clause is past tense and the adjective before 時 is also in the past tense, it gives a rather reminiscent feeling. Otherwise, it wouldn't quite have that feeling.

19. この^{ろうけん}老 犬 は若いとき、とても美しかった。

When this old dog was young, it was really beautiful.

20. 君が若かったとき、わしは君を^{だいじ}大 事 にしてやったけど、今はわしの^{そんざい}存 在 を^{みと}認
めてくりゃしないや。(Old person)

When you were young, I would treat you dearly, but now you won't even recognize my existence.

Contraction Note: くりゃしない = くれはしない = a very emphatic. くれな
い.

21. 天気が悪い時に、ビデオゲームをした。

When the weather was bad, I played video games.

Particle Note: With the addition of に, the last sentence pinpoints a specific time in the past.

With いる

This is the same with いる. So, for いる, when the actions in the clauses occur in the same time period, either tense can be used when the main sentence is in the past with no change in meaning. The only difference then is that using the past tense gives a stronger sense of looking back in time.

22. 私は埼玉に {いる・いた} 時、^{にかいだ}二階建てのアパートでタイ人の友達と住んでいました。

When I was in Saitama, I lived with a Thai friend in a two story apartment.

When it is the case that the predicate and condition described by いる are not in the same time period, the main clause's action occurs within the range of the action of the dependent clause. So, if the dependent clause action is Y and the main clause action is X, X happens within Y.

23. 僕が海外してたとき、彼女は僕を^{うらぎ}裏切って、友人の知り合いと付き合ってあいつのマンションに引っ越したんだ！

When I was overseas, my girlfriend dumped me, got together with an acquaintance of a friend of mine and moved into his apartment!

24. メールを読んでたとき、地震があつて、とってもびっくりしたよ。

An earthquake happened when I was reading my e-mails, and I was really shocked.

With Nominals

Judgments seen thus far apply for when 時 follows nominals. Notice that の is interchangeable with である in this case. However, when the copula is used, it gives a stronger sense of retrospection or looking into the future. This is due to the introduction of a tense item. Consider other particles that can be used with 時 like から and でも.

25. 僕は学生[の・だった]時、あまり本を読まなかった。

I didn't read a lot of books when I was a student.

26. どんなときでもずっと側にいるよ。

I'll be by your side no matter what.

27. 高校に入学したときから、数えて 20 年が経ちました。

20 years have passed since I entered high school.

Particle Troubles: ～とき、～ときに、～ときは、～ときには

Of course, に・には・nothing after 時 is problematic. You may have gotten a sense of the differences between them by looking at all of the examples so far, but to address this explicitly, consider the following. As mentioned earlier, ～とき に mentions a certain point in time.

So, ambiguity as to whether something happens at a certain time or not is caused by no particle being used. On the other hand, the particle は is emphatic and usually with 時 contrastive. When you have both, you are emphasizing a particular part in time. The following examples give a nice mix of this and the material covered thus far.

28. 日本に行く時には、空港でウィスキーを買いました。

I bought whiskey right before I went to Japan.

29. 食べている時に、テレビは見ません。

I don't watch TV (right) when I'm eating.

30. 学校に行く時、電話します。

When/before I go to school, I'll call you. (before).

31. さくら
桜 がきれい[な・だった]時に、日本へ行った。

I went/used to go to Japan when(ever) the cherry blossoms were pretty (in bloom).

32. 分からない時は、先生に聞いてください。

When you don't understand, ask a teacher.

33. お金がないとき、何をしないで ^{がまん} 我慢 しますか。

When you don't have money, what do you endure without?

34. 前回台北に来たときは、誰にも会わなかったが、今回は多くの友人に会いました。

Last time I came to Taipei, I didn't meet anyone, but this time I met a lot of friends.

Reading Note: 台北 is officially read by NHK as たいほく. However, many speakers no longer read it this way and say たいぺい, perhaps out of respect of the modern Chinese pronunciation. Similarly, though, the standard reading for 北京 (Beijing) is ぺきん, which is based off of the older pronunciation of the city's name (Peking).

第49課: Relative Time

Relative time phrases are relative in nature. Who would have thought. Anyway, this lesson will introduce you to these vague time phrases in Japanese.

Important Phrases

Relative time expressions do not have an exact time frame. Like their absolute counterparts, they may be used as either nouns or adverbs so long as it is logical. This is understandably vague, and some such as よく (from an adjective) clearly can't be used as nouns because of their etymology. Prefixes and suffixes would be out of the question as well as they can't be used any other way. There are also ones in the chart below made with particles and are treated as "adverbial phrases". So, there would be no way you could use those phrases as nouns. Thus, you **can't** say things like 後です.

Long ago	むかし 昔	At one time	かつて	Before and after; thereabout	ぜんご 前後
The other day	せんじつ 先日	Previously	先に	Already	もう
Close to; in the near future	近く	Later	後で	No longer	もはや
Always	いつも	At once	すぐに	Usually	普通
In general	ふだん 普段	Mostly	たいてい	Often	よく
Frequently	度々	Sometimes	時々	Occasionally	たまに
Again	また	Again; twice	ふたたび 再び	For a first	はじめて
Seldom	めった 滅多 に	Never	ぜんぜん	Never	決して

A while ago	さっき	Every other	～おきに	At about	～ごろ
After about	～ぶりに	Around	お（お）よそ	Approximately	やく 約 ～

Usage Notes:

1. 近く means "near(by)" when used as a noun.
2. ～ぶりに may mean "appearance".
3. 約～ and おおよそ do not have to be used with time.
4. 約～ must be used with a number figure.
5. ～前後 may mean "back and forth" when not used with time.
6. (の) 頃^{ころ} means "as; when" and is similar to 時.
7. 昔に is not frequently used, but you do hear phrases like はるか昔に (in the remote past).
8. You do not say ふたたびに.

Examples

1. 私たちは滅^{めった}多^くに { 口喧嘩^{くちげんか} ・ 口論^{こうろん} } しません。

We seldom quarrel.

2. 時々スプーンとフォークで食べます。

I sometimes eat with a spoon and fork.

3. 彼女は 一^{いちにち}日^{にち} おきに 出^{しゅっ}勤^{きん} する。

She goes to work every other day.

4. 事故は日曜日の ^{じこ} ^{さんじごろ} 三 時 頃 ^お に起こった。

The accident happened on Sunday at about 3:00.

5. お（お）よそ五時間の ^{たび} 旅 となります。

It'll turn into around a five hour trip.

6. 8月の ^{なか} 半 ばに学校に ^{もど} 戻 ります。

I will go back to school in the middle of August.

7. 彼は9時前後にここに ^{とうちゃく} 到 着 するでしょう。

He'll probably arrive here at around nine o'clock.

8. 僕は子供のころから英語に ^{きょうみ} 興 味 があった。

I had an interest in England since I was a kid.

9. 彼を子供のころから知っている。

I have known him since childhood.

10. このごろアメリカへ ^{りょこう} 旅 行 する人が多い。

A lot of people are traveling to America nowadays.

Used To

"Used to" is made in one of two ways. The pattern ～たものだ is used to either reminisce or confirm a past experience with a deep sense of emotion. かつて shows what something "used to be". It is **not** used to show what one used "to do". However, it may be used with intransitive verbs to show a former state. かつて may also be used as noun with の to mean "former".

1.	Used to be/was once	嘗（かつ）て＋～た
2.	Used to do	よく＋～た＋～ものだ

Examples

11. 火曜日にはいつも友だちと釣^つりに行ったものだ。

I used to always like go fishing with my friends on Tuesdays.

12. かつてないほどの^{えんだか}円高だ。

The strong yen is better than ever.

Word Note: The opposite of 円高 is 円安. You can use the suffixes ~高 and ~安 with other world currencies such as the ドル (dollar), the ユーロ (euro), and the ウォン (won).

13. かつて、^{だいにじせかい}第二次世界大戦にドイツはイタリアと^{どうめいこく}同盟国でありました。
(Formal 書き言葉)

Germany used to be an ally of Italy in World War II.

14a. かつて住んでいたところはこちからです。 (Literary)

14b. 以前こちらに住んでいました。 (Spoken)

The place I used to live at is here.

15. こんな^{じけん}事件はいまだかつてなかった。

We have not yet had this kind of case ever before.

16. かつて彼らは^{どうりょう}同僚だった。

They were once colleagues.

17. 彼はかつて^{そしき いちいん}組織の一員であった。 (書き言葉)

He used to be a member of the organization.

18. {かつて・旧来} の友 (Somewhat lyrical)

A former friend

Orthography Note: かつて can rarely be seen written in 漢字 as 嘗て.

Showing a customary action that you used to do in the past can actually be shown by using ～ていた.

19. 毎朝ジョギングをしていました。

I used to jog every morning.

20. 中学校の時、毎晩 9 時に寝^ねていた。

I used to go to bed every night at nine when I was in junior high.

第50課: Transitivity I: Different Transitive & Intransitive Forms

A verb in Japanese is usually either transitive or intransitive. The Japanese terms for transitive verbs (他動詞^{たどうし}) and intransitive verbs (自動詞^{じどうし}) are defined below and the Japanese terms will be preferred over the English in this discussion.

他動詞	<i>An action done by "someone/thing" on something or someone else (direct object).</i>
自動詞	<i>An action or state that has no active agent and no direct object.</i>

Definition Note: "No active agent" does not mean "no agent". There are some verbs like 暮らす^く which do have an agent argument. A fancy term for such intransitive verbs is "unergative intransitives", which simply means "intransitives which do have an agent".

Some verbs do not have the same transitivity as their English equivalents. For example, 分かる (to understand) and 要る (to need) are intransitive rather than being transitive as the verbs would be in English. In these cases, the languages express things from different angles.

を with 他動詞 always marks the direct object of a sentence. If it is used with a 自動詞, it essentially means "through".

1. パソコンを捨てる。 (捨てる = 他動詞)

To throw away a PC.

2. 道を歩く。 歩く = 自動詞

To walk through the street.

If you see no を and the subject is marked with が, it is often safe to assume that the verb is a 自動詞. However, the direct object could be dropped. So,

you must take that into consideration. Is it logical for the verb in question to have a direct object?

3. 鳥が歌っている。 (歌う = 他動詞)

The bird is singing.

Transitivity Note: 歌う is a transitive verb because birds sing songs. There is intrinsically always a direct object implied.

4. 車が^と停まった。 (停まる = 自動詞)

The car stopped.

自他動詞

Deriving intransitives and transitives from each other is possible. However, the over 300 existing pairs are not all derived by the same means. Some of these means are rather convoluted, and even the best of Japanese scholars don't know all of the answers. Having said that, though, there are four broad kinds of pairs.

Type 1: About a fourth of pairs have an intransitive pair with an r or y suffix usually preceded by either the vowel a or o to the root of a verb (except for Type 1d below). The transitive form may end in -u, -eru, or -ru based on type. The subtypes will be listed by frequency. Frequency here is not frequency in type 1 alone but for ALL verb pairs of all types.

Type 1	Frequency	Intransitive	Example	Transitive	Example
a	~20%	√ -(w)ar-u	上がる (to rise)	√-Ø-eru	上げる (to raise)
b	~3%	√-ar-u	ふさ 塞 がる	√-Ø-u	塞 (ふさ) ぐ (to block)

c	~1%	√-(w)ar- eru	分かれる (to di- vide/branch)	√-∅-eru	分ける (to split)
d	~.70%	√-[y]-eru	見える (to be in sight)	√-∅-ru	見る (to see)
e	~.33%	√-o[y]- eru	聞こえる (to be heard)	√-∅-u	聞く (to hear)
f	~.33%	√-or-u	つ 積もる (to pile)	√-∅-u	積む (to pile)
g	~.33%	√-or-eru	う 埋もれる (to be cov- ered)	√-∅-eru	埋める (to bury/cover)

Chart Note: ∅ means nothing is added in the position indicated.

Even though there are seven sub-types, we see a lot of patterns going on. The ar- and or- you see actually do relate to the verbs ある and おる. Why r and y seem to have the same function, but r is definitely more prominent. The [y] in parentheses is actually silent.

Type 2: These verbs all have a transitive form with a stem that ends in s. What else makes up the stem or what follows varies, but this characterizes 30% of all pairs in Japanese. Frequency, again, refers to frequency among all verb pairs.

Type 2	Fre- quency	Intransi- tive	Example	Transi- tive	Example
a	~14%	√-∅-eru	ひ 冷える (to get chilly)	√-(y)as- u	冷やす (to chill)
b	~10%	√-∅-u	ち 散る (to scatter)	√-(w)as- u	散らす (to scatter)
c	~2%	√-∅-iru	ひ 干る (to dry up)	√-os-u	ほ 干す (to dry)

d	~1.3%	√-Ø-iru	生きる (to live)	√-as-u	生かす (to keep alive)
e	~1%	√-Ø-ru	着る* (to wear)	√-s-eru	着せる (to clothe)
f	~.70%	√-Ø-eru	ふく 膨れる (to swell)	√-as-eru	膨らせる (to swell)
g	~.33%	√-Ø-u	およ 及ぶ (to extend)	√-os-u	及ぼす (to affect)
h	~.33%	√-Ø-iru	ほころ 綻びる (to come apart)	√-as-eru	綻ばせる (to break into)
i	~.33%	√-Ø-iru	つ 尽きる (to run out)	√-us-u	尽くす (to exhaust)

*: Although it is technically transitive, its meaning is more like an intransitive verb and this is important for other uses of the verb.

Word Note: 綻ばせる is "to break into" as in "to break into a smile."

Type 3: Another 20% of verb pairs are able to be derived from a neutral form which does not exist anymore. You'll see that r (rarely y) is found in the intransitive pairs and s is found in the transitive pairs.

Type 3	Frequency	Intransitive	Meaning	Transitive	Meaning
a	~8%	√-r-u	あま 余る (to be plenty)	√-s-u	余す (to spare over)
b	s ~6%	√-r-eru	あらわ 現れる (to appear)	√-s-u	現す (to show/appear)
c	r ~1%	√-r-u	乗る (to ride)	√-s-eru	乗せる (to pick up)
d	u ~.70%	√-[y]-eru	こ 越える (to go over)	√-Ø-u	越す (to go over)
e	t ~.33%	√-r-iru	た 足りる (to suffice)	√-s-u	足す (to add)

Type 4: The remaining 25% of verbs aside from exceptions are split into two polar opposite sub-types, but they both use change in verb class to bring about a difference in transitivity. This is where memorization becomes really important.

Type 4	Frequency	Intransitive	Example	Transitive	Example
a	~16%	√-Ø-u	あ 開く (to open)	√-Ø-eru	開ける (to open)
b	~10%	√-Ø-eru	わ 割れる (to crack)	√-Ø-u	割る (to crack)

Exceptions Note: There are several exceptions that are important to learn. Those will be found as examples in this lesson.

Examples

Think about how many things are involved. Say you have a cat named ニヤ子ちゃん. To tell her to hide because a dog is coming, say かくれて, not かくして. This is because there is only an implied subject (the cat) and an action (hiding). There is no direct object. Had you wanted to say "hide yourself", you would use the transitive form かくす and get ^み身をかくして.

The chart below has a handful of the most important pairs for you to learn.

意義	他動 詞	意義	自動 詞	意義	他動 詞	意義	自動 詞
To break	壊す	To be broken	壊れ る	To open	開け る	To open	開く
To raise	育て る	To be raised	育つ	To close	閉め る	To close	閉ま る
To put out	消す	To disappear	消え る	To flow	流す	To flow	流れ る

To drop	落とす	To fall	落ちる	To stand	立てる	To stand	立つ
To stop	止める	To stop	止まる	To change	変える	To change	変わる
To start/begin	始める	To begin	始まる	To reveal	現す	To appear	現れる
To add	加える	To take part/join	加わる	To (a)wake	さ覚ます	To wake up	覚める
To leave	残す	To remain	残る	To rotate	回す	To rotate	回る

Transitivity Notes:

1. 開く read as あく is an intransitive verb.
2. 開ける read as あける is only transitive and is used to open many things. There are also other spellings of this verb depending on usage. When read as ひらける, it is a more literary, intransitive verb for enlightenment, development, and things being opened up. For instance, you can say 目の前に海がひらけた (the sea opened up in front of our eyes) and 文明がひらけた (civilization has developed).

Meaning Notes:

1. 消える may also mean "to fade", "to go off/out", "to pass", "to vanish", etc. 消す may also mean "to turn off", "to remove", "to erase", "to vanish", "to extinguish", etc.
2. Etymologically, 立つ and 立てる are the same words as 建つ (to be built) and 建てる (to build) respectively. Translation of たつ and たてる, which have other spellings depending on usage, varies. However, you should get the theme of what they mean.
3. 止める read as とめる means "stop" as in "to halt". It can be spelled as 停める (to halt a vehicle), 留める (to restrain; to hold (custody); to leave an impression), and 泊める (to accommodate/lodge). When read as やめる, it means "stop" as in

stopping a condition/action. It can be spelled as 辞める (to quit a job). The intransitive form of やめる is やむ.

Spelling Note: Many of these words have additional meanings and additional spellings. Knowing each and every meaning of these verb pairs and the spellings to go with them is too overwhelming for now.

Examples

5. ^{はた}旗 を上げる。

To raise a flag.

6. 車が ^{とつぜん}突 然 止 まった。

The car suddenly stopped.

漢字 Note: 停まる = 止まる. The first is more indicative of a temporary stop.

7. { ^{つめ}爪 を染める・^そネイルをする・^ぬマニキュアを塗る } 。

To dye/do/paint one's nails.

Phrase Note: 爪を染める is not really common, and as dye implies as well, this is a more serious color change. For instance, 血で爪が染まった would be fitting description of a murderer. On the other hand, ^{かみ}髪 を染める is a really common action done that does not involve killing people.

8. 弟がカメラを ^{こわ}壊 しました。

My younger brother broke the camera.

9. ぼくの新しいカメラが壊れました。

My new camera broke.

10. 川が ^{みずうみ}湖 に流れている。

The river is flowing into the lake.

11. タクシーを止めなかったの。

You didn't stop a taxi?

12. ドアを開けました。

I opened the door.

13. ^{じどう}自動ドアが開きました。

The automatic door opened.

14. いつ始まりますか。

When will it start?

15. ^き気が変わったかわからない。

I don't know if [his/her] mind changed.

16. 妹がテレビをつけました。

My little sister turned on the TV.

17. テレビがつきました。

The TV came on.

18. ^{なみだ}涙 を流す。

To shed tears.

19. ^{ち そ}土が血で染まった。

The ground was dyed with blood.

20. ^{しゅくだい}宿 題 を始める。

To start one's homework.

21. でんき け
電 気 を消しました。

I turned off the lights.

22. 電気が消^きえました。

The lights [turned/went] off.

23. {話・話題} を変える。

To change topics.

24. 彼は 腹^{はら} が立った。(Set Phrase)

He got angry.

25. バラの木が植^うわっている。

There are rose bushes planted.

26. バラの木を植えました。

I planted a rose bush.

Usage Note: Sometimes a certain verb in a transitivity pair will not be frequently used. For instance, some speakers hardly ever use 植わる.

-

Questions (1):

1. What is the difference between 他動詞 and 自動詞?
2. Show 3 pairs of 他動詞 and 自動詞 and explain the differences between them.
3. May a verb be both a 他動詞 and 自動詞?

More Practice

The following sentences will have you choose one of two options. Use additional information and the contents of the lesson to help you choose the right answer.

Questions (2):

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| 1. オレンジが（落ちる・落とす）。 | Drop |
| 2. 図書館の前に人が（ ^{なら} 並ぶ・並べる）。 | Line up |
| 3. ^{にちじ} 日時を（決まる・決める）。 | Decide |
| 4. ^{えだ} 枝を（折れる・折る）。 | Bend |
| 5. 勉強を（続く・続ける）。 | Continue |
| 6. 草を（ ^も 燃える・燃やす）。 | Burn |
| 7. 週末を（過ぎる・過ごす）。 | Spend |
| 8. 猫を（助かる・助ける）。 | Save |
| 9. 木が（倒れる・倒す）。 | Fall down |
| 10. 仕事が（ ^ふ 増える・増やす）。 | Increase |
| 11. 数が（ ^へ 減る・減らす）。 | Decrease |
| 12. 子どもを（育つ・育てる）。 | Raise |
| 13. トイレを（流れる・流す）。 | Flush |
| 14. ^{かど} 角を左に（ ^ま 曲がる・曲げる）。 | Turn |
| 15. ひげを（ ^の 伸びる・伸ばす）。 | Grow long |

Table of Contents

Exercises

Questions (1):

1. What is the difference between 他動詞 and 自動詞?

A 他動詞 requires a subject and an object but a 自動詞 only has a subject and does not take a direct object.

2. Show 3 pairs of 他動詞 and 自動詞 and explain the differences between them.

Answers may vary, so submit answer for checking.

3. May a verb be both a 他動詞 and 自動詞?

Yes, but the grammar will be different.

Questions (2):

1. 落ちる 2. 並ぶ 3. 決める 4. 折る 5. 続ける 6. 燃やす 7. 過ごす 8. 助ける 9. 倒れる
10. 増える
11. 減る 12. 育てる 13. 流す 14. 曲がる 15. 伸ばす

初級 II

- 第51課:The Particle と II: Citation
- 第52課: The Particle でも
- 第53課: The Particle や
- 第54課:こそあど II: Moreこそあど
- 第55課: Plants & Animals
- 第56課:擬声語 II: 擬音語 II: Animal Sounds
- 第57課:擬声語 III: 擬態語 & 擬情語
- 第58課: While I: 間
- 第59課: While II: うち
- 第60課: Time Phrases + に
- 第61課: Giving Verbs
- 第62課: Permission: ～ていい
- 第63課: The Particles が & けれど
- 第64課: Family
- 第65課:Start to: ～始める, ～出す, & ～かける
- 第66課:End: ～終わる・終わる, ～やむ, & ～上がる・上げる
- 第67課:Whenever: 毎～, ～毎に, & ～おきに
- 第68課:～中: During/Throughout
- 第69課: The Body
- 第70課: Or
- 第71課: Food
- 第72課: Potential I
- 第73課: Potential II: できる
- 第74課: Colors
- 第75課: 知る VS 分かる
- 第76課: Noun → Verb with する
- 第77課: Pronouns II
- 第78課: The Particle だけ
- 第79課: The Particles しか & ほか
- 第80課: The Particle たり
- 第81課:Interrogatives II: How
- 第82課:Interrogatives III: With Particles
- 第83課: The Particle の II
- 第84課: The Particle で II

第85課:Numbers III: The Two Kinds of Numbers

第86課:Numbers IV: Looking Closely at 四, 七, & 九

第87課: Might: かもしれない

第88課:て With Giving Verbs: ~てあげる, ~てくれる, & ~てもらう

第89課: 語尾 I: よ & ね

第90課:~ていく & ~てくる

第91課:Best That: ~方 Patterns & ~に越したことはない

第92課: Good At & Bad At

第93課: Like & Love

第94課: Hate

第95課: 語尾 II: わ, な, と, の, さ, ぞ, ぜ, & え

第96課: 語尾 III: かな, かしら, じゃん, い, け, が, こと, たら, & や

第97課: ~てしまう

第98課:Want and Feeling: ~たい, ほしい, & ~がる

第99課:Conditionals: The Particles と, なら (ば) , たら, & ば

第100課: Conditional Phrases

第51課: The Particle と II: Citation

We've looked at several usages of the case particle と before, but now it's time to learn about how it is used in citation.

Citation

と is also the citation particle, basically spoken quotation marks. This usage often translates to "that". However, grammar within subordinate clauses--those that are embedded within a sentence--is not exactly the same as in English as you will see.

Orthography Note: Actual quotation marks, 「」, are only used in direct quotes.

という	To say that	と思う	To think that	と考える	To consider that
-----	-------------	-----	---------------	------	------------------

Basic Grammatical Restraints in Citation

In direct quotation, the quoted verb may be in any form because you're telling what someone has said. So, sentences like below are completely correct.

1. 彼女は「雨が^ふ降りません」と言いました。

She said, "It won't rain".

It is common to just see と in abbreviated speech. This means that the citation verb is just implied. It is often the case that the verb is 言う, but full context will make it clear which citation verb is intended. If such deletion is within a more complex sentence, a comma is *often* after と, and the citation verb is probably the final verb of a following clause. Having said that, though, below is a sentence where neither is the case.

2. もうそんな寒さかと^{しまむら そと なが}島村は外を眺めると、^{てつどう かんしゃ}鉄道の官舎らしいバラックが^{やますそ さむざむ ち}山裾に寒々と散らばっているだけで、

雪の色はそこまで行かぬうちに^{やみ の}闇に呑まれていた。

When Shimamura gazed outside, thinking it had already gotten that cold, railroad residence-looking barracks were just desolately dispersed at the foot of the mountains, and before the snow hues could reach that far, the barracks were swallowed by darkness.

From 雪国 by ^{かわばたやすなり}川端康成.

Particle Note: The quotation is of a thought. The thought is もうそんな寒さか.

The verb that is implied, then, is 思う. The sentence would, then, be もうそんな寒さかと思い. 思い is just like 思っで here.

漢字 Note: 呑む means “to swallow”, but it is usually spelled as 飲む nowadays.

Grammar Note: 行かぬうちに = 行かないうちに.

3. ^ふ降り始めた雪は^{あしあと}足跡消して

^{ま しろ}真っ白な世界に^{ひとり}一人の私

風が心にささやくの

このままじゃダメなんだと

The snow that has begun to fall has erased my footprints

And I am alone in this snow-white world

The wind whispers to my heart

Saying that I can't stay like this

From the lyrics of ありのままで.

Sentence Note: This example actually shows sentence inversion. So, rather than the citation verb being dropped, the citation is taken out and stayed afterwards.

This is especially common in music. The citation verb in this sentence is ささやく, meaning "to whisper".

Cases of Ungrammaticality

For verbs of thought both the citation and cited verb mustn't be polite. Your thoughts aren't in polite speech. Thus, the final verb should be what takes ～ます. Furthermore, Japanese hates for the same purpose being expressed twice in the same clause or phrase.

4a. 雨が降りませんと思います。X

4b. 雨が降らないと思います。O

I think that it won't rain.

For **other people's** thoughts, the verb of thought must be used with ～ている. You can also use the progressive for first person too. Now, for other citation verbs like "to say", polite speech is OK only in a direct quote.

5a. 彼はどう思うの? X

5b. 彼はどう思ってるの? O (ちょっとくだけた)

What is he thinking?

Tense and Negation with Citation

What about the past and negative? Either verb can be changed but not both. Again, Japanese avoids function words being doubled. If both are negative, you make a positive. If both are past, your sentence becomes difficult to interpret and sounds unnatural.

The choice you make in deciding which is negative or past does slightly change nuance. Some combinations are more common than others, but none are ungrammatical. However, speaker variation does exist. For instance, for the negative, 6b is preferred over 6d by many speakers.

6a. 雨が降ったと思う。 = I think that it rained.

6b. 雨が降らないと思う。 = I think that it won't rain.

6c. 雨が降ると思った。 = I thought it would rain.

6d. 雨が降ると思わない。 = I don't think that it will rain.

The second and last are similar, but the last is more emphatic. This is because you're rejecting that "雨が降る" is what you think. You'd generally say "雨が降らないと思う".

Consider the following. Do not do this. This is a clear example of why doubling past tense items in Japanese is a big problem. This does not negate the existence of past tense in a relative clause or the main clause. In context, this may work to show that you thought something had ended.

7. 「映画を見て、どう思いましたか？」

「スリルがあって面白かったと思いました」 X・△

This is something a kid might say in Japanese. It's best not to mimic this, but it is important to know that some speakers might use it, but it would certainly not be refined Japanese. The speaker meant to say "I thought (the movie) was interesting". Remember, と quotes the thought that one has. When you're watching the movie, you think it's おもしろい.

おもしろかったと思う is possible, but it would express that "you think that it was cool". For example, a show could be discontinued and you are saying what you think about the show in retrospect. This is similar for other expressions with the cited verb/adjective in the past tense and the main citing verb in the non-past.

If the ～た were used to show completion (完了), then ～たと～た would be correct. To insert a ～た due to English tense agreement in a Japanese sentence with no need for this, it becomes strange Japanese, to say the least.

8. 梅雨はもう終わったと思ったのですが、どうやらまだ続いているようですね。

I thought that the rainy season had already ended, but it appears to still be going, doesn't it?

Examples

9. 彼の祖父は偉大な学者だったという。

They say that his grandfather was a great scholar.

10. 山田さんは「英語は難しいですよ」と言いました。

Ms. Yamada said, "English is hard!"

11. 妹はサンタ・クロースは来ないと思っています。

My little sister thinks that Santa Claus won't come.

12. なんぜんまい たくさん という宝くじが、一日で売り切れました。

Lottery tickets totaling thousands were sold in a day.

13. たいせつ 大切 じゃないと思う。

I think that it's not important.

14. 大切だと思わない。

I don't think that it's important.

15. 大切じゃないと思った。

I thought that it wasn't important.

16. 大切だと思わなかった。

I didn't think that it was important.

17. ○○さんのことは ^{ゆうじん} 友人 だと考えている。

To regard ○○ as a friend.

18. ケンと呼んだ。

I called him Ken.

19. 花子が先生に英語でいいえと ^{こた} 答えました。

It is Hanako that told the teacher no in English.

Culture Note: The above is not a direct quotation because it's highly unlikely that Hanako actually said いいえ. A quote is likely to be a summary. Japanese speakers are always conscious of their relations to others. So, Hanako probably said じつは、そうではありません。

20. 日本に住みたいという動機があるので、日本語の勉強が楽しい。

Because I have a motive of wanting to live in Japan, studying Japanese is fun.

Practice (1): Translate the following.

1. 漢字は難しくないと思います。

2. 彼は言いました。

3. あんた、本当のこと言ってないんだよ。

4. だれと話したのか？

5. 彼女は、「リンゴとブドウを買ってね」と私に ^{たの} 頼みました。

The last thing we'll look at is とする. This is specifically about uses that are really just an extension of と's citation usage.

1.	To presume that...
2.	A euphemism of という, と考える, or と主張する

21. その政^{せいとう}党^{かはんすう}が過半数を取ったとする。

To presume that the party takes the majority.

22. 気^き象^{しょう}庁^{ちょう}では津^つ波^{なみ}の心^{しん}配^{ぱい}はないとしています。

The Meteorological Center is saying that there is no worry of a tsunami.

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. 問題はないとする。

2. 危^{あぶ}ないと感^{かん}じた。

3. 俺^{おれ}はそんなことを二度としない。

4. 難しいとされている。

Note: とされる = To be deemed

5. 気象庁では雨の降る^{おそ}恐^{おそ}れがあるとしています。

Table of Contents

Key

Practice (1)

1. I think that Kanji aren't difficult.

2. He said (it).

3. You, you're not telling the truth.
4. Who did you talk to?
5. She asked me, "buy apples and grapes".

Practice (2)

1. To not deem as a problem.
2. I felt that it was dangerous.
3. I won't do such a thing again.
4. It is deemed difficult.
5. The Meteorological Agency saying that there is a threat of rain.

第52課: The Particle でも

でも、でも、もう。。。。

The Adverbial Particle でも

でも is like "even" and often lessens the tone of a sentence. In the latter case, it is seen in contexts where the speaker is often trying to make some sort of suggestion or offer to someone. Options are implied given the literal interpretation of "even". This is meant to be less direct so one doesn't sound pushy.

でも is simply the て形 of the copula with も. So, 〜ても is very similar but with adjectives and verbs to mean "even though". The negative form of this is 〜なくても or 〜ないでも, although the latter is uncommon and rather literary.

Part of Speech	Pattern	Meaning
名詞	でも	〜Even
形容詞	〜ても	〜(Even) though
形容動詞	〜（であつ）ても	〜(Even) though
動詞	〜ても・でも	〜 (Even) though

Although there are situations where translation may change, the general purpose of these modals is to make a 逆接関係, which is Japanese terminology for a contradictory relationship. This should make sense in light of the translations above.

Particle Note: It is not used with particles such as が, を, and は, but it can be seen after other particles such as に, と, から, and まで. However, in slightly older Japanese, you can see combinations such as 〜をでも. It is not advisable to use this as it is, again, not used anymore.

Origin Note: でも comes from the て form of だ + も.

Examples

1. 先生**でも**分からないな。(Masculine)

Even the teacher doesn't understand it.

2. お ^{ちゃ}茶 **でも**飲みますか。

Literally: Do you want to drink **even** (if it's) tea?

Shall we drink tea or something?

3. ここ**でも**、あそこ**でも**、子供が遊んでいます。

There are children playing here and even over there.

4. あの人のいうことは、^{まんざらうそ}満 更 嘘 **でも**ない。

What that person says isn't all a lie.

5. 彼は**またしても**「お ^{ねが}願 いします」と来た。

He came **again** saying, "Please".

- 6a. 彼が言わ**ないでも**、分かるでしょう。(Usually don't use)

- 6b. 彼が言わ**なくても**、分かるでしょう。(More natural)

Even if he **doesn't** say, you'll probably understand.

7. **どうでも**いい。

I don't care.

Literally: **Whatever** it is, it's OK.

8. コーヒー**でも**どう？おごるよ。

How about a coffee on me?

9. どんなことがあっても、^{ぜったい}絶対に行くんだ。(Assertive)

No matter what, I'm definitely going to go!

10. 雨が^ふ降っていても、ゲームは楽しかった。

Even though it had been raining, I enjoyed the game.

11. いずれにしても飲酒運転は絶対にしません。

In any case, I absolutely do not drink and drive.

12. 私でも分かります。

Even I understand.

13. そんな例はいくつでも見つかる。

You can find **ever so many** such examples.

14. 彼は^{まず}貧しく^{しあわ}ても^幸せだ。

He is happy **even** though he is poor.

15. メキシコでは、冬になつても、雪が^ふ降らない。

It doesn't snow in Mexico **even** in the winter.

16. 居ても立ってもいられなかった。

I couldn't sit still.

Set Phrase Note: This last phrase literally means that one couldn't even be sitting or standing. 居る originally meant "to sit", and it is used in its original sense in this phrase.

何と言っても: Undeniably (lit. = no matter what they say)

17. **何といっても**この曲が一番だよね。

No matter what you say, this song is the best.

18. **何といっても** ^{いのち}命 ^{だいじ}だけは大事だ。

Life is **no doubt** but the only important thing.

で いい is like "it's all right/OK to", でかまわない is like "I don't care/mind if you", and でさしつかえない is like "it won't interfere if you". All three generally represent the same thing, and their purpose is to show permission. でも can be used instead of で, and the inclusion of も makes the phrases less direct. でも may appear as ても as these are also て form speech modals.

19. **新しくなくてもいい**ですか。

Is it **OK if** it's **not** new?

20. ^{ちゅうこしゃ}中古車 **でもかまいません**か。

Do you mind if it's a used vehicle?

21. ^{さんか}参加 **しなくてもいい**でしょうか。

Is it all right for me not to participate?

22. ^{しんぱい}心配 **しなくていい**から。

It's **all right not** to worry.

23. トイレを ^{つか}使 **っていい**ですか。

May I use the bathroom?

Classroom Note: The above sentence is an essential classroom phrase.

24. ^{いえ}家は古く**てもさしつかえ**ませんか。

Is it all right if the house is old?

25. じゅういっかい
十 一 階 のシングルルームでよろしいですか。

Is a single room on the eleventh floor **all right**?

26. **どれでも** けっこうですよ。

Anything will do.

27. 何をやっ**ても** 一日と続かない。

No matter what you do, it won't continue for another day.

～ても

This pattern is used to show that no matter what you do with whatever means necessary, you carry out something. The verb phrase that follows should be one that shows intention. This phrase is typically translated as "no matter if", but let this not detract from the fact that what follows is a statement of what is/should be carried out rather than showing despair.

28. 若い時の苦^{くろう} 勞は買ってでもせよ。(Proverb)

By all means do so no matter if you buy hardships in youth.

Proverb Note: This proverb says that hardships when you're young become great experiences for the future, so it is best to seek them out.

29. 金で買ってでも、苦勞した方がいいのは、若いうちだけだ。

No matter if you buy with money, it's only best to have hardships when one is young.

第53課: The Particle や

Here is yet another particle you can use to list things. It also does other things, though. Listing, as you would imagine, is a case particle usage. After all, that's what と is in this case. And, this usage is specifically seen in between nominal phrases. Notice how the word "nominal" used instead of just "noun". This means that you can link things with や that are grammatically made nouns.

After all, や is a particle. Do you really expect one to have just ONE usage? Its other usages are not as important, and some will be deferred to other lessons. Although the remaining usages discussed in this lesson may seem out of place, since they are relatively easy, you might as well know about them.

The Case Particle や

や **lists things incompletely**. This means that there is a sense that there are more related things implied. It may list nouns, phrases, and even clauses like "and", but it more so lists in categories.

1. ピクニックには、お菓子^{かし}や飲み物^{もの も}を持って行った。

We brought candies, drinks, etc. to the picnic.

2. 電車^{でんしゃ}やバスの停^{てい}留^{りゅう}場^{じょう}に近くて便利^{べんり}なところです。

The bus, train, etc. stations are close and convenient places.

3. 牛や馬が草むらで草^はを食む。

Cows and horses graze in grassy places.

4. 東京や韓国^{かんこく}へ行く時や、飛行機^{ひこうき}で行きます。

Whenever I go to Tokyo, Korea, etc., I go by plane.

5. 何やかや言っては両親にお金をせびる。

To say this and that to get money from one's parents.

Word Note: The か in the above expression is not the particle か. Rather, it can be written in 漢字 as 彼, the same character for "he" and actually has the same origin as かれ. Both are demonstrative words, and in this case, it is being used as an indefinite pronoun.

The Adverbial Particle や

This classification of や happens to not be as important as the conjunctive usage, which is why more must be said of it.

1. Attached to an adverb and accompanied with a statement of exclamation, it strengthens the meaning of the adverb that it is attached to. This is rather limited, so it is best that you only use this with set phrases and other instances that you see it used in. For instance, the first example has またもや, which happens to be a common set example of this.

6. またもや ^{しっぱい} 失敗 しました。

I lost yet again.

7. 今や ^{おそ} 遅 ^{しょうり} しと ^わ 勝利 を待ち侘びていた。

He was just impatiently tired of waiting for victory.

8. 彼の言葉に、祥子はまたもや目頭を熱くした。

His words made Sachiko yet again move to tears.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

2. やに聞く passes down something while trying to avoid being too affirmative.

This や is after the ^{しゅうしけい} 終 止 形 . It is equivalent to かどうかに聞く, which is what's actually used nowadays.

9. この村に^{まじょ}魔女がいるやに聞く。

(I believe) they say there's a witch in this village.

Particle Note: You might be wondering why the や in something like しやしない is not mentioned. The reason for this is that though you see や, this is actually from a slurring of は. So, things like 会いはしない (I won't meet!) can be changed to the more emphatic 会いやしない.

Table of Contents

第54課：こそあど II: Moreこそあど

This lesson will go over many similar **こそあど**. So, be sure to keep note of any differences in nuance that are mentioned.

Interrelated **こそあど**

There are many **こそあど** phrases used to describe what something is like. Of course, the what is replaced with a **こそあど**. So, remember that you can't use **こそあど** if what you're referencing cannot be inferred from context. The words below are the basic phrases for "like...". The first four are the most important.

	Like this	Like that	Like that*	What sort of...	Any
Attribute	こんな	そんな	あんな	どんな	いかな**
End of a Sentence	このようだ	そのようだ	あのようだ	どのようだ	

*: "Like that" involves understand basic differences between **それ** and **あれ**. **そんな** sounds less distant than **あんな** in terms of feeling towards whatever style is being referred to. This is in regards to both the speaker and listener. **そんな** may even be used as an interjection similar to "no way!".

****いかな** is a contraction of **いかなる**. Both words are not common and are essentially **書き言葉**. The latter is far more common in writing. You may never see **いかな**, but it finishes the series of demonstratives here.

As you can see, these are all contractions involving the noun **よう (様)**. This word literally means "appearance", which should make sense if it shows what something looks like here. These abbreviated forms are more casual. The attribute forms may actually be used at the end of dependent and independent clauses, but it is not as frequent for them to be in that position instead of modifying a noun. So, this means that these forms may even be followed by particles such as **ので** and **のに**.

Variant Phrases

Various other methods can be used to make "like..." phrases. For instance, you can add the filler word 風 read as ふう which also means "style" to the attribute forms mentioned above. Or, you could use a series of adverbialこそあど which simply start with the sounds but have long vowels instead. To use them as attribute phrases, you either use した, いう, or いった.

Attribute	文尾*	Attrib- ute	文尾	Attribute	文尾
こんな風 {の・ な}	こんな 風だ	こうし た	こうしたも のだ	こういう (風 {の・ な})	こう (いう 風) だ
そんな風 {の・ な}	そんな 風だ	そうし た	そうしたも のだ	そういう (風 {の・ な})	そう (いう 風) だ
あんな風 {の・ な}	あんな 風だ	ああし た	ああしたも のだ	ああいう (風 {の・ な})	ああ (いう 風) だ
どんな風 {の・ な}	どんな 風だ	どうし た	どうしたも のか	どういう (風 {の・ な})	どう (いう 風) か

*: 文尾 = End of the sentence.

1. The 〜いう series is more objective than the first series with or without 風.
2. The addition of 風 is even more common in the spoken language. Traditionally, the first column is bad Japanese. Another issue is the use of な. の is much more common as it is traditionally correct. However, な is acceptable to most speakers. If in doubt, choose の.
3. When you use いった instead of いう, rather than grouping similar things together, you describing them separately.

4. どういった sounds like you're interrogating someone on something whereas どのような is formal with no such nuance.

Examples

1. ああいう ^{とけい} 時計

A watch like that

2. どんな ^{こうざ} 講座 ^う を受けていますか。

What kind of course are you taking?

3. そんな ^{ほうほう} 方法 ^{いちど} のことは一度も聞かなかった。

I never heard of a method like that.

4. こういう ^{じじょう} 事情 ^な ので

Such being the case

5. ^{はいご} 背後 ^は にどういう葉っぱ ^{だいじ} (の色) がくるかが大事です。

What kind of color the leaves will come in the background is important.

Grammar Note: Remember that the particle か in situations like this is used to make relative clauses.

6. これはどういう ^{いみ} 意味 ^{です} ですか。

What does this mean?

7. ^{こうえん} 公園 ^{ことり} にはそのような小鳥 ^が たくさんいます。

There are many such birds in the park.

8. キャンディーやアイスクリーム、私はこういう甘いものが好きです。

I like sweet things like candy and ice cream. (Groups things similar together)

9. キャンディーやアイスクリーム、私はこういった甘いものが好きです。

I like sweet things like candy and like ice cream. (Mentions things as separate examples)

10. {こういう ○・このような △・こうした} 色の服が欲しい。

I want clothes of this color.

11. あの人はどんなマナー違反をしていますか。

What sort of breaches of manner is that person committing?

Culture Note: Japan is a very 規則正しい society. Violating socially understood rules of behavior is bad, but in Japan, a lot of things that are not thought as being bad etiquette in America happen to be frowned upon in Japan. Some of the worst things people complain about in Japan include the following.

ポイ捨て (Littering)	平気で遅刻 (Coming late all fine)
電車で化粧をする (Doing make-up on the train)	あいさつしない (Not greeting)
大声で話す (Speaking loudly)	ヘッドホンの音漏れ (Hearing sound from headphones)

Adverbial Forms

We have yet to address that these forms can be made into adverbs. The interrogative columns will not be mentioned. It's important to note that the final column is frequently used for showing method.

こんな → こんなに	こう	こういう風に	こうやって
------------	----	--------	-------

そんな → そんなに	そう	そういう風に	そうやって
あんな → あんなに	ああ*	ああいう風に	ああやって

*: ああ in this sense is limited to specific phrases such as ああでも and ああいえば.

Examples

12. そんなに急がないでね。(Familiar)

Don't be in such a hurry.

13. そうは思いません。(Contrastive)

I don't think so.

14. こんなに ^{おそ}遅いとは知らなかった。

I didn't realize how late it was.

15. そういう風に英語を勉強します。

I study English that sort of way.

16. 映像をこうやって作ります。

You create a clip like this.

いかにも

いかにも shows us that the adverbial series may also be followed by the emphatic も. Early, it was said that forms of いか are not used in the spoken language, but this is the one exception. So, this is actually an important word. いかにも is similar in meaning to "indeed".

17. いかにも^{とくい}得意そうに

With evident pride

18. いかにもその^{とお}通りだよ。

You can say that again!

+ (い) ら

～ いら can be added to the ^{こそ}あと for place to create "...area/neighborhood" phrases. So, ^{ここ}いら = This area. You may drop the い in these phrases. You may see ～^辺 attached to ～ら. So, ^{ここ}ら^辺 is "these surroundings".

An important set phrase with this grammar is ～^かそこ^{いら}, which can show approximated value/amount.

19. 13 歳^{わか}かそこ^{ぞう}いらの若僧。

A young person around 13 years old.

20. ^ほすう^は歩数は千歩かそこ^らだ。

The number of steps is around 1000.

21. 一時間かそこ^ら待った。

I waited for about an hour.

Another interesting phrase is ^{そん}じよ^{そこ}らの, which is a very emphatic form of ^{そこ}ら, which is in turn a form of ^{そこ}いら. This is often used with a tangible noun afterward.

22. ^{そん}じよ^{そこ}らの力では持ち上がらないくらい重くなる。

It became so heavy that it couldn't be lifted with strength here and there.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

Sentence Note: Out of context, this sentence may seem odd. The speaker is trying to lift a stone, which has gotten heavy to the point he can't pick it up by just gathering up strength. The sentence is translated in past tense as the sentence is in "historical past". There is a literary reason for why the 終止形 is used. The potential is not used because the intransitive 持ち上がる is used.

More こそあど

In addition to the series of こそあど you've already learned, consider the following.

こいつ	そいつ	あいつ	
こなた	そなた	あなた	どなた

These series are not related to each other. The top row involves contractions with the noun やつ. They are typically used to refer to people in the order of first, second, and third person respectively. They may also refer to physical things. The bottom row involves words traditionally meant to show direction. However, the first two have fallen out of use along with their direction and pronoun usages. そなた was actually used like お前 before it died. The last two are never used as direction words and you should already know them as the words for "you" and "who (respectful)?".

第55課: Plants and Animals

You may know how to say dog and tree in Japanese, but have you ever wondered what giraffe, chrysanthemum, and other plant and animals are in Japanese? In this lesson we will explore the many plant and animal names in Japanese.

Plants and Animals

Spelling plant and animal names appropriately is not an easy matter. In biological contexts all such names may be spelled in カタカナ. In literature plant and animal names are often written in Kanji even if the Kanji have otherwise become uncommon. Some names don't have a standard and common Kanji spelling, so sometimes writers chose a Chinese like spelling and have the readers read it with the Japanese word.

PLANTS

Plants are a part of our everyday life. We eat some of them and we use them in our art and mention their wonders in our writing and music.

Like any other language, Japanese has many words and phrases in regards to plants. You first need to know fundamental vocabulary items first. The list below is not exhaustive in listing all the plants of Japan (and abroad), but it will give you a nice start. Some of them you should already know.

Term	Common Spelling	漢字 Spelling	Term	Common Spelling	漢字 Spelling
Plants	植物	←	Grass	草	←
Bamboo	竹	←	Cherry blossom	桜	←
Leaf	葉	←	Stick	枝	←
Tree	木、樹木	←	Rose	バラ	薔薇
Oak tree	カシ	櫟・樺・栢	Willow tree	柳	←

Chrysanthemum	菊	←	Kudzu	クズ	葛
Ivy	ツタ	蔦	Flower	花	←
Sunflower	ヒマワリ	向日葵	Pine tree	松	←
Tulip	チューリップ		Tulip tree	ユリノキ	百合の木
Mulberry tree	クワノキ	桑の木	Daisy	デージー	
Dandelion	タンポポ	蒲公英	Fir tree	モミ	樅
Elm	ニレ	榆	Palm tree	ヤシ、シュロ	椰子、棕櫚
Gardenia	クチナシ	梔子	Bush	低木	←

Spelling Notes:

1. カタカナ is used primarily for taxonomic purposes, but there may be instances when it is employed for italic effects or when the 漢字 spelling is too difficult, but in this case, ひらがな tends to be more common.
2. As for basic vocabulary items such as flower and tree, the 漢字 spellings are most predominant, and spelling them in カタカナ would only be common, again, in taxonomy. For instance, クワノキ is more technical and complicated, which is why it isn't spelling as クワの木. This would take away from the fact that it is a different species of tree.
3. Rarer Japanese names (和名) exist. For instance, 鬱金香, which is read as うっこんこう, means チューリップ. デージー has the Japanese equivalent 雛菊, which is read as ひなぎく. 鬱金香 is rare and literary but 雛菊 is rather common. So, frequency/formality can't be determined easily.

ANIMALS

Animal names are arguably more difficult to spell than plant names. This is because certain animals have nuanced spellings. They may be derogatory spellings that may be aimed at other (groups of) people or even have different zodiac spellings. For basic vocabulary items like dog and cat, the 漢字 spellings are pretty common. For other animals, 漢字 spellings may exist but they aren't used for whatever reason.

To make things easier, the first column of spellings will be the normal spelling you should expect in most situations. The second column will have other potential Kanji spellings. Those in bold are specifically for zodiac spellings. Those with a △ exist but are really never used and are only given for fun. Additional notes follow the chart.

Term		Other Spellings	Term		Other Spellings
Animal	動物	動物	Horse	馬	午
Dog	犬	狗・戌	Cat	猫	
Bird	鳥	西・禽	Fish	魚	
Cow	牛	丑	Fox	狐	
Turtle	カメ	亀	Frog	カエル	蛙
Snake	ヘビ	蛇	Ant	蟻	
Sheep	羊	未	Shark	サメ	鯨
Rabbit	ウサギ	兎	Whale	鯨	鯨
Crab	カニ	蟹	Monkey	猿	申
Spider	クモ	蜘蛛	Gorilla	ゴリラ	大猩々
Bug	虫		Chimpanzee	チンパンジー	黒猩々
Deer	鹿		Bear	クマ	熊
Mosquito	蚊	蚊	Duck	カモ	鴨

Panda	パンダ	熊貓	Domestic duck	アヒル	家鴨
Puffer fish	フグ	河豚	Squid	イカ	烏賊
Octopus	タコ	蛸・章魚	Butterfly	蝶	蝶
Shrimp	エビ	海老・蛸・蝦	Lizard	トカゲ	蜥蜴
Skunk	スカンク	臭鼬	Tanuki	タヌキ	狸
Zebra	シマウマ	縞馬	Donkey	ロバ	驢馬
Giraffe	キリン	麒麟	Elephant	象	
Hippopotamus	カバ	河馬	Alligator; crocodile	ワニ	鱷
Crocodile	クロコダイル	鱷・鱷	Alligator	アリゲーター	鼉/鼉
Wolf	オオカミ	狼	Bee	ハチ	蜂
Wasp	スズメバチ	雀蜂	Sparrow	スズメ	雀
Hawk	タカ	鷹	Eagle	ワシ	鷲
Flamingo	フラミンゴ	紅鶴	Koala	コアラ	子守熊
Eel	ウナギ	鰻	Tiger	トラ、タイガー	虎・寅
Lion	シシ、ライオン	獅子	Jaguar	ジャガー	アメリカ豹
Scorpion	サソリ	蠍	Habu snake	ハブ	波布・飯匙倩
Mongoose	マンガース	猫鼬	Salamander	サンショウウオ	山椒魚
Lobster	ロブスター	大海老	Dugong	ジュゴン	儒艮

Sea horse	タツノオ トシゴ	竜の落とし子	Walrus	セイウチ	海象・海馬
Jellyfish	クラゲ	水母・海月	Sea anemone	イソギンチ ャク	磯巾着
Starfish	ヒトデ	人手・海星・ 海盤車	Seal	アザラシ、 アシカ	海豹、海驢
Otter	カワウソ	川獺	Sea otter	ラッコ	貳虎
Raccoon	アライグ マ	洗熊・浣熊	Mouse	ネズミ	鼠
Rat	大ねずみ	大鼠	Worm	虫けら	虫𧈧
Kangaroo	カンガル ー	長尾驢	Penguin	ペンギン	企鵝・人鳥・ 片吟

漢字 Notes:

1. 魚 may be read as さかな or うお. The first is typically more common, but sometimes the latter is required in certain expressions. The latter is actually from the original word for fish.
2. 狗 is a rather derogatory spelling and is often used to refer to other groups of people (and for Japanese people that would be other groups of Asians).
3. Certain spellings may have alternative reading. For instance, 大猩々 for gorilla is just a 義訓. It can also be read as だいしょうじょう. However, this would be a rare literary word, but the spelling itself would be the rare to begin with.
4. 企鵝 is the oldest spelling for penguin and may be seen read as きが in old texts. 人鳥 may be read as じんちょう, but this reading and word have both become rare and old as well. 片吟 is a rather recent あて字 spelling.
5. 鰐 is typically read as わに. クロコダイル and アリゲーター may be assigned to this character, but this would only be for stylistic purposes.

6. 蜂 is a general term for any kind of bee or wasp. ミツバチ refers to what Americans think of as being bees. アシナガバチ and スズメバチ both would be called wasps, hornets, or yellow jackets by English speakers, but the former has long legs as the name suggests. The Japanese equivalent of a bumblebee is a クマバチ. Some speakers call this as クマンバチ. Both words may also confusingly refer to a オオスズメバチ. This, though, is dialectical. The American version is マルハナバチ. The オオスズメバチ (giant hornet) is extremely dangerous. キイロスズメバチ may be called カメバチ (瓶蜂), トックリバチ (徳利蜂), or アカバチ (赤蜂). クロスズメバチ and シダクロスズメバチ, which would specifically be called wasps by most English speakers, are wasps known for building their nests in the ground. Thus, some Japanese speakers call them ジバチ (地蜂), ドバチ (土蜂), ハイバチ (灰蜂), ヘボ (used in the 東海地方), or スガレ・スガリ (used throughout 東北). Special attention is given to ハチ because all aside from bumblebees are especially dangerous in Japan, and if you are residing in Japan, you need to understand the words for bees and wasps in your area.

Table of Contents

第56課: 擬声語: 擬音語: Animal Sounds

Everyone likes animals. Haven't you seen some today at work or school? Jokes aside, languages are not in agreement about what animals sound like. Sometimes they may sound similar across unrelated languages, but usually they don't.

Curriculum Note: This lesson is currently a stub lesson and will be expanded over time.

Animal Sounds

The following table lists the most important animal sounds in Japanese. See how different they are?

Dog	ワンワン・キャンキャン	Cat	ニャーニャー	Cow	モーモー
Mouse	チューチュー	Pig	ブーブー	Bee	ブンブン
Chicken	コケコッコー	Horse	ヒヒーン	Frog	ケロケロ・ゲロゲロ
Duck	ガーガー	Owl	ホーホー	Monster	ガオー
Sheep/goat	メーメー	Crow	カーカー	Bird	チッチッ
Fox	コンコン	Dove	ポツポ	Cricket	コロコロ
Pheasant	ケンケン	Sparrow	チュンチュン	Chick	ピヨピヨ

More Birds

The most abundant source of animal sounds in Japanese are from birds. This is because each bird species have particular songs. As there are many indigenous bird species in Japan, pictures will be used to show you what these birds look like.



ウグイス : ホーホケキョ



カッコウ : カッコー



ホトトギス : テッペンカケタ

カ



トンビ : ピーヒョロ

□

第57課: 擬声語 III: 擬態語・擬情語

擬態語 represent states and 擬情語 represent emotion(al states). These are intertwined with each other, and they are often tied to some sort of sound. Just like before, different spellings and nuances based on context are to be expected. However, the best thing that you can do to learn Japanese onomatopoeic expressions is see them how they're being used.

擬態語・擬情語

To begin, we will look at a chart of common 擬態語 and 擬情語. Some notes that we have already seen before will be repeated in context of this lesson as reinforcement of what you already know with new material.

Tired, exhausted	くたくた (と・に)	Irritated	いらいら (と)
Refreshed	すっきり (と)	Fixedly	じっと
Round and round	ぐるぐる (と)	Firmly; fixedly	ぐっと
Relieved	ほっと	To be nervous	わくわく (と)
Resolutely; tightly; firmly; steadily	しっかり (と)	Furiously	ふんぶん (と)
Restlessly	そわそわ (と)	Astonished	びっくり (と)
In a mess	めちゃくちゃ	Drenched	びっしょり (と)
Glistening	ぴかぴか (と)	Radiantly	きらきら (と)
Watery	べちゃべちゃ	Sneeze	はくしょん
Rough	ざらざら (と・に)	Stickily	ねばねば (と)
Ecstatically; vacantly	うっとり (と)	Dejected	がっかり

- **くたくた**: Exhausted, worn down, boiled to a mush, or even wordy.
- **いろいろ (と)**: It may be irritating as in emotions are as in the body.
- **すっきり (と)**: Being refreshed, clean-cut, straightforward, complete, and even neat.
- **しっかり (と)**: It can also mean reliable and enough.
- **ぷんぷん (と)**: It can also refer to a strong smell in a negative fashion.

Part of Speech Note: Some verbs are based off of onomatopoeia. Ex. きらめく (to sparkle/radiate).

Voicing Note: Voiced onomatopoeia often have a more serious or dramatic tone to them versus their very similar non-voiced counterparts. They are often antonyms. For example, さらさら can be smooth but ざらざら is rough.

As you can see, there are some very similar patterns going on. Many onomatopoeic expressions in Japanese are the result of a doubled element(s). We have expressions like こそこそ (と) (stealthily) where two consecutive morae are doubled. These in particular are subject to having many variants. For instance, you can say こそつと or こっそり instead. Note that the insertion of the つ is prevented when the resulting double consonant is not one that is allowed in Japanese.

Please note that you always have your irregularities. Sometimes different forms have different nuances, although always related. This does not include non-onomatopoeic words with repeating elements. This is really just something you have to mess around with and test the limits of.

Examples

1. めらめらともえている ^{ほのお} 炎

A flaring flame

2. ちんちん。

Beg! (To a dog)

3. だらだらとした ^{とうろん} 討 論

A lengthy debate

4. じとじとした部屋

Humid/damp room

5. がっかりした顔

A dejected face

6. ^{おんがく} 音 楽 にうっとりする。

To be enchanted by music.

7. はらはらして待つ。

To wait in great suspense.

8. ばらばらに ^{こわ} 壊 す。

To break into pieces.

9. でれでれにする。

To be love-stricken.

10. によろによろと ^{は まわ} 這い 回 る。

To slither about.

11. ^{あに} 兄 は今日プンプンしてる。(Casual)

My old brother is in a bad mood today.

12. ぎらぎら光る ^{たいよう} 太 陽

A glaring sun

13a. 雨の中をはるばる来る。

13b. 雨の中をわざわざ来る。

Come all the way through the rain.

Sentence Note: 13a infers that you never stopped on the way, and 13b infers that you took the trouble to come that far.

14. からからにする。

To dry up.

15. ずきずきと ^{いた}痛む。

To throb in pain.

16. ぎっしり ^つ詰まった

Packed; tight; heavy

17. 雨でぐっしりとぬれた。

I got soaked by the rain.

18. ペこりと ^{あたま}頭 ^さを下げる。

To bob one's head.

19. ぼんやりとした ^{ひとかげ}人影

A vague figure.

20. がっしりとした男

A well-built man

21. (あなた)の日本語の ^{のうりよく}能力 はめきめきと ^{じょうたつ}上達 していますね。

Your Japanese skills are remarkably improving.

22. チューインガムが ^{くつ}靴 ^{そこ}の底にぺたっとくっついた。
Chewing gum stuck to the bottom of my shoe.

23. ぐずぐずする。
To be slow at doing.

24. まるまるとした ^{すい}酔 ^{ぱら}っ ^{払い}払い
A plump drunkard

25. ^{けむり}煙がもくもくと上がる。
For smoke to rise.

26. ぱっくりと裂ける。
To split open.

27. とげがちくちく（と）する
Thorns are prickly

28. 背中がぞくぞく（と）する。
For one's back to chill.

29. ふつふつ（と）沸く
To boil out.

30. 彼はまあまあ ^{やさ}優しい。
He is relatively nice.

Part of Speech Note: まあまあ can also be seen as an interjection meaning "now, now" or "my, my". Many adverbial phrases have varying parts of speech depending on usage.

31. びん はすっかり から 空 だ。

The bottle is quite/completely empty.

32. もうすっかりよくなりましたか。

Have you become quite well already?

33. そっと かた だ 肩 を抱いた。

I gently hugged his shoulder.

Reading Note: 抱く is either read as だく or いただく. The first shows physical embrace. The latter shows the bearing of thoughts, feelings, etc.

Eating & Drinking

To gnaw	がりがり（と）かじる	To eat heartily	もりもり（と）食べる
To gulp whole	がぶりと飲み込む	To bite into	ぱ（っ）くり（と）食べる
To bite fearfully	がぶり（と）かむ		

Laughter

To smile	にっこり（と）笑う	To smile	にこにこ（と）笑う
To sneer	せせら笑う	To have a broad grin	にた {つと・りと・にた（と）} 笑う
To smirk	にや {つと・りと・にや（と）} 笑う		

Table of Contents

Exercises

Exercises:

1. Google some of these onomatopoeia and try finding examples of them being used.
2. Find a book in Japanese and see how many onomatopoeia you can find in the first few pages.

Practice:

With the aid of a dictionary or the Internet, figure out what the following onomatopoeic expressions mean.

1. すらすら読む。2. ぐうぐう寝ねる。
3. きょろきょろと見る。
4. ピューピュー吹いている。
5. ぱくぱく食べる。
6. ざらざらしている。
7. つるつるしている。
8. 彼女はしくしくと泣いた。
9. カーカー鳴く。
10. 僕ぼくの犬は一晩中ひとばんじゅうわんわんと吠ほえた。

Key

Practice

1. To read fluently.
2. To be fast asleep.
3. To look around restlessly.
4. (The wind) is whistling.
5. To eat heartily.

6. To feel rough.
7. To be sticky.
8. She sobbed.
9. To crow.
10. My dog barked all night.

Table of Contents

第58課: Absolute Time IV: While I:間

This lesson will be about the primary word for "while" in Japanese: 間.

間

あいだ
間 literally means "between". This can be used in a physical or spacial sense. However, what we want to focus on here is how this is applied to temporal situations. 間 with time phrases means "while". The actions in the first and second clause respectively aren't necessarily happening at the same time. However, the latter action does happen within the time frame of the first.

Following nouns, 間 should always be used with の because 間 itself is a noun. When following verbs to mean "while", the verb should be in the 〜ている pattern for our purposes now. As you will see, you can attach 間 to nouns of condition, adjectives, and verbs.

Particle Note: If the events are simultaneously occurring, you should use the particle ながら instead.

Tense Note: For this section, we will consider only 〜ている for when using verbs. We will later see in this lesson how to use 〜ていた and return to the question of how to use "Non-past + 間に".

Examples

1. 食べている ^{あいだ} 間 は、テレビを見ません。

I don't watch TV while I eat.

2. しばらくの間、^{どうが} 動画 を見ていた。

I was watching a video/movie/clip for a while.

3. 宿題をしている間、ピザを食べた。

I ate pizza while I did my homework.

4. ロンドンに^{たいざい}滞在している間にシェイクスピアの^{せいたんち}生誕地を^{おとず}訪れます。

I'll visit Shakespeare's birthplace during my stay in London.

5. 夜の間^{かざむ}に風向きは東に変わった。

The wind shifted to the east during the night.

Reading Note: 風向き may also be read as かぜむき. However, this is not as common and some speakers may think it is incorrect.

6. {雨がザーザー^ふ降ってる・土砂^{どしゃぶ}降りの} 間、中にいた。(Casual)

I was inside while it was pouring rain.

7. 国会は夏^{こっかい なつ}の間は休^{きゅうかい}会になりました。

Congress adjourned for the summer.

8. しばらくの間、^{であし}出足がよかった。

There was a good turn-out for some time.

9. 二人の間を^さ裂くのはだめだよ！ (The physical sense of 間)

Separating people is wrong!

Grammar Note: ～間に is used with instantial verbs while ～間 is used with durational verbs.

～ていた間に

This form of the pattern does exist, but you should always pay close attention to differences when changing tense. For instance, ～た間に is **always bad**. Yet, regardless of whether ～ている or ～ていた is used, "A+間に+B" still shows

that A and B were **during** the same time period. And, oddly, ～た is bad, ～ていた is OK.

10. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度^{したく}をして {いる・いた} 間に、宿題をすませた。
かれし

I finished my homework while my boyfriend was preparing dinner.

11. 子供が昼寝^{ひるね}をして {いる・いた} 間に、本を読み終えた。

While the kids were taking a nap, I finished reading {a/the} book.

Though there isn't a fundamental change in meaning, one slight nuance difference that you can get is that ～ていた間に is used in situations when the speaker treats A as already being a past event.

Tense Notes:

1. ～た間に is illogical because Action A would have then ended before the duration of Action B ever begins. You would be forcing an "after" statement on what should be a "while" statement.

2. There are cases where the non-past can be used with 間 which you will see later in this lesson.

～間: When to Use ～かん

This suffix is not that easy to use. It depends largely on context and what time phrase you are attaching it to.

For seconds and minutes, you'll see that there is not much of a difference whether you use ～間 or not. However, because it does demonstrate a "duration of time" more explicitly, it is a bit more formal. The presence or absence of ～間 below is based on grammaticality.

12. 5 ^{びよう}秒 (間) 待って！

Wait five seconds!

13. 5 分 (間) 待って！

Wait five minutes!

14. 5 時間待って！

Wait five hours!

15. ^{じゅっ・じっ}十 週に間待って！

Wait ten weeks!

16. ^{ごかげつ}5 ケ 月 (間) 待って！

Wait five months!

17. 5 年 (間) 待って！

Wait five years!

Things get a little more tricky when you deal with ～前に.

十秒前に ○ 十分前に ○ ^{とおかまえ}十日 前に ○ ^{じゅっかげつまえ}十 ケ 月 前に ○
十年前に ○

Only 週間 and 時間 can be used with ～前に. #週待つ is usually unnatural. However, when 週 is used in the context of 1 週目 (first week), you can say things such as 5 週待つて! or 6 週前に始まった. 時間 is acceptable presumably because it is not the same thing as ～時. ～時 refers to "o' clock" while ～時間 refers to "hours". So, although #時前に and #時間前に are possible, they're not the same.

第59課: Absolute Time V: While II: うち & Others

In this lesson we will learn all about うち. うち is another word for "while", and it will be important for us to compare it with あいだ and other less common "while" phrases.

うち

うち can attach to verbs, adjectives, and nouns of state/condition (夜・留守るす). However, it must **never** be used with the past tense. When used to mean "while", うち must be followed by a particle. So, "A + うち + Ø" is impossible despite that "A + 間 + Ø" is possible.

There is some interchangeability between ～間に and ～うちに. Due to the existence of ～ないうちに, there are three time variables in this lesson: A, B, and C. The basic interpretation of ～うちに is Time A ends after Time C takes place. "Time", here, replaces the words "state" and or "action" as either kind of word is plausible. In the case of ～ないうちに, Time C occurs before Time B ever begins.

To show what forms these patterns may take, look at the following table. Example words will be used to better show what these forms look like. Again, these two patterns can be used with verbs, adjectives, and nouns, but they all involve state of being or action.

	うちに	間に
Verb	するうちに しているうちに	する間に している間に してい た 間に
形容詞	すずしいうちに	すずしい間に
形容動詞	元気なうちに	元気な間に
Noun	留守のうちに	留守の間に

漢字 Note: うちに is usually spelled in ひらがな when used in a temporal sense, but it still may be spelled in 漢字 as 内に.

In either case, both ～うちに and ～間に involve a Time C realizing within the frame of Time A. However, for ～間に, Time C starts and ends anytime during Time A. ～うちに means that by the time Time A ends, Time C is realized. If not, there would be bad consequences. In either case, Time C doesn't start until Time A starts. For ～ないうちに, then, Time C is realized before Time B ever happens because Time B is unfavorable. Take for example Ex. 1.

1. わか 若 い (うちに ○・間に X) 英語を勉強した 方 方がいいよ。

It's best that you study English while you're young.

Grammar Note: ～た方がいい = It's best that (you)...

Clarification Note: Because 内 literally comes from indoors/within, you are literally saying that you're during C in the time frame of A. So, you can't do C before A because it's within and not outside A.

若 い間に itself is a possible phrase. You can do many things while you're young, but learning languages is something that becomes incredibly difficult by age 12 for most people. So, there is a suggestion in Ex. 1 that if you want to learn English, you better do so by the time Time A runs out. If this favorable condition is so intrinsic to the statement, you cannot replace ～うちに with ～間に.

2. スープがまだ熱い {うちに ○・間に X} 飲むのが好きです。

I like eating my soup while it's still hot.

Word Note: The Japanese use the verb “to drink” instead of “to eat” for soup.

3. けいさつ 警察 が来ないうちに、逃げるから、心 心配 ないよ。(Casual)

I'll run away before the police come, so no worries.

In Ex. 3, the main point is escaping before the cops make it there (before Time B realizes). Because this is so important, you cannot use ～間に. In fact, ～ない間に is usually unnatural in general. However, when it is possible to imagine the end point of ○○ない, ～ない間に is possible.

4. つま 妻 が帰ってこない {うちに・間に}、部屋を かた 片 づけました。

I cleaned up the room in the time my wife wasn't home yet.

Nuance Note: Using うちに would suggest not cleaning the room before your wife comes home would be bad.

5. 知らない {間に・うちに}、ねむ 眠 っていた。

I was accidentally sleeping when I didn't know it.

Again, it is possible for 間に to not be followed by a particle, but this is not possible for うち. Using ～うちに with まで would be illogical because Time C ends before A does. まで below has the events be simultaneous to the end, which is possible with ～間に.

6. 家に帰るまでの間、雨につかまってしまった。

I was caught in the rain till I got home.

Grammar Note: Here, ～てしまった shows that you were *unfortunately/regretfully* caught in the rain.

Now it is time to delve more into how they are different.

Using "While" with No Time Line

Both ～間に and ～うちに may be used with verbs like 行く and 帰る despite the fact that they have no timeline as they're instantial verbs. The reason for this is there is one implied via the route needed to do the actions. After all, they are

motion verbs. So, instead of 帰っているうちに, you say 帰るうちに. This does not mean, though, using ~うちに and ~間に here interchangeably result in the same meaning.

7. 家へ帰る間に、^{かさ} 傘を忘れてきたのに気づいた。

While going home, I noticed that I had come without my umbrella.

8. 家へ帰るうちに、傘を忘れてきたのに気づいた。

Before getting home, I noticed that I had come without my umbrella.

漢字 Note: 気づく may be written in 漢字 as 気付く, but this is not that common anymore.

Grammar Note: ~の nominalizes the verb expressions preceding it. 気づく can also be 気がつく.

Non-Past: ~間に O but ~うちに X

Before we talk about what happens when you use ~ている with these patterns, let's look into restrictions involving the non-past tense, which is a form you will less likely encounter. If even *after the realization of Time C there is the potential that Time A continues for a long time or indefinitely*, you **can use ~間に** because its Time C just has to occur within Time A begins and ends. You **cannot use ~うちに** because it implies that Time A will soon stop or stop once Time C is realized. Otherwise, there would not be the added nuance of consequences if things don't go as planned.

9a. ^{かれし} 彼氏が^{はん} 晩ご^{したく} 飯の支度をする間に、^{ぜんぶす} 宿題を全部済ませてしまった。○

9b. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度をするうちに、宿題を全部済ませてしまった。X

I finished all of my homework while my boyfriend prepared dinner.

Grammar Note: Here, ～てしまった indicates the full completion of an action.

Non-Past: ～間に X but ～うちに O

However, if there is the potential that Time A stops *due to* Time C realizing, you can use ～うちに because Time C realizes before Time A ends, but you cannot use ～間に. This is because although the time frame for ～間に is broad and wide so long Time A keeps on going, you cannot use it if Time A ends abruptly due to Time C as Time A doesn't come to a proper close. For instance, say you're drinking and intended for the event to start and end at some point. We'll call this Time A. During Time A, though, you get really red and then you redden once more later on, but this time, Time C, it's serious to the point you have to stop your drinking Time A. This is when you can't use ～間に and have to use ～うちに.

10. 酒をぐくぐくと飲む {○ うちに・X 間に}、また顔が真^{まっか}赤になつてた。(Casual)

My face got completely red again while I was gulping down sake/liquor/alcohol.

Spelling Note: 真っ赤 is another common spelling for まっか.

Non-Past: ～間に O & ～うちに O

Conversely and almost contrary to what has been said in the last two sections, if Time C realizes and there is both the potential that Time A continues on later or that Time A is suspended, you can use either or. When you use ～間に, though, you imply that Time A didn't just end there because of Time C realizing. Or, if you do stop Time A, you can still go back to it later. This note of interchangeability refers to simply replacing one for the other and getting a correct sentence because the context could go either way depending on what you use.

So, if you used ～うちに, it would sound like Time A got suspended because of the realization of Time C. Thus, the nuances of the two apply whenever they show up.

11. 暖かい {うちに・間に}、ちょっと ^{さんぽ}散歩に出かけます。

I'll go out for a little walk while it's warm.

12. 駅へ行く {うちに・間に}、家に ^{かさ}傘を忘れてきたのに気がついた。

While I was going to the train station, I realized that I had left my umbrella at home.

13. その新聞は、夜の {うちに・間に}、^{くば}配られてくるんですね。

That's because the newspaper is delivered during the night.

Grammar Note: 配られる is the passive form of 配る (to deliver/distribute).

～ている + ～間に・うちに

So, what's the difference when you use ～ている and just the non-past tense for both these patterns? In the case of ～ている, the time line involving Time A and Time C is quite long. So, there is ample time for Time C to end before Time A, allowing ～うちに to be grammatical in situations it wouldn't be with the non-past due to high probability that Time C wouldn't be able to end in time before the conclusion of Time A.

14. 赤ちゃんが寝てる {うちに・間に}、新聞読むよ。(Casual)

I'll read the newspaper while the baby is sleeping.

15. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度をして {いるうちに・いる間に}、宿題を全部済ませてしまった。

I finished all of my homework while my boyfriend was preparing dinner.

More on ～ないうちに

First, consider the following examples.

16. {まだ覚えている・忘れない} うちに宿題をします。

I'll do my homework {while I remember/before I forget}.

17. { ^{すず}涼しい・^{あつ}暑くならない} うちに、夏休みの宿題をしてしまいました。

I completed all of my summer break homework {while it was cool/before it got hot}.

18. {明るい・暗くならない} うちに帰りなさい。(Stern)

Come home {while it's light/before it gets dark}.

As said earlier, ～ないうちに shows that Time C is realized before Time B realizes. You can reword these sentences by replacing ～ないうちに with ～間に. ～ないうちに can be used to paraphrase ～間に phrases so long as there is a complete opposite of Time A or a possible Time B and that Time B, if it does occur, happens after Time C is done. So, if it gets dark, that's OK so long as you get home in time. Thus, we can also say that Time B may happen after Time A (when the sun goes away) as long as Time C happens beforehand. It's important to note, though, that ～ないうちに inherently implies a misfortune if things don't go as planned, which is not the case at all with ～間に.

～ないうちに can be the only correct version of a sentence. For instance, in Example 17 and 18, see how the opposite isn't possible with either うち or 間. Shots are preventative, so it's logical that ～ないうちに makes sense.

19. 病気にならないうちに、^よばうちゅうしゃ ^予防注射 ^{しや}をしておいた方がいいですよ。○

It's best that you get immunizations in advance before you get ill.

20. ^{じょうぶ}丈夫な {うち・間} に、予防注射をしておいた方がいいですよ。X

It's best that you get immunizations in advance while you're sturdy.

Grammar Note: ～ておく = To do in advance.

21. ^か蚊が {○ 入らない・X 出ている} ^{かや つ}うちに、蚊帳を吊った。

I hanged up the mosquito net {○ before/X while} the mosquitoes got in.

漢字 Note: 吊 is not a common character, so don't worry about remembering it now.

Remember, when you can visualize a beginning and end point, ～ない間に can be used, but all of the facts leading up to now hold.

21. ^{だれ}誰もいない {うちに・間に}、^{かたづ}机を片付けた。

While there was no one, I fixed up the desks.

～ないうちに VS ～まえに

Although their translations may have you think they are the same, they're not. Remember that in "B ない+うちに+C", C is a positive situation, and the realization of B is feared. This is not implied in ～まえに. Rather, in this case, B hasn't realized yet, but its potential to is right in front of one's eyes.

22. 走ったが、家に {着かないうちに・着くまえに}、雨につかまった。

I ran, but I got hit by the rain before I got home.

23. 妻が {起きないうちに・起きるまえに}、家を出た。

I left the house before my wife woke up.

24. 雨が降^ふ {る前に・らないうちに}、帰りましょう。

Let's go home before it rains.

Grammar Note: ～ましょう attaches to the 連用形^{れんようけい} of a verb to make the polite volitional (let's) form.

～すきに & ～まに？

If you were to come across these expressions, you would find them very similar to ～うちに. However, there are important differences.

～ {る・ない・た} すきに shows that one does what one wishes to do during an opportunity that opens up (from the negligence of someone).

～ まに is used to show that one does something when a chance arises and the time until that chance is lost. Thus, it has interchangeability with ～あいだに. It just has the added sense of taking advantage.

25. 先生のいない {うち・あいだ・ま・すき} に、すばやくホワイトボードを消してしまった。

I erased the white board quickly while the teacher wasn't there.

26. 今だ！ こっちを見ない {○ うち・○ すき・× ま・× 間} に、逃げて！

Now! Run away while they don't look here!

27. 夜 {が・の} 涼しい {○ うち・○ 間・× ま・× すき} に、部屋をきれいにした。

I cleaned my room while the night was cool.

漢字 Note: This すき can be written as 隙.

～間（は） & ～うちは

X + あいだは + Z
X + うちは + Z

Z shows a line of time, and with the contrasting は, a **contrasting situation** to X is either explicitly stated or hinted at. Although you can use ～間 whether there is a contrasting situation or not, in order to use ～うちは, there has to be a contrasting situation.

28. 彼氏が晩ご飯の支度する {あいだ (は) ・ うちは} 、宿題をしていた。

I was doing my homework while my boyfriend was preparing homework (but not at other times).

29a. 授業のあいだ (は) 、ずっと居^{いねむ}眠りしていた。○

29b. 授業のうちは、ずっと居眠りしていた。X

I napped all through class.

30. コーヒーって若いうちはあまり飲まないほうがいいんですか。

Is it best to not drink a lot of coffee while you're young?

In this case 間 would be somewhat unnatural because you're trying to asking something that is potential beneficial.

～うちが

Although any instance of this can be rephrased to avoid it, it shouldn't surprise you that this is possible given that うち is a noun. In this case all this is showing is "within A".

31. 何といっても、若いうちが花だよ。

No matter what they say, what's young are flowers.

32. お酒は、ほろ酔いのうちが最高だと言われる。

It's said that alcohol is the best while tipsy.

Grammar Note: 言われる is the passive form of 言う and is translated as "it's said".

Other Meanings of うち

Aside from meaning "while", うち has other usages. All these meanings historically be written as 内, but this is only the case today when used in a spacial sense.

1. Indoors; interior; middle
2. One's home, family, spouse, in-group
3. In an abstractly established perimeter.
4. First person pronoun most often used by women.

Examples

33. うちの車や。（関西弁; feminine）

It's my car.

34. ひゃくにんのこ残りったうちの一人が犯人だぞ。（Masculine; vulgar）

One of these remaining 100 people is the criminal!

35. あのドアは内に向かってあ・ひらきます。

That door over there opens inward.

36. また、近いうちに。

Let's meet again soon.

37. うちがわ かぎ
内 側 から 鍵 がかかってしまった。

It was locked from the inside.

Grammar Note: ～てしまう = To accidentally do something.

38. うん じつりよく
運 も 実 力 のうちである。

Luck is also in one's true ability.

Table of Contents

When temporal nouns can be used with に and why is a matter that boggles the best minds of Japanese grammarians. It turns out that a lot of this decision depends on the more specific properties of groups of similar words and quirks on an individual basis. As the student, you will need to learn about what is certain so that you know when this relation exists or not.

Getting a Sense of the Problem

In large part, many temporal nouns are not used with the particle に. For instance, just as you don't say "at yesterday", Japanese don't say きのうに. Why, then, are there sentences like the following?

1. それを**明日** (に) することになっています。

It has been decided that we will do that tomorrow.

2. 約束はいつにしましょうか。

When shall we carry out the appointment?

On the flip side, none of these sentences need に after the temporal nouns (which are in bold). Yet, as is the case with expressing a particular absolute point in time, に shows up obligatorily. So, if the context in which Ex. 1 was uttered were serious and particular, に would become obligatory. In reverse, if the contexts in which Ex. 2 was uttered were less serious and particular, に would become ungrammatical.

3. 私は8時に学校に行きます。

I will go to school at 8 o'clock.

4. どうぞお先に行ってください。

Please go before (me).

5. 彼は、今年 2013 年（に）亡くなりました。○

He died this year, 2013.

6a. 彼は今年に亡くなりました。X/○

6b. 彼は今年亡くなりました。○

He died this year.

Sentence Note: The grammaticality of 6a is based on whether there is context that would make 今年 more absolute. If the preceding sentence were say a question such as 「彼はいつ亡くなられたのですか」, it would become grammatical to say it.

Just from a few examples, you may already be getting a sense at when に shows up. But, we still have to think of more definitive ways to explain all of this.

Time Phrases to Consider

Although this may be a given, the first qualification that we have to make is narrow our scope to Modern Japanese after World War II. Believe it or not, the older the language, the more different it is. And, temporal grammar is not immune to these generational changes. Although we've seen a lot of words thus far, we need to have a larger list to consider. Note that this is still not exhaustive.

あい だ	During	あさ って	The day after tomorrow	秋	Fall	明日	Tomor- row
朝	Morning	後	After	い つ	When	今	Now
おと とい	Two days ago	過去	Past	季 節	Season	きの う	Yester- day
今日	Today	去年	Last year	今 朝	This morning	現在	Presently

午後	Afternoon	午前	Morning; A.M	今年	This year	このごろ	These days
今月	This month	今週	This week	最近	Recently	昨年	Last year
時間	Time	正月	New Years	新年	New Year	常	Ever
同時	Same time	夏	Symmer	春	Spring	晩	Evening
途中	In the middle of	昼	Noon	冬	Winter	毎年	Every year
未来	Future	昔	Long ago	休み	Break	夕方	Evening
翌日	The next day	夜	Night	～時	O' clock	～日	Day (month)

Word Note: Words like 梅雨 (rainy season) are similar, but they don't quite fit with the grammar restrictions that are the focus of this lesson. こんにちは, みょうにち, and さくじつ are also significantly different because of their formality.

Most time phrases are relative to a degree. The degree of relatively in these words is the reason for why に may not work or may not be needed. Some are more indicative of relative phrases (きょう あす きのう). Some are more indicative of absolute phrases (～月、～日、～時). Some are intermediate (春 夏 秋 冬). Others are referential (翌日, 前日, 翌年, 前年).

Non-temporal Usages of に

The easiest usages of に that really aren't sources of any confusion is when rather than being part of a time phrase, に is a predicate phrase for some other reason.

7. 以^い前^{ぜん}にもまして、彼女の韓^{かん}国^{こく}語^ごは上^{じょう}達^{たつ}している。

Her Korean is improving more than before.

8. 昨日に引き続き今日は暑苦しい。

Today is sultry continuing from yesterday.

9. 明日にかけて広い範^{はん}囲^いで曇^{くも}るでしょう。

It will be cloudy in a large area into tomorrow.

10. 仕事を来年に持ち越^こさないほうがいい。

It's best not to prolong work to the next year.

11. あさってにしよう。

Let's do it the day after tomorrow.

12. 今日になってやっと愛^{あい}犬^{けん}と再^{さい}会^{かい}した！

After all this time, I finally united today with my beloved dog!

13. 明日に^{ひか}控^かえた最後の集会

Last assembly postponed to tomorrow

14. きノウ今日に始まったことではない。(Set Phrase)

This is not a first.

15. 夜になっても、寝ないで。

Don't even sleep at night.

にでも, にも, and には are also significantly different and are not in the scope of the problem of this lesson. However, example sentences will be given.

16. 明日にでも仕事をや^やめたい。

I'd like to quit my job even tomorrow.

17. 明日にもプレゼントが^{とど}届きますよ。

The present will be delivered possibly even tomorrow.

18. 奇跡の^{たまもの}賜物は今日にも当てはまるのですか。

Do miraculous gifts apply to today's world?

19. 明日には明日の風が吹く。

Tomorrow's wind will blow tomorrow.

Absolute, Relative, Intermediate, Referential

First we need to take a bird's eye view on the characteristics of temporal nouns.

Representative temporal nouns that do not take に for time include 今日, 明日, and 昨日. This is typically explained by their relativity to now. These nouns have a range of time associated with them, and there is no specific point in time like 4:56 being expressed. They can be used with things like ～じゅう (throughout) and ～のあいだ, but they can't be used with something like ～ごろ.

20. ^{きょうじゅう}今日^{じゅんび}中に準備が出来ているはずです。

Preparations should be finished during today.

21. ^{あしたじゅう}明日中にやります。

I will do it by (the end of) tomorrow.

Representative temporal nouns that do take に for time include ～時, ～日, and ～月 phrases. These are most indicative of absolute time expressions. They consequently can't be used with ～中 ～のあいだ. They do, however, work with 頃.

22. 何時ごろに寝るの？

At what time do you go to sleep?

23. 8 時 30 分ごろに電話をください。

Please call around 8:30.

24. 7 月 11 日ごろに梅雨^{つゆあ}明けした。

The rainy season ended around June 11.

There are times when they aren't used with に, but as is shown below, this is the case when you are showing which point in time a phenomenon in its entirety occurs, which differs greatly from when **an** action/event is done. It can also be said that without に, the time phrase becomes more emphasized.

25. この 調 査 船^{ちようさせん} は、先月 下 旬^{げじゆん} にオーストラリアを出発して 南 極 海^{なんきよくかい} で
きこうへんどう かんそく あ
気 候 変 動 の 観 測 に当たっていましたが、

今月 2 4 日、あつ こおり こうろ はば こうこう
厚 い 氷 に航路を阻まれ航行できなくなりました。

The research vessel left Australia late last month and was heading for measuring climate change in the Antarctic Sea, but its course was obstructed by thick ice this month on the 24th, and it is now unable to pass through.

Of course, there are those that are in between absolute and relative time phrases—intermediates—that at times can be with に and at other times can't. Examples include the season words 春, 夏, 秋, and 冬. These can be used with 〜中, 〜の間, and 〜ごろ. So, when they act more like relative time phrases, you can expect them to not be with に.

26. 健 太^{けんた} は一年生の間だけ家から 通 学^{つうがく} したが、二年になった春、りょう
寮 に住むこと
になった。

Kenta commuted to school from home only while he was a first year student, but the spring he became a second year student, he began living in the dorms.

27. わたしの最初の小説を昭和 50 年の夏に出版しました。

I published my first novel in the summer of Showa Year 50.

28. 去年の秋にバイトから首になった。

I got my job cut from my part time job last fall.

So, what are referential time phrases? As listed earlier, words like 翌日 are similar to words like 明日, these words are not rooted down in the present. Tomorrow is quite different than “the next day” in terms of usage.

29. 翌週会う約束をした。

I made an appointment to meet the next week.

30. 翌日に家に帰る。

To return home the next day.

31. ぼくは新しいケイタイを買って、その翌日に失^なくしちゃったんです。

I bought a new cell-phone and lost it the next day.

The Heart of the Problem

What we really want to know is if there is any relation between に and 今日, 明日, and 昨日. Consider 明日. Although it may be relative, it does refer to the day directly after “now”. So, in that sense, it is somewhat absolute. There is a direction implied in the time line. In being demonstratives, they’re similar toこそあど. Unlike them, however, they have a time span.

All of these qualities make these words so unique. It shouldn't be surprising that two groups of demonstratives don't often go with each other. This is why 95% of the time you never see something like その明日. This, though, sometimes shows up, but in literary or figurative contexts in the same sense that “that tomorrow” or “that next day” can be used in English. It's to note that if 明日 is used this way, it's read as あした.

32a. この今日、わたしは学校に行きます。X

32b. 今日、わたしは学校に行きます。○

I will go to school today.

33. その明日を目指す。

To shoot for that tomorrow.

34. 自分はその明日 ^{けいむしょ} 刑務所 へ行って. . . (Literary)

I went to the jail the next day...

Sadly, this doesn't take account of other words like 日 and 夜. Though they may be relative, they do not have a place on the timeline with "now". Day and night don't have the natural sense of a demonstrative word. So, although they're relative words, just like in English, you can say something like あの日.

35. その夜、彼は ^{いがん な} 胃癌 で亡くなりました。

That night, he died from stomach cancer.

36. あの日々を忘れないでください。

Do not forget about those days.

37. この年まで続く。

To continue into this year.

Aside from this, whenever you do see a demonstrative word plus a relative time phrase, time of a situation is not being expressed. However, all instances still sound literary and may not necessarily ever be heard in the spoken language.

38. それでは、彼は、その明日の ^{かち} 価値を ^{ちょうみん} 町民 に知らせてまわっているのではない
か。(やや ^{こふう} 古風)

So then, is he not going about notifying the townspeople of those tomorrow prices?

Of course, some common sense has to be used. Now, whether この, その, あの, and どの can attach to these words is yet another question that has been touched on a little here. It all depends on whether the time phrase has demonstrative properties. In Japanese terms, time phrases that have high 指示性.

39. この毎年 X

This every year X

Why is this bad in both languages? You have two demonstrative elements. This is a no go. And, this property explains why you couldn't add them easily to words like 今日 without enough context to allow its usage.

Table of Contents

第61課: The Giving Verbs

Japanese has specific verbs that define the relationship between the giver and recipient. Their usages with て are so important and particularly difficult that they will be covered separately.

The 3 Personal Giving Verbs

The main verbs of giving are あげる, くれる, and もらう. They also have different forms.

Vulgar	Regular	Respectful
やる	あげる	差し上げる
	くれる	下さる
	もらう	いただく

Conjugation Note: The ^{れんようけい}連用形 of 下さる has a sound change of り → い with -ます.

あげる shows oneself giving something. It may also be used to show the giving of things by people in one's in-group to other (close) in-group members. This does not mean, though, that this should ever be used for when someone, even if they are in your in-group, gives something to you.

1. 父は母に時計をあげました。私も母にプレゼントをあげました。

My father gave my mother a watch. I too gave my mother a present.

2a. 父は私にコンピューターゲームをあげました。X

2b. 父は私にコンピューターゲームをくれました。O

My dad gave me a computer game.

Definitions Note: あげる can also mean "to rise". Spelling depends on how it's used. やる may be a casual form of "to do", and it can also mean "to send; dispatch", "to kill", "to show (movie)", "to drink (alcohol)", "to suffer from", etc.

くれる means an outsider or a less close member gives something to the speaker or to a member of one's in-group. So, it is when someone gives something to either you or someone in your in group. It may also be used to describe either you or someone in your in-group doing something unpleasant to an opposing person. This is similar to "to let someone have...".

もらう and its variant means "to receive; get". It may also mean "to welcome someone/something into the family". いただく is always said when receiving food, especially at the beginning of a meal.

Particle Note: For "to give", に is used to mark the recipient while for "to receive", the giver is marked by に. For the latter, から may be used instead. から, unlike に, may also be used with "receive" aside from an actual person.

3. 私は彼にプレゼントをあげた。

I gave him a gift.

4. いっぱい
一 杯 やらないか。

How about a drink?

5. しば
芝 に水をやる。

To water the lawn.

6. かとう むすこ
加 藤 さんは、息 子 に犬をプレゼントしてあげました。

Mr. Kato gave a dog to his son as a present.

7. しゃちょう しょうかいじょう
社 長 さんは私に 紹 介 状 を下さいました。

The company president gave me a letter of introduction.

8. 犬に肉をやった。

I gave meat to the/a dog.

9. むすめ きゃく はなたば さ
娘 はお 客 さまに 花 束 を差し上げました。

My daughter gave a bouquet to the guests.

10. やるせない

Helpless/miserable

11. アイディアをもらう。

To borrow an idea.

12. この しょうぶ われわれ
勝 負 は 我 々 がもらった。

We took this match.

Impersonal Giving Verbs

There are other verbs in Japanese that mean "to give" but are not at a personal level. **受ける** is used in several situations for things received "outside of favor", and **与える** is generally used with things given "outside of a personal level".

受ける (Receive)	与える (Give)
Figurative, with things such as a ball or event.	Used in respect to animals.
Used with things such as a job, education, etc.	Used when granting things.
"To take/receive" an exam; often 受験する	Used with prizes.
Used with bringing harm.	

Word Note: 受ける may also be 受け止める. It is used in the sense of "to take" as in "to take the news", "to take the events badly", etc.

13. 彼は 深く 真剣に受け止めたね。

He took it seriously, didn't he?

14. 有名高校を目指して 難 関 の 試験を受けた。

I took a highly competitive exam aiming for the prestigious high school.

15. 彼は 首 に 軽 傷 を受けた。

He received a smaller injury on the neck.

16. 判 決 を受ける。

To receive a sentence.

17. 貧 しい人々に与える。

Give to the poor.

18. 台 風 が与えた 損 害 が多い。

There is a lot of damage caused (given) by the typhoon.

19. 許 可 を与えます。

I will give permission.

20. いい 成 績 を与えた。

I gave (him) a good grade.

21. 健 康 診 断 を受ける。

To have health checks.

第62課: ～て（も） いい: Permission

This lesson will be about ～て（も） いい. This is an essential part of many sentences for asking and giving permission to someone to do something.

～ていい

～て(も)いい is used to ask for permission. As speech level changes this phrase, this is a good time to review these processes. Remember that も makes the sentence more indirect, thus making it more polite. The particle adds the meaning of "even if I".

Plain	て（も） いい	Polite	て（も） いいですか	Very Po- lite	てもいいでし ょうか
For- mal	てもよろしいで すか	Very For- mal	てもよろしいでし ょうか		

The addition of the particle も emphasizes the sense of "if you do X, that's OK", and it is often used to give a softening effect. This is why it is usually seen when asking questions as to be more polite.

Examples

1. お ^{かあ}母 ^{ちゃん}！ ^{こんやえいが}今 ^み夜 映 画 を 観 て っ て い い ？

Mom! Can I see a movie tonight?

2. すみません、タバコを吸ってもいいですか。

Excuse me, is it alright if I smoke?

3. あのう、お隣に座ってもよろしいですか。

Mm, is it fine for me to sit by you?

4. はこ あ
箱を開けてよろしいですか。

May I open the box?

5. たくさんありますから、ぜんぶ こうせい
全部を校正しなくてもいいです。

Because there is a lot of them, it's OK if you don't proofread them all.

6. はい
入ってよろしいでしょうか。

May I come in?

7. くろだしゃちょう わたしたち すわ
黒田社長、私達はこちらに座ってもよろしいですか。

President Kuroda, may we sit down here?

8. 彼ははこちらに すわ
座ってもよろしいでしょうか。

May he sit down here?

9. しゃちょう か
社長、この本をお借りしてもよろしいでしょうか。(Humble Speech)

President, may I borrow this book?

10. こちらにご記入をいただいてよろしいですか。

May I have you fill this out here?

Sentence Note: In honorifics, it is important to lessen the effect of pushing a request on someone. So, ~てよろしい is seen here asking for permission to make a request to the listener.

許可 Not 依頼

～ていい asks for permission, not request. In any case, the listener could still say no. If you were to use ～ていい with 借りる (to borrow), the listener is the person you're seeking permission to borrow. The listener is not the person lending you the money (貸す人ではない!). We can surmise that the only people that would say something like お金を貸してください are bank deposit salesmen or loan sharks, but friends wouldn't use it among each other.

- 11a. 先生に〇を習ってもいいですか? X

- 11b. 先生、〇を教えていただけませんか。〇

Sensei, may you teach me 〇?

12a. 10 万円を借りてもよろしいですか。 X

12b. 10 万円を貸していただけませんか。 O

Could I please have you lend me 100 thousand yen?

13. 友達から借りてもいいですか。

Is it alright if I borrow from a friend?

14. 細かいのがないので、ちょっと 10 円 {借りてもいい X・貸してくれない} ?

I don't have small change, so could I borrow 10 yen?

Sentence Note: Here, the difference between the English "borrow" and Japanese 借りる is quite clear. It is not that 借りていい itself is faulty, but it's wrong for the sentence the English speaker tried to convey.

～て結構

Another equivalent phrase ～[て・で] ^{けっこう}結構 . It shows that something is fine but may not be entirely satisfactory.

15. どれでも結構だ。

Anything's fine.

Particle Note: As you should know by now で+も results in the particle でも.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 泣かなくてもいいよ。

2. ペンで書いてもよろしいでしょうか。

3. 英語で話してもいいですか。

4. 生きていてもいいですか。

5. 笑っていいよ。

6. できなくてもいいよ。

7. ここに駐車してもいいですか。

8. この腕に注射 {して・を打って} もいいですか。

9. お茶でもけっこうです。

10. コンピューターを使ってもいいでしょうか。

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. It's OK not to cry.
2. May I use a pen?
3. Is it all right for me to speak in English?
4. Is it OK for me to stay living?
5. It's OK to laugh.
6. It's OK (even) if you can't.
7. Is it all right to park here?
8. Is it all right to give the shot in this arm?
9. Tea is fine.
10. May I use the computer?

第63課: The Particles が & けれど

These are perhaps the most used conjunctions in Japanese.

The Conjunctive Particle が

The conjunctive particle が may give the **premise** of a conversation or indicate a contradiction. The two clauses of the sentence should be the same in politeness.

1. 目が赤いが、どうしたの。(Casual)

Your eyes are red...what's the matter?

2. テレビで聞いたが。

I heard it on TV, but...

3. 高いが、^{しつ}質は悪い。

It's expensive, but the quality is bad.

4. ちょっとすみませんが、^{あんないじょ}案内所はどこですか。

Excuse me one moment, but where is the information center?

5. すみませんが、^{しお}塩を取っていただけませんか。

Excuse me, but could you pass me the salt?

6. ^{やす}安いことは安いが、質が悪い。

A cheap thing is cheap, but the quality is bad.

7. 寒いんですが、^{かぶとん}掛け布団をもう ^{いちまい}一枚 かしていただけますか。

Since it is cold, could you lend me another quilt?

8. すみませんが、私の ^{しつもん} 質 問 に ^{こた} 答 えてくださいますか。

I'm sorry, but could you please answer to my questions?

9. 質はいいが、^{ねだん} 値 段 も高い。

The quality is good, but the price is high.

10. ^{えいが} 映 画 を見たが、^{おもしろ} 面 白 かった。

I watched a movie, and it was interesting.

11. 「日本語のコースでは、漢字をいくつか習いますか」「いくつ習うか分かりませんが、もう漢字が読めますから、私は気にしません」

"How many Kanji do you learn in the Japanese course?" "I don't know how many you learn, but since I can already read Kanji, I don't care".

12. 本を読んだが、つまらなかった。

I read it, and it was dull.

13. 札幌へは行きますが、函館へは行きません。

I'll go to Sapporo, but I won't go to Hakodate.

14. ^ま 負けるに負けたが、悲しくない。

{I/we} indeed lost, but I'm not sad.

15. 聞くには聞いたが、まだよく聞こえない。

I've listened to it and listened, but I still can't hear it well.

16. 高田くんは頭がいいが、冷たい人だ。

Takata is smart, but he's a cold person.

Sentence Note: As is, this sentence is rather harsh. To critique someone less harshly in Japanese, you should mention the bad quality first and then say something positive.

17. はな 鼻 が高いが、においができない。

His nose is long, but he can't smell.

Word Choice Note: 高い is "long" for human noses; long for other noses like elephants' is 長い.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 spelling for におい in this situation is 匂い, which is very common.

18. ちょっとお ねが 願いがあるんですが。

I have a little request.

Usage Note: This sentence shows how んですが can be used to introduce a topic politely, and it's followed by something that needs permission, whether it be a request or invitation. As this sentence shows, what follows が doesn't always have to be mentioned. Something that could have followed it here would be いいでしょうか. け(れ) ど could have been used instead of が.

The Conjunctive Particle けれど

けれど comes from the 已然形 of 形容詞 followed by the conjunctive particle ど. It has the very polite form けれども and the casual form けど. けれど means "although/but", similar to が. It may also be used to mean "but" at the end of a sentence, but it may also just soften a statement to be more polite and indirect. Even as a conjunctive particle, it may just simply connect phrases without a sense of contrast.

18. 彼は若いけれど、考えのしっかりした人です。

Although he's young, he's a sound thinking person.

19. 漢字は書けないけれど、読むことはできます。

Although I can't write Kanji, I can read them.

20. ちょっとテレビがうるさくて勉強できないんだけど、音を小さくしてくれない？
(Casual)

The TV is a little loud and I can't study, so could you turn it down?

21. 益田ですけれども。

This is Masuda.

22. もうすこし日本語がよく分かるといいのだけれども。

But it would be nice if I understood Japanese a little bit better.

23. とざん 登山に行きたいんですけど、どこかいいところありませんか。

I want to go mountain climbing. Could you tell me of any good places?

24. このちほう 地方は寒くないと聞いたけれども、本当に毎日こ 冷え込みますよ。

Although I heard that it wasn't cold in this region, it actually gets chilly every day.

25. それはりっぱ 立派だけれど、そうっていない。

That's great, but it's not turning out as such.

26. へんじ 返事するにはするけど、もうちょっと待ってね。(Soft; probably a female speaker)

I'll give you the answer, certainly, but could you wait a minute?

27. そうすっけど、本当にだいじょうぶ？

I'll do so, but is it really OK?

Contraction Note: すっけど = するけど. る → っ is common in really casual speech in situations like this where it is before a consonant like k. Thus, するから may be seen as すっから.

Variant Note: けれども is a slightly old and somewhat dialectical variant.

Phrase Note: こう言うてはなんだ {が・けど} is a vague way of saying that one might be saying too much or feel awkward about. The なん is 何.

Table of Contents

第64課: Family

Family terms are different for one's family and someone's family. One's family is 家^か族^{ぞく}. Another's is ご家族. ご～ is an honorific prefix that attaches to most Sino-Japanese words.

The traditional Japanese house structure, 家^{いえ}, is very different from a nuclear family. The 家 is responsible for making contracts with Buddhist temples and is comprised of generations of married couples and unmarried children. Ancestors are thought to watch over their descendants.

The wife joins her husband's 家 and has no ritual obligations for her nuclear family. In real life one's nuclear family is still important, but death and lineage is dominated by one's 家. Only one child is a successor, and it's usually the oldest male child. Females are rarely chosen because they would be obligated for both families' rituals. Upon death, individuals who don't receive ritual care be-

come 無^む縁^{えん}仏^{ぼとけ}. These people include singles, childless couples, etc. Family altar is 仏^{ぶつ}壇^{だん} and family grave is 墓^{はか}. Ashes of past generations are kept there.

Nowadays, some are veering from this. Some have their ashes scattered and others have a grave plot, but these are hard to get.

Citation Note: Introduction based on Professor Satsuki Kawano's lecture *Creating a New Mortuary Ceremony in Contemporary Japan* (2012).

家族

There are many important people in your family tree 家系図^{かけいず}. Not all family terms have separate terms for one's family and someone else's family. When there is a term that has both an 音読み and a 訓読み, the first is usually for referring to them or in written terms.

Great-grandpar- ents	曾祖父母	そうそふば
Great-grandfather	曾祖父	そうそふ・ひ（い）じじ・ひおおじ
Great-grand- mother	曾祖母	そうそば・ひ（い）ばば・ひおおば
Great-grand- child(ren)	曾孫	そうそん・ひ（い）まご・ひこ (Rare)
Grandparents	祖父母	そふば
Grandfather	祖父	そふ・おじ (Rare)・じじ(Dialect)・じい (~Old man)・ おおじ (Rare)
Grandmother	祖母	そば・ばば (Dialect/rude)・おおば (Rare)
Grandchild(ren)	孫	まご
Granduncle	大叔・伯父	おおおじ
Grandaunt	大叔・伯母	おおおば
Parents	両親	りょうしん
Father	父（親）	ちち（おや）
Mother	母（親）、お 袋	はは（おや）
Dad	パパ、おやじ	パパ、おやじ
Mom	ママ、お袋	ママ、おふくろ
Uncle	叔・伯父	おじ
Aunt	叔・伯母	おば
Husband	夫、旦那	おっと、だんな
Wife	妻、女房、家 内	つま、にようぼう、かない
Son	息子	むすこ
Daughter	娘	むすめ
Older Brother	兄（貴）	あに（き）
Younger Brother	弟	おとうと
Older Sister	姉（貴）	あね（き）
Younger Sister	妹	いもうと

Word Notes:

1. 家内 is felt to be condescending because it suggests that women should be in the house.
2. For writing aunt and uncle, 叔 is used when they're younger and 伯 is used when they're older than your parents.
3. 母親 and 父親 shouldn't be used to address one's parents. 母 and 父 are similarly used. 母 and 父 may refer to the mother or father of anything also.
4. ～貴 attached to 兄 and 姉 adds respect.
5. As you will learn, you will often or usually call family members with the titles originally for someone else's family. Some here include one's mother, father, grandfather, and grandmother. 兄 is often like this and 姉 is even more so replaced by the term originally reserved for someone else's older sister.

Examples

1. 私は ^{きょうだい}兄 弟 が 3 人います。

I have three siblings.

2. 母なる大地 (Set Phrase)

Mother Earth

3. 姉は母に似ている。

My older sister resembles my mom.

ご家族

The main difference between the words for one's family with that of another is that someone's family is addressed with more honorific terms. The list below illustrates these terms with the same rules of age applying for aunt and uncle as before.

Great-grandfather	曾お祖父さん	ひおじいさん
Great-grandmother	曾お祖母さん	ひおばあさん
Great-grandchild(ren)	曾孫さん	ひまごさん
Grandfather	お祖父さん	おじいさん
Grandmother	お祖母さん	おばあさん
Grandchild(ren)	お孫さん	おまごさん
Granduncle	大叔・伯父さん	おおおじさん
Grandaunt	大叔・伯母さん	おおおばさん
Parents	ご両親	ごりょうしん
Father	お父さん	おとうさん
Mother	お母さん	おかあさん
Uncle	叔・伯父さん	おじさん
Aunt	叔・叔母さん	おばさん
Husband	ご主人、旦那さん	ごしゅじん、だんなさん
Wife	奥さん	おくさん
Child	お子さん	おこさん
Son	息子さん	むすこさん
Daughter	娘さん、お嬢さん	むすめさん、おじょうさん
Older Brother	お兄さん	おにいさん
Younger Brother	弟さん	おとうとさん
Older Sister	お姉さん	おねえさん
Younger Sister	妹さん	いもうとさん
Siblings	ご兄弟	ごきょうだい

4. 彼女は 外見^{がいけん}はお姉^{ねえ}さんと似ているが、性格^{せいかく}は異なるよ。

She takes after her sister in appearance, but their characters differ.

会話: アメリカ人 ^{りゅうがくせい} 留学生、セス・クンロードがホームステイ ^{さき} 先のお母さんと話
している。

5.

お母さん：セス、家族の ^{しゃしん} 写真（を）持ってる？

セス：ええ、あります。

お母さん：ちょっと見せてもらってもいい？

セス：ええ。

お母さん：へえ。これがお父さん？

セス：ええ、父です。

お母さん：セスは、お父さんによく似て（い）るね。

セス：ええ、よく言われます。それからこっちが弟です。

お母さん：ああ、弟さんか。今、大学生？

セス：いいえ、弟は私より4つ下で、今高校生です。

お母さん：ずいぶん若く見えるわねえ。とってもかわいい弟です。

ごい
語彙 Vocabulary

写真 = Picture 高校生 = High school student 若い = Young よく言
われます = said a lot

～に似ている = To resemble...

Neutral Family Terms

Despite there being a great divide in family terminology, there are still many terms that are neutral and may be used for both one's own family and someone's family. Below is a list of the most common of these neutral terms.

Nephew	甥	おい
Niece	姪	めい

Cousin	いとこ	いとこ
Second cousin	はとこ・またいとこ・いとこの子	はとこ・またいとこ・いとこのこ
Father and Mother	父母	ふぼ
Sisters	姉妹	しまい
Brothers/Siblings	兄弟	きょうだい
Younger Siblings	弟妹	ていまい
Brother-in-law	義兄弟	ぎきょうだい
Brother-in-law	義弟	ぎてい
Older sister-in-law	義姉	ぎし
Younger sister-in-law	義妹	ぎまい
Son-in-law	娘の夫、(婿) 婿、女婿	むすめのおっと、(むすめ) むこ、じよせい
Daughter-in-law	息子の妻、嫁、義理の娘	むすこのつま、よめ、ぎりのむすめ
Father-in-law	義理の父、義父、舅	ぎりのちち、ぎふ、しゅうと
Mother-in-law	義理の母、義母、姑	ぎりのはは、ぎぼ、しゅうと
Relatives	親族、身寄り	しんぞく、みより
Ancestors	祖先、先祖	そせん、せんぞ

Family members in this group can still be made polite in reference to someone else. For example, nephew and niece of another person can be referred to as 甥ごさん" and 姪ごさん respectively. Other family members are simply discussed, if necessary, with -さん to be polite. おやご 親 御 is a similar looking word that may respectfully be used to address someone's parents.

Ancestor

先祖 typically refers to one's ancestors, particularly those in your 家. You may hear people refer to them respectfully as ご先祖さま. You never hear ご祖先さま because 祖先 is impersonal. 祖 refers to the founder of a lineage, dynasty, or even a field of study. "Ancestor" as in biological origin is normally 始祖.

After Grandchildren

It's interesting to know that Japanese has words for those who have not just great-grandchildren, but offspring for 8 generations ahead of you (just in case you live that long). The terms up to great-great-great-grandchildren are usually known by most speakers. The others are just fun to look at.

子 → 孫 → ひ孫 → 玄孫 (やしやご) → 来孫 → 昆孫 (こんそん) → 仍孫 (じょうそん) → 雲孫

How to Write いとこ

The word for cousin, いとこ, is a very odd word to write in Japanese. It is written differently depending on the age and gender relationship with the speaker.

Older Girls/Younger Guys	従姉弟	Older Guys/Younger Girls	従兄妹
Older Girls	従姉	Older Guys	従兄
Younger Girls	従妹	Younger Guys	従弟
Guys	従兄弟	Girls	従姉妹

Word Note: You may also use the 音読み of the characters to distinguish.

Using Terms for Someone Else's Family for Your Own

Many speakers will call their mom, dad, older brother or sister, and grandparents with the terms that are supposed to be for someone's family. But, if you use

them for you own, you may slightly change their appearance. For example, instead of -さん you might choose -ちゃん or drop -さん altogether. It's also even possible to drop the お- at the beginning of these phrases.

6. お母さん、おもちゃほしい！

Mom, I want a toy!

7. お父さん、ほんとにしゃべりすぎだ。

Dad, you really talk too much.

8. 姉さん、何してる？

Hey sis', what are you doin'?

Stepfamily

	Sino-Japanese	Native
Stepmother	継母（けいぼ）	継母（ママはは）
Stepfather	継父（けいふ）	継父（ママちち）
Stepchild	継子（けいし）	継子（ママこ）
Stepson		継息子（ママむすこ）
Stepdaughter		継娘（ママむすめ）

Half Family

To create the terms for half-brother and half-sister, you first must decide whether they are from a stepfather or a stepmother. If from a stepfather, the first word is ^{いふ}異父. If from a stepmother, the first word is ^{いぼ}異母. Lastly, you simply add ^{きょうだい}兄 弟 for brother and ^{しまい}姉 妹 for sister.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Can you use the terms for someone's family for your own?
2. Can you use the terms for your family for someone's?
3. Explain how to write aunt and uncle.
4. Explain how to write いとこ.
5. What is the character for step (family)?
6. Explain how to create the terms for half-brother and half-sister.
7. Write down your family tree and label them with the correct titles.
8. Write down the family tree of someone else and label the family members correctly.
9. Create a paragraph describing a minimum of 5 family members.
10. Create a paragraph describing a minimum of 5 family members of someone else.

第65課: Start to: ~始める, ~出す, & ~かける

Compound verbs are created in Japanese by adding one verb to another verb's ^{れんようけい}連用形. Verbs that attach to others in this way are called supplementary verbs, ^{ほじょどうし}補助動詞. However, not all verbs can be used in this way. The first ones that we will study concern "beginning", which are ~始める, ~出す, and ~かける.

	一だん	五だん	する	来る
連用形	食べる → 食べ	思う → 思い	する → し	来る → 来(き)

~始める

The verb 始める means "to begin/start". It also means this in compound verbs. So, you can use it to create new verbs like the following.

書く + 始める = 書き始める	To begin writing
する + 始める = し始める	To begin doing
壊す + 始める = 壊し始める	To begin destroying
覚える + 始める = 覚え始める	To begin remembering

Remember that this verb is transitive. However, when it attaches to verbs, the transitivity of the verb expression is determined by the verb that it attaches to. So, it attaches to both intransitive and transitive verbs. So, when it's used as a stand-alone verb, you have the 始まる and 始める contrast, but not in compound verbs.

1. 今日、レポートを書き始めました。

I started writing the report today.

2. 宿題をし始めた。

I started doing my homework.

3. 僕が日本語を勉強し始めたのは、6年前です。

It was six years ago since I started studying Japanese.

4. つか かん
疲 れを 感 じ始めた。

I began to feel tired.

5. らいがつき
来 学 期 から日本語を勉強し始める。

I'll start studying Japanese from next semester.

6. 仕事を始める。

To start work.

7. 話を始めた。

I began a conversation.

8. 雪は冷たいみぞれに変わり始めた。

The snow started to turn into icy sleet.

9. 手がかじかみ始めました。

My hands began to feel numb.

漢字 Notes:

1. みぞれ can be written in 漢字 as 霰, but you are not responsible for this.

2. かじかむ can be written in 漢字 as 悴む, but you are not responsible for this.

～出す

First and foremost, 出す^だ is a transitive verb which means "to take out", and it may be used in array of situations. Although not the main point of this section, here are some examples of how this verb is used as a stand-alone verb.

10. ゴミを出す。

To take out the trash.

11. 強いにおいを出した。

It gave off a strong smell.

12. レポートを出す。

To submit a report.

13. 私はあの^{みせ}店で飲み物を出しています。

I serve drinks at that store.

14. ^{てがみ}手紙を出す。

To mail a letter.

～出す is like ～始める in that they both describe the start of an action, circumstance, or change, but they are slightly different.

～**始める** is used generally in regards to the starting of an event, and it is used with verbs of volition, actions in which people have control of, in this sense. In the case that it shows a circumstance or change beginning, it is used with non-volitional/intransitive verbs. Even still, it *generally* states the beginning of something.

～**出す** attaches to verbs of volition/non-volition as well. Thus, although the main verb is transitive, the transitivity of the compound verb expression is decided by the verb that it attaches to. As for ～出す, it describes the sudden start of an action or circumstance. In this sense, it is far more emotionally emphatic.

To be clear on how this is attached to verbs, consider the following chart.

動く (To move)	+ 出す →	動き出す	叫ぶ (To shout)	+ 出す →	叫び出す
--------------	--------	------	---------------	--------	------

歩く (To walk)	+ 出す →	歩き出す	飛ぶ (To fly)	+ 出す →	飛び出す
--------------	--------	------	-------------	--------	------

15. 由美子ちゃんが泣き出した。

Yumiko broke into tears.

16. 彼女は^{わら}笑い出した。

She started to laugh (big time).

17. 走り出した。

He began to dash.

18. 太陽が顔を出した。

The sun showed its face.

19. 雨が降り出した。

It began to rain (a lot).

Note: 見出す = みいだす (to find; pick out)

20. 面白い映画を見て、吹き出した。

Watching a funny movie, I burst out laughing.

21. 政^{せい}府^ふの姿^し勢^{せい}に不^ふ満^{まん}が噴き出した。

I was flushed with dissatisfaction at the government's stance.

Word Note: ふきだす is a word with two spellings and several meanings. It can show something spouting out with much force, which can be applied in a physical sense or in a more abstract sense like in Ex. 21. In Ex. 22, it has a meaning of “sprout out”. Just as in Ex. 20, it may be like 笑い出す. The verb is also sometimes used in a transitive sense.

22. 新^{しん}芽^めが吹き出した。

The bud sprouted (out).

23. 桜島はいつも真っ白な^{かざんばい ふ}火山灰を噴き出しますね。

Mt. Sakurajima always spouts out white volcanic ash.

Geography Note: 桜島 is an island next to 鹿児島, which is a major city on the southern tip of 九州, the southernmost major Japanese island. This island has an

active volcano, ^{かつかざん}活火山 (also read more correctly as ^{かつかざん}かつかざん), which is formally called ^{さくらじまおんたけ}桜島御岳.

御 is an honorific prefix, and although it is usually read as お in this context, it is actually read with the older reading おん here. 岳 is an alternative character for certain mountains/volcanos as opposed to the more frequent 山. However, this active volcano is usually called 桜島, despite being the name of the island. If the ash was to finally stop and the volcano became dormant, it would be called

as ^{きゅうかざん}休火山.

漢字 Note: Do not read 火山 as かさん. The change from さん to ざん is not because of sequential voicing. Instead, ざん is a later 音 reading that entered Japanese from Chinese. You see this reading in similar words like ^{ひょうざん}氷山 (iceberg).

However, 灰 does get voiced due to sequential voicing, which is called ^{れんだく}連濁. はい is not Chinese. The Chinese reading is かい. This reading is used in words like 灰白色 (grayish white).

Prefix Note: 真っ白 is “pure/snow-white”. When you attach 真っ to other colors, be careful of sound changes! 真っ青 = まっさお; 真っ赤 = まっか; 真っ黒 = まっくろ. Note that 真っ白い is possible for many speakers, but it is not 100% proper Japanese.

24. 葡萄の木が芽を吹き出す。

25. ぶどうの芽が吹き出す。

The grape tree's shoots will sprout.

Transitivity Note: This pair of sentences shows flexibility in transitivity. However, it is important to note that the latter is more frequently used as it is shorter. This does not, though, make the former incorrect or unnatural Japanese.

漢字 Notes:

1. Many things have 漢字. Although ぶどう is typically not written as 葡萄, it's important for you to get the feel of what does have a 漢字 spelling, even if it's not provided to you.

2. 噴き出す may not be used in the plant sense of "to sprout". 噴, pronounced as ふん in compounds, has the meaning of "erupt". Thus, 火山の噴火 means "volcano eruption".

Another peculiar difference is that ～始める but not ～出す may be used with phrases like ～てください (please...). Even with, ～てもいい (all right to...), ～出す is often unnatural.

26. 食べ始めてください。○

食べ出してください。X

Please start to eat.

27. 食べ出してもいいですか。△

食べ始めてもいいですか。○

Is it alright if I start eating?

～かける

～ かける also marks the starting of an action or circumstance. The exact nuances that it could have are all over the place to the point that it's best to take each case individually and find out what it means. This may sound like a very difficult task to do, but there are a few commonalities across the combinations that you can use to understand this ending better. 1. you already know that it can deal with something starting. Thus, it may show something being *on the verge of* whatever. 2. this "on the verge" meaning is very similar to doing something mid-way/halfway. As a nominal phrase in the form of ～かけ in describing things half-done.

In the example sentences below, Examples 28~30 should be straight-forward. The last two involve more thinking, and the latter example will require some more information about the verb かける itself to make sense.

28. 何かを言いかける。

To be on the verge of starting to say something.

29. 彼女は二度と死にかけた。

She almost died twice.

30. 夜が明けかけている。

The day is breaking.

31. 見知らぬ人に話しかけてはいけない。

Don't talk to strangers!

32. 彼の顔に^{けむり}煙をぷつと吹きかける。

To puff smoke into his face.

Sentence Note: 話しかける refers to the point in time when one tries to start a conversation. So, you're still on the verge of something. 吹きかける requires that you understand かける may also mean "to cover/put over". Even so, the verb is

still somewhat figurative because 煙を吹く also exists with the meaning "to blow smoke", but this wouldn't be used in the context of Ex. 32.

～かかる

Though uncommon but also unlike the other endings, the intransitive version of ～かける, ～かかる is used. It is only used with intransitive verbs and shows things beginning to be in a certain state. It is also implied that they are on the verge of the end result.

33. おぼ^{おぼ}れかかっている^{ぶた}豚を見よ。

Look at the pig that's beginning to drown.

34. 死にかかる魚を見たことが少なくある。

I have seldom seen fish start to die.

The second usage of ～かかる is to extend an effect in a direction and leaving it up to the body.

35. しん^{しん}つう^{つう}心^{しん}痛^{つう}が重く伸しかかった。

Worries weighed heavily on her.

36. たお^{たお}倒^{たお}れかかる。

To fall down over.

The third usage of ～かかる has it be an intransitive version of "to start". This translates into English as using the predicate rather than the progressive tense.

37. 何時から仕事に取りかかりますか。

From when do you start work?

38. 旅行の ^{じゅんび}準備 をしかかる。

To begin preparations for the trip.

Transitivity Note: With some verbs such as しかかる, ～かかる is used transitively rather than intransitively and is interchangeable with ～かける. The only difference between the two is that ～かかる has a stiffer/literary tone to it.

Table of Contents

第66課 : End: ~終わる・終える, ~やむ, & ~上がる・上げる

These endings will greatly aid in expanding your Japanese knowledge.

~終わる・終える

"To end" is either ^お終わる or 終える. The grammar is a bit confusing. Originally, **終わる was strictly intransitive and 終える was transitive**. Remember, intransitive verbs happen with no active agent but transitive verbs have a direct object.

Transitive verbs are used with **を**, but intransitive verbs are typically used with **が**. 終える may be used as a transitive verb, but it is **rare** as an intransitive verb. The chart below will show the three main patterns with these verbs.

Particle	Verb	Meaning
が	終わる	Event ends naturally
を	終わる	To not end intently
を	終える	To end intently

1. ^{じゅぎょう}授業が終わった。

Class ended.

Word Note: クラスが終わった is wrong because クラス, contrary to how it's used in English, is used in reference to the group/body of the class.

2. ^{どうろ}道路はここで終わっている。

The road ends here.

Tense Note: Notice the use of the progressive tense in the sentence above. ~ている is used to show a continuous action. The road has and will continue to end

there unless if something happened. Therefore, the non-past tense would be incorrect.

3. 先生は講義^{こうぎ}を終えましたか。

Has the teacher concluded his lecture?

4. 失敗^{しっぱい}に終わる。

To end in failure.

5. 何時に終わりますか。

At what time will it end?

6. 何時に終わりますか。

At what time will (they) end it?

7. それはどのように終わりましたか。

How did it end up = How did it go?

8. その映画が死で終わる。

That movie ends in death.

9. 昨夜の演奏は歌って終わった。

Last night's performance ended with singing.

10. 試合^{しあい}は引き分けに終わった。

The game ended in a tie.

11. 動物の権利活動家らが抗議を終えましたが、反対の声をあげつづけるそうです。

The animal rights activists ending the protest, but they are to continue raising voices of opposition.

12. ぼくは試験が全部終わったよ。ぼくの人生も終わったかもしれない。

I'm finished with all of my exams! My life may have ended as well.

13. これで ^{いっしょう}一生 を終えるんだと思ってました。

I thought that I would end my life with this.

Word Note: There are several words for life. ^{せいかつ}生活 for way of life, ^{じんせい}人生 for "human life", ^{いのち}命 for the force that keeps us alive, and 一生 is one's "whole life".

14. ^{しゅうり}修理 を終えましたか。

Did you finish the repairs?

15. ^{しょうがい}生涯 が終わる。 = 死ぬ

To die.

Definition Note: This usage of the verb 終わる shows that one's life or role comes to an end.

16. 生涯を終える。

To end one's life.

Nuance Note: This does not show intent. Otherwise, it would refer to suicide which it does not.

17. 宿題をおえたぞ。(Masculine)

I finished my homework.

18. ^{かいぎ}会議 を終わる。

To end a meeting (halfway).

19. 会議を終える。

To *end* a meeting.

20. 会議が終わる。

The meeting ends.

漢字 Note: 了 and 卒 (which signifies graduation) may also be used instead of 終, but they're uncommon.

～終わる・終える

In compounds ～終わる shows that an action ends or is completed. ～終わる is used with intransitive and transitive verbs, and it is the initial verb that decides the transitivity of the compound verb phrase.

When you see ～終わる with transitive verbs, it shows that the subject of the sentence has finished something naturally or unintentionally in the sense that there is not necessarily a motive or goal for completion. For instance, you may finish paying off your student loan to college eleven years out of the fact. If you wanted to say you finished paying off your loan, you would use Ex. 21.

～終える signifies that one **ends** an action, and it must only be used with verbs of volition. Also, ～終える is more frequently seen in the written language, no doubt because one's intent is more powerfully expressed with it.

These endings can't be with condition verbs like いる or できる. They can't attach to verbs of change or movement because there is no end point.

21. ローンを ^{はら}払い終わりました。

I finished paying off the loan.

22. 宿題をし終えて、外へ遊びに行った。

I finished my homework and went outside to play.

23. とりひき
取引を終える。

To close (as in the stock market).

24. その本を読み終えましたか。

Did you finish reading that book?

25. 早くやり終える。

To get it over with.

26. 彼は歌い終わりました。

He finished singing.

27. 小説を書き終えた。

I ended writing the novel.

28. 彼が意見を言い終わるか終わらないうちに、あの人は邪魔をして口を挟んだ。

Before he could finish saying his opinion, that person interjected himself.

～やむ

や
止む means "to end/stop" and is intransitive. Its counterpart that is used for personal action is 止める. In compounds やむ is only used with verbs that occur naturally. For anything else, use やむ or やめる (the transitive form of "to stop") as independent verbs.

29. 雨が降り止んだ。

雨がやんだ。(More common)

It stopped raining.

30. おんがく
音楽が止まりました。

The music stopped.

31. なにかをやめることが必要かもしれません。

It might be necessary to quit/stop (doing) something.

To Quit Doing

"To quit/stop doing" is made with a nominalizer plus やめる. Change in habit itself is shown by the negative with "ようになる".

32. 彼は勉強するのをやめた。

He stopped studying.

33. 彼はタバコを^す吸わないようになった。

He stopped smoking.

34. 私はそれを表示できないようになってしまいました。

I ended up not being able to display it.

Meaning Note: ～てしまう = To end up

～上がる・上げる

上がる and 上げる are verbal pairs to express raising and lifting. Of course, there are many usages of these two words. 上がる is intransitive and 上げる is transitive. These broad meanings will make sense once you see how they are applied to actual compounds.

～上がる	～上げる
An action ends	To do exhaustively/to a limit
An action is completed	To do an action completely
	Adds a sense of humility
	To show an explicit wording

35. 彼女は歌い上げました。

She sang to the top of her voice.

36. しめい
氏 名 を読み上げる。

To read out a name.

37. 何とぞよろしくお ^{ねが}願 ^{もう}い 申 し上げます。

I kindly ask for you to remember me on my behalf.

38. 本をすっかり書き上げた。

I completely wrote up the book.

39. ぜんぶかぞ
全 部 数 えあげたのか。(A little rough)

Did you count it all up?

40. は
空が晴れ上がった。

The sky cleared up.

41. や
焼きあがる。(Never transitive)

To finish burning.

42. いい食事が出来上がりました。

A great meal is ready.

43. まちなか ^{ふる}
街 中 が 震 え上がった。

The town shuddered.

第67課: Whenever: 毎~, ~毎に, & ~おきに

This lesson is about speech modals that describe repetition of circumstances. Though in some respects, there are striking commonalities among these expressions, pay very close attention to detail as all information in this lesson is relevant in further understanding Japanese time phrases.

Every~

Though English has the single word "every...", Japanese does not. Rather, there are 毎~ and ~毎に, but their combinations, exact readings, and exact nuances cause issues.

	朝	晩	夜	日	時間	週間	月間	年間
毎~	まいあさ まいちょう	まいばん	まいよ	まいにち	まいじ	まいしゅう	まいげつ まいつき	まいねん まいとし
~毎に	あさごとに	ひとばんごとに ゆうごとに	よごとに	1日ごとに ひごとに	(1)じかんごとに	(1)しゅうごとに	いっかげつごとに つきごとに	(1)ねんごとに

Usage Notes:

1. You may also use these expressions with the words for the seasons. ~ごとに is on the decline in general, so you may not get chances to hear it very often. It also can be seen after verbs, but this has also declined in usage.

	春	夏	秋	冬
毎~	まいはる まいしゅん (書き言葉)	まいなつ まいか (書き言葉; Rare)	まいあき まいしゅう (書き言葉)	まいふゆ まいとう (書き言葉; Rare)
~毎に	はるごとに	なつごとに	あきごとに	ふゆごとに

2. まいちょう is rare and very formal. It is more likely to be in writing.

3. ～毎に can also be translated as "X by X". So, 1 時間ごとに = "hour by hour".
4. "Night after night" can be 夜^よな夜^よな. A similar expression is 朝^{あさ}な夕^{ゆう}な meaning "day and evening" in a repetitive sense. These phrases, though, are literally and are not usually used in the spoken language.
5. "Month by month" can also be 月^{つき}々^{つき}.
6. 毎～ must never be used with non-temporal phrases.
7. 毎年 and 毎月 are usually read as まいとし and まいつき respectively.

Examples

1. 毎朝散歩に出かけます。
I go out on a walk every morning.
2. 毎時 50 キロメートルの速^{そくど}度
50 kilometers per hour
3. 母^{はは}は毎朝散歩します。
My mom walks every morning.
4. 毎日どこでご飯を食べますか。
Where do you eat every day?
5. 日本人とアメリカ人は 毎^{まい}日^{にち}三^{さん}回^{かい}食^{しょく}事^じをするのが 普^ふ通^{つう}だ。
Japanese and Americans usually eat three times every day.

Practice:

1. Try making a sentence with ことあるごとに (With every little thing)
2. Translate ことあるごとに、彼を思い出すんだよ。

Using ～ごとに

～ ごとに has several usages. Other than phrases such as ことあるごとに, it is hardly ever used after verbs. However, it is always very old-fashioned when after verbs to mean “whenever” (See ～度に below). There are four distinct situations that you may see ～ごとに used in.

1. For every constant A (place, point of time, or person), a repetition B occurs.
2. For every variable A (place/person), a different thing exists.
3. It shows that something takes place once every given amount of time.
4. As you repeat a certain constant A, a change progresses. (Rarely seen with verbs)

Examples

6. ^{しゅくじつ}祝 日 {ごと・のたび} に、家族みんなでドライブに出かけることにしてますよ。(話し言葉)

The whole family goes out on a drive {every/whenever there is a} holiday.

Speech Style Note: ～のたびに would make it more 話し言葉的.

7. その ^{きぎょう}企 業 グループは、会社ごとに、それぞれの ^{しゃぜ}社 是 と ^{しゃそく}社 則 があるから、よく注意してください。

As for that corporation group, every company has its own policies and rules. So, please pay close attention.

8. 一雨ごとに、もっと暖かくなる。

With each rain, it gets warmer.

9. ことあるごとに ^{はんたい} 反 対 するのはだめだよ。

It's bad for you to be against with every little thing.

10. 四年ごとに ^{うるうどし} 閏 年 になって、オリンピックが開かれるということは ^{じょうしき} 常 識 だ。

It's common sense that every four years there is a leap year, and the Olympics are held.

Grammar Note: 開かれる is the passive form of the 五段 verb 開く.

漢字 Note: 閏 is not a 常用漢字. So, you aren't responsible for it at this time.

Every Time

For "every time", ^{まいど} 毎 度, ^{まいかい} 毎 回, ^{まいじ} 毎 次, ^{たび} 度 に, and ^{つど} 都 度 exist. The first two are different in that the former is stronger and seen in set phrases like 毎度ありがとうございます. For when you want to say you attend every time, you need to use 毎回 instead. 毎次 is quite formal is used in the sense of "whenever" similar to ~たびに and ~都度, which will be discussed later in this lesson.

11. 「来年のクリスマスは、何曜日でしょうか」「何曜日か分かりません」

"What day of the week is next year's Christmas? "I don't know what day of the week it is".

12. 六時間 ^{ごと} 毎 に ^{くすり} 薬 を ^{ふくよう} 服用 しなくてははいけません。

You have to take medicine every 6 hours of time.

13. その都度 ^{しょうりょう} 使 用 料 を ^{はら} 払 う。

I pay the usage fee each and every time.

14. 毎回参^{さんか}加します。

I participate each time.

15. 毎^{まい}次^じ密^{みつ}接^{せつ}に連^{れん}絡^{らく}を取ります。

Each time I'll be in close touch.

16. やる度に失^し敗^{っぱい}する。

To fail whenever one tries.

17. 彼は週毎に4万円の稼^{かせ}ぎがあります。

He has earnings of 40,000 yen a week.

Frequency Note: Although 月ごとに and 週ごとに are correct, they are typically replaced with 月に and 週に respectively.

関西弁 Note: 毎度大きに is a very important phrase from 関西弁 meaning the same thing as 毎度ありがとうございます.

〜おきに

With Time

〜 おきに is equivalent to "every other". Like all of these other expressions, something is repeated in a given interval. However, as you can see in the translation, it is not quite the same. Consider the following examples.

18. 2日おきに = Every other two days VS 2日ごとに = Every second day

●○○●○○●○○●...

●○●○●○●...

19. 3日おきに = 4日ごとに Every other three days = every fourth day

●○○○●○○○●...

●○○●○○●...

20. 彼女は ^{いちにち}一日 ^{おきに}おきに ^{しゅっきん}出勤 する。

She goes to work every other day

With Distance

For distance, ~ごとに shows precise repetition of distance. So, if you are lining bottles and place them 5メートルごとに, you start from the midpoint from one bottle and place the next bottle five meters from that point. If you place them 5メートルおきに, you are measuring the space in between each bottle, so you measure from the edges of each bottle.

This is semantic nitpicking, so not all speakers will fully agree, comprehend, or follow these intuitions. However, aside from distance, this nuance difference becomes more pronounced. Consider the first example from above and apply this logic to distance.

21. 部屋は十分おきに ^ゆ揺れ、モウリさんのからだは暖かかった。

The room shook every other ten minutes; Mouri's body was warm.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

第68課: ～中: During/Throughout

You will often see ～中 used in time phrases, and it is typically translated as during or throughout.

～中

Although both are written as 中, the suffixes ～ちゅう and ～じゅう are slightly different.

～ちゅう means "during" in the sense of "under way". It becomes ～じゅう with 今日, 昨日, etc. It may also be used to show duration of condition (Ex. お祈り中 = At/in prayer). It can also mean under(going)—Ex. 試験中 = undergoing an exam.

～じゅう can be used to show duration as well. ～間中 (ずっと) is a frequently used phrase and means "during/while". It helps when you want to use ～じゅう when you can use 間. This shows start to finish. Phrases it can directly attach to include things such as ひとばん, いちねん, etc. ～じゅう(に) may also mean "throughout" but in terms of distance and place. For instance, say you get stung all over your body by bees. You can use 体じゅう to describe where you were stung.

Connecting Note: ～中 can attach to either Sino-Japanese or native words. However, the etymology of the word it is used with will not help you in using the right reading. You have to learn how it is read one phrase at a time.

Examples

1. 弟は ^{はるやす}春 ^{ちゅう}休み中 遊んでばかり {でした・いた}。

My brother just played all throughout spring break.

Grammar Note: ～てばかりです shows incessant action.

2. きょうじゅう しあ
今日 中 に仕上げてください。

Please finish it up within (the end of) today.

3. きゅうぎょうちゅう えいぎょうしょ
休業 中の 営業 所

A business office that's closed for the holidays

4. きょうし しろくじちゅう せいと
私は 教師 だからといって 四六時 中、生徒たちのことを考えていたわけでは
ありません。

It's not that I was thinking about my students around the clock just because I was a teacher.

- こくはく みなと
From 告白 by 湊 かなえ.

- からだじゅう いた
5. 体 中 が 痛 んだ。

It hurt all over my body.

- みつりょうせん そうぎょうちゅう てんぷく
6. 密 漁 船 が 操 業 中 に 転 覆 した。

A poaching ship capsized in operation.

- ひゃくにんちゅうはんすうひなん
7. 百 人 中 半 数 避 難 しました。

Out of the 100 people, half evacuated.

Meaning Note: You will often see ～中 used in the same sense as in Ex. 6. to mean "out of...". Note that it is attached to the *counter* phrase 百人.

Phrase Note: One common phrase which is slightly grammatically questionable is 発売中. This is often used to emphasize having started to sell something. However, the definition of 発売 is "to begin selling". As you can see, it is an instantial verb, and instantial verbs normally should never take 中. For instance, you can't say 死亡中, 卒業中, or 結婚中. You can say, though, 婚約中 (engaged) and 出願中

(under application). These phrases are acceptable because there is an end to the state the verb brings about. So, while 発売中 is typically acceptable when the product has not been out long, after a long period of time, it becomes very strange Japanese to anyone.

The following phrases all have ～中 with the reading ちゅう except 世界中, which is read as せかいじゅう. Remember, when ～中 means "during", it is read as ちゅう, and when it means "throughout", it is read as ～じゅう.

今年 中	During the year	午前 中	During the morning	今月 中	During the month
来月 中	Within the next month	在学 中	In schooling	世界 中	Throughout the world
販売 中	On sale (not as in discount)	存命 中	While one is still alive	空気 中	In the air

第69課: The Body

This lesson will be about the parts of the body.

The Body

Many phrases relate to the body. Below is a chart of the most important parts.

Blood	血	ち	Blood vessel	血管	けっかん
Hand	手	て	Arm	腕	うで
Finger	指	ゆび	Wrist	手首	てくび
Ankle	足首	あしくび	Heel	踵	かかと
Shoulder	肩	かた	Nail	爪	つめ
Shin	脛	すね	Knee	膝	ひざ
Calf	脛脰	ふくらはぎ	Thigh	腿	もも
Thumb	親指・拇	おやゆび	Index finger	人差し指	ひとさしゆび
Middle finger	中指	なかゆび	Ring finger	薬指	くすりゆび
Pinky	小指	こゆび	Palm	手の平	てのひら
Intestines	腸	ちょう	Bellybutton	臍	へそ
Head	頭	あたま	Hair	髪 (の毛)	かみ (のけ)
Forehead	額	ひたい	Throat	喉	のど
Brain	脳	のう	Tongue	舌	した
Eyes	目、瞳	め、ひとみ	Eyeball	眼球	がんきゅう
Eyelash	睫毛	まつげ	Eyebrow	眉 (毛)	まゆ (げ)
Ear	耳	みみ	Eardrum	鼓膜	こまく
Skull	頭蓋骨	ずがいこつ	Nose	鼻	はな

Nose hair	鼻毛	はなげ	Cheek	頬	ほお・ほほ
Mouth	口	くち	Teeth	歯	は
Gums	歯茎	はぐき	Lips	唇	くちびる
Jaw	顎・頤	あご	Chin	下顎	したあご
Face	顔	かお	Neck	首、頸部	くび
Spine	脊柱、背骨	せきちゅう、せぼね	Back	背（中）	せ（なか）
Chest	胸	むね	Esophagus	食道	しょくどう
Stomach	胃	い	Internal organ	内臓	ないぞう
Bowel	腸	はらわた	Liver	肝臓	かんぞう
Pancreas	膵臓	すいぞう	Appendix	盲腸	もうちょう
Small intestine	小腸	しょうちょう	Large intestine	大腸	だいちょう
Abdomen	腹	はら	Heart	心臓	しんぞう
Gall bladder	胆のう	たんのう	Lungs	肺（臓）	はい（ぞう）
Kidney	腎臓	じんぞう	Bone	骨	ほね
Pelvis	骨盤	こつばん	Leg; foot	足、脚	あし、あし

Word Notes:

1. To say "left" or "right X", all you need to do is add 左 and 右 respectively. So, right leg would be 右足.

2. 手 sometimes refers to full arm.

Examples

1. のどが^{いた}痛い。

To have a sore throat.

2. のどが^{かわ}渴いた。

I'm thirsty.

3. ドアに {指・親指} を^{はさ}挟む。

To smash one's [finger/thumb] in a door.

4. 手を^あ挙げる。

To surrender.

Literally: To raise one's

hands/arms.

5. 能^{のう}あるタカは^{つめ}爪^{かく}を隠す。

(Idiomatic)

Still waters run deep.

Literally: A hawk with talent hides its talons.

6. 手が^た足りない。

To be shorthanded.

8. ^{ひざ}膝^{さら}の皿

Kneecap

7. 顔が^き利く。

To have many contacts.

Literally: The face effective.

10. 地に膝を^つ突く。

To go to the ground on one's knees.

9. のどが^つ詰まる。

To choke.

12. 顔を^{つぶ}潰す。

To embarrass.

Literally: To crush one's face.

11. 耳が遠い。

To be hard of hearing.

14. 鼻がいい。

Have a good sense of smell.

13. 耳に^{のこ}残る。

To tingle in the ears.

16. 鼻が高い。

To be proud.

15. 耳を^{ふさ}塞ぐ。

To close one's ears.

18. 鼻であしらう。

To snub.

17. 鼻をほじる。

To pick one's nose.

19. よく舌が回る。

To be quite eloquent.

21. 胸に閉まる。

To keep to oneself.

23a. 錠を服用する。X

23b. 錠剤を服用する。

To take a pill.

Vocabulary Note: ～錠 is the counter for pills.

25. 予約をしてもらえますか。

Could you make an appointment for me?

Grammar Note: Using the negative form is OK here as well or a more honorific final form like いただけませんか。

20. のどを ^{とお}通らない。

To have no appetite.

22. 胃腸が {強い・弱い} 。

To have a [strong/weak] system.

24. こういう ^{むいしき}無意識の時間は

だいのうへんえんけい ^{かいば}大脳辺縁系の海馬が

つかさど ^し司っている。

Such unconscious time is controlled by the hippocampus of the limbic system.

By ^{きよひこ}池田清彦, a biologist, in the

commentary for ^{ゆうわく}冷たい誘惑 Cold

Temptations by ^{のなみ}乃南アサ。

Anatomy Note: If you don't know what the limbic system or the hippocampus is, the 漢字 tell you they're about the brain.

凝る Versus 懲りる

These words are often confused because they sound similar, and sometimes when not written in 漢字, they resemble each. The first is a 五段 verb and the second is a 一段 verb. The following chart describes their most important usages.

凝る（こる）	使用例	懲りる（こりる）	使用例
To be stiff	肩が凝っている。	To learn a lesson	彼女の運転には懲りた。
To be addicted to	釣りに凝る。		
To be intricate with	凝りすぎた文体		

会話 1

26. お母さん: あら、セッス、顔色がよくないわね。

セッス: ええ、実は、今朝から何となく寒気がして、それに頭が痛くて。。。。

お母さん: 熱はあるの？

セッス: さあ、分かりません。でも、あるかもしれません。

お母さん: そうねえ。顔がちょっと赤いわねえ。風邪かしら。お医者さんに診察をもらったほうがいいよ。電話をかけてみるから。

(電話を切る)

セッス: どうもありがとうございました。

お母さん: いいえ、でもよかったね、ちょうど空いてて。

There are several new things in this short little conversation. The mother uses a lot of feminine expressions, which haven't really been covered up to this point. あらは an expression like "oh my!" and is often used by female speakers. Sentence endings like わね, の (making a question), and かしら (I wonder) are all feminine.

Grammar Points

～かもしれません = Might ～たほうがいい = It's best to ～てみる = To try to...

New Vocab

顔色	かおいろ	Complexion
何となく	なんとなく	Somehow or other
お医者さん	おいしゃさん	Doctor
診察	しんさつ	Examination (medical)

会話 2

27. セス、医者に行く。

医者: どうしましたか。

セス: あのう、今朝から体がだるくなって、さっきのども痛くなって。

医者: そうですか。

セス: それに、物を飲み込む時痛いんです。

医者: いけませんね。食欲は？

セス: あまりありません。

医者: じゃ、ちょっとのどを見てください。大きく口を開けてください。ああ、やはりずいぶん赤いですね。風邪ですよ。薬を出しますから、一週間飲んでみてください。それから、一日に何回か、うがいをしてください。早く治ると思いますよ。

セス: はい、分かりました。食事はどうしたらいいのでしょうか。

医者: そうですね。あの、まあ軟らかいものだけにしておいたらどうですか。おかゆぐらいにするんだけど。

セス: じゃ、どうもありがとうございました。

医者: お大事に

Grammar Points

1. ～ておく: Used to show action in advance or preparation of something.
2. ～たらいいでしょうか = What do I do about?
3. ～たらどうですか = How about doing...?
4. ～ぐらい is used here to show a minimal limit.
5. ～てみましょう = Let's try to... Here it is used to more indirect and polite to the patient.

Culture Note: お大事に is only said to those that are in need of care.

怠い	だるい	To feel sluggish
飲み込む	のみこむ	To swallow
食欲	しょくよく	Appetite
何回か	なんかいか	Several times
治る	なおる	To heal
嗽をする	うがいをする	To gargle
軟らかい	やわらかい	Soft
お大事に	おだいじに	Take care

Table of Contents

第70課: Or

This lesson is about the several ways to say "or", but it is not exhaustive. Nevertheless, it will provide you what you need to know to understand how to express "or" correctly in Japanese.

Or

The Adverbial Particle か

か can also list noun phrases to mean "or". *それか* starts a sentence with "or" in the affirmative and *それとも* starts a sentence with "or" in questioning. This declarative and interrogative contrast is important to remember for distinguishing *それか* and *それとも* and that *か* can be seen in both situations when listing noun phrases.

1. すしかさしみを食べる。

I will eat sushi or sashimi.

Grammar Note: *か* is not necessary after sashimi. Adding it would be old-fashioned.

2. すしを食べる。それか、フランス料理を食べる。

I'll eat sushi this evening. Or, I'll eat French cuisine.

3. 手で書くか。それとも、タイプするか。

Will you write it by hand? Or, will you type it?

4. 料理をする。それか、掃除をする。

I'll cook. Or, I'll do the laundry.

Practice: Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. A nation like Japan or China.
2. I'll eat fish. Or, I'll eat pizza.

3. Will you go next month? Or, will you go next week?
4. He is around 20 years old.
5. Is he smart?

か（どうか）

"Whether (or not)" is "か（どう）か". どう may only be added when the embedded question doesn't have a question word like 何 in it. When just か is used, the "not" is implied.

5. かれ ^{おとうと} 弟 ^{あや} さんかどうかは 怪 しい。

It is doubtful that he is his little brother.

6. 彼女がパーティーに来るかどうか（を）知っていますか。

Do you know if she is coming to the party or not?

7. 明日までに宿題ができるかどうかわかんない。

I don't know whether or not I'll be able to finish my homework by tomorrow.

8. 「明 ^{あした} 日 ^{てんき} はいい天 気 でしょうか」 「あの、いい天気かどうか **分かりません**」

"Is tomorrow's weather going to be good?" "Uh, I don't know if it's going to be good weather or not".

9. 先生が学校に行った ^{ふめい} か は 不 明 だ。

It is unknown **whether** the teacher went to the school.

10. だれ（だ）か分からない。

I don't know who he is.

Grammar Note: The だ isn't necessary when followed by か inside a subordinate clause.

Variant Note: かいなか is a very formal variant of かどうか.

知る VS 分かる

分かる = "understand/comprehend", which is intransitive, and is spontaneous. 知る, which is transitive, refers to the *event* of getting to know something. 分かる describes the *state* of having information and being able to understand it.

知る in the negative is 知らない and essentially never 知っていない*. 知った is the past and 知っている equates to "knowing". In the non-past form, it means know as in "to realize; find out". 知っていない isn't deemed acceptable because 知らない is existential in nature, so there is no need for ~ている, which establishes a state.

11. まったく分からないよ。

I don't understand at all.

12. 一を聞いて、十を知る。(Proverb)

Hear one, and know ten.

A word is enough for a wise man.

13. まだ何も知りません。(Sounds stronger)

I still don't know anything.

14. まだ何も分かりません。

I still don't understand anything.

*: There are instances when 知っていない is used, but know that the basic negative is 知らない.

Odd Idiom Note: しらが切る means "to act like you don't know something when you do" and the しら comes from 知らない. Set phrases are weird.

A か B ないか: No More Than

This usage is exclusively used with counter phrases. As the examples below suggest, A and B are the same verbal expression in the affirmative and negative form respectively.

15. 2 千円するかしないかだ。

It costs no more than 2,000 yen.

16. ほすう
歩 数 は千歩行くか行かないかだ。

The number of steps is no more than 1000.

17. 彼の年のころは 50 さい
歳 になるかならないかだ。

He's no more than fifty years old.

Literary "Or" Phrases

または

ま たは, rarely written as 又は, is used in situations such as when you want to express tolerance/allowance of either options presented or when out of two things you take one and get rid of the other.

18. 電話または電報で知らせる。

To inform by either phone or telegram.

19. 肉または魚の料理を準備する。

To either prepare meat or fish.

20. A または B に○を付ける。

To put a ○ to A or B.

Reminder Note: As for **または**, it gives the sense that either is fine.

もしくは

もしくは, rarely written in 漢字 as 若しくは, is used in limited situations where you choose something out of several options.

21. 万年筆もしくはボールペンで書くこと

Writing with a fountain pen or a ballpoint pen.

22. 手紙**もしくは**電話で連絡する。

To contact via letter or phone.

Remember Note: もしくは should only be used if the options are not significantly different.

あるいは

あるいは, rarely in 漢字 as 或（い）は, is used in situations where you are showing that things are alternate or both simultaneous, but it is not normally used in showing permission/allowance.

23. インタビューの結果を口頭発表、あるいは論文の形で報告する。

To either report the interview results by oral representation or essay form.

24. 東京**あるいは**ソウルのような首都

A capital city like Tokyo or Seoul.

Note: As for **あるいは**, the items must be of the same kind.

ないし

ないし, rarely spelled in 漢字 as 乃至, doesn't merely suggest A or B but A and B and what's in between. This is quite different from the other options. So, pay attention to this.

25. 北**ないし**北東

North or northeast

Etymology Note: As the characters show, this is not a combination of the negative ない and the particle し.

Reminder Note: All of these are rather formal and literary and would be replaced by か in the spoken language.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice: No speech style was required, but the following answers will be in polite speech.

1. 日本にほんあるいは中国ちゅうごくのような国家こっか。
2. 私わたしは魚さかなを食たべます。それか、ピザぴざを食たべます。
3. 来らい月げつ行いきますか。それとも来らい週しゅう行いきますか。
4. 彼かれは20歳はたちかそこ（い）らです。
5. 彼かれは頭あたまが {いい・よい} ですか。

第71課: Food

Japanese food, ^{にほんりょうり} 日本料理・^{わしょく} 和食・日本食, is one of the most interesting things about Japan. At the end of this lesson, you will be able to go to a Japanese restaurant (日本料理屋) and talk about what's in your food, how to ask for your food, etc.

At a Restaurant

お品書き (Menu)

お好み焼き Okonomiyaki 700 ¥ 天丼 Tendon 780 ¥ 寿司 Sushi 1400 ¥
すき焼き Sukiyaki 1200 ¥
刺し身 Sashimi 1350 ¥ 狐そば Kitsune soba 700 ¥ 狐うどん Kitsune udon 700 ¥
サラダ Salad 400 ¥
お握りずし Onigirizushi 1000 ¥ ざるそば Zaru soba 550 ¥ しゃぶしゃぶ Shabushabu 1250 ¥

お飲み物

酒 Sake 300 ¥ ビール Beer 310 ¥ お茶 Tea 300 ¥ 水 Water 100 ¥
コーク Coke 250 ¥
Qoo 300 ¥ 焼酎 Shochu 300 ¥ ミルク Milk 250 ¥

デザート

アイスクリーム Ice cream 240 ¥ チョコレートセーキ Chocolate shake 250 ¥
アップルパイ Apple pie 300 ¥ チーズケーキ Cheese cake 350 ¥

Cultural Differences: In the average Japanese restaurant, when food is done, it is sent out immediately regardless of whether or not the other people's food in one's party is ready. Refills are rare. Coffee might be refilled, but you may get

charged double. When sitting down you are given a wet towel called a おしぼり to wipe your hands, a menu, and some tea and water.

Useful Expressions

1. メニューを見せてください。

Please show me a menu.

2. お ^{なか} 腹 ^あ が空きましたか。

Are you hungry?

Bad	まずい	Sour	すっぱい	Sweet	甘い	Bitter	苦い
Weak; thin	薄い	Strong; thick	濃い	Hot	熱い	Cold	冷たい

3. Xがおいしそうですね。

X looks good.

4. 安いレストランです。

It's a cheap restaurant.

5. じゃあ、それにしましょう。

Well, let's go with that.

6. のどが ^{かわ} 渴 きました。

I'm thirsty.

7. ^{すしににんまえ} 寿司二人前 ^{ねが} お願いします。

Sushi for two please.

8. (お) 酒がお好きですか。

Do you like sake?

9. お飲み物は?

Drinks?

10. たんぱくしつ = Protein
蛋白質

たんすいかぶつ = Carbohy-
炭水化物

drates
しぼう
脂肪 = Fat

11. あいせき
相席 お願いします。

Please let another party sit with you.

Culture Note: You may be asked this in Japan in inexpensive restaurants when it's really crowded and there's really nothing that you can do about it.

12. しょうしょう
少々 お待ちください。

Please wait one moment.

13. いらっしゃいませ。なんめい
何名 ですか。こちらへどうぞ。

Welcome. How many will there be? Please follow me.

14. この しょくどう
食堂 は好きな食堂です。

This place is a favorite of mine.

15. ビールをもう一本ください。

Give me one more beer please.

16. てんぷらを一人前お願いします。

Tempura for one please.

17. せき つ
席 に着く。

To seat oneself.

18. 火にかける。

To put on the stove.

19. こしょう くわ あじ
胡椒を加えて味をつける。

To put in flavor by adding pepper.

20. に
煮る/煮える。

To boil/to be boiled.

21. かんじょう
お勘定はこのようになっております。

Your check comes out to this.

22. お待たせしました。(Waiter)

I'm sorry for having made you wait.

23. 「ここでお召し上がりですか、それともお持ち帰りですか」「ここで食べます」

"Is this to eat here or to-go?" "For here".

24. や
すし屋へ行きましょうか。

How about going to the sushi shop?

25. たいてい何を飲みますか。

What do you generally have to drink?

26. サラダとミルクをください。

Salad and milk please.

27. き
お決まりですか。

Is that what you've decided?

28. おいしかったですね。

It was delicious, wasn't it?

29. 私に ^{はら}払 わせてください。

Allow me to pay.

30. はい、^{ぜんぶ}全部で ^{えん}X 円 になります。

Yes, this comes out to in total to X yen.

31a. 何にしましょうか。

31b. 何になさいますか。

What shall I get you?

32. お ^{かんじょう}勘 ^{ねが}定 をお 願 いします。

Please bring us the bill.

33. 「お ^{ちゃ}茶 をもう ^{いつぱい}一 杯 いかが？」 「ええ、いただきます」

“Can I get you another glass of tea?” “Yes, thank you”.

34. コーヒーのお代わりは ^かいかがですか。

Would you like a refill of coffee?

Culture Note: When you are given something to eat or drink, say "いただきます".

When leaving, you say "ご ^{ちそう}馳 走 (さま (でした)) ". The hostess may respond

with "お ^{そまつ}粗 末 さまでした.

35. あがり

Tea (in a sushi bar)

36. お水

Water

Female Speech Note: お is more frequently used by women in common items

such as these. Similar words include お ^{にく}肉 "meat" and お ^{ひや}冷 "cold water".

37. おすしが食べたいですか。

Do you want to eat sushi?

38. どこかおいしいレストランを ^{おし}教 えてください。

Could you tell me of delicious restaurants anywhere?

39. おいしいでしょうか。

I wonder if it's delicious.

40. ずいぶん色々なものがあるんですね。

There are a lot of items. (In reference to the menu)

More Key Words

ナイフ	Knife	フォーク	Fork	スプーン	Spoon	はし	Chopsticks
(お) ^{さら} 皿	Plate	ナプキン	Napkin	ウェイター	Waiter	ウェイトレス	Waitress

Rice and Noodles

Rice is the most important food in Japan. ご ^{はん}飯 , cooked rice, is even synonymous to "meal". ^{こめ}米 is uncooked rice. Many things are made from rice.

酒: The Japanese Drink

酒, also known as ^{にほんしゅ}日本酒 , is a rice-based alcoholic beverage. It's served at room temperature or heated. It can be served in お ^{ちょこ}猪口 , small cylindrical

cups, ^{さかずき} 杯 which are flat saucer-like cups, or ^{ます} 杓 which are wooden box-like cups. One shouldn't fill one's own cup: it should be done for you. To ask:

41. (お) 酒をもう一杯ください。

One more cup please.

Be sure to hold your cup to the ^{とっくり} 徳利 --the flask--as a gesture of acceptance. ^{かんぱい} 乾杯 (Cheers)!

More Rice

^{どんぶり} 丼 : 丼 is a bowl of hot steamed rice with toppings.

^{せんべい} 煎餅 : Rice crackers in all shapes and flavors.

チャーハン・炒飯: Chinese fried rice.

^{にぎ} お握り: Balls of rice with filling.

^{もち} 餅 : Rice cake.

すし: すし is vinegar rice topped/mixed with seafood & vegetables. There are many kinds.

Noodles ^{めんるい} 麺類

うどん (Japanese): うどん is a wheat-flour noodle. There are several kinds of dishes.

そば (Japanese): そば is buckwheat. It is either served chilled with a dipping sauce or in a hot broth.

^{そうめん} 素麺 (Japanese): そうめん are white thin wheat flour noodles dipped in ^{めん} めん

つゆ汁 and served cold. The noodles are often placed in a flume in cold water and the diners have to catch them.

ラーメン (Chinese): ラーメン is made of Chinese-style wheat noodles and is served with a meat and often flavored with soy sauce or みそ味噌 (soybean paste).

Dishes

Deep-fry	揚げ物（あげもの）	Pot cooking	鍋物（なべもの）	Stews	煮物（にもの）
Grilled	焼き物（やきもの）	Soups	吸い物（すいもの）	Pickled	漬物（つけもの）
Stir-fried	炒め物（いためもの）	Sashimi	刺し身	Soup (from juice)	汁物（しるもの）

Word Note: つけもの漬物 also refers to salted foods.

ふぐ河豚 (Sashimi): The フグ, puffer fish, is poisonous yet delicious. It is prepared with extreme caution to remove the toxic areas. The Emperor is forbidden to eat it. The liver is apparently the most delicious part, but it's also the part most likely to kill you. フグ is a delicacy (ちんみ珍味) .

ギョーザ (Yakimono): Chinese ravioli-dumplings usually filled with pork and vegetables.

みそしる味噌汁 (Shirumono): みそ soup is made out of だし出汁, stock, and みそ paste.

うなぎ鰻 (Yakimono): ウナギ is freshwater eel. Saltwater eels are called あなご穴子.

しゃぶしゃぶ (Nabemono): しゃぶしゃぶ is made with thinly sliced beef. It is usually served with ^{とうふ}豆腐, ^{はくさい}白菜 (Chinese cabbage), ^{春菊} (edible chrysanthemum leaves), ^{のり}海苔 seaweed, onions, ^{にんじん}人参 carrots, ^{しいたけ}椎茸 and ^{だけ}えのき茸 mushrooms, etc.

^{とん}豚カツ (Agemono): Breaded, deep fried pork cutlet.

^{やとり}焼き鳥 (Yakimono): Skewered chicken, it can refer to skewered food in general.

^{てや}照り焼き (Yakimono): 照り焼き is grilled, broiled, or fried meat glazed in sweet soy sauce.

てんぷら (Agemono): Deep-fried prawns and vegetables.

^{よなべ}寄せ鍋 (Nabemono): Seafood hot pot.

^{ぞうに}雑煮 (Shirumono): A soup with ^{もち}餅 common in New Year's.

^{とんじる}豚汁 (Shirumono): Like ^{みそ} soup with pork.

^{うめぼし}梅干 (Tsukemono): 梅干 is pickled ^{うめ}梅, which are like plums.

^{からあ}唐揚げ (Agemono): 唐揚げ is bite-size chicken, fish, etc. deep fried.

^{このや}お好み焼き (Yakimono): Consists of a flour batter, トロロ, ^{みずだし}水/出汁, ^{たまご}卵 egg, and shredded キャベツ(cabbage), etc. It is often flavored with mayo.

すきやき (Nabemono): Thinly sliced ビーフ (beef) and vegetables cooked in ^{しょうゆ}醤油 soy sauce, 出汁 sugar, and sake. It's dipped into bowls of raw egg.

^{いもに}芋煮 (Suimono): A thick potato soup.

^{うすづく}薄作り (Sashimi): Finely sliced raw fish. Plate is decorated with shredded

^{だいこん}大根 Japanese radish, lemon slice, ginger, and a ^{だいこん}大根-chili mixture with

scallions in the center.

べんとう
弁当 (Miscellaneous): Assorted lunches.

Delicacies

アンキモ	Anglerfish liver	カラスミ	Salted mullet roe
このわた	Salted sea cucumber entrails	ウニ	Salt/pickled sea urchins

Drinks

お茶	(Green) tea	酒	Sake	ワイン	Wine
ビール	Beer	ウォッカ	Vodka	コーク	Coke
抹茶	Powdered green tea	麦茶	Barley tea	紅茶	Black tea
焼酎	Shochu	桜湯	Cherry blossom tea	水	Water
コーヒー	Coffee	ミルク	Milk	ジュース	Juice
アイスティー	Ice tea	コーラ	Cola	スプライト	Sprite

Other Unique Drinks

クー	Qoo, a non-carbonated beverage with grape and orange flavors.
ヤクルト	Yakult is a pro-biotic milk-like drink.
カルピス	Calpis is a non-carbonated beverage with a milky taste.
C.C Lemon	A soft drink known for its lemon flavor.

ポカリスエット	A soft/sports drink that has a mild grapefruit flavor.
ラムネ	A soft drink with many flavors.

Word Note: For liquor, "straight" is "ストレートで" and "on-ice" is "水^{みず}割^わりで".

Western Food 洋食

カキフライ	Breaded oyster	カキエビ	Breaded shrimp
ステーキ	Steak	ポークチョップ	Pork chop
オクラ	Okra	アボカド	Avocado
パイナップル	Pineapple	パパイア	Papaya
ネクタリン	Nectarine	カボチャ	Pumpkin
ハンバーガー	Hamburger	ビフテキ	Beef steak
ブドウ	Grape	ブラックベリー	Blackberry
マンゴー	Mango	キーウィ	Kiwi
プラム	Plum	ココナッツ	Coconut
オレンジ	Orange	リンゴ	Apple
ラズベリー	Raspberry	ブルーベリー	Blueberry
ロースト	Roast	シチメンチョウ	Turkey
フライドポテト	French fries	ピザ	Pizza
タコス	Taco	ベーコン	Bacon
スクワッシュ	Squash	ハム	Ham
ホットドッグ	Hot dog	サンドウィッチ	Sandwich
サラダ	Salad	スープ	Soup
オムレツ	Omelet	ソーセージ	Sausage
トマト	Tomato	ピーマン	Bell pepper

Snacks

デザート (desserts) and おやつ (snacks) are very important, and there is a large variety that you can choose from in Japan.

わがし 和菓子 (Japanese-style sweets)

団子	Rice dumplings	カキ氷	Shaved ice with syrup topping
こんぺいと	Crystal sugar candy	まんじゅう	Sticky rice surrounding a sweet bean center

ようがし 洋菓子 (Western-style sweets)

カステラ	Iberian-style sponge cakes	アイスクリーム	Ice cream
ケーキ	Cake	クッキー	Cookie

Common Snacks

ハイチュウ	Edible chewing candy similar to gum.	ポッキー	Biscuit stick snack
うまい棒	Puff corn snacks similar to Cheetos	コアラのマーチ	Bite-sized cookie snacks

Seasoning 調味料

辛子	Spicy mustard	酢みそ	Vinegar miso sauce
ケチャップ	Ketchup	二杯酢	Soy vinegar sauce
米酢	Rice vinegar	ふりかけ	Dry condiment sprinkled on rice
しょう油	Soy sauce	ポン酢	Citrus-based sauce
マヨネーズ	Mayonnaise	みりん	Low alcohol rice wine

めんま	From dried bamboo	ラー油	Chili-infused vegetable oil
わさび	Wasabi	こしょう	Pepper
塩	Salt	砂糖	Sugar
香辛料	Spices	ショウガ	Ginger
カレー粉	Curry powder	マスタード	Mustard
ソース	Worcestershire sauce	油	Oil/fat

Other Ingredients

ミカン	Mandarin orange	アユ	Ayu fish
ナマズ	Catfish	ヒジキ	Dark edible seaweed
かずのこ	Herring roe	ニラ	Chinese chives
ナス	Eggplant	サケ	Salmon
イカ	Squid	ハマグリ	Clam
豚肉	Pork	サツマイモ	Sweet potato
梨	Nashi pear	昆布	Kombu
キュウリ	Cucumber	豆	Beans
モモ	Peach	イチゴ	Strawberry
バナナ	Banana	かも肉	Duck
インゲン	String bean	マッシュルーム	Mushroom
ヤマイモ	Yam	唐辛子	Chili pepper
レモン	Lemon	スイカ	Watermelon
レタス	Lettuce	ザクロ	Pomegranate
トウモロコシ	Corn	カブ	Turnip
タコ	Octopus	クリ	Chestnut
ホタテガイ	Scallop	カツオ	Bonito
ホウレンソウ	Spinach	酢	Vinegar

パン粉	Dried bread crumbs	マグロ	Tuna
イクラ	Salmon roe	魚肉	Fish
鶏肉	Chicken	ヒラメ	Flounder
イワシ	Sardine	エビ	Shrimp
アズキ	Azuki red beans	ショウガ	Ginger

Cookware & Utensils 台所用品

皿	Plate	鍋	Pot	ざる	Colander
フライパン	Fry pan	布巾	Kitchen towel	ふた	Lid
薬缶	Kettle	(お) 箸	Chopsticks	包丁	Kitchen knife
ナイフ	Knife	フォーク	Fork	スプーン	Spoon
炊飯器	Rice cooker	レンジ	Microwave	ガス台	Gas stove
まな板	Cutting board	杓文字	Rice paddle	缶切	Can opener
栓抜き	Bottle opener	流し (台)	Sink	換気扇	Ventilation fan
おたま	Ladle	ポット	Thermos bottle		

第72課: Potential I

Expressing potential in Japanese isn't easy. There are many ways not exactly the same to do this, and there are restrictions on these phrases that don't exist for the English "can". In Japanese, the potential is intertwined with the concept of volition and favorability. This, not surprisingly, affects the grammar.

Normal Potential Form of Verbs

Normally, the potential form (可能形), is created with the auxiliary ～られる after the 未然形 for 一段 verbs and 来る. This is because a *potential* phrase is not something that has been done. 五段 verbs have unique potential forms. Because their origin is slightly unknown despite being so recent in origin, drop -u and add -eru and you're done! する is irregular and complicated. So, we will avoid it in this lesson.

The direct object of a potential sentence is treated as the subject of an in-transitive verb. The object is still the object. が and を, though, may mark the object. There are rules behind it, but for now, we will use them interchangeably.

	Ex.	可能形	Past	Negative	Negative Past
一段	食べる	食べられる	食べられた	食べられない	食べられなかった
五段	行く	行かれる → 行ける	行けた	行けない	行けなかった
来る	来る	来(こ)られる	来られた	来られない	来られなかった
する	する	できる	できた	できない	できなかった
形容詞	正しい	正しく(して)いられる	正しく(して)いられた	正しく(して)いられない	正しく(して)いられなかった
形容動詞	簡単な	簡単でいられる	簡単でいられた	簡単でいられない	簡単でいられなかった

Part of Speech Note: For adjectives, ～られる attaches to the 未然形 of いる and いる then attaches to the 連用形 of an adjective. However, showing potential of a state with adjectives is uncommon.

Examples

1. 漢字が書けますか。

Can you write Kanji?

2. しかた 仕方がありませんが、明日は公園に行けません。

It can't be helped, but I can't go to the park tomorrow.

3. 日本語の本が読めますか。

Can you read a Japanese book?

4. このキノコは食べられますか。

Is this mushroom edible?

5. 私が かいしゃ で しゅっせ できたのは、 うん 運 がよかったまでのことです。

It's just luck that I was able to succeed at the company.

6. その話はできすぎで（、） しん 信じられません。

The story is too good to be true.

7. そこまで歩けますか。

Can I walk there?

8. いくつまで かぞ 数えられるのか。 (Somewhat rude; a sense of doubt is portrayed)

How far can you count to?

9. じてんしゃ
自転車に乗れますか。

Can you ride a bicycle?

10. 鳥は空を飛べる。

Birds can fly.

Literally: Birds can fly through the sky.

11. 僕の学校では日本語がなら
習えません。

You can't take Japanese at my school.

12. 明日は仕事があります。ですから、行けません。

I have work tomorrow. So, I can't go.

13. れんらくと
連絡が取れなくなったから、帰ってこないか
しんぱい
心配した。

Because we lost contact with him, we worried whether he would come back home.

14. お金がなくて、バスに乗れませんでした。

I didn't have money, so I couldn't ride the bus.

15. ピアノが弾けますか。

Can you play the piano?

16. この次の金曜日に来られますか。

Can you come next Friday?

17. うちの赤ん坊はもうヨチヨチ歩けますよ。(Feminine)

Our baby can already waddle around.

18. ファックスをおく
送れますか。

Can I send a fax?

19. それは言えてるね。

Idiomatic: That's exactly it.

Word Note: See that いえる, aside from literally mean "can say", can also be used idiomatically.

20. しょうぎ^{しょうぎ} か^か 将棋^{しょうぎ} では勝^かてる。 (Contrasting)

I can win at shogi.

Word Note: 将棋 is Japanese chess.

21. お酒ですか。ええ、飲めますよ。

Liquor? Yes, you can drink it.

Meaning Note: In the above sentence, the potential is used in showing permission. Or, depending on context, it may refer to the liquor in question being safe to drink.

22. この水、飲めますか。

Can I drink this water?

Meaning Note: This isn't asking about the ability to drink water. Rather, it's about whether it's OK. The water could be dirty. People can still drink dirty water, but should they is the question.

23. どこに車を^と停められますか。

Where can I park my car?

24. おく^{おく} うしな^{うしな} じかん^{じかん} は金では^{つぐな} 償^{つぐな} えない。

Money cannot pay for lost time.

無くす・なくす・亡くす・失くす

失う・喪う・うしなう

Here we have a classic battle between script and nuance. Let's begin.

無くなる is uncommon, but = なくなる. It can be used to show that something has become no longer in existence, or something is used up, something is lost. Thus, it is intransitive. And, you have several broad definitions to think through rather than one English keyword.

亡くなる Comes from the same source as above but refers to the passing away of an individual in a respectful/euphemistic fashion.

亡くす is light being died on by someone in your loved ones, and losing that individual. 幼時に父を亡くす。 This comes from 亡く + す (る) as expected of the same source as 無くす, which can be broken down likewise. So, なくなる can be broken down to なく + なる. It's just for the definitions thus far, they can be viewed as a single word, just like how words in any language are etymologically compounded but no longer thought of as being so. However, when なくなる is used for ないようになる, it is viewed as being separate and is not written in Kanji.

無くす = 失 (く) す = (喪す)

1. To lose something that you've had up till now.
2. To get rid of a bad situation.
3. When used in the sense of 亡くす, it can be spelled as 喪す. However, due to the government's attempts to lower spelling options, it is no longer prevalent.

Now, we have 失う・喪う.

1. To lose something that had been in your possession or on you(r person).
2. To lose the chance at getting something.
3. To be gone from having been taken/stolen from (you).
4. To end up not knowing the path to take.

5. To lose (a loved one). This is where the spelling 喪う comes into play.

So, we see that there is heavy interchangeability between the two.

鍵が {無くなる・なくなる} 。 = For the key to be lost/disappear/be gone.

鍵を {なくす・無くす・失 (<) す} = To lose a key.

鍵を失う = To lose a key. (Sounds more like it has been in your possession or on your person) To get rid ofX A 鍵 isn't a 事柄.

連用形+しない

連用形 + は+ しない is like a strong "won't" in the sense of not being able to do something.

だれ かぎ あ
25. 誰 の 鍵 も合いはしない。

Nobody's key will work.

Verb + に + Negative Potential Verb

This is an emphatic pattern used to show that even when you want to do something, you can't.

26. 雪が^ふ降り^つ積もって、出かけるに出かけられない。

The snow piled up, and we were unable to go out (though we wanted to).

27. 嵐が強くて、行くに行けない。

The storm is so strong that I can't even go.

More Verbs in the Potential

Can go home	帰られる	Can swim	泳げる
Can die	死ねる	Can buy	買える
Can drink	飲める	Can wait	待てる
Can take	取れる	Can sing	歌える

Verbs that Cannot Have Potentials

Non-volitional verbs cannot have potential forms. This includes verbs of natural phenomenon like 降る, ^{ひか}光る, ^{なが}流れる, and ^{こお}凍る, those concerning human emotion and physiology (^{いた}痛む, ^{しび}痺れる (to be paralyzed), ^{うらや}羨む (to be jealous), any verbs that end in ある (as they have no volition), and any pattern that has no control involved like phrases with つく and いく such as ^{そうぞう}想像がつく (one can imagine) and ^{なつとく}納得がいく (to accept as valid).

Notice that these are all intransitive verbs. However, it's not to say that all intransitive verbs don't have potential forms. Think of motion verbs like 走る, 行く, 帰る, ^{もど}戻る, 来る, etc. All of these have potentials because volition is involved in their meanings.

Set Phrase Note: あられる, the potential of ある, does happen to exist in the phrase あられもない, which means "impossible". As this is the case, it doesn't contradict what has been said above because there is no volition in impossibility.

とても

とても in a negative sentence means "can't possibly".

28. とってもじゃないけど、そんなもん（なんか）買えねーよ。（Vulgar）

I can't possibly buy something like that!

29. とても泳ぎきれない。

I can't possibly completely swim (that distance).

なかなか

なかなか in a negative sentence means "not easily/by no means". It's used a lot with potential expressions.

30. 漢字がなかなか ^{おぼ}覚えられなくて ^{こま}困っている学生は、たくさんいますね。

There are a lot of students that are troubled at not being able to quite memorize Kanji, aren't there?

31. ^{さくや}昨夜、なかなか ^{ねむ}眠れなかったから、今日はとっても眠くてたまらない。

Since I couldn't easily sleep last night, today I really want to sleep and can't stand it.

32. 宿題がなかなかできなくて、困っています。

I'm troubled that I can't seem to do my homework.

33. タバコはよくないと分かっているけど、なかなかやめられなくて、困っている人が多いです。

There are a lot of people that can't quite quit smoking even though they know that tobacco is bad.

34. ^{じさ}時差ボケで、なかなか ^ね寝られなくて、^{こま}困りました。

I was troubled because I couldn't quite sleep due to jet lag.

35. 漢字を 3000 ^{もくひょう}覚えるという ^{目標}があるが、なかなか勉強する時間がない。

I have a goal of learning 3,000 Kanji, but I don't quite have the time.

第73課: Potential II: できる

Other than using られる with 一段 verbs and changing 五段 into special potential verbs, you can also use できる in the pattern ～ことができる. できる more or less correlates to the potential form of する. As you can see, though, they do not come from the same word.

できる

する's potential form is できる・出来る. You don't have to add or do anything else. In Japanese, you can use できる with things regarding ability. So, the equivalent of "can English" would be a valid expression.

1. どりよく^ど力^りと運^{うん}が^が相^あま^いって^て優^{ゆう}勝^{しょう}できた。

Together with effort and luck, I was able to be victorious.

2. 加藤さんは碁^ごが出来ます。

Mr. Kato can play go.

- 3a. 日本語ができます。○

- 3b. 日本語を話しができます。X

I can speak Japanese.

Literally: I can do Japanese.

Grammar Note: You don't make a verb a noun and use "Noun + ができる (see ことができる). This example shows how できる can show ability/talent. So, ゴルフができない would also be correct.

4. 彼らは賛^{さんせい}成^{せい}も反^{はんたい}対^{たい}もできない。

They can't even agree or disagree.

5. もう 一 ^{いっぱい}泊 できますか。

Can I stay for one more day?

Meanings Other Than Potential

The 可能形 is unable to show appearance or what something is made of, but できる sure can. Those are the "other" usages of it mentioned at the beginning of this lesson.

6. 水は ^{さんそ}酸素 と ^{すいそ}水 素 からできている。

Water is made up of oxygen and hydrogen.

7. ご飯、できましたよ。

Dinner is made!

8. 人生って、悩みと苦しみからできてるんだなあ。（男性語）

Life really is made from worries and suffering.

9. 人間は体と心からできているのに、みんな体のことばかりに ^{いっしょうけんめい}一 生 懸 命 気 を
使って、心のほうに ^{えいよう}栄 養 を与える

ことを忘れている。

Although humans are made up of the body and the heart, everyone focuses solely on their bodies and forget about providing nurture to their hearts.

～ことができる

Instead of using ～（ら）れる, you may use ことができる. This pattern is arguably more common despite being longer. Without qualification, it will sound as if you can't do the phrase at all when used in the negative. This does not have

the requirement of being only used with verbs of volition. This can be used to show the potential of something to happen.

10. 私は日本語を話すことができます。

I can speak Japanese.

11. コンピューターを使うことができるか。 (Rough)

Can you use a computer?

12. アメフトの^{しあい}試合を見ることができました。

I was able to see the American football game.

13. 100万からの^{しよめい あつ}署名を集めることができないでしょう。

You won't be able to collect over a million signatures.

14. その漢字を読むことができませんでした。

I could not read that Kanji.

Particle Note: が in this pattern, due to its specific nature, would otherwise make it sound like you in particular are the one that "can"; however, this is not necessarily the case. Nowadays, ～ことができる has more or less become an affirmative, refined pattern.

～することができる

～ することができる shouldn't be used excessively, and it should be avoided in promotion-oriented settings. However, it shows up a lot in magazines and such because it is felt by many to be more polite. Yet, when there is a word limit, できる should do. For a minority of speakers, this phrase is ungrammatical. However, this is an extreme position based mainly on a misconception of case marking in Japanese. In the potential, が does not mark a subject. It marks an object. This

may be confusing, but other languages have similar alignment rules. This is simply a quirk in Japanese, and it's not like natives were confused on how to deal with it until being introduced with half-baked knowledge about Western grammar terms.

15. ダウンロードすることができます！

You can download it!

Other Ways to Make する Potential

There are four potential routes that you can take to make the potential with する-verbs.

1. Single characters like 愛 that become verbs with する
→+ することができます; -し得 (え・う) る; + せる.
2. Compounds/loan words--^{けいけん} 経験 --that become verbs with する.
→+ (することが) できる; し得る.
3. Verbs with する that become voiced such as 感ずる・じる.
→Conjugate as 一段 verbs; -じ得る; + ことができる.
4. Verbs with a つ such as 発する.
→+ ことができる; -得る.

Verb Note: Verbs like 愛す are treated as 五段 verbs. Also note that something like 理解することができる is typically deemed to be unnecessarily wordy.

Curriculum Note: See Potential II for ～得る. It is literary.

16. ^{きけん さつ}彼は危険を察することができないやつだな。

He's a guy that can't sense danger, isn't he?

17. ^{きみ}君を愛せない。

I can't love you.

18. 経験（《すること》が）できる。

To be able to experience.

19. 彼は ^{だれ}誰でも愛せる人だね。

He's a person that can love anybody, isn't he?

20. これでも中学生の ^{とき}時に日本語を ^{りかい}理解できませんでした。

Believe it or not, I couldn't understand Japanese in junior high.

第74課: Colors

Each society has its own customs about colors. Japanese is now based on a seven color (七色) scheme, but Japanese has not always been this way. This will become quite apparent as we look at individual colors.

A lot can be said about the nuances of each color, how to be more specific about shades and hues, and what sort of idiomatic expressions can be made with color. By now you should have already learned the basic colors through example sentences thus far. So, this lesson is more about knowing exact details about colors, and it will be expanded over time.

Colors

There is a noun and an adjectival form to each color. Also, there are additional Sino-Japanese variants for many colors, which can be made adjectival by adding の.

Color	Native	Adjective	Non-native	Adjective	Kango
Blue	青 (あお)	青い			青色 (せいしよく)
Red	赤 (あか)	赤い			赤色 (せきしよく)
Yellow	黄 (き)	黄色 (きいろ) い 黄 (色) の			黄色 (こうしよく)
Green	緑 (みどり)	緑の			緑色 (りよくしよく)
Black	黒 (くろ)	黒い			黒色 (こくしよく)
White	白 (しろ)	白い			白色 (はくしよく)
Purple	紫 (むらさき)	紫の			紫色 (ししよく)
Grey					灰色 (はいいろ・かいしよく)
Pink			ピンク	ピンクの	
Orange			オレンジ	オレンジの	
Gold	金色 (かねいろ)				金色(きんいろ・こんじき・きんしよく)

Silver	銀色（しろがねいろ）				銀色（ぎんいろ・ぎんしょく）
Beige			ベージュ	ベージュの	
Tan	渋色（しぶいろ）			渋色の	
Turquoise			ターコイズ	ターコイズの	
Vermillion					朱色（しゅいろ・しゅしょく）
Indigo			インディゴ インジゴ		藍色（あいいろ・らんしょく）

Usage Notes:

1. All colors of native or foreign origin may be followed by 色. Certain colors should be used with 色. For example, 灰 just means "ashes". Gold and silver must have 色 in order to not be confused with the actual elements. Words such as ターコイズ and オレンジ can be understood to mean the color, but they really refer to the objects. Without 色, 緑 may mean "greenery". 紫 as a noun may refer to soy sauce in sushi restaurants.
2. The native versions of gold and silver are rare. In fact, the one for gold is never used but in 白銀色, 銅色, and the like.
3. Most of the Sino-Japanese readings are rare.
4. 青, not 緑, is the color used for streetlights for "green". 青 may also mean "greens" in expressions like 青物市場 ^{あおもものいちば} meaning "vegetable market". It is also the color for pale face, youth, and freshness in plants, coolness, the sea, and even the color of moonlight and evening mist. It may also refer to black as in a horse's coat.
5. 茶色 is "brown" instead of "green" because when tea was first introduced to Japan, it would be shipped to elites in hardened, steamed form. From then, it would be cut up and boiled in hot water and drank. As "green tea" variants would

come later, the color of the original tea drinks became the Japanese word for brown.

Light and Dark Colors

Light colors are expressed by using うす 薄 い or うす 薄 ～. For dark colors, use こ 濃い. Now, there will be colors that are light or dark variants of a general color. 淡い is "light/faint" and its antonym is also 濃い.

1. 淡い黄色の葉っぱがありますよね。

There are light yellow flowers, aren't there?

2. この花の色が薄い。

This flower's color is pale/weak/thin.

3. 高橋さんの車はその濃い緑色ですね。

Mr. Takahashi's car is that dark green one, right?

4. うめ うすべに
梅 の 薄 紅

The light crimson of a plum

5. きんもくせい こ うらはいろ しおん うす きいろ うぐいす
金 木 犀 は濃い緑から 裏 葉 色 へ、紫 苑 は 薄 い 黄 色 から 鶯 へ。

The fragrant olive (went) from dark green to a light green and the Tartarian Aster (went) from light yellow to greenish brown.

From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

Sentence Notes: 裏葉色 literally means the color of the back of a leaf. 鶯 (色) is the color of the wings of an 鶯 (Japanese bush warbler). You do not have to remember the 漢字 for 犀, 苑, or 鶯 for the time being, but literature often exploits even more specific colors, and spellings can get trickier.

Mixed Colors

Colors may be put together to make things such as "white-black" and "yellow-green". The resultant expressions may be read with either 訓読み or 音読み. 音読み are rarer and reserved for the spoken language with exception to #10.

6. 黄緑（きみどり・おうりょく）

Yellow-green

7. 黒白（くろしろ・こくはく）

Black and white

8. 青緑（あおみどり・せいりょく）

Blue-green/aqua

9. 白緑（びやくろく）

Really light green

10. 金茶（きんちゃ）

Golden brown

Interesting Phrases

あかじ 赤字 and くろじ 黒字 are deficit and surplus respectfully. They are words that typically confuse students, although there are similar expressions in English. For example, you can say "to be in the red". When you get a failing grade, you can say

you got an あかてん 赤点. However, こくてん 黒点 refers to sunspots. So, it is not the opposite of 赤点. Instead, the antonym for 赤点 is ei-

ther きゅうだいてん 及第点 or ごうかくてん 合格点.

It is also important to note that the phrases 肌が {白い・黒い} are NOT used for nationality/race. Rather, they refer to someone's complexion.

Table of Contents

第75課: 知る VS 分かる

To understand the difference between 知る and 分かる, you have to consider a lot of things. First, there is the basic definition of both and how they differ. There are also fundamental grammatical differences. Let's get started.

Differentiating the Two

First, consider the following basic definitions of 知る and 分かる.

- 知る shows the acquisition of information, knowledge, experience, and in the progressive form, it may show that one has such and or remember a matter.
- 分かる is a more specific than 知る and shows true understanding at the level of comprehending the true/actual state of things. It can also mean that one identifies/establishes something as so and or that one has discerned something.

Just from this introductory explanation, we can see that 分かる implies a more serious state of comprehension than 知る.

Consider the difference between よく知らない人 and よく分からない人. The first sounds like it's a person you've not actually been acquainted with and or a mysterious individual from somewhere. The latter sounds like a mysterious person but one you've been acquainted with, or perhaps the person has changed somehow. So, when you go from 未知 (not yet known) to 既知 (already known), you use 知る. Reaching the true essence of this 既知の事実 is within the realm of 分かる. 分かる also implies an effect not involving one's volition.

1. その時に、ラーメンの味を知った。

I was then acquainted with the taste of ramen.

2. ああ、分かった。

Ah, I get it.

3. 出席するかどうか分かりません。

I don't know whether I will attend or not.

4. 検索してみれば分かるよ。

You'll understand once you look it up.

5. 歌詞の意味なんて分からないように出来てるよ。

The meaning of lyrics are crafted so that you don't understand them.

6. 最初から読まないで分からないんだから、悪い日本語だよ。

If you can't understand it without reading from the beginning, it's bad Japanese.

7. 日本語でも何言ってるか分からなくて理解できなかった。

I couldn't comprehend it because I didn't even know what was being said even in Japanese.

8. ^{旦那}旦那が分かってないのに録音してるからって適当に受け答えして帰ってきちゃったの。

Although my husband couldn't understand, he recorded and came home after giving replies.

9. わからない単語があったから辞書を引いたのに、日本語でも英語でも分からないから、笑っちゃった。

Despite looking up words that I didn't know, I laughed with the fact that I don't get the Japanese or the English.

10a. 考えれば、分かります。 ○

10b. 考えれば、知ります。 X

If you think about it, you'll understand.

11. ゴルフやったことないから何のことか分からない。

I've never played golf, so I don't know what that is.

12. ググってフェアウェイとグリーンの違いを知った。

I learned of the difference between a fairway and a green when I googled.

13. 青信号っていう言葉が出来上がっちゃってるから青じゃない場合になんて言ったらいいかわからないや。

Since we have this phrase "aoshingo", even when the light is not blue, I don't know what's best to say.

14. 彼女はその人が日本人であることも知っていたはずなんだけど。

Though she should have known that that person was Japanese.

15. これは本当かどうか分からないけど、ベトナムでも犬を食べる習慣があって、彼らはペットの犬も食べるらしい。

I don't know whether this is true or not, but it seems that there is a tradition even in Vietnam of eating dogs and that they also eat dogs meant as pets.

16. アメリカではタコもめずらしい？知らなかった！

Octopus is also rare in America? I had no idea!

分かる is intransitive in Japanese and so you must use が to mark what in English would be the direct object. However, you do occasionally see を分かる due to Western influence. Nevertheless, other things like わかりたい, わかられる, and わかりえる are wrong with only 分かりたい being sometimes acceptable as a more emphatic way of saying 知りたい, which to some speakers is still just wrong.

17a. 日本語が分かりたい。？

17b. 日本語を理解したい。○

I want to know Japanese.

18. 分かりたいなら、よく調べなさい。

If you really want to know, go look into it.

知る can be conjugated into forms such as 知りたい, 知られる, and 知り得る, but it has a tense restriction that 分かる does not have. Asking 知りますか would be very weird. It would mean that you're asking whether someone is responsive to information, which would be very weird to ask another human being. You can, though, 分かりますか to ask about comprehension. 知っていますか is perfectly fine for asking whether someone knows something. So, if you were to ask 「大統領を知っていますか」, the person is asking whether you know anything about the president. 知っていない is almost always wrong, but saying it is always impossible is a fallacy that will be addressed in depth shortly in this lesson.

19. もっと深く知りたい。

I want to know deeper about it.

20. ちょうせんはんとう じじょう
朝鮮半島の事情をよく知ることが大切です。

It's important to know well of the conditions in the Korean Peninsula.

Finally, it's important to quickly think of the difference between 知っている and 分かっている.

- 知っている: Shows that you are in the state of keeping hold of some knowledge about something.
- 分かっている: Shows that you are in the state of knowing the true essence of something.

21. 知っていますが、今はちょっと分かりません。

I know of it, but I don't actually know it at the moment.

22. 差別と区別すら解ってない。

(He/someone) doesn't even understand the difference between "discrimination" and "differentiating".

知らない VS 知っていない

The standard negative form of 知っている is 知らない. However, 知っていない does exist. 知っていない often appears whenever the affirmative and negative of 知っている are contrasted. 知っていない is possible when the negative is being used for affirmative conjecture, which we've seen already before with things like じゃないか, 遊びに行かない? It's also possible in the following contrast.

知っている + ば → 知っていなければ = If you don't know

知らない + ば → 知らなければ = If you don't realize

Essentially, 知らない denotes attention to a static condition of not knowing whereas 知っていない denotes attention to the completeness of knowing in the negative sense. 知っていない is inconstant and denotes an objective view from the outside in regards to a lack of knowledge, which is exactly why students are rightfully told they are wrong when they try to apply it as meaning "I don't know". 知らない involves denoting a lack of knowledge from the inward perspective of the thing at hand.

There are still instances when 知っていない is seen, but it is almost completely avoided. The single instance where it is in imperative is still used, but many simply avoid it as there are synonymous phrases like 理解できない and 腑に落ちていない. Derivatives are most common, which is the most important thing to keep in mind.

23a. 知っていても知っていなくても ○

23b. 知っていても知らなくても ○

Even if you do or do not know

24. そのことを知っているか否かではない。

It's not whether [they] know or do not know that.

Grammar Note: Notice how in this situation the use of 知っていない is avoided by using 否.

25a. 知っていようが知っていなかろうが ○

25b. 知っていようが知らなかろうが ○

Whether you know or not

26. この問題は、日本語を知らなければ答えられない。??

Intended: If you don't know Japanese, you can't answer this question.

27. この試験に合格するためには、日本語をよく知らなければならない。X

Intended: In order to pass this exam, you must know Japanese well.

Otherwise, 知っていない is probably a mistake or dialectical because there are dialects where the same thing is acceptable.

28. 「田中君はこのことについて、何か知っていたか」「いや、まだ何も知りませんでした」 ○

"What did Tanaka know about this? "No, he still didn't know anything"

Citation Note: This section is loosely based on research done by the Japanese linguist 久野すすむ. You can read his full explanation of this in Japanese in his work 新日本文法研究.

Excerpt from 松本清張: 知っていない ○

29. 「どうも困った ^{とうしょ} 投書 が来てね。 ^{だいたい} 大体 のことは ^{すずきくん} 鈴木 君 から聞いただけ
が、今だったら、ほかに ^{だれ} 誰 もこのこと

を知っていないのです。われわれはあくまでもあなたの ^{たちば} 立場 に立って ^{しより} 処理 した
いと思うんですが、あなた
のお気持はどうなんです？」

"Presumably a problematic correspondence came in. You probably heard most of it from Suzuki, but as for now, no one else knows about this situation.

We would like to thoroughly handle [this matter] from your position, but what are your feelings?"

From ^{こんせい}混声の森 (下) by ^{まつもとせいちょう}松本清張 .

This example is chosen for several reasons. One, it has a well-crafted example of 知っていない. Two, information about the author brings insight to alternative explanations of the phrasing. Three, the excerpt is rich in review.

1. どうも is most known to mean "very much" in どうもありがとう. However, in this example, it should be translated as "presumably".
2. ～てね is used to soften the tone. Yet, the past tense meaning is still evident from context. If the situation were different, the tense could potentially be different. So, て doesn't intrinsically have tense.
3. The speaker, whose name is 謙一, is 鈴木's superior and is also presumably older than 鈴木. Thus, it is appropriate for him to call 鈴木 with ～君.
4. だろう = probably. だろう instead of でしょう is male speech, but it has become vulgarized. However, this is not the case in this passage because it's older.
5. ～たら aids in expressing a hypothetical conjecture about the current time frame. Just treat 今だったら as a phrase meaning "as for now" for the time being.
6. ～たいと思う is used to show what one wishes to do, and it is used here in a polite fashion together with んです to emphasize intent/reason.
7. The prefix お is added to 気持 (ち) in being respectful to the woman being questioned.

Now, why was 知っていない used? It fits well with the explanation that it *denotes an objective view from the outside in regards to a lack of knowledge*. It wouldn't be like a learner's mistake. Though the writer is an influential writer, his dialect allows 知っていない. It is fair to say, though, that due to hyper-correction, 知っていない would be changed to 知らない by most speakers.

Table of Contents

第76課: Nouns → Verbs with する

Numerous verbs are made with する attached to nouns. する is primarily seen after ^{かんごめいし}漢語名詞, nouns that are Sino-Japanese (Chinese based) in origin or composition, for this. However, する is not limited to these nouns. It is also seen after native words and recent loanwords.

To study	勉強する	To buy and sell	売買する
To eat and drink	飲食する	To point out	指図する
To oversleep	寝坊する	To exchange (money)	両替する
To love (sexual relation)	恋する	To sweat	汗する
To copy	コピーする	To sign	サインする
To design	デザインする	To cancel	キャンセルする

When する attaches to these words, it loses its literal meaning and places a grammatical function instead. In this sense, we say that it has become grammaticalized.

There are problematic restrictions on this usage of する. Even though ^{きょうきゅう}供給 (supply) is the opposite of ^{じゅうよう}需要 (demand), only 供給 can be followed by する. It turns out that verbal-like nouns get する verb forms, but others not so verbal don't. This lesson will investigate what exactly the patterns are to figuring this out. Particles are also confusing. Some nouns become verbalized by adding ～する, ～をする, ～にする, ～になる, a combination of these. This does not consider the particle to be used before the resultant verb phrase.

Curriculum Note: The level of this lesson is currently under evaluation. Once a decision has been made, reading aids will be added to suit the level chosen.

Initial Problems

Our first problem is when to use ～をする. Many students learn about 練習 (を) する (to practice) and 勉強 (を) する (to study). But, extending ～をする haphazardly to any する verb isn't smart. There are situations in which ～する is only right. In other situations, ～をする is obligatory. Thus, ～する would be ungrammatical. For other nouns, neither is correct and other means of making them verbal, if possible, must be used.

One thing you have to be careful of is grammatical context. These judgments are based for non-casual speech and when the phrase is used without any other attribute phrases. For instance, テニスする is used in casual speech because を is unconditionally dropped in casual speech.

To play tennis	テニス {をする ○・する X}	To play baseball	野球 {をする ○・する X}
To mean/imply	意味 {する ○・をする} X	To imply	含意 {する ○・をする X}
To consult	参考 {する X・をする X・にする ○}	To be in a daze	夢中 {する X・をする X・になる ○}

Clarification Note: 意味をする may be used if you have ～という意味 or ～のような意味. However, the verb 意味する is not quite the same as just to define. Rather, it is more like to mean as in implication. You can't take this chart and run with it. Like always, be careful of understanding the entire picture. This includes knowing any nuance differences with familiar looking phrases. So, when we focus on this 意味する as a separate vocabulary word and try to insert a を, you would get を意味をする. It may also mean "to stand for", but this is still slightly different than ～という意味をする(○○).

Particle Note: Look how になる・する appear to save the day.

When the particle を is required, する is interpreted literally. This する is sometimes called a 重動詞 (heavy verb) in contrast to when it is just a grammatical item. Notice that the words that only take をする are specific activities: 強盗, テニス, 野球. Are these nouns then made verbs? No, they're obligatorily marked by を and are thus functioning as direct objects.

For activity nouns that are broad in meaning such as 勉強 and 練習, we see that を is optional. When を is used, these nouns usually have some sort of attribute, making them more specific.

1. 日本語の勉強をする。

To study Japanese.

Literally: To do Japanese studies.

For those that obligatorily only take する, they all represent a state/situation. More examples of these nouns include 刺殺 (stabbing to death), 集中 (concentration), 信用 (trust), 逆転 (reversal).

When する cannot be used at all, the noun lacks a strong verbal aspect. How do you know this? There must be certain conditions to look at. Ignoring set phrases that may break the rules, there are a set of tests to determine whether a noun has a high 動詞性 (verb nature) and can then take する.

The Tests

These tests predict what nouns have verb forms. You already know what nouns that take する look like and come from. So, these tests are simply here to help you more definitively figure out whether a noun has one or not. However, if you don't understand why things are, you open yourself up to making unnecessary mistakes.

Test 1: Aspect Modifier Test

Time phrases like “until” (まで) in Japanese set aspect limitations on verbs. They make verbs have a punctual end. If a noun is able to agree with these time phrases, it should have a high 動詞性 and thus have a verb form. When we do this test on the following native noun, it passes.

2. 明日までの仕上がり
がる

合格: 動詞性が高い → V.P 明日までに仕上

Completion by tomorrow
plete by tomorrow

To com-

If you were to replace 仕上がり with 本 or 部屋, which are both Sino-Japanese nouns, they fail. It turns out that there is no such thing as 本する or 部屋する, validating this test.

There is a drawback to this test. Noun forms of the verbs 痛む (to feel pain) and 信頼する (to trust/confide) come out negative. For these verbs, time parameters are not a part of their meanings. It's not correct Japanese to say something like 夜間以内の痛み (pain within night time). 夜に痛む is fine, though. We've just hit a separate roadblock in the meaning of these words.

This test enables us in theory to prove that nouns with a temporal end implied should have verb forms. So, in dealing with such 漢語名詞, they should have する verb forms.

3. 完了 (Completion) → 完了する ○ 完成 (Completion/perfection) → 完成する

4. 計算 (Calculation) → 計算する ○ 算数 (arithmetic) → 算数する
X/△

Test 2: Aspect Ending Test

Nouns that describe a コト (event) and can then be followed by time endings such as ～後 (after) ～中 (under/during) should have verb forms. This test is immediately problematic because some words that can be used with one such ending can't be used with another. All of these words, though, can take ～中. So, according to the test, they should be able to take する, and they do.

採用	Adoption (of something)	活動	Activity
研究	Research	募集	Recruitment
建設	Construction	仮眠	Doze

Like the last test, this test shows that nouns that express モノ cannot have verb forms. However, it accidentally invalidates nouns with verb forms that can't take both ～後 and ～中 for other reasons. Such nouns include 感動 (feeling/movement), 緊張 (nervousness), 静止 (stillness), 信用 (trust/faith), 信賴. They express particular states that can't be viewed as having exact beginnings, mid-points, or ends.

Test 3: State Aspect Test

Nouns such as 痛み represent states. However, the state unlike that of a building has the potential of changing over time. In this sense, such nouns are more verb-like. When we use 一時的な (temporary), we can quickly eliminate many nouns that can't take する.

5. 一時的な {緊張 ○・保存 (Preservation) ○・在庫 (Stock (supply)) ○・健康 (health) X・精神 (spirit/mind) X}

Words like 健康 and 精神 also fail previous aspect tenses. They have no salient relation with time. Although nouns like 緊張, 混乱 (chaos), and 流行 (fashion/trend) may not necessarily have defined time frames, these stages are subject to change, and change takes time.

Test 4: Intent/State of Action with Adjective Modifiers Test

There are still some する verbs not accounted for. For nouns with which intention and state can be expressed with an adjectival modifier, it is more verb-like and should take する. Those that can't show intention in this way are less verb-like and shouldn't take する.

6a. 彼女は一生懸命に調査を行ないました。○

6b. 彼女は一生懸命な調査を行ないました。○

Though slightly different, we know that she carried out a full-hearted investigation. We know her intent and state of action. So, 調査する should be a possible verb form of 調査, which it is.

Let's look at similar noun pairs in which one can take する and one can't. So, one can take certain intent/state adjectival phrases but the other cannot. If one can't, it shouldn't take する.

7. 意識的な参考	×	意識的な参照	○	異常な熱中	○
異常な夢中	×				
Conscious consultation		Conscious reference		Abnormal zeal	
Abnormal daze					

Nouns with Xs don't have する verb forms, thus validating the test. Though in English verb forms of these word aren't bad, if intent/volition isn't in the noun in Japanese, the noun fails the test. This is why 需要 doesn't have a する verb form. It fails this test.

This test is great for nouns that would have transitive verb form. It doesn't work for intransitive verbs, which have no volition. In which case, you would use the previous tests.

Final Comments

With these four tests, you should be able to correctly assume whether a noun can take する or not. Always consult a dictionary for assurance, though. Influence from your native language(s) may make you accidentally say things like 独立になる, which should be 独立する (to become independent). Independence like marriage presumably lasts for some time. 独立 along with 結婚, 安心, etc. pass Test 3 and thus have する verbs. If a noun fails this test, ～になる, ～にする, or either or might be used.

As final examples, consider 瀕死 (to become moribund) and 中毒 (intoxication/poisoning). 瀕死する fails all tests. When verbal, you say 瀕死になる, as expected. Both 瀕死 and 中毒 don't make sense with “temporary”. They describe things that simply happen/come to be. It would be weird to say that something was moribund for several days or someone was intoxicated for two hours.

Word Note: 中毒する does exist in the transitive sense of “to poison”, which then passes Test 4.

Particle Note: The particle used before the する verb is determined by the semantics of the verb phrase itself. This is not the topic of this lesson. The topic of this lesson is what sort of nouns become する verbs and which ones need を.

For instance, を敬礼する is ungrammatical because the する verb 敬礼する means “to salute”, and because you “salute to something”, you use the particle に with it. Though not using “to” is alright in English, this is not English, so you are going to have to consider how 敬礼する is used and not assume it's like its English equivalents.

Simple Examples

After a long time studying grammar, we will end this section with example sentences with even more する verbs. Though not part of the exercises, try to figure out which tests these verbs passed to be acceptable.

8. ^{こんばん} 今 ^{よやく} 晩、^{よやく} 予約したスミスです。

I am Smith with a reservation for tonight.

9. ^{にほん} 日本に ^{りゅうがく} 留學します。

I will study abroad in Japan.

10. ^{かいぎ} 会議を ^{きゅうし} 休止する。

To adjourn/pause a meeting.

11. ^あ 会う ^{やくそく} 約束をキャンセルする。

To cancel an appointment.

Practice: Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. We adjourned the meeting.
2. To practice the guitar.
3. He copied the book.
4. I don't study.
5. The athlete swam today.

する Verbs that Just Look Different

Long time ago, する was す. After certain words, it was voiced as ず, which changed to the interchangeable ~じる・ずる that differ only in speech style and conjugation. The tests taught in this lesson still work for these verbs. Only their conjugations are tricky.

～ずる came before ～じる, but the latter is more common. ～ずる is mainly found in literature, but because they do occasionally show up, you at least need to know that you are looking at a form of する and that it has a more modern equivalent, ～じる.

	みぜんけ い	れんようけ い	しゅうしけ い	れんたいけ い	いぜんけ い	めいれいけ い
～じ る	じ-	じ-	じる	じる-	じれ-	じろ・じよ
～ずる	ぜ・じ-	じ-	ず(る)	ずる-	ずれ-	ぜよ

Base Note: Like する, ぜ is used with older endings. So, you don't need to know it now.

Another sound change with する occurs when it attaches to single character Sino-Japanese nouns that end in つ. This つ, then, subsequently contracts to っ. The chart below illustrates the bases of 発^{はっ}する (to emit).

動詞	みぜんけい	れんようけ い	しゅうしけ い	れんたいけ い	いぜんけ い	めいれいけ い
発す る	発し・発せ・発 さ-	発し-	発す(る)	発する-	発すれ-	しろ・せよ

Base Note: し- takes ～ない and the volitional as expected, but さ- can also take ～ない aside from being used with the passive and causative. せ-, is of course used with older endings that you should not worry about at this point. It's just that if you see する verbs in these forms and see that the vowel in the base has changed to an "e", you at least know what base you're looking at. This alone can help you know what the ending is being used for.

More Examples

To emit	発する	To pre- sume	察する	To be- lieve	信 {じる・ず る}
To feel; sense	感 {じる・ず る}	To antici- pate	先ん {じる・ ずる}	To value	重ん {じる・ ずる}
To memo- rize	諳ん {じる・ ずる}				

Word Note: Notice that じる・ずる do not only follow Sino-Japanese words. When following native words, the native root is followed by ん, which then じる・ずる follows.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

われわれ
1. 我々は会議を休止しました。
る。 3. 彼は本をコピーした。

れんしゅう
2. ギターの練習をす

4. (私は) 勉強しない。
た。

せんしゅ きょうすいえい
5. 選手さんは今日水泳しまし

第77課: Pronouns II

Pronouns in Japanese are not easy to use, and it is truly impossible to explain how each may be used. Given that there are endless facets of use to these words, pay attention to what is mentioned. If you take anything as an absolute, you are not giving the material fair justice in interpretation. That's not to say everything is up for grabs. Rather, the fluidity in pronoun usage must be viewed as fluid rather than being defined by strict perimeters.

As a quick grammar note, Japanese pronouns (代名詞) act a lot like regular nouns, and one way we can prove that is simply from the fact that we're talking about so many of them. One thing that you cannot do with them, for instance, is repeat them over and over again in the same sentence. It's not just unnatural to do so, but it results in incorrect Japanese.

1. 私は私の部屋で私のパソコンで私の友達とチャットしていました。X

私は部屋でパソコンで友達とチャットしていました。O

I was talking with my friend with my computer in my room.

The other instances of first person are assumed as defaults unless situation says otherwise, in which case, you should use 自分 instead or some other pronoun other than first pronoun for the other instances for there to be a reason for qualifying. You will learn that although there are especially many first and second person pronouns to choose from, you should try to avoid using them whenever possible.

This is because Japanese is a pro-drop language: it drops such pronouns unless there is a need to emphasize the information these pronouns give. For instance, topicalization, contrast, pointing out things are legitimate reasons to use them. Using them so much in a single assignment because you're trying to make a certain word count and are ignoring proper Japanese grammar is not legitimate.

1st Person Pronouns

わたくし is a respectful pronoun and has been numerously defined by government guidelines as the proper first person pronoun of choice for polite speech and honorifics. However, the less polite but more neutral form わたし has surpassed it in frequency. In 漢字 both are 私. わたくし can sound pompous outside of honorifics. This, though, is due to a flouting of speech styles, not intrinsic in the word itself. Outside of polite speech, わたし sounds slightly feminine. The trend for men using it is going down, and given the business world esteems proper use of honorifics, わたくし can potentially receive more currency. In the working class dialect of Tokyo Bay, you also hear あっし, which ultimately comes from わたくし.

わし is casual and used by men over 50 and by old people in general in some regions. As you can see, it is a contraction of わたし. It is sometimes written in 漢字 as 儂.

あたくし and あたし are feminine* forms but are improper in formal settings. Considering the history of traditional feminine speech, this is somewhat ironic. It is certain, though, that the use of these pronouns in polite contexts makes a woman look less educated, despite how unfair it may seem from the use of a feminine word.

*: It also appears in 下町 speech of Tokyo by both men and women.

あたいは used by rougher women. うち is often used by women in casual and polite settings. The latter is also used in some regions of Japan as a commonplace pronoun by both genders.

Usage Note: First person pronouns are often dropped and assumed in context. Don't overuse them because it can make you sound egotistic. Don't assume that the situations discussed are the only ones. Tone and one's identity can change their implications a lot.

Practice (1):

Determine which first person pronoun the following people will most likely use.

1. A 50 year old man at home.
2. A foreigner visiting Japan.
3. A teacher speaking to her principal.
4. A female speaking to her boyfriend.
5. A woman you see in an alley.

ぼく
僕 is the general pronoun for guys of any age. It is actually used by both genders in song. It may also be used to call for a boy child. 僕, due to its sense of humility, is appropriate in polite speech. おれ
俺 asserts masculinity and おれさま
俺様 is a very pompous variant. おら and おいら are slang , non-vulgar, country-like variants. わがはい
我輩 is old-fashioned and pompous.

Another old-fashioned pronoun is われ
我 . It is normally used in set expressions. The form わ
我が is used in formal situations to mean "our". Ex. "our country" is 我が
国. Finally, ちん
朕 is equivalent to the "royal we" used by the Emperor. Other archaic pronouns can be found in [Lesson 216](#).

Practice (2):

Determine which first person pronoun the following people will most likely use.

1. A boy child in kindergarten.
2. A teenager showing off to his friends.
3. A 20 year old male being incredibly ostentatious.
4. Someone sounding archaic.
5. The Emperor and Empress.

Curriculum Note: We'll study dialectical and classical pronouns much later on.

2. あたしは^{かんごふ}看護婦です。

I am a nurse.

Word Note: ^{かんごし}看護師 is the gender neutral word for nurse.

3. 俺は^{おとこ}男だ。

I am a man.

4. 僕は^{うた}歌う。

I sing.

5. 我輩は^{ねこ}猫である。

I am a cat.

Sentence Note: The sentence above is the title of a famous novel.

6. わしは大阪の^{しゅっしん}出身じゃ。(Old person)

I was born in Osaka.



Phrase Notes: To indicate where you are born, add の出身 or ^う生まれ after the name of your birthplace. "Is" is usually だ in plain speech, but じゃ is commonly used by old people.

2nd Person

"You" is considered **rude** because Japanese people *normally address each other by name or title*. So, instead of "Is this your pen?", you'll hear something like "Is this Kim's pen?". When being polite, attach -さん to the name.

There are a lot of second person pronouns to choose from. The most neutral is あなた. It is direct, so use a name if possible. It can also mean "dear" when used by women to their spouses. あんた is a rude variant in Standard Japanese when talking to someone, but it can be seen in casual situations. There are a lot of dialects in which it is the standard second person pronoun. So, know your listener.

A teacher with 50 kids wouldn't refer to her pupils by name, though. Instead, she would use あなたたち, the plural form of you. However, when you should be polite to an audience, use みなさん (everyone).

きみ
君 is a common casual "you" and it can be used towards subordinates and peers. It is also used by men to their lovers. However, this last usage may not be acceptable by some women. It can be seen by some as belittling while by some as intimate. From guy to guy, it may be seen as rude.

まえ
お前 and おめー are often used in vulgar situations by guys. However, they may still be seen used in just casual situations. They are actually extremely commonly used by men in close company as a general word to use with no such stigma. Things are really different when you know someone personally.

Most other pronouns are **very rude** but with various degrees of practical usage and nuance: てめー (this is from てまえ but the non-contracted form is not used anymore in regular conversation), きさま (貴様), おのれ (originally a first person reflexive pronoun meaning oneself, which is still means in set phrases and such), おぬし (not that common), われ (most people don't use it aside from actual delinquent speech, which was the basis for pop-culture usage such as in movies and manga), etc. You just don't use these rude pronouns to people. They're just like fighting words.

History Note: It's important to note that 貴様 and お前 used to be very honorific terms, and the former stayed slightly honorific up until the early Edo Period. おぬし (お主) also has honorific origin.

Practice (3):

Determine which second person pronoun the following people will most likely use.

1. A person addressing a stranger.
2. A guy getting into a fight addressing his opponent.
3. A guy calling his wife.

7. お前は^ま負ける。

You will lose.

8. あなたに^あ会います。

I'll meet with you.

やまもと
9. 山本さんのペンですか。(P)

Is this your pen Mr. Yamamoto?

10. あんたはずるい。(Casual; rude)

You're sly.

Vocabulary Note: おたく is a second person pronoun that shows light respect towards someone of relatively equal status. It can also mean "nerd" and "someone's house (honorific)".

11. お宅 (、) どちらさん？

Who are you?

12. コンピューターおたく

Computer nerd

13. お名前は何ですか。

What is your name?

Phrasing Note: あなたの名前は何ですか is grammatically possible, but the first is more natural.

Archaism Note: There is an archaic second person pronoun 爾汝 used in the phrase ^{じじょ まじ} 爾汝の交わり, which refers to using words like お前 and きさま mutually with those you are close to. It is not the kind of phrase most people know about. It's just interesting to know.

3rd Person

The third person pronouns in Japanese that you should know are the following. Japanese actually prefers to avoid the words for he and she as they are more frequently used to refer to boyfriend and girlfriend. That does not mean, though, that you won't see them clearly used to mean "he" and "she" as this is extremely common in translated works, of which there are many, and you will still hear the pronoun meanings used in conversation. Circumstances should make the intended meaning obvious.

He	彼	She	彼女	That person	あの人
That man	あの男	That woman	あの女	That person (F)	あの方

Word Note: For "that woman" and "that man", add の人 in formal contexts. Or, you may be inclined to say things like あの男性 (の方) or あの女性 (の方) for man and woman respectively. Japanese also tends to use someones title as a reference if available. So, if "he" is the clerk at the bank and you are referring to him, you should say 銀行員さん instead of 彼.

14. 彼は ^{へん}変な男だ。

He is a weird man.

15. 彼女はばかものだ。(PL)

She is stupid.

16. あの ^{かた}方 は水川さんのお ^{かあ}母 さんです。

That person over there is Mrs. Mizukawa's mother.

17. あの人はだれですか？ (Polite)

Who is that person over there?

なにがし

Although it can be used to refer to an uncertain amount of something (especially for money), this word is usually used as an indefinite, third person pronoun. If it is placed after a specific name, which is very common, it adds uncertainty as to whether the name is correct or not. In this sense, it is like "so-and-so".

18. もう一つの記事はアメリカの話で、東北大学のなにがし博士が、^{まんしゅう}満洲の
^{でいたんそう}泥炭層から、

化石のようになった ^{はす}蓮 の実を発見して、アメリカに送った。

The other article is on America. A certain professor from Tohoku University had discovered a lotus seed from the peat layers of Manchu that almost seemed like it had fossilized and sent it to America.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

Keys

Practice (1)

1. わし
2. わたし
3. わたくし
4. あたし
5. あたい

Practice (2)

1. ぼく
2. おれ
3. おれさま
4. われ
5. ちん

Practice (3)

1. あなた
2. あんた、おまえー、てめー、きさま、われ、etc.
3. きみ

第 78 課 : The Particle だけ

The adverbial particles だけ, しか, and ほか show some sort of limit.

The Adverbial Particle だけ

だけ means "just/only" and shows the extent/limit of something. だけ can also be after **verbs, adjectives, etc** that are in the れんたいけい. So, いやなだけ not いやだけ. This is because it's actually from the noun 丈 (たけ) , which means "length".

Noun + だけ	形容詞 + だけ	形容動詞 + だけ	Verb + だけ
手 + だけ → 手 だけ	ほしい + だけ → ほ しいだけ	好き + だけ → 好 きなだけ	話す + だけ → 話 すだけ

Particle Note: が and を are optional after だけ. Don't put them before it.

1. テストのことを思うだけで^{ふあん}不安になった。

I became uneasy just at the thought of the test.

2. 赤いリンゴだけ五つください。

Please give me five red apples only.

3. 君だけを愛している。

I only love you.

4. 私は英^{えいご}語 だけ（を）勉強します。

I only study English.

5. 人は外^{がいけん}見 だけでは分かりません。

You can't tell a person just by looks.

6. ^{こんかい}今 ^{みのが}回 だけは見 逃 してください。

Please overlook just this one time.

7. ^{ひとり}一 人 だけ {です・います} 。

There is only 1 person.

8. ^もほしいだけ持つ。

To carry just what one wants.

9. 彼は、この前の ^{しゅうまつ}週 ^{せんたく}末 に 洗 濯 だけしたのよ。(Feminine)

He only did the laundry last weekend!

10. 彼女は、この前の週末に ^{そうじ}掃 除 だけしたんだよ。(Masculine)

She only did cleaning last weekend!

だけで (は) なく

だけで { (は) ・じゃ } なく means "not only".

11. ^{ねこ}猫 がいるだけでなく、犬もいます。

Not only are there cats, but there are also dogs.

- 12a. ^{へや}あの部屋は広いだけでなく、とても明るくて美しいです。(ちょっと不自然)

- 12b. あの部屋は広くて明るい。(もっと自然)

That room is not only spacious, but it's also very bright and beautiful.

だけ (のこと) だ

だけ (のこと) だ states that there is nothing more than something. So, it can be translated as "...is no more than". With the inclusion of のこと, the statement is more forceful.

13. かぜ ひ
風邪を引いただけだよ。

I only caught a cold.

14. かいしゃ はさん
会社が破産しただけのことだ。

It's just that the company went bankrupt.

15. 見ているだけです。

I'm just looking.

16. ひざ す む
膝を擦り剥いただけ。

I only grazed my knee.

Speech Level Note: The deletion of だ makes だけ a final particle. It makes the sentence **less blunt**. だけです is perfectly fine for polite speech.

Withこそあど

With これ, それ, あれ, and どれ, だけ translates as "much".

18. べんり
便利なサイトは**これだけ**です。

These are the **only** useful sites.

19. **これだけ**のきっぷ あつ
切符を集めていた。

I've collected **this many** tickets.

20. それだけなの? (A little feminine)

Is that all?

21. その ^{にゅうもんしょ}入門書 は本当に高いが、それだけの^{かち}価値がある。

The beginner's book is really expensive, but it has the worth.

22. どれだけ ^{くる}苦しくても僕は ^{はな}離しはしない。

No matter how hard it is, I won't let go.

Verb + だけ + Verb

だけ shows a limit, and in this expression you make it even more clear that you are not expecting, wanting, or doing any more.

23. このことは両親にも話すだけは話しておいた方がいい。

As for this, it's best that you at the most talk to your parents.

24. やるだけはやったんだから、静かに結果を待ちましょう。

I'll wait quietly for the results since I did what I had to do.

25. 言うだけ言ったらすっきりした。

I feel good now that I've said (what I had to say).

26. まあ聞いただけ聞いてくれ。

Come on, at least listen to what I have to say.

Potential + だけ

With the potential form of the verb, it can be translated in this way as "as much as...".

27. できるだけして。

Do as much as possible.

28. 私は走れるだけ走りました。

I ran as much as I could.

なるべく VS できるだけ

Both mean "if possible/as (much) as possible". なるべく is (somewhat) formal. できるだけ can be followed by の. To use it with なるべく, you have to use the rare なるたけ/なるだけ.

29. なるべくタバコをすうな。

As much as possible/if possible, do not smoke.

Grammar Note: な in the above sentence creates the negative imperative.

30. なるべく^{ごご}午後に来てほしいです。

I would like you to come during the afternoon if possible.

31. できるだけ多くの金が必要^{ひつよう}！

I need as much money as possible!

32. できるだけ早く帰ってください。

Please come home as soon as possible.

ただ

As an adverb, ただ means "just what you're doing". For example, "you're just hoping that you get a good grade in Japanese class". Other synonyms include ^{もっぱ}専ら and ひたすら. Or, it may stress that there's "nothing else" or that there is "merely" something. Other words for this include たった and わずかに.

ただ...だけ means "mere(ly)", but だけ isn't necessary. 専ら ÷ "entirely", so there is no need for だけ. Neither is there a need for it with ひたすら. ほんの僅

か...だけ = "just a few". たった comes from ただ to mean "mere" and is frequently used with だけ.

Examples

33. たった一つ

Just one

34. たった今消えたんだよ。

It disappeared just now!

35. ただいま

I'm home!

Culture Note: Whenever you come home, you say ただいま. People there will respond with お帰り（なさい） "welcome home". The added part makes it polite.

37. もっぱらの ^{うわさ} 噂 だよ。

It's widely rumored.

38. ただの ^{りゆう} 理由 で

With just a mere excuse

39. それは ^{たん ていど もんだい} 単 に 程度 の 問 題 じゃないか？

Isn't that just a problem of degree?

Word Note: 単に means "purely/simply/merely" and is also often used with だけ.

40. 単に ^{しけん の} 私 見 を述べただけだよ。

I merely stated my own opinion.

Word Note: 私の意見では is wrong, but 私見 is OK.

Nuance Note: Simply as in "easily" can be ^{たんじゅん}単純に, 簡単に, 単に, etc. with just slight differences. The first shows a heavy emphasis on simplifying a process down. The second shows more so the easy, and the latter emphasizes on the extent of the matter.

41. 東京までたった 10 キロです。

It's just 10 kilometers to Tokyo.

42. あられがほんのわずか^ふ降っただけだ。(Somewhat written style)

There was only a light amount of hail that fell.

43. ほんの一度だけ

Just one time

Word Note: ほんの is an attributive phrase that means "mere". So, it is often used with particles like だけ and しか (see below). ほんの少し means "just a little". The word gives the sense that there really is nothing else beyond it. It can also be written as 本の.

44. ただの^{かぜ}風邪でしょう。

It's probably just a cold.

Word Note: 風邪 means "cold" but comes from and is pronounced just like 風 (wind).

45 [徒・只]より高いものはない。

Nothing costs more **than** what is given to us.

46. 道はただひとつ。

There is but one way to live.

47. 美はただ ^び かわい ^{まい} ちまい 皮 一 枚 。

Beauty is but skin-deep.

ただでは in a negative sentence means that something serious is to happen.

48. ただではおかないぞ！

You'll pay for this!

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence using だけ.
2. Create a sentence with ただ.
3. Create a sentence with たった.

第79課 : The Particles しか & ほか

These particles are very similar to だけ, but they're syntactically different.

The Particles しか & ほか

しか and ほか are quite odd because the sentence that they are used in must be in the negative for the affirmative. The particle しか can be after nouns, quantifiers such as しか and particle phrases such as those with に, で, and まで. It may also be after nouns. ほか is often after こそあど and may also be after verbs.

In translation, these particles are most often translated as "just/only" after nominal phrases and as "there is no choice but to" after verbal phrases. As for ほか, it strongly limits something. So, in some situations it is not applicable.

Particle Note: The particle に may be deleted before しか!

1. あと たった (の) いっしゅうかん 一 週 間 しかありません。

There's only one week left.

2. セミナーのレポートの締め切りは 明日 だ。徹 夜 するしかない。

The deadline for the seminar report is tomorrow. I have no choice but to work on it all night long.

3. 今日のおやつこれしかないの。(Casual)

Is this all there is for snacks today?

4. 彼はこのほかに なん 何 と言った?

What else did he say?

Grammar Note: You may also use だけ and しか together creating だけしか.
Also, しか may be seen as しきや and っきや in slang.

5. やるっきやないな。

I have no choice but to do it.

6. (事 前 に ・ あらかじめ) ^{じぜん} ^{つた} 伝 えるしかない。

I have no choice but to tell (in advance) .

7. 歩くしかありません。

You have no choice but to just walk.

8a. ローマ字だけ書けます。

I can only write Roman letters.

8b. ローマ字しか書けません。

I can't write anything but Roman letters.

Particle Note: Although だけを is possible and relatively common, the equivalent with しか, をしか, is very literary and doesn't show up that often.

9. 私が目に見える美をしか信じなかった以上、この態度は当然である。

Since I could only believe the beauty that I could see in my eyes, this attitude is natural.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

10. いつしか時が流れた。

Time slid by.

Set Phrase Note: いつしか = いつの間にか知らないうちに. It doesn't need to be used to be with the negative.

ほか Continued

When not with the negative, ほか means "aside from".

11. ^{しゃちょう}社長 ^{ごめい}ほか五名が ^{しゅっせき}出席

Five in attendance aside from the company president.

12. どこかほかを ^{さが}探す。

To search the rest.

13a. ^{べんごし}弁護士は ^{ぶんしょ}文書だけでなく、^{こうとう}口頭でも ^{せつめい}説明してくれた。

13b. 弁護士は文書をもってするほか、口頭でも説明してくれた。

The lawyer explained orally aside from the use of documents.

Table of Contents

第80課: The Particle たり

The particle たり shares the same changes in conjugation with ～た and ～て. Because their conjugations are the same, you know that this is being attached to the 連用形. Even if this term is still elusive to you, the chart below is all you need to figure it out.

	Positive	Negative
Verbs	見る → 見たり	見ない → 見なかったり
	変える → 変えたり	変えない → 変えなかったり
	行く → 行ったり	行かない → 行かなかったり
	書く → 書いたり	書かない → 書かなかったり
	泳ぐ → 泳いだり	泳がない → 泳がなかったり
	話す → 話したり	話さない → 話さなかったり
	待つ → 待ったり	待たない → 待たなかったり
	死ぬ → 死んだり	死なない → 死ななかったり
	呼ぶ → 呼んだり	呼ばない → 呼ばなかったり
	読む → 読んだり	読まない → 読まなかったり
	帰る → 帰ったり	帰らない → 帰らなかったり
Adjectives	新しい → 新しかったり	新しくない → 新しくなかったり
	きれいだ → きれいだった たり	きれいじゃない → きれいじゃなかったり
だ	だ → だったり △	{では・じゃ}ない → {では・じゃ} なかったり △

Contraction Note: Sometimes the the negative form may be simplified to just なかったり. So, you may see ～たり～なかったり.

Grammar Note: The use of たり with the copula used with nouns is a relatively new use of the particle if found as ～だったりだ rather than ～だったりする. So, for many speakers it is grammatical. ～だったりだ is something that is starting to be used by entertainers and the like.

The Conjunctive Particle たり

～ たり is most known for being in the common pattern ～たり～たりする. The pattern usually always ends in する. Sometimes in speaking, the する may get cut off, but its existence is nevertheless implied.

When used with verbs, the pattern shows two actions occurring **back and forth**. Or, with one or more verb or adjective, it shows examples of actions and or states. This pattern can also be used with the negative.

1. 彼女は立ったり座ったりした。

She stood up and down.

2. 「今週は何をしますか」「友達にメールをしたり、本を読んだりします」

"What will you do this week?" "I'll do things like mail my friends and read a book"

3. 月が雲のあいま^{あいま}合^{あひま}間^{かん}に見えたり、かく^{かく}隠^{かく}れたりした。

The moon came in and out of sight in the clouds.

4. 休日はどくしょ^{どくしょ}読^よ書^{しよ}をしたりさんぽ^{さんぽ}散^{さん}歩^ぽをしたりしてすご^{すご}す。

As for holidays, I do thing such as read books or take walks to pass time.

5. 男が泣いたりしてきも^{きも}気持ちが悪いなあ。

It's a little creepy for a man to be crying.

6. 昼食の時間は早かったり遅かったりだ。

Lunch times goes from being early to being late.

7. 近所のお店のコーヒーは日によって濃かったり薄かったりします。

The neighborhood store's coffee goes from being strong to being thin.

8. デパートに行ったり、ゲームをしたりした。

I did things like go to the department store and play games.

9. 掃除（を）したり ^{せんたく}洗濯（を）したりしました。

I was cleaning, doing laundry, etc.

10. 本を読んだりレポートを書いたりしていた。

I was reading books, writing reports, etc.

11. 株を買おうか迷ってるけど、日によって高かったり安かったりでいつ買うべきかよく分からないなあ。

I'm wavering on whether to buy the stock, and because the price is expensive and cheap from day to day, I don't know when I should buy.

Grammar Note: 買おう is the volitional form of 買う.

12. 500 円といっても、人によって高く感じたり安く感じたりする。

Even though it may be 500 yen, it may feel expensive or cheap depending on the person.

13. ガソリンの値段が場所によって高かったり、安かったりするのは何故ですか？

Why is that gas prices are high and low depending on the place?

14. 映画を^み観たり、本を読んだり、^{ひるね}昼寝したりする。

I do things like watch movies, read books, take naps, among other things.

15. 一週間雨が^ふ降ったり^や止んだりしていた。

The rain was intermittent throughout the week.

16. 日によって上手だったり下手だったりするのはプロとは言えない。

Going from awesome to bad makes you not a pro.

17. 日によって絵があったりなかったりします。

There are and aren't paintings depending on the day.

Grammar Note: As you can see, the negative can be used with たり.

漢字 Note: 絵's reading え is actually an 音読み.

18. 高かったり安かったりで ^{あんてい}安^{かかく}定^ししない ^ぐ価^ぐ格

An unsteady price that goes back and forth from high to low

Grammar Note: The sentence above shows how the conjunctive particle たり can be used without ending in する. The copula is often used, and aside from this, when you use する, it can be used in other conjugations like the て形.

19. 暑かったり寒かったりしていた。

It was going from hot to cold.

20. マンションの部屋は広かったり狭かったり {だ・する} 。

The condo rooms were wide and narrow.

Grammar Note: The use of だ injects more emotion whereas the use of する states things in a more objective fashion.

21. クマはおりの中で行ったり来たりしていた。

The bear was walking back and forth in its cage.

22. 女だと思ってよく見たら、男だったりする。

You think the person is a woman, but when you look, the person is a man.

23. 新品と思って買ったら、中古品だったりすることがよくある。

It's often the case that one buys something thinking it's new and finding out it's used.

24. どれも似たり寄ったりだな。(Idiom)

Nothing really stands out.

25. ^{ねが}願 ったり ^{かな}叶 ったりの好条件 (Set Phrase)

Favorable conditions that work out as desired

Grammar Note: You sometimes see ～たり～たりの in set phrases like above.

26. 飲み食い

Eating and drinking

Phrasing Note: The above phrase is an example of nominal phrases from verbs having similar meaning to ～たり. If 飲み食いする were paraphrased, you would get either 食べたり飲んだりする or 飲んだり食べたりする. Note that "drinking and eating" is far less frequent than "eating and drinking" in English, but in Japanese no such ordering other than in 飲み食い can be attested. But, for other pairings of verbs, certain orders may be expected, and they may not all be the same as in English. So, pay attention.

Practice: Translate the following in polite speech. You may use a dictionary.

1. To be in and out of bed.
2. He didn't stand up and down.
3. To go back and forth from crying and laughing.
4. To be crying and laughing.
5. To raise one's legs up and down.

27. 静奈は再び、息苦しくなるほどの胸の高鳴りを覚えた。男性からプロポーズの気配を感じ取ったことは何度もある。いつも、**してやったり**という気分になったものだ。だが今

日は違う。ただ心が乱れるだけだ。

Shizuna's chest had a choke hold on her again. She has sensed men wanting to propose to her many times, and she always felt satisfied with things going as planned. Today, though, was different. Now, her heart was just in disarray.

From 流星の絆 by 東野圭吾.

Phrase Note: This example is set aside to show a たり that is not the たり discussed in this lesson. The たり seen in this lesson ultimately does stem from the one in this example from an ending that primarily showed completed action, which is how it is being used here. This latter meaning, though, has been taken over by the shorter form ～た. Yes, ～たり and ～た are related to each other. たり was either the 連用形 or 終止形. What we call the particle comes from the former and the latter correspondences to what is found in this example. As the translation suggests, the set phrase してやったり indicates something has successfully gone one's way.

～ては... (～ては)

This grammar point is very similar to using the particle たり. Here, て is repeated with the emphatic は to show a repetition of an action in a series. Whether this series has multiple parts is determined by the situation.

28. 書いては消し、書いては消し、なんとかレポートを書き上げた。

I wrote and erased, wrote and erased in writing up the report.

29. 走っては休み、走っては休み、進み続けた。

From running to resting, I continued forward.

30. 壊れては直し、壊れては直し、とうとう作品を作り上げた。

I finally completed the work after constantly falling through and fixing things.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. 起きたり寝たりする。
2. 彼は立ったり座ったりしなかった。
3. 泣いたり笑ったりする。
4. 泣いたり笑ったりする。
5. 足を上げたり下げたりする。

第81課: Interrogatives II: How

This lesson is all about how to address the word “how” in Japanese. It requires that you know a little bit about *こそあど* and the particles *か* and *でも* as related phrases are created with the “how” words to be taught in this lesson. The reason for why “how” was not taught in the first lesson on interrogatives is that a lot more information is involved. Now, it is time to tackle the challenge of expressing “how” in Japanese!

～方: The Non-Interrogative "How"

How to express “how” in Japanese is extremely difficult. For one, how in English doesn’t necessarily have to be used as an interrogative. The how in “how to express” describes means/way of doing something. In Japanese, this is expressed with the suffix *～方* attaching to the *連用形* of verbs.

1. 誰か、^{でんせつ}伝説のポケモンの^{つか}捕まえ方を教えてくださいませんか。

Could someone please teach me how to catch legendary Pokemon?

2. どんな言い方をされても^た絶えるしかない？

No matter what expression is used at me, is there nothing else than to endure?

3. 生き方を変えたい。

I want to change my way of living.

4. 本当の自分の知り方を教えていただきました。

I was taught how to understand my true self.

5. 不完全な死に方をすると、不完全な^{れい}霊になってしまいますよ。

If you die an imperfect death, you become an imperfect spirit.

6. ^{しょくえんすい}食塩水と砂糖水の凍り方を比べてみましょう。

Let's compare the way to freeze saline solutions and sugar water.

7. 鉄の^と溶かし方を教えてください。

Please teach me how to melt steel?

8. ^ぬ縫い方が難しいの？

Is the sewing technique difficult?

9. 村のおじさんに簡単にできる人の^{のろ}呪い方を教えてもらったんだぞ。

I had an old village man teach me how to easily curse people.

10. 山田先生は今日、^{ほにゅうどうぶつ}哺乳動物の産み方について講座をした。

Yamada Sensei lectured today about the way mammals give birth.

どう & Related Items

どう and どのように are used to mean “how” as in regards to action. However, the two words are not the same when it comes to politeness. どう is typically more casual, and when it is used in polite speech, it still has a somewhat casual feel to it. どのように, on the other hand, is more formal and is expected in more polite contexts as well as in written documents.

11. この^{じょうきょう}状況をどのように^{くつがえ}覆すことができるのでしょうか。

How can we overturn this condition?

12. どのようにすればいいのでしょうか。

How should we go about doing it?

13. どのように新しい世界を ^{かいたく}開拓されてきたのか、お聞きしました。 (Humble speech)

I asked how a new world has been pioneered.

14. その印象はどのように感じますか。

How do you feel about the impression?

どう may also simply describe an uncertain state. A politer form would be いかが. For instance, ～はどうですか meaning “how is…?” is more politely as ～はいかがですか. To further make it more polite, you can replace ～ですか with ～でしょうか as です is often too abrupt for truly polite/honorific utterances. Of course, when the situation does not call for such measures, ～でしょうか would be taken the opposite way.

15. 「仕事はどうですか」「私は ^{じえいぎょう}自営業です」

How is your work?” I am self-employed”

16. お天気はどうですか。

How is the weather?

17. 日本をどう思いますか。

What do you think about Japan?

18. ^{かんとんご}広東語のクラスはどうですか。

How is your Cantonese class?

19. 皆様いかがお過ごしですか。 (Honorific)

How is everyone fairing?

どうか, the combination of どう and the particle か, either means どうぞ (which is ultimately also a combination of どう with the particle ぞ) in the sense of pleading or なんとか. Do not confuse this with かどうか. In かどうか, the か is used to mark the end of a question clause inside a larger sentence.

20. {どうか・なんとか} なるさ。

We'll manage somehow.

21. そのことはどうかしなければなりません。

We have to do something about it.

22. この頃彼女はどうかしてるね。

Something's been wrong with her lately.

23. どうか許してください。

Please forgive me.

24. 頭がどうかなってしまいそうだ。

My head feels like it's going crazy.

どんな風に・どういう風に

どんな ^{ふう}風 に and どういう ^{ふう}風 に are similar words meaning "how". Both are used to describe how things are done in regards to manner/style. The first is more casual while the latter is more polite/formal. 風 is read as ふう when used to mean method; manner; way; style; appearance etc.

25. いまびはどういう風に作られているのですか。

How has IMABI been being made?

26. どんな風に生きれば幸せになれるんだろう。

I wonder what way one would live to be able to become happy.

27. 毎日をどんな風に過ごしてるのか。

How are you living every day?

28. どんな ^{ふう}風に見えますか。

How do I look?

29. どんな風に天（国）に導かれるのでしょうか？

How is one led to heaven?

30. 日本語は外国人にどんな風に聞こえているのでしょうか。

How does Japanese sound to foreigners?

どうやって

どうやって is another word for “how” often used in asking how something is done. This makes it especially useful in asking for directions and how things work. Even so, どう and どのように may also be used in the same way.

31. ここからどうやって駅に行けばいいのか全く分からないんですよ。

I have no idea how to get to the train station from here.

32. どうやって ^{おうぼ}応募したらいいですか？

How should I apply?

33. どうやって英語を勉強すればいいの？

How should I study English?

34. どう作りますか。

How do you make it?

35. ^{しんらい}信頼はどのように作りますか。

How does one build trust?

How Much

Degree: どれくらい・どれぐらい・どのくらい・どのぐらい

“How” as in “how much” in degree is expressed with either どれくらい, どれぐらい, どのくらい, or どのぐらい. There is almost no difference in meaning or nuance. However, the variants are listed from most to least common. This is not to insinuate any one of them is not used a lot because they all are.

36. 日本にどれくらい滞在するつもりですか。

How long do you plan to reside in Japan?

37. どれくらいの^{ひんど}頻度で運動したら^{こうか}効果を期待できるのでしょうか。

How often should one exercise and expect to see effects?

38. 宇宙はどのくらい広いの？

How wide is the universe?

39. 理想の彼氏の^{しんちょう}身長ってどれくらい？

How tall is your ideal boyfriend?

40. リスクはどのくらい高いのか。

How high is the risk?

41. どれくらいの頻度でトイレに行くの？

How often do you go to the bathroom?

42. 愛ちゃんの耳がどのくらい赤くなっているのかが気がかりだ。

How red Ai-chan's ears have gotten is a big worry.

“How much” as in money or quantity is expressed with **いくら**. However, **何** **ぼ** is used in a large part of the country as well, primarily in West Japan. **いくら** may be rarely written in 漢字 as 幾ら since it is simply 幾 plus the suffix ら. Before seeing the examples, it’s almost important to consider the meanings of **いくらか**, **いくらも**, and **いくらでも**.

- **いくらか**: Equivalent to 幾分か and 少し. It may also be used in the same sense as 多少 when used as an adverb. Whereas **いくらか** can be used for degree and quantity, **いくぶんか** must only be used for quantity.
- **いくらも**: Shows a very large degree. With the negative, it is equivalent to ほとんど.
- **いくらでも**: This may be equivalent to どれほどでも and can be used to exaggerate the amount of something. Whereas **いくらでも** works for quantity and price, **どれほどでも** only works for degree. With **ない**, it’s just like **いくらも** showing that the degree/amount is not as large as one thought. With **いい**, it means “any amount is fine”.

43. 出来れば、アメリカ人に、いくら払うとかどんな場所でチップを期待されているのかについて、聞いたほうがいいですよ。

If you can, it would be best to ask an American on how much and in what places it is expected of you to tip.

44. ^{たいじゅう}体 重 はいくらですか。

What is your weight?

45. ^{こおり おんど}氷 の 温 度 はいくらですか。

How hot is the ice?

46. 例はいくらもあるね。

There are tons of examples, you know.

47. お金がいくらでも使える。

I can use as much money as I want.

48a. 立派な品をどれほどでも買おう！

48b. 立派な品をいくらでも買おう！

I'll buy splendid items no matter how much (there are).

Sentence Note: 48a can only refer to quantity of what is being bought. 48b would usually be interpreted as referring to price, but it is ambiguous enough to refer to quantity as well.

49. うんちん
運賃はいくらですか。

How much is the fare?

50. インドの人口はいくらでしょうか。

What is the population of India?

51. 値段はいくらでもいいから、売ってくれ。

The price is no problem, so sell it (to me)!

52. ていじ がく
提示する額はいくらですか？

How much is your offering price?

54. その車はいくらしましたか。

How much did you give the car for?

55. いくらでもいいから、金を貸してくれ。

Just give me money! I don't care how much.

56. あのラジオはいくらですか。

How much is that radio?

57. いくら^{つか} 疲^{つか} れている。

I'm a little tired.

58. 在^{ざいこ} 庫^こ はいくらも 残^{のこ} っていない。

Almost nothing remains in the stockpile.

59. 「今^{きょう} 日^{いち} 一^{なん} ドルは 何^{えん} 円^{かわせ} ですか」 「為^{かわ} 替^せ レートはいくらか分かりません」

"How many yen is one dollar today?" "I don't know how much the exchange rate is".

60. 「日本からアメリカまでいくらぐらいかかりますか」 「旅^{りょ} 行^{こう} 費^ひ はいくらか分かりません」

"About how much is it from Japan to America?" "I don't know how much the travel costs are".

何ぼ

何^{なん} ぼ^ぼ can be used for not only price but also quantity in general. This 関西弁 is very helpful for when you are in places like 大阪 and 京都.

61. これ、ちょっと何^{なん} ぼ^ぼ ?

How much is this?

62. このリンゴ何^{なん} ぼ^ぼ ?

How much is this apple/are these apples?

いくつ

“How many” as in age or counting things is いくつ. However, this is a generic word. So, for counter phrases, you must use the pattern 何+counter. 幾-is sometimes seen instead of 何- in native phrases in literary contexts, but because it’s rather old-fashioned, you don’t have to really worry about it.

As you should expect, いくつか means “a few”. It may be used as a noun or adverb. Regardless of its syntactic role, it is always in reference to 数. いくつも is on either end of the spectrum, being able to express large and hardly any amount depending on whether the sentence is positive or negative.

63. おいくつですか。

How old are you?

64. にじいろ 虹 には 色 がいくつありますか。

How many colors does a rainbow have?

65. あのクラスには何人いますか。

How many people do you have in this class?

66. きょうつうてん 共 通 点 がいくつがある。

To have some points in common.

67. 選択肢はいくつも残っていない。

There's absolute no option left.

68. 幾世にも渡って受け継がれてきたものです。

It has been passed down for generations.

69. 指サイズはいくつ？

What's your finger size?

Literally: How much is your finger size?

Word Note: いくら, although it means "how much", is not used here because

"finger size" is not deemed as something of quantity. If you akin finger size to age, the logic behind this may be clearer.

Table of Contents

第82課: Interrogatives III: With Particles

We've seen the basic interrogatives, the many ways to say how, and other phrases involving this thing. Aside from how, though, we have not seen how they used with particles.

With か & も

When a 疑問詞 is followed by the particles か or も, you get expressions for "some..." and "all..." respectively. The expressions with も have positive and negative definitions.

	+ か	+ も
だれ・どなた	Someone	Either/Everyone/Neither/Nobody
なに	Something	Everything/Nothing
なぜ	Somehow	X
どうして	X	By any means
いつ	Sometime	Always
どこ・どちら	Somewhere	Everywhere/Nowhere
どれ	Every (one/thing)	Anything/none
どう	Somehow or another	Much

か makes the "some". When も follows these words, it gives a meaning of "all". In a negative expression, it does the complete opposite. 何も is almost always used with the negative, but it is positive in 何もかも and 何も^{すべて}全^てて.

Part of Speech Note: These words are either used as nouns or adverbs. Remember that these words are no longer interrogatives.

Examples

1. 仕事も何もかも忘れて、^{きゅうか たの}休 暇 を 楽 しんだ。

I forgot about work and everything, and I enjoyed a vacation.

Grammar Note: To say "nobody's", use "誰の X も". 誰の車も = "nobody's car".

"Someone's car" = 誰かの車. 誰か is an indefinite pronoun. For always, いつもの is right.

2. 彼らの住んでいる^{ところ} 所 はどこも ^{かいどうすじ}街 道 筋 に近い。

Wherever they are living, it is close to the highway.

3. 誰かがおいしいクッキーを全部食べた。

Somebody ate all of the delicious cookies!

4. いつも何を考えているのですか。

What are you always thinking about?

5. 彼は本当にいつも ^{しんせつ}親 切 です。

He is really always kind.

6. あいつはいつも ^{ぐち こぼ}愚痴を 零 してる。

That guy is always complaining.

Meaning Note: 愚痴を零す is a set phrase meaning "to complain". Also note that the character 零 is hardly ever used.

7. ^{はんにん}犯 人 をどこかで見たか。

Did you see the criminal somewhere?

8. いつか ^{りゅうがく} 留 学 する。

To some day study abroad.

Word Note: The following is **wrong**: 日本の大学で留学する. 留学する is used with に. So, 日本に留学する is correct. 日本の大学で勉強する is correct, though.

9. 誰もが彼の ^{しょうさい} 商 才 ^{みと} を 認 めている。

Everyone recognizes his business ability.

10. 私の英語の ^{こうざ} 講 座 はどれも ^{ぶんぽう} 文 法 ^{あつか} を 扱 った。

Every one of my English courses dealt with grammar.

11. あなたのコンピューターはどこも悪くありません。

There's nothing wrong anywhere with your computer.

12. 食べ物が何も無い。

I have nothing to eat.

13. 彼女は何も ^{こた} 答 えませんでした。

She answered nothing.

14. アクセルに何かおかしいところがあります。

There's something wrong with the accelerator.

15. 今日の彼はどうかしている。

He's not himself today.

16. ^{いろいろ} 色 々 どうもありがとうございます。

Thank you very much for everything.

17. ^{きのう} 昨 日 はどうも。

Thanks for yesterday.

18. 今日は魚がどうも食^くわない。

The fish won't bite for some reason today.

19. 何かの拍^{ひょうし}子でケイタイを落としたんです。

By some chance, I dropped my cellphone.

20. 何か^{しゅみ}趣味はありますか。

Do you have **any** hobbies?

21. 彼らはワープロにいつも手^やを焼いている。

They're always having trouble with their processor.

Phrase Note: 手を焼く is a set phrase similar to "not know what to do/be at a loss with; to be put out".

With でも・ても

When an interrogative is followed by でも, it creates an "any" indefinite pronoun. These phrases are only used as adverbs. So, you can't follow them with particles like が.

なん	+ でも	Anything
だれ・どなた	+ でも	Anybody/anyone
いつ	+ でも	Anytime
どこ・どちら	+ でも	Anywhere
どれ	+ でも	Anything (out of many)

22. いつでもいい。

Anytime is OK.

23. この棚の^{たな}商^{しょう}品^{ひん}は**どれでも**千円です。

Whichever item on this shelf is 1,000 yen.

24. **どこでも**好きなところへ行く。

I will go **anywhere** I like.

25. 論^{ろん}評^{ぴょう}の結果^{けっか}は**いつでも**悪いことだ。

The effect of criticism is **always** a bad thing.

26. 彼は^{なん}何^{こう}でも^{もの}高^{この}価^かな物を好む。

He likes **anything** expensive.

Word Note: 好む is similar to "to prefer".

Interrogative + ~ても

When a question word is used with ても, it creates a "no matter..." statement.

27. 阿^あ蘇^そ山^{さん}は**いつ見ても**きれいですね。

Mount Aso is beautiful **no matter when** you see it, isn't it?

28. 僕は**何を食べても**、太らない。

No matter what I eat, I don't get fat.

29. **どこに行っても**僕は君の^{そば}側^{そば}にいるよ。

No matter where you go, I will be by your side.

30. 誰^かの 鍵 がドアを開けても、僕がいるから君はこの部屋に 安^{あん}全^{ぜん}だよ。

No matter whose key opens the door, you are safe in this room because I'm here.

31. 何度見ても面白いです。

No matter how many times I see it, it's funny.

Table of Contents

第83課: The Particle の II

This lesson will be able two interesting usages of の. The first will be about its unique role in attribute clauses in which it is sometimes interchangeable with が. We will then learn how の can even be used like a noun!

In Attribute Clauses

の may be used to mark the thing or person carrying out an action that is the attribute of something. In other words, it may replace が. This is only seen in attributive expressions.

1. 雪の降る夜

A snowy night

2. 書類の入ったかばんは？

(What about) the bag with the documents?

3. 本当も本当、^{うそ}嘘^{いつわ} 偽りのない話だよ。

It's really really true, it's a story without any lies.

Particle Note: Sometimes の is required when there is still a sense of possession. This is the case for Exs. 4 and 5.

4. 公園で子供の遊んでいる声が聞こえる。

I can hear the voices of kids playing in the park.

5. 地面の緩い状態が続いています。

The ground's instability continues.

Grammar Note: What would translate into in English as a participle in Japanese usually allows the use of either が or を in an attribute clause, and it does not appear that length has much to do with unless it is excessively long, in which case が could be obligatory. One case, though, in which が is clearly obligatory is when a dummy noun is used to attach to another wise independent clause for whatever reason. Think of patterns involving こと. You can't say ～X の Y ことができる. [] brackets enclose attribute phrases. The nouns they modify will be right outside the right bracket.

6. [[北部の人口の少ない] 自治体など作業が完了した] ところから [順に開票結果が発表される] 見通しです。

With the northern municipalities with little population completing operation, voting results are planned to be announced one by one.

From NHK on September 9, 2014.

7. 独立への賛成が反対を上回れば、投票率に関係なく、[スコットランドのイギリスからの独立が決まる] ことになり、イギリスの公共放送 BBC は終夜、開票速報番組を放送するなど、関心の高さを示しています。

From NHK on September 9, 2014.

In disregard to voter turnout, if supporters for independence surpass the opposition, the decision for whether Scotland receives independence from England is made, and the British public broadcasting network BBC is showing its heightened interest in the matter by airing a voting result program all night.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. A mother that likes video games.
2. A rainy day.
3. Her pencil.
4. Apartment in New York.

The Nominalizer の

It may also be used as a nominalizer. 読むのが好きだ = I like reading; の makes 読む a noun. This usage of の is very interesting grammatically as it is treated like a dummy noun. So, it may be best to not think of it as a particle in this context.

8. 私は泳ぐのが好きです。

I like to swim/I like swimming.

9. 私は歌うのが好きではありません。

I don't like to sing.

10. それを買うのはだめだ。

Buying that is useless.

Practice (2): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. I don't like movies.
2. I don't like to go to the movie theater.
3. The blue one.

One

の can be used to make indefinite pronouns by nominalizes things. With things other than the non-past form a verb, the result of の-nominalization is an indefinite pronoun. An indefinite pronoun has the same properties as a noun. So, although we're using a particle to make it, other particles may follow including の.

Now, the doubling of particles is usually unnatural. However, it is sometimes inevitable.

11. 私が買ったの

The one I bought

12. あれは緑色のです。

That over there is a green one.

13. この ^{かさ} 傘 はだれのですか。

Whose umbrella is this?

14. どっちの本が ^{ぼく} 僕 のですか。

Which book is mine?

15. 刺身は {新しい・新 ^{しんせん} 鮮 な} のがおいしい。

As for sashimi, fresh ones are delicious.

Grammar Note: If you were to have something nominalized with の and then made possessive, you get two の in a row.

16. 白っぽいものの二種類がある。

They have two kinds of the whitish ones.

17. 足が臭いのを治す方法を教えてくださいませんか。

Could you tell me of ways to fix my feet from stinking?

18. 死んだのが馬鹿だったということは間違いない。

There is no doubt that the one who died was an idiot.

Keys

Practice (1)

1. ビデオゲームの好きな ^{ははおや} 母 親 。
2. 雨の降る日; 雨降りの日。
3. 彼女の ^{えんぴつ} 鉛 筆 。
4. ニューヨークのアパート。

Practice (2)

1. ^{えいが} 映 画 が好きじゃない。
2. ^{えいがかん} 映 画 館 に行くのが好きじゃない。
3. 青

This lesson will finish our coverage on the most fundamental uses of the particle で. They are really different from the one's you've already learned. So, try not to confuse them with each other! This lesson will conclude with an exercise that will challenge you to use all your knowledge of the combined four uses covered in this lesson and the previous lesson on で.

The Particle で Continued

1. で shows the basis of an action/event not of one's volition--"due to". It's used with nouns that indicate things such as natural phenomena, events, illnesses, etc. The verb should not show any will of someone. This is because nothing and no one can cause natural phenomena.

1. 彼は^{しんふぜん}心不全で死んだ。

He died due to heart failure.

2. 被害者は^{ひがいしゃ しゅっけつたりょう}出血多量で死にました。

The victim died from loss of blood.

3. その火事は^{かじ}マッチでの^{ひあそ}火遊びが^{げんいん}原因^おで起こりました。

The fire was caused by playing with matches.

4. 武士は^{ぶし けが}怪我で死んだ。

The warrior died from his wounds.

5. 学校はクリスマスで休みになりました。

The school has closed for Christmas/the holidays.

6. 寒さで^{ふる}震える。

To shake from the cold.

7. 私は宿題で忙しいです。

I'm busy with homework.

8. よろこ びで われ 我 を忘れました。

I forgot myself from joy.

Pronoun Note: 我 is used here like a set phrase. Normally, you just don't get to use 我 whenever you want.

9. 悲しい気持ちでいっぱいです。○/△

I'm filled with sad emotions.

Naturalness Note: Not all speakers like this phrase, but ○○（という）気持ちでいっぱい is becoming very common these days. Speakers who find this phrase unnatural would replace it with something like 悲しいです or とても悲しく思っています.

2. で shows an extent which may create juncture. Juncture deals with a point in time or place. However, it is not definite in nature as the particle に. This does not mean phrases like 一秒で are impossible. The purpose of に is to show exact time. Think of the difference as "The ice fully melted in 3 hours, 4 minutes, and 32 seconds" vs "The ice fully melted in three hours". Juncture could also be used to show at what point something happens. The vagueness of this comment is on purpose. For instance, you'd use で to show at what temperature something boils or melts.

Translation isn't really important to focus on, but it usually translates to "at" or "for". As for other specific instances this で can be used in, it can show summation, which helps with stating prices like in Ex. 15 (this sentence would be said by say a person who knows you rather than a clerk).

Examples

10. ^{せかい}世界で一番高い山はエベレストです。

The tallest mountain in the world is Mount Everest.

11. 母は^{はたち}二十歳で^{けっこん}結婚した。

My mother got married at age 20.

12. 明日でお^{わか}別れた。

I leave you tomorrow.

13. 自分で考えてください。

Please think for yourself.

14. チームで^{たんとう}担当^すするのが好きじゃない。

I don't like managing with the team.

15. ^{ぜんぶ}全部で500円ですよ。

It's 500 yen with everything.

16. 10時で^{へいてん}閉店です。

We will close at 10.

17a. 彼は百歳で^な亡くなりました。

17b. 彼は^{きょうねん}享年^{さい}100歳でした。

He passed away at 100 years old.

18. 水は0℃で凍^どこお^{こお}る。

Water freezes at 0℃.

19. 一秒で分かった！

I found out in a second!

Practice: Translate the following. If it's in English translate it into Japanese (polite speech). If it's in Japanese, translate it in English.

1. In a week it becomes summer vacation.

2. あなたの^{とけい}時計では何時ですか。

3. You make butter with milk.

4. その本を3千円で買いました。

5. ガラスで指を切る。

6. 2つで500円です。

7. Can you do it in 20 minutes?

8. 学校に自転車^{かよ}で通う。

9. He broke it due to carelessness.

10. Please write in pen.

11. 10時になった。

12. To end with sadness.

13. 雨で^{ちゅうし}中止になりました。

14. 雪でバスが来ませんでした。

15. I went by myself.

The Conjunction で

The conjunction で comes from the contraction of それで and utilizes usage 4 from above from the sense of juncture (connecting sentences) in a sense related to reasoning. This makes it very similar to the particle ので, which may also

be found starting a sentence in *なので*. The use of *なので* in this manner is relatively new, and a lot of people think it is wrong. So, keep this in mind as well.

However, unlike *で*, the speaker is not intending on simply responding and or trying to change the topic. *なので* is "so" as in "so, this happened" because of what is stated before it.

20. *で、君は大丈夫だいじょうぶ？*

So, are you alright?

21. *みな ほうあん どうい せいじか だいあん だ*
皆 その 法 案 に 同 意 しませんでした。なので、政 治 家 は 代 案 を 出 しまし
た。

Everyone didn't agree to the bill. So, the politicians proposed an alternative plan.

22. *で、どうなったん(っ)すか。(Colloquial)*

So, what happened?

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. 後一週間あといっしゅうかんで夏休みになります。
2. What's the time on your watch?
3. バターはミルクで作ります。
4. I bought that book for 3,000 yen.
5. To cut a finger on glass.

6. It is 500 yen for two.

7. 20分ぶんでできますか。

8. I commute to school by bicycle.

9. 彼は不注意ふちゅういでそれを壊こわしました。

10. ペンで書いてください。

11. It became 10 o' clock.

12. 悲しみに終わる。

Note: Remember that the predicate function is the 終止形. -ます would change the definition.

13. It was postponed due to the rain.

14. The bus didn't come due to (the) snow.

15. 一人で行きました。

第85課: Numbers III: The Two Kinds of Numbers

Knowing which way to read a number in Japanese in any given situation is very complex. It is not simply a matching game with Sino-Japanese and native words together. Although Japanese may have been this way in the past, this is far from reality today.

数詞の系列 Series of Numbers

The etymology of Japanese numbers is not that difficult to figure out. Numbers either come from Chinese (Sino-Japanese numbers) or Japanese (native numbers were).

漢語の数詞	いち, に, さん, し, ご, ろく, しち, はち, く・きゅう, じゅう
和語の数詞	ひと, ふた, み, よ, いつ, む, なな, や, ここの, とお

In limited situations, English numbers also appear (ワン, ツー, スリー, フォー, Etc.).

Although there are clearly two kinds of numbers, from a grammatical standpoint, the native numbers 4 and 7 are treated as Sino-Japanese numbers. When we think of the numbers in series, we get the following sets.

漢語系列の数詞	いち, に, さん, し・よ・よん, ご, ろく, しち・なな, はち, く・きゅう, じゅう
和語系列の数詞	ひと, ふた, み, よ, いつ, む, なな, や, ここの, とお

The native number series is not really used after 10. Higher native numbers are essentially limited to set phrases such as はたち, はつか, and おおみそか. This also applies to the indefinite 幾, which is largely replaced by 何.

Basic Numbers

So, as review, we'll see what the combinations of 1-9 + these units 10 and above look like. Take note of numbers that undergo sound change.

	十	百	千	万	億	兆
一	じゅう	ひゃく	せん	いちまん	いちおく	いっちょう
二	にじゅう	にひゃく	にせん	にまん	におく	にちょう
三	さんじゅう	さんびゃく	さんぜん	さんまん	さんおく	さんちょう
四	よんじゅう	よんひゃく	よんせん	よんまん	よんおく	よんちょう
五	ごじゅう	ごひゃく	ごせん	ごまん	ごおく	ごちょう
六	ろくじゅう	ろっぴゃく	ろくせん	ろくまん	ろくおく	ろくちょう
七	ななじゅう	ななひゃく	ななせん	ななまん	ななおく	ななちょう
八	はちじゅう	はっぴゃく	はっせん	はちまん	はちおく	はっちょう
九	きゅうじゅう	きゅうひゃく	きゅうせん	きゅうまん	きゅうおく	きゅうちょう
何	なんじゅう	なんびゃく	なんぜん	なんまん	なんおく	なんちょう

Contraction Note: じゅう → じゅっ is most common, but じっ is the traditional form.

Obligatory Initial 1 for Larger Units

As a general rule, the Sino-Japanese series numbers 10 and above—じゅう, ひゃく, せん, まん, おく, ちょう—are used with 1-9 preceding them. However, 1 does not usually precede じゅう, ひゃく, or せん. いっせん gets used in situations such as accounting and obligatorily used in larger numbers such as 11,000, which would be いちまんいっせん. 1 is usually obligatory with 万. About no more than 20% of Japanese speakers actually do drop initial 1 in large numbers when with

千 or 万, but they are the minority. As one would expect, there are set phrases such as 万が一 in which initial 1 is not used.

Same Sound Changes but in Bigger Numbers

When you have something like 八千億, the sound change in 八千 still happens. So, it's はっせんおく. So, remember this for the other numbers with sound changes. Also, though いっせん itself is not really used, it is in いっせんまん (10,000,000), いっせんおく (100,000,000,000), いっせんちょう (10^{15}).

4, 7, and 9

し, しち, and < heavily restricted. They must not be used preceding these units. These numbers in larger numbers are limited to set phrases such as 四百四病の外 (= 恋の病) and 九十九里. Exceptionally, in stating one's age without a counter, using し (4) or しじゅう (40) is not wrong but highly unlikely.

Quite Exceptional Readings

It is important to note that in set phrases, 2, 3, and 6 may take on more archaic/older readings. For instance, 二郎 = じろう, 三郎 = さぶろう, 六書 = りくしよ.

Of course, these are not going to be the only completely exceptional readings of numbers that you will find in Japanese. Just keep the look out for them.

Counting Thing without Counters

When counting out things without counters, you can choose between the Sino-Japanese and the native series. However, there is this principal that each number should be two morae. For those that are longer or more complicated, their forms may be simplified. And, for those that are just one mora, they get lengthened to become two morae.

漢語系列の数詞	いち, にー, さん, しー・よん, ごー, ろく, しち・なな, はち, くー・きゅう, じゅう
---------	---

しー is used by most people for 4. The majority of people use しち for 7, but there are a lot of people, particularly younger people who use なな. The majority of people use きゅう for 9.

和語系列の数詞	ひー, ふー, みー, よー, いつ・いー, むー, なな・なー, やー, ここのつ・ここの・ここ・この・こー, とお
---------	---

Most people would use いつ for 5. Most would use なな for 7, but a decent minority use なー. For 9, ここのつ is used by a majority of people, but ここの comes at a decent second with the other options trailing in use with この used by hardly no one. After 10, things revert back to normal with the Sino-Japanese series.

Particular Prefix and Suffix Interactions with Sino-Japanese Numbers

数 and 半 agree with Sino-Japanese numbers, but the latter is restricted semantically such that one can say something like 半時間 but not 半百. However, you can say things like 3冊半 (three and a half books). When used with 半, 年 must be read as とし instead of ねん. In speaking of 半, half of 一か月 is actually 半月. Very few people say 半ヶ月. 一か月半 (month and a half) exists without any

problems. Though not as common for month and a half, there is also ^{ひとつき}一ヶ月
^{はん}半 .

余・余り

Where to put things in a counter phrase can be tricky. For instance, 余 and 余り both mean “over than” with counter phrases, but word ordering is different depending on which one you use.

1a. ^{じゅうよさつ}十 余 冊

1b. ^{あまり}十冊 余 り

However, you can also see 余 before the counter when the particle の is used.

2a. ^{さんかしゃ}参 加 者 など ^{よにん}30 余 人

2b. ^{にんよ}30 人 余 の参加者

Usage Note: あまり historically was also used with native numbers to extend the system past 10, but this is no longer used today.

第86課: Numbers IV: Looking Closely at 四, 七, & 九

How to read 4, 7, and 9 causes headaches for many learners. It's easy to know that they are usually read as よん, なな, and きゅう respectively. Yet, although し, しち, and く are heavily restricted, they are still used. So, when are they used?

し, しち, and く are not used with larger number units in the initial position. These numbers in larger numbers are limited to set phrases such as 四百四病の外 (= 恋の病) and 九十九里. Exceptionally, in stating one's age without a counter, using し (4) or しじゅう (40) is not wrong but highly unlikely. Although it is true that Sino-Japanese numbers are widely preferred in counter phrases, 4 and 7 are exceptional.

4

Consider 4 枚 as a great example of reading trouble. Usually it is read as よんまい and never しまい, but the reading よまい and しまい exist in the set phrase 四枚肩 (a palanquin usually carried by two people being carried by four people). It may be read as either しまいがた or よまいがた. This example shows us that we must look at 4 on an individual basis.

Aside from the situations し is acceptable and or expected, there are many important phrases it obligatorily shows up in. As examples, consider ^{しかく}四角 (square), ^{しき}四季 (the four seasons), 四国 (Shikoku), and ^{してんのう}四天王 (the big four/the Four Heavenly Kings).

So, when you don't use し, よん and よ are your next two options. よん is overwhelmingly used, and as we've seen よ is preferred particularly in set phrases such as ^{よだんかつよう}四段活用 (old name for 5 段 verbs in Classical Japanese which had four vowels in the bases rather than five). Nevertheless, there are counters such as 人, 時, 時間, 度 (degrees) and 円 (yen) that require よ. Require,

though, is not the best word as there are speakers who do say よんえん. Again, aside from set phrases, you don't use し with counters.

Let's consider more instances of various and not so various readings of 四.

40 過ぎ is usually よんじゅうすぎ. However, the older population still use しじゅうすぎ at times. Of course, there are instances when し is not acceptable at all. For instance, in fractions no one says しぶんのいち for 1/4th. Instead, everyone says よんぶんのいち. Likewise, people always read 四割 (40%) as よんわり.

7

As generations go by, the usage of なな increases as the usage of しち decreases. For instance, 七時間 (7 hours) is read as ななじかん by most people, although there are still many people who use しちじかん. Though standardized to be read as じゅうしちにち, 十七日 (the 17th) is じゅうななにち for half of the country (West Japan). It's also interesting to know that the majority of people use なな instead of しち in countdowns. This is in contrast to 4 as no particular reading is preferred in countdowns.

However as is the case with 4, the latter shows up in set phrases, making なな incorrect in those instances.

しちごさん 七 五 三	Festival for children 3, 5, and 7
ごしちちょう 五 七 調	Five-and seven-syllable meter
しちてんぱっとう 七 転 八 倒	Writhing in agony

Reading Note: 七五三縄 is completely exceptional and is read as しめなわ. This is a Shinto rope used to cordon off consecrated areas as a means of protection from evil forces.

＜ at one time was the most prevalent reading for 九. Now it is on the decline. For instance, きゅうにん is more common than <にん. Also, there are now phrases such as ^{きゅうわり}九割 (90%) in which only きゅう can only be used.

However, < does lag on in set expressions but also with particular counters such as 度. For instance, 39 度 (39 degrees) is often pronounced as さんじゅうくど. Of course, there are also phrases such as ^{くがつ}9月, 9時, and 9時間 in which you can only use <. Another example of obligatory < is ^{くぶくりん}九分九厘 meaning that something has a 99% chance.

第87課: Might: かもしれない

I might do this. That might be the case. As you can see, this lesson is about how to say might as in these contexts in Japanese. Be sure to say this phrase with pitch rising on か.

かもしれない

かもしれない means "might" as in there is a possibility of something. The predicate that it follows should be in the plain form, but だ is deleted when directly before it. It may also be seen as やも知れない or contracted to かも in casual speech. It is typically just written in かな.

Phrases like ひょっとして (maybe/possibly) and もしかしたら・もしかすると・もしかして (perhaps/possibly) are almost always used with かもしれない.

1. まだ家へ帰っていなかったかもしれない。

He might have not been going home yet.

2. あんたにとっては、^{ささい}些細なことかもけどな、でも俺には大切な問題だぞ。

(Masculine; Vulgar)

For you, it may like be trivial, but to me it's a like a big deal!

3. 彼はもう帰ったかもな。

He might have already come home.

4. ^{にんげん}人間が全ての^{せきゆ}石油を使いきってしまう時が { ^{おとず}訪れる・来る } かもしれない。

The time may come when man will have used up all oil.

5. なるほど、君のいう通りかもしれんね。

Well then, you may be right.

6. 彼はひょっとしてまだ外にいますでしょうか。

Might he still be outside?

7. ひょっとしたら彼女はここへ来るだろう。

She will possibly come here.

8. 前の^{しけん}試験が難しかったなら、^{こんど}今度の試験も難しいかもしれません。

If the previous exam was difficult, the next exam may also be difficult.

9. それだけの意味はあろうかもしれない。

There might just be that much meaning.

By 堀辰雄.

Grammar Note: かもしれない {だろう・でしょう} would be weird because of doubling more or less the same thing, but it turns out that reversing this as such in the example is possible. However, this speech style is older.

10. もしかしたら彼は気が変わるかもしれません。

He might change his mind.

11. ひょっとすると雨に^あ遭うかもしれません。

Chances are that we'll meet rain.

Alternative Note: Possible as in "possible to do" is expressed with the adjective

possible ^{かのう}可能な.

12. 計画の^{じっこう}実行が可能だ。

The plan's execution is possible.

第88課：～てあげる, ～てくれる, & ～てもらう

These endings normally get taught rather quickly in most textbooks despite the fact that there is so much that can be said about them. Many of the mistakes from students are caused by the lack of guidance. In an attempt to cover the essential information that can be obtained at this level without adding new grammar structures, this lesson will help you explore the differences that cause students the most trouble.

The Basics

The giving verbs **show favor** when used with the particle て. Though the following summary may seem easy enough, we will go to compare and contrast to see where exactly the limits to these expressions lie.

～**てあげる**, more polite than ～てやる, shows that one('s in-group) gives a favor to another person/party. It's generally used towards equals or even (non-)living things. In certain situations, it may be patronizing when "giving the favor" involves demoting of status.

～**てくれる** may show that someone does something for another person's benefit or even disadvantage. It is to note that its 命令形 is normally ～てくれ rather than ～てくれろ.

～**てもらう** shows that someone received a favor or disfavor from someone. ～てもらえますか can be used to politely ask for favor. The honorific forms ～ていただけませんか and ～ていただけないでしょうか are also very important. To see how から is used with this, click [link](#). For now, we will only see agents marked with に.

漢字 Note: These endings do have 漢字, but they are usually not used. ～ていただく is more common in 漢字 than the others, and its spelling is ～て頂く.

Variant Note: The respectful variants replace them in the appropriate environment.

Examples

1. 知らない人たちに道を教えてあげた。

I showed the way to strangers.

2a. ピザを ^{たくはい}宅配 してもらえます。(Rather literary)

2b. ピザを ^{はいたつ}配達 してもらえます。(More natural)

You can have pizza delivered to you.

3. 友だちはプレゼントを贈ってくれました。

My friend sent me a gift.

漢字 Note: 贈る is used over 送る because of the bestowing/giving of something special, in this case a present.

4. 知っていて教えてくれないものは本当に ^{じこちゅうしんてき}自己中心的だ。

A person that knows but doesn't tell anyone is really self-centered.

Suffix Note: ～的 is like "-like; -ic(al)" and is used to make nouns, mainly Sino-Japanese, into adjectives. Other examples include 日本的 (Japanese-like), 男性的 (masculine), 経済的 (economical), etc.

Word Note: 教える is used instead of 言う because the context shows that information is being withheld and not transmitted/taught/informed to others.

漢字 Note: もの could be written as 者, which is a meaning that further downgrades "person".

5a. 医者に^み診てもらう。

5b. 医者に見られる。 △

To be seen by the doctor.

Grammar Note: The second option would literally mean that you were seen/spotted by the doctor.

6. この^{ぶん}分は^{つぐな}償^なってもらうから。

You'll pay for this.

7. あいつをとっちめてやる！ (Vulgar)

I'll teach him a lesson!

8. 友達に手紙をフランス語に^{ほんやく}翻^{ほん}訳^{やく}してもらった。

I had my letter translated into French by my friend.

9. どうか静かにしていただけますか。

Would you kindly stop making that noise?

Literally: Could I have you somehow get quiet?

10. もっと上の階の部屋にしていだきたいんですが。

Could you give me a room on a higher floor (if it is possible)?

11. もうすこし時間をいただけないでしょうか。

Could you please give a little more time?

Could I please have a little more time?

12. 「シングル・ダブルルームを^{よやく}予^よ約^{やく}したいんですが。」 「^{なんぱく}何^{なん}泊^{ぱく}ですか。」

「^{にはく}二^に泊^{ぱく}です。」 「いくらですか。」 「4万円です。」 「今部屋を見せてもらえます

か。」 「すみませんが、今は^{まんしつ}満^{まん}室^{しつ}です。」 「そうですか、分かりました。」 「お名前

^{ねが}を^ね願^ねいします。予約の^{かくにん}確^{かく}認^{にん}もお願いします。」

"I'd like to reserve a single/double room." "How many nights?" "Two, how much is it?" "It's 40,000 yen." "Can I see the room now?" "Sorry, but we are full now." "Oh, that's alright." "Your name please. Please also confirm your reservation."

13. もう一度歌っていただけませんか。

Could you sing once more?

14. 彼女に新しい ^{ようふく}洋服 を買ってやった。

I bought a new dress for her.

Vocab Note: 洋服 = Western clothing. ^{いふく}衣服 = "garments". You buy ^{いりよう}衣料

^{ひん}(品) . Japanese style clothes = ^{わふく}和服 . 服 is clothes as in dresses or

suits. ^{いるい}衣類 = article of clothing (caps, robes, etc.). ^{ふくそう}服装 = "clothes; dress:

appearance". ^{ふくそうきてい}服装規定 = "dress code". "Dress; outfit" can also be 衣装.

"Outfit; costume" = ^{ふんそう}扮装 . The original word for clothes is ^{ころも}衣 . Now, it re-

fers to a "priest's robe", which can also be ^{そうい}僧衣 or ^{ほうえ}法衣 .

ちょうだい

ちょうだい can be used as a "humble verb" to mean "to receive" or "to eat and drink". By women and children, either with て or not, it makes a request. In 漢字 it's 頂戴. It is not written as such with て.

15. 僕にもちょうだい。

Give me some too.

16. ちょっと待ってちょうだい。

Please wait a bit.

17. けっこう ^{しな} 結構な品を頂戴いたしましてありがとうございます。

Thank you so much for giving me this nice gift.

18. 「もっと ^め 召し上がりませんか」「ありがとう、もう十分頂戴しました」

“Would you like some more?” “Thank you, but I have had enough”.

Word Note: The person serving used the respectful form of "to eat", 召し上がる. The recipient didn't just say something like 結構です. They appear to be both high rank.

19. キャンディーをちょうだい。

Candy, please.

～てあがる・～て（い）やがる

Although this looks similar to ～てあげる, it's not the same thing. Rather, this is a vulgar and rather offensive version of ～ている.

20. してあがる・しやがる・していやがる・しやがる = している (Not 1st Person)

21. いつからそこにいやがった!?

Since when have you been there!?

Word Note: いやがった is not as in the past tense of 嫌がる (to detest). The verb いる・居る is being used.

Compare and Contrast: ～てくれる VS ～てもらう

Having seen several sentences of ～てくれる and ～てもらう, it superficially looks like so long as you address particle differences, you can rephrase a sentence with each other. This for many cases is true, but there are many important things to keep in mind. First, consider the following.

22a. 道に迷った旅行者は、父に、駅までの道を教えてもらいました。○

22b. 父は、道に迷った旅行者に、駅までの道を教えてくれました。X

The lost traveler was told the way to the station by my father.)

In 「XがYにAてくれる」, X is a person other than the speaker, Y is the speaker or someone in the speaker's in-group, and A is an action being done that is a **plus or minus** to one's in-group. Even without context to set up the dialogue, there is some relationship with X and Y. So, although the sentence above with ～てくれる was marked as wrong, if the traveler happened to be someone with a close relationship, or if a strong sense of intimacy/familiarity were to be felt from that person, then it and similar sentences would be OK.

23. 友だちはプレゼントを贈ってくれました。

My friend sent me a gift.

24. 隣の赤ちゃん、よく泣いてくれるね。

The baby next door is crying a lot, isn't it?

25. 兄が友達にアイスクリームを買ってくれた。

My big brother bought my friend ice cream.

Sentence Note: Your brother and friend may be in your in-group, but the brother is not necessarily in the in-group of your friend.

As for 「YがX {に・から} Aてもらう」, in the case of an unrealized event, a certain person Y, shows a command/request/hope of something A that is a plus to Y to another person X. In the past tense, this command/request/hope is realized. In other words, Y has it that Y will receive a plus action A from X.

If the Y in 「Y が X {に・から} A てもらう」 is the speaker, it can be reworded to 「X が Y に A てくれる」, but if the action is not a plus to the speaker, the opposite doesn't work. Even though there are situations where the two patterns are interchangeable, there will always be a difference in feeling in respect to the speaker.

26. 僕と ^{おど}踊 ってくれる？

Will you dance with me?

27. ^{じょゆう}女優 ^{はな}は ^{せいけい}鼻 を 整形 してもらいました。

The actress had her nose remodeled.

One of the first things we'll now look at are the person restrictions with ～てくれる. First, consider the following sentences.

28. ランスさんは、友達にフランス語を教えてください。

Lance will teach my friend French.

29. 今日、赤ちゃんが歩いてくれたのよ。

The baby walked (for us) today.

30. 恋人への思いを、風が運んでくれました。

The wind carried my thoughts to my lover.

The restriction is that Y is the speaker or a person in the speaker's in-group and X is not the speaker. When what follows X is a request or sentence of confirmation, anything can follow whether X be a person, animal, thing of nature, etc.

When ～てくれる is used with ～のだ/～よ, you are showing a promise with a third person. At the same time, the speaker is showing an expectation and a promise from someone/something. Although you can't make a promise with a something, in this case, the X is being personified, and if the benefit/convenience is carried out, it feels as if X has promised to do so. Of course, you can make this

the topic of question and negation. When negated, there is disappointment. Of course, there are similar patterns where this nuance is implied.

31. 友達が Wii を貸してくれないんだよ。

My friend won't lend me the Wii.

32. お母さんが誕生日にニンテンドウ 3DS を買って {くれます・くれるのです・くれな
いのです} か。

~Is your mom going to buy you a Nintendo 3DS for your birthday?

33. ねえ、ねえ、見ててね。このかわいい子犬が、2 本足で歩いてくれるわよ。

(Feminine)

Hey, hey, look! This cute puppy **will** walk on two legs (for us)!

Though more so an understanding of how to use ~か and ~のか rather than ~てくれる, it's important to know how they are used together in requesting and confirming. You may see ~てくれるか, ~てくれ, or ~てくれるのか.

34. 何かヒントになることを教えてくれないか。

Could you give me some hint?

35. ねえ、母さん、今度の誕生日、DS 買ってくれる (の) ?

Hey, mom, you'll buy me a DS my next birthday, right?

36. ちょっとそのハンマーを取って {○ くれるか・○ くれ・X くれるのか} 。

Could you get/get the hammer for a bit (?)

37a. ちょっとそのハンマーを取ってくれた (の) か。X

37b. ランスさんがあなたにフランス語を教えてくれた。X

If it is a benefit for you, why would you be asking if it happened? The second sentence is problematic because of a potential in-group requirement violation. It could, however, be worded to something like the following.

38. ランスはお前にフランス語を教えてくれたんじゃない？

Didn't Lance teach you French?

Here, the listener is clearly part of the speaker's in-group due to the language used. Furthermore, there can be an in-group benefit of the listener having been taught French.

A huge thing to understand is that 「くれる」 is a verb of non-volition. Although we haven't studied the following items, for future reference, they must never be used with it: つもりだ, Volitional form, たい. だめですよ！

From this it may seem odd that there is a command form of くれる. However, 「A+くれ」 unlike the command form of a verb of volition like 貸せ, 取れ, etc., it shows not a request for the listener to obey but a request in which the listener will make the decision as to whether to comply or not.

Now, we will switch to restrictions on ～てもらう. First, consider the following sentences.

39. {私・友達} はランスさんにフランス語を教えてください。

I/my friend will have Lance teach me/him French.

40. 私はランスさんに辞典を買ってもらったんですよ。

I had Lance buy me a dictionary.

41. 忘れたか。この Wii、お前に貸してもらったんだよ。

Have you forgotten? You had me lend this Wii to you.

42. 忘れたか。その Wii,僕に貸してもらったんだよ。

Have you forgotten? You were lent this Wii by me. ¥

43. 地図で ^{しめ}示 してもらえますか。

Can you show me on the map?

44a. ねえ、今日、赤ちゃんに、歩いてもらったのよ。X

44b. 桜の花が、咲き始めるのを待ってもらっている。 X

In 「YがXにAてもらう」 there aren't person restrictions on X and Y, but they must be able to display will. Animals and small babies are questionable. Personification can make things acceptable though. Remember that A is an action with a benefit to Y, and there is usually a cost (not necessarily in the fiscal sense). Even when there isn't a cost, something balances the situation out.

Between X and Y there is a sense of responsibility. The action that is requested by Y to X is from a sense of returning the favor, duty, and depending on the time and circumstance, can be in a relation where “responsibility” is being shared. There is no sense of trouble following when X is doing it out of thanks for something Y has already done in return before. This explains most situations. Even if you have someone do something that you don't have a close relationship with, there are numerous situations where the other person is deemed to have a duty to give you a favor. For instance, say you are an old woman in an airport. You will probably have someone carry your luggage.

45. 荷物を運んでもらえませんか。

Could I have you carry my luggage?

46. わたしは従業員に荷物を運んでもらいました。

I had an employee carry my luggage.

47. ちょっと ^{てつだ}手 伝っていただけませんか。

Could you help me?

48. 彼を ^{でんわぐち}電話 口 にお呼びいただけませんか。

Would you mind calling him to the phone?

～てもらう also adds to the speech modals that have the ability to show commands. The speaker has X do A. This is carried out by stating that you will

receive the action by X. It is the speaker that is the requester, and it is that the listener that is the person being requested to do A. Things balance out, however. Things are done out of a borrowing of responsibility.

49. 自分で出したゴミが、自分で持って帰ってもらいます。

I will have people go home with their own trash.

50. 自分で出したゴミが、自分で持って帰ってもらうんです。

You get (him) to go home with (his) own trash.

The ～んだ in 「Y が X に A てもらうんだ」 shows a command has the same meaning as ～もらえ. The speaker, in regards to the listener is ordering to demand a third person A. Y = the listener. X = a third person. This is different from the roles of the basic form!

Y が X に A てもらう →	話し手が聞き手に A てもらう
Y が X に A てもら {うのだ・え}	聞き手が第三者に A てもら {うのだ・え}

The confusing thing is that のだ with this pattern does not always show command. That's because the pattern has several usages itself, and above is just what happens for that. When use to emphasize, it merely emphasizes the hope or will of Y receiving the action of someone for his/her benefit. As we've seen, Y could be the listener, speaker, or a third person depending on the situation. As you should have figured out by now, もらう, unlike くれる, is a verb of volition.

51. ぼく、お母さんに、Wii 買ってもらう（んだ）。

I'm going to get a Wii from my mom.

52. お母さんに、Wii を買ってもらう（の）か。

Are you getting a Wii from your mom?

53. お姉さんはお父さんに、ドレスをもらいますか。

Will your sister get a dress from your father?

Things that you should not do are 「私^があなたに A+ もらう」 and 「あなたが私に A+ もらう」 . They are both very rude and should be replaced. Consider the following.

54. トイレを貸していただけますか。

Could you let me use your bathroom?

55. 車をお貸しします。(Humble speech)

I will lend you my car.

Table of Contents

第89課: よ & ね

ごび
語尾 are fundamental to Japanese. In a broad sense, they're any ending at the end of a sentence, but we'll use 語尾 interchangeably with しゅうじょし 終助詞 (final particles). The two most important ones are よ and ね. At their most basic understanding, よ emphasizing emotion, judgment, or assertion, and ね seeks agreement and or respond from the addressee(s).

These particles are best understood in regards to intonation and role of necessity. So, this lesson will first see why we sometimes have to use them and discuss what the actual uses are based on intonation.

よ & ね

自然さ

よ is perhaps less important than ね because its absence does not cause a sentence to sound unnatural as often. As it is easy to sound rude to superiors when using よ, its use is not positively taught. When you use よ, you are presenting something that the listener is supposed to recognize.

Sentences like 「はい分かりましたよ」 and 「私がやりますよ」 can easily be interpreted as complaining, especially the first one, and at the very least, you could be showing frustration.

Of course, if there are cases in which its absence is more natural, there are also instances in which it is necessary. For instance, if you are telling something to someone that is beneficial to that person, the use of よ is natural. However, one must always consider the status of the listener.

1. おせんべい、どうぞ。美味しいですよ。

Here are some rice crackers. They're delicious.

2. もう、帰っていいですよ。

You can go home already.

If よ is not used in these two sentences, it shows a lack of consideration towards the listener's will. Knowing how to use 語尾 is hard if we were to just look at polite speech, because polite speech conversations orientated for dialect realistic to be said by students are stilted to not use them. Nevertheless, because plain speech conversation is filled with them, we must continue further in learning how to use them.

Consider 「さあ、始めますよ」. The lack of よ doesn't really change the meaning, but if you were to ask Japanese people whether 「さあ、始めるよ」 or 「さあ、始める」 is natural, they would say the former. Here's another example.

3. 「^{じゅぎょう}授業、終わった?」「うん、終わったよ」

"Has your class ended" "Yeah, it has"

The lack of よ here would be very unnatural.

Intonation

When you are trying to tell someone that a response is needed, you see a slight rise in intonation in よ. It is important to note that よ never actually has an intonation ↑. Even when someone is shouting, their pitch is going in a direction more similar to ↗ because the vowel gets lengthened. This is one reason why this particle is allowed in many speech styles.

4. ^{かみ}髪に何かついてますよ。↗

Something's stuck in your hair.

5. それ、^{ちょうから}超 辛 いよ。 ↗

That's gonna be hot (spicy).

Giving new information in this way implies that the listener doesn't already know. So, you must always balance sounding pushy with being helpful. Of course, one's relation to the person must be taken into account for familiarity is a factor to the use of よ. Always know your audience, and realize that these usages are controlled by your control of tone.

Sometimes this intonation is in fact used simply to show familiarity and closeness to someone. This clearly shows how よ is not just the equivalent of a verbal exclamation point.

6. 本を持ってきてくれた？

うん、持ってきたよ。 ↗

Did you bring the book for me?

Yeah, I brought it.

A lowering ↘ in pitch can do one of four things.

1. Criticize ignorance.
2. Show some sort of strong emotion like surprise, disappointment or deep impression.
3. Tell one's emotional statement with a nuance of exclamation.
4. Expressing one's intent.

Usage Note: These usages can easily be seen directed at oneself in ^{ひとごと}独り言.

7. 今日^{つか}は 疲 れてるから、まっすぐ帰るよ。 ↘

I'm tired today, so I'm going straight home.

8. がんばれよ。ㇿ

Come on. (Somewhat disappointed tone)

9. リーさんが手^{てつだ}伝ってくれたおかげで、早く終わったよ。ㇿ

Thanks to Lee-san helping, I got finished early.

10. やっぱりその本が見つからなかったよ。ㇿ

I unsurprisingly didn't find the book.

If you want to add a kiddish nuance to things, you can alter this intonation to ↑↓, which means elongation of the particle. You could see this spelled as よう or よー. The latter spelling is more colloquial. Whether it is kiddish or not depends on context, but it certainly adds emotional appeal.

11. 曇ってるから、何にも見えないよう。↑↓

Ahhh, we can't see anything because it's cloudy....

12. あいつがまたメールしたよ（う）。↑↓

That guy's sent another e-mail.....

ね

When saying something which is deemed to be mutually understood, ね's intonation goes up like ↑. This may also be used in response to an enquiry as well as for rejection.

13. あつ^{あつ}暑いね。↑

It's hot, huh.

14. 今日は人がよくいらっしゃいましたね。↑

A lot of people came today, haven't they.

15. そうだね！↑

Yeah, that's true!

16. 日本は今、何時？

ええと、昼 2 時くらいだね。↑

What time is it now in Japan?

Uh, it's about 2 in the afternoon.

17. なんとか ^{たの}頼 むよ。↘

嫌だね。↑

I need your help somehow.

Ah, I don't wanna.

When used to seek confirmation or approval, ね's intonation is ↗.

18. これが納豆だね。↗

This is natto, right?

19. このペン、ちょっと借りるね。↗

Let me borrow this pen just a moment, k?

20. ^{とうちゃくじかん}到着時間は午後 4 時 50 分ですね。↗

The arrival time will be 4:50 PM, right?

The patterns ↘ and ↑↓ are very similar in meaning for ね。Going up and down in pitch doesn't make one sound more childish. Nor is the speaker seeking sympathy in either case.

Both patterns may be used to show collective recognition with an added sense of emotion. In this case, the listener is not expected to respond. It's possible to view such statements as being blurted out with not even much thought. This also applies to responding to inquiry. What is clear is that there is a heightened sense of emotion.

21. 着いたね。↑

着いたね。↘・↑↓

We've arrived.

None of these intonations particularly means that the train had any problem, but the last two would certainly make sense if there were a problem.

22. そうですねえ。↘

Yeah.....

This sentence shows some hesitation. This should make sense because a typical そうですね↑ is a response to having been sought agreement, but you're adding more emotional emphasis, which would in this situation equate to not being so on board.

Combinations

In compounds with the two at the end, the pitch goes down. The first combination below is わよ, which is simply a feminine form of the ↘ よ. よね, on the other hand, is a combination which has a little bit more complicated status. There are more examples, but we will stick to these two for now.

23. このケーキ、美味しいわよ。

This cake is delicious!

24. ^{おか}可^い笑^いしいよね。

That's so strange, no kidding?

～ よね is relatively new. So, older generations are less likely to like its use and that its distribution among generations younger which do use it is all over the place. This is generally used a lot more by women, but this does not mean that guys never use it. This combination particle has come about from a need to bring

a close to one's own opinion but see agreement/emotional appeal at the same. In contrast to a typical そうですね, そうですね is used in anticipation of having people around you more involved.

For those who think it is correct, they claim it shows more familiarity in colloquial speech and is used understand the assumption agreement is already had

きょうゆうにんしき
(共 有 認 識) .

いわかん
The 違和感 (unease) that some speakers feel probably stems from the fact that multiple 語尾 used at once has only in recent times bloomed. However, examples exist throughout Japanese history. So, this argument is hard to believe. Plus, it's not the case that true colloquial speech was even written down in mass quantity to make such an assessment with validity. As そうよね exists in women speech, そうですね may exist too so long as it conforms to the description above. If it is 気持ち悪い for men to use it now, that's simple part of the rules. This, though, cannot be taken to mean it is somehow grammatically incorrect.

Using よ and ね with のだ

のだ's basic function is to get someone to understand something by bringing it to their attention. Adding ね has the tone seek sympathy as you try to have the listener understand things. Adding よ greatly emphasizes that you want to notify the listener of something. Repeating 〜んだよ over and over again, though, can lead you to sound verbose. How exactly overuse leads to unnaturalness in this situation is not quite clear, but it is likely due to the functions of んだ and よ being redundant to the point you aren't actually using them to mean what they should, which leads to misuse.

25. 彼は銀行に勤めてるんだよね。(Not questioning but having the person understanding)

He works in a bank, right?

26. 一体何があったんだよ？(Coarse; 男性語)

What the heck happened?

誤用

There are mistaken usages of よ and ね that even cause problems for native speakers. One of the best examples is when clerks try saying よろしいですよ to give permission but be cordial and respectful at the same time actually does the opposite and sounds rude. This stems from よ's use of marking criticism. It also has to deal with how よろしい can be used, too. Because superiors can use it to show recognition or permission to underlings, using it in this way would be arrogant.

26. ^{ぶちよう}部長 : 「よろしい。私が考えよう」

Alright. I'll think about it.

The replacement phrase for よろしいですよ would be はい、^{しょうち}承知 しました or はい、分かりました.

More Usages & Examples

You may also see ね used as a filler word with a ↘ intonation.

27. あのね、^{ぼく}僕、これがね、ほしいの。

Um, I, I really want this you see.

28. 明日はね、^{つごう}都合がいいんだ。

Um, tomorrow is going to be convenient.

When used after the て form to show a light, casual command with a ↑↓ intonation, ね can sound somewhat feminine. It may also be used by both men and women when speaking to children or when trying to be cute.

29. ここで待ってね。

Wait here, OK?

30. 知らないね。

I don't know.

Sentence Note: This is a response to inquiry, and the tone can be most light with a ↘ intonation.

かね is a combination that is often heard by old speakers and by speakers of certain dialects. It may also sometimes be an even more gender neutral form of かな, which we'll see later in this lesson.

31. 来てくれるかね。

Could you come over?

32. そんな手にだれが乗りますかね。

I wonder who would drive in such transportation.

33. 彼女に会いたいよ。↗

I want to see her!

34. 早くしないと ^{おく}遅れますよ。㇪ (Scolding)

You'll be late if you don't hurry.

35. ^{じょうし}上司が思いつきでものを言うからまいるよ。㇦

My boss talks off the top of his head.

36. 泣かなくてもいいのよ。 (Feminine) ㇦㇪

It's OK not to cry.

Usage Note: Final particles, again, can be used as filler words at the end of dependent clauses to add emotion. This doesn't apply as much to よ, but it can happen. The usage of these particles like this is not proper in truly formal polite situations. You might hear your boss use particles like ね in this fashion, but you wouldn't talk that way to him. So, this, like anything in Japanese that is sensitive to situation, you should do some investigation before attempting.

Another use of よ is to call out for someone. We often see this is great pleads which we don't get to see in every day situations much but might in literature, dramas, etc.

37. 神よ、助けてくれ！

Oh God, save me!

蝶よ花よ & 月よ星よ

These phrases are used as adverbs followed by the particle と. Although literally "butterflies and flowers!" and "moon and stars!" respectively, they are used idiomatically to mean "bringing up like a princess" and "extremely loving and praising" respectively. The origin of these phrases is questionable, but that's not really important.

38. 娘を蝶よ花よと育てた。

I raised my daughter like a princess.

39. 月よ星よと眺める。

To gaze with great admiration.

参照: <http://www.gsid.nagoya-u.ac.jp/oshima/docs/intonationanddps.pdf>

Table of Contents

第90課: ~ていく & ~てくる

These patterns are a little easier than the ones from the last lesson, but these are easier to confuse with each other. So, 注意してください！

~ていく & ~てくる

行く (to go) and 来る (to come) with て creates constructions that are not as straightforward as one would expect. What dictates the usage of ~ていく and ~てくる is highly context driven. It's rather impossible for even the best linguists to properly define all of the possible situations these phrases can be used in. "Highly context driven" refers to the fact that how you interpret them is not just determined by the transitivity of the verb phrase but by what exactly it is "semantically".

Categorical properties of what exactly the verb means is very important to keep in mind, and this also means that you can't just assume that English and Japanese match perfectly on a word-by-word basis. Usually, even this is never the case. After all, the two languages are NOT related to each other.

When physical action is involved, ~ていく and ~てくる show action away and action towards the speaker's current location respectively. In this case, the verbs are typically written in 漢字, but this is not always the case. At times, these phrases result in sentences that do not sound quite like anything one would say in English. In such cases, think really hard about the real world context in which they are used to better understand the semantic properties at work.

1. ちょっと出かけて来ます。

I'm going out for a bit (and will come back).

2. 公園に歩いて行った。

I went to the park by foot.

Grammar Note: Remember that some て phrases act like adverbs in Japanese, which then can then like in this sentence equate to a prepositional phrase, in this case 歩いて = by foot.

3. 朝ご飯を食べて行きました。

I went having eaten breakfast.

4. 行って来ます。

I'm going and coming back.

Usage Note: The above phrase is used when leaving your residence, knowing that you will be coming back. Though the plain form is acceptable with those you are close to, given its status as a set phrase, the polite form is also used without any repercussions.

5. だいどころ 所 からいすを取ってきます。

I'm going to get a chair from the kitchen.

6. 10 分もすれば、帰ってくる。

If I have but 10 minutes, I'll come home.

When there is no physical motion involved, ～ていく indicates disappearance whereas ～てくる indicates a process of emergence. Both can show a process of change or continuation, but they are different in this manner. ～ていく would indicate something that **will** change and continue on into the future whereas ～てくる would represent that **has been** happening for something and extends to the present.

7. ミルズさんは日本語がうまくなってきましたね。

Mr. Mills has been getting better in Japanese, hasn't he?

8. 君の英語はきっと上手^{うま}くなっていくでしょう。(Familiar)

Your English will surely get better!

9. 自分勝手に選^{せん}択^{たく}したい欲^{よく}は、かならず消えていくのであろう。

Your desire to want to selfishly choose will surely disappear.

10. 囚^{しゅう}人^{じん}達^{たち}は洞窟^{どうくつ}からぞろぞろと出てきた。

The prisoners came filtering out of the cave.

11. その木は、芽が出てきた。

The tree has begun to sprout.

12. 最後の希望が消えていく。

There goes our last hope.

Inception

～てくる can also indicate the inception of a process. As this section will show, understanding this can get really tricky. So, pay attention to detail and be open to differences between Japanese and English grammar.

13a. 雪^ふが降^ふってきた。

13b. 雪が降り始めた。

It started to snow.

～てくる・～ていく Interchangeability

Tense can be problematic in making ～てくる and ～ていく seem interchangeable. The semantic differences between the verbs of these phrases and

differences in the main verbs used are important. For instance, the fact that 消える is used below is very important.

14. 暖炉の火が消えて {きた・いく} 。

The fire in the fireplace is about to go out.

The first option indicates inception of a change. The status of the fire gets changed, and the process is "going out". With ～た, you indicate that the process has just started. A strong wind, cutting off of fuel source, or lots of water put on it would determine how quickly it goes out. Nevertheless, the English can be used in the same situations. The second option indicates a process of disappearance. The flame will shortly start to fade and then go out. In a real world situation, it would be very hard to tell all these details, especially because these judgments are all subjective to what the speaker feels.

When considering the English equivalent, you should be able to see how it could be used for both. For brevity, more literal/less natural English equivalents are not shown. With the information given thus far, you should be able to construct more literal interpretations at your own will.

Consider a less puzzling example. Here we have a sentence in reference to the weather. This, again, is an important detail to keep in mind.

15. 段々暑くなって {くる・いく} 。

It will become gradually hotter.

In this case, you could say that the former indicates an inception of a process that is to happen. It's more vivid and doesn't feel that it's going to take long for this change to occur. Once it has become quite hotter, it could just reach a point and stay that way. The latter option doesn't imply this. Rather, the latter shows a slower, gradual change that will occur and continue on that way. So, even if both sentences were used in the context of the temperature reaching 100F, with the latter, it could just continue to steadily get higher.

More Examples

Variant Note: It is also important to realize that ～ていく is often contracted to ～てく in casual speech in the same way ～ている is contracted to ～てる. Be sure to recognize it in different conjugations. For example, ～てった = ～ていった. However, this contraction is avoided in conjugations in which it might get confused with ～てくる. For instance, ～ていきなさい would accidentally become ～てきなさい if you dropped い.

16. ひと　こども　そだ
独　りで子　供を　育　ててきました。

I have brought up my children alone.

17. 帰ってくるまでここで待っててね。(Casual)

Just wait here until I come back.

18. 先生が^{はい}入　ってくるのを待つ。

To wait for the teacher to come in.

19. 氷がどんどんと^{せま}迫　ってきた。

The ice steadily approached and came (here).

20. 彼は新聞を持ってくるのを忘れた。

He forgot about bringing the newspaper.

21. 寒くなってきたみたいだ。

It looks like it's becoming colder.

22. ガスが（^{まわ}回　って）^き来た。

Gas came.

Word Note: 回る in this context emphasizes the *circulation* of gas.

23. カーテンの^{うし}後ろから近づいてくるなんてこわい。

Approaching from behind the curtain like that is scary.

24. 時が^や矢の^すように過ぎていきました。

Time started to pass by like an arrow.

25. 彼は雨の中を駅まで歩いていきました。

He walked to the station through the rain.

26. 持ってきてください。

Please bring it.

27. 持って行ってください。

Please take it (away).

28. ペン一本も持ってきてませんでした。

I didn't bring a single pen.

29. プレゼントに銀ドルを持っていきました。

I took a silver dollar as a gift.

30. ちょっとお金を忘れてきちゃった。貸してくれない。(Casual)

I forgot to bring some money. Could you lend me some?

31. 雪が降ってきたかと思うともうやんだ。

Just as I thought it had started to snow, it had already stopped.

Phrase Note: かと思うと = "just as I thought".

32. 彼を^つ連れてきてください。

Please bring him.

33. 彼を連れていきなさい。

Take him away.

34. 今夜は岡田さんを連れてきました。

I brought Mr. Okada along tonight.

35. シネコンに行くんだったら、僕も連れて行ってくれない。

If you're going to the cinema complex, can't you take me along too?

Word Note: Notice the contrast in definitions between 連れて[いく・くる] and 持って[いく・くる]

36. 彼が東京を^た発ってから五日後に私は帰ってきた。

I came back home after five days after he left Tokyo.

37. ^{にちじょう} { 日 常 ・ 日 々 } の ^{せいかつもんたい} 生 活 問 題 が { ^{かさ} 重 な っ て く る ・ ^つ 積 み 重 なる } でしょ
う。

Normal daily life problems will pile on.

38. ヒマワリの種をまいてから、一週間とたたないうちに芽が出てきました。

After I planted the sunflower seeds, they sprouted in no less than a week.

39. 彼女は先月神戸に（引ッ）^こ越していきました。

She moved to Kobe last month.

40. これからも頑張っていきたいと思います。

I'd like to continue to do my best from now on.

41a. 彼が私の部屋に^{へや}飛 ^とび ^こ込 ん で きました。

41b. He rushed into my room.

～ていく → 連用形+いく

～いく may follow the 連用形 instead in some rare instances in a poetic fashion. This is in fact the original form the pattern took, which is why it is limited to small instances and is deemed poetic/nostalgic. ～てゆく also exists, which is quite nostalgic and is very common in songs and literature.

42. 大事な思い出も記憶から消えゆくのであろう。

Even important memories will slip from your memory.

43. 花燃えゆく。

Flowers, burn away.

44. 死にゆく。

To be going to die.

Pronunciation Note: This is slightly better than 死にに行く because of にに being odd sounding.

There are other grammatical restraints in other parts of Japanese grammar that call for the usage of ～てくる・ていく. The following sentence is not acceptable because generally if the speaker is participating in the described event, borrowing of money in this case, the speaker should be the grammatical subject.

45. 正樹さんは、私からお金を借りた。X

To override this, you would have to either give a continuity in regards to a discourse topic.

46. 正樹は、私からお金を借りて旅行に行った。O

Masaki went on a trip with money he borrowed from me.

47a. 私に送った。X

47b. 私に送ってきた。○

(Someone) sent (it) to me.

Word Note: Because 旅行に行く is technically superfluous (重言), some speakers may feel that this phrase is still incorrect. If that's the case, 旅行する is always appropriate.

Further Note: ~てくる must be used when the speaker is a participant referred to by a goal noun phrase with a verb that is subject-centered. The goal is the speaker in this case. The recipient is not the subject. The subject is the people sending the item. That item is sent and comes to you.

なってくる VS なっていく

Although the previous information may be sufficient enough to make the differences between these two phrases easy enough to ascertain, given that they are still often misunderstood, it's best to go through this as an independent point of discussion. First, consider the following.

48. こちらも、こんなに寒くなって {きた・いった X} のですから、そちらは、これからますます寒くなって {いく・くる X} ことでしょうね。

Since it has become cold like this here, it will definitely get steadily cold there after this.

This is a wonderful example of how the two can even be seen in the same complex sentence but yet have zero interchangeability. The first part states the change that it has become cold and still is cold **at the speaker's location**. In saying so, the speaker makes a conjecture that it **will get** cold somewhere else

away from the speaker. These distinctions are crucial to keep in mind. Here are some more sentences to consider.

49a. 10 月だ。故郷は、もう寒くなってきただろうか。 ○

49b. 10 月だ。故郷は、もう寒くなっていっただろうか。 X

It's October. Hasn't it already gotten cold at our hometown?

50. 5 月も半ばだから、そろそろ暑くなってくるね。梅雨が明けると、それこそ、ますます暑くなってくるんだらうけど。

Since it's already the middle of May, it should be getting hot soon, right? Once the rainy season lifts, that alone should make it get hotter gradually.

51. 6 ヶ月もダイエット続けてるのに、太ってくばかりで、ちっともやせてこないんだよ。

Although I've been on this diet for 6 months, I've only continued to gain and haven't gotten a bit skinnier!

Though the last may be harder to follow from the free translation, it would be a great mistake to change the speech modals to one or the other. When used with intransitive verbs that show a change, you are showing a natural change of events by a given process. When you use ～ていく, you say that at the time the change starts, there will continue to be change from that point onward. ～てくる gives a more punctual feel to the instant of change. So, ～ていった would be like "had been getting..." whereas ～てきた would be like "got".

第91課: Best That: ～方 Patterns & ～に越したことはない

For some reason, students are compelled to use the word 方 excessively.

方

方 has two readings: ほう and かた. The primary reading to be used is ほう. However, some space will be devoted to かた at the end. The general sense of 方 is to show a meaning of “direction”. This usage can easily be ascertained if you see particles like へ after it. Most of its usages are spin-offs of this concept.

1. 彼女の方を見る。

To look her direction/way.

2. とびら
扉の方へ歩く。

To walk towards the gate.

3. お仕事の方は じゅんちょう
順調 ですか。

Is your work doing fine?

Nuance Note: This is still ほう and is used to make the statement more indirect. This is very common in business honorifics and in the honorific speech of young people.

方がいい

方 方がいい means “best to…” and with verbs, you should use the past tense, and with adjectives or the negative, you should use the non-past tense. However, this can still be used with the non-past of verbs, and いい can be replaced with phrases like 賢明だ (wise).

～ 方がいい is used in the written and spoken language. It is often used in daily conversation, but it is often used by Japanese learners when giving suggestions/advice, which may lead some Japanese to smirk.

Non-past + 方がいい is primarily used with one's in-group as it is used a lot in situations where you are giving direct advice on what is best to do. Past + 方がいい is felt to be more euphemistic and is often used towards one's out-group. However, some people have personal preferences for one or the other.

4. 今すぐ行った方がいいです。

It'd be best to go right now.

5. 寝た方がいい。

It's best to sleep.

6. よく考えた方がいい。

You'd better think that over.

7. 泳ぐ前に、^{ひや}日焼け止め^どを^ぬ塗った方がいいよ。

It's best to put on sunblock before swimming.

8. ^{たまご}卵は食べない方がいい。(Contrasting and or highlighting)

It's best to not eat eggs.

9. {ほとんどの} わずかな ^{みせ}店しか開いていないから、今食品を買った方がいい。

Since there are only but a few stores that are open, it's best to buy food now.

10. 彼はそこへ行った方がよい。

It is best for him to go there.

11. 毎日運動した方がいい。

It's best to exercise every day.

Nuance Note: Even when there is not one mentioned, this pattern implies a comparison and choice between things. It may sound pushy depending on the context as it can be used to impose your will/thought. When you want to make a simple suggestion, you can use ～たらいい.

Again, other things than just いい may also appear in this fashion.

12. 当人に会って直接に話し合った方が^{こうか}効果はあると思います。

I think that it is effective to meet with the said person and directly talk together (about it).

Non-Past + 方がいい

It is also worth noting that when you use the pattern "Non-past+方がいい", there could be several things that are good to do in the said situation, but you pick one as an example of being good.

13. 折りにふれて^{そうき}想起するほうがいい。

Occasionally, it is good to call it to mind.

～がよい

～がよい is more so an order than a suggestion. It also uses older grammar. Here, the 連体形 is used as a noun without aid with something like の. This is called ^{れんたいけいじゅんたいほう}連体形準体法 in Japanese.

14. そうするがよい。

You had better do it.

～方: How to...

Following the 連用形 of a verb, ～^{かた}方 means "how to...". Sometimes this may not show up in translation. For instance, 読み方 may very well be able to be translated as "how to read", but it can also be sufficiently translated as "reading" depending on context.

15. 弟の笑い方が気に食わねー。(Slang)

I can't stand the way my little brother smiles.

16. 日本語の書き方をよく知っていますか。

Do you know how to write Japanese well?

17. 行き方が全く分からない。

I don't know the way to go at all.

18. どの読み方を使うべきかは分かりません。

I don't know which reading I'm supposed to use.

19. 本当に^{ひど}酷い言い方だよ。

That's a hideous way to talk.

20. しかたがありません。(Set Phrase)

It can't be helped.

21. 簡単な覚え方を教えてくださいませんか。

Could you teach me an easy way to remember?

Miscellaneous Usages

After nouns it shows a **person in charge**. This may also be used to show who is the caretaker or overseer of another person. In this case, 方 is read as がた.

22a. かいけいがた (Rare; literary)

22b. 会計士 (Common)

Person in charge of finances

23. 調査 (がた) を依頼する。 (With 方: Very rare)

To request investigation.

やまださまがたあべしんじ
24. 山田様方阿部信二。

Mr. Shinji Abe under the care of Mr. Yamada.

It may also show approximate time/degree. This usage really isn't used that much. However, in expressions where a more generic word is used, it is more common. This usage is also read as がた.

25a. わりがた
8 割 方

25b. 約 8 割 (More common)

Approximately one eighths

26a. 夜明けがた (Literary)

26b. 夜明け時 (Literary and less common)

26c. 夜明け頃 (More spoken)

Around dawn

In family terms, ～かた is equivalent to "side".

27. ははかた
母 方 の祖母

One's maternal grandmother

～に越したことはないが

～に^こ越したことはない(が) means "can never...too much" and is used in giving common sense advice. The verb 越す has meanings all related to the idea of "surpassing". This phrase is used to show that nothing beats doing X. So, when young people use it in certain situations, it can make them sound arrogant.

If turned into ～に越したことはなかった, you end up showing regret. This is because you recognize what was the best thing to do, but you didn't do it. Lastly, this pattern directly follows nouns or 形容動詞 or the ^{れんたいけい}連体形 of verbs and 形容詞.

28. ^{かさ}傘を持つに越したことはない。

It's always best to have an umbrella.

29. 貯金をするに越したことはなかったが、ちょっと生活を楽しむことができた。

Nothing would have beat saving, but I got to enjoy life a little.

30. ^{ようじん}用心に越したことはないが、そんな服装を着るなんて^{はで}派手すぎるじゃない？

You can never be too careful, but isn't wearing an outfit like that too showy?

第92課: Good At & Bad At

These phrases are not as easy as they are in English. Pay attention to part of speech and when you use these phrases.

Good At

The expression "good at" is typically expressed by one of three phrases. These phrases are not quite the same. First, look at the chart below.

上手い・巧い	うまい	Good at	Shows someone's good abilities.
得意	とくい (な)	Good at	Talks about one's or someone's forte.
上手	じょうず (な)	Good at	Speaks of other people's abilities.

Kanji Note: うまい is typically spelled in ひらがな.

Both 上手 and 得意 mean that someone is good at some activity; however, 上手 is objective, and 得意 is subjective. 上手 is used to indicate that someone is skillful based on other people's opinions. 得意, though, indicates that the person in question thinks oneself is good. It may also, however, show specifically someone's strong point. For 上手 to be used for oneself, something has to be done to get rid of the haughtiness. Or, if you want to sound like that, go right on ahead.

So, 得意 can be translated as "forte". So, for speaking of one's own skills, use 得意. You should also not use うまい in reference to yourself. It is also important to note that うまい often means "delicious", but it should be obvious in context whether it is referring to someone's ability or something's taste.

Lastly, before we move on to the example sentences, it is important to remember that these phrases are all adjectives, 形容動詞 to be exact.

Examples

1. 彼は母に ^{あま}甘えるのが上手だね

He's good at sucking up to his mother, isn't he?

2. 私は水泳が得意だ。

I am good at swimming.

3. 私はビデオゲームが得意です。

I am good at video games.

4. 「日本語の先生は日本料理が上手ですか」「先生は料理が上手かどうか分かりません」

"Is your Japanese teacher good at (making) Japanese food?" "I don't know whether my teacher is good at cooking or not?"

5. ジェニファーさん、英語がお上手ですね。

You really are good at speaking English, aren't you Jennifer!

6. 彼女は水泳が得意です。

She is quite strong at swimming.

7. 彼女は水泳が上手です。

She is good at swimming.

Contrast Note: If you are in a swimming match and want to know about how good your rivals are, being told sentence #6 may make you a little worried and it sounds she is actually formidable.

8. 私は上手だと思います。

I think that I'm good at it.

Nuance Note: This sentence would be in a response in a dialogue where others are making comments about ability, so it wouldn't be out of place. What follows

is a good compliment to leveling the haughtiness that would otherwise accompany 上手.

Cultural Note: In response to being told you're good at something, you should respond by saying "いいえ、まだまだです".

Honorific Note: The お attached to 上手 is being used here for honorific speech, but it is most likely to be used in this situation by a female speaker.

Reading Note: 上手 also has the readings かみて and うわて, but these are completely different words. And, when given context, you should be able to tell the difference between them.

かみて:

1. The opposite of しもて. This refers to seat close to the seat of honor.
2. It may refer to the upstream of a river. The antonym is, again, しもて.
3. For the point of the viewers, it is the right hand side of a stage. The antonym is, again, しもて.

うわて:

1. Upward direction, especially in reference to jet-stream or water, in which cases respectively stands for 風^{かざ}上^{かみ} and 川^{かわ}上^{かみ}. This usage is confusingly synonymous with かみて. The antonym is しもて.
2. Over-arm grip on an opponent's belt in sumo wrestling. The antonym is したて.
3. In go or shogi, うわて is the one layer with the highest grade/ability.
4. In horse-back animal hunting, it is the shooter in front of one's own horse.
5. A 石帯 is a special kind of lacquered leather belt, and on the left end of it, another leather belt would be attached. This is then called an うわて.
6. As an adjective, it can refer to someone being threatening. This has since been replaced by the word 高飛車.

7. It does have a meaning similar to じょうず. However, it is very rare and literature and would likely be used in the nominal sense. It does get used in the set phrase 一枚上手, which is equivalent to "one step better."

Bad At

As you can imagine, the phrases for "bad at" should be very similar to the ones for "good at". If you thought this, you would be right. Just like before, these phrases are 形容動詞.

下手	へた (な)	Awful at	Speaks badly of one's or someone's abilities.
苦手	にがて (な)	Bad at	Shows one's or someone's bad abilities.
不得意	ふとくい (な)	Not one's forte	Refers politely about other people's bad abilities.
不味い・拙い	まずい	Unskilled	Speaks harshly of skill and not a nice word.
拙い	つたない	Poor at	Unskillful and awkward and not a nice word.

There are no reference restrictions as there are for the "good at" phrases, but the nuances are different as is noted in the third column. It is to note that 苦手 more so implies that doing something brings on a bitter experience, which may not necessarily imply a truly bad ability. However, sometimes this is clearly not the case, but it's not as harsh in nature as 下手.

まずい is most often used in reference to poor flavor, which ultimately reflects on the cooker's ability of cooking. まずい is normally written in かな.

Examples

9. 彼女は ^{うんてん} 運転 が下手だ。

She is bad at driving.

10. 彼の ^{おく} 奥 さんはやりくりがちょっと苦手ですね。

His wife is a little bad at managing, isn't she?

11. 彼女は ^{ぶつり} 物 理 が不得意です。

She is not good at physics.

12. 私は ^{すいえい} 水 泳 が下手だ。

I am awful at swimming.

13. 彼は数学が苦手だ。

He is bad at math.

14. 字が拙いね。

Your handwriting is bad.

15. うわ、すんごくまずかったよ。(Casual)

Oh, that was just awful.

16. 韓国語の E メールに返事を書くのは苦手です。

I am bad at writing a reply in E-mail in Korean.

Reading Note: How to read 下手 frequently causes problems for learners. For 下手, you have to consider considerably more information than with 上手.

しもて:

1. The farthest seat from the seat of honor.
2. Downstream.
3. The left side of the stage of a play from the view of the auditorium.

したて・したで:

1. Downward, especially in reference to the jet-stream or river flow. This is shared with しもて.
2. To have a lower ability or rank than an opponent.
3. Being humble.
4. Underarm grip of an opponent's belt in sumo wrestling.
5. In go or shogi, it refers to the one who has the weaker skill/rank.
6. In horse-back hunting chases, this refers to the shooter behind one's own horse.

へた:

1. Shows that someone is not good at something. There is no dexterity or efficiency.
2. Half-baked/fledgling. なまはんか・生半可.
3. Not at the degree of satisfaction.

第93課: Like & Love

There are many words in Japanese for liking and loving people and things. In this lesson, you will learn about all sorts of these phrases. It is really important that you pay attention to detail but also realize that such a topic can never be described in absolutes in any language. Feeling is something with no bounds or standards.

Like/Love

～好きだ

Like, even in English, is a word with varying potency. You can tell a girl "I like you", but you can also say "I like pizza" or "I like Japanese food". The same goes for Japanese.

～ が好きだ is the Japanese equivalent of "to like", and as will be explained later in more detail, it is an adjectival phrase, not verbal. This word may show that one is pleased with something and have inclination for. This inclination can also be emotional attachment and love.

1. サッちゃん、好きだよ。

Satchan, I like you.

2. 夏よりも春が好きだ。

I like spring better than summer.

3. 現代音楽はあまり好きじゃない。

I don't like modern music much.

4. あいつはほんと酒（飲むの）好きだよな。（くだけた話し方）

That guy really does like drinking.

5. 毎朝走るのが好きです。

I like to run every morning.

6. ^{あに}兄は歌えなくても歌うのが好きです。

Even though my older brother can't sing, he likes to sing.

7. マンガが好きじゃない。

I don't like manga.

Just like the English phrase, 好きだ can have negative connotations. For instance, getting on to one's obsession over something can be taken as a negative comment.

8. 今夜もパッドタイ？マジで好きだねえ。

Pad Thai again, tonight? You really like it, don't you?

9. あんた、社長が好きなんでしょう。(Familiar)

That's cause you like the prez, don't you?

Part of Speech Note: The Japanese phrase 好き is a 形容動詞. That means you should treat it like an adjective, this is despite that in English the phrase is treated as a verb. The phrase, though, does come from a verb. The verb form 好く is limited to the passive form, and outside of this, other instances are typically set phrases.

Set Phrases Note: Below are some common set phrases utilizing different forms of 好く.

10. ^か賭け^{ごと}事は {すかない・すかん} 。

I can't stand gambling.

11. あいつは虫がすかない。

I especially hate that guy.

12. 好いたらしい人だと思う。

I think that person is delightful.

Particle Note: Particle usage is also something to keep in mind. When you say that you like something, this is generally new information that you are trying to tell someone. So, because this is the case and you are using an adjectival expression, you should say Xが好きだ. However, due to influence from Western languages, primarily English, ～を好きだ has become acceptable for many younger speakers (those ~35 and under).

13. あたしを好きなの？ (Feminine)

Do you like me?

14. ブスを好きになる方法を教えて。

Teach me how to like an ugly person.

15. あんたの醜い犬めを好きになるくらいに (失礼!)

To the point of liking your ugly dog

There is a tendency for を to be more accepted the longer the sentence is. It is wrong to say that this is “bad Japanese”. This is just an instance of the language evolving. However, when you are speaking politely, you shouldn't use something casual. In casual yet polite situations, certain things like this may appear, but this is something you should play by ear.

大好き

大好き is really liking something/someone a lot. Now, whether it has love connotations or not is solely based on context. For instance, when you say, あの歌手、大好き！, you aren't necessarily saying you love that singer. It is clear, though, you really like the singer. Even still, this is ambiguous. Whether you like

the singer's music, the singer as an individual, or emotionally love the singer would all be based on context.

16. 大好きな君へ (Something you'd see in a song; romantic)

~To you, my love

17. 韓国料理が大好き！

I love Korean food !

18. 母は友だちとしゃべることが大好きだ。

My mom loves to chat with her friends.

19. 私は泳ぐのが大好きです。

I love to swim.

好む

この好む is like "to fond/love". It comes from the idea of choosing something out of a number of things because it fits with one's disposition. So, there is a sense of interest involved that one holds, and describes something you may grow a fond, taste, liking to.

20. 明るい ^{ちょうちん}提灯 の光を好んで、虫が ^{あつ}集まる。

Bugs love the bright light of paper lanterns and swarm (around them).

21. 人は平和を好むのが ^あ当たり ^{まえ}前 のことだ。

People preferring/loving peace is an obvious thing.

22. 音楽を好む。

To be fond of music.

好む has older meanings, one of which is “to want/hope for”. This often had romantic connotations in the Classical era, and it could also refer to having something suit one’s interests. Nevertheless, the only time when such an old meaning is used today is in the following rather literary phrase.

23. 好むと好まざるとにかかわらず

Whether you like it or not

気に入る

気に入る is a relevant 気 idiom referring to having a fancy for something/someone. Think of it as something getting into one likes. It is often like “to please”. It would not be used to express one’s affection to someone directly, but you could say that someone has 気に入った.

24. お気に入りのポケモンを選んでください。

Choose the Pokemon you like.

25. そのカバー、気に入らないよ。別のを使って。

I don’t like that cover. Use another one.

26. 気に入った女性の扱い方

How to treat women you fancy

27. 気に入られようと努める。

To strive to please/be liked.

惚れる

惚^ほれる is also “to fancy”, but this is like “head over heels for”. It is used for people or things, but it has negative undertones. That’s because its original meaning is “to be senile”, and “to be absent-minded”. The first is typically now 老い^ぼれる, which uses the same verb with a different spelling.

28. 惚れた^は腫れた。(Idiom)

To be head over heels.

29. 惚れてしまえば^{あばた えくぼ}痘痕も笑窪。(Idiom)

She who loves an ugly man thinks him handsome.

Literally: If you end up falling in love, pockmarks are the same as dimples.

30. 惚れた弱み

The weakness of being head over heels for someone

31. 惚れた^{よくめ}欲目でいうのじゃない。

This isn't something said out of mere affection.

Phrase Note: The phrase 惚れた欲目 refers to looking at someone with so much affection that you perceive the person (and the situation involving the person) above reality.

恋(を)する

恋^{こい}(を)する is often known as referring to sexual love. Though this is true, it can still be used in situations such as to “to fall in love” and other things Westerners associate with romantic love altogether.

32. 恋に落ちる

To fall in love.

33. 恋から^さ覚める。

To fall out of love.

34. 恋するあなたにだけあげよう。

I'll give this to only you, who I love.

35. 恋してたが. . .

I was in love with someone, but...

Related Words to 恋する

By definition, 恋する refers to a strong yearning for someone. It can also be shown that you yearn for someone that you could never live with or someone that is deceased. This sense of almost nostalgic wanting is the original meaning, making it not surprising that the original verb form is 恋う. This meaning is typically given to the compound 恋い慕う, but 恋う is still used in limited situations. For instance, you can say 恋い続ける instead of 恋をし続ける. You can also say something like ふるさとを恋う (to long for one's hometown). The adjectival form 恋しい means "missing/longing for".

36. 君が恋しくて会いたいよ。

I miss you and want to see you.

37. 高校が恋しくなった。

I've started to miss my high school.

38. 亡くなった母を恋い慕う。

To yearn for one's mother even after death.

慕う

慕^{した}う, alone, although meaning “to yearn” is a little different because it is used in situations where a person of lower status yearns/adores someone of higher status. In this sense of respect, it is the same as 敬慕^{けいぼ}する. However, it can also refer to loving such a person. 愛慕^{あいぼ}する looks like it would refer to love, but it is actually akin to nostalgia.

39. 彼のことを敬愛する。

To adore him.

40. 日本の習慣を愛慕する。

To long for the Japanese customs.

慕う can also be used in reference to animals longing for their masters. It can also refer to being homesick, for which the adjectival form 慕わしい also exists. But, the oddest meaning is for bugs to yearn for fire, which we've seen already with 好む.

41. 僕の犬が僕を慕ってついてくる。

My dog adores me and follows along.

42. 国民こぞって女王を慕う。

For the citizens to all love the queen.

43. ^{そこく}祖 国 を慕う民族

A people which yearns for its ancestral land

44. ^{こきょう}故 郷 の親友を慕わしく思う。

To long for one's dear friend at home.

45. 虫が灯火を慕う夜に月が海を照らす。

In the night with bugs swarming around the light, the moon brightens the sea.

Speech Style Note: 慕う and related words tend to be used mainly in the written language. Overall, it is slightly old-fashioned, but one can say its lack of use is due to the meaning itself, which makes it no different than the English equivalent.

More Words for Yearning

Even more words exist for yearning. 恋慕する is to yearn for someone and is essentially the literary, Sino-Japanese version of 恋い慕う.

46. 人妻に恋慕する。

To yearn for another man's wife.

あこがれる・あこが 憬れる and どうけい・しょうけい 憧 憬 mean "to yearn", but they are not used in reference to yearning/loving someone. However, because they can be used in expressing for an event of some sort, something like 結婚に憧れる is completely OK. The latter is Sino-Japanese and strictly 書き言葉.

Holding Feelings for Someone

As for holding feelings for someone, there are numerous ways of expressing this. Think of the following paraphrases. Words such as 思い (feelings), 心 (mind), 好意 (favor), 情(emotion), いだく (to hold), etc. all refer to this idea of expressing one's feeling of love towards another. When you see the character 慕, though, think longing.

愛する

We have seen so many phrases related to love, and there are definitely other phrases out there, but the most important and highest level of love is 愛. Unlike 惚れる, which is slang and gives the impression that the person is out of it, and unlike 慕う, which is old-fashioned and shows a yearning, 愛する has a very deep feeling of emotion.

This means that unlike 好きだ, which is very natural for expressing one's like for someone, 愛する is far more potent. This is why you hear it so much in serious, romantic contexts in music. It doesn't have to be used with just people, but when it's not there is a great sense of value placed on something.

47. 愛してるよ。

I love you.

48. 愛はどこから来るのだろう。

Where does love come from?

49. おばあさんはみんなに、愛情をこめて最期の言葉を伝えた。

Our grandmother gave her final words to everyone with love.

50. 死ぬまで愛し続けよう。

I will continue to love you until I die.

51. コンピューターを愛するなんて無理でしょう。

Isn't it too much to love your computer?

When this “thing” happens to be a setting, feeling, etc., and can be viewed as meaning “to have adoration for”. 愛好する is related to this latter usage, and this is specific to loving a particular hobby.

52. ^{こどく}孤独を愛する。

To love solitude.

53. ビジュアル系を愛好する。

To be in love with Visual Kei.

愛 can also be used in many compounds.

愛犬	Beloved dog	愛校心	School spirit	愛国	Love for one's country
愛車	Beloved car	愛読	Love for reading	愛人	Lover

Word Note: 愛人 is similar to 恋人, but it is more like “one’s love”.

54. 恋人がいるの。

Do you have a boyfriend/girlfriend?

55. あの女はあいつの愛人の一人なんだ。

That woman is one of his lovers.

Conjugation Note: 愛す, its original form, can still be used in Modern Japanese, but the interesting thing is that it is now treated as a 五段 verb.

56. 君を愛せない。

I can't love you.

57. どんなときでも愛そう。

I'll love you no matter what.

恋愛

Always expect compounds like this to exist where two related characters are used to make yet another word of the same vein. This word is also love, but this one is very close to romance. It is a very common word.

58. 恋愛経験

Love experience

59. 恋愛関係

Romantic relationship

60. 恋愛小説

Romance novel

Table of Contents

第94課: Hate

We have gone through all the phrases for liking and loving, but now it's time to go over hatred. Many of the phrases will look very similar, and unlike the previous phrases for liking and loving, there isn't much nuance splitting to worry about. However, like always, you should pay attention to detail.

Try not to be angry or hateful after reading this lesson. :)

Hatred

(大) 嫌いだ

The most basic word for "to hate" in Japanese is 嫌いだ. 嫌い implies that you hold a bad impression of something, and the disdain that you hold is a reaction to this. You can't use 嫌いだ to reject a request.

1. エッセイを書くのが嫌いだよ。

I hate writing essays.

2. 毎日走らなきゃいけないけど、ホントに嫌いだよ。とっても ^{つら}辛 いんだ。いつも ^{あせ}汗 かいてて、体中が濡れちゃうし、^ぬ臭 ^{くさ}くなっちゃうよ。

I have to run every day, but I really hate it. It's really tough, and I'm always sweating. My whole body gets drenched, and I end up smelling.

Part of Speech Note: The expression comes from the verb 嫌う, which means "to detest", but unlike it, 嫌いだ and 大嫌いだ are used as 形容動詞.

大嫌い is the extreme of hating, as is implied by the prefix 大-. This is an emphatic version of 嫌いだ. Both come from the verb. They function just like 好きだ and 大好きだ. It's just that their meanings are the opposite.

3. 大嫌いなスポーツはありますか。

Are there any sports that you hate?

4. 嫌いな人のことで ^{なや}悩む。

To fret over people who you hate.

5. スカンクが嫌いなの。(Feminine)

I hate skunks.

6. 好き嫌い

Likes and dislikes

7. 平気で ^{うそ}嘘つく人が大嫌いなの。(Feminine)

I hate people that can just flat out lie in your face.

8. 彼女は野球が大嫌いです。

She really hates baseball.

Word Note: ベースボール is the same thing as 野球, but it not used nearly as often.

嫌いがある is often used to show bad tendency. See more examples in Lesson 201.

9. 人前で鼻くそをほじる嫌いがある女性と付き合ったことある？

Have you ever dated a girl who picks her nose in public?

10. 蛙を棒で叩く嫌いがある、そのいたずらっ子はまたほかの小学生の目の前で蛙を殺したばかりなんだよ。どうしたらいいのかさっぱり分からんよ。

That bad kid that likes to hit frogs with sticks just killed a frog in front of the other elementary kids. I have no idea what we're going to do with him.

嫌う can be translated as "to hate". This hate is a very strong dislike, and although 嫌いだ comes from it, 嫌う is still more powerful. This hate implies that you don't want to deal with whatever or whoever you hate.

11. 人は何故 ^{むじゅん} 矛盾 を嫌うのでしょうか。

Why do people despise contradiction?

12. いじめっ子を嫌うとしても、何の役にも立たないでしょう。

Even if you were to hate the bully, that does nothing, no?

13. 僕を嫌わないで。

Don't hate me.

On the flip side, though, it can even refer to animals and plants disliking something. So, vampires hating the sunlight would be a great example. When used with non-living things, it shows that two things are not compatible such as fire and water.

14. 本は ^{しっけ} 湿気 を嫌う。

Books hate moisture.

15. ^{きゅうけつき} 吸血鬼 は日光を嫌う。

Vampires hate sunlight.

It is also found in the phrase 嫌わず, which uses the old negative auxiliary verb はず, which functions as しないで here. In this phrase, you just do something without even giving a dime about the place or person you're dealing with.

17. 中国では所嫌わず ^{つば} 唾 を吐いてしまうと、逮捕されるそう。

They say that if you spit carelessly anywhere in China that you get arrested.

Etymology Note: 嫌う potentially comes from the verb 切る + the Old Japanese auxiliary verb ぶ, which was very similar to ている. It survives in many words, but this one is not completely verified. However, it makes perfect sense. Proof for this can be found in the fact that its original meaning was 除き去る. Exclusion is

closely related to **cutting** off. It also used to mean to separate/distinguish and avoid. This is still seen rarely in Modern Japanese in への嫌いなく.

いやだ

いやだ, written in 漢字 as 嫌だ or 厭だ, is very similar to 嫌いだ, but there are considerable differences. いやだ refers to situations in which you reject a person's request or invitation or a certain circumstance.

18. こんな時に行くなんていやだよ。

No way am I going at a time like this.

19. 「先輩、先に帰ってもいいですか？」 「いやだよ」

"Senpai, is it alright if I go home first?" "No way".

20. 息子がいやなことばかりするから、どうしつけたらいいかわかりません。

Because my son keeps on doing bad things, I don't know how to discipline him.

21. 嫌だから、やめてちょうだい。

No, that's bad. Please quit it.

22. 猫に ^{さわ}触られるのもいやになってきた。

I've gotten to the point that it's awful to be touched by cats.

23. いやな気分になっても、平気でやりつづけなさい。

Continue to work calmly even if you feel uncomfortable.

When you use いやだ in not accepting a certain person or thing, it is far stronger than 嫌いだ. For example, consider the following.

24. 健太くんなんか嫌いだよ。

I really don't like Kenta.

25. 健太くんなんかいやだよ。

Kenta is just no good.

The first sentence does show hatred towards Kenta, but the latter sentence is to the point that you don't even want to recognize his existence. It's almost like a euphemism for wishing he'd no longer live.

嫌がる・嫌がらせ

You can't just use 嫌だ for referring to what someone else hates/dislikes. Instead, you have to couple this with the auxiliary ~がる. The nominal form of the causative form of 嫌がる, 嫌がらせ, actually means "nuisance/annoyance". 嫌がらせをする happens to mean "to annoy (someone)".

26. 他人がいやがる仕事だけ引き受ける人、かわいそうだな。おれにもそんなことできないけどね。

People that only handle jobs that everyone else dislikes are pitiful, aren't they? I sure couldn't do any of it.

27. まず嫌がらせをした人の気持ちをよく考えればいいと思います。

I think you need to first think really hard about the feelings of the person you annoyed.

だめだ

This phrase is meant to show that something is impossible or incompatible in light of the circumstances. It's often objective, although objectivity is not necessarily something natives thing about when they use this word.

28. そもそも意味が重複したら、だめでしょうか。

Is it really bad in the first place for the meaning to be doubled?

29. 「先輩、お先に帰ってもいいですか？」 「ううん、だめだよ。まだ仕事あるから。」

"Senpai, is it alright if I go home first?" "No, that won't work because we still have things to do".

30. 健太なんかだめだよ。

Kenta is bad.

Sentence Note: This sentence is a qualification of some attribute to Kenta, not necessarily that you hate him.

憎む

Rarely spelled as 悪む and the primary verbal form of 憎い, this verb shows that you think something or someone is detestable. This verb can also be used to show abhorrence to an abstract thing such as an ideology or war.

31. 大統領を憎む。

To detest the president.

32. 共産主義を憎む。

To detest communism.

33. 戦争を憎む。

To detest war.

34. ^{こいがたき}恋敵を憎むことが当然でしょう。

It's only natural to detest a love rival.

35. 罪を憎んで、人を憎まず。 (Set Phrase)

I hate sin, not people.

憎らしい

憎らしい points out the (condition of the) person that makes you mad. Ironically, it is not always the case that this word has negative connotations.

36. 若者の砕けたスラングだらけの話し方が憎らしい。

The broken down, slang filled speech of young people is detestable.

37. 愛犬を死なせた、あの人が憎らしい。

That person who let my beloved dog die is detestable.

38. 憎らしい口を利く。

To say hateful things.

39. 彼女はあまりにもかわいくて憎らしくなってきた。(More positive than negative)

She's just so cute that it's gotten to me.

憎い

Unlike the opposite of love, 憎い expresses emotion of feeling displeasure, irritation, envy, etc. towards/about someone. It is you yourself who feels this discomfort. It also happens to have the old meaning of "ugly", which is now typically handled by 醜い except in rare circumstances.

40. 不正を許す大臣が憎い。

I hate prime ministers who allow injustice.

41. ぼうず 憎 けさ けさ
坊主憎けりや袈裟まで憎い。(Set Phrase)

He who hates Peter harms his dogs.

Literally: If you hate a bonze, you also hate his kesa.

42. 妻がとっても憎いもんだ。

I really hate my wife.

43. あんた、憎いこと言うね。(Ironic)

You really do say some provoking things.

44. 憎き韓国の豚どもを日本から追い出そう。(Racist)

Let's drive all those ugly Korean pigs out of Japan!

Caution Note: If you a Korean user, please do not feel offended by this sentence. This happens to sadly be a common use of the old meaning "ugly" for 憎い.

憎々しい・憎(っ)たらしい

These words are stronger versions of 憎らしい.

45. 彼は憎々しげにあのうるさい猫^けを蹴^けったが、すぐその後、あの猫^けが怪我^{けが}で死んで、ひどく^{こうかい}後悔^{こうかい}した。

He viciously kicked that annoying cat, but shortly afterwards, that cat died from its injuries, and he was filled with remorse.

46. あの人はね、とっても憎たらしいよ。

That person just really infuriates me.

憎しみ

Rather than using 憎み, which is a word but not used as a noun, as the nominal form of 憎む, 憎しみ is typically used. The verb form 憎しむ did exist at one point, but it is no longer used.

47. 憎しみを覚える。

To feel hatred/enmity.

48. 憎しみの炎を燃やす。

To fuel the flames of hatred.

気に {食・喰} わない

This 気 idiom just shows that you just can't stomach something. It is rather colloquial, so there are plenty of instances you can use it in speaking.

49. 見くびられるの、気に食わない。

I can't stand being looked down at (by others).

50. あいつ、ちっとも気にくわねーよ。

I just can't stand that guy.

嫌悪

This word is "hatred" by definition, and it is rather cruel hatred. People tend to not use this word correctly, and one of the most egregious misuses happens to be the following.

51. 嫌悪感を感じる X/△

To feel hatred.

The problem is that the phrase is a 重複表現. Double phrases are almost always frowned upon in Japanese, and this is especially bad. However, all you have to do to make this phrase correct is replace 感じる with another verb like 覚える and 持つ.

52. 分かりづらいことばかり言う人に嫌悪感が覚える。

To feel disgust towards people who only say things that are difficult to understand.

53. 自己嫌悪に ^{おちい} 陥 ^る。

To despise oneself.

54. 自分の母親の殺人に対して嫌悪を持つのは ^{にんじょう} 人 ^情 というものだ。

It's only human nature to hold hatred against the murderer of your own mother.

55. 世界中の人々は ^{ざんこく} 残 ^酷 さを嫌悪すべきだ。

Everyone in the world should abhor cruelty.

毛嫌いする

^{けぎら} 毛 ^嫌 い する is commonly used in the spoken language. This word, though, has the particular nuance of hating something for no particular reason.

56. ^{なま} 怠 ^け 者を毛嫌いしたほうがいい。

It's best to hate lazy people.

57. インテリを毛嫌いするのですか。

Do you detest intellectuals?

58. わけもなく村上春樹さんの小説を毛嫌いする人はバカだね。

Those that hate Murakami Haruki's novels for no reason are stupid, aren't they?

Person Note: 村上春樹 is one of the current most renowned authors of Japanese literature.

不愉快

Although not necessarily hatred, 不愉快, the antonym of 愉快, shows that something is not pleasant at all and can put you in a bad mood. The reason why it is mentioned is because in contexts like the last example, it really is akin to "hate". Most of the time, it is typically equivalent to "disgusted" and "unpleasant". This word is also used frequently in the spoken language.

59. ちょっと不愉快な思いをした。

I was a bit disgusted.

60. 不愉快な現実を認めなければなりません。

You must recognize the unpleasant reality.

61. 不愉快な人と話すのはいやだね。

Speaking to unpleasant people is awful, isn't it?

62. 本当に不愉快なやつだね、黒田君は。

He's really a pain, that Kuroda.

憎悪

This word is rather literary, but it shows a very violent hatred, which is why it might be left more so to writing because of its potency.

63. 憎悪に満ちた目で睨む。

To stare down with eyes full of revulsion.

64. 人種差別を憎悪する。

To hate racial discrimination.

65. 憎悪の炎を燃やす。

To fuel the flames of abhorrence.

66. 公開の場で憎悪の感情を抑えなくてははいけない。

You must control your feelings of hatred in public.

67. 憎悪に^か駆られてはならない。

You can't get caught up in anger.

68. 憎悪で狂ったように人を^{なぐ}殴ったり蹴ったりしてしまう。

To end up beating up and kicking people in a fit of mad rage.

忌む

This is by all means a literary word, but one usage other than "abhor" that this word has is "to be taboo", which is quite unlike the rest although semantically related.

69. 忌むべき者の^{かがりび}篝火

Bonfire of the damned

70. 国民は^{かくしん}革新を忌む方がよい。

It is best for the citizens to abhor the notion of revolution.

71. 日本人が死に通じるとして四を忌むことはアメリカ人でも知っている。

Even Americans know about the Japanese hating the number four because it correlates to death.

Word Note: 忌み嫌う is also possible and means "to detest/abhor", too. Just view it as a combination of 忌む and 嫌う.

厭う

^{いと}厭う means "to begrudge", but its negative form means "willing". Since ～ない is used, this positive definition might be a surprise. This is the negative of "to

begrudge". So, it is literally "to not begrudge in". This is normally spelled in かな. It is also important to note that this word is very literary. In fact, any word with 厭 is going to be uncommon and literary.

72. 彼女は手を差し出すこともいとわない。

She is willing to lend a hand.

73. 彼は 要 請 に 応 じることをいといません。

He is willing to answer to our requests.

74. 世をいとうな。

Hate not the world.

75a. お体をご自愛ください。

75b. お体おいとください。

Please be careful to not cause yourself any harm.

厭わしい

Like its verb form 厭う, 厭わしい is very literary. Its meaning is similar to it as it means "detestable/deplorable". The following sentence would be a good way to intelligently insult someone with class in one's word choice.

76. あの顔を見ることさえ厭わしい。

Just looking at that face is deplorable.

厭悪

This is a very literary word meaning "detestation". The first sentence shows just how complicated a context with this word may be. It is important to note, though, that in reality when a word of hatred is used in a piece of literature, the surrounding context is likely to have more hate related words.

77. 双方ともに、自らの側に絶対不可分にして圧倒的な正義のあることをつねづね主張

し、当然の嫌悪を抱いて相手の底 ^{そこし} 知れぬ ^{じゃあく} 邪悪に、その野望、冷酷さ、 ^{はいしん} 背信、
^{いんぼう} 陰謀の数々に ^{えんお} 厭悪の ^{まなざ} 眼差しを向けていた。

I always insisted on what was completely mutually inseparable from my own side and overwhelmingly righteous, and I naturally held hatred and gazed upon my enemy's bottomless evil, that ambition, the cruelty, the treachery, and the endless numbers of conspiracy in abhorrence.

From 智慧の林檎.

78. 厭悪の眼差し

Gaze of detestation

ごび

語尾

by definition can refer to any terminal/final ending that attaches to a word/phrase. However, this is not normally what the word refers to. Rather, it typically refers to interjectory particles that show all sorts of **emotions/moods** to naturalize utterances. However, you have to know how to use them correctly.

The Final Particle わ

わ is more **colloquial**--used in casual speech--than よ with gender restrictions based on tone. If **high**, it is associated with standard **feminine speech**. If low, it is associated with ^{かんさいべん} 関西弁 in which both men and women use it frequently. It may also list things with exclamation; this isn't necessarily feminine.

1. 本当に ^{こま} 困ったわ。

I'm really troubled.

2. まあ、^{すてき} 素敵だわ。

Well, that's great.

3. 行くわよ。

I'm going!

Usage Note: ~わよ is **very feminine**. Extremely feminine and extremely masculine expressions are in somewhat of a decline in favor of more gender neutral ones. They are also not going to be used in polite speech.

4. バンが ^{こわ} 壊れるわ、^{さんざん} 乗り上げるわ、散々な一日だった。

The van broke, I got stranded, and I've had a day!

Particle Note: The sentence above is a great example of the usage of particles as filler words after clauses mentioned in the last section.

5. あの事は何れ東京へ出たら、逢った上で話を付けらあ。

I'll talk about that once having going to Tokyo anyway and met (with him).

From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Contraction Note: ～らあ is a contraction of ～るわ and is equivalent to ～るなあ in this context.

Historical Note: わ is an evolved form of は.

The Final Particle な

1. な is for the most part the masculine version of ね. However, females have begun to use it as well, particularly those that are seen as being stronger than the average woman. This should not be used in polite situations.

6. おれ な、^{こんど}今 度 な、勝つんだ。

I, uh, this time, will win.

7. あのな、こっちではな、酒はいけないんだ。(説教的な言い方)

Um, you mustn't drink sake here, you know.

8. 懐いなあ。

How nostalgic/it's been good to see you again.

Word Note: 懐い is a colloquial contraction of 懐かしい.

9. いやだな。

What a pain!

10. 君が来ないと、つまらないなあ。

If you don't come, it'll be boring.

11. ^{だれ}誰 か来たな。

Someone came, didn't they?

12. 罪人はお前だな。

The sinner is you, isn't it!

13. あんたあ見ると、^{あぶ}危^{つか}なつかしくて^{つか}疲^{つか}れるな～。

When I look at you, I get all unsteady and tired.

Spelling Note: あ shows that は was dropped.

2. Placed after the ^{しゅうしけい}終止形 (the end form) of a verb to show a strong negative command.

14. そんなことをするな。

Don't do such a thing!

15. 行くな！

Don't go!

16. それをすんな！

Don't do it!

Contraction Note: ～るな is often contracted to ～んな. Even if a verb doesn't end in the sound, ん is often inserted before な. So, things 話すんな are becoming more common. Again, don't use these contractions in polite situations.

3. After the ^{れんようけい}連用形 of a verb to make a rude command. This is from the contraction of ～なさい, which we know is used to make a polite command. Don't confuse this with the second usage! This is technically not a 語尾, but it is being mentioned as it is often confused for the previous な.

17. 行きな！

Go!

18. やってみな！

Try it!

19. ちょっとこっちに来な。

Come here for a moment.

The Final Particle と

There are three very different usages of the final particle と.

1. In a question with a high intonation, it presents a demanding question. This is used in casual or vulgar speech.
2. In っと it is used to declare something with a light tone. It is used in plain speech.
3. とさ is used with polite endings in story-telling.

Examples

20. 何だと!? (Vulgar/casual)

WHAT!?

21. いやだと？

You say no!?

22. 知らねーっと。(Vulgar; slang)

I don't know.

23. 二人で ^{しあわ}幸 ^くせに暮らしましたとさ。

And they lived happily ever after.

24. やめたいだと？

You want to quit!?

Grammar Note: だと is allowed here because it is acting as a final particle.

The Final Particle の

The final particle の is becoming more unisex in appeal, but guys should be careful with their tone of voice. As said earlier, it can show a decisiveness/confirmation, reasoning with a low pitch, and question with a high pitch. Patterns that are particularly feminine include (な) のよ, のね, and の！.

25. やりたくないの！（Feminine）

I don't want to do it!

26. 休みなのよ。（Feminine）

It's a break!

27. 宿題（を）忘れたの？

You forgot your homework?

28. ああ、そうだったの。（A little feminine）

Ah, was that so?

29. やはりだめだったのね。（Feminine）

It was bad as expected, wasn't it?

30. 明日来ないの。

You're not coming tomorrow?

31. 仕事があったんじゃないの？

Didn't you have work?

32. 強い男は泣かないの。

Strong guys don't cry.

33. おお、まことか、よく来たの。(Old person)

Oh, it's you Makoto, good of you to come.

Speech Style Note: The last sentence sounds like it came from an old person. よき来たな is a more masculine yet more common way to say it. よき来たね is more gender neutral. As you can see, it's different from the other sentences above.

The Final Particle さ

さは a signature feature of Tokyo speech and is the Japanese equivalent to the overuse of "like" in English. Don't use this in polite speech. This is very casual, and the usage is rather random based on region and age. The people most likely to use it are young people in and around the capital area (しゅとけん 首都圏).

34. 東京は本当にきれいさ。

Tokyo is like really pretty.

35. 明日はさ、土曜だからさ、休みなんだ。

Tomorrow is, um, cause it's Saturday, we're going to be on break.

36. 何さ、あんなやつめ！

What the, that guy!

Grammar Note: さ is typically not placed after だ as the first example demonstrates. However, many speakers don't follow this.

The Particle ぞ

ぞ is very casual and at times harsh. ぞ, which is associated with masculine speech, creates a casual yet strong assertive emphasis. It may also be used to make a rhetorical question. Its role as being strongly masculine is in decline, but

it is still used frequently, just not with as much of the gender baggage. You should not use this in polite speech.

37. これで話は決^きまったぞ。

With this talk it's settled.

38. 何か変^{へん}だぞ。

Something's strange.

39. 今しないと、失^{しつぱい}敗するぞ。

If you don't do it now, you'll fail!

40. とにかく家へ帰るぞ。

Anyway, I'm going home.

41. 勉強しなかったから、テストに合^{ごうかく}格しなかったんだぞ。

It's because you didn't study that you didn't pass your test!

42a. だれ^{だれ}もそんなこと信^{しん}じないよ。

42b. 誰がそんなことを信じるのか？

42c. 誰がそんなことを信じようぞ。(Very old-fashioned)

Who would believe such a thing?

43a. あれは^{なにもの}何者ぞ。(Very old-fashioned)

43b. あいつは何者だ？(More natural)

Who is that?

Phrasing Note: Using ぞ in making a rhetorical question is old-fashioned and verging on being archaic. Rephrasing it out is more natural.

The Final Particle ぜ

ぜ rudely and or forcefully pushes an idea. Due to this, it is only appropriate in casual conversation and should never be used with your superiors (in a typical situation). Only if you and your superior(s) are drunk should you ever use it; that is unless you're quitting.

ぜ has historically been extremely masculine, but it is now not completely out of the norm for female speakers to use it among themselves. This, though, may make them look unfeminine. Strong female bodybuilders can use ぜ just like a rough playing boy child in a schoolyard.

It is because of these reasons why experience in hearing them used is the best way to truly know the full realm of their usage.

44. 雪だぜ。

It's snow!

45. 行くぜ！

Let's go!

Origin Note: ぜ is the contraction of ぞえ。

The Final Particle え

Although no longer common, え is used to either to call for someone or push an idea for questioning something. It's often in the pattern ぞえ。 You might hear something with this in it in some old-fashioned drama.

46. 行くぞえ。

Let's go!

47. お ^{かみ}上 さんえ (Old-fashioned)

Missus!

Spelling Note: ぞえ and ぞえ are both common spellings, and the pattern is still common among many speakers. It's just that using the particle in any other situation is very uncommon.

Table of Contents

第96課: 語尾 III: かな, かしら, じゃん, い, け, が, こと, たら, & や

Yes, there are more 語尾. There are even more out there in dialects and Classical Japanese that you will one day encounter. へへへ。

The Final Particles かな & かしら

かな = "I wonder" and is a colloquial variant of 〜でしょう. 〜ないかな shows wishful thinking by stressing desire for something to happen already. かしら is a feminine version.

1. 終わるかな。

I wonder if it's going to end.

2. 悲しいかな。

How sad!

3. まど
窓 を開けてくれないかな。

Could you open up the window?

Nuance Note: As demonstrated, かな may also elicit a request to people familiar/close to you.

4. しゃべ
喋 りすぎたのじゃないかしら。

I'm afraid I did chatter too much.

5. どのくらい雪が積^つもったかしらね。

I wonder how much snow accumulated.

6. どうかしら？

How does it look?

7. これをいただけるかしら？

May I take this?

9. ^{だいじょうぶ}大丈夫かしら。

I wonder if he's OK.

10. あの男、^{だれ}誰かしら。

I wonder who that man is.

11a. 売らんかなの^{せんでん}宣伝 (慣用句)

11b. 売ってなんぼの姿勢が見え隠れする宣伝 (普通の言い方)

Exploitation/sales talk

Phrase Note: 売らんかな is a set phrase made up of the verb 売る (to sell), the auxiliary verb ～ん, which is a contraction of ～む (a Classical ending that shows guess here), and かな.

13. 「トルコで^{もっと}最も危険な道路」と言われるのもむべなるかなである。

It's also plausible that it's called "the most dangerous road in Turkey".

From 雨天炎天 by 村上春樹.

Phrase Note: むべなるかな is a set phrase made up an old 形容動詞 in its 連体形, むべなる, which is equivalent to もっともな (plausible; quite right), followed by かな.

果^はたせるかな means "just as expected". It is interchangeable with 果たして, but it may be confusing to some simply because it has かな in it.

14. {果たせるかな・案の^{じょう}定・思った通り} ^{こころ}試みはことごとく ^{しつぱい}失敗したんだ。

As expected, the experiment failed altogether.

The Final Particle じゃん

じゃん started out as a contraction of じゃないか. Once it reached Tokyo, it reached national stardom. Unlike what it came from, it is quite casual and is by no means blunt.

15. あしもと
足元が危なっかしいじゃん?

Isn't your footing unsteady?

Word Note: 危なっかしい is not a typo of 危ない (dangerous). The word is very similar and refers to a situation that is either unsteady or dangerous. It is very similar to the word "precarious".

16. いいじゃん。

Isn't that good?

The Final Particle い

い is quite explosive and normally rude. It is almost always used by guys but is most importantly used by people of high temperament. It is often seen after だ, や, or じゃ and is also seen often after the 命令形.

17. 当たり前だぜい。

That is obvious!

18. おい、こりゃ何だい？

Hey, what is this!?

19. 何か飲むかい？

Will you drink anything?

20. こりゃ何じゃい？

What's that?

Etymology Note: This particle comes from the particle よ. よ → え → い.

The Final Particle け

(っ) け is casually used in attempt to recall something by jogging one's memory and perhaps also the listener(s). つけ can only follow either the plain non-past or the plain or polite past forms. So, ですつけ isn't used. It is most often used with the plain forms, probably due to the fact that it is a contraction. However, with adjectives and verbs in the non-past, んだ is almost always inserted. So, you will see 新しいんだっけ but not 新しいっけ. This, though, may be acceptable in certain dialects.

This restriction stems from the fact that its usage with the past tense has a much longer history. -た can show confirmation in sentences like "what was his name?". Obviously the person's name hasn't changed, but we still use the past tense form of the verb.

Similarly, with interrogatives it solicits a response from the listener, whether it's something that the listener(s) have actually said before or not. Some situations, then, require the past tense. For instance, if you're recalling an event that's already happened, だっけ is wrong.

Examples

21. よくけんか^{けんか}喧嘩したっけねえ。

We often bickered, didn't we?

22. このパンはもうしょうみきげん^{しょうみきげん}賞味期限が切れてるんだっけ？

Isn't this bread already passed the expiration date?

23. いつ ^{ぞう} 象 ^{つか} を 捕 まえたっけ？

When did you catch the elephant?

24. アメリカでは、^{ぜいきん} 税 金 が去年ぐーんと引き上げられたっけ。

Weren't taxes raised straight up in America last year?

25. いつだ (った) っけ。

When is it?

Historical Note: ～たっけ comes from ～たりけり. It does not come from ～たかえ. 「かえ」 is now old-fashioned, but it used to be and still is a feature of Eastern Japanese dialects. It is similar used to confirm information or question, similar to かい without the vulgarity.

26. 出来たかえ。

Could you do it?

From ^{わがはい} 我 輩 は猫である by 漱石.

Dialect Note: In some dialects け can be a ruder or typical version of か.

27. これ要るけ。(京都弁)

Do you need this?

Also, in some dialects け → かいな. In Standard Japanese, though, this is an old ending that stresses a thought with a sense of doubt or is a contraction of そうかな.

28. やったかいな (京都弁) = やったっけ

The Final Particle が

1. The final particle が shows malice by speaking ill of someone. This usage is very rude and may cause sharp backlashes.

29. ガキめが！

You brat!

2. The final particle が may hint at one's own thoughts rather than what's at hand.

30. 今日はもう閉店なんですが。

But we're already closed for today. (Polite)

31. 引っ越せばよかったんだが。

It would be good if we had moved, but...

32. 僕も注意したんだが。

I also warned them, but...

33. もしもし、鈴木ですが。

Hello, this is Suzuki. (Polite)

34. 社長が呼びですが。(Respectful)

The company president has called for you.

The Final Particle こと

The final particle こと is not the nominal noun 事. It has quite a few uses.

- Shows a practical yet somewhat harsh command most often used by superiors.
- Shows slightly deep emotion in feminine speech.
- Shows a slight feeling of questioning in feminine speech.
- ことよ softens an affirmative statement in feminine speech.

Use the definitions above to figure out which usage is being used in the following examples.

35. めずらしい動物だこと。

It's a rare animal!

36. もういいこと！

Isn't it already OK?

37. 金を返すこと！

Pay back the money!

38. とにかくあやま謝ること！

Anyhow, apologize!

The Final Particle たら

This たら brings up something to someone's attention with a sense of surprise, criticism, or impatience. This has nothing to do with the conditionals, but don't be surprised when you hear it. It's not a good thing if such a statement is directed to you.

39. やめてったら！

Stop that!

40. だまってたら！

Shut it!

The Final Particle や

The final particle や has 4 usages.

- Expresses urgency to people or below one's status. In masculine speech this can be used to coax action similarly to "shall we".

- Lightly declares. This could be out of an array of emotions.
- Expresses exclamation.
- Used to call a person/thing one has a close relationship or an underling. By elderly people, this can be used to soften the tone.
- Expresses a feeling of urgency and is used to people of equal or below your status.

Examples

41. お祖父さんや、今日はあなたの 誕生日ですよ。

Today's your birthday, my dear old man.

42. まあ、座れや。(Old person; dialectical)

Well, sit down.

43. そんなこと、知らなかったや。

I had no idea about that.

44. こりゃええや。(Dialectical)

This is good.

45. まあいいや。

Ahh, forget it.

46. おそろしいや。

That's scary!

Multiple 語尾

You will often see more than one 語尾 at once. There are several important combinations that you should be aware that you can make. Exact combinations

may not be common in some parts of Japan. Plus, there are plenty of interjectory particles that are very regional.

かね

かな is the combination of か and な. かね is also possible. It works the same way as かな, but it is definitely more common in certain age groups and or dialects in Japanese. It can also be used to soften a criticism like in "どうしてそんなことをしているのかね?". It is softer than かな.

がな

This comes from the archaic particle もがな, which shows wishful thinking. This is equivalent to といいなあ. がな is still occasionally used. It may also be dialectal to emphasize (a reminder).

47. もう^す済んだがな！

It should already be done!

かい

かい is a more harsh version of か. Its use is declining and can be associated with foreigner speech as learners tend to overuse it.

48. もういいのかい。

Isn't it already OK?

やい

やい is used to harshly call out for someone. It may also be used as an interjection instead of as a final particle. It may also be used to show a curt statement.

い く じ
49. 意気地なしやい！

You coward!

50. 俺じゃねーやい！

It's not me!

51. 高田君やい！

Takada!

わい

わい is typical of (older) male speech, and it is more common in dialectical speech, especially in West Japanese Dialects. This ending shows exclamation.

52. こんな老人を目の前にして「お墓」の一語をさらりと口に出すというのはなかなか良い根性をしておるわいと平岡は思い一転して愉快的気分になってきた。

Having such an old man in front of his eyes without hesitation express the word "grave" shows good tenacity, Hiraoka thought, and in turn, he came to feel delightful.

From 不可能 by 松浦寿輝.

53. 困ったことだわい。

I'm troubled.

54. そんなことないわい。

That's not it at all.

Other Important Combinations

There are still more combinations. よ is often followed by ね and な. わ is often followed by よ and ね. い is seen all the time after ぜ and ぞ. If 語尾 have opposing usages, they aren't going to be used together. You may hear のね but not のな. Many combinations are often limited to certain regions of Japan.

Table of Contents

第97課: ～てしまう

～ てしまう is an extremely important ending. It is often described as showing perfected actions or things done on accident, but what does this actually mean and is there more to it? This lesson will discuss the nuances that it has as well as important variants used in every speech of it.

～てしまう

Spelling and Other Meanings

The verb しまう either means "to end" or "to keep/put back". In 漢字, you might see it spelled as 仕舞う, 終う, or 了う. As you can imagine, the latter two spellings are perfect fits for its meaning of "to end". The only time when you should take this verb literally when after て is when there is an intentional pause. Then, you have to be careful about what other possible homophonous phrases fit--especially when listening.

Take for instance this classic demonstration in Japanese linguistics concerning this very thing.

1. 変態な本を読んで、しまった。

I read a perverted book, and (then) I put it up.

2. 変態な本を読んでしまった。

I accidentally read a perverted book.

The 3 Nuances of ～てしまう

So, what is ～てしまう? It sadly doesn't have one meaning. There are basically three ways it is used. Intonation plays a role in discerning whether しまう is

supplementary or not. When supplementary, you get the pattern ～てしまう, which has one of the three meanings below.

1. To show a sense of regret/surprise when you did have volition in doing something, but it turned out to be bad to do. This can also be sarcastically and cleverly used in a positive attitude while still being natural. Sexual relations come to mind.
2. To show perfective/punctual achievement. This shows that an action has been completed. It should not be used with something like ～そうだ, which is a nonfactual speech modal.
3. To show unintentional action--"accidentally". Often used with adverbs like うっかり (absentmindedly) and ぐうぜんに (unexpectedly).

Clarification Notes:

1. Statives (verbs that show state not action) can be used with ～てしまう too. However, they are not perfective in any sense. When put together, the perfective is never expressed. Rather, it goes back to point 1.
2. It's important to view these usages as instances of the same thing interpreted differently in context because there are cases where more than one reading is possible. At times, all three can be meant together. In "うっかり花瓶を割ってしまった", the act of breaking the vase is perfective. It could have been accidentally broken. Plus, you could feel regret over having broken it.

Examples

1. スープは^さ冷めてしまっている。

My soup has gotten cold.

2. あの^{いす}子供はのろのろと椅子から立ち上がった後、^{とつぜん}突然^{たお}倒れてしまったよ。

That kid over there suddenly collapsed after he rose up sluggishly from the chair.

3. ^{こいびと}恋人たちは二人でサンバを^{おど}踊らなくなってしまった。

The couple ended up not dancing the samba together.

4. ^{かびん}花瓶を^{こわ}壊してしまって、^{ばつ}罰を^{のが}逃れたい。

I accidentally broke the vase, and I hope I don't get punished.

More literally: I accidentally broke the vase, and I want to escape punishment.

5. 窓を閉めなかったので、風邪を引いてしまいました。

I didn't close the window, and so I caught a cold.

6. ^{なつふく}夏服を^{おいしい}押し入れにしまった。

I put my summer clothes in the closet.

7. 明日までにレポートを書いてしまいます。

I'll finish writing the report by tomorrow.

8. お金を使ってしまった。

I regrettably used the money.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 宿題をしてしまいました。
2. I ate them all.
3. 僕の車が故障してしまった。
4. 眠ってしまった。
5. To keep information back.

～ てしまう may be contracted to -ちゃう (playful) or -ちまう (vulgar/mature men). These forms are voiced as ～じゃう and ～じまう respectively when て is used with certain 五段 verbs.

食べてしまう → 食べちゃう	見てしまう → 見ちゃう	呼んでしまう → 呼んじゃう
読んでしまう → 読んじゃう	死んでしまう → 死んじゃう	ばれてしまう → ばれちゃう
着てしまう → 着ちゃう	切ってしまう → 切っちゃう	してしまう → しちゃう

Grammar Note: The use of slang and polite speech is usually improper, but there are times when these casual forms are used in familiar polite speech, but this would be most common by children and women than men.

Examples

9, 見る見るうちに ^{ろうじん} 老人 になっちゃった！

In the blink of an eye, I turned into an old person!

10. ガソリンが切れちゃった。 ^{もより} 最寄の (ガソリン) スタンドまで ^{ひ ぱ} 引っ張っててもらえる？

I ran out of gas. Could you tow me to the nearest gas station?

11. その本を読んじゃいました。

I finished reading that book.

12. 犬が ^{くる} 狂 っちゃった。

The dog went crazy.

13. 中国語かと思っちゃった。

I mistook it for Chinese.

14. ^{さいふ}財布を忘れちゃったよ。

I forgot my wallet.

15. どうして空き地にし {てしま・ちゃ} わないのか。

Why won't they make it into an empty lot?

16. ^{ふちゅうい}不注意から^{おと}カップを落しちゃった。

I accidentally spilled the cup due to carelessness.

17. とても熱かったから、口を^{やけど}火傷しちゃった。

Because it was very hot, I accidentally scalded my mouth.

関西弁: ～て（し）もた

The 関西弁 version is so commonly seen in manga and anime that not mentioning it would do you a disservice. しまった and しもた share the same origin. ～た instead attached to the 終止形. This produced しまうた. The vowel sequence au simplified to a long o in Western dialects, and this was then shortened in this phrase and many others. The し is then dropped in even more colloquial speech.

18. 忘れて（し）もた！

I completely forgot!

19. 買って（し）もた。

I accidentally bought it.

関西弁の音便 (Kansai Dialect Sound Change): かって → こうて.

はめになる

This phrase is equivalent to "end up; wind up; (come down) to". はめ may be written in 漢字 as 羽目 or 破目. はめ in this case actually means "bind" as in an awkward situation.

20. 彼は言いなりになるはめになった。

He ended up giving in to him.

21. 僕は ^{ばっきん}罰金 ^{しはら}を支払うはめになった。

I ended up paying a fine.

22. ねずみは ^{おぼ}溺れるはめになった。

The mouse ended up drowning.

23. 疑うはめになる。

To come to suspect.

Table of Contents

Key

Practice

1. I (have) completed by homework.
2. 全部食べてしまった。
3. My car broke down.
4. I accidentally slept.
5. 情報をしまっておく。

第98課: Want & Feeling: ～たい, ほしい, & ～がる

Your wants and feelings are different from those of your friends'. Japanese differentiates between conditions that are fact or speculation.

I/He/She Wants...

When you "want **to do** something", use the auxiliary ～たい after the 連用形 of verbs.

一段	食べたい	五段	飲 み たい	する	したい	来る	来 来 たい
----	------	----	---------------	----	-----	----	---------------

When you "want something", use the adjective ほしい. The suffix ～がる attaches to the stems of both ～たい and ほしい to show the wants of others. An exception to this is narration, which we'll look at in this lesson as well.

I want to do	He/She wants to do	I want	He/She wants
が・を...たい	を...た がる	...がほしい	...をほし がる

～たい conjugates as a 形容詞. ～がる conjugates as a 五段活用動詞.

Plain Speech	～たい	～たがる	ほしい	ほしがる
Negative	～たくない	～たがらない	ほしくない	ほしがらない
Past	～たかった	～たがった	ほしかった	ほしがった
Negative	～たくなかつ	～たがらなかつ	ほしくなかつ	ほしがらなかつ
Past	た	た	た	た

Be careful to not confuse ほしかった and ほしがった. Also, remember that polite speech is the same and that at times you may want to use the progressive with ～がる, ～がっている, when showing a state of wanting.

Particle Note: Although が should be used with ～たい, を is acceptable with transitive verbs. Although informal and to some improper, ～をほしい is also sometimes seen.

Person Note: As for second person, second person is normally used in questions, and you do not use ～がる. That's because you would be making a question about someone's wanting. Things like ～たいでしょう could be used to indirectly used to express second person want without sounding rude or too direct.

漢字 Note: ～度い is an old and rare 漢字 spelling of ～たい.

～たい is used to show one's own want to do something, to ask about someone's wants, or to show what people **in general** want. With ～がる it shows other's wants.

1. 映画を^み観に行きたいです。

I want to go see a movie.

2. 学校に行きたくないよ。

I don't want to go to school!

3. 新しいプリンターがほしいです。

I want a new printer.

4. 東京に行きたいですか。

Do you want to go to Tokyo?

5. 子供が食事を食べたがらない。

My child doesn't want to eat dinner.

6. 日本に旅行したいですか。

Do you want to travel to Japan?

7. 何 {が・を} 食べたい? (Plain)

What do you want to eat?

8. 彼女はアイスクリームを食べたがっている。

She/he wants to eat ice cream.

9. ^{だれ} ^{かみ} ^{しん}
誰でも神を信じたがります。

Everyone wants to believe in God.

Grammar Note: ～たがる is used here because this is a general statement that may not be 100% true. ～がる gives a sense that someone/ feels or thinks that way.

～たい {の・ん} ですが: Asking for Advice

When you are asking for advice on something you would like to do, it is best to use ～たい with ～のですが・んですが to be more polite. It is also more indirect, and what may or may not follow is something like 何がいいでしょうか.

10. お土産を買いたいんですが、何がいいでしょうか。

I'd like to buy a souvenir, but what would be good?

11. テレビを買いしたいんですが、どちらがいいでしょうか。

I'd like to buy a TV, but which would be good?

12. 温泉に行きたいのですが、どこがいいでしょうか。

I'd like to go to an onsen, but where is good?

～てほしい

～てほしい shows that you "want something done/to happen".

13. 毎日チャレンジしてほしい。

I would like for you to challenge yourselves every day.

14. 山田さんに話してほしいんですか。

Do you want me to talk to Mr. Yamada?

15. 何かアドバイスしてほしいのですが...

We'd like you to give us some sort of advice, but...

16. 彼女にきれいでいてほしい。

I want her to stay beautiful.

17. 新しいスーツがほしいな。

I'd like a new suit.

18. その本を^{かえ}返してほしい。

I want the book back.

When ほしい is in the past tense, it shows regret that something didn't happen.

19. 彼氏にだけは分かってほしかった。

I only wanted my boyfriend to understand.

20. もっと早く来てほしかった。

I wanted you to have come earlier.

In showing someone's wish for something to happen, ほしい is followed by ~と思う or ~と思っている with the latter imperative for third person.

21. ^{おや}親は私に大学へ行ってほしいと思っています。

My parents are wishing for me to go to college.

22. 復活してほしいと思う。

I wish for it to revive.

～ てほしい, even when polite, is not the most polite way to tell someone that you would like them do to something for you. In this case you are implying that you are to be receiving a favor, and therefore, ～てもらいたい (～ていただきたい being more honorific) would be most appropriate.

23. 銀行へ行ってきてもらいたいんですが。

I would like you to go to the bank.

24. 先生に参加していただきたいんですが。

We'd like you to attend, Professor.

25. 彼らは私に出て行ってもらいたいと思っています。

They would like for me to leave.

26. 私たちに何か ^{ちゅうこく} 忠告 してほしいのですが。

We would like you to give us some advice.

In the third person ～てもらいたい and ～ていただきたい should be ～てもらいたがっている and ～ていただきたいがっている respectively. The latter is not that common because of the humble nature of the verb いただく. But, one way to not have to use ～がる in this case is to use an alternative modal such as ～そうだ, which can also mean "to seem".

27. チェンさんは町田さんにこのビラを読んでもらいたがっています。

Mr. Chen would like Mr. Machida to read this flyer.

28. 学生たちは相田先生にもテレビに出ていただきたいそうです。

The students would like (for) Professor Aida to appear on TV.

Particle Note: In honorific speech にも may follow the subject to be more **indirect**.

With the Negative

For the negative, ～たい changes to ～たくない. For ほしい, you may see ～ないでほしい or ～ほしくない. The first gives an explicit request. ～てほしくない just states implicitly that you don't want something to be done or happen. Consequently, the latter sounds much softer. ～ないでほしい places emphasis on what you don't want to hear, see, etc. The first is like "I want you to not..." and the second is like "I don't want...to...".

- せいか
29. 政治家にならないでほしい。

I want you to not become a politician.

30. 誰にもできたと知らせないでほしい。

I want you to not inform anyone that I was able to do it.

31. 雨が降ってほしくない。

I don't want it to rain.

32. 家族がいることを忘れてほしくないわ。(Feminine)

I don't want you to forget that you have a family.

More Examples

- 33a. そんなことまでしたくはないよ。

- 33b. そんなに遠くまで行きたくはないよ。(With the literal definition of "to go")

I don't want to go that far.

- とざん
34. 彼らは登山しに行ったかが知りたい。

I want to know whether they went mountain climbing.

35. イギリスまでこの手紙を出したいんです。

I want to mail these letters to England.

36. もっと自由が欲しい。

I want more freedom.

37. これに何を書きたいんですか。

What do you want to write on this?

38. 彼に政治家になってもらいたい。

I want him to be a politician.

39. 彼女に来てもらいたくない。

I don't want her coming.

40. ふつうよきん
普通預金を始めたいんですが。

I'd like to start an ordinary savings account.

Culture Note: Money may be deposited and withdrawn anytime you like with

ふつうよきん ていきよきん
a 普通預金. 定期預金 is a fixed deposit and a savings deposit is a 積み立て
よきん
預金.

41. ほうこくしょ こんど
報告書は今度はもうすこし早く出してほしいのよ。聞してる? (Feminine)

I want you to turn in your report a little earlier next time, you hear?

42. ごまんさんぜんえんお
五万三千元降ろしたいんですが。

I want to withdraw 53,000 yen.

43. 私たちはさんぱく
三泊したいです。

We want to stay three nights.

44. もし私が金持ちなら、^{しろ}城を買いたい。

If I were rich, I would want to buy a castle.

45. ソウルに行ってみたい。

I want to try to go to Seoul.

Grammar Note: ～てみたい should be used instead of ～たい when you are trying to say that you want to attempt to do something.

46a. クリントンと会いたいです。

46b. クリントンに会ってみたいです。

It wouldn't be surprising for another politician very close to Clinton to say this. On the other hand, if they're on opposing sides and proximity isn't granted, ～てみたい may still be better.

Practice (1): If in Japanese, translate to English. If in English, translate to Japanese.

1. 医者になりたかったが、なれなかった。
2. コーヒーがとても飲みたい。
3. I want to watch Kabuki. (Polite speech)
4. Do you want to go to Nara? (Polite speech)
5. 彼女は猫をほしがっています。
6. 私は新しいビデオゲームが本当にほしいです。
7. I want to eat sushi.
8. 着物がほしい。
9. 言いたいことがあります。
10. ちょっと休みたい。

^{おや}親は私が大学へ行ってほしいと思っています。

My parents are wishing for me to go to college.

The Suffix ～がる

For adjectives that are sensitive to personal emotion, ～がる is attached to the stem to refer to someone else. For phrases such as ^{つか}疲れた (tired), phrases like ～ようだ are used instead.

Sad	悲しい	To seem sad	悲しがる
Happy	嬉しい	To seem happy	嬉しがる
Embarrassing	恥ずかしい	To seem embarrassed	恥ずかしがる
Scared	怖い	To seem scared	怖がる
New	新しい	To be fond of new things	新しがる
Rare	珍しい	To seem rare	珍しがる
Want to...	-たい	To seem to want	-たがる

Grammar Note: ～がる is sometimes followed by ～屋 in the 連用形 to show a type of nature. Notice that this ending is not inherently third person, but for many emotional condition adjectives, it's used that way.

47a. ^は恥ずかしい！

47b. はずい。(Slang/casual)

I'm embarrassed!

48. 彼が恥ずかしがっているみたいだね。

He seems embarrassed.

49. 彼女は知りたがります。

She seems to want to know.

50. みんな嬉しがっています。

Everyone seems happy.

51. ^{ふしぎ}不思議がる。

To marvel.

52. うすぎ いき
薄着で粋がる。

To put on airs in light clothing.

53. 患者が痛がる。

The patient seems to be in pain.

54. 寒がり^やだから、カナダの暮らしは^く辛^{つら}かった。

Because I'm cold natured, life in Canada was harsh.

55. 暑^{あつ}がり屋だから、テキサスの暮らしはひどく辛かったよ！

Because I'm hot natured, life in Texas was extremely harsh!

56. 僕はクモが怖い。

I'm afraid of spiders!

57. べつにすまなからなくてもいい。

You really don't have to feel sorry.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

Practice (2): Translate into English.

1. 彼女はクモを怖がる。

2. 私はとても悲しいです。

3. 先生は^{ゆうれい}幽^{こわ}霊を怖がります。

4. 彼女は^{いなか}田舎^{いや}に行くのを嫌がります。

5. 彼はとても嬉しがった。

Aside from ～がる

Of course, there are other things you can use. For instance, ～そうだ after the stems of adjectives means "seems....". You may use かもしれない (might) or だろう・でしょう (probably). Of course, there are many other things. At the individual phase level, however, you will see that some things should just never be used for oneself and others that should only be used in reference to others.

58a. 私は怒っている。 △

58b. 私は腹が立っている。 ○

I'm angry.

59. 彼女は私のことを怒っていた。

She was angry at me.

60. いや、（彼は）僕のことを怒ってるかもね。（Casual）

Well, (he) might actually be angry at me.

61. 山田さんはとても悲しそうですね。

Yamada-san seems so sad, doesn't she?

Attribute: No Restrictions

This goes for ～たい as well, words that refer to someone's wants, feelings, are likes doesn't have to be used with a modal of some sort when used as an attribute. This includes when being used with ～のだ. Thankfully there are situations where the first/second and third person grammatical distinctions aren't necessary. This also goes for with situations reflecting on the past where something is already known.

62. 母が好きな食べ物は寿司です。

The food my mother likes is sushi.

63. 若い人たちは海外に出たいのだ。

Young people want to go overseas.

64. 弟はそのごろ韓国に行きたかったです。

My younger brother wanted to go to Korea then.

65. 参加したい人は図書館に行ってください。

Those that want to participate, please go to the library.

66. 日本では ^{うらな} 占 ^し い師に ^{うんせい} 運勢 をみてもらいたい人が多いみたいです。

In Japan, it seems that a lot of people want their fortunes read by fortune-tellers.

67. すぐやりたがる人はいやだ。

People that want to immediately do it are a pain.

Grammar Note: This doesn't give you a 100% free pass to not use 〜がる when the situation calls for it.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1):

1. I wanted to become a doctor, but I couldn't.
2. I really want to drink coffee.
3. 歌舞伎 {が・を} 観たいです。
4. 奈良 {へ・に} 行きたいですか。
5. She wants a cat.
6. I really want a new video game.
7. 寿司 {が・を} 食べたい。
8. I want a kimono.
9. I have something that I want to say.
10. I want to rest a little.

Practice (2):

1. She is afraid of spiders.
2. I am very sad.
3. The teacher is afraid of ghosts.
4. She hates going to the countryside.
5. He seemed very happy.

第99課: Conditionals I: The Particles と, なら(ば), たら, & ば

There are just too many ways to say "if" in Japanese. Take your time.

The Conjunctive Particle と

The conjunctive と can be described with the following.

1. When X happens, Y will happen. For example, "when you turn, there will be a bank".
2. When X happens, Y happens. For example, "when I opened the door, snow came in".
3. When/if..., then... (Certain)

So, "**when X happens, Y happens**". Y is predictable or an unavoidable fact, no if. Even when translated as "if", Y is still certain. So, it's **not correct for requests, judgments, etc.** because they're not 100% certain or irrefutable. It can show warning like in "if you don't leave now, you will be late". In (2), the verb with と is in the non-past, but the main verb is in the past tense because と. In this situation, it's often translated as "when" or "as".

1. 四月になると、^{さくら さ}桜が咲く。

When it becomes April, cherry blossoms will blossom.

2. 先生だと、きっと^と年^{しうえ}上なんじゃないですか。

If he's a teacher, surely he has to be older, right?

3. ^{びょういん}病院に行くと藤原さんがいました。

When I went to the hospital, Mr. Fujiwara was there.

4. 今出かけないと^{おく}遅れるよ。

If you don't depart now, you'll be late.

5. まど あ 窓を開けると、牛が見えます。

When you open the window, you can see cows.

6. 日が のぼ 昇ると、明るくなります。

When the sun rises, it becomes bright.

7. 日が しず 沈むと、暗くなります。

When the sun sets, it becomes dark.

8. こんぶ だし 昆布や何かで出汁を取るといい。

It would be good to gather soup stock with kombu or something.

9. 3に2を た 足すと、5になります。

When we add 2 to 3, we get 5.

10. 雪が ふ 降り始めると、 どうぶつ 動物たちは とうみん 冬眠を始める。

When it begins to snow, the animals begin hibernation.

Practice (1): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. If you warm ice, it melts.

2. 部屋に入るとカーテンを開けた。

3. ボーイフレンドと京都に行きました。

4. ドアを開けると、犬がいた。 まど 窓を開けると、鳥がいた。そして、ゴミ 箱 を開けると、ねずみがいた。

"...と来ると", "...と来ては", and "と来た日 {にや・には}" mean "when it comes to". には → にや is colloquial.

11. おとな 大人 になるときた日にゃ、まったくしょうがない。

It absolutely can't be helped when it comes to becoming an adult.

12. おんがく 音楽 と来るとやはり東方神起です。

When it comes to music, it's definitely Tohoshinki.

Other Usages

These usages are really just extensions of above, but we'll look at them later.

～ようと → [Lesson 80](#) といい → [Lesson 95](#) ～ずと → [Lesson 133](#)

Practice (8): Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. If you warm ice, it melts.

2. へや 部屋に入るとカーテンをあ 開けた。

3. ボーイフレンドと京都に行きました。

4. ドアを開けると、犬がいた。まど 窓を開けると、鳥がいた。そして、ゴミ ばこ 箱を開けると、ねずみがいた。

The Conjunctive Particle なら (ば)

なら may show **advice**. It can show things that would be realistic if something were to ever be the case. なら is called the *contextual conditional* because it is equivalent to "**if you are talking about..., then...**". Overall, なら(ば) is used to give *suggestions, speculation, or requests*. However, it must never show sequence.

13. 中国に行くなら、ばんり ちょうじょう み 万里の長城を見てください。

If you are going to China, please see the Great Wall.

14. カメラを買いたいなら、秋葉原に行った方がいいです。

If you want to buy a camera, it's best to go to Akihabara.

15. ゆうびんきょく 郵便局 に行くなら、60円の切手^{きって}を5枚買ってきてください。

If you are going to the post office, please buy five 60 yen stamps.

16. いいえ、売り切れましたが、自由席^{じゆうせき}ならあります。

No, they are sold out, but we have unreserved seats.

17. どうしてもというなら仕方^{しかた}がない。

If you must, you have no choice.

18. それなら話は早い。

That makes it easy.

19. 仕事を終えたのなら、帰^{かえ}っていいよ。

You may leave provided/providing that you finished your work.

20. 知っているんなら、教えてください。

Providing that you know, please tell me.

Grammar Note: *なら* expresses the speaker's supposition or defines the basis of the statement. There is no required temporal ordering of the two situations presented. So, it can't be used to show a consequence in the past or condition for the future.

Nuance Note: *のなら* is stronger and enforces a confirmation of the content of the condition.

Usage Note: *なら* can also be used as a conjunction at the front of a sentence in broken down speech for *それなら*.

Practice (2): Translate the following.

1. かんこく 韓国 に行くなら (ば)、 ひこうき 飛行機の方がよいです。
2. みなが行くなら、私も行きます。
3. 電車がなければ、歩くまでだ。
4. おおさか 大阪 に行くなら、 しんかんせん 新幹線 がいいですよ。
5. その話なら なんと 何度も聞いているよ。

The Conjunctive Particle たら

1. Shows an unrealized event being hypothesized, not completely certain. It's **often** preceded by もし. In a temporal condition, the next action is to happen after the action with たら. So, something happens **once certain conditions are met**.

21. かいぎ 会議が終わったら、 でんわ 電話 しますね。

I'll call you once the meeting ends, OK?

22. かねも 金持ちになったら、 しろ 城 を買う！

If I were rich, I'd so buy a castle!

23. もし雨が降らなかったら、行きましょう。

If it doesn't rain, let's go.

24. 雨が（降り）やんだら、どこかに行くと決めた。

After it finished raining, we decided to go somewhere.

25. 日本に行けたらいいなあ。

It would be nice if I could go to Japan.

26. もし ちきゅう 地球 に 引力 がなかったら、 くうちゅう 空中 に浮いているでしょう。

If there wasn't gravity on earth, you would probably be floating in the air.

27. 地震が収まったら、正しい情報を聞いてください。

Once an earthquake subsides, get accurate information.

2. When you do X, Y happens. The latter part is typically unexpected.

28. ドアを開けたら、加藤さんが立っていました。

When I opened the door, Mr. Kato was standing there.

29. 本を読んであげたら、弟が喜びました。

When I read the book for my younger brother, he was very happy.

30. 休んだら、元気になった。

When I rested, I got better.

31. 銀行に行ったら、友人に会いました。

When I went to the bank, I saw a friend.

3. Shows an **obvious** conditional. This is a **generic condition**. This means that something is almost always followed by some situation. This "almost always" diction suggests that it is not as certain as と.

32. この会社の社員だったら、あの大学で割引がもらえる。

If you are an employee of this company, you can get a discount at that college.

33. 人を殺したら、死刑になります。

If you kill a person, you'll get the death penalty.

34. 風邪^{かぜ}を引いたら、くしゃみ^でが出ます。

If we catch a cold, we sneeze.

4. (の) だったら emphasizes a topic because of the condition of someone else.

35. やりたくない^いんだったらやめてくれ。 (Vulgar)

If you don't want to do it, stop!

36. お父さん^いだったら部屋^いにいるよ。

If you're talking about dad, he's in the room.

たら may be たらば in formal situations. In hypothetical situations, もし(も) is *almost always* added. Unlike と or なら, たら may be in a hypothetical yet unrealistic gesture. It's also the most common conditional because of its wide usage. However, it's often avoided in formal writing.

The Adverb もし

We saw that in the first usage of たら, もし was always present. もし is related to hypothetical events. If you looked in a Japanese dictionary, you would find a definition similar to the following.

37. ある事^じ態^{たい}を仮^か定^{てい}して述^のべることを^{あらわ}表^{あらわ}す。

It shows an event of hypothesizing and stating a certain condition.

When a clause with たら is used to show a hypothetical condition--where it may or may not happen--it is **usually** used with もし. もし is also used with counter-factual hypothetical statements where the event is extremely unrealistic. Even here, もし simply adds more **uncertainty**.

38. 毎日すしが食べられたら、私は幸せでしょう。

If I could eat sushi every day, I would be very happy.

39. もし雨が降れば私は家にいます。

If it rains tomorrow, I will stay at home.

40. もし私があなただったらすこし待つでしょう。

If I were you, I'd wait a while.

41. もし君が僕の^{たちば}立場だったら、どうしますか？

Suppose you were in my place, what would you do?

The Conjunctive Particle ば

ば creates the *provisional conditional form* with the ^{いぜんけい}已然形. Never confuse this with the potential forms of verbs. There is a **difference** between 買えば and 買えれば. The first is ば with the basic form of the verb, and the second is ば with the potential form of the verb. The chart below shows how to conjugate with the 已然形. You are now responsible to know what this base is.

形容詞	形容動詞	一段	五段	する	来る	である	だ
新しければ	簡単であれば	食べれば	歌えば	すれば	来(く)れば	であれば	ならば

ば shows that ***the previous stated condition's establishment is the condition for the latter stated condition to occur***. This conditional cannot be used when the subject of the first clause is the same as the latter because both can't have volition. This particle is perfect for showing desired result, so it would sound unnatural if the latter clause had some negative in it.

ば may also show the cue for a latter stated recognition or judgment.

42. ほかに意見がなければ、これで終わりましょう。

If you don't have any other opinions, let's end here.

43. まあ、無理^{むり} {なら・であれば}、月曜日までに出してください。

Well, if it's impossibility, turn it in by Monday.

Like たら, it can show generic, temporal, and hypothetical conditions, but it's more forceful and places emphasis on the **future aspect**. The main clause shouldn't suggest with **an action** in the following manner.

44. 京都へ来たら、ぜひ連絡してください。○ 京都へ来れば、ぜひ連絡してください。X

Once you come to Kyoto, please contact me.

The suggestion is to do something once the condition of reaching Kyoto is met. Both conditionals can be followed by expressions reflecting the will of the speaker, but phrases with ば tend to be stronger and directed more specifically on something.

45. お^お押せば、^{ひら}開^{ひら}きます。

It will open once you push it.

46. 冬になれば、雪が降る。

When it becomes winter, snow will fall.

Grammar Note: たら has a sequence requirement, but this "once" nuance of ば focuses on the conditional as the instigator for the latter to occur. So, it is stronger.

47. 都合がよければ、一^{いっしょ}緒^{しよ}に大阪に行きませんか。

How about going to Osaka together if it's convenient with you?

48. じしん 自信があれば なか せいこう 半ば成功 したも どうぜん 同然だ。(Proverb)

Confidence is half the battle.

49. 見上げれば、ほし 星 が ちゅう 宙 をうねり、やみ 闇 が おお 覆っている。

If you look up, the stars are projected in the air, and the dark is spreading.

50. あれだけ勉強すれば、ごうかく 合格 するの も どうぜん 当然です。

If you'll study to that extent, passing is only natural.

51. 酒も飲めば、タバコも吸う。

If you drink sake, you also smoke.

52. かしゅ 歌手 になりたいのであれば、がっき 楽器 の 弾き 方 も ひ かた なら ほう 習った方がよいのです。

If it is the case that you wish to become a singer, it is best that you also learn how to play an instrument.

Pronunciation Note: Do not pronounce 楽器 as がき because 餓鬼 = brat. So, be careful.

Practice (3): Translate the following.

1. 高ければ、買わない方がいいですよ。
2. 僕の家に来ればどう？
3. 犬と話せば、楽しいでしょう。
4. 勉強すれば、A がもらえますよ。
5. 安ければ、買った方がいいと思います。

Proverb Note: いっけんきょ 一犬虚に吠ゆれば ばんけんじつ 万犬実を云う。 This proverb means that "if a single dog barks a lie, ten thousand dogs will then speak it as the truth". This is meant to show that once a rumor spreads, it will eventually be taken as

the truth. 吠ゆれば is the Classical Japanese form 吠えれば, and in proverbs such as this, old forms of grammar are common.

Slang Note: ～ば may be turned into ～や in slang. Generally, this is seen when れ precedes ば, and then the combination becomes りや. For instance, どうすりゃいいの? However, you can still say things like どう言いやいいんだよ. Of course, this would be very casual and slang and is rather 乱暴.

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice (1):

1. 氷を温あたためると、溶とける。
2. When I entered the room, I opened the curtains.
3. I went to Kyoto with my boyfriend.
4. When I opened the door, there was a dog. When I opened the window, there was a bird. And, when I opened the trash can, there was a rat.

Practice (2):

1. If you are going to Korea, it is best to go by plane.
2. If everyone's going, I'll go too.
3. If there's not a train, you just got to walk.
4. If you are going to Osaka, the bullet train is good.
5. If it's that you're talking about, I've heard it numerous times.

Practice (3):

1. It's best not to buy it if it's expensive.
2. How about coming to my house?
3. It would probably be fun if you could take to dogs.
4. You'll be able to receive an A if you study.
5. If it's cheap, I think that it's best to buy it.

Now that you have learned about the conditional particles, it's time for you to learn about all the different phrases you can make with them. Now, this lesson won't be totally exhaustive in its coverage on these phrases. So, you will still learn more in the future.

なら Phrases

AがAならBもBだ

"AがAならBもBだ" compares two things that aren't good. Similarly, "AもAならBもBだ" gives a meaning of "both being not normal".

おっと きょうし つま きょうし
1. 夫 も 教 師 なら 妻 も 教 師 だ = 夫も妻も 共^{とも}に教師だ

The husband and the wife are both teachers.

2. 犬も犬なら猫も猫だ。

If dogs are dogs, then cats are also cats.

3. 親も親なら、子も子だ。

If parents are parents, then kids are also kids.

たら Phrases

～としたら

～としたら is like "if it happens that". Notice that it can follow verbs in the non-past or past tense, but this decision has to be solely made on the circumstances.

4. もしたくさんの遺^い産^{さん}が**あった**としたらどのように使うのですか？

Say if it so happened that you **had** a lot of inheritance, how would you use it?

5. 仮に、お金が一億円**ある**としたら、何に使いますか。

If you were to **have** 100 million yen for instance, what would you use it for?

～たらいい? ～たらどう?

There are many ways to make suggestions, some of which are made with たら. These phrases may show noninterference, light commands, and suggestions--"how about?". In plain speech it's more common to drop か in a question in order to not sound curt/rude.

6. ^た他の人と話したらどうですか。

How about talking to other people?

7. もし来なかったらどうしよう?

What shall we do if he doesn't come?

8. どうやって ^{つぐな}償いをしてたらいいのでしょうか。

How can I make it up to you?

9. 先生もお使いになってみたら**いかが**ですか。(Very polite/formal)

Sensei, how about you try using this?

10. どうしたらいいですか。

What shall/should I do?

11. どうしたらいいと思いますか。

What do you think I should do?

12. 何で行ったらどうですか。

How do I get there?

13. どこでチケットを買ったらいいですか。

Where should I buy a ticket?

In casual speech, the final part after the conditional is often dropped. When this is done, the sentence ends with a rising intonation.

14. 先生に聞いてみたら?

How about you ask the teacher?

～てはどう and its variants can also be used to mean "how about (you)?".

15. この本を読んでみてはどうですか。

How about you read this book.

16. この薬を飲んでみてはいかがでしょう。

Why don't you take this medicine?

Conditional...だけ

With a conditional, だけ can express "the more, the...". Some patterns include したら…ただけ, …ただけ, …したらそれだけ, and ～ば…だけ". At this point, just recognize what role だけ plays.

17. 希望^{きぼう}した会社^{かいしゃ}に就^{しゅう}職^{しよく}したら就職したぶん(だけ) 気^き苦^く労^{ろう}も増^ふえるでしょう。

Just by getting a job at your dream company, anxiety will also surely increase.

Word Note: 希望^{のぞ}する and 望^{のぞ}む both mean "to hope", but they're not used like the English word. They are mainly literary, but when spoken they show sincere desire, beseeching, etc. 希望する is more like "to desire". If wanted to say, "I

hope it's cold tomorrow", you'd say something like ^{あすさむ}明日寒いといいね. In short, these words are too serious to be used in more practical settings.

18. (時間^{じかん}が) 十^{じゅう}分^{ぷん} (だけ) あれば、^{しあ}仕上げられるけど、もう ^{れいじ}零時^じになったから ^{とこ}床^つに就いた方がいいです。

If I had ten minutes, I would be able to finish it. But, because it's already midnight, it's best to go to bed.

でもしたら・でもしようものなら

でもしたら or でもしようものなら--"(even) if you were". This pattern attaches to the 連用形 of a verb.

19. ^{おく}遅^{たいへん}れでもしたら 大^{だい}変^{へん}ですよ。

It would be awful even if you were just late.

20. ^つでも突^き切る時に ^{まん}万^{いち}が ^ひ一^ひ子供^{こども}を轢^ひきでもしたら大変である。

But, if by chance when I break across, it would be awful if I were to run over a kid.

From 雨天炎天一ギリシャ・トルコ辺境紀行 by 村上春樹.

Conditional... (た) で

There are three conditional patterns in which で acts as a conjunctive particle. Unlike the case particle, this classification means that it is to follow something that acts as a clause. This is completely different than just following a noun phrase.

These phrases below that utilize this odd で show an effect on something due to a conditional. So, there is some causality implied. So, if something happens, there is a certain effect. This use of で can surface as any of the following patterns. The table is followed by example sentences.

With なら	名詞・形容動詞+なら+形容動詞+で	広大なら広大で
With たら	連用形+たら+た+で	引っ越したら引っ越したで 安かったら安かったで
With ば	動詞: 已然形+ば+連用形+た+で 形容詞: 已然形+ば+終止形+で 形容動詞: 已然形+ば+語根+で 名詞: であれば+ 名詞 + で	あればあったで 広ければ広いで 難解であれば難解で 暇であれば暇で

Say we note this pattern as A + Conditional +A + B. While you adequately assess the establishment of A, you lead into a situation B that is not foreseen.

21. 休んだら休んで、たくさんやることがある。

From having taken a break, I have a lot of stuff to do.

22. 一段落したらしたで、次の難問が待っている。

Just from following down one step, the next difficult problem awaits.

23. お金というものはあったらあったで無駄に使ってしまうものだ。

Money is something that when you have it, you end up wasting it.

24. 部屋が広ければ広いで掃除機なんか結構時間がかかります。

The bigger the room gets, the more time it takes to do stuff like vacuuming.

In all four of these examples, because of the event transpiring before で, there is an effect from it that leads to the result stated after で. This pattern tends to get used a lot more when the past tense precedes で.

Because this pattern doesn't get used extremely frequently, judgments may vary on exact instances of it. This is because it should be used within the explanation provided above. If you are told that you are using it incorrectly, you should use ほど instead of で. This does not mean で → ほど in most cases. Nor does this mean that these different patterns are the same by any means. It's just that if you use this pattern incorrectly, it more than likely should be ほど.

いちだんらく 一段落 したらしたで、次の なんもん 難問 が待っている。

Just from following down one step, the next difficult problem awaits.

ば Phrases

～ばいい

～ ばいい is like "it would be good". In the past tense, ～ばよかった, the perspective changes to first person to show a feeling of regret or criticism at something not happening. In question form it is essentially the same thing as ～たらいいですか。

25. あの家を買えばいいんです。

It would be good for you to buy that house.

26. 私がすればよかったんですが。

It would have been good if I had done it.

27. 時間があればよかった。

It would have been nice if there were time.

28. もっと早く来ればよかった。

It would have been nice if you had come earlier.

～ {から・と・に} すれば

～ からすれば, ～とすれば, and ～にすれば show a particular position. There isn't really any significant differences between them, although judging from the translations below, you can get a sense of slight nuance differences based on the particle used.

29. 彼にすれば ^{あくい}悪 意 から出た ^{こうい}行 為 だったのでしょうか。

Considering it's him, the action was probably out of malice thought.

30. 彼女の顔つきからすれば、本当に美しいですね。

Starting with her looks, she's really pretty, isn't she!

A もすれば B もする

"A もすれば B もする" aligns similar conditional situations.

31. 雨も降れば風も吹く。

The rain falls, and the wind blows.

32. 男もいれば、女もいる。

There are men, and there are also women.

Building on what was taught in Beginner's IMABI, grammatical concepts are greatly emphasized with new material added on. New conjugations are discussed and honorifics are looked at more seriously than before. By the end of the course, you should be able to move onto Advanced IMABI.

第101課: Must Not

第102課: Must

第103課: The Particle を II: With Intransitive Verbs

第104課: Numbers V: Reading Counter Phrases

第105課: Directions

第106課: The Particle ながら

第107課: Pronouns III: Reflexive

第108課: Try: ～てみる・みたい・みせる

第109課: Advanced Preparation: ～ておく

第110課: Pluralization

第111課: が VS を

第112課: Nominalization

第113課: Expressions with こと

第114課: Daily Expressions II

第115課: Numbers VI: Ordinal Numbers

第116課: Numbers VII: Counters II

第117課: Old

第118課: Conjunctions

第119課: In Order To: ～ため

第120課: やはり & さすが

第121課: ～とおりに & ～ように

第122課: Easy & Difficult: ～やすい, ～難しい, & ～づらい

第123課: Too/Continue: ～すぎる, ～続ける, & ～急ぐ

第124課: Fix/Error: ～忘れる, ～直す, ～間違える, & ～誤る

第125課: Used to, Together, Completely: ～慣れる, ～合う・合わせる, & ～切る

第126課: ケ & カ

第127課: Transitivity II: 自他同形動詞

第128課: The Passive I

第129課: The Passive II: 不可抗力の受身

第130課: The Causative I

第131課: The Causative-Passive

第132課: The Causative II: Transitive Verb Corruption

第133課: Idioms I: 気

第134課: The Particle しも

第135課: The Particles とか, など, & なんて

第136課: The Particle より

第137課: The Superlative

第138課: Similarity: ～ようだ, ～みたいだ, ～っぽい, ～ごとく, & ～さながら

第139課: Seem: ～そうだ

第140課: Hearsay: ～そうだ & ～らしい

第141課: The Volitional I

第142課: The Volitional II: The Negative Volitional: ～まい

第143課: The Imperative

第144課: The Particles ほど & くらい

第145課: Honorifics I: Titles

第146課: Honorifics II: Nouns

第147課: Honorifics III: Adjectives & the Copula

第148課: Honorifics: IV Light Honorifics: レル・ラレル敬語

第149課: Honorifics V: Regular Verbs

第150課: Honorifics VI: Irregular Verbs

第101課: Must Not

In this lesson, we will learn about the phrases for “must not”. Now, contrary to what many textbooks may say, there are actually differences among the several options that you as the listener must understand. Before we study “must” phrases, it’s important to learn about the “must not” phrases because there are fewer of them and less information overall to go through. So, let’s begin.

禁止：～てはならない・～てはいけない・～てはだめだ

Spelling

The three prohibition phrases for must not must not be confused with each other. First, as far as spelling is concerned, they are typically spelled in ひらがな. You can see in older spellings ならない spelled as 成らない and いけない spelled as 行けない, but grammaticalized words are not usually spelled in 漢字 any more. However, だめ is frequently spelled in 漢字 as 駄目.

Conjugations

- 動詞：連用形 + ては+ならない・いけない・だめだ
- 形容詞：連用形（く） + ては+ならない・いけない・だめだ
- 名詞・形容動詞：連用形（で） + は+いけない・だめだ/ではあつては+ならない・いけない

Contraction Note: In casual speech ては → ちゃ では → じゃ

使っては → 使っちゃ	死んでは → 死んじゃ
-------------	-------------

使い分け

～てはならない: A prohibitory command accompanied with a duty brought about by a societal need which may be of low or high scale. Nothing else is appropriate for law documents or judicial verdicts. It is obligatory in the written language in showing commands that regard society. In this situation, it cannot be replaced with ～てはいけない below despite sharing interchangeability in the written language.

～てはいけない: A prohibitory command accompanied with a duty brought about at the individual/personal level. ～てはならない would be more stern than ～てはいけない in this situation in the written language.

～てはだめだ: A prohibitory command projecting warning, chastise, criticism, and the like to the listener. It may not always be a literal command and may simply suggest prohibition or avoidance of an action. It may also be used in encouragement in situations like “don’t give up”: 諦めてはだめだ！ This pattern is used primarily in the spoken language. So long as the sentence is casual, you could paraphrase any sentence with ～てはならない or ～てはいけない to have ～てはだめだ.

In the spoken language, there is a lot of interchangeability between ～てはいけない and ～てはだめだ, and in the written language, there is a lot of interchangeability between ～てはならない and ～てはいけない.

1. 日本は、^{けんぽう}憲^て法に照らして、いかなる^{ぶき}武器も保持してはならない。
Japan must not maintain any arms in light of the constitution.

2. ^{ちょうみんとう}町民等は、いかなる^{りゆう}理由にせよ、^{はいきぶつ}廃棄物を^{ふほうとうき}不法投棄してはならない。
Townpeople must by no reason unlawfully dump waste matter.

3. この薬は^{ふくさよう}副作用があり、その中に^{けつとうち}血糖値が上がりやすくなる^{かのうせい}可能性もあるので、2日^{いじょう}以上、^{れんぞく}連続して^{ふくよう}服用しては {ならない・いけない}。

There are side effects to this drug, and as one of these is the possibility of a rise in blood sugar, you mustn't use it more than two days consecutively.

4. プラスチック製の保冷容器は耐熱温度が低いものが多いので、熱湯を直接入れるために、耐熱温度が70度以上であってはいらない。

As there are many plastic cooling containers with low heat resistance, in order to directly put hot water in one, the heat resistance must be above 70℃.

5. 価格はそれより高く（あつ）ては {いけない・ならない} 。

The price mustn't be higher than that.

6. 第九条によれば、国家は武器も保持しては {いけない・だめな} んだよ。

According to Article 9, the nation must also not hold arms.

The Person Commanding

If we think of who makes the command, the person is of a higher status than the listener. It does not necessarily have to be the speaker who is the commander. The commander is likely as such based on what exactly you use.

Speech Modal	Written/Spo- ken?	Description of Use
～てはなら ない	書き言葉	Commanded person is an overseeing/adminis- tering agency.
～てはいけ ない	Both	Commanded person is a responsible party who can manage. When used in the spoken language, it is mainly used by men.

～てはいけません	話し言葉	Used mainly by women: mothers, teachers, and bosses
～てはだめだ	話し言葉	Used mainly by men: fathers, teachers, bosses, and sempai.
～てはだめです	話し言葉	Used mainly by women: mothers, teachers, bosses, and sempai.

Speech Style Note: If a man is to use the non-敬語 phrases ～てはいけない and ～てはだめだ and they are not a person of ultimate authority, one can imagine the speaker becoming in an emotional state in which he just ignores the character of the addressee.

～ てはだめ（だよ・よ） when used among friend and family becomes advice rather than a straight out command and can be used to one's technical superior and inferior in this situation.

7. お母ちゃん、そんなに働いちゃだめだよ。具合を壊しちゃうわ。（女性語）

Mom, don't work so hard like that. You'll get ill.

8. その縫い ^{ぬぐる}包み、まだ持ってるの？ルーパットは危ないっていうから、持ってちゃだめだよ。捨てなさい。

You still have that stuffed animal. I told you that Rupert was dangerous, so you can't keep him. Throw him away.

Gender Trend?

It is not that ～てはいけません and ～てはだめです are exclusively used by women, but women are often expected to be more polite. So, in this sense, regardless of whether one is male or female, the use of these polite forms emphasizes one's class more than actually showing respect to the addressee. This is expected of any well-educated 成人.

9a. 今日、自分の車で帰るでしょう？お酒を飲んでは {いけません・だめです} よ。

けいい
(敬意)

9b. 今日、車で帰る？じゃ、飲んじゃ {いけません・だめです} よ。 (ひんかくほじ
品格保持)

9a. Aren't you going home in your own car today? You mustn't drink.

9b. You're going home by car today? Well, you mustn't drink.

Grammar Note: Not using polite forms of conjunctive phrases makes it clear whether someone is showing 敬意 (respect) or 品格保持 (societal standing). This would show the latter.

More on ～てはならない

Using ～てはならない in things based on personal experience and knowledge in spoken, colloquial contexts is unnatural. In which case, you would need to use ～てはいけない or ～てはだめだ. The only way to hear ～てはならない spoken is in dramas and movies. It is usually seen with other older things.

10. 敵に後ろを見せるのかい。そりゃならぬ。武士として、あるまじきことじゃ。

Show our rear to the enemy? That mustn't happen. That is unworthy of a warrior.

The Difference between ～てはいけない & ～てはだめだ

When ～てはいけない is used, there is a rule that needs to be protected/followed, and if one breaks the rule, there is the feeling that one will be dealt a punishment. However, when ～てはだめだ is used, it is most often the case that there is no penalty or responsibility implied for the addressee. Even if there isn't a rule

to follow, if you are scolded or are to run into an unpleasant circumstance, it becomes an understood to the speaker and listener that there is an unwritten rule to abide by.

11. ご飯を食べたら、すぐにお風呂。それまでビデオゲームをやっては {いけません・だめです} よ。

Bath right after supper. Until then, you must not play video games.

12. こんなに雨が降ってきては {だめだ ○・いけない X} 。

This can't do with all rain falling like this.

It's impossible for man to actually command the weather. So, for this century, using ~てはいけない is just wrong.

Summary Chart

	書き言葉	話し言葉	ばつ 罰・ペナルティ	めいれいぶん 命令文	ひめいれいぶん 非命令文
～てはならない	○	X	○	○	X
～てはいけない	○	○	○	○	△
～てはだめだ	X	○	X	○	○

Definition Notes: 罰 = Punishment; 命令文 = Imperative sentence; 非命令文 = Non-imperative sentence

～といけない・～とだめだ

First, before we look at how these phrases differ with the ones above, consider the conjugation rules below.

- 動詞：終止形 + と {いけない・だめだ}

- 形容詞・形容動詞：終止形 + {といけない・だめだ}
- 名詞：である・だ + (といけない・だめだ)

As you can see, there is no ～とならない. You can't use ～といけない and ～とだめだ to make sentences that urge someone. They may be used in declarative and affirmation sentences, but they can't be interpreted as prohibitory commands.

The と marks a general condition, and it can only be used with confidence based on personal experience and or knowledge. So, even if you were to tell a listener a message involving having been prohibited, the use of these options would still be unnatural. As ～てはならない exists as an absolute prohibitory imperative phrase, there's no way a declarative ～とならない could exist.

13. 自分のケータイだと {いけない・だめな} んだよ。

It can't be one's own/my own cellphone.

14. ^{しんぞう}心臓が悪いから、歩くのはいいけど、走ると {いけない・だめな} んだ。

My heart is not good, so it's OK for me to walk, but I can't run.

More Examples

15. 一緒に来てはいけません。

You must not come together (with us/me/them).

16. 子供はお酒を飲んではいけない。

Children must not drink sake.

17. ^{いえ}家の中で走ってはいけませんよ。

You must not run in the middle of the house!

18. ちゅうこしゃ
中古車 ではないけません。

It must not be a used car.

19. ケータイを使ってはならない。

You must not use your cell phone.

20. ただ忘れていけない。

You simply can't forget.

21. そう思っではなりません。

You must not think so.

22. 死んじゃだめ（だよ）。

You can't die!

23. おく
遅れちゃだめ（だよ）。

You can't be late!

24. 君は二度とうしろを振りかえっちゃいけないよ。

You mustn't look back again.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

25. どのようにすればいけないのか。

What would be a no go for me to do?

Grammar Note: As you can see, ば conditionals could also be used, but this is not of the same vein as "must not" phrases.

第102課: Conditionals III: Phrases II: Must

This lesson will now look at the "must" phrases. There will be more variation in forms to be aware of in this section, and the grammar complications will be harder than with the "must not" forms, but don't worry.

Must

～なければならぬ・なければいけない・なくてはならぬ・なくてははいけない

The first four basic patterns are ～なければならぬ, ～なければいけない, ～なくてはならぬ, and ～なくてははいけない. Just as with must not phrases, ～ては contracts to ちゃ in colloquial speech. Other contractions include ～なければ → なけりゃ and ～なくてははいけない shortened to just ～なくちゃ.

動詞	未然形	食べ+ない	→ て → 連用形 → 食べなくては + ならぬ い・いけない → ば → 已然形 → 食べなければ + ならぬ い・いけない
形容詞	連用形	新しく+ない	→ て → 連用形 → 新しくなくては + ならぬ い・いけない
形容動詞・ 名詞	連用形	新鮮で+ない	→ ば → 已然形 → 新鮮なければ + ならぬ・い けない

Chart Note: Example verbs may not be perfect for demonstrating the actual sensitive nuances of the options to be discussed in this lesson.

Colloquial Variants

～なければ → ～なきゃ	～なければ → ～なけりゃ	～なくては → ～なくちゃ
--------------	---------------	---------------

Variant Note: ～なきゃ and ～なくちゃ are often used without anything after them.

～なくてはならない VS ～なければならない

Just as how ～てはならない concerns prohibition (禁止^{きんし}) and is used in the written language not to describe personal matters but societal duties in regards to law and societal norms, ～なければならない is used for affirmative must commands. When the command of duty is directed towards individual responsibility rather than society or some institution as a whole, ～なくてはならない is acceptable.

1. 国家は 直接^{ちよくせつ}、国民すべてに、最低限度^{さいていげんど}の生活を保障^{ほしょう}しなければならない。

The nation must directly ensure a bare minimal lifestyle to all citizens.

2. 従業員^{じゅうぎょういん}は毎日、出退勤^{しゅつたいきんじ}時を、タイムレコーダーに記録^{きろく}し {なければならない・なくてはならない}。

Employees must record in the time recorder one's leave time.

Interchangeability in the Spoken Language

However, unlike straight-up prohibition, we find all four options ～なければならない・～なければいけない・～なくてはならない・～なくてははいけない acceptable in the spoken language. This is a perfect opportunity to get familiar with casual speech. Take note of contractions. Consult the chart above in case you forget.

3. 国は、国民すべてに、最低限度の生活を保障し {なければならない・なくてはならない・なければいけない・なくてははいけない} よ。

The country has to provide a bare minimal lifestyle to all citizens.

4. 早く帰って、妹の世話をし {なきやなんない・なくちゃなんない・なきやいけない・なくちゃいけない} よ。

I have to go home and take care of my little sister.

5. 本を ^{かえ}返さなくちゃ。(Casual)

I have to return the book.

6. てめーは死ななきや。(Masculine; vulgar)

You have to die.

使い分け

In everyday conversation, these four patterns have great interchangeability. If we are to talk about the extremities of the usages of ～なくてはならない and ～なければならない, the difference would be this.

～なくてははいけない : Duty or command to the addressee (which may be oneself or another party) regarding common sense, morality, societal common wisdom, or current conditions. The speaker is directing the addressee. When used towards oneself, you treat yourself as the 'addressee'. If referring to oneself, a first pronoun is usually needed to tell that you mean this.

～なければならない : A duty of the speaker in regards to common sense, morality, and or societal common wisdom. It will show responsibility burdened upon the speaker. The person bearing the responsibility is not excluding to the speaker, but it is best described as being the subject. This may be used in the spoken language as well, and this is also when you may see the polite form ～なければなりません.

When you use ～なければ, you imply an obvious duty with no penalty involved for not complying. ～なくては is used when there is a penalty for not complying. いけない is in regards to the listener or one's conscious and ならない is used in regards to the speaker. So, when we say things interchangeable, we're saying that if we change one for the other, the new nuance still makes sense. It is not the case that the meaning stays completely the same.

7. 急がなければいけない。

You must hurry.

8. こどもたち ね
子供達 は早く寝なくてはいけない。

Children must go to bed early.

9. 無駄 さ
あまりの無駄は避けなければならない。

We must avoid an excess of waste.

10. 弟と遊ばなくてはいけないから。

It's because I have to play with my little brother.

11. 毎日水を飲まなければなりません。

You have to drink water every day. (General you, which includes oneself)

12. 私はボートに乗らなくてはいけないんです。

I have to catch the boat.

13. 新刊を買わなくてははいけません。

You have buy the new book.

Word Note: {その・あの} 新しい本 may be more natural in many contexts than 新刊, which can also be interpreted as "new publication". Nevertheless, 新刊 is still a commonly used word.

～ないといけない & ～ないとだめだ

As you would imagine, the rules governing these phrases is just like when used for must not. ～ないとならない doesn't exist. And, these two phrases are quite removed semantically from the others. You can't tell whether the speaker's duty or addressee's duty is being referred to without relying on context, so it is typically only used in the spoken language or writing which can reflect back on the conditions in a dialogue. As this phrase particularly blurs the existence of penalty, it has a lightly feeling and is used a lot in the spoken language because of this.

Because the particle と is used, though, your statement should be one based on experience or knowledge of some sort. Though the situation is somewhat more ambiguous than with must not phrases, you can still see how ～ないと いけない refers to rule-like behavior and ～ないとだめだ may hint at the existence of a consequence for not following through.

15. 早く帰って、妹の^{せわ}世話をしないとだめなの。(女性語)

I gotta go home quick and take care of my little sister.

16. 明日、試験だから、早く起きないといけないんだよ。

I have to wake up early tomorrow 'cause I have an exam.

17. ^{しかつもんだい}死活問題だから、^{たいさく こう}対策を講じないといけないのだ。

It's a matter of life or death, so I/you need to take measures.

18. ^{あす}明日までに ^{ほうこくしょ}報告書を書かないとだめだよ。(Casual yet serious)

I/You have to write a report by tomorrow!

Casual Speech Note: In colloquial speech, you can simply use ～ないと.

19. もう行かないと。(Casual)

I've got to go.

Older Variants

There are many other older and dialectical variations of what we have just learned. As for old phrases, we have ～ねば {ならない・ならぬ} , and ～なければならぬ which are old-fashioned but not so archaic that they don't frequently show up in the written language. You may also see the very stiff ～なるまい. ～ねばならない in particular is extremely common in literature.

20. これからは、自分たちのことは自分たちで決めるんだと思った。なぜなら三人だけで生きていかねばならないからだ。

I felt that from now on that we would have decide on our own accord concerning ourselves. That is

because we must live on just the three of us.

21. 何としても ^{ごうかく}合格 せんばならんねな。 (Old-fashioned; dialectical)

You have to pass no matter what.

From ^{そうぼう}蒼氓 by ^{いしかわたつぞう}石川達三.

Base Note: The old みぜんけい of する, せ-, must be used with ～ぬ.

Variant Note: There are several important notes about the above sentence. The ～ね in せねば is contracted to ～ん and ～ない in ならない becomes → ～んね, which would be realized today in Modern Japanese as the casual ～んねー such as in 分かんねー・分かんない.

Important Dialectical Variants

Sometimes "must" is expressed completely differently in other dialects. The most common dialect pattern is "未然形 + なあかんで". You can also see 〜ねば contracted to 〜にゃ in Western Japanese Dialects.

いけない is very sensitive in respect to dialect. Below is a chart of the most common variations you may encounter.

いかん、いけん、あかん、 etc.

22. かたみちきっぷ
片道切符を買わなあかんで。

I have to buy a one-way ticket.

23. 歌わなくてはいいけん。

I have to sing.

More Notes:

1. せにゃならん = しなければならない

2. せないかん = しなければならない

3. Note 2 is also a Western Japanese dialect example. Here, we see a rare example of 〜ない following the old 未然形 of the verb する, せ-, and あかん contracted as かん.

第103課: The Particle を II: With Intransitive Verbs

The particle を causes problems for students when its usage diverges from marking the direct object of a sentence. This lesson will tackle those other usages in great detail.

Spelling Note: ヲ is hardly ever used anymore. In the Japanese term “wo case”, it gets used as is evident in the title of the body of this lesson's text, and it is used in situations when an entire sentence is written in カタカナ, telegraphs (if you ever get a chance to see one), older texts, and in people's names (particularly older people).

ヲ格

有対動詞

Japanese has many verbs with separate transitive and intransitive forms. These verbs are called 有対動詞. For example, “to stand” has the intransitive form 立つ and the transitive form 立てる. We expect ～が立つ and ～を立てる. This ideal particle allotment doesn't explain how many verbs are used. Consider the following examples.

1. 晶子が口を {あいて ○/△/X・あけて ○} 寝ている。
Shoko slept with her mouth open.
2. 健太郎が座席を {かわった・かえた}。
Kentaro switched seats/changed (the) seats.
3. 潤子はたびたび住所を {移る・移す} ので有名だ。
Junko is famous for frequently moving her address.
4. 子犬がしっぽを {垂れて・垂らして} 歩いている。
The puppy has his tail down while walking.

5. 田中さんは発表を {終わって・終えて} 家に帰った。

Tanaka-san went home after finishing/ending the announcement.

We will come back to why 口をあく is acceptable to some speakers but not to all in a moment, but let's first note the following observations that should be gathered from these examples.

1. In 「X が Y を + 他動詞」, action x does some change to y signified by the verb.
2. In 「X が Y を + 自動詞」, what happens to y is relate to x's action, but the verb does not enforce change upon y. In other words, x is not the giver of change to y.
3. Instances of overlap between 「X が Y を + 他動詞」 and 「X が Y を 自動詞」 include when at the same time x acts upon y the same time x's action is undergone.
4. In principal, x is a person.

Categorizing 自他動詞 Further

Transitive verbs either bring about a change (状態変化他動詞) or have something be worked/acted on (働きかけ他動詞) as proposed by 影山 (1996). Likewise, intransitive verbs that can take を may categorized in three groups.

Nouns Involved	Example Verbs	
Movement/location nouns	飛ぶ, 出る, 移る, 離れる	空を飛ぶ。
Body parts subject to change	あく、垂れる	目をあく。
Matter of continuation	終わる	発表を終わる。

Group 1 are all intransitives which show a change in position/direction. The particle を attaches to the noun of place, direction, or departure. Group 2 is similar with a body part undergoing a change, and Group 3 is rather unrelated to either Group 1 or 2 for dealing with continuous situations.

Group 1

を means “through” with these verbs of motion and dimension. Since motion verbs are intransitive, を indicates that the motion taking place covers the whole dimension or some portion of the place (Kuroda 1978).

6. マラソンを走る。

To run a marathon.

7. ねんげつ へ
年 月 を経る。

Years go by.

8. 町を歩く。

To walk through the street.

9. 空を^と飛ぶ。

To fly through the sky.

10. 雨の中を駅に行く。

To go through the rain to the train station.

11. 川を渡る。

To cross a river.

12. 角を曲がる。

To turn a corner.

When を is after a noun of departure, it may be interchangeable with から. However, if used with a point of departure depicted abstractly such as leaving high school because of graduation, から cannot be used.

13. 飛行機 {から・を} 降りる。

To get off an airplane.

14. 子供達が教室 {から・を} 出た。

The children left (from) the classroom.

15. 自国 {を・から} 離れる。

To be separate/be separated from one's home country.

16a. 大学を卒業する。○

16b. 大学から卒業する。X

To graduate from college.

17a. {学校・仕事・会社} をやめる。○

17b. {学校・仕事・会社} からやめる。X

To quit {school/work/the company}.

Group 2

Let's now return two of the first examples.

1. 晶子が口をあいて寝ている。

4. 子犬がしっぽを垂れて歩いている。

We will say that both sentences are possible, and they are intrinsically different than 18b and 19b which are wrong.

18a. 看護師が^{かんごし}患者^{かんじゃ}の口を開けた。○

18b. 看護師が患者の口をあいた。X

The nurse opened the patient's mouth.

19a. 油^{あぶら}の中へ水^{みづ}を一滴^{いってき}垂れた。X

19b. 油の中へ水を一滴垂らした。○

I dropped a speck of water into the oil.

In Ex. 1 and 4, the subject has no conscious control over what is happening. Yet, を shows up because a need to express the experience comes about. This cannot be said for the latter two examples for this is a true transitive sentence structure and the intransitive verbs are incorrectly replacing the transitive forms. What's important to note is that regardless of whether 口をあく or しっぽを垂れる is acceptable, they are certainly not acceptable if put into the passive.

Let's take an even closer look at 垂れる・垂らす.

20. 釣り糸^{つりいと}が垂れている。

The line is out.

21a. 兄が釣り糸を垂れている。

21b. 兄が釣り糸を垂らしている。

My brother has the line out.

In many cases, 垂れる and 垂らす are interchangeable. 垂れる shows a physical connection between the subject and object. The tail of a dog is inseparable almost like a rod is inseparable from a fisherman. If there is no such relation, you can only use 垂らす. So, 垂らす would greatly emphasize the subject simply draping down the object. When 垂れる is used to mean いう in phrases like 文句を垂れる, it is not interchangeable with 垂らす. At times, 垂らす may be old-fashioned. For instance, 頭を垂らす is old-fashioned but 頭を垂れる isn't. There are also cases, of course, when you can only use 垂らす.

22. しょうゆ 油 を {垂らす ○・垂れる X} 。

To drop soy sauce (into something).

23. まえがみ 前髪 を {垂らす○・垂れる X} 。

To drape one's bangs.

Transitive & Intransitive Form in One Form

Perhaps even more confusing are the verbs with both transitive and intransitive usages. They may even be verbs with other forms for different meanings. ひらく may be both in relation to blooming as well as 吹く.

24. ゆり つぼみ 百合の 蕾 がひらいた。

The lilies' buds bloomed.

25. 花が蕾をひらいた。

The flower bloomed.

26. やなぎ め 柳 が {芽を吹いた・芽吹いた} 。

The willow sprouted.

Group 3

～が終わる, ～を終わる, and ～終わる have been discussed somewhat before, and this trichotomy has existed for quite some time. What has not been discussed before is the ambiguity of ～を終わる. The subject may either be the experiencer or the agent.

In 事柄が終わる, the event natural ends. In XがYが終わる, X can be the person stopping Y (agent) or someone who experiences [Yが終わる]. Take for instance the following sentence from 吾輩は猫である by 夏目漱石.

27. 診察が終わるのを待ちかねた主人

My master who couldn't wait for the examination to end.

One can interpret this as the master having the examination end or the physician ending the examination. It is not the case that ～が終わる is slowly replacing ～を終える because the latter is complicatedly intentional with no other agent involved. You can view the person doing the action ～が終わる as being the barer of change.

Now let's look at ～が変わる and ～を変える (applicable to other spellings). First, think about what 仕事が終わる and 座席が変わる mean. The nouns in question have no power to do what the verb indicates. A subject is being avoided that would make this a transitive sentence. This phenomenon is called 脱使役化 as it is used to avoid explicitly stating the doer. So, saying that 座席が変わる is used when oneself (and another person) changes seats whereas 座席を変える is used when either others are changing up seats or you yourself are causing change to the arrangement of seats should make sense.

2. 健太郎が座席を {代わった・変えた} 。

28. 先生が生徒たちの座席を {変わった X・変えた} 。

Sensei changed the students' seats.

. ～が変わる stems from ～が変わる. Similarly to ～をあく, the experiencer (yourself) is stated, but it is not of the same vein as transitive verbs bringing about a change. Thus, the difference between 健太郎 simply switching seats with someone and 健太郎 changing the seats becomes clear. The next example is yet another interesting example of ～が変わる.

29. 学校が変わる。

To change schools.

Phrase Note: This phrase is possible, but 転校する is more common.

Passive-Like Intransitives with を

There are other verbs in which the intransitive form acts just like a passive and takes を. Of course, there are others in which the intransitive form is identical to a passive and does not take を. An example of this is 植わる, the intransitive form of 植える. The three main verb pairs to highlight are 預ける・預かる, 授ける・授かる, and 教える・教わる. The intransitive forms do not have passive forms in the same sense 生じる and 芽（を）吹く don't.

30. 彼が荷物を預かっています。

He has been entrusted with the luggage.

31. 荷物を彼に預けました。

I entrusted my luggage to him.

32. 教会で子どもに洗礼を授けました。

I baptized the children at (the) church.

33. （神様に）赤ちゃんを授かりました。

I have been bestowed a baby (from God).

34. 山田さんがジェイムズ・リーに日本語を教えたそうです。

I hear that Yamada-san taught James Lee Japanese.

35. 山田さんに日本語を教わりました。

I learned Japanese from Yamada-san.

36. コンピューターがミスを生じた。
The computer produced an error.
37. コンピューターによってミスが生じられた。X
An error was produced by the computer.
38. つばき
椿 が芽を吹いた。
The camellia sprouted.
39. 芽が椿によって吹かれた。X
The sprout was sprouted by the camellia.
40. リーさんがリンゴの木を植えた。
Lee-san planted an apple tree.
41. リンゴの木が植わった。
An apple tree is planted.
42. (リーさんによって) リンゴの木が植えられた。
The apple tree was planted (by Lee-san).

Other Abnormalities

There are more abnormalities that sort of fit into the parameters this lesson has sought to describe.

One such abnormal phrase is ～を間違う. To get rid of the nuance of purposely messing up, some people use ～を間違う. Thus, the person who made the error unintentionally becomes an experiencer of the error. This alleviates the effect in meaning of directly pointing the person out as the person who screwed up. This is exactly what 脱使役化 does in Japanese and is something that still continues to revolutionize Japanese.

43. 係員が計算を {間違えた ○・間違った ○/△/X} 。

The clerk messed up the calculation.

踊る is another example of an intransitive verb able to take を, but it doesn't have to. This qualification allows for us to call it a "non-ergative" verb. An ergative verb would need the subject of the intransitive sentence to be the object of the transitive sentence, but this is not the case for "to dance".

44. ポルカを踊る。

To dance a polka.

45. 一緒に踊りましょう。

Let's dance together.

Another abnormality is ～を気づく. Traditionally, only ～に気づく has been acceptable. The majority of speakers still think this, but it in fact appears in literature and even in literature not that new. It is unfair to blame this on Western languages. It is more likely due to the lack of a transitive form of 気づく (though some speakers do use 気づける) and came about similarly to how ～を変わる and the like have.

46. 生駒は、当然、警視庁の^{ぎわく}疑惑が自分に向かっていることを気づいているはずだった。

Obviously, Ikoma must have been aware of the Police Department's suspicions pointed towards him.

From 二重葉脈 by 松本清張.

第104課: Numbers ? : Reading Counter Phrases

There are essentially three kinds of counters. One kind is used with Sino-Japanese series numbers. One kind is used with native series numbers. The other is used with a mixture of both.

Reading Counters

Counters with 漢語系列の数詞

The overwhelming majority of counters of Sino-Japanese origin, as you would expect, are used with these numbers. This includes the large number units as they are counters as well. Some native counters are also used with these numbers such as ^わ羽 (birds/rabbits), ^{わり}割 (10%), ^{くみ}組 (school class), ^{がた}型 (type), though 羽 is rather exceptional.

Recapping on Sound Changes

The following chart will help us remember what usually happens in regards to sound change for counter phrases.

	/k~/ 「回」	/s~/ 「冊」	/~t/ 「丁」	/h/ 「泊」	/other/ 「枚」
いち	いっかい	いっさつ	いっちょう	いっぱく	いちまい
に	にかい	にさつ	にちょう	にはく	にまい
さん	さんかい	さんさつ	さんちょう	さんぱく	さんまい
よん	よんかい	よんさつ	よんちょう	よんぱく	よんまい
ご	ごかい	ごさつ	ごちょう	ごはく	ごまい
ろく	ろっかい	ろくさつ	ろくちょう	ろっぱく	ろくまい

なな しち	ななかい しちかい	ななさつ しちさつ	ななちょう しちちょう	ななはく しちはく	ななまい しちまい
はち	はっかい はちかい	はっさつ	はっちょう	はっぱく	はちまい
きゅ う	きゅうかい	きゅうさつ	きゅうちょう	きゅうはく	きゅうまい
じゅ う	じゅっかい じっかい	じゅっさつ じっさつ	じゅっちょう じっちょう	じゅっぱく じっぱく	じゅうまい
ひゃ く	ひゃっかい	ひゃくさつ	ひゃくちょう	ひゃっぱく	ひゃくまい
せん	せんかい	せんさつ	せんちょう	せんぱく	せんまい
まん	いちまんかい	いちまんさつ	いちまんちょう	いちまんぱく	いちまんまい
おく	いちおくかい	いちおくさつ	いちおくちょう	いちおくはく	いちおくまい
ちょ う	いっちょうか い	いっちょうさ つ	いっちょうちょ う	いっちょうは く	いっちょうま い
なん	なんかい	なんさつ	なんちょう	なんぱく	なんまい

Contraction Note: As we know, じゅう → じゅっ and じゅう → じっ are both correct, the latter is the traditionally correct form, but it is the former that is used

the most today. It is to note that you must use じっ in set phrases such as じっぱ 十 把ひとから 一 絡 げ (sweepingly), じって 十 手 (short truncheon with a hook made of metal or wood used by policeman and private thief-takers in the 江戸時代), じっぱ 十 派 (the ten sects of Rinzai Buddhism), and じっけつ 十 傑 (ten biggest experts in a field).

For the most part, sound changes that occur with counter phrases can be summarized with the chart above. Understandably, when something is more technical such as 光年 (light year) or 海里 (nautical mile), a lot of people do not change いち → いっ. Additionally, there are more important things to address.

は行 Sound Problems

Most counters starting with a は行 change to p before ん. A small percentage of people don't make a change at all. Some are restricted from changing with 4 such as 杯, 匹, 編, 歩, 方, and 本. Some counters like 杯 historically went to b in this condition, but it usually goes to p, though some speakers still change it to b or don't change it at all.

票 is usually ひょう, but some use びょう. Interestingly, when the number is high ひょう becomes more acceptable. Others such as 本 obligatory have a change of h to b excluding four. なんぽん is impossible. H to b generally lingers on in for most applicable numbers in the older population.

Other Voicing Before ん

足 gets voiced whenever it precedes an ん by the majority of people, although there are many who do not go by this sound change. なんぞく, in fact, is least common. 千 also does the same, giving us さんぜん and なんぜん. 羽 does too, but not so much with 4. So, we get さんば by some speakers.

階 and 軒 usually get voiced when preceded by ん but not with 4. さんがい and さんげん are both very common with their non-voiced counterparts used by quite a few people. なんがいは actually not used by the majority of people though it is traditionally the correct form, but なんけん and なんげん are equally used. In larger numbers, the likelihood of people voicing these counters drastically drops.

件 also rarely follows suit, allowing us to get 3 件 read as さんげん.

促音化 of 6, 8, & 100

The rates of 促音化 for ろく and ひゃく in front of s and t is very low, although you may find this in use. For instance, hardly anyone says ろっとう. Most people say ひゃくとう but quite a few still say ひゃっとう. No one says ろっさつ. Oddly enough, some people do say ひゃっさつ. But, most people do say ひゃくさ

つ. Most people say ろっぽん and ひゃっぽん, but some people do use ろくほん and ひゃくほん.

8 often does not undergo sound change, but then it often does. For instance, most people say はっとう instead of はちとう. Essentially everyone says はっさつ, but people almost fifty-fifty either say はちかい or はっかい. Most people say はっぱつ, but some people are OK with はちはつ. The same goes for 8 本. A considerable number of people say なんふん, though most say なんぶん. In fact, a small percentage of speakers don't change 分 for 3 or 4.

羽 & 把

For 3 羽 the majority of people say さんば, but many still say さんわ. For 4 羽, よんわ is used by most people. However, a few people say よんば and even fewer say よんぱ. Those who say the latter are most likely misspeaking. As for 10 羽, most people say じゅっぱ or じっぱ, but じゅうわ is used by a lot of people. 何 羽 is usually なんわ. However, some say なんば and very few say なんぱ. With 千 and 万, the readings are ば (a lot), わ (quite a few), ぱ (not many).

By analogy, 把 (bundles) is also affected. Though わ is always the most common reading, many say じっぱ・じゅっぱ, quite a few say さんば, and some do say よんば, さんぱ, よんぱ.

人 Regularized

Of course, 人 has the exceptional ひとり and ふたり, but those are actually read as いちにん and ににん respectively when used with 前 to express portion sizes and other set phrases.

Time Phrase Exceptions

Time phrases are a mess when it comes to conformity. 年 takes よ for 4 but either きゅう or く for 9. Other things such as 年生 and 年度 behave the same.

We know how we should say しがつ, しちがつ, and くがつ for April, July, and September respectively.

Day becomes an even more confused mess. You know of ついたち, ふつか, みっか, よっか, いつか, むいか, なのか, ようか, ここのか, とおか, and the like. You also know that other days such as 17 日 (じゅうしちにち) have set readings. However, you probably don't know that some speakers turn にち to んち when possible or that there are many who say じゅうななにち instead of じゅうしちにち. This is dialectical, but it's important to know that it does exist. However, these speakers interestingly never use this contract with 千 or 何.

As for 時 and 時間, よ and く must be used for 4 and 9 respectively. You can say しちじかん and ななじかん, but you can only say しちじ. Though not imperative, よ and く are used frequently with other counters that begin with じ.

Foreign Counters

There are also foreign counters that we can group with counters who take Sino-Japanese numbers. The majority of such counters are actually measurement words.

In principle, most foreign counters stay the same and don't undergo a sound change although one would otherwise be possible. So, things like フィート and ヘルツ would never change.

It's rare to hear something like じゅっフィート or the like, but the counter itself never changes. Even Sino-Japanese counters such as 平方 don't change due to a great association with foreign word (Ex. 平方メートル).

For パーセント (percent), PPM, ページ (page), and ポンド (pound), 1, 8 and 10 frequently undergo sound change. よ and く are also not used with foreign counters. So, you won't ever hear よメートル or くメートル. Others such as キロ, センチ, and トン behave like any other counter. So, you get things like 100 キロ, 30 トン, and 10 センチ. Exceptionally, 1 キロ happens to be more common than 100 キロ.

Other normal counters include cc, カラット (carat), カロリー (calorie), キログラム (kilogram), グラム (gram), アール (are), アンペア (ampere), インチ (inch), オクターブ (octave), ダース (dozen), デシベル (decibel), ドル (dollar), ボルト (bolt), マイル (mile), マルク (marc), リットル (liter), メートル (meter), ヤード (yard), ルクス (lucs), ワット (watt), etc.

It's important to note that though the percentages of sound changes to numbers are just as likely with these foreign counters, there are a few instances when it is less likely. For instance, if you have one starting with s such as シート, 1 typically does not undergo sound change and 8 doesn't half of the time. The exact percentages of people using sound changes or not with foreign counters differ for each one, but most allow you to go with or without. However, 8 キロ and 100 キロ are always pronounced with 促音化, so there are even exceptions to this principle.

Using Native Numbers

As for counters that take Japanese numerals, we know of the important counters つ, か (日), つき (月), and り (人). Understand that つき is used to count げっすう 月数 but か is for both ひづけ 日付 and にっすう 日数. Consider the following chart.

	つ	か	つき	り
ひと	ひとつ		ひとつき	ひとり

ふた	ふたつ	ふつか	ふたつき	ふたり
み	みっつ	みっか	みつき	
よ	よっつ	よっか	よつき	
いつ	いつつ	いつか	(いつつき)	
む	むっつ	むいか	(むつき)	
なな	ななつ	なのか	(ななつき)	
や	やっつ	ようか	(やつき)	
ここの	ここのつ	ここのか	(ここのつき)	
とお	とお	とおか	(とつき)	

We see that とお and つ do not go together. We also know that か is not used with 1 and the expression is made with ついたち instead. The reading いっぴ may also be used in official documents. We also know that we can use Sino-Japanese numbers with にち if we count 日数. Though not in the chart, we also get はつか for #20. The pattern of using か with native numbers stretches from #2~10 and #20 but not in between. You can say じゅうよっか and にじゅうよっか, but you can view these as hybrid expressions. Children may say じゅうよ (ん) にち, but people largely do not. There is also みそか for #30 used primarily in 大晦日 (New Year's Eve), but the pattern does not stretch in between 20 and 30. The expression いくか did exist, but it has since disappeared completely.

More exceptions abound. For example, にひゃくとおか means the 210th day from the first day of spring according to the lunar calendar. It marks what is supposed to be the start of typhoon season. Then there's the 百八つの鐘 struck 108 times at midnight on New Year's Eve to ward off omens and evil spirits.

The reason for why usage of つき beyond 4 is put in parentheses is because at this point is common practice to use ヶ月 instead. Using 1~4 with つき is most expected of people that are older. This is already more frequent for 1~4 as well.

This is aside from set phrases such as 十月十日 meaning the average gestation period and 六月・睦月 meaning the sixth month of the lunar calendar.

As for り, み (っ) たり, よ (っ) たり, いくたり have existed and survive in isolated dialects, but they have otherwise dropped out of use entirely.

Other Limited Native Counters

Similar counters that take native numbers include え 重, こと 言, しずく 雫, たび 度, とせ 年, and よ 夜. Excluding exceptions such as やえざくら 八重 桜 (double-flowered cherry tree), these counters are generally not used past 2 or 3, and most have limited usage. Some are frequently used such as ひとえ, ふたえ, みえ (primarily used as the name of a prefecture), or 再び (spelled differently), or ひとこと, but the rest are just not so common and typically used in specialized contexts.

Mix of Sino-Japanese and Native Numbers

Then there are the counters which are used with a mix of Sino-Japanese and native numbers. These counters are particularly the most confusing as they present the learner great disagreements among speakers as to which pronunciation is the most correct. Below is a list of counters that fall under this category.

色, かご, カップ, 缶, 口, クラス, ケース, 桁, さじ, 皿, 試合, シーズン, 品, 種類, すじ, セット, 束, チーム, 粒, 坪, 箱, パック, 針, 晩, びん, 袋, 房, 部屋, 間, 棟, 目, 目盛り, 文字, 役, 切れ, 組, 揃い・揃え, 包み, 通り, 巻き.

What all of these counters have in common is that they either come from regular nouns or the 連用形 of verbs. To get a taste of what sort of options you have, consider the following chart with 箱 and 通り.

	箱 Boxes	通り Methods
--	---------	------------

1	ひとはこ・いっぱこ	ひとつおり
2	ふたはこ・にはこ	ふたとおり・にとおり
3	さんぱこ・さんはこ・みはこ	さんとおり・みとおり
4	よんはこ・よんぱこ	よんとおり・よとおり
5	ごはこ	ごとおり
6	ろっぱこ・ろくはこ	ろくとおり
7	ななはこ	ななとおり
8	はちはこ	はっとおり・はちとおり
9	きゅうはこ	きゅうとおり
10	じゅっぱこ・じっぱこ	じゅっとおり・じっとおり
100	ひゃっぱこ	ひゃっとおり
1000	せんはこ	せんとおり
10000	いちまんはこ	いちまんとおり
?	なんはこ・（いくはこ）	なんとおり・（いくとおり）

The trend is that if it is a very small number, then the native unit is most likely. Depending on the counter, whether a native unit can be used or not varies a lot. Even though something like みはこ may be possible, younger speakers don't use it at all. Expressions like みびん and みケース don't even exist. In fact, み itself has mostly disappeared in today's generation aside from date phrases. Even though you can say いちしあい, you can't say いちへや. Though ひとはこ and ふたはこ are by far the most common, みはこ and よはこ are far from it and いっぱこ and にはこ marginally exist. Some people even say さんぱこ, さんぱこ, and よはこ. However, you never see something like さんべや. There is a lot of variation and gaps in generations as to what other tweaks you can make to these phrases.

Some of these words would just never get used beyond a certain number anyway, so in these cases it's best not to think about the what if.

Below are some percentages for the readings of similar counters.

Phrases in bold are used by 70% or more of Japanese people. Phrases that are at least used by 20-45% of the population will be let as normal, and those that are used by less than 20% will be left in parentheses as questionable. Variants will be listed in order of most to least frequent.

	切れ	針	試合	チーム
1	ひときれ	ひとはり	いっしあい ・ひとしあい・(いちしあい)	いっちーむ ・(ひとちーむ・いちちーむ)
2	ふたきれ ・(にきれ)	ふたはり ・にしん	にしあい ・(ふたしあい)	にちーむ ・(ふたちーむ)
3	さんきれ・みきれ	さんはり ・(さんぱり・さんぱり・みはり)	さんしあい	さんちーむ
4	よんきれ ・よきれ	よんはり ・(よはり)	よんしあい ・よしあい	よんちーむ
5	ごきれ	ごはり	ごしあい	ごちーむ
6	ろくきれ ・ろきれ・(むきれ)	ろくはり ・(ろっぱり)	ろくしあい ・(ろくしあい)	ろくちーむ ・(ろくちーむ)
7	ななきれ	ななはり	ななしあい	ななちーむ
8	はちきれ ・はちきれ・(やきれ)	はちはり	はっしあい ・はちしあい	はっちーむ ・(はちちーむ)

*: にしん is essentially only used with 時計の二針, and it is ふたはり that is actually constructive. For instance, people say ふたはり縫う. People don't say にしん縫う.

Table of Contents

第105課: Directions

Having a large vocabulary is important. So, let's learn about places for directions!

Places

Place	所	ところ	Amusement park	遊園地	ゆうえんち
Post office	郵便局	ゆうびんきょく	Bank	銀行	ぎんこう
Company	会社	かいしゃ	Work	仕事	しごと
Hospital	病院	びょういん	Graduate school	大学院	だいがくいん
College	大学	だいがく	Department store	デパート	デパート
School	学校	がっこう	Department store	百貨店	ひゃっかてん
Theater	映画館	えいがかん	Convenience store	コンビニ	コンビニ
Coffee shop	喫茶店	きっさてん	Supermarket	スーパー	スーパー
Park	公園	こうえん	Museum	博物館	はくぶつかん
Home	家	いえ	Restaurant	レストラン	レストラン
Police station	交番	こうばん	Train station	駅	えき
Airport	空港	くうこう	Church	教会	きょうかい
Mosque	モスク	モスク	Synagogue	シナゴーグ	シナゴーグ
High rise	ビル	ビル	Skyscraper	摩天楼	まてんろう
Zoo	動物園	どうぶつえん	Art museum	美術館	びじゅつかん
Shrine	神社	じんじゃ	Chinese restaurant	中国料理店	ちゅうごくりょうりてん
Temple	寺	てら	Japanese restaurant	日本料理屋	にほんりょうりや

Hotel	ホテル	ホテル	Japanese style inn	旅館	りょかん
Family inn	民宿	みんしゆく	Pharmacy	薬局	やつきょく
Public bath	銭湯	せんとう	Cemetery	墓地	ぼち・はかち

Culture Note: A 旅館 is a traditional Japanese inn. They are wooden structures where guests may sleep, bathe, and eat traditional food. The flooring is laid out with 畳. Bedding is 布団, and you wear 浴衣 to sleep.

Shops

Store in Japanese is みせ 店 and shop is てんぽ 店 舗. Store names often end in ~屋 or ~店. To address an employee of a store, address him or her as:

Kind of Store	+	~さん
---------------	---	-----

At times ~いん 員 is used to mean "employee". As it is more polite to address a person with his or her actual name, always look for a name tag if available. To say where one works, you use the phrase ~に つと 勤 めています.

Kinds of Stores

Stationer	文房具屋	ぶんぼうぐや	Butcher shop	肉屋	にくや
Cleaners	クリーニング屋	クリーニング グヤ	Photo shop	写真 屋	しゃしん や
Fish store	魚屋	さかなや	Grocery store	八百屋	やおや
Fruit store	果物屋	くだものや	Bakery	パン屋	パンや

Cake shop	ケーキ屋	ケーキや	Candy shop	お菓子屋	おかしや
Appliance store	電気屋	でんきや	Shoe store	靴屋	くつや
Sushi shop	寿司屋	すしや	Flower store	花屋	はなや
Drug store	薬屋	くすりや	Food stand	出店	でみせ
Book store	本屋	ほんや	Book store	書店	しょてん
Retail store	小売店	こうりてん	Liquor store	酒屋	さかや
Supermarket	スーパー	スーパー	Toy store	玩具屋	おもちゃや
Camera store	カメラ屋	カメラや	Old book store	古本屋	ふるほんや
Furniture store	家具屋	かぐや	Jewelry store	宝石店	ほうせきてん
Clothing store	衣料品屋	いりょうひんや	Restaurant	飲食店	いんしょくてん
Convenience store	コンビニ				

Location

To describe the location of an item or place, you must use the following expressions in Japanese. Unlike in English, the location phrase is after the noun.

Xの前	Xのまえ	In front of X	Xの上	Xのうえ	On top of X
Xの横	Xのよこ	(To) the side of X	Xの中	Xのなか	Inside X
XとYの間	XとYのあいだ	Between X and Y	Xの後ろ	Xのうしろ	Behind X
Xの奥	Xのおく	In the back of X	Xの側面	Xのそくめん	At the side of X
Xの下	Xのした	Under X	Xの隣	Xのとなり	Next to X
Xの向かい	Xのむかい	Across from X	Xの周り	Xのまわり	Around X

Xの正面	Xのしょうめん	In front of X	Xの近く	Xのちかく	Near X
Xの先	Xのさき	Past X	Xの遠く	Xのとおく	Far from X
Xの向こう	Xのむこう	Beyond X	Xの脇	Xのわき	On the side of X
Xの方	Xのほう	In the direction of X	Xの近隣	Xのきんりん	Adjacent to X
Xの（直ぐ）側	Xの（すぐ）そば	Right by X	Xの傍ら	Xのかたわら	Aside from X
Xの手前	Xのてまえ	On this side of			

Word Note: You can add ^{なな}斜め at the front of a direction word to mean "diagonally". So, 斜め後ろ = diagonally behind. 向き means "facing". So, 南向き = facing south.

1. 銀行はどこですか。

Where is the bank?

2. ^{こうじょう}工場 の隣にあります。

It's right next to the factory.

3. 近くに電気屋はありますか。

Is there a electronics store nearby?

4. ^{じしよ}辞書 は机の上にあります。

The dictionary is on the desk.

5. 交番の前に学校があります。

There is a school in front of the police station.

6. 美術館の横に病院があります。

There is a hospital to the side of the art museum.

7. 川 (の) 向うの家

House on the other side of a river

8. テーブルの下に置いてある。

It's been placed under the desk.

9. 変な^{せん}線^{せん}が学校の周りにあります。

There is an odd line around the school.

10. あそこの^{ほん}本^{だな}棚^{だん}の下^{だん}の段^{だん}の左の方の小さい^{じびき}字^じ引^{びき}の隣の本

The book over there next to the small dictionary on the left side of the bottom shelf on the bookshelf

11. 消防署の向かいに喫茶店がある。

There is a coffee shop across from the fire station.

12. ^{みずうみ}湖^みのわきで^{さんぽ}散^{さん}歩^ぽする。

To take a walk on the side of the lake.

13. 彼は扉の向こうへ走り出した。

He began to race beyond the door.

14. この部屋の前には^{えんがわ}縁^{えん}側^{がわ}があって、その前は庭です。

There is a veranda in front of the room, and in front of it is a garden.

15. この^{さき}先^{つう}通^{こう}行^{どう}止^どめ

Road Blocked!

16. 病院ならすぐこの先です。

If you're talking about the hospital, it's only a little way from here.

17. 駅の隣に大きなスーパーができました。

A big supermarket has been made next to the train station.

Word Note: Remember that できる does not mean just "can" but can also mean "completed", "be made", "come into being", etc.

Asking for Directions

Below are some more additional vocabulary words for the examples that follow.

Intersection	交差点	こうさてん	Traffic Light	信号	しんごう
Bridge	橋	はし	End of the Street	突き当り	つきあたり
Meter	メートル	メートル	Train	電車	でんしゃ
Subway	地下鉄	ちかてつ	Bus	バス	バス
Bus Stop	バス停	バスてい	Taxi	タクシー	タクシー
Taxi Station	乗り場	のりば	Bullet train	新幹線	しんかんせん
Street	道	みち	Road	道路	どうろ
Highway	ハイウェイ	ハイウェイ	Expressway	高速道路	こうそくどうろ
Highway	ハイウェイ	ハイウェイ	Main road	幹線道路	かんせんどうろ
Corner	角	かど	Left	左	ひだり
Left Side	左側	ひだりがわ	Right	右	みぎ
Right Side	右側	みぎがわ	Left and Right	左右	さゆう
North	北	きた	South	南	みなみ
East	東	ひがし	West	西	にし
Northeast	北東	ほくとう	Northwest	北西	ほくせい
Southeast	南東	なんとう	Southwest	南西	なんせい
North-north-east	北北東	ほくほくとう	North-north-west	北北西	ほくほくせい
South-south-east	南南東	なんなんとう	South-south-west	南南西	なんなんぼく
South and North	南北	なんぼく	East and West	東西	とうざい
All 4 directions	東西南北	とうざいなんぼく	Vicinity	辺り	あたり
Neighborhood	辺	へん	Direction	方	ほう
To Turn	曲がる	まがる	To cross	渡る	わたる
To Go	行く	いく	To pass	過ぎる	すぎる

Word Notes:

1. "By" in the sense of a mode of transportation is expressed by で.
2. 側 = side. This can be used to refer to direction, side of something, a position, and a third person. For the first three, it can be read as かわ and even be seen as っかわ, but these are no longer standard readings.

Directions Note: Directions like ^{なんとう}南 東 are reversed if they represent location.

For example, southeast Asia is ^{とうなん}東 南 アジア.

When asking for directions, there are many different ways you can formulate your question. You may opt to say you're lost, use a conditional, or use a certain level of politeness. Below are some of the many viable ways you would do this in Japanese.

...に・へ行きたいですけど・が・けれど（も）	I want to go to...but
どうやって...に・へ行ったらいいですか。	How should I go if I am going to...?
どうやって...に・へ行けばいいですか。	How should I go if I am going to...?
道に迷ってしまいました。	I've gotten lost.
...への行き方を教えてください（ませんか）。	Could you please tell me how to get to...?
...ここは、どの辺ですか。	What neighborhood is this?
...どうやって行くんですか	How do I get to...?
...はどこですか。	Where is...?
...はどちらですか。	Where is...? (Formal)
...がどこか教えてください（ませんか）。	(If you would) please tell me where...is.

Word Note: You can use 何で instead of どうやって, but it isn't as common.

As politeness is often heightened when asking for directions, です is often changed to でしょう, its volitional form. People will typically respond to you by using the と conditional or ~てください.

18. どうやって行ったらいいでしょうか。

How should I go there?

19. 2 目目の交差点を ^{わた} 渡 っ て、40メートルぐらい行ってください。

Cross the second intersection, and go about forty meters.

20. 40メートルぐらい行くと、左側に美術館があります。

If you go about forty meters, an art museum will be on your left.

21. その美術館の角を左に曲がって、しばらくまっすぐ行ってください。

Turn left at the corner of the art museum, and go straight for a while.

22. しばらくまっすぐ行くと、郵便局が見えますよ。

If you go straight for a while, you will see a post office.

23. すみません、私もこの辺は初めてなんです。

Sorry, I am new to this area.

24. 旅館はどちらですか。

Where is the ryokan?

Culture Note: In a 旅館 guests live on traditional tatami mats, take Japanese baths, and sleep on futon. You will most likely encounter Japanese style toilets, which look quite different. You have to squat on those.

25. 「新幹線に乗ったことがありますか。」 「いいえ、乗ったことはありません。ところで、東京駅に行きたいですけど、どうやって行けばいいですか。」 「3 目目の交差点を右に曲がってください。そうすると、左にありますよ。」 「どうも。」

"Have you ridden the Shinkansen?" "No, I haven't". "By the way, I want to go to Tokyo Station, but how should I get there?" "Turn right on the third intersection. Then, it will be on your left". "Thanks".

Culture Note: The 新幹線, also known as the "bullet train", is one of the fastest passenger train services in the world. The 新幹線 opened in 九州 in 2011.

26. Xへはどうやって行きますか。

How do I get to X?

27. 道に迷いました。銀行を ^{さが}探しています。どうすれば行けますか。

We're lost. We are trying to find a bank. How can we get there?

28. 「遠いですか」「いいえ5分くらいですよ」「ああ、そうですか。どうもありがとうございます」「どういたしまして」

"Is it far?" "No, it's about five minutes (from here)" "Ah, really. Thank you very much" "You're welcome".

Then

"Then" is それから when you're giving progression of events, which is very important in giving directions and showing what happens right after in general, and そうすると is used when you do something, something else will happen.

29. 2つ目の交差点を左に曲がってください。それから、まっすぐ行ってください。

Please turn right on the second intersection. Then, please go straight.

30. この道をまっすぐ行ってください。そうすると、右に病院があります。

Please go straight on this street. Then, there will be a hospital to your right.

31. 薬を口 ^{ふく}に含んだ。それから、水で ^{なが}流 ^こし込んだ。

I swallowed the medicine. Then, I washed it down with water.

32. 私は仕事で ^{さら}皿 ^{かわ}を洗い、それから乾かしました。

I washed then dried the dishes at work.

Table of Contents

Exercises

Translate into Japanese (1-5)

1. I'm going to school tomorrow.
2. Where is the bank?
3. How should I go to the movie theatres?
4. The police station is behind the department store.
5. The neighborhood is to the left side of the highway.
6. How do you say then as in continuing your directions?
7. Explain そうすると.
8. Make a paragraph using 3 locations, and 2 specific indicators where they're are.

第106課: The Particle **ながら**

In this lesson you get to learn how to express simultaneous action with the particle **ながら**.

The Particle **ながら**

Simultaneous Action

The most fundamental usage of **ながら** is to show that **two different things are being done simultaneously**. This **ながら** follows the 連用形 of verbs. It is best translated as "while". However, you must keep in mind that both actions are concurrent! So, since it shows that things are concurrent, it can also show things being done over a period of time. Furthermore, the subject of both clauses must be the same. This should be evident in the following examples.

1. 働きながら、中国語を勉強しています。

I'm studying Chinese while working.

2. 食べながら、話さないで。

Don't talk while you eat.

3. ルームメイトは話しながら、タバコを吸ってた。(Casual)

My roommate was smoking as he talked.

4. 宿題をしながら、ピザを食べました。

I was eating pizza while doing my homework.

5. テレビを見ながら、寿司を食べました。

I ate sushi while watching TV.

6. 食べながら話すのは行儀が悪い。

Eating while talking is bad etiquette.

7. 母は新聞を読みながら、朝ご飯を食べます。

My mother eats breakfast while he reads the newspaper.

8. 彼はホットドッグを食べながらテレビを見ている。

He's eating hot dogs while watching TV.

9. 僕は音楽を聞きながらドライブした。

I was listening to music while I drove.

10. 勉強しながら、アルバイトをしています。

I'm taking a part time job while studying.

11. 私は働きながら大学を出ました。

I worked my way through college.

12. 歌いながら、^{おど}踊る。

To dance while singing.

13. 歩きながら、^{じだんだ}地団駄^ふでも踏みたいような^{いらだ}苛^わ立ちが湧き起こってくる。

While she walked, she felt irritated and wanted to stomp the ground.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

Phrase Note: ^{ぞく}ながら族 is a slang word that refers to people that do their work and listen to things like TV, radio, etc. at the same time.

読み物: ぬれた犬

僕の犬はスパッキーです。
 スパッキーちゃんはちょうど今吠えながら、
 裏庭にある孔の突き抜けたホースから
 吹き出している水で遊んでいて、
 ずぶ濡れになってしまいました。
 気温が下がっているから、
 タオルで乾かさないといいけませんでした。
 ホースの栓を締めましたが、
 なぜ吠え続けているのかよく分かりません。

語彙: Vocabulary

裏庭	うらにわ	Backyard	孔	あな	Hole
突き抜ける	つきぬける	To go through	吹き出す	ふきだす	To spout
ずぶ濡れ	ずぶぬれ	Soaking wet	気温	きおん	Temperature (outside)
乾かす	かわかす	To dry off	栓	せん	Stopper; tap
締める	しめる	Fasten; turn off	吠える	ほえる	To bark

1. Why did the dog have to get dried off?
2. How did the dog get wet?
3. What was wrong with the hose?
4. What is the dog still doing?
5. What's the name of my dog?

Weird Word Note: There also happens to be the phrase しいしい (為い為い). 為 is the character that is seldom used to write the famous verb する. This phrase comes from the repetition of the verb's 連用形, and it happens to be synonymous with ~しながら. It is dialectical, so some speakers won't know.

14. 遠慮しいしい話しはじめた。

I started to talk while being hesitant.

15. 泣く泣く母国を去る。

To reluctantly leave one's home country.

Phrase Note: This strange repetition of 泣く implies a sad reluctance--with tears--in doing something. It may also be seen as 泣き泣き.

ながら・ながらも: Difficult Coexistence

ながら can also show two things that are difficult to coexist are doing just that--"while despite". This is an extension of "simultaneous action" to "states". The contrast between the two clauses is often intensified as ながらも. This strengthens the gap in the relation between the two parts with an explicit feeling of contradiction.

This usage may be used with the 連用形 of verbs, the 連体形 of けいようどうし けいようし 形容動詞 and 形容詞, nominal phrases, etc. It's most important with verbs. So, learn other odd constructions on a case-by-case basis. Consider the following expressions.

Part of Speech ながら Attaches to	Expression	Definition
--------------------------------	------------	------------

形容動詞	僭越（せんえつ）ながら	While being presumptuous
動詞	恐れながら	Let me humbly say
動詞	憚（はばか）りながら	With all due respect
形容動詞	残念ながら	I'm afraid to say that
助動詞	及（およ）ばずながら	To the best of...ability
形容動詞	恥かしながら	I am ashamed to say that
動詞	遅（おそ）まきながら	Belatedly
名詞	遅（おく）ればせながら	Belatedly
動詞	さしながら	Nevertheless
動詞	とはい言いながら	With these words
名詞	もさることながら	It goes without saying that

Part of Speech Note: "Adjective + ながら（も）" is definitely not common, and it's not a completely constructive pattern either. You should use with caution, and it's really best to encounter individual usages. For instance, 小さいながら（も） and 狭いながら（も） are commonly used expressions, but using it with any adjective is problematic.

16. 彼女はあるにいろいろ苦^{くろう}勞しながらも、それを苦^くにしていない。

Even though she's going through that many troubles, she isn't worrying about that.

17. 仕事が一杯^{しごと いっぱい}入って、残念^{ざんねん}ながら、今日は行けなくなりました。

While it's unfortunate, a lot of work has come in, and I've become unable to go today.

18. 彼は {大企業・大会社} の ^{しゃちょう}社長 ながら、いつも ^{こし ひく}腰 の 低い人です。

Even though he's the president of a large corporation, he's always a humble man.

Word Note: 大企業 is more frequently used.

19. 私は ^{しょしんしゃ}初心 者 ながらも、^{のうりよく}潜在 能 力 はかなりあると思います。

Even though I'm a beginner, I think that my skills are considerably good.

20. ^{はばか}憚りながら (も) ^{もう あ}申し上げます。

I'll speak with all due respect.

21. しかしながら、^{よさんあん}予算 案 はまだ ^{しゅうせい}修 正 の余地がある。

Nevertheless, I think the budget still has plenty of room for improvement.

22. 彼女は、^{やまい}病 の ^{とこ ふ}床 に伏しながらも、本を書き ^{つづ}続 けたんだよ。

Even while she was bedridden, she continued to write her book!

23. あの子は小さいながらも、^{りょうしん}両 親 の ^{きも}気持ちがよく分かっています。

Even though the child is young, she understands her parent's feelings quite well.

24a. ^{われ}我ながら

24b. ^{じぶん}自分ながら (Not common)

Even if I say so myself

25. ^{ちゅうかりょうり}中華 料理 は ^{あじ}味 もさることながら、^{けんこう}健 康 にいいですよ。

It goes without saying that Chinese food is tasty, but it's also good for you.

おそ ひとことい
26. 恐れながら 一言言わせていただきます。

Allow me to humbly say something.

27. 「こんなことをしてる場合じゃ、ないのかもな」

再び桐の箱から拳銃を取り出して、勲はため息混じりに呟いた。小さいながら、しっかりと存在を持つコルトは、果たして以前は誰の手に握られていたものだろう。

"This is probably not the time to be doing this", Isao mumbled with a sigh as he took at the handgun again from the paulownia box. While small, the Colt with its firm presence must have been held by someone's hands before.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

ながらに・ながらの

ながら may also show that a situation continues to be as is or has a sense of applying to "all". For this usage, it often takes the form ながらに. ながらの is more common because it is used in attributes where ながらに would have to be accompanied with an action.

The に in ながらに actually comes from the 連用形 of the classical copula verb なり. The difference between ながら and ながらに is that ながらに is used to show a sense of "as is" or "all". Lastly, this usage may be used with nominal phrases, adverbs, and the 連用形 of verbs.

すべ う びょうどう
28. 全ての人は生まれながらに 平 等 である。

All men are born equal.

むかし たたず たてもの
29. 昔ながらの 佇 まいの 建 物 。

30. 昔ながらの佇まいを のこ 残 す建物。

A building with an appearance unchanged.

31. 涙ながらに

In tears

32. 三度ながら（に）しくじった。（古風）

三回ともしくじった。（Natural）

I blundered a full three times.

Grammar Note: Notice that に was optional in the last sentence.

Usage Note: ながらに may also be used as an older-style variant of usage 2.

ながら with the Negative

～ずながら・ぬながら can show simultaneous negative action, essentially usage 1 from above. It shows that "while...not...". This is not common, but it is quite possibly you'll see this again.

33. この ^{おとこ}男 は、^{きかい}機 械 のことは分 かり ^わぬながら、^{せいふん}製 粉 が ^{てぎわ}手 際 よく ^{じょうず}上 手 にゆ
くように、^{みずぐるま}水 車 のあらゆる ^{ぶひん}部 品 をできるだけ ^{ちょうせい}調 整 してきたし、^{せいかつ}生 活 を
たて、^{くち のり}口 を 糊 してきたのである。

The man, while not knowing the machine, in order for the grind to neatly and nicely go, he to the best of his ability got control of each part of the waterwheel, built a life, and made a meager living.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What does ながら mean in respect to its usages?
2. Explain how to use ながら.

3. Create a sentence with **ながら**.

第107課: Pronouns III: 再帰代名詞

Japanese 再帰代名詞 *equate* to English "reflexive pronouns". However, unlike the reflexive pronouns of English and other European languages, these Japanese words are far more complex. Usages vary and are heavily reliant on context for correct interpretation.

The first problem that you have to come to grips with is the sheer number of "reflexive pronouns" in Japanese: 自分、自分自身、自身、自己、自体、自ら、自ずから、己、and 各々. Though this list may appear exhaustive, it does not include words with reflexive elements in them or dialectal variants.

漢字 Note: There are other words with 自- with a meaning of "own". Ex. 自宅 = "One's house".

自分(じぶん)

自 分 causes linguists on both sides of the Pacific to constantly write on the so-called long-distance reflexive pronouns of Japanese. If you ever look into this matter in greater academic depth, this term will come up. However, even without any linguistic knowledge, with what is to be discussed, this term will inevitably hone things together in your mind.

Source of Confusion

自分 has **no exact** English equivalent. Most textbooks say it means "(one)self", "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "themselves", "itself", etc. depending on context. This, though, is oversimplified. How do you know which is meant with just **a** sentence? What if there are multiple things 自分 could refer to?

This is where long-distance reflexive properties and knowledge of clause structures and particles come into play. For starters, consider the following sentence:

1a. 自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

From an English perspective where an anaphor, an "-self" word, must have an antecedent (something before them) to refer to, 自分 having no subject to refer to and being marked by が as the subject is problematic! As, additional information can be easily dropped in a Japanese sentence, long-distance co-referencing comes into play.

自分 can refer to a subject mentioned earlier. In the alteration of the previous example, it is clear that 自分 = 彼女ら自身 (they themselves).

1b. 彼女らは自分が馬鹿者だって知らないんだ。

Scenarios with Multiple Potential Readings

There are some cases where you need the full discourse to conclude the meaning of 自分. Even with context, in sentences such as below, there really are multiple, variable readings that you can derive and not be wrong. In such situations, even for native speakers, explaining may be the only way to negate ambiguity as seen below.

2. 岸田さんは、「小田原さんが『自分は頭がいい』と言った」と言った。

It could be that Odawara was referring to Kishida. Or, he could have been just talking about himself. Regardless of what you think is the most probable interpretation, without any other information, it's not certain.

Single Interpretation Scenarios

Consider the following with only one possible interpretation. Regardless whether there is ambiguity in what 自分 refers to or not or how long the sentence is, it still refers to something specific.

3. 畑中先生は憲太にとって自分の親のような存在だった。

Hatanaka Sensei was to Kenta like his own parent.

4. 清美は、実際としては、春彦に何を白状させたというのではなく、ただ自分の推測でものを言っているだけだ。

As for Kiyomi, it's not what did she make Haruhiko confess; it's just her own conjecture.

In Ex. 3, 畑中先生 is still the topic. She has an existence of [憲太にとって自分の親のような]. We know that 自分 doesn't refer to her because にとって provides an explanatory sense to the situation, negating the other possible reference, 憲太. Without 憲太にとって, 自分 would refer to 畑中先生.

In Ex. 4, 自分 refers to 清美. This is because [春彦から何を白状させたという] is embedded in the nominal phrase marked by の, which could be replaced by any other noun phrase you'd like.

Unlikely Ambiguous Scenarios

In this final example, it would be odd for the command to be for the listener to retrospect on what the *speaker* has done. However, this reading could exist given enough context. However, if this is all that is said, you can safely assume that the only plausible reading is the one given in translation.

5. 君は、自分のことを反省しなさい。

Look back on what you yourself have done.

One could potentially bring up counterexamples that defy minor details of what has been said thus far, but it is clear that context decides. Even if this context still doesn't solve everything, just like how we deal with ambiguity in English, you either make the most logical assumption of what it means or seek clarification if possible.

More Examples

6. 自分でやりなさい。

Do it yourself.

7a. 自分自身が自分であるために

7b. 自分が自分自身であるために (もっと自然)

In order for one to be oneself

8. 若いうちに自分のしたいことをしておくといい。

It is good for you to do what you want to do while you're still young.

9a. 多くの人は、自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張している。(もっと自然な言い方)

9b. 自分の体を大切にすべきだと主張する人は多い。(あまり使われていない言い方)

A lot of people stress that everyone should take good care of themselves.

10. 彼女は鏡で長いこと自分を見つめていた。

She was staring at herself in the mirror for a long time.

11. {各人・自分} の責任において

At one's own risk

Meaning Note: It is not proper in honorifics to use 自分 to mean "I", which is extremely common in places like the 関西弁. This colloquial usage appears to have risen from the practice of soldiers having to refer to themselves as such. It can also confusingly still be used to refer to the listener.

12. 自分にやらせてください。

Please let me do it.

13. この事実について君が自分達を如何ように裁いてくれても自分たちは勿論甘受する。

To this truth, no matter how you judge us, we will of course put up with it.

From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

Grammar Note: As the sentence shows, 自分達 also exists.

自分自身

自分自身 is a more potent way of saying "oneself". You can see 自身 after other pronouns. So, you can get 私自身、彼自身、彼女自身, etc. Don't confuse 自身 with 自信, which means self-confidence.

14. 自分自身のことをしろ。

Do your own thing!

15. 自分自身の言葉で言ったほうがいいんじゃない？

Isn't it best for you to say it in your own words?

16. ぼくは自信なんかない。

I don't have any confidence (in myself).

自己

自己 = Self. It is used in many phrases and is the choice for translating instances of "self-" in English.

17. 自己紹介させていただきます。

Allow me to introduce myself.

18. その選手は、自己記録を更新しましたよ。

That athlete beat her own record!

自己防衛	Self-defence	自己批判	Self-criticism	自己矛盾	Self-contradiction
自己紹介	Self-introduction	自己犠牲	Self-sacrifice	自己採点	Self-rating
自己評価	Self-evaluation	自己中心	Self-centered	自己主張	Self-assertion

自体

This word refers to "itself", but it can also seldom refer to one's own body or be used as an adverb meaning on the lines of **そもそも**.

19. 考えそれ自体は、悪くありません。

The idea itself isn't bad.

20. それ自体は毒じゃない。

It itself isn't a poison.

21. 家自体が古い。

The house itself is old.

22. 口答えすること自体そもそも間違いだろう。

Talking back in of itself in the first place was a mistake, no?

自ら & 自ずから

As you would imagine, these are native reflexive pronouns. The first is read as **みずから**. The second is read as **おのずから**. So, be very careful about that. They're not used in any colloquial sense like **自分**. However, the overall problems of interpretation are still very relevant. In an adverbial sense they can be used like **自分で**. In this case, though, there is no particle involved. These words have the same nuance effect as **自分自身**.

23a. 天は自ら助くるものを助く。(Proverb)

23b. 天は {自ら・自分 (自身) を} 助けるものを助ける。(Modern Japanese Equivalent)

Heaven helps those who help themselves.

24. 彼自ら東京へ行った。

He went to Tokyo himself.

25. その事実は自ずから明らかだ。

The fact speak for themselves.

Nuance Note: 自ずから is often seen as 自ずと and both are used in a sense that the situation and hand is naturally so.

己 & 各々

己 has always been an important reflexive pronoun in Japanese. Although now it can be used as a second person pronoun slur, you still see it in a lot of old, set phrases. The root is おの-, which can be seen doubled in the expression 各々 (each and every). Although there are a lot of possible set and at times very archaic expressions that use these words, only truly relevant examples will be brought up.

26. 己を知れ。

Know thyself.

27. 己の説くところを励行せよ。

Practice what you preach.

28. 己が誰なのか知れ。

Know who you are.

29a. 己をもって他人を律するな。

29a. 自分の基準で他人を律するな。(もっと自然)

Don't just others by yourself.

30. 容疑者がおのおの違った説明をした。

The suspects each gave a different story.

31. どの学校でも新入生がそうであるように、私は毎日新鮮な気持ちで通いながらも、とりとめのない思いがしていた。知り人は鶴川であった。どうしても鶴川とばかり話すようになる。それでは折角新しい世界へ出て来た意味がないのを、鶴川のほうでも感じているらしく、数日たつうちに、休み時間にはわざと二人が離れて、**おのがじし**新しい友を開拓しようとした。しかし吃りの私には、そういう勇気もなかったので、鶴川の友が増えるにつれ、私はますます孤りになった。

Like a new student in any school, while I went with fresh feelings each day, there was something I couldn't bring myself to. Tsurukawa was my acquaintance. I was to no matter what only talk with Tsurukawa. With even Tsurukawa sensing that there was no meaning to coming into this long awaited new world, in a matter of days, we purposely separated during break to each find friends. But, with my stutter, as Tsurukawa's friends grew in number, I became ever more alone.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

Word Note: おのがじし is an archaism meaning それぞれに.

Spelling Note: In Ex. 31, there are some interesting spellings. 独り is written instead as 孤り. Also, 新しい is written as 新らしい. This is because 送り仮名 usage was not standardized at the time. Lastly, although its not exceptional, 吃り is read as どもり.

第108課: Try: ~てみる・みたい・みせる

Though these phrases may not be difficult, you should pay close attention to exactly how they are used in Japanese. It would be a travesty if you tried to apply the English translations to all possible applications in English to Japanese.

~てみる/~てみたい

見る means "to see" and is after て to show what you "try". When paired with ~たい, the resultant expression is "want to try". This is specifically wanting to try to for the sake of a result. There isn't any negative consequences or true effort. The supplementary verb ~みる is not written in 漢字 anymore in modern, up-to-date orthography, and ~てみる is often contracted to ~てみい in casual speech.

1. 新しいコートを着てみる。

I'll try a new coat on.

2. 本当に（お）すしを食べてみたいです。

I really want to try sushi.

漢字 Note: Sushi may also be spelled as 寿司, 鮓, or rarely as 鮓.

3. よく考えてみる（よ）。

I'll think it over.

4. やってみたい。

I want to try.

5. カレーライスを食べしてみる。

To try to eat curry rice.

6. 月見バーガーを食べてみたい。

I want to try a tsukimi burger.

Word Note: It might as well be called egg burger.

7. 誰か一度会ってみたい 人がいますか。

Is there someone you would like to meet once?

8. みんなに聞いてみたけど。

I asked everyone, but...

9. たまった宿題を ^{いっぺん} 一 遍 に片付けてみよう。

I'm going to try to finish this piled up homework at once.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 for たまった is 溜まった.

10. みんなを笑いの ^{うず} 渦 に巻き込んでみたい。(Idiomatic)

I want to put a smile on everyone's faces.

11. 一か八かやってみる。

To take a chance/sink or swim.

Reading Note: 八 is read as ばち in the phrase above.

~てごらん

This is used to tell someone to try to do something and is a way to entice someone. ごらん is from the honorific form of みる, ご覧になる. This pattern comes from the abbreviation of the command form of this expression, ご覧なさい.

12. おいしいから食べてごらん。

Try it. It's delicious.

13. そのサボテンを ^{とこ} 跳び越えてごらん!

Try jumping over the cactus!

漢字 Note: The 漢字 for サボテン is 仙人掌. You don't need to remember this.

Honorifics Note: Some speakers do not like ～てご覧なさい and feel that it lacks etiquette. However, as is found in dictionaries and is the case for most speakers, it is completely fine and the correct way of making ～てみる honorific.

14. 来てごらんなさい。

Please come [forth].

15. 耳を^す澄ませてご覧なさい。

Please try to listen carefully.

16. 目を閉じてご覧なさい。

Try closing your eyes.

However, those who feel ～てご覧なさい lacks respect replace it with ～てみてください with an already honorific verb. So, the difference lies in where the honorific element of the verb phrase is.

17a. 訂正されてみてください。△

17b. 訂正なさってみてください。○

Please try to revise/edit it.

This shows that lowering honorific standards causes problems. The first sentence may make someone sound uneducated. The second sentence comes from fears of being too pushy, which ～なさい in other contexts gives.

To complicate things more, ～てご覧なさい may not always be appropriate. However, ～てみる is typically not used in other conjugations in honorific fashion as mentioning superiors trying things is not formal. Rather, things like ～ていただく "receiving the act of...(by/from....)" would be used. So, "I received the boss eating X" rather than "X tried eating X".

試す

This verb means "to try out" and is used a lot with ～てみる.

18. 自分の力を試してみる。

To try one's strength.

19. もう一度試してみて。

Have another try.

試す VS 試みる

The first is used in the sense of trying to investigate something with some means whereas the second ascertains the course of a result by an action/accomplishment. The best way to understand this is check what kinds of words and phrases are used with them.

20. ^{だっそう}脱走を試みる。

To test an escape.

21. 能力を試す。

To test ability.

22. 日本語能力試験をして実力を試してみたらどうですか。

How about testing your true skills by taking the Japanese Proficiency Test?

23. 新車の乗り心地^{ごこち}を試す。

To test the feel of a new car.

24. 別の方法を試みる。

To try another method.

Other Miscellaneous "Try" Verbs

There are plenty of other phrases in Japanese that are translated into English as "try". However, they all correspond to specific usages. Meanings like in "trying one's utmost" or "test new products" are all expressed differently in Japanese.

25. 彼は全力を尽くした。

He tried his hardest.

26. ラーメンを^{ししょく}試食する。

To taste-test ramen.

27. 新製品を試用する。

To test new products.

28. あらゆる^{どりよく}努力をする。

To make every effort.

29. 誰がこの事件を { ^{さば}裁く・^{しんり}審理する } のでしょうか。

Who is going to try this case?

30. 彼は^{だつぜいようぎ}脱税容疑で裁判を受けた。

He was tried for tax evasion.

～ようにする

～ようにする shows that you carry something out willfully in the sense of making a serious attempt. ～ようにしてください can be used to indirectly tell

someone to do something by telling them what they need to try to do either for an on-off occasion or for a habitual change. It can't be used for an on-the-spot request. This よう is a noun and the pattern follows the non-past affirmative or negative forms.

31. 肉を食べないようにしています。

I am trying not to eat meat.

32. ご希望に^そ添うようにします。

I'll attend to that.

33. 遅れないようにしてください。

Please try not to be late.

34. 町を引^{たく}手繰^{うば}るようにして（、物を）奪^{うば}い取った。

They plundered the town by snatching.

Word Note: 引手繰る means "to grab at". You can figuratively see the things of the town being drawn towards the bandits with this example. Remember that the よう used in this pattern is 様. Plundering a town is serious work, so this is a great example.

～（よ）うとする

～（よ）うとする shows that one tries to materialize something, not just attempt something. This is a present action and isn't continuous for any considerable duration. What is being expressed is that you're trying to realize something.

35. 起きようとしたが、起きられませんでした。

I tried to get up, but I couldn't.

It may also show something right as something is about to happen. So, it's "right as...is about to try to do..., then...".

36. 朝ご飯を食べようとした時、電話がかかってきました。

Just as I was about to eat breakfast, I got a telephone call.

In this example, the phone call came in before the speaker could ever actually start eating breakfast.

When an attempt is continuous, meaning that it has a measurable duration, conscious in the sense that you are willfully trying to do it, or a non-momentous effort (such an action could have a negligible duration), **～ようにする** must be used instead. Remember that **～ようにする** actions have a longer duration and it is often the case that one is trying to change a habit.

This is attached to verbs of volition, and **～よう** and **～う** attach to the 未然形. As the class of verb determines which one you use, here is a conjugation chart for this pattern.

一段	食べる	食べる + よう + とする →	食べようとする
五段	飲む	飲む + う + とする →	飲もうとする
サ変	する	する + よう + とする →	しようとする
カ変	来る	来る + よう + とする →	来（こ）ようとする

37. ワインを飲もうとしました。

I tried to drink wine.

38. エレベーターに乗ろうとした時、後ろから走ってきた男に^お押されたんです。

Just as I was about to get onto the elevator, I was pushed by a man who came running from behind.

39. その後、店で財布を出そうとしたけれど、何もなかったんです。

After that, just as I tried to take out my wallet in the store, nothing was in it.

Grammatical Limits

The basic form of the expression has a time quality that makes its non-past form ungrammatical in many instances. ～ようとする is right before an action/change A's beginning/trial. However, it is right after a base period. In other words, it shows a judgment towards a trial that is right after a base time by a third person. Consider the definition at the top. You try to realize something, which is a change that's about to happen, but your attempt has already begun and is after the onset.

Take note in what makes the following sentences grammatical.

40. 私は日本へ留学しようとするんです。X → 私は日本へ留学しようと思います。○

Intended: I will try to study abroad in Japan.

41. 友子、すぐ出かけようとするんですか。X → 友子、すぐ出かけようとしていますか。○

Intended: Is she going to try to leave immediately?

42. ^{あり}蟻が自分よりも大きな食べ物を^す巣の方へ運ぼうとしていますよ。

Ants are trying to carry food that is larger than themselves to their hill.

43. 僕は、大学院に進むため、留学しようとしていたんです。

I was trying to go abroad to get into graduate school.

44. 僕は氷が^は張るくらい寒いところにある川に氷の^さ裂け目から落ちてしまった犬を助けようとしたのです。

I tried to save a dog that had fallen from an ice crack into a river in an area so cold with ice.

3rd Person Restraints

[X は + Verb of volition A + とする] when trying to speak figuratively, an object third person's pose or feeling right before a trial can be captured by the speaker. In actual dialogue this becomes unnatural. When in conversation, in other words, in the present time of the speaker, there is no explanation for why the speaker would conjecture definitely about the feelings of the third person. This is un-Japanese to do, and bad Japanese grammar to try. In other words, in this situation, there is no shutter chance to be able to grasp the instant before X (the third person) does A. Consider this passage.

45. 日が^{のぼ}り、男の顔を照らそうとする。男は目を^さまし、起き上がろうとする。そのとき、^{するど} ^さ鋭く刺すような胸の痛みを感じた。まぶしい。男は太陽が怖かった。何とかして歩こうとする赤ちゃんの姿が、^{ほほえ}微笑ましかった。

The sun rose and shined on the man's face. The man opened his eyes and tried to get up. Then, he felt a sharp pain in his chest. He was dizzy. The man was afraid of the sun. For some reason the figure of his baby trying to walk was pleasing.

This shows a lot of features about Japanese literature. For one, literary past can be expressed with the non-past form. This enables the passage to capture the exact moment before the trial as mentioned above. You can make conjectures about third person feeling when writing a novel or when definitively talking about someone.

46. どうして、わざわざ、そんなところへ行こうとするんだ！？やめとけ。

Why are you trying to take the efforts to go to such a place!? Quit it.

In this situation it is appropriate to use this without an evidential phrase like ～ようだ or ～らしい in dialogue because you are being critical about something that you're watching fold out in front of your eyes. Note that this pattern is actually a contraction of [Verb A+ (よ) うとして+Verb B]. So, you will see examples where all of this applies in a complex sentence.

Foreboding

When ～ようとする is used with verbs of non-volition, it shows foreboding of a situation.

47. いなずま 稲 妻 が走って、雷が鳴り、今にも雨が降り出そうとしていたんだよ。

Lightning was striking, thunder was roaring, and it was going to rain at any moment.

48. ワニに^く食われようとして、目が覚めたが、^{きょうふ}恐 怖 のあまり、^み身が^{こわば}強 張 っていた。

About to be eaten by an alligator, his eyes opened, but his body was rigid out of fear.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 for ワニ is 鰐.

～てみせる

見せる means "to show". After て it isn't often written in 漢字. In this sense, it shows the showing of an action to someone.

49. ^{てじな}手 品 をしてみせましょう。

I will show you a trick!

50. 微笑んでみせる。

To show a smile.

51. 何としても勝ってみせるぞ。

No matter what it takes, I'll show you that I'll win.

53. 彼はグラフをコンピュータ画面に {表示して・出して} みせた。

He displayed the graph on the computer screen.

54. 彼は素晴らしい勇敢さを見せた。

He showed great courage.

56. 私の名前を漢字で書いてみせた。

I showed them how to write my name in Kanji.

57. 将来必ず日本語の ^{つうやく}通訳 になってみせるよ。

As for the future, I will certainly show that I will become a Japanese interpreter.

第109課: Advanced Preparation: ～ておく

～ ておく is most known by Japanese learners as expressed advanced preparation, and it is typically simply translated as “in advance”. However, there are many syntactic and semantic differences between the Japanese pattern and the English equivalent. With that being the case, this lesson will provide you the information necessary to fully utilize ～ておく.

～ておく

The basic sentence structure for ～ておく is “X が + (Y) + Verb of Volition A + ておく”. So, before knowing anything about what the pattern means, you already know that a lot of verbs are ungrammatical with it. Does someone have will over the action? If so, then without any additional information it should be OK.

Speech Style/Contraction Note: Before we get any farther, it’s important to know that this pattern may be contracted to ～とく in colloquial speech.

There are two broad usages of ～ておく. This initial coverage may suffice for most students, but the rest of the lesson delves into issues with it and other phrases that are very similar and ～ておく's own limitations.

1. Before a situation occurs, X changes the current situation in a positive preparation for something. In the non-past tense, this means that verb A has yet to happen, and the speaker is saying that from now they will do so in advance of, again, a certain situation.

1. 韓国に ^{ちゅうざい}駐在 といわれたよ。少しでも韓国語を習って **ておかない**といけないね。

I was told that I’d be stationed in Korea. I guess I have to learn some Korean in advance.

2. こんなこともわかんないのか。これしきのこと、知っ**とかなきゃだめだぞ**。(男性語;
ぶれい
やや無礼)

You don't even know this sort of thing? You have to know at least just this much!

3. 帰るまでには、思い出して**おいてよね**。(ちょっと女性っぽい)

Have it remembered by the time I return home, OK?

4. あれほど ^{ちゅうい}注 意 しておいたほうがいいと ^{おも}思 う。

I think it's best to be careful to that extent.

5. あらかじめ連絡して**おいた方がいいんじゃないでしょうか**。

Perhaps it would be best to contact them beforehand?

漢字 Note: あらかじめ may also be written as 予め.

2. Trying to actively maintain the current condition. Verb A is still not realized, but in trying to continue to maintain a certain condition, Verb A is to be done.

6. 先日のご本を金曜日までお借りして**おいてもよろしいですか**。(敬語)

Is it alright if I borrow your book from the other day until Friday?

7. その ^{どうぐ}道具 は今要りませんから、そのまま入れて**おいてください**。

That tool isn't needed now, so please leave it [in there] as is.

8. とりあえず、ここでやめておきます。

Anyways, I'll stop here.

9. もうこれ ^{いじょう}以 上 あんたをのさばらしておくことはできねーぞ。(Vulgar; 男性語)

I can no longer let you have your own way.

Grammar Note: のさばらす is a causative form of のさばる, which means "to have one's way".

10. えんそう
演奏 が演奏だけに放ってはおけないでね。

You mustn't blow it off just because a performance is a performance.

Sentence Note: The sentence basically says that the performance was really horrible.

11. もとのままに**しておく**。

To leave it as it is originally.

12. きんこ
金庫 にしま**とけ**！

Keep it in the safe!

13. 自分は自分のその女にたいする感情を 厚^{こうい}意 の程度でとめて**おけたろう**。（ちょっと古風）

I believe I've been able to keep my own emotions towards that woman to the degree of favor.

From 友情 by むしゃのこうじさねあつ
武者小路実篤.

In either case, one contemplates a situation to happen latter, and in order for that situation in time to be beneficial, one is going to perform Action A. So, X affirmatively does Verb A or Verb A being done is anticipated.

There also happens to be situations where the situation can't be called positive. In this, the speaker expresses a negative manner in light of maintaining the current situation being the best option. In this sense, emotions of abandonment/resignation may be mixed in.

14. ひとりにし**といてやれ**。何言っても、どうせ聞きはしないよ。（ちょっと碎けた）

I'll leave you to yourself. I won't listen to you no matter what you say.

15. 仕方がないよな、食べさせ^ほとこうよ。そのうち吠えはじめちゃうしさ。(砕けた)

I guess there's no other choice; I'll let you eat. You'll end up starting to bark before long.

The Verb 置く

The literal meaning of the verb 置く, from which ~ておく derives, is "to place". There are positive situations where it is used, and there are also instances where it negatively portrays negligence and abandonment.

16. 時計を友達机の上に置く。

To place a watch on one's friend's desk.

17. 3軒おいた隣が、^{ようちえんきょうゆ}幼稚園教諭^{たく}のお宅です。

Three houses down is the home of the kindergarten teacher.

18. 私の学校は^{がいこくご}外国語に^{じゅうてん}重点を置いていません。

My school is not putting stress on foreign languages.

19. 夫と子どもをおいて家出する。

To run away from home leaving one's husband and children.

Orthography Note: ~ておく is normally not spelled as ~て置く unless 置く is used in a more literal sense.

~ておいた

～ておいた, even though the pattern is in the past tense, does not mean that the condition in which actions have been made in preparation for has occurred. You just state that you've done something in preparation. ～ておいた may also show that one has continued to maintain a past circumstance.

20. 明後日はコンサートですから、^{きつぷ}切符を買っておきました。

Since the concert is two days from now, I bought tickets in advance.

27. その毛布はまだ^{かわ}乾いてなかったから、そのまんま^ほ干しといたよ。

Since the blanket wasn't dry yet, I left it to dry.

28. サッちゃん、起こしても眠そうだったから、寝かせて**ておいたの**。(ちょっと女性っぽい)

Since Satchan seemed sleepy even when she would wake up, I had her stay asleep.

29. 「できる」というから、させて**ておいたのに**、結局できなかったな。(男性語)

Although I let you do it since you said you could, you ultimately couldn't.

30. 祥子を泣かせて**ておいたら**、泣き寝入りしちゃったみたいわ。(女性語)

It looks like Sachiko went to bed crying when I let her cry.

31. 持っていくものをケータイのそばに置いて**ておきましたから**、忘れないでね。(Wife)

I put what to bring next to your cellphone, so don't forget.

Phrase Note: Yes, 置いておく is completely fine and commonly used. After all, the two instances of 置く have separate purposes.

In either situation, ～ておいた strengthens the sense that preparations have been completed. Again, whether or not the past condition is continuing into the present depends on the situation. Whether the situation is positive or negative, the speaker is thinking of what's to come ahead, and in intentions of having it beneficial, A is done.

Verbs ～ておく Can & Can't Be With

～ておく, as mentioned earlier, is used with a wide range of verbs of volition whereas other speech modals cannot.

1. Full Volition: We will see why other options don't work in more detail later in this lesson.

32. 万一のことがあってはいけなから、ケータイは持って {○ おいた・X ある} 。

As the worst case scenario won't do, I brought my cellphone.

33. すぐに来るかと思って、ここで待って {○ おいた・△ いる・X ある} んだ。

Since I thought [he'd] come immediately, I've waited here in advance.

2. In situations where a verb usually not volitional is deemed, ～ておく may be used.

34. 次の公演でデブの母さんをやるから、初日までには太っとかなきゃ。 (Casual)

I gotta get fat by the premiere because I'm playing a fat mother in the next performance.

35. さっき聞いたこと、殺されなくなかったら、忘れておくんだな。(男性語)

What you heard just now, if you don't want to be killed, you'll forget it.

So, if you are using the verb to express what a person is trying to do in preparation for a positive outcome, then ～ておいて・おいた can be used. Now, though, we will investigate some problems with this.

36. NHK の記事で事件を {○ 知った・X 知っておいた} 。

I knew about the matter in an NHK article.

37. 彼のことならよく {○ 知っています・△ 知っておきました} 。

As for him, I know him well.

The reason why the verb 知る, which is a verb that you can expect a positive effect, and ～ておく can't connect is because it shows received knowledge, information, association, etc. passively through emotion or experience. In these situations, you can't take measures beforehand. However, when considering phrases like はじ 恥 を知 れ and 経済情勢を知ろう, there are clearly instances where 知る would be OK with ～ておく. In these instances, one is to fully understand a matter.

38. てき 敵 の情勢を知っておけ。

Know of your enemies' position beforehand.

39. おん 親の 恩 くらいは知っておけば大丈夫。

If you know at least your parent's favor, you'll be OK.

A similar set of issues exist with 分かる + ておく. If 分かる is used to show a natural, non-volitional change of something unclear becoming clear, then ～ておく can't be used with it. However, when used in a volitional sense, the combination becomes OK.

40. 彼のことをよく分かっておく。

To understand him well in advance.

41. 彼氏の気持ちも分かっておいてよ。

Understand your boyfriend's emotions full well too.

The Two Faces of ～ておく・おいた

Depending on the nature of Verb A, this pattern has one of the following two faces.

1. With verbs that become duration verbs or non-internal limitation verbs, ～ておく shows changing a situation and affirmatively taking measures beforehand.

42. 手で ^て 清 ^{せい} 潔 ^{けつ} にしておきなさい。

Keep your hands clean.

43. メールで連絡しておく。

To contact in advance with e-mail.

44. 食事の用意をしておきました。

I did the preparations for dinner in advance.

2. With verbs that become instantaneous verbs or internal limitation verbs, ～ておく either shows an affirmative urging/current condition change or a positive/negative current condition maintenance/neglect/dismissal/nonintervention.

45. 後のために、^{はさみ} ^{つか} 鋏 ^を 使 ^っ たら、^{もと} ^{ところ} 元の ^{もど} 所 ^に 戻 ^し ておいてくださいね。

For later, please put back the scissors where you got them after you're done using them.

46. ことがことだけに放ってはおけない。

Since a circumstance is a circumstance, one mustn't let loose.

47. だまっとけ！ (Rude)

Shut it!

Phrase Note: As you can see, ～とけ can be used to make (rude) commands as such.

As for the group of verbs that are duration/non-internal limitation verbs such as 連絡する, 用意する, 習う, and 食べる, in the case that they are already realized before the current point in time, they do not express up to the maintaining of the later conditions of having contacted, finishing preparations, being equipped

with knowledge, and being full being expressed. So, even though you can use these verbs with the first usage of ～ておく, they do not work with the second.

48. そのまま習っておく。 X

On the flip side, verbs like 隠す and 壊す are instantaneous/internal limitation verbs, and action being done, whether good or bad, can maintain the result of those verbs, 隠した・壊した.

49. 犬たちが遊ぶといけないから、壊しておかないといけない。

Since the dogs can't play [with it], I have to destroy it in advance.

50. 犬たちが遊ぶといけないから、このまま壊しておくほうがいい。

Since the dogs can't play [with it], it's best to destroy and have it as is.

The Effectiveness of ～ておいた

A ておいた deals with something already realized at the base present time, and it expresses an A which is a matter that has already been taken care of. However, at the present time, whether A was effective or not—in reference to the beneficiary factor of ～ておく—is given no concern and is left uncertain. Hopefully this should not be news to your eyes at this point in this lesson.

52. コンピューターを消さないください。アニメを見るために、つけておいたんです。

Please don't turn off the computer. I turned it on in advance to watch anime.

53. コンピューターを消してしまったんですか。アニメを見るために、つけておいたんです。

Did you accidentally turn off the computer? I turned it on in advance to watch anime.

54. 後でアニメ、見るのでしょうか？ コンピューターつけておいたよ。

You're going to be watching anime later, aren't you? I turned on the computer in advance.

55. コンピューターをつけておいたのに、アニメを見なかったの？（ちょっと女性っぽい）

Although I had turned on the computer, you didn't watch anime?

56. 出かけますから、コンピューターを消しておきました。

As I'm leaving, I turned off the computer.

57. お弁当を作っておいたけど、食べたか。

I had fixed a bento in advance, but you ate it?

These sentences show instances where Verb A was beneficial and not beneficial in the end, but like the last example shows, there are indeed times where this is not certain. What if the speaker was a husband going on a business trip and a financial emergency came about and his wife so happened to need to retrieve something from the computer and expected it to be on but couldn't get it to turn on and use it? This may sound far-fetched, but it's just one situation where this could be bad. Thus, from the sentence alone one can't 100% make the call whether Verb A was good or bad.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 呼んどく。

しら
2. 調べておきます。

れんらく
3. 連絡しないでおく。

おぼ
4. よく 覚えておけ！

かみ しんらい お
5. 神に信頼を置く。

6. 靴は玄関に置いてください。

7. 水を貯えておく。

8. 生かしておけない。

9. しまっておけない。

10. 貯めておけない。

11. Consider the differences between the following and effectively explain what each means in your own words.

片付けてある。

片付けておいた。

片付いている。

片付けている。

Table of Contents

Keys

Practice

1. To call in advanced. (Casual language)
2. I will check in advance.
3. To leave without contacting (someone).
4. Remember well!
5. To place trust in God.
6. Please leave your shoes at the doorway.
7. To store water.
8. To not be able to be left alive (literally); mortal.
9. To not be able to be put away.
10. To not be able to be stored/{left/put} aside.
- 11.

片付けてある: The speaker sounds arrogant and tells the listener that it was he/she that did it. If

the person were some pro at clearing off things, then it would definitely imply the speaker's self-confidence.

片付けて おいた: The speaker is just saying that he/she cleared things up, and there is no additional information implied as to what the speaker may be thinking or additional purposes other than simply informing.

片付いている: Shows a nature change and doesn't say if someone did it.

片付けている: Shows that it was done by a person, and the listener would think of a particular person. When the speaker uses it, it does show that it was he/her that did it, but it does not have the effect of ～である as mentioned before.

第110課: Pluralization

In English and most other Indo-European languages, grammatical number is expressed with inflections such as –s. However, Japanese grammar does not have grammatical number. This fact is very hard for beginners to grasp, but given now that you have had more experience in Japanese, it is time to look at this serious issue in greater detail.

Terminology Note: Indo-European (インド・ヨーロッパ祖語) simply refers to the ancestral language that ties English with most languages from Europe to India.

Lack of Grammatical Number

However, the fact that Japanese doesn't have grammatical number doesn't mean that Japanese lacks the ability to differentiate between something that is singular and something that is plural. After all, if you use quantity qualifiers such as 多くの or 少しの, there isn't any problem in telling whether someone is referring to just one thing or more than one of something.

1. 花がたくさん咲いている。

There are a lot of flowers blooming.

Noun classification differs considerably between English and Japanese. In English, when we sense that something is more than 1, we attribute that to being plural and unconsciously use a form of –s, ignoring instances where the singular and plural form are the same and other such irregularities. All Japanese nouns are 全部 抽象名詞. So, there is a vague feeling in comparing it to English. So, if you were to want to say 2 pens, you would say 2本のペン. There is no reason to ever have any inflection on ペン.

In English, there are also nouns that are countable and others that are not countable. For example, chalk isn't countable. “Chalks” would refer to different

kinds of chalk, not there being two pieces of chalk. In Japanese, no such distinctions are made. There are counter phrases that help bridge this gap.

Grammatical number in English also has a direct correlation with numbers themselves. In Christianity, Judaism, and Islam, there is but one God. However, in Japanese, you have the well-known yet often misunderstood phrase ^{やまと}大和にはやおよろず ^{やま}八百万の神がある. This is not saying that there is some exact number of 神 in Japanese, but that there is a lot. 8, 9, 10, and 10,000 were often used in the ancient period to refer to a lot.

Thus, the items that do express plurality in Japanese are different from grammatical number in the sense that added nuances are attributed to particular endings, and these particular endings are used with particular nouns.

Form Note: There are rare instances in Japanese that hint that Japanese did have a clearer distinction of plurality in some words. For instance, ひ becoming か in counters after 1. 1 day used to be ひとひ. Then, 2 days is ふつか. Notice the change? The same thing goes for people. You get ひとり but then ふたり, みたり, よたり. This とり → たり is of the same vein as ひ → か. In fact, there's even an old phrase 日並べて (かなべて) that refers to days one after another.

～たち・達

More frequently written in 漢字 in literature, the suffix ～たち is the closest thing in Japanese to the “-s” in English. However, it typically indicates a group of things. For instance, when you say 石田君たち, 石田君 is pointed out as the head of a group of a multitude of people, which could be his family or his group of friends. Thus, correct interpretation of a phrase with ～たち is heavily sensitive to context.

2. 私たちは賛成します。

We agree.

3. 山田君たち、頭が悪いね。

Yamada's group isn't smart.

4. 理事たちは、大島理事長排斥に手をつけると言った。

The directors said that they would start work on the boycott of Board Chairman Ohshima.

From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

5. 数々のすばらしいヒット曲をまだまだたくさんの方たちに届け続けてほしかったです。

I wanted [her] to still continue delivering many wonderful hit songs to a lot of people.

From the words of the singer 八代亜紀 upon hearing the death of singer 藤圭子.

Another related issue is something like 犬たち. Although this could very well mean “dogs”, depending on context, it could also comprehensively refer to a multitude of all sorts of (similar) animals.

Grammar Note: Unless if something that could be viewed as belonging in a group like a boat in a fleet, plural suffixes are rarely ever used with inanimate nouns.

Word Note: 友達, note the voicing of ～たち, can still be used even if you are referring to just one friend. This shows how fragile the nuances of these endings are. This is all possible due to the lack of grammatical number. This is of the same vein as 子供, which will be touched on later in this lesson. However, 友たち is possible, which would refer to there being a plurality in friends.

Classical Japanese Note: ～達 started out as a very respectful suffix used with

神・貴人 “aristocrat” (^{きんだち} 公 達 = Kings; children of nobles; nobleman/noblemen). It eventually lessened to being used with light respect, and in Modern Japanese it is no longer honorific. Notice how the ambiguity in plurality has existed when the suffix is voiced.

～ら・等

～**ら** is casual, so it should not be used with わたくし. However, it does get used with わたしら. This, though, is not that common in 標準語. For the most part, both ～**ら** and ～**たち** attach to basically any pronoun or person noun. They are also used a lot with 3rd person pronouns, but 彼女**ら** is oddly not near as common as 彼女**たち**. To make things more weird, 彼**ら** is far more common than 彼**たち**. 彼**たち** sort of sounds like something a women or transvestite might say. It also happens to often to rather humble or condescending depending on what is used with. For nouns of person, **ら** is the ideal choice in formalized speech. Nothing or **たち** would be more common in more spoken-language speech.

6. 私**ら**には分かりません。

We don't understand.

7. 夏は、私**ら**みたいな、いわゆる家出少女が溢れる季節だ。

Summer is a season where so-called runaway girls like us overflow.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

8. 僕**ら**は強くないさ。

We aren't strong.

It is typically limited to pronouns, but the extent it is used with other nouns is heavily dependent on the dialect of the speaker. As this complicates the situation, you may play it safe with causal pronouns until you have seen used with other various items. One note of this is its frequent use with **これ**, **それ**, and **あれ**. It is also a part of the demonstratives **こちら**, **そちら**, **あちら**, **どちら**, and **いくら**, but it is not used in this instance for pluralization.

9. これ**ら**をXと呼びます。

We call these X.

10. これらの手掛かりを繋ぎ合わせてみよう。

Let's try to link these clues together.

漢字 Note: This suffix is also sometimes spelled as 等.

～ども・共

Rarely written in 漢字, the suffix ～ども is typically used as a humble plural marker for pronouns. For instance, わたくしども is quite common for “we” in this group sense. It may also be used to refer to groups condescendingly. So, you can see it with わたくし, やつ, 手前, etc. It should not be used 僕, あなた or titles such

as 先生^{せんせい}.

11. 私どもにお任せください。

Please leave it to us.

12. 野郎ども (You have seen nothing)

Bastards

13. 自分のことを男は「俺」ということが多いが、俺共は「オレドー・オイドー」になり単数に使われることも多い。

Men often call themselves "ore", but "us" becomes, "oredō/oidō", and these are used a lot for the singular.

Dialect Note: This sentence comes from 大分方言 by 高田和彦. 俺共 is a rather interesting combination, but 俺 is being used in a more casual sense while being qualified with 共 to be somewhat humble. In this dialect, the dialectical form of 俺共 ends up becoming singular again, which happens in 子供 too.

14. 「^{むらびと} 邑人^な どもにはわたしが^{なが} 永^{とうじ} の病で湯治^{とうじ} に来たといつわっていたのだ。 . . . 」

The villagers are lying that I've come to get a hot-spring cure for an eternal

illness.

かるのみこ そとおひめ
From 軽王子と衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

In older Japanese, ～ども can be seen with 事. Thus, you get 事ども. Another well studied example of ～ども is 子供・子ども. The character for it in 子供 is あて字. However, again, the problem about 子供 is that it is usually used in the singular sense. Thus, the suffix has lost its original meaning. Thus, you often see 子どもたち.

～がた・方

～がた is a very polite plural suffix that denotes a high status. One of the most common examples is 方々, from which it came. Thus, it is often spelling in 漢字 as 方. It is **not** compatible with first person pronouns, degrading second person pronouns, or titles that suggest a lower status. It may be used with words such as 先生 meaning "teacher" and 皆様^{みなさま} meaning "everyone".

～ばら

～ばら is used to indicate a plural of a class of people in rude/impolite contexts. It is very rare, but it was more common in Classical Japanese. It may also have the rare 漢字 spellings 輩・儕.

15. 殿ばら

The lords

Pronouns and Pluralization

The following pronouns in their plural forms are listed from most formal to least formal.

1st	私共	我々	我ら	わたくしたち	私[達・ら]	僕[達・ら]	あたし[たち・ら]	俺[たち・ら]
-----	----	----	----	--------	--------	--------	-----------	---------

2nd	皆様（が た）	皆さん	み(ん) な	あなた がた	あなた たち	君[達・ ら]	あんた[た ち・ら]	お前[た ち・ら]
3rd	彼達	彼女 達	彼ら	彼女ら				

Speech Note: みんな is casual. みな also has the form 皆々様, which is a more emphatic yet very honorific form used a lot in New Years cards, 年賀状, and other situations when honorific speech is expected.

16. 私たちは ^{こういち}高 一 です。

We are 10th graders.

17. 俺らはいる。

We're here.

18. 我々の ^{もんだい}問 題 です。

It's our problem.

19, 皆々様のご多幸をお祈り申し上げます。(Very Humble).

I pray that you all may be very fortunate (in the new year).

20. 自分らの手で書いたらしく、下手な字で、行も乱れていた。

It seemed to be written by them, and the handwriting was bad, and the lines were messed up.

From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

Word Note: The use of 自分 refers to a person in the story being accused of a relationship with another person in the academy, and so the reason why the author chose to pluralize 自分 was to refer to the two as a group in a condescending way, though the post being talked about was written by one person.

21. その点われわれも同感です。あるいは、ほかの理事の方に逆効果を与えるかも知りませんな。

We are sympathetic as well with that point. Perhaps, it may give the opposite effect to the other directors.

Grammar Note: Here, 理事の方 is being used in the plural sense, and this is obvious from context. So, again, remember that although there are plural suffixes in Japanese, you must be aware that in situations such as this and in many instances, using them is not necessary and could at the very worst be wrong.

Questions:

1. Which word would least likely be used with ～ら? A. 本 B. おまえ C. きみ
D. ぼく
2. When would be an appropriate time to use あなたたち?
3. When would you use あんたたち?
4. Some plurals like てめーら were not listed. How would they be used?
5. How would you say "group of dogs"?

Repetition

Some native words may be pluralized by repetition. Voicing may generally occur in the second part if the first mora can and a voiced sound isn't elsewhere in the second part.

かずかず (numbers) ○	かずがず X	やまやま (Mountains) ○
きぎ (Trees)		

Orthography Note: Instead of writing the same 漢字 twice, 々 may be used.

Person	人	People	ひとびと	River	川	Rivers	かわがわ
Time	時	Sometimes	ときどき	Flower	花	Flowers	はなばな
Flour	粉	To pieces	こなごな	Matter	事	Everything	ことごと
One	一つ	One by one	ひとつひとつ	Nook	隅	Nooks	すみずみ
Village	村	Villages	むらむら	Voice	声	Many/each voice(s)	こえごえ
Store	店	Stores	みせみせ	Separation	離れ	Scattered	はなればなれ
Space	間	Occasionally	まま	Treetop	梢	Treetops	こずえこずえ
Puzzle	謎	Puzzle(s)	なぞなぞ	Hill	丘	Hills	おかおか
Branch	枝	Branches	えだえだ	Poison	毒	Poisonous	どくどくしい
Hand	手	Hands	おてて	Person	方	People (polite)	かたがた
Corner	角	Corners	かどかど	That	それ	Each	それぞれ
Joint	節	Joints	ふしぶし	Direction	方	Here and there	ほうぼう
Tea	茶	Disruption	ちゃちゃ	Road	道	Along the road	みちみち
Month	月	Every month	つきづき	Room	部屋	Rooms	へやべや

Rock	岩	Rocks	いわい わ	Butterfly	蝶	Butterfl[y/ies]	ちょう ちょう
Time	度	Frequently	たびた び	Place	所	Here and there	ところ どころ
Color	色	Various	いろい ろ	Appear- ance	様	Various	さまざ ま
Next	次	In succes- sion	つぎつ ぎ	Point	点	Sporadically	てんて ん
A lot	多	More and more	たた	Interval	合 間	Between times	あいま あいま
Order	順	In turn	じゅん じゅん	One	一	One by one	いちい ち
Scatter- ing	散 り	Scattered	ちりぢ り	Weari- ness	飽 き	Sick of	あきあ き
Step	段	Gradually	だんだ ん	Astrin- gency	渋	Reluctantly	しぶし ぶ
Trivial	駄	Tantrum	だだ	Thousand	千	Thousands	せんぜ ん
Pursuit	追 い	Little by lit- tle	おいお い	Face; mask	面	Each one; all	めんめ ん
Temple	寺	Temples	てらで ら	Village	村	Villages	むらむ ら
Dark- ness	闇	Unknow- ingly	やみや み	Roof	屋 根	Roofs	やねや ね
Sort	種	Sorts	しゅじ ゆ				

Nuance Note: It must be emphasized that this is not of the same vein as -s in English. For instance, 花々 refers to the multitude of a variety of flowers. So, if you are just referring to roses, you wouldn't use this word. For instance, a cherry blossom tree has tons of individual flowers, but the Japanese just say 桜の花. In English, you'd have to say "cherry blossoms". To refer to flower, you'd have to use a counter phrase like 一輪・一片.

Warning Note: 村々 is homophonous with the common 叢々, which means "horny".

Pseudo-Plurals Note: Some duplicates do not necessarily result in plural expressions. Ex. 蝶々 usually means "butterfly".

Part of Speech Note: 離れ離れ may be used as a nominal phrase or 形容動詞. There other interesting duplicates with added stuff to get words like 毒々しい above.

Repetition in Adjective Phrases: 長々しい (drawn-out), 弱々しい (frail), 軽々しい (indiscreet), 図々しい (imprudent).

Word Note: Some Sino-Japanese words can also be doubled. Ex. 季節季節・季節々々 (the seasons). Regardless, it must be understood that this limited to particular words. So, only use examples that you encounter.

Naturalness Note: There are some examples that Japanese speakers may not all agree as being acceptable. 机々 △ → 机○

Speech Note: お手々 is used by and to little children.

21. 人間は種々さまざまだ。

There are all sorts and kinds of people.

22. 戦災を受けなかった古い町の屋根々々

The roofs of the old town which hadn't suffered damage from the war

23. 皆はそろそろと衝立のむこうへ動いて、まばゆい白い卓布の上に、温室物の春の花々を飾った食卓についた。

Everyone moved in succession away from the partition screen and sat at the dinner table, adorned with a dazzling white tablecloth with green-house grown spring flowers on top.

From 永すぎた春 by 三島由紀夫.

24. みんなが口々にホステスの夫人におもねって、「何て結構でしょう」とか「おいしいこと」とか言っているかたわらで、宝部夫人は内心、『何てまずいお料理だろう』と思っていた。

While everyone was giving their own flattering words to the hostess like "this is splendid" and "how delicious", Mrs.Takarabe's was really thinking, "what horrible cooking".

From 永すぎた春 by 三島由紀夫.

Practice:

1. かた = gentleman. かたがた = ? 2. 日々 = ? 3. ^{いえ}家 = House. 家々 = ?

Table of Contents

Keys

Questions

1. A
2. (Free Response): Situations like addressing a group of people like one's students.
3. (Free Response): Most likely in a casual setting.
4. (Free Response): In a hostile manner to a group of opponents.

Practice:

1. Gentlemen.

2. Days (ひび)

3. Houses (いえいえ)

第111課: が VS を

The difference between が and を does not stop at 私が魚を食べる kind of sentences. Though が is called the subject marker and を is called the direct object marker, there are times when they are indeed interchangeable. As to be expected, there are restrictions on when they are interchangeable.

When we learned about the potential form, we saw how が and を can be interchangeable. For instance, you can say 日本語が話せる or 日本語を話せる for "can speak Japanese". So, what decides whether you can use both or not? The use of を with the potential is highly tied to personal volition. The more free will a verb can express, the more likely を can be used and the less likely が is used.

1. 美恵子は自然に美しい歌詞 {が ○・を ???} 書けた。

Mieko was naturally able to write beautiful lyrics.

2. ホームラン {が ○・を ???} 打てた。

I was able to hit a home run.

3. この漢字 {が・を} 書ける人はあまりいないでしょうね。

There aren't probably a lot of people who can't write this Kanji.

Sentence Note: Notice how though the two sentences both use 書く, context determines the level of volition.

Aside from the potential form, there is interchangeability with ~たい and phrases of like and dislike (好き and 嫌い). To see if the same concept of control is at work, consider the following.

4. 自分 {が・を} 好きになった。

I've gotten to like myself.

5. 私はポケットモンスター新作 {が・を} 買いたいです。

I want to buy the latest Pokemon game.

～を分かる has traditionally been incorrect, but it first started to appear in the late 1800s and is finally here to stay. The excuse that it is somehow English's fault is a bad explanation. The trigger for why を is being acceptable is a change in perceptible control implied by 分かる. The similar verb 理解する implies willfully operating understanding and it only takes を. As 分かる = 理解する for more and more speakers, the more likely you'll see ～を分かる.

6. 誰もあたしの気持ちを分かるはずなんてない！

There's no way anyone understands my feelings!

In-Depth Analysis on が VS を

助詞の選択

The basic particle sense that natives have suggests that the same particle in the same clause twice is a bad thing. Japanese does, indeed, hates this. Counterexamples involve very specific grammatical structures that trump regular judgment calls.

If a subject that would otherwise take が is used in a potential sentence with an object marked with が, we get X が Y が Potential Verb. Of course, X は Y が Potential Verb exists and is most common, but the existence of the former sentence type requires explanation. In reality, we must consider five different sentence types. The least common is V, and we'll give it an ? for being questionable.

- I. 友里が英語を話す。
- II. 友里が英語が話せる。 X*
- III. 友里が英語を話せる。
- IV. 友里に英語が話せる。
- V. 友里に英語を話せる。(X)

*: These sentence patterns should be thought of as underlining forms that then may change when spoken. So, in reality, as you can see later below, II is not used as is but is when the subject is marked by は.

Here is a chart that shows the percentages of what the subject is marked with depending on whether the object is marked with either が or を.

I.

	Object+が	Object+を
Sub-ject	が は に には にも	が は に にも には
	0% 25% 8% 51% 16%	50% 49% 0% 1% 0%

Chart Note: The subject does not like to have the same particle as the object. に は and にも, which indirectly refer to the subject in terms of spontaneous action, should not be used when the object is marked with を as を highlights volition. Spontaneity is the opposite of volition. So, you'd be adding two grammatical opposites together.

There is no doubt that Type III is becoming more pervasive than Type II (remember that Type II essentially surfaces with は on the subject instead), but that doesn't help explain the difference between them at all. We will need to investigate what sort of other grammatical triggers aid in the decision. First, though, let's get back to the somewhat questionable Type V.

7a. 俺は涙を流せない。

7b. 俺には涙を流せない。△・X

I can't shed a tear.

In context, questionable grammar can be made natural. With this in mind, consider the following

8. 人間には涙が流せるし、自分は涙を流せないが、涙を流す理由は理解できた。¹

Man can cry, and so though I myself cannot shed tears, I have now understood the reason for crying.

Ex. 8 shows us several of the sentence types above in one, which are both frequently used in negative structures, but we do not see Pattern V. This gives us more proof to say that it is ungrammatical. The first part of this sentence lacks volition. The ability to cry is described initially as an innate characteristic of people that may in essence occur spontaneously. Thus, 涙を would be ungrammatical for this meaning. Because には calls for this sort of nuance, を becomes inappropriate.

さんしょう
参 照 :

1: <http://qarc.info/qa/show-10857-218.html>

じょうたいてき 状態 的 動詞/State Verbs

One way to start thinking about が versus を is whether the verb is in regards to a state. So, we would expect transitive verbs like 理解する and 期待する to favor or mandate the use of が. If not, then が or を, but the internalized relationship between the parts of the sentence would be different.

9a. [友里は英語を話]せる。

9b. [友里は英語が][話せる]。

Yuri can speak English.

10a. [僕はパンを食べ]たい。

10b. [僕はパンが][食べたい]。

I want to eat bread.

11. 日本語 {が・を} 話したいです。

I want to speak Japanese.

12. 日本語 {が・を} 話せますか。

Can you speak Japanese?

13. その文法点 {が・を} 説明できません。

I can't explain that grammar point.

14. 北^{きた}朝^{ちょう}鮮^{せん} はいつでもミサイルを^{はっ}発^{しゃ}射^{しゃ} できる状態だ。

North Korea is in the state of being able to fire a missile at any time.

We will see again this concept of whether the ending is modifying the verb only or the entire phrase itself. Also, you may be wondering why を is used in Ex. 14 even though the subject is clearly in the state of being able to do the action. That is because of the next factor: control.

さいだいげん 最 大 限 のコントロール/Ultimate Control

The next example is quite intriguing. Using が with 自分 and the like in this sort of grammar is avoided, and wrong at the worst. But, if we replace 自分 with other people nouns, the grammar doesn't change. が is highly related to spontaneity (things happening naturally), and that does help us with examples like Ex.1, but it doesn't help us here. The concept to introduce here is control. The use of を is determined by whether the speaker is able to control the action or want being expressed.

15. あいつは {自分・他人} を^{いつ}偽^われる男だ。

That guy is a man who may doubt himself/others.

This sentence demonstrates ultimate control. The subject is able to doubt so much that he himself is to be doubted by him. So, there are at least two restrictions to keep in mind: spontaneity and control. The former makes が obligatory, and the latter makes を obligatory.

～ようになる & ～ようにする

Consider ～ようになる and ～ようにする. The former is intransitive and the latter is transitive. Thus, you do not see interchangeability with が and を. [] will be used to show how to view the main argument to focus on in these sentences. The content of the brackets could be replaced with other phrases, but the grammar would still be the same.

16. 私は毎日やっているうちに[自然に漢字が書けるよう]になりました。

I became able to naturally write Kanji while I was studying every day.

17. 4年生が終わるまでに常用漢字を[書けるようにします]。

I will have (the students) able to write the Joyo Kanji by the time the fourth year students end.

18. 乃理子は独学でハングル {が ○・を?} 書けるようになった。

Noriko became able to write Hangul through self-study.

19. 乃理子は独学でハングル {が ?・を ○} を読めるようにした。

Noriko had herself able to read Hangul through self-study.

する has a high degree of 他動詞性 even when it is in a potential phrase. This is further seen when we use する with a potential phrase with the addition of imperative or imperative-like structures such as ～なければならない or the 命令形.

20. 運転中は、絶対にスマホ {が ?・を ○} 使えないようにしなくてははいけない。

You must make it that you can't use your smartphone ever while you drive.

21. 引っ越しの前に、^{ふよう}不要なもの {が ? ・ を ○} 捨てられるようにしておけ。

Before moving, have it that you are able to throw away unneeded things.

動作主性 = Agency

Another way to look at this issue is agency. Is there a clear agent? Control is directly tied to a sense of agency. Also, whenever there is a perfective aspect and or emphasis on result, が becomes inappropriate. Anything related to completion is really perfect for を but not が.

22. 中国に長く住んでいて、英語を話す機会がほとんどなくなったので、英語 {が ○ ・ を ??} 話せなくなった。

I lived in China for a long time, and because I basically lost my chances to speak English, I became
unable to speak English.

23. いつでも^{のらねこ}野良猫 {を ○ ・ が ?} 殺せるわけではない。

You can't just be able to kill the stray cats whenever.

24. 思ったより早くエッセイを書けてよかった。

I'm so glad I was able to write the essay earlier than I thought.

25. 冬の間はあの^{どうくつ}洞窟にある^{つらら と}氷柱を溶かせない。

You can't melt the icicles in that cave during the winter.

26. ^{りょう}量が多すぎて、ビール {を ○ ・ が ?} {飲み^ほ干せなかった・飲み切れなかった}。

I was unable to douse down/completely drink} all of the beer because there was just too much.

27. 山口さんがフランス語 {を ○・が??} 話せるように、私はフランス人も招待しました。

To get Yamaguchi-san able to speak French, I also invented French people.

Sentence Note: Another reason why が wouldn't be used in Ex. 27 is the doubling of が in the same clause.

Control VS Spontaneity or Phrase Structuring?

These examples go well with the theme above. In Ex. 28, the agent is complete control of the action. In the first example, the speaker naturally happens to get in that state. This is why we call this a spontaneous action. Consider the following other speech modals.

28. 神経科学試験の前に韓国語の宿題 {を ○・が X} してしまいたい。

I want to get my Korean homework over before my neurology exam.

29. 子供たちが来る前に、テーブル {を ○・が X} 片づけておきたい。

I want to have the table cleared off before the children come.

Remember that the use of が and を in this lesson is not restricted to the potential as the same forces help explain the distribution with ~たい. Here, the argument that control is the deciding factor seems really strong. Another easier but perhaps not so accurate take on this is that ~たい is being attached to 宿題を してしまおう and テーブルを片付けておく rather than しまおう and おく. It's likely that both reasons reinforce why が is wrong here.

When the Potential Form and Intransitive Form Look the Same

There are instances in which the potential form of a transitive form looks just like the intransitive form. Examples of this situation include 焼ける and 割れ

る. So, sentences such as パンが焼ける are naturally ambiguous. The agent may or may not be implied. In this case, the meaning difference is minor. Meaning A would be for "the bread to bake" and Meaning B would be "to be able to make bread". The solution to distinguish them would be to say パンを焼ける instead. Though one would think avoiding ambiguity would be a good thing, not all speakers like ～を焼ける because both the default intransitive meaning and the potential meaning are both intransitive.

自発性 Betrays Us at Times

Certainly, が is the particle for spontaneity (自発性) in Japanese. However, if we aren't adding other endings of spontaneity like ～てしまう into the mix and are not dealing with a 状態的動詞 (see above if you've forgotten), then it seems reasonable to think a grey zone would exist where が・を are becoming more interchangeable and giving us examples like in the second section. After Sentence Type III is becoming more common. Consider the following examples.

30. セスは日本語の ^{てんさい}天 才 だから、新しいレッスン {が・を ?} 次から次にとめどなく作れた。

Because Seth is a Japanese genius, he was able create new lessons non-stop one after the other.

31. 俺はお前 {が ○・を ○・ ?} 好きで好きでたまらねーんだよ。

I like you so, so much I can't stand it.

32. 僕はきのうから豚骨スープ {が・を ?} 食べたくて、食べたくて仕方なかったので、
^{やたい}あの屋 台 に行ってみた。

I wanted to eat tonkotsu soup so bad since yesterday, and so I went to that stand.

Sure, you will have people say that ? is in fact X to them. That's fine. After all, this is a grey zone. It all has to deal with how the speaker internalizes this concept of spontaneity versus control and how this relates to potential (可能) and desire (願望) . We can see how either makes sense for a lot of verbs. In the second example here, the fact that the sentence is overall more colloquial is another factor for why を may appear. The reason why が is always right in this sort of context is because of its role as the spontaneity particle.

Control ≈ Will

If you have control over something, you usually willful exercise this control. Because of this, we will likely never see ～を聞こえる or ～を見える because not only are we dealing with completely spontaneous actions, there is no way will (有意志性) or motor action will ever be expressed with them. Spontaneous verbs dealing with the senses are completely contrary in meaning to 他動詞. Remember, grey zones like above are where the semantic domains of two things overlap. Here, we are looking at an extremity. が would have to completely disappear for ～を聞こえる or ～を見える to ever be acceptable. This is more evidence that these verbs are indeed not potential verbs despite what textbooks often claim.

This explanation also explains why ～をできる is not acceptable. Though, ～を+する Verb can be put into the potential with the same restrictions on が・を交替, the independent verb 出来る must be treated differently.

33. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X}出来る。

Tomoya can speak English.

34. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X}出来るようになった。

Tomoya became able to speak English.

35. 知也は英語 {が ○・を X・???} 出来るようになりたいと思っている。

Tomoya wants to become able to speak English.

36. 知也は英語 {が ??・を ○} 出来るようにしたいと思っている。

Tomoya wants to have himself able to speak English.

We see again how ～ようになる and ～ようにする influence the decision and change the organization of the parts of the sentence. We expect the same things if we use ～ておく.

37. これまでに出来なかった問題をできるようにしておくことを願います。

We ask that you prepare yourself to be able to answer the problems that you haven't been able to up till now.

38. 休み時間になったら、^{うわさばなし}_{噂話} {が・を} できるようにしておいた。

We had that we could gossip once we were in free time.

39. 学校で使っている問題集の問題が出来るようにしておくこと。

Have it that you can do the problems in the problem set used at school.

40. お金の^{かんり}管 理をできるようにしておくことが、自分の生活を守る上でも大切になってくる。²

Being able to manage one's manage before will become even more important than protecting one's way of life.

41. みだりに青年が^{うめたてち}埋 立 地^{ぼうし}に立ち入るのを防 止 することができるようになっておくこと。

Have it that you can prevent youths from trespassing recklessly into the land reclamation site.

We see that ～することができる will never become ～することができる even when you add ～ておく. Aside from this, there is a lot of variation between が

and を. Due to the independent nature of the verb 出来る, we can say that が出来
る would still be more common and grammatically safer overall even with the ad-
dition of ～ておく.

If using ～ておく worked to get use を used before 出来る, then this should
work for verbs like 見える. The use of ～ようにする or an imperative phrase should
also influence this.

42. ^{つうがくろ}通 学 路の近くでは、どこからでも ^{こうつうひょうしき}交 通 標 識 {が・を} 見えるようにし
ておきなさい。

Please make sure that the traffic signs are visible from any direction near
the school zone.

参照:

2: <http://www.radiaholdings.com/gendainookaneisiki/>

分かる

The use of ～を分かる is here to stay, though it has traditionally been incor-
rect. Again, the idea that it is English's fault is not plausible. What is certain is
that this verb has come to mean 理解する and has taken on the same grammati-
cal rules as it in colloquial/emphatic speech.

Can we, though, find a Japanese route to the emergence of ～を分かる
through this discussion? Yes, think about ～を分かろうとする. It would be harder
to find Japanese speakers who don't like this example because the volitional pat-
tern ～（よ）うとする is added, which adds the highly transitive する and 'control'
related grammar. Similar grammar, then, should also make を is easier to use or
at most obligatory.

43. 俺の気持ち {を ○ ・ が X} 分かってくれ！

Understand my feelings!

参照: <https://www.jpf.go.jp/j/japanese/survey/globe/18/08.pdf>

Table of Contents

第112課: Nominalization

Nominalization is making **another part of speech**--verbs, adjectives, phrases, abstract nouns, etc.--**noun-like**. Nominalization is mainly done with the help of

けいしきめいし
形 式 名 詞 (nominal/dummy nouns).

The Nominalizers の and こと

The nominalizers の and こと are interchangeable in making other parts of speech noun-like to an extent. The main difference is that the former is more subjective and the latter is more objective.

Orthography Note: こと is usually not written as 事, but is frequently so in contexts in which it is more concrete as well as for all instances in older documents.

1. 見ることは信ずることである。

Seeing is believing.

2. お二人が会うのは初めてですか。

Is this the first time you two have met?

3. カナダが寒いことに気づいた。(Objective)

I just noticed that Canada is cold.

4. カナダがペンギンも生きれるほど寒いのに気づいたばかりだわ。(Feminine)

I just realized that Canada is cold enough for penguins to even live.

Objectivity/subjectivity, although often a part of the equation, may not be the most important thing at work. In the following sentences, の just acts as a dummy noun for something else, but こと is more concrete, referring specifically to a situation. However, one can say that this is related to subjectivity being related to abstractness and objectivity being related to concreteness.

5. どんなのを聞きましたか。

What sort of thing did you listen to?

6. なんかことを聞きましたか。

What sort of thing did you hear/ask?

In the first sentence の replaces some noun such as 曲. In the second, こと refers to a situation (状態). The response could be something like the following.

7. 彼が京都に行った {と・か} きました。

I heard/asked that/whether he went to Kyoto.

Lastly, こと can follow other nouns, のこと. This is very common with pronouns, and although it seems like a filler word to English speakers, think of how this would emphasis person in sentences like this one.

8. 僕のが好き？

Do you like me?

Below are more examples to help you sort out differences between the two.

9. 彼が ^{ゆうめい}有名 ^{おんがくか}な音楽家 だということを知りませんでした。

I didn't know that he is a famous musician.

10. あたし、そんなことはいわんかったわ。(Feminine; dialectical)

I didn't say anything like that!

11. もう一つ君に ^{たず}尋ねたいことがある。(Male)

There's another thing I'd like to ask you about.

Speech Note: To a teacher say something more respectful like 先生、もう一つ

うかが ^伺 いたいことがあるんですけれども (よろしいですか) 。

12. (あなたが) 見たことを話してくださいませんか。

Could you tell me what you saw?

13. こいびと いっしょ おど
恋人たちは一緒にサンバを踊るのをやめました。

The couple stopped dancing the samba together.

14. まいにちさんぽ けんこう
毎日散歩するのは健康にとてもいいようです。

It seems that going for a walk every day is very good for your health.

15. さくやおそ
彼女が昨夜遅く帰ってきたことを知ってた。

I've known that she came home late last night.

16. ま う
彼女のいうことを真に受けたな。

You took her at her word, didn't you?

17. しんぱい
何か心配なことがあるんですか。

Is anything bothering you?

18. しんせん いき す すば
新鮮な息を吸うことは素晴らしい。

Breathing fresh air is wonderful.

19. か し こ
これからのことを考えるのは賢いですね。

It sure is wise to think about the future?

20. ようぎしゃ あわ
容疑者がその部屋から慌てて出てくるのを見ましたよ。

I saw the suspect come out flustered from the room.

21. じゅぎょう
宿題をしないで授業に来るのはよくないです。

It's not good to come to class without having done our homework.

22. う 生まれたのも育ったのもニューヨークです。

I was born and raised in New York.

Usage Note: It may be the case that の is used in place of a thing, person, or place. In this case の refers to the city that the speaker was raised in.

23. 彼女の電話番号を調べるのに時間がかかった。

It took a lot of time to find her phone number.

24. 旅行に便利ですね。

It'll be convenient for trips, won't it?

Grammar Note: (の) に can be followed by expressions that indicate purpose just as in the last two examples.

25. 歌うことは あきら 諦 めていただけに 偶 然 (に) はつ ぶ たい ふ 初 舞 台 を踏めたことはとても
うれ 嬉 しかったです。

Since I had given up singing, being able to debut by chance was very delightful.

26. きょう いく 教 育 を受けるのは じゅう よう 重 要 です。

Receiving an education is important.

27. けい さ つ 警 察 が今ここにあることは う た が 疑 え ない。

You can't doubt that there are police here now.

28. 日本語を話せる人の中では じょう し き 常 識 のことだ。

It's common sense among Japanese speakers.

29. 日本が経済大国になれたのは、何と言ってもアメリカのおかげではないと思います。

No matter what they say, I don't think that Japan was able to become an economic power thanks to America.

30. 単純労働でお金を稼ぐのは大変だ。

It is difficult to earn money by simple labor.

31. 生まれたのは中国だが、国籍はインドネシアだ。

I was born in China, but my nationality is Indonesian.

32. あきらかに じょうほう をもう一度 とお するの は とうぜん ですよ。

It's evident that we clearly look over the information once more.

Phrase Note: 目を とお す = To look/scan over.

お二人が会うのは、初めてですか。

Is this the first time that you two have met?

Honorifics Note: お- makes the sentence more polite to the addressees.

お二人が会うのは、初めてですか。

Is this the first time that you two have met?

Honorifics Note: お- makes the sentence more polite to the addressees.

The Nominalizer もの

もの nominalizes something to show that something is undoubtedly true.

33. あぶら は水に浮くものだ。

Oil floats on water.

34. 子犬になりたいものですわ！ (Feminine)

I want to become a puppy!

35. よく金曜日に海で泳いだものだね。

I used to swim in the sea on Fridays, you know.

Phrase Note: よく…たものだ = Used to.

Contraction Note: もの may be seen colloquially as もん.

Origin Note: もの comes from the noun 物.

もの・物・者

もの can be any**thing**. This もの can be in particle constructions like above. 物 is a tangible and perhaps living thing. It can even be a spiritual force. It's in many set expressions. It can even be used as a prefix. 者 refers to a person humbly or in a condescending manner.

36. ^{もの}物 ^けの怪にとりつかれる。

To be possessed by an evil spirit.

37. ^た他の物

Something else

38. 物も言いようで ^{かど}角 が立つ。

People may be offended by the way you speak.

39. ^{ものがな}物 ^悲しい

Melancholic

40. 物の分かった人

A sensible person

41. 物の数に ^{はい}入らない

Unmapped

42. 物の数分もしないうちに

In no more than a few minutes.

43. 物の ^{ものい}言 ^{くちびるさむ}え ^唇ば ^寒し。 (Proverb)

Least said, soonest mended.

44. 物に ^あ当たる。

To get flustered.

45. 物の ^{あわ}哀れ

Pathos

46. 物の ^{みごと}見事に

With great success

47. 物を言わす。

To let something speak for itself.

48. 早い ^{ものか}者勝ち。

First come, first served.

49. 生き物

Living creature

50. 物 ^{ぶっしん}心 ^{いらい}ついて以来

For as long as one can remember

Definition Note: ^{ぶっしん}物心 = Matter and mind; ^{ものごころ}物心 = Discretion

Table of Contents

第113課: Expressions with こと

There are many expressions with こと. Even though you may end up hating こと, you're going to have to use it a lot.

こと Expressions

The nominalizer こと is used in a lot of set expressions that involve nominalization. In these expressions, you should not replace こと with の.

1. ～ことがある: With the past tense it means "have done" as you have done something before. With the non-past tense it means that you "often" do something. You can't use ～ことがある for the "have" in expressions like "I have done my homework". Just use ～た !

1. 富士山に登ったことがありますか。

Have you climbed Mt. Fuji before?

2. 私は酒を飲んだことがあります。

I've had sake before.

3. 北海道では四月でも雪が降ることがある。

In Hokkaido, it snows often even in April.

4. 彼はジョギングすることがある。

He often jogs.

5. 彼女を見かけることがある。

I often catch a glimpse of her.

6. 東京で道に迷うことがあります。

I often get lost in Tokyo.

7. 私は買い物に行くことがある。

I often go shopping.

8. そのバスは遅れることがある。

The bus is often late.

9. 香港に行くことがある。

I often go to Hong Kong.

10. 私はフィンランドに行ったことがある。

I've been to Finland.

11. 何度も寿司を食べたことがあります。

I have eaten sushi many times.

12. あなたは歌舞伎を観たことがありますか。

Have you seen Kabuki before?

13. この映画は前に見たことがある。

I have seen this movie before.

2. ～ことがない: To have not done before. It's the negative of #3.

14. 東京に行ったことはありません。

I haven't gone to Tokyo.

15. あんなにきれいな ^{にちぼつ} 日 没 は見たことはありません。

I've never seen such a beautiful sunset.

16. 飛行機で行ったことがない。

I haven't gone by airplane.

17. 秋葉原に行ったことがありませんが、一度行ってみたいです。

I haven't been to Akihabara, but I would like to go once.

Culture Note: 秋葉原, often shortened to 秋葉, is a popular place in Tokyo known for cheap electronics as well as cafes that cater to オタク・ヲタク. In メイド喫茶 maids dress up in uniform.

3. ～ことはない: It shows that something is not important/necessary or is an emphatic version of #2.

18. 気にすることはない。

There is no need to worry.

19. 多分これから外国に行くことはないでしょう。

I probably won't go abroad from now on.

20. 彼の^{ほう}では何ら^{こま}困ったことはない。

There's no problem at his end.

4. ～ことにする・こととする: To decide. ～ことにしている shows that one makes a routine of doing something or that one is determined/has a strong commitment to doing something.

21. あいつを忘れることにしただけさ。(Very colloquial)

I've just decided to just forget that guy.

22. 私はお酒を飲むのをやめることとしました。(Slightly formal)

I have decided to quit drinking liquor.

23. 毎日カルピスを飲むことにしています。

I make it a rule to drink Calpis every day.

24. 英語では話さないことにしています。

I am determined to not speak in *English*.

5. ～ことになる・こととなる: To be decided

25. 今年日本に行くことになりました。

It has been decided that I will go to Japan this year.

26. 新製品は5月10日に発表することになりました。

It has been decided that we will announce the new product on May 10th.

Grammar Notes:

1. こと is not needed with ～にする or ～になる when these phrases are used with a concrete noun.

2. ～ことになっている shows that the decision has been made for you. It is equivalent to "am to". It is also important in describes rules, traditions, etc.

3. と gives a more formal and punctual feeling.

6. ～ということだ: It is said that

27. ロケットが打ち上げられたということだ。

It is said that a rocket was launched.

7. ～ことだろう: Probably

28.. さぞかし無念 {な・だった} ことだろう。 (やや書き言葉的)

It was certainly regretful.

8. ～ことだし: Is, so

29. 子供の（した）ことだし、彼女を許してくれないか。

It was a childish thing to do, so won't you forgive her?

9. ～ことこのうえない: There's nothing better than

30. ウケいいことこの上ない。

Nothing is more popular than this.

10. ～ことに（は）: In being

With the negative it shows that when you don't do X, Y is an undesirable result.

31. ありがたいことに、全員が無事だった。

In being grateful, everyone was alright.

32. 早く出発しないことには、大変なことになる。

In not departing early, it'll become an ordeal.

11. ～ことと思う: Hope that

33. ご承知のことと思いますが。

I hope you are aware, but...

12. ～のこと: Strengthens an adverb and is typically only used in certain expressions.

34. もちろん（のこと）、あいつは失敗した。

Of course that guy failed.

13. A ことは A が: It's (the case that)...but

35. おいしいことはおいしいが、ちょっと高すぎる。

It's delicious, but it's a little too expensive.

14. Adj. + こと: Makes an adverb. It isn't really constructive and is only limited to certain phrases.

36. 長いこと待つ。

To wait for a long time.

15. ～ってことよ: It creates an admonishing tone. Remember that って = いう

37. いいってことよ。

It's alright!

16. ～ことなく: Without

This pattern should not be used with habitual actions.

38. ためらうことなく、消防士は燃えている家に入った。

The firefighters went into the burning house without hesitation.

17. ～ことなしに: Not possible without

39. 福田社長はしょうことなしに謝罪をした。

Company President Fukuda apologized with little choice.

40. 試験に合格することなしに、この会社には入れません。

It is not possible to get into this company without passing the exam.

18. ～に事寄せて: On the plea/context of

41a. 彼女は出張に事寄せて東京市内の観光をしました。

41b. 彼女は出張を口実に東京市内の観光をしました。

41c. 彼女は出張に託けて東京市内の観光をしました。

She went sightseeing in Tokyo on the pretext of a business trip.

19. ～こともなげに: Easily; as if nothing happened

42. 彼は仕事を事もなげにやっつてのけた。

He pulled the job off as if nothing happened.

20. {どれだけ・どんなに}…ことか: Oh how…!

43. どれだけ雨が降ったことか。

Oh how it rained!

44. どんなに料理がおいしかったことか。

Oh how the dish was delicious!

45. どうだけ私が急いだことか。

Oh how I was in a rush!

46. どうだけあなたが食べたことか。

Oh how you ate!

Contraction Note: ことは as well as とは can be contracted to こ（っ）たあ・こっ
ちゃ and たあ respectively in slang.

～だけ（のこと）

～ だけ（のことは） ある shows that something is as expected moreover adequate and fulfills something. A worth, skill, capability, or action is demonstrated to be suitable. Potential ways to translate this include "it is worth", "it's not surprising that (as expected)". It is often used with adverbs like {さすが・流石} (に) , which means "as expected".

こうひ さくげん
47. 公費を削減するだけのことはある。

Cutting public spending is worth it.

48. 高くても、買っただけのことはある。

Although it was expensive, it has its worth for being bought.

49. 高かっただけのことはあるよね。

It was expected, but it was worth it.

50. さすが（に）大学に行っただけのことはある。

As expected, he has worth from going to college.

～だけ（のことは）あつて is a form that shows circumstances that fulfills expectations. It is interchangeable with ～だけに, but there is a slight nuance difference. With ～だけに, the situation expected might not happen, an unexpected surprise. It may also be found in the pattern "A が A だけに". With A in mind, there is plenty of reason for a certain outcome.

51. ^{ゆうめい}ここは 有 名 だけに、^{たくさん}沢 山 ^{おとず}の人が 訪 れます。

Since this place is famous, a lot of people visit.

52. 母も書道もあまりに身近な存在だっただけに、客観視することができなかったのかもしれない。

Since mom also had too close of an existence with calligraphy too, she might not have been able to see (her work) from an objective point of view.

By 武田双雲 in the 文藝春秋 2008 (2).

53. よく勉強しただけに、いい成績で合格しました。

Since I studied hard, I passed with good grades as expected.

Sentence Note: This student probably normally doesn't study, but this time he/she did and as expected from good effort, he/she got a just reward.

54. ^{せいじか}彼は政 治 家 だけに口が ^{うま}巧 いでしょう。

He's probably a good talker since he's a politician.

Word Note: せいじや 政治屋 would be a much more fitting word for this sentence, but it is a sensitive word to some.

55. 津波で町全体が荒らされただけに、一戸の建物さえ残っているのにびっくりしました。

Since the entire town was devastated by the tsunami, I was surprised that just one building remained.

56. 民主党が勝手に頑固たる政策方針を結束して言い張り続けただけに、選挙戦に敗戦して自民党・公明党が当選を果たしたのであろう。(Literary)

Since the DJP continued to insist in solidarity on their stubborn policy stance as they pleased, they lost in the election battle and the LDP and Komeito won in the language (as expected).

History Note: On December 16, 2012 the Democratic Party of Japan lost to the Liberal Democratic Party, which won the majority of seats, and Komeito in a sweeping election, which would make 晋三安部（しんぞうあべ） Prime Minister for the second time.

57. 韓国は儒教文化が残るとされる国なだけに、パク・クネ氏が初めての女性として大統領選挙で選出されたことは韓国社会の変化を象徴しているだけでなく、アジア諸国の社会変動も象徴しているのかもしれない。

Since South Korea is deemed to be a country where Confucian culture still remains, the election of Park Geun-hye as the first female president not only symbolizes change in Korean society, but it may also symbolize societal change in all of Asia.

History Note: Park Geun-hye of the Saenuri Party of South Korea was elected with over 50% of the vote, a first for a presidential candidate in that country, as the first woman president on December 19, 2012.

58. 敵の防壁を潔く突破しただけに、宮殿に入ってからすぐに殺されたという戦死の告知は母国に大嘘だと見なされた。

Since (he) had gracefully burst through the enemy bulwark, the notice of his death in war after being killed once he had entered the palace was taken as a big lie in his homeland.

59. インドネシアは赤道に近いだけあって、うだるように蒸し暑いですね。僕の親友がジャワ島に住んでいますから、訪ねるために身軽な服装を持っていかないといけないでしょう。

Since Indonesia is close to the Equator, it's seething hot, isn't it? As my close friend lives on Java Island, I'll probably have to take light clothing to visit.

60. ミス東大だけに美人だ。

Since she's Miss Todai, she's a beauty.

Word Note: 東大 = 東京大学.

61. 明日はテストだけあってみんな眠そうだ。

Since there is a test tomorrow, everyone is sleepy.

62. 台風の被害が大きかっただけに、都市の復^ふ興^{こう}振^ぶりには目を見張るものがあった。

Since the damage from the typhoon was large, there was quite something to behold in the state of reconstruction.

Usage Note: The usage of だけに to show something unexpected is becoming rarer nowadays.

63. 被害が大きかっただけに、復旧も困難を極めた。

Since the damage was large, both restoration and difficulties were at extremes.

けっこん
結婚することになりました VS 結婚することにしました

This is one time where definitions of a phrase don't help much. When students hear the first one, they think of an arranged marriage. That may be so, but it is just a euphemism that describes the current state. It's uncertain whether the person had say in it or not. It is more appropriate to use 結婚することになりました in situations where you are informing someone or talking to someone you haven't seen in a while. 結婚することにした clearly shows you've chosen to and you are likely telling friends in a conversation.

This is a rule of thumb, but Japanese themselves don't always follow through all the time. Some may purposely use the wrong one to make people laugh or what not.

Table of Contents

第114課: Daily Expressions II

Formality is just one facet to be addressed this time. If you feel your knowledge is a bit rusty since then, you can return to that lesson and come back to this one.

More on 挨拶言葉

Basic greetings such as "good morning" and "good afternoon" vary a bit depending on formality. To begin, consider the following casual expressions.

Good Morning	Good Afternoon	Good Evening	Good Night
おはよ（う）・おはよーん・おそよう	こんちゃ（っす）・ちわっす	こんばんちゃ	おやすみ

おはよーん and ちわっす are extremely colloquial and used among close friends. You may also hear おっす and うっす and the responses おっす（っす） and うっす（っす）, which ultimately came from おはよう.

In West Japan you may hear おはようさん(です) and お晩です for おはようございます and 今晚は respectively. If you've overslept and are really tired, your friends might say おそよう, which is a mixing of おそいよ (you're late) and おはよう. Additional ways to say hi to friends include んちゃっ and んちは.

Lastly, a very important phrase to Japanese is 先日はどうも. This is used to say thanks to someone for something that person did a few days ago, possibly even a long time ago. Even if that person didn't actually do something special for you, it is courteous and expected in many situations.

Parting

Behold ^{なごりお}お名残惜しゅうはございますが、これにて失礼させていただきます。

Why would someone say this? The days of being so honorific are bygone, but traces remain in literature. お名残 refers to parting. 惜しゅうはございます is the traditional humble form of 惜しい (regrettable). にて is the original form of the particle で. ささせていただきます is the humblest way to say you are to do something. お名残は^つ尽きませんが、これにて失礼（を）いたします is just tier down in humbleness. 尽きる means "to be used up".

それではこれでおいとまいります is humble but personally oriented as お暇 refers to oneself going home. Replacing it with 失礼 makes it less humble because replacing entire words in honorifics is more esteemed.

ご機嫌よう used to be used by children of "good families" when leaving for someone, but the phrase has become extremely rare, which is why it is often translated as "adieu".

ごめんください（ませ） is used when parting on the phone or when leaving someone's home. It can also be used when entering a residence when you are not immediately greeted by someone.

ご無礼 {いたしました・しました} is rather humble by saying that is oneself being rude by leaving, and this phrase is more so expected of men to say in the business world.

失敬 {いたします・します} used to be very common, but it is now typically characteristic of Kansai honorifics, which has managed to affect Standard Japanese honorifics. This is just one case where such influence reverses for whatever reason.

おさらばです is now completely old-fashioned, but it used to be very common. Nowadays, however, in the plain form （お）さらば（だ）, it has become more emotionally powerful than さようなら in implying an everlasting parting. In

speaking of さようなら, you may also hear the casual/dialectical version さいなら. There also happens to be the form あばよ, which is deemed to be very vulgar and characteristic of male speech.

よろしく

Being extremely respectful and humble can be very important when meeting an individual of importance for the first time. You know to say 初めまして and どうぞよろしく申し上げます, but what if you are writing a letter to introduce oneself? How more respectful/humble can you phrase this?

お 初にお目にかかります and 初めてお目にかかります are not that different, but the first is representative of the written language. These phrases state that one is very pleased to meet someone for the first time.

今後ともよろしく {お引き回し・ご指導 (ご ^{べんたつ} 鞭撻・ご ^{きょうどう} 教導) } のほど ^{ねが}願
わしゅう ^{ぞん}存 じます may seem long, but notice the brackets only add different wordings for essentially the same thing, seeking guidance from a superior. お引き回し is used to have the superior guide oneself around. 指導 is "guidance". 鞭撻 is "encouragement" and can even be used with ご指導. So, you may see something like ご指導ご鞭撻のほど申し上げます. 教導 gives the sense that one seeks both teaching and guidance. 願わしゅう存じます can be viewed as the most humble way to express 申し上げます, and due to the traditional pattern of making humble adjectives being old-fashioned now, phrases with it have essentially been relegated to use in formal writing. As such, writing the honorific prefixes お- and ご- as 御- is even more appropriate.

Maybe you will never need to be so wordy, but なにとぞよろしくお願い申し上げます is quite practical. なにとぞ is a respectful どうか, beseeching for the addressee to keep you in mind.

お 手柔らかにお願いします means "please be gentle", and it is used when one is going to participate side by side someone, presumably with hands-on work. Lastly, there is also the not so honorific phrase よろしく頼みます that still politely asks for the better help of another.

元気?

Sure, you've known how to ask お元気ですか for a long work, and 元気 is so representative of the language that it is the name of a rival teaching curriculum. Consider the following formal phrases.

For- mal	お元気でいらっしゃいます か	ご無事でいらっしゃいます か	ご機嫌いかがです か
-------------	-------------------	-------------------	---------------

. ぶじ 無事 asks about well-being. いかがですか is normally reserved to the sick. However, that can't be said for ご機嫌いかがですか, but you will probably only come across this once in a blue moon.

The most polite way to say "long time no see" is お久しぶりでございます, but this is really old-fashioned. You can also say しばらくでした (it's been a while), which uses the adverb しばらく meaning "quite a while" in this instance.

Casual and slang expressions for "long time no see" include ひさしぶり (だね・ね) , しばらく (だね・だったね・ね) , ひさびさ, おひさ, ちょうし 調子 どうよ? (How are you doing?), さいきん 最近 どうよ (How have you been recently?).

When asked "how has it been", your friend might respond with あいこ 相変わらず (Same as always). When you feel like it's your fault for having not seen someone, you can respectfully say something like なが 長らくごぶさたしてすみません or ご

ぶさた
無沙汰いたしました。 A less polite way would be ご無沙汰しました, and ごぶさたね would be casual.

Another set of expressions are centered around the default お見^み限^{かぎ}りです
ね. This is normally used sarcastically. Its casual forms include ずいぶんお見限りだ
ね・お見限りだったね・お見限りね.

Thanks for Working

In Japan, people often give thanks to others for their hard work. Practical situations you hear these phrases said include hotel clerks addressing businessmen coming in to stay the night, a spouse addressing his or her partner after work, etc.

Expression	Meaning	Politeness
お疲れ様でございました	Thank you so much for your hard work.	Formal
ご苦労様でございました	↓ ↑	Formal
お疲れ様でした	↓ ↑	Polite
ご苦労様でした	↓ ↑	Polite
お疲れ様	↓ ↑	Plain
ご苦労様	→ ↑	Plain

Phrase Note: Although not specific to work, the phrase "お待ち^ま 遠^ど 様^{おさま} でした" meaning, "I'm sorry to have kept you waiting", is often used to workers and people in general.

Apologizing

Apologizing is very personal and should be taken seriously. On the other hand, if you are online and chatting with people or casually apologizing to a

friend, you don't have to be so stiff and formal. So, naturally, there are also many slang ways to say sorry.

Respect-ful	恐縮です	I'm sorry to trouble	恐れ入ります	I'm sorry to impose
Respect-ful	申し訳ございません	My deepest apologies		
Slang	ごめん {くさい・ちやい}	Sorry	めんごめんご	Whoopsy-daisy

Other words like スマソ, a common internet slang word, and わりい (my bad) exist. Some like すいません can actually be heard in the workplace, but probably not to the boss. Derivations like すまぬ・すまない should only be used with people you know very well.

ち　　もう　わけ
散らかして 申 し 訳 ございません。

Please accept our deepest apologies for the mess.

はなしちゅう
お 話 中 すみません。

I'm sorry for interrupting.

第115課 : Numbers VI: Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers, (^{じゅん}順) ^{じょすうし}序数詞, in English end in -th with exception to first, second, and third. Japanese doesn't have true ordinal number forms like English, but there are several ways to make such expressions. Decisions such as which prefix and or suffix should be used and what kind of number should be used, Sino-Japanese and native, cause nuance differences that shouldn't be overlooked.

Practicality is also a factor, but this is no reason to ignore sections of this lesson. As the words “ordinal” and 順序 suggest, ordinal numbers show ordering. In English they're used in giving the date, century, fractions, generations, etc. These usages, though, are taken over in Japanese by counters. However, in phrases such as “first intersection”, ordinal number expressions are still used in Japanese.

You'll find that ordinal number-like expressions in Japanese have limitations, and they aren't quite straightforward. This lesson will try to give guidelines as to how exactly they are used, so pay close attention to details.

The Ordinal Number Patterns

第

With Sino-Japanese numbers, the prefix 第～ can be used, which brings a considerable level of formality. For instance, 第二 means “second”. You see it a lot in things like 第二に (secondly) and 第二の人生 (second life).

You also see it used with counter expressions and nouns afterward like 第1課 (Lesson 1), 第一位 (first place), and 第二の論点 (second point of issue). 第 # is extremely limited, though. It is true that you hear 第一 and 第二 used as adverbs in listing points. And, you can see 第 # の Noun all the time for any number. How-

ever, when you pass two, using 第 # in an adverbial sense (firstly, secondly) becomes unnatural. As such, to clearly use this pattern adverbially, the particle に becomes necessary. So, rather than stating a third point with 第三, do so with 第三に.

第一の日本の技術者

The foremost engineers of Japan

第一（、）説明しても誰も聞いてくれないんだ。

First(ly), even if I explained, no one'll listen to me.

第三に、会社員が自分のゴミを捨てなければならないことになりました。

Thirdly, it has been decided that employees must throw away their own trash.

This does not negate the grammaticality of phrases like 第三の問題. In English this would be "third problem", but the Japanese, like the English, is ambiguous on whether the problem number is 3 or whether it is simply the third problem being touched on.

Even so, this is more indicative of written Japanese. In regards to proper nouns and this pattern, you can see things like 第一ホテル and 第一製薬, but you don't see any other number with them unless if it were a play on words. So, typically, you would never see something like 第三ホテル.

When do you distinguish this from just a # + Counter? This is a very difficult question that really depends on what you're using. For instance, when counting floors of a building, you simply use the counter ～階. If you were to use 第, it wouldn't quite be the same sense of the word. For instance, you can see things like 第 2 階差数列 (second differences sequence).

(第)#番

Then, there is the counter ～番. 番 itself is a noun for “turn/order/place”. When used as a counter, it is equivalent to "No.". One instance that these are

used is the parts of a hearing test. This is also used for giving the order of those that win a lottery. So, you get something like 二番は彼です.

This, again, shows the number that something has. For instance, if a street is named with a number, for instance First Avenue/Avenue 1, then its Japanese equivalent would be 一番街. Like the English expression, however, # 番街 is used for avenues/streets with a lot of people and or businesses.

It is possible to see 第 with such expressions, but the sense of there being a “No.” is still there. For instance, 第 2 番の交差点 is a slightly uncommon/unnatural way of saying “Intersection No. 2”. It is slightly more common to see this without the 第.

Another practical usage is # 番線. This is used to mentioning the number of a train line, not the number of a train (列車番号). 番地 is used for house/property number, and unlike these other examples, it is also practically used with large numbers. So, it is possible to see 1000 番地. In short, this is used when there is number posted on something.

There is also the usage of 一番 as “most”. However, past 1, you would have to use # 番目. So, the second most high-ranking person would be 2 番目に偉い人. It’s not right to use 2 番 here. Now, having said this, what would happen if in regards to a lottery you were to say 一番目が私、2 番目は彼です? Well, then it would sound like you’re talking about different lottery drawings, not separate drawings after each other in a single event.

The confusion in semantics can cause natives to question the legitimacy of phrases such as the last one. This is why thoughtful consideration of detail and awareness of context is so important to discourse in any language.

Then, there is #番目. This has a very distinct spatial/temporal sense about it. It can also be used in sense where it's not that one is counting it. It's just factually the case. For instance, in reference to the third hurricane to reach the Gulf of Mexico, one would use 3番目. This, in comparison with the next option, has no real number limit. This is also of the same vein as #Counter+目. For instance, the third book is 3冊目 (の本) .

Native Number + つ + 目

The most common in the spoken language is definitely "Native number + つ + 目". After nine, it is replaced with #番目・#個目, the latter specifically counting things of course.

This pattern definitely has the greater sense of counting, despite the fact that all of these patterns are ordinal number patterns.

There isn't necessarily a strong relation to temporal/spatial distance. It could be in reference to things. Although #番目 can be used with things too, it's hard to pull away a sense of distance or time from it. For instance, 2番目の駅 is something you could definitely hear when being told how to get somewhere. From where you and the explainer are standing, there is a spatial sense of two train stations away from you. Although you could definitely hear 2つ目の駅, one could say that this has broader implications and has no relation to distance, and if it were used in the same instance as above, that's coincidental.

A common question that is often brushed off by the most sincere natives is the existence of 十目. Sadly, it does exist in rare phrases like 四目十目, which comes from a superstition of an age difference between a married couple 3 to 9 years bad, so they get rounded to 4 and 10 instead. This, though, is homophonous with the phrase 夜目遠目 (being seen in the distance).

Practically, though, yes, the pattern “Native number + つ + 目” ends at 9. Even so, if you were to say 9 つの信号 (ninth light) in giving instructions, you might cause the traveler some anxiety as to how far away something is. Had you said 9 番の信号, it may be next to you if that’s the name of it. Or, if you had said 9 番目の信号, the light is no doubt in a series, but the sense of a number limit is nonexistent.

In the past, native numbers past ten could be made like “とお あまり #つ”, but this has been reduced to rare instances and Classical Japanese. You can still sometimes see the original native number framework outside of 1~10, はたち, in things like 三十一文字, which is used to mean Waka/Tanka poetry. Another fun fact is that 一つ目小僧 actually means “one-eyed boy phantom”. Of all things…lol

Examples

Although the number of examples for this lesson is currently insufficient, given the detailed explanations above, ordinal number expressions should make a whole lot more sense to you.

だい か い め じ っ け ん
1. 第 1 回 目 の 実 験

The first test/experiment

たい か い 1 0 か め
7. 大 会 1 0 日 目

10th day of the tournament

か
2. 第 7 課

Lesson 7

ひ と め つ き
8. 一 つ 目 の 月

- The first month

し あ い
3. 第 1 試 合

Match one

ま く だ い ば
9. 第 2 幕 第 3 場

Act II, Scene iii

4. 第5^{しょう}章

Chapter 5

5. 何^{なんばんめ}番^{へや}目の部屋ですか。

What room (number)?

Sentence Note: This is appropriate when you are not referring to the room number plaque but the location of the room. If you want the number, you could ask 部屋は何番ですか。

6. あなたは何番目の訪問者ですか。

What number visitor are you?

Exception Note: 第4日 is exceptionally read as だいよつか.

10. 7^{れいめ}例^め目

Seventh example

11. 3^{れんしょうめ}連^め勝^め目

The third straight win

12. 前から2^{れつめ}列^め目の席^{せき}に座る。

To sit in a seat in the second row from the front.

13. 上から3段目

Third from the top

14. 一^{いちぎょうめ}行^め目の左^{ひだり}から五つ目の

もじ^{もじ} ざしよく^{ざしよく}
文字は誤植です。

The fifth letter starting from the first line is a misprint.

第116課: Numbers VII: Counters II

There are so many counters that it even causes natives to have headaches. Even if you were to know every counter, which isn't worth the time, you would have to know just as impressive amount of information to read all the number-counter combinations. To complicate things, there are many set phrases that require a particular number variant, and there are many combinations with multiple correct readings with varying frequencies of use.

Numbers

The purpose of this lesson is to give you more counters that are relevant to your studies. Before we get to new counters, though, we need to take some time and discuss a bit more about numbers themselves. Below is the rest of the most essential Sino-Japanese numbers.

Remember that large numbers are structured a little differently in Japanese. Instead of being grouped into powers of three, they are grouped into powers of four. This is why the unit changes at 100 million rather than at 1 million. The same phonetic changes from before apply for these large numbers.

1 Million	百万 (ひゃくまん)	10 Million	(一)千万 ((いっ) せんまん)	100 Million	一億 (いちおく)
1 Billion	十億 (じゅうおく)	10 Billion	百億 (ひゃくおく)	100 Billion	(一) 千億 ((いっ) せんおく)
1 Trillion	一兆 (いっちょう)	10 Trillion	十兆 (じゅっちょう)	100 Trillion	百兆 (ひゃっちょう)
Quadrillion	千兆 (せんちよう)				

Large Numbers

Consider 4,634,968,349,763,487, which is treated as 4634,9683,4976,3487 with the units changing every fourth power in the order 十, 百, 千, new unit.

1. 四千六百三十四兆九千六百八十三億四千九百七十六万三千四百八十七

よんせん ろっぴゃく さんじゅうよんちょう きゅうせん ろっぴゃく はちじゅうさんおく よんせん
きゅうひゃく ななじゅうろくまん さんぜん よんひゃく はちじゅう なな

Set Readings

Finally, you need to understand that variants of numbers that were described as basically never being used may still be used in set phrases. For instance, you shouldn't say しひゃく for 400 itself, but in set phrases like 四百四病, a Buddhist term for every type of disease, you would have to read the phrase as しひゃくしびょう. This is because that's how it's supposed to be read, and there is no other option. Below are more common set expressions.

四十七士	The 47 ronin	Sino-Japanese counters once required Sino-Japanese numbers.
二十四の 瞳	Twenty four eyes	Title of a famous novel turned into a movie.
二十四節 気	The 24 sekki	Sekki are divisions of the solar year.

More Counters

Though it's really best to just read up on counter lists such as those found on <http://www.benricho.org/kazu/>, this chart gives some more important counters to add to your vocabulary.

～雨（あめ）	Rain	～画（かく）	Strokes (漢字)
～行（ぎょう）	Lines of text	～クラス	Classes
～世（せい）	Generations	～章（しょう）	Chapters
～錠（じょう）	Pills	～畳（じょう）	Tatami
～丁・挺（ちよう）	Tools, candles, guns, forks, baskets	～発（はつ）	Shots, blows, engines
～俵（ひょう）	Bags of rice/sackfuls	～部（ぶ）	Circulating printed material
～服（ふく）	Doses, puffs, rests	～話（わ）	Episodes

1. Some counters are very limited such as 雨, which is limited to 一雨 (a rainfall).
2. When referring to printed material in circulation, the counter 部^ぶ is used instead. This counter is also used for collected editions. However, editions are generally counted with 巻^{かん}.
Ex. 一巻 (one volume)
3. Using the wrong counter *may at times* be done for humor/insult. Ex. using 匹 for people.
4. Pairs of clothing can also be 着（ちゃく）. Depending on the article of clothing, this may be replaced with something like 枚 or 本 as 着 is slightly literary.

2. シャツ {一着・一枚}

A shirt

3. ズボン {一着・一本}

A pair of pants

Examples

4. 井の頭公園にほど近い、坂の上にある一軒屋だった。持ち主はドイツ人の夫婦で、十年計画の世界一周

旅行の間、家が傷まないようにとにかく一年の半分は住むという約束で、驚くほど安く貸してくれた。

住宅街ではあるが、坂道に面した前庭だけでも、優に二百坪は超えている。

It was a single house atop a slope not so far from Inokashira Park. The owners were a German couple, and while on a world round trip they had planned for ten years, they rent it for a surprisingly low place with the promise that [she] would live in it for half of the year so that the house didn't get damaged.

Although it's a residential street, just even the front yard that faces the slope easily passes 200 tsubo (661.157025 m²).

From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

Note: The 坪 is a traditional unit for area still used a lot in Japan.

5. 私宛ての郵便物が（何通か）ありますか。

Is there any mail for me?

～代, which is used to show one's age group and not to be confused with ～年代 which equates to "'s" in phrases like the 90's in English, is yet another important counter that you should remember.

6. 30 代の主婦

A housewife in one's thirties

7. 10 代の子供のしつけ方

Disciplining teens

Phrase Note: There are also weird coined phrases such as アラフォー, which means "around forty".

数～

すう

数 ～ attaches to a counter to mean "several...". This typically refers to amount from 3～7, but usually not much higher than at, unless of course the speaker is lying about the span. When a suffix, ～数 means "number of".

8. 数名の人

Some people

9. 延べ日数

Total number of (work)days

10. 戸数・家の数

Number of households

11. 延べ人数

Total number of people

12. 荷物の個数を数える

To count the number of luggage items.

13. 経った年数

Number of years that have past

15. 歩数

Number of steps

14. バスの本数

Number of buses

17. 冊数

Number of books

16. ホームランの本数

Number of home runs

Reading Notes: 数日 = すうじつ; 人数 = にんず (う) .

18. 制^{せい}裁^{さい}ポイントというのは、修^{しゅう}哉^やくんに対^{たい}する嫌^{いや}がらせのことで、自分が何をしたか、このアドレスに報告する

ことにより、ポイントが与えられ、毎週土曜日に集^{しゅう}計^{けい}し、クラスで一番ポイント^{すう}数の少ない人は、翌週から

ひとごろみかた
人殺しの味方とみなされ、同じように制裁を受けることになる、というので
す。

Punishment points was a means of harassing Shūya-kun, and by reporting to this action what you've done, points are given to you, and every Saturday the points are tallied, and whoever has the least amount of points in the class is seen as being an ally of the murderer starting the next week, and you likewise get punished.

From 告白 by みなと 湊 かなえ.

Pronunciation Note: The word 数字 is ambiguous. It can either mean numeral or several characters. The pitch for the first meaning is LHH and the pitch for the second meaning is HLL.

Important Exceptional Readings

Sometimes voicing occurs when a counter is used with 三 and 何. This is because ん is a voiced sound. So, it's not surprising that making the next consonant voiced would ease pronunciation. Sometimes, though, voicing doesn't happen.

Meaning	Coun- ter	With 三	With 何
Thousand	千	さんぜん	なんぜん

Floor	階	さんがい・さんかい (Dialectical)	なんがい
A sun	寸	さんずん・さんすん	なんすん
A shaku	尺	さんしゃく・さんじゃく (Old-fashioned)	なんしゃく・なんじゃく (Old-fashioned)
Loaf; 600 grams	斤	さんきん・さんぎん (Old-fashioned)	なんきん
6 尺	間	さんけん・さんげん	なんけん・なんげん
Buildings	軒	さんけん・さんげん	なんけん・なんげん
Old currency unit	貫	さんかん・さんがん (Old-fashioned)	なんかん・なんけん (Old-fashioned)

19. 建物は何階建てですか。

How many stories is the building?

連濁 Note: 建て should be read as だて although the previous element is voiced too.

People

You already learned about the irregularities of ～人. But, just to make sure you know what these irregularities are, they are listed below.

～人 Irregularities	一人 = ひとり; 二人 = ふたり; 三人 = みたり (Rare/dialectical)
-------------------	---

Etymology Note: The number element and counter element to these exceptions is blurred. In reality, there is a counter change based on plurality of とり → たり. In avoiding repeating the same sound twice, 1 and 2 are seen contracted to just ひ and ふ respectively.

The Days of the Month

Here are the days of the month again to make sure that you still know them all. You wouldn't believe how many people that have studied Japanese for several years that still mess these up a lot.

1 日	ついたち	2 日	ふつか	3 日	みっか	4 日	よっか	5 日	いつか
6 日	むいか	7 日	なのか	8 日	ようか	9 日	このか	10 日	とおか
11 日	じゅういちにち	12 日	じゅうににち	13 日	じゅうさんにち	14 日	じゅうよっか	15 日	じゅうごにち
16 日	じゅうろくにち	17 日	じゅうしちにち	18 日	じゅうはちにち	19 日	じゅうくにち	20 日	はつか
21 日	にじゅういちにち	22 日	にじゅうににち	23 日	にじゅうさんにち	24 日	にじゅうよっか	25 日	にじゅうごにち
26 日	にじゅうろくにち	27 日	にじゅうしちにち	28 日	にじゅうはちにち	29 日	にじゅうくにち	30 日	さんじゅうにち
31 日	さんじゅういちにち								

Rabbits and Birds

Other than that, there is ～羽, which counts rabbits and birds. Its peculiar irregularity is demonstrated in the chart below. Variants will be listed in order of most to least frequent.

1	一羽	いちわ	2	二羽	にわ
3	三羽	さんば・さんわ	4	四羽	よんわ・よんば・(よわ)
5	五羽	ごわ・(ごば)	6	六羽	ろくわ・ろっぱ
7	七羽	ななわ・しちわ・(ななば)	8	八羽	はちわ・はっぱ

9	九羽	きゅうわ・くわ	10	十羽	じゅうぱ・じっぱ・じゅうわ・ (じゅうば)
100	百羽	ひゃっぱ・ひゃくわ	1000	千羽	せんぱ・せんわ・せんぱ
10000	一万羽	いちまんぱ・いちまんわ	?	何羽	なんわ・なんぱ・なんぱ

Set Phrase Note: 三羽鳥 read as さんばがらす is a set phrase meaning "trio".

Practice (1): Translate the following.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Nine birds | 2. 20 rabbits | 3. 12 days |
| 4. Three months | 5. 4 o' clock | 6. Two boxes |
| 7. Three people | 8. 1 person | 9. How many floors? |
| 10. Three pairs of shoes | 11. One step | 12. How many thousands? |
| 13. 13 weeks | 14. 12 computers | 15. How many glassfuls? |

More Oddities with Native Numbers

Though the majority of counters that accept native numbers only allow this for 1 and 2 (sometimes also 3 and 4), there is a very rare minority that accepts even more native numbers. However, because they are of the minority, it isn't surprising that even these "exceptional readings" (though they're the original readings) themselves are not widely used. Some speakers may even think certain combinations are unnatural. Reading 3 and 4 is becoming exceedingly problematic.

Nevertheless, we will examine one such counter: 房 (bunches of fruit). Notice how there is fluctuation in how it can be read. When a number has multiple readings, the one primarily used is in bold.

1	ひとふ さ	2	ふたふ さ	3	みふさ	4	よん ふさ よふさ	5	ご ふさ いつふさ	6	ろく ふ さ むふさ
7	ななふ さ	8	はち ふ さ やふさ	9	きゅう ふさ	10	じゅう ふ さ と (お) ふ さ	11	じゅういち ふさ	?	なんふ さ

20. 餅の切れは小さいが、六切か七切食って、最後の一切れを椀の中へ残して、もうよそ
うと箸を置いた。

The mochi slices were small, but he ate six or seven slices, put the last slice
inside the bowl, and put down his chopsticks to stop.
From 吾輩は猫である by 夏目漱石.

Reading Note: 六 is read as む.

21. 吾輩の家の裏に十坪ばかりの茶園がある。

There is a tea plantation about ten tsubo large behind my house.
From 吾輩は猫である by 夏目漱石.

Reading Note: In this case, 十 is read as と. This is another rare instance in
which this reading is used.

22. とびら なら みけた
扉 に 並 ぶ 3 桁 の 番号

Three digit number on the door

Keys

Practice (1)

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|------------|--------|
| 1. 九羽・一翼（の鳥） | 2. 二十羽・二十匹（のウサギ） | 3. 十二日 | 4. 三月 |
| (みつき)・三ヶ月（間） | | | |
| 5. 四時; よじ | 6. 二箱; ふたはこ・にはこ | 7. 三人 | 8. 一人; |
| ひとり | | | |
| 9. 何階; なんがい | 10. 三足（のくつ） | 11. 一歩 | 12. |
| 何千; なんぜん | | | |
| 13. 十三週（間） | 14. 十二台（のコンピューター） | 15. 何杯; なん | |
| ばい・なんばい | | | |

*: Computer may also be コンピュータ. The counters ~セット, ~式, and ~基 may be used instead.

第117課: Old

The word old has many usages in English. English speakers often assume that you can just use Japanese words in disregard of differences of usage once they learn it means such and such. So, we get things like はちねんふるい人 by students who learn the words for "eight", "year", "old", and "person" and then put them together in a way they as English speakers are familiar with. This is despite the fact that the correct way to say this is 8 歳の人, introducing a grammatical concept of counters that English lacks almost entirely. Ignoring other problems such as the fact there are other ways to say the previous words, let's focus on the word "old".

Consider the following phrases which all have something translated into English as old. Keep in mind that there are many more phrases out there that exist which equate in some way to old because the English word's usage is so broad. This leads us into understanding the importance of looking at how Japanese phrases things. We have to in some way detach ourselves from English to get the bigger picture.

1. 年とった政治家は堪え性がない。

Old politicians don't have endurance.

2. 年老いた犬を介護し、最後を看取る。

To care for an old dog and watch its final moments.

3. 義父が老人ホームに入りたがらない。

My father-in-law does not want to enter the nursing home.

4. 老人を尊敬しないといけないことは肝に銘じている。

Respecting the old/elderly is engraved in me.

5. カシの老木を伐採する。

To cut down old oak trees.

6. 20 歳になると、成人になる。

You become an adult when you turn twenty years old.

7. 夜が更けた。

The night grew old.

8. お子さんはおいくつですか。

How old is your child?

9. 古い木造の家が全焼した。

An/the old, wooden house completely burned.

10. 昔からの慣習を重んじる。

To respect old traditions.

11. 前の彼氏にばったり出会った。

I came across my old boyfriend.

Old (Age)

One problem English speakers have with Japanese is Japanese's lack of a simple pattern such as "# old" that can apply for anything. Depending on the object, the phrasing options are different.

Have you ever thought about the age of inanimate objects? There is nothing wrong in saying something like Ex. 12a, but Ex. 12b is also OK.

12a. 地球の年齢は何歳ですか？

12b. 地球の年齢は何年ですか。

How old is the age of the Earth?

The answer, however, would always be 46 億年. Using 歳・才 would be incorrect. If your dog is 11, he/she is 11 歳, not 11 年. This is because dogs are alive and *like* humans.

Your apartment complex may be a 5 年物, not 5 歳. You may also live in a 5 年前に建てた家 or 5 年前に建った家 depending on context. With this in mind, consider the following examples.

13. 100 年前に建てられたホテル

A hotel that was built 100 years ago

14. 三百年前に建った家だ。

This is/it's a house built 300 years ago.

15. 築 50 年のマンションに住む。

To live in an apartment of 50 years.

Phrase Note: 築 # 年 specifically shows how long ago a piece of architecture was constructed.

16. 10 年もののワイン

Ten year wine

17. 年代もののブドウ酒

Old/aged wine

Word Note: The phrase 古いワイン exists as well.

18. これは 50 年もののワインだよ。

This is a fifty year old wine.

Particle Note: The もの is 物. の can be dropped in this context. It is more traditional/correct with it.

19. 50 年前の写真

A photograph from fifty years ago

20. 30 年前 (の) 車両

Train cars from 30 years ago

Particle Note: The particle の may also be omitted here as well.

When you have something like ○○年齢は何歳, ○○の樹齢は何歳・何年, you get to use 歳 in the question. If you were to show a *difference* in age, 歳 is possible. Though, when the tree is far older than a human could ever be, ~歳 becomes impractical. Even so, 木の年齢差 is shown with ~年. ~歳違いの○○ or ~歳違っている, though, is common for animals and plants. It should be clear by now that everything is subject to pragmatic issues.

Applying ~歳 to something non-human personifies the object. We're fine with animals because we're animals. We're sometimes fine with plants because we have our tree lovers in Japan too. We're OK using it in a question when we specifically use the phrases 年齢・樹齢, but unless you have a very specific environment, this isn't applied to something like a house.

21. 生後 10 か月の赤ちゃん

10 month baby

22. ほまれくんが 10 か月(歳) になりました。

Homare's now 10 months!

In Ex. 22, some speakers would add 歳 to equate the mile stones of months for their child in the same way they as if they were to turn one or two.

日 齢 exists, but it's the age of something born/birthed. So, it can work for humans or even eggs. We can even go smaller by considering 時 (間) 齢 (hour age), 分 齢 (minute age), and 秒 齢 (second age). These are certainly not used in the spoken language, but we can get around this.

23. 14 日 齢 卵

14 day old eggs

24a. 彼の母親は、彼がわずか 5 時間だった 齢 に亡くなった。△

24b. 彼の母親は、彼が生まれてわずか 5 時間後に亡くなった。

His mother died when he was only five hours old/His mother died only five hours after he was born.

自然さ Note: 19b is more natural than 19a. Japanese does not like having to express age in things so small and would rather avoid it by using phrases such as "after" if possible.

25. 海外在住の人が日本で里帰り出産する場合は、海外に戻るのにゼロ歳の赤ちゃんのパスポートが必要です。

In the case of people abroad who come home to give birth in Japan, a passport is needed for the zero year old child for returning overseas.

Phrase Note: Japanese has adopted ゼロ歳 and it is frequently used. You can also see 生後ゼロ歳ゼロヶ月.

26. 分裂して 3 秒後の菌

Three second old bacteria → bacteria three seconds after splitting

27. 13 日培養された菌

Thirteen day old bacteria culture → Bacteria cultured for thirteen days

Phrasing Note: If English can avoid the phrase, then you can use that to help you understand how Japanese avoids "old".

This, however, wouldn't be a word that you would just use in conversation. The spoken language must have ways to go around this. With this in mind, consider the following. These examples show how Japanese takes close detail to the total semantic context.

28. 1 日経過したパン

Day old bread

29. 3 日経ったウニ

Three day old sea urchin(s)

30. 産卵から 5 日たった卵をゆでる。

To boil five day old eggs since being laid.

31. 生後 5 日の赤ちゃん

Five day old baby

32. 作ってから 2 日目のカレー

Curry one made two days ago

33. 妻の車は買ってから 5 年たっている。

My wife's car is five years old/of five years. → It has been five years since my wife bought her car.

Table of Contents

第118課: Conjunctions

Conjunctions ^{せつぞくし} 接 続 詞 connect sentences together in Japanese. They don't normally connect clauses, however. This is quite unlike English, which often doesn't like some conjunctions being used at the beginning of a sentence. Instead, Japanese does a good job distinguishing between conjunctions, which is the topic of this lesson, and conjunctive particles.

Some conjunctive phrases are made of multiple phrases. This may things a bit more complicated, especially when things look very similar minus one thing. Also be aware that all of the conjunctions may not be expressed with either conjunctions or conjunctive particles and thus will not be mentioned in this lesson.

In this this lesson conjunctions are labeled with the following terms. This lesson does not aim to teach you all conjunctive phrases in Japanese, but you will definitely learn what they are, how they are used, and plenty to practice with.

Function			Abbreviation
Parallelism	並行	へいれつ	並
Alternation	代替	だいがえ	代
Addition	添加	てんか	添
Change	転換	てんかん	転
Concession	逆接	ぎゃくせつ	逆
Sequence	連続	れんぞく	連

Single Word Conjunctions

転	さて	Now	添	加えて	Moreover
逆	しかし	However	逆	一方	On the other hand
添	しかも	Moreover	連	従って	Therefore
代	即ち	In other words	逆	ただし	Provided

添	そして	And	並	及び	And
転	そもそも	In the first place	添	なお	Still
添	且つ	Also	連	よって	Thus

Usage Notes:

1. さて is used to change the topic of conversation. It may also be an interjection similar to "well" in English.
2. しかし is not used as frequently as the English equivalent "however". It is used, first and foremost, to contrast two different things.
3. When (その) ^{いっぽう} 一方 (では) is used with ^{たほう} 他方 (では) before it, in which case その may never precede it, the interpretation changes to "on the one hand". This extended pattern is not likely to be used in the spoken language.
4. Due to it looking like しかし, しかも is often misused by students. It is just like そのうえに.
5. そして shows that something additionally happens.

Examples

1a. あるいは本当かもしれません。

1b. ^{おそ}恐らく (それが) 本当かもしれません。 (More natural)

Perhaps that's true.

2. 明朝十時集合。ただし雨の場合は中止。

A 10 o'clock meeting tomorrow, but cancellation in case of rain.

3. しかも、あられが降ってるんだよ。

Besides, it's hailing!

漢字 Note: あられ may rarely be spelled as 霰

4. そりゃそもそもの始まりだった。

That's all it was to begin with.

5. 命は天に^あ在り。然らばただ時を待つのみ。(Old-fashioned)

Life is in heaven. So, we just wait for the time.

6a. よく学び^か且つよく遊ぶ。(Not an imperative; Set phrase; old-fashioned)

6b. よく学びよく遊べ。(Imperative)

Study well and play well.

7. お金は^{すなわ}即ち幸福と考える。

To think of money, in other words, happiness.

8. しかし、^{けいき}景気はまだ^{かいふく}回復しない。

However, the economy hasn't recovered.

9. {さて・さあ}、始めよう。

Well, let's begin.

10. だったら、^{てつだ}手伝おう。

If that's the case, I'll help.

11. ^{ただ}但し雨の場合は^{えんき}延期。

However, it will be postponed in the case of rain.

12. 彼女は^{かじん}歌人であり、かつ小説家であります。

She is a tanka poet, and she is also a novelist.

13. あいつはそもそも殺すつもりはなかった。

He didn't have an intention of killing in the first case.

14. 0 ^{たい}対 0の ^{きんこう}均衡 ^{やぶ}を破る。

To break a tie of 0-0.

Word Note: 対 is the equivalent of "versus".

15. ^ま先^ず日本へ行きました。そしていろいろなところへ行きました。

First of all, I went to Japan, and I went to a lot of different places.

16. よって ^{くだん}件 ^{ごと}の如し。(Set phrase; Formal)

Therefore, it is as the aforementioned statement.

Multiple Word Conjunctions

連	そのうえ	Besides	連	そのうち	Some day
代	または	Or	添	ところで	By the way
連	何故なら	Because	連	そればかりか	Besides
逆	だから	Because	連	さもないと	Otherwise
添	それで	And so	連	それから	Then
代	それとも	Or	連	それなら	If so
添	こうして	With this	添	そうして	With that
代	もしくは	Or	逆	それどころか	Rather
並	並びに	Both...and...	逆	それでも	Nevertheless
連	それ故	Therefore, thus	連	それにしても	Hence
連	故に	Accordingly	連	それにつけても	Anyway
逆	だが	But	連	それはさておき	By the way
連	それに	Moreover			

17. それゆえ、銃撃戦の死者は百人以上に上ります。

Therefore, the casualties from the shoot-out will climb to over 100.

18a. 行く川の流^ゆれは絶えず溢^{たあふ}れ出している故にもとの水ではない。

18b. 行く川の流^ゆれは絶えずして、しかももとの水にあらず。(Original Classical version)

The flow of a passing river endlessly flows; hence, it is not the original water.

19. その代^かわりに、本を買った。

Instead, I bought a book.

20. ところでお仕事は？

By the way, your job is?

21. それにつけても思い出すのは古き良き時代だ。

Anyways, that reminds me of the good old days.

22. 新^{しん}語^ご並^{なら}びに外^{がい}来^{らい}語^ごに 関^{かん}する資^{しりょう}料^{しりょう}を調^{しら}べる。

To examine data about both neologisms and foreign expressions.

23. そういえば、久実さんはどうしてるんだろう？

Now that I think of it, I wonder what Kumi is doing?

24. 日本語には同音異義語^{どうおんいぎご}が多い。{故に・それゆえ・よって・そういうわけで・そのようなわけで・従って・このため・そのため・だから・このことから}、漢字で書く。

Japanese has a lot of homophones. Therefore, you write with Kanji.

Historical Note: The introduction of 漢字 caused Japanese to have a lot of homophones.

Word Note: From the single example above, there are a lot of possible conjunctions out there that relatively mean the same thing. However, what are their exact differences?

- 故に shows that due to the fact it's after, the following is as effect.
- それ故に shows that the stated matter is reason for the next case stated after it.
- よって states that the previous sentence as the reason or evidence.
- そういわけで・そのようなわけで = With that reason
- 従って = Therefore; so; consequently.
- このため・これゆえに = Points that as the goal or reason.
- そのため = このため. This is a rare occasion with これ are interchangeable それ.
- だから = So; because
- このことから ≡ With this

Even in English, there are several interchangeable but slightly different phrases that can be used. The specifics and impromptu nature of speech at a given situation is the ultimate determining factor. Some of these are more formal or casual than the others. So, that has a lot to deal with which is used.

25a. だから言わないことじゃない。

25b. だから言わんこっちゃない。 (Slang/very casual)

I told you so.

26. その^{けっか}結果、^{しけん}試験に受かった。

Because of that, I passed the exam.

27. それはさておき、東京に引^こ越すんだ。

By the way, I'm moving to Tokyo.

28. それにしても {どれも・いずれも} けっ かんぺき して 完 璧 じゃないね。

Even so, nothing is perfect, you know?

29. しかしながら、よさん 予算 がかかりすぎる。

However, it is too much for the budget.

30. われおも 我 思 う、故に我あり。

I think; therefore, I am.

31. そればかりか動物も殺された。

Besides that, even the animals were killed.

32. それどころか、もう 20 歳です。

Rather, he's already twenty.

33. その結果試験に落ちた。

And thus, I failed the exam.

34. さもないと警察を呼ぶぞ。

If you don't, I'll call the police.

35. 度々インフルエンザに市民の半分もしくは ぜんいん 全 員 かって ところ 床 につくこともある。

Often, (the city) also has times where half or all of the citizens are down with influenza.

36. それなら、いつも学校に おく 遅 れるのはどういうわけですか。

If that's the case, how is it that you're always late to school?

それで、それに、それから、& そして

Many people confuse それで and それに. それで shows that what was stated before is the reason or cause for what follows while それに shows another additional fact or situation. Also, if the previous facts were positive in nature, so show the additional information. This is the same for negative things too. そこで is also similar to それで, but it is specifically used to when you know in detail the reason for what follows. The previous context is very concrete, and this is not always the case with それで. そこで can also be used to mean さて, and this is something それで never means.

Other related conjunctions include それから and そして. The former is used to mean "after that/then" showing chronological order of events. The latter is the generic "and".

37. 韓国語は面白いです。それに、^{やく}役に立ちます。

Korean is interesting. Moreover, it's beneficial.

38. 「ロッテリアは値段も安いし、おいしいんです」「それで人が多いんですね」

"Lotteria is cheap and delicious" "So, that's why it's crowded."

39. きのう風邪を引きました。それで、今日学校を休んだんです。

I caught a cold yesterday. So, I stayed away from school today.

40. 昨日は ^{じゅぎょう}授業のあと公園へ行きました。それから、三時間ぐらい友達と話をしました。

Yesterday, I went to the park after class. Then, I talked for about three hours with friends.

41. 私はおとし五月に ^{そつぎょう}卒業しましたが、それからずっと仕事を探しています。

I graduated in May two years ago, but I've been searching for a job ever since.

42. 「このごろどうですか。忙しいですか」 「宿題がたくさんありますし、それに、^{ひま}
暇な時間はほとんどありません」

"How have you been lately? Are you busy?" "I have a lot of homework, and on top of that, I barely have any free time".

43. 「あなたのアパートは、どんなアパートですか」 「私のアパートはきれいなところで
すし、それに^{やちん}
家賃が安いので、住みやすいです」

"What kind of apartment do you have?" "My apartment is a pretty place, and since the rent is cheap, it's easy to live there".

Phrase Note: When using **それに**, all the parts of the sentence must either have positive or negative connotations but never both!

44. 「あなたの住んでいる町はどんな町ですか」 「人口が少なく美しい町です。それに、
^{ふんいき}
雰囲気の良いところです」

"What kind of town is the town that you live in?" "It's a small, beautiful town. Moreover, it is a local with a good atmosphere".

Word Note: 人 can replace 人口 above, but it is not the best choice of the two.

45. 「日本語の勉強はどうですか」 「宿題が簡単ですし、それに日本人と毎日会話しております」

"How are your Japanese studies?" "My homework is easy, and I talk to Japanese people every day".

読み物: アイヌ語を守ろう!

This is an example of small speech in Japanese. Read through the text and answer the questions that follow. Conjunctions will be in bold. No English will be

given. You are free to use previous lessons and dictionary resources to understand the text.

皆様、こんにちは。〇〇と ^{もう}申 します。今日は、「アイヌ語を守ろう」というテーマについて、発表させていただきます。

私は大学で言語学を専攻しており、特に東アジアの言語学について研究しております。その中で、日本の文化の一部であるアイヌ語が消滅の ^{きき}危機にあるということを知りました。言語学を専攻している私にとって、言語の消滅は ^{むし}無視 することの出来ない問題です。 **また**、言語は人間のごとく生きているというのが私の考えです。アイヌ語の命が ^た絶たれたならば、 **いわば**、使われなくなってしまったのなら、もう二度とアイヌ語が復活できなくなってしまうと考え、今回の発表のテーマに ^{いた}至 りました。

先ず、簡単にアイヌ語について説明させていただきます。アイヌ語とは、日本の北海道などで、話されている少数言語です。多くのアイヌ人は、現代では、両親からアイヌ語を教わっていません。アイヌ語の教室が開設されていても、ほとんどの人が学ぼうとしない、というのが現状です。このように、消滅の危機にあるアイヌ語ですが、私はアイヌ語を保たなければならないと思います。

では、どうしてアイヌ語を保つ必要があるのでしょうか。それはアイヌ語の ^{どくじせい}独自性 にあります。アイヌ人の歴史や経験が記号化されたものがアイヌ語です。 **例えば**、「神」という日本語はアイヌ語の「カムイ」から出来ました。これは、大昔に、神道の ^{がいねん}概念 がなかった日本語が ^{こんぽんてき}根本 的な神道の概念を持つアイヌ語の ^{えいきょう}影響 を受けたことに由来します。 **他にも**、「ラッコ」や「トナカイ」、「くま」などアイヌ語に影響を受けた日本語が少なからず存在します。このように、アイヌ語の独自性が日本の文化に ^{ふく}含ま れていることは明らかなのです。アイヌ語も日本語と同じく ^{そんちょう}尊重 されるべきではないでしょうか？

現在、アイヌ語のネイティブスピーカーのほとんどが ^{こうれいしゃ} 高齢者 になってしまっている
ので、会話を ^{ほぞん} 保存 するといった方法でアイヌ語を守ろうとしている人がいるそうです。
これらのテープを使って、未来の ^{ねっしん} 熱心 な生徒のために ^{べんきょうきょうざい} 勉強 教材 を作るこ
とができるようになればいいと思います。アイヌ語が消滅する可能性は ^{いぜん} 依然 として高い
ものの、こういった ^{こうかてき} 効果 的な ^{かつどう} 活動 のため、近いうちに消滅してしまう可能性も、
少しずつですが、減ってきているようです。これから多くの日本人がアイヌ語の尊さに気
づき、アイヌ語が ^{けいしょう} 継承 されていくことを願います。

これで私の発表を終わります。ご ^{せいちょう} 静聴 どうもありがとうございました。何か質問は
ありますでしょうか？

Questions:

1. What is the theme of this speech?
2. Why is Ainu important to protect according to this person?
3. What are some examples of Ainu influence in Japanese?
4. What has become of the Ainu speaking population?
5. What is being doing to protect Ainu?
6. What is the presenter majoring in?
7. What is language linked to?
8. Is it still likely Ainu will die out?

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. How are conjunctive particles different from conjunctions?
2. What are conjunctions generally made up of?
3. Explain the normal placement of conjunctions in respect to type.

4. What are the six categories of conjunctions?
5. Define 接続詞.
6. Create a sentence using a conjunction showing alternation.
7. Create a sentence using a conjunction showing parallelism.
8. Create a sentence using a conjunction showing concession.
9. Create a sentence using a conjunction showing change.
10. Create a single paragraph that uses all six categories of conjunctions as well making sure you use conjunctions constituting of both one and more words.

第119課: In Order To: ため

First, to understand the more grammatically confusing role of ため, you need to understand its basic meaning which is "for" as in advantage or benefit. ため is usually written in かな, but when it is in 漢字, it is written as 為.

1. 家族の ^{ため} 為 を思う。

To think of the welfare of the family.

2. まず ^{なんびゃくえん} 何 百 円 もの ^{じぜんきふきん} 慈善 寄 付 金 を集めました。

We collected millions of yen of charity contributions for the poor.

3. チームの ^{がんば} ために 頑 張 る。

To cheer for the team.

4. 教科書の ^{さしえ} ための 挿 絵 。

An illustration for a textbook.

5. ^{こうぎ} 抗 議 のための抗議。

Protest for protest.

～ (の) ために

～ (の) ために is the most important application of ため, and there are two main applications of it.

1.	Shows that the next stated thing is the objective.
2.	Shows that the next stated thing is the cause or reason of something.

6. 我らは ^{ふきょう} 不 況 のために大打撃を受けました。(Formal)

We got hit hard due to the recession.

7. 雨のために試合を中止いたします。(Humble)

We will stop the game due to the rain.

8. 折からの雨のため (書き言葉)

Owing to the rain just now

9. 雨のために試合を延期します。(Formal)

We will postpone the game due to the rain.

10. タベはぐっすり寝ていたため、地震に気がつきませんでした。

As I was fast asleep last night, I did not feel the earthquake.

11. 台風のために休校になった。

The school became closed due to the typhoon.

12. こきり 濃い 霧 のため、車という車は皆ライトをつけて走っている。

Due to dense fog, every single car is running with its headlights on.

13. なん 何 のために？

For what?

14. 交通事故があったため、学校に ちこく 遅刻した。

I was late to school due to a traffic accident.

15. お客さまを出迎えるために、午後空港に行きます。

I am going to the airport in the afternoon to meet a customer.

16. 家を買うために、お金をか 借る。

I'll borrow money in order to buy a house.

17a. その ^{そしょう}訴訟 に勝つ {ために・のに} 十分有能な弁護士だ。

17b. その訴訟に勝てるだけの有能な弁護士だ。

He's a lawyer enough to win the case.

Grammar Note: ～ように is similar, but it is not used with verbs of volition whereas **ために** is!

～んがために

This is a very literary way of showing that one does an action with a goal in mind. This ～ん is from the old volitional ending ～む, which attaches to the 未然形. For する, you must use the older せ-未然形. So, する + ん → せん.

18. 自分の利益を得んがための発言では、人の心を動かせない。

You can't move people's hearts with words only for one's personal interest.

19. 自分の ^{てんぽ}店舗 を持たんがために、^{ひっし}必死 で働いたが、^{けっきょく}結局 ^{へいてん}閉店 はやむを得なかった。

I desperately worked to keep my own shop open, but in the end, closing down was unavoidable.

20. 彼は夢を実現させんがため、^{じょうきょう}上 京 した。

He moved to Tokyo in order to fulfill his dreams.

21. ^{まやくはんたい}麻薬 反対 という思いを示さんがために、彼はあらゆる方法を ^{こころ}試 みた。

He tried out every method to show his thoughts for being against drugs.

22. 我が子の無罪を証明せんがために、必死で ^{しょうこ}証 拠 を探そうと ^{ちか}誓 った。

I vowed to search desperately for proof to prove his child's innocence.

23. 勝たんがためには、どんな手でも使ってくる。

To use any means in order to win.

24. 彼は子供を救わんがために、命を落とした。

He lost his life trying in saving the child.

25. 彼は、漢検 1 級に合格せんがために、毎日必死で頑張った。

He did his best every day desperately to pass the Kanken Level 1.

26. 事実を明らかにせんがために、あらゆる手を^つ尽くす。

To use up every method to uncover the facts.

27. 国会で ^{ほうあん}法案 を通さんがため、^{しゅしょう}首相 は ^{ねまわ}根回し ^{こうさく}工 作 を開始した。

The Prime Minister began to pull the strings to get the bill through the Diet.

28. 社長にならんがために、色々な ^{うらこうさく}裏 工 作 をしていたといわれる。

It is said that (he) did all sorts of maneuvering behind the scenes to become the company president.

29. ただ ^{いちりゅう}一 流 大学に入らんがために勉強している人が多い。

There are a lot of people that are studying to just get into a first rate university.

30. ^{しはいしゃ}支配 者 が ^{けんりよく}権 力 を保たんがために、^{きょうこうしゅだん}強 硬 手 段 を取った。

The ruler took strong measures to maintain power.

Grammar Note: 終止形+がために X. This is a common mistake even among natives that try to use this. む in this case behaves in the 連体形, and in Classical Japanese, this was sufficient for a verb to be used as a nominal phrase. Then, が functions here the same way as の. You could translate this pattern more directly into Modern Japanese with ～ (よ) うとするために.

You can also see this pattern after the past tense, ～ない, and other adjectival endings like ～たい. In these instances, a volitional ending is not involved,

but the grammar supposes that you are using the 連体形 for the use of が to be valid. This means that you are nominalizing the phrase before you can use the phrase. But, this means that the use of ～がために after verbs in the 終止形 should be valid too because the 終止形 and 連体形 are identical. In fact, many people say things like 生きるがために instead of 生きんがために. No one would deny that things like 生きるために is the most common thing to 'say', but many people rightfully treat this as a stronger version of the simpler pattern.

31. この海が見たい**がために**、毎朝起きる気がするのだった。

She felt the urge to wake up in the morning to see the ocean.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

Practice: Translate the following. You may use a dictionary.

1. 彼は ^{おぼ}溺れる猫を救わ**んがため**、^{とつさ}咄 ^と嗟に川に飛び込んだ。
2. お父さんは 110 歳まで生き**んがため**に、^{しょくせい}食 ^{かつ}生 活 にはとても気をつける。
3. 飛び出した犬たちをよ**けんがため**に、電柱にぶつかった。
4. ^{とみ}富 と地位を得**んがため**に、彼はいかなる手段を使った。
5. 自らの罪を逃**れんがため**、他人に罪を ^{なす}擦 り付けた。
6. 強くな**らんがため**には、他人を ^{ぎせい}犠 牲 にした。

第120課: やはり & さすが

These two adverbial expressions are referred to as phrases that don't have good English equivalents. Although this is true, the main thing that is brushed aside is how to differentiate between them. Though they are different enough to the point that that shouldn't really be an issue, it's best to make sure that you know when to use them.

やはり

やはり, also やっぱり, やっぱし, and やっぱ in slang, means "just as one thought", "as of/still yet/now". It may also suggest a feeling of returning back to one's original idea or motives.

1. やっぱ（り）、これでは変だよ。

This here is weird as I thought.

2. やはり想像した通りの家です。

This is the house just as I had imagined.

3. やっぱり殺されちゃった。

I knew that he was killed.

4. やっぱしだめ。

It's bad in the end.

5. やっぱり来たのね。

Here you come again.

6. 「夏休みはどうしたんですか」「日本語を勉強しました」「じゃあ、たくさん勉強できたでしょう」

「ええ、でも、夏はやっぱり暇な時間がたくさんあると思いました」

「そうですね。ところで、きのうはどんなレストランへ行ったんですか」

「メキシコ風料理屋へ行きました」「おいしかったですか」

「ええ、でも、私は韓国人だから、やっぱり味が韓国料理店のとすごく違うと思いました」

"How was your summer break?". "I studied Japanese". "Well, so you got to do a lot of studying, right?". "Yes, but, I thought that there was a lot of free time". "True, by the way, what kind of restaurant did you go to yesterday?". "I went to a Mexican food restaurant". "Was it good?". "Yes, but, since I'm Korean, I thought that the flavor was quite different from a Korean restaurant".

さすが

さすが is just one of those words that gives a lot of trouble because it doesn't have an English equivalent. さすが shows something **good is as expected**. It can also be used with the negative to show that although one thought one's expectations would come through, things don't pan out so. This pattern is often used with ～だけあって.

7. さすがだな。

Just as expected.

8. 時は金なりとはさすがによく言えている。

It is indeed said that time is money.

Grammar Note: とは quotes a set phrase. In this set phrase, なり is simply a classical copular verb.

9. さすがは彼女だ。

It's just like her to.

10. 田中さんは、プロだけあって、さすがにホームランが打てますよ。

Since Tanaka is a pro, he can hit home runs as expected.

11. 有名なレストランだけあって、さすがに予約をしても、いつも客が長い列を作っていて、席に案内されるのに長時間がかかるのです。

Given that it's a famous restaurant, even when you get a reservation, there is always a line of customers, and it takes a long time to get seated.

12. 彼は**さすが**は大統領です。

He is worthy to be the president.

13. **さすが**の僕もそこまでは言えませんよ。

Even I can't say to that extent.

Variant Note: さすがの = さしもの. However, the latter is rare and is seen in literature.

Orthography Note: さすが can be seldom seen written in 漢字 as 流石.

Table of Contents

第121課: ～とおりに & ～ように

通り literally means "street" or way in which something goes or is transmitted. However, it is often used similar to English "as...say".

とおり

The ^{とお}通り of this discussion is an adverbial noun and describes the way in which something is supposed to be like. It may seem very similar to ～ように, but there are few slight differences. It is essentially a means of paraphrasing to show that something is being done 100% the same way as something.

～ように, on the other hand, is used in telling/showing that something is being done similarly to what it attaches to. There is also an added sense of hope from the speaker, which makes that 100% unattainable even more so. There is interchangeability when one is illustrating and showing hope, but if it is stilted to one side, it becomes inappropriate.

When attached directly to nouns, とおり becomes どおり. To attach ～ように after a noun, you need to make it ～のように. Also, both of these patterns can be in between noun phrases as ～どおりの and ～のような respectively.

1. 私がする通りにしてください。

Do it just as I do.

2. 彼女は先生が生けた通りに花を生けました。

She arranged the flowers just like her teacher did.

3. 言った通りにしました。

I did it just as you said.

4. 僕の想像した通りだよ。

It's just as I imagined it.

5. 全く君のいうとおりだね。

It's completely like you said, isn't it?

6. 忘れないように書きます。

I will write it down **so** I won't forget.

7. よく見えるように（体を）高く持ち上げてもらった。

I had some one lift me up high **in order to** see well.

8. お知らせしたように

Just as I informed you

9. 自分の思い通りにする。

To have it one's own way.

10. きゅうけい けっか よそうどお
求 刑 の 結 果 だ が、 予 想 通 り だ。

These are the results of the prosecution; it was just as expected.

11. おおむ へいじょうどお
概 ね 平 常 通 り だ す。

Things are basically just as normal.

12. 以下のように

As below

13. ぞんじ
ご 存 知 の {ように・ごとく}

As you know

In prayer or wishing, ～ように is used after the polite auxiliary ～ます.

14. 成功しますように。

I pray you succeed.

15. どうか ^{だいがくしけん}大 学 試 験 ^うに受かりますように。

I do hope I will pass the college exam.

Table of Contents

Exercises

Translate into Japanese (1-3)

1. For this reason, I decline.
2. It's just as he imagined it, isn't it?
3. She might not know yet.
4. Create a sentence using ^{ため}ため.
5. What is ^{せんがため}せんがため a variant of?
6. Create a sentence with ^{かもしれない}かもしれない.

第122課: Easy & Difficult: ～易い, ～難い, & ～辛い

Who knew that expressing easy and difficult could both in fact be slightly difficult in Japanese?

品詞 Note: ～易い and ～難い・辛い are adjectival endings.

Easy and Difficult: 「～易い」と「～難い・辛い」

～ やすい, when used with transitive verbs, shows that something is easy to do. When used with intransitive verbs, it means that something is easy to occur.

1. このサンドイッチは小さくて、食べやすいよ。

This sandwich is small and easy to eat.

2. そのペンはとても書きやすいです。

That pen is very easy to write with.

3. あの山は^{のぼ}登りやすい。

That mountain (over there) isn't easy to climb.

4. 白いシャツは^{よご}汚れやすい。

White shirts easily get dirty.

5. インターネットを使いやすくしたのは誰でしょうか。

Who was it that made the internet easier to use.

6. 僕にはこの車は^{うんてん}運転しやすい。

This car is easy for me to drive.

漢字 Note: The 漢字 spelling is no longer commonly used. It is usually found in older writing.

Instead of ～やすい, the adjective よい may also be used. This, though, is very old-fashioned or unheard to speakers depending on where the person is from. Some natives may not even recognize it as being correct Japanese, but it does indeed exist. In fact, it is still extremely common even in the form ～いい in 関東弁. Its usage in the capital region is still prevalent in people 60 and older.

せきど ぐすり
7. 咳止め薬は飲みよいはずである。(あまり使われていない)

咳止め薬は飲みやすいはずだ。(Natural)

The cough medicine should be easy to take.

～^{にく}難い shows either that something is difficult to do or to occur. ～^{がた}難い only shows the inability to do something, and it is usually restricted to writing and set expressions. Lastly, ～辛い may be used instead of ～にくい to describes undesirable circumstances. These endings attach to the 連用形 of verbs and conjugate as 形容詞.

8 この本は読みにくいです。

This book is difficult to read.

9a. 歩き辛い道は坂^{さかみち}道だ。(ちょっと不^ふ自^し然^{ぜん})

9b. 坂道は、歩きづらい。(もっと自然)

A road difficult to walk on is a hill.

10a. 書きよい漢字は存^{そんざい}在するのかな? (Old-fashioned)

10b. 書きやすい漢字は存在するのかな? (Natural)

I wonder if a Kanji that is easy to write exists.

11. 考えにくいと思います。

I think that is difficult to consider.

12. この戸は開きにくい。

This door is difficult to open.

13. 字が^{うす}薄くて、読みづらいです。

The letters are faded, and it is difficult to read.

14. 生徒達は^{みな}皆^{がた}教え難くて、ぜんぜん言うことに聞かなくて、今日を^{めった}滅多に読まなくて、^{こま}困ったんです。

My students are all very hard to teach because they never listen to what I say and rarely read IMABI; I'm very troubled by this.

15. 言い^{がた}{ 難い・にくい・づらい} ことだ。

It's hard to say.

16. 彼は付き合い^{がた}難いやつだな。

He is a difficult person to get along with isn't he?

17. 彼女の言葉は聞き取り^{がた}難かった。

Her speech was difficult to hear.

18. 日本は住みにくいです。

Living in Japan is difficult.

19. 彼女はその職の適任者とは言いがたい。

It's difficult to say that she is the right candidate for the job.

Yes, the title is a pun.

～すぎる

過 ぎる means "to pass" and is used both transitively and intransitively. It may be used in basically any situation that relates to someone or something passing by. ～過ぎる shows something "is too..." or someone is doing something "too much". When used with adjectives, you drop the < or に in the [連用形](#) altogether. Likewise, with 形容動詞, you don't use the copula.

Verb	食べる + すぎる → 食べすぎる
形容詞	小さい + すぎる → 小さすぎる
形容動詞	簡単 + すぎる → 簡単すぎる

漢字 Note: This is usually written in ひらがな when used as an ending.

1. 酒を飲みすぎて、^{ふつかよ}二日酔いがある。

I drank too much sake, and I have a hangover.

2. 小さすぎる。大きいのがある？

This is too small. Do you have a bigger one?

3. 食べ過ぎないでくださいね。

Please don't overeat.

- ^{まよなか}
4. 真夜中を過ぎる。

To pass through midnight.

漢字 Note: Be careful to not confuse this 中 with the suffix ちゅう・じゅう. It turns out that 夜中, which is read as やちゅう, means "at night", but it's a 書き言葉.

5. あんた、頭がよすぎるよ。(Casual; potentially rude)

You're too smart!

6. この問題は難しすぎる。

This question is too difficult.

7. そのカメラは高すぎるね。

Isn't that camera too high?

8. 明日では ^{おそ}遅すぎるでしょう。

Tomorrow will probably be too late.

9. 道路の ^{どうろ}横断 ^{おうだん}にはいくら ^{ちゅうい}注意 ^{ちゅうい}してもしすぎることはない。

You can never be too careful when crossing the street.

10. 君は彼女に ^{きたい}期待 ^{きたい}をかけすぎる。

You expect too much of her.

11. いくら好きでも、食べすぎると、体に悪いです。

No matter how much you like it, eating too much is bad for your health.

12. 彼はやりすぎたよ。

He went too far.

13. 時間が過ぎた。

Time passed.

14. この物理学の問題は難しすぎて、理解するのは無理です。

This physics problem is too difficult, and understanding it is useless.

15. コンピューターの画面に近すぎないことが大切だ。

It's important to not get too close to the computer screen.

16. 考え事をしながら歩いていたら、自分の家の前を通り過ぎてしまった。

Lost in thought, I walked past my house.

Word Note: 通り過ぎる usually means to "pass by", but it can also have the sense "going too far".

Grammar Note: What about the negative? Take the following two similar phrases into consideration. 読まなすぎる vs. 読みすぎない. The first one states that one "reads too little". The second states that one "doesn't read too much". There may also be cases when ～なすぎる is inappropriate for pragmatic reasons in particular contexts.

17. 彼は何もできなすぎる。△

He can't do anything.

The Intensifier ～ない

There is also a suffix ～ない that increases the intensity of a given adjective. Inserting さ when using them with ～すぎる is wrong, but speakers occasionally do so anyway.

The confusing part about this is that this does come from the negative ない. It so happened that late in Classical Japanese it acquired the meaning of just being an intensifier to particular phrases.

18. だらしない生活をする。

To lead a sloven lifestyle.

19. あの映画はまったくえげつないよ。

That movie is just completely dirty.

20. はしたなく言い争う。

To immodestly quarrel.

21. しがないサラリーマンの人生
The humble life of a salary-man

22. あどけない子供の笑顔を見る。
To look at the angelic smile of a child,

23. ぎこちなく運転しちゃだめだ。
Don't drive all clumsy.

24. {いとけない・無邪気な} 子
An innocent child

25. 滅相もない・滅相なことをいうものじゃないよ！
Don't say something so absurd!

There are a few cases where the original adjective and the adjective with the intensifier ～ない exist, just like above. Another example is ^{せわ}忙しい and 忙しい. The first means "seems busy" and the other means "really busy", but it is still the case that the former is more intense.

26. 彼はせわしい人だ。
He's a real busybody.

27. 忙しい季節
A season so busy with no time to rest

Another odd pair is 切な versus 切ない. 切な is now typically 切なる, odd giving that this is more Classical in form. The word means "earnest", and you would think 切ない would mean that too. It did, but over time it gained more negative undertones, and now it refers to heartrending sadness. This, though, sprouted out from the meaning of "earnest".

28. 切な（る）顔
An earnest face

29. 切なさを堪える。

To withhold heart-wrenching.

Another weird word is 怪しからん. This comes from the old verb 怪しかる, but rather than being opposites, they accidentally became the same thing, both meaning "inexcusable".

30. 親切に扱ってくれた人の不満をいうとは怪しからん。(Dialectical/older person)

Complaining about those who have treated you well is inexcusable.

～続ける

The 一段 verb ^{つづ}続ける means "to continue". The verb is normally used for "one's own" actions. If the verb happens naturally, the verb 続く is used instead. Although you would think that this distinction would be carried in compounds, ～続く is essentially only seen with the verb ^ふ降る.

一段 Verbs	見る + 続ける →	<u>見</u> 続ける
五段 Verbs	泳ぐ + 続ける →	<u>泳ぎ</u> 続ける
Noun + Copula	Noun だ + 続ける →	<u>男性であり</u> 続ける
形容詞	美しい + 続ける →	<u>美しくあり</u> 続ける
形容動詞	自由な + 続ける →	<u>自由であり</u> 続ける

31. 日本語を勉強し続けてください。

Please continue studying Japanese.

32. ^わ我がままと^{とお}通し続ける。

Continue one's own way.

33. 彼氏んちまで歩き続けた。(Casual 東京弁)

I continued walking up to my boyfriend's house.

34. 電話のベルは鳴り続けた。

The phone kept ringing.

35. ハチ^{こう}公^{しゅじん}は来る日も来る日も主人の帰りを待ち続けた。

Hachiko waited day after day for his master to return.

Culture Note: ハチ公 is a dog that was so loyal to his master, that he waited for him to return at the station he would always go to for him even after the owner's death.

36. 彼らは^{はたら}働^{はたら}き続けた。

They continued working.

37. 赤ちゃんはぐっすりと^{ねむ}眠^{ねむ}り続けていた。

The baby was continuing to sleep soundly.

38. 火が^も燃^もえ続けている。

The fire is continuing to burn.

39. 雨が降り続いている。

It is continuing to rain.

40. ^{すで}既に^{むくろ}骸^{むくろ}になってしまったとはいえ、やはり母は、こうして祥子の頭をいためる存在であり続けるのだ。

Although she has already become a corpse, mother will after all continue an existence of having Sachiko ache this way.

From ^{ゆうわく}冷たい誘惑^{のなみ} by 乃南アサ.

漢字 Notes:

1. すでに is often not spelled in 漢字. However, 既に is more formal and literary.
2. 骸 is a non-常用漢字 meaning "corpse". It is more stronger than other words like 遺体, which is typically used in news reports, or 死体.
3. 祥 is a name character meaning "auspicious".
4. 乃 is also a name character. Its most important reading is の. This is used to write the particle の in many names and in old writing.

～続ける VS ～のを続ける

These two patterns translate the same as "to continue...", but they're not exactly the same. ～続ける shows an action/state that is ongoing. The latter simply states that there is a continuation of some sort. For example, a way to distinguish this in English would be similar to "she is continuing to watch the show" versus "she continues to watch the show". The first shows the ongoing state of her watching the show whereas the latter just states that she continues to regularly watch the show.

41. 彼女はその番組を観続けている。

She's continuing to watch that show.

42. 彼女は、その番組を観るのを続けている。

She continues to watch that show.

漢字 Note: You can use 見 instead of 観, but the latter is often used for watching things like movies, shows, etc.

～急ぐ

急ぐ means "to hurry" and can be seen in both transitive and intransitive contexts. As a transitive verb, it can be used in compounds to show that one is trying to hurry and finish something. Its -て form 急いで can also be used to

show this as an adverbial phrase. It is best for this ending to see it used in a compound verb before using it as such.

43. 売り急ぐ。

To be in a hurry to sell.

44a. リンゴを買い急ぐ。(ちょっと不自然)

44b. 急いでリンゴを買う。(もっと自然)

To buy apples in a hurry.

45. 彼は死に急いだ。

He hastened to his death.

46. 急いで^{ふく}服^きを着た。

I hurried and got dressed.

47. 学校へ急ぐ。

To hurry to school.

Word Note: ^{あせ}焦る is not the same thing. This implies frustration that things might not go as planned.

48. 彼は焦って^{しっぱい}失^し敗^{ぱい}した。

He hurried it and failed.

As the title suggests, this lesson will be about compound verb endings for fixing or making errors of judgment.

~忘れる

忘れる, which is an 一段 verb, means "to forget". In compound verbs it means "to forget to...". This implies that you forgot to do something that you needed to do. If this is not what you wish to imply, ~のを忘れる should be used. Both are often used with ~てしまう, which means "to accidentally/end up doing".

1. テレビを消し忘れた。

I forgot to turn off the TV.

2. ケーキを買い忘れました。

I forgot to buy the cake.

3a. プリンターを消し忘れて会社を出た。

3b. プリンターのスイッチを切り忘れて会社を出た。

I left the company without turning off the printer.

4a. 宿題をし忘れてしまった。(ちょっと不自然)

4b. 宿題(を)するのを忘れた。(もっと自然)

4c. 宿題を忘れた。(一番自然)

I accidentally forgot to do my homework.

Naturalness Note: The notes on naturalness are most relevant when there is no preceding context. If you were to tell your Japanese teacher, for instance, that you forgot to do your homework, it would be more appropriate to use 4a.

5. かし 歌詞を忘れるのは 恥ずかしいじゃん。(Casual)

Isn't it embarrassing to forget your lyrics?

6. すっかり忘れたよ。

I completely forgot.

7. 彼に電話するのをすっかり忘れてた。(Casual)

I'd completely forgotten to call him.

8. たきと
滝 の写真を撮るのを忘れた。

I forgot to take a picture of the waterfall.

～直す

直 す is used in a variety of situations to represent that one is curing or fixing something. In compound verbs it expresses that one is "doing something over again".

9. 電話をかけ直す。

To call back.

10. 計画を^ね練り直した。

I planned it over again.

11. やりなおしたんだ。

I redid it.

Orthography Note: ～直す is often left in かな.

～間違える

まちが
間 違える is the transitive form of まちが
間 違 う and means "to confuse/mistake".

The intransitive 間違 う is sometimes used nowadays to function as 間違える, but when this happens, it tends to be in very casual speech. In compound verbs, ～間違える is used to mean "messed up on...".

12. 自分の名前を書き間違えました。

I made a mistake in writing my name.

13. 言い間違えた。

I made a mistake in speaking.

14. 歌うのを間違えた。

I mistakenly sang the wrong song.

15. 歌い間違えた。

I messed up on the song.

Phrase Note: Another similar phrase would be 歌で ^{しっぱい} 失敗 した meaning "failed at the song".

16. 彼は僕を彼の弟と見間違えた。

He mistook me for his little brother.

～誤る

^{あやま} 誤 る means "to mistake" and is in compound verbs to show that one "mis-...s" something.

17. 彼は私を兄と見誤りました。

He mistook me for my older brother.

18. 記事を読み誤ったんじゃないか。

Didn't you misread the article?

第125課: ~慣れる, ~合う・合わせる, & ~切る

This lesson continues on with intermediate compound verb endings. All of these endings attach to the 連用形 of verbs. As examples of this for this section, consider the following.

一 段	食べ切る (To eat all)	五 段	分かち合う (To share)	す る	行動し慣れる (to get used to act)
--------	----------------------	--------	---------------------	--------	--------------------------------

Grammar Note: 来る can only be used with the following patterns: 来慣れる (to be used to coming to) and 来合わせる (to make one's appearance). If you think about the meanings of these phrases as they are discussed, this will make sense to you.

~慣れる

な
慣れる, an 一段 verb, means "to get used to" and may also mean "to domesticate", which is in essence animals getting used to human control. 慣れる is intransitive and is used as a compound ending to show an inclination to liking or being accustomed to something.

1. この街には住み慣れました。

I got used to living in this town.

2. 彼は都市の生活に慣れることができなかった。

He couldn't get used to living in the city.

3. 通学に慣れるのは ^{じゅうよう} 重要 です。

It is important that you become used to commuting to school.

4. コンピューターは使い慣れるのは時間がかかります。

It takes time to get used to the computer.

5. 彼は旅 ^{たびな} 慣れている。

He's well-traveled.

6a. 日本料理 {は、・を} 食べ慣れました。

6b. 日本料理に慣れました。(もっと自然)

I've gotten used to eating Japanese food.

7. 私は人 ^{ひとまへ} 前で話すことに慣れていません。

I am not used to speaking in front of people.

8. 日本の天 ^{てんこう} 候に慣れる。

To get used to Japanese weather.

9. まだ明るさに慣れてねー。(^{くだ} 砕けた言い方)

(My eyes) are still not adjusted to the light.

10a. 馴 ^な れた動物を飼っています。(ちょっと変)

10b. 家畜 ^{かちく} を飼っています。(もっと自然)

10c. 人に ^{なつ} 懐いている動物を飼っています。

10d. 人に馴れた動物を飼っています。(あまり使われていない)

10e. 人懐っこい動物を飼っています。(もっと自然)

I am raising tamed animals.

Word Note: The first group of sentences with animals is in reference to larger animals. The second group of sentences refers to raising animals such as dogs and cats.

11. 寵 ^{ちょうあい} 愛に慣れるのはだめですよ。

It is no good to be over-familiar with attention.

Orthography Note: なれる may be written as 馴れる when specifically referring to domestication and as ^な狎れる to show the growing of familiarity in the sense of getting **over-familiar**. A similar expression is 馴れ馴れしい.

～合う・合わせる

合 う shows how something "fits". In compounds it shows "to...with each other". So, there is someone else with you doing the same action. Essentially, ～合う shows people doing something with each other--reciprocal action. The object(s) of the sentence must be similar.

The causative form 合わせる may show that one makes something into one, looks into differences, reciprocally does, or does something all of a sudden.

12. ロミオとジュリエットは愛し合っていた。

Romeo and Juliet loved each other.

13. ^{さそ}誘い合わせる。

To invite each other.

14. 彼らは宿題を ^{てつだ}手伝い合った。

They helped each other with homework.

15. ^{はんこうげんば}犯行現場に居合わせました。

I was present at the crime scene.

16. 何時に待ち合わせようか？

What time shall we meet?

17. 彼と彼女は君が ^よ代を歌い合っていた。？

彼と彼女は君が代を一緒に歌っていた。○

He and she sang [Kimigayo](#) with each other.

Culture Note: きみ よ 君 が代 is the national anthem (こっか 国歌) of Japan.

18. 二人で せいしょ 聖 書 を読み上げ合いました。

The two read aloud the bible with each other.

19. 彼らは おも 想 いを打ち明け合うだろう。

They will probably confide their feelings with each other.

20. ケーキと一緒に {食べましょう ○・ 食べ合いましょう X} 。

Let's eat cake together.

21. 乗り合わせた乗客

Fellow passengers

22. 計算を読み合わせる。

To read out and compare calculations.

23. このドレスはあたしにぴったり { (と) 合いますか・ですか} 。（Feminine）

Does this dress fit perfectly with me?

24. 申し合わせた通りにしましょう。

Let's do as arranged.

25. お たが 互 いに引き合わせる。

To introduce to each other.

26. 警察に問い合わせましたか。

Did you check with the police?

27. しょるい と 書 類 を綴じ合わせましたか。

Have you bound the documents together?

28. 布を縫^ぬい合わせる。

To sew together.

29. 傷^{きず}口^{ぐち}を縫い合わせてもらった。

I had my wound(s) sewn up.

30. 各種詰^づめ合^あわせキャンディーを^かい^いに行^いった。

I went to buy mixed candies.

31. それらの糸は^よ縫^ぬり合^あわせ^{がた}難^{がた}い。

These threads are hard to twist together.

32. 悲しみを分かち合う。

To share in the sadness.

Word Note: 分かち合う is typically interchangeable with 分け合う, but it is generally more 文語的. However, in the case of "sharing" non-physical items such as sadness, you should use 分かち合う.

33. 家族の都合が合うのは今日だけだ。

Today is only when my convenience matches with my family's.

Word Note: 都合が合う is unavoidable in contexts like these, but it is generally not liked when referring to just one's convenience. In which case, you should say 都合がいい.

There is also another ending that shows mutual action: ～違える. This sometimes confusingly has a meaning of ～間違える. This is because the verb 違える itself has the following meanings: to not have something be the same; to mess up; to be against a contract; to injure one's muscles. You have to essentially learn on a case by case basis.

34. 靴を履き違える。

To mix up shoes.

35. 約束を違える。

To break one's promise.

Reading Note: This 違える may be read as either ちがえる or たがえる.

36. 寝違えて、首筋が痛い。

I got a crick in my neck, and now it hurts.

37. 社長と刺し違える。

Literally meaning one's company president and oneself are stabbing each other but referring to oneself exposing something about the president and then getting repercussions from him.

38. 一審を差し違える。

To overturn the first match decision (and give the win to the other opponent).

～切る

^き切る means "to cut" and may be used literally and figuratively. ～切る shows that "something is done completely".

39. 彼は読書に^{ひた}浸り切っていた。

He was completely engrossed in reading.

40. 紙をはさみで切る。

To cut paper with scissors.

漢字 Note: 鋏 is not uncommonly used to spell はさみ.

41. 彼はかの歌手の全ての歌を歌い切った。

He sang all of that singer's songs completely.

42. いつかは地球に残っている石油は全て使い切ってしまうだろう。

The remaining oil on the earth will probably one day end up completely used.

43. ひも 紐 を切る。

To cut a string.

44. 電話を切る。

To hang up the phone.

45. {手・関係} を切る。

To break a relationship.

46. 彼がイギリス かいきょう 海 峡 の 距離 きより を泳ぎ切りました。

He completely swam the (entire) distance of the English Channel.

47. 水泳選手は、日本海と一緒に泳ぎきりました。

The swimmers swam across the Sea of Japan together.

48. ジョーンズ先生は来月までに やく 約 10冊読み切っているでしょう。

Ms. Jones will have probably read around 10 books by next month.

第126課: ケ & カ

These two little glyphs are perhaps the most interesting quirks to Japanese orthography.

ケ

ケ is a character that resembles a small カ. However, it has a different origin than the Katakana ケ. It is instead viewed as being an abbreviation of the Kanji 箇 or 个. Except in place names, it has become completely interchangeable with か. Before this, however, there existed a lower case け, け, to mimic ケ. Though it exists, it has never caught on. If you do see it, though, you'll know that you and the Japanese person that used it are not crazy.

It is typically used in certain counter expressions. For things to be fully written in Kanji, you would need to use 個 or 箇 instead (these characters mean the same thing).

ケ月	Months	ケ国語	Languages	ケ所	Places	ケ条	Articles	ケ年	Year periods
----	--------	-----	-----------	----	--------	----	----------	----	--------------

For all of these counters, か is the most prevalent spelling. カ, which will be discussed next in this lesson, is just as common in print and media, in which ケ is not accounted for. In personal writing, however, ケ・か are the most common. Kanji is typically only used in official documents, with 個 being used the least. 个 is no longer used in Japanese.

Usage Notes:

1. ケ月・箇月・個月・か月 is for periods of months; がつ is in the names of the months of the year; げつ is constructive in words but not a counter; and つき is as a counter for periods of months with a few native numbers.

2. 国語 in this case refer to languages. As you would imagine, ～ヶ国 counts countries.

3. ケ^{じょう}条 items (as in itemization) versus 条 (article/provision in documents).

Examples

1. ぼくはまだ一ヶ月分のメールを読んでいない。

I still haven't read a month's worth of email.

2. 二、三ヶ所誤りがあります。

There are two or three areas with mistakes.

3. 二ヶ国語を話す人のことをバイリンガルと呼びますが、三ヶ国語の話者をトライリンガルもしくはトリリンガルと呼びます。

We call people who speak two languages bilingual, but we call speakers of three languages trilingual.

4. 10ヶ国会議

Ten country meeting

5. ブスの10ヶ条

Ten things that define ugly people

6. 4ヶ年計画

Four year plan

7. 8ヶ村

Eight villages

8. 五ヶ六分の三

5 and 3/6

9. 百か日・百箇日 (Fixed spellings)

100th day after a person's funeral

10. 五箇条の御誓文 (Fixed spelling)

The Charter Oath (The Oath in Five Articles)

Spelling Note: Using a full-sized ケ for this is no longer used, but it was in times past.

Usage Note: The following outlets use か月: 読売新聞, NHK, 日本テレビ, and テレビ東京. The following outlets use 力月: 朝日新聞, 毎日新聞, 日本経済新聞, 産経新聞, テレビ朝日, and フジテレビ.

Reading Note: ケ may also be pronounced as ko as an abbreviation of 個 in 一ケ, which is still normally spelled as 一個.

In Place Names

ケ is also used in many place names, most of which are in East Japan. In this case, it is used as the old particle が equivalent to の. There are also times when it is full-sized but still read as が. In some place names it happens to be read as か, but in these instances it is the last character in the name and cannot be representing the particle が.

Place Name	Reading	Place Name	Reading	Place Name	Reading	Place Name	Reading
関ヶ原	せきがはら	鳩ヶ谷	はとがや	市ヶ谷	いちがや	袖ヶ浦	そでがうら
茅ヶ崎	ちがさき	槍ヶ岳	やりがたけ	青ヶ島	あおがしま	つつじヶ丘	つつじがおか
八ヶ岳	やつがたけ	鎌ヶ谷	かまがや	上二ヶ	かみにか	下二ヶ	しもにか

Another interesting instance is 雁ヶ音^{かりがね}, which when spelled this way is synonymous with 荃茶 (tea made from twigs pruned from the tea plant during its dormant season).

読み物: 桃太郎^{ももたろう}

むかしむかし^{昔々}、あるところに、お爺さん^{じい}とお婆さん^{ばあ}が住んでいました。

Long ago, there was an old man and woman living in a certain place.

お爺さんは山へ柴刈^{しばか}りに、お婆さんは川へ洗濯に行きました。

The old man went to the mountains to get firewood, and the old woman went to the river to clean clothes.

お婆さんが川で洗濯をしていると、ドンブラコ、ドンブラコと、大きな桃^{もも}が流れてきました。

When she was doing laundry in the river, a great peach came tumbling, tumbling down.

「おや、これは良いお土産^{みやげ}になるわ」

"My, what a great souvenir this will be!"

お婆さんは大きな桃を拾^{ひろ}い上げて、家に持ち帰りました。

The old woman picked up the great peach and carried it home with her.

そして、お爺さんとお婆さんが桃を食べようと桃を切ってみると、なんと中から元気の良^よい男の赤ちゃんが飛び出^としてきました。

Then, the old man and woman tried to eat the peach and cut into it, and lo and behold from inside a healthy baby boy came out.

「これはきっと、神様^{かみさま}がくだ^{くだ}さったに違いない」

"This is no doubt a gift from the gods"

子供のいなかったお爺さんとお婆さんは、^{おおよろこ}大^喜びです。

This was a source of great joy for the old couple for they had no children.

桃から生まれた男の子を、お爺さんとお婆さんは桃太郎と名付けました。

The old man and woman named the boy born from the peach "Momotaro".

桃太郎はスクスク^{そだ}育^つて、やがて強い男の子になりました。

Momotaro grew quickly and eventually became a strong boy.

そしてある日、桃太郎が言いました。

And, one day, Momotaro said:

「ぼく、^{おにがしま}鬼ヶ島^{おに たいじ}へ行って、悪い鬼を退治します」

"I'm going to Onigashima to get rid of the bad oni.

お婆さんにきび^{だんご}団子^{だんご}を作ってもらうと、鬼ヶ島へ出かけました。

He then had the old woman make him kibidango and headed out for Onigashima.

旅の^{とちゅう}途^{とちゅう}中^{とちゅう}で、イヌに出会いました。

Along the way, he met a dog.

「桃太郎さん、どこへ行くのですか？」

"Momotaro-san, where are you going?"

「鬼ヶ島へ、鬼退治に行くんだ」

"I'm heading to Onigashima to get rid of the oni".

「それでは、お^{こし}腰^{こし}に付けたきび団子を1つ下さいな。お^{とも}供^{とも}しますよ」

"Then, how about you give me one of those kibidango on your waist. I'll come along".

イヌはきび団子をもらい、桃太郎のお供になりました。

The dog received a kibidango and accompanied Momotaro.

そして、今度はサルに出会いました。

Then, he next met a monkey.

「桃太郎さん、どこへ行くのですか？」

"Momotaro-san, where are you going?"

「鬼ヶ島へ、鬼退治に行くんだ」

"I'm going to Onigashima to get rid of the oni"

「それでは、お腰に付けたきび団子を1つ下さいな。お供しますよ」

"Then, how about you give me of those kibidango on your waist. I'll come along".

そして今度は、キジに出会いました。

Next, he met a pheasant.

「桃太郎さん、どこへ行くのですか？」

"Momotaro-san, where are you going?"

「鬼ヶ島へ、鬼退治に行くんだ」

"To Onigashima to get rid of the oni"

「それでは、お腰に付けたきび団子を1つ下さいな。お供しますよ」

"Then, how about you give me of those kibidango on your waist. I'll come along".

こうして、イヌ、サル、キジの仲間を手に入れた桃太郎は、ついに鬼ヶ島へやってきました。

And so, Momotaro arrived at Onigami with his new friends, the dog, monkey, and pheasant.

鬼ヶ島では、鬼たちが近くの村から^{ぬす}盗んだ宝物や^{ちそう}ご馳走を^{なら}並べて、^{さかも}酒盛りの^ま真っさいちゅう^最中です。

On Onigashima, the oni were having a feast and in the midst of merrymaking with the treasures they stole from a nearby village.

「みんな、ぬかるなよ。それ、かかれ！」

"Everyone, don't miss. Attack!"

イヌは鬼のお^{しり}尻に^か噛み付き、サルは鬼の背中を引っ^か掻き、キジは^{くちばし}嘴で鬼の目を^{つつ}突きました。

The dog bit the oni on the rear, the monkey scratched the oni on the back, and the pheasant pierced the oni's eyes with its beak.

そして桃太郎も、刀を振り回して大暴れです。

And, with Momotaro also brandishing his katana, there was a big turbulence.

とうとう鬼の親分が、

And finally, the leader of the Oni said,

「^{まい}参ったあ、参ったあ。^{こうさん}降参だ、助けてくれえ」

"We give up, we give up. We surrender. Save us!"

と、手をついて^{あやま}謝りました。

, apologizes with his hands on the ground.

桃太郎とイヌとサルとキジは、鬼から取り上げた宝物を車に^つ積んで、元気よく家に帰りました。

Momotaro, the dog, the monkey, and the pheasant piled the treasures from the oni onto a rickshaw and cheerfully went home.

お爺さんとお婆さんは、桃太郎の^{ぶじ}無事な^{すがた}姿を見て大喜びです。

The old man and woman were really joyful seeing Momotaro come home safe and sound.

そして三人は、宝物のお^{かげ}陰で幸せに暮らしましたとさ。

And the three lived happily ever after thanks to the treasure.

Word Note: きび団子 is millet flour dumplings.

Usage Note: There are rare times when ケ or 〜け may be seen to represent 〜つけ in dialect transcription. As there is no standardization as to how to spell other dialects, it's not surprising that this may be the case.

力

This is a small version of the Katakana 力, and its usage is extremely restricted. It's mainly used in counter phrases, as we are about to see. This character happens to be so rare that its usage is sometimes unnatural to natives.

力 came about from the use of ケ as an abbreviation of 箇・个. Nevertheless, it is not incorrect to spell the following as such. It happens to actually be

used along with か as standard practice instead of ケ in the news and newspapers.

一カ所 (Rather uncommon) = 一ヶ所	一カ月 = 一ヶ月	一カ条 = 一ヶ条
-----------------------------	-----------	-----------

11. テーブルの上に 3 カ月分の新聞が積み重なっている。

There is three months' worth of newspapers stacked up on the table.

12. 一カ国語しか話さない人のことはアメリカ人と呼ぶんだよ。

You call someone who only speaks one language an American.

13. 体が何カ所か痛いです。

Several places hurt.

14. 「二カ月にひとつくらいは^{なや}納屋を焼くんです」と彼は言った。そしてまた指を鳴らした。「それくらいのペースがいちばん良いような気がするんです。もちろん僕にとっては、ということです」

僕は^{あいまい}曖昧に^{うなず}肯いた。ペース?

"I burn down around one barn in two months", he said. And, with a pop of his fingers he said, "I feel that's really the best pace that way. As for me, of course".

I vaguely nodded, but pace?

From 納屋を焼く by 村上春樹.

However, there are some situations that using it is incorrect although ケ may be fine. Consider the following instances.

関ヶ原 is the name of a very famous place in Japan, and it is well known in Japanese history because of the 1600 Battle of Sekigahara. It also happens to have other correct spelling: 関ヶ原 and 関が原. Because of the latter spelling, the ga is rarely spelled with a small-sized ガ.

七ヶ 宿 is another interesting place name read as しちかしゅく. Now, this reading is fixed, so it can't be spelled any other way, and there isn't any other spelling of the place name. So, you shouldn't replace ケ with カ or anything else, though it may have been interchangeable with the other options in the past.

一個, read as いっこ, may sometimes be spelled as 一ヶ. Though this is not a common spelling, it would be wrong to spell it as 一カ. Lastly, there are also cases in which neither カ or ケ are appropriate because 個 or 箇 is expected such as in 個所・箇所 (when not used in counter expressions) and 箇条書 (き) (itemized form).

Due to its affinity to ケ yet being read as “ka”, it was only natural for カ to exist. Since Katakana and Hiragana are deemed to be interchangeable to some degree, as the full-sized か and カ can be used instead of the small-sized versions, a small か seems only natural to exist, and it does.

Although it exists, it is not deemed to be correct by most speakers. When it was used along with カ in the past, they weren't be used as abbreviations of 箇・个. Instead, they were used as merely small-sized versions for the heck of it, and if you want to narrow down exactly how they were used, they were often used as a particle.

Consistency Note: Whichever spelling you choose to use, whenever you are writing something, be consistent in what you chose. You shouldn't go back and forth. Some natives do this, but it is typically deemed a mistake to randomly choose between spellings in the same document.

第127課: Transitivity II: 自他同形動詞

There are actually quite a few verbs in Japanese with no distinction in form when being used transitively or intransitively. These verbs are not necessarily so easy to figure out.

Terminology Note: 自他 = Intransitive and transitive; 同形 = Same form

自他同形動詞

To show what is meant by a verb being able to be used in both a transitive and intransitive sense, consider the following. You can even use が and を with the same noun and make sentences with many of these verbs (but not all).

1. 船が^{そくど ま}速度を増した。

The boat accelerated.

2. 拡^{かくだい}大の速度が増している。

Expansion speed is on the rise.

3. 片^{かたほう}方の目が閉じている。

One eye is shut.

4. 全^{ぜんいん}員の目を閉じている。

Everyone has their eyes shut.

5. 扉^{とびら}がひらいた。

The door/gate opened.

6. 扉を開け！

Open the gate!

Some meanings of a verb may not be able to be used in both a transitive and an intransitive sense.

7. 風 {が ○ ・ を X} 吹いた。

The wind blew.

8. 笛 {が X ・ を ○} 吹く。

To blow a flute.

Major 自他同形動詞

The following table shows just how many verbs are both transitive and intransitive. Note that not all verbs are listed because there are so many. You'll also see which verbs do or do not require other words to be used for each orientation. For instance, we would have to use 風 and 笛 to explain 吹く.

Verb	自動詞文	他動詞文
閉じる	目が閉じる	目を閉じる
生じる	ミスが生じる	ミスを生じる
伴う	危険が伴う	危険を伴う
運ぶ	話が運ぶ	話を運ぶ
馳せる	馬が馳せる	馬を馳せる
はだける	胸がはだける	胸をはだける
張る	根が張る	根を張る
ひらく	蕾がひらく	蕾をひらく
触れる	手が触れる	手を触れる
はねる	泥がはねる	泥をはねる *
巻く	渦が巻く	渦を巻く

増す	水が増す	水を増す
催す	眠気が催す	眠気を催す
内定する	就職が内定する	就職を内定する
決定する	提案が決定する	提案を決定する
結ぶ	実が結ぶ	実を結ぶ
噴出する	溶岩が噴出する	溶岩を噴出する*
する	匂いがする	勉強をする
働く	理性が働く	詐欺を働く
持つ	体が持つ	ペンを持つ
吹く	風が吹く	笛を吹く
引く	潮が引く	辞書を引く
結ぶ	実が結ぶ	紐を結ぶ

*: If you don't explain who the doer is, you can't use them.

Vocabulary Note: Below are glosses for some words above.

蕾	つぼみ	Bud	開ける	はだける	To bare/be bared
就職	しゅうしょく	Employment	噴出	ふんしゅつ	Eruption
提案	ていあん	Proposal	内定	ないてい	Tentative decision
眠気	ねむけ	Sleepiness	催す	もよおす	To feel (sensation)
渦	うず	Whirlpool	危険	きけん	Danger
溶岩	ようがん	Lava	匂い	におい	Smell
潮	しお	Tide	紐	ひも	String
理性	りせい	Reason/rationale	詐欺	さぎ	Fraud

Frequency Note: ～が催す and ～が馳せる are quite rare these days, but they still exist.

Examples

9. 東南アジアでは胸をはだけた ^{かつこう}格好の風習はなかった。

There was not a custom of bearing one's chest in Southeast Asia.

10. トラックが ^{どろ}泥をはねた。

The truck splattered mud.

11. 子供が泥をはねて、着物を ^{よご}汚してしまった。

The child splattered mud and dirtied up his/her kimono.

12. 泥が子供によってはねられた。X

Mud was splattered by the child.

13. 50代と見られる男性が電車にはねられたということです。(はねる = To run over)

A male in what looks to be in his fifties has been run over by a train.

14. 兵士 ^{へいし}は間もなく首を ^は刎ねられてしまった。(はねる = To decapitate)

The soldier was shortly beheaded.

Verb Note: はねる is not a willful action. Mud is splattered by people and cars. So, there really isn't much difference in meaning if you were to use the intransitive form. All you do is mentioned how the mud got splattered by mentioning what had it splatter only because the movement of the two forces went in line with each other. Mud moves along with the tires of a car or the feet of a person. This is similar to a door opening. The difference, though, is that はねる may never be in the passive but ひらく can. Note that this entire note is only relevant to the はねる for "to splatter" and not other meanings of はねる.

漢字 Note: 刌 is not a 常用漢字. So, you are not responsible to remember it.

Language Difference Note: Even though the English sentence may not make sense, if a Japanese example has an X next to it, it is wrong even if you want to directly translate.

15. 予想通りに話が運んでいる。

Talks are carrying on along expectations.

16. 「交渉^{こうしょう}はどうだった？」 「順調^{じゅんちょう}に運んだよ」

"How are the negotiations?" "They're going smoothly"

17. 箱^{はこ}を背負^{せお}って運ぶ。

To carry a box on one's back.

18. 荷物 {を ○ ・ が X} 運ぶ。

To carry luggage.

Verb Note: 運ぶ is only intransitive to show progress in matters. You mostly see it used with nouns like 話 and 交渉.

19. 使者^{ししゃ}が馬^はを馳せた。

The envoy rode the horse fast.

20. 馬が馳せられた。X

The horse was ridden fast.

Verb Note: 馬が馳せた is hardly used, but it can exist as a horse may run ahead on its own, but whether it is willfully doing it is questionable. This is where the transitive meaning of 馳せる is thought to have arose from. Because of this relation, 馳せる may not be passive. This will look similar to the verbs below, but the subject of 馳せる when it is transitive is not the same as when its intransitive.

Normally, another verb like 駆ける or 走る would be used instead of the intransitive 馳せる.

Transitive Verbs that Don't Act 100% Like One

Think about the meanings of 吹く and 生じる. In the following sentences, the subject isn't a 使役者 (causer). Unlike a causative phrase, what the subject does happens due to natural phenomenon. It's not that the branch (Ex. 21) or the computer (Ex. 22) does what it does out of active intent (at least in normal contexts). So, it's not what are they doing but what becomes of them. They may be transitive, but they're not like others because what is marked by を is actually not being acted upon by something which willfully acts. **All** such verbs may **never** be in the passive! There are other verbs like this with different intransitive and transitive forms, but we'll just look at those that don't.

21. えだ め
枝 が芽を吹いた。

The branch budded.

22. コンピューターにミスが生じた。

An error was generated in the computer.

23. コンピューターがミスを生じた。

The computer generated an error.

24. ぼうけん
冒 険 とは、一般には、危険を伴うものである。

Adventure is something which involves danger.

25. 溶岩が火山から {噴いた・噴出した} 。

Lava {spewed/erupted} from the volcano.

26. 火山が溶岩を {噴いた・噴出した} 。

The volcano {spewed/erupted} lava.

27. 溶岩が火山によって噴出された。X

Lava was erupted by the the volcano. X

Grammar Note: There are verbs like this which can be made passive only if you somehow turn the agent of action into a subject which acts not out of natural phenomenon but of intent.

Intransitive Subject → Transitive Object X

Even though a verb may be either transitive or intransitive without any change in form, you may not be able to use the subject of the intransitive be as the object of the transitive. In the chart, all verbs starting with する are like this. As you can see with 結ぶ, nuance can make all the difference.

28. 悪意を持って悪事を働く。 (悪意が持つ X)

To commit wrong with malice.

29. 電池はどれくらい持ちますか。

How long does the battery last.

The Emotional State of the Subject

Just because you can change the subject of an intransitive sentence to the object of a transitive sentence doesn't mean there is no difference in meaning. You may be able to say that the first two sentences aren't different at all, but you can't say that for the next two. Ex. 30 and 31 have a subject which is emotionless, but in the Ex. 32 and Ex. 33 the subject willfully acts.

30. 梅の ^{つぼみ} 蕾 が開いた。

The plum buds bloomed.

31. 梅が蕾を開いた。

The plum bloomed.

32. 門 ^{もんぴ} 扉 が開いた。

The gate opened.

32. 巡 ^{じゅんさ} 査 が道路の門扉を開いた。

The patrol officer opened the street's gate.

Table of Contents

第128課: The Passive I

This lesson is actually our second lesson concerning られる and ~れる but sadly not the last. They not only make the potential, but they also make the passive voice. The Japanese passive is used in ways the English passive is not. This is aside from the obvious fact that the times when English speakers and Japanese speakers won't be the same across the board even with the usages they share in common.

~られる and ~れる

~られる and ~れる attach to the 未然形 and may be used for the following things. ~られる is used with 一段 verbs and 来る and ~れる is used with 五段 verbs and する.

一段	食べられる	五段	飲まれる	する	される	来る	こられる
----	-------	----	------	----	-----	----	------

As you can see, 来る is intransitive but is shown here. You will learn in the next lesson on the passive how the Japanese passive endings can be used with intransitive verbs. You'll also learn in a future lessons how to create spontaneity and light honorific phrases.

Conjugation Notes:

1. For する, the older passive form is せられる (せ-未然形 + ~られる). Some verbs like 課す (to tax; levy) are still sometimes used with the old form せられる.
2. The voiced forms of する, ずる and じる, utilize ~られる with their ぜ・じ-未然形 and じ-未然形 respectively. For example, 感じられる・感ぜられる. Using ずる is old-fashioned and restricted to 書き言葉.

More Conjugation Examples

五段	To take	取る → 取られる	一段	To eat	食べる → 食べられる
一段	To see	見る → 見られる	五段	To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
力変	To come	来る → 来られる	五段	To buy	買う → 買われる
サ変	To do	する → される	五段	To change (int.)	変わる → 変わられる
五段	To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一段	To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五段	To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五段	To indulge	貪る → 貪られる
五段	To fasten	繫ぐ → 繫がれる	五段	To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Caution Note: 五段 verbs ending in る—remember that all verbs in this category etymologically just end in -u—appear to end in ～られる. However, as their 未然形 is ら-, this is not the case.

Usage Note: 変わられる would only be correct Japanese if used in honorifics or compound verbs like 移り変わる.

五 段	To take	取る → 取られる	一 段	To eat	食べる → 食べられる
一 段	To see	見る → 見られる	五 段	To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
力 変	To come	来(く)る → 来(こ) られる	五 段	To buy	買う → 買われる
サ 変	To do	する → される	一 段	To change	変わる → 変われる
五 段	To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一 段	To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五 段	To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五 段	To in- dulge	貪(むさぼ)る → 貪 られる
五 段	To fas- ten	繫(つな)ぐ → 繫がれ る	五 段	To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Note: 五段 verbs that end in -る seem to use -られる, but it's just that their 未然形 is ら-.

五 段	To take	取る → 取られる	一 段	To eat	食べる → 食べられる
一 段	To see	見る → 見られる	五 段	To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
力 変	To come	来 (く) る → 来 (こ) られる	五 段	To buy	買う → 買われる
サ 変	To do	する → される	一 段	To change	変わる → 変われる
五 段	To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一 段	To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五 段	To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五 段	To in- dulse	貪 (むさぼ) る → 貪 られる
五 段	To fas- ten	繋 (つな) ぐ → 繋がれ る	五 段	To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Note: 五段 verbs that end in -る seem to use -られる, but it's just that their 未然形 is ら-.

五 段	To take	取る → 取られる	一 段	To eat	食べる → 食べられる
一 段	To see	見る → 見られる	五 段	To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
力 変	To come	来 (く) る → 来 (こ) られる	五 段	To buy	買う → 買われる
サ 変	To do	する → される	一 段	To change	変わる → 変われる

五 段	To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一 段	To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五 段	To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五 段	To in- dulge	貪（むさぼ）る → 貪 られる
五 段	To fas- ten	繫（つな）ぐ → 繫がれ る	五 段	To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Note: 五段 verbs that end in -る seem to use -られる, but it's just that their 未然形 is ら-.

五 段	To take	取る → 取られる	一 段	To eat	食べる → 食べられる
一 段	To see	見る → 見られる	五 段	To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
力 変	To come	来（く）る → 来（こ） られる	五 段	To buy	買う → 買われる
サ 変	To do	する → される	一 段	To change	変わる → 変われる
五 段	To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一 段	To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五 段	To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五 段	To in- dulge	貪（むさぼ）る → 貪 られる
五 段	To fas- ten	繫（つな）ぐ → 繫がれ る	五 段	To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Note: 五段 verbs that end in -る seem to use -られる, but it's just that their 未然形 is ら-.

五 段	To take	取る → 取られる	一 段	To eat	食べる → 食べられる
--------	---------	-----------	--------	--------	-------------

一段	To see	見る → 見られる	五段	To swim	泳ぐ → 泳がれる
力変	To come	来(く)る → 来(こ)られる	五段	To buy	買う → 買われる
サ変	To do	する → される	一段	To change	変わる → 変われる
五段	To carry	運ぶ → 運ばれる	一段	To slip off	脱げる → 脱げられる
五段	To steal	盗む → 盗まれる	五段	To indulge	貪(むさぼ)る → 貪られる
五段	To fasten	繋(つな)ぐ → 繋がれる	五段	To wait	待つ → 待たれる

Note: 五段 verbs that end in -る seem to use -られる, but it's just that their 未然形 is ら-.

受身形

'Direct' Passive

Basic passive sentences are like Ex. 2, deriving from a non-passive sentence like Ex. 1. However, just as how English speakers can say "the tournament will be held in Paris", there doesn't even have to necessarily be a subject with overt emotion. First, though, consider this basic example yet comical example.

1. 犬が^{くじら}鯨^くを食った。

The dog **ate** the whale.

2. 犬が鯨に食われた。

The dog **was eaten** by the whale.

Although odd, the sentences show the differences well. In a passive sentence there is an **action receiver and an action performer**. The action received is always there: it's the passive verb. What *may or may not* be there is the receiver and or the performer. The performer (agent) is marked by に--"by". The subject is the action receiver. In the **past tense** the subject is the "doer". The **(direct) passive voice** has the whale be the "doer" and the dog the one being eaten.

Curriculum Note: For instances of the agent being marked by から in the passive, click [link](#).

Lastly, **によって** shows what an action was done under. It's especially used for showing when something is created, discovered, or named by someone. If there is a direct object in the sentence, you will see を too.

Examples

3. アリは弟に^く食われた。

The ant was eaten by my brother.

4. ネックレスが^{どろぼう}泥棒に盗られました。

The necklace was stolen by a thief.

5. この本は僕に読まれました。

This book was read by me.

6. ボールがパスされ、彼女はそれを受けた。

The ball was passed and she received it.

7. 子供は引^か搔かれて、泣いた。

The kid was scratched, and he cried.

8. 親にまで見限られた。

Even his parents have turned their backs on him.

9. このため開発が急がれている。

Because of this, the development is being hurried.

10. 彼女に ^{だま} 騙されたよ。

I got cheated by my girlfriend.

11. 姿を ^{たにん} 他人に見られる。

To have one's figure seen by others.

12. ^{ふたり} 二人だけ ^{のこ} 取り残された。

The two were left all alone.

13. アメリカに住んでいるのは ^{めぐ} 恵まれた ^{かんきょう} 環境にあるということです。

Living in America is in a blessed environment.

14. ^{いっく} 一句の ^{うち} 内に ^{ばんかん} 万感の思いが ^{ぎようしゆく} 凝縮されていた。

Floods of emotions were condensed into a single phrase.

15. 彼女は ^{やと} 雇われて五ヶ月もしないうちに ^{くび} 首になったさ。(Casual; Tokyo Dialect)

She hadn't been employed for five months before she got fired.

16. この ^{とう} 塔は200年前に ^た 建てられました。(Passive)

This tower was built two hundred years ago.

17. 一人だけ取り残された孤独な学生が ^{まいご} 迷子になった。

The left behind lonely student got lost.

18. すりに^{さいふ}財布をすられた。

I got my wallet pocket picked by a pickpocket.

19. ^{じょうし}上司に^{しか}叱られました。

I got scolded by my boss.

20. ^{のろ}呪われた島だよ。

It is a cursed island.

21. 日本の車は^{せかいじゅう}世界中へ輸出されています。

Japanese cars are exported throughout the world.

22. その計画はあの人たちに思い付かれたものです。

That plan is something that was thought up of by those people.

23. この「火車」という小説は宮部によって書かれました。

This novel called "Kasha" was written by Miyabe.

24. その仕事は^{かとう}加藤さんによってなされました。

The work was done by Mr. Kato.

25. あの島はコロンブスによって名づけられた。

That island was named by Columbus.

26. 彼女は皆から愛されています。

She is loved by everybody.

27. ^{じゅうたい}渋滞に巻き込まれたからだよ。

(It's) because I got stuck in traffic!

28. この歌は英語で歌われました。

This song was sung in English.

29. 道を聞かれた。

I was asked the way.

30. 徐々に崩しに変更される。

It will be changed little by little.

31. 彼の名前は決して忘れられないだろう。

His name will never be forgotten.

32. 昔日本の家は木で 造られました。

In the past Japanese homes were made with wood.

33. ブロードバンドルータが取り付けられました。

The broadband router was installed.

34. 保管庫に 鍵 がかけられた。

The vault was secured with a key.

35. 金 から 城 を作ったといわれている。

It is said that he built the castle from gold.

36. 町を歩いていると呼び止められた。

I was halted when I was walking through the town.

37. 先生に叱られて泣いている。

He is crying because he was scolded by his teacher.

38. 私は先生に褒められました。

I was praised by my teacher.

39. 何の料金は含まれていますか。

What fines are included?

40. 悪口を言われてもへこたれんな！ (Slang)

Don't be discouraged even if you're bombarded by slurs!

41. 今でも、この習慣はまだ行われています。

Even now this custom is still carried out.

42. これは何に使われるのですか。

What is this used for?

43. 犬が ^{くさり}鎖^{つな} で 繋^{つな} がれている。

The dog is chained up.

44. ^{とうやこ}洞爺湖^とサミットは抗議とともに行われた。

The G8 Summit in Toyako (Hokkaido) started out with protests.

45. 彼の理論はでたらめな調査に ^{もと}基^{もと} づいて立てられている。

His theory is based on haphazard inquiry.

46. ^{えがお}笑顔^つに釣^つられて ^{ほほえ}微笑^{ほほえ} む。

To grin from looking at a smiley face.

47. 大名に ^め召^めし ^{かか}抱^{かか} えられる。

To be employed as a retainer by a daimyo.

48. 彼女は男に ^こ恋^こ い ^こ焦^こ がられる女だね。

She's certainly a woman deeply loved by men, isn't she?

WARNING Note: 焦がれる (To yearn for) is not in the passive form. Its passive would be 焦がられる. The verb 焦がれる can also be used as a supplementary verb in expressions such as 思い焦がれる (to pine for) and 恋 (い) 焦がれる (to be deeply in love with). So, be careful with these phrases as well.

とされる

と される shows that an idea is held by people in general. As we have not learned about the passive form, and because this is also a derivative of the "とす
る" pattern we learned above, you are not responsible for remembering "される"
at this point. Nevertheless, below is an example.

49. いっぱん 一般 に成功は難しいとされる。

It is believed that success is generally difficult.

Word Note: There are some words that are not verbal expressions but are pas-
sive in nature. One such phrase is と ^{おぼ}思 しい, which is equivalent to と思われる.

Grammar Note: The copula is not used with the passive voice.

Contraction Note: For passive meanings in the negative, you could see ～らんない.

The Potential

The potential and passive verbs go hand in hand. The difference lies in con-
text and particle usage. Even earlier forms of these endings had the same func-
tions. However, the use of ～れる for the potential has rapidly fallen in recent
times, though it is still seen in many set phrases and old-fashioned speech.

50. 越すに越されぬ大井川

The Ooi River that one just can't cross

51a. 見捨てておかれようか。

51b. 見捨てておけるだろうか。(More Modern)

Can you leave and forsake it?

52. 鬼が怖くて行かない。

The oni is scared and can't move.

Dialect Note: In dialects such as 北九州弁, the potential is made by adding ～きる to the 連用形. This means "having the ability to swim". ～られる・れる are used for "one has the ability to swim out of will". If you said 泳がれない, you wouldn't be saying that you can't literally swim; you just can't get yourself to.

Table of Contents

Throughout the site, extremely complicated names for things are avoided. However, in this discussion, it is important to bring up proper terminology as common names for what is to be discussed cause the confusion.

The use of "passive" endings on intransitive verbs puzzled Western scholars from the very beginning. Common names for this have been 迷惑の受身 (trouble passive), 被害の受身 (painful passive), and 間接受身 (indirect passive). Though these definitions are right within specific examples, they not only fail at explaining all instances of this passive sentence type, nor does it address the fact that it is not exclusive to intransitives. The passive sentences we will see all have one thing in common. What might that be? Find out next!

不可抗力性

Calling the 受身文 below "indirect" is very tempting, especially when you see examples like Ex. 1, but this does us little good? "Indirect" passive, grammatically speaking, means that the agent, which is marked by に, is not directly affecting the subject of the passive sentence. This is very vague, and the relation of "influence" between the doer and the person affected could vary greatly from sentence to sentence.

1. 畠中さんは大統領に才能を買われました。

Hatakana-san's abilities were appreciated by the president.

This sentence, though, doesn't describe a bad thing. Yet, the overall grammar has been called "painful past?". For one, there are very few verbs, much less intransitive verbs, referring to painful things. Some of the most painful verbs are transitive like 殺す. That's not to say this pattern never describes 被害.

2. 私は愛犬に死なれて悲嘆に暮れた。

My beloved dog died, and I was suffered from heartache.

Because many examples describe 迷惑, some people are fine with calling any usage some sort of 迷惑 even if it's a stretch, but does this really create a good analysis? We also haven't even touched on why を can show up. From an English point of view, the use of intransitives is already bizarre.

3. 私たちは雨に降られた。

We were rained on.

4. 弟は地下鉄の中で中年の女性に足を踏^ふまれた。

My little brother got his foot stepped on by some middle aged woman on the subway.

What if we were to say that what is really at work is the existence of a sense of inevitability or something being irresistible which does not exist in a typical passive like in Ex. 5

5. カエルがワニに食われた

The/a frog was eaten by the alligator.

The frog just happened to get eaten by the alligator. In Ex. 4, your brother being stepped on by the woman was inevitable and something he couldn't have avoided. The frog, again, just got straight up eaten in the jaws of a beast. With this grammar, the agent does some action which is stated in full, which is why you can see を. Depending on what this is, you are unable resist being put in a situation, and you let into it. Sometimes it's a good thing, but it is very frequently a bad thing.

More Examples

6. またあいつに家に来られたようさ。(東京弁)

It seems that guy came to my house again. (You don't like it)

7. 両親に死なれた。(Will be rude and inappropriate)

Literally: I was died on by my parents.

My parents died on me.

8. 雨に降られて、びしょ濡^ぬれになった。

I was rained on and became soaking wet.

9. 妹に先に卒業された。

My younger sister graduated before me (and I was really embarrassed).

10. 私は犬に手を噛^かれました。

I (had/got) my hand bitten by a dog.

11. 私が河田に水藤へ藤原を紹介された。

Kawada introducing Fujiwara to Suito was inconvenient to me.

12. 先に子供に死なれたら、どうなるんだろう。

What would happen if my child/the child were to die first?

第130課: The Causative I: ~させる & ~せる

The auxiliary verbs ~させる and ~せる are primarily used to create the 使役形 (causative form), which equates to "to make/let X do Y". Before we look at what "causation" means and the grammatical restrictions, know that 作る is **not** used to make the causative form because it means "to make". 作る is used in the physical sense. Furthermore, 作る is a verb, not an auxiliary verb. Knowing that Japanese uses auxiliaries to make forms such as this, you would not be tempted to make a mistake like 1a.

1a. 怒る作る X

1b. 怒らせる O

To make angry

Again, the **causative** make is "to make X do Y". Do not confuse the causative with the similar pattern XをYにする, which is used to show that one "makes/has a thing (X) be a certain way (Y)". If you were to couple this with XがYになる, you should be able to avoid confusion. Consider Exs. 2~4 which differentiates these three patterns.

2. 音楽が小さくなった。

The music('s volume) got smaller/quieter.

3. 音楽を小さくした。

(I) turned down the music.

4. 彼に音楽を小さくさせた。

I made him turn down the music.

Conjugation Note: Remember to put adjectives in the 連用形 when before する or なる.

The Auxiliaries ~させる & ~せる: 使役形

The 使役形 is used with both transitive and intransitive verbs, but the grammar is a little different. These endings attach to the 未然形 and conjugate as 一段 verbs. In **contracted speech** ～させる and ～せる become ～さす and ～す respectively, which are conjugated as 五段 verbs.

Chart Note: In the chart below, class refer to the class of the verb being used as the example.

Class	Auxiliary	Example	Auxiliary	Example
一段	～させる	食べさせる	～さす	食べさす
五段	～せる	行かせる	～す	行かす
する	～せる	させる	～す	さす (X/△)
来る	～させる	来させる	～さす	来さす (X/△)

Grammar Notes:

1. The copula is not used in the causative form and should be replaced with ～にさせる.

Ex. バカ {だ・である} → バカにさせる (to make...out to be stupid).

2. さす is rather uncommon by itself, but when used in conjugations it may be seen. For instance, 勉強さした (made...study). This, however, just like 来さす are **dialectical** at best and are not correct in Standard Japanese.

3. To make an **adjectival causative expression**, add させる after the <-連用形 of 形容詞 and after the に-連用形 of the copula for 形容動詞.

Conjugation Chart

Class	Verb	動 詞・	使役形	Neg	Past	Short 使役形	Neg	Past
-------	------	---------	-----	-----	------	--------------	-----	------

		形容 詞						
一段	To see	見る	見させる	見させない	見させた	見さす (X/△)	X	見さした
一段	To endure	耐える	耐えさせる	耐えさせない	耐えさせた	耐えさす (X/△)	X	耐えさした
五段	To say	言う	言わせる	言わせない	言わせた	言わす	X	言わした
五段	To strike/beat	叩く	叩かせる	叩かせない	叩かせた	叩かす	X	叩かした
五段	To clamor	騒ぐ	騒がせる	騒がせない	騒がせた	騒がす	X	騒がした
五段	To knock down	倒す	倒させる	倒させない	倒させた	倒さす	X	倒さした
五段	To share/di- vide	分かつ	分かたせる	分かたせない	分かたせた	分かたす	X	分かたした
五段	To die	死ぬ	死なせる	死なせない	死なせた	死なす	X	死なした
五段	To be de- lighted	喜ぶ	喜ばせる	喜ばせない	喜ばせた	喜ばす	X	喜ばした
五段	To smile	微笑む	微笑ませる	微笑ませない	微笑ませた	微笑ます	X	微笑ました
五段	To rub	擦る	擦らせる	擦らせない	擦らせた	擦らす	X	擦らした
形容詞	New	新しい	新しくさせる	新しくさせない	新しくさせた	X	X	X/△
形容動詞	Easy	簡単だ	簡単にさせる	簡単にさせない	簡単にさせた	X	X	X/△

使役形

With Transitive Verbs

If the original verb is **transitive**, the direct object is marked with を if there is one mentioned. Remember, though, that if there is a transitive verb in a sentence or clause, a direct object must be implied. Japanese just doesn't require one to be used explicitly if it is information recoverable in context. The subject of the action, in other words, the person/performer being made to do something, is **marked by に**.

5. 弟にゴミを出させる。

I make my younger brother take out the trash.

6. 太郎くんにかめを殺させる。

To make Taro-kun kill a turtle.

7. 母は弟に犬にエサをやらせた。

My mom made my little brother feed the dog.

Sentence Note: The first に marks the brother as the person being made to do the action and the second に marks the dog as the recipient of the food.

With Intransitive Verbs

If the original verb is **intransitive**, を and に may seem to be interchangeable to mark the person being made to do something (被使役者) . Most resources have failed in addressing the issue that adequately matches the actual decision between these two by regular native speakers. What is certain, though, is that the deciding factor for using them is determined by semantics.

As for the particle を, it may imply a *compelling force*. It may also be accidental/overbearing in nature. However, as you will see though, there is speaker variation in this interpretation. It is chosen, however, with 非情物 (things lacking emotion=inanimate objects) subjects and with emotion phrases.

8. 友達を怒らせる。

To anger a friend.

9. 風が木を揺らせていた。

The wind shook the tree(s).

10. ネズミを死なせる。

To make the rat die.

Sentence Note: This last sentence fits in this description as bringing about an effect such as making something die is a means of a compelling force. If we think

of animal abuse, using 死なせる in the case of accusing the owner of causing the pet's death would be completely logical.

を would be expected in situations in which the direct object is something that could never have any will to act on its own (Ex. 11).

11. 心を乱れさせる。

To upset someone's feelings.

に shows self-discipline and recognition of the will of the person being made to do something, which is why it goes with the "let" definition. Movement verbs are great examples of this. Nevertheless, natives don't actually consciously differentiate between let and make. So, in reality, what this means is that に can give the interpretation of "let", but in context, the speaker could still just mean "make". In fact, as the next example shows, even when a modal like ~てあげる is added, many speakers would still choose を to mark the 被使役者.

12. 父親は子ども {を・に} プールで泳がせてあげました。

The father let his child swim in the pool.

13. 今回は山本に行かせましょうか。

Next time, let's have Yamamoto go.

Sentence Note: It's unlikely that Ex. 13 implies the speaker(s) are thinking of Yamamoto's intents, but as the English translation suggests, it's possible to be vague on this matter.

14. 子どもをベンチに座らせる。

To make the/a child(ren) sit on the bench.

15a. 子どもを座らせる。

15b. 子どもに座らせる。

To make the/a child(ren) sit.

Sentence Note: The majority of speakers would say 15a is more assertive as we've discussed. However, because the avoidance of doubling particles is a larger driving force in choosing the right particle, it is not the case that zero speakers think it's in fact the second option that is more coercive. Also, a minority of speakers would think 15b is wrong. There is also natural ambiguity in the exact interpretation of 15ab. 15a may sound like a command or as if a parent is physically forcing the child to sit. 15b may sound like someone is having something sit in the kid's lap.

16. 先生は吉田さん {を・に} そこへ座らせました。

The teacher made/let Mr. Yoshida sit there.

17. 犬に公園を散歩させます。

I let my dog walk in the park.

As far as realistic usage of Japanese, a large motivation of which particle to use has to deal with not using the same one twice in a clause for the same purpose. Japanese has no problems using the same particle twice if it's for something different like we saw in Ex. 7, but it does not tolerate the doubling of the same thing for the same purpose.

18. 子供 {を・(△・X) に} おつかいに行かせる。

To make/let a kid go do an errand.

Sentence Note: Despite the grammatical correctness of this sentence, some speakers would say that Ex. 18 is wrong due to the doubling of に.

19. 親は子供 {を・(△・X) に} 買い物に行かせた。

The parent made/had his/her child(ren) go shopping.

20. ワンちゃんに道の内側を歩かせる。

To make the dog walk inside the road.

Sentence Note: Though the particle を is not used in this sentence to mark a direct object, the particle に is used to mark the 被使役者 is used first and foremost to avoid from using を twice. Unlike the particle に, native speakers are not aware of there being different usages of を.

The particle に is also used with verbs that are actions regarding people such as 答える, しゃべる, etc.

21. 先生は、学生に質問に答えさせる。

The teacher made/had his/her students answer (to) the questions.

Sentence Note: The status of に as a must with 答える is the same as with 行く. Yet, some speakers would still try to replace at least one of the に with を. Grammatically speaking, the first would be the best to change, but in reality, some speakers would say ～を答えさせる.

Particle Note: Overall, native speakers use を considerably more often even when either particle is possible. When a place is added into the sentence marked with に, the number of people who would chose を to mark the 被使役者 drastically goes up. In the end, as we've seen, there is certainly individual differences in exact usage of these particles in this situation. So, if you get corrected harshly, do not be discouraged. It's easiest to say that in the case for intransitive verbs, you may mark a 被使役者 with either を or に, but it is most important to most speakers to avoid the doubling of either one of them.

More Examples

22. 先生は学生を帰らせました。

The teacher sent his/her students home.

23. 毎朝犬を散歩させます。

I walk the dog every morning.

24. 妹を大阪に来させる。

I'll make/have my younger sister come to Osaka.

25. 公園に犬を散歩させます。

I walk the dog in the park.

26. 気分が悪そうなので生徒 {を・に} 先に帰らせた。

Since the student seemed to feel bad, I had/let him/her go home earlier.

27a. 人に立たせる。？

27b. 人~~を~~立たせる

To make a person stand.

Sentence Note: 27a sounds like you're making someone stand something up.

So, you should use 27b.

Had Someone Do

When you say you **had someone do something for you**, instead of using the causative, you use ～てもらう・～ていただく. With expressions concerning emotions, those things are not in your control to cause. So, using them with the causative is fine. So, you can say something like 母を心配させた. This is because the causative does not have to be intentional. ～てもらう・～ていただく always are.

28. 先生に ^{すいせんじょう} 推薦状 を書いていただきました。(You didn't make the teacher do it.)

I had my teacher write me a letter of recommendation.

29. 先生に推薦状を書かせました。(Not for your benefit at all)

I made the teacher write a letter of recommendation.

Also note that the use of に is different. In the first sentence it shows from whom you received the action. In the second sentence it marks who was forced to do the action.

More Examples

30. 笑わせないでください。

Please don't make me laugh.

31. 頭をすっきりさせる。

To clear the head.

32. 人を酔^よわせる。

To intoxicate a person.

33. 方言は日本語をより美しくて、素晴らしい言語として成り立たせていると思います。

I think that dialects makes Japanese a more beautiful and wonderful language.

34. 母が妹に掃^{そうじ}除^{じょ}させたのにがらがらと笑ったんだ。

I laughed so hard about my mom making my younger sister wash the dishes.

35. でも、父が僕に空手を習わせたのはいやだったよ。

But, I hated that my dad made me take karate.

36. 僕にもやらせてもらえない（か）。（Casual）

Could you let me play it?

37. 彼をあっと言わせたい。

I want to surprise him.

38. あたしを悲しくさせないで。(Feminine)

Don't make me sad.

39. 森林を焼けさせる。

To have the forests burn.

40. 祖母を休ませました。

We made our grandmother take a rest.

41. 風邪を^{かぜ} 拗^{こじ}らせて、寝込む。

To complicate a cold and stay in bed (because of it).

Word Note: 拗らせる shouldn't be used in its basic form. Use the intransitive 拗れる in that case.

42. 弟は野菜が^{きら}嫌いだが、母は弟に毎日野菜を食べさせるつもりだ。

My younger brother hates vegetables, but my mother plans to make him eat them every day.

43. 今働き始めたら、それだけ早く済ませるだろう。

If we were to start working now, the quicker we would probably finish.

44. 何と言っても金が^よ世の中を動かすのさ。

No matter what, money makes the world go round.

45. えんしゅつか ^{じょげん} 助言を ^{あた} 与えるため ^{たびたび} 度々 ^{ちゅうだん} リハーサルを 中 断 させた。

The producer interrupted rehearsals frequently in order to give advice.

46.

A. あなたが、日本語の先生だったら、学生に何をさせますか。

B. 日本語の先生だったら、学生に {日本語の本・和書} を読むようにさせるでしょう。

A. If you were a Japanese teacher, what would you make your students do?

B. If I were a Japanese teacher, I'd make my students try to read Japanese words.

47.

A. あなたが、社長になったら、秘書に何をさせますか。

B. 週ごとに報告書を書かせるでしょう。

A. If you were a company president, what would you make your secretary do?

B. I would make (the secretary) write a report a week.

48.

A. 頭のいいロボットがいたら、何をさせますか。

B. 掃除をさせるでしょう。

A. If you had a smart robot, what would you make it do?

B. I'd make it do my laundry.

49.

A. 親になったら、子供に何をさせてあげますか。

B. 日本語と ^{かんこくご}韓国語 を習わせてあげるでしょう。

A. When you become a parent, what would you have your children do?

B. I would have (them) study Japanese and Korean.

50.

A. 結婚したら、相手に何をさせてあげますか。

B. ハワイに旅行させてあげるでしょう。

A. When you're married, what would you have your partner do?

B. I'd take him/her on a trip to Hawaii.

Unconcern or Let

As has been mentioned earlier, ～させる and ～せる may represent the subject's affirmative unconcern--"let". This at times can imply neglect, letting something unintentionally occur. When paired with ～てもらう・ていただく, the speaker humbly acts by saying they will receive the permission to do what they are about to do. It is also important to note that when these endings are paired with ～てあげる・やる, ～てくれる, ～てもらう, the sense of permission becomes clear and distinguishable from the "make" definition that we have primarily been focusing on. This brings up an important point on particle usage. Despite に's affinity for the "let" meaning, you still see を used with intransitive verbs even when one of these patterns is used in concert.

51. 先生は学生 {を・に} トイレに行かせてあげた。

The teacher let the student go to the restroom.

52. ちょっと考えさせてください。

Please let me think about it.

53. 昼に全生徒を帰らせました。

I let all of my students go home at noon.

54. 車を使わせてください。

Please let me use your car.

55. 会議を始めさせていただきます。(謙譲語)

Allow me to start this meeting.

56. 父は僕に車を運転させてくれた。

My dad let me drive the car.

57. お風呂の水を ^{ふろ} 溢 ^{あふ} れさせてしまったの! (Old person)

I accidentally let the water in the tub overflow!

58. 育て方を間違って子供をいじけさせるのは親の最悪の悪夢だ。

Having messed up in raising one's child and letting it grow perverse is a parent's worst nightmare.

59.

A. 子供の時、皆の両親は、何をさせてくれませんでしたか。

B. 子供の時、一人で遊ばせてくれませんでした。

A. As a child, what did everyone's parents not let them do?

B. When I was a child, I wasn't allowed to play alone.

60.

A. 高校の時、皆の両親は、何をさせてくれませんでした。

B. {酒・アルコール} を飲ませてくれませんでした。

A In high school, what did everyone's parents not let them do?

B. They wouldn't let me drink.

第131課: Causative-Passive

Adding the causative and passive forms together creates the 使役受け身形. As the name suggests, the ordering of the endings is causative then passive. Because there is a short causative form, there is a short causative-passive form. So, we will need to look into detail on that. Also, because the causative can either be interpreted as make and let depending on context (remember that natives often do not sense a difference between the two concepts), the causative-passive reflects this as well.

Causative-Passive

The 受身形 (passive form) and the 使役形 may be put together by attaching ~られる to the 未然形 of the causative auxiliary verbs, which also attach to the 未然形 of the main verb. First, we will look at the combination of ~させる・せる and ~られる. If you are still unfamiliar with the term 未然形, the chart below will show you how to create it and the pattern.

Class	Verb	動詞	原形 → 未然形 + 使役 → 未然形 + 受身	使役受身形
一段	To wear	着る	→ 着 + させ = 着させる → 着させ + られる	着させられる
一段	To close	閉める	→ 閉め + させ = 閉めさせる → 閉めさせ + られる	閉めさせられる
五段	To eat (俗語)	食う	→ 食わ + せる = 食わせる → 食わせ + られる	食わせられる
五段	To scratch	掻く	→ 掻か + せる = 掻かせる → 掻かせ + られる	掻かせられる
五段	To sniff	嗅ぐ	→ 嗅が + せる = 嗅がせる → 嗅がせ + られる	嗅がせられる

五段	To pierce/sting	刺す	→ 刺さ + せる = 刺させる → 刺させ + られる	刺させられ る
五段	To shoot	撃つ	→ 撃た + せる = 撃たせる → 撃たせ + られる	撃たせられ る
五段	To die	死ぬ	→ 死な + せる = 死なせる → 死なせ + られる	死なせられ る
五段	To jump	跳ぶ	→ 跳ば + せる = 跳ばせる → 跳ばせ + られる	跳ばせられ る
五段	To carve	刻む	→ 刻ま + せる = 刻ませる → 刻ませ + られる	刻ませられ る
五段	To print	刷る	→ 刷ら + せる = 刷らせる → 刷らせ + られる	刷らせられ る

To begin grammar analysis in this lesson, let's consider the particle differences to expect between the passive, causative, and causative-passive conjugations. Take note of the first three very similar example sentences demonstrating this point.

The particle に marks the forcer and the person made to do the action is simply the subject of the sentence. Notice the differences in translation and particle usages in the following.

1. 先生に発音を直された。(Passive)

My pronunciation got corrected by the teacher.

Sentence Note: 先生 is the doer of the correction; the pronunciation is the direct object of what was corrected.

2. 人にほかの人の発音を直させる。(Causative)

To make a person correct someone else's pronunciation.

Sentence Note: 人 is the person being made; you are the person making the person do so.

3. **先生に**ほかの学生の発音を直させられた。(Causative-passive)

I was made to correct the pronunciation of the other students by the teacher.

Sentence Note: The teacher is who forced you to correct the pronunciation of the other students.

Contracting the Causative-Passive Form

Remember the short causative endings ～さす and ～す? For the latter, you can add the ending ～れる to create the short causative-passive. Because these endings are using the 未然形, some students mistakenly think that ～される is somehow the ending, which is not the case. However, using the legitimate short causative-passive form when you should be used the passive form because of confusing this as a longer passive form is most certainly incorrect.

As we know, ～す only attaches to 五段 verbs. The short causative-passive form has another restriction. When a verb ending in す takes ～す, you use the 未然形 さ. Because ～す will also be in its 未然形 さ to take ～れる, two さ would be next to each other. So, you cannot say things like 話さされる. Therefore, only 五段 verbs not ending in す can have a short causative-passive form. The chart below illustrates the causative, short causative, causative-passive, and short causative-passive forms for all kinds of verbs.

活用	動詞	使役形	使役縮約形	使役受身形	使役受身縮約形
五段力行	描く	描かせる	描かす	描かせられる	描かされる
五段ガ行	泳ぐ	泳がせる	泳がす	泳がせられる	泳がされる
五段タ行	待つ	待たせる	待たす	待たせられる	待たされる
五段ナ行	死ぬ	死なせる	死なす	死なせられる	死なされる △
五段バ行	遊ぶ	遊ばせる	遊ばす	遊ばせられる	遊ばされる

五段マ行	読む	読ませる	読ます	読ませられる	読まされる
五段ウ行	帰る	帰らせる	帰らす	帰させられる	帰らされる
上一段	見る	見させる	見さす (△)	見させられる	見さされる X
下一段	食べる	食べさせる	食べさす (△)	食べさせられる	食べさされる X
サ変	する	させる	さす (△)	させられる	さされる X
カ変	来る	来させる	来さす (△)	来させられる	来さされる X
五段サ行	話す	話させる	話さす	話せられる	話さされる X

The final three short causative-passives being wrong is not surprising. After all, two さ is unnatural and is resultant of using this shortcut with the wrong kind of verb. Surprisingly, though, one combination was given a △. This means that 死なされる is not common Japanese and is usually avoided. For instance, say you have 本人の意思で医者の手により死なされた. This is odd considering the antonym 生かされる exists. This is because rephrasing with 死なせる is more common/natural. Thus, 死なされる isn't grammatically faulty but hardly ever used and thus usually unnatural.

～す should only be used with 五段 verbs. However, you often hear things like 食べさして, although this sort of speech sounds dialectical. You could view this as a corruption of 食べさせて or a use of the short ～す in the て形. Thus, △ should actually be X in terms of 標準語.

Examples

4. 兄が母に部屋を掃除させられました。

My brother was made by his mother to clean the room.

5. 学生は先生に漢字を練習させられる。

The students are made to practice Kanji by the teacher.

6. 兄にクッキーをすべて食べさせられた。

I was made to eat all of the cookies by my big brother.

7. ガールフレンドに待たされた。

I was made to wait by my girlfriend.

8. ^{どれい} 奴隷は毎日ただで働かされていたということです。

The slaves were made to work for no pay every day.

9. 僕は子供の時、母親にニンジンを食べさせられなかったから、今でも大嫌いだよ。

Since I wasn't forced to eat carrots by my mom when I was a kid, I still hate them.

10. 熱に浮かされる。(Idiomatic)

To be in a craze.

11. 彼は学校をやめさせられた。

He was expelled from school.

X makes Y get...by Z

In English, we can say the following sentences.

- The apple was eaten by the student. (Passive)
- The teacher made the student eat the apple. (Causative)
- The student was made to eat the apple by the teacher. (Passive-causative)
- The teacher made the apple get eaten by the student. (Causative-Passive)

In Japanese, there is a fixed ordering of causative and passive. They go in that order, which is why we have *させられる* and not *られさせる*. How, then, can we have Japanese mimic the final possible in Japanese. The labels are for English, not Japanese. So, although we can easily translate the third sentence by keeping

the word order as is minus "was made" being flipped, the fourth is exceptionally difficult.

The first worry we have is if we try to translate 4 directly, we'll get a 直訳 phrase which can sound 翻訳風. This means unnatural speech, which is not what we want. The following two sentences would be the options a native speaker would suggest for 4. Contextual details are meant to make up for any lack of meaning in 4.

12. 学生は先生にリンゴを食べさせられた。◎

13. 先生はリンゴを学生に食べさせた。◎

It appears already that a direct reflection of 4 is impossible. Consider, though, the following which relies on introducing a different word to the equation: 仕向ける.

14. 先生はリンゴを学生に食べさせるように仕向けた。○ But not ◎

15. 先生はリンゴを学生に食べられるように仕向けた。X

16. 先生はリンゴが学生に食べられるようにした。X

17. 先生は、リンゴが生徒に食べられるように仕向けた。X

～ られるように仕向ける and ～させるように仕向ける both exist, but the former is incorrect in this context as the speaker is not being affected. This because there is will involved in making something be acted upon. Now, we'll see how ～させるように仕向ける can go from ○ to △ because of what 仕向ける means and not because of the existence of the phrase.

仕 向ける is working up someone to doing something (tempting/inducing) and it's a lot more work than just a simple scene of a witch giving an apple, eat, and then done. Even if the witch was pushy at that moment, the work behind for

仕向ける situations would be a mismatch. With this in mind, consider the following.

まじょ しらゆきひめ どく
18. 魔女は白雪姫に毒リンゴを食べさせるように仕向けた。（ちょっと変）

19. 魔女は白雪姫が毒リンゴを食べるよう（に）仕向けた。

わた
20. 魔女は白雪姫に毒リンゴを渡し、食べるように言った。（一番自然）

Japanese may not allow you to explicitly say what you can in English with "the teacher made the apple get eaten by a student", but you can supplement this semantic information with context. This is what we have to do when languages don't meet eye to eye.

Causative + Potential

It just so happens that ～られる also has the "potential" usage. So, is "the causative-potential" possible? Yes. However, the particles would be clearly different. Sometimes, if the phrase is already getting lengthy for whatever reason ～ことができる may be seen. However, the combination of "the causative" and "the potential" is not problematic. Thus, you should always pay attention to particles as this will get rid of any ambiguity between this and the causative-passive.

21. 私は犬にえさを食べさせられますよ。

I can feed the dog.

第132課: The Causative II: The Corruption of Transitive Verbs

Causative conjugations in Japanese are complicated. Historically, many transitive verbs are derived by adding **す** to a stem, creating naturally causative-like expressions. So, **燃やす** describes the event of someone putting something on fire. The thing doesn't just spontaneously ignite. If it were to, you would use the intransitive **燃える**. Yet, the causative forms for both **燃える** and **燃やす** involve using a form ultimately coming from the same source as **す** that makes so many transitive verbs.

Verb Root	Intransitive	Intransitive Causative	Transitive	Transitive Causative
moy-	<i>moeru</i> to burn	<i>moesaseru</i> to make X burn	<i>moyasu</i> to burn X	<i>moyasaseru</i> to make someone burn X

One would hope that this could be straightforward for every verb, but reality tells otherwise.

There is also the short causative **燃えさす** for **燃えさせる**, but this form is usually △・X for most speakers. If the verb in the base form were a 五段 verb not ending in **す**, then it would be OK to anyone. Due to the fact that **せる** comes from **す**, the **す** in more and more transitive verbs is starting to become **せる**. This lesson will explain the ins and outs of this problem.

Corrupted Transitive Verb Forms

Intransitive → Transitive and or Intransitive Causative

Historically, the causative endings were **さす** and **す**. The **す** ending transitives and causative phrases is the same word, ignoring conjugation differences. Odd vowel changes may happen when attaching **す** to make transitives, but they all semantically resemble causative phrases.

To burn → To burn it	燃える → 燃やす	To boil → To boil it	沸く → 沸かす
To get off → To drop off	降りる → 降ろす	To melt → To melt it	溶く → 溶かす

On the left side, we have verbs with transitive forms and intransitive causative forms. That means **燃えさせる・燃やす** and **降りさせる・降ろす** are all words with **significant difference** in meaning. On the right side, we have verbs with no intransitive causative form. These forms, though, look and act like intransitive causative phrases. Verbs like on the left are able to have both forms with the aid of **さ** insertion. What then would need to happen in form for verbs on the right to have a *causative* form?

If ～せる comes from す, then ～せる should be able to be used just like ～させる to create intransitive causative phrases. Consider 澄む (to be transparent). 澄む's transitive form is 澄ます, which is causative in nature. A causative form of 澄む would be identical in meaning to a transitive form. So, 澄ませる would be the potential form of 澄ます. Nevertheless, because 澄ます is causative in nature, the す is seen by more speakers as the short causative and changing it to 澄ませる for the causative. Even so, no one would ever have a problem telling when 澄ませる is meant to be the causative or potential.

So, which transitive verbs ending in す are vulnerable to changing to end in せる? Certainly, any intransitive verb with no distinct transitive and intransitive causative form is vulnerable. As we look at individual cases of this change, the majority fall under this situation. Even so, -asu is becoming more stigmatic of dialectical speech. Thus, verbs with intransitive causative and transitive verbs are now starting to have the transitive form ending in せる. 沸かす and 溶かす are more vulnerable to change than 燃やす, but the verb 甘やかす (to spoil), which you'll see later as well, has already changed for some speakers to 甘やかせる. This is despite the fact that 甘えさせる exists. This means that one day speakers may use 燃やせる to mean "to burn X".

Comparing Old and Modern Conjugations

To tell whether an intransitive verb has both a causative and transitive form, let's compare the modern and old conjugations for the causative. させる and せる come from さす and す. They did not conjugate exactly like す (る) as in the present or the past, but they were still similar due to them sharing the same origin. The chart below shows the old causative conjugations and the modern ones (short and long). As you can see, although the short causative is a retention of the old, some change has occurred.

	未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
Old さす	させ	させ	さす	さする	さすれ	させよ
Old す	せ	せ	す	する	すれ	せよ
Modern させる	させ	させ	させる	させる	させれ	させろ
Modern せる	せ	せ	せる	せる	せれ	せろ
Modern さす	X	(し)	(さす)	X	X	X

Modern す	さ	し	す	す	せ	(せ)
----------	---	---	---	---	---	-----

The modern さす is almost nonexistent in Standard Japanese. Its usage is usually dialectal. As for the modern す, it is still really productive. Its 連体形 and 已然形 are not as common, but they're usually not felt as being wrong. The 命令形 is questionable to some speakers, so it will be left in parentheses. Aside from the short causative-passive usage of the 未然形 with the modern す, the modern long causative forms are the most used (and times the only ones you can/should use).

As you can see, さす has almost died out. Any instance of it is dialectal. The modern す is also starting to die. Signs of this are evident in the chart. One base is already questionable, and as stated above, aside from the short-causative passive, you're likely to use the modern せる. If the language is hating on -asu, then it's no wonder transitive verbs ending in this are starting to end in -aseru.

Case-by-Case Study

So far, we have seen what verbs are being most affected, and we've even looked at the causative conjugations of the past and present and found yet another source of the problem. Now, we are going to look at individual examples to see how well they fit into the framework described thus far. There is a lot of individual variation, so it is almost impossible to fully express all the details of the options.

When 下一段 is Most Common

Transitive verbs which have shifted from す → せる are most certainly the trigger for all the change we see in other verbs.

- 合う means "to fit/go well" and its transitive form is 合わせる. However, this has almost entirely been replaced by 合わせる. The only time 合わせる gets used is in the causative-passive
- 任す means "to entrust" and its intransitive form has long been dead. It too has largely died in favor of 任せる. The only time it gets used more frequently is in the causative-passive.

- 飽かす is from the old form of 飽きる, 飽く, meaning "to bore/tire of". 飽かす may mean "to use lavishly", but it also is used in a causative sense. However, the forms 飽きさせる and 飽かせる are more common. 飽かせる is sometimes felt as being wrong, but this is a minority opinion.

When Both 下一段 & 五段 are Most Common

These next verbs are undergoing change to only ending in せる, but the traditional form is still holding on strong. Unlike the previous verbs, form preference is more hectic.

- 済む means "to finish" or "to be over" and its transitive form is 済ます. This has largely been replaced by 済ませる, especially in Tokyo. 済ました is becoming rare and being treated as dialectical, but it's still used by a lot of people. The same goes for 済まさない versus 済ませない. The passive is still usually seen as 済まされる. Yet, 済ませれば is more common 済ませば.

Standard usage still defines 済ませる as being the potential form of 済ます.

- 泣く means "to cry" and its transitive form is 泣かす. At an emotional level, it is not as forceful as the causative form 泣かせる. 泣かせる is not deemed to mean "to be able to make someone cry" and has largely replaced 泣かす. Both 泣かす and 泣かせる are treated as causative phrases. 泣かす is only more common in the causative-passive. Some speakers even think 泣かした is dialectical, but there are still conjugations where they're both more or less just as common. For instance, 泣かさない and 泣かせない are both common. Yet, 泣かせれば is more common than 泣かせば. The potential would either be 泣かすことができる, 泣かせることができる, or 泣かせられる.
- 浮く means "to float" and its transitive form is 浮かす. 浮かせる is also very common, but it can still be the potential form of 浮かす. Just like the rest, 浮かす is most common in the causative-passive and the frequency of other conjugations is the same.
- 尖る means "to become sharp" and its transitive form is 尖らす, which may also be 尖らせる. Conjugations are more likely to be used with the latter, but there is flux to be had among speakers.
- 寝る means to "sleep" and its transitive form is 寝かす, which may also be 寝かせる. Both

forms are used frequently, and there is no clear consensus on how the two differ.

When 五段 is Most Common

This group of verbs have せる forms that are acceptable, but the original ず form is most common. This is unlike 済ませる, which although common, is not always deemed correct.

- 驚く means "to be surprised" and its transitive form is 驚かす. 驚かせる is also acceptable. Most conjugations, though, are more natural with 驚かす.
- 輝く means "to shine/glow" and its transitive form is 輝かす. 輝かせる is more common in the base form. Its form are slowly becoming more common than 輝かす but still has a way to go.
- 鳴る means "to ring" and its transitive form is 鳴らす. 鳴らせる, however, sounds causative and is not used the same as 鳴らす. However, 鳴らす is more common overall.
- 反る means "to bend" and its transitive form is 反らす. 反らせる is now an acceptable form, but a lot of its conjugations are typically interpreted as being in the potential. This is the same for 逸らす・逸らせる (to evade).
- One of the meanings of 巡る is "to surround" and its transitive form is 巡らす. 巡らせる is now acceptable and becoming more common; however, it still retains its potential meaning.

Verbs Just Starting to Undergo ず → せる

All of the verbs above have undergone ず → せる successfully with variation in retention of the original form. In the following verbs, the new せる ending form is wrong to a lot of speakers, but they are becoming more common. If there are alternate forms, the most common will be in bold.

Intransitive	Intransitive Causative	Transitive	Transitive Causative	New Transitive
甘える	甘えさせる	甘やかす	甘やかさせる	甘やかせる
		ひけらかす	ひけらかさせる	ひけらかせる
尽きる	尽きさせる	尽くす ・尽かす	尽くさせる ・尽かさせる	尽かせる

Verbs which Haven't Undergone す → せる

Knowing what form to use is not an easy task as a learner. In the end, the best thing that you should do is listening to what Japanese speakers are using. If various forms exist, they're likely going to be different. For instance, 甘えさせる and 甘やかす exist, but they're vastly different. The first is a good thing and the second is a bad thing. Intransitive verbs with causative-like transitive forms may sometimes, but the causative should still come from the transitive version of the verb. These include verbs like 鳴る and 散る, but they're in the minority. For instance, 照る means "to shine" and 照らす means "to brighten", but the causative is 照らせる. You cannot find 照らせる to mean 照らす. It is the potential as expected.

Over time, more verbs will switch over to having their transitive forms end in せる. This lesson was about transitive verbs having corrupted forms due to the causative. This confusion arose due to common etymology, and there is various degrees of acceptance of variant forms. This is what you can expect in a wider change affecting the entire language. Sadly, this will only be truly easy centuries later when this change has fully taken effect.

Examples

Forms are listed from most to least common.

1. 食事を {済ませる・済ます}。

To finish supper.

2. 知識を {ひけらかす ○・ひけらかせる △}。

To show off one's knowledge.

3. 子供を {甘やかす ○・甘やかせる △}。

To spoil one's/a children.

4. 聴衆を {飽きさせない・飽かさない・飽かせない}。

It doesn't bore the crowd.

第133課: Idioms I: 気

There are tons of idioms with the little word 気. There is no simple definition of 気. It can refer to one's spirit, mind, disposition, mood, intention, feeling, attention, interest, etc. It can also refer to the atmosphere or the essence of something. All of these have a common theme. Once you begin seeing expressions with it, this will become much clearer.

The Idioms

The literal interpretations of idioms gives us an insight on how truly different Japanese words things in comparison to English. Don't let this, though, make you unable to understand them. Keep in mind that 気 is just a normal noun. There's nothing really different from it than words in English with lots of usages or those found in many set phrases.

Don't view this list as bunch of set phrases whose literal meanings are just bizarre. This is certainly not how the Japanese view them. In every language, there are idiomatic phrases that have deviated so far from the original meanings of the words that they are composed of that you have to treat them as separate items in one's vocabulary. But, for the most part, the Japanese really think of 気 expressions with the literal interpretations provided in the right column.

Also, idioms are not equal in idiomacy (level of being idiomatic). Some may be very similar to the English phrasing minus a word here and there. The Japanese itself in 気 phrases may be far more abstract than others. For instance, 気が重い is more straightforward than 気をそろえる. Keep all of this in mind as you look at this list and the example sentences that follow.

	Meaning	Literal Meaning
気を下ろす	To behave oneself	To drop off the mind
気を張る	To pay attention to	To stretch the mind
気を使う	To fuss about; attend to	To use the mind
気を回す	To be suspicious	To spin the mind
気をそろえる	To pull together	To line up one's feelings
気を通す	To have the sense to	To carry through the mind
気が付く	To notice	To attach to the mind (intrans.)
気を付ける	To be careful	To attach to the mind (trans.)
気になる	To care about something	To become in mind
気に入る	To like/be fond of	To enter the mind

気が焦る	To be impatient	For the mind to be in a hurry
気が荒い	To be quarrelsome	For the mind to be violent
が進む	To feel like doing	For the mind to advance
気が軽い	To be sociable	For the mind to be light
気が座る	To be at ease	For the mind to sit
気が置ける	To feel ill at ease	For the mind to be place-able
気がそれる	To be distracted	For the mind to divert
が多い	To be fickle	To have many minds
気が大きい	To be generous	To have a big mind
気が腐る	To be dejected	For one's mind to rot
気に持つ	To weigh on one's mind	To hold in one's mind
気に留める	To keep in mind	To keep in the mind
気前がいい	To have an open hand	To have good generosity
気が急ぐ	To feel hard pressed	For the mind to be hurried
気は心	It's the thought that counts	The mind's the heart
気が重い	To feel depressed	For the mind to be heavy
気が散る	To be distracted	For the mind to be scattered
気が乗らない	To not be in the mood	For the mind to not be riding
気を引く	To rouse excitement	To draw in minds
気をもむ	To be anxious about	To worry the mind

Despite that idiomatic phrases are typically stand-alone phrases that can be and are understood in isolation, it is helpful to see context with these phrases. Do not be confused with syntax as nothing out of the ordinary was shown. If you must, get familiar with the literal definitions to think of the phrases.

1. 彼は僕と**気の合う**友人です。

He is a congenial friend to me.

2. あいつに従う**気**はない。

I have no intentions to obey him.

3. 気を悪くしないで。

No hard feelings.

4. あの子に**気がある**の？ (Casual)

Do you have a fancy for her?

5a. もし俺の言うことを聞く気があんなら助けてやろう。(Really casual)

5b. もし俺の言う通りにするなら助けてやろう。

If he intends to listen what I'm going to say, I'll help him.

6. 今度の {催し・イベント} のこと (を) 考えると気が重くなっちゃうの。(A little feminine)

Whenever I think of the coming event, I get depressed.

7. {気が狂いそうな・頭がおかしい} やつじゃん。(Casual)

Isn't he a crazy guy?

8. 遊ぶ**気がしない**子供は存在するはずがない。(Somewhat old-fashioned)

There shouldn't exist children that don't feel like playing.

9. 鈴木さんは**気前のよい**寄贈者でいらっしゃいます。(Honorific)

Mr. Suzuki is a generous contributor.

10. 気は心。

It's the thought that counts.

11. 彼はいつも自分の思い通りじゃないと**気がすまない**嫌いがある。

He has the tendency to always want his way.

12. コンピューターがついてると**気が散って**ちっとも勉強できないんだ。(Casual)

I can't study at all when the computer is on.

第134課: The Particle しも

This particle is very limited in use, but it is not that difficult.

The Adverbial Particle しも

しも is essentially an emphatic し. However, its use in a sentence reflects a more productive use of し itself. Though we often see し in the spoken language today, the particle has existed for a long time, and the combination of the emphatic し and emphatic も has been around just as long. Although しも has survived along with し, its usage is primarily restricted to the following phrases. Notice how it is designated to nominal (or nominalized) phrases or after adverbial phrases.

Aside from the last phrase 折しも, all of these phrases are used in negative sentences. This just goes to show you how many restrictions are on its use, and it's no surprise that most of these phrases are most frequently used in 書き言葉.

誰しも	Everyone, anyone (very emphatic)	～ならまだしも	It's one thing, but...
必ずしも	Not necessarily	～なきにしもあらず	It's not to say that...won't
折しも	Just then		

Phrase Note: かならずしも is often paired with ～とは 限かぎらない ending the sentence.

Speech Style Note: ～なきにしもあらず and 折しも are especially 書き言葉. The phrases most likely to be used in the spoken language are 誰しも and 必ずしも with the latter being the most frequently used.

Variant Note: A rarer variant of 折しも is 時しも. This essentially does not show up in Modern Japanese works, but it does show up sometimes in Early Modern Japanese works. Meaning wise, 折 and 時 mean the same thing here.

1. 誰しも ^{じごく}地獄へ ^お落ちるのは ^{こわ}怖い。

Everyone is afraid of going to hell.

2. ^{せいりよく}勢力はそれ ^{じたい}自体では必ずしも ^{こうふく}幸福をもたらすとは限らない。

Power, in itself, doesn't necessarily bring happiness.

3. 折しも、地震が起きました。

Just at that time, the earthquake occurred.

4. 折しも、雪崩が発生し、登山者の二人は行方不明となった。依然として行方不明のままである。

Just then, the avalanche was sparked, and the two mountain climbers went missing. They are still to this moment unaccounted for.

～ならまだしも

This phrase can be used after nouns, verbs, and adjectives. For verbs and adjectives, you attach it to the 終止形. However, だなら does not exist. So, for 形容動詞, simply add なら after the stem.

5. 1日か2つかならまだしも、10日も無断欠勤だなんて、許されないものだし、非常識だ。

It's one thing to be 1 or 2 days, but an over ten day unexcused leave is intolerable and against common sense.

6. 新鮮ならまだしも、変色して黒ずんでいる果物を誰が買うものなのか。

Being fresh is one thing, but who would ever buy fruit that's discolored and black?

7. 日本語ならまだしも、^{えいご}英語なんて全く全然分からないよ。

Japanese is one thing, but I absolutely don't understand English at all!

8. 寒いだけならまだしも、お腹が空いてきた。

If it were just cold, that would be one thing, but I've gotten hungry.

9. 事情を説明しに来るならまだしも、顔さえ見せない。

Coming to explain the situation is one thing, but (he) won't even show his face.

10. 一度ならまだしも、ここまで 10 回までその言葉を間違えて書いたんですよ。

Once is fine, but you've written the word incorrectly ten times now.

11. まだしも死んだ方が良く。

It would be best to just die.

～なきにしもあらず

This is a double negative phrase turning into a possible, and it ultimately has the meaning of 有り得る. It is a predicate phrase, but in today's Japanese, the sentence should in the copula. Remember that しも is here to show emphasis (強調). It is seldom used in the spoken language, but it can still show up.

12. あの子はまだ^{のぞ}望みはなきにしもあらずだ。

It's not to say that the kid doesn't have (any) hope.

13. 台風が接近しているので、雨が降る事もなきにしもあらずなので、傘をお忘れなく。

The typhoon is approaching, so don't forget your umbrella because it's not like it couldn't rain.

14. 急にカメラが壊れることもなきにしもあらずですよ。

It's not to say that your camera won't suddenly break down.

15. 後数分で事故などで死ぬ事もなきにしもあらずだからだ。

That's because it's not the case that you won't die in an accident or something a few minutes later.

With Other Particles?

16. 男たちは縁側で将棋に興じている。街路樹のプラタナスの葉ずれ。ああいうのをしも、人間の文化といわずして、何というのだろう。

The men are amusing themselves with shogi on the veranda while plane trees rustle on the sides of the road. What would you call this if not human culture?

By 田辺聖子 in 古川柳おちぼひろい.

It is without a doubt that the particle しも used to be more versatile in the past. After all, it is an emphasizing particle first and foremost. In the example above in the not so distant past, the particle is used after を. This is very rare today, but it was very common in the past. With other formal things in this sentence, this sentence is without a doubt, old-fashioned. Yet, to say that the usage of をしも is indefinitely incorrect is incorrect.

必ず VS きっと VS ぜったい 絶対(に)

So, given that you have now seen these three similar words for quite a while, you're probably wondering how they're different. There is overlap. So, focus not only on the differences but also the commonalities.

きっと:

- Based on observation, probability of something happening is high. It may show strong determination or show strong will towards the listener(s). It is like "surely". It may be seen at the beginning, middle, or at the end of a sentence.
- It can also mean "certainly", synonymous with ^{たし}確 ^{かに} and ^{うたが}疑 ^{いなく}. Therefore it isn't used in a question. In a command it is like "without fail", just like 必ず.
- きっと...する = "to be sure to..."
- きっと...だ = "have to be"
- きっと...に ^{ちが}違 ^いない = "must be..."
- It can also show sternness.

必ず:

- Without a doubt, something will be done or happen. It is far more firm. Probability is 100%. It is like "always", and in meaning so it makes a general noun the subject.
- It can mean "surely" just like きっと and be seen in the same locations in the sentence.
- 必ずや is an even more emphatic form.
- "Necessarily" as in something is inevitable, interchangeable with ^{ひつぜんてき}必然的に.
- In a command, it means "by all means/without fail".
- Some commands with the pattern 必ず...する may mean "be sure to/make certain".

- 必ずしも～ない completely negates something and is equivalent to 絶対そう...とは限らない.
- 必ず is much more serious than きっと despite that they're used in similar environments.

絶対 (に) :

- No matter what
- Positively/definitely
- With the negative it means "never".
- It is often used with phrases that mean "must", "will" and "would" to be similar to "on not account", clearly in a negative sentence.
- Unlike the others, it is more constructive and can be used as a noun and used as an attribute as 絶対の・絶対的^{ぜったいてき}な to mean "absolute/indispensable".

Some of these things feature grammar points that we haven't studied yet, but you should know the overall usage of these three words.

17. 絶対に^{かくしん}確 信 があります。

I'm absolutely sure.

18. 絶対にそうだ。

There's no doubt about it.

19. 絶対零度を測定する

To record absolute zero

20. 彼女は必ずしも忙しくない。

She's not always busy.

21. 戦争は必ず起こる。

War will inevitably occur.

22. 必ず ^{やくそく} 約束 ^{まも} を守ってください。

Do not fail to keep your word/promise.

23. 明日中にはきっと ^{うかが} 伺います。

I will certainly come sometime tomorrow.

24. 絶対的な ^{けんりよく} 権力 を握る。

To grab absolute power

25. 僕らはきっと勝つ。

We will surely win.

26. きっとだ、^{まちが} 間違いない。

I'll be bound.

27. それは絶対だめだよ。

That'll never do.

28. そんなことを絶対にしてはいけません。

You must never do something like that.

第135課: The Particles とか, など, & なんて

In this lesson we'll learn about additional particles that list: とか, など, and なんて.

The Adverbial Particle とか

とか means "such as." It can also be interpreted as "something like". This particle may be seen after nouns, the end of conjugations such as the て形 and the 命令形. It is somewhat colloquial, and you can often see it at the end of a sentence fragment.

1. 美由紀さんはギターとか、ドラムとか、ピアノとかたくさんお稽古^{けいこ}に行ってるのよ。(女性言葉)

Miyuki is taking many lessons such as guitar, drum, and piano.

2. 民主主義は食料とか飲料のように輸出できるものではない。

Democracy is not exportable like food or drink.

3. まだ用意とかできてねえよ。(乱暴な言い方)

I still can't, uh, get prepared.

4. Youtube を見てないで、少しは犬を散歩につれてくとか、本を読むとか、してはどう？(Casual)

How about doing something like walk the dog or read a book without watching Youtube?

5. テニスとかサッカーとかアメフトとかの球技が大好きだからね。(Casual)

Because I love ball sports like tennis, soccer, and (American) football.

6. 宏君のおばあさんは80いくつとかでまだフランス語を教えているんですって。

Hiroshi's grandmother is something like 80 years old and is still teaching French.

The Adverbial Particle など

など becomes なんか in colloquial settings. It is used to give related examples and may be seen after nouns or verbs. This particle is not usually used in list form like other similar particles such as と. However, when the need arises, it is often used together with the particle や.

7. 私は休日は^{ざっし}雑誌^すを読むなどして過ごしました。

I spent the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines.

8. 東京やニューヨーク市などの大都市には^{たいせい}大勢^{たいせい}の人が住んでいます。

A lot of people live in metropolises such as Tokyo and New York City.

9. 音楽やビデオゲームなどが若者に愛用されている。(堅苦しい言い方)

Things such as music and video game are cherished by young people.

10. お茶・^{さとう}砂糖^{さとう}・塩など

Tea, sugar, salt and so on

11. レモンやミカンやタンジェリンなどの^{くだもの}果物^{くだもの}を買い集めた。

I bought up fruits such as lemons, mandarin oranges, and tangerines.

漢字 Note: Lemon and mandarin oranges can be written in 漢字 as 檸檬 and 蜜柑 respectively, but they are usually just spelled in カタカナ.

12. 彼など^{てきにんしゃ}適任者^{てきにんしゃ}だね。

Someone like him is suitable, right?

13. このパソコンなどお買い^か得^{どく}です。

Something like this personal computer is a bargain.

14. ヨーロッパの^{しんよう}信用^{しんよう}不安で海外経済が^{げんそく}減速^{げんそく}していることなどが^{えいきょう}影^{えいきょう}響^{えいきょう}している。

Events such as overseas economies decelerating due to uneasiness of confidence in Europe are taking an effect.

15. こりゃなんかええじゃん？ (Casual)

Isn't something like this OK?

16. 彼女になんか会わなければよかった。

If I had somehow not met her, it would have been good.

17. 私はテレビでアニメなどは見ません。

I don't watch things like anime on TV.

18. きゅうか せんたく そうじ
休 暇 中に 洗 濯 や 掃 除 などしなくてもいい。(堅苦しい)

休みなのに洗濯とか掃除とかしなくてもいいじゃない。(Casual)

It's all right to not do laundry, cleaning and such on vacation.

19. ひょうしょう くだ
表 彰 なんか受けたくもねーし。(砕 けた言い方)

I don't want any public acknowledgement.

20. 泣いてなどいられん。(Casual; dialectical)

I can't just cry.

21. 「ああ、佐伯あさっちゃんのところに行ったの。あんなヤツの言うことなんか、嘘っぱちだよ」

"Ahh, Sahaku went to Satchan's place? What that guy says is a downright lie.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

22. 今さら行くなどと言ってももう おそ 遅 いよ。

Even if you say you're going to go now, you're already later.

23. かつちゅう せいこう でき
甲 冑 なども 精 巧 に来ている。

Things like the armor are also exquisitely made.

漢字 Note: 冑 is not a 常用漢字. So, don't worry about it.

Variants' Note: など may also be seen as なんだ, なぞ and なんぞ. These are all dialectical. So, who uses them is dependent on the region in question.

The Adverbial Particle なんて

- Emphasizes in order to describe.
- Shows something with a feeling of lightening an utterance or thought.
- Criticizes the words of oneself or others.
- Concretely shows information.

An interesting grammatical fact about this particle is that when it follows a verb in the 終止形, the copula **だ** is surprisingly able to be in between. So, you can say something like 行く (だ) なんて. However, you can't do this with the 関西弁 copula **や**. When you do add the copula in Tokyo speech as such, it gives more emphasis and gives a more critical tone.

24. 人生なんてそんな素晴らしいものじゃない。

Human life is not such a wonderful thing.

25. この世も終わりだなんて考えるのは愚かだ。

Thinking something like the world's going to end is foolish!

26. 愛してるよなんて。

Huh, I love you...

27. 行くなんて言ってないよ。

I'm not saying I'm going.

28. あいつが「^{たけしま}竹^{じつ}島^{トクト}は^{しゅちょう}実^{しゅちょう}は^{しゅちょう}独^{しゅちょう}島^{しゅちょう}だと^{しゅちょう}主^{しゅちょう}張^{しゅちょう}してる」なんてもっぱらの^{うわさ}噂^{うわさ}だよ。

The persistent rumor is that says he "claims Takeshima is Dokdo".

Culture Note: 竹島 is a group of islands in the Sea of Japan called the "Liancourt Rocks" in English. However, the islands are under territorial dispute with Korea.

Japan claims they're part of ^{しまねけん}島根県 (Shimane Prefecture). However, Korea claims them as theirs under the name 独島.

29. 「^{にんげん}人^間てなんて^{もろ}脆いものなんでしょうね。」

"People really are weak things, aren't they?"

From 散りぬるを by 川端康成.

30a. 東京弁：買ってあげる（だ）なんて言っていない。○

30b. 京都弁：買うたげるなんて言うてへん。○

30c. 京都弁：買うたげるやなんて言うてへん。X

I'm not saying that I'll buy it for you.

ときたら

ときたら emphasizes something like the particle *なんて*.

31. あの子供ときたらちっとも勉強しないよ。

Like that kid over there doesn't study at all.

32. 今日の天気ときたら、ひどい暑さだ。

Today's weather is blistering heat.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with *とか*.
2. Create a sentence with *など*.
3. Create a sentence with *なんか*.
4. Create a sentence with *なんて*.

第136課: The Particle より

In this lesson we will learn how to compare things with the particle より.

The Case Particle より

より creates a comparison and is the "than". There is no change to the adjective like there is in English with -er. As illustrated in the chart, the Japanese word order is still flexible. Notice the differences in word order between English and Japanese.

English	X is adj -er than Y.
Japanese	X(は・の方が) Yより(か・も) adj.
Japanese	Yより(か・も)X(の方)が adj.

Contraction Note: よりか can be contracted to よか in slang.

Usage Note: よりか is くれた.

1. このリンゴはあのリンゴより大きい。

This apple is bigger than that apple.

2. 俺はお前より背が高いぞ。(Rough male speech)

I'm taller than you are!

3. 彼女は臆病者が何よりもいやだった。

She hated a coward more than anything.

4. 君は誰よりも早く走ったな。(Male speech)

You ran faster than anyone else, didn't you.

5. 祖父は父よりゆっくり話す。

My grandfather speaks more slowly than my father.

6. 俺にはあんたよりずっと多くの歌があるんだ。(Rough male speech)

I have much more songs than you do.

7. 彼女は僕より {4 つ・4 年・4 歳} 年下だ。

She is 4 years younger than me.

8. 昨日よりも今日の方がずっと暑い。

Today is much hotter than yesterday.

9. あいつは、不良よりマヌケだぞ。(Rough male speech)

He's more so a fool than a rogue.

10. 薬を飲むより仕事してくれ！ (乱暴な言い方)

Work instead of drinking medicine!

11. 彼は僕よりお前を選んだのか。(Male speech)

He chose you instead of me?

12. ここに残ってるより出て行きたいの？

You'd rather go than stay?

より仕方がない

より仕方がない = There is no better choice but to.

13. 「車が故障したんですが」「じゃ、歩いて行くより仕方ありませんね」

"My car broke down". "Then, there's no other choice but to walk".

14. 「僕、料理は、ぜんぜんできないよ」「じゃ、自分で作るよりしょうがないね」

"I can't cook at all". "Then, you have no choice but to do it yourself".

15. 「今日の宿題を忘れてきちゃった」「じゃ、早くやりなおすよりしょうがないよ」

"I accidentally forgot today's homework". "Then, you have no other choice but to redo it quickly".

2. "From" in the sense of starting, distance, space, or quantity. This is a more polite version of から.

16. 四時よりも後なら結構です。

It'll be good if its after 4 o' clock.

17. ホームの白線より内側でお待ちください。

Please wait inside the white line on the platform.

18. 真ん中より後ろに置いてください。

Put it behind the middle of it.

20. これより先は立入禁止。

It's forbidden to pass by from here!

21. 学校は駅より手前にあるのです。

The school is before the station.

22. 会議は五時より行います。

The meeting will be held at 5 o' clock.

23. 雪は未明より降り続いています。

The snow will continue to fall from dawn.

24. 私共は朝 6 時半より営業しております。

We are open from 6:30 A.M.

25. 子どものころよりお互いに知っています。

We've known each since we were children.

26. 羽田空港より出発しました。

We departed at Haneda Airport.

27. 横浜港より出港しました。

We departed from Port Yokohama.

28. 吉田さまよりお電話がございました。

You got a telephone call from Mr. Yoshida.

3. よりほか followed by a negative shows that something is limited due to what precedes より. Because より is still rather formal, you may find situations such as in the second example where simply using ほか is appropriate.

29. どうしても電話が通じない。こうなっては、仲谷君の家へ行くよりほかない。

I can't get through on the phone no matter what. This being the case, there's nothing I can do besides going to Nakaya's house.

30. ケーブルカーが故障で動かへん。直るまで待つほかあらへんわ。(Kansai Dialect)

The tram is out of order due to a collision. There's nothing else to do besides wait until it's repaired.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What are the possible patterns for the comparative in Japanese?
2. Create a comparative sentence.
3. How do you construct a comparative question?
4. Create a comparative question.
5. How do you create the superlative?
6. Create a sentence with a naturally superlative phrase.
7. Create a superlative sentence with 最も.
8. How do you create a superlative question?
9. Explain when to use which interrogative when creating a superlative question.
10. Create a superlative question.

第137課: The Superlative

The superlative is relatively easy, but there is still a lot that you have to pay attention to.

-est

The superlative (最上級) is made with "-est" in English. In Japanese you use 一番 or 最も (in formal speech) before the adjective, not after. Superlative sentences often have some sort of restriction such as the following.

In the world	世界（中）で	せかい（じゅう）で
Of the three	三の[中・内]で	さんの[なか・うち]で
Of all	[全て・皆] の [中・内] で	[すべて・みんな] の [なか・うち] で

Word Note: 皆 is typically used in reference to people, but it can refer to everything as well.

1. その店は一番便利だと思う。

I think that store is the most convenient.

2. 会社では渡辺さんが一番意地悪だね。

Isn't Mr. Watanabe the meanest in the company?

3. あなたが今までの人生の中で一番悩んだ決断は何ですか？

What has been the most difficult decision you've made in your life?

4. こちらの教会は町で最も古いです。

This church is the oldest in the town.

5. 富士山は日本中で一番高い山です。

Mt. Fuji is the tallest mountain in all of Japan.

6. 最も深刻な都市問題は何ですか。

What is the most serious urban problem?

7. エベレストは世界で一番高い山です。

Mt. Everest is the tallest mountain in the world.

Suffix Note: ～山 isn't used with certain mountains outside of Japan. It's something you have to learn on a mountain by mountain basis.

最～

There are other superlative words with the prefix 最～. These words are, thus, Sino-Japanese for the most part. However, there are some exceptions to this. For instance, 最安値 (all-time low), 最高値 (all-time high), 最大手 (largest company/industry leader), and 最果て(the farthest/furthest ends) are possible.

Strongest	最強	さいきょう	Worst	最低	さいてい
Biggest	最大	さいだい	Worst	最悪	さいあく
Beloved	最愛	さいあい	Last place	最下位	さいかい
Best; tallest	最高	さいこう	Oldest	最古	さいこ
Least	最少	さいしょう	First-class	最上	さいじょう
Newest; latest	最新	さいしん	Best	最善	さいぜん
Very middle	最中	さなか・さいちゅう	Most	最多	さいた

Word Note: 最低 is for things and 最悪 is for people. 最善 refers to greater good whereas 最高 is more broad and similar to usages like "that's the best". 最良 also means "best" as in "ideal". There is also the word 最適 which refers to something being "the most fitting".

8.最悪の場合を覚悟する。

To prepare for the worst.

9. 地球の最果て

The utmost point of the earth

10. 現存する最古の寺

The oldest temple in existence

11. 最小の努力で最大の効果を上げるのが我々の目的です。

Achieving the largest results with the smallest efforts is our goal.

12. 最上階

The top floor

13. 最新のニュースを聞いたか。

Did you hear the latest news?

14. 彼は一試合最多奪三振の記録を作った。

He set a record for strikeouts in one game.

15. 横浜に行く最短の道順を教えてあげました。

I told them the shortest way to Yokohama.

16. 演説の最中に {立ち去った・席を立った} 。

I left in the middle of the speech.

17. 本州の最南端は潮岬だ。

The southernmost part of Honshu is Shionomisaki.

18. おき とりしま さいなんたん
沖 ノ 鳥 島 は日本の 最 南 端 にある。

Okinotorishima is at the southernmost point of Japan.

19. 正直は最良の策。

Honesty is the best policy.

あなたが今までの人生の中で一番悩んだ決断は何ですか？

What has been the most difficult decision you've made in your life?

The Superlative Question

When making a superlative question, the first thing you must decide on is which interrogative you will use. The chart below illustrates the possible options.

何	Comparison of a group	どれ	Used in a list format
誰	About people	どこ	About a place

When referring to a group such as in sports, で always follows and の中 is often used in between for more emphasis. If 〜の中 is used and you are listing things with と, the last と that would normally be in the list--on the final noun--is deleted.

20. スポーツでは何が一番好きですか。

Among sports, which do you like the best?

21. 犬と、猫と、ウサギの中では、どれが一番好きですか。

Among dogs, cats, and rabbits, which do you like the best?

22. 日本の歌手では誰が一番好きですか。

Among Japanese singers, who do you like the most?

23. どこが世界で一番暑いですか。

Which place is the hottest in the world?

Grammar Note: In answering these questions, you simply use the normal superlative pattern.

第138課: Similarity: ~ようだ, ~みたいだ, ~っぽい, ~ごとく, & ~さながら

Though all of these phrases have a common theme, their grammar and usages do vary significantly. So, please be sure to not rush through them even if you've seen them show up many times in your studies thus far.

~ようだ

様 is a noun that literally means "appearance". ~ようだ is a 形容動詞 conjugating ending that comes from it, and it has many applications.

~ようだ

Overall, ~ようだ is like "like" or "seem". よう is a noun itself, so when used after nouns, precede it with の. When after 形容動詞, use な!

1. 僕の犬は言葉が分かるようだよ。

My dog **seems** to understand words!

2. 爬虫類^{はちゅうるい}のようで、実は、哺乳類^{ほにゅうるい}だ。

It **looks like** a reptile but in reality is a mammal.

漢字 Note: 爬 and 哺 are rare. So, you don't need to worry about them.

3. すこし塩^{しお}辛い^{から}いようですね。

It's **kind** of salty, don't you think?

Word Note: 辛い is often used to mean "salty" in West Japan. The word 塩っぱい also exists. In this word, 塩 is pronounced as しょ.

4. どうも壊^{こわ}れているようだ。

Presumably, it's broken.

5. みな元気なようです。

Everyone **seems** fine.

6. 彼はとても悲しんでいるようです。

He **seems** to be very sad.

7. 何か ^{かく}隠しているようです。

He **appears** to be hiding something.

8. あの人を見たような気がしました。

I felt **like** I saw that person before.

9. ちょっと ^{おこ}怒ったように聞こえた。

I heard her **like** she was a little angry.

10. ステーキかまたはそれと同じようなものを食べる。

To eat steak or something just **like** it.

11. 彼は、何も言いたくないような、^{お だま}押し黙った表情をしてる。

He's reticent **as if** he doesn't want to say anything.

12. 彼は、何も言いたくないようで、ぶすっとしてる。

He's in a bad mood not saying anything.

13. 難しかったようです。

It **looks like** it was difficult.

14. 対策もなく、^{まないた こい} 俎板の鯉のようなものだ。(Idiomatic)

It's **basically** a hopeless situation without a countermeasure.

～ようだ is also often paired with まるで to make "just like", and when used with the particle か, it creates "as if".

15. マイクさんはまるで天使のような人ですね。

Isn't Mike just **like** an angel?

16. まるで人でも殺したかのように、ぼうぜんとしてる。

He's dumbfounded as if he's killed a person.

17. 彼の病気はまるで神様が治してくれたかのようにきれいに消えましたよ。

His sickness disappeared **as if** it was by God.

18. 地に^{ひざ} 膝をつくかのように木が風^ゆに揺れていた。

The trees swayed in the wind **as if** they knelled to the ground.

～よう {なら・だったら}

～よう {なら・だったら} euphemizes a supposition.

19. この^{ちりょう} 治療 {^{しよち} 手当て・処置} で治らないようだったら病院に行ってくださいね。

If you don't get better with this medical treatment, please go to the hospital, OK?

～ようになる

～ ようになる shows that a state changes. It indicates a state that could not be done has become one that can be done. It can also be used in the negative. Also, ～ないようになる can be contracted to ～なくなる. The pattern can also be used to show acquisition of a habit or custom.

20. 六年ぶりに ^{きゅうゆう}旧友 と会えるようになった。

After six years I was **able to** meet an old friend.

21. 日本語で ^{あいさつ}挨拶 ができるようになりましたよ。

I have become able to greet in Japanese.

22. 「日本語の勉強はどうですか」「宿題が簡単にできるようになりましたし、それに日本人と毎日会話をしています」

"How are you Japanese studies?" "Homework has become easier to do, and furthermore, I converse with Japanese people every day".

23. 最近、彼女はよく話すようになりました。

She recently **started to** talk a lot.

24. 彼はテレビを見なくなりました。

He stopped watching TV.

The Noun よう

The noun よう may be after the 連用形 of verbs to show appearance or method. It can also function as a nominalizer.

25. 言おう様ない (Rare) = 言い様のない
Indescribable

26. その苦しみようは見えていられない。

I can't stand watching that miserable condition (of that man).

～みたいだ

～みたいだ is for the most part a more casual variant of よう for comparison, but since it does come from 見る (to see), it shows that something "resembles...". It acts as a 形容動詞. So, you can see ～みたいな (adjectival) and ～みたい
に (adverbial). The negative should be ～ないみたいだ. but in slang you may still see ～みたくない.

27. 兄は ^{さむらい}侍 みたいな人だね。

My older brother is like a samurai.

28. ま 真っ暗で雨が降ったみたいだ。

It was like rain had fallen in pitch black.

29. ガムみたいに伸びるものだ。

It's a thing that stretches like gum.

30. もう売り切れみたい。

It looks like it's already sold out.

31. 誰もいないみたいだが。

It seems that nobody is here, but...

32. 夢みたいな話だ。

That's a story resembling a dream.

33. かべ ^{うす}壁 は紙みたいに 薄 いよ。

The walls are thin like paper.

34. 味がすこし薄いみたいです。

The taste seems to slightly be weak.

Origin Note: ～みたい comes from ～みた様, which can still be seen in literature.

～っぽい

The 形容詞 conjugating suffix ～っぽい is often discarded as slang. However, it is becoming very popular. It is very similar to "-ish". After the stems of adjectives, it shows a distinct nature. With nouns, it shows a strong impression about what something is like. However, when attached to the 連用形 of verbs, it shows tendency. Now it can be seen after the 終止形 to mean "looks like".

35. 彼女は全然女っぽくないな。

She's not womanly at all!

36. 君の^{けってん}欠点は忘れっぽいことだぞ。(Masculine)

Your fault is that you're forgetful.

37. なんて^{うそ}嘘っぽい話や！(関西弁)

What a lie!

38. ^{ほこり}埃っぽい

Dusty

39. 最近忘れっぽくなった。

I tended to forget the recent times.

40. ^{あら}荒っぽい行動。

Rough conduct.

41. 彼は^{ねつ}熱っぽく体が震えていた。

His body was feverishly shaking.

42. この酒は水っぽい。(Feminine)

This sake is watery.

43. ^{りくつ}理屈っぽい

Argumentative

44. マジで安っぽいテレビだな。(Casual)

It's really a cheap TV, isn't it?

45. やるっぽい！ (Casual)

It looks like he's doing it!

46. 病院っぽい^{ふんいき}雰囲気

A hospital-like atmosphere.

47. 子供っぽいことすんなよ。(Masculine)

Don't do something childish.

48. バナナっぽい^{かお}香りが好きだわ。(女性言葉)

I like banana-like fragrances.

49. 黒っぽい車でした。

It was a blackish car.

50a. 哀れっぽい声

50b. 哀れめいた声 (More serious)

A piteous voice

第139課: Seem: ～そうだ

～ そうだ acts like 形容動詞 and is only used with adjectives or verbs. It just can't be used with plain nouns. Its usages have significant differences in grammar. There are two grammatical ways it can be used. In this lesson, we will focus on how it is used when it attaches to the 連用形.

Attaching to the 連用形: Conjecture

From the outward appearance, ～そうだ expresses the speaker's intuitive subjective guess on the nature, quality, or properties of something or someone. The statement isn't proven. So, if obvious, it's not applicable. This is like "seem to be (doing)". ～そうだ attaches to the 連用形 for verbs but the stems of adjectives for conjecture.

動 詞	降る+そうだ→降り そうだ	形容 詞	面白い+そうだ→面白 そうだ	形容動 詞	簡単+そうだ→簡単 そうだ
--------	------------------	---------	-------------------	----------	------------------

The negative can be ～なさそうだ or ～そうじゃない. One may be more preferable depending on the situation and or the opinion of the speaker. With **adjectives in the negative and よい**, さ should be inserted. So, ～な**さ**そうだ and よ**さ**そうだ.

1. 新しいマネージャーは ^{こわ}怖 ^{かた} そうな 方 ですね。

The new manager is a scary-looking guy, isn't he?

2. このビデオゲームは面白くなさそうだ。

This video game doesn't seem interesting.

3. 今日は ^{ちょうし}調 子 がよさそうだね。

You look good today.

4. マレーシアは、今日は天気がよさそうです。

The weather seems nice today in Malaysia.

5. 雨は降らなさそうです。

It doesn't look like it's going to rain.

6. もうしばらく続きそうです。

It seems like it will continue for a little longer.

7. このステーキは^{おい}美味しそうです！

This steak looks delicious.

8. ^{きんぱつ}金髪の女が好きそうだな。(Masculine; casual)

I bet you like blond women!

9. まだ使えそうだ。

It looks like you can still use it.

10. 難しそうな本だ。

It's a difficult looking book.

11. なんだかずいぶんよさそうじゃないか？(Casual)

Somehow it doesn't really seem amazing does it?

12. 彼は苦しくなさそうだ。

He doesn't seem to be feeling painful.

13. 建物は静かそうです。

The building seems quiet.

14. 彼は来そうだ。

It seems that he's going to come.

15. 彼は楽しそうではなかった。

He didn't look happy.

16. この犬は ^{かわいそう} 可哀相。

This poor dog.

Meaning Note: Notice how the meaning of かわいい changes to "poor" with ～そうだ.

漢字 Note: 可哀相 is 当て字. 可哀想 is also possible.

17. 一見したところではその本はやさしそうだ。

At first sight, the book seems easy.

18. 忙しそうです。 VS 忙しいようです。

Seems to be busy.

Looks busy.

Nuance Note: As this shows, ～そうだ shows something from an intuitive judgment based on observation while ～ようだ indicates that the judgment is based on being told or what one has read or heard.

Inserting -さ

Again, with よい and ない, さ is inserted. This gives よさそう and なさそう. As for the auxiliaries ～たい and ～ない, ～そうだ attaches to the stem. However, さ is being attached more and more. Even for adjectives that end in ない like ぎこちない (awkward), ～さ is being attached. The negative is ～そうではない, but you can also use ～な (さ) そうだ. However, something like "知らなそうだ" is correct. You still get examples like 19, though.

19. 成瀬はつまらなさそうに言った。

Naruse said in a disappointed tone.

From 顔に降りかかる雨 by 桐野夏生.

2. Shows a judgment based on circumstances or experience. The negative is そう
[に・も] ない.

20. このままだと、帰えれそうにもない。

It would seem best to not go home at this rate.

21. 今ならまだ^ま間に合いそうです。

If now, we can still be there on time.

22. 景気は依然として好転しそうにない。(ちょっと硬い文章語)

The economy still appears that it won't improve.

3. Shows that something looks like it's going to or has...just as before. There is a basis with some experience. After all, how can you know if it's going to rain if you've never seen rain? This is an affirmative application of 1 seen with verbs. This can be seen with the past tense, and time phrases are often used to specify when something is thought to occur.

23. 赤ちゃんは泣き出しそうな顔をしていた。

The baby had a face as if he was going to burst out crying.

24. ^{とうぶん} 当 分 の間、^{こんかい} 今 回 の^{ねっぱ} 熱 波 ^{いす} は居据わりそうだ。

For the time being, this heat wave will probably settle.

25. バランスが^{くず}崩れて、^{いっしゅんたお}一瞬倒れそうだったさ。

I lost my balance, and for a moment it seemed I would fall.

26. 彼は 100 歳まで生きられそうだ。

He is likely to live to 100.

27. このカメラは壊れていそうだ。

This camera looks broken.

28. 電気が消えそうだ。

The lights appear to be dying.

29. 元気になれそうです。

It looks like it will be able to become better.

30. 今にも雨が^ふ降りそうだ。

It looks like it's going to rain any moment.

31. もうすぐ^{さくら}桜^さの花が咲きそうだよ。

The cherry blossom trees are about to bloom.

32. 試験に合格できそうだ。

I feel that I can pass the exam.

33. ^{ちょうせんはんとう}朝鮮半島で、^{せんそう}戦争や何か^{ぶっそう}物騒^おなことが起こりそうだ。

It appears that war **or something** dangerous is going to occur in the Korean peninsula.

第140課: Hearsay: ～そうだ & ～らしい

Hearsay, 伝聞, is the topic of this lesson. This should be a lot easier than phrases for expressing similarity.

～そうだ: Attached to the 終止形

終止形+そうだ expresses hearsay. So, with a noun, follow it with だそうだ. Tense is shown before ～そうだ because this usage has no tense: it's only used with て or in the final position. Before we get to any example sentences, we will first look at the conjugation chart below.

動詞	する	そうだ	形容詞	古い	そうだ	形容動詞	簡単	だ	そうだ	名詞	猫	だ	そうだ
----	----	-----	-----	----	-----	------	----	---	-----	----	---	---	-----

1. 博士^{はかせ}は入院したそうだ。

I hear that the professor was hospitalized.

Reading Note: The general reading of 博士 is はかせ, but はくし is respectful and is in words such as 博士号^{はくしごう}.

2. 先生は病気だそうです。

I hear that the teacher is sick.

Part of Speech Note: Remember that 病気 is not an adjective in Japanese!

3. 噂^{うわさ}によれば、二人は離婚^{りこん}するそうです。

Rumor has it that the two are going to get a divorce.

4. 羅生門^{らしょうもん}はいい映画だそうです。

They say that Rashomon is a good movie.

Culture Note: 羅生門 is a very popular crime scene movie in Japan from the 50s created by the renowned producer 黒澤明 ^{くろさわあきら}.

5. 地震があったそうだ。

They say there was an earthquake.

6. 天気予報 ^{てんきよほう} では今日は雨が降らないそうです。

I hear it's not going to rain today with the weather report.

7. 日本語は上手じゃないそうです。

I hear that he's not good at Japanese.

8. 彼はよく勉強するそうです。

It sounds like he often studies.

9. 「あの人は子供の欲しいものは何でも買ってやるそうですよ」「よっぽど甘やかしているんでしょう」

"I hear that that person always buys whatever her kids want" "The kids must be pretty spoiled"

10. テレビ局が来月からタガログ語の番組を放送するそうです。

I hear that the TV network will air a Tagalog program starting next month.

～らしい

. The **auxiliary** ～らしい shows speculation based on some sort of **foundation** such as hearsay. So, with the element of guess it shows the speaker's non-intuitive conjecture based on what he has heard, seen, or read. It may follow nouns, the stems of 形容動詞, the 終止形 of 形容詞, verbs, and other auxiliary verbs.

11. 日本へ来なかったらしいです。

He apparently didn't go to Japan.

12. それが^{げんいん}原因らしい。

That is apparently the cause.

13. この都市の^{ふどうさん}不動産は高いらしいです。

The real estate properties in this city seem to be expensive.

14. その家に^{ゆうれい}幽霊が出るらしい。

The house appears to be haunted.

15. 彼女はよく勉強するらしいです。

She appears to study often.

When the **suffix** ～らしい attaches to nouns, it makes adjectives to show typicality. It may also follow the stem of adjectives and some adverbs to show that something brings on a certain emotion. As you can see, you must understand that the auxiliary verb and suffix ～らしい's are different.

16. 彼は子供らしくない。

He doesn't act like a child.

17. もう少し^{おとな}大人らしくしてください。

Please a little more like an adult.

18. この傷は致命傷らしい。

The wound seem to be mortal.

19. あいつもう元気らしいじゃん？ (Casual)

Doesn't he seem already fine?

20. あんた、ホントに^{せんぱく}浅薄でいやらしい男だわ。 (Rough female speech)

You, you're a really shallow and disgusting man!

21. わざとらしい ^{びしょう} 微笑

An intentional/unnatural smile

22. そんな ^{はつげん} 発言 はいかにも彼らしい。

Speech like that is typical of him.

23. このごろあんたらしくねーよ。(乱暴な言い方)

You haven't been yourself lately.

Table of Contents

第141課: The Volitional I

The volitional form shows "will". The affirmative and negative forms are made differently, and there are several speech modals that you have to be aware with. The auxiliaries at the center of this lesson are ～よう and ～う.

～よう & ～う

Conjugating with ～よう & ～う

This lesson will focus on verbs with these endings. The basic meaning of these endings is "let's". Both of these endings go after the 未然形, but they go with particular classes.

Class	End-ing	Ex.	Class	End-ing	Ex.	Class	End-ing	Ex.	Class	End-ing	Ex.
一段	～よう	食べよう	五段	～う	行こう	サ変	する	しよう	カ変	～よう	来(こ)よう

Grammar Notes:

1. ～う follows 五段 verbs with a **sound change** of あう to おう. This おう" is pronounced as a long o.
 2. する verbs can end in just す, which then can be treated as 五段 verbs. So, it is possible to see volitional forms such as 愛そう instead of 愛しよう.
 3. ～(よ)う has a 連体形, which looks no different, but it is rarely used. It basically on used with dummy nouns like こと and はず. This is not used with the 意志形 function at the focus of this lesson.
-

いしけい The 意思形

The main usage of these endings is to show one's volition/will to do something. ～（よ）うと思います shows that you are *now* determined to do something while ～（よ）と思っています shows that you've made a decision some time ago. The latter may also, however, express third person like in the first example.

1. 姉は中国で日本語を教えようと思っています。

My older sister is thinking about teaching Japanese in China.

2. ハワイに行こうと思います。

I'm going to Hawaii.

3. しょうがくきん
奨 学 金 をもらおうと考えています。

I'm considering receiving scholarship money.

Pronunciation Note: 奨学金 may also be pronounced as しょうがっくん.

4. 中国語を勉強しようか。

I'll study Chinese.

Particle Note: か can actually strengthen the volitional form with a falling intonation.

5. 食事を済ませてから、外に出よう。

Let's go outside after we finish supper.

6. この電車は込んでるから、次のに乗ろう。(Colloquial)

Since this train is crowded, let's get on the next one.

7. しょうらい えいがかんとく
将 来 は 映 画 監 督 になろうと思っている。

I'm thinking of becoming a movie director in the future.

8. 寿司を食べよう。

I'll eat sushi/Let's eat sushi.

9. これだけははっきりとさせておこう。

Let's get this (much) straight.

10. 少し休もうか。

How about taking a rest for a while?

11. もう間に合わないから、ゆっくりしよう。

It's not that we have to make it on time. So, let's go slowly.

Word Note: 間に合う should only be used with time.

12. さらに食べようっていうの？（ちょっとくだけた）

You're going to eat on top of this?

Grammar Note: ～ようでは・じゃないか can also make a volitional question.

13. 出かけ {ようでは} ないか？

Why don't we go out?

2. Shows guess. This is not common. This is normally replaced with だろう・でしょう。

14a. 長時間歩いたのでお腹もすいていよう。（古風）

14b. 長時間歩いたのでお腹もすいているんじゃない？（More natural）

14c. 長時間歩いたのでお腹もすいているでしょう。（More natural and polite）

You're also probably starving because you walked for a long time.

15a. 彼らは^{してき}指摘できよう。

15b. 彼らは指摘できるだろう。（Natural）

They'll probably be able to identify it.

Situations where this is more natural include instances like the following.
Notice the verbs that are used and other grammatical structures.

16. そんなことがあろうはずがない。

Such a thing should not happen.

17. 黙っていようものなら、自滅するぞ

If you were to continue to stay quiet, we'll be ruined.

3. Creates a rhetorical question. か has a shorter pitch than an actual question.

18a. 許されようか。（古風）

18b. 許されるのだろうか。（Natural）

Will it be forgiven?

19a. あやつはそれができようか。（古風）

19b. 彼はそれができるのか。（Natural）

Can he do it?

4. "...（よ）うが", "...（よ）うと", "...（よ）うとも", "(よ）うものなら", and "...（よ）うにも", show supposition and is equivalent to "しても". They are like "no matter what" or "even if".

20. 家出をしようにもお金がないよ。

Even if run away, you don't have any money.

21. 真実であろうが嘘であろうが、まだ関係はない。

Whether it's true or a lie, I still have no part in it.

22. 行こうと行くまいと僕の勝ちだ。

Even if you go or don't go, it's my victory.

23. どんなに反対されようが、消費税の引き上げが施行される。

No matter how much it's protested against, the consumer tax hike will be enforced.

24. どんな苦しみを味わおうが、自分が決めたことは変えたくない。

No matter the suffering I suffer, I won't want to change what I've decided.

25. どれだけお金を損しようが、賭博し続けるよ。

No matter how much money I lose, I'll continue to gamble.

26. 何をしようと私の知ったことではありません。

Whatever you do, it's nothing that I know.

27. たとえ雨が降ろうともフットボールをする。

I play football even if it rains.

28. どれだけ時間がかか {ろうとも・っても}、彼らを支持します。

I will support them no matter how long it takes.

29. 先生に ^{あつ}厚 ^{くちごた}かましくも ^く口 ^{おおめだま}答えをしようものなら、^く大 ^く目 ^く玉を食らうでしょう。

Should you ever have the nerve to talk back to the teacher, you'll surely get scolded severely.

30. 火事になろうものなら、大変だぞ。

It would be grave should there be a fire.

5. ~よ(う)が・もない follows the 連用形 to mean "no way to".

31. 何とも言いようがないね。

There's nothing to be said.

32. 私はお礼の申しようもありません。

There's is no way that I could ever thank you enough.

6. ～ようとしたら is when "just as one is about to do X, Y happens". Y is out of your control, and often includes speech modals like ～てしまった and ～きた.

33. 電車に乗ろうとしたら、ドアが閉まってしまいました。

I was about to get on the train when the door (regrettably/accidentally) closed.

34. アイスクリームを買って、歩きながら食べようとしたら、「みっともないですよ」っておこられちゃったし。

When I tried to eat the ice cream I bought while walked, I was scolded and told that it was "indecent".

35. 喫茶店へ行こうとしたら、雨が降って来た。

Just as I was about to go to the coffee shop, it started to rain.

36. 出かけようとしたら、電話がかかって来た。

Just as I was going to leave, a phone call came.

～ましょう

～ましょう, from ～ます + ～う, is attached to the 連用形 of a verb. Aside from the "let's" usage, most others have fallen out of use. It is able to show "guessing", but this has almost completely been replaced with でしょう.

37. 価格を下げることで売り上げが^の伸びるように定価から2千円を^び引きましょう。

In lowering prices in order to boost sales, let's knock off 2000 yen from the price.

38. ^{かんぱい}乾杯 しましょう。

Cheers!

39. 私から電話しましょうか。

Shall I call?

Particle Note: This usage of から may be replaced with が.

40. 一緒に外食しましょう。

Let's go out to eat together.

41. 早速出かけましょう！

Let's go at once!

42a. 彼は気がつきましょうか。

42b. 彼は気がつきますか。（More natural）

Will he notice?

Abbreviation Note: ～ましょう may also be shortened to ～ましょ, though it's slightly less polite.

43. ^よ世にある ^{かぎ}限り ^{さいぜん}最善 ^{つく}を尽 しましょう。

Let's do our best to live in this world as much as possible.

Phrase Note: 世にある means "to live in this world".

～だろう

～だろう comes from the volitional form of だ and follows the 終止形 of inflectional parts of speech. It is often shortened to ～だろ. ～だろう is often not used by females, and it is normally replaced by ～でしょ（う）. Even males may use the latter when trying to sound nicer.

1. Used to show guess. It may follow nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

44. 明日は雨が降るだろう。

It will probably rain tomorrow.

45. けっきょく あっか
結 局 は悪 化 するだろう。

It will surely get worse.

46. 出席者は 高 々 10 人だろう。

There will be no more than ten attendees.

47. あの 様 子 からして離婚は間 近 だろう。

Based on that condition, divorce is surely close.

48. めいわく
迷 惑 だろう。

It's probably a bother.

2. Followed by か, it may show a feeling of doubt. With a high intonation it shows hope that the listener will agree. ~だろう (か) is more likely to be said by men in casually. Depending on one's tone, this can also make rhetorical questions.

49. 何時だろうか。

I wonder what time it is.

50. いつ行くだろうか。

I wonder when he'll carry it out.

51a. お前も来るだろう。(Casual; 失礼)

52b. あなたも来るでしょう。(Neutral)

Aren't you coming too?

53. 誰が ぎじどう
議 事 堂 に行くのだろうか。

Who would go to the Diet?

54. あんな^{ばか}馬鹿な行為が許されるだろうか。

How would such a stupid action be allowed?

55. 嘘ではないだろうか。

Isn't it supposed to be a lie?

Phrase Note: "...ではないだろうか" = "isn't it supposed to be?". It definitely follows the aggressive stereotype of だろう.

56. 犯人なのではないだろうか。

Isn't he supposed the criminal?

3. "...だろうが" and "...だろうと" show supposition and mean "even (in/as)" or "no matter". This usage is neutral as it is part of a more complex grammar pattern. However, it will be interesting to see if even these usages of ~だろう are replaced with ~でしょう in the future.

57. ^{うてん}雨 天 だろうと決行するつもりです。

I plan to carry it out even in rainy weather

58. 子供だろうが^{ようしゃ}容 赦 はしない。

Even as children, they don't show mercy.

59. どんな人だろうと、この映画は楽しめます。

No matter what kind of person you are, you can enjoy this movie.

4. ~だろうに meaning "even though it's supposed to be". At the end of a sentence, it is like "how I wish!". The politer form is possible, but the pattern as a whole is losing currency, and some speakers may not quite know what it means.

60. 苦しただろうに、よくがんばった。

Even though it was supposed to be painful, he persevered well.

61. 人生をもう一度やりなおせたらどんなにいいだろうに。

How I wish I could live my life again!

62. もう少し早く出れば間に合っただろうに。

If we only left a little bit more early, we would have made it on time.

～でしょう

For the most part ～でしょう is the polite form of ～だろう, but we are going to take time to get used to it and see what is actually different between the two. First off, ～でしょう comes from the combination of the 未然形 of です and ～う. It is often shortened to ～でしよ.

63. 今晚は雪でしょう。

It's probably snow this evening.

64. 戻ってくるでしょう。

It'll probably return.

65. ^{らいう}雷雨になるでしょうか。

I wonder if there's a thunderstorm.

66. 間に合うでしょうか。

Are we going to make it in time?

67. ^{くすり}薬 ^{ずつう}で ^{おさ}頭痛は収まるでしょう。

Headache should subside with medicine.

68. よろしいでしょうか。

Isn't it alright?

69. 彼女は本当に ^{よろこ}喜ぶでしょう。

I think it'll probably make her really happy.

70. 間に合わないのではないのでしょうか。

Are we not going to be able to make it?

71. 真実ではないのでしょうか。

Isn't it supposed to be true?

Grammar Note: ～でしょう normally goes after the plain form, but it's occasionally after ～ます in attempts to be more honorific. Even so, many still think it's improper.

72. 日本に來られて何年になりますでしょうか。

How many years has it been since you've come to Japan?

73. お分かりになりますでしょうか。

Do you understand?

第142課: The Volitional II: The Negative Volitional: ～まい

Just when you thought you were done, you now have to consider negative volition.

～まい

～まい shows **negative volition**. So, you have will for **something not to happen**. It may also be like ～ないだろう. The first meaning would be used in contexts like "I won't..." or "She vowed not to go". This can be distinguished from other contexts such as "it won't possibly rain".

～まい attaches to the 終止形 of 五段 verbs and auxiliary verbs, which includes ～ます. As for 一段 verbs and する and 来る, it attaches to the 未然形 or 終止形. However, the 未然形 is better.

一段	食べる + まい →	食べまい 食べるまい (△)
五段	書く + まい →	書くまい
～ます	書きます + まい →	書きますまい
する	する + まい →	しまい (打ち消し意志) するまい (普通, 打ち消し推量) すまい (ちょっとかしこまった)
来る	来る + まい →	来まい 来るまい

Grammar Notes:

1. It's possible to see すまい when it is treated as a 五段 verb like with 愛す.
 2. It is also common in casual speech and *some dialects* to see よ inserted between the 未然形 and ～まい. For example, いようがいよまいが.
-

Examples

1a. 雪が降るまい。

1b. おそらく雪は降らないだろう。(Natural)

It probably won't snow.

2a. 勝てまい。

2b. 勝てないだろう。(Natural)

I doubt you'll win.

3a. あの男は負けるまい。

3b. あの男は負けないだろう。(Natural)

That man will probably not lose.

4. それは ^{たい}大した金にはなるまい。

That probably won't be worth much money.

5a. ^{がい}害にはなりますまい。

5b. 害にはならないでしょう。(Natural)

It'll do you no harm.

6a. ペンギンは助かるまい。

6b. ペンギンは助からないだろう。(Natural)

The penguins probably won't be saved.

7. 誰も信じまい。

No one will probably believe it.

8a. そんな手段は認めますまい。

8b. そんな手段は認められませんよ。(Natural)

I will not approve of such a method.

9. もう二度とそんな ^{あやま}過 ^くちは繰り返すまい！

I will not make such a mistake a second time!

10. 明日、行くのをやめよう。

Let's not go tomorrow.

11. 絶対に ^{らくだい}落 ^{だい}第するまいぞ！

I will absolutely not fail!

12. もう言うまい！

I'll say no more!

13. いくら肉親の妹だって、姉の骨まで見たことはあるまいから、分かるもんか。

Even if it was your own little sister, you'd never understand since you've surely never seen bones to that of your older sister.

From 死体紹介人 by 川端康成.

14. 「里子ちゃん、いらっしゃい。お雑煮のお餅を焼きましょうね。里子ちゃんも、お手つだいしてちょうだい。」などと言って、菊子は里子を台所へ呼び寄せ、信吾の寝部屋の廊下を走らせまいとするつもりらしいが、里子は聞く風もなく、ぺたぺた廊下を走りつづけた。

Kikuko said something like "Satoko-chan, come here. Let's make some zoni mochi. Won't you please help?" to call Satoko to the kitchen, and although it seemed she meant on not having her run through the hall by Shingo's bedroom, Satoko paid no heed to this and continued to run down loudly through the hall.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

～まいとする

～ まいとする means "to try not to". It is normally replaced by ～ないようにする. This paraphrase can also work for when する is not the verb phrase, but in

this case, because using ～まい is a little more common in the spoken language, such a paraphrase is not necessary.

15. 笑うまいとする。

To try not to laugh.

16. 笑うまいとしてもつい笑ってしまうだろう。

Even if you try not to laugh, you'll eventually end up laughing.

17. 負けるまいとする。

To try not to lose.

18. 会うまいと決心した。

I decided that I wasn't going to meet (him).

19. その時までは決して彼に会うまいと心に決めていた。

Until that time, I decided in my heart not to meet him by all means.

20. 彼女は眠るまいと決心していたが、結局眠りにつけてしまった。

She was resolute not to sleep, but she finally ended up falling asleep.

～ではあるまい

～ではあるまい shows inadequacy. ～というわけではない is now commonplace. ～ではあるまいし means "it's not as if...".

21. 知らなかったわけではあるまい。

It's not that they didn't know.

22. 馬鹿じゃあるまいし、そんなことをするな。

It's not as if you're an idiot, so don't do such.

Volition + が・と + Negative Volition + が・と

～(よ)うが～まいが and ～(よ)うと～まいと mean "whether...or...".

23. 真実であろうが真実であるまいが、まだ関係はない。

Whether it's true or it's not true, I still have no part in it.

24. 行こうと行くまいと僕の勝ちだ。

Even if you go or don't go, it's my victory.

25. 人が来ようと来るまいとまだパーティーを^{ひら}開く。

Whether people come or not, I'm still going to throw a party.

～まいぞ

～まいぞ shows prohibition. Although ～ますまい exists, ～ますまいぞ does not. This expression is quite old-fashioned, so you may only hear old men say this or find it in literature. Tone would distinguish it from a negative volitional statement like above.

26. 行くまいぞ。

You mustn't go.

～まじき

～まい comes from the Classical Japanese ending ～まじ (the negative equivalent of ～べし). ～まじ only attached to the 終止形, except when it was attached to the verb あり (ある). For あり, it followed its 連体形, ある.

あるまじき happens to be retained in Modern Japanese in more literary/formal situations to mean "not proper to". ～まじき can also be found in other set expressions.

27. あるまじき行為だ。

It is an improper act.

28. すまじきものは ^{みやづか}宮 仕 え。(Set Phrase)

It is better to work for oneself than to work for someone else.

～ まじ had every base except the 命令形. This is in stark contrast with the Modern Japanese ～まい, which only has a 終止形 and a very rarely used 連体形 (～まい). However, two older 連体形 still hold on. The original ～まじき can still be seen in set phrases, but in the early 1900s, the form ～まじい was still frequently used in literature.

29. 「早くね、早くね。」と、言うなり後向いて走り出したのは ^{うそ}嘘 ^{しんけん}みたいにあっけなかつたが、遠ざかる後姿を見送っていると、なぜまたあの娘はいつもああ ^{ふしん}真 剣 ^{かす}な様子なのだろうと、この場にある ^{まじい}まじい ^{不 審}が島村の心を ^{かす}掠 めた。

Her running off as soon as she looked back saying "hurry, hurry!" seemed all too easy like a lie, but as he looked at her retreating figure go farther away, a suspicion unfit for the scene grazed Shimamura's mind as he thought on why again she was always seemed so serious like that.

From 雪国 by 川端康成。

30. ^{しかん}士官の軍刀と、^{はんぎよく}半 玉 の守り袋や ^{はなかんざし}花 簪 の鈴とが、^{あしびょうし}足 拍 子 につれて鳴った。兵士にある ^{まじい}まじい、^{あいしょう}哀 傷 の歌詞でありながら、二十五前後の青年と十六の少女との ^{がっしょう}合 唱 であるために、進軍の歌の響きがあった。

The officer's saber and the young geisha's little pouch and bells on her flowery

hairpin rang along with the beating of their feet. While the lyrics were elegiac and unworthy for a soldier, there was a marching song sound for the lad around twenty five or six and the young fifteen or sixteen girl to sing in chorus to. From 童謡 by 川端康成.

31. 触れるほど顔を重ねて見るほど、能面にはある**まじい**邪道だろう。

It was surely heresy unworthy of the Noh mask to even touch or try to put over one's face.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

Tense Note: Sentences with ～まい are always in the non-past tense because ～まじ indicates that something should or won't happen due to some experience.

第143課: The Imperative

The imperative form of a verb or adjective is the 命令形. However, there are other patterns that make commands.

Part of Speech Note: Adjectives are usually used with "連用形 + しろ" instead.

命令形

一段	五 段	する	来 る	くれる	いらっし やる	下さ る	仰 る	なさ る	形容 詞	形容 動詞
-ろ・ よ	-え	しろ・せ い・せよ	来 い	くれ(ろ・ よ)	いらっし やい	下さ い	仰 い	なさ い	-か れ	-であ れ

Usage Notes:

1. ～よ is the original 命令形 and ～ろ but has been used in East Japan for centuries. Now, the original gives a nostalgic feel.
2. As for する, しろ is typical, and せい (mostly used by higher up and older people) and せよ (which is quite formal) also give a more nostalgic feel.
3. The 命令形 of くれる is commonly replace with its くれ-連用形. ～てくれ can make a **vulgar command**.
4. いらっしやる, 下さる, 仰る are **honorific verbs**. Their 命令形 are simplified, but in old-style speech and in some regions of Japan, you may still hear the original, non-contracted 命令形, which would be いらっしやれ, くだされ, and おっしやれ respectively.
5. Again, adjectives are **rarely** used in the 命令形, but there are some common set expressions where adjectives are in it. In this sense, it is bested to view them as set phrases.

1. 善かれ悪しかれ

Right or wrong

Form Note: あしかれ is the 命令形 of the Classical Japanese 形容詞 悪し which has fallen out of use.

2. よかれと思って

All for the best

6. であれ is often used as in the following. If were used to make a command, it would be somewhat old-fashioned to say the least.

3. りゆう なん
理由が何であれ

Whatever the reason may be

The Imperative

Respectful

The grammatically correct form of the respectful command style is formed by adding an honorific prefix to the stem of a verb, then using the honorific verb なさる, to do, adding ～ます in its 命令形, ませ. ～下さい(ませ) may also be used as such, thus implying favor.

お+連用形 + なさいませ

お+連用形 + 下さい (ませ)

Even in formal situations, the likelihood of you having to ask a superior to do something is unlikely. Note that for する verbs, these items are directly attached. So, ご受験くださいませ = "please take your honorable test".

Polite

The most common way to make the polite imperative is 〜てください. To be less frank, you can use 下さいませんか. You may also attach 〜なさい to the 連用形 of a verb. However, this usage is only used by a superior to an inferior.

連用形+ -て+ ください (ませんか)

連用形+ -なさい

Etymology/Speech Style Note: 〜なさい comes from 〜なされ, and 〜なされ can still be used by older people. This can then be contracted to 〜な in casual speech.

Orthography Note: ください is generally only in ひらがな when used as a supplementary verb in this fashion.

Base Constraint Note: One would think that you should be able to just use -ませ to make a polite imperative. However, this highly restricted to set phrases like お帰りなさいませ (an extremely honorific way of saying welcome home), いらっしやいませ (welcome!). To supplement this, 〜なさい is used.

Plain & Vulgar

Although dependent on tone, the following patterns listed below from least to most vulgar may be used to tell someone to do something in plain speech.

て形 (+ 語尾)

命令形 (+ 語尾)

連用形+ -たまえ

連用形+ -て+ くれ

Usage Note: 〜たまえ is used by mainly older men and it is often demanding and taunting.

Intonation Note: You can also use the non-past form with a high intonation and force to make a command. Ex. さっさと食べる! (Eat fast!)

So, when is the 命令形 appropriate? It can be used when commanding training or exercise sessions. It's used among guys. It's also used to superior man to an underling. It is also used when cheering for sporting events. It is also used when you have to be brief like during in an emergency and in traffic signs. All of this applies for the negative imperative as well.

Examples

1. 早く泳いでくれ。

Swim faster!

3. このボタンを押せと説明書に書いてある。

It says to press this button in the instruction manual.

4. 父が私に勉強しろと言いました。

My father told me to study.

5. 暑いのなら^{うわぎ}上^ぬ着を脱ぎなさい。

If you're hot, then take off your coat.

6. 早く食べなさい。

Eat quickly.

7. 息を吸って、^は吐いて！

Inhale! Exhale!

8. 名前を書きなさい。

Write your name.

9. 安心しなよ。

Calm down.

10. この ^{こづつみ} 小 ^{ふなびん} 包 を 船 便 で送ってくださいね。

Please send this package by surface mail, k?

11. 11 時までに帰りなさい。

Come back by 11 o'clock.

12. 急ぐなら新幹線で行きなさい。

If you're in a hurry, take the bullet train.

13. もしも空を ^と 飛べるなら、 ^{がけ} 崖 から飛んでいけ！

If you can fly, go fly off the cliff!

14. いらっしゃい！（Especially at home）

Welcome!

15. いらっしゃいませ。（Especially in a store）

Welcome!

16. 入学の前、コンピューターを買ってください。

Before you enter college, please buy a computer.

17. テレビを左側に置いてください。

Please place the TV to the left side.

18. ご家族の ^{みなさま} 皆 様 によろしくお伝え下さい。

Please give my best wishes to your family.

19. ^{まん} 満 タンにしてください。オイルもチェックしてください。クレジットカードで払えますか。

Please fill it up. Also, please check the oil. Can I pay by credit card?

20. と 止まれ!

Stop!

21. どうぞお入りください。

Please come in.

22. 早く寝ろ!

Go to bed now!

23a. 名前だけ (を) おおもし 大文字で書いてください。

23b. 名前だけ (を) 大文字で書きなさい。

Please write only your name in capital letters.

Sentence Note: 23b is likely to be used by a superior to an inferior or on instructions on something.

24. しかし、飲んだくれて歌舞伎町で寝ている織江はあなたではない。

However, Orie, who was dead drunk sleeping at Kabukichou, is not you.

From the commentary by 池田清彦 for 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

Word Note: 飲んだくれる is a verb inspired by the slurring of 飲んでくれ, a slang word used ever since the Edo Period to describe drunkards that drink all day. It's no doubt the word was inspired by the slurred speech of people drunk, and as it is based off of an imperative phrase, it is mentioned here.

25. あとを黒めてたもれ。 (古語的)

Smooth over the rest.

From 髭櫓 by 虎明狂.

Phrase Note: This sentence has the interesting phrase たもれ. This is from a sound change of {賜・給} れ. So, it is related to たまえ. This was used by elite people to lower individuals. Contexts are those in which the speaker makes it known that there won't be any dissent in doing so.

The Negative Imperative

The negative imperative, which is telling someone not to do something, is very similar to the imperative.

Respectful

The way to create the respectful negative imperative is by adding an honorific prefix to the stem of a verb and adding なさいますな・下さいますな. Like the respectful imperative, the respectful negative imperative is reserved to most becoming situations.

26. 私のことは御心配下さいますな。

Please do not worry about me.

Usage Note: Though more honorific and polite in nature, 〜ないで下さい is far more common even in really formal situations. However, there are still situations where respectful negative commands may be expected such as in letters and situations where highly sophisticated and proper 敬語 is expected.

Polite

Just like the polite imperative, there are two ways to show the polite negative imperative. The first way is by adding 〜ないで to the 連用形 and then ending with 下さい(ませんか). The second way is by adding 〜なさる to the 連用形 and ending with the particle な. However, this method is rare.

連用形 + -ないで + 下さい (ませんか)

連用形 + なさる + な → -なさいますな

Plain & Vulgar

The particle な makes the negative imperative. 〜ないでくれ makes a vulgar negative command. 〜ないで itself can make a casual negative command. 語尾 can greatly change the mood of a command.

Examples

27. 屋内走らないでくださいね。

Please don't run in the house.

28. 切らないでよ。

Don't hang up!

29. な
舐めるな。

Don't underestimate me.

30. えんりょ
遠慮しないで。

Don't hold back.

31. (お) 酒は飲まないでください。

Please do not drink sake/alcohol.

32. 盗みだけはするな。

Just don't steal!

33. ああ、触らないでくれよ、すけべー！

Ahhh, don't touch me you freak!

34. 教会中にお話しなさいますな。

Please, no talking during church.

35. 心配するな。

Don't worry.

36. 馬鹿なことをすんな。

Don't be silly.

37. 入るな！

Don't enter!

38. 誰も動くな。

No one move.

39. 決して ^{やくそく} 約 束 を ^{やぶ} 破 るなよ。

Never break a promise!

40. 金に ^{いじきたな} 意 地 汚 く手を出すな。

Don't put your greedy hands on money.

41. 死なないでください。

Please don't die.

42. 無理しないでね。

Take it easy.

43. ^{ごかい} 誤 解 しないでください。

Don't get me wrong.

44. ^{よけい} 余 計 なことをべらべらしゃべるな。

Don't chatter unnecessary things.

45. ^{おどろ} 驚 かないでください。

Please don't be surprised.

46. パーティーに行っても ^て 照れるな。

If you go to the party, don't be shy.

Table of Contents

第144課: The Particles ほど & くらい

Although very similar, ほど and くらい—also ぐらい—are not always the same.

The Adverbial Particle ほど

The first thing that you should know about the particle ほど is how it is attached to various parts of speech and what sort of particle combinations are allowed.

Class	Pattern	Example
名詞	N+ほど	日本ほど
形容詞	連体形+ほど	できないほど
形容動詞	連体形+ほど	楽なほど
動詞	連体形+ほど	考えるほど

As far as particles are concerned, the typical order is noun + case particle + ほど. However, が・を are deleted. If they are to be used, they are used right after ほど. However, the particles such as に, で, and から are always after it.

Approximation

After a quantity, ほど shows an **approximation**. This usage is interchangeable with くらい・ぐらい.

1. 9年間ほど

About nine years

2. 旅は10時間ほどかかるでしょう。

The trip will probably take about ten hours.

3. そのロープは長さが六メートルほどあります。

The rope is about six meters long.

4. することが山ほどあるよ。

I have a pile of work to do.

Literally: I have a mountain of stuff to do.

5. あと1ヶ月ほどで夏休みになる。

I'll be on summer vacation in about a month.

6. この仕事はあと2週間ほどあれば出来上がりますか。

Will this job get done in around two weeks?

7. {細石・小石} ほどの大きさの石

A stone the size of a pebble

Reading & Meaning Note: 細石 = さざれいし. This is smaller than a 小石.

However, in English you use the same word.

8a. あの橋はどれ {ほど・くらい} 長いんですか。 (More natural)

8b. あの橋の長さはどれくらいですか。

How long is that bridge over there?

9. お（お）よそ 50 人（ほど）の人

Around fifty people

Word Note: お（お）よそ = Approximately

Extreme Example

It may also show an **extreme example**. It takes a specific situation and evaluates its extent. So, it is often translated as "to the extent that". It may be

seen after nominal or verbal expressions. Of course, idiomatic translation may very well blur this literal definition.

10. 言葉にできないほど素晴らしい。

It's too wonderful for words.

11. 彼は歩けないほど弱ってはいなかった。

He wasn't weak enough to not walk.

12. 彼を見てるのが気の毒なほど ^{しよげ} 悄 ^し 気 ^げ てる。(Casual)

Just seeing him makes me feel bad.

13. 彼はそれを試みるほど ^{ゆうかん} 勇 ^{かん} 敢 ^{かん} な兵士ではありません。

He isn't a brave enough soldier to attempt that.

14. 全国民は戦争に優勝して、^{なみだ} 涙 ^{なみだ} が出るほど嬉しかったです。

The entire nation was happy to the point of tears from winning the war.

15. 振り ^{ほど} 解 ^{ほど} けないほど彼女を ^{しっか} 確 ^し りと抱き締めた。(叙述的な表現)

I hugged her so tightly that she couldn't break away.

漢字 Note: しっかり（と） is usually written in ひらがな. Using the 漢字 is more old-fashioned.

When ほど is used to make a negative comparison such as in the following sentences, it cannot be replaced with くらい・ぐらい.

16. クリスマスほど待ち ^{どお} 遠 ^{どお} しいものはない。

There's nothing I look forward to more than Christmas.

17a. 鈴木さんは外見ほど年をとっていませんね。(Potentially rude)

17b. 鈴木さんは見た目より若く見えますね。(More natural)

Mr. Suzuki's not as old as he looks.

18. 高橋氏は外見ほどの^{ねんれい}年齢じゃないよ。(失礼な言い方)

Mr. Takahashi is not as old as he looks.

19. 日本に住むほど幸せなことはありません。

There is nothing more happy than living in Japan.

20. 足はこの程度なら医者に行くほどのこともない。

If your foot is only this bad, there's no need to go to the doctor.

21. ^{おこ}怒るほどのことではありません。

It's not something we need to get angry about.

22. 心配するほどの^{けが}怪我ではありません。

It's not an injury to worry about.

23. 病状は手術が必要なほどではない。

The condition of her illness is not to the point of surgery.

24. あいつは俺ほどうまく運転しねー。(Vulgar)

He doesn't drive as good as me.

25. 私の^{ちしき}知識など先生のそれとは^{ひかく}比較にならないほどお^{そまつ}粗末なものでございます。
(Humble)

My knowledge is not even comparable to that of the teacher's.

26. 散歩ほどいいものはないね。

There's nothing like a walk, right?

27. 今日の ^{びぶんせきぶんがく}微分積分学の試験は思ったほど難しくなかった。

Today's calculus exam was less difficult than I thought.

28. 結果は後程ご一報ください。(Formal)

Please inform us the results later.

敬語 Note: 後程（のちほど） = あとで.

A すれば A するほど

This pattern means "the more...the more...". Without the conditional, you'd just show that there is a link between the extent of the pattern and the phrase that follows. The overall sentence can either be positive or negative depending on whether you are showing an increase or decrease in the degree of something respectively. You **cannot** replace ほど with くらい・ぐらい for this usage!

Verbs	泳ぐ → 泳げ → 泳げ + ば = 泳げば + 泳ぐほど = 泳げば泳ぐほど
形容詞	新しい → 新しいけれ + ば = 新しいければ + 新しいほど = 新しいければ新しいほど
形容動詞	簡単だ → 簡単な（+ば） = 簡単なら（ば） + 簡単なほど = 簡単なら（ば）簡単なほど

Politeness Note: Using であれば instead of なら is more formal/polite.

29. 多ければ多いほどよい。

The more, the better it is.

30. ^{ふくざつ}複雑なら複雑なほど壊れやすいです。

The more complicated something is, the easier it is to break.

31. 何でも、練習すればするほど上手になります。

With anything, the more you practice, the better you become.

32. 価格が高ければ高いほど、^{かかく}需要は^{じゅよう}減^{げん}少^{しょう}する。

The higher the price, the smaller the demand is.

33. ^{こつとうひん}骨董品は古ければ古いほど価値があがる。

The older antiques are the more value it has.

34. 早ければ早いほどいいです。

The sooner, the better it is.

35. 高く登れば登るほど寒くなってくる。

The higher you climb, the colder it gets.

36. パソコンは操作が簡単であれば簡単であるほどいいです。

The easier the operation of a PC is, the better it is.

37. ^{いなか}田舎に住むほど幸せなことはないと思う。

I think that nothing is happier than living in the country.

38. 人が多ければ多いほど楽しい。

The more the merrier.

39. 深ければ深いほど暗くなる。

The deeper you get, the darker it gets.

The Adverbial Particle くらい・ぐらい

The way くらい・ぐらい are attached to things is the same as with ほど, but its combination with other particles is slightly different.

Class	Pattern	Example
-------	---------	---------

名詞	N+くらい・ぐらい	一円 {くらい・ぐらい}
形容詞	連体形+くらい・ぐらい	見えない {くらい・ぐらい}
形容動詞	連体形+くらい・ぐらい	不思議な {くらい・ぐらい}
動詞	連体形+くらい・ぐらい	捨てる {くらい・ぐらい}

The particles が and を if used with it are after it. The particles に, へ, で, と, から can all be seen before or after it.

Approximation

Introduces something and then shows the degree or quantity almost equivalent to that. When you are saying that something is the same degree, you must use くらい・ぐらい.

40. ニューメキシコ州も同じ {○ くらい・○ ぐらい・X ほど} 暑いですよ。

New Mexico is just as hot.

41. 8時くらいです。

It's about eight o'clock.

42. リーチは立原の方が極端なぐらい長い。

As for reach, Tachihara's is longer to an extreme.

From 擬態 by 北方謙三.

43. 彼は36歳ぐらいだ。

He is around thirty six years old.

44. 30分ぐらいしてから、もう一度電話をかけました。

I tried calling again after about thirty minutes.

45. 私の捕った魚はこれくらいの大きさでした。

The fish I caught was about this big.

46. 昼くらいに雨が止んだ。

It stopped raining around noon.

47. それくらいのことでめげるな。

Don't be discouraged at such a thing.

48. まゆ 眉 が隠れるくらいに切ってください。

Please cut it so that my eyebrows are covered.

49. そして仲田が、その女を自分の妹あつかいし、馬鹿にしているのを ^{もったい} 勿 体 ないことを ^{やつ} する 奴 だ位に感じた。

Furthermore, he felt so far as to think Nakata, having this woman as his own sister, was the kind of guy who would make her out to be an idiot or do something unworthy of her class.

From 友情 by ^{むしゃのこうじさねあつ} 武者小路実篤 .

Grammar Note: An entire clause is modifying 位, the 漢字 spelling of くらい, and if this were written in a more modern fashion, quotations would have probably been used to reinforce a short spoken pause that aids in the grammaticality of this sentence.

Orthography Note: This sentence comes from a book originally published in 1920, which is why くらい is written in 漢字. It would be somewhat old-fashioned to do likewise today.

Belittling

Introduces something of light degree and limits it to a certain level. This can be seen in the pattern X のは Y くらいだ (Y is about the only X). Thus, again,

this usage creates a minimal phrase. This belittling usage is not interchangeable with ほど.

50. せめてタバコくらいやめてくださいよ。

The least you can do is stop smoking.

51. 簡単な料理ぐらい私だってできるよ。

Even I can cook a simple meal (to that extent)!

52. 子供でもそんなことくらい分かる。

Even a child would understand (to the extent of) something like that.

53. 「韓国料理は、何でも好きですか」 「いいえ、私が好きなのはキムチくらいです」

"Do you like any Korean food?". "No, kimchi is about the only thing I like".

54. 「このごろの子供は、本をあんまり読まんと聞いたが」 「ええ、ほんとに。よく読むのマンガぐらいなんだよね」 「そりゃ困ったな〜」 (すごく砕けた言い方)

"I heard that kids these days don't read books much". "Yeah, that's true. Manga is just about the only thing they often read". "That's no good".

55. 「あの、君はスポーツは何でもできるんでしょ」 「いや、実は、僕ができるのは {サッカー・卓球・野球・バドミントン・テニス} くらいだよ」

"Uh, you can play any sport, right?". "No, actually, [soccer; table tennis; baseball; badminton; tennis] is about the only thing I can".

56. 空一面真^かっ赤になるくらいの見^{みごと}事な夕焼けでした。

The splendid sunset was to the extent that the whole sky turned completely red.

57. は^は恥^はずかしくて穴があったら入りたいくらいだった。

I was so embarrassed to the extent that if a hole opened up I would want to enter it.

2. Shows an extreme matter. ～くらいなら～ほうがましだ = "rather...than...".

However, it should be understood that both actions are unfavorable. It's just you say that you'd rather do the latter.

58. 降参するくらいなら死んだ方がましだ。

I'd rather die than surrender.

59. 君を捨てるくらいなら死んだ方がましだ。

I would rather die than abandon you.

60. ^{きじつ}期日に遅れるくらいなら、^{てつや}徹夜をして^{かんせい}完成させた方がましだ。

I would rather have it completed overnight than be late to the deadline.

Phrase Note: ましになる is used to show that something is improving, but it's not fully good. As such, it's not really appropriate to a lot of people to use such a phrase to refer to someone feeling better. However, there are areas like the Kansai Region where it is rather common.

61. 痛みがましになる。

The pain improved.

62. 通りから広場に出たところで、少し混雑がましになった。

As I entered into the plaza from the street, the traffic got a little better.

From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

3. ～くらい～はない shows something being the most....

63. 彼くらい努力する人はいません。

There is no person putting effort into it than him.

64. 地震 {ほど・くらい} 怖いものはない。

There's nothing as scary as an earthquake.

4. ～くらいで gives that the feeling that something is at a small amount or significance. It is often used in suggesting or belittling something.

65. テストが悪かったくらいで、泣かないで。(Casual)

Don't cry over a doing bad on a test.

66. スペイン語習ったことはあるけど、ちょっとしゃべれるようになったくらいでやめてちゃったんで、本を読めるようにはならなかった。(すごく砕けた言い方)

I've studied Spanish, but I quit when I became able to speak it, so I didn't end up becoming able to read a book.

67. このレッスンはやさしいから、ちょっと練習するくらいで、終わりましょう。

Since this lesson is easy, let's end with a little practice.

Table of Contents

Exercises

Translate into Japanese (1-3)

1. It's around 6:30 pm.

2. It's not to the extent that it's impossible.

3. I'd rather die than to give up.

4. Create a sentence where くらい belittles.

5. Create a sentence with ほど in the set phrase "the more...the...".

6. Create a sentence with ほど and ば.

第145課: Honorifics I: Titles

Titles are important in showing respect to others. People have roles in society, and most people prefer that they be recognized for them. There are special endings called 呼称. This category of suffixes includes many of the most well known Japanese phrases such as ～さん, ～ちゃん, ～さま, and ～君.

Leaving out proper 呼称 is called 呼び捨て, which you should be very careful about. Especially in 上下関係 that you are a part in, it could be bad unless you are all drunk if you use 呼び捨て to your boss if he hasn't already OK'd it.

Titles

The most recognizable title in Japanese is 先生, an honorific word which literally means "one born earlier". 先生 refers to teachers, professionals, and leaders. Like all honorific titles, it **must not be used to refer to oneself**. The reason for this is that in honorifics, you are supposed to be **humble** in speaking about yourself. There are titles that are neutral and may be used in talking about oneself. After all, Japanese must have ways for people to talk about their professions.

Titles for you differ for the ones for others and no extra embellishment is used. Embellishment refers to 呼称. The large majority of occupation terms are neutral in honorifics. Others are usually seen after people's names like 大統領. However, if you did happen to be the president of some country, you would no doubt use this word in describing your occupation if speaking in Japanese.

Common Occupations

This list provides a large list of occupations/titles one may have. Not all are listed, of course, because the kinds of jobs a person can have are limitless. There are many usage notes appended below this chart. However, it is impossible to be completely exhaustive on how to use these words.

Teacher (oneself)	教師	きょうし	Professor	博士	はかせ
Associate professor	准教授	じゅんきょうし	Boss	上司	じょうし
Foreman	親方	おやかた	Supervisor	監督	かんとく
Company president	社長	しゃちょう	Bank president	頭取	とうどり
Prime minister	総理大臣	そうりだいじん	President	大統領	だいてうりょう
Chief director	理事長	りじちょう	Trustee	評議員	ひょうぎいん
Bank of Japan Governor	日銀総裁	にちぎんそうさい	Governor	知事	ちじ
Executive	取締役	とりしまりやく	Employee	社員	しゃいん
Staff	職員	しょくいん	Government official	役人	やくにん
Officer	公務員	こうむいん	Senator	上院議員	じょういんぎいん
Lawyer	弁護士	べんごし	Female nurse	看護婦	かנגおふ
Male nurse	看護師	かנגおし	Doctor	医者	いしゃ
Executive officer	経営者	けいえいしゃ	Writer	作家	さつか
Solicitor	外交員	がいこういん	Delegate	代理人	だいにんにん
Manager	支配人	しはいにん	Middleman	仲介者	ちゅうかいしゃ
Lieutenant	副官	ふくかん	Aide; deputy	補佐官	ほさかん
Assistant	補佐役	ほさやく	Public servant	官吏	かんり
Constable	保安官	ほあんかん	Manager	管理人	かんりにん
Diplomat	外交官	がいこうかん	Envoy	公使	こうし
Judge	裁判官	さいばんかん	Magistrate	判事	はんじ

Judge; umpire	審判	しんぱん	Referee	審査員	しんさいん
Secretary	長官	ちょうかん	Minister	大臣	だいじん
Chancellor	閣僚	かくりょう	Director	局長	きょくちょう
Secretariat	官房	かんぼう	Police officer	警察官	けいさつかん
Vice~	副-	ふく-	Associate~	准-	じゅん-

Usage Notes:

1. 代理 means "deputy". Ex. 総支配人代理 = "deputy general manager".
2. ~者 replaces ~人 to address oneself and vice versa.
3. 管理人 can mean "manager", "caretaker", "superintendent", "administrator", or even "janitor". However, the term 雑役夫 specifically means "janitor".
4. 最高経営責任者 means CEO.
5. As for titles such as doctor, they must take ~さん and 御（お）~.
6. 作家 is in reference to a career writer while 作者 refers to someone that wrote something.
7. 博士 doesn't take ~さん or ~さま and may refer to oneself. 博士 may also be read as はかし.
8. 頭取, 理事長, and 総裁 may mean "governor/director" for a hospital, school, bank, etc.
9. You may call a police officer お巡りさん・さま.
10. Titles for world leaders don't take 呼称. Titles ending in ~官 follow names and other titles and also don't need 呼称. Only in isolation would you say something like 長官さん.

11. In reference to one person, there should not be more than one use of 呼称.

公務員さんは鈴木さんです。 WRONG

公務員さんは鈴木です。 RIGHT

公務員は鈴木さんです。 RIGHT

12. 教師 should only be used when referring to oneself as a teacher.

先輩 vs. 後輩

These words are well known due to manga and anime, but most don't really understand them. If I were your boss, I wouldn't be your 先輩. I would be your 上司. You don't call your teacher 先輩 either. You say 先生. Even if your 先生 happened to be younger than you, you would not call him/him your 後輩.

先輩 means "senior" as in being ahead in rank. In school everyone in grades above you is your 先輩. In reverse, you are their 後輩. Everyone in the school, though, is a 学生. 先輩 and 後輩 can be used like 呼称 and as stand-alone words. This is also the case for words like 先生. Teacher and student are complete opposites, and the teacher has a position that should be respected. Thus, you should use neither 先輩 or 後輩 in speaking to him/her.

Occupational titles can easily replace things like ～さん. So, Ichiro the athlete can be referred to as 一郎選手 or 一郎さん. Whether or not you can refer to athletes or what not as your 先輩 or 後輩 is dictated by the social circumstances at hand. Are you part of the team? Are you an extremely obsessed female fan that adores a member and affectionately refers to him as 先輩? There is a lot to keep in mind, but it is safe to say that if you find a usage in the wild that fits your situation, it is probably safe to use it likewise, assuming that you don't solely read odd manga series.

Usage Note: You can indirectly refer to oneself with titles though. Consider the following.

1. 石川先生はあちらの方です。

It is he who is Ishikawa-sensei.

呼称

呼称 are suffixes similar to Mr. and Mrs., but aren't, unless stated, gender specific. They are suffixes added to titles or names. Like we've seen, some titles don't need them. Pay close attention to when these endings are used and for whom.

～貴	～むち	Archaic; used in respect to deities or very high-ranking people.
～殿	～どの	Very formal. Obsolete and slightly more formal than ～さま.
～卿	～きょう	Lord--rare.
～陛下	～へいか	Equivalent to "majesty".
～閣下	～かつか	Equivalent to "Excellency" or "honorable".
～様	～さま	Used in very formal situations to people of higher status.
～氏	～し	Used to refer to people on TV, newspapers, etc. to give equal status.
～夫人	～ふじん	"Mrs.". Used when referring to a married woman.
～さん	～さん	Used to people of equal status in polite situations.
～嬢	～じょう	Preferred in writing in referring to women.
～はん	～はん	Kansai variant of ～さん.
～君	～くん	Used to address young males by superiors or by women for affection.
～ちゃん	～ちゃん	Childish version of ～さん used to refer to children and pets.
～坊	～ぼう	Shows endearment to boys.
～たん	～たん	Extreme slang form of ～ちゃん.
～ちん	～ちん	Not as slang as ～たん.
～ぼん	～ぼん	Used in jokes as a silly variant of ～さん.
X	X	No 呼称 is necessary for people one has a close relationship with.

Analysis

We need context to know the extent 呼称 are used. It's impossible to detail every instance these endings may be used in. There are so many niches that one could be a part in that no single person, including natives, could tell you authoritatively every single situation these endings can be used in. Luckily, however, you can get the gist of how they're used and see for yourself how they're used.

～さん

Let's begin with ～さん. ～さん is generally attached to the name of a person or group to show a light respect or familiarity. This is why it's used with one's equal. You may hear 大工さん said to a carpenter., especially in situations where the name of the individual is not known. Thus, in respect to the individual and the group he/she is a part in, the actual name is replaced with the name of the group/occupation that individual is a part of.

2. もしもし、加藤さんのお宅ですか。

Hello, is this the Kato residence?

～さん comes from a construction of ～さま, which is why it doesn't show as much respect. You can hear it in set phrases such as:

3. お待ちどおさん

Thank you for waiting; I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.

In phrases like this, though, ～さま is more common except in certain places in Japan.

Again, ～さん may be attached to someone's workplace to refer to workers. So, if you walk into a electric appliance store, you may refer to the clerk as 電気屋さん. Other examples of this include 本屋さん, 八百屋さん, etc. Businesses

may also refer to each other in the same fashion. Even married couples sometimes refer to each other with ～さん, but this might not be a good thing. Also, s becomes h in many words in some regions of Japan. So, it can also be rendered as ～はん.

～ちゃん

～ちゃん is a diminutive of ～さん, and should be treated as one. It shows affection and endearment. In general, ～ちゃん is used for infants, pets, children, grandparents teenage girls, lovers, close friend, and youthful women. When used for males, it is usually condescending or intimate. Tone of voice places a great role in interpretation.

～坊

～坊 may be after a boy's name to show affection, but it is also placed after the alias of a monk.

～さま

～さま, again, is much more respectful than ～さん. It can be applied to basically anything ～さん came, but the affect is different. ～さま can be seen after おれ to refer to oneself in a very haughty manner.

4. スミス様

Mr. Smith

5. 先生様 X → 先生

6. 神様

God

7. 天皇様 △ → 天皇陛下

Emperor

8. 王様

King

Word Note: It's important to note that 天皇様 is a questionable phrase in the grey zone with most Japanese speakers thinking it is inappropriate for similar reasons why 王様 is actually found to be somewhat kiddish. This is probably because ~様 through hyperbole weakening in honorific meaning for these instances.

～君

～君 used to be similar to ～の君 (きみ) . ～の君 refers to Lords, etc. Now, ～君 is used to address males juniors. Females may also use it towards males affectionately. With close personal friends and family, gender restrictions are removed. In business men may refer to young employees of either gender with ～君. This works the same way in a classroom. In the Japanese legislature chairpersons address members with ～君.

9. 黒木君はどこにいるの？

Where's Kuroki?

10. ^{しんゆう}親友 ^{じろうくん}の次郎君

My best friend Jiro

～殿

Although literally meaning "Lord", it is important to note that in official documents, it is used as the 呼称 of choice rather than ～様. It can also be used after an organization, department, title, or personal names.

11. 原子力委員会殿

However, there are entire prefectures and organizations that only use ～様. This is because some speakers feel that ～殿 implies the speaker is looking down at someone as an inferior.

Luckily, for when you are address a group of people, 御中, which is read as おんちゅう, and 各位 are perfect あて名. The former is used in documents addressed to schools, companies, company offices, groups, and organizations. 各位 is used as a header to a letter, but as an addressee, it can be used when sending something to each person without having to say every single name. There is no need to say 各位様 or 各位殿.

～氏

～氏 is pretty much referencing someone in the third person.

Others

12. スミス判事閣下

The honorable Justice Smith

13. 皇帝陛下

His Majesty the Emperor

14. 議長殿 (Old-fashioned)

Madam Chairwoman

15. 大統領殿 (Old-fashioned)

Mr. President

16. 中村婦人 (More uncommon)

Mrs. Nakamura

漢字 Note: Because of concerns of sexism, words with 婦 are becoming less common.

Table of Contents

第146課: Honorifics II: Nouns and the Copula

Honorific speech 敬語 is crucial to speaking Japanese, and it is very intricate. Its usage is mandatory in many situations. There are three broad categories of honorific speech in Japanese. You have been used to polite speech for a long time, so this is not going to be the focus of this lesson.

尊敬語	そんけいご	Respectful/Honorific
謙（讓・遜）語	けんじょうご・けんそんご	Humble
丁寧語	ていねいご	Polite

Respectful speech is *speaking to or of a person whom one wishes to respect*. It is not used in reference to oneself. **Humble speech** is *speaking to someone on what you or your in-group are to do*. Also, respectful speech is associated with 2nd and 3rd person whereas humble speech is associated with 1st person.

Culture Note: You should also be aware that using 敬語 to someone that one is usually cordial and casual with will cause division and a sense of separation.

Honorific Nouns

Nouns are made honorific by the prefix 御〜 which has three possible readings.

お〜

御〜 is read as お〜 when attached to native words as well as a number of 漢語 (Sino-Japanese words).

Motivations for using お〜 with 漢語 is being a 和製語 (word created in Japan). It's nearly impossible to know whether an 音読み phrase was made in Japan without being told. However, a great hint is that the majority of these words relate to things of the modern era.

Yet another means of knowing whether お〜 is used with a 漢語 is if its sense as a 漢語 has been lost in the general public and has essentially become Japanese (due to the lack or loss of a native equivalent).

Noun	Honorific	和語・漢語	Meaning
電話	お電話	漢語	Telephone
砂糖	お砂糖	漢語	Sugar
邪魔	お邪魔	漢語	Disturbance
写真	お写真	漢語	Photograph
天気	お天気	漢語	Weather
菓子	お菓子	漢語	Sweets
肉	お肉	漢語	Meat
宅	お宅	漢語	Home
名前	お名前	和語	Name
世話	お世話	和語	Assistance
会計	お会計	漢語	Checkbill
愛想	お愛想	漢語	Affability
勘定	お勘定	漢語	Check/bill
世辞	お世辞	和語	Flattery
釣り	お釣り	和語	Change
手紙	お手紙	和語	Letter
風呂	お風呂	漢語	Bathroom
塩	お塩	和語	Salt
魚	お魚	和語	Fish
目	お目	和語	Eyes
腹	お腹	和語	Stomach
上	お上	和語	Buttress; government
自宅	お住い	和語	Residence

Usage Notes:

1. When used with お~, はら becomes なか.
2. 世話 is 当て字 and a native word.
3. A rarer but more honorific form of お~ is おん~. Examples include 御自ら, 御母上, etc.
4. お宅 is also used as an insult equivalent to "nerd".
5. Although a phrase may have an honorific suffix in it, it doesn't mean that it is respectful. One example is お里が知れる, which means "to reveal one's upbringing". This refers to Japanese dialects and is felt to be a rude expression. A much more polite way is なまり・方言・アクセントで出身が分かる.
6. おシャンパン and おワイン are not used. おビール is questionable, but some people, particularly women, do use it. It is also appropriate in the business arena. There is no problem with using お酒, お茶, or お冷. The last, though, may be replaced by お水 by many speakers today. Although you can say お洋服, you cannot say おスーツ or おコート. Other similar loanwords that do take お depending on the speaker include たばこ, ズボン, and ソース.

お タバコ is not that common unless you're in a service industry. Similar words that are odd unless you're in a secretarial position include お車 and お薬 despite being native words. おズボン would also be seen in the trades or by women who frequently add お to more words than men typically do such as おジュース. おソース is on the same lines as おしょう油.

7. The last note hints at the fact that お is not allowed with loan words, but it is always incompatible with 'long words' several morae long, and it is also not used with words that start with o.

1. 彼女にはいろいろなことをしていただき^{せわ}てお世話になっております。

I owe her a lot for everything.

2. お叱^{しか}りのお言葉を有り難く頂戴いたします。

I would appreciate it if I receive your scolding.

3. お先^{さき}にどうぞ。

Please go in front.

4. 亡くなられた**お方**の小さい御子^{おこたち}達の相手に女の姪^{めい}たちを連れて来て貰^{もら}いたいとい
云^いうのだった。

She was told that [they] would like her to bring along her nieces as companions to the small children of the deceased lady. .

From おばすて ほりおたつ
姨捨 by 堀尾辰.

Word Note: Though お方 now refers politely to a gentleman/gentlewoman, in the past it was used to refer to a noble woman or daughter, as is the case in this setting.

5. 「罪が深いんですから、いくら難有いお経だって浮ばれる事は御座いませんよ」

Since his sin is so grave, you cannot rest his soul no matter how great of a sutra you evoke.

From 吾輩は猫である by 夏目漱石.

Word Note: お経 is an interesting exception. 経 is a Sino-Japanese word of Chinese origin and does not take ご, which we are about to get to. This must mean that the word is treated as if it is a native word, just like other old loans such as 馬.

Spelling Note: Because the novel from which this example comes from is so old, spelling conventions are not quite the same. ありがたい, when it is written in 漢字 today, is typically spelled as 有り難い. As you can see, the 漢字 are flipped.

As another example of words with お that are not honorific, consider the word お化け. This is an alternative way of saying 化け物. Both refer to Japanese-style ghosts/monsters. お化け can also refer to something just really abnormal. There are a lot of important お化け that you should know about. Important ones include ろくろくび てんぐ 首, 天 狗, and から 傘 お化け.

ご～

ご～ is used only with 音読み compounds that are often considered formal and typically have a native Japanese word equivalent.

Noun	Honorific	Meaning
主人	ご主人	Master*
病気	ご病気	Sickness
心配	ご心配	Worry
旅行	ご旅行	Trip
連絡	ご連絡	Contact
両親	ご両親	Parents
遠慮	ご遠慮	Discretion
注意	ご注意	Caution
親類	ご親類	Relatives
相談	ご相談	Consulting
近所	ご近所	Vicinity
親切	ご親切	Kindness
苗字	ご苗字	Last name

Usage Notes:

1. The adverb ゆっくり may also be used with ご～. *

2. 主人 means "master" but "(someone's) husband when ご〜 is attached.

3. There are times when adding ご results in Double Keigo (二重敬語). For instance, in ご芳名 (your good name), ご令息 (son), ご逝去 (death), the nouns themselves are already honorific. But, because they have for whatever reason been reanalyzed as being not honorific enough, ご is always attached to them.

Examples

6. たいへん めんどく
大 変 ご 面 倒 をおかけしてすみませんでした。

I'm very sorry to have put you into any trouble.

7. さどう きょうじゅ たまわ
先生に茶 道のご 教 授 を 賜 りたいのですが。

Would you be so kind as to give me instruction on tea ceremonies?

8. ていせい
ご 訂 正 を頂戴いたしまして、どうもありがとうございます。

Thank you very much for giving me corrections.

9. えんりょ
どうぞご 遠 慮 なく。

Feel free.

み〜

み〜 is used with nouns particular to religion or grand importance. Although rarely seen, it is even possible to use おみ〜 and おんみ〜.

Comes From		New Meaning
Treasure	大御宝	Imperial subjects
Child	御子	God's son

Name	御名	Holy Name
Palanquin	御輿・神輿（みこし）	Portable Shrine
Liquor	御神酒（おみき）	Sacred Wine
World	御世	Imperial Reign
Heart	御心	Lord's will
Rock of spirit	御影石	Granite

Word Note: The last example is a little complicated. 御影 happens to mean "spirit(s) of the dead". This word also happens to be a place name where granite is manufactured. Thus, the word 御影石 came from this geographical connection. This is an important example to note, though, because this word is not honorific in any way despite the fact it clearly has the honorific prefix み- in it.

HONORIFIC NOUNS WITHOUT 御

There are other means to show respectful and humble speech in nouns. For respectful nouns, 貴～ is apart of many respectful Sino-Japanese words. However, most, with exception to 貴社 "your honorable company" are rarely used. Death especially has several respectful variants.

Several humble nouns begin with 粗 (そ), 拙 (せつ), and 弊 (へい). All three characters have negative/humble connotations. 愚 (ぐ) ～ is a humble prefix added to the 音読み of characters used for family. For representing respectfulness in terms of family, the suffix ～上 (うえ) is used. Or, you may use 賢 (けん) ～.

	Noun	HON.	H or R?
Person	人	者	H
Person	人	方	R
Refreshments	おやつ	粗菓	H
My thoughts	私意	拙意	H
Word	言葉	詔	R
Older brother	兄	愚兄	H

Older brother	兄	賢兄	R
Company	会社	貴社	R
Company	会社	弊社	H
Tea	茶	粗茶	H
Place	所	御所	R
Husband	夫	宿六	H
Liquor	酒	粗酒	H
Daughter	娘	愚女	H
Father	父	父上	R/H
Goods	品	粗品	H
Manuscript	原稿	玉稿	R
Production; work	著作	拙作	H

INTERPRETING THE CHART: R = Respectful & H = Humble

Usage Notes:

1. 御所 refers to the "old imperial palace".
2. 詔 refers to an "imperial decree".
3. Whenever a word refers to royalty, that said variant is not used in reference to regular people.
4. 粗品 may also mean "little gift". This would still be 書き言葉的.
5. 粗 means "crude/course/inferior" and these meanings are implied in the humble words whether the thing(s) in question are as such.
6. Sometimes using the right word can be tricky. For instance, whenever people take entrance exams for college (入学試験) and companies (入社試験), people these days are starting to want to use 御校 and 御社 respectively instead of 貴校 or 貴社. The problem with this is with 御 being read as おん, it may sound quite unnatural in the spoken language if it were not for abnormal situation in which

one is in front of many people you don't know. Although 貴校 and 貴社 may get used in letters between groups in an almost equal mentality, the most important thing in 敬語 is still to be conscious overall of ways to speak politely. Thus, it is quite OK to use those words.

HONORIFIC VARIANTS FOR DEATH

崩御 (ほうぎょ)	The honorable death of royalty.
卒去 (そっきょ)	Death of king or queen or a high ranking court official.
逝去 (せいきょ)	A more honorific word for the passing of an individual.
薨去 (こうきょ)	Death of an imperial member or high court.
薨御 (こうぎょ)	The death of a crowned prince or minister.

Word Note: It is unlikely that you will see some of these words, but there is always that chance. "To die" is generally a euphemism for several other verbs such as 死亡する (to de cease), 死去する (to part), and 亡くなる (to pass away)".

HONORIFIC PHRASES WITH HONORIFIC PREFIXES & SUFFIXES

There are also many set phrases that include the prefixes お～ and ご～ and the honorific endings ～さん and ～さま.

お月 {さま・さん}	Moon
お日 {さま・さん}	Sun
お世話さま	Trouble
お邪魔さま	Trouble
お疲れさま	Tired One
お気の毒さま	I'm very sorry
ご面倒さま	Could I trouble you
ご苦労さま	Much obliged for hardship

FORMAL SINO-JAPANESE WORDS

Some nouns are naturally formal because they are Sino-Japanese. These examples are by no means it, and you have seen many already. You will also see more in coming lessons through example sentences.

Tomorrow	明日 (みょうにち)	This year	今年、本年 (こんねん、ほんねん)
Breakfast	朝食 (ちようしょく)	Day after tomorrow	明後日 (みょうごにち)
Next year	明年 (みょうねん)	Day before yesterday	一昨日 (いっさくじつ)
Last night	昨夜 (さくや)	Today	本日 (ほんじつ)
The other day	先日 (せんじつ)	Around...	約 (やく)

Word Note: Some of the words are typically heard as well. But, when it comes down to deciding what variant of a word you should use when speaking respectfully, you would choose these words.

Meals

Breakfast, lunch, and dinner, in fact, have 4 sets of expressions based on politeness with each set using a different verb for "to eat".

	Breakfast	Lunch	Dinner	To Eat
V	朝飯 (あさめし)	昼飯 (ひるめし)	[晩・夕]飯 ([ばん・ゆう]ばん)	食 (く) う
PL	朝飯 (あさはん)	昼飯 (ひるはん)	夕飯 (ゆうはん)	食 (た) べる

P	朝御飯（あさごはん）	昼御飯（ひるごはん）	[晩・夕]御飯（[ばん・ゆう]ごはん）	食べる
F	朝食（ちょうしょく）	昼食（ちゅうしょく）	夕食（ゆうしょく）	取る

Word Note: 夜ご飯 is becoming more acceptable as more people are now eating dinner later in the evening.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. When do you use お-?
2. When do you use ご-?
3. How do you use adjectives in honorific speech?
4. What are the two types of honorific speech?
5. Make a sentence in honorific speech with the copula.
6. Make a sentence in honorific speech with an adjective.
7. Make a sentence in honorific speech with a noun.
8. Show how a noun may change meaning when used with an honorific prefix.
9. Explain the usage of honorifics in your own words.

Pay close attention to what is deemed old-fashioned and what is not.

Adjectives

Nowadays, adjectives hardly ever change for 敬語, though this is a rather new phenomenon. Nowadays, the "honorific" use of adjectives is normally seen in the pattern お+Adjective+ です. This is often felt to just be really polite speech rather than honorific speech, and the use of Adjective + です alone suffices for most of the times honorifics has been used in the past.

Adjectives don't necessarily even refer to human entities, nor does every description of a higher up necessarily get set to him/her face to face. Phrases for making a sentence indirect would most certainly be used in such a situation anyway. So, why is that 丁寧語 can suffice most of the time? 丁寧語 is chosen to show a feeling of politeness and show one's own dignity, but there does not have to be a direct relationship.

お・ご～ Note: The omission of the honorific prefixes is primarily determined whether you are showing respect/humility or using 丁寧語. As you could imagine, the latter case is for when they should be omitted.

Examples

In the examples below, you will see various other patterns that hint at what has traditionally been the usage for adjectives. More will be said about them later in this lesson. So, for now, treat options as synonyms.

1. お忙しいですか。(普通)

Are you busy?

2. インドへ行けるのは嬉し {ゆうございます・い限ります・い所存でございます}。(謙譲語)

I would be happy to go to India.

Sentence Note: This example shows how you can make an adjective more humble. 所存 means intention, and it is a good formal choice. We will get to what exactly ゆうございます is later in this lesson.

3a. 皆様本日は**お忙しい**ところご参加^{いただ}きありがとうございます。(謙譲語)

3b. 皆様本日はお忙しいところご^{りんせき}臨^{たまわ}席を賜りありがとうございます。(上位者などに対する尊敬語)

3c. 皆様本日はお忙しいところご出席下さりありがとうございます。(尊敬語)

Thank you for attending.

4a. 開けても**よろしい**ですか。

4b. 開けても**よろしい**でしょうか。(△/More polite)

Is it alright if I open up (the window)?

自然さ Note: よろしいでしょう to many speakers is incorrect 敬語 because it is a doubling of two patterns at once to make it such. However, to some, the politeness of よろしい seems insufficient, thereby making this a reasonable solution.

Exception Note: The honorific form of よい is よろしい・宜しい.

5a. 皆さん、お静かに願います。(とても丁寧)

5b. 皆様、ご^{せいしゆく}静^粛にお願い申し上げます。(Very respectful)

Everyone, please be quiet.

6a. ご立派でいらっしゃいます。

6b. ご立派であらせられます。(Old-fashioned; very respectful)

You are great.

形容詞: 連用形 + ございます (古風な言い方)

For 形容詞 there is a more older pattern that has fallen out of use that you may still use. Depending on the expression, it may not be so old-fashioned. You'll continue to find situations in the next few lessons in which it is completely fine and normal. However, for any given adjective like 楽しい, using it with the auxiliary ございます as illustrated below is felt to be too grandiose to most people these days.

Again, this is deemed to be old-fashioned, but you can still see a lot of examples of it in literature, and the book don't have to be that old for you to find this pattern used. It also happens to use with any adjective. This pattern utilizes the auxiliary verb ～う after the 連用形 of adjectives. However, there are subsequent contraction rules.

If it ends in...	Drop	Add	Then Add
—いい	—いい	Small ゆ + う	ございます
—あい	—あい	—おう	ございます
—おい	—おい	—おう	ございます
—うい	—うい	—うう	ございます

Examples

大きい	大きゅうございます	Big	嬉しい	嬉しゅうございます	Happy
早い	早うございます	Early	よろしい	よろしゅうございます	Good
新しい	新しゅうございます	New	白い	白ございます	White
難しい	難しゅうございます	Difficult	古い	古うございます	Old
赤い	赤うございます	Red	悪い	悪うございます	Bad

Grammar Note: When you create the negative form of an adjective, change ございます to ございません and use the <-連用形. In the participial position, only an honorific prefix is used.

You've already seen this perhaps the first day you started learning Japanese with the phrase ありがとうございます. This pattern actually originates from 上方 (from the Kansai Region during the Edo Period) speech. It was one of those things that became part of 標準語 as 標準語 itself developed from influences coming from all corners of the country.

7. 部屋は夏でも涼しゅうございます。(古風)

The room is cool even in the summer.

8. お早うございます。

Good morning.

Literally: You're early.

9. 旅行は ^{なが}長 うございます。(古風)

The trip is long.

10. お友達と別れるのは本当に悲しゅうございます。(古風)

Separating from one's friends is really sad.

11. このお茶は ^{うす}薄 うございます。(古風)

The tea is flat.

12. 地震や ^{よしん}余震 ^{おそ}は 恐ろしゅうございますね。(古風)

Earthquakes and aftershocks are scary, aren't they?

13. 空は青うございます。(古風)

The sky is blue.

14. 「はあ、一人三円で参ります。少しお高うございますが、翌る日寝てしまいますから。」

"Yes, I'll come for three yen a person. It is a little high, but it is because I sleep the next day".

From 死体紹介人 by 川端康成.

History Note: There was a time in Japan's history when the yen was far more valuable than it is today just as the dollar and penny once were in America.

15. 日本は大きくございません。(^{ひんかく}品 格 のある丁寧さ; ちょっと古風)

Japan is not large.

Pattern Note: Avoiding the contractions is a way to make honorific adjectives sound less old-fashioned and yet at the same time be more polite. Remember that sentences like this are examples of 丁寧語, not 尊敬語.

16. 「それで、好ござんすとも」と御米は答えた。

"Then, that's fine", Oyome replied.

From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Contraction Note: よござんす is a shortening of よろしゅうございます and was a common 江戸言葉 in light honorifics a century ago. Always be on the lookout for odd stuff in literature.

～く {思^{そん}って・存^{ぞん}じて} おります

Many older speakers cannot get used to adding です or a copula of any sort after a 形容詞. The coming of this pattern, like with many generational changes, can be explained by contractions. In this case, the common practice of the new typing age and East Japanese dialect habits became standard. However, as you learn more about how to make your speech ever more honorific, one way to

overcome this grammaticality issue is by changing the adjective to an adverb and using {思^{って}・存^{じて}} おります.

17. 有り難^{がた}く存じております。

I am very grateful.

Literally: I think very gratefully.

18. うれ^{うれ}しく思っております。

I am very happy.

Literally: I'm thinking happily.

The Copula

As the copula is the verb "to be", it must have another category in honorifics for the "it" in sentences. However, this "it" is the same as the humble form; thus, they are not distinguished from each other.

"It" Neutral (丁寧語)/Humble (謙譲語)	ございま す	Honorific (尊敬語)	でいらっしゃい ます
---------------------------------	-----------	-----------------	---------------

19. 社長、こちらは藤原常務でいらっしゃいます。

President, this is Director Fujiwara.

20. 皇帝から頼まれたものでございます。

This is something that was entrusted to me from the Emperor.

21. そうではございません。

It's not so.

22. はい、鈴木でございます。

Yes, this is Suzuki.

Table of Contents

第148課: Honorifics IV: Light Honorifics: レル・ラレル敬語

All of the usages of these endings are etymologically related to each other in Japanese. However, to keep things easier in our minds, we will need to treat them separately. This is because the grammar/particle usage for each usage is quite different. These endings, ～られる・れる, along with appropriate phrasing to go along, help create 軽い敬語.

Knowing when it is appropriate to only be lightly honorific is a question that natives struggle at times. It is safe to say, though, that when you are with someone you should be respectful to yet have no established connection with each other to warrant the same speech you would use to your boss, 軽い敬語 becomes very useful.

Ambiguity Note: There are times when the passive usage and the honorific usage of these endings becomes blurred. Because of this, the usage of 軽い敬語 is less common in comparison to other speech styles.

軽い敬語

Before we look at how this grammar is used, let's recap on how to construct it. ～られる・れる go after the 未然形 of verbs.

Verb Class	Example Verb	未然形	+られる・れる
上一段	見る	見-	見られる
下一段	食べる	食べ-	食べられる
五段	読む	読ま-	読まれる
サ変	する	さ-	される
カ変	来る	来(こ) -	来られる

The use of レル・ラレル敬語 is becoming more frowned upon as being too vague and unfitting for more and more situations. Many speakers believe that if

you are to be respectful, then you should just use 敬語. However, many younger people overuse レル・ラレル敬語 and is a potential cause for 二重敬語 when these young people are trained to use more honorific means of expression as they combine what they have known with what they're being told. Of course, doubling 敬語 can come about by just being overly cautious of how respectful you're being, but this is another motivation.

This is not to take away from the fact that レル・ラレル敬語 is frequent used because it is. Just note that this is just the lowest tier of 敬語 and that you will need to use more honorific patterns as is needed. For instance, if we are to assume that talking to your 課長 and 社長 is different, レル・ラレル敬語 would be proper for the former but not for the latter. In interviews there is a tendency to avoid レル・ラレル敬語, but there are plenty of reporters that use it. In the end, there is a lot of speaker variation. Just keep these things in mind as you use this speech pattern.

Examples

1. その本はもう読まれましたか。

Have you already read the book?

2. どちらで日本語を習われましたっけ。

Where again did you learn Japanese?

3. 奈良に行かれたことがありますか。

Have you ever been to Nara?

4. 柳田さんは今朝、仙台を発たれました。

Yanagida-san left Sendai this morning.

5. 今朝の産経新聞を読まれましたか。

Have you read this morning's Sankei Newspaper?

6. お酒を飲まれますか。

Do you drink?

7. どちらに住んでおられますか。

Where do you live?

8. この記事をどう思われますか。

What do you think about the article?

9. 先生が来られました。

The teacher has come.

10. 何時に出発されますか。

At what time will you depart?

11. 鈴木副課長は朝何時に起きられましたか。

What time in the morning did Chief Suzuki wake up?

12. 先生も行かれますか。（○・？・X）

Will you go too, Sensei?

Sentence Note: For those who believe レル・ラレル敬語 should be used towards a figure like 先生, this sentence is wrong. As we will soon discuss in more detail, the sentence could also mean whether Sensei can go as well. Practically speaking, however, many people in school would say this to their Sensei. So, it's not inherently grammatically incorrect.

13. 先程社長が {言われました X・仰いました ○} ように、韓国へ進出することとなりました。

Just as the president has said just a moment ago, we will be expanding into Korea.

Sentence Note: In this sentence, it truly is deemed by the majority of speakers that レル・ラレル敬語 would be wrong because 社長 is not a title that goes with it.

14. よくゴルフを {されます・なさいます} か。

Do you often golf?

Word Note: Historically なさる and 下さる didn't even exist. They are in fact from the combination of 為す+れる and 下す+れる respectively. Interestingly enough, なされる is starting to make a comeback in Double Honorifics in Modern Japanese.

Ambiguity

As mentioned in the introduction, there are times when it is hard to tell what is meant. In the first sentence, one could argue that if traditional particle alignment (が instead of を for the object of a potential verb) were used that the second interpretation would not be likely. In reality, little distinction is made between using が or を to mark the object of a potential verb. So, the second interpretation is totally plausible.

15. 資料を見られましたか。

Did you see the material?

Could you see the material?

Was the material seen? (迷惑受身)

In this example, there is not as much ambiguity as the previous. One could say that the use of 行かれる for the potential form of 行く instead of 行ける is unlikely and old-fashioned. However, because the use of the traditional potential form would be more formal, this causes both interpretations below to be plausi-

ble. If the purpose of 敬語 is to be both respectful and clear, then there will be instances in which you should not leave room for misinterpretation. Thus, in these cases you should rephrase with a statement that is clearly only 敬語.

16. 課長は明日行かれますか。 ? → 課長は明日いらっしゃいますか。

Can the chief go tomorrow?

Will the chief go tomorrow?

17. こちらのカボチャ、食べられますか。 → こちらのカボチャ、召し上がりますか。

Will you eat this pumpkin?

Can you eat this pumpkin?

If you were to want to add potential to an honorific phrase, it is best to do add a polite element once you have used a regular 敬語 expression.

18. お酒はどの程度召し上がれますか。

How much alcohol can you drink?

第149課: Honorifics V: Regular Verbs

Most Japanese think they're all equal. However, there are still situations where you should be respectful and people to respect. 敬語 makes oneself look more educated and better when used appropriately. Always **consider the listener's position versus that of your own**.

Everyone has trouble with 敬語 including Japanese people. Many honorific phrases are old-fashioned, but that shouldn't downplay the importance of 敬語. Interesting phenomena today include "X になります" instead of "X でございます". The first is traditionally incorrect. However, it is so common now that it is here to stay.

So, what kind of expressions are in 敬語? As you should know by now, three kinds are the main focus of study: 尊敬語 (respectful speech), 謙譲語・謙遜語 (humble speech), and 丁寧語 (polite speech). However, there are other phrases based off of things from 敬語 that can be used to boast oneself or insult/be rude to others.

Type	Object of Respect	Type of respect?	Subject of Action	例文
尊敬語	相手	Yes	相手	部長が お話し下さい 。
謙譲語	自分	No	自分	私が お話しします 。
丁寧語	聞き手	Yes	X	ここにペンが ございます 。
尊大語	自分	Yes*	自分	俺 様 が言ってやろう！
卑罵語	相手	No	相手	早くし やがれ ！

*: To yourself, which is why it's boastful.

Terminology Note: Humble verbs used intransitively are called 丁重語. Also, remember that **respectful speech** is *used to give/pay respect to one's out-group or to superiors in one's in-group*; **humble speech** is *used to lower oneself or one's in-group*.

You must consider diction changes that we've studied up to this point. For example, instead of あの人, use あの方. Attitude is also very important. Your words can be elegantly chosen, but if your posture and attitude are coarse, you do nothing but show a crude side of yourself.

Although there is a lot of information, this lesson only scratches the surface. The best way to learn honorifics is seeing and using it in real life. What you learn here, though, will give you the skills necessary to facilitate it. We will now study the intricacy of verbs in honorifics.

Verbs Regular in Honorifics

Both respectful and humble forms.

have four general levels of politeness.

	Respectful Levels of Politeness
R1	お(連用形)です
R2	(連用形)なさいます
R3	お(連用形)になります
R4	お(連用形)下さいます (implies favor)

	Humble Levels of Politeness
H1	お(連用形)します
H2	お(連用形)いたします
H3	お(連用形)もうしあげます
H4	お(連用形)いただきます (implies favor)

Patterns' Note: These charts are not exhaustive. Others including the following.

Pattern	尊敬語・謙譲語?	Usage
お・ご...の	尊敬語	Refined feminine speech

～なさる	尊敬語	Attaches to the 連用形; very honorific but normally seen in the command form ～なさい because people tend to incorrectly mix it with R3.
～れる・られる	尊敬語	This is light 敬語. These are the same endings as for the passive.
お...になられる	誤用	Don't use. This is wrong.
お...なさる	誤用	Don't use. This is wrong.
お・ご... (を) たま わる	謙譲語	Humble pattern for receiving.
お・ご... (を) 差し上 げる	謙譲語	Humble pattern for giving.

Prefix Note: ご～ is used instead of お～ in Sino-Japanese expressions.

Base Note: Again, the 連用形 of verbs is either just る taken off for 一段 verbs or the base that ends in い for 五段 verbs. Here are two examples.

Exception Note: 為さる・なさる is the respectful form of する and 致す・いたす is the humble form of する.

Usage Note: Think of the situations where the example sentences could be practically heard used. Who is speaking? To whom is the speaker addressing? This is all important in deciding which level of politeness is expected of you. Should a waiter have to use R3/H3, or because the guests' statuses are unknown, should he/she use R1/H1?

	届ける (一段) = To deliver	呼ぶ (五段) = To Call
--	--------------------------	----------------------

R1	お届けです	お呼びです
R2	届けなさいます	呼びなさいます
R3	お届けになります	お呼びになります
H1	お届けします	お呼びします
H2	お届けいたします	お呼びいたします
H3	お届け申し上げます	お呼び申し上げます

Speaker Variant Note: Not all speakers feel お…なさる is wrong. However, one reason why it should be avoided is that it can easily sound くだい, which is never a good thing. Historically, it has always been correct and survives in phrases like お帰りなさい and お休みなさい. Examples using this pattern any way are there to show that it is still actually used by people. It is safe to say, that it has been on the decline for some time. Oddly enough, ご…なさる is fine for whenever ご is OK.

Examples

1. 何をお探ですか。(尊敬語)
What are you looking for?
2. お忘れですか。(尊敬語)
Have you forgotten?
3. お持ち帰りですか。(尊敬語)
Is this to-go?
4. 田中博士とお話ししましたか。(尊敬語)
Have you talked with Professor Tanaka?
5. このところよくお会いしますね。(謙譲語)
Our paths seem to cross often lately, no?

6. お出かけですか。(尊敬語)

Are you going out?

7. 謹んでお詫び致します。(謙譲語)

I humbly apologize.

8. 心からお詫び申し上げます。(謙譲語)

Please accept my heartfelt apology.

9. 後ほど連絡をいたします。(謙譲語)

I will contact you later.

10. 弊社をご案内申し上げます。(謙譲語)

I shall give you a tour of the company.

11. 私はあなたをお守りします。(謙譲語)

I will protect you.

12. 速達でお願いします。(謙譲語)

By special delivery, please.

13. よろしくお願いします。(謙譲語)

Please treat me well.

14. 岸田部長はご出張なさるそうです。(尊敬語)

I hear that Chief Kishida is going to go on a business trip.

15. タベ課長からこちらの本をお借りしたよ。(謙譲語)

I borrowed this book from the section manager last night.

Usage Note: When speaking to friends/colleagues, it is possible to use respectful speech in reference to a superior while the overall speech level is polite/plain, but not doing so isn't necessarily considered rude. You may also humble yourself when referring to a superior even when the overall conversation is in polite/plain speech.

R4 VS H4

R4 お...下さる	H4 お...いただく
お届け下さいます	お届けいただきます
お呼び下さいます	お呼びいただきます

R4 is expressed from the **favor-giver** side and H4 is expressed from the **favor-receiving** side. The person doing the favor in R4 is marked by が or は but is marked by に (by) or から (from) in H4. In H4, this person is from whom something is received. When に is already used in the same sentence, から is often used rather than に. Remember that に can only mark whom one is receiving, not what. After all, honorifics is improper outside the realm of people. For R4, に marks who the object/favor is being *directed*. In either case, if there is a direct object を, is used.

16. 私**は**頭取 {に・から} ご招待いただきました。(謙譲語)

I was invited by the bank president.

17. 伊藤さんが (私達に) お話し下さいました。(尊敬語)

Mr. Ito told us a story.

Double 敬語 Alert

Remember that ～ (ら) れる can be used to make sentences more polite than simple polite sentences but less polite than true honorific sentences. Using it with honorific patterns is called "Double 敬語" and is not correct. Despite this, you might hear it.

18. テニスを {なさられますか △・なさいますか ○・されますか ○} 。

Will you play/do you play tennis?

Exception Note: する's respectful form is なさる.

Warning Note: There are other entire phrases to avoid in 敬語. Asking if your superior can do something is forbidden! Asking directly whether your superior wants to do something or is thinking something is also bad. Consider the following.

19a. 部長は、韓国語はお分かりになりましたか。X (すごく失礼な言い方)

19b. 部長は、韓国語をお話になりますか。 O (礼儀正しい言い方)

Chief, can you understand Korean? → Chief, do you speak Korean?

20. お茶をお飲みになりたいですか。 X → お茶をお飲みになりますか。

Do you want to drink tea? → Will you drink tea?

お...だ?

You can also see in **less respectful situations** です replaced by だ. This is reminiscent of the use of honorifics in a mix of polite/plain speech that was a hallmark of wife speech. Nowadays, examples like the first are simply set expressions but those like the second are still very much signature of more refined feminine speech. Even towards colleagues, many women still use honorifics in otherwise plain speech to show their own refinement.

21. あなた、夏休みはどちらへいらしたの。(女性語)

Where did you go for the summer?

22. 今朝はずいぶん早く（に）お出ましだね。(女性語・女房語)

My, you've come quite early this morning.

23. (だれだれさんが) お帰りだよ。(決まり文句)

Such and such is going home!

Sentence Note: This last sentence sounds like it would be said by people who run establishments with close customer relations. Places like 居酒屋 or scenes from plays come to mind.

24. お帰り！ (Casual)

Welcome home.

Word Notes:

1. いらす is a contracted form of the respectful いらっしゃる, which is the respectful form of 行く in this case.

2. お出まし is an honorific word for 出席. Note that the honorific word itself is not feminine.

One's Boss: Humble Speech?

It is important that you just don't run with the title of this section. To some, including Japanese people, it is very hard to not always speak of your boss respectfully, but when you're **addressing someone in one's out-group**, you refer to people in your in-group, including your boss, with humble speech. This includes 呼び捨て, the dropping of titles. Again, this is in reference to your **in-group**.

Situation A: 岩間さん is an employee at A 社. The person on the other line when he answers the phone is 高田さん of B 社. 高田さん asks about whether A 社長, 岩間さん's boss is available or not. The following response is what 岩間さん should say if his boss is currently out and unavailable.

25. 申し訳ございませんが、A さんはただいま外出しております。

I'm terrible sorry, but A is currently out.

Using respectful speech is a common mistake by newbies in the Japanese workplace. At least it's not as bad as not using 敬語 entirely.

Question: Is there any situation where you would refer to your boss to an out-group person with respectful speech?

Answer: Yes. Say you were in a huge company and rarely or never have a chance to work with your boss, it becomes even more natural and understandable to use respectful speech as your boss is no doubt very 偉い to regular workers like yourself. However, the person answering the phone for a message like above is probably in constant contact with the boss, so this would not work.

ある

There are several 敬語 forms of ある. ござる is truly the most common, but it is important to know that others exist. Variants are listed in their plain forms. Most of these are no longer used. However, if you read older works, they may appear.

	"It" Neutral	ござる
	Humble	ござる
1	尊敬語	おあります
2	謙讓語	おありでござる (古風)
3	尊敬語	おありでいらっしゃる (古風)
4	尊敬語	おありになる (古風)

26a. マッチがおありますか。(古風)

26b. マッチをお持ちですか。(丁寧語)

Do you have a match?

27. 申し訳ございません。(謙讓語)

I'm terribly sorry.

Literally: I have no excuse.

28a. お釣はおありになりますか。(古風)

28b. お釣りはございますか。(現代の言い方)

Do you have some change?

29a. 拙宅にはお炬燵がございません。(やや古風)

29b. うちには(お) こたがございません。(現代の女性語)

29c. うちにはこたつがございません。(現代の言い方)

I don't have a kotatsu in my house.

Variant Note: お炬燵 has become out of use for many speakers. Opinions differ on its correctness, and what should be used instead depends partly on gender and partly on norms for everyone, which is represented in the notes above.

30a. お姉様がおありでいらっしゃいますか。(やや古風; もはや使われていない)

30b. お姉様はいらっしゃいますか。

Do you have an elder sister?

Meaning Note: As for the existential meaning, the honorific and humble usages are impossible, and the verb is simply an very polite item of 丁寧語. This is more appropriately called 丁寧語.

31. ペンがたくさんございます。(丁寧語)

There are a lot of pens.

～にあら(せら)れては・におか(せら)れては

The usage of the passive/causative passive forms in these patterns is actually a remnant of both of them being able to show extremely honorifics. Likewise, their usage in Modern Japanese is very limited; however, they still survive in dramas and set expressions. First, consider the following examples.

32. 陛下に {あられて・あせられて・おかれて・おかせられて} は、今日のご機嫌は、いかがであったか。（古語的な言い方）

This pattern turns a phrase concerning a particular person into a particular situation. This literary trick creates a very honorific situation.

Vocabulary Note: 陛下 = Your Majesty

Grammar Note: These are forms of 〜にあつて and 〜において respectively.

33. 住民の ^{みなさま}皆 様 に {○ おかれましては・X あられましては}、^{ねんまつねんし}年 末 年 始 の
^{ぼうはんぼうか}ぼうはんぼうか
防 犯 防 火 に、ご協力のほど、
お願い申し上げます。

We ask for all residents' cooperation in preventing crime and fire all year round.

Though Double 敬語 is usually bad, in Classical Japanese, and as a result, in these patterns, it is fine. Again, it is best to understand this phrase. It is not appropriate unless you become an actor in a Heian Period drama or making rather honorific posters to residents as seen above.

〜させていただきます

Scene I: You are asked by your boss to go out to a very fine dinner. You have to decline, but you don't want to be rude. You would say something like:

34. せっかくでございますが、ご遠慮させていただきます。

It would be an honor, but I'm afraid I have to decline.

〜させていただきます shows a feeling of **humble diffidence** to convey one's arbitrary action or intention while being *considerate of the speaker and his or her status*. As such, you should use this pattern rather than other humble patterns

with certain verbs when you should recognize authority. ～ていただく implies receiving a favor. Its question forms are ～させていただけませんか and ～させていただけないでしょうか. When you want to ask someone to do something like this, you don't use the causative.

35.

学生：今日はすこし頭が痛いので、早めに家へ帰らせていただけないでしょうか。

先生：それはいけませんね。お大事に。

Student: Since I have a headache today, may I go home early?

Teacher: That's no good. Take care.

36.

学生：先生、来週の金曜日は文部科学省の試験を受けに行かなければならないので、学校を休ませていただけないでしょうか。

先生：ああ、いいですよ。頑張ってくださいね。

Student: Teacher, I have to take a MEXT exam Friday of next week, so may I skip school (that day)?

Teacher: Ah, that's ok. Good luck.

Abbreviation Note: MEXT stands for the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology.

37.

学生：私にもコピーをさせていただけないでしょうか。

先生：いいですよ。でも明日までに返してください。

Student: May I make a copy of it?

Teacher: Yes, but you need to return it by tomorrow.

38.

A さん: すみませんが、お写真を取らせていただけないでしょうか。

B さん: あ、いいですよ。

A: Excuse me, but may I take your picture.

B: Ah, that's OK.

39. 藤山先生を紹介していただけますか。

Could you introduce me to Fujiyama Sensei?

When ～させていただきますでしょうか is not 100% Appropriate

When you use this expression, it makes the listener feel as if he or she has to say yes. Therefore, it is often the case that it is not appropriate to use this towards someone like a teacher or president. In such case, using ～ても構いませんか is the best choice.

40.

学生: 申し訳ございませんが、宿題を忘れてきたので、明日提出しても構いませんか。

先生: 仕方ありませんねえ。じゃ、明日忘れないでくださいね。

Student: I'm terribly sorry, but I forgot to bring my homework, so may I turn it in tomorrow?

Teacher: I guess there's no other way. Well, please don't forget it tomorrow.

41.

学生: すみません、これは日本語で言うのは難しいので、英語で言っても構わないですか。

先生: いいですけど、何でしょう。

Student: Sorry, I can't say this in Japanese, so may I say it in English?

Teacher: That's OK, but what is it?

Scene II: Your friend is speaking to you. Yet, you're irked at him. He asks if you want to go somewhere. However, you're not really interested in your friend and you say without emotion, "せっかくですが、遠慮させていただきます". You were extremely sarcastic and rude. This pattern is sadly effective in asking for divorce.

Scene III: As a social norm, you should always get permission before you do something, particularly in advance. However, there are those instances where you have to dig yourself out of a hole. In this case, you can use ～させていただきます.

42. いらっしゃらなかったんで、代わりに転送させていただきました。

Since you weren't here, I took the privilege of forwarding it.

You should have gotten permission in advance, but in this case couldn't for some reason. In such case, using the following phrase may cause the listener to reluctantly consent.

さ入れ Note: Some speakers add さ even when it is a 五段 verb to the expression because it sounds more polite despite the fact that the resultant expression is **technically incorrect**.

43. 急がさせていただきます。(X)

Please let me hurry.

Historical Note: This phrase is clearly used to be more indirect about the speaker doing something. This, though, used to not be representative of Tokyo speech honorifics. In fact, this pattern comes from the 関西地方. Yes, this is 関西弁 that seeped into 標準語 which has since become standard.

What used to be used beforehand? The humble form of する of course--いたす. The irregular verbs in honorifics--which there are many--will be mentioned in the next lesson, but it is important to note that even still, the speech modal in

discussion here has progressively been being used more than the traditional humble forms as the ultimate way of being polite.

Many More Examples of Honorifics

These sentences range from rather simple expressions, some of which you've already seen before, to far more complex sentences. Take note in how conjugations, particles, and other things work in honorifics.

44. 社長が呼びです。

The company president is calling you.

46. 田中さんとよくお会いになりますか。

Do you often meet with Mr. Tanaka?

48. 遠慮なくお邪魔させていただきます。

Allow me to come without hesitation.

50. 決めさせていただきます。

I will respectfully decide.

52. 昨日、私の英語の先生は推薦状を書いて

下しました。

Yesterday, my English teacher wrote a letter of recommendation for me.

55. すぐにお送りします。

I will send it right away.

45. 心中お察しいたします。

My sympathies are with you.

47. 私達は伊藤さんにお話をいただきました。

We were told a story by Mr. Ito.

49. 加藤さんはいらっしゃいますか。

Is Mr. Kato here?

51. 彼はそちらの件をお断りなさいました。

He rejected it.

53. お手数おかけしますが。

I hate to be a burden.

54. 食堂は三階にございます。

The cafeteria is on the third floor.

57a. いいえ、着なくてもよろしゅうございます。

57b. いいえ、着る必要はございません。

No, it's alright to not wear it.

56. 休業させていただきます。

We are taking off for holiday.

誤用 Note: This is a common misuse of honorifics. It should say 休業いたします or even just 本日休業 because it sounds as if they are asking permission from their customers. On the other hand, who can blame them for being extremely humble.

60. お車はどちらでございますか。

Which is your car?

62. 少々お待ち下さい。

Please wait one moment.

58. 窓を閉めましてよろしゅうございますか？

Is it alright for me to shut the window?

59. 色々お世話になりました。

Thank you for all the wonderful things that you have done.

61. この度は大変お世話になりありがとうございました。

ました。

Thank you very much for all of your hard work.

63. このたびは音楽会の入場券をわざわざお送り

下さって誠に恐縮です。

It was especially kind of you to have given me the concert ticket.

Particle Note: At times にも is simply the two particles next to each other. In honorific speech it may follow the subject to be more **indirect**. にも may also follow a verb and then be followed by the negative potential to express "cannot do even if one tries".

64. 歌うにも歌えない。

I can't sing if I try.

65. どこにも行きません。

I don't go anywhere.

66. お宅の皆様にもお変わりはございませんか。(Honorific; あまり使われていない)
Are there any changes in your family?

Sentence Note: If you take out お宅 at the beginning of the sentence, the remaining phrase is still frequently used. It would also be alright if you kept it but replaced 皆様 with something like お嬢さん.

お宅の皆様 happens to be unacceptable by a lot of speakers.

The Particle にて: The Original Form of で

で is actually the contraction of にて. にて has the same functions as で and is seen in formal situations.

67. 神戸^{かいさい}にて 開 催 されます。

It will be held in Kobe.

68. 今日の 遠 足^{えんそく} はこちらにて 解 散^{かいさん} します。

Today's field trip will be dismissed here.

69. 昨日は、風邪^{けつせき}にて 欠 席 しました。

I was absent yesterday due to a cold.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. How many levels of honorifics are there?
2. Create an honorific sentence using the right form of ある.
3. List as many exception verbs that you can think of.
4. Create a sentence using an exceptional honorific verb.

5. Create a sentence using 下さいませ.
6. Create an honorific sentence with the volitional.
7. Create an honorific sentence with the potential.
8. Create an honorific sentence with must not.
9. Create an honorific sentence with the provisional.
10. Explain the difference between respectful and humble speech.

第150課: Honorifics VI: Irregular Verbs I

Whereas for most conjugations **する** and **来る** are only irregular, honorific speech has lots of exceptions. Drastic change in conjugation for honorifics makes it more honorific in nature. So, if anything can be drastically changed, it is more preferable.

The Exceptions

Too little information is typically given for irregular honorific verbs. There are definitely a lot of them, and not even all "irregular" honorific verbs are to be mentioned in this section. That's because many are restricted to the written language, and the biggest priority that you should have is know how to use honorifics effectively and correctly in the spoken language.

Chart Note: The chart below illustrates the most important irregularities in respect to 尊敬語 and 謙譲語. When one form is normal, it will be marked with (N) in the chart below. There is no ordering to the chart. Variants often differ in nuance, so the chart is followed by many notes. The most important verbs to remember are in bold.

Curriculum Note: Go to the resource page "Keigo Verbs" to see a much larger list.

動詞	尊敬語	謙譲語・謙遜語
行く	いらっしゃる・お出でになる・お越しになる	参る・伺う・参上する・上がる
来る	いらっしゃる・お出でになる・お越しになる・見える・お見えになる	参る

いる	いらっしゃる・お出でになる	おる
見る	ご覧になる	拝見する
読む	お読みになる (N)	拝読する
言う	仰る	申す
食べる	召し上がる・お上がりになる・上がる	頂く
飲む	召し上がる・お上がりになる・上がる	頂く
受ける	お受けになる (N)	拝受する
助ける	ご支援なさる・お助けになる (N)	お手伝いさせていただく
決める	ご決定なさる・お決めになる (N)	決めさせていただく (N)
する	なさる	致す
知る	ご存知だ	存じる・存じ上げる・承 知する
知らない	ご存知ない	存じない
知らせる	お知らせになる (N)	お耳に入れる
見せる	お示しになる・お見せになる (N)	お目にかける・ご覧に入 れる
訪問する	お出でになる・訪問なさる	伺う・参上する
聞く	お聞きになる (N)	伺う・承る・拝聴する
会う	お会いになる (N)	お目にかかる・お会いす る (N)
買う	お求めになる・ご利用になる	お買いする (N)
あげる	おあげになる (N)	差し上げる
くれる	下さる	NOT APPLICABLE
思う・考 える	お考えになる (N) お思いになる (N)	存じる

もらう	おもらいになる (N)	頂く・頂戴する
尋ねる	お尋ねになる (N)	伺う・参上する
着る	お召しになる・ご着用なさる	着させていただく (N)
教える	お教えになる (N)	ご案内する
承知する	ご承知なさる・ご理解なさる	かしこまる
寝る	お休みになる	寝させていただく (N)
許す	ご容赦なさる・お許しになる (N)	許させていただく (N)
死ぬ	お亡くなりになる	死なさせていただく (N)

Usage Notes:

1. As for 行く, if the speaker is going to the place of the addressee, 伺う is used instead of 参る. Also, 参上する and 上がる can be used in both contexts but are not as common.
2. 拝見する is only used if the item belongs to the addressee.
3. ご容赦なさる means "to pardon".
4. ご尽力なさる = "to be instrumental in".
5. One could say that phrases like お亡くなりになる are just regular honorific forms of euphemisms.
6. 訪ねる can also be お邪魔する in humble speech.
7. お上がりになる is seen a lot in お上がりです and お上がりなさい.
8. 申し上げる & 申す are not 100% the same. Although the first is even more humble, it is showing respect to someone in which an action is being extended to.

1a. わたくしはスミスと申し上げます。X

1b. わたくしはスミスと申します。O

I am Smith.

9. 亡くなる relates to 無くなる, 失くす, and 亡くす. Here we have a classic battle between script and nuance.

無くなる is a more literary spelling for the intransitive verb なくなる, which comes from the 連用形 of the adjective 無い・ない and the verb なる. It can be used to show that something has become no longer in existence, or something is used up, something is lost.

2. 時間がなくなった。

Time has run up.

Spelling Note: When なくなる is used for ないようになる (to become not...), it is viewed as being separate and is not written in Kanji.

亡くなる comes from the same source as above but refers to the passing away of an individual in a respectful/euphemistic fashion.

3. いつお亡くなりになりましたか。(Honorific; superfluous to some because of the doubling of なる)

When did [he] die?

無くす = 失(く)す = (喪す). It is the transitive form of above and has the following definitions.

1. To lose something that you've had up till now.

2. To get rid of a bad situation.

3. When used in the sense of 亡くす (see below), it can be spelled as 喪す. However, due to the government's attempts to lower spelling options, it is no longer prevalent.

4. 財布をなくしてしまう。

To accidentally lose one's wallet.

5. 不正をなくす。

To get rid of injustice.

亡くす is being died on by someone in your loved ones, and losing that individual. This comes from 亡く + す (る) as expected of the same source as 無くす, which can be broken down likewise.

6. 幼時に父を亡くす。

To lose one's father in early childhood.

Now, we have 失う・喪う. It has a lot of commonalities with the transitive なくす. Thus, there is heavy interchangeability between the two.

1. To lose something that had been in your possession or on you(r person).

2. To lose the chance at getting something.

3. To be gone from having been taken/stolen from (you).

4. To end up not knowing the path to take.

5. To lose (a loved one). This is where the spelling 喪う comes into play.

7. {バランス・視力・昇進の機会} を失う。

To lose {balance/eyesight/the chance of promotion}.

8. 交通事故で 7 人の命が {失・喪} われました。

Seven lives were lost in the traffic accident.

9. 鍵が {無くなる・なくなる} 。

For the key to be lost/disappear/be gone.

10. 鍵を {なくす・無くす・失 (く) す・失う} 。

To lose a key.

Nuance Note: 鍵を失う sounds more like it has been in your possession or on your person). To get rid ofX A 鍵 isn't a 事柄 (matter/circumstance).

Contractions with ～ます

Though it may seem counter-intuitive for there to be contractions in honorifics, it turns out that there are with ～ます when attached to the 連用形 of a handful of 五段 verbs that end in る.

いらっしゃる→いらっしゃいます	仰る→仰います 下さる→下さいます	ござる→ございます	なさる→なさいます
-----------------	-------------------	-----------	-----------

Examples

11. クッキーを召し上がりませんか。

Will you have a cookie?

12. ありがとうございます。じゃあ、ひとつだけいただきます。

Thank you very much. Well then, I'll just have one.

13. 「野山先生でいらっしゃいますか」 「はい、そうですが」 「益田と申しますが、ちょっと伺いたいことがあるんですが」

"Are you Noyama Sensei?" "Yes, I am" "I'm Masuda. May I ask you something?"

14. 「この写真をご覧になりますか」 「ええ、ぜひ拝見したいです」

"Will you see the photo?" "Yes, I definitely want to see it".

Sound Change Note: A similar sound change occurs with the imperatives of these verbs. れ → い. So, for example, 仰る → 仰れ → 仰い. The original imperative is quite old-fashioned for these verbs.

おいでになる VS いらっしゃる

おいでになる is the honorific version of 行く, いる, and 来る. It is common to see おいで as a command for 行く and 来る. This is a contraction of おいでなさい. おいで in some contexts behaves like いる.

15. お子様はおいででしょうか。

Do you have children?

16. ちょっと寄っておいで。

Drop by for a bit.

17. 何名おいでですか。

How many people are there?

18. ご主人は酔っておいでです。

Your husband is drunk.

19. 我慢しておいでなさい。

Have patience.

Unlike おいでになる, いらっしゃる, the contraction of いらせられる, may be used to make adjectives honorific! The pattern for this is "お～ Adjective 連用形 + ていらっしゃる". Lastly, いらっしゃる is in でいらっしゃる, the honorific copula.

20. お若くていらっしゃいます。

You are young.

21. そちら（の方）は彼の友人でいらっしゃいます。

He is his friend.

22. どちら様でいらっしゃいますか。

Who is this?

おいでになる may be seen as おいで and おいでなさい to call someone over or to tell someone to go. いらっしやい, on the other hand, means "welcome!". いらっしゃる is used to make the progressive. When おいでになる is used similarly, it shows some sort of state and is normally seen as おいで in this case.

Honorific Progressive

So, ～ている is how you make the progressive. In humble speech, you use ～ておる, and in honorific speech you use ～ていらっしゃる. If you want to be extremely honorific, you combine this with the honorific form of a verb. So, you have two big changes to the verb. Only one is necessary to make something honorific. Therefore, these extremely long variants are often not used as much.

23. この雑誌を読んでいらっしゃいますか。

Are you reading this magazine?

24. 何をお作りになっいらっしゃいますか。

What are you making?

25. 何もしておりません。

I am not doing anything.

The Problems with Making a Command with 敬語

In Classical Japanese, it was very common and completely proper to make a command like 書かせたまえ because Double 敬語 was used. Sadly, however, this reasoning and direct command to a superior in the first place have become bad in Modern Japanese.

With all the ways to tell someone in Japanese aside from the 命令形 further complicated by the need to be as polite and indirect as possible to superiors, Japanese has developed many ways to say single commands with various degrees of politeness and uses.

It is impossible to list all possible euphemisms of some expressions, but just with the verb 来る, 23 phrases related to its command form 来い can be cited. The following chart is a chart modified from 敬語マニュアル (1996) by 浅田 秀子. This is not all powerful, and it doesn't take long to think of counterexamples, but that I will leave you the reader to ponder on.

#	「来い」の表現	対象 (Object)	文体 (Writing Style)	尊敬度 (Level of Re- spect)	新密度 (Level of inti- macy)
1	来い	Various		0%	100%
2	来るの・来るんだ	子供・目下	会話	5%	95%
3	来ること	目下	文章	10%	90%
4	来なさい	目下・子供	会話	15%	85%
5	来るように	目下		20%	80%
6	来てくれ	同輩・目下	会話	25%	75%
7	来てちょうだい	目下・子供	会話	30%	70%
8	来てほしい	目下	会話	35%	65%
9	来て	同輩・目下	会話	40%	60%
10	来てください	他人	会話	45%	55%
11	おいでなさい	目下	会話	50%	50%
12	おいで	目下・子供	会話	55%	45%

13	いらっしゃい	目下・子供	会話	60%	40%
14	いらっしゃいませ	同輩・他人	会話	65%	35%
15	おいでください	同輩・他人		70%	30%
16	いらしてください	同輩・他人		75%	25%
17	おいでを乞う	目上・他人	文章	80%	20%
18	おいでいただきたい	目上・他人		85%	15%
19	おいで願いたい	目上・他人	文章	90%	10%
20	お運びいただきたい	目上	文章	93%	7%
21	御足労いただきたい	目上	文章	96%	4%
22	御来臨を賜りたい	VIP	文章	98%	2%
23	御来駕賜りたい	VIP	文章	100%	~0%

Respectfulness is not necessarily the same thing as politeness, and it's definitely hard to define all of these expressions in one chart. So, please keep all of what you know about Japanese in mind. Just to think, this chart doesn't even have 来させ給え!

Other Conjugations

The volitional, conditional, provisional, potential, and the "must" patterns must be used with the exceptional verbs if they exist.

26. ご意見をいただけると助かります。(Potential)

We would appreciate your comments.

26. よろしかったら明日伺います。(～たら Conditional)

I will be over tomorrow if you like.

27. 彼のご意見を伺ったところ、彼はその件に対してあまり快く思っていないようです。

Having asked his opinion, he seemed to not be pleased about the case.

28. 伝言を伺いましょうか。(Volitional)

Shall I take a message?

29. 是非伺いたく存じます。(With ～たい)

I would like to come.

30. 長らくお待たせいたしました。(Causative)

I am sorry to have kept you waiting so long.

31. ご質問がございましたら、今承ります。(～たら Conditional)

I will take questions now if you have them.

32. 早くこちらへいらっしゃい。(Imperative)

Come here quickly.

Many More Examples

These sentences range from rather simple expressions, some of which you've already seen before, to far more complex sentences. Take note in how conjugations, particles, and other things work in honorifics.

33. 玉稿を賜る。(古風)

To be granted your honorable manuscript.

34. お手紙を拝受いたしました。

I received your letter.

35. よくおいでくださいました。

Thank you for taking the time to come.

36. お刺し身をいただきます。

I will eat sashimi.

38. お部屋をご覧になりますか。

Would you look in the room?

39. ご迷惑をおかけして、本当に申し訳なく存じます。

I appreciate all your trouble.

40. 長らくご無沙汰して申し訳ございません。

I am terribly sorry for my long absence.

41. あの方を存じ上げません。

I don't know that person.

42. 明日お目にかかります。

I'll see you tomorrow.

62. 心中お察しいたします。

My sympathies are with you.

63. 喜んで参ります。

I'll be happy to come.

64. 明日そちらへ持って参ります。

I'll bring it to you tomorrow.

65. 栄光に存じます。

It is an honor.

66a. 以降お見知り置きを

66b. 以後お見知り置きください。

I look forward to getting to know you.

66. 冥利に尽きます。

I am quite lucky.

67. 工場をご案内申し上げます。

I will give you a tour of the factory.

68. 私たちは伊藤さんにお話しいただきました。

We were told a story by Mr. Ito.

69. そんなに仰らないでください。私はただ当たり前のことをしたまででございます。

Please don't say such. I merely did what was natural.

42. 初めまして、十和田と申します。

Nice to meet you. My name is
Towada.

43. 自分は専門家だなどと生意気なことは
申しません。

I don't profess to be an expert.

44. 手品をお目にかけます。

I'll show you a trick.

45. 彼が心配していらっしゃることをもう
存じております。

I already know that he's worrying.

46. ご入用でしたら差し上げます。

You may have it for the asking.

47. こちらの本を差し上げましょう。

I shall give you this book.

48. 日本にいついらっしゃいましたか。

When did you come to Japan?

49. 弟が参っております。

My little brother has come.

50. 時間がございましたら、伺います。

I would come if I had time.

51. お礼を申し上げます。

I wish to express my appreciation.

52. この度は大変お世話になりありがとう
ございました。

70. 月曜日にどちらへいらっしゃいます
か。

Where are you going Monday?

71. 結構なお品を賜り、ありがとうございます。

We are thankful for receiving from you
these excellent items.

72. 陛下がお言葉を賜る。

To receive His Majesty's words.

73. 思し召してご容赦下さい。

Please forgive me for thinking
such.

74. そちらをお断りなさいました。

(He) rejected it.

75. お手数おかけしますが。

I hate to be a burden.

76. 京都から参りました。

I came from Kyoto.

77. 明日伺います。

I will come tomorrow.

78. ご承知のように私は泳ぐことができま
せん。

As you know, I cannot swim.

79. 米国のどちらからお出でになりました
か。

Thank you very much for all of your hard work.

53. このたびは音楽会の入場券をわざわざお送り下さって誠に恐縮です。

It was especially kind of you to have given me the concert ticket.

54. お求めになりやすい値段でございます。

It's at a price apt for you to buy.

55. 何を召し上がりますか。

What are you going to eat?

56. ご注文を承ります。

I will take your order.

57. かしこまりました。

Certainly!

58. またお越し下さい(ませ)。

Please come again.

59. 正直に仰っていただいたことに心よりお礼申し上げます。

I would like to express my heartfelt gratitude that you spoke honestly about it.

60. 申し訳ございません。お待たせいたしました。

Where in America do you come from?

80. どのようなお仕事をなさいますか。

What kind of work do you do?

81. はい、よく存じております。

Yes, I know (him) very well.

82. 鈴木さん、韓国語をご存じですか。

Mr. Suzuki, do you know Korean?

83. お酒をお上がりになりますか。

Will you have some sake?

84. ご飯を頂こうといたしましたが、お箸がございませんでした。

I tried to eat (rice), but I didn't have any chopsticks.

85 お名前は何と仰いますか。

What is your name?

86. おたばこはいただきません。

I don't smoke.

87. お越しいただいて恐縮です。

Thank you for coming.

88. 何をお貰いになりましたか。

What did you receive?

89. 呼んで来て差し上げましょう。

I'll call him here for you.

I am terribly sorry that I had you wait.

Dialect Note: Honorifics is different depending on dialect. Just be aware of this.

61. 万年筆を拝借します。

I will borrow your fountain pen.

Orthography Note: 漢字 like 御 and 宜 are normally seen in really formal writing.

瀧野と女中との対話の抜粋

This excerpt is from a conversation between Takino-san and a 女中. 女中 is now a political incorrect word for maid/female servant. However, the use of 敬語 by 女中 is quite intriguing in literature. This piece is a typical example of male characters speaking in casual speech while the female combines feminine spoken language aspects to her 敬語.

90.

「瀧野さん今晚、金彌にお約束なすってるの？」

"Takino-san, do you have a engagement with Kanaya tonight?"

「うん」

"Yes"

と、彼はとっさにうなづいた。

He promptly acknowledged.

「そうならそうと、早く仰って下さればいいのに」

"It would be nice if you would say that you did early".

Variant Note: なすっている is still a commonly used variant of なさっている, but it

is typically viewed as dialectical and or not exactly proper. However, many people, especially in the older population, use this variant as it is common throughout East Japan.

読み物: Letter in 敬語

91.

わたしは若葉学園の卒業生です。都合によって本名が名乗れないのは残念ですが、愛校心は人一倍強うございます。今は大阪で家庭の者となっていますが、母校のことは一日も忘れたことはありません。

I am a graduate of Wakaba Academy. By convenience, I regret not being able to have my real name known, but my school spirit is twice that of most people. I am not a housewife in Osaka, but I haven't forgotten a day of my old school.

92.

このような手紙を出すのをずいぶん迷いましたが、愛校心のため思い切って書くことにいたしました。

I wavered at sending such a letter for a while, but due to school spirit, I daringly decided to write it.

93.

先日のことでございます。わたくしは三重県の鳥羽に主人といっしょに子供をつれて参り、あるホテルに泊まりました。そのホテルは鳥羽湾を見渡す景色のいい所でございます。わたくしが朝、飽かずに海のほうを眺めておりますと、ふと、下の道を通る男女づれが眼に止まりました。そして思わず、あっ、と叫んだことでございます。

It was the other day. I went together with my husband and children to Toba in Mie Prefecture, and we stayed at a certain hotel. The hotel is a scenic place to survey Toba Bay. When I was untiringly looking towards the ocean, suddenly, my

eyes stopped on a man and woman company passing through the street below.
And, without even thinking I let out an "ah".

94.

ここから書くのは忍びないことですが、今も申した通り、愛校心のために勇を鼓して書くことにします。その男の方は若葉学園の大島理事長さんです。それから、同伴の女性はなんと学生課の秋山千鶴子さんではありませんか。秋山さんは、わたくしの在学中、よくその顔を見ておりますし、それに秋山さんに呼びつけられて叱言を喰ったことがありますので、よく存じあげています。

From here I can't bring myself to write, but as I've said now, I will write due to school spirit and take it to heart. That man is Wakaba Academy's Board Chairman Ohshima. And, the female companion was none other than Chizuko Akiyama of the student affairs office. I saw her face a lot when I was at school. Also, I have been called on and scolded on by Ms. Akiyama. So, I know well.

95.

わたくしは、そのとき自分の眼を疑いました。まさか大島理事長と秋山さんとが、こんな所を仲よくアベックで散歩しているとは思いませんでした。でも、眼を凝らして見ると、まさにお二人に間違いありません。朝のことでしたが、お二人は手をつなぎ合って、まるで若い恋人同士のようでした。

I doubted my own eyes at that time. I didn't think that Board Chairman Ohshima and Akiyama were walking nicely together as a couple in a place like this. When I tried to fixate my eyes on them, there was no doubt that it was the exact two. Although it was the morning, the two were holding hands and looking just like two young lovers.

96.

わたくしは大島理事長が秋山さんと結婚したことも聞かないし、また大島理事長が奥さんを亡くされたことも承っておりません。わたくしはぼんやりとお二人のうしろ姿を見送っておりまして。

I haven't heard that Board Chairman Ohshima and Akiyama have married, and I haven't heard that his wife has passed. I absent-mindedly saw the two off from behind.

97.

それでも、わたくしはお二人がそういうお仲になっているとは信じられず、あるいは学生の引率でこられて、その間の軽い気持の散歩だと信じたかったのです。けれど、ホテルのフロントにきいてみて、お二人の名前もまったく違うし、もちろん、学生の引率でもないことを知って、眼の前が暗くなりました。

Even so, I couldn't believe that the two were together, and I wanted to believe that perhaps it was a walk with light emotion with them coming as student escorts. But, when I checked at the front desk, the two's names were completely different, and I knew that they were obviously not student escorts, and the front of my eyes darkened.

This passage is an excerpt from 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張, one of the best novelists in Modern Japanese literature. This section was in quotations, so other things you would expect with a letter were omitted. Although some of the wording may be somewhat old-fashioned, this passage is a great demonstration of how 敬語 is typically used.

読み物 2

Though older literature may have older 敬語, such 敬語 is typically viewed as the "purest" form of it, if such thing even exists in a realistic sense. Regardless, there are many things that you can learn about 敬語 usage in reading texts and listening to dialogues. The following is the first page of the famous story 雪国 by 川端康成.

Not all of this passage is in 敬語, but it's important to have preceding context if possible. The spelling of the original text has been altered to be more of use to you. Blocks of text will be given Japanese and then English by the original paragraph spacing of the text. Translating this passage in particular into English has caused many controversies, but the translations provided try to adhere to the original meaning of the text as close as possible while still sounding natural in English.

98.

国境の長いトンネルを抜けると雪国であった。夜の底が白くなった。信号所に止まった。

Once (they) came out of the long border tunnel, there was the Land of Snow.

The depths of the night had turned white. The train stopped at the signal station.

99.

向う側の座席から娘が立って来て、島村のガラス窓を落とした。雪の冷気が流れこんだ。

娘は窓いっぱいになり出して、遠くへ叫ぶように、

「駅長さあん、駅長さあん」

A young lady stood up and came over from the seat on the other side and opened the glass window in front of Shimamura. The cold snowy air rushed in.

The girl leaned all out of the window, and as if she were yelling afar, she shouted "Conductor, conductor".

100.

明かりをさげてゆっくり雪を踏んで来た男は、襟巻で鼻の上まで包み、耳に帽子の毛皮を垂れていた。

A man who had slowly walked there in the snow covered himself to the top of his nose with a scarf and had a cap pelt drooping on his ears.

101.

もうそんな寒さかと島村は外を眺めると、鉄道の官舎らしいバラックが山裾に寒々と散らばっているだけで、雪の色はそこまで行かぬうちに闇に吞まれていた。

When Shimamura gazed outside, thinking it had already gotten that cold, railroad residence-looking barracks were just desolately dispersed at the foot of the mountains, and before the snow hues could reach that far, the barracks were swallowed by darkness.

102. 駅長さん、私です、御機嫌よろしゅうございます。」

“Conductor, it’s me. How do you do?”.

103. ああ、葉子さんじゃないか。お帰りかい。また寒くなったよ。」

“Ah, why isn’t it Youko? Welcome home, it’s gotten cold again”.

104. 弟が今度こちらに勤めさせていただいておりますのですってね。お世話さまですわ。」

“I heard that my younger brother has been allowed to work here next time. Thank you for your care”.

105. 「こんなところ、今に寂しくて参るだろうよ。若いのに可哀想だな。」

“He’ll probably be lonely and troubled before long now. He’s pitiful yet so young.

106. 「ほんの子供ですから、駅長さんから教えてやっていただいて、よろしく願いたしますわ。」

“Since he’s merely a kid, I ask that you teach him well, Conductor”.

葉子’s language is indicative of 敬語 speech in the early half of the 20th century. The rule that polite endings should not have 連体形 didn't really exist then, and even today, this rule is still ignored. As you can also see from this passage, traditional feminine speech is maintained even in 敬語. This is now not really the case anymore for obvious post-modern attitude changes towards the role of women.

紹介

107. 葉山先生をご紹介します。葉山先生は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強なさった後、

ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていらっしゃいましたが、五年前に名古屋大学にいらっしゃいました。

最近はとてもお忙しくて、テレビをご覧になる時間もないと仰っています。

この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってください。

昨日もお宅で練習なさったそうです。では、葉山先生、よろしくお願いいたします。

1. Who is being introduced?
2. When did Hayama visit Nagoya University?
3. Where did Hayama graduate from for graduate school?
4. Where did Hayama teach Japanese for a long time?
5. What song is she going to be singing in English?
6. Underline the honorific speech. Change the person being introduced to your friend, and then change the honorific speech to polite speech.

リー先生

108. リー先生は、韓国語を教えています。韓国から来たばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいと思ったそうですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと言っています。

スポーツはあんまりしないそうですが、音楽が好きだそうです。

毎日遅くまで研究室にいますので、いつ行っても会えますよ。

1. Underline the parts that need to be changed to 敬語.
2. Change the underlined parts to an appropriate form.
3. What does Lee think about America?
4. What does Lee not like to do often?
5. Why is it that "we" can visit Lee whenever?

Table of Contents

Keys

紹介: Key

1. Hayama Sensei is being introduced.
2. Hayama visited Nagoya University five years ago.
3. Hayama graduated from Washington University for graduate school.
4. Hayama taught Japanese in Canada for a long time.
5. She is to sing "Shouting Star".
6. 葉山先生をご紹介いたします。葉山先生は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強なさった後、
ずっとカナダで日本語を教えていらっしゃいましたが、五年前に名古屋大学にいらっしゃいました。
最近はとてもお忙しくて、テレビをご覧になる時間もないと仰っています。
この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくださいます。
昨日もお宅で練習なさったそうです。では、葉山先生、よろしく願いいたします。

友達の_____を紹介します。_____は、ワシントン大学の大学院で勉強した後、ずっとカナダで日本語を
教えていましたが、五年前に名古屋大学に来ました。最近 はとても忙しくて、テレビを見る時間もないと
言っています。この間、ピアノをお買いになったそうです。今日は「ほうき星」を歌ってくれます。昨日も
家で練習したそうです。じゃあ、_____、よろしく願いします。

リー先生: Key

1. Underline the parts that need to be changed to 敬語.

リー先生は、韓国語を教えています。韓国から来たばかりのころは、
韓国の方がいいと思ったそうですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと言っています。
スポーツはあんまりしないそうですが、音楽が好きだそうです。

毎日遅くまで研究室にいるので、いつ行っても会えますよ。

2. リー先生は、韓国語を教えていらっしゃいます。韓国からいらっしゃったばかりのころは、韓国の方がいいと思いいになったそうですが、今はアメリカの方が住みやすいと仰っています。

スポーツはあまりなさらないそうですが、音楽がお好きだそうです。

毎日遅くまで研究室にいらっしゃるので、いつ行ってもお会いできます。

3. Lee thinks that it is easier to live in America than Korea.

4. Lee doesn't play sports often.

5. Lee is always in his office.

Before you head off to advanced studies here at IMABI, you will need to first go through an additional 50 lessons at the intermediate level.

第151課: Adjective Nominalization I: ～さ & ～み

第152課: Adjective Nominalization II: ～く

第153課: せっかく & わざわざ

第154課: せめて

第155課: Idioms II: Basic Expressions

第156課: Idioms III: The Body

第157課: The Particle て III

第158課: Obligation: つもり, はず, & ～べきだ

第159課: 連用中止形

第160課: ～ずつ & ～わりで

第161課: The Particleこそ

第162課: The Particleのみ

第163課: The Particleも II

第164課: Miss out: ～残す, ～漏らす, ～損なう, ～そびれる, ～損じる, & ～逃す

第165課: The Particleに III: Conjunctiveに

第166課: Adjectives III

第167課: About: ～について, ～に関して, & ～をめぐって

第168課: No Doubt that: ～に違いない & ～に相違ない

第169課: Based on: ～に基づいて, ～を踏まえて, ～をもとにして, ～に沿って, ～に即して, & ～に則って

第170課: After II: ～てからというもの(は) & ～て以来

第171課: Circumstance: 場合 & ～に備えて

第172課: Whenever II: ～度, ～都度, & ～につけ

第173課: The Supplementary Verb する

第174課: ～に対して

第175課: Standpoint: ～として & ～にとって

第176課: Through: ～を通して & ～を通じて

第177課: Span: ～にかけて & ～にわたって

第178課: ～によって

第179課: ～において・における

第180課: The Bases (活用形)

第181課: Interjections

第182課: 思しい & 思わしい

第183課: More Negative Patterns: ～ないことには, ～なし・なき, ～なしで (は), ～なしに (は),
～なくして (は), ～ことなく, いとわない, & 甲斐もなく

第184課: The Particle と III: と+…ない

第185課: 込む

第186課: As soon as: ～や (いなや), ～なり, ～途端 (に), & ～次第

第187課: Opportunity: きっかけ & 契機

第188課: Combination Particles with ところ

第189課: ～ざるを得ない & ～やむを得ない

第190課: The Seasons

第191課: Rain

第192課: Funeral

第193課: 君が代 & いろは

第194課: The Particle さえ, すら, & だに

第195課: 以 Adverbial Nouns

第196課: Circumstance: まま, 思いきや, & もと

第197課: Result: ～結果, ～うえで, ～挙句, ～すえに, & ～始末だ

第198課: Compare & Contrast: ～に比べて, ～に引き換え, ～にもまして, & ～ないまでも

第199課: As (change): ～につれて, ～に従って, ～に伴って, ～とともに, ～に応じて, & ～に応じて

第200課: The Particles って, たって, & だって

第151課: Adjective Nominalization I: ~さ & ~み

Although rare, there are some set phrases in Japanese that involve adjectives becoming nominalized by simply being left in the 終止形. As quick examples, consider the following set phrases.

1a. 酸いも甘いも噛み分ける。

1b. 酸っぱいも甘いもよく心得ている。

To know full well about the world.

Literally: To fully distinguish between sour and sweet.

Typically, ~さ and ~み are used to nominalize adjectives, with ~め and ~き being additional more complicated items to choose from. The resulting products of these endings are not completely interchangeable.

Curriculum Note: Other means of nominalizing adjectives will be mentioned elsewhere in IMABI.

~さ

~さ nominalizes an adjective objectively. Nouns with ~さ can either be concrete or feel as if they are. Not only can you find it after 形容詞, but you can also find it after 形容動詞 of both native and Sino-Japanese origin as well as loans from other languages.

1. 長さはどれくらいですか。

How long is it?

2. ^{うれ}嬉 ^かしさを噛み締める。

To enjoy happiness.

3. ^{むてっぽう}無鉄砲 ^{おやゆず}さだけは親譲り。(皮肉的)

Only recklessness is from (his) parents.

4. 安定の早さ

Rapidity of stability

5. 薬の飲みにくさ

Difficulty of taking medicine

6. その花の美しさに感動しました。

I was moved by the flower's beauty.

7. モダンさのコントラスト

Modernity contrast

8. 強さで^{な と}成し遂げる。

To accomplish with strength.

9. 土地の^{と ち}値^{ねだん}段は広さと {利便性・^{べんり}便 利 さ △} で変わります。

The price of land changes according to the size and convenience.

10. 打撃の強さは木を倒すほどでした。

The blow was strong enough to knock down a tree.

11. 設備投資の弱さは競争力に大きなマイナスになるだろう。

The weakness of capital investment could become a big minus to competitiveness.

12. 幸登は故郷の讃岐うどんが食べたさに日帰りで帰省することにした。

Wanting to eat his hometown's Sanuki udon, Yukito decided to go back home for the day.

Grammar Note: This shows that ～さ can be used with ～たい phrases.

13. 嵐の前の静けさだね。

It's the lull before the storm.

Form Note: 静けさ is from the Classical Japanese 静けし. Note, though, that 静かさ does exist because 静けし and 静かなり were different words then, and they should be treated separately now despite sharing semantic values.

Warning Note: 大げさ is not an example of this. The true spelling is 大袈裟, and this is not 当て字. Rather, 袈裟 in this phrase comes from 袈裟懸け, meaning "slashing someone diagonally from the shoulders" in this instance. This eventually led to its adjectival meaning of "grandiose".

14. 若さに免じて許す。

To forgive out of consideration of (the person's) youth.

Phrase Note: ～に免じて = "in mercy to". It comes from a feeling of compassion. Other things may be more appropriate in a given context. The thing normally dismissed/forgiven is typically a crime or blunder of some sort done by someone.

15. 私に免じて囚人を ^{しゃくほう}釈放 してください。

In mercy to me, please release the prisoner.

～み

～み nominalizes an adjective **subjectively**. So, ～み shows that there is some sort of **condition or nature**. It may also show the "location" of a certain condition. For example, 高み means "elevated place". The 当て字 味 is often used to write ～み.

Grammatically speaking, ～み is very limited as to what it may attach to. It must only attach to simple adjectives (単純形容詞) such as 苦い. Derived adjectives, compound adjectives, and adjectives with repeating parts like 美々しい, cannot be used with ～み. This is the complete opposite with ～さ.

Most of the adjective it can be used with refer to sight, hearing, hues, significance, etc. However, even this is not good enough. The chart below has almost all existing examples in Modern Japanese. To really know how *み* works, you have to investigate into each one. Some commonalities exist between similar words, but that's about it.

赤み	黒み	白み	黄み	黄色み
臭み	深み	浅み	高み	低み
丸み	重み	厚み	温かみ	柔らかみ
温み	軽み	強み	弱み	痛み
苦み	甘み	旨み	辛み	酸っぱみ
痒み	悲しみ	面白み	楽しみ	しょっぱみ
有り難み	おかしみ	茂み	明るみ	暗み
渋み	苦しみ			

Some of these are so rare that they may not be recognized as existing words by natives. For instance, 軽み and 長み no longer used. Some may be viewed as coming from verbs (痛む → 痛み; 楽しむ → 楽しみ; 悲しむ → 悲しみ; 明るむ → 明るみ; 暗む → 暗み).

Word Notes:

1. 白み may be read as 白身 to refer specifically to "egg white", and 白味 can be used to refer to "whiteness" or "egg white".
2. 黒み may also refer to "dark feeling" instead of just "dark hue".
3. 黄み spelled as 黄味 or 黄身 may mean "egg yolk" with the last option only meaning "egg yolk".
4. 浅み (shallow place), 低み (low ground), 軽み (light hue) read as either かるみ or かるみ, and しょっぱみ are high candidates as being "ungrammatical" to people

due to their rarely used status. It is to note that かるみ is actually a complex word from 芭蕉 works referring to a serious and smooth figure for discovering beauty. It's also important to note that although many Japanese teachers will tell you that しょっぱみ doesn't exist, it's not difficult to find examples of it made by native speakers. Perhaps this is due to confusion from み's multiple usages in the Japanese lexicon. On one hand, しょっぱみ refers to salty flavor, not saltiness, which then it would need to be replaced with しょっぱさ. However, spellings such as しょっぱ味, 苦味, 旨味, and 甘味 hone on this meaning.

5. 高み, 低い, 深み, and 浅み refer to places and not degree.

6. 臭み may be used figuratively.

7. うまみ has several meanings, which include "good taste", "the fifth category of taste 'umami'", "skill", and "profit (商売)". It's interesting to note that umami has been introduced into English.

8. 暗み no longer exists from the adjective 暗い, though it is productive when derived from 暗む.

9. ありがたさ = gratefulness; ありがたみ = value; importance.

10. 重み may refer to a weight that feels heavy, heavy in the feeling sense, or heavy in the abstract sense. Thus, as you can imagine, 強み and 弱み are based on feeling rather than on concrete strength. This sense is also true for 厚み, 温かみ, 柔らかみ, and 温み.

11. You do not derive 温かみ 柔らかみ from 温かな or 柔らかな.

12. ありがたみ is an exception of み not being with compounds.

Examples

16. 赤味がかったもの

Something that's reddish

17. 深みにはまる。

To go in too far.

18. 明るみに出された。

It was brought to light.

19. ^{へび}蛇 が ^{しげ}茂 みの中でうごめいている。

A snake is squirming in the grove.

Word Note: 茂み is an example where the original adjective is no longer in existence.

20. 母が亡くなって、初めて有難みを実感した。

With the passing of my mother, I experienced gratefulness for the first time.

21. 新鮮味は欠けるが、多くの人を呼び寄せる企画だ。

It lacks freshness, but it is a plan that will bring over a lot of people.

Word Note: 新鮮み may be viewed as an exceptional case, but 味 in this instance can also be viewed as literally being Sino-Japanese, in which case this would not be a suitable example.

22. 新鮮味に欠ける企画だ。

It's a plan that lacks freshness.

～め・目

This ending is a little 口語的, but it is yet another ending that may nominalize a subset of adjectives. It is even more restricted than み. It may be used with

dimensional adjectives (次元形容詞) such as 長い, 短い, 太い, 近い, 遠い, 高い, 低い, 細い, 丸い, 厚い, 薄い, 深い, and 浅い.

There are also other examples such as 多め, 早め, and 古め (not so common). It can also be with some color: 黒め; 白め. You have to be careful, though, because 赤目 does literally mean "red eye(s)". In speaking of which, 黒目 do mean "iris" and 白目 "white of the eye". So, using ひらがな instead is wise to differentiate meanings. These words in which there could be conflicting meanings are best used in phrases. In fact, all of these words are most frequently used in larger phrases.

The purpose of ～め is to show degree or tendency. And, it may also be seen after some verbs attached to the 連用形. Important examples include 控えめ and 落ち目.

23. 畑を深めに掘り返す。

To tear up a field deep.

24. 肌が黒めの男性

Dark-skinned males

25. 英語が多めのアニソン

Anime songs with a lot of English

26. 色素薄め

Light on pigment

27. 厚めの布

A rather thick cloth

Spelling Note: There is no true difference in spelling if you use め or 目 aside from the color examples. However, it is less common when it attaches to adjectives.

Table of Contents

第152課: Adjective Nominalization II: ～<

～ < creates the 連用形 of 形容詞. For a very small amount of adjectives and other sorts of restrictions, this form can be used nominally.

～< → Noun Phrase

Words such as 近く, 遠く, 多く, 古く, and 早く are often used as nouns. Such words and phrases involving them are almost always dealing with time and space. Even so, their antonyms are not necessarily applicable with this grammar pattern. For instance, 古く can be used nominally, but 若く can't.

There are three basic things to know about these phrases that have already been mentioned. To be clear, they are:

- All of these end in the < from the 連用形 of 形容詞.
- You can view this usage as coming from the deletion of a noun phrase that would be before the adjective in question.
- These phrases are usually about time and space.

These words often take the particles へ, から, に, and まで, but they are almost never with other particles like が and を. If you do, the phrase in question must be a set phrase fully nominalized. Though there are particles that they can often be used with, this does not mean you can always use them together.

Consider the following example.

1a. 友里が遠くに行ってしまった。

1b. 友里が遠 {い・くの} 場所に行ってしまった。

Yuri went far away.

2. 空高くを目指す。

To aim up for the skies.

3. つばめ
燕 が空高くを飛んでいた。

The swallows were flying up above.

4. びん
その 瓶 が遠くから海に浮かんで来た。

The bottle came and floated (here) from afar on the sea.

4. 友里が船橋駅の近くに住んでいる。

Yuri lives near Funabashi Station.

Several of these words only work well when used right after a noun, creating very commonly used phrases.

5. 友里が朝早くから夜遅くまで働いていた。

Yuri was working from early in the morning until late at night.

6. 地中奥深くまで沈み込む。

To sink deep into the ground.

7. あんこう
鮫 鰐 は海の底深くに生息している。

Angler fish live deep below on the sea floor.

8. だんな
旦那 は朝早くに目覚めた。

My husband woke up early in the morning.

9. 私はほとんど毎日、夜遅くに帰宅します。

I come home late in the night almost every day.

10. その土地の広くに伝えられた。

(It) was spread throughout the land.

11. こんな遅くにどうしたの？

What's wrong this late (at night)?

12. ついに目的の谷に ^{たど}辿り着いた。勢いをつけて ^{しょうこひん}証拠品を深くに投げ捨てた。

I finally arrived at the valley, my destination. I then through the evidence deep down (in the valley) with great force.

13. セスが遅くに出て行った。午前2時を回っていた。

Seth left when it was late out. It was past 2 A.M.

14. 太平洋の東側にフィリピン ^{かいこう}海溝がある。百合がその深くに ^{もぐった}潜った。

The Philippine Trench is on the east side of the Pacific Ocean. There, Yuri dove deep down.

Though these words have been described as involving the nominalization of adjectives through the 連用形, it is actually more probable that these are merely the 省略形 (abbreviated form) of statements with these adjectives in the 連体形 followed by some time/place noun. The evidence for this is the ungrammaticality of Ex. 15. This example shows that you cannot fully exploit them as nouns unless like in Ex. 2.

15a. 月が古くについて語る。 X

15b. ^{むかし}昔の月について語る。 O

To tell about the ancient moon.

16. きょう、近くの大学を見学しました。

Today, I observed a nearby college.

Trying to figure out the restrictions of these phrases is not easy. There has to be a clear reference to time or space to allow them to be used independently. In Ex. 17, the phrase この噂 acts as an agent to conjure up the grammatically necessary time phrase that theoretically exists right after 古く. You might be thinking, "Oh great, now there are mystical invisible things in Japanese". Yes, every language has these things. The proof for its existence as we've seen is that

there is proof of these phrases being abbreviations. Abbreviated phrases syntactically must imply everything the non-abbreviated form does. In 10a., we see no "agent" phrase to give 古く its temporal referent. Thus, the phrase is left unusable and must be replaced with a regular noun phrase (過去).

17. この ^{うわさ}噂 は古くからある。

This rumor is ancient.

18a. 優里が古くを振り返った。X

18b. 優里が過去を振り返った。○

Yuri looked back at the past.

19. その歴史は古くまで ^{さかのぼ}遡 る。

The history goes way back.

Right after you've gone through all this information concerning the mysterious habit of these words, it may be disheartening news that there are completely exceptional phrases that defy everything that has been said thus far. The big culprit of them all is 多く. 多く refers to quantity and can be used freely like any other noun in Japanese.

20. 市民の多くから信任を得る。

To receive trust from most of the townspeople.

21. ^{けつえき}血液の ^{りゅうしゅつ}流出 を止める機能は動物の多くに ^{そな}備 わっている。

The function of stopping blood flow is found in a lot of animals.

22. ^{ひょうざん}氷山 がすべて溶けてしまったら、^となんきょくたいりく 南極大陸 に住む動物の多くが ^{ぜつめつ}絶滅 してしまう。

If all the icebergs were to melt, most of the animals living in Antarctica would go extinct.

23. インターネットによる^{しんさつ}診^{よやく}察^{よやく}予^{よやく}約^{よやく}が多く、の病院で導入されている。

Reserving medical examinations online is being introduced to many hospitals.

24. 実験結果の多くにこの^{けいこう}傾^{こう}向^{こう}が見られる。

This trend is seen in most of the experiment results.

It's also interesting to see that 若く and 浅く, despite being adjectives related to time and space, cannot be used nominally. Yet, their antonyms 古く and 深く can. However, you can still use their base forms with an actual time/place noun.

25. ワニに^く食^くいちぎられたレイヨウの^{しがい}死^{がい}骸^{がい}が水中深くまで沈んだ。

The antelope carcass ripped to shreds by the alligator sunk deep below the water.

26a. ^{てんぷく}転^{てん}覆^{ぷく}した船が浅くに浮いている。X

26b. 転覆した船が浅く浮いている。?

26c. 転覆した船が少し沈んでいる。O

26d. 転覆した船が沈みかけている。

The capsized boat is somewhat sinking.

Sentence Note: Imagine a boat capsized and is teetering above and below the surface. Usually, 26c or 26d would be used to describe this, but 26b is not out of the question. Unlike the rest, it is vague as to whether the boat is permanently jutting out of the water or is fully sunken directly below the water but not deep down.

27. ^{するど}鋭^{ぼう}い^つ棒^つで突かれて死んだカエルがかなり深いところまで沈んでいる。

The frog that died from being stabbed with a sharp rod has sunk really deep.

28. ^{しんかいぎょ}深海魚は浅いところに住んでいる。

Deep-sea fish are living in a shallow area.

29. ^{あんしょう}暗礁に乗り上げた^{りょかくせん}旅客船は、10メートルくらいの浅いところに沈んでいる。

The cruise ship capsized on the coral reefs and is sunk in a shallow spot of about 10 meters.

30a. 妹の友達は若くに亡くなった。X

30b. 妹の友達は若く亡くなった。○

My younger sister's friend died young.

31. 若いときに亡くなる人が多くて、悲しい。

It's sad that a lot of people die when they are young.

32. かなり深くまで潜った。

I dived quite far down.

Grammar Note: Using an adverb before these words allows them to stay grammatical as if they were used with another noun before them. However, this cannot be used to expand this pattern to other adjectives.

The adjectives 近い and 遠い are somewhat irregular because they can essentially always be used with the particles に, へ, から, and まで in the forms 近く and 遠く respectively.

33. 流れ着いてよ、どこか遠くへ。あなたの待つ^{すてき}素敵^{すてき}な場所へ探しているよ、歌えるような今は音信不通のラブソングを。

Drift somewhere far. I'm searching for a love song on silent now that I could sing as I head to the splendid place you are waiting for me.

From DIV's ^{ひょうりゅう}漂流^{ひょうりゅう}彼女。

34. めいおうせい の近くからやってきた うちゅうじん たち、いったい何を たくら んでいるのか？

What on Earth are the aliens that have come from nearby Pluto planning?

35. 遠くにある火山が ふんか して、まさか 火 山 灰 がここまで降って来るとは思わなかった。

I never thought that volcanic ash would fall all the way over here with the volcano from afar erupting.

36. 銀閣寺の近くにある せんとう に行きたいです。

I want to go to a public bath near Ginkakuji.

37. 近くにある公園で桜が満開です。

The cherry blossoms are in full bloom at the park nearby.

Obligatory ～くの

For 近い, 遠い, 少ない, and 多い, unless part of an entire phrase modifying a noun, they can't be used to modify a noun alone. With exception to 近い and 遠い which we'll get to later, this holds true. In this situation you must use ～くの. However, for 少ない, you have to totally rephrase as 少なくの doesn't exist. 少しの exists, though.

近い学校 X	遠い大学 X	少ない人 X	多い人 X
--------	--------	--------	-------

38. いちばん近いところ

The closest place

39. 近いうちに (Set Phrase)

In the near future

Grammar Note: You can actually say 近く to mean 近いうちに. The form 近々 also exists. This just goes to show you what might be done to an adjective on an individual basis.

40. 駅に近い。

It's close to the train station.

41. 駅に近いマンションに住む。

To live in an apartment close to the train station.

42. 近くの学校

A school nearby

43. 遠くの大学

A college far away

44. 日本は^{じしん}地震が多い。

There are a lot of earthquakes in Japan.

45. 人が少ない。

There are few people.

46. 少ない^{にんずう}人数

Small amount of people

Phrase Note: This phrase is alright because 人数, unlike 人, is a quantity noun. Nevertheless, it's shown to show one way of how to overcome the ungrammaticality of 少ない人.

47a. 東京には少しの緑がある。

47b. 東京には緑が少しある。

It seems that 近い and 遠い actually fall out of the problem if a modifier is implied in context. Although not appropriate for writing, using these two without

restriction appears to be a feature of the spoken language among younger people.

48. 遠い学校に通いたくない。

I don't want to go to a school that's far away.

Table of Contents

第153課: せっかく & わざわざ

These are mixed up all the time by students. Maybe it's because わざわざ is just so fun to say?

せっかく & わざわざ

せっ かく shows something that is done through great trouble or time to reach a certain point or condition. It is an adverbial noun, so it is possible for it to act as a noun. Again, there is some sort of big cost implied, and it is that cost being put into good use that's being insisted on.

There are several grammatical environments that せっかく can be used in.

- せっかくの: Used as a noun with の to be an attribute.
- せっかく...のだから: Combined with のだから to stress hard efforts that are to be well known by the listener.
- せっ かく...のに: This is often used in declining something from someone, assuming the person went through the trouble. However, depending on the situation, it can be used sardonically. It can also be used by the person who went through the hard efforts. Or it could be used to show a shame.
- せっかくだから: Used by someone excepting an opportunity from the person that went through the trouble.
- せっかくだが: Used in declining something from someone who went through the trouble.

These are simply applications of せっかく with other patterns. Of course, you should always be aware of how polite you should be to someone.

Examples

1. せっかく日本語を習ったんだから、日本語をぺらぺらと話すことができるようになります。
たいです。

Since I've taken the trouble to study Japanese, I want to become able to speak Japanese fluently.

Nuance Note: んだから implies that the person you're speaking to is well aware of your Japanese students.

2. せっかくの苦労も ^{あだ} 仇 になった。

All my troubles have been done for nothing.

3. せっかくの苦労が水の ^{あわ} 泡 になった。

All my pains were in vain.

4. せっかくのご ^{こうい} 厚 意 ですから、お受けしましょう。

For your great kindness, I accept.

5. せっかく習った日本語は忘れないようにしましょう。

Please try not to forget Japanese, which you've taken the trouble to learn.

6. せっかく日本へ行っても、日本人と話さないと、日本語は上手になりません。

Even if you make the efforts to go to Japan, if you don't speak with Japanese people, your Japanese won't get better.

7. せっかくアメリカへ来たんだから、しばらく ^{たいざい} 滞 在 してください。

Since you've gone through the trouble to come to America, please stay for a while.

8. せっかくエッセイを書いたのに、文が全部消えてしまったよ。

Although I spent so much energy writing my essay, it got completely erased!

9. せっかくやれるなら、やってほしいんだが。 (失礼な言い方)

If you could do it, I'd like you to, but...

Orthography Note: せっかく can be written in 漢字 as 折角 or 切角

せっかく VS わざわざ

せっ かく gives a feeling that something should not be wasted because one has put a lot of effort into it. It can be used as a nominal, and it is often used in refusing a request. わざわざ, on the other hand, can only be used as an adverb and describes that there was no necessity to go through the trouble. It is often used out of care for a person.

10. お忙しいところをわざわざ来ていただいて、すみません。

I'm sorry for having you come all the way while you're busy.

11. 焼き肉を食べにわざわざ北見市まで行きました。

I went all the way to Kitami to eat yakiniku.

12. せっかくですがお ^{かま}構いなく。

Thank you, but don't trouble.

13. せっかく作ったんですから、食べてみてください。

Since I went through the trouble to make it, please try to eat it.

14. わざわざ取りに帰らなくてもいいですよ。

It's alright for you to not go all the way home to get it.

15. せっかくの休みなのに、仕事をしなけりゃいけないさ。(すごく砕けた言い方)

Although it's a long-awaited holiday, I have to work.

16a. 多忙なところをわざわざお越し頂きありがとうございました。（もっと自然）

16b. 多忙なところを押して来てもらってありがとうございました。

Thank you very much for coming for me although you are quite busy.

Table of Contents

第154課: せめて

This really isn't that hard. So, take this is a break from hard studying.

せめて

せめて means "at the very least". せめて is used when implied that more is desirable. After all, "it's the very least". Because of this, it is often used with the particle くらい・ぐらい to make the statement less specific/direct. With は, it may be translated as "if it is unavoidable".

1. せめて夢の中なら、何でも自由にできるでしょう。

Shouldn't you at least be able to do anything freely inside a dream?

2. せめて酒はやめなよ。(Casual)

Quit drinking at the very least.

3. 小さな事業でも興したいので、せめてパソコンくらいはほしいです。

Because I want to start up a small business, I want at least a computer.

4. どんなに経済的にも大変でも、せめて光熱費を払ったほうがいい。

No matter how financially troubled you are, it's best to at least pay your utility bills.

5. せめて一万円は支払わなきゃいけねー。(Slang)

If it cannot be helped, I'll have to pay 10,000 yen.

6. せめて宿題ぐらいはしといてくれ。(Casual; potentially rude; 男性語)

At the very most, do your homework beforehand!

7. せめて一年間くらい日本に住んでみたいんですがねえ。(20 年代後半以降)

I'd like to at least live in Japan for a year.

8. どんなに疲れていても、せめて三十分くらいは勉強してください。

No matter how tired you are, at least study for thirty minutes.

9. せめて週に一回くらいは運動した方がいいですよ。

It's best to at least exercise once a week.

10. どんなにあの人が嫌いでも、せめて挨拶くらいはしたほうがいい。

No matter how much you hate that person, it's best to at least greet him.

11. 毎日せめて一時間くらい勉強してきてほしいですねえ。

I wish that they'd at least come to study an hour daily.

12. アメリカでは、せめて一度はハワイへ行ってみたいと思う人が多い。

There are a lot of people in America who would like to visit Hawaii at least once.

漢字 Note: ハワイ may also rarely be spelled in 漢字 with the あて字 spelling 布哇.

If you are to ever type this, do not use 羽合, which has the same pronunciation but is a town in Japan.

13. 信人にとっては、せめてもの誠意のつもりだった。

As to Nobuto, he intended to at least be sincere.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

第155課: Idioms II: Basic Expressions

An idiom or 慣用句 is a set expression that diverts to some degree from the literal definition from which it originally derives.

It is very easy to comprehend an idiom when said in one's native language. When a Japanese person thinks or hears a given set phrase, their mind naturally thinks of the idiomatic intent from its literal approach. So, no matter how deviant a phrase is from the literal arrangement of words, a connection is still visible and very much shows the cultural reasoning why a phrase means what it does idiomatically. But, a definition of a said idiom from another language is a different story and requires a two step process.

1. Understanding the literal meaning of the phrase
2. Understanding what is actually trying to be said

Idioms is by far the most difficult aspect of the Japanese language. This is further compounded by the sheer number of idioms that exist in the language. On the spot translation without a culture translation can lead to a horrible chain of events caused by tripping into the 'idiomatic cultural divide'.

Many idioms in Japanese derive from unique indigenous concepts such as martial arts and an array of ceremonies--tea, etc. The sheer number, though, of the idioms that exist can be reduced by realizing a few key concepts.

Many idioms are only different from each other by a single synonymous and interchangeable particle or word. Understanding particles is an important element in understanding idioms and constructing them. At this point in IMABI, this should not be a problem. If it is a problem, you will have many problems as particle usage can greatly alter the meaning intended in an idiomatic expression.

It is also important to realize that many idioms are only off by transitivity orientation. The nuance given off is really the only thing, then, that typically changes. First person is normally shown with transitive expressions and intransitive expressions show some sort of observation.

Something that is hard to decipher, especially in text, is the sense that an idiom is being used in. Here, context decides. For example, if you go to a jail and set everyone free, you would say 自由にした. But, if you were instead an interrogator of the prisoners, you would have most likely meant that you had them all at your mercy.

Lastly, do not be completely overwhelmed by the expressions that are basically completely different from their literal meanings. You will just have to sit, think, study, and learn them. In the chart below there are some of the many common idioms that are used in Japanese. Take note of their particle usages, what kind of noun and verb combinations that are made, and determine the degree of 'idiomaticity' there is between the literal and idiomatic definitions. Following the chart, there will be several example sentences to give you the cultural background to better apply them in your speech.

Idioms

		Meaning	Literal Meaning
火に油を注ぐ	ひにあぶらをそそぐ	Add fuel to the fire	Pour grease in a fire
転ばぬ先の杖	ころばぬさきのつえ	Look before you leap	Twig of point that doesn't fall
金看板を掛ける	きんかんばんをかける	To assume importance	To hang a billboard with gold
草を結ぶ	くさをむすぶ	To return a favor	To bind grass
声が詰まる	こえがつまる	To speak in a choked voice	For the voice to choke
声を曇らす	こえをくもらす	To falter out	To cloud the voice
声を呑む	こえをのむ	To swallow one's words	To swallow one's voice
声を立てる	こえをたてる	To cry out	To raise one's voice
暮しに困る	くらしにこまる	To be in financial trouble	To be troubled in livelihood
暮しを立てる	くらしをたてる	To make a living	To raise a living
芸が立つ	げいがたつ	To be a master of the arts	For skill to stand
芸は身を助く	げいはみをたすく	Art brings bread	A skill will save yourself
蔵が建つ	くらがたつ	To become a millionaire	A storage house to be built
車に切る	くるまに切る	To cut clockwise	To cut in a car
癖を直す	くせをなおす	To break a habit	To fix a habit
記録に載る	きろくにのる	To be recorded	To appear in the records
義理がある	ぎりがある	To be bound by duty	To have duty
看板を下す	かんばんをおろす	To close down shop	To take down a billboard
肝胆を出す	かんたんをいだす	To do with devotion	To show one's inner being
慣例を残す	かんれいをのこす	To set precedent	To leave behind a precedent

勘定を留める	かんじょうをとめる	To run up bills	To pile up bills
嘴が黄色い	くちばしがきいろい	To be immature	For the beak to be yellow
嘴を入れる	くちばしをいれる	To interfere with	To put in one's beak
嘴を鳴らす	くちばしをならす	To babble about	To sound one's beak
気が焦る	きがあせる	To be impatient	For the mind to be in a hurry
気が荒い	きがあらい	To be quarrelsome	For the mind to be violent
気が進む	きがすすむ	To feel like doing	For the mind to advance
気が軽い	きがかるい	To be sociable	For the mind to be light
気が座る	きがすわる	To be at ease	For the mind to sit
気が置ける	きがおける	To feel ill at ease	For the mind to be place- able
気がそれる	きがそれる	To be distracted	For the mind to divert
気が多い	きがおおい	To be fickle	To have many minds
気が大きい	きがおおきい	To be generous	To have a big mind
気が腐る	きがくさる	To be dejected	For one's mind to rot
気に持つ	きにもつ	To weigh on one's mind	To hold in one's mind
雲を凌ぐ	くもをしのご	To rise over the clouds	To gain advantage of clouds
組みになる	くみになる	To join forces	To become a group
組みを選ぶ	くみをえらぶ	To choose sides	To choose groups
訓練が行届く	くんれんがいきとどく	To be well-trained	For training to be well-kept
先がある	さきがある	To have potential	To have a future
先に立つ	さきにたつ	To be in the lead	To stand ahead
人を先に使う	ひとをさきにつかう	To use someone	To use a person for the fu- ture
先を読む	さきをよむ	To look into the future	To read the future
気が戻る	きかもどる	To be turned off	For the mind to return
酒に痛む	さけにいたむ	To get dead drunk	To ache in liquor
酒に回される	さけにまわされる	To lose oneself to liquor	To be winded in liquor
酒を使う	さけをつかう	To be under the influence	To use liquor
肉が落ちる	にくがおちる	To lose weight	For meat to drop

匙を投げる	さじをなげる	To throw in the towel	To throw a spoon
鯖を読む	さばをよむ	To cheat in counting	To read the mackerel
最期を遂げる	さいごをとげる	To die a pitiful death	To achieve one's latter end
策に富む	さくにとむ	To be resourceful	To be rich in measures
策を弄する	さくをろうする	To use artifice	To play with measures
工夫を凝らす	くふうをこらす	To work out a plan	To concentrate devices
気に留める	きにとめる	To keep in mind	To keep in the mind
災難を免れる	さいなんをまぬかれる	To avoid a disaster	To avoid misfortune
財布を叩く	さいふをたたく	To empty one's purse	To hit one's purse
財布を満たす	さいふをみたす	To fill one's purse	To fill one's purse
構想を練る	こうそうをねる	To rack one's brains	To draw up a framework
座を冷やす	ざをひやす	To ruin the mood	To cool the seat
才に溺れる	さいにおぼれる	To rely heavily on talent	To drown in ability
我を忘れる	われをわすれる	To get carried away	To forget oneself
割符が合う	わりふがあう	To meet eye to eye	To match tallies
草鞋を剥ぐ	わらじをはぐ	To end one's journey	To take off one's sandals
利に走る	りにはしる	To be eager to make profit	To run to profits
巧言を用いる	こうげんをもちいる	To flatter	To use flatter
涎が出る	よだれがでる	To be delicious	To begin to drool
運に任せる	うんにまかせる	Trust to Providence	To entrust in destiny
気前がいい	きまえがいい	To have an open hand	To have good generosity
歓心を買う	かんしんをかう	To buy favor	To buy favor
口火となる	くちびとなる	To trigger something	To become the spark
口火を切る	くちびをきる	To spark something	To cut the spark
攻撃を防ぐ	こうげきをふせぐ	To defend against an at- tack	To prevent an attack
看板が泣く	かんばんがなく	Not true to one's name	For the billboard to cry
冠を曲げる	かんむりをまげる	To take offense	To bend a crown
気が急く	きがせく	To feel hard pressed	For the mind to be hurried
犠牲を払う	ぎせいをはらう	To make a sacrifice	To pay a sacrifice

気は心	きはこころ	It's the thought that counts	The mind's the heart
気が重い	きがおもい	To feel depressed	For the mind to be heavy
気が散る	きがちる	To be distracted	For the mind to be scattered
気が乗らない	きがのらない	To not be in the mood	For the mind to not be riding
火事に遭う	かじにあう	To be in a fire	To encounter a fire
口車に乗る	くちぐるまにのる	To be cajoled into something	To ride a cajoler
傘に乗る	かさののる	To be carried away	To ride an umbrella
過去に生きる	かこにいきる	To live in the past	To live in the past
仇を成す	あだをなす	To make enemies	To give birth to enemies
案に落つ	あんにおつ	To go according to plan	To fall into a plan
左右に托する	さゆうにたくする	To dodge an issue	To make excuses left and right
授業を休む	じゅぎょうをやすむ	To miss a class	To take a rest from class
処置に窮する	しょちにきゅうする	To be at a loss	For a measure to be a loss
塵界を脱する	じんかいをだつする	To retire from the world	To get out of a dirty world
気を引く	きをひく	To rouse excitement	To draw in minds
奇跡を現す	きせきをあらわす	To achieve a miracle	To reveal a miracle
期待に添う	きたいにそう	To meet expectations	To live up to expectations
隙に乗じる	すきにじょうじる	To catch off guard	To take advantage of gaps
逃げを打つ	にげをうつ	To attempt to escape	To hit an escape
気を揉む	きをもむ	To be anxious about	To worry the mind
恥を搔く	はじをかく	To be ashamed	To scratch one's shame
鼻薬を嗅がせる	はなぐすりをかがせる	To offer a bribe	To make...smell nasal spray
幅に成る	はばになる	To gain prestige	To become width
百計が尽きる	ひゃっけいがつきる	To be at the end of the rope	To exhaust all means
顰蹙を買う	ひんしゅくをかう	To be frowned upon	To buy frowning on
不信を抱く	ふしんをいだく	To have a suspicion	To hold a distrust
管を巻く	くだをまく	To blurt out something	To wind a pipe

風致を害する	ふうちをがいする	To spoil the view	To damage the scenic beauty
武を争う	ぶをあらそう	To struggle for supremacy	To fight martial affairs
風呂を落とす	ふろをおとす	To empty a bathtub	To drop a bathtub
狐が落ちる	きつねがおちる	To come to one's senses	The fox falls
狐に摘まされる	きつねにつままされる	To be baffled	To be caught by the fox
境に入る	さかいにいる	To reach a high status	To enter the border
不平を並べる	ふへいをならべる	To whine over	To line up dissatisfaction
境に隔つ	さかいにへだつ	To depart from this world	To separate from boundaries
不評を買う	ふひょうをかう	To lose popularity	To buy a bad reputation
枕を重ねる	まくらをかさねる	To sleep together regularly	To stack up pillows
枕を砕く	まくらをくだく	To fret over	To break a pillow
身を誤る	みをあやまる	To go astray	To misjudge the body
見切りで買う	みきりでかう	To buy at a reduced price	To buy with abandonment
虫の居所が悪い	むしのいどころがわるい	To be in a bad mood	The the bug is in a bad spot.
虫が良すぎる	むしがよすぎる	To ask for too much	For a bug to be too good
肘鉄砲を食う	ひじでっぼうをくう	To get snubbed	To eat at a rebuff
馬力がある	ばりきがある	To have stamina	To have horse power
日が浅い	ひがあさい	To be only recent	For the day to be shallow
日を消す	ひをけす	To spend one's time	To erase the day
火を被る	ひをかぶる	To be overcome with grief	To wear fire
舞台を踏む	ぶたいをふむ	To make one's debut	To step on stage
平気を装う	へいきをよそおう	To keep one's head	To put on calmness
気を負う	きをおう	To be eager	To bear the mind
芸がない	げいがない	To be good for nothing	To have no art/skill
声を殺す	こえをころす	To talk in a whisper	To kill one's voice

Example Sentences

Despite that idiomatic phrases are typically stand-alone phrases that can be and are understood in isolation, it is helpful to see context with these phrases. Do not be confused with syntax as nothing out of the ordinary was shown. If you must, get familiar with the literal definitions to think of the phrases.

1. おやつで腹の虫を抑えたらどうや。（Dialectical）

What do you think about easing your emotions with a little snack?

2. なんとなくあいつ、虫が好かねえ。（Vulgar）

For some reason I just don't like that guy.

3. うちの家はよく日が当たります。

My house gets a lot of sun.

4. 火のないところに煙はたたぬ。（Slightly old-fashioned）

There's no smoke without fire.

5. 日を見るより明らかな問題だと強調しております。（Humble）

I'm stressing that it is a problem as clear as day.

6. 社会で幅をきかせている。

To be having a big influence and becoming prestigious in society.

7. 看板を下ろすとは廃業して店をたたむということである。（改まった）

"Kanban wo orosu" is to shut down a shop in discontinuing a business.

8. 塵界を脱して逃れた方がましだ。

I'd rather retire and run away from the hustle and bustle of this world.

9. 5歳ほど鯖を読むのに Facebook アカウントを作る子供が多いそうです。

There are supposedly a lot of kids that make a Facebook account that edge their age by a little 5 years.

10. 彼はいつも自分の思い通りじゃないと気がすまない嫌いがある。

He has the tendency to always want his way.

11. コンピューターがついていると気が散ってちっとも勉強できないんだ。

I can't study at all when the computer is on.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What kinds of idioms are there in Japanese?
2. Look at the idioms given in this lesson and see how they relate to their English counterparts.
3. Try to translate idiomatic phrases into Japanese and see if they match up by using the internet.
4. Try to make Japanese idiomatic phrases and see if they actually exist by using the internet.
5. Sometimes people may mistake an idiom for the literal meaning, even natives. How would this be extremely embarrassing? Use examples from the chart given in this lesson.

第156課: Idioms III: The Body

This lesson will introduce you to a lot of important idioms that even parts of the body.

Examples

1. マンガで目の保養になりました。

Literal: Seeing the manga book became a recreation of the eyes.

Seeing the manga book was a feast for my eyes.

2. 待つほかに手はなかった。

Literal: There wasn't a hand but to wait.

There was nothing that I could do but wait for him.

3. 汚い手を使う。

Literal: To use a dirty hand.

To hit below the belt.

4. もし手に余るようなことがあれば

Literal: If there is something that is too much for your hands.

If there is something that is beyond your control

5. 先生のお言葉が今でも耳に残っています。

Literal: What my teacher said is still even now remaining in my ear.

What my teacher said is still even now lingering in my ear.

6. 彼は大統領の右腕として知られています。

Literal: He is known as the president's right arm.

He is known as the president's right hand man.

7. そのアイ스티ーは僕の口に合わなかった。

Literal: The ice tea doesn't go well with my mouth.

The ice tea doesn't fit my tastes.

8. 借金で首が回らない。

Literal: One's neck can't turn with debt.

To be eaten up with debt.

9. 彼は首を振った。

Literal: He nodded his neck.

He nodded his head.

10. このケーキはおいしくて顎が落ちそうです。

This cake is so delicious that my jaws are dropping.

11. 顎を出してしまった。

Literal: I showed my chin.

I got exhausted.

12a. 首をやる。

12b. 首を切る。 (To cut the neck).

Literal: To kill the neck

To be hanged.

13. 職務怠慢で首にした。

Literal: To be necked due to neglect of duty.

To be fired due to neglect of duty.

14. 今は手が塞がっている。

Literal: My hands are occupied now.

My hands are full now.

15. いつまでも親の脛を齧るつもりだそうだ。

Literal: It sounds like she plans to gnaw at her parents' shin forever.

It sounds like she intends to sponge off her parents forever.

16. 日本語の腕を磨くために日本に引っ越しました。

Literal: I moved to Japan in order to polish my Japanese arm.

I moved to Japan in order to polish my Japanese skills.

17. 頭が重くなった。

Literal: My head got heavy.

I got a headache.

18. お小僧は大人になって頭を丸めた。

Literal: The boy became an adult and rounded his head.

The boy became an adult and then became a Buddhist priest.

19. あなたにはとても頭が上がりません。

Literal: I do not really raise my head to you.

I have a great esteem for you.

20. その問題に頭を抱えている。

Literal: I'm carrying my head in the problem.

I'm racking my mind over the problem.

21. 解決のため頭を搾る。

Literal: To squeeze one's head for a solution.

To think hard on something in order to reach a solution.

22. 頭を冷やせよ。

Literal: Cool your head.

Cool it.

23. 名案がぱっと頭に浮かんだ。

Literal: A good idea suddenly floated into my mind.

A good idea flashed before my mind.

24. 疑念が頭を擡げてきた。

Literal: Suspicion raised a head.

Suspicion reared its head.

25. 頭にきた。

Literal: It came in (my) mind.

That makes me angry!

26. 彼は、何をやっても足が地につかない。

Literally: No matter what he does, his feet won't stick to the ground.

No matter what he does, he can't stick to anything.

27. 彼は頭が鈍くて理解が遅い。

Literal: His mind is dull and he's comprehension is slow.

He's dull-minded and slow at comprehending.

28. 足が重い。

Literal: Feet are heavy.

To have lead feet.

29. 彼女は気が多すぎるね。

Literal: Her spirit is too much.

She's too fickle.

30. とにかく頭を下げてこい。

Literal: Anyways come over and lower your head.

Just go and apologize.

31. 将棋の腕が上がったな。

Literal: Your shogi arm has risen, hasn't it?

Your skills in shogi have improved, haven't they?

Below is a handful of some of the most common idioms of the body. Hundreds more exist, but this can keep you busy. The more you learn, the more you

see how these phrases are constructed and about the true meanings of the words in Japanese.

頭が荒い	To breath hard	頭が固まる	To have a fixed idea
頭が切れる	To be quick thinking	頭を抱える	To rack over
顔が厚い	To be impudent	顔が売れる	To be popular
顔が利く	To be influential	顔を貸す	To meet...wishes
顔を潰す	To blight someone's dig-nity	鼻であしらう	To snub someone
鼻が凹む	To be put down	鼻で笑う	To snicker
耳が肥える	To have an ear of	耳に立つ	To strike one's ear
口が上がる	To become eloquent	口が開く	To make a beginning
唇を奪う	To steal a kiss	歯が浮く	To be nauseating
歯が立つ	To be edible; in one's reach	舌が伸びる	To exaggerate
舌を返す	To change one's tune	目が散る	To be diverted
目が出る	The die is cast	目が届く	To keep an eye on
額に汗する	To do with all one's might	額を集める	To confer together
首が危ない	To be in grave danger	肩が怒る	To get worked up
腕を鳴らす	To gain recognition	腕を引く	To make a solemn vow
指を折る	To make a vow	爪を研ぐ	To prepare for a fight
手が切れる	To fall out with	手が冴える	To be skilled
手が焼ける	To be troublesome	手が笑う	To lose control of hands
胸が決まる	To decide to	胸が焦げる	To be impatient; pine for
胸が裂ける	To be heart-broken	胴が据わる	To be resolute
臍で笑う	To be preposterous	腹がある	To have an agenda

腹がいる	To vent anger	胆が抜ける	To be scared stiff
胆が冷える	To be scared to death	心が動く	To be interested
心が変わる	To be unfaithful	心が腐る	To be corrupted
腰が落ち着く	To take root	腰を上げる	To take action
足を洗う	To make a new start	足を払う	To trip up
踵を巡らす	To retrace steps	血が通う	To be kindhearted
脈が上がる	To pass away; lose hope	脈を見る	To test viability
骨がある	To have fortitude	肌で感じる	To have first-hand experience
筋を言う	To split hairs	筋を書く	To have in mind
体が空く	To be vacant	体が続く	To be in good health

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. At times the literal definition is meant, sometimes it's not. How would this cause an odd situation to occur?
2. Give an example of an idiom of the body where the literal definition is close to the given definition of the idiom.
3. For three body parts, show what they overall mean in idiomatic expressions. For example, liver is connected to courage in Japanese.

第157課 : The Particle て III

The conjunctive particle て is by far the most important conjunctive in Japanese. By the end of this lesson, you should feel more comfortable in your ability to use and understand this fascinating particle.

The Particle て

One of the first things that most students learn is the Te-Form song to learn the so-called irregularities in conjunction, despite the fact that the sound changes are regular. A handful of verbs appear to all て to follow the 終止形 instead of the 連用形, and some dialects extend this to all verbs that end in the mora う (Ex. 関西弁). What the て形 looks like, though, is not the problem at hand.

The easiest synopsis of how to use て is: て **connects two or more phrases**, sometimes implicitly indicating reason. However, the action in the latter part(s) can't contain volition. It may also **list actions or qualities or even indicate a method for action**. Sadly, it's not that simple.

Though some call the て形 the Japanese "gerund", it can't be used as a nominal phrase, though ～ての might make one rethink this. Even so, ～ての is either a case of ellipsis (の is in replace of something) or an alternative 連体形 (Ex. 事実に基づいての論文 VS 事実に基づいた論文). As other names cause problems, we'll continue to call it a conjunctive particle.

Similar to ～た, the same sound changes mentioned above apply to ～て. It's important to note that て is generally thought to have come from the 連用形 of the perfective auxiliary つ, which is now obsolete. Some dispute this, however, and claim it has always existed. This will become important to keep in mind when tense in relation to て is addressed.

At times, て creates adverbial-like expressions that don't have subjects or objects. Since the meanings of these expressions can't simply be understood from the verbs they come from, you have to treat them as separate words. Examples include 改める (to revise) VS 改めて (anew), 強いる (to coerce) VS 強いて (boldly). These phrases, though, will also not be the focus of this lesson.

Examples

1. 従って、出航は中止となりました。

Therefore, leaving port is suspended.

2. 生まれて初めてアメリカを離れた。

I left America for the first time in my life.

3. 改めてやりなおす。

To start afresh.

4. 強いて {いうなら・いえば}

If I must say so...

Word Note: 強いる = To compel.

There are other times when an auxiliary/supplementary verb of some kind comes after て to create a complex predicate phrase (Ex. ~ている and ~てある). Transitivity is a huge issue with these two endings. The first could result in a transitive or intransitive expression whereas the latter only results in an intransitive expression despite the verbs that it attaches to are all transitive. Essentially, the semantic issues are in large part determined by the latter element.

5. そのままにしてある。

It was left as is (by someone).

State: Something has been left as is until someone else changes the fact.

6. 彼は悲しげな顔をしている。

He's having a sad face.

The next usage is when it connects two or more phrases. There are numerous purposes for this. You already know some usages. It can implicitly show reason, show sequence of events, indicate action or means, concession, etc. It can also be contrastive at times.

7. 花子さんは合格して、弘さんは不合格でした。

Hanako passed, and Hiroshi failed.

8. 友達を苛めて、先生に叱られました。

I was scolded by teacher for scolding my friend.

9. 酔って道に迷う。

To get drunk and lost.

10. 彼は知っていて実行しない。

Although he knows, he won't perform/realize it.

11. コーヒーに砂糖とミルクを入れてかき混ぜて飲んだ。

I drank my coffee by mixing in sugar and milk.

12. いっぱん ぜんびよう ぼく
一 斑 を見て 全 豹 を ト す。

Seeing one spot, you can predict the whole leopard.

Proverb Note: This proverb shows how one can predict the whole thing of something by merely seeing one part.

As there are so many possible semantic relations that て can have, it is often thought to have no actual meaning itself. This, though, goes too far. As far as this third broad usage that we will be discussing, it does help to think of it in terms of "and", but you can't think of this as coordination. Think of the following sentence.

13. 久美は明日名古屋へ行って、光平は明後日土佐から帰ってきます。

Kumi will go to Nagoya tomorrow, and Kohei will return from Tosa the day after tomorrow.

In this sentence the first part is not complementing or modifying the second part in any way. There are several other similar expressions in Japan with this same apparent discrepancy with the grammar and the meaning of the actual phrases.

At times it appears that て is holding down the fort in a long continuous phrase where then the tense is decided at the end. However, depending on the speech modal, the tense of a て clause and the final clause don't have to match. Consider the following.

14. 鈴木さんは地元の木を使って家を建てるそうです。(Only one interpretation)

I hear that Mr. Suzuki will build a house using local lumber.

15. 円子は昨日出国して、 誉は明日帰国してくるそうです。

I heard that Maruko left the country yesterday and that Homare will return tomorrow.

Maruko left the country yesterday, and I hear that Homare will return tomorrow. ??

16. ご主人が亡くなって奥様は保険金を請求するそうです。

I heard that the husband died and the wife will claim the insurance money.

The husband died, and I heard that the wife will claim the insurance money.

Consider the following sentence where tense is all over the place, but due to the context, the sentence is completely fine. However, just as in English, it makes the sentence potentially unnatural. With verb deletion, however, the unnaturalness that would be expected in the sentence below doesn't exist.

17. 伸三は明後日（払って）、美登里は先日（払って）、セスは昨日払った。

Shinzo will pay the day after tomorrow, Midori paid the other day, and Seth paid yesterday.

Intonation can also change things up substantially. Just as in English, a misplaced comma can cause huge changes in meaning. This is especially so when the complex predicate phrases mentioned above get split up, and it sounds as if the final verb is part of an independent clause away from て.

18. 彼氏の日記を読んで、仕舞った。

I read my boyfriend's diary and put it away.

19. 彼氏の日記を読んできました。

I accidentally read my boyfriend's diary.

What you can't do is conjoin things into one question that are not of a cause relationship. Otherwise, you would have to split up the questions.

20. 誰が京都へ行って畑中さんが奈良へ行ったんですか。X

Who went to Kyoto, and Hatanaka went to Nara? (Intended)

21. 誰が来てパーティーが台無しになったのか。O

Who came and the party was ruined (as an effect)?

22. ランスが来て、何が台無しになったの？O

Lance came, and what got ruined?

There has to be a cause relation involved. If it is just additive, then て is not applicable. This misunderstanding is the cause a lot of mistakes.

In some ways, it might actually be smart to view て as syntactically just an "and", and other implications are added through context. One way to find out whether these added features are from context or a part of it is to see if you can have one of these so-called features cancelled out in discourse.

23. 風邪を引いて頭が痛い。頭が痛いのはいつものことですけど。

I got a cold and my head hurts, but my head always hurts.

It appears that the speaker is trying to negate the cold as being the reason for his headache because it's an everyday thing for the poor person.

24. 久美は名古屋へ行って、光平は土佐から帰ってくる。光平が帰ってくるのが先だけど。

Kumi will go to Nagoya, and Kohei will return to from Tosa. Kohei's return will come first, though.

This sentence shows that even a temporal sequence of actions can also be negated in context. It's starting to appear that these added situations are applied to て in context. But, does this mean that it's truly meaningless itself? This is challenged by the fact that there are restrictions to using て. After all, if it were truly meaningless, it wouldn't have them.

One interesting restriction is that it cannot make a mere incidental temporal action.

25. 僕はアパートを出て、雨が降ってきた。X → 僕はアパートを出 {ると・たら} 、雨が降ってきた。○

When I left my apartment, it began raining.

Consider the following bad sentences and what they would have to be to work with the given meaning or changed to keep the same structure but give a different sentence.

26a. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であって、漁夫だった。X

27b. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であり、漁夫だった。○

The Jomon people who were the first in the Japanese islands to first form their own culture were farmers and fishermen.

To preserve, であって the latter part should be negative because the sentence sounds contrastive.

27a. 息子がもうすぐ学校に入ってジムをやめなければならなかった。X

27b. 息子がもうすぐ学校に入るので、ジムをやめなければならなかった。○

My son will start school soon, so I had to quit the gym.

There are few problems with using て. One, although tense was shown above to not necessarily be temporally sequential with て, in this case it sounds as if the "starting school" is already a past event, which is not true. Other cause relations are also out of the question for similar tense reasons.

28. パソコンを買った。嬉しい。○

I bought a PC. I'm happy.

29a. パソコンを買って嬉しい。X

29b. パソコンを買って嬉しかった。○

I bought a PC and was happy.

Perhaps a more natural way to say this in English would be "I was happy that I bought a PC". From this data, one can surmise that in order for て to show cause, the past tense must be used. However, with that being said, it causes a problem that the following are OK.

30. 試験に受かって嬉しい。○

I am glad that I passed the exam.

31. 弟が来て嬉しい。○

I am glad that my younger brother came.

If the speaker is not the primary causer of the action, this cause relation is fine. This just goes to show that although one constraint may be important, other factors are important too.

～ないで VS ～なくて

Although etymologically the same, these two variations of the negative て form have developed in quite different ways in usage.

32a. 仕事をしないでいる。○

32b. 仕事をしなくている。X

I'm not working.

The latter cannot be used because it does not subordination the nucleus of the phrase. You are in state of being of not working. This sense of without is carried out by ～ないで.

33. 山下さんはお金を貯めなくて車を買った。 (変な日本語)

Mr. Yamashita bought a car, having not saved up money.

34. 山田さんはお金を貯めないで車を買った。

Mr. Yamada bought a car without saving money.

Notice the difference in translation. The first sounds like a sequential ordering of events while the latter is ambiguous. It doesn't have a sense of time as to whether this is a given point of time then or a sequence of events of having not saved up money and then buying a car.

～ないで can also be used to show by means of not doing something.

35. ご飯を食べないで、学校に行った。

(He) went to school without eating.

第158課: Planning & Obligation: つもり, はず, & ~べきだ

In this lesson we will learn about speech modals of planning and obligation. The speech modals that we are going to cover are the following.

つもり

The noun 積もり may show one's intent or expectation to do something. In speech modals, it is normally left in かな.

1a. 今日何をするつもり（か）？

1b. 今日は何をするの？

What do you plan to do today?

2. 車を買うつもりだ。

I plan to buy a car.

3. 彼女に従うつもりはない。

I have no intention of obeying her.

4. タバコをやめるつもりはない。

I am not planning on quitting smoking.

5. もっと早く帰るつもりでした。

I planned on coming home earlier.

6. 留学するつもりはありますか。

Do you have intentions of studying abroad?

7. 女優のつもりでいる。

She is by way of being an actress.

8. 冗談のつもりで言ったのに、彼を怒らせてしまいました。

I meant it as a joke, but I accidentally made him angry.

9. 日本へ着いたら、日本語の辞^{じてん}典を買うつもりだ。

(When/right after) I arrive in Japan, I plan to buy a Japanese dictionary.

10a. 今日、田中さんに会う予定はない。

10b. 今日、田中さんに会わない。

I have no intention of meeting today.

Word Note: As the two variants above show, sometimes ~つもりだ is a little unnatural. 予定だ shows an intended schedule to inform people.

11. 明日の朝は早く起きるつもりです。

I plan to wake up early tomorrow morning.

12. 旅行は、三日間ぐらいの予定です。

The trip is scheduled to last three days.

13. 明日は授業に行かないつもりです。

I plan to not go to class tomorrow.

14. 友だちのつもりだが^{なん}何^{みょう}だか^な妙に馴れ馴れしい。

We intended to be friends, but for some reason we got strangely over-familiar.

Word Note: The verb 目^{もくろ}論む may also be used to show planning.

15. あいつが何を目論んでるのか分からねー。(Slang; Vulgar)

I don't know what he's scheming to do.

16. 私は医者になるつもりでしたが。

I planned to become a doctor, but...

17. どこへ行くつもりだい？(Masculine; old-fashioned)

Where do you think you're going?

Phrase Note: The use of 〜だい in this sentence makes it a little old-fashioned.
Also, it would only be used by men.

18. 来週までに 4 章読むつもりです。

I plan to read 4 chapters by next week

19. そんなつもりじゃなかったよ。

I didn't mean that.

20. 全力で支援^{しえん}するつもりだよ。

I plan to support you with all my support.

21. 是^ぜが非^ひでも留学するつもりらしいです。

He seems to plan to study abroad by all means.

Usage Note: Remember that your plans should be treated differently from another person's.

Grammar Note: 「〜たつもりだ、〜のつもりだ、〜ているつもりだ」等 show suppositions that contrast reality. They may also show self-centered decisions, subjective impressions, etc.

22. 抜^ぬかりなくやったつもりだったが失敗した。

I intended to have made it without blunder, but I failed.

23. 帰るつもりだったが、泊まることになっちゃった。

I intended to go home, but I ended up staying at a hotel.

24. 君の気持ちは分かっているつもり（だ）。(Colloquial)

I believe I know your feelings well enough.

25. コーヒーを一杯飲んだつもりで、特急電車に乗った。

I took a limited express train, and I imagined that I had a cup of coffee.

26. よく読んだつもりでした。

I was convinced that I had read it well.

This usage of つもり is closer to "conviction". ～たつもり shows a defense to one's convictions despite the fact that there is overwhelming evidence to the contrary. This is always why it can sometimes show a selfish side.

27. 切手を貼ったつもりで、手紙をポストに入れてしまった。

I accidentally put a letter into the postbox having thought I put a stamp on it (but I hadn't).

28. 死んだつもりで生きていこうと決心した。

I was determined to live on having thought I would die.

29. いとこはもう大人のつもりだな。

My cousin thinks he's already grownup, eh?

30. 「アメリカ人ですか」。「アメリカ人のつもりですけど」。

Are you American? I was American the last time I checked, but...

はず

The noun はず shows obligation. The speaker may use this pattern to show that he or she is convinced of what should happen based on some sort of reasoning that is either built on personal judgment or on what he or she is quite sure of is the case.

It follows the 連体形 of verbs or adjectives and nouns with の. It is like "supposed to". The negative is はずじゃない. Lastly, はずがない strongly denies when there is neither reason nor basis.

Nouns	本気 の はず
形容詞	いい はず

形容動詞	簡単なはず
Verbs	着くはず

Examples

31. 田中さんという男は顔見知りのはずだ。

That Mr. Tanaka is supposed to be an acquaintance.

32. ここが^{たから}宝^あの^か在り処のはずだ。

This is the whereabouts the treasure is supposed to be.

33. 八時までに宿題をやったはずだよ。

You're supposed to have already finished your homework by 8 o'clock.

34. 手紙はもう着いたはずだ。

The letter is supposed to have already arrived.

35. 彼女は 3 時に着くはずだった。

She was supposed to arrive at three.

36. 彼はすぐ戻るはずだが。

He's supposed to return soon but.

37. 四日で仕上がるはずだ。

We should finish in four days/on the fourth.

38. ヨーグルトは^{ちょう}腸^腸にいいはずですよ。

Yogurt is supposed to be good for your intestines.

39. 君は彼の^{いばしょ}居場所^{居場所}を知ってるはずさ。(Casual)

You ought to know his whereabouts.

40. それは本当であるはずがない。

It cannot be true.

41. うそ 嘘をついたはずがありません。

He couldn't have told a lie.

42. 今日家にいるはずだ。

He should be at home today.

43. デパートは8時に開くはずですよ。

The department store is supposed to open at 8.

44. 「あのレストランはいつも込んでますね」「ええ、でも、お昼前に行けば {込んでいない・人が少ない・空いてい る} はずですよ。

"That restaurant is always crowded". "Yes, but if you go before noon, it shouldn't be crowded".

45. 「井上さんは来るでしょうか」「ええ、さっき出かけると電話がありましたから、そろそろ {来る・着く} はずですよ」

"Is Inoue coming?". "Yes, I got a call a while ago when we left, and (he/she) should be (coming/getting) here soon".

46a. 生きているということは、^{たいおん}体温は35度から36度の間で^{いってい}一定しているはず
です。

46b. 生き残るためには、体温を35度から36度の間で保持しなければならない。

In order to live, your body temperature should be stabilized between 35 to 36 degrees.

いつもならもっといいはずなのに、

Although it's supposed to be more better if it always (happens)

田中(たなか)さんという男(おとこ)は顔見知(かおみし)りのはずだ。

That Mr. Tanaka is supposed to be an acquaintance.

ここが宝(たから)の在(あ)り処(か)のはずだ。

This is the whereabouts the treasure is supposed to be.

もう八時(はちじ)までに宿題(しゅくだい)をやったはずだよ。

You're supposed to have already finished your homework by 8 o'clock.

手紙(てがみ)はもう着(つ)いたはずだ。

The letter is supposed to have already arrived.

彼女(かのじょ)は三時(さんじ)に着(つ)くはずだった。

She was supposed to arrive at three.

彼(かれ)はすぐ戻(もど)るはずだが。

He's supposed to return soon but.

四日(よっか)で仕上(しあ)げるはずだ。

We should finish in four days/on the fourth.

ヨーグルトは腸(ちょう)にいいはずですよ。

Yogurt is supposed to be good for your intestines.

君(きみ)は彼(かれ)の居場所(いばしょ)を知(し)ってるはずさ。

You ought to know his whereabouts.

今日着(きょうつ)くはずです。

He's supposed to arrive today.

それは本当(ほんとう)であるはずがない。

It cannot be true.

嘘(うそ)をついたはずがありません。

He couldn't have told a lie.

彼女(かのじょ)は来(く)るはずです。

She is supposed to come.

今日家(きょういえ)にいるはずだ。

He should be at home today.

デパートは八時(はちじ)に開(ひら)くはずです。

The department store is supposed to open at 8.

生きているということは、^{たいおん}体温は35度から36度の間で^{いっ}一定しているはずで

生き残るためには、体温を35度から36度の間で保持しなければならない。

In order to live, your body temperature should be stabilized between 35 to 36 degrees.

～べきだ

～べきだ is infrequently used. It shows strong subjective opinion of obligation. ～べきだ attaches to the 終止形 of verbs. When ～べきだ attaches to する, you get す（る）べきだ. This also goes for ずる-Verbs.

To ought to feel	感ず（る）べきだ	感じるべきだ	感じべきだ X
To ought to esteem	重んず（る）べきだ	重んじるべきだ	重んじべきだ X

It's normally only used with verbs, but when not it shows a strong sense of "should". ～べし should follow the 連体形 ～かる of 形容詞 and the copula as なる for 形容動詞 and nouns. As for -べきだ, it should follow 形容詞 like in あたらしくあるべきだ and after the copula である for 形容動詞 and nouns.

Negative Note: The negative form of this pattern should be ～べきじゃない. Don't feel bad if you are corrected for saying ～ないべきだ. ～ざるべし, which would be the predecessor of such a form, has existed in the past. Though the majority of natives believe that ～ないべきだ is grammatically incorrect, in spoken language, it is seen quite a lot. As a student, you should avoid it.

Examples

47. もっとご^{りょうしん} 両^{うやま} 親 を 敬 う {もの・べき} です。

You ought to be more respectful to your parents.

Word Note: 両親 alone is only used for "one's parents".

48. つい 遂 に来るべき時が来た。

At last the time when we're supposed to come has arrived!

49. 絶対に守るべき場所。

A place that should be protected always.

50. うち 内 でやるべきだ。

Our (department/group) should do it.

52. そくざ 即 座 に戦うべきだとする意見が多数を占める。

The opinion that we should immediately fight holds the majority

53. 学生はまじめに勉強すべきです。

Students should study seriously.

54. 若い時に、もっと勉強するべきでした。

I should have studied more when I was young.

55. 彼女を軽視すべきではない。

You shouldn't think lightly of her.

56. けんか 喧嘩 すべきではなかった。

I shouldn't have argued.

57. 生きるべきか、死ぬべきか、これが もんだいてん 問題点 だ。

To be or not or not be, that is the question.

58. みな すいみん 皆 はもっと 睡眠 を取るべきだ。

Everyone should get more sleep.

59. 許すべからざる行為。

An action that should not be allowed/forgiven.

60. もっと本を読むべきです。

You should read more books.

61. 中国に行くべきではありませんよ。

You should not go to China.

62. 若い時に、もっと韓国語を勉強するべきだった。

I should have studied Korean more when I was young.

63. よく考えるべきだ。

You should consider it well.

64. 政府は失業者の ^{ぜいふたん めんじょ} 税 負 担 を 免 除 すべきだ。

The government should exempt the tax burden of the unemployed.

65. どう生きるべきか。

In what way should we live?

Speech Style/Grammar Note: In colloquial speech, **だ** may be dropped in **～べきだ**.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Explain how to use **～べきだ**.

2. What is the difference between **はずだ** and **～べきだ**?

Translate into Japanese (4-7)

4. He's supposed to be a car.

5. You should study more.

6. In trying to go swimming, I started to walk to the beach.

7. I plan to run tomorrow.

第159課: 連用中止形

Instead of using the particle て, there is also a method called the 連用中止形. This is when you use the 連用形 but attach nothing to it, and in doing so, it functions like the particle て. This was in fact the original way. However, no two methods in Japanese evolve without differences emerging as well.

連用中止形

One of the first problems with using the 連用形 is that most learners don't know what it is. Even though by now you should know exactly what it is, here is a reminder.

Class	Example	終止形	連用形
一段	見る	見る	見
五段	勝つ	勝つ	勝ち
サ変	する	する	し
カ変	来る	来る	来
形容詞	少ない	少ない	少なく
形容動詞	簡単だ	簡単だ	簡単で（あり）

When you use いる in this grammatical pattern, you have to use おり, which is the 連用形 of its humble form おる. You should not use the 連用形 い. However, in older works, you do find ～てい instead of ～ており.

1. また、これまでに18万人が住まいを追われ、このうち7万5000人が各地にある国連のPKO＝平和維持活動の施設に避難しており、国連は安全の確保や人道支援に全力を挙げているとしています。

Also, there have been 180,000 people driven from their dwellings, and of these, 75,000 have evacuated to UN PKO (Peacekeeping Operations) facilities, and the UN are putting all forces to human aid and safety security.

From the NHK Article 南スーダン緊張 7万人以上が避難 on December 31, 2013.

2. 出来た。出来ないにしろ、二人がお互いに愛して**い**、女が自分の存在に無頓着ならば、自分はどうすることも出来なかったにちがいない。

I was able to do it. Even if I couldn't, the two love each other, and had the women been indifferent to my own existence, there is no doubt that I wouldn't have been able to do anything.

From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

Though more common in literature, due to the fact that they are two morae verbs, 見る, 寝る, and 来る are not near as common in this. This, though, is keeping in mind mediums such as very formal speech where this grammar structure is seen in the spoken language. As this is mainly 書き言葉, the frequency of any verb in this is determined by the refinement and formality of the language used. For instance, the Bible has a plethora of examples of the 連用中止形.

3. わたしは一つの事を主に願った。わたしはそれを求める。わたしの生きるかぎり、主の家に住んで、主のうるわしきを見、その宮で尋ねきわめることを。

I desired one thing from the Lord; that I sought. For as long as I live, may I dwell in the house of the Lord, look upon his beauty, and seek him in his temple.

From ^{しへん}詩篇 第二十七章四節 口語訳

Again, instead of ～て, you can just use the 連用形, which is quite literary. Verbs and adjectives may be used in this way. It sounds more refined, and is often used in songs and poems.

4. 本を {読んで・読み}、しばらく考える。

To think awhile from reading a book.

5. 街中は人も少なく（て）、たまに車が通り過ぎるだけだった。

There were few people downtown and cars only occasionally passed by.

However, to truly investigate the interchangeability of the two, you need to know what て does and then see if there are any usages that can't be expressed with the 連用中止形. ～て, as has been seen in previous lessons, can be used to

show successive action, ancillary/incidental conditions, cause/reason, and parallelism. The points of contingency involve ancillary conditions and cause/reason.

6a. 食べすぎて、お腹が痛い。○

6b. 食べすぎ, お腹が痛い。 ○/?

7a. 座って話す。○

7b. 座り、話す。X

In the first example, not using て means not establishing a cause-effect relationship. Rather, you end up just showing successive action.

Although using the 連用中止形 for showing successive action, it causes the sentence to sound very segmented, which may very well be how you want to express something, which can be seen in the first example. Though, in more spoken statements, it is more natural to mix it with て.

8. 過去を忘れ、職を探し、社員になり、私の生活は立派になりました。

I forgot the past, I looked for a job, I became a company employee, and my way of life became amazing.

9. お母さんは雑誌を読み、コーヒーを飲んで、出かけた。

My mother read a magazine, drank coffee, and left.

Consider the following bad sentence where て is the problem rather than the 連用中止形.

10a. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した ^{じょうもんじん}縄 ^{かりゅうど}文 人 は 狩 人 であって、
^{ぎょふ}漁 夫 だった。X

10b. 日本列島に初めて独自の文化を生み出した縄文人は狩人であり、漁夫だった。○

The Jomon people who were the first in the Japanese islands to first form their own culture were farmers and fishermen.

This is the case because **て** borders sounding like it shows a contrast. To keep **であって**, it would have been best to have a just as equally complex latter clause that balances out the meaning of the first. The use of the **連用中止形** has no such problem and nicely segments the two properties in a formal fashion.

11. ^{ふともも}太^{こぶし}股^{こぶし}の上で握り^{こぶし}拳^{こぶし}を作っていた信人は、切ない気持ちで、^{うわめづか}上^{うわめづか}目^{うわめづか}遣いに上司を見た。

Nobuto, who had made a fist on top her thighs, looked with an upward glance and saddened emotion at her boss.
From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

Article from NHK

As stated earlier, one of the most common places you can find the **連用中止形** used is in writing. News articles utilize this pattern a lot. Notice how it is used in concert with **て** in the following article from NHK.

12.

^{ぼうこう}
元同級生を車内でも暴行か

7月19日4時20分

^{くれし}広島県呉^{くれし}市の山中に元同級生とみられる遺体を^{いき}遺棄したとして広島市の16歳の少女と知り合いの男女ら6人が^{たいほ}逮捕された事件で、7人の一部は山中に向かう車の中で、元同級生を**押さえつけ**、暴行を繰り返していたとみられることが警察への取材で分かりました。

警察は初めから暴行を加えるつもりで元同級生を車で連れ出した疑いがあるとみて^{そうさ}**捜査**を進めています。

今月14日、広島県呉市の山中に、^{こうとうせんしゅう}**高等専修**学校の元同級生の16歳の少女と

みられる遺体を遺棄したとして警察に自首^{じしゅ}した広島市の16歳の少女が逮捕され、17日、鳥取県湯梨浜町^{とっとりけんゆりはまちょう}の無職、瀬戸大平容疑者^{せとおおひら}（21）と、16歳の無職の男女5人が死体遺棄の疑いで逮捕されました。

警察の調べに**対し**瀬戸容疑者は容疑を**否認し**、ほかの6人は容疑を認めているということです。

これまでの調べで7人が、元同級生を車に乗せて現場の山中に**行き**、車を降りたあと、集団で暴行を加えたと供述していることが分かっていて、警察は使われたとみられる車を18日夜、押収^{おうしゅう}しました。その後の警察の調べで、7人の一部は、現場へ向かう車の中で、元同級生を押さえつけて殴^{なぐ}ったり蹴^けったりする暴行を繰り返していたとみられることが警察への取材で分かりました。

元同級生への暴行が山中に着く前の車内から続いていることから、警察は、初めから暴行を加えるつもりで元同級生を車で連れ出した疑いがあるとみて捜査を進めています。

Assaulting of Former Classmate also Inside Car?

July 19th, 4:20

It has been found out through police investigation that in the case in which a 16 year old girl and 6 men and women acquaintances from Hiroshima City were arrested for the abandonment of the body of a former classmate in the mountains of Hiroshima Prefecture Kure City, a group of 7 people inside a car towards the mountainside suppressed the former classmate, and repeatedly assaulted her. The police are furthering investigation into the suspicion that [the group] had taken the former student into the car with plans to assault her from the beginning.

This month on the 14th, a 16 year old girl who surrendered herself to police for the abandonment of the body in the mountains of Hiroshima Prefecture Kure City of a former 16 year old female student at [their] vocational high school was arrested, and on the 17th, unemployed 21 year old resident of Tottori Prefecture Yurihama Town Seto Ohira and 5 unemployed 16 year old men and women were arrested for suspicion in the body abandonment.

Suspect Ohira denies claims from the police, but the 6 others have confessed. In investigation up to now, it's understood that the 7 people are testifying that they put the former classmate into the vehicle, went to the scene in the mountains, and after getting off the vehicle, they group assaulted [her], and the police on the 18th seized the car thought to be used. In police investigation afterward, it has been found out from reports to the police that the group of 7 suppressed the former classmate inside the car towards the scene and repeatedly assaulted her by beating and kicking her.

In light of the the continuation of assault to their former classmate inside the vehicle before having reached the mountains, the police are furthering investigation into the charge that [the group] had brought the former student in the vehicle with plans to assault from the beginning.

Table of Contents

第160課: ずつ & わりで

Allocation and proportion is a little tricky. Although these expressions aren't quite different from their English equivalents, there are a few differences that you will need to pay extra attention to.

The Adverbial Particle ずつ

ずつ is a rather straightforward particle that splits things up into groups, and it essentially creates ratios. Say you have X number of kids and Y number of mothers to watch the kids. Say there are 100 kids, but you want a chaperon every four kids. To tell the mothers this, you could say 子供4人に1人ずつ、お母さんがついてください。You can do the math as to how many mothers there are.

In 1, of all the 100 kids now in groups of 10, two mothers are allotted to each.

1. 子供10人に、2ずつ、お母さんがついてください?

May two mothers follow with every ten kids?

Think of it as grouping things from the start of a line/process until the end. It is implied that the allocation is repeated so that the intended ratio is carried out in turn.

2. この20冊の雑誌をひとりひとりに一冊ずつ配ってください。

Please pass out to each and every person one of these twenty magazines.

In English it is more common for someone to say “give three pieces of paper to each kid” then “give three pieces of paper to every ten kids”. We want to make things grammatically singular in number and say “to each **group** of ten kids”. Saying group is not that necessary in Japanese because the grammar of ずつ does that already.

You can, though, paraphrase ずつ out of the sentence. Compare and contrast the following sets of sentences.

3a. カードはひとり 15 枚ずつですよ。残りは、ここに伏せておきましょう。

3b. ひとりあたり 15 枚になるように、カードをみんなに配っていきます。

3a. It'll be fifteen cards to each person. We'll put the rest face down here.

3b. So there will be fifteen cards for each person, we'll pass out the cards to everyone.

4a. 教科書は 2 冊ずつ、小説は 10 冊ずつ、雑誌は 20 冊ずつ、3 本の ^{ひも}紐 で ^{くく}括 ってください。

4b. 1 ^{くく}括 りにつき、教科書が 2 冊、小説が 10 冊、雑誌が 20 冊になるように、3 本の ^{しば}紐 で ^縛ってください。

4a. Bind up textbooks in groups of two, novels in groups of ten, and magazines in groups of twenty with three cords.

4b. To make bundles, bind so that textbooks are in sets of two, novels in ten, and magazines in twenty with three cords.

As you can see, all ずつ does is mark how much the identified recipient(s) are going to get. Some expressions that you will constantly see include 少しずつ (little by little) and わずかずつ (similar to the first but smaller in degree).

5. それらを二個ずつ ^{そろ}揃 える。

To arrange them in twos.

6. 子供が ^{あめ}飴 を二つずつもらいます。

Kids will receive two candies each.

7. 少しずつ食べた方がいい。

It's best to eat a little bit at a time.

8. 彼女は少しずつ回復しました。

She recovered little by little.

9. 2枚ずつ下さい。

Two sheets each please.

10. 一人ずつバスに乗りなさい。

Please enter the bus one by one.

11. 毎日数ドルずつ^{たくわ}貯えた。

He put aside a few dollars every day.

12. 昨日は^{かわ}河の^{すい}水位が少しずつ上がっていた。

The river water level rose little by little yesterday.

13. これらの単語を^{ひとこと}一言ずつ覚えてください。

Please learn these words one word at a time.

14. 私は事の^{しんそう}真相が少しずつ分かってきました。

I came to understand the bottom of it little by little.

Orthography Note: づつ is also correct but old-fashioned.

わりで

～わりで has some interchangeability with ずつ. Rather than being involved with the flow of work or time, this pattern just shows a rate/proportion. So, if the numbers of the whole situation are not certainly known, you can't use ～わりで. In spoken speech, however, ずつ and ～わりで are often ellipsed out of the sentence.

15. 1時間に10マイル {のわりで・ずつ}、いつ目的地に着きますか。

At ten miles an hour, when will you arrive at your destination?

ず つ still gets used in math texts, but because it needs context to be understood clearly, it is usually limited to the spoken language. ～わりで, on the other hand, clearly states things in more mathematical terms, so it is more indicative of the written language.

More on わり

How you use わり determines whether り is used or not. The first usage utilizes り when referring to breaking, splitting, or dividing--the meaning of the verb form 割る. ～わり is one tenth written as 割. Ratio is expressed with わり when written as 割り. In its fourth usage it is used as an adverb written as わりに to mean "comparatively/rather/fairly". 割り can also mean "to dilute (drinks) with", "allotment" and "sumo match".

16. 本割りとは大 ^{おおずもう}相撲^{とりくみひょう}で発表された取組表によって行われる正規の取組である。

"Honwari" are official matches in professional sumo wrestling held according to the matches table.

17. その部屋割りが ^{だとう}妥当だと思いますよ。

I think that room allotment is appropriate.

18. 2割乗せる。

To add on 20% percent.

19. ^{たん}単に水割りといった場合ウイスキーの水割りを指すことが多い。

It's often the case that when you say "diluted with water" that you are referring to "whiskey diluted with water".

20. 十人に一人の {割り・割合} で参加しました。

1 out of 10 people participated.

21. 割りのいい商売というわけではありませんよ。

It's not to say that it is a profitable business.

22. 試験は割りにやさしかったって思う。

I thought the test was rather easy.

23. その子は年の割りに小^こ柄^{がら}ですね。

The boy is small for his age, isn't he?

Table of Contents

第161課: The Particle **こそ**

こそ is a rather straightforward particle to understand, but its usage is a little tricky. Students often don't understand how it connects with case particles like **が**, **を**, **で**, etc. They may understand its emphatic role, but they still can't figure out where it goes in a sentence.

The Fundamentals of Using **こそ**

The first instances that students typically see **こそ** is in set phrases like **こちらこそ** (likewise), **今度こそ** (surely next time), and **今年こそ** (surely next year). However, even these set phrases can get messed up.

1a. 今年こそ危機に瀕する言語の重要性が分かるようになりました。 X

1b. 今年**になってはじめて**危機に瀕する言語の重要性が分かるようになりました。 O

I've finally understood for the first time this year the importance of endangered languages.

2a. 彼**こそ**の努力すれば、東大に行けるでしょう。 X

2b. 彼ほどの努力をすれば、東大に行けるでしょう。 O

If you strive like him, you'll be able to go to Tokyo University.

こそ strongly emphasizes a person, thing, or situation in the sense of **ほかでもなくこれなのだ**. It can be seen after nouns (especially those concerning people), time phrases, Verb + **て**, and the **連用形** of verbs.

3. 企業家精神**こそ**最もリスクが小さな道である。

The entrepreneurial spirit is certainly the least risky road to take.

4. 物腰**こそ** ^{いんぎん}慇懃 **だが**、根は黒い。

His demeanor is indeed courteous, but his true nature is mean.

5. 明日**こそ**鳥は羽ばたく。

The birds will certainly flap tomorrow.

6. 今こそ始めましょう。

Let's get started now!

7. 今度こそうまくいきますよう！

You'll certainly do better next time!

8. まさかの時の友こそ真の友。

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

9. 今年こそ日本へ行ってみよう。

This year, indeed, let's try going to Japan.

10. このひどい子宮から逃げようと失敗したが、今度こそこの地獄を切り抜けて自由を手に入れよう！

I failed in trying to escape this damned uterus, but next time I will definitely come clear out of this hell and attain freedom!

Sentence Note: Someone like Stewie from Family Guy would say something like this.

11. 健全な国民が存在してこそ国家が成り立つ。

A nation is born with the existence of a healthy citizen body.

12. 喜びこそすれ、怒ることはない。

There's nothing to be angry about when you're joyous.

Grammar Note: ～こそすれ・こそなれ・こそであれ is a retention of Classical Japanese grammar. In the past, the particle *こそ* was a bound particle, which made the final verb obligatorily in the 已然形. When *こそ* is used after a verbal element or in a copular expression, this grammar still applies.

13. 褒めこそすれ、非難することはない。

She does speak highly (of others), but she never criticizes.

13. 愚かな女でこそあれ、良妻賢母だなんて、とんでもない。

So long as the woman is a fool, "good wife, wise mother" means nothing.

14. 毒にこそなれ薬にはならない。

Do more harm than good.

Word Note: When you take out *こそ* in *にこそなれ*, you get the archaic copula *にあり・なり*.

Because *こそ* is so emphatic, sentences with it often end in *～だ*, *～（よ）う*, *～べきだ*, etc. It is used a lot, but it is more common in the written language. Reasons for this include sentences like the last where traditional grammar holds on. In the spoken language, it tends to be used in statements by politicians and what not, and a few of the sentences above could definitely be used as slogans.

If you use *が* with *こそ*, it should be after it. *を* can go either before or after, and the particles *に*, *へ*, *で*, *と*, *から* all come before.

15. 山田氏 {をこそ・こそを} 知事に推薦したい。

We want to recommend Mr. Yamada to the governor.

16. 日本にこそおいしい食べ物がありますよ。

There is indeed delicious food in Japan.

17. 今でこそ、嘘がつけるが、あのときは、どうもつけなかった。

Now I can fly, but at that time, I couldn't whatsoever.

Unlike using *が*, which sounds like the speaker is picking one thing as the focus, *こそ* emphasizes this "focus" as the sole thing fit for the situation. It is often used in sentences where one quality is highlighted in the first clause with *こそ*, but then it gets negated. When this gets flipped around, the second clause with *こそ* shows what's actually the case.

18. 「オバマ大統領の支持率が低いですね。」 「いえ、違いますよ。支持率こそ伸び悩んでいます、何かやってくれそうですよ。」

“President Obama’s approval rating is low, isn’t it?” No, you’re wrong.

Though his approval rating may very well be lagging behind, he seems like he’s going to do something for us”.

19. お金は悪の元とは言うが、お金の金銭欲こそ悪の元である。

They say money is the root of evil, but it’s the lust for money that is the root of evil.

Using ～こそが instead of ～こそ can’t be easily explained. If a noun phrase being modified byこそ is the subject of the sentence, grammatically speaking, there is nothing wrong with using ～こそが. If the particle is dropped, it may be because other things in your sentence are just off for the tone to work.

20. 去勢と卵巣除去こそが犬の数の急増を防ぐのです。猫の場合は、毒を加えたミルクで十分なはずでしょう。

Spaying and neutering will definitely prevent the rapid increase of the dog population. As for cats, poison laced milk should do it.

～からこそ & ～からこそ

～ からこそ, not surprisingly, is going to like “indeed, because…”. Though this may seem like a choppy translation in isolation, something is being pointed out as the reason with から, and when you addこそ, the reason becomes all the more emphasized.

21. だからこそ、強い日本を作るために、憲法をなおそう！

And therefore, in order to create a strong Japan, let us fix the constitution!

22. 「彼氏と別れたんだって。ホント？」

「うん、そうだよ。」

「なんでだよ、嫌いになったってわけ？」

「ううん、違う。今でも愛してるよ。」

「じゃ、どうしてそんな. . .」

「俺といると幸せになれない。彼氏を愛してるからこそ、別れたんだ。」

One can only assume that the Japanese speaking couple was in America to cause such an emotional parting, but putting that aside, one should clearly see how 〜からこそ works.

A からこそ B is very similar to A ばこそ B, and they are often interchangeable. However, there are enough differences to make them not interchangeable. Both are used when the speaker compares the situation with past experience or knowledge and can't think of anything but reason A for result B.

23. あなたのことを思って {いるから・いれば} こそ、こう言うのです。

It's precisely because I'm thinking about you that I say this.

24. たとえ過去に犯罪を犯したとしても、人のために全力を {尽くすから・尽くせば} こそ、神様に報われるのです。

Even if you've committed a crime in the past, it is precisely because you are giving your all to the better of people that you will be rewarded by God.

25. 愛して {いるから・いれば} こそ、別れなければならないのです。

It is exactly because I love you that we must separate.

26. 気が {短いからこそ・短ければこそ}、喧嘩してはなりません。

It is precisely because of your short temper that you mustn't get into an argument.

27. 充実した毎日を送れるのは、心身が健康 {だから（こそ）・であればこそ} だ。

The reason why I am able to live fulfilled each day is the fact that my mind and body are healthy.

28. その発想があったからこそ、道子は同棲生活を取りあえず清算して山岳拠点に身を投ずることができた。

It was precisely because Michiko had that conception that she was for now able to throw herself to the base in the mountains and end her cohabitation lifestyle.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

Word Note: 身を投ずる = 身を投じる.

～ ばこそ has become more literary, and it is usually not used by the younger generations. Inverting the sentences can cause grammatical problems. When ～からこそだ ends the sentence, it is often the case that こそ just gets dropped. Sometimes, keeping it can make the sentence sound unnatural, especially in the spoken language. Here, the particle needs formality to make it work.

Examples with the format A {から・ば} こそ B can be reworded to B のは A {から・ば} こそだ if the context is resultative, but in contradictory contexts, you cannot. However, when you can reword to B のは A からこそだ, A it is because A is expressing a positive cause/reason. Negative situations don't go.

～ばこそ: 一般条件

～ ばこそ may be used in showing a general condition. This is simply based on the fact that you are using the conditional particle ば in the pattern. As stated above, the context does not involve contradictory clauses. ば functions as a general condition, and the situation is in regards to knowledge, morals, or logic of some sort. The pattern becomes unnatural when the situation is already a defined condition of the past.

29. 政府のことを {思ったからこそ ○・思えばからこそ X}、腹を立てたんじゃないか。

It's surely because you thought about the government that you got mad, no?

30. 政府のことを思えばこそ、腹を立てることも多い。

Of course, when you think about the government, you often get mad.

31. 親友の友だちが励まして {くれるから・くれればこそ}、挫折せずに生きていけるんだ。

Because I certainly have a true friend to encourage me on, I can live on without setbacks.

When A+ {から・ば} こそ B are expressing the speaker's judgment, it can only be used in declarative sentences or questions as what should be. When you fall out of the laws of nature and dispensation, even if you use a general condition, these phrases become unnatural.

32. 本当に信じていればこそ、こうして頼んでいるのです。

Because I truly believe in you, I am asking you this.

32. 岡田さんのことを思うからこそ、本当のことを言うべきでしょう？

Because I truly think about Okada-san, should I tell him/her the truth?

33a. 火星にも引力が {あるから・あればこそ}、物体は地表へと落下する。X

33b. 火星にも引力があるから、物体は地表へ（と）落下する。○

Since there is also gravity on Mars, objects will fall to the surface.

34. 表題作の「光と影」も、まさに医家でなければもてない眼差しと、作家でなければ見抜くことができない眼差し があつたればこそと、私は確信している。

Along with the title work "Light and Shadow", I'm confident that he had the eye that only a doctor could have and the eye with which he could see through things being a novelist.

From 光と影 by 渡辺淳一 in the 解説 by 小松伸六.

Grammar Note: あつたれば = あれば.

～てこそ

A てこそ B is used when the speaker is evaluating or persuading the listener based on experience/social wisdom/morals/ethics and a positive B coming about. Because there is a condition A, a positive B naturally/necessarily comes about. B must be some noun (of condition), adjective, potential or passive phrase, all of which are non-volitional. B can't be a phrase that shows the speaker's/your volition.

35. 見知らぬ人を快く歓迎してこそ、誰にも熱く歓迎されるのです。

As you cheerfully welcome strangers, you will be warmly welcomed by anyone.

36. 身を捨ててこそ浮ぶ瀬もあれ。(Set Phrase)

Literally: Just as throw your own self away, there are also rapids for your body to float in.

Risk all and gain all.

37. この山中に暮らしをしてこそ、完璧に平等な理想の社会を築くことができるのではないか。人間らしい叫び声 を上げることができてこそ、革命家たり得るはずなのだ。

Isn't it not possible to build a perfectly impartial society by living within the mountains? It should be possible to become a revolutionist by simply giving a human shout.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

38. 原因があり条件があつてこそ現象としてとらえられるのだが、条件は刻一刻と変化する。

One can grasp things as phenomena so long as there is a cause and condition, but conditions change moment by moment.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

Grammar Note: たり得る is a combination of たり (a classical copula) and ～得る (showing potential). It is equivalent to であることができる。

All instances of ～てこそ may be replaced with ～てはじめて, but this doesn't mean that ～てはじめて is always interchangeable with ～てこそ. Just like ～ばこそ, ～てこそ cannot be used with some past or individual event with a defined condition.

39. 君と会ってはじめて本当の愛の意味が分かった気がする。

Since meeting you, I feel like I've understood the meaning of true love for the first time.

A てこそ B is interchangeable with A {から・ば} こそ B whenever the situation is a defined, resultative condition, the likes of which are seen with から・ので. However, if the situation is hypothetical, you cannot paraphrase ～てこそ out with just から. It should be ～てからこそ・ばこそ・ば. If it is a situation that could be defined or hypothetical, paraphrasing ～てこそ out with ～てからこそ, ～ばこそ, ～ば, or ～から is fine.

40a. 全力を尽く {してこそ・せば・してはじめて}、神様に報われるのです。○

40b. 全力を尽くせば、神様に報われるのです。X

It is precisely because of you giving your all (for something) that you will be rewarded by God.

41a. 人々がこの地球を守ってこそ、人類はサバイバルが可能だ。○

41b. 人々がこの地球を {守ってからこそ・守ればこそ}、人類はサバイバルが可能だ。

○人々がこの地球を守るか ー ら、人類はサバイバルが可能だ。X/△

So long as people protect this earth, humanity has the potential to survive.

42. 一生懸命 {頑張ってこそ・頑張るからこそ・頑張ればこそ・頑張るから・頑張れば}、成功するのだ。

You'll succeed if I try all my might.

Of course, by now you should realize that there are minor nuance changes in switching between the options, but at least you know what a situation looks like in which all are fine.

Table of Contents

The particle のみ is very similar to だけ. One of the main things to keep in mind is that it is not のに.

The Adverbial Particle のみ

のみ has fallen into more so literary usage due to the rise of だけ. のみ has four distinct usages.

- Limits something to a certain amount.
- のみだ shows that at *that* much, there is no other situation.
- のみか means "not just that".
- のみならず means "not only".

Examples

1. この村のみが水害に {免れた・^あ遭わなかった} 。

Only this village escaped the damages from the flood.

2. 神のみぞ知る。

Only God knows.

3. 我々はただ ^{にんたい}忍 耐 があるのみだ。

We only have perseverance.

4. 入場は招待者のみ可

Admission by invitation only

5. 老兵は死なずただ消え去るのみ。

Old soldiers never die, they just fade away.

6. 富士山はただ高いのみならず、美しいのです。

Mount Fuji is not just tall, but it is also beautiful.

7. けんじゅつ せこ た
剣 術 のみか世故にも長け

Not only know about fencing, but also know about worldly affairs.

From 池波正太郎

8a. この水族館には、深海魚のみならず、熱帯魚もいます。(A little old-fashioned)

8b. この水族館には、深海魚だけでなく、熱帯魚もいます。(More natural)

In this aquarium, there are not only deep-sea fish but also tropical fish.

Grammar Note: Using だけでなく is much more common because, again, のみ is very literary.

9. きんきゅう
緊 急 の場合にのみ連絡せよ。

Call me in only in the case of an emergency.

10. みずぶそく
水 不 足 はいよいよ深刻だ。後はただ雨が降るのを待つのみだ。

The water shortage is really serious. The only thing to do is wait for it to rain.

The particle も itself is a rather easy particle. If it doesn't mean “also” literally, it plays some sort of emphatic role in the sentence. The grammar that often accompanies it, however, needs a more detailed analysis.

連用形+もしない

The purpose of this pattern is to emphasize the substantial meaning of the verb and forcefully negate it. Not surprisingly, you aren't going to find this in honorifics, but you will find it in negative imperatives.

1. 働きもしないでぐずぐずするな。

Don't loiter around and not work!

2. 法案を読みもしないで論評することなんて馬鹿げた行動にすぎない。

Commenting without having read the legislature is no more than a foolish act.

3. 切迫した現場にいもしないものが、状況判断もせず原則論のみで何をいうか。

What does someone who isn't even in an urgent spot say with mere principle without assessing the situation?

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

Similarly, you can see ～なくもない. This is essentially a double negative turning into a positive.

知らなくもない。

it's nothing that I don't know.

Light Exclamation

This light exclamation is used to show something that may very well be the case all the time, but there is a certain kind of surprise about it all. This exclamation can be inclusive or something unpredictable. So, you have to view this exclamation in light of も's multifaceted use.

4. お前も馬鹿だね。

Wow, you're stupid.

The translation is liberal in its interpretation of the sentence, but the exclamation does not take away from the fact that the speaker is showing surprise in the addressee being an idiot, which would relate the addressee to stupid people.

5. 今や春もたけなわ（だ）。（Set Phrase)

Spring is now in full swing.

6. クリスマスも終わりですね。

Christmas is over, isn't it?

7. あいつも太ったな。

He's gotten fat too, hasn't he?

8. 私も秋から成人です。

I too will be an adult in fall.

In these sentences, the speaker shows exclamation at recognizing that there has been a change in circumstance or attribute. One thing that has to be understood, though, is that for there to be a sense of exclamation, there has to be a second realization of the matter and that it was not in one's supposition to that point. It's about taking things in all at once and realizing the change.

It may also be the fact that exclamation is brought on from the fact that something is counter to the norm.

9. 「あのばあちゃんもマラソンに参加するの?」 「あ、ほんと! ばあちゃんも元気一杯だね」

"That old lady's going to be in the marathon?" "Ah, she is! Well, isn't she full of energy?".

What if you're showing that something's useless? In such a case, although there may be something unexpected and be found akin to something else, no exclamation is inherently expressed by も.

10. あんなに頭がよかったのに、今度の試験では健も次郎もだめだ。

Although they're so smart, Ken and Jiro both won't do well this next exam.

So, in order for the exclamation function to work, there has to be an atemporal relation expressed. Otherwise, も may just be showing 同類性 (similarity) and or 意外性 (unpredictability).

The Conjunctive Particle も

Although normally replaced by ても, the conjunctive particle も means "even though" or "no matter". This is typically old-fashioned except for instances like よくも, which you'll see below in the examples.

11. どんなに ^{おお}多 **くも** ^{じゅうにん}十人 までだ。 (Old-fashioned)

No matter how many there are, there are going to be only up to 10 people.

12. 今日に ^{いた}至 **るも** ^{かんせい}完成 を見ない。 (Old-fashioned)

Even if it reaches today, we won't see completion.

Grammar Note: This is actually an instance of も after the 連体形 of a verb, but in this set instance, 至るも is equivalent to 至っても.

13. よくも人 ^{ばか}を馬鹿にする。

To dare make people feel stupid.

Phrase Note: よくも is used to criticize someone's action(s). Ex., よくもそんなことを！ = How dare you! It can also show surprise/astonishment at someone's action(s).

漢字 Note: よくも can be written in 漢字 as 善くも.

14. よくもそんなに ^{しゃべ}喋 ることができましたね。

It's amazing that he had so much to talk about!

～も～たり

"...も...たり" repeats to make expressions like the following. This usage is limited, but it is important to realize that this is an extension of も's use of showing 意外性. The result is ironically unexpected.

15. 走りも走ったり ^{よんまんぼ}四万歩。

Running and running, it was (only) 40,000 steps.

Peculiar Set Phrases

The particle も usually goes after something nominal, excluding its usage after て or the 連用形 of something. Consider, though, the following exceptions in set phrases.

16. ^お老いも ^{わか}若きも ^{かんど}感動した。

Everyone was moved.

Literally: Even the young and old were moved.

Old Grammar Note: In the past, the 連体形 of verbs and adjectives could be used as nominal phrases and be followed by particles.

17. ^す酸いも ^{あま}甘いも ^か噛み ^わ分ける。

To distinguish between anything.

Literally: To distinguish between sour and sweet.

Grammar Note: This phrase involves the modern 連体形, which is rather intriguing given the fact that you really can't take this old grammatical construction and apply it at will.

18. 聞くも ^{なみだ}涙、^{かた}語るも^{ものがたり}涙の物語。

A story that when heard brings tears and when told brings tears.

19. もう勝ったも同然だ。

It's almost the same as winning.

Grammar Note: ～も同然だ = As good as/almost the same as. Similar to other phrases in Japanese like ～に違いない, this phrase just tags along after something without any need to fix any grammatical connection before it.

In this lesson we will learn about even more compound verb endings. As the title indicates, all of these endings are in reference to missing out on doing something.

～残す

のこ
残す means "to save/leave". In compound verbs it builds upon this meaning to show that "something important was not done before leaving". 残る, the intransitive form, can similarly appear with some words to imply a sense of "being left" in a certain state.

1. その仕事はやり残したんです。

I left the work undone.

2. ソーダを残しておいて。

Save me some soda.

3. 動物の数は食べ残る部分からきたと思われる。

It is believed that the method of counting animals comes from the parts left over after eating (them).

4. 食べ残りを排水口に捨てない方がいいと聞いたんですが、本当ですか。

I heard that it is best not to put scraps in the disposal, but is this true?

5. お客さんが食べ残しを持ち帰って体調を崩した場合、飲食店はどのような責任があるのですか。

In the case a customer brings home left overs and gets ill, does the food establishment have any responsibility?

Word Note: 食べ残り and 食べ残し both exist, but the former refers to scraps that aren't suitable for being eaten later. The latter is "leftovers". As a society, Japanese people don't like for there to be leftovers. Businesses are weary of customers getting sick from leftovers and customers feel like they shouldn't order more than can eat, and if they do they don't want others seeing them take it home. Then again, this means food gets wasted. So, more places in Japan are beginning to add guidelines as to how to make sure leftovers than can be taken home are to alleviate this problem.

6. 食べ残したご飯を翌日に食べるようにすればよいのでは？

Wouldn't it be good to try to eat left over meals the next day?

7. 食べ残して捨てるのはもったいないです。

Throwing away what you have left over from eating is wasteful.

8. 飲み残したワインを味を落とさないで保存する方法はありますか。

How do you preserve left over wine without losing its taste?

9. 耐乏生活に生き残る。

To live through austerity.

～漏らす

も漏らす means "to leak" and is in compound verbs to show that one ends up not doing something important due to carelessness.

10. 必要なことを言い漏らす。

To end without saying something necessary.

11. うっかりして ^{ねんがっぴ}年 月 日 を書き漏らした。

I carelessly forgot to write down the date.

12. 大事なところを聞き漏らした。

I failed to listen to a crucial part.

Contrast Note: The last word is not exactly the same as 聞き逃す, which implies that you didn't listen to the entire thing.

～損なう・～そびれる・～損じる・～逃す

^{そこ}損なう means "to spoil/ruin" and what happens is always the subject's fault. In compounds it shows what one **missed out on doing**, and it may be interchangeable with the suffix ～そびれる. Another similar ending is ～^{そん}損じる which may show that one misses out on or fails in doing something. ～^{のが}逃す is also possible.

漢字 Note: 損なう is often left in かな.

13. ボールを^と捕り^{そこ}損なう。

To miss the ball.

14a. 彼の言ったことを聞き損なった。

14b. 彼の言ったことを聞きそびれた。(More natural)

I missed out on what he said.

Variant Note: 聞きそびれた would have been a better choice in the sentence above. This is because 聞きそこなう can also mean "mishear".

15a. 健康を^{そこな}害^なった。

15b. 健康を損なった。(Normal spelling)

15c. 健康を害した。(Alternative phrase)

He ruined his health.

16. せ こと しそん
急いては 事 を 仕 損じる。(ことわざ)

Haste makes waste.

Literally: Rushing fails things.

Orthography Note: 仕損じる means "to blunder". It is often spelled as し損じる, but it can also be seldom spelled as 為損じる. 為る is actually how you would spell する as in "to do" in 漢字. The normal spelling 仕損じる is actually 当て字.

17. 手紙を書き損じた。

I made a mistake in writing the letter.

18. 言い損ずる。(Old-fashioned)

To miss out saying.

Word Note: The following is normally 言い損なう or 言い損ねる.

Variant Note: Remember that ~じる are variants of each other ~ずる as voiced forms of する. -ずる is typically rarer and more formal.

19a. 遊ぶ機会を {逸した・逃してしまった} のは残念です。(Most natural)

19b. 遊びそこねたのは残念です。(OK)

It's a shame that he missed out on playing.

20. 死に損なって生き恥をさらす。

To fail to die and live on with one's shame exposed.

ねぼう
21. 寝 坊 したとき、学校に来る前に何をしそびれましたか。

What did you not do when you came to school after having overslept?

えんぜつ のが
22. 演 説 を聞き 逃 す。

To fail to listen to the speech.

23. 見逃してしまうよ。

You're missing it/you're going to miss it!

Orthography Note: For the meaning of "ruin", 損なう may also be written as 害
う. However, because this is not a reading in the 常用漢字表, unversed speakers
will not know how it is read and assume it is an error. As such, it is best to only
recognize it for when it does show up in literature.

Speech Style Note: ～損ずる is the same as ～損じる etymologically, but the lat-
ter is slightly less literary but still unlikely to be used in the spoken language.

Table of Contents

第165課: The Particle に III: The Conjunctive に

The conjunctive particle に is usually ignored in Japanese studies, but it is not that difficult. In this lesson, we will learn all about how exactly it is used. Some of its usages are actually really important.

Basic Understanding

In Classical Japanese, に was used along with を and が almost interchangeably to mean “but”. Or, it would be after the 連体形 of verbs just as other case particles could. So, just as のに has two interpretations in Modern Japanese, this conjunctive に had two potential meanings.

1. 十月晦日^{みそか}なるに、紅葉^{もみじ}散らで盛^{さか}りなり。

Though it's already the end of the tenth month (of the lunar calendar), colored leaves have not scattered, and it is still at its peak.

From the さらしな更級日記^{さらしな}.

The first usage we will look at is how this に is used to show a prelude to an utterance. The most common example of this is the phrase 要^{よう}するに, which essentially means “long story short” or “in brief”. The next most common example is 思うに, which means “presumably/upon thought”. The similar 考えるに meaning “in considering” is not used as much. You can also say 推測^{すいそく}するに (in presuming) and 想像するに (in imagining). These phrases are often used in formal situations as well as in arguments. Rarer examples show up in writing.

2. 思うに、喧嘩^{けんか}は僕のせいだった。

Upon reflection, the fight was my fault.

3. 思うに、これがAさんの本^{ほん}性^{しょう}なのだ。

Presumably, this is A-san's nature.

4. ^{ひび}響きから想像するに、バタフリーというポケモンは ^{ちょう}蝶のような姿をしているの
だろう。

Imagining from its sound, the pokemon named Butterfree probably has the
appearance of a butterfly.

5. 考えるには、ポケモンと一緒に戦って成長することが一番大事である。

In consideration, battling and growing with one's pokemon is most important.

6. この記述から想像するに、ホエルオーはスタジアムよりも大きいね。

Imagining it from this description, Wailord is bigger than a stadium, right?

7. 要するに、これがあなたの言いたいことでしょう。

In short, this is what you want to say, no?

8. ^{じょうきょう}状況から推測するに、その位置も安定している。

Judging from the conditions, that position is also stable.

9. 思うに、ポケモンは ^{ほんのうてき}本能的に進化するのだ！

Upon thought, pokemon instinctively evolve!

10. 要するに、このゲームはポケモンという生き物を ^{つか}捕まえて、育てて、対戦するゲー
ムなんだね。

In short, this game is a game you catch creatures called pokemon and then
raise and battle with them.

11. 見た目から推測するに、ピカチュウは電気タイプのポケモンだろう。

Judging from appearance, Pikachu is probably an electric type pokemon.

12. 調査結果から推測するに、今回の噴火が起こった原因はヒードランの復活のためでし
ょう。

Judging from the investigation results, the case of this last eruption is proba-
bly due to the revival of Heatran.

13. 要するに、モンスターボールでポケモンが^{つか}捕まえられる。

In short, you can catch pokemon with pokeballs.

14. 私が考えるに、この^{あん}案には問題がある。

In my thought, there is a problem in this plan.

15. この大きさから(想像)するに、この^{かい}貝は100年は生きてきたのだろう。

Judging from the size, this shellfish has probably lived at least 100 years.

16. 要するに、注意しろということだ。

Long story short, this is about paying attention.

17. 要するに、答えはノーだった。

In short, the answer was no.

18. 地理的に予想するに寒そうな場所だね。

Judging geographically, it seems like a cold place.

19. 想像(する)に^{かた}難くない(書き言葉)

Not difficult to imagine

Verb + に + Negative Potential

The pattern “verb in 連体形 + に + same verb in negative potential” is extremely common in Japanese and can essentially be used with any verb you can put in the potential form. What this pattern means is that although you want to do X, you can’t for whatever reason. Usually, the reason is circumstantial.

20. 売るに売れないものだ。

It’s something I can’t sell even if I wanted to.

21. 今朝からずっと雨で、行くに行けない。

It’s been raining ever since this morning, and so I just can’t go.

22. 歌うに歌えない歌詞

Lyrics that one just can't sing

23. 行くに行けない雰囲気になった。

The atmosphere became one that I couldn't go.

24. 帰るに帰れないかもなあ。

Looks like I/we can't go home...

25. トイレに行くに行けない状況になった時は、精神的にかなりきつい。

It's psychologically very tense whenever you're in a situation you can't go to the restroom.

26. 泣くに泣けない ^{ほん}凡ミスだった。

It was a trivial mistake too bitter to cry about.

27. ^こ越すに越されぬ大きな川

A river impossible to traverse

～ようにも

～ ようにも show supposition and is equivalent to "しても". It is extremely common and is often followed with something that relates to incapability. This can also be found in the negative as ～まいにも. This, though, is not really used anymore.

28. 起きようにも起きられなかった。

I couldn't get up even if I tried.

29. プールの中で歩こうにも中々 ^{ていこう}抵抗で歩けない。

Even if you walk inside a pool, you can't quite walk even with significant resistance.

30. 歌を歌おうにも ^{こうおん} 高音 が出にくい。

Even if I try to sing the song, it's hard to reach the high tones.

31. 急ごうにも急げる体でもない。

I'm not in the physical condition to be able to hurry.

32. ^{りれきしょ} 履歴書 を書こうにも電話番号の記入は ^{ひっす} 必須 だから、携帯が無いと履歴書を作れない。

Even if I were to write a resume, because phone number is a required field, if I don't have a cellphone, I can't make a resume.

33. 今から就職活動しようにも、やりたい事もないし資格とかも持っていない。

Even if I were to start looking for a job now, there's nothing I want to do or really have the qualifications for.

34. ^{じゅく} 塾 で学んだ事を復習させようにも、ほとんど時間が確保出来ない。

Even if I were to have (the students) review what they've learned in cram school, I could not secure hardly any time.

35. 家出をしようにもお金がないよ。

Even if run away, you don't have any money.

第166課: Adjectives III

There is still a bit more that you need to know about adjectival expressions in Japanese. There are older conjugations that you need to get used to as well as two other classes of adjectives with syntactic restrictions to them that the other two classes don't.

形容詞: The Original 連体形

Using the original 連体形 for 形容詞 is very limited in Modern Japanese. As you would imagine, fossilized use in set phrases will be the most likely place you find this. It's also the case that literary titles from the West often have older style Japanese. Unless in set phrases, it is most likely the case that the places you find this is in literature. And, there is a good chance that the context may very well be in Classical Japanese.

	連体形
形容詞 ending in い	き
形容詞 ending in しい・じい	しき・じき

Examples

1. 熱き海 (Literary; classical)

The warm seas

2. 熱い海

Hot seas

Translation Note: Of course, "hot" is a better translation of any form of 熱い. However, to fit the style of 熱き海, warm is used instead. This phrase especially makes sense in contexts like in the following.

3. 70 度以上の熱い海に生息する。

To live in hot seas over 70°C.

4. この素晴らしき世界

What a wonderful world

5. 我が良き友よ

My good friend!

6. 悪しき者は火と硫黄の池に投げ込まれた。

The evil ones were thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur.

7. それであなたがた理解ある人々よ、わたしに聞け、神は断じて悪を行うことなく、全能者は断じて不義を行う

ことはない。神は人のわざに従ってその身に報い、各々の道に従って、その身に振りかからせられる。誠に

神は悪しき事を行われない。全能者は裁きをまげられない。だれか全世界を彼に負わせた者があるか。神

がもしその霊をご自分に取り戻し、その息をご自分に取り集められるならば、全ての肉は共に滅び、人は塵

に帰るであろう。

Therefore, hear me, you men of understanding: far be it from God that he should do wickedness,

and from the Almighty that he should do wrong. For according to the work of a man he will repay

him, and according to his ways he will make it befall him. Of a truth, God will not do wickedly, and the Almighty will not pervert justice. Who gave him charge over the earth, and who laid on him the whole world? If he should set his heart to it and gather to himself his spirit and his breath, all flesh would perish together and man would return to dust.

From ヨブ記 第三四章一〇～一五節

8. 強気を砕く。

To crash the strong.

Grammar Note: It was also possible to use the 連体形 of adjectives as nominal phrases in older Japanese. This is still seen in set phrases or purposely old-fashioned statements like Ex. 8.

Adjectival Elements in Sino-Japanese Compounds

Have you noticed many compounds with translations with both an adjective and a noun? Many adjectival phrases that came into the language as "adjective + noun" were turned into nominal phrases in Japanese. Some become 形容動詞, but some don't. Why is this?

It's interesting to consider how 明るい and 暗い are both adjectives, but 明暗 is not. In fact, 明暗な is ungrammatical. You can say something like the following.

Examples

9. 明暗の対比

Light and dark contrast

Of course, there are times when you add two adjectival 漢字 and get a 形容動詞.

10. 善良な市民

Good citizen

漢字 Note: 善 and 良 may be used to spell いい.

11. 日本の希少な野生水生生物

Japan's scarce wild aquatic organisms

漢字 Note: 希 is a simplified spelling of 稀, which is in 稀な read as まれ to mean "rare". 少 is in 少ない.

The most interesting examples are things like 良法 (good method). These words tend to always be formal and 書き言葉. After all, this is a foreign construction. However, there are still plenty more examples that are commonly used words.

There is no morphology on the adjectival morpheme (meaning unit) 良 to function as an adjective. Thus, {よい・いい} 方法 would be more practical in speaking. Below are more examples of such words.

12. だんかい す さめ
暖 海 に棲む 鮫

A shark that lives in warm seas

漢字 Note: 棲 and 鮫 are not 常用漢字.

13. しがいせん えいきょう ふせぐ
紫 外 線 による 影 響 を 防 ぐ。

To prevent effects from ultraviolet rays.

14. せいぶつ たようせい たち
生 物 の 多 様 性 を 保 つ べ き だ。

We should protect biological diversity.

15. ぜつめつきぐ しょうすうげんご
絶 滅 危 惧 の 少 数 言 語 を 守 る プロジェクトを開始する。

To start a project for protecting endangered minority languages.

16. りょうやく にか
良 薬 は 口 に 苦 し。

Good medicine is bitter to the taste.

17. ぜんあく かんねん
彼には 善 悪 の 観 念 が ない。

He cannot tell right from wrong.

18. ぜんい 善意 VS あくい 悪意

Good intent vs malice

ナル形容動詞

These adjectives never made the complete jump to modern 形容動詞. All modern ones come from this class from Classical Japanese. There are still several that are used a lot, but they still often have a formal feeling simply because of their grammatically restrictive use. Their old base set comes from the base set of the old copula verb なり, and they may show up in old proverbs and set phrases, but they are not necessary to know in order to use them. For completeness, they are provided below.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
なら-	なり-・に	なり	なる	なれ-	なれ

Usage Note: You can also use the なる-連体形 of current 形容動詞 and other attributive expressions in more neo-classical or formal texts. For instance, you might see 次なる instead of 次の.

Examples

19a. しんでん せい
神殿は聖なる地であるはずです。

19b. しんれい
神殿は神霊な場所であるはずです。(More common)

A temple is supposed to be a holy place.

20. じゅしょう おお よろこ
受賞を大いなる喜びとする。

To treat receiving the prize as a great joy.

21. 私たちはいくつかの ^{せい}聖 ^ちなる地を ^{おとず}訪 れました。

We visited some holy sites.

22. 七は聖なる数です。

7 is a holy number.

23. ^{さら}更 ^{しえん}なる支 援 を求めています。

We are still seeking more aid.

24a. いかな (る) 時でも (ちょっと古風)

24b. どんな時でも (もっと自然)

Any time

25a. ^{うわさ}単なる 噂 にすぎない。

25b. ただの噂にすぎない。

It doesn't pass being a mere rumor.

26. 仕事 ^{おお}が ^{はかど}大 いに 捗 った。

My job has made good headway.

Word Note: 大いに comes from 大いなる, which happens to retain its adverbial form.

タル形容動詞

As mentioned earlier in the introduction of this lesson, there is a defunct class of adjectival verbs in Japanese called タル形容動詞. As the name suggests, their attribute base is タル. In Modern Japanese the bases are typically limited to the と-連用形 and the たる-連体形. The と-連用形 can make adverbs. Most are in decline. Their attribute base can be replaced with とした. Some have acquired other legitimate attributive forms. For instance, you can use 主な and 主たる (principal/main).

27a. 主たる理由はこれです。（古風）

27b. 主な理由はこれです。（もっと自然）

The main reason is this.

28. 全然たる狂人

An absolute maniac

29. {名立たる・有名な} 観光地

A famous tourist spot

30. めんぜん ちようしょう ぶじよく さい
面 前 での 嘲 笑 は 侮 辱 の 最 たるものだ。

Scorn in one's presence is the extremity of insult.

31a. 最たる例 （古風）

31b. 最も顕著な例 （自然）

Prime example

32. 人間の活動の最たるもの

The prime thing to human activity

33. どうどう すがた
堂 々 {たる・とした} 姿

A magnificent figure

34. だんこ
断 固 {たる・とした} 決意

Resolute determination

35. たんたん くちよう
淡 々 {たる・とした} 口 調 で話す。

To speak in a cool tone.

36. ばくぜん
漠 然 とした不安

Vague anxiety

37. ^{じゅんぜん}純然たる銀行
Pure and simple bank

Table of Contents

第167課: About: ～について, ～に関して, & ～をめぐって

It normally doesn't take long to find differences between similar items in Japanese. Sometimes there might be certain forms and meanings of one that the other doesn't have, or there could be formality differences. These are the kinds of differences that you will learn about in regards to ～について, ～に関して, and ～をめぐって in this lesson.

～について & ～に関して

You have no doubt come across ～について and ～に関して and noticed that each time that they were both translated as “about”. Although this is quite true, most students don't understand the differences between them, when and when not to attach は, that evil particle, and how to choose an appropriate 連体形 (attribute form).

First, consider the follow mistakes and corrections.

1a. 今から韓国に関して話してください。X

1b. 今から韓国について話してください。○

From now talk about Korea.

2.

A: 田山さんは家事はやりですか。

B: いえ、家事について、家内任せです。X

B: いえ、家事については、家内任せです。○

A: Does Mr. Tayama do housework?

B: No, in regards to housework, he leaves it up to his wife.

The fundamental usage of ～について and ～に関して is to emphasize an event/person as the topic/theme. Then, one states something about it. These phrases are also common in forming questions in this manner.

3. ぼしんせんそう
戊辰戦争について教えていただけませんか。

Could you teach me about the Boshin War?

4. ぼうえき
彼らは貿易に関して議論した。

They argued about trade.

Whereas ～について emphasizes the content at hand, ～に関して includes the surroundings related to it. Also, as ～について comes from the verb 付く, it is used a lot when referring to things being tied to acts of communication via speaking, writing, thinking, etc. As you might gather just from the few examples thus far, ～に関して is more formal and stiff. Given its nuance and formality, you should see why it was wrong in the first example.

5. 駐車違反取締り {○ についての・X に関しての} お知らせ

Notice about the management of parking violations

6. 説明会のタイトルは水不足の問題 {○ についての・X に関して} です。

The title of this information session is about the water shortage problem.

Given the defining difference between the two, which do you suppose would be used when a student is giving a speech about his/her home country? The answer is ～について. In fact, ～について is used in the introduction of speeches because you are telling the listeners what your speech is going to be about, not what your speech/content of speech has relation with. Individual examples might be related with something else, but that's not your introduction either.

読み物: Excerpt from a Student Group Speech about 敬語

「皆さん、こんにちは。私たちのインタビュープロジェクトのトピックは敬語です。私たちは日本の方に色々な敬語についての質問をしてみたかったので、今回日本人の

敬語の考え方をテーマにして発表することにしました。インタビューした人のうち、13人が女性で、8人が男性でした。大体皆さんは若者でした。たった2人だけが35歳以上でした。^{しゅふ}主婦が8人いて、大学生が6人いて、大学院生が4人いて、仕事をしている人が4人いました。

最初に聞いてみた2つの質問は、敬語学習の^{じき}時期**について**です。…

日本人の敬語の考え方**について**いくつか質問しました。その中で私たちが思っていたのと違った答えだったのは、「敬語はフェイクで、敬語を使わなかったら、人ともっと近くなれる」というのでした。日本人がすべて「敬語が必要だ」という^{しゅちょう}主張に**いち**一致していないのにととてもびっくりしました。何故現代の日本社会で敬語が必要なのかは、文化と習慣からだけだというわけではなくて、誠に尊敬の意を表している日本人の心を代表としていると思います。言語は時代と^{とも}共に変わるにもかかわらず、^{ことばづか}言葉遣いに気をつけないと、「日本人じゃない」と思われてしまうこともこの発表の結果を考えると、お分かりいただけるでしょう。敬語の使い方は日本人自身にとっても難しいけれど、この先もずっと大切に使われるであろうと言えるかもしれません。これで、敬語**について**の発表を終わります。」

1. What were the demographics of the Japanese people interviewed?
 2. How many people were college students?
 3. What were the first two questions about?
 4. What is the attribute form of **について**?
 5. What was the most surprising response?
 6. Language changes with time, but what must you always pay attention to?
 7. Translate the last two sentences.
 8. True or False: 敬語 is thought to be part of Japanese culture and tradition according to the findings of this speech.
-

In explanation these phrases are essentially interchangeable. The same kinds of words are used with them, and as far as the kinds of sentences they appear in, they're essentially parallel. So, what mainly causes problems is formality and the nuance difference mentioned earlier.

7. 人種差別主義^{じんしゅさべつしゅぎ}に {ついて・に関して} の問題は重大です。

The problem against racism is serious.

8. 自由と 圧制^{あつせい} について考察する。

To inquire about freedom and oppression.

9. 彼女の顔についていえば、本当に美しいですね。

Starting with her look, she's really beautiful, isn't she?

Variant Usage: Although not related, ～につき (a variant which will be mentioned again) and ～について may also mean "per" with numerical phrases. Lastly, ～につき may be like ～ため to show reasoning in formal situations where it is typically written in 漢字 as ～に就き.

10. 雪崩^{ゆきなだれ} につき 電車は 不通^{ふつう} です。

Train (service) is suspended due to an avalanche.

11. 牛肉は今一ポンドにつき6ドルだよ。

Meat is six dollars per pound now.

12. 千円につき50円の手数料^{てすうりょう} がかかります。

There is a fifty yen handling fee per one thousand yen.

～については・に関しては

は is added, as one would imagine, to raise something as the topic or thing of contrast.

13.

A: 秘書がお金を受け取ったんでしょう。

B: そのこと {については・関しては}、私は何も知りません。

A: Didn't the secretary receive the money?

B: I don't know anything about that.

14. 男性であるか女性であるか、年齢はどうかなど {については・に関して}、それほど重要ではありません。

Whether it be about them being male or female or their age, it's not that important.

Formality

You can also find these expressions as 〜につきて and 〜に関しまして in more polite settings.

15. ご質問につきてお答えします。(謙譲語)

I will answer concerning your question.

16. この前の^{しょうかい}照会 に関しまして (Very Formal)

Regarding your recent inquiry

Variant Note: につきて can also be seen as につきて in very formal writing.

Attribute Forms

～ についての is the attribute form of ～について. As for ～に関して, it has the attribute forms ～に関しての and ～に関する, with the latter being more literary.

17. 政府に関しての 討 論^{とうろん}。

A debate about the government.

18. 平和に関する北朝鮮の 疑 惑^{ぎわく}は日本の 防 衛^{ぼうえい}を 脅 威^{きょうい}に 晒^{さら}している。

North Korean doubts on peace is threatening Japanese security.

19. 平和に関する会合を開く。

To hold a meeting concerning peace.

Meaning Note: ～に関する and ～に関わる have overlapping meanings of "concerning/related to X". The first shows a connection, but the other shows a direct affect.

A+の+連体形+の

In this pattern it moreover limits something in noting a condition about what is expressed by the noun. It's very similar to ～に 関^{かん}して.

20. コーヒーの 冷 めた^さの

Cold in regards to coffee

21. コーヒーに関しては冷たい。

It's cold in relation to coffee.

22. オレンジの 小 振^{こぶ}りなの

A comparatively small orange

Meaning Note: The word 小振り is normally only used in reference to things like fruits, fish, etc. However, its usage may be expanded some in speaking. Nevertheless, something like 小振りなテレビ is very weird. You should use ^{こがた}小型のテレビ instead.

～をめぐって・めぐり

～を巡って, also seen as ～を巡り in more stiff, literary language, is typically written with 巡, but this is important in understanding its usage. There are some instances where it is used in a more literal sense of passing through places.

23. 四国四十八ヶ所の ^{めいしよきゅうせき}名所旧跡を巡る。

To pass through the 48 famous landmarks of Shikoku.

24. 僕は ^{ひさいち}被災地を巡るつもりだ。

I plan to go around the devastated area.

25. 鎌倉の古寺を巡ろう。

Let's go through the Kamakura temples!

26. 名月や池を巡りて夜もすがら

Going about the full moon and lakes, all night.

From ^{ばしょう}芭蕉.

Conjugation Note: 巡りて is the Classical form of 巡って.

It can also be used in the sense of something that had away is back. In this sense, it can also be written as 廻る.

27. 季節が巡る。

Seasons return.

28a. 血液が体内を巡るのは生きるために必要だ。

28b. 血液が体内を巡らなければ、生きることができない。

Blood returning through the body is necessary in order to be able to live.

29. 悪運が日本に巡ってきたようだ。

It looks like bad luck has reached Japan.

However, what will be used the most with 巡る here concerns the meaning of "surrounding" some X and describing its condition. This is translated as "concerning". In a sense you are surrounding something in an interest and describing it. One grammatical issue is that the attribute form can only be ～を巡っての when the following noun phrase Y concerns a situation and not a person. This restriction does not exist for the attribute form ～を巡った.

30. ジュリエットを巡る ^{こいがたき}恋敵 だよ。

They are rivals concerning Juliet.

31. ^{しろ}城 の周りを巡れ！

Enclose the surroundings of the castle!

32. アメリカでは ^{けんぽう}憲法 を巡る問題が重なっています。

There are problems concerning the Constitution building up in America.

33. 資金を巡って政府は ^{あんしょう}暗礁 に乗り上げてしまいました。

(The government) reached a deadlock concerning government funds.

～を巡って VS ～について・に関して

Although for the most interchangeable, since ～を巡って is coming from the speaker's perspective as an onlooker, when one is actually a person concerned with something, ～について・に関して should be used instead.

34. 日本の将来 {を巡って・について}、^{ゆうしきしゃ}有識者^{とうろんかい}による^{とうろんかい}討論会が行われました。

There was a debate opened by experts concerning the future of Japan.

35. 健康保険 {○ について・X を巡って}、論議を進めたいと思います。

I would like to proceed with an argument/discussion about health insurance.

36. 来年の企画 {○ について・○ に関して・X をめぐって} 話し合ってください。

Please talk together about next year's project.

第168課: No Doubt that: ～に違いない, ～に相違ない, & ～に決まっている

～に違いない and ～に相違ない are not necessarily difficult, but there are certain problems that students have. The unusual way it connects to adjective/verb expressions, not properly understanding what can follow them, and not understanding formality differences are the main sources of error. The lesson will be ended with the similar ～に決まっている.

～に違いない VS ～に相違ない

First and foremost, these expressions are both translated as “there is without a doubt that...”. This is the immediate source of confusion because you can add phrases like “I think that” or “probably” in English without causing ungrammaticality. However, with these Japanese expressions, doing so does. First, consider the following defining of these terms.

～に違いない: Not from objective proof or logical speculation, but rather from the speaker’s own experience, this phrase shows one’s intuitive speculation/confidence. With such a bold move, it is without surprise that this is quite strong. It is often used in situations where it’s as if one is talking to oneself in attempts to verify one’s own guess or deliberation.

～に相違ない: Like ～に違いない, it shows intuitive speculation/confidence, but it is more stiff and formal. This formality difference is very important to keep in mind. One reason is that speech modals more akin to the spoken language like the final particle から, which is commonly used with ～に違いない, are not typically used with ～に相違ない. This also implies that there is no mistake in it; thus, it gives a more confident tone. Thus, although adverbs like **きっと** are common with ～に違いない, it is not with ～に相違ない due to the tone. Although perhaps of old logic, some speakers feel this is more so indicative of middle-aged/old men as they are more likely to use old-fashioned expressions, which would not be old-fashioned for them, and fits the traditional tone for masculine speech.

These patterns attach to phrases in the following manner.

Nouns	N（である） + ～に {違い・相違} ない
形容詞	形容詞 + ～に {違い・相違} ない
形容動詞	形容詞（である） + ～に {違い・相違} ない
Verbs	Verb + ～に {違い・相違} ない

Notice that it does not say Adj/V + こと + に {違い・相違} ない. It is a set phrase, and like other phrases with に, the reason for why this is allowed stems from a Classical Japanese grammatical maneuver of using conjugational parts of speech as nominal phrases when in the 連体形. As this base has changed appearance for many items, it's not surprising that in Modern Japanese this technique is limited.

Adverb Note: Adverb phrases that commonly get used with ～に違いない include おそろしく, きっと, and 絶対に; adverb phrases that commonly get used with ～に相違ない include 絶対に, 確かに, and ～の通りに.

Examples

1. 政府の報道官の応答はどんなに（か）悔しかったに違いない。

The response of the government spokesperson was in no doubt overly regrettable.

Grammar Note: In a more literary sense どんなに（か） may be replaced with いかばかりか. Also note that the use of か with this in the first place is hardly ever heard.

2. 違いない（その通り）、君の言う通りだ。

That's right. It's just as you say.

3. この計画の実行は困難に違いない。

It is without a doubt that this plan's implementation is difficult.

4. ^{どろぼう}泥 棒 が入ったに違いない。

There is no doubt that a robber came in.

5. ^{ばかもの}馬 鹿 者 には違いないが、責任を取らざるをえないだろう。

Although it's without a doubt that you're an idiot, there's no other way but to take responsibility.

^{おさらぎじろう}
By 大 仏 次 郎

6. 明日は ^{くも}曇 るに違いない。

It will definitely be cloudy tomorrow.

7. 社長は天才であることに相違ない。

There's no doubt that the company president is a genius.

8. 「あの女の人是谁でしょうか」「ケンさんのガールフレンドに違いありません。手を
^{つな}繋 いで一緒に歩いていますか ら」

"Who is that woman?" "There's no doubt that she's Ken's girlfriend because they're holding hands walking together".

9. 「あの人は ^{なにご}何 語 の学生でしょうか」「日本語の学生に違いありません。読んでいるものに「新しい」と書いてあり ますから」

"What language student is that person? "That person is no doubt a Japanese student because the thing (that person) is reading has "atarashii" written on it"

10. 「あの人は日本に住んでいたんでしょうか」「そうに違いありません。日本の新聞を読んでいますから」

"I wonder if that person lived in Japan" There's no doubt about it because he's reading a Japanese newspaper"

11. 「あの女の人は結婚しているんでしょうか」「そうに違いありません。指輪^{ゆびわ}は^はを嵌めて^{はめ}いますから」

"I wonder if that woman is married" "There's no doubt about it because she's wearing a ring"

～に決まっている

～に決まっている means "it is certainly..." and follows nouns, adjectives, or verbs. It is from the verb 決まる・極まる, which means "to be decided/determined/fixed". This speech modal shows 100% certainty, and it is reflective of 話し言葉 and used with one's ウチ. It shows that the speaker is very confident in labeling something as so. With it being more personal, reactions like うそつけ (liar) would even be appropriate. ～に決まっている is also used in chastising.

12. 彼は嘘^{うそ}をついているに決まっている。

He's certainly lying.

13. 毎日決まった時間に帰る。

I go home every day at a set time.

14. 夏は暑いに決まっている。

It is certainly hot in summer.

15. 技^{わざ}が決まる。

For a move to be going well.

16. 利益は ^{とうぶん} 等 分 することに決めるべきだ。

{We/they} should decide upon profits being divided equally.

Phrasing Note: English and Japanese differ slightly in a few areas here, but the transitive form 決める should be used instead. ~べきだ wants transitive verbs, after all. And, the verb 決める can be paraphrased to する. In this sense, ~ことにする and ~ことに決める are synonymous.

17. 裁判で ^{ひこくにん} 被 告 人 は無罪だと決まった。

It was decided in the court that the defendant is not guilty.

18. 腹が決まらないようでは ^{なにごと} 何 事 もできない。

I can't do anything in not having my mind resolved.

19. ^{れいじ} 零 時 ごろには当落が決まるでしょう。

The election results will probably be able to be determined at around midnight.

20. 負けるに決まってる。(Casual)

They will certainly lose.

21a. ^{せい} 生 あるものはやがては ^{ほろ} 滅 びると決まっている。

21b. 生あるものはやがては必ず滅びる。

Things with life are set to be destroyed before long.

Particle Note: ~と決まっている also exists, and its meaning is equivalent to ~とということになっている。Thus, it is not quite the same as ~に決まっている。

These phrases are definitely very similar to each other, but as you will see during the compare and contrast sections of this lesson, there are important differences to keep in mind.

～に基づいて

～に基づいて means "on the basis of/based off of/based on". Its attribute form may either be ～に基づいての or ～に基づいた. Broadly speaking, there are two main usages of Xに基づいて Y. The first is "without deterring from a standard/criterion/norm/rule/law X, one carries out/executes an action Y". The other, which is found primarily in the written language, is "having A as a basis/foundation/modal/example/pattern/reference, one does/makes a decision B".

1. 事実に基づいた^{きじゅつ}記述をする。

Describe on the basis of reality.

2. 彼女の議論は確かに^{しょうこ}証拠^{もと}に基づいていなかった。

Her argument was certainly not on the basis of evidence.

3. 明らかなことに基づいた議論の^{よち}余地のない事実。

Unarguable facts based on obvious things.

4. このマニュアルに基づいて操作します。

I will operate it based on this manual.

5. 規則に基づいて処理する。

To process according to regulations.

6. さっきの例文に基づいた、もっと複雑なものです。

These are more complicated ones based off of the previous example sentences.

7. 証拠に基づいて、^{かがいしゃ}加害者^{しけい}に死刑^{わた}を言い渡した。

In line with the evidence, the assailant was sentenced to death.

Variant Note: ～に基づいて may also be ～に基づき in stiffer writing.

Grammar Note: For the attribute form, ～に基づいての must only be used when what it precedes is a standard of some sort. If it is not, you must use ～に基づいた instead.

を踏まえて

The 一段 verb 踏まえる means "to be based on". So, ～を踏まえて means "on the basis of" just like ～に基づいて. It can also be seen as ～を踏まえ in the written language. Its attribute form may either be ～を踏まえての or ～を踏まえた. As its original literal meaning is "to tread on" in a defensive posture, it is used after words that can show a basis/foundation/precedent for something. Again, it cannot follow material for reference as a standard. Rather, it must follow an extant basis. This pattern is usually seen in the written language and finds itself in news reports all the time.

8. 自分の経験を踏まえてこういう。

To say such based on one's own experience.

9. これまでの状況を踏まえて得た最終結論です。

This is the last argument gotten based on the conditions up to now.

10. 報告を {踏まえた・踏まえての} 処理

Processing based on the report

Translation Note: 踏まえる may also mean "to tread".

11. 両足で大地を {踏まえて・踏んで} 立って！

Tread on the ground with both your legs and stand!

～をもとにして

～をもとにして is used to show that one bases off of the good qualities of something. It does not necessarily have to be 100% congruent with the full truth in the circumstances. It shows willful change, and it is usually shortened in the spoken language to ～もとに. When this pattern happens to be used as an attribute, it becomes ～もとにした.

12. 私は ^{おやゆず}親 ^{とみ}譲りの財産をもとにして ^{とみ}富を作りました。

I built my wealth on the fortune from my father.

13. ^{うそ}嘘をもとにして ^{おこな}行う。

To act upon a lie.

14. 事実を基にして書かれた劇だ。

It is a play written on the basis of the truth.

漢字 Note: Although this pattern is used both in the spoken and written language, when もと is written in 漢字, you have the options 基, 本, 素, 原, 源, 元, and 下. Thus, the meaning of this expression can be further refined. The first refers to a standard. The second refers to the foundation of something. The third refers to the subject matter. The fourth refers to raw materials. The fifth refers to a source. The sixth refers to the original way. The seventh refers to being under an influence. However, most natives cannot distinguish this well, and this is only knowledge relevant for when reading through literature.

～に沿って & More

～に沿って

～に沿って is used in a physical or cause and effect sense. It can also be seen as ～に沿いは stiff writing, but even here it is considerably rare. The attribute forms ～に沿った and ～に沿っての are slightly different. The former can be

used when A fits nicely with B, but there can be some deviance. However, there can be no such deviance with the latter.

15. じせい 時勢に沿って生きる。

To live in consonance of the times.

16. こけ 土手に沿って、苔が生えている。

Moss is growing along the embankment.

17. 事実に沿って、話しをしていただけますか。

Could you please talk along the facts (of the case)?

18. 湖に {○ 沿った・X 沿っての} 公園を歩きました。

I walked through the park that's alongside the lake.

19. 事業計画に {沿った・沿っての} じっしじょうきょう 実 施 状 況

The status of implementation along the business plan

20. 僕は川に沿って歩いた。

I walked along the river.

Variant Note: ～に沿って may be replaced by the suffixes ～^ぞ沿い and ～^{づた}伝い in the physical sense.

21. のき 軒 づたいに そうこ 倉庫の裏に廻って行った。

Along the eaves, I went around the back of the storehouse.

22. 川伝いに走り回る。

To run around along the river.

23. こはん 湖畔沿いの道路を歩く。

To walk through the street alongside the lake shore.

24. 流れに沿ってやがて広野に出ると、^{ちょうじょう}頂上は面白く切り^{きざ}刻んだようで、そこからゆるやかに美しい^{しゃせん}斜線^{すそ}が遠い裾^はまで伸びている山の端に月が色づいた。^{のずえ}野末にただ一つの眺めである、その山の^{まった}全き姿を、淡い夕映えの空がくっきりとふかはなだいろ濃深縹色に描き出した。

Along the stream, when we at last entered the wide, the moon changed colors in the edge of the mountain, which had a gently beautiful slant with the peak interestingly cutting it that stretched to the far base of the mountain. The light sunset sky sharply drew the perfect view of the mountain for the single view at the corner of the field a light yet deep indigo.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

漢字 Note: The spellings 添う・副う exist. The first is seen with the sense of "addition" and the latter is seen with the sense of "expectation/satisfaction".

25. 身に添った悲しみ

The sadness on oneself

26. 花が期待に副って見事に咲いたよ。

The flowers bloomed splendidly to my expectations.

～に即して

～に即して is reserved to writing and often very stiff. If used in the spoken language, it is very formal or official sounding. It is frequently used to show that something is based on/along things. In even more formal writing, it can be seen as ～に即し.

27. 時代に即した教育

Education according to the times

28. 事実に即したドラマ

A drama in accordance with the facts

29. 法律に即した判断

A decision in accordance with the law

30. 理念に即した行動

Actions in accordance to an ideal

Spelling Note: As for spelling そくして, when the situation is based off of a given fact or observation you use 即して. However, if the situation is based on rules you use 則して, following the meanings of the 漢字 in question. There is a tendency to only use the former.

31. 前例に則して処理する。

To process according to precedent.

Attribute Note: The attribute forms available depends on the spelling. If 即して, you can only use に即した. If 則して, you can use either ～に則しての or ～に則した. Although with ～に即して one can't feel any sense of excess or deviance, with ～に則して you can. Thus, the differences in possible attribute forms arise. It's opposite to that of ～に沿って's attribute forms, so be careful.

～にのっとして

～に則って is from the て形 of 則る, which is used to show that one protects some sort of tradition/rule set up in the past. This part of the meaning comes from an old verb のる in combination with 採る. This のり can still be found in many words written as 法: 御法 (humble law), 内法 (inside measure), etc. This is why 則る can also, but rarely, be seen written as 法る. It is no surprise that these two concepts are found in the word 法則 (law; rule).

Whether this pattern is used in the spoken language or not is debatable, but it is very literary/rather stiff written speech modal. It can be used in official situations and in technical terms in relation to rules/costumes. It can also be seen as ～に則り, and the attribute form can be seen as ～に則つての or ～に則つた without any restriction.

32. 遺言状に則って、遺産相続がなされます。

Inheritance will be carried out according to the will.

33. 憲法に則り、最高裁判所の判断が示される。

The Supreme Court's decision will be presented in accordance with the Constitution.

34. 仕来りに {則った・則つての} 儀式

A ceremony that is in accordance with tradition

Analysis of Points of Confusion

Although this section is not meant to exhaustively nitpick between any kind of situation you may encounter with expressions concerned basing things of something, by the end of this section you will certainly have a better understanding of the differences between the phrases taught above. Note that only those that truly seem synonymous will be addressed here.

35a. これまでの経験に基づいて、これからも頑張りたいと思う。X

35b. これまでの経験を元にして、これからも頑張りたいと思う。O

If you paid any attention to the kind of words and situations above with ～に基づいて, you should have noticed that they are all in the same vein in regards to the basis of something in regards to fact or circumstances. The problem with the first sentence, though, will lead us into a serious issue: what are the differences between ～に基づいて, ～をもとにして, ～に沿って, ～に即して, and ～に則って.

1. ～に基づいて, ～に基いて being a less common spelling, shows that an action or circumstance is taking place based on fundamentals, matter at hand, or in combination with some sort of proof.

36. 判決に {基づいて・基づき}、刑が執行される。

The verdict will be carried out according to the punishment.

37. 人は法に基づいて裁かれる。

People are judged according/based on the law.

Usage Note: This pattern is often used after words like 事実, 証拠, 経験*, 規則, 情報, etc. Words that often follow this pattern include 判断する, 行動する, 決める, 作る, 裁く, 言い渡す, 下す, 等.

2. ～をもとにして, on the other hand, shows a meaning of “**basing on** fundamentals or matter at hand, while one capitalizes/utilizes on it or while one utilizes a certain part...”. The orientation of the expressions, thus, are quite different.

38. 資料を基にする。

To base it on the materials.

39. 人の噂をもとにして判断してはいけないよ。

I mustn't judge something based on people's rumors!

40. これまでの経験をもとにして、頑張りたいと思う。

I wish to try hard based on my experience up to now.

Usage Note: This pattern is often used after words like データ, 情報, 事件, 話, 噂, 等. Words that often follow this pattern include 頑張る, 書く, 作る, 対処する, 等.

3. ～に沿って, like the above two, all share the feature of being based on the matter at hand or fundamentals of something, but the peculiar part about this is that the meaning of “without there being a physical distance” is included.

41. 道に沿って花が植えられている。

Flowers are planted along the street.

42. 塀にそって進んでくれ。(Vulgar command)

Move forward along the wall!

43. 川に沿って歩きなさい。

Walk along the river.

44. 私の考えにそってやってほしい。

I would like for it to be done along my ideas.

Usage Note: This pattern is often used after words like 道路, 道, 川, 壁, 歩道, 考え, 意向, 等. Words that often follow this pattern include 行く, 歩く, する, やる, 進む, 等.

Without getting into the other two remaining patterns, there are still times when all three structures appear to work. However, there will always be nuance differences based on the lines outlined above.

45. 事実に {基づいて・をもとにして・にそって} 作ってある。

It was created and based on facts.

Nuances differences still exist. The first sounds purely factual. The second sounds like it was based on fact but not entirely. The third sounds like it was closely aligned with the facts. In more complex sentences, these differences can be large enough for ungrammaticality calls if violated.

46. 取材 {○ に基づいて・○ をもとにして・X にそって} 書かれている。

It is written based on collected data.

～にそって is bad because collected data could be conflicting. If this were known not to be the case, the unnaturalness would go away. Contextual environment and what kind of word(s) you're using a pattern with help you put things together within grammatical restrictions.

47. その図面 {○に基づいて・Xをもと（にして）・Xにそって}、配線工事をお願いします。

Please do the wiring work according to the blueprint.

48. この判例 {に基づいて・をもと（にして）} 裁判での闘い方を考えてみよう。

Let's try to consider the ways of fighting in the trial based on this judicial precedent.

***Note:** We have seen one sentence in which 経験に基づいて was bad and have had a note saying that the combination of that word with the pattern is common. Given the note of advice above, these statements may seem contradictory. However, a noun phrase, NP for short, can be quite complex, and what the main verb phrase in it also matters. Consider the following.

49. 高校で得た経験に基づいて頑張りたい。X → をもとにして

I will try hard based on experience I got from high school.

50. 過去の経験に基づいて判断した。○

I judged based on past experience.

The second sentence is fine because you are basing a judgment on something factual such as precedent in your decision. It's rather hopeless to say that you can truly try hard based off of experience from school when what you're referring to is over such a long period of time and much of which you may only have an arbitrary feel/memory of.

Besides getting the reading wrong for the last one, which is ～にのっとして, the latter is often attached to words concerning standards/norms. Experiences are personal, so using it with such expressions would be unnatural. On the other hand, ～に即して also has the same meaning of “being based on/following”, just not with the particular restraint as ～に則って. If the spelling of the first is changed to ～に則して, it can have a meaning of showing something is done along rules/laws.

51. 伝統に {則って・即して・基づいて} 行われている。

It is being done according to tradition.

52. 不法入国者は法律に則して強制送還される。

Illegal immigrants will be forcefully repatriated according to the law.

第170課: After II: ～てからというもの（は） & ～て以来

This lesson will primarily focus on ～てからというもの（は）, but it will also take time to compare it with ～てから ～て以来, which has not been discussed at this point.

～てからというもの（は）

～ てからというもの（は） : Right after something happens, there is a change, and that change persists from that point on. This pattern is not used for things in the recent past. This pattern is not used very often. So, it may be somewhat unnatural if the context doesn't sound really serious.

1. ギリシャに来てからというもの、国の家族のことを思わない日はありません。

Ever since I've come to Greece, there is not a day where I don't think of my family at home.

2a. 大学に入ってからというもの（は）、^{じっか}実家にある^{ぼく}僕の部屋がずっと^あ空いている。

2b. 大学に入ってから、実家にある僕の部屋がずっと空いている。 (More natural)

Ever since I've come to college, my room in my parents' house has stayed empty.

3. ドル安の問題は深刻である。今年度になつてからというもの、ドル安（の）^{けいこう}傾向は進む一方である。

The weak dollar is a serious problem. The weak dollar trend will continue onward through this fiscal year and onward.

4. このタブレット^{たんまつ}端末を使つてからというもの、^{てばな}手放せなくなった。

Ever since using this tablet, I have not been able to let go of it.

Comparison

To begin comparing ～てから, ～てからというもの, and ～て以来 (which will be discussed for the first time), consider the following examples.

5. この夏の^{けんさ}検査で、^{しんこうすいぞうがん}進行膵臓癌と^{しんだん}診断されて {から・からというもの・以来}、明日にでも死ぬかのような^{きょうふ}恐怖にと^{とら}ら
捉われている。

Ever since being diagnosed with advanced pancreatic cancer in this summer's scan, I have been entrapped by the fear of maybe dying at morning's wake.

6. 就職して 15 年、部長になって {から・からというもの・以来}、ほとんど毎晩のよう
に^{ざんぎょう}残業で遅くなり、目に見えて
^{かおいろ}顔色が悪くなっている。

Since becoming the department head after working for 15 years, he has been late almost every night it seems due to overtime, and his complexion has visibly worsened.

7. ^{たけやまみさこ}武山美砂子 15 歳のときからずっと付き合っていた^{こいびと}恋人と^{しつれん}失恋して {から・からというもの・以来}、食事も^{のど}喉を
^{やつ}通らなくなつて、^は宴れ果てて、見る^{かげ}影もなくなつてしまった。

Misako Takeyama couldn't put down food and withered down to the point of leaving a mere shadow of her former self ever since being lovelorn with her partner she had been with since the age of 15.

8. 愛犬を亡くして {から・からというもの・以来}、すっかり元気をなくし、人が変わったようになってしまった。

Since losing (his) beloved dog, (he) has lost all vitality, and (his) entire persona changed.

“A + て {からというもの・以来} + B” means that “After Situation A occurs, Situation B continues indefinitely since”. The first option ～てからというもの agrees well with native Japanese phrasing and is occasionally used in the spoken language. On the other hand, ～て以来 is more appropriate in the written language. Even so, there are still nuance differences to keep in mind.

Traditional Nuances of ～てからというもの & ～て以来

First, the nuances implied in Standard Japanese (標準語) will be discussed. It is important to understand now that what is to be described is now more often than not the case if you were to talk to speakers of the younger generation. However, knowing what has traditionally been used will help you when you see these phrases used in literature.

～ てからというもの usually has a general negative evaluation of Situation B. There is the thought in the speaker that things could be a whole lot better, and there is thus a sense of severity or seriousness involved. Contrarily, ～て以来 is the opposite and generally has Situation B be positive. Both are ungrammatical, though, if Situation B is not continuing. So, neither allows Situation B to be the instant of a change.

In reality, not even ～てからというもの is used that much in the spoken language. It has essentially become almost as 書き言葉的 as ～て以来 despite not being a Sino-Japanese phrase.

Though Situation B has its limitations, there is historically no problem in negating it within the same sentence afterward for. In order for this to work for both, a 期間 (time period) phrase such as #年 is attached after ～てから or ～て以来. So, you get ～てから#年というもの or ～て以来#年というもの. In fact, this pattern is often used without ～てから or ～て以来 for the same effect.

9. セスさんは、愛犬を亡くして {から・以来} 3年というもの、人が変わったようになっていたが、最近、少し元気を

取り戻しつつあるようだ。

Seth seemed as if his personality shifted drastically since his dear dog died three years ago, but he has recently seemed to be recovering his vitality.

10. 今年は、とりわけ干ばつが長引き、この一月というもの、火事などが大^{おおあば}暴れをして、各地に大きな被^{ひが}害を
もたらしている。

As for this year, drought has especially prolonged, and in this month, wild fires and such have raged on and continued to bring great damage everywhere.

Restrictions a Thing of the Past

It appears, though, that the restrictions on these phrases are disappearing due to disuse, and some can't really tell that they are different than ~てから. But, there should be some people who think gloom is coming if they heard the following with ~てからというもの. As said at the beginning, it is now more so emphatic with one's emotional appeal in presenting a change since as being severe or serious in now either a good or bad way.

11. 先月、競馬^{けいば}で大^{おお}穴^{あな}を当ててからというもの、何であれ、勝ちに勝ちまくっているそうだ。

Ever since winning big last month in the horse races, I hear that he's raking in the wins no matter what the game is.

12. 大学生になってからというもの、毎日が楽しい。

Ever since becoming a college student, everyday is fun.

13. タバコをやめてからというもの、体が元気になった。

Ever since quitting smoking, my body has felt great.

14. タバコをやめてからというもの、体の調子がいい。

Ever since quitting smoking, my condition has been good.

Table of Contents

第171課: Circumstance: 場合 & ～に備えて

場合 means "circumstance" and the grammar behind it and its usage are very important.

場合

場合 is often in ～場合 (は) to mean "in the case/event of...". It is a nominal phrase, so it is not limited to this grammatical construction. It is very similar to the particle ～たら in that it presents a hypothetical. As it is used to pinpoint a circumstance, it often replaces the particle in doing so. Though you see it after ～た, it is a hypothetical situation of what could happen. So, it is inappropriate if the situation that you are raising is actually of the past.

1. 火事の場合、段階を使いなさい。

In the case of fire, use staircases.

2. 英語の場合はちゃんとイエスやノーを言いますが、日本語の場合は違います。

In the case of English, you precisely say yes or no, but in the case of Japanese, it's different.

3. 何か問題があった場合、だれ ねんらく 誰 に 連絡 すればいいですか。

In case of any problems, who would be good to contact?

It is very easy to use this phrase when stating a particular situation after stating the norm. After all, you are pinpointing a hypothetical that is important.

- 4a. 日曜や祝日は手数料は要らないが、平日の場合は手数料がかかる。

- 4b. 日曜や祝日は手数料は要らない。ただし、平日の場合は手数料がかかる。

There is no need for handling fees on Sundays and holidays, but on week days there is a charge.

Grammar Note: The two paraphrases are important in showing different situations where 場合 may be used, with the second option clearly being used in showing it in a two sentence statement.

Particle Note: The difference between ～場合, ～場合は, and ～場合に is essentially the same as with ～とき. The second option, of course, is used particularly when emphatically raising something or creating a contrast with another situation. The third option is used easily when the following clause involves an action/change.

5.

A: このゴムはどう使うんですか。

B: 椅子がガタガタする場合に、ここに嵌めてください。

A: ああ、なるほど。

B: 通常の場合は、椅子の後ろのポケットに入れておいてください。

A: How do you use this rubber?

B: Fit it in here in the event that the chair rattles.

A: Ah, I see.

B: In regular cases, place it the pocket behind the chair.

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント by 市川保子.

6. 火事の場合は、エレベーターを使わないでください。

In the event of a fire, please do not use the elevators.

7. 地震が起こった場合、階段を使ってください。

In the case of an earthquake, use the stairs.

8. エレベーターに閉じ込められた場合、長期戦を かくご 覚悟 して体力を しょうもう 消耗 しないようにしてください。

In the case you are trapped in an elevator, try not to waste your energy and prepare yourself for long fight.

9. 地震が起こった場合、^{あわ}慌^{のぼ}てて階段を降りたり昇ったりするのは危険なのでその場にしゃがんで待機しましょう。

In the event of an earthquake, because it is dangerous to hastily go up and down the stairs, let's crouch in that place and be on standby.

10. ^{さいあく}最^{ばあい}悪の場合を覚悟する。

To prepare for the worst.

11. それは極端な場合だよ。

That's an extreme case.

12. 場合によりけりだ。

It depends on the case.

13. 雨天の場合には、お電話ください。

Call me in the case that it rains.

14. 緊急の場合は警察を呼びなさい。

In the case of an emergency, call the police.

～ている場合 is used to criticize someone that is not dealing with a tense situation appropriately.

15. 笑ってる場合か？

Is this really the time to be laughing?

Also, ～場合 {が・も} ある, is similar to ことがある because it shows that something happens given a certain situation but doesn't always happen.

16. たまに遅刻する場合がある。

There are times when I'm late.

～に備えて

The 一段 verb 備える has several related meanings: "to provide", "to furnish", "to have (attributes)". In ～に備えて, it is equivalent to either "in case of", "for", etc. and is similar to phrases like ～ために and ～しないように. As such, you can often see it used with 場合.

17. 大洪水に備えて 擁^{よう}壁^{へき}を造る。

To build a retaining wall to prevent a big flood.

18. いつ起こるか分からない災害に備えておきましょう。

Let's prepare for the disasters we can't see predict.

19. 事故に備えて車ではいつもシートベルトを締めていてください。

Always keep your seat belt on in a car in case of an accident.

20. 私はオリンピックに備えて練習しています。

I am training for the Olympics.

21. 台風に備えるのは重要だ。

Preparing for typhoons is important.

This lesson will discuss slightly more advanced phrases that equate to "whenever".

～度に

～ 度（毎）に means "whenever". 度 is the native word/counter for the number of times, making it common in set phrases such as 度を重ねる(to continue repeat itself). Grammatically speaking, it is after either nouns or the non-past form of a verb. What it follows is either a definite integer of place, time, action, or activity. This X is the trigger for Y, which without doubt will occur. Thus, whenever you say “whenever” with ～度に, you are saying that Y will 100% happen.

Now, the ごと is important to keep in mind. In the past, it was not uncommon to see ～ごとに after verbs. Now, it causes the sentence to become unnatural. So, as an effect, ～度毎に is also typically only found with nouns.

Examples

- いくど しつぱい く
1. 幾度も失敗を繰り返すのはつらいですね。

Repeating a failure countless times is painful, isn't it?

- なにごと たび かさ かなら じょうたつ
2. 何事も度を重ねれば必ずや上達する。

If you repeat anything all the time, you will certainly improve.

- きかい
3. 機会がある度に

Whenever you get a chance

4. おれ 俺 はやる度に失敗しちゃうんだよ。(Casual; masculine)

Whenever I do it, I end up failing (which is why I won't do it)

Grammar Notes:

1. This makes it very similar to ～につけ, which will be discussed in this lesson. However, if you interchange it for ～度に, you speak objectively and the emotional feel is lost entirely.

2. There is some similarity between ～ごとに and ～たびに. ～ごとに shows that when there is a chance, a habitual action is simply repeated. ～たびに, despite also showing same habitual action, when one encounters a *particular* opportunity, it gives a sense that it is not incidental. Thus, even if the action is special but the timing is not, you can't use ～たびに.

～都度

The most appropriate translation of 都度 is "whenever". Like 度, it must be used with の when with another nominal phrase, and it may also be accompanied by に. What is neat about 都度 is that it is often seen in the pattern その都度.

都度 is less emphatic and less likely to be in more personal situations. It is very similar "each time it happens".

Examples

5. とりひき ざんだからん きんがく
取引のつど 残高欄に残高金額が示されるようにしたものです。

Whenever it is exchanged, the balance amount is made shown in the bank balance column.

6. 彼氏に会うその都度^{つど}、彼女はとても 嬉^{うれ}しくなるようです。

It seems that she becomes very happy whenever she meets her boyfriend.

7. 夫の両親が来る時はその都度 喧嘩^{けんか}が始まる。

Whenever my husband's parents come, an argument gets started (with them).

～につけ

Following nouns or the 連体形 of verbs or adjectives, ～につけ means "each time when/both...and...". It is mainly used in the written language, but it is also used in formal speaking situations. What comes before it/what it follows is a constant that causes a change. In other words, if there is a situation X, then no matter what, along with X, Y reflexively occurs, and at the same time, a psychologically change is brought about.

In the case that Y describes a past event, X is the trigger in remembering Y, and a sense of emotion suitable to that memory is expressed. This pattern is often after verbs such as 見る, 聞く, and 思う. The pattern is then often followed by phrase that captures the emotion the speaker wishes to portray.

～につけて is naturally more suitable for the spoken language, but when used in examples like the first one and others such as 雨につけ風につけ, ～につけて is impossible. This is due to the antithetical element.

There is also ～につけても. This adds the particle も, which in this situation adds the function of analogy. So, aside from A, it is used to show various changes of B happening.

Examples

8. 喜びにつけ悲しみにつけ

Both in joy and in sorrow

9. あいつを見るにつけ、兄を思い出させる。

Each time I see him, he reminds me of my older brother.

10. 試験をもう一度失敗するにつけ、^{ゆううつ}憂鬱が^{よみがえ}蘇る。

Each time when I fail the exam once more, my depression comes back.

11. 何事につけても、喜んでお手伝いします。

Whatever you do, we're ready to gladly help you.

12. 年のせいなんだろう、暑いにつけ、寒いにつけ、よく風邪を引くようになった。

I wonder if it's because of my age; both when hot and when cold, I have become more prone to having colds.

13. この写真を見るにつけ、いつも思い出すのは、あの決して美しくはなかった青春時代のことである。(Written)

Each time I see this photo, I always remember my completely ugly youth.

第173課: The Supplementary Verb する

Essentially all material in this lesson should be review. What this lesson will try to do is showcase the various usages of the supplementary verb する, which by now you should be accustomed to seeing and using.

With Bound Particles

Bound particles are often placed after a base and followed by the supplementary verb する. For example, the particles は, も, and や may follow the 連用形 and are then followed by する to greatly emphasize the verb.

1. 彼女は褒めこそすれ、非難したことはない。

She does speak highly (of others), but she never criticizes.

2. 聞きもしないで批評すんな。

Don't criticize without listening.

3. 彼女は日本語が話せはするが、うまくはないね。

She can speak Japanese, but she's not good.

4. 責めやしないのはいつまでも最良の決定です。

Not blaming (others) is the best decision no matter what.

5. 彼は顔の前で両手を広げ、それからぱたんとあわせる。「世の中にはいっぱい納屋があって、それらがみんな僕に焼かれるのを待っているような気がするんです。海辺にぽつんと建った納屋やら、たんぼのまん中に建った納屋やら・・・・・・とにかく、いろいろな納屋です。十五分もあれば綺麗な納屋に燃えつきちゃうんです。まるでそもそもの最初からそんなもの存在もしなかったみたいだね。誰も悲しみやしません。ただ一消えちゃうんです。ぷつんってね」

He spread out his hands in front of his face, clapped them together with a bang and then said, "There are a lot of barns in this world, and I feel like waiting for them all to burn. Whether it is the barn standing up all alone on the seashore, the barn built in the middle of a field, just a wide variety of barns. Given fifteen

minutes, one can burn down completely quite nicely. It's as if from the very beginning like those barns had no existence. No one is saddened by this. They just disappear, with a *snap*".

From 納屋を焼く by 村上春樹.

Grammar Note: Notice how は may contract in the construction “連用形+はする”.

In Honorifics

する is a very important verb in humble speech. It is seen after the stems of verbs to show first person action.

6. ご案内します。

I will guide you.

7. ご奉納します。

I will offer (this).

8. お待ちします。

I will wait.

With the Particles たり and など

たり attaches to the 連用形 to primarily show back and forth action and must always be used with する. In the same fashion, など may also list actions by following the 連体形 of a verb.

9. 休日に雑誌を読むなどして過ごすのは本当につまらない。

To spend the holidays doing stuff like reading magazines is really boring.

10. 彼は泣いたり笑ったりばかりしている男だ。

He's only a guy that cries and laughs.

11. 遊んだり働いたりしているというのが若さの意味だ。

The meaning of youth is to play and work.

12. 彼女は掃除をするなどして暮らしていた。

She lived on doing things such as cleaning.

With the Volitional Form

With the auxiliary verbs ～う, ～よう, and ～まい + と it shows volition in trying to (not) do something. Of course, the first two auxiliaries are positive and the last is negative.

13. 嘘をつこうとしたが、つけなかった。

I tried to lie, but I couldn't.

14. 負けるまいとする。

To try not to lose.

15. 彼は歌おうとしたが、うまくなかった。

He tried to sing, but it wasn't good.

～ようにする

This usage is translated as "to try...". This is to try to do something for the long run, unlike above. Furthermore, the よう in this pattern is from 様: it's not the volitional ending. The volitional ending ～よう came from a sound change when the original volitional contracted from む → ん and then → う. With some verb classes, this resulted in the birth of ～よう, most certainly because of pronunciation ease.

16. できるだけ野菜を食べるようにする。

I'll try to eat vegetables as much as possible.

17. もう二度と会わないようにした。

I tried to not see him a second time.

18. 遅れないようにしてください。

Please try not be late.

Variant Note: ～ようとする is a more formal variant.

～ことにする

In this speech pattern the speaker shows what he or she decided with his or her own will. Remember that this pattern can also be seen as ～こととする, which is deemed to be more punctual and formal.

19. 私は酒を飲むのをやめることとしました。

I have decided to quit drinking liquor.

20. 東京に引っ越すことにした。

I have decided to move to Tokyo.

21. たばこをやめることにしましたよ。

I've decided to quit smoking!

～としたことが

Being equivalent to ～ともあろうものが, it shows dismay and regret for someone's abnormal misbehavior.

22. 彼女としたことが、大変なことを言ってしまった。

Of all people, she accidentally said something that bad!

～と[すると・したら・すれば]

～と[すると・したら・すれば] means "if there were". The slightly different nuances of the conditional patterns still apply.

23. 十時に出たとすればもう着いているだろう？

If we had left at 10 o' clock, wouldn't we already have arrived?

24. よしげん せかい
四次元の世界があるとすれば、どのようなものだと思いますか。

What do you think of what kind of a world it would be if we assumed that there was a 4 dimensional world?

25. 仮に戦争が起ったとしたら、何千、何百万の人々の命が失われるだろう。

Supposed that war broke out, tens, hundreds of millions of lives would be lost.

26. 温泉に行くとしたら、どこがいいのでしょうか。

If we were to go to a hot spring, where would be good?

27. 雨だとすると、中止だろう。

If there's rain, it'll probably be postponed.

28. 大地震が起こるとすると、どうすればいいのか。

If there were to be a big earthquake, what would we do?

29. 大学とすれば、^{こうぎ}抗議しないといけない。

Assuming it's the university, we must protest.

Table of Contents

第174課: ～に対して

～ に対して is something that gets abused and confused with a lot of things. One of the biggest errors with it is using it in the first place. On top of that, it is frequently confused with other phrases as ～にとって and ～について, and students often don't know when to add は to make ～に対しては. This lesson will hopefully enable you to avoid such errors.

～に対して

"Noun + ～に対して" gives a meaning of targeting something and facing/confronting it.

1. この頃の親は子供に（対して）甘すぎる。

Parents these days are being too sweet towards their kids.

2. 政府に（対して）不満を {言う・持つ} な。

Don't complain about the government.

3a. 大統領は記者団の質問に対して事実関係を否定した。○

3b. 大統領は記者団の質問に事実関係を否定した。X

The president denied all facts of the case to the press group's questions.

At the end of the sentence there is a verb or adjective that shows some sort of urging/pressure. It wouldn't change the meaning to get rid of ～に対して in the sentences above, but it's used to clearly state the object and direction of action. However, in sentences like the third one, it has to be used because it's used in a sense of "**against**".

4. 今の意見に質問がありますか。今の意見に対してご質問、ご意見があったらお願いします。

Do you have questions to the opinion now? If you have any questions or ideas concerning this opinion, please feel free.

Particle/Phrase Note: See how the speaker makes the object/target more clearer and obvious when ～に対して replaces に.

- きせいちゅう
5. 寄生虫に対して、どうしたらいいでしょうか。

What should we do against parasites?

～に対しては

This is still used in the spoken language, but it does have somewhat of a formal tone. ～に対しては strengthens the speaker's judgment/feeling by emphasizing/contrasting.

6. 報道官は記者団に対してはまだ何も答えていません。

The Press Secretary is still not answering anything to the press corps.

7. 日本人は知らない人に対しては消極的だが、親しい人に対しては積極的な態度を見せることが多い。

Japanese people often show negative attitudes towards people they don't know and positive attitudes to people that they are close with.

8. 危険を与えるようなものに対しては、人間側が配慮すべきであろう。

The human side should consider things that cause hazard.

文体

～に対しまして (very polite) and ～に対し (very stiff/formal/literary) are also possible.

- ふしょうじ わ
9. 今回の不祥事に対して、お詫び申し上げます。

I deeply apologize for this scandal.

10. ご家族の皆様に対し、心よりお悔やみ申し上げます。

To all of those in the families, please accept my heartfelt condolences.

読み物: 殺害の事件

かながわけんはやまちょう
3日夜 神奈川県 葉山町の住宅で9歳と生後9ヶ月の姉妹が刃物で刺されて殺
害された事件で 殺人未遂の疑いで逮捕された母親が、警察の調べに対し
「くだもの 果物 ナイフで刺した」と供述しているということで、警察は動機や経緯について
調べを進めることにしています。

The mother arrested on the night of the third under the charge of attempted manslaughter of her daughters aged 9 and 9 months old by stabbing them at home in Hayama Town, Kanagawa Prefecture says in her affidavit in the police investigation that she "stabbed (them) with a fruit knife", and the police are to investigate the motive and cause.

From NHK on October, 3, 2012.

1. How is に対して being used in this sentence?
2. Why would using に alone instead be wrong?

～に対して、というより

"～に対して、というより" is a very common combination. In this case, you would not see ～に、というより. This would beat the point of making something stand out.

11. このことは日本人に対して、というよりすべての国の人に知っておいてほしいことです。

Rather than to Japanese, but I want this to be known to people of all countries.

連体形

There are **two attributive forms** of this pattern that are generally interchangeable, **～に対する** and **～に対しての**.

12. 結婚 {に対しての・に対する} ^{りょうけ} 両 ^{かちかん} 家の価値観の違いに不安を感じます。

I feel anxiety over the differences of the two families values towards marriage.

13. ^{おせん} 汚染問題に対する解決策は ^{よぶん} 余分の法律を可決するというわけではありませんよ。

The resolution to our pollution problem is not to pass further legislation.

数量+～に対して: 割合

With **number/counter phrases**, **～に対して** shows a ratio.

14. ^{はくさい} 白菜 1 キロに対して塩 50 グラム入れてください。

For every kilogram of nappa, add 50 grams of salt.

15. 彼には一人の敵に対して百人もの ^{みかた} 味方がいた。

For one enemy he had a hundred friends.

～に対して VS ～について・に関して

Now, when is this phrase similar to ～について and ～に関して? They all have a commonality of targeting something to show concern. However, the kinds of relation they represent are never the same. ～に対して shows something in regards of confronting whereas ～について・～に関して state something regarding to the thing itself.

16a. その問題に対して説明してください。X

16b. その問題について説明してください。○

Please explain that problem.

17. スピード ^{いはん}違反 に対する 3万円の ^{はんそくきん}反則金 なんて辛いんだよな。

A penalty of 30,000 yen for a traffic ticket is harsh, isn't it?

18a. その意見について反対します。X

18b. その意見に対して反対します。○

I am against that opinion.

19a. 昨日、水不足に関して ^{せつすいせいげん}節水制限 が ^{どうにゅう}導入 されました。X

19b. 昨日、水不足に対して節水制限が導入されました。○

Yesterday, water restrictions were introduced concerning the water shortage.

Examples

As one can never have too many examples, the following examples will hopefully give you even more data to pull on in understanding ～に対して.

20a. 勉強しない学生に対して、^{じょめい}除名 しましょう。X

20b. 勉強しない学生を除名しましょう。

Let's drop students that don't study.

21. ぐんたい 軍 隊 は反乱軍に対して かつ 嘗 てないほどの大規模な攻撃をした。

The army made the biggest ever large-scale attack against the rebel army.

Orthography Note: 嘗て is normally just written as かつて.

22. 高田がぐうたらであるのに対して、益田は きんべん 勤 勉 だ。

In comparison to Takada being lazy, Masuda is a hard worker.

23. 2010年に円はドルに対してずっと てがた 手 堅い動きをしていた。

The yen stayed firm against the dollar in 2010.

24. 我が国は、アジア しょこく 諸 国 の人々に（対して）多大の せんがい くんづ 損 害 と 苦 痛 を与えました。

Our country brought great damage and pain to all of the peoples of Asia.

Based off of the 村山談話.

25. むしこな一ずは何の虫に対して こうか 効 果 がありますか。

What bugs does “big corners” have an effect on?

Word Note: むしこな一ず is a kind of bug killer/repellent.

26. 私たちに（対して） えんりょ 遠 慮 しないでください。

Please speak outright to us.

27. この品は値段に対して品質が悪い。

As for these goods, the quality is bad for the price.

28. 日本では へいきん 平 均 して職員一人に対して百万円の けいひ 経 費 がかかります。

In Japan, on average, for a single worker, the outlay costs 1 million yen.

29. 和平に対する北朝鮮の^{ぎわく}疑 惑 は日本の防衛を^{おびや}脅 かしています。

Suspicious of North Korea for peace threatens Japanese security.

30. キックに対してもパンチに対しても使うのですか？

Do you even use it in regards to a kick or even a punch?

31. 取扱説明書は、コンピュータに対する静電気の^{きけんせい}危 険 性 を、間接的に警告します。

Guidebooks indirectly warn of the danger to computers by static electricity.

32. 友だちの経済学に対する関心はもっぱら学問上のもののようですが。

It seems that my friends' interest in economics is largely academic.

Particle Note: が shows that the sentence is cut off, perhaps leading into something else.

33. トヨタのものづくりに対する^{じょうねつ}情 熱 と、日本のものづくりに対するこだわりは
^{そうぎょう}創 業 以来、決して変わらない。

The passion towards Toyota manufacturing and dwelling on Japanese manufacturing, since our founding, will never change.

By 豊田章男 in April 2013.

読み物: 中国 対 インド

中国が共産党の^{どくさい}一党 独 裁 の国であり、国の指導者を国民一般が投票で決めると
いうことがないのに対して、インドは世界最大の民主主義国家であって、主要な指導者は
すべて国民の^{とうひょう}投 票 によって決まっている。

1. What does this mean?
2. What is the main point the author is trying to make?
3. How is に対して being used?

Table of Contents

第175課: Standpoint: として (は) VS にとって (は)

This lesson is about relatively similar speech modals that concern describing standpoint or point of view. Although their English translations cause great confusion to learners, don't let this beat you.

～として (は)

1. The first uses of ～として that will study are after nominal phrases. This is something really important to keep in mind because other usages of this will go after other things. So, don't get things confused in your mind.

The first thing that として is most known for is when it shows "qualification/title". In other words, it functions like the as in "to carry out one's duty **as** an officer". It can also be used to show what you have something as. This is somewhat causative in nature, but in this sense it is closer to utility. So, just as you can say, "to use a sharp stick **as** a knife", you can say 鋭い枝をナイフとして使う. Notice, though, that "as" in English can be used in many more situations than what has just been defined for として.

"(A は)B としては" is typically just a contrastive usage of として, but it can have nuances more similar to "among" in the sense of ～の場合には. It could also emphasize a side of judgment. For instance, if you were to say 私としては, you are emphasizing your side of opinion.

Particle Note: When used to modify another noun phrase, which is possible as well in English, you must use ～としての.

1. ジョン ^{まんじろう} 万次郎 は、日本人として始めて、アメリカで教育を受けた。

Jon Manjiro was the first person as a Japanese to receive an education in America.

2. 石炭を燃料として使う。

To use coal as fuel.

3. 私一己としては

For my own part/personally

4. 私としては、彼の意見に反対です。

As for me, I don't agree with his opinion.

5. 最高傑作として作る。X → 最高傑作を作る。

To create as a masterpiece.

6. 最高傑作としての条件 ○

Conditions as a best work masterpiece

7. くそあいつは教師としても無能だぞ。(Vulgar)

That guy is also incompetent as a teacher.

Usage Note: This usage is deemed to be case.

2. Shows complete negation with a word showing unit.

8. 僕は、一日として彼女のことを思わない日はない。

There's not even a single day that I don't think about her.

9. 一人として賛成しません。

Not one person can agree.

Usage Note: This usage is deemed to be adverbial.

3. After the 終止形 it means "in assuming that" or "with the reason of".

10. 話は後ですとして、まず食事にしましょう。

Let's leave talking for later and eat first.

Usage Note: This usage is deemed to be conjunctive.

Grammar Note: として is a grammaticalized object that should be studied separately from とする. Though its usages derive from it, it has become its own grammar point in its own right. Thus, it should be differentiated from a として from とする used at the end of a dependent clause, in which て would still have a conjunctive function. The として is also not the same as the として found in the 連用形 of タル形容動詞.

11. 堂堂としている。

It's magnificent. (Grand; impressive)

12. われわれはその実験の結果を基礎として、学会雑誌に発表することになりました。

We had the results of that experiment as our basis and published (the results) in a scientific journal.

In Relation to ～とする

Up to now, there have been several mentions of ～とする. How exactly does this fit with this section? Furthermore, how are you supposed to know what you're looking at? "A を B とする" is "to make/have A be B" a certain way where と shows the content/substance of a result. ～とする can mean "to presume; to think that; etc.

13. その結果を基礎としている。

To be having the results as the basis.

14. 業としている。

To be pursuing a vocation.

15. 石炭を燃料とする。

To have coal be (used as) fuel.

16. 今は配慮を必要としている。

We need forethought now.

17. 一時として目が離せないよ。

My eyes can leave a single moment.

18. 長官として発言する。

To speak as a general.

19. 初めて会う人やよく知らない人には敬語を使うのが礼儀だとされていますよ。

It is deemed proper etiquette to use Keigo towards people such as those you first meet or don't know well.

20. 人を殺すのが犯罪（だ）とされていない者はいるのか。

Is there a person that doesn't deem killing a person a crime?

～としても

～としても is after nominal phrases to mean "even the position of..." or "even if...were to...".

21. 私としても、この事柄は重要ではないとよく分かります。

As for me, too, I understand well that this matter is not important.

22. 新車を買うとしても、今度もやっぱ（り）黒いのにしよう。

Even if we were to buy a new vehicle, let's surely get the black one this time.

23. 行けるとしても、少し遅れてしまうかも。

Even if we were able to go, we would end up being a little late.

24. 生まれ変わったとしても、またそんなことをするのか。

Even if I were born again, would such a thing happen again?

～にとって

～にとって, equivalent to " (の立場・たちば) からみて", means "to/for" and shows someone's perspective on something. ～にとって may be with は to make a **slightly contrasting** image or with の attributively. It may be ～にとりまして in polite speech and ～にとっちゃ (あ) in slang.

25. 彼にとっちゃその方がええんだよ。(碎けた)

For him, that way's better.

26. 初心者にとってはあのクラスは難しい。

That class is difficult to beginners.

27. 人間にとっての^{ことがら}事柄

A circumstance to humans

28. 韓国語を知っている人にとって、日本語は難しくないはずです。

For people who know Korean, Japanese isn't supposed to be difficult.

29. ^{かくばくだん}核爆弾は世界平和にとっての重大な^{きょうい}脅威です。

Nuclear weapons are great threats to world peace.

～として VS ～にとって

Many students often overextend the usages of these two speech modals. Common mistakes include confusing these patterns with topicalization and "although phrases". As a quick exercise, consider the following sentences and what you should do to fix them.

30a. 彼女は学生として、学校へ行かず、遊んでばかりいるよ。X

30b. 外国人として大変なのは食べ物だと思います。X

30c. 僕にとってその色はあんまり好きじゃない。X

Hopefully you found something wrong with these sentences. The first order of business is to where these speech modals literally come from. ～として comes from the case particle と + the verb する; ～にとって comes from the case particle に + the verb 取る. Once put together, they mark their own unique case function. Thus, some people often call them "compound case particles".

"Noun + ～として" and "Noun + ～にとって" both show position/point of view, but in the case of the former, it is often used to state an action that one does/did as qualification and or form a position/standpoint. This may sound confusing, but consider the following.

31. クラスの代表として委員会に出席しました。(Qualification/position)

I attended the committee meeting as the class representative.

32. あなたの医者として、食事の量を減らすよう忠告します。

As your doctor, I advise you to decrease the amount you eat.

On the other hand, ～にとって shows an evaluation or value judgment from the/a standpoint (of someone).

33. 私にとりまして、出張は大変思い出深かったです。

For me, the business trip was very profoundly memorable.

Usage Note: ～にとりまして is normally used when talking to someone much older than you. So, the above sentence would most likely be 私にとって、出張は大変思い出深かったです.

34. これは私にとって忘れられない思い出です。

This is a memory to me that I can't forget.

35. これはあたしにとってとっても大切なものなんだわ。(Feminine; Emphatic)

This is something very important to me.

With は

は is added to them when raising a circumstance as the topic, emphasis, or show a contrast.

36. 私としては、その考えには賛成いたしかねます。

As for me, I can't agree to that idea.

37. あんたにとっちゃ朝飯前かもしれんが、俺にとっちゃ大変な仕事なんだよ。(砕けた)

To you it may be trivial, but to me it's a big job.

Contrast

38. 人 {として・にとって}大切なことは何か。

With ～として the sentence suggests something that what's being important should be done by people whereas ～にとって simply states what's so, or in this case simply stating a question.

39.

A さん: A 銀行が B 銀行と ^{がっぺい}合併するそうですよ。

B さん: へえ。でも、A 銀行 {としては・にとっては}、そう悪いことではないんじゃないな

いですか。

A さん: でも、B 銀行としては黙って見ているわけにはいかないんじゃないですか。

40.

A さん: もんぶしょう 文 部 省 としてはどう考えていますか。

B さん: 文部省としましては、今回の しょち 処 置 はやむを得ないものと考えております。(謙譲語)

Exercise: Translate the last two passages!

These patterns also differ greatly in what kinds of sentences they're used in.

	～として
Circum-stance	There is a sentence that shows that something happens, and the sentence after shows an opinion or stance concerning it.
Opinion	Used to present one's opinion and then show an opposite position.

41. 市から感謝状と記念品をいただきました。これは我が家の家宝として大切にしたいです。

I received a letter of thanks and mementos from the city. I would like to treat this as a family treasure in our home.

42. 義務教育の段階で外国語を教えた方がいい。外国語が話せるのは社会人として絶対に必要な教育である。

Foreign language should be taught at the level of mandatory education. Being able to speak a foreign language is absolutely necessary education for a person of society.

	~にとって
~にとって~の/ことは~だ/ である	A very emphatic derivative of the basic form.
In topic sentence	After introducing the topic, a concrete explanation follows.

43. 今僕にとって唯一の楽しみになっているのは日本語の勉強です。

What has now become my sole enjoyment is my Japanese studies.

44. 昔の人々の生活にとって、お寺は欠かせないものだった。

The temple was a necessary thing to the lives of the ancient.

Words Used with Them

1. X として Y

Words that follow Y:

Verbs that describe action: 言う、許す、行動する.

Verbs/adjectives that describe condition: 恥ずかしい、有名だ、知られている.

45. 彼は弁護士としては無能です。

He is no good as a lawyer.

2. X にとって Y

Words that follow Y:

Potential expressions: 可能だ、忘れられない.

Adjectives of evaluation: 大切だ、難しい、大変だ.

Adjective + Noun

46. 世界の経済にとって、^{きんゆう}金^し融^{この}を引き締めるのは好ましくない事態だ。

For the world economy, tightening the money market is not a desirable situation.

Table of Contents

第176課: Through: を通じて & を通して

～ を通して and ～ を通じて without context are completely interchangeable. So, getting the small details straight will probably be the hardest thing about this lesson.

漢字 Note: Note that there is also ^{かよ}通う and ^{とお}通る. The first is used in the sense of "commute" or flowing/understanding such as in phrases like 学校に通う and 心が通う. 通る shows transit. Ex. 道を通る.

～ を通して VS ～ を通じて

を 通しで and ～ 通（とお）じて are incorrect. Pronunciation is perhaps the most common mistakes about these. That should be good news. Both show a meaning equivalent to ～ を経て/を仲介して to show a means "of through (the intermediary of)". They can also be used to mean "through" in a temporal sense.

1. 仕事を {通じて・通して} 人脈が広がっていった。

My connections spread through my job.

2. 1 年を {通じて・通して} スキーができる。

You can ski (here) throughout the year.

3. 日本語の勉強を {通じて・通して} 日本人の考え方が少し分かってきました。

Through my Japanese studies, I have come to understand the Japanese way of thinking a little.

通じる is a verb used to show the result gained by a certain action; 通す is thought to hold a volitional side. Although even in these examples either is OK, when you want to show volitional, the latter is the best choice.

In a normal situation where this is not an exceptional circumstance, it is best not to use ～ を通じて. The longer the sentence, the easier it gets to become

to decide whether it fits this criterion or not. Certain speech modals also aid in the decision.

4. 私はインターネット {○ を通して・X を通じて} 役に立つニュースを得ました。

I got useful news through the Internet.

5. 一緒に働いた経験 {○ を通して・X を通じて}、ふたりは生涯かわらぬ友愛をもちつづけた。

Through the experience of working together, they continued to hold a friendship for life.

6. 仲人を通して縁談をすすめたほうがいいでしょう。

Isn't it best to forward an engagement through a middleman?

7. ハッカーたちは、ウイルスに感染されたファイルを送りこめるインターネット {○ を通じて、X を通して}、ユーザのシステムを破壊していく。

Hackers through the internet that can send files infected with viruses go on to destroy the user's system.

Even when either is fine, there will always be slight nuance differences.

8. 社長との連絡は、すべて秘書を {通して・通じて} 行われた。

All contact with the company president was carried out through the secretary.

The first option makes the situation far from out of the ordinary, but the second option makes it sound secretive.

There are two broad situations that can describe most sentences with these modals. There could be an intermediary between an X and Y, or through the means of A, B is done. Consider the following information for further distinguishing.

A を通して B: Through the intermediation/means of A, B is done simply and clearly.

Aを通じてB: A, which is an intermediate or means, is something that can't be public, must be a secret, or is something unjust.

As mentioned earlier, there is a peculiar nature about ～を通じて, and special circumstances are often mysterious, clandestine, and may involve some sort of secret means. In this sense, it contrasts the openness and simplicity of action implied by statements with ～を通して.

Now, what about a sentence like the following?

9. この種の松林は、日本全国を {通して・通じて} 見ることができる。

You can see this kind of pine forest throughout all of Japan.

If you get a native speaker that doesn't like one version or another, you probably need to find a different opinion. This sentence is different because there is no intermediation or means involved. In this sense they are similar to "throughout". The decision as to which one should be used goes down to individual speaker variation pending on whether that person likes more native words over 漢語. With this, ～を通じて can be used in a stiffer and more literary fashion.

Attribute Forms

Don't you just love attribute forms? As you may have guessed, ～を通した, ～通しての, ～通じた, and ～を通じての are all possible, but they are not completely interchangeable.

A を {通した・通じた} B can't be used in situations where A is a direct information source. This is because "A を通す" and "A {を・が} 通じる" originally meant that through the intermediation of A, two spaces are connected (examples of this will be shown later in this lesson).

Accordingly, A both can be used as the go-between X and Y, but when A becomes the information source, "A を通じての B" or "A を通しての B" must be used.

10. 秘書を {通した・通じた・通しての・通じての} 連絡が社長に届いた。

A contact through the secretary reached the company president

11. 今回、入手した情報は、その筋の人を {○ 通しての・○ 通じての・X 通した・X 通じた} ものです。.

The information I received this time is info from a person of that source.

When showing consistency temporally or geographically, ~を通しての and ~を通じての are your only options.

12. 日本全国を {通じての・通しての} この種の松林は、日本の森林を特徴づけるもののひとつである。

This kind of pine forest throughout Japan is one characteristic of the forests of Japan.

13. 山を {○ 通しての・△ 通じての} トンネル

A tunnel through a mountain

It does become more natural to rephrase them out, especially since there's not much of a sense of familiarity in sentences like the second to last. Also, when there is not a sense of a go-between, ~を通じた・を通した mustn't be used.

14. 彼らは一緒に働いた経験を通しての友愛を持ち続けた。

They continued to hold friendship through the experience of working together.

Other Meanings

Remember that 通す means "pass through" and can be used in several contexts. This remains the case in ～を通して. 通じる can mean "to lead through/get through/get across". Both are used in many idioms as well.

15. 道を開けて、車を通す。

To open up the road and let cars pass through.

16. 前に化け物が立ちはだかって、僕を通そうとしなかった。

A monster blocked my path in front of me, and it didn't attempt to let me pass by.

17. 空港まで政府が高速道路と新幹線を開通させた。

The government created passage through a highway and bullet train line up to the airport.

Word Note: 開通する is more appropriate here, but 新幹線を通す is an appropriate phrase, but it is more general in nature and doesn't fit well with 政府.

18. 肉に串を通す。

To put meat through a skewer.

19. 目を通す。

To scan.

20. やりたいことを通す。

To do what one wants.

21. 戻ってきってから、目を通すから。

I'll look over it when I come back.

22. 針に糸を通す。

To thread yarn in a needle.

23. 袖に手が通せるか。

Can you pass your hands through your sleeves?

24. 刺身を氷水に通さなきゃいけない。

You have to pass sashimi through ice water.

25. 彼らに私の中国語は通じませんでした。

I couldn't make myself understood to them in Chinese.

26. 電話が通じなくなりました。

The phone went dead.

27a. バスがオースティンとサン・アントニオの間に通じている。

27b. バスがオースティンとサン・アントニオの間を通している。(もっと自然)

The bus runs between Austin and San Antonio.

28. 肉を熱湯に通すと、殺菌できる。

If you put meat through hot water, you'll sterilize it.

29. 黒いものは熱を通しやすい。

It is easy for black objects to transmit heat.

30. これは水を通さない。

This will not let water pass through.

31. 通してくださいませんか。

Could you let me through?

32. {火・熱} を通す。

To heat (food).

33. 我を通す。

To have one's way.

34a. 風を通さないように窓を閉めてください。

34b. 風が通らないように窓を閉めてください。(もっと自然)

In order to not ventilate air, please shut your windows.

35. 肉の中まで火を通す。

To pass the meat up to the center in the fire.

36. ステーキはよく火を通すべきだ。

You should cook steak well.

37. 堅を通して僕は彼女と知り合った。

I got acquainted with her through Ken.

38. 政界で成功したければ、自分の建て前を明確に通さなければなりません。

If you want to succeed in politics, you have to correctly put in one's official stance.

39. 理屈を通す。

To correctly arrange the logic (in something).

40. 自己の信念を通すとは真に勇気があるという意味だ。

Persisting in one's belief is the true definition of courage.

41. 独身で通すのはださいな。

Remaining single sucks.

42a. インターネットを通じてビデオゲームを注文する。(書き言葉)

42b. インターネットでビデオゲームを注文する。(話し言葉)

To order video games via the Internet.

43. 全歴史を通じて、東北関東大震災は第5番目のもっとも巨大な地震です。

Throughout all of history, the Tohoku-Kanto Earthquake Disaster is the 5th largest earthquake.

44. 一年を {通して・通じて}

Throughout the year

45. 週末を通じて仕上げられるのか。(ちょっと硬い)

Can you do it over the weekend?

46a. ^{めいし}名 刺 を差し出して面会を求める。

46b. ^し刺を通じて、面会を求める。(Very Rare)

47b. 名刺を通じて、面会を求める。(Rare)

To present one's card and seek a meeting.

48. ^{きみやく}気 脈 を通じる。

To have secret connections with something/one.

49a. ^{でんりゅう}電 流 を通じる。

49b. 電流が通じる。(More natural)

To connect an electric current.

50. あいつは ^{てき}敵 に通じてる。

He's colluding with the enemy!

51. そんなことでは社会では通じません。

In such manner is not accepted in society.

52. ^{じじょう}事 情 に通じている。

I'm well-informed of the circumstances.

53. 僕の中国語は通じなかった。

My Chinese wouldn't get across.

54. 電話が通じなくなった。

My phone went dead.

55. この道は ちょうじょう 頂 上 に通じている。

This road leads to the summit.

56. ていでん 停 電 で何も通じない。

Nothing will go through due to the blackout.

57. 参議院 {において・で} 法案を通す。

To pass a bill through the House of Councilors.

58. 立法者たちは米議会で法律を無理矢理通しすぎる。

Lawmakers pass too many laws forcibly through the US Congress.

59a. 補聴器を通して話が聴けるようになった。（改まった）

59b. 補聴器で話が聴けるようになった。（自然）

I have become able to listen to conversations with a hearing aid.

60. フィルターを通して不純物を除去すればよい。

It is good for you to get rid of impurities through a filter.

61. 昼夜 {を通して・を問わず} 工事を続けた。

(The workers) continued to work on the construction around the clock.

62. 全幕を通して役者を見る。

To see through the entire curtain and watch the actors.

63. 一生独身を通す。

To live one's whole life single.

64a. 傷にオキシドールを塗れば、消毒できるようになります。（もっと自然）

64b. 傷をオキシドールに通して、消毒できるようになります。

If you will pass your wound through hydrogen peroxide, you'll be able to disinfect it.

65a. レインコートの中まで雨が沁みてきた。（もっと自然）

65b. レインコートを通して雨が沁みてきた。

Rain has started to soak in through my raincoat.

66a. 一年中和服で過ごす人は少ない。（自然）

66b. 一年中和服で通す人は少ない。（ちょっと不自然）

There are seldom people that wear traditional Japanese clothing throughout the year.

67. 気持ちが通じる。

To have one's feelings get across.

68a. 世故に ^{せこ つう}通じている。

68b. 世故にたけている。

I know fully about worldly affairs.

69. ^{ひとづま}人妻と通じる。

To commit adultery.

70. ^{だいべん}大便秘が通じる。

To have a bowel movement.

71. ^{しぜん}自然であることは幸せに通じている。

Being natural is tied to happiness.

72. 『^{おく}憶』は『^{おく}臆』に通じる。

To not distinguish between 憶 and 臆.

73a. 服装を通して人の風俗を考える。

73b. 服装から人に品位を考える。（もっと自然）

To think about the manners of people through their dress.

74a. 高校生の女子は夜通し語り合った。

74b. 高校生の女子は夜を通して語り合った。（Wordier）

The high school girls talked to each other all through the night.

～によって VS ～に通して・に通じて

Although mentioned in the lesson about ～によって, there is some interchangeability between ～によって, ～を通じて, and ～を通して with this usage. However, the first places emphasis on the connection between the method and effect/result. The latter two place emphasis on the process.

75. インターネット {～によって・～を通じて・～を通して}、アルバムを販売する。

To sell albums by/via/through the internet.

76. 選挙 {○ によって・X を通じて・X を通して}委員長になる。

To become the committee chairman by election.

第177課: ～にかけて VS にわたって

A common error made by students is not understanding the difference between ～から～まで and ～から～にかけて. Then, if they learn about ～にわたって, this quickly becomes confused with ～にかけて. The nouns that students chose before these expressions are also often very problematic. So, this lesson will delve into these issues so that you don't end up making the same mistakes!

～から～まで VS ～から～にかけて

First, let's discuss the basic information about ～から～にかけて. This is a less concrete variant of ～から～まで. Both から and まで concretely define beginning and end points, so with the replacement of まで with ～にかけて, you make this less poignant. The main issues, then, will come from not thinking closely enough as to what's practical.

1a. 秋田から大阪まで地震がありました。X

1b. 秋田から大阪にかけて地震がありました。○

There was an earthquake from Akita to Osaka.

2. この道路は夕方 5 時半から 9 時にかけて必ず^{じゅうたい}渋滞する。

This road is always congested from 5:30 to 9 in the evening.

3. 青森県から岩手県にかけて震度 5 の地震が起こりました。

A Shindo scale 5 earthquake occurred from Aomori to Iwate Prefecture.

4a. 午前 8 時から午後 7 時にかけて宿題をしました。X

4b. 午前 8 時から午後 7 時まで宿題をしました。○

I did my homework from 8 A.M to 7 P.M.

5a. オースティンでは、北側から南側にかけて車で一時間でかかる。X

5b. オースティンでは、北側から南側に行くのに車で一時間かかる。○

In Austin, it takes an hour by car to get from the north side to the south side.

6. テキサスからフロリダにかけて土砂降りに降った。

It down-poured from Texas to Florida.

7. 週末にかけて仕事をする。

To work over the weekend.

The Meanings of わたる

Before getting to any particular usage of わたる, it's important to know all what it could possibly mean. This gives insight as to what particles and kinds of words that it is to be used with. This, of course, is the primary source of confusion and error by students, so it's very important to pay attention to these things.

#	語義	適当な助詞	書き方
1.	To cross over	を	渡る・渉る
2.	To cross over a route/bridge	を	渡る
3.	One goes to/comes from a far place	に/から	渡る
4.	To pass (by) through things such as the air	を	渡る
5.	To migrate through the sky	を	渡る
6.	To wander about	を	渡る
7.	To live through	を	渡る・亘る・亙る
8.	手に渡る = To be handed down	に	渡る
9.	To cover/range/span	に	渡る・亘る・亙る
10.	To continue without being interrupted	に	渡る・亘る・亙る

Orthography Note: This verb regardless of meaning is almost always written as 渡る. Most Japanese people might not even recognize the alternative spellings. So, keep that in mind.

These meanings for the most are interrelated with each other. So, it shouldn't feel as if you're learning over ten completely different usages. Rather,

it's just defining with more specificity the kinds of environments that you can find the word in.

Examples

8. 私事に { 関^{かか} わる ・ 亙^{わた} る } 質問をするのは失礼ですね。

Asking personal questions is rude, isn't it?

9. 橋を渡る。

To cross a bridge.

10. 通りを向こう側へ渡る。

To get across the street.

11. 彼は中国へ渡りました。

He went over to China.

12. その土地は彼女の息子の手に渡った。

The land was passed down to her son.

13. 世の中をうまく渡っていく。

To get along living well in the world.

14. そよ^{そよ}かぜ^{かぜ} が こずえ^{こずえ} 梢^梢 を渡った。

The breeze passed through the treetops.

15. かり^{かり} 雁^雁 が空中を渡る。

Wild geese migrate through the skies.

～にわたって

This grammar point is the て形 of usage #9 from the chart above, and as implied, this pattern follows a noun that expressions some quantity in regards to time, parameter, space, etc. The noun that precedes にわたって is quite limited, and the verb phrase that follows deals with continuation.

16a. ゴールデンウィークにわたって関東全体を観光した。X

16b. ゴールデンウィークのあいだ、関東全体を観光した。○

During Golden week, I went sightseeing through all of Kanto.

17a. ^{ろうにゃくだんじょ}老若男女にわたって^{よろんちょうさ}世論調査が行われました。X

17b. 老若男女すべてに（対して）世論調査が行われました。○

A public opinion survey was done to men and women of all ages.

18. ^{ごじゅうかた}五十肩 かもしれませんけど、肩から腕にかけて、痛くて、重くて……。

It may be a stiff shoulder, but it's heavy and painful from my shoulder to my arm.

19. 倉田博士は 35 年にわたって研究を続け、新療法を開発した。

Professor Kurata continued to research over 35 years and developed a new treatment.

20. その火事は広範囲に渡って損害を与えた。

The fire gave damage over a vast range.

21. 営業案内が全員に渡った。

A pamphlet of business information was passed out to everyone.

Sentence and Word Differences: ～にかけて VS ～にわたって

As errors arise from incorrect matching of pattern and word choice, we will now example the kind of sentences and words that accompany ～にかけて and ～にわたって.

Condition: ～から～にかけて。(だから・それで～)

22. 今晚から明朝にかけて台風が上陸します。海岸寄りの皆さんは高潮に警戒してください。

The typhoon will reach landfall from this evening to tomorrow morning. Everyone along the coast please take caution with high tide.

This could be reworded in a sentence that more explicitly shows reasoning. In this manner, it is possible to see ～から～にかけては.

23. 今晚から明朝にかけて台風が上陸するので、海岸寄りの皆さんは高潮に警戒してください。

The typhoon will reach landfall from this evening to tomorrow morning, so everyone along the coast please take caution with high tide.

24. 豪雪が予測されるので、北海道から福島県にかけては注意が必要です。

Since heavy snow is expected, warning is needed from Hokkaido to Fukushima Prefectures.

Pattern Note: The pattern ～にかけては is quite different from above. Rather than showing a temporal or spatial range, it is followed by expressions of high evaluation regarding ability, strength, etc. In this sense, it can be translated as “regarding”.

25. 彼は法律にかけては欠けている。

He lacks regarding to the (knowledge of the) law.

26. ラーメン作りにかけては王さんの右に出る人はいない。

In regards to ramen making, there is no one superior to Mr. Wang.

Condition: Clause concerning the course of a condition + ～にわたって + Effect

The effect doesn't necessarily have to be bad. However, most usages of ～にわたって fit pretty well within this framework.

27. 15 年にわたって遺跡の調査が行われた。その結果、このあたりは奈良時代の住居の跡だということがわかってきた。

An excavation inquiry has gone on for a span of 15 years. As a result, we have come to understand that this area is the remains of Nara Period dwellings.

Word Notes:

1. Words that **～にかけて** easily follows: Words of time/place such as ～日, ～時, ～県.
2. Words that easily **follow ～にかけて**: Verbs that describe something happening: 降る, 起こる, ある, 発生する, 等.
3. Words that **～にわたって** easily follows: Words of some parameter such as 長年, 全般, ～年, 将来, 範囲, 等.
4. Words that easily **follow ～にわたって**: Verbs of continuation: 続ける, 記録する, 継続する, 行 (な) う, 等.

第178課: ~によって

This lesson will be about the pesky little speech modal ~によって. Unfortunately for you, it has several usages. It is often something, sadly, that is misused and confused with other items. So, please be careful as you read through this lesson.

~によって・により

~ によって comes from the verb よる. In 漢字 よる can be written in 因る and 由る. These spellings show reason or cause. Other spellings such as 依る and 拠る represent means, proof, or suitable change. The spellings are of course, reflective of formal written language. The usages, though, will be the primary points of contingency in this section.

1. 原因・理由: A usage of the written language. It is indifferent, so it shouldn't ever be used with things that are personal. When trying to emphasize a cause/reason or purposely sound more technical, it becomes easier to use this in the spoken language.

1. 踏切での大きな衝突事故 {によって・のために}、運行に 20 時間の遅れが出た。

Due to a large collision accident at the railroad crossing, a 20 hour delay came out in operations.

2. このビルは ^{おおじしん}大地震 {によって・で} ^{はかい}ばらばらに破壊された。

This building was destroyed to pieces by the big earthquake.

3. 過失による人身事故

Traffic accident caused by a blunder

4. 大地震 {による・のための} 家屋倒壊は、すでに一万戸を超えているといわれる。

They're saying that the house collapses due to the big earthquake have already passed 10,000 homes.

5. 福島原発事故による放射能環境汚染

Radioactivity pollution in the environment caused by the Fukushima Nuclear Accident

6. 牛インフルエンザによる死亡者が続出しています。(This is fiction; there is no concern for alarm)

Deaths are coming one after another due to cow flu.

7. ストレスによって自律神経が乱れて、大腸の動きや分泌機能が過敏になることが原因で下痢をしたり便秘をしたりします。

With autonomic nerves getting upset due to stress and the the secretion and movements of the large intestine becoming over-sensitive, you have diarrhea and constipation.

Sentence Note: Although such a sentence may sound too descriptive, the point is that によって is used a lot in such contexts.

Grammar Note: 〜による is the attribute form for this usage.

2. 手段: It is important that this usage exists because for sentences where there is a passive subject, you can't use で. When, however, something is clearly a means or tool, で is OK. Both 〜による and 〜によつての are appropriate attribute forms for this usage.

8. インターネットにより世界のニュースを知る。(Very formal)

To know the world news through the Internet.

9. インターネット {によって・で}、人間は居ながらにして、世界を概観できる。

Through/with the internet, people can stay seated while being able to get a general view of the world.

10. 投票 {によって・で} 決めよう。

Let's decide by vote.

11. ^{たいてい}大 ^{ふだん}抵 ^{どりよく}の成功は不 ^え断の努 ^え力 によって得られる。

Most success is gained through constant efforts.

～によって VS ～を通じて・通して

There is some interchangeability between ～によって, ～を通じて, and ～を通して with this usage. However, the first places emphasis on the connection between the method and effect/result. The latter two place emphasis on the process.

12. インターネット {によって・を通じて・を通して}、アルバムを販売する。

To sell albums by/via/through the internet.

13. 選挙 {○ によって・X を通じて・X を通して]委員長になる。

To become the committee chairman by election.

3. 受身の動作主: ～によって can be used with the passive form of a verb to show what an action was done under. If a sentence with a receiver is passivized, the subject of the passive sentence can't be marked by に. This is one reason why ～によって is needed. ～による is the only acceptable attribute form for this usage.

14. 田中さん {○ によって・X に} 岡田さんに手紙が書かれた。

A letter was written to Mr. Okada by Mr. Tanaka.

15. その仕事は加^{かとう}藤さんによってなされました。

The work was done by Mr. Kato.

16. ライトアップ {によって・で} 夢幻的な光景が生み出された。

A dreamy scenery was created by/with a light-up.

17. 松本清張による小説

A novel by Matsumoto Seichou.

4. 根拠・拠り所: Following a rule/law/example/precedent/previous example/etc., it is used a lot to clearly show proof/basis. In this usage, ～による is the only acceptable attribute form. This should only be used when something clear is understood. It should not be used for mere hearsay. The pattern would need to be rephrased to ～によると.

18. 証言による真実

Truth according to testimony

19. 前例 {による・に基づく} 判決が下されることになる。

A judgment is to be made based on precedent.

5. 場合・相応変化: This usage is perhaps the most common in the spoken language, and both ～による and ～によつての are correct attribute forms, although the latter is more common when spoken.

20. 天^{てんこう}候 によつては中止もありえるでしょう。

Depending on the weather conditions, suspension seems possible.

21. 時と場合に {よつての・よる} 対処

Coping depending on the time and circumstance

22. お金によって、人は変わるものです。

People change depending on money.

23. この仕事は販売数によって給料が変わります。

As for this job, the salary changes depending on the number of sales.

24. 板前長の腕によって、寿司の味の良し悪しが左右されます。

The good and bad of the flavor of sushi is dependent on the skill of the chef.

25. 含まれる材料によって、いろいろな味のラーメンがあります。

There are many flavors of ramen depending on the ingredients put in it.

26. 人によって考えが違います。

Opinions vary from person to person.

27. 挨拶言葉はその日の天気によっていろいろ言えよ。 (Somewhat formal)

It's best to say that there are various greetings based on the weather of the day.

28. 曜日によって授業が変わります。

Classes change depending on the day of the week.

29. 人によって好きなものと嫌いなものは異なります。

Depending on the person, likes and dislikes are different.

30. 「でも、すごいよ。二階の人が歩くと、天井がみしみしって鳴るの。 ^{まどわく}窓 ^{くわ}枠 も木だし、風向きによってはかたかた鳴って、すきま風が入ってくるみたい。ドアなんか、
^{かぎ}鍵 なんかなくても体当たりすれば開きそうよ」

"But, it's dreadful! When the people on the second floor walk, the ceiling creaks. The window frame is wood, and depending on the wind, it clatters, and it's like a draft is coming in. The door, it seems like it'll open if you charge it even if there isn't a lock".

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

かとう
その仕事は加藤さんによってなされました。

The work was done by Mr. Kato.

～によらず

～ず is an old negative auxiliary, and when it is paired with ～による, the resulting phrase gives a meaning of "in any situation everything/despite/regardless".

31. 何事によらず注意が肝心だ。

No matter what, attention is crucial.

32. 誰によらず人のふしまつしりぬぐの尻拭いなどしたくはないよ。

No matter who it is, I don't want to reap the harvests off of other people's misconduct.

～によると・によったら・によれば

Also seen as ～によりますと in polite speech, the most common usage of this is to mean "according to".

33. 新聞によると台風が接近中だった。

According to the newspaper, the typhoon was approaching.

34. (天気) 予報によりますと、明日は晴れるそうです。

According to the weather report, tomorrow will clear up.

35. ニュースによると、朝は晴れだそうだ。

According to the news, the morning will be clear.

36. でんとう
電灯の発明はエジソンによるとされている。

The invention of electric light is credited to Edison.

～によれば

A more direct way of saying this is ～によれば.

37.

お母さま ^{がた} 方 のために

こじき にほんしよき きき いざなぎのみこと おがみ
古事記、日本書紀（記紀）によれば、伊弉諾尊（男神）、

いざなみのみこと めがみ ふたはしら おおかみ
伊弉冉尊（女神）二柱の大神による国生みの神話は、日本の国土誕生物語です。私たち日本人の祖先は、日本の国土は神様がお生みになり、住みやすく良い国に作りあげられたものと信じていました。ですから、日本の国土に住む日本人は、すべて神様の子としてかたく結ばれている意識が非常に強かったのです。

For the Honorable Mother

According to the *Kojiki* and *Nihon Shoki (Kiki)*, the tale of the birth of our nation by the two great kami Izanagi (male kami) and Izanami (female kami), is the creation story of Japan. Our Japanese ancestors that the kami created the Japanese land to make a great and easy to live country. That is why Japanese people living in the land of Japan felt a strong and tight binding connection to the land as all being children of the kami.

Citation Note: From かみさまのおはなし.

Word Notes:

1. This short excerpt is filled with Shinto cultural references. The 古事記 and the 日本書紀 are the oldest histories of Japan. The first was written in Old Japanese

with 万葉仮名. The second was written a Classical Chinese style called 漢文. The spellings of the two deities come from the latter work.

2. 柱 is used here as a counter for kami.

3. 神 is itself a very interesting word. Although in Christianity it is used to refer to God. In Shintoism, it refers to kami. It is best to just leave the word in Japanese as it is such a Japanese concept.

～によったら

If you used ～によったら, then that would sound like "if it were according to", which is still possible to say. So, keep these conditional contrasts in mind.

38. {ことによると・ことによったら} 列車が^{ていし}停止するかもしれません。

Perhaps the train might halt.

第179課: 〜において・における

In this lesson we'll learn about the compound particle 〜において and its attribute form 〜における.

〜において・おける

〜において・おける can be used to mark the place of an event or field of activity. As you could imagine, 〜における is the attribute form.

1. 国会における発言

The remark in the Diet

2. 大会は上海において 1 週間にわたって開かれます。

The convention will be open in Shanghai over a week's time.

3. 来年の総会はベルリンにおいて行われます。

Next year's general meeting will be held in Berlin.

4. 会議は第一会議室において行われました。

The meeting was held in the first conference room.

Unlike で, however, it can be used to specify a non-physical location. It could still be paraphrased out, but lack of emphasis and this connection are as consequence. The examples below, though, aren't truly quite like existential statements. Rather, they force emphasis on the setting in which the attributed item is in.

5. 人生におけるいくつかの過ちと選択

The several mistakes and choices in human life
From the title of a book by ウォーリー・ラム.

6. それは私の人生における最良の日であった。

That was the best day in my life.

7. 恋と戦争においては全てが正当であるというのは本当かな。

I wonder if all is truly fair in love and war.

When it is used to show the time of something, it is interchangeable with the particle に. Unlike に, though it does not indicate a specific time. 〜における, as one would imagine, is interchangeable with の. This only means that whenever you can use 〜における, you could use の instead, not the other way around.

Speech Style Note: It's very formal and usually replaced by other things in 話し言葉. As such, it is rarely ever used in reference to personal activity.

8. 私は毎日友達の家において勉強します。X

Orthography Note: It can be written in 漢字 as に[於いて・於ける]. You may often see “at” written as 於 on info cards.

9. 過去における出来事

Happenings in the past

10. 地震などの災害時には、特に正確な情報が必要である。

In times of natural disaster such as earthquakes, it's important to especially have accurate information.

11a. 2014 年の G8 のサミットはブラジルにおいて行われます。(More formal)

11b. 2014 年の G8 のサミットはブラジルで行われます。

The 2014 G8 summit will be held in Brazil.

12. 彼は経済学において {優れて・秀でて} います。

He is outstanding in the field of economics.

13. 人生に於ける使命感のある人。

A person who has a sense of mission in life.

14. あぜ いなさくのうぎょう 畦は、稲作農業において、水田と水田の境に^{でいど}泥土を盛り上げて、水が外に漏れないようにしたものである。

Causeways in rice farming are things made for water to not leak out from piling up mud on the borders of rice paddy fields.

From ウィキペディア.

15. 絵画においても、音楽においても、彼女より才能に恵まれた人はあまりいない。

In both art and music, there aren't many more gifted than her.

Adapted from *A Dictionary of Japanese Particles* by Sue A. Kawashima.

16. 家族や友だち等と一緒にの食卓においては、子どもの心身の成長・発達の変化を日々観察することが可能である。

It is possible to observe the development changes and mind and soul growth of children daily at the dinner table together with family and friends.

From 保育所における食事の提供ガイドライン

It may also be used in the sense of "regards to" and translated as such to be "at/in".

17. 技術において他国に優る。

To be superior to other countries in technology.

18. 個人の名において

As to individual names

19. 統計の分析の能力において彰子は非常に優れている。

In regards to statistic analysis, Shoko is extremely excellent.

20. この点において私と彼女とは意見が食い違っています。

As for this point, my opinion differs with hers.

21. 自分の責任において

At one's risk

Etymology Note: 於ける comes from the verb おく's 命令形 + へり in its 連体形.
へり is an archaic auxiliary that shows completion.

Table of Contents

第180課: The Bases (活用形)

Japanese as you know has very long verb phrases. Endings, which range from auxiliaries, supplementary verbs, to particles, attach to bases that differ in appearance according to class. You can't randomly combine bases and endings.

The bases have specific properties that help explain how the language is used. Despite not being immune to change themselves, the base system that you were first introduced to you in Lesson 6 is one of the most important things in fully understanding the true nature of Japanese.

Japanese is an agglutinative language (こうちゃくご 膠着語). This is in contrast to English, which is an inflectional language (くっせつご 屈折語). Agglutination is the concept of things attaching **in chains**. These chains have bases and endings interwoven like strands of DNA. Inflection is the concept of inflecting various parts of speech to agree with particular properties such as grammatical gender and number.

Parts of Speech

It's important to understand that the bases will differ in appearance and slightly in usage depending on the part of speech. The parts of speech that have bases are those that can conjugate. Thus, we will be investigating verbs, adjectives, and auxiliaries. In this lesson, we consider タル形容動詞 as a separate part of speech as their set of bases is a special point of interest.

	未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
上一段活用 動詞	い-	い-	いる	いる-	いれ-	いろ・いよ
下一段活用 動詞	え-	え-	える	える-	えれ-	えろ・えよ

五段活用動 詞	-あ-・-お-	-い-	-う	-う-	-え-	-え
サ変活用動 詞	さ・し・せ -	し-	する	する-	すれ-	しろ・せ よ・せい
カ変活用動 詞	こ-	き-	くる	くる	くれ-	こい
形容詞	かる-	くて-・か り-	い	い-・(き-)	けれ-	かれ
形容動詞	だろ-	だっ・ で・に-	だ	な-	なら-	X
タル形容動 詞	(たら-)	と-	(たり)	たる-	(たれ-)	(たれ)
～た	たろ-	たり	た	た	たら-	X
～ず	ざら-	ず・ざり-	ず・ぬ・ ん	ぬ・ざる-	ね・ざ れ-	ざれ
～べきだ	べから-	べく・ベ かり-	べし・ベ きだ	べき-・ベか る	べけれ-	X
～ます	ませ-・ま しょ-	まし-	ます	ます(る)	ますれ-	ませ
～なり	なら-	なり-	なり	なる-	なれ-	なれ
～う・よう	X	X	う・よう	(う・よう-)	X	X
～まい	X	X	まい	(まい・まじ き)	X	X

This is a lot of information condensed into one chart, so during the lesson individual examples from this chart will be discussed.

未然形

The 未然形 literally translates into English as the "Irrealis Form". This comes from the Classical Japanese usage of making the ば hypothetical, which attached to the 未然形 for this meaning. So, you would get something like 急がば instead of 急げば. In fact, there are still several instances in Modern Japanese where this is allowed. For instance, 急がば is seen in the common set phrase 急がば回れ, which translates to "slow and steady wins the race".

Remember that set phrases in any language are the most likely examples to find old-fashioned/archaic grammar. Yet, this example isn't the only example. In fact, whenever you use ～たらば or ～ならば, you are utilizing the 未然形 + ば.

The use of ～たら and ～なら in this fashion should be ungrammatical because as the chart above shows, they are the 未然形 of ～た and ～なり respectively. So, they should have an ending following them. As we should all know, though, languages evolve from errors. Now, they are deemed as particles because they have deviated from the rules.

Examples

1. 星になれたならば

If you were able to become a star

2. できたら、見せてくれない？

If you were able to, can't you show me?

As this is the base of things not having realized, it is also followed by auxiliaries of intention/volition. For the volition, many items have a 未然形 sound change of /a/ to /o/.

3. 行こう！

Let's go!

4a. そうでもなか**ろう**。(ちょっと古風)

4b. そうでもない**でしょう**。(もっと自然)

It's probably not so.

する

する's original 未然形's was せ-. As it is the original, you should expect it to be used with old auxiliaries such as ～ず・ぬ・ん. These are all forms of each other, so this makes it easier to remember. Other endings that have attached to the 未然形 in Classical Japanese have all been replaced with other speech modals or changed somehow (like the volitional endings and their current relationship sound-wise with the 未然形).

5. 入会**せず**にはいられない。

I can't help but join.

6. 勉強**せん**と。(ちょっと古風: 方言的)

I have to study.

The さ- variant in Modern Japanese is important for the forms される (passive) and させる (causative). However, in Classical Japanese you had せらる and せしむ respectively. So, the emergence of さ- comes about due the causative auxiliary さす. Essentially, the birth of させる was simultaneous with that of される.

7. 誘惑された人

A person that got lured

8. 喧嘩を売られたのはこっちのほうだ。

The one who had been picked into the fight was [him].

From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

9. いや、そうさせはしないのだ。

No, [I] won't make [you] do such.

し- is paired with ~ない and the motivation of this is probably due to the unnatural sounding of せない. However, it's without a doubt that at some point and perhaps in some dialects today, this may have and may still be in use. This can be vindicated with the fact that ~ませない is in fact dialectical. However, due to rapid loss of such dialectical features across Japan are being lost.

し- has also been chosen in Modern Japanese as the form for the volitional ending ~よう. This, though, has a more clearly motivation. In Classical Japanese, しよう was せむ. The sound む before script change could either signify /mu/ or /N'/. So, /semu/ → /seN'/ has gone on for a long time. At some point, N' → /u/. The solution to the resulting diphthong was /yo:/. Thus, the auxiliary ~よう and the vowel in the base had changed for する consequently. Incidentally, the 未然形 made changes for other classes. For instance, 五段, 形容詞, 形容動詞, and some auxiliaries had a vowel shift from /a/ to /o/.

10. 新しかろうが古かりうが

Whether it's new or old

11. 今夜勉強しないでしよう。

I probably won't study tonight.

12. 息子にも理屈は**あろう**。(ちょっと古風)

His son must also have a reason.

From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

13. 行きませむ → 行きませう → 行きましよう

Though the 未然形 of adjectives has limited usage with the auxiliary ～う, which is also replaced with 終止形+だろう, the old negative auxiliary ～ず attaches to the 未然形 of adjectives. Though this would mean any instances of this combination in Modern Japanese are old-fashioned, you will come across examples in literature.

14. いささか詩人らしからぬ月並みな表現である。

It's a commonplace expression unbecoming of a poet.

Potential Verbs

Before Modern Japanese, there were no special conjugations for the potential such as 行ける for 行く. This came about from a very important sound change involving the auxiliary ～れる when attached to the 未然形 of 五段 verbs.

Motivation for this lies in the fact that ～れる is primarily used to make the passive voice for 五段 and サ変 verbs. It also has another major function of making light 敬語, which is crucially important for situations such as talking to one's boss's boss or elderly people.

15. どちらに行かれますか。

Where are you going?

16. シャコはカモメに食われた。

The mantis shrimp was eaten by the sea gull.

How, then, did a whole new "conjugation" form? In Classical Japanese, Japanese actually didn't express "affirmative potential". Japanese culture has always placed value in being humble in regards to oneself. So, the means of expressing potential were used when expressing negative potential. The auxiliaries ～られる and れる were ～らる and ～る respectively. So, cannot swim would have been expressed as 泳がれず.

17. つゆまどろまれず。

I couldn't doze even a little.

From the 更級日記.

The 未然形 ～る was れ-, which is still the 未然形 of ～れる. Sometime during the Edo Period, "ar" in this potential pattern dropped. This as an affect renders 泳がれず as 泳げず. Though the changes in appearance of the negative and potential endings are separate events, this simple change that no doubt began as a colloquial contraction gave birth to fully independent potential verbs in the Japanese language.

Due to Western influence with many works being translated into Japanese, the 終止形 (final form) of the potential began being used, and with the large majority of verbs now having a fully functional independent form for the potential, it was perfect timing.

18. 手紙が書けず。

I can't write the letter.

In Modern Japanese, this is now being extended to 一段 verbs. So, things like 見られる is becoming 見れる. In another 50 years or so, this may be the fully standard way to make the potential for this verb class. This entire process, though, originates from just a simple adjustment to the rules of a conjugation involving the 未然形 because having the potential to do something doesn't mean you've done it yet.

19. 何でも食べれるよ。

You can eat anything.

20. 見れますか。

Can you see it?

Many people like to refer to this special development in these verbs as the 可能形. After all, it's far more deviant than the 連用形 sound changes you have when using ～た・て.

聞く → 聞き- (連用形) + ～て → 聞きて → (Drop K) 聞いて Still using the 連用形

聞く → 聞か- (未然形) + ～れる → 聞かれる → (Drop ar) 聞ける Still using the 未然形

However, this doesn't work well with the base format as seen above. Bases apply to anything that conjugates. There is no doubt that the term 可能形 refers to this potential form phenomenon, but is it of the same vein as the 未然形, 連用形, etc.? No. If it were, everything that conjugates in the language would at least have the opportunity to have it.

Again, this is only a particular sound change of a process following the norm for a particular verb class. Furthermore, these resultant "potential verbs" have their own set of bases like any other verb. So, it is generally believed that these verbs should be treated as separate words that stem from the base verb, just as there are transitivity pairs in the language.

Transitivity pairs didn't exist in ancient forms of Japanese. So, the emerging of a new derivative of verbs should not be surprising in a historical sense. If anything, this has allowed the language to fix a major problem in battling ambiguity with other usages of the auxiliary ～れる.

はじむ (Old Japanese word for "to begin") → Modern Japanese:
はじまる (Intransitive)
 はじめる (Transitive)

いづ (Old Japanese word for "to go out") → Modern Japanese:
出る (Intransitive)

出す (Transitive)

出せる (Potential)

There is a mistaken logic in Japanese texts that the 可能形 is made by affixing (attaching) る to the equivalent of the 已然形, which is what is meant by sources that call it the "E Base" because of the vowel that it ends with for all instances*. However, this is nonsensical. It may be an easy way to remember how to make it for 五段 verbs. But, it completely neglects what the "E Base ≡ 已然形" is used for. It also ignores the sound change. The non-abbreviated form of the process 未然形+れる still has relevance in Modern Japanese. So, the downside that such an explanation brings is the watering down and unintended omission of important information to the student.

連用形

The purpose of the 連用形 is to show that an action/process is either taking place or has already taken place. Thus, it is often followed by auxiliaries such as 〜た. Conjunctive particles such as て, つつ, and ながら also follow it to indicate continuation. This is by far the most used base in Japanese conjugation. Further important usages include the 連用中止形 and making compound verbs.

21. 食卓に焔炉を置いて鍋を囲み、楽しく語らいながら食事ができる。

You can have a dinner while enjoying eating and talking sitting around the pot on the konro [stove] on the dining table.

This sentence has several usages of the 連用形. You see it with て and the verb 置く, in the 連用中止形 with the verb 囲む, used as an adverb with the adjective 楽しい, and with the ながら with the verb 語る.

One of the most difficult aspects of the 連用形 are sound changes and multiple ones for certain items. A lot has changed in regards to the base. Consider

the chart below which shows how it has changed. 文語 stands for Classical Japanese and 口語 stands for Modern Japanese.

文語					口語			
品詞	活用の種類	例語	語形		活用の種類	例語	語形	
動詞	四段活用	書く	かき	-i	五段活用	書く	かき かい	-i っ/ん/ い
	ラ行変格活用	あり	あり	-i				
	ナ行変格活用	死ぬ	しに	-i				
	下一段活用	蹴る	け	-e				
	下二段活用	受く	うけ	-e	下一段活用	受ける	うけ	-e
	上一段活用	着る	き	-i	上一段活用	起きる	おき	-i
	上二段活用	起く	おき	-i				
	力行変格活用	来	き	-i	力行変格活用	来る	き	-i
	サ行変格活用	す	し	-i	サ行変格活用	する	し	-i
形容詞	ク活用	なし	なく なかり	く かり		ない	なく なかつ	く かつ
	シク活用	美し	うつくしく うつくしかり	しく しかり				

形容動詞	ナリ活用	静かなり	しずかに しずかなり	になり		静かだ	しずかに しずかだ っ しずかで	に だっ で
	タリ活用	堂々たり	どうどうと どうどうたり	と たり				

The different 連用形 are used with different endings. This should already be evident. For instance, the conjunctive particle て goes after く for 形容詞, に for 形容動詞 (which normally contracts to で), and the sound changes with 五段 verbs.

買う → 買って	書く → 書いて	嗅ぐ → 嗅いで	勝つ → 勝って	噛む → 噛んで	刈る → 刈って
----------	----------	----------	----------	----------	----------

文語					口語			
品詞	活用の種類	例語	語形		活用の種類	例語	語形	
動詞	四段活用	書く	かき	-i	五段活用	書く	かき かい	-i っ/ん/ い
	ラ行変格活用	あり	あり	-i				
	ナ行変格活用	死ぬ	しに	-i				
	下一段活用	蹴る	け	-e				
	下二段活用	受く	うけ	-e	下一段活用	受ける	うけ	-e
	上一段活用	着る	き	-i	上一段活用	起きる	おき	-i
	上二段活用	起く	おき	-i				

	力行変格活用	来	き	-i	力行変格活用	来	き	-i
	サ行変格活用	す	し	-i	サ行変格活用	す	し	-i
形容詞	ク活用	なし	なく なかり	く かり		ない	なく なかつ	く かつ
	シク活用	美し	うつくしく うつくしかり	しく しかり				
形容動詞	ナリ活用	静かなり	しずかに しずかなり	に なり		静かだ	しずかに しずかだっ しずかで	に だっ で
	タリ活用	堂々たり	どうどうと どうどうたり	と たり				
文語					口語			
品詞	活用の種類	例語	語形		活用の種類	例語	語形	
動詞	四段活用	書く	かき	-i	五段活用	書く	かき かい	-i っ/ん/ い
	ラ行変格活用	あり	あり	-i				
	ナ行変格活用	死ぬ	しに	-i				
	下一段活用	蹴る	け	-e				
	下二段活用	受く	うけ	-e	下一段活用	受ける	うけ	-e
	上一段活用	着る	き	-i	上一段活用	起きる	おき	-i
	上二段活用	起く	おき	-i				
	力行変格活用	来	き	-i	力行変格活用	来	き	-i
	サ行変格活用	す	し	-i	サ行変格活用	す	し	-i

形容詞	ク活用	なし	なく なかり	く かり		ない	なく なかつ	く かつ
	シク活用	美し	うつくしく うつくしか り	しく しか り				
形容動 詞	ナリ活用	静かな り	しずかに しずかなり	に なり		静か だ	しずかに しずかだ っ しずかで	に だっ で
	タリ活用	堂々た り	どうどうと どうどうた り	と たり				

終止形

This base marks the end of a sentence. This is very important. Everything that conjugates has a 終止形. It normally expresses the non-past tense unless there is a tense item involved. What it looks like is quite straightforward as it is equivalent to the 辞書形.

22. 左に曲がる。（左に曲がれという意味）

Turn left.

Grammar Note: Some times, the 終止形 in context may be used to instruct someone to do something.

Recently in the history of Japanese, the 連体形 merged with the 終止形, causing the latter to look like the former for many things. For instance, the 終止形 of する used to be す, and the 連体形 was する. This also effected some auxiliaries. For instance, べし → べきだ, ず → め.

連体形

Though in Modern Japanese completely identical in appearance to the 終止形 for most conjugatable items, it is syntactically extremely different. The 連体形

is the attributive form, which is used in Modern Japanese to solely modify nominal phrases.

23. きれいな字

Pretty handwriting

24. ずいぶんひどい内容

Quite horrible content/matter

25. もう宿題を出したんです。

I've already turned in my homework.

An issue that comes up a lot is students not realizing that verb phrases can modify sentences. There are even particle restrictions that come along with it. For instance, an embedded clause must never have the topic particle (は) unless there is a citation particle like と・って. Some make the mistake of finding the first が and assuming it's the subject, despite the fact that that is not always the case because of this fact.

26.

ようし、^{けんいち}謙一が長い間専務理事の椅子に^{いす すわ}坐って学園の管理を^{ろうだん}壟断している]
こと、[会計に不正が**ある**]こと、[それを理事会の席で大島に指摘されて謙一が^{ろうばい}狼狽
した]こと、つづいて[彼が次の理事長の椅子を^{ねら}狙い^{かくさく}画策している]ことなどであつた。

The gist was that Ken'ichi has been sitting in the seat of the executive director for a long time and has been monopolizing on the management of the academy, has made a wrong in the accounting, and that that was pointed out in the board meeting by Ohshima and Ken'ichi was bewildered, and counting on, he was scheming for the seat of the next board chairman.

From 混声の森 (下) by 松本清張.

Sentence Note: The brackets indicate the long attributes phrases, and the 連体形 have been put in bold.

已然形

The 已然形 literally means "the already-realized form". This comes from the fact that in Classical Japanese, the particle ば would be used with it to mean "because; when". Thus, this grammar point has changed significantly. It is also used with the particle ど(も), which means although.

27. あかつきより雨降れば

Since it had been raining since early morning
From the 土佐日記.

28. エリスは ^{とこ}床 ^ふに臥すほどにはあらねど、^{てつろ}小さき鉄炉のほとりに椅子さし寄せて言葉 少なし。

Ellis wasn't to the point of being bedridden, but she lied on a chair near a small iron furnace and had little to say.

By ^{おうがい} 鷗外 .

You also see it used in the pattern こそすれ. In Modern Japanese grammar, it is sometimes called the 仮定形 (the hypothetical form) due to how the particle ば is now used. Nevertheless, the original name generally stands.

29. 男女の違いこそあれ、二人は ^{うり}瓜 二つだね。

Of course they have their differences as man and woman, but they're like two peas in a pod.

命令形

The 命令形 is the imperative form, which creates a command. There are many ways to make commands in Japanese, but this is the core way to. It isn't

difficult to make an imperative, but it is difficult to use these phrases--with the ultimate goal to request something--like native speakers would.

Construction Note: Making the 命令形 is relatively easy. As we have already studied how to construct it, please refer back to the chart at the beginning of this lesson.

Curriculum Note: As there is already a lesson about the 命令形, every point mentioned here is meant to be summarization and not intense dissection.

In Modern Japanese, the 命令形 is typically very stern and powerful. It is semantically impossible for it to be used with the past tense.

Examples

30. こっちに来い！

Come here!

31. 手を挙げろ！

Hands up!

32. あんたのいいようにしてくれ。(Vulgar)

Do as is good for you.

33. ゴミを投げるな。

Don't throw trash!

34. 金を出せ！

Hand over money!

One can easily see a bank robber saying 金を出せ or a soldier yelling 手を挙げろ. It's not that stern commands are never used. It's just that from a productive standpoint, you should understand that its use is limited. Experience as to

when the 命令形 is used is the best solution to not sound rude. There are plenty of other ways to get your point across about wanting something done.

35. 息子は、相手の家に謝りに行けという考えに反抗している。

His son was against his thought of going to apologize to his opponent's house.

From 混声の森 by 松本清張.

Grammar Note: In this instance, the command form is in quotations. Though there is a 上下関係 between the father and son, the 命令形 is used in this fashion a lot.

36. 一生懸命勉強しろといわれた。

I was told to study as hard as possible.

In Regards to Beginners

When mentioned to beginners, it is normally explained that it is used by superiors to inferiors. Although this is often the case, it is also used among people very close to each other. In such situations, tone and manner add a lot to how the command will be taken. The main reason why so many teachers prefer to mention the 命令形 later on is because Japanese learners tend to use it far more than native speakers.

For instance, say you are trying to tell someone to not use the phone in a train. A student is more likely to say 電車の中で携帯を使うな. Although this is grammatically correct, when would you ever say that? It would be more appropriate to say 電車の中で携帯利用は禁止なんです. This is more indirect and polite.

In studying more about the 命令形, we need to examine the relation between the 話者 (speaker) and 聴者 (listener). Inequality signs will demonstrate which side has the most power/influence. An equal sign would mean that they're equal in this regard.

話者 > 聴者

話者 = 聴者

話者 < 聴者

In the first situation, the speaker has more authority on the choice of action than the listener. There is no place for the speaker to decide what to do. In the second situation, the speaker allows for the action, and the listener has the power to consent to it or not interfere with it. In the third section, even if the speaker makes a request for the listener to do something, the listener has the power to decide. Thus, the speaker ends up making a suggestion or some sort of advice/aspiration.

With each of these situations, you can replace the 命令形 with various synonymous expressions. For instance, in the first relation, you could see ～なければならぬ or ～なさい. In the second situation, you could use ～ていい. In the third, ～た方がいい could be used instead. Though there are slight differences, relating the 命令形 with these patterns for the three broad situations it is used in will help you a lot in understanding it.

37. 黙って出されたものを食べろ。 (話者 > 聴者)

食べろ → 食べなさい

Shut up and eat what's been given to you!

38. これを飲め。 (話者 = 聴者)

飲め → 飲んで (も) いい

Drink this.

39. 一時間幸せになりたかったら酒を飲め, 三日間幸せになりたかったら結婚しろ, 一週間幸せになりたかったら豚を殺して食べろ, 一生幸せになりたかったら釣りを覚えろ。

命令形 → ～た方がいい

If you want to become happy for an hour, drink; if you want to be happy for three days, get married; if you want to be happy for a week, kill a pig and eat it; if you want to be happy for a lifetime, learn how to fish. (話者 < 聴者)

A Quote from 開高健.

The notes after the example signify that the 命令形 could be paraphrased out.

かったら酒を飲め, 三日間幸せになりたかったら結婚しろ, 一週間
幸せになりたかったら豚を殺して食べろ, 一生幸せになりたかった
ら釣りを覚えろ

命令形 Studies

Studying the 命令形 also interests Japanese grammarians. The 命令形 has been given many names. Some include 放任形 (non-interference form) and 命令法. However, is the word 命令 the most appropriate word?

One interesting usage that is typically not mentioned is that the 命令形 is the chosen command pattern for decrees in law. Related to this is the usage of it by bosses.

40. 止まれ

Stop!

This is the Japanese traffic lingo equivalent to "STOP" on stop signs. This shows an imperative and obligation to motorists and pedestrians to stop.

In 敬語

This has all been in regards to non-敬語 situations. There are things such as ~なさい and ~ませ that have different social implications that you need to pay close attention to.

41. いらっしゃいませ。

Welcome!

This usage, for example, is a very important set phrase that you hear all the time when entering businesses and restaurants.

42. 勉強しなさい。

Study!

This is something that you would hear a stern parent tell his child. Again, just as is the case in English, social dynamics play a crucial role in how commands of any kind are perceived. As you have surely seen a lot of Japanese by now, this shouldn't be hard to understand.

第181課 : Interjections

There are several terms for "interjection". They may be called ^{かんだうし}感動詞, ^{かんとうし}間投詞, or ^{かたんし}感嘆詞. Interjections may be outbursts of emotion while others are simply greetings (^{あいさつ}挨拶). Some are nasty pejoratives, others simply internet slang. Due to this diversity, we are going to study interjections with the following categories.

Emotional Interjections	感動詞
Interjections of Yelling	かけ声の間投詞
Interjections of Response	応答の間投詞
Interjections of Appeal	呼びかけの間投詞
Interjections of Salutation	挨拶の間投詞
Slang Interjections	俗語的な間投詞
Onomatopoeic Interjections	擬声語的な間投詞

This lesson won't show every interjection nor every variant, but this should hopefully help find about the most important ones.

Emotional Interjections

Ah	ああ	It can be used to show surprise, grief, joy, etc. and also as a light response. In the latter case it's often just あ.
Oh	おう・おお	Used when moved (emotionally) by something, sudden remember something, or agree with something.
Thank you	どうもありがと う・おおきに・サ ンキュー・三 Q	大 きに is famous for being from Kansai Dialects. サンキ ュー comes from English and is used in casual settings. The second spelling is common in internet slang.
Oh my	おや (おや)	It shows a little distrust when met with something unex- pected.

My, my	おやまあ	
Huh	まったく	
Good-ness	やれ (やれ)	Used when relieved, tired, dejected, and bewildered.

Interjections of Yelling

ああ・わあ	Ah	わあ is often used by females but not limited to them. The adverb わあと also exists.
よいしょ		Sound of when you are lifting up something heavy.
えいや		Sound one makes when pulling something with strength.
おい	Hey!	Comes from Satsuguu Dialect for punishing people.
おっと	Oops	Used mainly by middle-aged people and older.
乾杯	Cheers	
きゃー	Eek	
ふん	Pssh	
しまった	Dang/damn	
図星	Bull's-eye	
畜生	Damn you	
はくしょん	Achoo	
ファック	F***	This is not used like in English frequency-wise, and it's not a given that the speaker knows it is a bad word in English.
ヤッホー	Yo-ho	

もう	Jeez	
すごい	Awesome	
やった	# did it!	

Notes:

1. The first shows how つ can make more emphasis, and this can be used for other adjectives. The latter contraction, which can also occur for 形容詞 ending in おい, あい, うい, and いい to えー, which is done in standard speech by men in casual situations. It depends on the region if women get to use this contraction or not.

Examples

やんやの喝采になってしまった。

It ended up becoming a thunderous applause.

	Notes	
Ah	ああ・わあ	わあ is not limited to females. It can even be in わあと with verbs dealing with crying and joy.
Yo-ho	よいしょ	
Ugh	えいや	
There!	それ・そら	The latter is more so dialectical and depends on the speaker. This pattern can be applied to things like これ as well.
Shut up	うるさい・だまれ・だまって	There are many other ways to "shut up" that differ in grammar and politeness.
Hey!	おい・こら	
Ouch!	いたっ・いたい・いてえ	

Oops	おっと	
Have it your way!	勝手にしろ	
Good luck!	頑張って	
Cheers!	乾杯	
Eek	きゃー	
...stinks	くさい・くせー	
S%イ#	くそ・ふん	
Da ム ni%	しまった	
Awesome	すごい・すげー	
Stop!	ストップ	
Bull's-eye	図星	
Da#% you	畜生	
Voila	出来上がり	
Achoo	ハクシヨン	
F*#K	ファック	
Jeez	もう	
Yes; hurray	やった	
Yoohoo	ヤッホー	
	Notes	
Ah	ああ・わあ	わあ is not limited to females. It can even be in わあと with verbs dealing with crying and joy.
Yo-ho	よいしょ	
Ugh	えいや	

There!	それ・そら	The latter is more so dialectical and depends on the speaker. This pattern can be applied to things like これ as well.
Shut up	うるさい・だまれ・だまって	There are many other ways to "shut up" that differ in grammar and politeness.
Hey!	おい・こら	
Ouch!	いたっ・いたい・いてえ	
Oops	おっと	
Have it your way!	勝手にしろ	
Good luck!	頑張って	
Cheers!	乾杯	
Eek	きゃー	
...stinks	くさい・くせー	
S%イ #	くそ・ふん	
Da ム ni%	しまった	
Awesome	すごい・すげー	
Stop!	ストップ	
Bull's-eye	図星	
Da#% you	畜生	
Voila	出来上がり	
Achoo	ハクシヨン	
F*#K	ファック	
Jeez	もう	
Yes; hurray	やった	
Yoohoo	ヤッホー	

Interjections of Response

		Notes
Ah	ああ・あ	
Uh; um	あの（う）	
Well	じゃあ・さあ・まあ	See below
Um	えーと	えーと is a very casual spelling. ええと and えっと are regular spellings.
No	い（い） え・いや・うん・や（ー） だ	やだ is quite casual and is more like "that's bad".
Yes	はい・ええ・うん	
OK	OK・オーケー	
Eh?	え（っ）	May show doubt when surprised at something or when you want something to be repeated.
Oh, yes?	へえ	Shows surprise at something.
Sorry	ごめんなさい・申しわけありません・すみません	See Lesson 26 for more variants.
Uh-huh	しか	
Yeah	そうですね	This is even said when you will then show disagreement. In that case, it would be followed with something like そうかといって.
Not at all	とんでもない	See below.
What?	何	Of course, it has variants like 何だ.
Indeed	なるほど	Used in agreement or recognition of what someone said.

Let me see	はて・はてな	Used when one is suspecting or thinking about something.
Not really	別に	Maybe accompanied by the verb that is omitted.
No use arguing	問答無用	
Rodger	了解	
Wow	あら	Often used by women.
Of course	もちろん	
Hey there; I say	これは（これは）	

さあ VS まあ VS じゃあ

Though all translated with relatively the same word "well", these three interjections aren't exactly the same, and they're used in different situations for different emotive effects.

さあ can be used to urge or invite someone to do something. It may be used to bolster oneself or even used when one is confused or troubled. It can also be the well in "well, that's done".

まあ is quite different. Women often use it whenever they're shocked, relieved, etc. In general, however, it can be used to suggest that something is not completely all right, but that it will suffice for now. Or, it can be used to pacify someone and tell them to do something for the time being.

じゃあ・じゃ・では is like "ok now". It can be used like それでは as "then", which can also be してみるお. It can even be used to switch over to another conversation.

とんでもない

It can be used to completely reject another's idea, equivalent to めっそうもない. It can also be used like とほうもない, which means "outrageous/absurd". It can be seen as "no kidding!". It's often used in a negative fashion.

In polite speech it can be more easily interpreted as "it's nothing". Or, it can be used in the sense of "don't mention it". Of course, a lot of this has to deal with context and tone of voice. For its meaning "unthinkable", it is interchangeable with とんだ・思いのほかの, which are both attributive expressions.

Interjections of Appeal

Sh!	しーっ
I'm leaving	行ってきます
Have a nice day	行ってらっしゃい
Wait	ちょっと
Please	お願いします・どうぞ
Pretty please	かなりしてください
Hello (on the telephone)	もしもし
Good job	あっぱれ・グッジョブ
Excuse me	失礼します
Help	助けて
I'm home	ただいま
Cheese	チーズ・にー

Interjections of Salutation

So long	あばよ
Welcome home	お帰りなさい
Congratulations	おめでとう（ございます）
Happy birthday	（お）誕生日おめでとう（ございます）
Good morning	おはようございます
Good afternoon	今日は
Good evening	今晚は
Good night	お休みなさい
How are you?; farewell	ご機嫌よう
Farewell	さよ（う）なら・さらば
See you later	また明日・あとで
What's up?	どう
Bye	ばい・バイバイ
Long time no see	久しぶりですね・久々・調子はどう？
Merry Christmas	メリークリ（スマス）
Yo!; Wow!	やあ
Nice to meet you	どうぞよろしく・初めまして

Slangish Interjections

What's up	おっす
Here it comes	キタ
Nice to meet you	4649 (Internet)
Lol	笑・www (Internet)・ワロタ

Usage Note: Words that come from the infamous site 2ちゃんねる are deemed to be used by people with low intelligence. So, avoid using ワロタ.

Onomatopoeic Interjections

Ook	ウキー
Caw	かー
Ook ook	きーきー
Yuck	げっ
Ribbit ribbit	げろげろ
Cock-a-doodle-doo	こけこっこー
Purr; meow	ごろごろ・にゃあ
Baa baa	めーめー

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. The interjections shown in this lesson may easily be categorized differently depending on the situation. Show how this is true with at least two examples.
2. Essentially, onomatopoeic and daily expressions are considered interjections to an extent. Give examples.
3. Interjections in this lesson that are easily manipulated in terms of speech level or pattern abbreviations were only listed with one variant. Show at least 3 examples of this.
4. Create 10 sentences with a different interjection for each one.
5. List the different types of interjections and give at least 3 examples of each.

Japanese usually don't know what the difference between these two words are, and who can blame them? They show up sometimes in literary and seldom in conversation, and they are arguably etymologically the same word.

使い方・使い分け

Etymological Confusion

The root obo- should ring a bell to you. It's in fact the same thing as omo-. So, 思う, 覚える, and the like all come from the same source with other things added. Japanese had a phoneme sometimes denoted a /mb/ that results in the interchangeability of m and b in many words today. In some cases, distinct words have developed from the same etymological source. This makes 思しき confusing.

Many sources claim that it comes from the verb 思す. This verb comes from 思ほす which comes from 思はす (思わす). Then, the form 思しい comes from attaching -shi (modern -shii) to the original form of this. This is similar to other words like 願わしい (desirable) from 願う. Thus, 思しい is clearly etymologically the same as 思わしい. One form shows sign of extra sound change and the other doesn't. Not, surprisingly, natives often don't distinguish them semantically.

Definitions

First, we will look at several dictionary endings for the two to see if we can deduce any important information. The first dictionary to look at is the 広辞苑 Edition 5.

思しい・覚しい

- ① (…と) 思われる。そのように見受けられる。
- ② こうありたいと思われる。

思わしい

(多く打消の語を伴って) 好ましく思われる。気に入る。

Google's dictionary says the following.

▽思しい／覺しい

- ① (「…とおぼしい」「とおぼしき」の形で) …と思われる。…のように見える。
- ② こうありたいと望まれる。希望している。

思わしい

- ① 好ましい状態である。よく思われる。現代では、多く否定の表現を伴って用いられる。
- ② そう思われるようすである。

Qualification of Usage

Some speakers try saying that 思しい is only for showing appearance and that 思わしい is for showing what is hoped for. Yet, these entries show that both meanings exist for both. So, we will learn about how they are practically used and grammatical differences that they have to differentiate them.

思 しい is going to almost always be used in an attribute phrase and is most often in the form of 思しき in the written language, but it is often 思しい in more spoken language contexts. The form 思しい is not really common, but it does show up periodically in literature. 思わしい doesn't have this restriction, but it's mainly going to be in the negative form.

Using 思しい to mean こうありたいと思われる is not used anymore and is only found in older/classical texts. It is listed in dictionaries because of its historical existence. This meaning, though, has been taken over by 思わしくない. In 国語

tests, such questions regarding this usage come up, and you would not get points for choosing 思しい. This is because current language usage does not include this definition. Also, 望まれる or the definition こうありたいと思われる may be more common overall.

As for the meaning of showing resemblance, many prescriptive people say that 思しい should be the only one to mean this. Although overall it is what most often appears rather than 思わしい, many speakers use this word to show resemblance. This is reflected in the dictionary definitions above. Thus, this is when textbook definitions and actual usage in society don't match up.

Examples

Now it's time for example sentences to get a sense of the somewhat literary/formal/書き言葉的 style that these phrases are used in and what sorts of phrases fit well with them.

1. 犯人と思しき人物を見失う。

To lose sight of a person thought to be a criminal.

2. 一見、画家と思しき人 (Uncommon usage)

A person who in one look seems to be an artist

3. 私の町でも、英語指導助手と思しき人たちを見かける。

I also come across people in my town who appear to be assistant English teachers.

4. おととい浅草へ行ったら、団体旅行の外国人と思しき人たちが大勢歩いていた。

Two days ago when I went to Asakusa, there were a lot of people walking around who looked to be foreigners in a group vacation.

5. この町では外国人と思しき人を見かけません。

I don't come across foreign-looking individuals in this town.

6. 逃走中と思しき女性

A woman who appears to be on the run

7. 危険物と思しき物を見たら、すぐに警察に知らせてください。

If you found something that appears to be a hazardous material, immediately contact the police.

8. 最近、景気が悪くて、外国人労働者と思しき人が多くなった。

The economic has been bad recently, and the number of people who appear to be foreign workers has increased.

9. この手紙には暗号と思しき文字が書かれている。

There are letters in this letter that appear to be coded.

10a. 線路と車輪から出ると思わしい音 ??

10b. 線路と車輪の間から出ていると思われる音

10c. 線路と車輪の擦れる音

A sound resembling what comes from between the tracks and the car wheels (of a train)

Sentence Note: Because 思わしい is used 90% with the negative, this sentence may sound strange to many Japanese speakers. 10b is a more natural version of 10a that means the same thing, but 10c is a more practical sentence which just lacks the sense of "resembling".

11. 病状が思わしくない。

The disease's condition is not satisfactory.

12. オリンピックの成績が思わしくなかった。

The Olympics' results were not satisfactory.

13. やはり手首の状態が思わしくなかったですね。

My wrist's condition was just not satisfactory, you know.

14. 近頃体調があまり思わしくない。

I haven't been so well recently.

15. ぜつめつきぐしゅ
絶滅危惧種 と思しき動物もちらほら見かける。

I even glimpse animals that appear to be endangered species here and there.

16. せきさくどうぶつ
脊索動物 と思しき化石

Fossils that resemble chordates

17. 人類の祖先と思しき生物が地球上に登場したのは 2000 万前といわれている。

It's said that creatures resembling the ancestors of mankind appeared on the earth 20 million years ago.

18. そせん
人類の祖先 と思わしき化石がアフリカの各地で次々と発見されている。

Fossils of human species thought to be those of man's ancestors are continuously being found all across Africa.

19. 寝起きと思しく乱れた髪 ? (書き言葉)

寝起きと思しき乱れた髪

Missed up hair like one has woken up from bed

Grammar Note: Using 思しい in the 連用形 as 思しく is rather rare, but it is still possible.

20. テストの結果が {○ 思わしくなかった・△/X 思しくなかった} 。

My test results were not satisfactory.

21. 犯人と思しい人相の人 (やや書き言葉的)

A person with the looks of a criminal

From the 広辞苑第 5 版の 397 ページ

22. 観光客と思しい人たちが結構乗っています。 (Not conversational but perhaps report of some kind) There are quite a few people riding who appear to be tourists.

The following are most certainly possible in the spoken language. After all, と思しき is still occasionally used in the spoken language. It's just not used a whole lot.

23. A さんと思しき人物を駅で見た。

I saw a person that looked like A-san at the train station.

24. 犬の餌と思しき物体が落ちている。

Something what appears to be dog food has fallen.

25. 犯人と思しき人物を見た。

I saw a person that appeared to be a criminal.

第183課 : More Negative Patterns: ~ないことには, ~なし・なき, ~なしで (は) , ~なしに (は) , ~なくして (は) , ~ことなく, & 甲斐もなく

This lesson will introduce you to more patterns that utilize ~ない or derivations of it.

~ないことには(~ない)

A ないことには B means "if...don't/in not...; unless". So, if you don't do A, you get stuck with B. B could be positive or negative depending on the outcome that you wish to express. It can be used with verbs, adjectives, or the copula, but don't forget how to properly use ない! This pattern must be only used in declarative sentences.

品詞	接続	例
名詞	N+でないことには	人でないことには
形容詞	Adj → <-連用形 + ないことには	高くないことには
形容動詞	Adj + でないことには	精密でないことには
動詞	Adj → 未然形 + ないことには	しないことには

1. 泳がないことには、海岸に行けなくなった。

In not swimming, I became unable to go to the beach.

2. 急がないことには、間に合わなくなる。

In not hurrying, you won't make it in time.

3. 勝たないことには、^{しあい}試合に負ける。

If you don't win, you lose in the tournament.

4. がんばらないことには、今度の韓国語の試験に合格できないよ。

Unless you try hard, you won't pass this next Korean exam.

Grammar Note: Do not confuse this with ...ないことには where は is simply emphatic. The phrase discussed in this section is conjunctive in nature whereas this isn't.

5. 自分に関わりのないことには口を出すなよ。

Don't interfere in things that don't concern you!

～なし

なし means "without" and is after nominal phrases. If なし for some reason is placed before a noun, it becomes 無き. There is more behind this previous form of ない. The problem lies with how to use ～なしに (は) , ～なしで (は) , and ～なくして (は) . These phrases show that if something were not to happen, a certain event won't be. These phrases show necessity. and there is a negative phrase in the next clause.

6. コーヒーなしに過ごせない。

I can't go on without coffee.

7. 涙なしに語るができない。(書き言葉的)

I can't tell it without tears coming.

8. 国民の理解と協力なしには実行できない。(書き言葉)

We can't act forth without the understanding and cooperation of the citizens.

9. 政府開発援助なしではこの革新的な医学研究は続けることができない。

Without government development aid, this groundbreaking medical research can't continue.

10. しっかりと準備することなくしては成功できぬ。(硬い書き言葉)

Without properly preparing, you can't succeed.

11. 先生方のご指導なくして私の大学合格は有り得ませんでした。(とても丁寧; Useful expression)

Without the guidance of my teachers, my college success wouldn't have been possible.

12. 政治家はテレプロンプター（原稿）なしで話せない。

Politicians can't talk without a teleprompter.

13. 百害あって一利なし。 (Set phrase/proverb)

To do no good but a lot of harm.

14. 「憲法を改正することなくして、軍事大国になれない」と考える人が増えているそうだ。

It sounds that the number of people who think that without revising the constitution, [Japan] won't be able to become a military power is growing.

Grammar Note: Also seen as ～ずして（は）, ～なくして（は） is a more old-fashioned/archaic equivalent of ～なしに（は）, but it can be used in plus and or negative situations.

～なしで(は) VS ～なしに(は)

Although both present a premise X, which makes Y possible, they are slightly different.

1. ～なしで（は） is used with a noun that shows a general condition, and the listener is told that there must be X. Thus, the speaker can use this when pointing out a ban or the need for evasion.
2. ～なしに（は） can't be used directly towards the listener to get that person working. When these expressions are interchangeable, the former shows an individual cause whereas the latter shows a more obvious situation that is deemed to be evident and necessary. Thus, it is more suited for the written language.

15. スペイン語？無理いうなや。辞書なし {で・に} は、分かんわ。(ちょっと関西弁っぽい)

Spanish? Don't be unreasonable. I can't understand it without a dictionary.

16. 客商売だから、ネクタイなし {○ で・X に} は、困るんだけども。(話し言葉)

Since it's business (client-oriented), it'd be troubling without a tie.

17. 届け出なし {○ に・△ で} 外泊するのは、キャンプの規則に違反することになります。

Sleeping outdoors is now a violation of camp rules without notification.

18. ノックなしに (は) 、ドアを開けないでください。

Don't open the door without knocking.

Grammar Note: は in the last situation would make it fit well, but the message was probably written on the door rather than spoken. Had the sentence been spoken, with ノックしないで being more common, ~なしに would exemplify demonstrate consideration to the listener.

～ないことには～ない VS ～ことなしに (は) ～ない VS ～ことなく

X ないことには Y ない shows that for the realization of Y, X is necessary. A can be a positive or negative situation. However, ～ことなしに (は) ～ない and ～ことなく can only be used with verbs whereas the former pattern is also seen with nouns and adjectives. Furthermore, these latter expressions show that "for Y to realize, X is unavoidable". So, it's not positive.

19a. ^{どりよく} 努力 {することなしには・しないことには} 、成功はできない。

19b. 成功するためには、努力を^さ避けていることはできない。

You cannot succeed unless you put in effort.

20. 「憲法を変え {・ることなしには・ないことには} 、軍事大国になれないと考える人が増えている」といわれます が、本当かどうかよく分かりませんね。

It's said that the number of people that think that without changing the constitution, [Japan] won't be able to come a military power is growing, but I don't really know if that's true.

21. 優しい人でないことには、お金があっても、結婚できませんよ。

You can't get married even if you have money if you're not a nice person.

Other things to keep in mind is that both ~ことなしに (は) ~ない and ~ことなく are more 書き言葉的; however, the former is even more ^{かた}硬い because it has the old なし in it. You do still see ~こと (も) なく in the spoken language, though, in which it has interchangeability with 連用形+もしないで.

22a. 多少のリスクを負わないことには、ビジネスなんかできないよ。とうてい避けられないもんだから。○

22b. 多少のリスクを負う {ことなく・ことなしに} 、ビジネスなんかできないよ。とうてい避けられないもんだから。X

Without taking some risk, you can't do business. That's because you can't avoid it no matter what.

23. 石に ^{つまづ} 躓 ^{ころ} いて 転 んだ子供が {泣くこともなく・泣きもしないで} 、^{えがお}笑 顔で立ち上がったなんてびっくりしたよ。

I was surprised that the kid who tripped and fell on the rocks got up with a smile without even crying.

24. しょうことなく、メザキさんと並んで、いくら行っても太くもならないし細くもならない道を、長く歩いた。

With it not being helped, I went along with Mr. Mezaki, and we walked a long ways down the road, which no matter how much you go neither widens nor thins.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

Phrase Note: しょうことなく = しょうことなしに = やむを得ず.

甲斐（かい）もなく

かい
甲斐 means "avail" and かい
甲斐もなく, thus, means "to no avail/in vain". Just as
in English, it is not really casual.

25. 私たちは れんしゅう かい
練習 した甲斐もなく負けてしまった。

We lost despite practicing.

26. わざわざフランスから出かけてきた甲斐がありました。

It was worth our while to have come all the way from France.

27. 勉強した甲斐もなく落ちてしまいました。

I ended up failing to no avail of studying.

28. はたら がい
働き甲斐

Just the value of working

29. としがい
年 甲 斐 もなく

Unbecoming to one's age

第184課: The Particle と III: と + ...~ない

We will look at yet another use of the case particle と. This one is quite different than all the other usages we've looked at as it behaves more like an adverb than any of the other case particles. So, keep this in mind.

と + ...~ない

と may strengthen negative expressions used with counter expressions and some other adverbs. It is especially common in the phrase 二度と. This usage stresses that things aren't going to be so. Although this usage is classified as a case particle usage, it's easy to view it as an adverbial particle as it is always paired with adverbial phrases (counters).

1. もう二度とあんなところへ行かない。

I'm not going to go to a place like that ever again.

2. 3 ^{ぶん}分 とかからない。

It won't take more than 3 minutes.

3. ^{いのち}命 は二つとない。

Life is but once.

4. ^{なま}生 ものは3日ともたない。

Raw foods won't last three days.

5. 一分と待てない。

I can't even wait one minute.

6. ^{へいおん}平 穏 は3日ともたない。

Tranquility won't last but three days.

7. 色んな ^{ちりょう}治療 を受けても 1 週間ともたない。

No matter what various treatment (I) receive, it lasts but a week.

8. 時間は一秒とかからない。

Not even a second will go by.

9. この数学問題を解くのに 5 分とかからなかった。

It didn't take more than five minutes to solve this math problem.

10. この ^{しょくりょう}食料 では 1 日ともたない。

We won't even make it a day with this food.

11. この食料は 1 日ともたない。

This food won't make it a day.

12. 同じものは二つとない。

There isn't a same thing twice.

13. これは世界に 2 個もないものですね。

There is only one in the world.

14. 雲一つとない青空を見上げる。

To look up at the blue sky with not a single cloud.

15. ニヶ月 5000 円とかからなかった。

It didn't even cost more than ¥5000 for two months.

16. ^{げり}下痢が出るまで 1 分と ^{がまん}我慢 できない。

I can't even hold it one minute till diarrhea comes out.

17. こんな機会 はまたとない。

Such an opportunity won't come again.

18. 大失敗は二度と繰り返しません。

Great failure won't repeat once more.

19. だめだ、何をやっても 2 日と続かない。

It's useless, I can't keep going at something for two days no matter what I do.

20. この問題は手計算だと 10 分かかるが、パソコンに解かせれば 1 秒とかからない。

This problem by hand takes 10 minutes, but if you get it solved by computer, it doesn't even take a second.

も VS と

This is very similar to the particle も, but the particle も emphasizes the greatness of something and can either be used with positive or negative sentences. This is in stark difference with this usage of と which often emphasizes the smallness and often showing intolerance about things. For instance, in 22, the speaker, despite 1 hour being reasonably short for the situation, is not wanting to be patient anymore.

21. 一時間も待った。

I waited at least one hour.

22. もう一時間と待たない。

I won't even wait a minute.

23. 税金を一円と払わない！

I won't pay even a yen in taxes!

24. 税金を 10 万円も払えない。

I can't even pay ¥100,000 in taxes.

25a. 誰ひとりと知らない。

25b. 誰ひとりも知らない。

25a stresses the smallness of the quantity that one/someone either doesn't know more than essentially no one or that no one doesn't know something. 25b is the same but makes a big deal about the situation and is consequently more common than 25a. Say no one knows your new address, if you used 25a in the dialogue, you're just stating that no one knows, but if you say 25b, you're making an issue out of things and emphasizing the situation as a problem.

Practice: Translate the following.

1. 彼女ともう二度とキスをしない。
2. いやだと（いうことを）二度と言わないで。
3. 100 分もかかることを知った。
4. 3 時間も泳いだのに、全然 ^{つか} 疲 れもない。
5. またとないチャンスを逃す人は ^{しんし} 眞 摯 に自分の人生と向き合っていない。

Table of Contents

Key

1. I won't kiss her again.
2. Don't say no/never again.
3. I found out it would take at least 100 minutes.
4. I have no fatigue at all despite swimming for at least three hours.
5. People who miss out on golden opportunities are not sincerely facing their own lives.

第185課: 込む

In this lesson we'll learn all about 込む. It's interesting to know that the character 込 is a Japanese-made 漢字. This verb and how it's used often throws people off, especially when trying to translate stuff.

込む

込む means "to be crowded" or "to continue in the same state". Of all of the compound verb endings in Japanese, -込む is by far one of the most important. This is because it is used to create hundreds of unique verbs. ~込む has four broad usages.

THE 4 USAGES: 1: Going inside 2: Put inside 3: Keep as is 4: Doing enough

(1) To plunge	飛び込む	とびこむ	(2) To corner into	追い込む	おいこむ
(3) To mope	塞ぎ込む	ふさぎこむ	(4) To drill (teaching)	教え込む	おしえこむ
(4) To boil well	煮込む	にこむ	(3) To age	老け込む	ふけこむ
(2) To cram	詰め込む	つめこむ	(1) To invade	攻め込む	せめこむ
(1) To run in yelling	怒鳴り込む	どなりこむ	(2) To entice	誘い込む	さそいこむ
(1) To march in	繰り込む	くりこむ	(1) To roll in	転がり込む	ころがりこむ
(3) To sit down	座り込む	すわりこむ	(2) To count on	見込む	みこむ

[RESOURCE PAGE AVAILABLE](#)

Examples

1. 崖^{がけ}から海に飛び込むのは危ない。

Plunging into the sea from a cliff is dangerous.

2. 敵^{てき}を窮^{きゅう}地^{うち}に追い込むのは重要な戦^{せん}略^{りゃく}です。

Cornering the enemy is an important war strategy.

3. 冷たい空気が流れ込んでいます。

Cold air is flowing in.

4. 我々の大学が徹^て底^{つて}的^{いてき}に全教科課程を学生の頭に教え込むためには、そういった教授を雇用する必要があります。

It is necessary that our university employ professors that exhaustively drill the curriculum into the minds of their students.

Ending Note: More compound verbs are based off of the solely transitive form ～こめる.

5. 部屋に閉じ込められた。

I was locked in a room.

6. 策^{さく}動^{どう}を封^{ふう}じ込める。(Rare)

To contain a scheme.

込・籠める

1. To load bullets.

8. 実弾を込める。

To hold live fire.

2. To pour emotion into. This is where を込めて mostly applies.

9. 彼は満身の力を込めて大石を投げた。

He threw a great stone with all his strength.

10. 心をこめて持て成す。

To make welcome with (all) one's heart.

3. To include another item. Using 含める is more common.

11. 消費税を込めた料金

Fee with sales tax included.

4. As an intransitive verb, it means "enshroud (clouds, mist, etc.)".

12a. 霧が町に込めた。（Old-fashioned）

12b. 霧が町に立ち込めた。（Natural）

Mist enshrouded the village.

～込める

～込める may mean to "put into" or "to do away with". Examples include the following.

To imprison	閉じ込める
To seal up	塗り込める
To argue down	言い込める
To envelop	立ち込める
To confine	封じ込める
To shut up	押し込める

13. 雲の立ち込めた山を見よ。

Look at the cloud enveloped mountains!

14. 相手を言いこめた。

I argued down my opponent.

15. 強盗は人質を物置に押し込めた。

The burglar pushed the hostages down into a closet.

16. 強盗は人質を物置きに押し込んだ。

The burglar pushed the hostages into the closet.

17. 神社には、壁に塗り込められた経文がある。

There are sutras painted over in walls at shrines.

Table of Contents

第186課: As soon as: ~や(いなや), ~なり, ~途端(に), ~かと思うと, & ~次第

Though "as" itself is hard enough in Japanese, Japanese also has a lot of expressions that mean "as soon as". This lesson will investigate how to use these expressions. Take close attention to what defines them as there are differences!

~や否や & ~や

Placed after the ^{しゅうしけい}終止形 of a verb in ~や or ~や^{いな}否や, it means "as soon as". With 否や, it is like the second action takes place before the first action can even be confirmed or done. The most used is や否や. In fact, や否や will be used 90% of the time.

1. ^{じしん はっせい}地震が発生するやいなや、^{きしょうちょう}気象庁は^{ただ}直ちに^{つなみけいほう}津波警報を出しました。

As soon as the earthquake happened, the Meteorological Agency issued a tsunami warning.

2. 姉の顔を見るやいなや、泣き出した。

I began weeping as soon as I saw my sister's face.

3a. その選手はチャンスと見るや、一気に {攻め込んだ・攻撃をしかけた}。

3b. その選手はチャンスと見るやいなや、一気に {攻め込んだ・攻撃をしかけた}。

(あまり使わない言い方)

The player felt a chance open and attacked in one burst.

4. ^{しゅっぱつ}出発するやいなや^ふ雨が降り出した。

It started to rain as soon as I departed.

~ やいなや cannot be used to show the speaker's wants or intentions. Also, don't use the past tense before ~やいなや. The action can be something that you

can expect. It's important to understand that the events of the second clause are actions/movements.

5. うちの猫は魚が大好きで、あげるやいなや、一気に全部食べてしまう。

My cat loves fish, and the instant you give it to it, it's gone in an instant.

The Conjunctive Particle なり

After the 連体形 of a verb, ～なり shows that something is done as soon as something else is done. So right when someone does something, they do something next in sequence to the first action. The subject is normally third person, and the subject is the same in both clauses.

6a. 宿題を済ませるなり、彼らはインターネットを使った。

6b. 宿題を済ませるとすぐに、彼らはインターネットを使った。(More natural)

They used the Internet as soon as they finished their homework.

7. 彼は帰るなり、トイレに行った。

He went to the bathroom as soon as he got home.

8. 社長は入ってくるなり、大声で怒鳴りました。

As soon as the company president came in, he shouted in a big voice.

The word comes from the なり in words like 身なり (appearance). The event in the second clause is often one that describes an action/condition not wanted. Although it is used some in the spoken language, it is usually reserved to writing.

After the past tense, it shows a situation that is still in play as another action begins. It is unnatural when you move in any way to a different action.

9. 彼は靴を履いたなり、畳に上がってしまった。 △

彼は靴を履いたまま、畳に上がってしまった。 ○

He accidentally stepped onto the tatami mat with his shoes still.

10. 彼女は公園でベンチに座り込んだ {なり・まま}、眠ってしまった。

She fell asleep while sitting on a park bench.

～途端（に）

When students learn of 途端に, they immediately think of ～ときに, especially when they learn that this phrase is used after the past tense. Understandable, ～たとき（に） and ～たとたん（に） vaguely resemble each other, especially when not written in 漢字.

～た^{とたん}途端（に） is, again, only used with the past tense. It marks the instant after one does something. This “something” that happens afterward is something that is **unexpected** and much of a surprise.

11. 彼がドアを開けた途端、車が爆発した。

The car exploded just as he opened the door.

12. まど^{まど}窓を開けた途端に、犬が飛び出していった。

As soon as I opened the window, the rabbit jumped out.

13. さ^さ立ち去った途端に、その^{たてもの}建物が^{ばくはつ}爆発したよ！

As soon as he left, the building exploded!

14. どうが^み動画を観た途端に、ねむ^{ねむ}眠くなってしまった。

I accidentally fell asleep as soon as I saw the video.

15. 余所見をした途端、転んだ。

I fell down as soon as I turned away.

16. 酒を飲むと、（その）途端に人が変わる。

Once a person drinks, that person changes instantly.

Grammar Note: 途端 may also be used in the sense of instantly and can be seen with such statements.

As seen in the example sentences, though, ～た途端（に） can't be used when something volitional occurs. So, although a situation may be unexpected, you would need to use a phrase like ～たら、すぐに if you are using a verb of volition.

17. ベルが鳴ったら、すぐに外に出てください。

When the bell rings, immediately go outside.

～かと思うと

Perhaps because it is rarely treated separately in grammar discussions, students have a hard time knowing how to use this phrase. This describes something happening that causes a sense of surprise, similar to ～た途端（に）, which follows after an event described in the first clause. Transitivity, though, is clearly different as ～た途端（に） is used with transitive expressions, but this phrase does not have that requirement.

You cannot use this phrase for yourself. At times it may be best to use ～かと思ったら instead. Sentences of command, negation, or will appear afterwords. For some people, when the event is not of the future or going back in forth in a way that means the first action may happen again in the "future", then the use of ～かと思うと is somewhat unnatural and should be replaced with ～かと思ったら. So, for the sentences below regarding weather, you can paraphrase with the latter and have no problem.

Examples

18. 雨が降ってきたかと {思うと ?/○・思ったら ○}、もう止んだ。

Just when I thought it had started to rain, it stopped.

19. 空が曇ってきたと {思うと ?/○・思ったら ○}、突然大雨になった。

Just when I thought it got cloudy, it started to rain heavily.

20. 彼女は A 君のことを好きだと言っていたかと思うと、次は B 君が好きだと言い出し、何を考えているのかよく分らない。

Just as I had thought she said she liked A-kun, she then stated that she liked B-kun, and so I don't know what she's thinking.

22. うちの子供は帰ってきたかと {思うと ?/○・思ったら ○}、もう外に遊びに行っ
た。

The kids had already gone to play outside just when I thought they had come home.

～次第

As a regular noun, 次第 means "course of events". It is seen after nouns a lot, especially Sino-Japanese words, but also after the 連用形 of verbs.

When it attaches to other nouns, it often means "depending on". As such, when after the 連用形 of a verb, it may show that something is dependent on an action in question.

23. せいきゅう
請 求 があり次第だ。

It's on demand.

24. 物事は状況次第。

Circumstances alter cases.

25. こういう次第だ。

This is how it stands.

26. 万事は君の（この）取り扱い方次第だ。

It depends on the way you handle it.

27. 天気の様子次第で行くかどうか決めるんだ。

I'm going to decide on whether to go or not depending on the weather condition.

28. 大統領が決心するかどうかはそれ次第だ。

The president's resolution depends on this.

29. 豊作になるかどうかは天気次第です。

An abundant harvest is dependent on the weather.

30. 結果は君次第だ。

The results depend on you.

31. 昇進できるかどうかは能力次第だ。

Promotion is dependent on one's ability.

連用形 + 次第

It may also be used with the 連用形 of a verb to show what happens "as soon as...". This is in the sense that right after something realizes, one does the next action. Thus, the second clause following must be a verb of volition in regards to the speaker. This separates it quite well from the other "as soon as" phrases in this lesson.

32. 着き次第、被災地に援助します。

As soon as we arrive, we will aid in the disaster area.

33. 手当たり次第に食べ物を買い^し占める。

To buy up food as it is made available.

34. 満員になり次第締め切ろう。

Let's close up as soon as we become a full house.

35. 我々は雪がやみ次第、作業を再び始めるつもりです。

We plan to resume operations as soon as it stops snowing.

Adverbial 次第に

Lastly, 次第に is an adverb meaning "gradually", "finally", or "in order".

36. 機械は {次第にだんだんと} ^{すた} 廃 れていくだろう。

Machines will gradually go out of date.

37. ^{そうおん} 騒 音 が次第に消えてゆく。

Noise will gradually fade away.

第187課: Opportunity: きっかけ & 契機

This lesson is the second of five lessons that focus on nominal phrases that deserve special attention.

きっかけ

As a noun, きっかけに means "trigger" or "prompt". In the speech modal きっかけに it means "take the opportunity to...".

1. 日本語を勉強し始めたきっかけは何ですか。

What was it that triggered you to begin studying Japanese?

2. この事件をきっかけに、反対の声を上げる。

To raise opposition in taking advantage of the case.

3. 事故をきっかけに、家族の ^{けっそく} 結 ^{かた} 束 を 固 める。

Take the accident to bring the family back together.

契機

契機 means "opportunity" and is in the speech modal を契機に meaning "taking the opportunity".

4. それを契機に、新しい商売を始める。

Taking the opportunity and starting a new business.

5. 言論弾圧を契機に暴動が起こる事がバーレーンに生じています。

Violence is occurring in taking the opportunity of suppressing speech in Bahrain.

第188課: Combination Particles with ところ

While learning about the particle ところ, you'll be introduced to combination particles. We've seen many instances where 2(+) particles can be used together, but we haven't really dealt with instances where one or more used together make a new phrase.

Combination Particles: *A particle phrase made up of either more than **one particle** or a **particle(s)** with another part of speech.*

ところ

The noun 所 means "place". There are four usages of ところ. These usages can be used in many situations. It can be used to show place, moment of time, situation, or the substance of a matter. More specific things that it can show include the following.

- Show a specific space or spot.
- Show a particular place, part, or position.
- Show a point, address, region, etc.
- Shows the current time in phrases like このところ and 今日の所.
- Show a particular time.
- With a meaning of content/outline.
- 早いところ = Promptly

When seen after a verb, tense is very important for correct interpretation. With the **non-past** tense, ところ means "just about to...". When used with the **past** tense of a verb, it shows what you "just did". This can only be used to indicate the time when a certain action has literally just been done. If you want to say that you just recently did something, you should use ～たばかりです.

When used with the **progressive**, it shows that you are now doing a certain action. The "just" may also be emphasized with adverbs such as ちょうど. This simply an extension of translation of its usage to show time. The tense just shows the time factor.

1. 帰るところだ。

I'm about to go home.

2. 学校に行くところでした。

I was about to go to school.

3. 事故を起こすところだったよ。

I was about to cause an accident.

4. 忘れるところでした。

I almost forgot.

5. よく晴れるところもあります。

There are also places where it is quite clear.

6. 雨の降るところもありそうです。

There also seems to be places where it's raining.

7. 陽が沈むところです。

The sun is about to set.

8. 会社を出たところです。

I just left the company.

9. 彼の言ったところが分かりませんでした。

I didn't understand what *he* said.

10. この国の議会では、B 党の占めるところが大きい。

In this/our country's parliament, B party is the majority.

11. 彼女の理論は、仲間の調査によるところが大きい。

Her theory mainly relies on the research by his friends.

12. 人は建物を余すところなく建てている。

People are building buildings exhaustively.

13. もう ^{いっぽ}一歩 といったところですが。

You're just one more step away, but...

14. 私たちは田舎に新築の家をちょうど買ったところです。

We have just bought a new house in the countryside.

Grammar Note: You can also see **ところ** after speech modals like **～ようとする**
～てしまった. It works the same way.

Combination Particles with **ところ**

The meaning of a combination will reflect that of its individual parts put together. However, for the conjunctive particles that are created with **ところ**, this may not be that obvious. These combinations below may also not be used as conjunctive particles and can be more literally interpreted in different situations. Don't let punctuation get the best of you.

	Meaning	Usage
ところへ	Just when	Shows coincidence of events after -ている or -た .
ところが	But/while	Shows unexpected bad outcome.
ところで	Even if (X) were to...	Poses an undesirable hypothetical situation.
ところを	Although usually	Shows something unexpected is happening

Grammar Notes:

1. **ところ** may often be shortened to just **とこ**.

2. **ところへ** may also be **ところに**.

3. The particle **ところ** either shows a sequence or contradiction depending on context. The last usage is synonymous with **ところが**. These are conjunction usages of **ところ**.

Examples

15. 科学の宿題をし始めようとしているところへ、僕の友だちが遊びにきた。

Just when I was about to start doing my science homework, my friends came to play.

16. にわかあめ 俄 雨 がやんだところへ、たいふう 台 風 が町を おそ 襲 った。

Just when the shower quit, a typhoon hit the town.

17. 彼女は僕が好きらしいんだよね。ところが、彼女の方は僕が知ってるなんて全く気がついてないよ。

She (seems) to love me you know. But, she doesn't realize that I know it at all.

Grammar Note: As you can see, **ところが** may also be used as a conjunction at the beginning of a sentence to mean "even so/however/but".

18. 半分したところで、彼はもう済ませたよ。

I've finished half, but he's already finished!

19. いつもなら6時に起きるところを、今朝は寝 坊 して、学校に遅刻してしまった。

Although I always wake up at six, I overslept this morning and became late to school.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What does the noun 所 mean?
2. Relate 所 as a noun and ところ as a particle.
3. Create a sentence using 所 as a noun.
4. Create a sentence using ところ with the non-past tense of a verb.

5. Create a sentence using ところ with the past tense of a verb.
6. Create a sentence using ところへ.
7. Create a sentence using ところが.
8. Create a sentence using ところで.
9. Create a sentence using ところを.
10. Many consider the combination particles with ところ as conjunctions. Consider this point and either refute, defend, or qualify it.

第189課: ~ざるを得ない & やむを得ない

The を in these phrases is not the case particle you are used to. Here, it is a conjunctive particle, which is a usage from Classical Japanese that remains in these expressions. Pay attention to what phrases these phrases are similar and the things that make them different.

漢字 Note: The やむ in やむを得ない can be written in 漢字 as 止む or 已む.

~ざるを得ない

~ざる is the ^{れんたいけい}連体形 of the classical/old-fashioned negative auxiliary verb ~ず; thus, this pattern attaches to the ^{みぜんけい え}未然形. 得ない is the negative form of 得る. Put together, ~ざる^えを得ない means "there is no other choice but to". As for する and 来る, you must use the せ- and こ- 未然形 respectively because we are using an older ending. So, **never say しざる**.

する →	せざる
来る →	来ざる

Common questions in regards to this pattern include what the subject of the sentence, when it is appropriate to use, and how it differs from the “must phrases”. This phrase has a negative tone, and should not be used in situations where such implications would be inappropriate. The action is something that one does not want to really do. There is also some outside force that is making you have .It is this that separates it from the “must phrases”.

Although this is typically more common in the written language, it is still occasionally used in the spoken language. In this case, it is often followed by things like ~だろう・でしょう, ~（ん）じゃないか, ~と思う, 等.

Examples

1. . . . ということを ^{みと}認 めざるを得ません。

We have no other choice but to recognize...

2. ^{あくてんこう}悪 天 候 のため、^{われわれ}我 々 は ^{ちゅうし}ピクニックを 中 止 せざるを得なかったです。

There was no other choice but to call off the picnic due to the weather.

3. このコンピューターが壊れたら、新しいのを買わざるをえないよ。

If this computer breaks, there is no other choice but to buy a new one.

4. ^{はいしゃ}歯 医 者 さんに行かざるを得ない。

There's no other choice but to go to the dentist.

5. 僕が引き受けざるを得ないじゃないか。

There's no other way but me having to undertake it, no?

6. 海外旅行に行くと、自分がアメリカ人であることを意識せざるをえない。

When you travel overseas, you have no other choice but to be conscious of the fact that you are an American.

7. 生徒が試験に失敗をすれば、先生は責任を取らざるをえない。

If the student fails an exam, the student has no choice but to take responsibility.

8. 社長からの命令なので、やらざるを得ません。

Since this is an order from the company president, I have no choice but to do it.

- 9a. この問題はもう一度検討しざるを得ない。X

- 9b. この問題はもう一度検討せざるを得ない。O

We have no choice but to examine this problem one more time.

やむを得ない

や
止む を得ない shows that something is inevitable. We don't attach it to anything like the phrase above because 止む is a verb--the intransitive form of やめる.

10. それは ^{おそ}恐らく止むを得なかったのだろう。

It was perhaps inevitable.

11. 止むを得ない理由の ^{ちこく}遅刻だから。

It's because of inevitable delays.

Table of Contents

第190課: The Seasons

The seasons in Japan occur at the same time as the rest of the Northern Hemisphere. In this lesson we will learn about events and vocab concerning the seasons. The four seasons, 四季, are recited as "春夏秋冬" in Japanese. A season (季節) has a native and a formal term.

Spring	春、春季	はる、しゅんき	Fall	秋、秋季	あき、しゅき
Summer	夏、夏季	なつ、かき	Winter	冬、冬季	ふゆ、とうき

Spring

The Japanese proverb 我が世の春を謳歌（おうか）する means "enjoy the height of one's prosperity", referring to the lovely attitude towards spring. In literature spring is often emphasized with the epithets 梓弓 and 弓を張る.

Event	Date	Description
花見	4 月	Every year thousands go look at cherry blossoms (桜).
雛祭り	3 月 3 日	Households are decorated with 雛人形.
卒園式 卒業式 人事異動	3 月	(Kindergarten) graduations and personnel changes
入園式 入学式 入社式	4 月	(Kindergarten) enrollment and new employees' ceremonies
灌仏会（かんぶつえ）	4 月 8 日	The birthday of Buddha.
イースター	4 月	
母の日	First 日曜日 of 5 月	Mother's Day

Summer

Event	Date	Description
天神祭り	6~7月	The 天満宮（てんまんぐう） and the 天神社（てんじんじゃ） shrines celebrate for a month to commemorate the death of 菅原道真（すがわらのみちざね）. Signature items includes お迎（むか）え人形, だんご船, 龍踊り, and the ギャル御輿（みこし）.
七夕	7月	七夕（たなばた） is based on the myth that the two stars, 織姫（Vega） and 牽牛・けんぎゅう（Altair）, meet each other but once a year.
お盆	7月15日	Honors the return of the dead with dances 盆踊り and 大太鼓 drums.
夏休み		Summer vacation.
花火大会		Fireworks festivals.

Autumn

As the proverb 秋の日は釣瓶落とし says, fall sets as soon as a bucket drops into a well. There are many proverbs and words in relationship to fall. Below are some of the most important of these phrases.

高秋	An autumn with a perfectly blue sky.
素秋	Equivalent to autumn being perfectly golden.
白秋	Equivalent to autumn being perfectly golden.
白帝	The god that controls autumn.
金秋	A golden autumn.
三秋	The three parts of fall.
九秋	The three months of fall.
天高く馬肥ゆる秋	Autumn with the sky clear and blue, and horses growing stout.
一日三秋	Waiting with each moment feeling like an eternity.
一日千秋	Waiting with each moment feeling like an eternity.
物言えば唇寒し秋の風	Silence is golden.
女心と秋の空	A woman's heart and autumn weather.
秋の扇	A woman who has lost a man's affection.

秋の鹿は笛に寄る	People may bring about their demise for love.
春秋に富む	To be young and have a bright future.

Winter

Winter is a wonderful time. Winter starts on the winter solstice (冬至). 暖冬 means "warm winter" and 厳冬 "means "cold winter". People throw 雪玉 (snowballs) and make 雪だるま (snowmen). As people wait for 真冬日, the day that the temperature drops below 0, many others wait for the holidays and events like 冬の祭り.

Event	Date	Description
クリスマス	12月25日	Christmas usually loses religious value.
お歳暮	12月	Giving particular gifts to those that showed you kindness in the year.
忘年会	年末	End of the year party to literally "forget" the year.
年越し	12月31日	New Year's Eve.
新年会	1月	A party held for the beginning of the new year.
節分		The last day of winter is commemorated by bean scattering.

National Holidays

Japanese national holidays used to all have names based off of Shintoism and Buddhism. But, after World War II, the terms became secularized. Holidays were established in Japan by the Public Holiday Law, 国民の祝日に関する法律. The practice of a Monday becoming a holiday because Sunday is one is called 振替休日. A holiday made when a holiday is before and after a day is called a 国民の休日.

元日	New Year's Day	1月1日	The beginning of the year!
成人の日	Coming of Age Day	2nd 月曜日 of 1月	Congratulate those that are now 20.
建国記念の日	Foundation Day	2月11日	Japan's birthday

春分の日	Vernal Equinox Day	～3月20日	Admire nature.
昭和の日	Showa Day	4月29日	Emperor Showa's birthday
憲法記念日	Constitution Memorial Day	5月3日	Constitution enactment celebration
みどりの日	Greenery Day	5月4日	Be grateful for Mother Earth!
こどもの日	Children's Day	5月5日	A fabulous idea
海の日	Marine Day	3rd 月曜日 of 七月	Be grateful to the ocean.
敬老の日	Respect-for-the-Aged Day	3rd 月曜日 of 九月	Respect old people!
秋分の日	Autumnal Equinox Day	～9月23日	
体育の日	Health and Sports Day	2nd 月曜日 of 十月	Get a workout!
文化の日	Culture Day	10月3日	Marks announcement of constitution.
天皇誕生日	The Emperor's Birthday	12月23日	A good excuse for a holiday

五節句

The are five 節句 (seasonal festivals) observed in Japan, and their dates are based off of the lunar calendar. The dates are now confused because the Western calendar is in standard use.

Number	Name of Day	Name of Event	Traditional Date	New Date
--------	-------------	---------------	------------------	----------

1	人日（じんじつ）	七草の節句	7th day of 1st month	January 7
2	上巳（じょうし）	桃の節句	3rd day of 3rd month	March 3
3	端午（たんご）	端午の節句	5th day of 5th month	May 5
4	七夕（たなばた）	七夕の節句	7th day of 7th month	July 7
5	重陽（ちょうよう）	菊の節句	9th day of 9th month	September 9

正月

The Japanese New Year used to start at the same time as it does in China. Now, it happens on January 1st. The New Year is called 正月. January 1st is 元旦, and New Year's Eve is 大晦日.

People send 年賀状 (New Year cards), except to those that have had a lost loved one in the year. For those that have lost someone, they send out a 喪中葉書き saying not to send 年賀状. What is written in a 年賀状? You could see some of the following.

今年もよろしくお願ひします
明けましておめでとうございます
謹賀新年

On December 31 the づらがね is rung 108 times to ward off evil spirits. There are a lot of things that are only eaten at New Years. 餅 is a rice paddy cake that a lot of people choke on and die each year. 餅 becomes a decoration

called 鏡餅. It consists of two 餅 with a 橙 (bitter orange). Some more お節料理 (New Year dishes) include:

蒲鉾 (かまぼこ)	Fish cakes
昆布	(Boiled) seaweed
黒豆	Sweetened black soybeans
お雑煮	Soup with 餅 and other ingredients
七草粥 (ななくさがゆ)	Seven-herb rice soup
金平牛蒡 (きんぴらごぼう)	Simmered burdock root

Kids receiving money is called お年玉. People play games such as the card game カルタ, kite flying (凧揚 (たこあ) げ), etc. This last game involves blindfolding and decorating someone with paper face parts. カルタ involves figuring out what line of poetry comes from which poem of the 百人一首, a Classical Japanese compilation.

To mark the first event of something in the new year, use 初-.

初詣	はつもうで	Going to the shrine for the first time of the year.
初日の出	はつひので	First sunrise of the year.
初夢	はつゆめ	First dream of the year
初顔合わせ	はつかおあわせ	First meeting of the year

Exercises

1. How do you say the four seasons in Japanese?
2. What are the different terms for the times of spring?
3. What are the different terms for the times of summer?
4. What are the different terms for the times of autumn?
5. What are the different terms for the times of winter?
6. Give an example of a holiday/event in spring.
7. Give an example of a holiday/event in summer.
8. Give an example of a holiday/event in autumn.
9. Give an example of a holiday/event in winter.
10. Create a paragraph describing a time you had in a particular season in Japanese.

第191課: Rain

There isn't anything hard about 雨, but it is actually one of many words potentially from the Austronesian language family (which formed in Taiwan and spread throughout the Philippines, Indonesia, the Pacific and elsewhere). A growing number of Japanese scholars believe these speakers had contact with Japanese speaking populations in the ancient period. 雨 is just one of the resultant words from this probable cultural exchange.

When words evolve, they often create offshoots with related meanings. Before you start thinking this is just like Inuit having tons of words for snow, remember that English is just as guilty. First, we'll have fun figuring out where 雨 came from. Then, we'll look at all the words for kinds of rain as well as sounds for rain. In the end, you'll have enough rain words at your disposal to make rainy poetry...

The Etymology of 雨

The Kanji 雨 has four readings: ウ, あめ, あま-, -さめ. The first is from Chinese, so we won't need it until later. The last three, however, are clearly related to each other, but the lack of "s" in the first two poses a problem to naive natives or learners that think native words have changed little.

To those that think Japanese and Korean are related to each other, 雨 really causes problems because the Korean word for rain is /pi/. How can /pi/ possibly have any connection to something in Japanese? This, too, will be looked into.

sebu/(n)sepu: The Beginning of 雨

Early constructed Austronesian words for rain include sebu and (n)sepu. This word in Austronesian had several related words, all of which appear

to have contributed to Japanese. It appears that sebu made it to Japanese as sopo and sabu. It appears that there was free variation between b and p in the ancient period, and given that similar words are being borrowed, vowels can easily shift around.

sopo → そほ降る, どぼん, ぽとぽと, ほとばしる, ほとびる

In Poem 3883 of the 万葉集, the oldest work in Japanese, the phrase 小雨そほ降る appears. そほ is sopo. The pronunciation of o-sounds is contested. Some posit that Japanese had two o-vowels similar to Modern Korean. Sopo would eventually become sofo and then be found as sobo in the phrase そほ降る (to drizzle), basically just as it is seen 2,000 years in the past.

The s in sopo became replaced with the t. A direct derivative of topo is どぼん, which means "plop". The the two syllables would then flip to produce poto. This poto survives in ぽとぽと, which is an onomatopoeia that describes the trickling down of heavy tears. It also survives in the verb ほとばしる (to gush out) and ほとびる (to swell from absorbed moisture).

sabu → ざぶざぶ, さばさば, ざぶん, さめざめ, -さめ, あめ, あま-

The form sabu can be seen today in words like ざぶざぶ (onomatopoeia for gushing), さばさば (candid), さっぱり (refreshing). ざぶん (splash/plop), however, is a clear descendant of sabu. The ba in "saba" would be interchanged with ma. This should not be surprising because b and m remain interchangeable in many words to this day like つぶる・つむる (to close one's eyes).

With time, the さめざめ in さめざめ (と) 泣く (crying sorrowfully) was born. Thus, we finally have -same. Drop the s and you get 雨! あま- would then be a given derivative due to the noun compounding rules established by that time.

The Korean /pi/

Although there is without a doubt that there has been cultural borrowings between Japanese and Korean speakers for centuries, it's still impossible to show that tons of words share common origin. However, it's also true that although many words appear to come from Austronesian languages, vast differences in grammar suggests at best just major borrowing.

Nevertheless, if we want to look for a pre-sebu word for rain in Japanese of Korean origin, we would need to find something that looks like /pi/. It turns out that this is very easy to do. 樋 is a word for gutter and water pump, and it so happens to have the readings とひ and ひ. If we take the と to be related to 戸 and focus on the ひ, we see a resemblance to /pi/. In fact, if we consider ancient pronunciation, they're the same. The readings とゆ and とよ came much later, so they pose no problem to this analysis.

Conclusions

Is anything of this fact without a shadow of a doubt? No, but that's not the main point that you should take from this. Rather, if you as a learner had gathered up these words in your vocabulary and pondered on them, you'd probably find similar connections. Finding patterns in words that are similar that you know will only help you retain what things mean and make sense of the language as a whole.

Citation Note: It would do no justice to not mention 川本崇雄, whose brilliant research led to these discoveries. His book 南から来た日本語 is a truly fascinating book that any person who is interested in the origins of Japanese words should read.

雨に関する言葉

It appears that Japanese is now the new target for having too many words for the same thing: 雨. Is that really the case? Sure, there are definitely many words derived from or with 雨, but so what? When you type 雨 into an online dictionary like jisho.org, you will find tons of words with 雨. Not all are commonly used words. Some are very formal. If a rain word doesn't have 雨 in it, you probably won't think to look elsewhere to find other such words.

Sure, it rains a lot in Japan. It also rains a lot other parts of the world. By no means should you ignore the relationship between language and geography, but the overwhelming majority of "rain" related words come from Chinese. Yes, the language does have many words for rain, but it's no more than other languages spoken in areas with similar climates.

Speech Styles Note: "Written language" simply refers to literary contexts. Some words may be used in the spoken language, but they may be more formal or typical of a news report. The descriptions will try to account for all of this, but each word will have its unique but ever changing use.

Reading Note: Remember that ウ is the Sino-Japanese reading for 雨. It is typically an indicator that a word is formal. It is used constructively to make many rain related words, some of which may be commonly used in the spoken language like 雨量 (うりょう) for rainfall.

The Many 'Rain' Words

雨: Not having 雨 in a list of 'rain' words would be stupid. It's used in all sorts of settings in speaking and writing. It is the basic word for rain in Japanese. For origin, reread the start of this lesson.

小雨(こさめ): This refers to a little rain falling or rain falling that is very thin. It is very common in the spoken language, but it has the rare reading こあめ. I would advice not to use this, but its existence does bring to mind the struggle for the initial s's existence. In the written language, this word can also be read as しょうう. しょうう may also be spelled as 少雨. This can be translated as either "light/slight rain", "drizzle", or even "sprinkle".

晴一時小雨 (はれいちじこさめ): This is a brief 小雨.

大雨(おおあめ): This is rain that falls in large quantities. It is the opposite of 小雨, and it is also very common in the spoken language. In the written language, it may also be read as たいう. This may be translated as "downpour" or "heavy rain".

小降り (こぶり): This word refers to rain or snow falling with weak intensity. It is appropriate to relate this to "rain letting up". This word is a commonly used word in the spoken language.

大降り (おおぶり): This is the antonym of 小降り. It refers to rain coming down with great intensity, and it can be translated as "downfall", "heavy rain", "torrential rain", but remember that it is referring to intensity rather than quantity. Though large amounts of rain come with great intensity, the angle the word takes is different than with 大雨. This word is also commonly used in the spoken language.

小粒 (こつぶ) の雨: This is small drop rain. This word is very common in the spoken language.

大粒 (おおつぶ) の雨: This is big drop rain. This word is very common in the spoken language.

土砂降り（どしゃぶり） : Usually followed by the copula although the colloquial verb form 土砂降る does exist, this is a very natural way of saying "downpour". The rain in a 土砂降り is of 大粒 size.

豪雨（ごうう）: This is a slightly more technical word for "downpour", which is why it is found in more technical words like 集中豪雨 (localized torrential flooding). This word refers to large amounts of rain coming down with great intensity. It's like a combination of 大雨 and 大降り.

雨脚・雨足（あまあし） : This very common word means "passing shower". The word may uncommonly be read as あめあし.

涙雨（なみだあめ） : This can be used to refer to rain akin to sad tears or it can refer to a light amount of rain falling.

弱雨（じゃくう） : This is a made-up word that no one uses, and it's meant to compliment the opposite, 強雨, which does exist. In the spoken language, you would just say 弱い雨, which is used in meteorology as well.

強雨（きょうう）: This would be 強い雨 in the spoken language, but this word does exist in technical situations. The wind related term 強風 is used in the spoken language whereas 強雨, which is not that congruent, but what do you expect?

微雨（びう） : This is a literary word for 細か {な・い} 雨. This is light, drizzly rain.

細雨（さいう）: This is a literary word for 細か {な・い} 雨. Though also referring to a drizzle, it may also refer to misty rain. However, this is expressed in the spoken language as 霧雨.

（小）糠雨（（こ）ぬかあめ）: This is rain where the rain drops are incredibly thin and misty. This is acceptable in the spoken language, though it isn't something that you would casually drop in a conversation. 小- is used as an intensifier.

霧雨（きりさめ） : This is the spoken language word for "misty rain".

煙雨（えんう）: This is a literary word that comes from a comparison of smoke to misty rain.

俄雨（にわかあめ） : A combination of にわか (sudden/abrupt) and 雨, 俄雨 refers to a rain that suddenly pours and then just ends. This is somewhat specific, but it doesn't prevent it from being used in the spoken language.

夕立（ゆうだち） : This is a shower that lasts into the evening that starts in the latter part of the afternoon in the summer. The rain comes down hard and suddenly, and lightning typically accompanies it.

急雨（きゅうう） : This is a rare word for 俄雨. 急な雨 would be used in the spoken language to replace this.

白雨（はくう）: This is a very literary term for the same thing as 俄雨.

驟雨（しゅうう）: This is an insanely rare, literary word for the same thing as 俄雨.

長雨（ながあめ） : This is a commonly spoken word meaning "long rain" in the sense that rain continues on for several days.

霖（ながめ）: Coming from a contraction of ながあめ, this word can often be found in things like poetry.

霖雨（りんう） : This is rather literary term that means the same thing as 長雨.

陰霖（いんりん）: This is a very rare word for 長雨.

陰雨（いんう） : This is a literary word referring to gloomy rain. This can be expressed in the spoken language with 陰気な雨.

淫雨（いんう） : This is a literary word that refers to long lasting rains, but bad consequences are implied to crops.

時雨 (しぐれ) : This is a somewhat poetic word that refers to the scattered rains that start in late autumn and end in early winter. It is seen in a lot of compound expressions such as 時雨空, 秋時雨, 初時雨, 村時雨, etc. It even has the verb form 時雨れる, although 時雨が降る is far more common.

梅雨 (つゆ・ばいう): The first reading is native and the second reading is Sino-Japanese, but both are extremely common words in both the written and spoken languages. Though the latter may be slightly less frequent, both words refer to the rainy season which lasts in Japan from June to July. ばいう may also be rarely spelled as 徼雨. ばいう does get used more in technical phrases such as 梅雨前線 (rainy season front). Some years, the rainy season may be dry, 空梅雨 (からつゆ). Entering the rainy season is called 梅雨入り・入梅 (つゆいり). A dry spell in the rainy season is called a 梅雨晴れ (つゆばれ). The end of the season is called the 梅雨明け (つゆあけ).

雨季 (うき): This is another commonly used word for "rainy season", but the main difference is that this is not Japan-specific. When stressing on a particular part of the year, this word may alternatively be spelled as 雨期.

五月雨 (さみだれ): Also rarely read as さつきあめ, this somewhat common word refers to continuous long rains in the fifth lunar month. This is the same as 梅雨, but the basis of meaning is slightly different.

春雨 (はるさめ): In relation to rain, this word refers to the thin rain that quietly falls in spring. This word is common in the spoken language, but it can also be read as しゅんう in the written language. Aside from rain, it can also mean "thin bean starch noodles". This is clearly analogous to the shape of "spring rains".

春霖 (しゅんりん) : This is a rare literary word for 春雨.

菜種梅雨 (なたねづゆ) : This is a rare, literary, yet native word for 春霖.

夏雨 (かう): This is very rare and practically only found in the technical phrase 温暖夏雨気候 (temperate rainy summer climate). なつさめ is a viable phrase, but it is not particularly common, and not all speakers will agree that it is a word.

秋雨 (あきさめ) : Read as あきさめ in the spoken language and as しゅうう in the written language, this word refers to autumn rain. This especially refers to long autumnal rains, and it is not appropriate to refer to 秋雨 in this season. The word itself in the spoken language is common, especially in autumn...

秋霖 (しゅうりん) : This is a rare literary word for 秋雨.

冬雨 (ふゆさめ): This is not a word to many speakers, but it does sometimes get used. People assume that if you can say はるさめ and あきさめ, then there shouldn't be any problem with ふゆさめ. As it is a contested word, use something else for school assignments.

春の雨; 夏の雨; 秋の雨; 冬の雨: Aside from just specific terms like above, you could just use these phrases to just mention rain in a certain season.

氷雨 (ひさめ): This means "freezing rain", referring to really cold rain, but it can also mean "hail". Hail, though, is typically the next two words.

雹 (ひょう): Equivalent to "hail(stone)", 雹 fall down from cumulonimbus clouds in a thunderstorm. The diameter of one is at least five millimeters.

霰 (あられ) : This is regular, small-sized hail as the result of mist crystallizing in the air. This is far more common in the spoken language than 雹. Both words are typically spelled in ひらがな.

霰 (みぞれ) : This word means "sleet" and is a rather common word, although it is typically spelled in ひらがな.

雨混 (ま) じりの雪: Rain-mixed snow. This phrase and the next one are both common expressions.

雪混じりの雨 : Snow-mixed rain. The major precipitation is opposite of the previous expression.

雨後雪 (あめのちゆき) : Often seen in weather reports, this means "snow after rain".

雨下 (うか) : A rare written language word for raining, which is typically 雨が降る in the spoken language.

風雨 (ふうう) : Literally "wind and rain", this is actually a rather common word. However, it's a tad bit too formal to be seen in colloquial conversations.

暴風雨 (ぼうふうう) : This is a technical yet still frequently used word for "storm".

雨模様 (あまもよう) : Also read as あめもよう, this is the most common way to refer to "signs of rain".

雨催い (あまもよい) : This is an old-fashioned way of saying the previous thing, and it can be alternatively read as あめもよい.

雨気 (うき) : This is the Sino-Japanese word for "signs of rain", and as you can guess, it's very formal and basically not used. This can also be read as あまけ, which is more common.

雨氷 (うひょう) : This is rain that is colder than 0°C, and it quickly hardens when it hits the surface of something. Though translated as "freezing rain", it is quite technical and practical only used in meteorological formats.

横降り(よこぶり) : This word is a commonly spoken word meaning "driving rain". However, it can also refer to snow. The point is that it refers to rain being made to fall slanted due to gale winds.

吹き降り (ふきぶり) : This word is a commonly spoken word that refers to strong wind accompanied with heavy rain, thus making it synonymous with 横降り. In

this case, however, the emphasis is on the wind itself, not the direction of the rain.

天泣 (てんきゅう) : Though more natural to just say 雲がないのに雨が降る, this is not as esoteric as some of these other words.

晴後雨 (はれのちあめ): Often seen during news weather reports, this means "rain after being clear".

雷雨(らいう): This word means "thunderstorm" and is an extremely common word.

降雨 (こうう): This is "precipitation" and is just as formal as the English word. The spoken word for this is 雨降り.

人工 (降) 雨 (じんこう (こう) う) : Artificial precipitation.

放射能雨(ほうしゃのうう): More naturally read as ほうしゃのうあめ, this word means "radioactive rain". Highly polluted/radioactive rain can also be called 黒い雨, which is used in the spoken language.

酸性雨 (さんせいう) : "Acid rain".

流星雨 (りゅうせいう) : "Meteor shower".

雨露 (うろ) : This word means "rain and dew", but it is usually reading as あめつゆ for the spoken language, which can also be more naturally worded as 雨と露.

涼雨 (りょうう): 涼しい雨 in the spoken language, this word refers to lovely rain in the summer that cools everything down.

冷雨 (れいう): This word means "cold rain", but it is a formal word and would be replaced with 冷たい雨 in the spoken language.

寒雨 (かんう): This is a literary word for "wintry rain". This could also be expressed as 寒々とした雨, but this is still not totally colloquial.

夜雨 (やう) : If used in the spoken language it would be 夜の雨, and to be more poetic, you could read 夜雨 as よさめ and 夜の雨 as よのあめ. These words simply mean "night rain". A "rainy night" would be 雨夜 (あまよ).

緑雨 (りよくう) : This word refers to rain that falls in the season when new greens grow. However, this is relative to what part of the world you live in, and although you would assume this would be used for around April and May, the word is just uncommon and literary.

甘雨(かんう) : Homophonous yet even rarer than 寒雨, this word refers to rain that graciously falls to replenish greens.

慈雨・滋雨 (じう) : This is a slightly more common word for the same thing as 甘雨, though it would be more appropriate in the spoken language to say something like 草木を育てる雨. Notice how it is often more common to use the definition of a more technical word in the spoken language. This phrase is actually short for 干天慈雨.

喜雨 (きう): Joyful, pleasant rain that can help with the crops. This is just as rare and literary as the other words for the same thing.

恵雨 (けいう) : This word also refers to blessed rain for crops, but it's not used in the spoken language either. This would naturally be expressed as 恵みの雨.

十雨 (じゅうう) : This means "refreshing rain once in ten days", but this is never used. The similar four character idiom 十風五雨・五風十雨 (halcyon weather) is more common. Just saying 十日ごとに雨が降る will be fine.

凍雨 (とうう) : This somewhat technical word may either refer to rain as cold as ice or ice pellets. However, both concepts in the spoken language would most

likely be expressed as 凍るほど冷たい雨・氷のように冷たい雨 and 氷の粒 respectively.

晴雨（せいう） : This is a technical word for clear and rainy weather.

弾雨（だんう） : This is a shower of bullets. It is a literary word, so you will more than likely hear the definition used in the spoken language instead. This is a contraction of 弾丸飛雨（だんがんひう）.

法雨（ほうう） : "Shower of Dharma", also known as のりのあめ. This is not a common word.

快雨（かいう） : This is a rare word for rain that makes oneself feel refreshed.

穀雨（こくう） : This literally means "grain rain", and it is a solar term for ~April 20th.

祈雨（きう） : This is a very rare word for praying for rain. 雨乞い is used in the spoken language.

止雨（しう） : This is a very rare word for praying for rain to stop.

樹雨（きさめ）: This is a rather easy word describing raindrops that fall of the leaves and branches of trees. This is not, though, a common word.

私雨（わたくしあめ）: An obscure and hardly used term used to refer to rain that mainly hits a certain area.

遣（や）らずの雨: This is rain that seems to be preventing you or someone from leaving something. This is an interesting phrase, but it isn't really common.

黒風白雨（こくふうはくう） : This is an uncommon four character idiom that means "sudden rain shower in a dust storm".

篠突く雨 (しのつくあめ): This is a rather literary word referring to heavy rain that looks as if it is bamboo bound together and dropped. Something like ざあざあ降る would replace it in the spoken language.

Common Rain Associated Words

The table below lists many rain associated words that you can add to your vocabulary. Most of these words are quite practical and can be used in everyday language.

雨戸	あまど	Sliding storm shutter	雨具	あまぐ	Rain gear	雨着	あまぎ	Raincoat
雨天	うてん	Rainy weather	雨滴	うてき	Raindrop	雫・滴	しずく	Raindrop
雨林	うりん	Rain forest	雨雲	あまぐも	Rain cloud	雨水	あまみず	Rainwater
雨水	うすい	Rain water	雨間	あまあい	Break in rain	雨音	あまおと	Sound of rain
雨傘	あまがさ	Umbrella	雨靴	あまぐつ	Overshoes	雨空	あまぞら	Rainy sky
雨垂れ	あまだれ	Raindrop	雨粒	あまつぶ	Raindrop	雨樋	あまどい	Rain gutter
雨漏り	あまもり	Rain leak	雨風	あめかぜ	Rain & wind	雨上り	あめあがり	Rain letup
雨続き	あめつづき	Rain continuation	雨合羽	あまがっぱ	Rain poncho	雨後	うご	After rain

Rain Onomatopoeia

What about onomatopoeia for rain? Along with the ones you got from earlier, plenty exist to describe the exact sound of rain/water/tears falling. This list isn't exhaustive, but after all of these rain words, you probably can't stand any more.

ぽつぽつ	Rain falling down just a little	ぼつぼつ	Same as ぽつぽつ
しとしと	Rain quietly falling	ざあざあ	Rain pouring
ざんざん	The same as ざあざあ	ぽとぽと	Rain falling in big drops
しょぼしょぼ	Drizzling	ぐずぐず	Drizzling
ぱらぱら	For rain to spatter	さっと	Suddenly

Table of Contents

第192課: Funeral

Burial customs in Japan are very serious and complex. In this lesson, you will learn a lot about what is appropriate and what is not.

What to Do

When a person dies, ^{こうでん}香典 is usually given as a funeral gift of money to the family at the vigil or funeral. This is given in an envelope called a ^{のしぶくろ}熨斗袋. This is a general term for envelopes for giving money, so you'll see more specific terms later in this section. This envelope looks different depending on religion, so you will need to be careful and ask for what is appropriate. For instance, if there is a picture of a lotus on it, it should only be used for those who follow Buddhism. What is put in the inscription is not an easy question, and it depends heavily on the religious beliefs of the deceased. It also doesn't help that there isn't unilateral decision on what to do.

What is 香典?

In 香典, there is this meaning of ^{そうごふじょ}持ちつ持たれつ・相互扶助 (give-and-take). The amount of money you give is based on your relation to the person. The most common amounts are 5 0 0 0円, 3 0 0 0円, and 1 0 , 0 0 0円, but the latter may be avoided as it is deemed unlucky by many to give an amount with an initial even digit. If you are unable to give much money, you should write ^{きくいちりん}菊一輪. The money should also be new bills found at a bank or 郵便局. What to put on the top of the paper envelope (表書き) is no easy matter.

Grammar Note: This つ is an old particle equivalent to たり.

The 中包み



ウラ



オモテ

In the inside, the front side of the card (中包み) should have the amount to be given in old-style characters (大字). So, 壱, 弍, 参, 四, 五・伍, 六, 七, 八, 九, 拾, 百, 千, and 萬 should be used instead. 円 should be spelled as 圓. The name and address of the individual should be written on the back side. This is to keep the sadness of the death to be underneath.

御香典

The first thing to note is that ご・お should be written in 御 to show more respect. 御香典 may be safe if you don't know the religion. It may be read as either おこうでん or ごこうでん, but the first is the most common, and the decision may also deal with specific sect. Regardless of reading, this is not appropriate for Shinto followers. So, ^{ごれいぜん} 御霊前 is felt by many others as the most appropriate heading.

For Shinto Followers

If the person is a Shinto believer, ^{ごしんぜん} 御神前 or ^{おんたまぐしりょう} 御玉串料 may be used. ^{おさかきりょう} 御榊料, ^{ごしんせんりょう} 御神饌料, and ^{おそなえものりょう} 御供物料 may also be acceptable. ^{はつほりょう} 初穂料 is written in an envelope addressed to the Shinto shrine. ^{ぬさりょう} 幣料 may be used on the 金包み with the money for the ^{はら} お祓い (purification) costs.

For Christians

For Christians, ^{おはなりょう} 御花料 or ^{おん} 御ミサ料・御弥撒料 (for Catholics) may be used. Using 漢字, of course, makes things more formal. You may also see ^{おんはなわりょう} 御花環料. For

design-less ぶしゅうぎぶくろ 不祝儀袋, which equates to 熨斗袋 in the sense that it is an envelope for a misfortunate occasion, ご霊前 may be acceptable.

For Buddhists

御霊前 can be possibly used even if a person is Buddhist, Shinto follower, or Christian. However, if the person is of the じょうどしんしゅう 浄土真宗 sect, you should use 御仏前 instead. If you can't find this out, 御霊前 is acceptable. So, it can be used if you don't know the religious of the person. You can also use this for 御供物 (flowers).

御霊前・御香典 can be used on the vigil or funeral, but ごぶつぜん 御仏前・御佛前 should be used after the Buddhist service on the 49th day the person has died. ごこうりょう 御香料・ごこうげりょう 御香華料 is also acceptable for this occasion. However, as mentioned earlier, 御仏前・御佛前 is acceptable for all the above in the 浄土真宗 Buddhism. 佛 is the old form of 仏, which makes it more formal.

Contacting the Family

If the person is a loved one of your family or a close family, you should contact the family as soon as you can. If it is an acquaintance of some sort, you should wait until after the vigil to give your condolences. When you do receive contact, make sure to not only give your condolences but also find out the time and place of the vigil and funeral as well as the person's religion. If you already gave your 香典 at the vigil, you should only write your name in the register at the funeral.

弔電

If you are unable to attend either or if it is business related, you should send

a ^{ちょうでん} 弔 電 , This is literally a "condolence telegram", but there are ways of doing this through phone and fax. The ^{おとむらいりょう} 表書き for this should be 御 弔 料 along with the name of the company/organization. However, you should consult others for this as well as practices vary in acceptability. In it, you should have ^こ 故 ○ ○ ○ 様 遺 族 様 in it. The prefix 故 means "late" as in "the late Mr. Smith". 遺族 means "the family of the deceased". 様 is attached to show respect.

Not Knowing the Person

It is also appropriate to ^{おくやみ} 御 悔 if the person is not someone you are close or related to. However, using one of the more appropriate, religious focused headings is more respectful.

Thanks to the お寺・僧侶

There are also phrases to show thanks to the temple/monks.

^{おふせ} 御布施: Used to give thanks to the temple and or monks for a Buddhist funeral.

御経料: This is the same as 御布施.

^{どきょうおんれい} 読 経 御 礼 : It is used in the same sense as 御経料. おれい may be used a lot instead, but おんれい is more formal. Don't pronounce 読経 as どっきょう.

^{かいみょうりょう} 戒 名 料 : This is used for showing thanks for the posthumous Buddhist name being given to the deceased.

^{ごえこうりょう} 御 回 向 料 : This is used for showing thanks for reading out a sutra at the funeral.

おくまりよう
御車料 : This is used for travel expenses.

おぜんりよう
御膳料 : Used for food costs. It may also be 御食事料.

ごそくいりよう
御足衣料 : This may also be used for travel expenses.

配り物

If you were to be in the position of presenting a gift for a funeral offering, there are a few phrases for this.

こころざし
志 : Used in Buddhist and Shinto styles. This is used as a return gift for 香典

ほうよう
or 法要 (Buddhist service).

そくよう
粗供養 : Present from a 法要.

Final Note: As you can see, funeral arrangements in Japanese culture is very complex. However, this also shows us just how complex お〜 and ご〜 phrases may be. As this section illustrates, you may even see おん〜.

第193課: The 君が代 & いろは

君が代, which is usually translated as "His Majesty's Reign", is the 国歌 (national anthem) of the great nation of Japan. The song first started out as a 和歌 from the Heian Period (平安時代). After the 明治維新 (Meiji Restoration) in 1880, it was turned into a song and then eventually treated as the national anthem, but this only became official in 1999 despite most Japanese people already thinking it was. The anthem happens to be the shortest in the world with only 32 characters.

君が代

Lyrics:

君が代は
千代に八代に
さざれ石の
巖となりて
苔の生すまで

かな Version:

きみがよは
ちよにはちよに
さざれいしの
いわおとなりて
こけのむすまで

Standard English Translation:

May your reign
Continue for a thousand, eight thousand generations,
Until the pebbles

Grow into boulders

Lush with moss

The song originated from a 短歌 in the 古今和歌集. The song beautifully describes how the Imperial Household will continue forever. One main difference between the current version and the original was that 君が代 was わが君, which really changes the implication of the song a lot. In fact, it used to be used as a song on formal occasions such as birthdays to wish for a long life. It is this string of interpretation that survives in the minds of those that the title, although referring to the Imperial House, shows how that the Emperor symbolizes the state of Japan and the unity of its people that shall continue into eternity. However, this is still speculative.

Many disapprove of the strong implications of revering the Emperor as a worship figure and of pre-World War II Japan. Others view it as a piece of history and keeping with tradition and that the politics is unrelated, separate issue. Just the interpretation of the title and what it implies is controversial enough to cause heated debate.

The Grammar

Given that there is quite a bit of old grammar in such a small song, it's important to note those differences. First, let's look at the lyrics again.

君が代は
千代に八代に
さざれ石の
巖となりて
苔の生すまで

The first issue is 君. This word at the time the song was written could refer to someone like the Emperor, but it could also be used to anyone of high status.

In fact, Genji, the main character in the famous story 源氏物語, is often referred as 光の君 in it.

The case particles が and の used to be completely interchangeable in Classical Japanese. This explains essentially most of the differences. Another is that the て形 contractions are not seen at this time, and if they were, it would not have been indicative of literary language just yet. Even to this day when things are purposely made classical, such contractions are almost always completely avoided.

いろは (伊呂波)

This is often called the Japanese alphabet song, despite that かな are syllabaries. The いろは first appeared in 万葉仮名 but brilliantly uses each basic sound only once. The song was attributed to 空海, who founded the 真言 sect of Buddhism. However, due to a rather interesting hidden message in the poem, it's likely that it was actually written after his death.

万葉仮名 Version

以呂波耳本部止

千利奴流乎和加

餘多連曾津祢那

良牟有為能於久

耶万計不己衣天

阿佐伎喻女美之

恵比毛勢須

かな Version

いろはにほへと
ちりぬるを
わかよたれそ
つねならむ
うゐのおくやま
けふこえて
あさきゆめみし
ゑひもせす

As you can see, there is no marking of voiced sounds. The pronunciation of words has also changed just as much as the grammar. ん was not standard as a specific character for N' until Modern times, so it shouldn't be expected to be in here. It also has the obsolete ゐ and 𐰇 as these sounds were used in Japanese at the time. However, once the current 五十音 ordering, which is based off the Sanskrit ordering of sounds, was adopted in the Meiji Restoration, this became out of use for most situations to list the sounds.

いろはにほへと	=	色は匂えど	Although the scent lingers
ちりぬるを	=	散りぬるを	It (the flowers) will eventually blossom
わかよたれそ	=	我が世誰ぞ	Who in our world
常ならむ	=	常ならむ	Never changes?
うゐのおくやま	=	有為の奥山	The deep mountains of vanity
けふこえて	=	今日超えて	Today we cross
あさきゆめみし	=	浅き夢見じ	And we shall not see superficial dreams
ゑひもせす	=	酔ひもせず	Nor be drunk

The particle ど follows the 已然形 and has the same function as けれど, which is a derivative of it with an auxiliary. -ぬる is the 連体形 of the intransitive perfective auxiliary verb -ぬ, which is no longer used in Modern Japanese and followed the 連用形 of verbs.

The **ぞ** is a 係助詞 here, which is particle class with rather difficult usage. Essentially, it would be at the end of the sentence in Modern Japanese, ignoring the fact that the particle in question is only archaically used in Modern Japanese to be used in conjunction with the old volitional ending **-む** to make a rhetorical question.

け ぶ is today and used to be pronounced as /kepu/. This would eventually become /keu/, which eventually become a diphthong and turn into /kyo:/, which it is today in Standard Modern Japanese. The word is a combination of **け**, the original word for today and **ぶ**, which is the 終止形 of the Classical form of the verb **経る** (to pass time).

〜じ is a negative auxiliary that means **〜ないだろう**. Thus, it naturally follows the 未然形. Lastly, **もせず** = **もしないで**.

五十音順

For many things in life, though, the 五十音順 is used instead. But, have you ever wondered how you would arrange 濁音 and 拗音? If you had **たかた** and **たかだ**, you would list them in that order, but if you had **かわさきじろう** (川崎次郎) and **かわざきいちろう** (河崎一郎), you would start with 河崎一郎. This is because you have to think of the order of the 五十音. **い** comes before **し・じ**. You look at 濁音 last. As for 拗音, there is no single convention, but non-拗音 are usually first.

第194課: The Particles さえ, すら, & だに

The particles さえ, すら, and だに are often interchangeable, but pay close attention to detail. There is some history involved, so try not to use these words anachronistically. Although they're interchangeable with each other, there are subtle differences.

The Adverbial Particle すら

す ら is the original particle for minimal example--"even...not to mention..". Now it has evolved to show minimal expectation, which is showing an extreme (usually negative) example. So, it is equal to "(not) even". It can be seen as です ら. すら is faded into literature and somehow survived to the present. Now, だに is ironically rarer than すら.

Using this with other particles is very tricky as there is historical and personal variation. For instance, using it with を isn't wrong. However, many people just use すら. For when you do want to use it with を, をすら and すらを are both possible, but the latter is extremely old-fashioned. Even so, it still pops up.

1. なにしろ、警視庁みずから一般人の犯歴データを流していたことが問題になったばかりなのに、公の裁判所の正式決定すらをはねつけたんですからね。

Anyhow, although the Metropolitan Police themselves having been leaking out general people's criminal record data has just become a problem, it's because they even rejected a public court's official decision.

From 明日はどっちだ! by 岡留安則.

The Adverbial Particle さえ

さ え comes from the verb 添ふ (to add), which has become 添える in Modern Japanese. So, the original meaning of this particle was "in addition to". Eventually, さえ began to be used to show minimal example. Both usages survive today, but the latter can be alternatively expressed with **でさえ**, as is demonstrated

in the example below. It is to note that both ですら and でさえ are only used after nouns! This is because the case particle で is in these expressions.

2. 今どき、男の子だったら、小学生でさえ知ってるよ。

These days even boys in elementary school know.

The meaning of X(で)さえ Y is this. Some X matter and some Y action/happening/condition are usually not connected in any one, yet when you bind them together, you emphasize a situation that is not the norm by any means. This is what minimal example means.

3. 虎でさえ彼を傷つけることはできない。

Not even a tiger can hurt him.

4. 彼は食費 {さえ・すら} 惜しんだ。

He even begrudged taking the money for food.

It's sometimes hard to tell which meaning is meant. Minimal example is often used in negative expressions, but when this is not the case, consider the context. "Even a kid can understand it" is minimum example. "In addition to us, even the dogs understand" shows addition. It doesn't help that both English and Japanese are vague on this.

5. 雪どころか雨さえ降らなかった。

Not even rain fell, let alone snow.

6 初心者にもさえできることだ。

It's something even a beginner can do.

7a. 子供 { (で) {さえ・すら} ・でも} (そのこと) 知ってる (ことだ) よ。○

7b. 子供もさえそんなこと知ってるよ。X

Even kids know that.

8. ただでさえ電車が遅れているのに、寄り道をしようだなんて。

Even under normal circumstances, hanging out along the way even when the train is late is just...

9a. ぼくは独りだから、君さえぼくの心の頼りだよ。X

9b. ぼくは独りだから、君だけがぼくの心の頼りだよ。○

Because I'm all alone, you're the only thing my heart relies on.

Particle Note:

1. さえ can be after other particles like に. をさえ is also possible, but を is usually dropped. In literature, however, をさえ is more common.

10. 秘密にしていたのに、三歳の子供にさえ気づかれてしまった。

Even though I was keeping it a secret, it was even found out by a three year old.

11. 自分はまだ生きているのだという実感をさえ持つことができたのだった。

I was able to have the realization that I myself was still alive.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

2. There is also さえも and さえもが. Both are more emphatic than さえ and show minimal example, but が implies new information and or surprise. If you understand も and が well enough, this shouldn't be hard to visualize.

12. 死さえもが玉井にとっては安楽なのだ。

Even death was something which would be bring ease to Tamai.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

13. 子どもばかりじゃなく、大人さえも悲鳴をあげたよ。

The children and even the adults screamed.

Important Patterns

Both さえ andすら can be after the 連用形 of verbs similar to は, や. etc. You can also use them after て. This creates a phrase that puts emphasis on the action rather than the noun. すら, again, is increasingly becoming rarer, so you will probably only see it with nouns. Here is a chart using the pattern さえ…ば (if only you~) to illustrate this grammar.

Noun + さえ + Verb + ば	薬さえ飲めば	If you only drank this medicine (and no other)
Verb (連用形) + さえ + すれば	薬を飲みさえすれば	If you only drink this medicine (and do nothing else)
Verb + て + さえ + いれば	薬を飲んでさえ いれば	If you are drinking this medicine (and doing nothing else)

Grammar Note: Verb+ている+さえすれば → Verb+ていさえすれば. In this case, it doesn't matter that 連用形 of いる is left like that. Remember, this is not like 〜ており、・・・.

14. 食べ（（すぎ）さえし）なければ、もっとやせ（られる・るようになるよ）。

If you would only not eat, you would be able to lose more weight.

15. 幸せでありさえすればかまわないんだ。

I don't care so long as you are happy.

16. 知ってさえいればな〜。(Colloquial Spelling)

If only I had known!

17. 時間さえあれば、手伝うんだが。

If only I had time, I'd help.

18. 生きていさえすれば、何も要らない。

If you just live on, you won't need anything.

19. 勉強さえすれば、試験はできるでしょう。

If you just study, you should be able to do the exam.

20. 一生懸命頑張りさえすれば、何でも好きなことができる。

If you just try with all your hardest, you should be able to do anything you like.

21. 分からない漢字は、調べさえすれば分かりますよ。

If you simply look up Kanji you don't understand, you'll understand them.

22. 日本語は、日本人と毎日話そうとしてさえいけば話せるようになります。

If you just try talking to Japanese people everyday, you'll become able to speak in Japanese.

23. 病気は、この漢方薬さえ飲めば、よくなります。

If you drink just this herbal medicine, your sickness should become better.

24. 和書さえ読めれば、幸せです。

If I read just Japanese books, I'm happy.

25. これさえあれば、後は何も要らない。

If we only had this, we'd need nothing later.

Nuance Note: Again, these particles emphasize what they directly follow, so although there is some leeway on where to place *さえ* in a sentence, be aware of this.

Speech Style Note: Though *さえ* may be used in the spoken language, it is more common in the written language.

26. しかしこの進学については、思い出すさえ忌々しい事情がある。

But, remembering about going onto university brought on annoying circumstances by just remembering.

From 金閣寺 by 三島由紀夫.

Grammar Note: さえ also rarely follows the 連体形 of verbs. This is essentially old-fashioned.

The Adverbial Particle だに

だに, not to be confused with the noun ダニ (tick), is used in both negative and positive sentences. It raises the most probable thing and negates it and anything aside from it. Originally, it showed minimal desire or want. In this sense it means "at the least". This led to it being used to show minimal example just like さえ andすら. This is equivalent to だけで. It is the rarest of the three.

27a. 夢にだに思ったことはない。(かなり古風)

27b. 夢でさえ思ったこともない。(もっと一般的)

I have not thought of something in just a dream.

28. ネオンは錯綜し、呑み屋の大きな赤い提灯は微動だもしなかった。

The neon lights complicated things, and the bar's big, red lantern didn't even sway a bit.

From スタア by 三島由紀夫.

Grammar Note: だも is a contraction of だにも.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create 3 sentence using さえ.

Translate into Japanese (2-4)

2. If only I had money, I could buy a new car.

3. I don't understand what you're saying at all.

4. Create a sentence usingすら.

5. Create a sentence using だに.

第195課: 以 Adverbial Nouns

This lesson is about a handful of important phrases which start with the character 以. Adverbial nouns can follow other nouns without particles and can easily just be used as adverbs and after the て形.

以外	以内	以降	以後
以前	以来	以上	以下
以遠	以往	以東	以北
以南	以西		

以外

1. Attached to a nominal phrase meaning "except".

1. 九州と四国以外で地震が発生した。

With exception of Kyushu and Shikoku, earthquakes had occurred everywhere.

2. これ以外に方法はありませんよ。

There is no method other than this.

3. 従業員以外の方の入室は {お ^{ことわ}断 りします・ ^{きん}禁 じられています} 。

Entrance except for employees is prohibited.

2. 以外の ^{なに}何 ものでもない means "... is entirely...".

4. 愚痴 ^{ぐち}以外の何ものでもない。

It is complete stupidity.

5. 好 ^{こう}奇 ^き心 ^{しん}以外の何ものでもありませんね。

It's entirely curiosity isn't it?

3. "Apart from".

6a. じょうへき 城 壁 以外の地へはふみ込めないなら、たいほう 大 砲 を撃つがよい。(Bookish)

6b. 城壁以外から踏み込めないなら、大砲を撃つ(の)がよい。(More natural)

If you cannot break in apart from the wall, it would be good to fire the cannon.

以内

The opposite of 以外, 以内 means "inside of/within".

7a. きょうかいせん 境 界 線 以内に止まる。

7b. 境界線の中で止まる。(More natural)

To stop within the boundary line.

8. 二百字以内でまと められるのか。(Harsh)

Can you summarize it within 200 characters?

9. 6時間以内に着くはずです。

It is supposed to arrive within 6 hours.

以降

以降 means "thereafter".

10. 20世紀以降、日本は新技術において進んでいます。

From the 20th century thereafter, Japan has been advancing in new technology.

11. 面会人は午後10時以降本病院に留まることはできません。

Visitors can not remain in the hospital on and after 10 p.m.

12. 8時以降は店を閉じています。

We will close the shop after 8 o' clock.

以後

Following after nouns and the て形 of a verb, 以後 means "thereafter/since then". 以後 is quite **objective** while 以降 is not. 以後 may also mean "from now on".

13a. 以後、十分気をつけます。

13b. 以後はもっと注意します。

I'll be more careful from now on.

14. その店舗は7時 {以後は・以降は・から} 開店しています。

The shop will be open after 7 o' clock.

15. 彼女は ^{せんせんしゅう}先々週 風邪を引いて、以後ずっと寝込んでいます。

She caught a cold two weeks ago and has been in bed ever since.

16. それ以後ずっと

Ever after

17a. ^{たいしよくいご}退職以後は ^{ゆうゆうじてき}悠々自適。

17b. 退職後は悠々自適。(More natural)

After retirement is leisure with dignity.

以前

The opposite of 以降, 以前 means "before" or "ago".

18. 以前どこかであなたに出会ったことがあります。

I believe I've seen you somewhere before.

19. 4人とも以前は旧「Enron」に勤めていた。

All four formerly worked at Enron.

20. 以前よりずっとよく見えます。

It looks much better than it was before.

21. 以前ほど魚を食べていない。

We're eating not as much fish.

22. 俺は以前にもまして勉強しようと決めたのだよ。

I decided to study harder still more than ever before.

以来

以来 means "from/since". In a slightly old fashioned sense, it may mean "henceforth". It is used when the situation is continuing action or state since a certain point in time. Other situations are taken care of by ～てから. Also, this phrase is interchangeable with the even more less frequently used ～てこのかた.

23a. 以来君と旅行するのはご^{めん}免だ。(Original from text; old-fashioned)

23b. 今後、君と旅行するのはご免だ。(More natural)

I decline from traveling with you henceforth.

From ^{そうせき}漱石.

24a. 以来、気をつけたまえ。(Old-fashioned)

24b. 以後、気をつけたまえ。(Slightly old-fashioned; Masculine)

From henceforth, be careful.

25. 彼は大学を出て以来会社に勤めています。

He has been working at the company since he left college.

26a. 子供の^{ころ}頃以来知っている。

26b. 子供の頃から知っている。(More natural)

To know since childhood.

27. 佐伯に関しては、このマンションに越して以来、何の音沙汰もなかったから、徐々に緊張が解け始めているが、拳銃のことは、日を追うに連れて祥子の心に重くのしかかってきていた。

In regards to Sahaku, there hadn't been any news since moving into this apartment, so Sachiko's tensions gradually began to wind down, but as for the handgun, as she pursued the days, it came to press heavily on her heart.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

Word Note: 音沙汰 literally has "sound" and "incident" in it. Although 沙汰 in this case is used to mean "update", the word is most likely used here to continue a not so favorable tone in regards to 佐伯. Here are some more phrases with 沙汰.

警察沙汰	Police case	取り沙汰	Idle talk	裁判沙汰	Litigation
表沙汰	Creating publicity	色恋沙汰	Love affair	狂気の沙汰	Madness

以上

1. "More than".

28. このグループには12歳以上の子供が^{ふく}含まれている。

Children twelve and over are included in this group.

29. iPadは400ドル以上する。

The iPad costs 400 dollars and over.

30. 3ヶ月以上大阪に^{たいざい}滞在するつもりだ。

I plan to stay in Osaka for over three months.

31. 予想以上

Beyond expectation

32. 期待以上でした。

It exceeded our hopes.

33. これ以上の^{めんどう}面倒^たには耐えられない。

I can't take it anymore.

2. Above-mentioned; foregoing; herein-before.

34. 以上の説明でご理解を^{いただ}頂きたい。

I would like to receive some understanding with the above explanation.

35. 以上は方法を説明したものだ。

The above-mentioned explains how to do it.

3. That is the end; the end; this is all.

36. 以上で私の報告は終わります。

Let me finish my report with this.

37a. 死亡者 3 千名、行方不明者 1 万 5 千名、以上 1 万 8 千名。

37b. 死亡者 3 千名、行方不明者 1 万 5 千名、計 1 万 8 千名。

Fatalities 3000 people, missing people 15,000 people, and 18,000 people in total.

4. Following the 連体形 of a verb, it means "seeing that", "over", or "since".

38. 前回の売り上げ以上の成績を上げる。

To raise improvements over the previous sales.

39. 昨年以上に売り上げは^の伸ばせない。

We can't boost our sales above as they were last year.

40. (私を) 信頼できない以上、犬の世話をさせるべきじゃない。

Since you don't trust me, you should not let me take care of your dog.

以下

以下 means "below(-mentioned)/following".

41. 以下次号。

To be continued.

42. 結果は以下の通り。

The results are as follows.

43a. 氷点以下となったため、寒さで体温の下がる低体温症で亡くなった方もいました。(Rare)

43b. 氷点下となりましたから、寒さで体温の下がる低体温症で亡くなった方もいました。

Because it has become below freezing, there are those that have died from hypothermia due to loss of body temperature from the cold.

44. 小数点以下を切り捨てる。

To round off the figures below/after the decimal point.

45. 社長以下八名が出席しました。

With the president, eight people in total were present.

以遠 & 以往

以遠 means "beyond" and 以往 means "hereafter/formerly".

46. この電車は大阪以遠は各駅停車となります。

This train stops at Osaka and all stations beyond.

47a. 終戦以往百年。(Literary; old-fashioned)

47b. 終戦後百年。(Natural)

47c. 終戦以来百年。(Natural)

100 years hereafter the war.

以東、以北、以南、以西

These words, 以東, 以北, 以南, and 以西 mean "east of", "north of", "south of", and "west of" respectively. However, the area is everything below. So, consider that when you use these words.

48. 東京以東

East of Tokyo

49. 東京の東は千葉県です。

To the east of Tokyo is Chiba Prefecture.

50. ミシシッピ川以西はグレート・プレーンズです。

West of the Mississippi River are the Great Plains.

51a. 東京以北には福島第一原発発電所があります。X

51b. 東京の北には福島第一原発発電所があります。○

51c. 福島第一原発発電所は東京の北です。○

North of Tokyo is the Fukushima Number One Nuclear Electric Power Plant.

52a. 仙台以南は東京です。X

52b. 仙台の南に東京はあります。○

52c. 東京は仙台の南です。○

South of Sendai is Tokyo.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with 以外.

2. Create a sentence with 以内.

3. Create a sentence with 以降.

4. Create a sentence with 以後.

5. Create a sentence with 以前.

6. Create a sentence with 以来.

7. Create a sentence with 以上.

8. Create a sentence with 以下.

まま

"**As is**", with verbs it is primarily seen in the pattern ～たまま(で). It is used to show action "as is" in a certain state without any change in course or situation. However, it is not necessarily the case that the subject in question is still. However, there is a very similarly meaning particle, なり, that we will learn about later which requires the subject be still. So, this is something to keep in mind.

It is not to say that this word is only used with the past tense, although for this meaning it most certainly is. However, in other usages you may see it used with the negative or demonstratives to show how a state is still the same without there being in any change, which is of the same vein as above.

Though not really different in meaning, there is also the pattern ままに which is used to show that one leaves something to the course of a situation or to show things are going as thought. In other words, it shows something being left to a natural course of action. You may see this after verbs in the non-past form and even in the passive. You may also see ～がままに, which is very formal and 書き言葉的. A common phrase utilizing this older grammar is 思うがままに. In more modern Japanese, this would become 思いのままに.

Examples

1. 昔のままの風景だよね。

This scenery is just as it was in the old times, isn't it?

2. そのままにしておいた。

I left it alone the way it was.

3. 何かを ^{なま}生のまま食べたことがありますか。

Have you ever eaten something raw?

4a. 意のままに（思ったように）歌う自由があるよ。

4b. 意のままに（思ったように）歌っていいんだよ。 (More common)

I have the freedom to sing at will.

5. 彼は、本能のままに行動しただけです。

He only acted out of instinct.

6. 窓を開けたままにしておいてください。

Please leave the window open.

7. このままでは必ず死んでしまう。

As it is now, we will surely die.

8. 彼女は電気をつけたまま寝ちゃった。(碎けた)

She slept with the lights on.

9. このままお待ち下さい。(On the phone)

Please hold the line.

10. 会議がありますから、椅子^{いす}はこのままにしておいてください。

There's going to be a meeting, so please leave the chairs the way they are.

11. 着^きの身着^{みき}のままで逃げること

Running away with only one's clothes.

12. 自然のままで素敵^{すてき}ですわね。(Very feminine)

It's great keeping it natural.

漢字 Note: まま can be written in 漢字 as either 儘・俔.

Variant/Pronunciation Note: Depending on the speaker, with region being a significant factor, this may also be seen/pronounced as まんま.

ほしいまま, a very important phrase that uses mama that is written in 漢字 as either 恣, 縦, or 擅, means "selfish".

13. 権勢を恣にする。

To exert one's power at will.

14. 世界最高の日本語（の）教授としての名声をほしいままにしてるぞ！

I enjoy the reputation of being the greatest Japanese professor in the world!

Other まま

When students hear まま, they think of ママ (Mom). However, it's fun to know what it all this word can mean in Japanese.

間々 = Occasionally (not very common). There is also 継~, which is used to mean "step-" as in family members. まま can also mean 乳母 (wet nurse) and 飯 in infant speech. Another まま found in the place name 大間々 refers to the bluff upstream on the 渡良瀬川 and the river splitting. This is just one of many words potentially from other languages in South East Asia.

思いきや

～と思いきや is equivalent to either "despite having thought" or "contrary to expectations". Its literal translation is "just as I thought...". Tense is determined by the final verb.

15. あっさり断られると思いきや、彼女は ^{しょうだく}承 諾 してくれました。

Despite having thought that she would just refuse, she consented to it.

16. このレストランは安いと思いきや、会計は5 0 0 0円以上だったよ。

Contrary to thinking that this restaurant was cheap, the bill was over five thousand yen!

17. 彼はもう帰ってきたと思いきや、彼にびっくりした。

Just as I thought he had gone home, I was scared by him.

18. 誰もあの講座に出席しないと思いきや、大勢出席しました。

Despite having thought that no one would attend that lecture, a lot of people attended.

19. 日本はどこに行っても ^{じゅうたい}渋滞で遅くなると思いきや、交通はアメリカのように普通だった。

Despite having thought that you would be made to slow down by congestion wherever you go in Japan, the traffic was normal like America.

Definition Note: 思いきや is equivalent to 思っていたところが.

もと

もと may be written in 漢字 in different ways depending on how it is interpreted. You will see this word again in regards to ～をもとにして.

下・許

When written as such, it means "under" in a physical sense. It can also refer to be under rules, forces, etc. のもとで and のもとに are both possible, but the former refers to action/movement whereas the latter refers to existence/static situation. Both expressions are rather literary, but the latter is even more so.

20. ^{ぎょうせい}行政の保護の下で税を ^{ちょうしゅう}徴収している。

I'm collecting taxes under the protection of the administration.

21. 法の許に

Under the law

22. 勇将の下に弱卒なし。

There are no weak soldiers under a strong/brave general.

23. 長男は親の下を離れた。

The older brother left from under his parents.

24. 厳しい監視の許に置かれるのは {大変な・^{ひど}酷い} ことでしょうね。

Being placed under harsh surveillance is awful, isn't it?

25. 販売予想を基にして我々は製品の生産を停止することにしました。

On the basis of the sales forecast, we have decided to halt the manufacturing of the product.

26. 太陽のもとで子供たちが遊んでいる。

Kids are playing under the sun.

27. 街灯のもと {に・で} 住民たちが集まっている。

Residents are gathering underneath the street light(s).

元・旧・故

When written as such, もと means "former/previous". Lastly, it may be used in two important expressions.

28. 元に戻った方がいい。

It's best to return to the previous condition.

29a. 今日、^{もとどうりよう}元同僚と偶然出会いましたよ。

29b. 今日、かつての同僚と偶然会いましたよ。

I happened to meet my former colleague suddenly today.

30. 元の ^{さや} 鞘 に収まる。(Idiom)

To bury the hatchet.

31. 元の木 ^{もくあみ} 阿弥。(Idiom)

Ending up right where you started.

本・元

1.	Origin, source, root
2.	The basis of things, foundation. This usage may also be written in Kanji as 基.
3.	The cause. This usage may also be written in Kanji as 因.
4.	Funds, capital; cost price.
5.	Food stock, ingredients. This usage may also be written in Kanji as 素
6.	A counter that counts the number of stumps of plants.

Usage Notes:

1. 本・元 may also be in 元も子もない which means "losing everything".

2. As you may have noticed, usage number 4 is the same as the third usage of 下・許.

Examples

32. 失敗は成功の元だ。

Failure is the source of success.

33. ^{さんじ} 惨事 ^{もと} の本 ^{たど} を辿ろう。(Literary Spelling)

I will pursue the origin of this horrible accident.

34. 木の元を見つけたか。

Did you find the root of the tree?

35. 風邪は万病の元。

The cold is the source of all sorts of diseases.

36. 酒とタバコが因で健康を {損・害} う。

You lose health due to alcohol and tobacco.

37. 元のかかる商売は高い。

The transaction capital is high.

38. スープの^{もと}素はあるの。

Do we have the soup stock?

39. 私は柳一本を植えた。

I planted a single willow tree.

Though these patterns show result, they have their own special nuances. So, even when there is interchangeability, that doesn't mean you are saying 100% the same thing.

～結果

～ 結果 utilizes the word for “result”. It is seen after nouns or the past tense of verbs. What follows is a result and what precedes is a cause. Whether it is in one sentence or two, this is how the pattern works. It is objective and 書き言葉的. It is preceded by verbs of thought/consideration and followed by verbs of result.

1. やるだけはやったのだから、静かに結果を待とう。

I've done just what to do, so I will quietly await the results.

2. しょうぼうしゃ 消防車 など13台が消火にあたった**結果**、火はおよそ1時間半後に消し止められました。部屋は全焼しました。

As a result of 13 fire trucks fighting the fire, the fire was extinguished after approximately an hour and a half, but the room was completely burned.

From the NHK article けんえい 県 宮 住宅焼け1人死亡1人 じゅうたい 重 体 on 2013年7月3日2時11分.

2. 2日のロンドン外国 かわせ 為 替 市場は、ニューヨーク市場や東京市場で かぶか 株 価 が

じょうしょう 上 昇 したことを はいけい 背景 に、世界経済

の さきゆ 先行きに対する けねん 懸念が いくぶん やわ 和 らぎ、ドルを買って円を売る動きが しだい 次第に強

まりました。**その結果**、 そうば 円 相場 は一時、先月 じょうじゅん 上 旬 以来およそ1か月ぶりに1ド

ル=100円台 ぜんはん 前 半 まで ねさ 値下がりました。

The London Foreign Stock Exchange on the second, against the background of

stocks having risen in the New York and Tokyo Exchanges, concerns towards the world economy's future have somewhat eased, and the trend of buying dollars and selling yen has gradually strengthened.

As a result, the yen exchange rate for a moment dropped down to the low 1\$ = 100¥ mark after about a month since the first part of last month.

From the NHK article ロンドン市場 1 か月ぶり 1 0 0 円台 on 2013 年 7 月 2 日 21 時 36 分.

3. この問題は、東日本大震災の復興予算が、自治体などが管理する基金を通じて、被災地以外の事業にも使われているという指摘が出ていたもので、政府は、財務省や復興庁など関係省庁を通じて実態調査を進めてきました。

その結果、調査の対象となった各自治体などが管理する 1 6 の基金には、およそ 1 兆 1 5 0 0 億円の復興予算が配分され、その大半はすでに執行されていましたが、およそ 1 4 0 0 億円がまだ使われていないことが分かりました。

As for this problem, with the indication having come out that the East Japan Great Earthquake Disaster Recovery Budget, through funds the municipalities manages are being used even in projects outside the devastated areas, the government has forwarded investigations into the actual circumstances through the ministries and offices concerned such as the Ministry of Office and the Recovery Agency.

As a result, in the 16 funds that each of the municipalities that have become the object of investigation manage, approximately 1 trillion 150 billion yen recovery budget has been allocated, and the great majority of which has already been administered, but it has been found out that approximately 140 billion yen has yet to be used.

From the NHK article 未使用の復興予算 へんかんようせい 返還要請へ on 2013 年 7 月 2 日 12 時 48 分.

～うえで

～ うえで works grammaticality just like ～結果. It too is seen after nouns or the past tense of a verb. ～うえで shows a willful aspect in taking the next action based on the results of the present/clause or context. This makes it quite different for all of the other patterns in this lesson. It is preceded by verbs of thought/consideration, and then it is followed by verbs of conclusion. Adverbs frequently used in the first clause include よく and 十分（に）.

4. 十分に事件を^{かんあん}勘案したうえで返事します。

I will reply after having sufficiently considered the matter.

5. 上司と^{くわ}詳しく相談したうえで、お返事いたします。

I will reply after having consulted in detail with my boss.

6. A S E A N = 東南アジア^{しょこくれんごう}諸国連合と、日本やアメリカ、それに北朝鮮も含む、27の国と国際機関の^{がいしょう}外相などが

参加して、2日にブルネイで開かれたA R Fは、会議の^し締めくくりとして議長声明を
^{さいたく}採択しました。

議長声明では、ほとんどの参加国の^{きょうつうにんしき}共通認識として、北朝鮮に^{かくじっけん}核実験の
^{ていし}停止などを求めた過去の国連^{あんぱり}安保理決議と、北朝鮮による^{きそん}既存の核計画の^{ほうき}放棄な
どを^{もこ}盛り込んだ、6か国協議の共同声明の義務を^は果たすよう、北朝鮮に求めています。

そのうえで、「参加国のほとんどは朝鮮半島の非核化に向けた努力を支持する」としてい
ます。

ARF, which was opened in Brunei on the second with foreign ministers from 27 international organizations including ASEAN (Association of Southeast Asian Nations), Japan, America, as well as

North Korea participating, adopted the chairman's proclamation as the meeting's

close.

With the chairman's proclamation, as almost all of the participating nations' common understanding, it is calling for North Korea to carry out its duties of the six nation conference joint statement, including things such as U.N Security Council Resolution of the past which sought the halt of nuclear tests in North Korea and the abandonment of current nuclear plans by North Korea.

Moreover, it is asserting that "almost all of the participating nations support the efforts towards the denuclearization of the Korean Peninsula".

From the NHK Article A R F 議長声明 朝鮮半島の非核化支持^{ひかくかしじ} on 2013 年 7 月 3 日 0 時 9 分.

5. 新 潟 県 知事「地元軽視^{けいし}だ」^{にいがたけん}

新潟県の泉田知事^{いずみだちじ}は「事前に連絡はなく、こんな地元軽視^{けいし}はない」と強い不快感^{ふかいかん}を示しました。

そのうえで、「東京電力は福島第一原発の事故の際のTV会議の状況をすべて公開していないなど、検証^{けんしょう}が不十分で事故の責任^{せきにん}もとっていない。運転再開について議論を行う段階ではない」と東京電力の姿勢を改めて批判しました。

国も理解得る努力を

茂木経済産業大臣^{もぎ けいざいさんぎょうだいじん}は、訪問^{ほうもんちゅう}中のベトナムで「申請^{しんせい}が出された段階で原子力規制委員会^{きせいいんかい}には厳正^{げんせい}で速やかな審査^{しんさ}を行っていただきたい。そのうえで安全性が確認されたら東京電力任せではなくて国としても前^{ぜんめん}面に出^でて自治体などの理解を得るよう努力^{どりよく}をしていきたい」と述べました。

Niigata Prefecture Governor "It's local neglect"

Niigata Prefecture Governor Izumida demonstrated strong displeasure saying that "there isn't local neglect like this without contact beforehand".

Moreover, he again criticized the position of Tokyo Electric saying, "Tokyo Electric aren't even taking responsibility for the accident, not completely making public the conditions of the TV meeting at the time of the Fukushima No. 1 Reactor accident and with the inspections being insufficient. This is not the stage to debates about the restart of operations".

The Nation Too to Strive for Receiving Understanding

Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry Moteji, stated while in Vietnam "I would like for a strict and speedy hearing in the Nuclear Energy Regulations Committee on the phase of having sent an application. Moreover, once safety is confirmed, not being left up to Tokyo Electric, but as a nation, I want us to come to the front and strive to seek the understanding of the municipalities.

From the NHK article ^{かしわぎきかりわけんぱつ} 柏崎刈羽原発安全審査の申請決定 on 2013 年 7 月 2 日 15 時 12 分.

^{すがかんぼうちようかん} 菅官房長官は、^{こうえん} 東京都内で講演し、^{さんぎいんせんきよ} 参議院選挙では自民・^{こうめいりようとう} 公明両党で、^{ひかいせん} 非改選も含め過半数を確保する

ことが最低限の目標だとし^たうえで、経済の再生を^{さいゆうせん} 最優先に^{かか}掲げて選挙戦に臨みたいという考えを示しました。

そのうえで、菅官房長官は、参議院選挙で^{うった} 訴える^{せいさく} 政策について、「^{けんぽう} 憲法改正は、自民党の党是であり今回の選挙戦でも訴えることになる。しかし、今の状況での優先^{じゅんい} 順位は、国民やいろいろな人から話を聞いても、経済だ」と述べ、経済の再生を最優先に掲げて選挙戦に臨みたいという考えを示しました。

Chief Cabinet Secretary Suga held a lecture in Tokyo, and suggested that they looked forward to the election battle carrying the economy's recover as their maximum priority with both the Liberal Democratic Party and the Justice Party securing the majority including those not up for reelection in the House of Councilors election as a minimal goal.

Moreover, Chief Cabinet Secretary Suga, in regards to the policies they're calling for in the election stated, "As for a Constitution revision, it is the LDP's party platform, and it has been decided that we are to call for them even in this election battle. However, our current priority in this state is the economy even if were to hear chat from citizens or other various people", suggesting that carrying the economy's recover as their maximum priority.

From the NHK article 菅氏「過半数目標 経済前面に」 on 2013 年 7 月 2 日 15 時 12 分.

～挙句

挙 あげく
句 句 , normally negative, is used with a noun or the past tense of a verb to show that one spends a lot of effort on something but something else comes out of it with the outcome often being a last resort. 挙句 is close to "after a great deal of" and is often used with the adverb さんざん
散 々 meaning "repeatedly". Verbs that precede it entail thought/consideration, but they are mainly verbs with negative outcomes such as 悩む, 迷う, 議論する, 文 もんく
句 をいう, etc. Passive and causative expressions are also common.

Expressions found in the latter clause involve result just like ～結果. However, again, it is usually negative, and even the result isn't totally bad, it definitely gives the sense that it's not worth much. With that said, you are not likely to see it much in the news as the news is typically written in an objective fashion.

Orthography Note: 挙 (げ) 句 can also be spelled as 揚 (げ) 句.

Examples

7. 散々文句を言った挙句、出たばかりだよ。

After a great deal of repeatedly arguing, she just left!

8. 三人が酔っ払った挙句の果てに、^{こうあつせん}高圧線に^{おそ}襲いかけて^{かんでんし}感電死したという。

It's said that after three men had gotten drunk that they crashed into a high-voltage line and were electrocuted to death.

9. ^{いろいろ}色々勉強の揚句、地元の大学に入学することにしました。

After a great deal of various studies, I decided to enter a local college (although I tried for more).

10. 頑張った挙句の果てに^{あきら}諦めただけさ。(Casual)

After trying my best, I just gave up.

～すえに

すえ is noun that literally refers to the “end/tip”. You see it in temporal phrases such as 7月の末. However, it also shares something in common with the speech modals of this lesson. Used in the same fashion as them, it shows a temporal conclusion in which “after a certain course of events has run its way, in the end it becomes as such”.

11. 夜を徹^{てっ}して議論した {△ 結果・○ 挙句・× うえで・○すえに}、^{はくし}白紙に^{もど}戻してやり直すことになった。

After having debated all night, it became decided that we should redo and go back to the drawing board.

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント by 市川保子.

From this sentence it resembles 挙句, but it is actually more objective. It also doesn't have to seem negative. What they do share, though, is that they demonstrate a long trial of sorts.

12. 「コマキさん、楽器は何か演奏できる」

固い布団に横たわりながら、モウリさんが聞いた。長く逃げてきたすえ、よく知らない西の町の海辺に、部屋を借りているのだった。モウリさんは町のはずれにあるゴムの工場に勤めていた。三日に一回ある夜勤から帰った日だったかもしれない。窓の外が明るみはじめていた。

"Komaki, can you play any instrument?", Mouri asked as she lay on the hard futon. After having ran away a long ways, we were renting a room on the shore in a town to the west we didn't quite know. Mouri was working at a rubber factory at the edge of the town. It might have been the day she returned from a certain night shift once every three days. The outside from the window was beginning to brighten up.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

13. あの国は ^{ながねん}長 ^{ふんそう}年の ^へ紛争 を経た {○ 結果・△ 挙句・× うえで・○ すえに}、ようやく ^{じしゅせんきょ}反対デモもなく 自主選挙 を行なうことができた。

That nation after having gone through years of conflict was able to finally carry out voluntary elections without even any opposition demonstrations.

Finally: やつと, ようやく, ついに, Etc.

There are many adverbs that are translated as "finally". If there are so many words, there must be differences between them. The sentence above shows a very typical instance of ようやく, but the sentence would sound unnatural to various degrees if you were to replace it with another synonymous phrase.

やっと: After one's effort over a long period of time, something finally/narrowly realizes. やっと is a positive and shows considerable satisfaction. Whether it is a place, time, or money, after a narrow situation, there is a final realization/conclusion. If the speaker has gone through much trial/struggle in achieving a result that is positive yet contrary to original expectation, やっと **can't** be used.

14. やっと安心して眠れる。

I'm finally able to sleep with ease.

15. やっどこさ全部片づいたよ。

I've finally finished it all.

Slang Note: In slang it can be seen as やっどこさ.

ついに・遂に: At the final stage of something, X either realizes or it doesn't. The situation one has been in has lasted a long time (like やっと), and there is the potential that what you wanted ends up not happening at all (not like やっと). ついに can rather coldly state non-realization. If it is a positive outcome, it may have a light sense of happiness or relief. However, although やっと doesn't foster an indifferent attitude, it usually implies that the speaker wished the good outcome would have come earlier.

16. 警察はついに犯人を逮捕した。

The police finally arrested the criminal.

ようやく・漸く: やっと and ついに capture the moment of realization, but ようやく places stress on the process. ようやく shows a positive, objective evaluation of planned change, and it expressed an effort that one has waited on. This is in relation to **time** and not something like money or physical labor. ようやく is inappropriate in showing one's 本音 due to its objectivity.

17. ようやく分かった気がする。

I think I finally understand.

18. ようやく秋が来た。

Fall has finally come.

19. 寮での集団生活にようやく慣れました。

I have finally gotten used to group living in the dormitory.

20. 私は漸くほっとした心もちになって、^{まきたばこ}巻煙草に火をつけながら、始めて^{ものう}懶い
^{まぶた}睜をあげて、前の席に腰を下して

いた小娘の顔を^{いちべつ}一瞥した。

I finally became relieved, and while I lit my cigar, I first started to raise my languid eyes and glanced at the little girl's face, who was sitting in the seat in front of me.

From 蜜柑 by 芥川龍之介.

Form Note: It can be seen as ようよう・漸う in older language. ようやっと, the fusion of やっと and ようやく, also exists and is essentially the same as やっと with the time nuance of ようやく.

とうとう・到頭: This is similar to ようやく in that it places stress on the process rather than instant of realization. It is either used in positive or negative situations to show that after repeated efforts and over the course of a long time, an expected change either does or doesn't happen. This is subjective rather than objective. If you were to use it or ついに instead of やっと in something like あっ、やっと電車が来た!, your statement would be quite hyperbolic.

21. 彼らはとうとう行っちゃったよ。

They finally left.

22. すると間もなく^{すさ}凄まじい音をはためかせて、汽車が^{トンネル}隧道へなだれこむと同時に、小娘の開けようとした^{がらすど}硝子戸は、とうとうばかりと下へ落ちた。

Then, in no time at all, the girl caused a fierce noise to flutter about, and at

the same time the train plunged into the tunnel, the glass door that she had tried to open finally fell and plopped down below.

From 蜜柑 by 芥川龍之介.

辛うじて: This is a literary word that shows an extremely close-call situation in one's favor. So, it is often translated as "barely", but it is much like やっと. But, it doesn't have the same requirement that it have the prerequisite of something going as planned. 辛うじて can easily be used to refer to future event. If it is a nonfactual probability, it can't be replaced with やっと or ようやく. It can be if it is a factual probability, but in this case ついに and とうとう aren't good because they aren't used with future expressions.

23. 辛うじて生きてろ！

Narrowly live!

24. 辛うじて手に入った。

I narrowly got a hold of it.

いよいよ・愈(々)・弥弥: This can be very similar to the above when it shows that after some time, an event reaches an important situation. In this sense it is very similar to ついに. It is not emotionally cold like ついに. However, it is more objective than the other options like やっと. It also has other meanings such as "more and more" in which it implies increase in momentum.

25. あの ^{しわ}皺だらけの頬は ^{いよいよ}愈々赤くなって、時々 ^{はな}鼻涙をすすりこむ音が、小さな息の切れる声と一しょに、せわしく

耳へはいつて来る。

Her wrinkle covered cheeks at last became red, and the occasional sound of her sniffing her nose along with the sound of her breath running out restlessly entered my ears.

From 蜜柑 by 芥川龍之介.

～始末だ

There are four simple meanings of 始末. The first is to mean "beginning and end". It may mean "end result" in a negative fashion. As a noun or a verb with する, it means "clean up/get rid of". Lastly, it can mean "thrifty" as a noun or as a verb with する.

26. 事の始末を語った。

He gave the story of it (an event) from beginning to end.

27. 彼はしまいに、逃げ出す始末だった。

He, in the end, had to run away (from there).

28. 不法滞在して国外追放になる始末だ。

Illegal overstaying in a country results in deportation.

29. ^よ酔うと始末に終えない。

Obstreperous.

30. 始末屋

A thrifty person

The patterns in this pattern deal with compare and contrast. Although not near as similar to each other as topics in other lessons, you still need to pay attention to detail so that you don't confuse them with each other.

～に比べて

Also ～と比べて, ～に比べると, ～に比べ, ～と比べ, and ～と比べると, ～に比べて means "compared to". It is a simple comparison. Without ～て, of course, the pattern becomes more literary.

1. 外は暑いが、それに比べて中は寒い。

It's hot outside, but, moreover, in contrast, it's cold inside.

2. この本は昨日読んだのと比べると全くつまらない。

This book compared to the one I read yesterday is completely boring.

3. 彼は妹と比べて若く見えました。

He looked younger beside his younger sister.

4. 今年は去年に比べ、雪の^{りょう}量が多い。

In contrast to last year, there has been more snowfall this year.

5. 男子学生と女子学生の比率は、2対1だ。

The ratio of male and female students is 2 to 1.

Word Note: The last example is shown to give other similar words with the character 比.

～に引き換え

～に引き換え is used to show a sharp contrast in which something is greatly better or worse than something else. This can only go after nominal phrases, so you have to nominalize verbs and adjectives if you want to use them together.

6. 健太の住んでいるマンションは新しくて、広い。それに引き換え、僕のところは古くて狭いし、駅からも遠いよ。

The apartment that Kenta is living at is new and wide. By contrast, my place is old, small, and also far from the train station.

7. 同じ年の人に引き換え、彼はとても頭がよくて、たくさんの素晴らしい^{いぎょう}偉業^とを成し遂げました。

In sharp contrast to people of his same age, he is very smart and has made a lot of wonderful achievements.

8. 惑星^{わくせい}の大きさに引き換え、冥王星^{めいおうせい}はとても小さい。

In sharp contrast to the size of a planet, Pluto is very small.

～に反して

反する means "contrary" and ～に反して means "contrary to/against".

9. 予想^{よそう}に反して成功するのはいつもいいことでしょう。

Succeeding against one's expectations is always a good thing isn't it?

10. 神の意に反して人間は^{たが}互いに殺害している。

Against the will of God, humans are slaying each other.

11. 我々の期待に反していた。

It was contrast to our expectations.

12. 国 防 長 官 ^{こくぼうちょうかん} は事実^{じじつ}に反する報告^{ほうこく}をしました。

The Secretary of Defense made a report contradictory to the facts.

～にもまして

まして is an adverbial phrase that shows something is beyond the degree of the norm, past, other things, or the present situation. If the sentence is negative, of course, you say the opposite. ～にもまして takes this back to a verbal phrase with the same purpose.

You may also see ^{いわん} 況^{いわん} や, which is a contraction of the verb 言う, the auxiliary verb ～む, and や, which equate to something on the lines of いうまでもなく. This phrase is typically seen in negative sentences to mean “let alone”.

Examples

12. あいつは日本語を読むことすらできない。まして書くのと話すなどできるものではない。

He can't even read Japanese. Much less write it or speak it.

13. 彼女は小走りもろくにできない。^ま況^まして走れるわけがない。

She can hardly jog, much less being able to run.

14. 今年は去年にもまして暑さが厳しい。

The heat is far more severe than even last year.

15. 彼はほとんど目が見えない。ましてや、読めるわけがないよ。

He can't really see, much less being able to read.

16. ^{てき}敵^{てき}でも困っていたら助けます。ましてや味^{みかた}方^{かた}なら当然です。

I would help an enemy if her were to be in distress, much more a friend.

17. いわんや子供には無理だね。

It's useless much less with kids.

18. 最近は以前にもまして物覚えが悪くなった。

Recently, my memory has gotten worse than it was even before.

～ないまでも

This shows that something has not reaching past a certain level, but it is a little below.

19. 毎週とはいわないまでも、せめて月に 1 回は映画館に行きたい。

Not that it'd have to be every week, but I'd like to at least go to the movies once a month.

20. ^{かいせい}快 晴 とはいかないまでも、雨は降らないでほしい。

Not that I won't go if it doesn't turn out to be clear weather, but I'd like it to not rain.

～につれて, ～に従って, ～に伴って, and ～とともに all have meanings of showing the transition/change of one situation as another transition/change is under way. We will also see how ～に応じて・応えて relate to them.

～につれて

～につれて is either after a noun or a verb in the 連体形 to express "as one thing changes, another thing changes as well". These changes are simultaneous. Although it can be after nouns or verbs, it is after verbs more often. ～につれて is often used in situations where there is a proportional relationship with the two events in the respective clauses.

As such, the first clause acts as the trigger, proportionately raising the degree of the change/transition of the latter clause. Common translations include "as", "together with", and "in accordance to/with".

Variant Note: It can be seen in more formal/written language as～につれ.

Examples

1. 歌は世につれ世は歌につれ。

Song changes by generation, and generations change by song.

2. 昭和から平成へと時代が変わるにつれて ^{ぐんか}軍歌は歌われなくなりました。

With the changing of periods from the Showa to the Heisei, military songs became unsung.

3. 時間が経つにつれて忘れっぽくなる。

As time passes, I become forgetful.

4. 都心化（が進む）につれて自分の地域への関心が^{うす}薄れる。

As urbanization progresses, the concern towards one's region fades.

5. 夜が^ふ更けるにつれて^{あらし}嵐は激しくなった。

The storm became fierce as the night grew late.

6. 季節の変化につれて気温が変わる。

The temperatures change in accordance to the seasons.

7. 冬になるにつれて、山が白くなってくる。

The mountains become white as winter depends.

8. イナゴは稲に付く害虫なので駆除しなくてはなりません。昔の人はそこからイナゴを食べることを思いつきました。当時は、食べることを前提に捕まえていたので、殺虫剤は使っていませんでした。しかし戦後、農薬が普及し、それにつれてイナゴは激減してしまいました。現在では、殺虫剤を使ったイナゴの駆除も行われていますが、安全な無農薬栽培やオーガニック栽培をしている農家では一匹ずつ捕まえているそうです。大変な作業ですね。

Locusts are harmful insects which stick to rice plants and have to be exterminated. People in the past thought of eating locusts from this. At the time, they wouldn't use pesticides with eating them as a premise. However, after the war, agrochemicals spread, and with this locusts were decreased in number. Presently, there is extermination involving pesticides, but at farms which use safe non-agriculture chemical and organic cultivation, locusts are caught by hand one by one. That's definitely a tough job.

～に従って

～に従って can be used in a hierarchical sense to mean "according to". As should be expected, ～に従い is more formal and indicative of the written language. Both に従っての and に従った are appropriate attribute forms.

9. 命令に従って、行動しろ。

Act according to the command.

10. 私の合図に従って行動してください。

Please act in according to my signals.

It may also be used like ～につれて. In the first usage above, it attaches to nouns. As for this usage, it attaches primarily to verbs. It, however, simply states that the two actions described in the respective clauses are happening in parallel.

11. 南に行くに従い、気温がどんどん高くなる。(Somewhat literary)

The temperature gets higher as you go south.

12. 人口が増えるにしたがって、住宅問題が起こってくる。

As the population increases, housing problems will come to occur.

13. 人口が増えるにしたがって、犯罪が多発する。

As the population increases, crime will frequently occur.

The contrast in nuance between ～につれて and ～にしたがって can definitely be seen in the following example.

14. スタジアムで場内の歓声が高まる {につれて・にしたがって}。実況アナウンサーの声も大きくなっていった。

As the cheers in the stadium intensified, the commentator's voice got ever louder.

With ～につれて, the suspense is captured with the first clause being the trigger for the events of the second. With ～にしたがって, the sentence doesn't become ungrammatical, but it loses the emotive drive and merely states that the two events described in the respective clauses are happening in parallel.

～に伴って

伴う means "to accompany" and ～に伴って means "associated/accompanied with" or "as". Just like ～につれて, it may show that something is happening together with a change/transition of a certain situation. There is a temporal context of "taking A as the opportunity, therefore...B". It is also often the case that it infers that the thing in the second clause continues.

What precedes it is either a noun or verb. In the case of a verb, unlike the other options, the particle の may be optionally used after the verb for nominalization. To be clear, this is not required and is not done in the first place for the other options. Lastly, ～に伴って is more literary.

Variant Note: It may also be seen in writing as ～に伴い.

15. ^{おせん}汚染に伴う問題について話しましょう。

Let's talk about the problems accompanied with pollution.

16. 人口の増加に伴って、たくさんの住宅が建てられる。

Many houses are constructed in association to the increase in population.

Particle Note: 伴う is used with を when used transitively.

～とともに

～とともに also behaves like ～につれて to show that something happens together with a change/transition of a certain situation. However, unlike ～につれて, the entire sentence doesn't necessarily have to show a state of progress. In other cases it can have meanings equivalent to 同時に and 一緒に. As for its usage similar to ～につれて, it's also the case that the words it follows must show change in situation. It cannot be words pertaining to action, which ～につれ and ～にしたがって can be.

17. 人口の増加とともに、犯罪が多発する。

Along with the increase in population, crimes will frequently occur.

18. 子供が卒業するとともに、^{ふぼかい} 父 母 会 も ^{かいさん} 解 散 しました。

The parents' association also dissolved at the same time the kids graduated.

19. 皆さんとともに ^{かいてき} 快 適 な道づくりを進めます。

With everyone we will go forward with a pleasant road construction.

漢字 Note: This pattern may also be written in 漢字 as ～と共に.

～に応じて

～ に応じて means "accordingly" or "as to". The first meaning is important in this lesson as it ties with the other patterns. When it is used with a verb that shows change, it describes the corresponding/dealing with a certain change. In this instance, it is possible to switch it out with ～につれて, ～にしたがって, ～にもなって, and ～とともに.

In its other meaning, it is equivalent to ～に応じて (as to/to satisfy). Although this, too, sounds like it is of the vein of the other phrases, it's not. Although in such situations it may seem that ～に従って is possible, it would be considerably more negative.

20a. 住民の要求に応じて、説明会を開くことになりました。○

20b. 住民の要求に従って、説明会を開くことになりました。△

20c. 住民の要求 {にともなって・とともに}、説明会を開くことになりました。？

20d. 住民の要求につれて、説明会を開くことになりました。X

In meeting the wants of the citizens, it has been decided that we open an information seminar.

It has the attribute forms ～に応じての and ～に応じた. When に応じて comes before a noun, の is necessary after に応じて. Or, you can use に応じた. The 一段 conjugating verb 応じる either means "reply" or "to comply".

21. 質問に応じて、彼女は問題の解答を^{くわ}詳しく説明しました。

As to answer the question, she explained the answer to the problem well.

22. 命令に応じた服従。

Obedience in accordance to command.

23. 料金が^{きより}距離と時間に応じて決まります。

The fee is determined according to distance and time.

24. 「うん」と応じる。

To respond with a "yes".

25. 相手の^{いらい}依頼に応じましたか。

Have you responded to your partner's request?

26. 車の速さに応じてガソリンの消費量が変わる。

Fuel use will change depending upon the car's speed.

～に応じて

The 一段 verb 応える may be used to mean "to come through/satisfy/answer" or "to tell/go to one's heart". The latter usage shows some sort of burden.

27. 要求に^{こた}応えて、社員の給料が上がりました。

To meet demand, the employee's salaries went up.

28. 国民に応じて、法律は^{はいし}廃止されました。

The law was repealed in response to the citizens.

29. 期待に応える。

To come through with expectations.

30. ふかざけ
深 酒 は身体に应えるのです。

Hard drinking takes its toll on the body.

31. その当時供給は需要に {応えて・満たして} いなかった。

In those days, the supply didn't meet the demand.

Table of Contents

第200課: The Particles って, たって, & だって

In this lesson we will learn about the particles って, たって, and だって which are necessary in improving your colloquial Japanese skills.

The Particle って

The Case Particle って: Colloquial Citation

This is a very important feature of casual Japanese. The particle と is very frequently seen as って in spoken Japanese. Although it originally came from the contraction of という, it has since taken on と's function as a citation particle.

1. 難しいって思った。

I thought it was difficult.

2. 負けたよって言われてもなあ。

Even if you would have said you lost.

3. お母さんにどうぞよろしくって伝えてくださいね。

Please say nice to meet you to her mother.

4. 田中さんって知ってる？

Do you know Mr. Tanaka?

気にしなくてもいいってことだ。

It's nothing you may need to be worried about.

"... の...の (と) " is used to list things in contrast or emphatically and "... の...ないの (って) " shows excess. As is noted, sometimes using it may be uncommon or even old-fashioned.

5. なん ^{なん}のかんのと ^{もんく}文句をつける。

To complain of what and that.

6. 死ぬの生きるのと ^{おおさわ}大騒ぎだ。

Dying and living is all turmoil.

7. うるさいのなんのって、耳が聞こえなくなったほどだ。

It's so loud to the point I've lost my hearing.

8. ^{むしょく}無職になるの、^{りこん}離婚するの、^{さんざん}散々な目にあつたな。(Not so common)

Becoming unemployed and divorced, I've met a lot of terrible things hasn't it!

9. 寒い暑いと言っていないで、ジョギングは ^{まいあさ}毎朝しなさい。

Don't complain about it being hot or cold, you must go jogging every day.

10. ^{いた}痛い痛くないのと、^{とあ}飛び上がってしまったよ。(古い言い方)

It hurt so bad I accidentally jumped up.

The Adverbial Particle って: Emphatic

It takes up the subject with slight exclamation and is equivalent to というのは. It's also used in repeating what someone said.

11. オレって、なんてバカなんだ。

I'm such an idiot.

12. 誰かに出会える時っていつもこうだ。

Meeting someone is always the same way.

13. したくないって、どういう意味だ。

You don't want to do it, what do you mean?

14. 誰が {殺人・殺人者・人殺し・犯人} かって、あいつに決まってるよ。

It's settled that who the, um, murderer is that guy over there.

Word Note: 殺人者 is a rather formal word and not used much in actual conversation, although it is common in books. 人殺し is a graphic word that brings images of the bloody crime scene. So, it is considered a sensitive word and often avoided. 犯人, although it only means "criminal", it is the most likely word to use in this situation, and most people would realize automatically that the sentence is about murder anyways.

The Final Particle って: All of the Above

15. すぐ帰れってさ。

He said like to hurry home.

16. 間に合うだろうって。

They said they would probably make it on time.

With a high intonation, it shows confirmation.

17. 離婚するんですって。

You're getting divorced?

18. 病気だったんですってねー。

It was sickness, right?

In a downward intonation, it passes down an assertion strongly. It is often used to (re)assure someone like in Ex. 19.

19. 大丈夫だって。

It's OK.

20. きっと合格するって。

I'll surely pass.

The Conjunctive Particle って

1. When used with ～た.

- Even if you; no matter how.
- っていい, ってかまわない, and って差し^{つか}支えない to show permission.

21a. どう叫んだって、聞こえない。(Less common)

21b. どれほど叫んだって聞こえない。

Even if you somehow shout, he can't hear.

22. どう見えたって、校長は校長だ。

No matter how you look at it, the principal is the principal.

23. やったっていいじゃん。

Isn't it OK to do it?

Grammar Note: When used with ん, って is often changed to て. It's also common as ってー.

The Particle たって

For the most part, たって is ～た + って. However, there is one usage of たって that makes it unique.

The Conjunctive Particle たって

Often with a ^{そくおん} 促音, it is used as a colloquial variant of the phrase ^{そくおん} といつても meaning "even if you say that". There are several set expressions that accompany this.

Tense	Meaning
Non-past	Even though (pronoun)...

Past	Even if you (past tense verb)...
Volitional	Even if (pronoun) going to...
Adjectives	Even if you...

24. ハワイに行こうたって、どこも満員だよ。

Even if we're going to Hawaii, everywhere is full.

25. 無くたって、生きてはゆけるだろう？

Even if you don't have it, wouldn't you still go on living?

26. そうだと思ったとしても、そうと決まったわけじゃないだろ。

Even if you thought that, that doesn't mean that it's supposed to still occur that way you know.

Grammar Note: Of course, there are some situations in which たって would be unnatural.

The Particle だって

At times だって is merely a combination of だ and って or the voiced version of the particle だって. However, だって is also seen in unique situations.

The Adverbial Particle だって

1. It presents something with an added feeling of rebuttal in response to an assumption and is equivalent to もまた--"even (does)".

27. 犬だってそれくらい分かるだろう！？

Even a dog should understand that!?

28. 僕だって ^{つら}辛いのだ。

Even I'm bitter (about it).

29. こじき 乞食にだって言い ぶん 分はある。

Even a beggar has one's say.

2. "A だって B だって" arranges like things with the hint that other things are applicable as well.

30. 学校だって、大学だって、同じところじゃないか。

Isn't it the same place, whether it's school or college?

31. ペットを飼うなら犬だって猫だって同じようなもんじゃないか。

If you're going to raise a pet, isn't a dog or cat the same?

32. イルカだってクジラだって哺乳類なんだよ。

Whether a dolphin or a whale, it's still a mammal.

33. 子どもだって大人だって遊びたいときは思いっきり遊ぶんだよ。

Whether a kid or an adult, when people want to play, they play with all their heart.

34. 宝石だって着物だって買う。

To buy things whether it is jewelry or clothing.

3. With a feeling of rebuttal and attached to a phrase showing high value, it strengthens the meaning of a sentence and is equivalent to さえも meaning "even also".

35. うそ（だ）、決定的な証拠だってあるぞ。

Lie, there's even definitive evidence.

36. クラスにはピアニストだっているよ。

There's even a pianist in the classroom.

4. Attached to a phrase showing the "smallest" of something and followed by a negative expression, it is used to show complete negation.

37. いとこにとってはこんな大学は一日だって我^{がまん} 慢 できないだろう。

My cousin wouldn't last in this kind of a college for even a day.

38. わず 僅 かだって許されない。

Not even a little bit will be forgiven.

5. Attached to an interrogative, it is used to mean "all without exception", and is equivalent to "interrogative + でも".

39. いつだっていいさ。

Anytime is good.

40. 誰だってそんなこと {は・を} したく (は) ないね。

Nobody wants to do a thing like that.

6. 何だって asks for a reason with a feeling of criticism--why".

41. 何だってそんなことをしたんだ。

Why did you do even such a thing as that?

The Final Particle だって

1. Directly quotes the words of someone of which one thought to be unsuitable and is equivalent to だと.

42. 彼は、金を貸さなかったんだって。

He said, I didn't lend any money.

43. 知らなかったんだって。

You didn't know?

44. 遊びたくないだって？

You don't want to play?

Phrase Note: This usage is a contraction of だとして.

2. のだって quotes what someone said.

45. あの田中さん、^い行きたくないんだって。

Mr. Tanaka says he don't want to go.

46. あいつは来るんだって。

He's coming?

3. Asks about the information of something passed down when attached to a phrase of question or doubt.

47. 何だって？

What was it?

48. 食費はいくらって？

How much was the food expenses?

Variant Note: だって may be changed to ですって in polite context.

Exercises

1. Explain how tense affects the usage of the particle たって.
2. Create a sentence using the particle たって.
3. Create a sentence using the particle だって?
4. Compare and contrast an interrogative with だって and でも.

For those that have mastered the material of both Beginner's and Intermediate IMABI, Advanced I is the next step. You are by now able to easily comprehend the grammar and hopefully most of the vocabulary that you see in a publication. Advanced IMABI begins to add on more advanced grammar concepts as well as interesting topics.

Advanced I

第201課: Simultaneous Action II: The Particle つつ (VS ながら)

第202課: 抜く: ~ぬきで (は) , ~ぬきに (は) , ~ぬきで, ~ぬきにして (は) , & ~ぬきの

第203課: Reason: ~わけだ, ~せいで, ~由, ~ゆえ, & ~に託けて

第204課: Defining Parameter: ~を始め (として) , ~皮切りに (して) , ~に至るまで, ~をもって, & ~といったところだ

第205課: Four Morae Adverbs

第206課: 相槌

第207課: The Date: Traditional Calendar System

第208課: Numbers VIII: 概数 & Reading the 九九

第209課: Numbers IX: Decimals, Fractions, 大字, & Large Numbers

第210課: Numbers X: Measurements

第211課: ~ての

第212課: ~てたまる

第213課: Combination Particles with もの

第214課: Combination Particles with ばかり

第215課: More Endings I: ~果てる ~付ける・く, ~立てる・つ, ~尽くす, & ~こなす

第216課: More Endings II: ~返る・す, ~捲る, ~殴る, ~腐る, & ~通す

第217課: The Particle から II: ~からある, ~からの, & ~からする

第218課: The Volitional III: The Adjectival Volitional & Older Volitional Forms

第219課: ら抜き言葉

第220課: 自発動詞

第221課: Potential III

第222課: Exception: ~をのぞいて, ~をおいて, & ~ならでは

第223課: Can't Help I: ~ないではいられない

第224課: Can't Help II: ~てならない, ~てあまない, ~てしかたがない, ~にたえない, & ~にたまらない

第225課: Can't Help III: ~ないではすまない, ~ないではおかない, ~を余儀なく[される・させる], & ~を禁じ得ない

第226課: Limit: ~限り, ~を限りに, ~限りでは, ~に限って, ~に限らない, & ~とは限らない

第227課: Addition: ～に加えて, ～にとどまらず, ～もさることながら, ～はおろか・もちろん・もとより, & ～ともあれ

第228課: The Particle どころ

第229課: と Combination Particles I

第230課: と Combination Particles II

第231課: と Combination Particles III

第232課: と Combination Particles IV

第233課: Potential IV: ～かねる・かねない VS ～きれる・きれない VS ～える・うる/～えない

第234課: Relation and Non-relation: ～いかん、～にもかかわらず、～もかまわず、～をものもせず (に)、～をよそに、～をめげず (に)、～& ならいざしらず

第235課: Occasion: ～うえで, ～際に, ～折に, ～に際して, ～に当たって, ～に先立って, ～を前に (して), ～を控えて, ～に臨んで, & ～に面して

第236課: Worth and Extent: ～に足る, ～に依存, ～に値する, & ～に及ぶ

第237課: Nominal Phrases I: 中心, 上, & 分

第238課: Nominal Phrases II: 相応, 由, 代り, & 経由

第239課: Nominal Phrases III: 至極, 極み, 万一, 至り, & ゆかり

第240課: Locational: ～渡る・す, ～出る・す, ～上がる・げる, ～入る・れる, ～下がる・げる, ～降りる・ろす, ～落ちる・とす, & ～回る・す

第241課: Final Endings: ～こける, ～さす, ～倦む・ねる, ～逸れる, ～成す, & ～古す

第242課: Advanced ～べき Phrases: ～べくもない、～べからず・ざる, ～べく, ～べくして, & ～べし

第243課: The Verbs かかる & かける

第244課: むしろ, かねて, さもないと, 況して・況や, たとえ, 強いて, 敢えて, さすが, 一旦, & 殊更

第245課: Tendency: 嫌いがある, が早いか, が最後, & そばから

第246課: Incidental: ～がてら, ～かたわら, ～かたがた, ～ついでに

第247課: The Particles やら, なり, & きり

第248課: 連体詞

第249課: The Particles ども & だの

第250課: The Auxiliary Verb ～ず I

第201課: Simultaneous Action II: The Particle つつ (VS ながら)

つつ is a somewhat old-fashioned particle that has less function in this generation, but it is still very important as it lives strong in literature. In this lesson, we will investigate how to use this particle correctly and know exactly when it is appropriate and how it differs with things interchangeable with it.

The Conjunctive Particle つつ

Like most conjunctive particles in Japanese, the particle つつ attaches to the 連用形 and is exclusive to verbs.

一段活用動詞	見る	見つつ
五段活用動詞	思う	思いつつ
サ変活用動詞	する	しつつ
カ変活用動詞	来る	来つつ

When the particle つつ is used to express simultaneity, with the latter clause being either a positive or contrary statement, it is equivalent to the particle ながら. ながら shows simultaneous action too, but it's still different. つつ cannot be attached to nominal phrases but ながら can be.

1. 夫を亡くしてから、母は ^{ほそ}細腕 {X つつ・O ながら}、私たち 5 人の子供を育て上げた。

After losing her husband, my mother by herself raised us five kids.

Even in formal speech, ながら is the only choice in this situation. On the one hand, when the sentence is colloquial, つつ often becomes inappropriate.

2. 何だよ。静かだと思ったら、テレビを見 {O ながら・X つつ} 寝ちゃって。おい、風邪引くぞ。(男性語)

What is this? Just when I think it's quiet, you're falling asleep watching TV. Hey, you'll catch a cold!

3. お茶でも飲みながら、お喋りしない? ちょっと愚痴^{ぐち}を聞いてよ。(ちょっと女性っぽい)

Can't we talk a bit while having some tea? Just listen to what I have to complain about.

4. なあ、ご飯食べながら、新聞読むのか。やめてくれねーか。不愉快^{ふゆかい}だよ。(男性語)
Hey, you're reading a newspaper while eating? Can't you quit it? It's unfair.

Again, there are situations where the two are interchangeable. Differences will be elaborated on throughout this lesson. Of course, the most basic difference to remember is that つつ is indicative of the written language, and if it is used in the spoken language, it is rather formal and or old-fashioned.

5. 感謝し {つつ・ながら}、日々を送るがよい。

It is good to live each day by being grateful.

6. 二日酔いで痛む頭を押さえつつ、トイレに入った。(書き言葉)

I went to the bathroom while holding my head with a hangover.

7. 起きようと思い {つつ・ながら}、うら^{うら}こ^こ恨みの籠もった眼差しをあげた。

Thinking that I would get up, I gave a look in spite.

8. 嘘と知り {つつ・ながら}、まだ来ぬ人を、雨の中で待ち続けた。

Knowing that that was a lie, I continued to wait in the rain for the one that had not come.

9. いやだとは言い {つつ・ながら} (も)、まんざら^{まんざら}満更嫌いでもないらしい。

Although saying it's bad, [he] seems to not hate it altogether.

10. 真実と知り {つつながら} (も)、まだ誤った情報を伝えるのが本当に抜け目のないことだ。

While knowing the truth and still telling mistaken information is a really shrewd thing.

11. 車窓の景色を眺め {つつ・ながら}、過ぎ去りし日々を思い返していた。

As I gazed out at the scenery from the car window, I was reliving days pasted.

Archaism Note: 過ぎ去りし = 過ぎ去った. 過ぎ去りし is the 連体形 of the Classical Japanese phrase 過ぎ去りき, which uses the auxiliary verb ～き used to show recollection. 過ぎ去りし happens to be used occasionally due to its rather nostalgic feel.

As you can see, there are situations with particles where there is a contradictory relationship in the clauses.

12. 大雨は勢いを増し {ながら・つつ}、堤を決壊させるまでには至っていなかった。

The rain continued to amass momentum, though it didn't reach the point it would break the embankment.

13. テレビを壊し {○ (てい) ながら・×つつ} (も)、謝りもせず黙りこくっている。

I stayed quiet without apologizing having destroyed the TV.

In the case that ながら and つつ show a resultative relation, they behave the same, but when showing a contradictory situation, they differ. In such case, つつ still shows an ongoing situation, but ながら shows the situation after completion/ending of said action A.

Particle Note: When the particle も is added after ながら and つつ, they only show contradictory conjunction, which aids you in interpreting ながら.

Phrasing Note: ～ていながら more clearly demonstrates contradictory conjunction. However, semantic properties of the verbs also help.

For instance, in the following sentences, because the verb has an internal boundary—there is an internal limit to its extent—it makes two contrasting clauses a contradictory conjunction when used with *ながら*. Even still, it would be even less ambiguous, again, if *～ていながら* were used.

14. 彼は太（り・てい）ながら、健康なダイエットを続けている。

While he has gotten fat, he continues a healthy diet.

15. 体の動きを止めながら、心を先を急いでいた。

While I had stopped my body's movement, my heart was hastening onward.

However, when there is no “internal limit” in the verb, ambiguity can arise.

16. 彼女は美味しそうに食べながら、吐き気がするほどまずいと思っていた。

She seemed to eat like it was delicious but thought that it was bad to the point of puking. [Both clauses at the same time]

While she ate it like it was delicious, she thought that it was bad to the point of puking. [Second clause is after the fact]

Usually, in these instances, the positive interpretation is more complicated. However, this could very well be intended. Regardless, if *ながらも* had been used, there would be no ambiguity issue.

つつ, with it being somewhat archaic, is not used in interrogative sentences or sentences that urge things to happen like *～ようとする*. It's also not used with things like *～ている*.

17a. 出かけようとしながら ○

17b. 出かけようとしつつ X

While I was trying to leave

Another thing to note is that *つつ* can be used in showing the course of a change that is almost instant like a takeoff but *ながら* can't as it is generally used

with time periods longer than that. Contrarily, ignoring the course of change, it can't show the result of change.

18. 出発し {○ つつ・X ながら}、電車はスピードを上げていった。

The train sped up as it departed.

19. 出発し {○ ながら・X つつ}、電車はすぐまた停まってしまった。

While the train departed, it immediately stopped again.

つつある

つつある may either show that something is trying to materialize or a certain action/effect is continuing. Thus, it is usually interchangeable with ている. However, you must be careful with verbs such as なる where ている is used to show a resultant state. Thus, なりつつある ≠ なっている.

20. 耳が遠くなりつつある。

My hearing is going.

21. 古い伝統が消滅しつつあるというわけではないと思います。

I don't think it's to say that old traditions are disappearing.

22. 冬が近づきつつある。

Winter is drawing near.

23. 乱射事件は増えつつある。

Shooting incidents are on the rise.

24. 黒崎一護の霊圧は弱まりつつある。

Kurosaki Ichigo's spiritual pressure is waning.

25. 太陽が今昇りつつある。

The sun is rising now.

26. その病気は蔓延しつつあるそうだ。

It's said that the disease has been spreading.

27. 高まりつつある保護貿易主義を阻止する。

To turn back the rising tide of protectionism.

28. 動物集団は減少しつつある。

Animal populations are decreasing.

29. 地球が次第に暖かくなりつつあることは、温室効果の増大が原因ではない。そんな情報に操られすぎているので、真実であると思いかねる。

It is not that the Earth is gradually becoming warmer because of an increase in the greenhouse effect. As such information is too manipulated, it cannot be thought of as being the truth.

30. 大気が汚染されつつあるそうです。

I hear that the atmosphere is being polluted.

31. ウーロン茶の質は下がりつつあるそうです。

I hear that the quality of Oolong tea is going down.

第202課: 抜く: ～ぬきで (は) , ～ぬきに(は), ～ぬきで, ～ぬきにして (は), & ～ぬきの

This lesson is all about 抜く. Now, what may be so special about 抜く? It so happens to be used in ways that brings on some somewhat complicated grammar. Don't worry. It's not near as bad as the conditionals.

抜く

抜く is a physical verb that means "to extract" or "to remove" and is used in important [idioms](#). It is used in compounds to mean "...to the end" or "to...through".

To shoot through	射抜く	いぬく	To see through	見抜く	みぬく
To excerpt	書き抜く	かきぬく	To gouge out	割り抜く	くりぬく
To pierce through	突き抜く	つきぬく	To hit through	ぶち抜く	ぶちぬく
To dig through	掘り抜く	ほりぬく	To pass (car)	追い抜く	おいぬく
To select through	選り抜く	え・よりぬく	To win through	勝ち抜く	かちぬく
To cut through	切り抜く	きりぬく	To know thoroughly	知り抜く	しりぬく
To persist through	耐え抜く	たえぬく	To jump through	出し抜く	だしぬく

[RESOURCE PAGE AVAILABLE](#)

Examples

- 彼はやり抜いた。
He did it until the end.
- 手を抜くな。
Don't slack off!
Literally: Don't extract your hand (away).
- 頑張り抜くのは難しい。
Persisting until the end is difficult.
- 彼は生き抜けるのか？
Can he survive it?

5. 戦国時代を生き抜く。
せんごくじだい いぬ

To live through the Warring States Period.

Word Note: The intransitive version of 抜く is ～抜ける.

6. 逆境を切り抜ける。
ぎゃつきょう きぬ

To pass through adversity.

～ぬきで (は) , ～ぬきに (は) , ～ぬきで, ～ぬきにして (は) , ～ぬきの

As you can see, all of these patterns utilize taking the 連用形 of 抜く and making things difficult with particles. 「X ぬき {で・に} (は) Y (ない)」 shows that in the process of doing Y, there are plenty of important things, but from them, if you were to drop X, you wouldn't be able to do Y. As a consequence, in the last sentence, you couldn't replace 参加 with something like 協力. For this, you would have to use ～なし {で・に} . What causes either で or に incorrect is based on whether the phrase is dynamic 動態 (で) or static 静態 (に).

7. ちょっと私ぬき {○ では・△ には} イベントが始まらないんじゃないの? (女性語的)

Without me, the event wouldn't start, no?

8. 僕ぬき {で・△ に} そんなこと始めるなんてできないよ。

You couldn't even start that without me.

9. そろそろ食事をしますから、私ぬきで、ゲームを続けていてください。

Since I'm having dinner soon, please continue the game without me.

10. 昼ご飯ぬき {○で・X に} 頑張ってるんですか。

So you're trying without having had lunch?

11. 優勝なんて、あいつぬきじゃ、できっこないんだよ。

(We) won't be able to win victory without that guy.

12. 朝食ぬきで働くなんて、できるわけがないよ。

There's no way I can work without having breakfast.

13. 冗談 {ぬきで・はぬきにして}、まじめに話し合しましょう。

Leaving jokes aside, let's seriously talk with each other.

As you would imagine, ~ぬきの is used in modifying other noun phrases.

14. 塩ぬきのをください。

One without salt, please.

15. マッシュルームぬきの（ラーメン）をください。

Ramen without mushrooms, please.

16a. アルコール抜きのパーティー

16b. ノンアルコールパーティー

An alcohol-free party

～を抜きにして

～を抜きにして means "leaving out". This means that an X is should be left out for the realization of B. Of course, if the sentence is negative, then the opposite is true.

17. 冗談は抜きにして、そろそろ帰らないと、まずいよ。

Leaving jokes aside, if you don't go home pretty soon, it won't be good.

18. 堅苦しい挨拶 {は抜きに・抜きで} しましょう。（Notice the difference in particle usage）

Let's do without the ceremonious greetings.

19a. 力強い意志を抜きに（して）戦い続けることはできぬぞ。（Old-man; 武士 talk）

19b. 強気でなければ戦い続けることはできぬぞ。（Old-man; 武士 talk）

Without a powerful will, you will not be able to continue fighting.

第203課: Reason: ~わけだ, ~せいで, ~由, ~ゆえ, & ~にかこつけて

This lesson is all about ways in Japanese to tell excuse/reason in ways we have yet to see thus far in the curriculum. Luckily, there is little in common with the expressions in this lesson. So, you there is no need to be cumbersome with detail.

~わけだ

The noun わけ means "reason". It strongly asserts cause and effect, and it can easily assert things. Conclusions and circumstances are inevitable with わけ, and is used to confirm things as fact. It is often in ~というわけだ.

1. 「いくら一生懸命勉強しても、まだ英語の能力が足りませんね。」「要するに、英語を話すのが下手だというわけでしょう。」

"No matter how much I study with all my might, my English skills are still lacking." "In short, the reason is that you're bad at speaking English."

2. こういうわけで、あいつがきらいなんだよ！

This is the reason why I don't like him!

3. 要するに、こういうわけなんだ。

In short, it's like this.

4. 安いなら、買った方がいいというわけではありません。

If it is cheap, it is not to say that it is best to buy it.

5. その^ご後、二人はすぐに結婚したわけです。

After that, the two quickly married.

6. 殺人の目的は殺しに見せかけることにあったわけだ。

The motive of the murder was faking a killing.

7a. なぜ（だ）かケータイは^{いま}居間にあった。

7b. どういうわけか、ケータイは居間にあった。

Somehow or another, my cell phone was in the living room.

8. ^よ酔っ ^{ばら}払 うわけだ。

You're supposed to get drunk (with that much).

9. 訳もなく、彼は机を壊した。

Without any reason, he broke the desk.

He broke the desk with ease.

2. ～わけではない means "it's not that".

10. 全てが私の責任というわけではありません。

That doesn't mean it's entirely my fault.

11. 日本語を^げ解するわけじゃないが、歌舞伎が好きだ。

It's not that I want to understand Japanese; I (just) like Kabuki.

12. 天才はいないわけではない。

It's not that there isn't a genius (here).

3. ～わけがない means "there is no way that".

13. 日本語は {おろか・言うまでもなく}、中国語も簡単に学べるわけがない。

Japanese is one thing, but there's no way that I can learn Chinese easily.

14. できるわけがない。

There's no way I can do it.

4. ～わけにはいかない means "can't". The speaker can do it, but due to circumstances the speaker mustn't do so.

15. 負けるわけにはいかないよ。

I can't lose!

16. 断るわけにはいかないから、命令に従おう。

I cannot refuse so I shall follow the order.

17. 疲れたからってやめるわけにはいかない。

You can't just quit because you're tired.

18. そうかといって、信じるわけにはいかない。

Even so, you mustn't believe (that).

19. 「明日まで待っていただけないでしょうか」「ええ、でも、急いでいるので、長い間待つわけにはいかないんです」

"Could you wait until tomorrow" "Yes, but, since I'm in a hurry, I can't wait for a long time".

20.

学生: 漢和辞典を貸していただけないでしょうか。

先生: 今使っているから、貸すわけにはいかないんですけど。

Student: Could you lend me the Chinese-Japanese character dictionary?

Teacher: Since I'm using it right now, I can't lend it to you.

いかない VS いけない

いかない is the negative of 行く. It can mean that things "don't go as thought". Or, when used in the phrase above in わけにはいかない it shows that

one "can't" or "isn't permissible". Likewise, ～ないわけにはいかない = "no choice but to". This shows a sense of obligation.

21. 日本語の授業では英語を話すわけにはいきません。

You can't speak English in Japanese class.

22. アメリカ^し史の授業ではガムを^か噛むわけにはいきません。

You can't chew gum in American history.

23. 授業では寝るわけにはいきません。

You can't sleep in class.

24. 忙しくても寝ないわけにはいかないよ。

Even if you're busy, you have no choice but to sleep.

25. しないわけにはいかない。

You have no choice but to do it.

26.

A: 漢字は勉強するのに時間がかかりますねえ。

B: ええ、でも覚えられないわけにはいかないしねえ。

A: It must take a lot of time to study Kanji.

B: Yeah, but there's no choice but to remember them.

27. 「この頃サークル活動で忙しいようだね」「うん、でも、サークル活動が忙しいとい
って宿題をしないわけにはいかないしね」

"You seem pretty busy these days with club activities, don't you?" "Yes, however,
even though I'm busy with club activities, I have no choice but to do home-
work".

28. 「漢字は難しいねえ」「うん、でもそうかと言って漢字で書かないわけにはいかない
しねえ」

"Kanji are difficult, aren't they". "However, there's no choice but to write with Kanji".

29. 「毎日忙しくて寝る時間もないね」「うん、でもそうかといって全然寝ないわけにはいかないでしょ」

"I'm so busy every day that there's no time to sleep" "Yes, but, there's no excuse for not sleeping at all".

30. 「今日みんなで飲みに行くのかな。あまり行きたくないけど」「うん、でもそうかと言って行かないわけにはいかないよ」

"Everyone's going out to drink today, but I don't really want to go". "Well, but you still have no choice but to go".

On the other hand, いけない comes from the negative potential form of 行く. It has a few more usages than いかない. It can mean "bad", especially in reference to behavior. There are several grammatical patterns that it is used in.

- いけなくなる・いけなかった = A euphemism for "to die".
- ～といけない = Lest; in case
- ～ていけない = Must not; should not; don't
- ～なくてはいいけない・～なければいいけない = Must

31. ^{あしもと}足 下 に注意しなくてはいいけません。

You must watch your step.

32. 彼は ^{ほど}程 なくいけなくなりました。

He passed away shortly thereafter.

33. 外で遊ばなくてはいいけないぞ。(Masculine)

You mustn't play outside.

～せいで

Also read as しょうい, せい means "since/because of/due to" and is essentially the same thing as ため except that せい is used in a sense of blame. The particle that follows is で.

If you use this pattern with something that is generally perceived as being a good thing, it will sound strange and usually unnatural. You would have to do some explaining. The way to express this in a positive fashion is by usingのおかげ (さま) で, which doesn't always have to be used in a positive situation. The point is that at least it can.

Examples

34. 妹のせいで、父に叱られた。

I was scolded by my dad because of my little sister.

35. 俺のせいにすんな。（ちょっと失礼）

Don't blame me.

36. 津波のせいで食糧不足になった。

We got into a food shortage due to the tsunami.

37. 病気のせいで、パーティーに行けなかった。

I didn't come to the party due to an illness.

38. 休みなのに強風と花粉のせいで家から出れない。（Casual）

Although I'm on a break, due to strong winds and pollen, I can't leave the house.

39a. 彼が失敗したのは怠惰のせいだ。

39b. 彼が失敗したのは怠けたからだ。（More natural）

He failed because of his laziness.

40. 雨のせいで、遅刻した。

I arrived later due to the rain.

41. 彼は疲労のせいで、眠いというよりも疲れているのです。

He is less sleepy than tired due to his fatigue.

～ (の) せいか

As the adverbial particle か shows uncertainty, it shows in translation when used with せい.

42. 天気のせいか、気分が悪い。

I feel bad because of the uncertainty of the weather.

43. 山田さんは、試験ができなかったせいか今日は元気がありません。

Mr. Yamada isn't well today apparently because he did bad on his exam.

44.

小林：ちょっと元気がないみたいけど、どうかしたの？

出口：うん、食中たりのせいかお腹が痛いんだ。

Kobayashi: You look a little bad; what's wrong?

Deguchi: Yeah, I think my stomach's hurting because of food poisoning.

45.

中田：どうかしたの。

川崎：うん、昨日の晩風邪を引いたせいか頭が痛くて。。。。

中田：じゃ、早く帰って寝たら？

Nakada: What's wrong?

Kawasaki: My head is hurting cause I might have gotten a cold last night.

Nakada: Well, how about getting home quickly and sleep?

～由

由 is a noun that means "reason/cause", "method", or "information" and minor nuances from these definitions. It is used often in very formal sentences. They are typically set expressions and those found in very complex 敬語, of which is aimed for the written language. So, this is not necessarily something that you should venture out and use creatively.

46. 知る由もない。

There is no way of knowing.

47a. ご無事の由、安心しました。

47b. ご無事と聞いて安心しました。（More natural）

I am relieved to hear that you are alright.

48. この由をお伝え下さい。

Please report this information.

49. 事の由

The reason of the situation.

50a. お元気の由何よりです。

50b. お元気で何よりです。（More natural）

It's all above anything else that you are well.

ゆえ

故 means "reason". When placed after a nominal phrase or the 連体形, it is just like ～ために. However, it is very rare and seen in 古語的な書き言葉. It's used in situations to show a plus-minus out of the ordinary effect brought on by a negative, out of the ordinary cause. If you compare it with similar phrases in the spoken language, it far more objective, which at times can make it sound cold.

This, though, is an oversimplification of the emotional state of the sentences that it can appear in. In a broader and perhaps more accurate assessment of 故, it has some contextual connection to regret, lament, sadness, loneliness, etc., but whether the event itself is in the end a good thing or bad thing is decided by the given situation.

Examples

51. 急いでおりました故失礼しました。

Please excuse me for my rush.

52. 経験不足故の失敗だ。

It's a failure due to a lack of experience.

53. 若さ故の冒険

An adventure for youth.

54. {若さ(の) ゆえに・若い(が) ゆえに}、思慮分別を欠き、思わぬ失敗をすることがよくある。

Due to one's youth, one lacks discretion and often commits unexpected blunders.

55. 何ゆえ? (書き言葉)

For what reason?

56. いつも ^{さんきょう}山 峡 の大きい自然を、自らは知らぬながら相手として孤独に ^{けいこ}稽古 するのが、彼女の習わしであったゆえ、^{ばち}撥 の強くなるは自然である。その孤独は ^{あいしゅう}哀愁 を ^{ふ やぶ}踏み破 って、野生の意力を宿していた。幾 ^{いくぶん}分 下 ^{した}地 があるとは言え、複雑な曲を ^{おんぷ}音 譜 で独習し、譜を離れて弾きこなせるまでには、強い意志の努力が重なっているにちがいない。

Since it was her custom to, while knowing not herself, lonely practice with the grand nature of the valley as her partner, the strengthening of her pick was natural. The loneliness stamped through sorrow and housed a wild willpower. Although she had quite a bit of aptitude, it is without a doubt that studying complicated songs alone with only music notes and getting to the point of being able to play well without them involved the piled efforts of her strong will.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: In なるは, the function of the 連体形 is to act like a nominalized phrase that would be marked in completely modern Japanese with の or もの.

57. 咲子のスカートが裾からちろちろ燃えていた。彼女が身動きせぬゆえか、その焰は童話じみた静けさに見えた。だらりと垂れた手の袖も燃えていた。

The hem of Sakiko's skirt wavered and burned; perhaps because she did not move, but the flames appeared to be in a fairy-tale like serenity. Her loosely hanging sleeves were also burning.

From イタリアの歌 by 川端康成.

58. 瀧野は暗くなってから、急に秋じみた ^{あし} 蘆 の葉の音のなかで、^{きょうしゅう} 郷 愁 のような ^{さび} 寂 しさに沈んでいたところだったゆえ、若い士官と半玉との ^{がっしょうたい} 合唱 隊 の姿が、直 ^{うか} ぐに心に 浮 び、その歌声も聞こえて、三人のうちただ一人残っていた ^{こちょう} 小 蝶 も、とうとう失われるかと、遠い悲しみを覚えたが、気を取り直してみれば、午後の ^{たいふう} 台風 一 過 には、確かに ^{ざんぎゃく} 惨 虐 な ^{あとあじ} 後 味 があった。

After getting dark, because Takino had been sinking into a nostalgia-like sadness in the sounds of the reed leaves that suddenly become fall-like, the figure of the chorus with the young officer and young geisha immediately came to his mind, and hearing their singing voices, he had thought that Kocho, the single person left out of the three, was to be lost in the end and felt a distant sorrow, but when he tried to rally his spirits, there was certainly a cruel aftertaste to the clear

weather after the typhoon in the afternoon.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

59. 「被^{ひこく}告^{かえ}の精神状態には、そのために殺人を犯すほどの病的なものが認められないゆえに、反^{かえ}って私は、病的犯罪として無罪を宣告された多くの殺人者よりも、この山辺三郎の方が、罪が軽いと思う。刑法とはまた別の目で見れば」

Because no disease could be verified to commit murder because of it in the defendant's mental state, I the more thing that *this Yamabe Saburo's crime is light*, way more than the many murders that have been sentenced not guilty on insanity. That's if you look at it apart from criminal law".

From 散りぬるを by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: 〜のほう is one of the only instances where the choice of が is so strong that the particle happens to be appear twice in the same clause.

60. お前はこの殺人事件を無意味なゆえに美しいと見たがりながら、いろんなしたりげな意味をつけた。

On meaningless reasons, while wanted to view this murder cause as something beautiful, you attached various prideful meanings to it.

From 散りぬるを by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: In this sentence, 故 clearly acts as a noun. Even in the other previous sentences, it functions as a noun. At times, it is more modal like other words such as ため.

〜に託けて

The 一段 verb 託ける means "to use as an excuse" and 〜に託けて is often translated as "under (the excuse of)".

61. 宗^{しゅうきょう}教^{かこつ}の名に託^せけてコンキスタドーレスはアステックの帝国を攻め滅ぼした。

The Spanish Conquistadors attacked and utterly destroyed the Aztec Empire under the name of religion.

62. 彼は雪に託けて仕事をサボった。

He skipped work under the excuse of snow.

Table of Contents

第204課: Defining Parameter: ~を始め（として）, ~を皮切りに（して）, ~に至るまで, ~をもって, & ~といったところだ

Defining the beginning and limitation of a parameter is something that people do all the time. These phrases, although not an exhaustive list of phrases in Japanese that fit this description, will allow you to become even more sophisticated in how you can articulate yourself in this regard.

~を始め（として）

As you should know, 始める means "to start". をはじめ = "starting with". It may also be expanded to をはじめとして, which is a bit more poignant.

1. 社長を始め、社員一同です。

Starting with the company president, all employees are present.

2. 日本の会社を始めとして、沢山の企業が業績悪化しています。

Starting with Japanese companies, a lot of businesses are in a downturn.

3. 彼は中国語を始め、日本語と韓国語にも堪能ですよ。

Starting with Chinese, he is also proficient in Japanese and Korean.

4. 春になると、桜をはじめとして、いろんな花が咲きます。

When it becomes spring, starting with cherry blossoms, various flowers blossom.

~を皮切りに（して）

皮 ^{かわき}切 り means the "outset of things" and is used in the speech modal を皮切りに（して）・を皮切りとして to show that starting with X, you do something in succession. This pattern shouldn't really be used with natural phenomena or bad things. What follows should be similar in nature, and it is especially used in situations where you want to clearly state such a chain of events.

5. じょうだん
冗談を皮切りに演説をする。

To give a speech by starting out with a joke.

6. 公演を皮切りに各 地 で 演 奏 会 を開きました。
かくち えんそうかい

They opened up concerts in various/every place(s) as the start out of their public performance.

7. 今月 6 日の東京公演を皮切りにして、全国ツアーを予定しております。

We are planning to do a nationwide tour starting with a Tokyo performance on the sixth of this month.

8. 塩川さんの発言を皮切りにして、みんなが次々に意見を言った。

Starting with Shiokawa's remarks, everyone said their opinions one after another.

9. カリフォルニアへの旅行を皮切りとして、国外をあちこち旅行しています。

Starting with a trip to California, I'm traveling all over outside the country.

～に至るまで

～ に至るまで shows that a certain matter's extent reaches up to a surprising state. It attaches to phrases that express an unexpected and normally not able to be taken up, and it emphasizes the fact that the extent is wide.

Remember that the verb 至る means "to arrive/reach/get to". It can also be paired with another phrase marked with から to show how a whole swath is being pinpointed. As you will see in the examples, this speech modal attaches to nouns.

Examples

10. 今度の出張のスケジュール ^{ひょう めんみつ} 表 は 綿 密 すぎる！起床時間から飛行機内の食事開始時間に至るまで書いてあるよ。

This business trip's schedule is too detailed! It has written on it the time from when we wake up to the time we start eating in the plane.

11. 畑中先生には卒業後の進路はもちろん、^{れんあい なや} 恋 愛 の 悩 みに至るまで何でも相談している。

My path after graduation, of course, but I'm also consulting about everything to even love problems to Hatanaka Sensei.

12. 外国で暮らすことになったので、ベッドから ^{だいどころようひん} 台 所 用 品 に至るまでみんなリサイクルショップに売った。

As it's been decided that I live abroad, I sold everything from my bed to kitchen utensils to the recycling shop.

13. 今に至るまで作られている。

Even until now they are being made.

14. 頭から足先に至るまでのほぼ全身がびしょ^ぬ濡れだよ。

Basically my entire body is soaked from head to toe.

15. その大都市の学校はもちろんのこと、小さな分校に至るまで、統一されたカリキュラムで教育が行われている。

Of course, as far as that big city's schools, education is done with a unified curriculum to even the smallest campus.

16. 彼は頭の上から ^{つまさき} 爪 先 に至るまで全身泥まみれになった。

His entire body became covered in mud from the top of his head to his tip-toes.

Usage Note: This construction is not used in reference to animals. It is always used with something concerning humans.

More About 至る

至る means "to reach...". It may follow the 連体形 or stem of する to show that something has finally reached a certain condition. 〜に至って (は) and に至ると focus on something as the topic by raising an extreme example. Lastly, 至って as an adverb means "very" or "extremely".

17. 中国語はもちろん、英語に至ってはからきしだめだよ。

Not to mention Chinese, reaching English is completely hopeless.

18. 年老いたとはいえ、至って健康です。

Although he has aged, he is extremely healthy.

19. ^{じっし}実施するに至った状況を説明します。

I'll explain the situation reached to being carried out.

〜をもって

Though only the first usage relates to the topic of this lesson, as this phrase has other important usages to know about, they will also be discussed at this time.

1. 〜をもって marks the end of a things, and is not used in daily conversation and it is very formal and official-like.

20. 本日の営業は 10 時をもって閉店致します。

Today's business will close at 10 o' clock.

21. 当店は 10 月末日をもちまして閉店させていただきました。長い間のご利用ありがとうございました。

This store will close at the end of October. Thank you for your long use (of our store).

22. 以上をもちまして本日の演説大会は終了いたします。

With this being the end, today's speech convention is concluded.

23. 今期をもって私は退職するつもりでございます。

At the end of this term, I plan to retire.

24. ^{てんらんかい}展覧会はこの時点を以って閉会とします。

We have decided to close this exhibition with/at this occasion.

It can also show a basis for something or object of judgment.

25. ^{いちじ}一事を以って人を判断するなかれ。(Archaic)

Do not judge a man by one action.

26. やつを以って^{こうし}嚆矢とす。(Set phrase; archaism)

To hit the enemy as the aim with an arrow to signal the start of the battle.

27. ^{ひにん}非人をもって^{にん}任じるは悪し。(Archaic; classical)

It is bad to pose as a hinin.

Historical Note: A 非人 was a person of the lowest rank of society.

2. In でもって meaning "furthermore". This is still used in formal writing.

28. 美人で以って頭も良い女

A woman who is a beautiful person, and furthermore smart

3. In まったくもって, a stronger version of まったく. Although more literary, it's still possible to hear it used in the spoken language.

29. 宮城県は全くもって困った地方だね。

Miyagi Prefecture is a completely troubled region, isn't it?

4. **Older** usages of this include being used as a conjunction to mean "thereupon" and as an equivalent to the case particle で to show means of action.

30. 以って^{めい} 瞑^{めい} すべし。

Thereupon you should close one's eyes and sleep.

31. 手紙を以って^{こうてい} 皇^{こう} 帝^{てい} を^{つうたつ} 通^{つう} 達^{たつ} す。

To notify the Emperor with a letter.

～といったところだ

～ といったところだ is used to say that at the most, something isn't that high. It can be after nouns or verbs. It should only be used with phrases that concern a low number/amount.

41. せいぜい 1 泊で温泉に行くといったところでしょうか。

How about at the most going to an onsen for a night?

42. 私の^{すいみん} 睡^{すい} 眠^{みん} 時間は 4 時間といったところですよ。

My sleeping time is just at most four hours.

第205課: 4 Morae Adverbs

There are a lot of adverbs that have a 促音, end in り, are onomatopoeic, and are four morae in length. Although there are definitely more adverbs that are four morae in length, this constituency deserves a name. So, they will be referred to as 四音節副詞.

品詞 Note: If a definition is adjectival, use とした with the word. For example, がっしりとした.

四音節副詞

Adverb	Definition(s)
あっさり	Readily; flatly; easily; plain; frank
うっかり	Inadvertently
うっとり	Ecstatically; absentmindedly; abstractedly; vacantly
おっとり	Gently; quietly; calmly
がっかり	Disappointing; dejected; downcast
かっきり	Exactly; flat; sharp even
がっくり	Heartbroken; break down; dash
がっしり	Stout; solid; massive; square
かっちり	Tightly; exactly
がっちり	Solidly built; tightly; shrewd
がっぷり	Firmly; latched onto
がっぽり	In large quantities
きっかり	Promptly; precisely; exactly
ぎっしり	Closely; densely
きっちり	Closely; snug; tightly
きっぱり	Flatly; absolutely; completely
くっくり	Sharply; clearly; clear-cut
ぐっすり	Soundly
ぐったり	Completely exhausted; dead tired; limp
げっそり	Being disheartened; losing weight
こっきり	Just; only

こっそり	Stealthily; secretly
ごっそり	Completely; wholly; entirely
こってり	Thickly; heavily; severely; strongly
ざっくり	Roughly; loosely; deeply (cut)
さっぱり	Refreshed; trimmed; simple; entirely; not at all
しっかり	Tightly; firmly; steadily
しっくり	Not well
じっくり	Thoroughly; closely
しっとり	Moist; slightly wet
じっとり	Sticky
しっぽり	Moist; delicate (affection)
すっかり	All; quite; completely; perfectly; entirely; utterly; right
すっきり	Neat; refreshed; clean-cut; straightforward
ずっしり	Heavily
すっぱり	Completely; flatly
すっぽり	Completely
そっくり	Living; natural; lifelike; all
たっぷり	Sufficiently; amply; heartily; good
ちゃっかり	Calculating; shrewd; smart; cheeky
ちょっぴり	Little; bit
てっきり	Surely; beyond doubt
でっぷり	Ample; beefy; stout
どっかり	Heavily
どっきり	Be shocked; be frightened
とっくり	Carefully; well
どっさり	Lot of
どっしり	Massively; heavily; dignified
とっぷり	Completely; fully; entirely
どっぷり	Totally (immersed)
にっこり	(Smile) sweetly

ねっちり	Sticky; persistently
ねっとり	Sticky
のっそり	Ponderous; elephantine; sluggishly
のっぺり	Flat
はっきり	Clearly; distinctly; plainly; definitely; sharply; vividly
ぱっくり	Gaping; snapping
ぱったり	With a clash; abruptly; unexpectedly
ぱったり	Abruptly; suddenly
ぱっちり	Perfectly; properly
ぱっちり	Open wide
びっしり	Closely; densely
ひっそり	Secretly
ぴったり	Close; tightly; snug; exactly
ぴっちり	Tightly; snugly
ひょっこり	Accidentally; by chance
ふつつり	Break; snapping up
ぶつつり	Break; snapping up
べったり	Closely; thickly; hard
べったり	Closely; fast
べっとり	Sticky; icky
ぽっかり	Lightly; gaping wide
ぽっきり	Only; merely
ぽっくり	Suddenly
ほっそり	Slender; slim; light
ぽっちゃり	Plump
ぼってり	Fleshy; chubby
まったり	Full-bodily
みっしり	Strictly; fully; closely
みっちり	Strictly; fully
めっきり	Very much; a lot; remarkably

むっくり	Suddenly
むっちり	Plump; chubby
むっつり	Sullen; taciturn; sulky
やっぱり	After all
ゆっくり	Slowly; deliberately; leisurely
ゆったり	Easy; relaxed; comfortable; loose; expansive; full

Examples

ゆっくりと話してくれた。

He slowly talked for me.

ゆったりとしたスカートを履（は）く。

To put on a loose skirt.

ゆったり過ごしただけ。

I just passed the day.

国会議員はあっさりやめるべきだ。

The Congressman should readily resign.

みんなカメラの方を見てにっこりしましょう。

Let's all smile towards the camera.

みっしり鍛えれたのかな。

I wonder if he was fully trained?

もっとはっきりと発音しなさい。

Pronounce this more clearly.

一晩ぐっすり眠る。

To get a good night's sleep.

とっくりと話を聞いて。

Listen carefully to me, you hear.

のっそりと起こす。

To get up sluggishly.

血のりがズボンにべっとりついてしまった。

The blood clot got stuck to the pants.

ひょっこり幸子に出会ったのよ。（Feminine）

I unexpectedly ran into Sachiko.

彼はどっかりと座った。

He sat down heavily.

さっぱりしたいいやつ

A good sport

あいつのなまりはさっぱり分かんねーぞえ。

（Violent）

I don't understand that guys dialect!

めっきり暑くなった。

It's become remarkably hot.

どっさりある。

To have a ton.

しっかりしろ！

Pull yourself together!

たっぷり 5 時間も仕事する。

To work a good 5 hours.

がっかりなさったでしょう。

I've disappointed you.

むっくりと起き上がった。

They suddenly got up.

悪道にどっぷりとつかっているだけの男だ。

He is just a man indulged in evil ways.

気分がすっきりする。

To feel refreshed.

一回こっきりでやめるとは臆病だ。

Quitting with one time is cowardly.

ぽっかり穴が開いた。

A hole gaped open.

うっかりして忘れた。

It slipped my mind.

うっとり眺める。

To ecstatically gaze.

うっとりさせるような声をあげる。

To have an alluring voice.

日がとっぷりと暮れた。

It got completely dark.

のっぺりとした目鼻立ち

Expressionless facial expressions

ちょっぴり皮肉じゃないか？

Isn't that a little ironic?

僕はほっそりとした体格です。

僕は {ほっそり・すらり} としている。

I'm slender.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Find a Japanese document and see how many 四音副詞 you can. Then, translate them.

第206課: 相槌 (あいづち)

相槌 allow conversations to be prolonged and flow in Japanese. They are often misunderstood by foreigners as showing agreement. Sometimes this may be this case, but this feature of conversation is far from limited to this.

相槌

Agreement

頷き (nodding) can show agreement as well as using words like はあ、はい、ええ、うん. Of course, you must realize that these words have different politeness implications. For instance, you shouldn't say うん to your boss. はい is the most appropriate in this situation. はあ is rather ceremonious. All of these should be used with a falling intonation for this instance.

1. はあ、分かりました。

Yes, I understand/understood.

I See...

そうですか。

そうなんですか。

なるほど。

へえ

ふーん

There are small differences. The first two have a slight sense of surprise with the second being slightly more emphatic. なるほど is used when something from another person is said that you yourself hadn't realized/known and you recognize or agree with it. へえ can be used in a somewhat reserved feeling in responding. ふーん・ふうん is used when one is a little impressed, agree or acknowledgment something.

2. ふーん、なるほど。

Hm...indeed.

When Surprised

ええっ?	Eh?	本当ですか?	Really?	嘘	You're lying!
信じられない	I can't believe it	冗談でしょう?	You're kidding?		

Showing Doubt

そうですか?	そうでしょうか	そうかな (～)
--------	---------	----------

Intonation Note: Rising intonation for these phrases.

These phrases can be described as echo questions (おうむ返し疑問文) because they aren't true questions and are merely used to try to get at some understanding.

Others

Anything like それで、どういうわけでしょうか、それは_____ですね, etc. are also considered 相槌. Essentially, any response from another person to keep the conversation going and making the transitions in details more natural is an 相槌. The typical Japanese way of explaining starts out broad and then getting to details by the end. Although dialogues in books, anime, and manga may have quite a lot, true natural spoken Japanese is one of the best ways to hear these in use.

Understand that 相槌 are the way to make you a good listener in Japanese. Rather than just standing there quiet, it's important to use these small phrases at appropriate stops from the speaker. Otherwise, the speaker might think that the

listener doesn't like them or isn't taking any particular attention or is understanding anything. This is one of the easiest ways to end up with a 不安にさせる会話, and that's not a good thing.

Examples (相槌 in Bold)

3.

水谷: 土曜日に夕食に来ませんか。

相田: ああ、行きたいんですが、土曜日の夜は遅くまで勉強しないといけないんです。

水谷: **それは残念ですね。それでは、また今度。**

相田: **うん**、また次の機会にどこかで食べましょう。

Mizutani: Do you want to come to dinner on Saturday?

Aida: Ah, I want to go, but I have to study real late Saturday night.

Mizutani: That's too bad. Well, next time then.

Aida: Sure, let's eat somewhere some other time.

4.

学生 A : 最近、勉強が捗ってないんだ。

学生 B: そうなんだ? 捗ってないんだって。。。。

学生 A: あと、1 ヶ月で試験なのに

学生 B: あと1 ヶ月で試験なのか。。。A は、今まで一生懸命勉強してきたんだから大丈夫だよ！

Student A: My students haven't been getting along recently?

Student B: Is that so? Not getting along...

Student A: Even though I have an exam in a month.

Student B: You have a test in a month. Well, since you've studying so hard up till now, you'll do fine!

相槌 Gone Wrong

Using 相槌 alone isn't going to magically create a nice, flowing, and friendly conversation. You can't seem distant to the speaker. Some people don't intend to be distant or mean, but it can come off that way if you act like Speaker B below.

5.

A さん: 今日は、お会いできて光栄です。

B さん: ああ。

A さん: やはりパーティーに、ご出席される機会が多いのですか。

B さん: まあ。

A さん: たくさんの方が、お見えになっていますね。

B さん: そうですねえ。

A さん: It's an honor to be able to meet you today.

B さん: Ah.

A さん: Just as I thought, there are a lot of opportunities to attend at parties.

B さん: So-so.

A さん: A lot of people have come.

B さん: That's true.

Speaker A is being so formal and nice and trying to keep the conversation going, but it doesn't seem like Speaker B really even cares. You can just imagine the change of facial expressions by Speaker A. The problem is that light 相槌 can let you get out of a conversation quicker. If in a situation like this where the more courteous thing is to extend the conversation, then you should do so. It's only proper.

The first thing to really try to do is pay close attention to what the speaker says at the very beginning of the conversation so that you can have an attempt at being able to repeat certain parts or ask questions about it. Adding opinion or emotion like surprise or disbelief is much better than being silent. Be natural

though. Don't go so fast in responding that it makes it seem that you're using 相槌 out of obligatoriness. It's best to give a small pause to sound more natural.

When repeating what the other person says, feel free to change up the sentence endings to show an appropriate reaction. You don't want to sound like a robot or like you can't relate. Even adding a question after giving an appropriate reaction is good too. So, Student B from earlier could have added something like 本当は、合格の自信あるんだろ？ Questions like どういうわけかな, それってどういうことかな, etc. can become very useful.

Note: A lot of this content was based off of an article by 臼井由妃 who took the time to really discuss a walk through on how and how not to correspond to people using 相槌.

Common Mistake Note: To use 相槌 should be 相槌を打つ, but even natives often mistakenly use 相槌を入れる instead. 相槌 comes from the concept of two blacksmiths alternately hitting the hammer together. So, it is an idiomatic expression. Since the verb you use with 槌 is 打つ, it's only natural that it would also be used with 相槌.

第207課: The Date: Traditional Calendar System

We've learned previously that to make the 年月日 in Japanese, you start with the year, then the month, and then the day of the month. You can then add の and a 曜日 to specify the day of the week, and this is often set aside in various places in parentheses, especially on billboards and what not.

What we have not addressed so far is the fact that Japanese has another way of representing the date. We are used to using the Western Calendar, but the Japanese have their own calendar system. Also, Japan used to follow the lunar calendar. So, this lesson will address both of these things.

Western Calendar

For review, look at the following dates written in various fashions.

1. 2014 年 3 月 11 日
March 11, 2014
2. 2 2 0 0 年 1 0 月 1 3 日
October 13, 2200
3. 1 7 4 5 年 4 月 9 日
April 9, 1745
4. 一九五四年十一月二五日
November 25, 1954
5. 1 3 年 4 月 3 日発売予定 !
Release 4/3/13!

Abbreviation Note: Just as in English, the year may be abbreviated likewise. Instead of saying two thousand thirteen, English speakers usually just say twenty thirteen. For the 20th century, years typically get abbreviated by just saying the last two numbers. So, "ninety-five" means 1995. In Japanese, it is understood

that 13年 refers to 2013年 now instead of 1913年. This is partly due to the fact that Japan has only recently switched to the Western Calendar.

6. 四百五拾六年壹拾貳月參日

December 3rd, 456

Spelling Note: This last example uses 大字 numeral variants, which are often used in official documents and appear on money. This convention is closer to how numbers are used in Chinese. So, although December would still be read off as じゅうにがつ, it is spelled as if it were read as いちじゅうにがつ.

Traditional Calendar

There are two calendar systems in use today in Japan. The most common is the Western Calendar-- 西 暦 --but the traditional calendar based off the era (年 号) of a political time period (改 元) is used in more formal/official situations. Instead of starting with 一年, the traditional calendar starts with 元 年. The current era is the 平成 時代.

7. しょうわ
昭和 47 年
1972

8. 平成元年
1989

Of course, there are era names all the way to the very first Imperial reign of 桓武天皇. To refer to the period, replace 元年 with 時代 in the chart. This chart is purposely exhaustive, going back to the first era starting in 660 B.C to the present. Many speakers don't know the era names before the 明治時代, which began in 1868. However, these speakers are usually individuals who didn't pay attention well in history class. The reality is that knowledge is rather scattered, but most

people know quite a few of these names. Although it is not imperative for you to remember all but the last four, use this chart as a reference if you come across ones you're not familiar with.

桓武天皇元年	じんむてんのう	前 6 0 0
綏靖天皇元年	すいぜいてんのう	前 5 8 1
安寧天皇元年	あんねいてんのう	前 5 4 8
懿徳天皇元年	いとくてんのう	前 5 1 0
孝昭天皇元年	こうしょうてんのう	前 4 7 5
考安天皇元年	こうあんてんのう	前 3 9 2
孝霊天皇元年	こうれいてんのう	前 2 9 0
孝元天皇元年	こうげんてんのう	前 2 1 4
開化天皇元年	かいかてんのう	前 1 5 7
崇神天皇元年	すじんてんのう	前 9 7
垂仁天皇元年	すいにんてんのう	前 2 9
景行天皇元年	けいこうてんのう	7 1
成務天皇元年	せいむてんのう	1 3 1
仲哀天皇元年	ちゅうあいてんのう	1 9 2
神功皇后摂政	じんぐうこうごうせっしょう	2 0 1
応神天皇元年	おうじんてんのう	2 7 0
仁徳天皇元年	にんとくてんのう	3 1 3
履中天皇元年	りちゅうてんのう	4 0 0
反正天皇元年	はんぜいてんのう	4 0 6
允恭天皇元年	いんぎょうてんのう	4 1 2
安康天皇元年	あんこうてんのう	4 5 4
雄略天皇元年	ゆうりゃくてんのう	4 5 7
静寧天皇元年	せいねいてんのう	4 8 0

顕宗天皇元年	けんぞうてんのう	4 8 5
仁賢天皇元年	にんけんてんのう	4 8 8
武烈天皇元年	ぶれつてんのう	4 9 9
継体天皇元年	けいたいてんのう	5 0 7
安閑天皇元年	あんかんてんのう	5 3 4
宣化天皇元年	せんかてんのう	5 3 6
欽明天皇元年	きんめいてんのう	5 4 0
敏達天皇元年	びだつてんのう	5 7 2
用明天皇元年	てんようてんのう	5 8 6
崇峻天皇元年	すしゅんてんのう	5 8 8
推古天皇元年	すいこてんのう	5 9 3
舒明天皇元年	じょめいてんのう	6 2 9
皇極天皇元年	こうぎょくてんのう	6 4 2
大化元年	たいか	6 4 5
白雉元年	はくち	6 5 0
斉明天皇元年	さいめいてんのう	6 5 5
天智天皇元年	てんじてんのう	6 6 2
天武天皇元年	てんむてんのう	6 7 2
朱鳥元年	しゅちょう	6 8 6
持統天皇元年	じとうてんのう	6 8 7
文武天皇元年	もんむてんのう	6 9 7
大宝元年	たいほう	7 0 1
慶雲元年	けいうん	7 0 4
和銅元年	わどう	7 0 8
靈龜元年	れいき	7 1 5
養老元年	ようろう	7 1 7

神亀元年	じんき	724
天平元年	てんぴょう	729
天平[感宝・勝宝]元年	てんぴょう[かんぽう・しょうほう]	749
天平宝字元年	てんぴょうほうじ	757
天平神護元年	てんぴょうじんご	765
神護景雲元年	じんごけいうん	767
宝亀元年	ほうき	770
天応元年	てんおう	781
建暦元年	えんりゃく	782
大同元年	たいどう	806
弘仁元年	こうにん	810
天長元年	てんちょう	824
承和元年	じょうわ	834
嘉祥元年	かしょう	848
仁寿元年	にんじゅ	851
斉衡元年	さいこう	854
天安元年	てんあん	857
貞観元年	じょうかん	859
元慶元年	がんぎょう	877
仁和元年	にんな	885
寛平元年	かんぴょう	889
昌泰元年	しょうたい	898
延喜元年	えんぎ	901
延長元年	えんちょう	923
承平元年	じょうへい	931
天慶元年	てんぎょう	938

天曆元年	てんりゃく	9 4 7
天徳元年	てんとく	9 5 7
応和元年	おうわ	9 6 1
康保元年	こうほう	9 6 4
安和元年	あんな	9 6 8
天禄元年	てんろく	9 7 0
天延元年	てんえん	9 7 3
貞元元年	じょうげん	9 7 6
天元元年	てんげん	9 7 8
永観元年	えいかん	9 8 3
寛和元年	かんな	9 8 5
永延元年	えいえん	9 8 7
永祚元年	えいそ	9 8 9
正暦元年	しょうりゃく	9 9 0
長徳元年	ちょうとく	9 9 5
長保元年	ちょうほう	9 9 9
寛弘元年	かんこう	1 0 0 4
長和元年	ちょうわ	1 0 1 2
寛仁元年	かんにん	1 0 1 7
治安元年	じあん	1 0 2 1
万寿元年	まんじゅ	1 0 2 4
長元元年	ちょうげん	1 0 2 8
長暦元年	ちょうりゃく	1 0 3 7
長久元年	ちょうきゅう	1 0 4 0
寛徳元年	かんとく	1 0 4 4
永承元年	えいしょう	1 0 4 6

天喜元年	てんき	1 0 5 3
康平元年	こうへい	1 0 5 8
治暦元年	じりゃく	1 0 6 5
延久元年	えんきゅう	1 0 6 9
承保元年	じょうほう	1 0 7 4
永保元年	えいほ	1 0 7 7
応徳元年	おうとく	1 0 8 1
寛治元年	かんじ	1 0 8 4
嘉保元年	かほう	1 0 8 7
永長元年	えいちょう	1 0 9 4
承德元年	じょうとく	1 0 9 6
康和元年	こうわ	1 0 9 7
長治元年	ちょうじ	1 0 9 9
嘉承元年	かしょう	1 1 0 4
天仁元年	てんにん	1 1 0 6
天永元年	てんえい	1 1 0 8
永久元年	えいきゅう	1 1 1 0
元永元年	げんえい	1 1 1 3
保安元年	ほうあん	1 1 1 8
天治元年	てんじ	1 1 2 0
大治元年	だいじ	1 1 2 4
天承元年	てんじょう	1 1 2 6
長承元年	ちょうじょう	1 1 3 1
保延元年	ほうえん	1 1 3 2
永治元年	えいじ	1 1 3 5
康治元年	こうじ	1 1 4 1

天養元年	てんよう	1 1 4 2
久安元年	きゅうあん	1 1 4 4
仁平元年	にんぺい	1 1 4 5
久寿元年	きゅうじゅ	1 1 5 1
保元元年	ほうげん	1 1 5 4
平治元年	へいじ	1 1 5 6
永暦元年	えいりゃく	1 1 6 0
応保元年	おうほ	1 1 6 1
長寛元年	ちょうかん	1 1 6 3
永万元年	えいまん	1 1 6 5
仁安元年	になん	1 1 6 6
嘉応元年	かおう	1 1 6 9
承安元年	しょうあん	1 1 7 1
安元元年	あんげん	1 1 7 5
治承元年	じしょう	1 1 7 7
養和元年	ようわ	1 1 8 1
寿永元年	じゅえい	1 1 8 2
元暦元年	げんりゃく	1 1 8 4
文治元年	ぶんじ	1 1 8 5
建久元年	けんきゅう	1 1 9 0
正治元年	しょうじ	1 1 9 9
建仁元年	けんにん	1 2 0 1
元久元年	げんきゅう	1 2 0 4
建永元年	けんえい	1 2 0 6
承元元年	じょうげん	1 2 0 7
建暦元年	けんりゃく	1 2 1 1

建保元年	けんぽう	1 2 1 3
承久元年	しょうきゅう	1 2 1 9
貞応元年	じょうおう	1 2 2 2
元仁元年	げんにん	1 2 2 4
嘉禄元年	かるく	1 2 2 5
安貞元年	あんてい	1 2 2 7
寛喜元年	かんき	1 2 2 9
貞永元年	じょうえい	1 2 3 2
天福元年	てんぷく	1 2 3 3
文暦元年	ぶんりゃく	1 2 3 4
嘉禎元年	かてい	1 2 3 5
暦仁元年	りゃくにん	1 2 3 8
延応元年	えんおう	1 2 3 9
仁治元年	にんじ	1 2 4 0
寛元元年	かんげん	1 2 4 3
宝治元年	ほうじ	1 2 4 7
建長元年	けんちょう	1 2 4 9
康元元年	こうげん	1 2 5 6
正嘉元年	しょうか	1 2 5 7
正元元年	しょうげん	1 2 5 9
文応元年	ぶんおう	1 2 6 0
弘長元年	こうちょう	1 2 6 1
文永元年	ぶんえい	1 2 6 4
建治元年	けんじ	1 2 7 5
弘安元年	こうあん	1 2 7 8
正応元年	しょうおう	1 2 8 8

永仁元年	えいにん	1 2 9 3
正安元年	しょうあん	1 2 9 9
乾元元年	けんげん	1 3 0 2
嘉元元年	かげん	1 3 0 3
徳治元年	とくじ	1 3 0 6
延慶元年	えんぎょう	1 3 0 8
応長元年	おうちょう	1 3 1 1
正和元年	しょうわ	1 3 1 2
文保元年	ぶんぽう	1 3 1 7
元応元年	げんおう	1 3 1 9
元亨元年	げんこう	1 3 2 1
正中元年	しょうちゅう	1 3 2 4
嘉暦元年	かりやく	1 3 2 6
元徳元年	げんとく	1 3 2 9
元弘元年	げんこう	1 3 3 1
建武元年	けんむ	1 3 3 4
延元元年	えんげん	1 3 3 6
興国元年	こうこく	1 3 4 0
正平元年	しょうへい	1 3 4 6
建徳元年	けんとく	1 3 7 0
文中元年	ぶんちゅう	1 3 7 2
天授元年	てんじゅ	1 3 7 5
弘和元年	こうわ	1 3 8 1
元中元年	げんちゅう	1 3 8 4
明徳元年	めいとく	1 3 9 0
応永元年	おうえい	1 3 9 4

正長元年	しょうちょう	1 4 2 8
永享元年	えいきょう	1 4 2 9
嘉吉元年	かきつ	1 4 4 1
文安元年	ぶんあん	1 4 4 4
宝徳元年	ほうとく	1 4 4 9
享徳元年	きょうとく	1 4 5 2
康正元年	こうしょう	1 4 5 5
長禄元年	ちょうろく	1 4 5 7
寛正元年	かんしょう	1 4 6 0
文正元年	ぶんしょう	1 4 6 6
応仁元年	おうにん	1 4 6 7
文明元年	ぶんめい	1 4 6 9
長享元年	ちょうきょう	1 4 8 7
延徳元年	えんとく	1 4 8 9
明応元年	めいおう	1 4 9 2
文亀元年	ぶんき	1 5 0 1
永正元年	えいしょう	1 5 0 4
大永元年	だいえい	1 5 2 1
享禄元年	きょうろく	1 5 2 8
天文元年	てんぶん	1 5 3 2
弘治元年	こうじ	1 5 5 5
永禄元年	えいろく	1 5 5 8
元亀元年	げんき	1 5 7 0
天正元年	てんしょう	1 5 7 3
文禄元年	ぶんろく	1 5 9 2
慶長元年	けいちょう	1 5 9 6

元和元年	げんな	1 6 1 5
寛永元年	かんえい	1 6 2 4
正保元年	しょうほう	1 6 4 4
慶安元年	けいあん	1 6 4 8
承応元年	じょうおう	1 6 5 2
明暦元年	めいれき	1 6 5 5
万治元年	まんじ	1 6 5 8
寛文元年	かんぶん	1 6 6 1
延宝元年	えんぽう	1 6 7 3
天和元年	てんな	1 6 8 1
貞享元年	じょうきょう	1 6 8 4
元禄元年	げんろく	1 6 8 8
宝永元年	ほうえい	1 7 0 4
正徳元年	しょうとく	1 7 1 1
享保元年	きょうほ	1 7 1 6
元文元年	げんぶん	1 7 3 6
寛保元年	かんぽ	1 7 4 1
延享元年	えんきょう	1 7 4 4
寛延元年	かんえん	1 7 4 8
宝暦元年	ほうれき	1 7 5 1
明和元年	めいわ	1 7 6 4
安永元年	あんえい	1 7 7 2
天明元年	てんめい	1 7 8 1
寛政元年	かんせい	1 7 8 9
享和元年	きょうわ	1 8 0 1
文化元年	ぶんか	1 8 0 4

文政元年	ぶんせい	1 8 1 8
天保元年	てんぽう	1 8 3 0
弘化元年	こうか	1 8 4 4
嘉永元年	かえい	1 8 4 8
安政元年	あんせい	1 8 5 4
万延元年	まんえん	1 8 6 0
文久元年	ぶんきゅう	1 8 6 1
元治元年	げんじ	1 8 6 4
慶応元年	けいおう	1 8 6 5
明治元年	めいじ	1 8 6 8
大正元年	たいしょう	1 9 1 2
昭和元年	しょうわ	1 9 2 6
平成元年	へいせい	1 9 8 9

Lunar Months

The original Japanese calendar was based off of the Chinese lunar calendar, which starts 3 to 7 weeks later. The traditional names of these months are still popular in poetry, names, etc. You **don't have to memorize them or how to write them.**

First month	睦月	むつき	The month of affection
Second month	如月・衣更着	きさらぎ・きぬさらぎ	The month to change clothes
Third month	弥生	やよい	The month of new life
Fourth month	卯月	うづき	The month full of flowers

Fifth month	皐月・早苗 月	さつき	The month to plant rice
Sixth month	水無月	みなつき	The month of water.
Seventh month	文月	ふみづき	The month of books
Eighth month	葉月	はづき	The month of leaves
Ninth month	長月	ながつき	The long month
Tenth month	神無月	かなづき	The month of the gods
Eleventh month	霜月	しもつき	The month of frost
Twelfth month	師走	しわす	The month where priests run

Table of Contents

第208課: Numbers ? : 概数 & Reading the 九九

Have you ever wondered how you would say things like “I’ve been gone for three, four days”? These round number expressions are called 概数, and this lesson will teach you how to read them. So, it’s important to mention this separately. In reading out, though, you would usually hear #から# or #か# for many situations.

After learning about how to read 概数, we will learn how to read the multiplication table in Japanese, which is called 九九.

概数

The chart below shows how to create 概数 in Japanese, but then the majority of this lesson will be about the difficulty of reading these phrases when counters are put into the mix.

One and two…	いちに	Two and three…	にさん	Three and four…	さんし
Four and five…	しご	Five and six…	ごろく	Six and seven…	ろくし ち
Seven and eight…	しちは ち	Eight and nine…	はつく・はち く	Nine and ten…	くじゅ う

The Inconsistency of Reading 概数 Phrases

Just as in English, these phrases would be pronounced with the expected word breaks. Unlike English, however, there is no single pronunciation for the majority of these phrases. The information below will address many of the most important things to know, but listening to what people actually say around you is the best way to acquire these phrases.

When dealing with larger numbers, you would not attach いちに to 十 or 百. When さんし is used before 十, 百, 千, 万, 億, or 兆, it is usually realized as さんよ (ん) . In fact, さんしひゃく and さんしせん are almost completely got.

しご is oddly enough never changed to よんご. ろくしち to ろくなな will probably become more common as time goes by, but it is currently not widespread.

8~9 is はつく for the majority of people. はちく is usually realized as はちきゅう with はっきゅう coming at a far second in the following cases. 8,000~9,000 can be はちくせん or はつくせん or even はっきゅうせん, but it is usually はちきゅうせん. As for 80~90, most people say はちきゅうじゅう but はっきゅうじゅう, はちくじゅう, and はつくじゅう are minority readings. As for 800~900, most people say はちきゅうひゃく. はっきゅうひゃく, はちくひゃく, and はつくひゃく are used by a very small percentage of the population.

What about something like 3~4 回? さんよんかい. For 3~4 人 and 3~4 時間, it is common practice to read them respectively as さんよにん and さんよじかん. Ultimately, さんし has disappeared with counters. 3~4 枚 is usually さんよんまい. Another potential reason for this is that さんしまい would sound like 三姉妹.

What about 6~7 回? ろくしちかい or ろくななかい are both OK, but just as has been said about, replacing しち with なな has not spread this far as し → よん has in this same environment. So, people overwhelmingly use ろくしちかい. You also use ろくしち in other phrases such as 6~7 冊 and 6~7 人.

For 8~9 回, it's most common to hear はちきゅうかい instead of はっきゅうかい, はちくかい, or はつくかい. In 18~19 の少年, it's common to say じゅうはちく. There's also the set phrase 十中八九 read as じゅうちゅうはつく meaning "8 or 9 cases out of 10". For 8~9 時間, はちくじかん is most common. Likewise, 8~9 人 is usually はちくにん. Replacing さんし with さんよん・さんよ is not so problematic, but replacing はちく with はちきゅう in phrases in which はちく is most common

does pose a problem. As for 80~90 円 and 800~900 円, many people would read them out by using か or から.

Other things to note include what happens with 日 and 概数. It has so many exceptions , but you can still say いちににち, にさんにち, しごにち, and ごろくにち. 3~4 日 is さんよつか. This could also be read as さんよんにち by a small amount of people, but さんしにち because people would think 死日. There's also ついたち、ふつか and いちにちふつか for 1~2 日. This is often rephrased to $\frac{\text{いちりょうじつ}}{\text{二日}}$.

Then, 1~2 人 read as いちににん is uncommon and usually ひとりかふたり. 2~3 人 read as にさんにん, though, is very common.

九九

Oddly enough, 九九 refers to the multiplication chart and is read as <<. In simplified multiplication speech, 被乗数 (the thing being multiplied) and the 乗数 (multiplier) have special pronunciations for certain numbers. In Japanese the thing being multiplied gets stated before the multiplier.

For the multiplicand "one"	いち → い ん	いんいちがいち $1 \times 1 = 1$
For the multiplier "eight"	は → は・ ぱ	ごはしじゅう $5 \times 8 = 40$; さんぱにじゅうし $3 \times 4 = 24$
For the multiplier "two"	に → に ん	ににんがし $2 \times 2 = 4$
Look at what happens to 3		さざんがく $3 \times 3 = 9$; さぶろくじゅうはち $3 \times 6 = 18$

It's also possible to have 促音 being inserted or shown up as a result of sound change.

ろっくごじゅうし 6 x 9 = 54	はっくしちじゅうに 8 x 9 = 72	ごっくしじゅうご 5 x 9 = 45
------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------

Let's look at a more complete list. Though you could say things in a more Western fashion as いち かける いち イコール いち, the following manner is perhaps the most important. This is especially the case in reference to the 九九の表.

Below are all of the multiplication table combinations and their special readings.

1の段

1 x 1 = 1 いんいちがいち

1 x 2 = 2 いんにがに

1 x 3 = 3 いんさんがさん

1 x 4 = 4 いんしがし

1 x 5 = 5 いんごがご

1 x 6 = 6 いんろくがろく

1 x 7 = 7 いんしちがしち

1 x 8 = 8 いんはちがはち

1 x 9 = 9 いんくがく

2の段

2 x 1 = 2 にいちがに

2 x 2 = 4 ににんがし

2 x 3 = 6 にさんがろく

2 x 4 = 8 にしがはち

2 x 5 = 10 にごじゅう

2 x 6 = 12 にろくじゅうに

2 x 7 = 14 にしちじゅうし

2 x 8 = 16 にはちじゅうろく

2 x 9 = 18 にくじゅうはち

3の段

$3 \times 1 = 3$ さんいちがさん

$3 \times 2 = 6$ さんにがろく

$3 \times 3 = 9$ さざんがきゅう

$3 \times 4 = 12$ さんしじゅうに

$3 \times 5 = 15$ さんごじゅうご

$3 \times 6 = 18$ さぶろくじゅうはち

$3 \times 7 = 21$ さんしちにじゅういち

$3 \times 8 = 24$ さんぱにじゅうし

$3 \times 9 = 27$ さんくにじゅうしち

4の段

$4 \times 1 = 4$ しいちがし

$4 \times 2 = 8$ しにがはち

$4 \times 3 = 12$ しさんじゅうに

$4 \times 4 = 16$ ししじゅうろく

$4 \times 5 = 20$ しごにじゅう

$4 \times 6 = 24$ しろくにじゅうし

$4 \times 7 = 28$ ししちにじゅうはち

$4 \times 8 = 32$ しはさんじゅうに

$4 \times 9 = 36$ しくさんじゅうろく

5の段

$5 \times 1 = 5$ ごいちがご

$5 \times 2 = 10$ ごにじゅう

$5 \times 3 = 15$ ごさんじゅうご

$5 \times 4 = 20$ ごしにじゅう

$5 \times 5 = 25$ ごごにじゅうご

$5 \times 6 = 30$ ごろくさんじゅう

$5 \times 7 = 35$ ごしちさんじゅうご

$5 \times 8 = 40$ ごはしじゅう

$5 \times 9 = 45$ ごっくしじゅうご

6の段

$6 \times 1 = 6$ ろくいちがろく

$6 \times 2 = 12$ ろくにじゅうに

$6 \times 3 = 18$ ろくさんじゅうはち

$6 \times 4 = 24$ ろくしにじゅうし

$6 \times 5 = 30$ ろくごさんじゅう

$6 \times 6 = 36$ ろくろくさんじゅうろく

$6 \times 7 = 42$ ろくしちしじゅうに

$6 \times 8 = 48$ ろくはしじゅうはち

$6 \times 9 = 54$ ろっくごじゅうし

7の段

$7 \times 1 = 7$ しちいちがしち

$7 \times 2 = 14$ しちにじゅうし

$7 \times 3 = 21$ しちさんにじゅういち

$7 \times 4 = 28$ しちにじゅうはち

$7 \times 5 = 35$ しちごさんじゅうご

$7 \times 6 = 42$ しちろくしじゅうに

$7 \times 7 = 49$ しちしちしじゅうく

$7 \times 8 = 56$ しちごじゅうろく

$7 \times 9 = 63$ しちくろくじゅうさん

8の段

$8 \times 1 = 8$ はちいちがはち

$8 \times 2 = 16$ はちにじゅうろく

$8 \times 3 = 24$ はちさんにじゅうし

$8 \times 4 = 32$ はちしさんじゅうに

$8 \times 5 = 40$ はちごしじゅう
 $8 \times 6 = 48$ はちろくしじゅうはち
 $8 \times 7 = 56$ はちしちごじゅうろく
 $8 \times 8 = 64$ はっばろくじゅうし
 $8 \times 9 = 72$ はっくしちじゅうに

9の段

$9 \times 1 = 9$ くいちがく
 $9 \times 2 = 18$ くにじゅうはち
 $9 \times 3 = 27$ くさんにじゅうしち
 $9 \times 4 = 36$ くしさんじゅうろく
 $9 \times 5 = 45$ すごしじゅうご
 $9 \times 6 = 54$ くろくごじゅうし
 $9 \times 7 = 63$ くしちろくじゅうさん
 $9 \times 8 = 72$ くはしちじゅうに
 $9 \times 9 = 81$ くくはちじゅういち

Using various numbers and or including が seems to be rather random, but one could say that about similar conventions in other languages including English. If you look more closely, you can see that there is regularity. For instance, が is no longer used when the product is 10(+). 8 as a multiplier doesn't change when after 1 or 2. にん is only used after に. The other oddities are in the 3の段.

Not all speakers may pronounce these all the same way, but these would be the "correct" answers you would find in a textbook, and for the most part, educated individuals will pronounce them as such.

Way back when numbers were first discussed, you learned the basic information about numbers in Japanese. However, the Sino-Japanese numbering system can go much farther. This lesson will also consider things not mentioned before such as decimal fractions.

Decimal

Decimals, ^{しょうすう}小数, aren't difficult to make at all in Japanese. First, you need a number before the decimal point, which is simply read out as 点. The actual name for decimal point is 小数点. If you have zero before the decimal point, then you should say ゼロ・れい・まる. If you have a full number before the decimal point, you should say it correctly. So, if there is 300 before the decimal point, say さんびゃく. After the decimal point, you can simply read out the numbers. So, 4.56757 = よん てん ご ろく なな ご なな.

Decimal Fractions

As you can imagine, this is not the traditional way of dealing with decimal values. Decimal fractions, which break up things by negative powers and referred to in simple English as tenths, hundredths, etc. place, are represented in Japanese with a set of decimal fraction units that stand for each place from the decimal point and back.

This seems easy enough, right? Sadly, Japanese doesn't make this 100% straight forward. There are two different decimal fraction systems in use in Japan today. They are not completely interchangeable and are used in their respective situations.

First Decimal Fraction System

The first decimal fraction system has many units, but practical use ends at 10-2. Even 厘 is not that common. This system is used in batting averages, idioms, etc. Given how important baseball and set expressions are, remembering four small things isn't that bad. The chart below, though, lists all of the possible units in this system for completeness.

10-1	分	ぶ	10-2	厘	りん	10-3	毛	もう
10-4	糸	し	10-5	忽	こつ	10-6	微	び
10-7	纖	せん	10-8	沙	しゃ	10-9	塵	じん
10-10	埃	あい	10-11	渺	びょう	10-12	漠	ばく
10-13	模糊	もこ	10-14	逡巡	しゅんじゅん	10-14	須臾	しゅゆ・すゆ
10-16	瞬息	しゅんそく	10-17	指弾	しだん	10-17	刹那	せつな
10-19	六徳	りっとく	10-20	虚	きょ	10-20	空	くう
10-22	清	せい	10-23	淨	じょう			

1. 七分袖

Three-quarter sleeves/Sleeves 7/10 the size of a long sleeve.

Second Decimal Fraction System

The second system is not all that different. This one is far shorter and is only used up until 10-5. This is mainly due to the fact that it is used for showing discounts, and prices don't need to be exact as say a scientific finding. This system introduces a different unit for 10-1 and pushes the others from the first system down a power. Realistically, you would never need to go past 分.

10-1	割 (わり)	10-2	分	10-3	厘	10-4	毛	10-5	糸
------	--------	------	---	------	---	------	---	------	---

2. 五分五分の確率

Even odds

3. ^{くぶくりん}九分九厘

Basically 99% chance, this is used to mean that something is basically so.

4. 九分九厘勝てる。

We'll almost certainly be able to win.

Reading Note: 9 割 is always read as きゅうわり. Also, no one says よわり. It's よんわり.

Percentage

Hopefully you know that $.5 = 50\%$. So, how exactly do you express percentage in Japanese? Thankfully, it's the same as in English. You just have a number and パー(セント)・%.

5. 4.5%

よん てん ご パー(セント)

Fractions

For a fraction (^{ぶんすう}分 数) take a number, add "分の" and follow it with another number. This creates phrases such as "三分の二" meaning "two of three parts" or "two thirds".

6. ケーキの四分の一

A quarter/fourth of the cake.

7. 五分の六

Six fifths

Vocabulary Note: Improper fraction in Japanese is " かぶんすう 仮分数 ".

Reading Note: 1/4th is always read as よんぶんのいち.

大字

大字 are formal 漢字 for numbers created to prevent counterfeiting. That sounds like a noble thing to do, but for those that don't like complicated for simple things, they can be annoying additional characters for things you already know. Thankfully, most have become obsolete, so you will only be introduced to the ones pertaining to Japan today.

The only ones that you are responsible for knowing are 1 (壱), 2 (弐), 3 (参), 10 (拾), and 10,000 (萬). The latter is not actually used on currency anymore in Japan, but it does have unofficial usage.

Astronomical Numbers

Japanese, with the aid of Sino-Japanese numerals, can be used to count all of the particles of sand on the Earth with greater success. Again, in Japanese big numbers are grouped into powers of four. We stopped in the first lesson concerning numbers at 10^{12} (trillion), 兆.

Now, you'll get to see the limit of this system, which is 10^{68} until some genius decides to add to this insane list. By no means should you remember any of this as even I only remember a few of these on the spot, but it is some more frivolous and trivial knowledge for fellow Japanese nerds that want to know more about something than the average Japanese speaker. There is some good out of this seemingly nonsensical information. You get to an uncommon reading of 京. You also get to see a weird usage of 不可思議.

な ゆた is actually a rather fun word that happens to be used practically to refer to an endless quantity. It sounds fitting, but at look at this system, it is somewhat a misnomer. Well, it's not as bad as the native equivalent of such a concept which treats 千 (ち) and 万 (よろず) as numerous.

If you use something like rikaichan, there's no way on this side of Earth that it'll even recognize characters like 秭. If you never remember this 漢字, don't feel bad. If you tried to use this in practical use--how it would be practical is beyond reason--people will probably think you meant 一助 or that you just made an error.

10 ¹⁶	一京	いっけい	10 ²⁰	一垓	いちがい
10 ²⁴	一秭	いちじょ・いちし	10 ²⁸	一穰	いちじょう
10 ³²	一溝	いっこう	10 ³⁶	一潤	いっかん
10 ⁴⁰	一正	いっせい	10 ⁴⁴	一載	いっさい
10 ⁴⁸	一極	いちごく	10 ⁵²	一恒河沙	いちこうがしゃ
10 ⁵⁶	一阿僧祇	いちあそうぎ	10 ⁶⁰	一那由[他・多]	いちなゆた
10 ⁶⁴	一不可思議	いちふかしぎ	10 ⁶⁸	一無量大数	いちむりょうたいすう

Though this may never be relevant to you, it's interesting to know that the values of these numbers haven't been standardized for very long. Historically in English, the same thing can be said for word like "billion" and "trillion", which refer to 10⁹ and 10¹² respectively in American English.

兆 is a unit that is used in Japan, Taiwan, Korea, and China, but it is in China that the value is different. Currently in China, it refers to 10⁶, which is

half of the current value of 10^{12} in the rest of Asia. The other systems are confusing to understand, so the chart below should suffice if you were to ever find them being used, which would mean you're reading really old stuff about math.

From Wikipedia:

下数		万進（現在）		万万進		上数	
10^5	億	10^8	一億	10^8	一億	10^8	一億
10^6	兆	-		-		-	
10^7	京	10^{11}	千億	10^{15}	千万億	10^{15}	千万億
		10^{12}	一兆	10^{16}	一兆	10^{16}	一兆
		10^{13}	十兆	10^{17}	十兆	10^{17}	十兆
		10^{14}	百兆	10^{18}	百兆	10^{18}	百兆
		10^{15}	千兆	10^{19}	千兆	10^{19}	千兆
		10^{16}	一京	10^{20}	一万兆	10^{20}	一万兆
				10^{21}	十万兆	10^{21}	十万兆
				10^{22}	百万兆	10^{22}	百万兆

		10^{23}	千万兆	10^{23}	千万兆
		10^{24}	一京	10^{24}	一億兆
				10^{25}	十億兆
				10^{26}	百億兆
				10^{27}	千億兆
				10^{28}	一万億兆
				10^{29}	十万億兆
				10^{30}	百万億兆
				10^{31}	千万億兆
				10^{32}	一京

Table of Contents

第210課: Numbers VI: Measurements

The commonality that America has with Japan is that there are two competing systems of measurement with one being far more prevalent than the other. The majority of measurements that you will see in Japan will be in the universal metric system. However, there are situations in which native measure words are used instead. Rarer ones, as you can imagine, still live on in literature, set phrases, and other parts of life.

This lesson's primary purpose is to show case these systems fully. Whether individual words are used or not will still be mentioned, but the entire lists will be given for those who wish to be pedantic.

SI Units

Even if you are an American, the following terms should be very familiar to if you have studied the sciences. The only non-Western word below is 秒. However, there are times in Japanese when you do use セCOND・セカンド. These words are typically used in longer loan phrases.

English	Quantity	Japanese
Meter	Distance	メートル
Gram	Mass	グラム
Second	Time	秒
Ampere	Electric current	アンペア
Kelvin	Heat	ケルビン
Candela	Luminous intensity	カンデラ
Mole	Amount	モル

Expressing things like 時速 and 風速 complicate things. If you driving 60 km/h, you could certainly say 60 キロメートル・パー・アワー. In practicality, just キロ could be used. This would be ambiguous with the actual distance you have traveled, but this is no different than in English. You could avoid English loans by saying 60 キロ毎時間, but this is far from being colloquial. If you were dealing with seconds, you could use 秒, セCOND, or セカンド. / could be read as パー or 毎. However, if you choose 毎, you should use 秒. If you use パー, you should use セカンド・セカンド. What if you had m・s. If you see this, you would read it is as メートル、セカンド or メートル、セCOND.

風速 is more difficult. The typical unit for this is m/s. This is read as メーター・パー・セカンド. A more technical reading of second in this field is セック. This comes from the English abbreviation sec. Now, because reading units (単位) is not universally standardized, the things mentioned above applies. For 風量 (air flow/volume), you have words like 立米 for m³. So m³/h = リュウベイ・パー・アワー. In actual application, you are to read things how your colleagues and or boss does. Because English and Japanese terms both exist for all of these things, this is only natural to happen.

The most important thing to not confuse is what is meant by average comments such as 風速 50 メートル and 時速 50 キロ (メートル) . If you just get a number for any of these situations, you need to understand the base unit for these concepts. Thus, it should be a given that people are referred to m/s in regards to wind speed but km/h when referring to the speed of one's car.

More Units

面積	Area	長さ	Length	重さ	Weight	体積・容積	Volume/Capacity
平方センチメートル	cm ²	ミリ [メートル]	mm	ミリグラム	mg	立方センチメートル	cm ³

平方メートル	m ²	センチ[メートル]	cm	グラム	g	立方メートル	m ³
平方キロメートル	km ²	メートル	m	キロ [グラム]	kg	ミリリットル	ml
		キロ[メートル]	km	トン	Ton	シーシー	cc
						リットル	ℓ = Li-ter

Prefixes of Magnitude

10 ⁻¹	d	Deci-	デシ	10 ¹	da	Deca-	デカ
10 ⁻²	c	Centi-	センチ	10 ²	h	Hecto-	ヘクト
10 ⁻³	m	Milli-	ミリ	10 ³	k	Kilo-	キロ
10 ⁻⁶	μ	Micro-	マイクロ	10 ⁶	M	Mega-	メガ
10 ⁻⁹	n	Nano-	ナノ	10 ⁹	G	Giga-	ギガ
10 ⁻¹²	p	Pico-	ピコ	10 ¹²	T	Tera-	テラ
10 ⁻¹⁵	f	Femto-	フェムト	10 ¹⁵	P	Peta-	ペタ
10 ⁻¹⁸	a	Atto-	アト	10 ¹⁸	E	Exa-	エクサ
10 ⁻²¹	z	Zepto-	ゼプト	10 ²¹	Z	Zetta-	ゼタ
10 ⁻²⁴	y	Yocto-	ヨクト	10 ²⁴	Y	Yotta-	ヨタ

Derived Units

Unit	Japanese	Symbol	Quantity
Hertz	ヘルツ	Hz	Frequency
Radian	ラジアン	rad	Angle
Newton	ニュートン	N	Force

Pascal	パスカル	Pa	Pressure
Joule	ジュール	J	Energy
Volt	ボルト	V	Voltage
Ohm	オーム	Ω	Impedance
Watt	ワット	W	Power
Coulomb	クーロン	C	Electric charge
Farad	ファラド	F	Electric capacitance
Lumen	ルーメン	lm	Luminous flux
Celsius	セルシウス	°C	Temperature
Siemens	ジーメンズ	S	Electrical conductance
Tesla	テスラ	T	Strength of magnetic fields
Henry	ヘンリー	H	Inductance
Lux	ルクス	lx	Luminance
Weber	ウェーバ	Wb	Magnetic flux
Sievert	シーベルト	Sv	Equivalent dose
Becquerel	ベクレル	Bq	Radioactivity
Katal	カタール	kat	Catalytic activity
Gray	グレイ	Gy	Absorbed dose

Usage Note: シーベルト and ベクレル have become frequently used in the news ever since the Fukushima Nuclear Power Plant Disaster in 2011.

English	Quantity	Japanese
Meter	Distance	メートル
Gram	Mass	グラム
Second	Time	秒 (びょう)
Ampere	Electric current	アンペア
Kelvin	Heat	ケルビン

Candela	Luminous intensity	カンデラ
Mole	Amount	モル

Prefixes of Magnitude

10^{-1}	d	Deci-	デシ	10^1	da	Deca-	デカ
10^{-2}	c	Centi-	センチ	10^2	h	Hecto-	ヘクト
10^{-3}	m	Milli-	ミリ	10^3	k	Kilo-	キロ
10^{-6}	μ	Micro-	マイクロ	10^6	M	Mega-	メガ
10^{-9}	n	Nano-	ナノ	10^9	G	Giga-	ギガ
10^{-12}	p	Pico-	ピコ	10^{12}	T	Tera-	テラ
10^{-15}	f	Femto-	フェムト	10^{15}	P	Peta-	ペタ
10^{-18}	a	Atto-	アト	10^{18}	E	Exa-	エクサ
10^{-21}	z	Zepto-	ゼプト	10^{21}	Z	Zetta-	ゼタ
10^{-24}	y	Yocto-	ヨクト	10^{24}	Y	Yotta-	ヨタ

Derived Units

Unit	Japanese	Symbol	Quantity
Hertz	ヘルツ	Hz	Frequency
Radian	ラジアン	rad	Angle
Newton	ニュートン	N	Force
Pascal	パスカル	Pa	Pressure
Joule	ジュール	J	Energy
Volt	ボルト	V	Voltage
Ohm	オーム	Ω	Impedance
Watt	ワット	W	Power
Coulomb	クーロン	C	Electric charge

Farad	ファラド	F	Electric capacitance
Lumen	ルーメン	lm	Luminous flux
Celsius	セルシウス	°C	Temperature
Siemens	ジーメンズ	S	Electrical conductance
Tesla	テスラ	T	Strength of magnetic fields
Henry	ヘンリー	H	Inductance
Lux	ルクス	lx	Luminance
Weber	ウェーバ	Wb	Magnetic flux
Sievert	シーベルト	Sv	Equivalent dose
Becquerel	ベクレル	Bq	Radioactivity
Katal	カタール	kat	Catalytic activity
Gray	グレイ	Gy	Absorbed dose

Note: シーベルト and ベクレル have become frequently used in the news ever since the Fukushima Nuclear Power Plant Disaster in 2011.

English	Quantity	Japanese
Meter	Distance	メートル
Gram	Mass	グラム
Second	Time	秒 (びょう)
Ampere	Electric current	アンペア
Kelvin	Heat	ケルビン
Candela	Luminous intensity	カンデラ
Mole	Amount	モル

Prefixes of Magnitude

10^{-1}	d	Deci-	デシ	10^1	da	Deca-	デカ
-----------	---	-------	----	--------	----	-------	----

10^{-2}	c	Centi-	センチ	10^2	h	Hecto-	ヘクト
10^{-3}	m	Milli-	ミリ	10^3	k	Kilo-	キロ
10^{-6}	μ	Micro-	マイクロ	10^6	M	Mega-	メガ
10^{-9}	n	Nano-	ナノ	10^9	G	Giga-	ギガ
10^{-12}	p	Pico-	ピコ	10^{12}	T	Tera-	テラ
10^{-15}	f	Femto-	フェムト	10^{15}	P	Peta-	ペタ
10^{-18}	a	Atto-	アト	10^{18}	E	Exa-	エクサ
10^{-21}	z	Zepto-	ゼプト	10^{21}	Z	Zetta-	ゼタ
10^{-24}	y	Yocto-	ヨクト	10^{24}	Y	Yotta-	ヨタ

Derived Units

Unit	Japanese	Symbol	Quantity
Hertz	ヘルツ	Hz	Frequency
Radian	ラジアン	rad	Angle
Newton	ニュートン	N	Force
Pascal	パスカル	Pa	Pressure
Joule	ジュール	J	Energy
Volt	ボルト	V	Voltage
Ohm	オーム	Ω	Impedance
Watt	ワット	W	Power
Coulomb	クーロン	C	Electric charge
Farad	ファラド	F	Electric capacitance
Lumen	ルーメン	lm	Luminous flux
Celsius	セルシウス	$^{\circ}\text{C}$	Temperature
Siemens	ジーメンズ	S	Electrical conductance
Tesla	テスラ	T	Strength of magnetic fields
Henry	ヘンリー	H	Inductance

Lux	ルクス	lx	Luminance
Weber	ウェーバ	Wb	Magnetic flux
Sievert	シーベルト	Sv	Equivalent dose
Becquerel	ベクレル	Bq	Radioactivity
Katal	カタール	kat	Catalytic activity
Gray	グレイ	Gy	Absorbed dose

Note: シーベルト and ベクレル have become frequently used in the news ever since the Fukushima Nuclear Power Plant Disaster in 2011

Japanese Units

Before the advent of standardized units, the Japanese used a system of units called the 尺貫法. Remember that these are all 助数詞 (counters)!

Length: The 尺

The 尺 is the basis of the 尺貫法. The 曲尺 was used in carpentry, the 鯨尺 (25% larger than the 曲尺) in clothing, and the 呉服尺 (1.2x larger) in Japanese traditional dress.

Unit	Reading	尺 Equivalent	Meters
毛	もう	1/10,000	.00003030
厘	りん	1/1,000	.0003030
分	ぶ	1/100	.003030
寸	すん	1/10	.03030
尺	しゃく	1	.3030
間	けん	6	1.818
広	ひろ	6	1.818

丈	じょう	10	3.030
町	ちょう	360	109.1
里	り	12,960	3297

Word Notes:

1. 広 is used for **depth**.
2. 里 previously stood for 600 meters.

Idiom Note: 一寸先は闇, literally "an inch ahead is darkness" is equivalent to "Who knows what tomorrow will bring?".

Area: The 坪

Unit	Reading	坪 Equivalent	Square Meters
勺	しゃく	1/100	.03306
合	ごう	1/10	.3306
畳	じょう	1/2	1.653
坪	つぼ	1	3.306
歩	ぶ	1	3.306
畝	せ	30	99.17
段・反	たん・	300	991.17
町	ちょう	3000	9917
方里	ほうり	1555.2	15423

Word Notes:

1. The 歩 is used in agriculture whereas the 坪 is used in construction. For units larger than 1, they are used for large areas such as forests.

2. 歩 is often added to 畝, 反, and 町 when reading out measurements. For example, 6 反 8 畝歩.

Volume: The 升

Unit	Reading	升 Equivalent	Liters
才	さい	1/1000	.001804
勺	しゃく	1/100	.01804
合	ごう	1/10	.1804
升	しょう	1	1.804
斗	と	10	18.04
石	こく	100	180.4

Mass: The 匁

Unit	Reading	匁 Equivalent	Grams
分	ぶ	1/10	.375
匁・文目	もんめ	1	3.75
百目	ひゃくめ	100	375
斤 (目)	きん (め)	160	600
貫 (目)	かん (め)	1000	3750

1. 氷を五十八貫目使ったわ、うちのねえさんにずいぶん厄介かけたわ。

I used 58 kanme of ice. I sure put a lot of trouble on my sister.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

Table of Contents

第211課: ~ての

Although it would seem that such a relatively small phrase would be easy, ~ての is far from simple.

~ての

What is so complicated about this expression? As you know, て follows the 連用形 as a conjunctive particle to show continuation or parallelism. It has become so important that it is deemed an essential conjugation in Japanese, the て形, or more correctly called the 並列形 in this instance. Essentially how it works is that it attaches to the 連用形 and stops the continuation of the current clause, and you as the listener or reader expect something related to that clause to be said next.

What about ~ての? の makes an attribute. You may have seen ~についての (about) before.

1a. 日本について話す。To talk about Japan.

1b. 日本についての話。A talk about Japan.

In the second it's used as an attribute of 話. There are several such phrases and they're often deemed as fixed postpositions. This, though, doesn't account for everything. In reality there are four broad usages of ~ての.

1. The attribute form for stopping the 連用形 (連用中止法の連体形).
2. As a postposition (the opposite of a preposition)
3. In fixed attribute expressions.
4. After て phrases used adverbially like 初めて.

However, the hard one is 1. Expressions under the third category are just deemed suffixes. An example is ~きつての (The most...of all).

2. 国内きっての敏腕家

The most capable person in the country

We also understand expressions under 4 like 初めての。

3. 生まれて初めての海外旅行はメキシコでした。

My first overseas trip ever was to Mexico.

The problem is how の really functions and the relationship between the 連用形 and 連体形. Say you have the verb 使う. 使う's 連体形 is still just 使う. So, why can you say something like さいころを使っの遊び (a game played with dice). One would assume that this could work with anything. However, there are indeed instances where this is unnatural. Now we have to find out what these restrictions are. The previous example could have easily been stated as さいころを使った遊び.

～ での has a deep tie to the 連体形. After all, it too is an attributive expression. Considering the ways to make an attributive expression in Japanese, you have the following options.

1. Nominal + の + Noun (^こ木^はの葉 = tree leaves)
2. 連体形 + Noun (きれいな町; 美しい花; 勉強している ^{せいと}生徒)
3. Attributive (この学校)

Let us not forget about the underlining properties of an attribute and case particles themselves as we examine this pattern further.

4a. 韓国へ旅行する。To travel to Korea.

4b. 韓国への旅行。Travel to Korea.

4c. 韓国にの旅行。X

As you can see, you have to use の for the attribute, and the case particle in this case stays. However, you couldn't have said 彼の. Consider how the following expressions below change when you change it to an attribute.

5. 高校**を**卒業する → 高校**の**卒業

To graduate high school → High school graduation

6. 彼**に**死刑**を**宣告する → 彼**へ**の死刑**の**宣告

To give him the death penalty → The death sentence given to him

7. 武器**が**恐ろしい → 武器**へ**の恐ろしさ

Weapons are dreadful → The dreadfulness of weapons

What about when it seems that both the 連用形 and the 連体形 are logical choices. These are exceptional circumstances, and the noun in question is one that has adjectival qualities. Consider the following.

8a. 彼女はすごく美人だ。

8b. 彼女はすごい美人だ。(元は間違い)

The first focuses on the quality of beauty while the second modifies the thing. So, it's like the difference between "she's really beauty" and "she's a real beauty". In other cases such as the ones we've seen, there is a clear back-and-forth change between the 連用形 and 連体形. However, sometimes changing one phrase to fit the other results in an unnatural sentence. This is due because of semantic restraints, not the 'grammaticality' of the phrase.

9. うれしい話 ○ → うれしく話す X

What about adverbs? What if they're used like an attribute? はじめて is a prime example of の following. しばらく (in a while) is also a good example. Yet, there is a group of adverbs that never take の even when they are with a noun. These nouns are relative and have to do with an indeterminate quantity. So, one

says something like ちょっと前. However, ちょっとの前 is unacceptable. There are still other adverbs that are never used with の like 必ず.

You have now gotten a glimpse of why ～ての may be so difficult given the complexity of the 連体形 itself and how it relates to the 連用形. However, that's not the only thing that makes it complex. What about the many usages of て?

1. Shows sequence.

10. 家に帰って、晩ご飯を食べる。

To go home and eat dinner.

2. Indicates reason or cause.

11. 猫に引っ掻かれて、泣いた。

I got scratched by a cat and cried.

3. Indicates method or means.

12. 肘をついて、眺める。

To use one's elbows to view.

4. Comparison or contrast.

13. 赤くて大きなリンゴ

A red and large apple

5. Contradictory condition.

14. あいつは知っていて教えてくれなかった。

He knew but didn't tell (me).

6. Shows some sort of condition. This is so in phrases like について.

Ignoring #6, #1-3 can be used with ～ての. This definitely makes things still difficult. #4 and #5 are illogical with it. Now, let's see what happens when it's used with #1.

～ての: Sequential

When ～ての is used to show sequence, it compensates the particle から. So, it could be replaced by ～てからの or ～たあとの.

14. 2年間休んでの予定通りの復活でした。

It was a come-back as planned after a rest for two years

15. 水族館を見学しての帰り

Coming back from visiting an aquarium

16. 行脚を果たしての帰途

Homeward after completing a pilgrimage

17a. あの日は、遊園地に遊びに行つての緊急事態だったため、現場に行くのに時間がかかってしまった。○

17b. あの日は、遊園地に遊びに行った緊急事態だったため、現場に行くのに時間がかかってしまった。X

That day, because there was an emergency situation after having already gone to have fun at an amusement park, it took some time to get to the scene.

All of these can be rephrased with the 連体形. This phrase can lead to something being incidental.

18. 番組は見てのお楽しみだ。

This phrase indicates that one wouldn't understand the fun had you not

seen it. This phrase, incidentally, no pun intended, can lead to very strong statements.

19. それは10日たったのことだ。

That is something that lapsed over 10 days.

20. 許しを得 {ての・た} 上で

Upon receiving permission

21. 知っ {ての・た} 上で

Upon knowing/realizing

However, when the transition shown by て is a simple sequence, it's very hard to use ~ての. This is because as these examples have shown, it presents some sort of premise, and then something strong is supposed to come after it.

~ての: Reasoning

When て indicates reasoning or cause, the relation is general. Since X is so, Y happens. Phrases like 心配しての言葉 can be rephrased to 心配して言った言葉. However, this is not as simple as it looks. Rather, there are three possible consequences.

1. ~ての can be interchangeable with the 連体形
2. ~ての can be replaced by the 連体形 but there is a change in meaning
3. The two are not interchangeable and only one is correct.

This is very context driven, but it isn't a totally random assignment. Sometimes context must be there for ~ての to be understood. If words seem to be missing if you translate back into English, the Japanese is probably bad.

22. 借金返済に追われ {ての・た} 無理心中

A suicide forced by being pressed into repaying one's debts

23. アメリカ生活に疲れ {ての・た} 情緒的な日本回帰

An emotional return to Japan from being tired of American life.

24a. 発言が伝わっての憤り

24b. 発言が伝わった憤り

Example Note: 24a shows reasoning and 24b shows the content of resentment.

You can also see ~てのことだ. In similar examples, you can't just replace it with ~た. That's because you lose any sense of reasoning with something else. The の replaces a verb that can be ascertained from the context. The same goes for ~てのものだ.

25. いつも食料や水を貯めておくのは、{自然災害・地震・緊急事態} に備えてのことだ。

Why I always store food and water is in case of a [natural disaster/earthquake/emergency situation].

26. 明日からのことを考えての準備だ。

That's in preparation for things tomorrow.

27. アベノミクスの政策が失敗に終わったら、日本の経済はすぐに復活できないかもしれない。景気が戻るに は 50 年にかかる可能性があるだろう。なので、私が現在のアベノミクスに対して警鐘を唱えるのは、30 年

先の生活を心配してのことだ。

If the Abenomics policy were to end in failure, the Japanese economy would possibly not be able to quickly recover. There is also the possibility that it could take even 50 years for the economy to recover. So, as for me personally, what raises an alarm at the current Abenomics is worrying about my life thirty years down.

～あつての

～あつての is a very important application that states that without X, there is no Y. が is usually dropped.

28. 苦労あつての喜び。

Joy only from having gone through hardship.

29. 海あつての漁業なんだから、海を汚してはいけないぞ。

As this is a fishing industry since there is the ocean, we mustn't pollute it.

30. 両親あつてのことです。

It's all thanks to my parents.

31. 命あつての物種 (Proverb)

Where there is life, there is hope.

32. 企業あつての組合

A union in existence thanks to the company

～ての: Means and Condition

This is actually the most prevalent usage and the easiest to understand. It is often interchangeable with ～ながらの.

33. たくさんの人を案内しての登山は大変だった。

Hiking while guiding a lot of people was hard.

34. 恥をさらしての暴露

A revolution while disgracing oneself

Just as was the case before, there are instances where you can replace it with the 連体形, cases you can but there is a change in meaning, and cases where they're not interchangeable.

When Interchangeable:

35. 仕事を離れ {ての・た} 個人的な関係

A personal relation aside from work

36. 予想を踏まえ {ての・た} 決定

A decision based on forecast

37. 大統領にちなん {での・だ} 恐竜の名前

A dinosaur name after the president

38a. 試験に向けての勉強

38b. 試験に向けた勉強

Study directed for exam

There are many instances where the 連体形 and ての are still interchangeable, though. Remember those postposition like phrase? Some include に対 {しての・する} (with regards to), をめぐ {つて・る} (concerning (disputes)), and に関 {しての・する} (about (formal)). We will see these later in Advanced IMABI.

第212課: ～てたまる

The 五段 verb ^{たま}堪る means "to endure". In this lesson, we will see it used after the て form to show the speaker's utter intolerance for something.

～てたまる

～て堪る is followed most frequently by either か or ものか to show that one would never let something happen. The speaker is showing a strong resolution of not having something be in such a state/condition. As you can imagine, this isn't used in polite speech.

This is synonymous with 断じて～など（し）ない. 断じて ≡ 決して. ～ものか shows a strong sense of negation, and it can also be seen in more casual speech as ～もんか. It literally creates a strong negative rhetorical question.

Examples

1. ^{らくだい}落第 などして堪るものか。
I would never fail!
2. 負けてたまるか。
I would never be defeated!
3. 死んでたまるものか。
I would never die!
- 4a. そんなことを断じて許せない。
- 4b. そんなことを許してたまるものか。
I would never allow this.

Sentence Note: 4a shows the speaker's incapability of not allowing such. 4b shows a strong negative emotional reaction of allowing such, and the latter as with all of the other sentences with ～てたまる（もの）か invoke emotions such as anger. So, although the sentence with 断じて could be reworded to be even polite, that's impossible with ～てたまるものか. It's a phrase that should be limited to one's ウチ.

～てたまらない

た まらない can be translated as "to die for", "ache", "kill for", etc. You literally can't stand it, and as you see below, this is often used in a positive sense. When it's not, it should be obvious by what's being used. For instance, in the first example, the speakers really want to go, and you get the sense that they just can't stand waiting any longer. This phrase is sometimes seen in polite speech as Ex. 4 illustrates.

Examples

4. 私たちは行きたくてたまらないのです。

We are eager to go.

5. あまりの ^{あつ}暑 さに ^{ひとやす}一 休 みしたくてたまらない。

I'm dying for a break from the heat.

6. 一杯飲みたくてたまらなかった。

I couldn't stand not having a drink.

7. ^{こんや}今 夜 の彼女はたまらなく美しい。

She is irresistibly beautiful tonight.

8. はら
腹 が立ってたまらない。

To get furiously mad.

9. りょこう
旅 行 したくてたまらないよ。

I'm aching to travel.

10. 負けて悔やしくてたまらない。

I can't stand but regret losing.

11a. 負けてたまらない。

11b. 負けているわけにはいかない。

I can't stand losing.

Grammar Notes:

1. Although the subject of the last sentence could be different, both sentences show the speaker's/subject's not standing the fact of losing. The positive/negative associations of this pattern clearly fall on semantic lines of what you're using in combination with it.

2. わけ = Reason. いかない = Won't go. So, ～わけにはいかない literally means "won't go with the reason of...". It can be after positive and negative sentences. So, just like in English, a double negative in this situation would make a positive. Click the link for more coverage.

第213課: Combination Particles with もの

This lesson is about the particle もの and the combination particles associated with it, not about the nouns 物 and 者, although all three words share the same origin.

The Particle もの: Because

The particle もの, colloquially as もん, may mean "because". This usage is used extensively by women and small children as an alternative to から and may be used conjunction or as a final particle.

1. この^{けしき}景色^{なつ}は懐かしいですね。私たちが若い時に会ったところですよもの。

This scenery is nostalgic isn't it? It's because this is the place we met when we young.

Sentence Note: Scenes like above would be commonly heard among old people.

2. ねえ、ねえ、あのビデオゲーム買ってよ。どうしてもあたしほしいんだもの。

Hey, hey, can you buy that video game? Cause I've got to have it.

The particle もの has several other usages.

1.	Similar to "will", it nominalizes a verb.
2.	Used with -たい showing wish, it means "would like to do".
3.	Ought to.
4.	"よくしたものだ" means "used to".

3. よく泳いだもんだ。

I used to swim.

4. ^{まるき}丸木^うは水に浮くものだ。

A log will float in water.

5. くじら
鯨 になりたいものです。

I wish I were a whale.

6. もっとご両親は うやま
敬 うものですよ。

You should be more respectful to your parents.

7. 私、せいじん
成人 になったんだもの、少しぐらいお酒を飲んでもいいでしょう。

I'm an adult now, so isn't it alright for me to have a little liquor to drink?

Combination Particles

Below is a chart of combination particles with the conjunctive particle もの.

～もので	Shows reason of action for what happened
～ものか	Extremely emphatic negation
～ものなら	Should there be, if...then (volitional)
～ものの	Even though
～ものを	Although, if only

Usage Notes:

1. ～ものを signifies the unsatisfactory feeling of the speaker.
2. ～ないものか shows a feeling of expectation for the realization of an idea and ～たものか shows a sense of confusion.
3. ～からいいようなものの and ～ば・といいようなものの express "though it's OK because" and "although it would be for the better if" respectively.

Examples

8. いくつかの^{けってん}欠点はある**ものの**、彼は天才です。

Even though he has a few flaws, he's a genius.

9 あんなやつに負ける**もんかい**。

Like I'd lose to that kind of guy!

10. ^{つか}掴める**ものなら**、掴んでごらん。

If you think you can grab it, go right ahead.

Word Note: ごらん is just like みせてもらう.

11. 負ければ^す済む**ものの**、そこまで自分をおとしめることができなかった。

Although it would have ended better if he would have lost, he could not lower himself to such a degree.

12. あんまり^{うれ}嬉しかった**もので**、何をしてるのかは忘れちゃった。(Really casual)

I was so happy that I forgot what I was doing.

13. 一言だけ話せばよかった**ものを**、しゃべりすぎたので、事件に^ま巻き込まれてしまった。

Although it would have been alright to speak just a word, I accidentally got involved into the matter because I chattered too much.

14. 聞いてくれればよかった**ものを**。

If only he would have listened.

15 さっさと警察に届けりゃいい**ものを**。

If only I had given it to the police promptly.

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

Contraction Note: りゃ is the contraction of れば.

16. もっとうまくできない**ものか**？

Can't you do better?

17. この仕事は誰に^{たの}頼んだ**ものか**。

To whom was this work entrusted in?

18. できる**もん**なら、^か代わってやりたい。

If it's possible, then I'd like to switch out (for you).

19. 気づいたからいいような**ものの**、他の人がいたらどうしただろうか。

Though it is all right that I noticed, what would I do if there were other people?

20. 先生に^{あつ}厚^{くちごた}かましくも口^{おおめだま}答えをしよう**ものなら**、大^く目玉を食らうでしょう。

Should you even have the nerve to talk back to the teacher, you'll surely get scolded severely.

28. 火事になろう**もん**なら、大変だぞ。

It would be grave should there be a fire.

29. 借金で困っていた友人を、助けようと思えば助けられた**ものを**、見捨ててしまった。

If only I had thought to help my friend who was struggling with debt, I could have helped her, but I accidentally ran out on her.

30. 休めばよかった**ものを**、無理をして働きすぎたので、病気になってしまったよ。

Although I would have been fine if I took a rest, I unreasonably worked too much, so I ended up getting ill.

31. あたしの気持ち、君にわかってたまる**ものか**！

How could you ever know how I'm feeling!?

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with the particle もの.
2. Create a sentence with もんで.
3. Create a sentence with ものか.
4. Create a sentence with ものなら.
5. Create a sentence with ものの.
6. Create a sentence with ものを.
7. Create a sentence with からよかったものの.
8. Create a sentence with ばいいようなものの.

第214課: Combination Particles with ばかり

ばかり is a very important particle and is in many combination particles.

The Adverbial Particle ばかり

ばかり is used in several important usages and may be ばかり, ばかりし, or ばかり in colloquial settings.

1. Shows degree.

1. リンゴを二つばかりください。

Please give me (approximately) two apples.

2. 旅行の^{ひよう}費用は全部で50万円ばかりかかりました。

The total cost of the trip came to around 500,000 yen.

3. 運動選手さんは10キロばかり^{きょうそう}競走に走りました。

The athlete ran about 10 kilometers in the race.

2. Shows limitation.

1.	Used with nominals to show everything is just a certain thing.
2.	After a noun or in between て and いる meaning "just doing".
3.	ばかりだ expresses what's yielded in a one-sided situation.

4. 見渡す限り一面雪ばかりでした。

There was nothing but snow as far as I could see.

5. 弟は外で遊んでばかりいます。

My younger brother does nothing but play outside.

6. 兄はコンピューターを使っただけにいる。でも、毎度クラッシュしてしまうから、お返しされるんだ。
My older brother is always just using the computer. But, since every time he uses it it crashes, I get payback.

7. 国際問題は悪くなるばかりだ。
The international problem is just getting worse.

8. その子犬はいつも眠っただけにいる。
That puppy is always just sleeping.

9. 家にばかりいないで、たまには外出しよう。
Don't just stay home. Let's go out once in a while.

10. とつぜん ていでん うおうさおう
突然の停電で人々は逃げ場を求めながら右往左往するばかりだった。

People could only move in confusion while looking for a place to escape by the sudden blackout.

3. Either after ～ん, which must follow the original 未然形 for all verbs, or the 連体形, ばかり may also show that "something is as if it is going to happen". It does not have to literally be the case. This pattern may also be used to show an excessive/extreme degree.

11. 雨が降り出さんばかりの空 模様だ。
The sky is as if it's about to rain.

12. ふくろ
袋 ははち切れるんばかりにつまっていた。
The bag was filled as if it was about to burst.

13. ボールは爆発せんばかりに、ふくらんでいた。
The ball expanded as if it were about to explode.

14. 彼は爆発せんばかりに、ほお 頬を膨らませていた。
He was about to explode (in anger).

Historical Note: The ～ん comes from the old negative ending ～ぬ, and the pattern ～ぬばかりだ was equivalent to しなだけで・・・したかと思うほど. It eventually got confused with the old volitional form ～ん・む, which brought about the sense that it looks like it's about to happen.

Reading Note: 頬 can also be read as ほほ.

4. After ～た it shows what is yielded right after something. It is of a moment. In other words, the event in question can't have a long duration. So, things like 徹夜したばかり are wrong.

15. 20歳になったばかりだ。

I just turned 20.

16. 僕はたった今着いたばかりだ。

I only just arrived.

17. 寝たばかりのようだ。

It looks like he just fell asleep.

18. 寝たばかり。X

I just slept.

19. はい、昨日覚えたばかりですから。

Yes, it's because I just learned it yesterday.

20. 起きたばかりです。

I just woke up.

21. 私は習ったばかりの日本語を使ってみました。

I tried using Japanese I had just learned.

22. 学期が始まったばかりなので、まだあんまり忙しくない。

Since the semester started, I'm still not that busy.

23. さっき食べたばかりなのに、またすぐおなか^{なか}が空いてしまった。

Although I had just eaten a little while ago, I got hungry again right away.

24. この本は出版されたばかりだ。

This book has just been printed.

25. 昼ご飯を食べたばかりなのに、もうお腹がすきました。

Although I just ate lunch, I'm already hungry.

読み物: アイヌ語を守ろう!

アイヌ語は、単語のひとつひとつにも物語のような ^{がいねん}概念 があるらしいですね。アイヌ語が消えて行くのはもったいないです。アイヌ語は ^{ぜつめつ}絶 ^{きき}滅 の危機にある言語ですが、まだ ^{ひとすじ}一筋 の希望の光があると思います。言語は人間のごとく生きているものです。アイヌ語の命が ^た絶たれたならば、それは世界は人間性を形成する大事な部分も失ってしまうほどのことなのです。それぞれの言語は ^{どくじせい}独自性 を保っていて、代々受け継がれた情報のかたまりであり、それが記号化されたものです。アイヌ語が絶滅する可能性は高いですが、きっと ^{よみがえ}蘇 らせられるでしょう。アイヌ語のネイティブは ^{こうれいしゃ}高齢者 ばかりになってしまっているので、テープなどで保存していると以前聞いたことがあります、どうでしょうかね…。

1. What is the overall gist of the reading?
2. Find and explain the usage of ばかり.
3. What is the Ainu language described as?
4. What has been done according to the reading to preserve it?

Reading Note: 代々 = だいだい・よよ. The last reading is less common.

Combination Particles of ばかり

The chart below illustrates the usages and meanings of the combination particles of ばかり. Then, the chart will be followed by examples.

	Meaning	Description
～ばかりに	Only Because	Shows what happens solely due to...
～ばかりか	Not only, but	Shows a negative extreme and then another.
～ばかり[で・じゃ]なく	Not only, but also	Shows an extreme and then presents another.

Grammar Note: ～ばかりに is only seen after a dependent clause. All other ばかり are simply the two separate particles used right next to each other.

Examples

26. あの終電車に乗ったばかりに、事故に^あ遭った。

I was in the wreck only because I rode on the last train.

27. ^{はんざい}犯罪の場にたまたま居合わせたばかりに、事件に巻き込まれてしまうということはよくあります。

Getting dragged into a case solely due to the fact that you just happen to be at the crime scene happens a lot.

28. 彼はお金がないばかりに友だちも少ない。

His friends are even few solely because he has no money.

29. 頭ばかりか胸も痛いです。

Not only my head but my chest hurts, too.

30. 彼は^{きょうじゅ}教授にゴマをするばかりか、カンニングまでしていい点を取ろうとするそうです。友人ではあるけど、信じられないよ。

I hear that not only does he butter up his professors, but even goes so far as to cheat to try to get a good grade. Although he's a friend, I can't believe it.

31. 日本語ばかりでなく韓国語も勉強したいです。

Not only do I want to study Japanese, but I also want to study Korean.

32. ^{のど}喉が^{かわ}渴いたばかりじゃなく、^すお腹も空いた。

Not only am I thirsty, I'm also hungry.

Exercises

1. What does ばかり mean when used with the progressive form of a verb?
2. What does ばかり mean when used with the past tense of a verb?
3. Create a sentence using ばかり and -ん.
4. Create a sentence using ばかり with a nominal phrase.
5. What does ばかりに mean?
6. What does ばかりか mean?
7. What are the colloquial variants of ばかり?
8. What does ばかりでなく mean?
9. Create a sentence using a combination particle of ばかり i.
10. Create a sentence using ばかり and て.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What does ばかり mean when used with the progressive form of a verb?
2. What does ばかり mean when used with the past tense of a verb?
3. Create a sentence using ばかり and -ん.
4. Create a sentence using ばかり with a nominal phrase.
5. What does ばかりに mean?
6. What does ばかりか mean?
7. What are the colloquial variants of ばかり?

8. What does ばかりでなく mean?

9. Create a sentence using a combination particle of ばかり i.

10. Create a sentence using ばかり and て.

第215課: More Endings I: ～果てる ～付ける・く, ～立てる・つ, ～尽くす,& ～こなす

～果てる

果てる means "to come to an end" and is intransitive. Due to its meaning, it may also be a euphemism for "to die". When attached to the 連用形 of a verb, it shows that something has been done completely or up to a given limit. It is often used in a negative fashion.

1. せいね は
精 も根も尽き果てる。

To use up all of one's energy.

2. その きゅうでん あ
宮 殿 は荒れ果てている。

The palace is falling into ruin.

3. しょうち
処 置に困り果てる。

To be completely perplexed in measures (being taken).

4. すがた
変わり果てた 姿 だな。

It's truly a completely different appearance...

5. つか
忙しくて 疲 れ果ててしまいました。

I was so busy that I ended up exhausting myself.

- 6a. じがい
自 害して果てる。

- 6b. {自害・自殺} する。 (More Natural)

To commit suicide.

Similar Ending Note: ～果せる・遂せる・おおせる is similar to ～果てる in spelling, but it actually means "to successfully do". Its usage is rather limited and most commonly seen in literature with verbs such as 死ぬ, 盗む, 生きる, 逃げる, 隠す, etc. As you can see, the connotations are usually quite negative.

7. ネズミのように逃げ遂せる（の）か。

Are you going to successfully run away like a rat?

～付ける・く

～ 付ける derives from its usages as an independent verb on the lines of "attaching". It either shows something out of habit like いつも...する and しなれる or something very firmly or aggressively. The intransitive form is ～付く.

8. 真っ先に駆けつけよ！

Run straight forth!

9. 怒鳴りつけるのは失礼じゃん。

Isn't shouting at someone rude?

10. 彼女の言葉は頭に焼きつけられた。

Her words were burned into my mind.

11. 記憶に焼きついた。

It's branded into my memory.

12. 彼はふと押し付けた。

He suddenly pushed it on me.

13. この靴を履きつけている。

I'm always wearing these shoes.

14. 銀行は貸し金を貸し付けまくりました。

The banks overly lent out loans in a fury.

～尽くす

尽くす either means "to administer" or "to work with all one's might". An important set phrase is 筆舌に^{ひつぜつ}尽くしがたい meaning "indescribable". ～尽くす builds upon the latter usage to mean "to do...exhaustively". ～尽くす follows the 連用形.

15. お医者さんは^{ひなんみん}避難民のために尽くしています。

The doctor is administering to the refugees.

16. 彼女は^{まわ}周りを走り尽くし続けた。

She continued to exhaustively run through the neighborhood.

17. ^{さいぜん}最善を尽くす。

To do one's best.

18a. ^{こうずい}洪水は^{まちぜんたい}町全体を^つなめ尽くした。？

18b. 洪水は町全体を^{おそ}襲った。○

The flood wiped the entire town away.

Literally: The flood licked (away) the town completely.

Sentence Note: There is one problem with 18a. なめ尽くす is used with ^{ほのお}炎・

^{かじ}火事. For example, 山火事はふもとの町をなめ尽くした = The mountain fire licked away the town at the foot of the mountain.

全て VS 全部 VS 全体 VS 全員 VS 総員 VS 皆

Since the last sentence used 全体, this is a perfect time to contrast these six very similar words.

全て	All (of something); everything
全部	All as in altogether
全体	The entirety of something
全員	All members; everyone
総員	Same as 全員 but more technical
皆	Everyone; everything

The differences are minor, but they can make a difference. 全部 suggests that there are individual parts. 全体 refers to all of a perimeter.

～立てる・つ

立てる and 立つ are the transitive and intransitive verb pairs for to stand. ～立てる shows that one does an action energetically. ～立つ shows that an emotion of some sort rises.

19. 僕の心が {浮き立った・ときめいた} 。

My heart was enlivened.

20. せいえん
声 援 に勇み立つ。

To be encouraged by support.

21. 責め立てても無理だよ。

It's useless even if you reproach him.

22. ほのお
炎 が燃え立つ。

For flames to blaze.

23. 記者を質問で攻め立てた。

I bombarded the reporter with questions.

～こなす

こなす may be used to mean "to sell out", "to handle easily", "to break to pieces/digest", or "to use learned skill at will", and ～こなす means "to do...completely/well".

24. 馬を乗りこなす。

To ride a horse well.

25. 彼女は舞踏会に着こなした。

She was dressed stylishly at the ball.

Table of Contents

第216課: Endings VII: ～返る・す, ～捲る, ～殴る, & ～腐る, & ～通す

Some of these endings are a little difficult, so be sure to study hard.

～返る & ～返す

返る means "to return" and is used in compounds to mean "to become completely/extremely". The transitive form of 返す is used after the 連用形 of verbs to show that one does something again starting from the very beginning.

1. 観客はすぐに静まり返った。

The audience automatically fell over.

2. 光^さえ返った光を見よ。（ちょっと古風）

Look at the light that has become completely clear.

3. 気^{しよげ}返った彼女は自殺してしまった。

She committed suicide completely disheartened.

4. 思い返して断^{だん}念^{ねん}した。

I reconsidered it and abandoned the plan.

5. もう一度繰り返して下さいませんか。（とても丁寧）

Could you repeat it one more time?

6. 彼は噎^むせ返り続けた。

He continued to sob convulsively.

漢字 Note: 噎 and 悄 are 表外字.

～殴る & ～腐る

～殴る is used to show that one is doing something rather violently. ～腐る can be used to show disgust in what someone is doing.

7. 記事を書き殴る。

To rapidly write down an article.

8. ぶち殴る。

To beat hard.

9. つまらんことばかり言い腐ってるやつだな、あんた！ (Vulgar)

You're just a guy that just says useless things!

～捲（まく）る

捲る means "to roll up". In compounds it shows something recklessly done without an end in sight.

10. 高校生の時にマンガを読みまくりました。

When I was a high school student, I would do nothing but read manga.

11. 最近パソコンを使いまくってるよ。

I've recently been doing nothing but using the computer.

12. コーラを飲みまくるのは健康のために悪いですよ。

Drinking nothing but cola is bad for your health!

13. シャベリまくるのはむかつくよね。

Talking on and on is annoying, isn't it?

14. 食べまくるのは人間の性質の短所である。

Eating greedily is a fault in human nature.

15. 電車の中で高校生がしゃべりまくっているのを聞いていた。

I listened to the high school students talked their jaws off on the train.

16. 部屋は荒れまくり。

~My room is just a mess.

～通す

通す, following the 連用形 of a verb, it means "to continue to do...until the end". Below is a chart of some common verbs utilizing it.

To persist in	押し通す	おしとおす
To continue to read until the end	読み通す	よみとおす
To carry through	遣り通す	やりとおす
To sing until the end	歌い通す	うたいとおす

Spelling Note: 透 may be used instead of 通 when showing the transmitting of something such as light. In a more physical sense, 徹 may be used.

Table of Contents

第217課: The Particle から II: ～からある, ～からの, & ～からする

These phrases are all quite similar, but it's important to understand how they don't overlap.

Emphasizing Degree

からある basically shows that a something is a certain amount, but in other contexts it may imply that the quantity is large or even more than the number phrase being used. It is used with phrase involving length, width, wideness, depth, weight, size, and quantity.

However, because it is generally not used as much and is very 書き言葉的, it may be best to avoid it in the spoken language in order to not sound unnatural. For instance, 1a is completely grammatically correct, but many speakers would prefer you say 1b.

1a. 2000 からある漢字 ○/△

1b. 2000 もの漢字 ○

As much as 2000 Kanji

One application that has not been affected much is when からある is preceded by some time phrase.

2. {古く・昔} からある物語

A story from a long time ago

3. この神社は鎌倉時代からあります。

This temple is from the Kamakura Period.

Before seeing more examples, it's important to know about the similar ～からの and ～からする which find themselves used more than ～からある. ～からの has some overlap with ～からある at times, but its main purpose to be used with

cost and expenses as well as basic number statements in which ある would be inappropriate like in Ex. 13. ～からする is used to show prices as in purchases.

4. 17 兆 6000 億ドルからの国債

National debt of over 17 trillion, 600 billion dollars

5. 年間一万ドルからする特別教室

Special classroom costing ten thousand dollars annually

6. この地方では毎年 100 cm からある積雪のため、スキーが盛んだ。

Due to snow accumulation of 100 cm or more each year in this region, skiing has flourished.

7. 夜の間に、10 トンからある大量のバイオ^{はいきぶつ}廃棄物がゴミ捨て場に捨てられていた。

During the night, more than 10 tons of biological waste was dumped in the dump site.

8. 今年は大雪で、ダラスでも 30 cm からある積雪が観測された

This year has had heavy snow, and 30 cm has been recorded even in Dallas.

9. その男の人は 50 キロからある荷物をひょいと肩に^{かつ}担いで、大型トラックに載せた。

The man hoisted luggage of more than 50 kilos with ease on his shoulders and loaded it into the semi-trailer.

10. インドネシア諸島は 1 万 3000 からある島で構成されている。

The Indonesian Isles is composed of more than 13,000 islands.

11. 安くても大体 1 頭 3、4 万円からする。

Even if it's cheap, a head will basically cost 3-4000 yen.

12. 数時間前に、40 キロからある荷物をいくつも運んだので、体中が痛くて動けない。

Several hours ago, I was lifting a lot of luggage over 40 kills, and so my whole body aches, and I can't move.

13. せん にん かんこうきゃく が、まい にち すいぞくかん おとず
千人からの観光客が、毎日水族館を訪れます。

As many as a thousand tourists visit the aquarium every day.

14. 木の おも 重さは2百トンからある。

The tree's weight is as much as 200 tons

15. 身長6メートルからあるキリンが、突然、目の前に現れた。

A giraffe of over 6 meters in height suddenly appeared in front of my/our eyes.

16. 10メートルからある たいぼく 大木が集落の家のある方向へ倒れてきた。

A large tree of 10 meters came crashing down in the direction where a village house was.

17a. だい 50台からのトラックが なら 並んでいる。

17b. だいいじょう 50台以上のトラックが並んでいる。(もっと しぜん 自然)

There are as many as fifty trucks lined up.

Warning Note: Do not confuse this からある with the particle から being followed by ある meaning a certain distance.

18. 至るとは、始点からある けいろ たど 経路を辿って終点に到達するという意味です。

“Itaru” means following a certain route from the start point and reaching the end point.

第218課: The Adjectival Volitional and Older Volitional Forms

Now that you have learned a lot about the volitional and negative volitional form with verbs, you need to learn about how to make an adjectival volitional phrase and know what it can mean. Furthermore, there are old-fashioned ways of saying things that you'll still encounter and need to know.

Adjectival Volition

The auxiliary ～う can also attach to the 未然形 of adjectives. Now, we haven't ever had to use this so far. So, we will first look at what this conjugation looks like.

Class	Construction	Example	Class	Construction	Example
形容 詞	から+う → かる う	新しかろ う	形容動 詞	だら+う → だろ う	簡単だろ う

Pronunciation Note: Remember that "ろう" is pronounced as "ろー".

For 形容詞 this pattern has become longer but easier to use. So, instead of 新しかろう, you use 新しいだろう. Why the original pattern became old-fashioned is not certain, but だろう・でしょう are far more prevalent now. And, using them instead makes the conjugation the same for 形容詞 and 形容動詞.

Now, rather than meaning "let's...", which is verbal by nature, the adjectival volition's main meaning is to show guess. This is equivalent to "probably", but according to context, it can be closer to guess about the future rather than present state.

1. 安かろう悪かろう。(Set Phrase)

Cheap is rubbish/You get what you pay for.

2. 早かろう悪かろう。(Set Phrase)

Finishing early surely means a worse off result.

3. 一人きりは寂しかろう。(Old-fashioned)

It must be lonely being all alone.

4. あの紙が黄色かろう。(Old-fashioned)

That paper {is/will} probably be yellow.

5. 水面の下を泳ぐ魚たちは悲しかろう。(Old-fashioned)

The fish swimming beneath the water's surface are surely sad.

6. 喜ばしかったでしょうに、お旅は残念でした。(Somewhat vague)

Even though one would have thought it to be delightful, the trip was regrettable.

7. 遠かったでしょうに、歩いてきたのですか。

Although one would think it to have been far, you came here by walking?

If you want to say something like "let's have it easy", you would need to use ～ {く・に} する + Volitional. So, you would need the adjective in its 連用形 to be used as a 副詞 and then used with a verb. After all, "volition", the will to do something, naturally wants a verbal element. So, why not use する?

8. それを簡潔にしましょう。

Let's make this simple.

9. 試験を合格することをもっと難しくしましょうか。

How about we make it harder to pass the exams.

10. このぶす女郎、クアグマイアにきれいにしてもらおうか。(Vulgar)

How 'bout we have Quagmire clean up this ugly whore.

Personal Note to Disregard: Yes, watching Family Guy gave me inspiration to make this sentence.

The one time that the traditional adjectival volitional form for 形容詞 is used often in Modern Japanese aside from set phrases is in the pattern ～かろう {が・

と} ~かろう {が・と} . This is equivalent to "whether...or...", and the adjectival phrases that you choose should be reasonably contrastive, and antonymous phrases are your best options.

11. 休日であろうが、なかろうが、仕事をしなければならない。

A holiday or not, you have to do your job.

12. 彼女が実の犯人であろうとなかろうと、中国で有罪の判決が言い渡されたから、もうすぐ処刑されるだろう。

Whether or not she's the true criminal or not, because she's been found guilty in China, she will probably be executed soon.

13. 寒かろうが暑かろうが、試合を中止しないよ。

Whether it's hot or cold, I won't postpone the game.

14. 古かろうが新しかろうが、そんなもの買ったとしても、あてにならないよ。

Whether it's old or new, even if you were to buy something like that, it won't do you any good.

15. 母さんが夜なべをして、手袋、編んでくれた。木枯らし吹いちゃ、冷たかろうに、せっせと編んだんだよ。

Mother knitted mittens for me on her night shift. Even though it was supposed to be cold with the wintry breeze blowing, she diligently knitted it. From a song entitled 母さんの歌. Original lyrics have been changed to more standard Japanese.

16. 美しかろうが醜かろうが、人間は人間だ。

Whether beautiful or ugly, a human is a human.

17. 黒かろうが白かろうが、蝶を俺のトカゲのエサとしか思えない。

Whether it's white or black, I can only think of butterflies as food for my lizard.

As ～ない conjugates as a 形容詞, ～なからう = ～ない {だらう・でしょう} for verbs as well.

18. 富山氏は当選しなからう。(Old-fashioned).

Mr. Toyama will probably not be elected.

喜ばしかったでしょうに、お旅は残念でした。

Even though one would have thought it to be delightful, the trip was regrettable.

遠かったでしょうに、歩いてきたのですか。

Although one would think it to have been far, you came here by walking?

～たろう

In polite speech (and thus more rare) as ～ましたらう, this is equivalent to ～ただらう. Of course, because だらう has been becoming more vulgar, ～たでしょう is usually the better equivalent.

19a. 新しくなかつたらう。(Old-fashioned)

19b. 新しくなかつたでしょう。(Natural)

It probably wasn't new.

20. よろしかつたらう。(Old-fashioned)

It was surely good.

21. もう少し注意したなら、成功したらうに。→ もう少し注意したなら、成功しただらうに。(もっと自然)

If you would have payed just a little more attention, you would have succeeded.

であらう

When you use less contracted forms, you are naturally being less casually and more polite/formal. When you use であらう instead of だらう, you are most

likely writing down your statement. Even so, this is rather formal, and in this case, it makes the statement sound more definitive and objective. Thus, it isn't surprising that it has been used a lot in the Bible.

22. 努力の甲斐があれば ^{せいこう} 成 功 するであろう。

Success will surely reward you for availing efforts.

23. ^{かなら} 必 ずや成功するであろう。

You will absolutely succeed.

24. エジプトでは反 政 府 派 のデモ 隊 は ^{はんせいふは} ^{たい} 逆 ^{ぎゃつきょう} 境 にあっても、^{くじ} 挫 けないであろ
う。

Even in adversity, the anti-government demonstrators in Egypt will surely not crumble.

25. すると、ペテロが答えた、「悔い改めなさい。そして、あなたがたひとりびとりが罪
のゆるしを得るために、イエ ス・キリストの名によって、バプテスマを受けなさい。そ
うすれば、あなたがたは聖霊の賜物を受けるであろう。 …」

Then, Peter said unto them, "Repent and be baptized everyone of you in the
name of Jesus Christ for the remission of your sins, and you shall receive the gift
of the Holy Ghost.

使徒行伝 第 2 章 38 節 Acts 2:38

～ でありましょう is the polite form and is not necessarily literary. This is
because でしょう may not cut it for being formal enough in some situations, and
this would be your next alternative before using something like ございまいし
ょう・でいらっしゃいましょう (both of which are possible). Like with everything in
this lesson, this is **not used anymore**.

26. あちらの方をご存じでありましょうか。 → あちらの方をご存じですか。 (Natu-
ral)

Do you know that individual?

27. 極めて良心的な店でありましょう。 → 極めて良心的な店でしよう。 (Natural)
My, isn't it an extremely upright store.

The negative で (は) なかろう is the negative form, and it is literary with the same nuances as its positive counterpart. The polite form of this, でありますまい, is extremely old-fashioned and is essentially only preserved in the most elegant 敬語 and literature from by-gone eras.

28. 純粋な月影石でなかろう。 → 純粋な月影石ではないでしょう。 (Modern)
It is probably not a genuine moon rock.

29. テロでなかろうがデモは規制する。

Though it may not be terror, we'll control demonstrations.
Infamous poor words of 石破茂.

第??課: ら抜き言葉

The dropping of ら in the auxiliary verb ～られる when used to show potential. To this day, textbooks in classrooms throughout Japan strictly condemn its usage. The older generation and people of a more prescriptive mindset consider this phenomenon to be yet another denigration of the language. This 乱れ, though, is really nonexistent for the independent potential verbs formed from 五段 verbs which we've studied in the past did not exist as 'standard' Japanese 150 years ago. So, what is ら抜き and how is treated? This will be the theme of this lesson.

ら抜き言葉って？

ら抜き, again, is the dropping of ら in the auxiliary ～られる. The ease of conjugation is quite obvious. ～れる attaches the exact same way as ～られる does.

Verb Class	Base	Conjugation Example	例文
上一段活用動詞	未然形	見る+れる → 見れる	テレビ {が・を} 見れる
下一段活用動詞	未然形	食べる +れる → 食べれる	ピザ {が・を} 食べれる

Grammar is a living entity defined by current speakers. It is not surprising that this innovation came about because ～られる has three other usages! It is also used to make passives, phrases of spontaneity, and light honorific phrases. These things are complicated enough to require separate lessons.

One could say that the grammar is just too different for each usage to ever confuse them. For instance, in addition to ら抜き being bad, others will also point out that the use of を with potential phrases is traditionally incorrect. Thus, if people were using traditional, correct grammar, one would never confuse the potential in particular with any of the other three usages because of the use of が to mark the object. There is a reason for this particle choice, but we will treat が and

を here as being interchangeable as the number of speakers who do not distinguish them at all in this situation is increasing.

Mistaking Words?

Because ~れる only has the potential meaning, there is assurance that you are only purveying the potential meaning. Furthermore, if the phenomenon is so well known that speakers refer to words with it as ら抜き言葉, there is no chance that someone won't understand you. That is not say that there are no examples of once separate phrases now being homophonous. For example, 切れる (to be able to cut) and 着れる (to be able to wear) may not even be distinguished by intonation in some reasons. This problem, though, can be viewed as very rare. For the sake of bringing this sort of problem up, there is also 寝れる VS 練れる, and 送れる VS 遅れる.

1. 古い服を着れた！

I was able to wear my old clothes!

2. ハサミでよく切れた！

I was able to cut it well with scissors!

3. あの人は、ある程度練れた文章を書けました。

That person was able to write to a certain degree a well-rounded composition.

4. 寝れない夜を過ごしてる。

I'm spending sleepless nights.

5. とりあえず何とか完成して送れた。

For the time being, I somehow finished it and was able to send it.

6. ひどい交通渋滞で遅れた。

I was late due to horrible congestion.

Word Form Note: Ex. 5 and 6 show us that this talk of confusion is void. 送れる is not ら抜き and is the proper potential form of 送る. No speaker is ever going to confuse it with 遅れる in context.

7. 大雨が降ってこんなところに居れるわけない。

There's no way I'll be able to stay here in this rain.

8. サクランボを容器に入れる。

To put cherries in a container.

More Info on ら抜き言葉

In formal writing, ら抜き言葉 are almost non-existent, but in day-to-day writing, it is appearing more frequently. However, the fact that people typically don't like characters in books featuring these words is rather interesting.

With the percentage of the population which doesn't use ら抜き言葉 at all being a small minority, and with the existence of politicians and the like using it frequently on the air, one can easily imagine this solidifying as “new correct Japanese” in the near future. Change is often hated when in progress. So, for this reason, an actual news anchor or journalist will never use it unless quoting the words of an interviewee. Subtitles and tel-ops often reinsert ら if missing in speech, which is perhaps the media's way of reversing the change, though they are clearly losing the battle with such tactics. It is also a fact that ら抜き言葉 are readily type-able, which will only facilitate the spread of this change.

Treating it as Dialectical?

What about the dialects in which ら抜き is the standard? They are probably under influence from regions which say it's backward, but because it is the standard in these regions and it is becoming standard elsewhere, it's hard to imagine any of these regions reverting to the current 'standard'.

Frequency of Use

Some verbs will be more commonly used with ~れる than others. For instance, in casual speech, one may easily say 見れる, 来れる, 食べれる, しゃべれる and the like. It may, though, be the case that you are not prone to extending this to any verb including compounds (for instance, saying 出かけれる).

9. いつまで続けれるのか。

How long can...continue?

10. なかなか準備し始めれないのだ。

I can't seem to start preparing.

Speech Style

We've touched upon register just now. Register refers to speech style in social context. Say you are the boss of a company and wish to enforce 'proper language' habits on your employees. This is a very understandable situation in modern Japan, and in honorifics, new colloquialisms are not easily accepted, and in the case of honorifics, potential phrases are avoided to begin with. Some people go so far as to say ~れます instead of ~られます in casual, polite speech is an abomination. Continue to see more examples of this as years go by. Some claim that people are beginning to use this in honorifics, but this is hard to believe. It is more likely the person intended to use the potential form to his boss, which is a マナー違反 to begin with.

11. 何時に来れますか。

When can you come?

Relation with other Auxiliaries

It is important to note that ら抜き would not be used in 共通語 with older (usages of) auxiliaries.

12. 見られよう → 見れよう X

In speaking of other auxiliaries, people very frequently use the ～よう conjugation to correct people. So, you may find people saying, if you use ～よう then you should use ～られる. Another example is using the 命令形. If you drop る from the potential and don't get a valid command form, then you can't use ～れる. As 五段 verbs would only work, 見れる is invalid because 見れ is invalid. This opinion is cute, but there are dialects which allow for the imperatives of 一段 verbs to end in れ. So, for certain regions of Japan, this analogy would not work.

Odd Dialectical Phenomena

In some dialects such as 広島弁, corruptions such as 行けれる can be found. This resembles the slang phenomenon by a minority of speakers to take ～られる and attach it to the 連用形 of the 短縮形 (shortened form) of the potential. Ex. 出す → 出せられる. This, though, like 行けれる are deemed to be errors by most Japanese speakers.

More Examples

13. 早く^お起きねーよ。(Vulgar)

I can't wake up early!

14. お金払わないと、得れないもんだ。

It's something you can't get without paying money.

15. ハイしか答えれないんだ。

All I can response with is "ハイ".

16. こうして食べると野菜もたくさん食べれるね。

If you eat this way, you can eat a lot of vegetables.

17. いつもよりたくさん食べれた。

I was able to eat a lot more than usual.

18. (Aさんは) きのうの雨で熱が出て来れないようだ。

(A-san) doesn't seem to be able to come because he got a fever from the rain yesterday.

19. 出かけれそうにない。

It doesn't seem I have a chance at going out.

20. うまくボールを蹴れない。

I can't kick the ball well.

21. あと一歩で教室から出れるところで、ドアが突然閉まった。

Just when I was one step away from being able to leave the classroom, the door suddenly shut.

Spontaneity is a cool usage of the endings ～られる and ～れる. The grammar resembles the passive, but they are semantically different. There are also unique spontaneity verbs. We'll touch on how spontaneity relates to potential phrases.

Spontaneity

～られる and ～れる may show spontaneous action or situation. A spontaneous action or situation is one that occurs without the intention of the subject which is often one's self. There is no will involved. This ending is typically restricted to verbs of thought, cognition, and or feeling. If mentioned, the experiencer is marked by に. The object is marked by が just like with passivization.

1. 人の気配^{けはい}が感じられた。

The presence of (the) people (there) was felt.

2. 行く先^{ゆ さき}が案じられた。

The course was considered.

3. 波の音に^{おどろ}驚かされた。

I found myself surprised by the sound of the waves.

4. 昔のことがふと思い出された。

I found myself remembering about the old days all of a sudden.

5. 意気込みが感じられた。

I felt ardor.

6. 空気がおいしいと感じられました。

The air came to be delicious.

7. 入院した祖母の容体が案じられる。

To get concerned about the condition of one's hospitalized grandmother.

8. 秋の気配が感じられる。

To find oneself sensing (the coming of) autumn.

9. 僕にはどうしてもそう思われる。

No matter what, all I think of is that.

10. いかにも不思議に思われた。

It seemed really mysterious.

聞こえる & 見える

The verbs 聞こえる, 見える, as well as other similar looking verbs such as 燃える and 消える also express 自発. So, we'll call these verbs 自発動詞. 聞こえる and 見える predate the potential forms 聞ける and 見られる, and because they don't actually show potential, though potential phrases do ultimately derive from spontaneity phrases due to the fact that having the potential to do something is a characteristic of you that you cannot control, we did not discuss them in the potential lesson.

So, if 聞こえる and 見える do not mean 聞ける and 見られる respectively, we need to see how they differ. Essentially, they show inherent ability whereas 聞ける and 見られる show that you *can (if you want), indicating one's intentions can be realized*.

聞こえる describes a naturally hearing sensation. It can be defined as "to be able to hear", "to sound", "to be audible", and even "to be famous". 見える may mean "to be able to see". It can also mean "to come into view/to appear". With ように, 見える may show what something looks like. It may also be a very respectful form of the verb 来る.

Examples

11. 雨（の）音の中でも彼らの声が聞こえた。

I could hear their voices even in the middle of the rain.

12. 彼は ^{こうふん}興 奮 しているように見えます。

He looks like he's excited.

13. 魚は音が聞こえると思う？

Do you think that fish can hear?

14. 私は彼の ^{こうえん}講 演 が聞こえません。

I can't hear his lecture.

15. ^{ねんれいそうおう}年 齢 相 応 に見える。

To look one's age.

16. ^{えいがかん}映 画 館 で今黒沢の映画が見られます。

You can now see Kurosawa's movies in the theater.

17. iPhoneで ^{てんきよほう}天 気 予 報 が聞けます。

You can hear the weather forecast on your iPhone.

18. 昨日は香具山が見えたが、今日は見えない。

I could see Mt. Kaguyama yesterday, but I can't see it today.

19. 降り出しそうに見える。

It appears that it's going to rain.

20. となり
隣 のテレビの音が聞こえる。

I can hear the neighbor's television('s sound).

21. 新しい眼鏡をかけるとずっとよく見えます。

I see so much better when I wear my new glasses.

22. みぎめ
彼は右 目があまりよく見えない。

He can't see very well with his right eye.

Literally: As for him, his right eye can't see very well.

Historical Note: Long ago 〜ゆ was used just like 〜られる and 〜れる and remains part of many verbs like 燃える and 消える. So, these example verbs come from 燃ゆ and 消ゆ. You may even see these old forms purposely used in songs and poetry. Their roots still end in "y" and they're intransitive and spontaneous in nature.

Bridging Contexts between Spontaneity and Potential

Another verb to note is 思える. It can show spontaneous thought. It can also show the ability of thought which can be seen as coming from 思ゆ or 思われる. 思える and 思われる are almost identical, but the only true difference between the two is that the former is felt to be more objective and the latter is felt to be more subjective.

Before going to examples, note the mentioning of "potential". There are clear instances in which verbs can be interpreted as both a 自発動詞 and a 可能動詞. However, the use of a speech modal such 〜てしまう or 〜てくる are very important to get both meanings.

Examples

23. A 生徒がいつのまにか書いてしまった。

Student A managed to be able to write it before I knew it.

24. びっくりするくらい泣けてきたわ。(Feminine)

I was surprised at how many tears (I was able to) shed.

24. 自然に笑える映画を作ってみてください。

Try making a movie one would naturally laugh to.

25. 良い作品とは思えません。

I cannot/could not think of it as a good work.

26. 地名の由来はアイヌ語から来ていると思われます。

The place name's origin is thought to come from Ainu.

第221課: Potential III

This lesson will focus on more difficult potential phrases in Japanese. Pay close attention to even the most minute differences.

可能

可能 is a 形容動詞 meaning "possible". Impossible is ^{ふかのう}不可能.

1. 可能ですが、本当に難しいです。

It's possible, but it's really difficult.

2. ^{じっこうかのう}実行可能だ。

It's feasible.

3. ^{いっしゅん}一瞬 ^{とうけいがく}のうちに ^{もんだい}統計学の問題 ^とを解くのは不可能だよ。

Solving a statistics problem in an instant is what's impossible!

4. それはほとんど不可能だ。

That is all but impossible.

Word Note: 可 is in some words to mean "-able". Ex. ^{かねん}可燃ごみ = combustible refuse.

5. 可否を論 {ずる・じる} .

To dispute propriety.

6. 可視光線

Visible ray

7. 不可視光線

Unvisible ray

あとう (古風な言い方)

Although now quite old-fashioned, you may still come across this potential word. It's normally limited to 連体形+ {(こと) ・ に} あたわず. The affirmative potential form of verbs became used in Japanese from Western influence when the first translations of Western works were attempted. So, starting from then, あたう became used as well.

Pronunciation Note: あたう is often written as あとう because it's pronounced as あとー.

8. 行くことあたわず。(Very old-fashioned)

I can't go.

9. 称賛おくあたわず。(Very old-fashioned)

I can't help but admire you.

10. あたう限り努力します。(Old-fashioned)

I will try to the best of my abilities.

Usage Note: あたうる限り is a common misuse by natives.

The Potential of ある (書き言葉的)

The potential form of ある is あり得 (え・う) る. However, ありうる should be used only as the ^{れんたいけい}連体形. This is a remnant feature of the original verb 得 (う) in Classical Japanese.

11. ^{あ え}有り得ないことだよ。

That's impossible!

12. 彼がまだ生きているなどありえないことだ。

It is impossible that he is alive.

13. うそ！信じられない！そんなの、ありえないよ。あんないい人が、人を殺すだなんて。

Lie! I can't believe it! That's impossible. Such a nice person killing someone...

14. {あり得る・起こり得る} 災 害

A possible disaster

15. そのような事故は理屈ではあり得るが、実際にはまず起こらない。

That kind of accident is possible in reason, but above all, it won't really happen.

～得る

Following from above, it is also a common practice in semi-classical format to use 得る after the 連用形 of a verb. It can be read as うる in the 連体形, but in very old-fashioned speech, you can also see it used at the end of a sentence. With a transitive verb, we see that even this option allows を to mark the direct object.

With a verb of non-volition, this shows possibility. When added to a verb of volition, it expresses rating or degree of ability to do something. Remember that non-volitional verbs don't have a 可能形.

16. このように取り得る。

It can take it like this.

17. 微笑は禁じえない。

Smiling is irresistible.

18. この時期、^{こうさ ひらい}黄砂が飛来しうるのか。

Loess flying in is possible in this time?

Word Note: 黄砂 is dust from the Yellow River region of China.

19. タバコは^{けんこう がい}健康を害し得る。

Tobacco can hurt your health.

20. 彼は死の^{きけん だっ え}危険が脱し得ぬ。(Old-fashioned)

He can't escape death.

21. 私がいることによって、彼らは裸のゲリラとしての彼らたり得ているのだ。

It was because of me being there that they were able to stay being their bare guerrilla fighter

selves.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

Grammar Note: The ～たり in たり得る is a classical copular auxiliary verb.

22. {できうる △・なしうる} 限り

To the best of one's ability

Notation Note: The triangle indicates that this is acceptable to some but not all speakers. The meaning is doubled, which should make it ungrammatical. However, you still see it used.

Verb Note: なす is the transitive verb pair for なる and is used just like する. It is only used in the spoken language in expressions like 財をなす (to build a fortune), 色をなす (to change one's complexion when angry), 成し遂げる (to accomplish), etc.

In speaking of なす, なせる can't be used as the potential form. This is because it would be a look alike to the actual interpretation of "done". In Classical

Japanese, there was an auxiliary equivalent to English's perfect tenses: り. This attached to the 已然形. So, you would get なせり. When used before a noun, it becomes なせる. This grammar point is only found in set phrases.

23. 神のなせる業

An act of God

24. ようやく ^{てき}敵 ^{のが}の目を 逃 れることを得た。

I was finally able to get away from the watch of the enemy.

25. 事情を聞かざるを得ない。

We will have no choice but to question.

As you can see, the verb 得る can also function as a potential verb, which makes sense if it can do so as a supplementary verb. Here, in these rare cases it is always after を and usually after a nominalized form of a verb. In the case of ~ざる, the 連体形 of the classical negative auxiliary ~ず, case particles after the 連体形 was sufficient in Classical Japanese to use a verb phrase as a noun. So, the same principles still apply.

History Note: The sound change that lead to independent potential verbs for 五段 verbs is uncertain. One idea is that it is a contraction of the 連用形 of 五段 verbs plus ~得る.

Ex. 書き得る → 書ける

A more plausible account, however, is that a subset of intransitive verbs that showed spontaneity (phenomena that occur naturally) promoted the generalization to all 五段 verbs.

切 れる is the intransitive verb form of 切る. Its use as the potential form of 切る is only recent. It is most simply translated as "to be cut", but it has many

other nuances. One nuance in particular aids in visualizing the jump from spontaneity to potential. For instance, in the sentence よく切れた球が戻ってきた, we envision a tennis-like ball making a good return with a good spin. The importance, though, is similar usages in these verbs of spontaneity is what makes this such a compelling theory.

Also, historically, the endings 〜られる and 〜れる, though different in appearance, have stood for and continue to be used for not only potential but also passivation, spontaneity, and light honorifics. It's believed, though, that the root usage is to show spontaneity. For a potential pattern to evolve from another line of spontaneity phrases shouldn't be a surprise in light of this.

These phrases limit things as exceptions in their own unique ways.

～のぞいて

After a noun phrase of some sort, ～除いて is used to mean “except…” and is often left in ひらがな. It is a general phrase and will differ with the emotive power of the following grammar point ～をおいて. The verb 除く can mean “to remove/exclude”, and “exclude” can also be expressed with the verb 除^{じょ}外^{がい}する, which is of the vein of “to set aside/rule out”.

1. いっせき 一隻を除いて かんせん 艦船は全部 しず 沈んだ。

Except for one vessel, all of the carriers sank.

2. きのう、暑かったことをのぞいて、僕は楽しいときを過ごした。

Yesterday, except it being hot, we had a good time.

3. 私は除いてください。

Please include me out.

4. 私は報道記者と政治家を除く全ての人々が平等であると信じている。

I believe it in the equality of all people except reporters and politicians.

5. 北部をのぞいて、お天気はよかったですよ。

The weather was good except in the north.

6. わたしを除いて全ての人々がそれを知っていたぞ。

Except me, it seems that everyone knew about it.

7. 女性^{ちようさ}は 調^{たい}査^{しょう}対^{たい}象^{しょう}から除外することになった。

It was decided that women were to be taken out of the inquiry subjects.

Variant Note: In more formal literary fashion, this can also be seen as ～のぞき.

8. 政府の規制改革会議が全面的な解禁を求めている、インターネット

トを使った市販薬の販売について、菅官房長官や

たむらこうせいろうどうだいじん かくりょう ふくさよう
田村厚生労働大臣ら関係4閣僚は、副作用のリスクの評価が終

わっていない、ごく一部の市販薬を除き、大半を解禁する方向で調整を進める
見通しです。

In regards to the all-round band lift of the sale of over-the-counter drugs using the internet that a government regulation reform meeting is seeking, Chief Cabinet Secretary Kan, Prime Minister Tamura of the Ministry of Health, Labor and Welfare, and four other bureaucrats in connection are forecasted to further the coordination in the direction of lifting the ban in large part with exception to a small amount of over-the-counter drugs of which the evaluation of side-effect risks is not over.

From NHK on June 4, 2013.

Warning Note: Do not confuse this with the verb 覗く, which means to “to peep/take a long at” and has the same pronunciation.

～をのぞいて VS ～以外

This is very similar to ～以外. One thing to notice, though, is that ～以外 is a suffix, and as seen below, the phrase is more affirmative and somewhat more formal sounding.

9. 九州以外のどこも地震が発生した。

With exception of Kyushu, earthquakes occurred everywhere.

10. これ以外に方法はありませんよ。

There is no method other than this.

～をおいて

～をおいて means "apart from". This phrase is used to highly evaluate something or someone. So, it's a good thing. There is always something like ほかに... (い) ない after it. When you are generally saying "aside from", use ～を除いて. Like ～除いて, ～をおいて is used after noun phrases.

This phrase originally showed a meaning of "without emphasizing A as something important, one treats A as being useless and throws it out/places it to the side/separates it apart/removes it. In this sense, A をおいてほかに (い) ない becomes a double negative expression, which then makes it an extremely powerful affirmative statement of A being number one.

In Japanese it is usually the case that very powerful expressions are kept in the written language, and although this is the case for をおいて, in rather formal situations, it can be used to declare one's top recommendation. It doesn't necessarily have to be in formal situations; however, as the first example sentence demonstrates clearly.

Examples

11. 君をおいて ^{てきにんしゃ} 適任者 はいないぞ！

Apart from you there's no responsible person!

12. 頼れるのは彼女をおいてほかにない。

There is no one to rely apart from her.

13. これをおいてほかに方法はなかった。

There was no way but this.

14. それはさておき・それはさておいて

Aside from that

15. 九州と四国を除いてそこかしこで東日本大震災は多数の死者を出して大災害が発生する結果となりました。

Apart from Kyushu and Shikoku, no matter where there are many deaths and major catastrophes have occurred in the Tohoku-Kanto Earthquake Catastrophe.

～別 VS ～をおいて

The following paraphrases with 別 is used rather than ～をおいて because the situation is not one of pointing out as the best but something that should be treated separately.

16a. 震度 7 は別として、釜石市には津波が押し寄せました。

16b. 震度 7 度の地震とは別に、津波が釜石市を ^{おそ}襲った。

Apart from a 7 earthquake, Kamaishi City got flooded by a tsunami.

Word Note: The 震度 system is on a different scale than the Richter scale.

～ならでは

～ならでは is one of those instances where classical grammar holds on strong. The なら in this expression, like the particle なら comes from the 未然形 of the Classical Japanese copular verb なり. It is then followed by a classical usage of で, which is not related to the contraction of にて. In this case, it is the contraction of ～ずて, which is equivalent to ～なくて. は, here, is here for contrastive purposes. If the pattern were translated into something solely Modern Japanese, it would be equivalent to ～でなくては・～でなければ.

This pattern is used to express the brilliance/wonderfulness of something by claiming that only it is as such. In the unabbreviated state of a sentence with it, a complementing verbal/adjectival phrase follows, but this can be omitted out

if that phrase is being used as an attribute by replacing it with の, giving ～ならではの, which is the more common form of the pattern.

The entire phrase, which is “A ならでは B ない (C) ” is, then, equivalent to expressions such as “A であって初めて B” and “A だからこそ B”. In the case that A is a commonplace noun, ～ならでは is of the sense of the former coming from the position of societal wisdom/common sense. However, when A is particular, it shows that only A can do C.

Examples

17. 君ならではできないことだよ！

Without you, this cannot be done!

18. それ、中国の方ならでは {できない・の} ものの考え方ですよ。

That is only a matter of thought possibly by a person from China.

19. それって、大阪弁ならでは {ありえない・の} 人当たりのよさですね。

That is charm only that of Osaka Dialect, isn't it?

20. ^{しゃちょう}社 長 ^{はっそう}ならではの 発 想 ですね。

This can only be a conception of the company president, isn't it?

21. この ^{きょうかしょ}教 科 書 ^{とくちょう}ならではの 特 徴 です。

This is a characteristic only in this textbook.

22. 50 年続いた老舗ならでは出せないこの味の良さ！

The goodness of this flavor that only an old shop for 50 years can offer!

23. この体験は沖縄ならではですよ。

This experience can only be in Okinawa!

Grammar Note: As you can see, another exceptional thing about ～ならでは is that it can be followed by ～です with the rest of the pattern omitted.

24. さすが一流レストランのシェフならでは {出せない・の} 味ですね。

This is as expected flavor that can only be from a first rate restaurant chef.

Phrase Note: さすが, which is an adverb that shows something as something to be expected, is frequently used with ～ならでは.

Table of Contents

第223課: Can't Help I: ~ないではいられない

Double negative expressions seem to cause confusion for Japanese learners. Especially if these learners come from language backgrounds that include languages where these kind of expressions still yield negative meaning, it's not surprising that phrases like ~ないではいられない would cause problems.

It's also not helpful that some textbooks call certain adverbs "negative" when it's just a matter of semantics. In this lesson, you will learn about ~ないではいられない by knowing not only what it means, but also what it is similar to and how it is different.

~ないではいられない

At a basic understanding, ~ないではいられない means "cannot help but...". This translate, however, makes it seem a whole lot like ~てしまう. It also looks vaguely similar to ~なければならぬ and happens to also mean something similar. Consider the following errors.

1a. 期末試験があるので、今晚勉強しないではいられない。X

1b. 期末試験があるので、今晚勉強しなければならぬ。○

Intended: Since I have a final exam, I have to study tonight.

2a. その赤ちゃんの笑顔を見ると、笑わないではいられなくなる。X

2b. その赤ちゃんの笑顔を見ると、自然と笑ってしまう。○

Intended: When(ever) I see that baby's smiling face, I cannot help but laugh.

If you couldn't figure out why the first wording was wrong, we'll reexamine them later as to why they're wrong after we go through some facts about ~ないではいられない.

Conjugation and Variants

The first thing to note is that this phrase can also be seen as ～ずにはいられない, which is more so seen in the written language.. ～ず is an old negative ending. So, like other negative endings, it attaches to the 未然形. As it is old, it attaches to the old 未然形する is せ-. So, you get せずにはいられない, not しずにはいられない. Also note that it is “～ずに” and not “～ずで”.

Class	例	～ないではいられない	～ずにはいられない (書き言葉的)
一段	感じる	感じないではいられない	感じずにはいられない 感ぜずにはいられない (古風)
一段	食べる	食べないではいられない	食べずにはいられない
五段	泣く	泣かないではいられない	泣かずにはいられない
五段	思う	思わないではいられない	思わずにはいられない
カ変	来る	来ないではいられない	来ずにはいられない
サ変	する	しないではいられない	せずにはいられない

Defining

Now, what does ～ずにはいられない really mean? Consider the following.

～ずにはいられない: This expression shows the speaker's feeling of ending up doing something without being able to restrain one's willpower. So, it cannot be used with things that are deemed to be spontaneous. The situation must be one where you should have willful control over, but you succumb to something. This, though, doesn't have to always be used in a negative fashion, because it's often the case that the situation is good.

3. 会社でいやなことがあって、飲ま {ないで・ずに} はいられなかったんだ。

Bad things happened at the company, and so I couldn't help but drink.

4. ダイエット中でも食べずにはいられない。

I can't help but eat even during a diet.

5. 僕の彼女に勧められれば、買わないでいられないよ。

If I'm recommended to by my girlfriend, I can't help but buy it.

More Notes

This phrase, as the last example shows, is often used with conditionals. Remember that when talking about a third person, speech modals like ～だろう, ～ようだ, etcetera become necessary. This pattern is also frequently used after clauses that establish a reason as for why “one cannot help but...”. Although earlier it was noted that this does not necessarily have to be used in a negative light, it still can be.

6. その話を聞いたら、いくらやさしい彼女でも怒らずにはいられないだろう。

Even such a nice person like her wouldn't probably be able to help but be angry if she heard that story.

7. そのニュースに対して疑問を抱かずにはいられませんでした。

I couldn't help but hold doubts in regards to that news.

This expression is frequently used with verbs of action, emotion, and thought. As this pattern indicates a slipping of willful control to letting go in doing such action, it is frequently used with adverbs such as どうしても, なぜか, つい, etc.

8. 僕は黙ってたほうがええと思ったが、どうしても一言言わないではいられなかった。
(Casual)

I thought that it would be best to just stay quiet, but I couldn't help but say something.

This pattern is similar to ～てしまう in that both show a sense of accidentally doing something, but if something is felt to spontaneously/physiologically occur, ～てしまう remains grammatical while ～ないではいられない does not.

9a. 嬉しくて買わないではいられなかった。X

9b. 嬉しくて買ってしまった。

I was happy and ended up/accidentally bought it.

Mixing this phrase up with ～なければならぬ is just not acceptable and is truly not of the same vein. The literal translation of such a mistake doesn't even make much sense in English, that is unless you're purposely being humorous, which in that case humor often breaks grammatical rules regardless of language.

10. 笑わないではいられません。

I can't help but laugh.

11. おかしくて笑わないではいられない。

I couldn't help but laugh because it was funny.

Sentence Note: Although the first sentence in this lesson with 笑う was marked wrong, with context that implies the willful effort of trying to withhold laughter, this pattern can be used. Remember that with this pattern you can't restrain oneself from doing something, so there has to be some sense that you gave up trying.

More Examples

12. 会わないではいられなかった。

I couldn't help but see her.

13. 泣かないではいられませんでした。

I couldn't help but cry.

14. お酒を飲まないではいけない。

I can't help but drink sake.

15. サービスが悪いと、一言文句を言わないではいけない。

When the service is bad, I can't help but complain a bit.

16. 単純な質問を見ると、答えずにはいけないよ。

When I see a simple question, I can't help but answer it.

17. 何かできることを手伝わないではいられなかった。

I couldn't help but do what I could.

18. この本を読み始めたら、終りまで読まないではいられませんでした。

When I started reading this book, I couldn't help but read it until the end.

19. 私は困っ {た・ている} 人を見ると、声をかけないではいられません。

When I see someone in distress, I can't help but call to them.

20. 私は困っ {た・ている} 人を見ると、助けないではいられません。

When I see someone in distress, I can't help but help them.

21. どうせん 当 選 したからって よろこ 喜 んではいけない。

I can't be so happy just because I got elected.

Grammar Note: When you do not make this phrase a double negative, you change the translation as seen in the example above to “can't be..”.

Curriculum Note: We will return to similar expressions dealing with restraint of various sorts later in IMABI.

～ざるを得ない VS ～ないではいけない

～ ざるを得ない is very similar, but the speaker has more control in the fact that they feel an obligation to do something, but obligation itself is not all there has to be for someone to actually do something. Thus, the speaker still has some control, howbeit very little.

22. 酔っ払いに注意しないではいられなかった。

I couldn't help but pay attention to the drunks.

23. 酔っ払いに注意せざるを得なかった。

I had no choice but to pay attention to the drunks.

Table of Contents

第224課: Can't Help II: ～てならない, ～てやまない, ～てしかたがない, ～にたえない, & ～てたまらない

This lesson will continue coverage on phrases regarding "not being able to restrain" one's emotions or feeling. The phrases here with exception to ～にたえない, which is brought up because of ～てこたらない, all use the て form to attach to verbs/adjectives, but be careful about what kind of words they can semantically be used with.

～てならない

～てならない is found primarily in the written language, though this doesn't mean you can't hear it be used in the spoken language, and its purpose is to show that a certain feeling can't be helped being felt/thought. If the verb, though, does not refer to emotion or something spontaneous, it cannot be used. This pattern, also, does not attach to the negative form.

1. 不思議に思えてならない。

I can't help but think it's strange.

2. 悪化するように思えてならない。

I can't help but think that it's going to get worse.

3. もう 10 年も ^{ふるさと} 故郷 に帰っていないので、両親に会いたくてならない。

Since it's already been 10 years since I haven't been home at my hometown, I can't help but want to meet my parents.

漢字 Note: 故郷 may also be read as こきょう.

4. ^{ひじ} 肘 が痛くてならない。

I can't help but think about my hurting elbow.

5. ^{たいくつ}退屈な日本語の授業に出ていると、眠くてならない。

I can't help but sleep when I'm at my boring Japanese class.

6. 毎日 ^{さび}寂しくてならない。

I can't help but be sad every day.

7. 日本語能力試験が心配でならない。

I can't help but worry about the JLPT.

8. 失敗するような気がしてなりません。

I can't help but have the feeling that I'm going to fail.

Warning Note: Do not confuse this with the must/must not pattern ～てはならない.

～てやまない

～てやまない is a somewhat ^{かた}硬い phrase that is used to show that one will continue to be holding a strong feeling. You just won't stop. It is used with verbs concerning emotion, but it is not used with emotional verbs that describe temporary states. The grammatical person is usually first person. Understandably, it is not appropriate to attach this phrase to the negative form.

9. この写真に ^{うつ}写っているのは私が愛してやまない犬だ。

The thing in this picture is a dog that I shall always love.

10. 親は子供の将来を期待してやまないものだ。

Parents never stop hoping for their children's future.

11. 愛犬が死んで悲しくてやまない。

I will continue to be sad over my beloved dog dying.

12. 皆さんの幸せを願ってやみません。

I will continue to wish for everyone's happiness.

13. ご^{かつやく}活躍を願ってやまない。

I can't stop wishing for you to flourish.

～てしかたがない

～てしかたがない is very similar to ～てならない, but since it originally referred to there not being a way to withstand or conquer, it gives off a feeling that one can't stand something while thinking at the same time that there is nothing else that could be done. Therefore, it is also very common in the spoken language. This is unlike ～てならない which is often felt to be quite old-fashioned.

～てならない and ～てしかたがない are different when the verb doesn't express something spontaneous or emotional, in which case you use ～てしかたがない because nothing is predicated in its definition that it must be used with a verb of emotion. However, this does not mean that ～てしかたがない can't be used with verbs of spontaneity and or emotion because it still can.

Variant Note: ～しようがない and ～てしようがない are more casual versions with the latter being the most casual.

Examples

14. もう残念でしかたがない。

It's no use that it's already regrettable.

15. いくら着込んでも寒くてしょうねーな。

No matter how much I wear, I'm still cold!

16. 彼が言うと、僕を非難しているように聞こえて {ならない・しかたがない} 。

Whenever he says (something), I can't help but hear it that he's criticizing me.

17. 朝っぱらからくそ犬めが鳴くんで、うるさくしょうがねーよ。(Vulgar)

Since the damn dog barks from early in the morning, it's annoying as hell.

18. ちゅうせん
抽 選 にもれたなんて、残念でしかたないね。

It can't be helped that I'm disappointed that I didn't get drawn.

～にたえる・～にたえない

耐える means "to endure". ～に耐える is seen after nouns and verbs of personal attention to show the worth of something. With する verbs, する is dropped. For example, it is used in contexts such as being worth to read, hear, criticize, applaud, value, etc.

～にたえない, though, has two usages. When used with the 連体形, it means "cannot stand/endure to...". When used **after a noun**, it shows a strong emotional reaction in which one can't hold back such emotions. This may sound very similar to the first usage, but this usage is strictly used with nouns.

Spelling Note: The phrase can also be spelled as に堪えない.

Style/Word Choice Note: It is somewhat of a stiff phrase and used with a limited number of nouns such as 感謝, 感激, 慙愧 (shame), 等.

Examples

19. 感謝に耐えません。

I can't help but thank you.

20. 見るに耐えない OL だぞ。

She's a butt-ugly office lady.

21. ざんき 慙 愧 (の念) に堪えない。

To be deeply ashamed of oneself.

22. お忙しいところを多くの方にお集まりいただき、感激に堪えません。(謙譲語)

I am overwhelmed with emotion from receiving all of you gathering while you are all busy.

23. 気の毒で同情に堪えない。

I am deeply sorry for you and sympathize with you.

24. まこと がいたん
誠 に 慨 嘆 に堪えない。

It is truly a matter for great regret.

25. 父は聞くに耐えない^た歌いぶりをする。

My dad has an awful manner of singing.

26. 鑑賞に耐えるものだ。

It is something worth appreciation.

Word Note: Again, this phrase is used with limited words such as 見る、聞く、批

判、^{かんしょう}鑑 賞、議論、etc.

～てたまらない

Although usually left in かな, if you do see this pattern written in 漢字, don't confuse the reading for the one in ～ (に) 堪えない. They're not the same, of course. This is a very common phrase in the spoken language, unlike a lot of the phrases in this lesson, and it is a strong speech style meant to show that one can't resist a certain emotion, sense, or want.

～てたまらない can't be used with spontaneous verbs. This is contrast with things like ～てならない and ～てしかたがない. On the other hand, if you are using an adjective that shows an objective degree, ～てたまらない can be used but ～てならない・～てしかたがない can't.

Examples

26. 日本へ帰りたくてたまらない。

I can't stand but want to go back home to Japan.

27. 隣の車のマフラー音がうるさくて、たまらないよ。

The muffler of the car next to me is annoying, and I can't stand it.

28. 隣の駐車場の車の音がうるさくて、たまりません。困ってますよ。

The car noise from the parking lot next to me is annoying, and I can't stand it. I'm at a loss.

29. お兄さんは毎日退屈で堪らないそうです。

I hear that your older brother can't stand him being bored every day?

第225課: Can't Help III: ～ないではすまない, ～ないではおかない, ～を余儀なく[される・させる], & ～を禁じ得ない

These are even more difficult phrases dealing with not being able to help one's emotions, etc. Not only do you need to try to separate these in your mind from the phrases found in the two previous lessons about this topic, but you're going to have to pay even more attention to the differences among these patterns. 頑張ってくださいね。

～ {ないで・ずに} はすまない

Also seen as ～ずにはすまない, which is more formal but can still be found used in the spoken language, is used to show that if one thinks from a societal point of view with a given circumstance, doing something is simply and certainly unavoidable. It is difficult to use, however, when you think that you have to do some from personal emotion. Given that the phrase is stiff, this should be understandable.

1. 人の心を傷つけてしまったなら、謝らずにはすまない。

If you are to hurt someone's heart, you can't avoid apologizing.

2. 借金をせずにはすむまい。(古風で、硬い言い方)

You can't get by without borrowing money.

3. 親に知られたら叱られないではすまないよ。

If your parents found out, you won't be able to avoid getting scolded.

The non-double negative form above result in ～ないで^す済む, which means "to get by without...". Just as in English, this implies a good thing because you got away without doing something. 済む itself may show that something is done.

4. 済んだことだ。

It's finished.

5. 済んだのですか。

Is it over?

6. 金を払わないで済みました。

I got by without paying for it.

7. 気づかれずに済む。

To escape attention.

8. 彼が^{けが}怪我をせずに済んでよかった。

I'm glad that he got by without injury.

9. ^{じょうだん}冗談ですまない。

To go beyond a joke. (Shows guilt)

10. 済んだことは^{もと もど}元に戻らない。

What's done cannot be undone.

11. 蜂を見つけたら、ゆっくり離れたほうがいい。体に止まっても振り払わずにじっとしていれば刺されずに済むよ。

If you are to find a bee, it's best to separate oneself from it slowly. Even if it lands on you, you can leave without being stung if you stay still.

12. もう一つは、犯行後、同じように夜を待ち、普通の道を河内長野方面に向かって歩いたかもしれないことだ。これは車道以外に近道の旧道もあるので、ここを歩けば夜間は誰にも見られずに済む。

Another possibility is that (the criminal) waited just like that for night after the crime and walked down a regular road toward Kawachi-Nagano. This could go without being seen by anyone at night walking through here because there are also old shortcuts aside from the roadway.

From 二重葉脈 by 松本清張.

～ {ないで・ずに} はおかない

Also seen as ～ずにはおかない, this pattern is used to show that one will certainly happen naturally or that you won't allow something to stay not being done. It shows strong resolution. The situation where one won't allow for something deals with first person. However, the first situation deals with subjects outside of first person, which includes inanimate things.

13. あの話はやはり嘘だったと、絶対に^{はくじょう}白^{じょう}状^{じょう}させないではおかないぞ。

If that was indeed a lie, I will absolutely not stand without making (that person) confess.

14. 彼女が歌ったのは聞く人の心を揺^ゆさぶらずにはおかない。

What she had sung will surely move the hearts of those who hear.

～を余儀なく[される・させる]

余^よ儀^ぎ means "another way/problem" and 余儀ない expresses "out of one's control". So, ～を余儀なくされる, shows that one had to do something that was not of one's will and there was no other choice to get around it. You are essentially driven into a corner in a certain situation. This can also be seen in the causative as ～を余儀なくさせる. Usually the subject of sentences with ～を余儀なくされる is usually human, but the subject of sentences with ～を余儀なくさせる is usually not human but a something.

15. 悪天候のため試合の中止を余儀なくされました。

Bad weather made us postpone the match.

16. アメリカの圧力が^{ぼうえき}貿^り易^ぎ自由化を余儀なくさせた。

American pressure made free trade out of unavoidable.

17. 暴風雨で遠足は延期を余儀なくされた。

We had to put off the field trip due to fierce rain.

18. {余儀ない・やむを得ない} 事情で欠席しました。

I was absent due to an uncontrollable situation.

19. 辞任を余儀なくされる。

To become out of one's control to resign.

～を禁じ得ない

Although most dictionaries will just tell you this is the same as ～ないではないられない, this is not enough information to help you get a question right about it on the JLPT. Like all the other phrases in this series, this phrase describes not being able to withhold emotions, but this portrays an image of not being about to restrain emotions that have sprung up due to the circumstances. This phrase attaches to nouns that imply emotion. Sentences with it are usually first person.

20. 涙を禁じえなかった。

I couldn't hold back the tears.

21. 犯人の供述を聞き、^{はんこうどうき}犯行動機^{みがって}の身勝手さに^{いか}怒りを禁じ得なかった。

I couldn't withhold my anger at the selfishness of the motive from listening to the criminal's affidavit.

22. 同情の念を禁じえない。

I can't hold back sympathy

23. 残された子犬を見て、涙を禁じ得なかった。

I couldn't hold back the tears from looking at the puppy that was left.

限り is a rather complicated noun. Although it means "limit" and understanding it is no problem for most students, similar looking structures with it cause problems.

限り

～かぎり shows up in a lot of expressions, but what comes before it must be taken into account. Although particles may be a pain to get used to, you should still love them.

1. ～かぎり: This shows a parameter of a certain condition. Before ～かぎり, you may see nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

1. ほしょう
保証の限りではない。

It is not in the warranty.

2. とど
目の届く限り、わた
晴れ渡っている。

The sky is clear as far as the eye can see.

3. 可能な限り、薬を飲まないようにしています。

I'm trying as best I can to not take the medicine.

4. できる限りのことをするのも無理なのだ。

Doing as much as possible is also no good.

5. ほうりつ およ げんみつ しよ
法律の及ぶ限り厳密に処すべきだ。

It should be strictly dealt with to the full extent of the law.

6. 今年も能力の限り、お役に立てるよう働くことを ^{ちか}誓います。

I vow to work to be of benefit [to X] to the best of my ability this year as well.

7. 外は ^{ごうせつ}豪雪でも、部屋のなかにいるかぎりには ^{まなつび}真夏日のようだ。

Even if there is heavy snowfall outside, for as long as you're inside the room, it's like a hot summer day.

読み物: A Passage from 心 by 夏目漱石

8. 次の日私は先生の ^{あと}後につづいて海へ ^こ飛び込んだ。そうして先生といっしょの
ほうかく
方角に泳いで行った。二 ^{ちょう}丁ほど ^{おき}沖へ出ると、先生は後ろを振り返って私に話し
か
掛けた。広い ^{あお}蒼い海の表面に ^う浮いているものは、その近所に私ら二人より ^{ほか}外になかつ
た。そうして強い太陽の光が、^め眼の届く **限り**水と山とを照らしていた。私は自由と ^{かんき}歓喜
に ^み充ちた筋肉を動かして海の中で ^{おど}躍り ^{くる}狂った。先生はまたぱたりと手足の運動を ^や已め
て ^{あおむ}仰向けになったまま ^{なみ}浪の上に ^{まね}寝た。私もその真似をした。青空の色がぎらぎらと眼
を ^い射るように ^{つうれつ}痛烈な色を私の顔に ^な投げ付けた。「^{ゆかい}愉快ですね」と私は大きな声を出
した。

漢字 Notes:

1. 蒼い is a very literary spelling for blue. And, you may also encounter 碧い in similar contexts. 蒼い is a rather dull "blue", and it is often used in contexts where one "is blue in the face". 碧い is used when "blue" may have anywhere from a light to dark green hue to it.
2. ~掛ける is usually spelled as ~かける in everyday writing.
3. Rather than using 満ちる, 充ちる has the added nuance of inundation. 満ちる is over all the most important spelling due to the fact that 充 does not have the

reading み (ちる) listed in the 常用漢字表.

4. 躍る differs from 踊る in the sense that the latter is "dance" in a rhythmic sense whereas the former is just jumping up and down.
5. 已む specifically describes a phenomenon, action, or condition that has continued for some time stopping completely. It is generally replaced with 止む except in literal situations like this when the writer wishes to make this nuance clear.
6. 浪 specifically refers to ripples in water or water rising up. 波 encompasses the word "water" in any sense.

The next day, I followed Sensei into the ocean. I then swam in the same direction as him. After going over a hundred meters offshore, Sensei turned around to talk to me. It was only us floating atop the surface of the wide, blue sea. The strong sunlight made the water and mountains glow for as far as one could see. I madly danced around in the waves with my muscles full of joy and freedom. Sensei, again, suddenly froze his arms and legs and lay flat on his back asleep on the waves, and so I mimicked him. The blue sky cast a scathing light into my eyes as if to pierce them out. "How pleasant!", I yelled out.

Questions:

1. Find an example where a Japanese item is naturalized for the English translation.
2. Why might liberties in translation be needed with this passage?

～ない限り, which is an application of above, can be translated as "until" in contexts like below.

9. 君が考えを ^{あらた}改めなにかぎり、うまくいかない。

Until you rethink yourself, things won't go well.

10. あいつは、あまり疲れていないかぎり、夜遅くまで IMABI を ^{へんしゅう}編集するそう
だ。

That guy seems to edit IMABI up into the night unless he's too tired.

11. ^{おすい}汚水を飲まないかぎり大丈夫ですよ。

So long as you don't drink filthy water, you should be fine.

After adjectives at the end of a sentence, ～かぎりだ shows the speaker's emotions with what is being said not being simply about the nature of things, but the matter at hand doesn't extend beyond a certain limit.

12. 誰からも連絡がなく、^{さび}寂しいかぎりだ。

It's just very lonely that I don't get contact from anyone.

Another thing that this form can do that the two below cannot is be followed with a volitional expression.

13. 生きている限り歌おう。

I'll sing until I die.

As a suffix after temporal phrases in the form of ～かぎりで, it express deadline.

14. 来月末限りで辞任するつもりだ。

I plan to resign at the end of next month.

2. ～を限りに is a rather stiff and formal expression that is frequently used with time phrases to show a certain time limit. When used with non-temporal words, there is speaker variation between ～を限りに and ～の限りに.

15. 彼は声 {を・の} 限りに^{さけ}叫んだ。

He screamed to the top of his lungs.

16. 今日（を）限り（に）酒は飲まないぞ。(Casual; masculine)

I will not drink alcohol from this day forward!

17. これを限りにお前とは^{えん}縁を切る。

From here on I break my ties with you.

18. 今年の年末を限りに期限が切れる。

The term/period/deadline will expire at the end of this year.

3. ～限りでは: Verbs of cognition such as 知る, 見る, 聞く, 読む, etc. come before, and the following clause deals with a judgment. In totality, this construction means "as far as...".

19. 知られる限りでは^{いぜんゆくえふめい}依然行方不明。(Headline)

[X] is/are still missing as far as is known.

20. 私の知っている限りでは、彼はそんなことをする人ではありません。

As far as I know, he is not the kind of person to do something like that.

4. ～に限って: This raises a time, person, or thing to mean "insofar/unless". This is used a lot with とき.

21. あたしが出かけるときにかぎって、雨が降るのよ。(女性語)

It doesn't rain unless I go out [somewhere].

22. わ しゃ 我が 社 の社員に限って、そのような不正はするはずがない。

Insofar as our company's workers, we have no reason to do such illegality.

23. 読みたいときに限って、アクセスできない。

You can't access it unless you want to read it.

As one would expect, this phrase has a negative form, ～に限らない. This means that something is not yet decided. Of course, in formal/written situations, you can see it as ～に限らず.

24. なま 怠 けたがるのは、子供に限ったことじゃない。

Wanting to slack off is not limited to just kids.

25. 対象はアメリカ人に限りません。

Our target is not limited to Americans.

26. 韓国語を勉強している学生は、東アジア専攻に限りません。

Students who study Korean are not limited to East Asian majors.

5. ～とは限らない may resemble ～に限らない, and the best of students mix them up. However, because of the particle と, no part of speech limitations exists. ～とは限らない means "not necessarily". Perhaps the most quoted example is the following proverb.

27a. お金持ちが必ずしも幸せとは限らない。

27b. 金持ちは必ずしも 幸 福 とうふく とは限らない。

Money doesn't always bring happiness.

Sentence Note: The first sounds like you're trying to tell someone that seems to not understand this.

Notice how 必ずしも is used. It is commonly accompanied with とは限らない. This phrase is frequently used to speak against stereotypes.

28. 日本人がみんな勉強ばかりしているとは限らない。

It's not necessarily the case that all Japanese people do nothing but study.

29. アメリカ人は、必ずしも日本人より背が高いとは限らない。

Americans are not necessarily taller than Japanese people.

30. テキサスの人がみんな必ずバーベキューばかり食べるとは限らない。

All Texans don't necessarily eat just barbecue.

31. ^{ねん}念を入れたからっていい^{しあ}仕上がりになるとは限らない。

Because we paid attention to detail, it's (now) a good finish.

第227課: Addition: 〜に加えて, 〜にとどまらず, 〜もさることながら, 〜はおろか, 〜はもちろん, 〜はもとより, 〜ともあれ

In this lesson we will learn about somewhat negative speech modals of end result.

〜に加えて

加える means anything related to "to add". So, 〜に加えて means "in addition to". It is used a lot in enumerating negative situations.

1. 子供は指を^{くわ}銜^{くわ}える嫌いがある。

Children have the tendency to have their fingers in their mouth.

Orthography Note: 銜 is rare. If anything, it would be replaced by 啞, but it's highly unlikely that you will see the word written in 漢字.

2. 彼女は日本語に加えて、英語もあまり分からないみたいね。

In addition to Japanese, it looks like she barely understands English.

3. 料理に^{こしょう}胡椒^{こしょう}は一つまみも加える必要はない。

It's not necessary to add a pinch of pepper to a dish.

4. お茶に砂糖を加える。

To mix sugar in the tea.

5. イギリスに加えて、フランスもドイツも多文化主義の非を鳴らしています。

In addition to England, France and Germany are also denouncing multiculturalism.

7. 圧力を加える。

To put pressure on.

8. そのことに加えて、彼は自分の名前を忘れたよ！

In addition to that, he also forgot his own name!

9. 5日のニューヨーク ^{かぶしきしじょう} 株 式 市 場 は、東京市場で株価が ^{おおはば} 大 幅 に値下がりした
ことに^{したざさ}加えて、アメリカが景気を 下 支 えするために行っている ^{りょうてきかんわ} 量 的 緩 和 の
^{しゅくしょう} 縮 小 時期など、アメリカの ^{きんゆう} 金 融 政策に対する不安から幅広い ^{めいがら} 銘 柄 に売り
注文が広がりました。

As for the New York Stock Exchange on the fifth, selling orders have spread in a wide range of brands from worries towards American financial policies such as the quantitative easing curtailment period America is carrying out in order to backup the economy in addition to the large drop in prices due to the Tokyo Exchange.

From NHK.

~にとどまらず

This speech modal means that X does not stop in a certain parameter, but extends farther. This pattern can be seen after nouns and the 終止形 of verbs. It comes after a phrase that shows a phenomenon or extent that is limited in some way, and then it is followed by a phrase with a larger scale implied or explicitly stated. This phrase should not be used with static expressions.

10. マスメディアによる情報というものは、今や一国にとどまらず、世界中に伝わる。

Information by the media doesn't stay in one country now; it travels the world.

11. 農作物は、台風に襲われた直後にとどまらず、一年中その影響を受ける。

Crops don't just receive the effects directly after being hit by a typhoon; they feel the impact throughout the year.

12. 一人の人間の明るさは、場を明るくするにとどまらず、周囲の人々に心身の活力をも与える。

The brightness of a person not only brightens up the area, but also it gives energy to the hearts and minds of the surrounding people.

13. 彼女は成功にとどまらず、社会貢献に尽力した。

She not only stopped at success, but she also labored as a contribution to society.

14. 更に執刀した岡山大学病院の大藤剛宏医師は手術後の記者会見で「中葉を使った移植は男の子1人を助けるにとどまらず、これまで助けることができなかった子どもたちに光が当たるという意義がある」と話しました。

In addition, Dr. Oto Takahiro of Okayama University Hospital who did the surgery in a press conference afterwards said that "the transplant using the middle lobe [of the lung] doesn't just save this one boy, but it gives light to other children that have not been able to be helped till now".

From the NHK article 生体肺移植の男児 容体安定 by 2013年7月2日 4時15分.

～もさることながら

～ もさることながら gives a meaning that something is so, but in addition, something else needs to be emphasized. Thus, it is equivalent to, "it goes without saying that...". It is used after nouns.

ちゅうかりょうり あじ けんこう
15. 中華料理は味もさることながら、健康にいいですよ。

It goes without saying that Chinese food is tasty, but it's also good for you.

16. 彼女は人柄もさることながら、その頭の働きの良さで周囲の人をぐいぐいと引っ張っていく。

Her personality goes with saying, and her great mind pulls those around her [towards her].

ちゅうかりょうり あじ けんこう
中華料理は味もさることながら、健康にいいですよ。

It goes without saying that Chinese food is tasty, but it's also good for you.

～おろか・もちろん・もとより

～はおろか・もちろん・もとより, mean "not to mention", "much less", or "let alone" and are placed after a sentence fragment.

17. 彼女は料理はもとより食器も洗う。

She not only cooks, but she also washes the dishes.

18. 一ドルはおろか一セントも持ってないよ。

I don't have a cent, let alone a dollar!

19. 彼は英語はもとより、スペイン語も韓国語もできます。

Not to mention English, he can also speak Spanish and Korean.

20. 彼は英語はもちろん、スペイン語も韓国語もできます。

Not to mention English, he can also speak Spanish and Korean.

21. 低賃金、劣悪な労働条件、一方的な首切りなどの経済・労働問題はもとより、各種の人道的問題までも引き起こしている。

They are not only suffering from low wages, cases of poor working condition, and economic and labor problems such as one-sided layoffs, they are also troubled to the extent of various forms of discrimination.

22. あの子は書くのはもちろん、読むこともできない。

That kid can't even read, let alone write.

23. 地方ごとに、味はもとより、料理の仕方も違ってきますね。

With each region, not to mention flavor, but even cooking methods differ, don't they?

24. 父はおろか、僕の犬でさえ反対したようだ。

Not to mention my father, even my dog seemed to object.

25. 私はバイオリンはおろか、ギターも弾けない。

I can't even play the guitar, much less a violet.

26. 母語はもちろん、彼は七つの他の言語も話せます。

Not only his native language, but he can also speak seven other languages.

27. 彼女は話すのはおろか、足も動かさません。

She can't even move her legs, let alone speak.

28. 彼は修士を得るのはもちろん、入学さえできないな。

He can't even enter college, let alone receive a master's degree.

Word Notes: もちろん may be translated as "not only...but also..." and may be an interjection meaning "of course" when by itself. もとより may be written as 元より, 固より, or 素より.

～ともあれ

～ともあれ is an adverbial phrase that means "never mind/putting aside". It is also seen in 何はともあれ meaning "in any case".

29. 中国語はともあれ、問題は日本語の勉強だぞ。

Never mind Chinese, the problem is my Japanese studies!

30. 何はともあれ、後でしょう。

In any case, let's do it later.

第228課 : The Particle どころ

This lesson is all about the easy particle どころ, but don't confuse it with the noun ところ.

The Adverbial Particle どころ

どころではない means "not possible to do..." or "out of the question" and is seen after the 連体形 or a noun. 騒ぎ and 話 are often added after どころ.

1. 電気が止まれば、寒いところの話ではないよ。

If the electricity will stop, then it won't be possible to be cold.

2. 休暇ところの騒ぎではないよ。

There's no way I could take the trouble of a vacation.

3. 忙しくて食事ところではなかったんだ。

I was too busy to even take a meal.

4. 忙しくて買い物に行くところじゃなかった。

I was so busy that I couldn't go shopping.

5. 事故で休暇ところの話じゃないよ。

Due to the accident, talk of vacation is out of the question.

6. 受験を前にして花見ところの騒ぎではないです。

Going cherry blossom viewing is out of the question before taking the exam.

7. まじめところの騒ぎじゃないさ。

Serious is out of the question.

8. 寒いところじゃないぜ。凍え死ぬぞ！

Cold is out of the question! I'll freeze to death!

9. 政治家は正直ところの騒ぎではありません。

Politicians being honest is out of the question.

10. 試験を受けないといけないから旅行どころの騒ぎではない。

Because I have to take an exam, traveling is out of the question.

11. 天気が悪くては海で泳ぐどころの騒ぎじゃない。

The weather is bad, so swimming in the ocean is out of the question.

12. あいつは紳士どころじゃないよ！

He's far from a gentleman!

The Conjunctive Particle どころか

The conjunctive combination particle どころか means "let alone", "far from", etc. It may also be seen as どころではなく.

13. それどころか、ひどいやつだ。

Rather, he's a terrible guy.

14. 教科書には満足どころか全く不満だ。

The textbook is far from being satisfactory.

15. いや、それどころか喜んでいます。

No, rather, I'm glad.

16. 弟は全然勉強しない。それどころか、1日中ゲームばかりしてる。

My little brother never studies. Instead, he plays games all day.

17. 一円どころか一万円も持ってない。

I don't have a single yen, much less 10,000.

18. 雨はやむどころではなくいよいよ酷くなった。

The rain got worse rather than stopping.

19. それどころか、かなり裕福だそうです。

On the contrary, that say that they are quite affluent.

20. 口腔手術を受けて、食べるどころか何も飲めないんだ。

I had oral surgery, so I can't drink anything and I'm far from eating.

Table of Contents

第229課: と Combination Particles I

The next four lessons will be about combination particles with と. The most important of them all will be mentioned first.

となく	として	としても	とは
-----	-----	------	----

となく

となく shows the inability to clearly decide something. It may also show a befitting uncertain amount with counter expressions. 何となく is a common phrase with it that means "somehow or another" or "vaguely".

1. ใดことなく似ている。

They somehow look alike.

2. なんとなく覚えてる。

I vaguely remember.

3. いくど 幾度 となく試みる。

To try out countless times.

4. 何度か試みる。

To try it several times.

Word Note: 幾度 is just like 何度も(何度も) , しばしば, 何度も繰り返して, and 再三 (再四).

- 5a. 何人 となく 辞めた。Countless people quit.

- 5b. 何人か (が) 辞めた。Several people quit.

6. 何百 {となく・も}

By the hundreds

7. あいつは何回となくチャンスがあったよ。

That guy's had who knows how many times a chance.

とりあつかいせつめいしょ
8a. 取扱説明書はそれとなくコンピューターに対する静電気の危険性を警告している。

8b. 取扱説明書は、遠回しにコンピューターの静電気について注意している。

Guide books warn of the danger to computers by static electricity.

"...となく...となく" shows a sense of extent to all of a certain thing.

9a. 彼らは昼となく夜となく働いた。

9b. 彼らは昼夜となく働いた。

9c. 彼らは昼夜関係なく働いた。

They worked without day or night.

わこうど
10a. 老人となく若人となく男となく女となくあらゆる人が泣いた。

10b. 老人だけでなく若人、男と女が泣き出した。

Not only the old, not only the young, not only men and women, but all kinds of people cried.

Somehow

There are other expressions like *なんとなく*. However, like with everything in Japanese, there are going to be differences. The expressions in question are *なんか*, *なんだか*, and *なんとか* (して) .

- *なんか* is equivalent to *など*. Or, the slang version of *何か* used as an adverb to show a feeling of obscurity.
- *なんだか* may just be the same as *何であるか*・*何か* in an embedded sentence. Or, it is interchangeable with *なんとなく*・*なぜか* to show vagueness/uncertainty in reason.

- なんとか（して） = なんらかの方法で
- どころなく = なんとかして. Can't seem to show where.

11. 宿題なんか要らないよ。

I don't need something like homework.

12. 何だか変だね。

Isn't it strange for some reason?

13. 何だか妙だ。

It's odd for some reason.

14. 何かの^{ひょうし}拍子で

By some chance

15. なんかキモい。（Slang）

I feel bad.

16. なんとかしてそこへ^{ただ}辿り着きます。

I'll get there somehow.

17. なんとかしてくれ！

Do something about it!

18. なんとかなるさ。

Things'll work out.

19. 僕はなんとなく悲しい。

I'm sad somehow or another.

として

1. Placed after a nominal phrase. In this case, it is very much like a separate case marker.

1.	"A が・を B として" shows qualification, position, or title.
2.	"(A は)B としては" often means "among".
3.	"...として(は)" shows the subject under judgement.

20. ジョン^{まんじろう} 万 次 郎 は、日本人として始めて、アメリカで教育を受けた。

Jon Manjiro was the first person as a Japanese to receive an education in America.

21. 石炭を燃料として使う。

To use coal as fuel.

22. 主治医として、食事の量を減らすよう忠告します。

As your doctor, I advise you to decrease the amount you eat.

23. 私としては、彼の意見に反対です。

As for me, I don't agree with his opinion.

24. 彼は弁護士としては無能です。

He is no good as a lawyer.

25. くそあいつは教師としても無能だぞ。(Vulgar)

That guy is also incompetent as a teacher.

2. Shows complete negation with a word showing unit. This usage is adverbial in nature.

26. 僕は、一日として彼女のことを思わない日はない。

There's not even a single day that I don't think about her.

27. 一人として賛成しません。

Not one person can agree.

3. After the 終止形 it means "in assuming that" or "with the reason of". This usage is conjunctive in nature.

28. 話は後ですとして、まず食事にしましょう。

Let's leave talking for later and eat first.

としても

としても is after nominal phrases to mean "even the position of..." or "even if...were to...".

29. 私としても、この事柄は重要ではないとよく分かります。

As for me, too, I understand well that this matter is not important.

30. 新車を買うとしても、今度もやっぱ（り）黒いのにしよう。

Even if we were to buy a new vehicle, let's surely get the black one this time.

31. 行け {る・た} としても、少し遅れてしまうかも。

Even if we were able to go, we would end up being a little late.

32. 生まれ変わったとしても、またそんなことをするのか。

Even if I were born again, would such a thing happen again?

とは

とは may emphasize a word by stating the meaning or intention of speaking or to show surprise meaning "to think that...". It may also be a final particle. It may also be used to show a word that is being defined in some way. In this latter usage it is much more direct phrase. After all, it is the combination of the citation と and は.

33. ブラックホールとは、一体どんなものなのでしょう。

What kind of thing is a black hole exactly?

34. 方言とは何でしょうか。

What is a dialect?

35. 小川さんとは、小学校の時から友だちです。

I've been friends with Ogawa since elementary school.

37. もう今年も12月とは。

To think that it's already December this year too!

38. 標準語とは20世紀初頭に誰でも分かる標準的な日本語を定めるために、当時の東京下町弁に基づいて文法的によく通じる新方言として人工的に生み出されてしまったものなんです。

Hyojungo is a grammatically sound "new dialect" artificially created in the beginning of the 20th century to make Standard Japanese for everyone to understand based on Tokyo Shitamachi Dialect of the time

Table of Contents

第230課: と Combination Particles II

In the next two lessons we will learn about more combination particles with と.

とも	とあって	とあれば	となると
----	------	------	------

とも

とも is an emphatic version of the case particle と. Do not confuse with the conjunctive/final particle とも.

1. 君とも^あ逢えなくなるだろう。

I probably won't be able to see you.

とあって

とあって means "because under the circumstances that/due to the fact that".

2. 三連休とあって、すごい人出だ。

There is a turnout due to the fact that it is a three-day weekend.

3. 先生の頼みとあっては、お断りできません。

Because it is at your request, I cannot decline.

4. 素晴らしいホテルとあって、サービスは素晴らしい。

Since it is a wonderful hotel, the service is wonderful.

5. 休日とあって人出が多い。

It is also that there is a lot of people out on the holidays.

とあれば

Also as とあらば, which is more poetic/nostalgic and old-fashioned, it shows a case established in a latter event(s) and is best translated as "if it is the case that".

6. お望みとあらば、今すぐ。(Slightly archaic)

(Go) right now if it is your wish.

7. 必要とあればすぐに伺います。(A little old-fashioned)

I will come immediately if it is necessary.

となると

Equivalent to ということになれば and also となれば, となると means "when it comes to" or "where...is concerned".

8. いよいよとなれば、^は馳せ参じます。(Old-fashioned)

When it comes to the last moment, I will hasten to join.

9. 政治のこととなるとあいつはほんの子供だ。

He's just a child when it comes to politics.

10. 女のこととなるとあいつは何も分からないようだ。

When it comes to women, he understands nothing.

11. 日本語を話すとなると、あんたは下手だ。

When it comes to speaking Japanese, you suck.

12. きゅうじつ ^{たいへん} ひとで
休 日 ともなると 大 変 な 人 出 だ。

When it comes to holidays, there is a big turnout.

13a. 私達の両親が来るとあれば、家を綺麗にしなければならない。

13b. 僕たちの両親が来るとなったら、家を綺麗にしなければいけないんだ。(Casual; male)

If our parents come, we will have to clean the house.

Table of Contents

第231課: と Combination Particles III

For the next two lessons, we will learn about combination particles with と that utilize the verb 言う. The ones that we will focus on in this lesson are the following.

たとえば	といい	といっ {た・て}	といったらない
------	-----	-----------	---------

たとえば

たとえば may either be used in changing the contents of a conversation or to express a matter moreover yielded. It is like "in speaking of". Depending on the situation, the conditional used may change.

1. 車と^{しゃ}言えば、君はトヨタ^車を買ったそうですね。

Speaking of cars, I hear you've bought yourself a Toyota?

2. リンカーンと^{どれいせいど}言えば奴隷制度を思い出します。

In speaking of Lincoln, we think of the slavery system.

3. アメリカ同時多発テロ事件と言うと、あの頃の中東アジアの情勢悪化を思い出します。

In speaking of the American Simultaneous Sequential Terrorist Event (9/11), I think of the worsening state of affairs in the Middle East at the time.

4. 大統領と言ったら、オバマですね。

When you say president, it's Obama.

Grammar Note: たとえば may also be seen as 〜てば, 〜と言うと, and 〜と言ったら. However, you must understand the differences between the conditional forms as they still apply.

5. どうぶつ 動物 といえば、僕の犬は話せるんだ。

Speaking of animals, my dog can talk.

6. レオナルドダヴィンチといえば、世界的な芸術家だ。

In speaking of Leonard da Vinci, he is as world-famous artist.

7. イギリスといえば、{紅茶・ロンドン・二階建てバス・ビートルズ・イギリス王室・ハリーポッター} だと思う人がいる。

In speaking of England, there are people who think [tea/London/two-story buses/the Beatles/the British Royal Family/Harry Potter].

8. 今の若者の流行といえば、ひげだ。

In speaking of trends among young people today, there's beards.

漢字 Note: ひげ in 漢字 may either be 髭, 髯, or 鬚. However, the first refers to beards around the mouth, the second refers to beards on the cheeks, and the third refers to beards on the chin. These respectively may be said/written as □ 髭・髭, 頬髭・頬髯・髯, and 顎髭・顎鬚・鬚. You are not required to remember this.

9. メキシコの代表的な食べ物といえば、タコスです。

In speaking of representative food of Mexico, there's the taco.

10. すし みせ お寿司ならばあの店がおいしいです。

If you're talking about sushi, that store is delicious.

Phrase Note: As you can see, ならば is also acceptable when making a suggestion.

11. 今の若者の流行といえば、男性の間ではひげが流行っていて、女性の間では涙袋メイクが流行っている。

In speaking of trends among young people today, beards are trending among men and namidabukuro is trending among women.

Word Note: 涙袋メイク makes it look like you have the impression of tears under your eyes.

といい

といい, from と言い, lists two or more items in which they are the topic and is normally translated as "as for...and...". といい, also とよい, shows adequacy, desire, invitation, or proposal.

12. そうするといい（と思います）。

It would be good for you to do so.

13. ご両親と相談するといい。

It would be good for you to consult with your parents.

14a. あのステーキは味といい値段といい、いうことないですね。

14b. あのステーキは、値段の割に味がよく、素晴らしいです。（もっと自然）

That steak, as for its taste and price, is wonderful.

15. 長谷川さんは、勉強といい、スポーツといいいつでもトップなのよ。（Feminine）

Hasegawa is the top in studies and sports at any time.

Variant Note: なのよ is a feminine version of なんだよ.

といて {た・て}

{と・そう} いった is placed after a list of nouns that are listed with particles like や, と, and とか to mean "such as". といつて means "however". When not at the beginning of the sentence, it is often translated as "because" or "that...". Though these phrases are from 言う, they are normally written in かな.

16. うちの息子は、科学や世界史といった科目が得意です。（From a mother）

Our son is good at subjects such as chemistry and world history.

17. 日本は、確かに経済大国となりました。{と云って・しかし}、国民一人一人の暮らしが豊かになったわけではありません。

Japan has certainly become an "economic giant". However, that doesn't mean that the way of life for each individual citizen has become wealthy.

Sentence Note: といつて would not be suitable for writing, but it would be fine in speech.

18a. 私は同意しました。だからといって、（私が）満足^{まんぞく}しているわけではありません。

18b. 私は同意しましたが、満足しているわけではありません。

I agreed, but that doesn't mean I am satisfied.

19a. そのように感じたからといって、誰も彼らを非難できませんよ。（Less natural ordering）

19b. 彼らがそのように感じたからといって、誰も非難できませんよ。

Nobody can blame them that they felt that way.

20. 今はこれといつてすることがない。

I have nothing particular to do now.

21. 試験が終わったからといって努力を怠^{おこた}ってはいけない。

You mustn't give up your efforts because the exam is over.

22. 彼女はケーキとかそういったものを焼いた。

She baked cakes and stuff like that.

23. 「真理」とか「美」といった抽象^び的^{ちゅうしょうてき}な言葉

Abstract words such as "truth" and "beauty"

～からといつて means "while it's true that/even though/just because". It normally sends a message of warning. The clause that follows should be negative

in some way, either grammatically or in perspective. Don't let translation confuse you.

A similar phrase is **からに**, which means "just by/from" and is used with the non-past. **からには**, on the other hand, expresses determination and is equivalent "now that".

24. ^{てんさい}天才 ^{いば}だからといって威張るなよ。

Don't brag just because you're a genius.

25. ^{みな}皆 ^{こわ}そういうからには怖い話だよ。

Just by everyone saying it, it's a scary story!

26. ^{やくそく}彼は約束 ^{かなら}したからには必ずやる（男だ）。

He will surely do it just from promising.

Variant Notes:

1. **から**といって may be **からって** (一) in colloquial speech or **からとて** in formal texts.

2. **からには** may be **からは** in literary language.

といたらない

～ **と言ったらない** is a colloquial expression that is very hard to translate, but when it's used it shows that something is "as...as it can possibly be". Its interpretation remains largely dependent on context.

27. ^{おどろ}驚いた ^驚と言ったらなかった。

You can imagine how surprised I was.

28. あそこの暑さといったらなかった。

It was terribly hot there.

The Adverbial Particle たら

This particle comes from the contraction of といったら.

1.	With a slight feeling of criticism, it takes up something as the topic of conversation. This is typically used by females.
2.	Followed by a negative expression, it is used to show an extremely high degree.

29. あにき 兄 貴 ったらまだ寝てるぞ。

Big brother, he's still not up.

30. 痛みは個人差があると聞いたけど、痛いったらない。

Although pain has individual differences, this hurts!!!

第232課: と Combination Particles IV

This is the second half of the coverage here on IMABI about combination particles with と that have the verb 言う in them. The ones covered in this lesson are as below.

というのに	という {の・こと} は	とは {いえ・いいながら・いうもの}	といわず
-------	--------------	--------------------	------

というのに

というのに means "(al)though (that)".

- 彼女、何日も食^くってないっていうのに、健康そうに見えたな。(ちょっと乱暴)
Although she hadn't eaten in days, she looked healthy.

Word Note: Remember that 食う is the vulgar form of 食べる.

- 砂^{さばく}漠はほとんど雨が降らないというのに、少数の植物は何とか生き永らえられるようだ。

Although deserts receive almost no rain, it looks like a few plants are somehow able to manage to live there.

～くせに

Although similar to (という) のに, ～くせに is used to show displeasure or criticism. It can also be seen used as a final particle.

- 足が痛いくせに競走して勝ったんだ。
Even though his legs hurt, he ran and won!
- 彼女はもう大人のくせに、母親にまだ洗濯してもらってるそうぞ。(Masculine)
Even though she's already an adult, she still has her mother do the laundry!

5. 子供のくせに外で遊びたがらない。

Although he's a kid, he doesn't want to play outside.

6. あたしの彼氏は知ってるくせに教えてくれないわ。(Feminine)

My boyfriend won't tell me even though he knows about it.

7. やめろ。この間も傷ついたくせに。

Stop it! You got hurt just the other day, remember?

8. 田中さんは、日本人のくせに、日本語を話すのがあまり好きじゃないみたいですよ。

Although Tanaka's Japanese, he doesn't seem to like speaking Japanese.

9. あの人は、新卒者のくせに、何でも知っているように話しますね。

That person talks like he knows everything even though he's only a newly graduate.

～くせに VS ～ながら VS ～つつ

Question: *It appears that these three expressions are interchangeable? If they aren't, what is different about them?*

Answer: There is one usage of ～ながら and ～つつ very similar to ～くせに and ～にもかかわらず.

～ながら can be used to show two opposing things happening simultaneously. For example, "despite hardship he achieved great things". The two clauses should be similar in this matter. This is based on situations. For the most part, ～つつ is the same as ～ながら. It is not constructive as ～ながら is in expressions, but it is also used in patterns like ～つつある.

However, ～くせに・にもかかわらず simply shows that one moreover takes a contrary move. So, this usage is not grounds to use these expressions interchangeable. As mentioned, there is much more to ～ながら and ～つつ, and even in contrasting they're not exactly the same.

足が痛いくせに競走して勝ったんだ。

Even though his legs hurt, he ran and won!

彼女はもう大人のくせに、母親にまだ洗濯してもらってるそうぞ。(Masculine)

Even though she's already an adult, she still has her mother do the laundry!

やめろ。この間も傷ついたくせに。

Stop it! You got hurt just the other day, remember?

くせに VS ながら VS つつ

Question: *It appears that these three expressions are interchangeable? If they aren't, what is different about them?*

Answer: There is one usage of ながら and つつ that is very similar to くせに and にもかかわらず.

As we learned in [Lesson 55](#), the particle ながら can be used to show two opposing things happening simultaneously. For example, "despite hardship he achieved great things". The two clauses should be similar in this matter. This is based on situations. For the most part, つつ is the same as ながら. It is not constructive as ながら is in expressions, but it is also used in patterns like つつある.

However, くせに・にもかかわらず simply shows that one moreover takes a contrary move. So, this usage is not grounds to use these expressions interchangeable. As mentioned, there is much more to ながら and つつ, and even in contrasting they're not exactly the same.

という {の・こと} は

～ ということは means "that means" and ～というのは means "the reason that". Both are placed at the beginning of a sentence. In slang ～ということは may contract to ～ってことは. In extreme slang the entire phrase can be shortened to ～つうか.

10. ということは、まだ出張から帰ってないのだろう。

That means he probably hasn't returned home from his business trip yet.

11. というのは、友達に ^{だま}騙されたことがあるからです。

The reason for that is that he has been deceived by his friends before.

12. というのも、新しい事業を始めたから。

The reason for that was that he started a new business.

と {はいえ・いうものの・いいながら}

～ とはいえ/いいながら/いうものの means "even though". The exact meanings are slightly different. The first emphasizes contrast with what "can be said", the second is like "while though", and the last is like "although...say". They can more or less be translated as "even though" in English.

13. ^{つゆ・ばいう}梅 雨 とはいえ、晴れる日もある。

Even though one may call it the rainy season, there are still also clear days.

Culture Note: The 梅雨 lasts from June to July. ばいう is a 書き言葉 reading.

14. 美味しいとはいいいながら、まずいものも結構含まれている。

Though (this) may be delicious, there are bad things included as well.

15. まだ若いとはいいうものの彼女はかなりの経験がある。

Even though she is young, she is quite experienced.

といわず

～といわず means "don't say that", but it is also often seen in repetition to mean "not just...and...".

16a. 手といわず足といわず、^{からだじゅうか}_{体 中} 蚊に刺されたよ。

16b. 手足だけでなく、体中蚊に刺された。

Not just my hands and feet, but I was bitten by mosquitoes all over my body.

17. 彼は、朝といわず、夜といわず、暇さえあればマンガを読んではかりいるみたいだ。

Not just in the morning and in the evening, but he reads comics whenever he has time.

Table of Contents

第233課: Potential IV: ～かねる・かねない VS ～きれ・きれない VS ～える/うる・～えない

Now that you have learned more Japanese, it is now time to delve into differences with phrases related to "can" or "can't" that are more advanced and somewhat difficult to get straight. Be careful with the role of ～ない in this lesson.

Certainly, when a student realizes that 理解しきれない, 理解しえない, and 理解しかねる are possible on top of 理解できない, to the student, it seems at first glance that they must be interchangeable because they all translate as "can't understand". However, as with any similar phrases in Japanese, there will always be differences. Let's get started at figuring out what these differences are.

Although there are clear nuance differences and writing style differences between them, as the example with 理解する demonstrates, ～きれない, ～えない, and ～かねる have the basic meaning of "can't". It's now time to look at them individually and then compare.

～かねる・かねない

The 一段 verb かねる means "to serve/combine two or more functions or roles simultaneously". Other verbs that could be used instead for this include 組み合わせる and 兼ね備える.

1. 彼は教師と教育理事長を兼ねています。

He is both a teacher and the education chair.

2. 彼はその二つの部の部長を兼ねています。

He is in charge of the two departments.

3. 総理が外相を兼ねた。

The Prime Minister concurrently held the Foreign Minister position.

4. 朝ごはんと昼ごはんをかねて遅めに食べることが多い。

I eat breakfast with lunch late a lot.

5. 応接間と ^{しょうさい}書 齋 を兼ねた部屋です。

This is a room that serves as a parlor and a library.

6. 趣味を兼ねた仕事

Job combined with hobbies

7. 観光と取材をかねて旅行していた。

We were traveling to both sight-see and cover an event.

Meaning Note: News' crews go places all the time not to just cover the story, but also to enjoy the place they're at.

～かねる shows that something is impossible. This is more so impossibility of doing something in a certain situation. Say you really hate someone, and you are asked if you're going to agree with him, you might say "I can't agree with such a person". So, it expresses the inability, reluctance, or refusal to do something. It can be translated as "cannot" or "(am) not able."

8. 彼は、「表明には ^{しょうふく}承 服 しかねる」と怒りの ^{おもも}面 持 ちで言ったそうだ。

I hear that he said that he could not consent with the assertion with an angry face.

9. そんな ^{あくとか}悪 徳 業者には賛成しかねる。

I cannot agree with such an unscrupulous businessman.

10. そんな方法には賛成しかねる。

I can't approve of such methods.

11. 動機を図りかねる。

To not be able to fathom the motive.

12. この場では決めかねますので、また別^{べつと}途会議を設けましょう。

Since it is impossible to decide at this place, let's set up a separate meeting again.

13. 彼女は彼氏が来るのを待ちかねていた。

She couldn't wait for her boyfriend to come.

14. 申しかねますが。

I hesitate to say but...

～かねない is the negative form of -かねる. Since -かねる shows the impossibility, -かねない shows that something very well "can" happen. This ending is especially used when the situation is bad. So, it means that there is a danger/possibility that the *bad* thing might occur.

15. 彼は嘘をつきかねない男だ。

He is a man capable of telling a lie.

16. 彼なら嘘をつきかねないと思う。

I wouldn't put it past him to lie.

Literally: If it's him, I think he can lie.

17. このまま進めば、人間の絶滅をも引き起こしかねない。

If it continues at this rate, it may lead to human extinction.

18. このままでは、個人情報^{ろうえい}が漏洩しかねない。

At this rate, personal information might be leaked.

19. このレフェリーは規則にうるさいので試合を台無しにしかねない。

This referee is fussy about the rules, so he could ruin the match.

20. 彼はせっかくのチャンスを棒^{ぼう}に振ってしまいかねない。

He might end up making a complete waste of an opportune moment.

～きれ・きれない

This is the potential form of ～切る. It is used to show that you can completely do something, of which a lot is to be done. So, it's negative form, ～きれない shows that you can't do this.

So, as for 理解しきれない, you can still understand somewhat, but you can't understand entirely. It is often used with expressions that show quantity and degree. It is often written in 漢字 as ～切れない.

21. 学校でいくら注意しても子供を守りきれないんだよ。

No matter how much we warn them at school, we cannot completely protect the kids.

22. 彼の^{こうい}行為^ほは言葉で褒めきれないほど立派ですよ。

His actions are beyond praise.

23. 言い切れます。

I can completely say (that...).

24. 1日で食べきれないほどのバナナを買いました。

I bought more bananas than can be eaten all in a day.

25. 待ちきれなかった。

We couldn't wait (completely).

～える・うる/～えない

Though this has already been taught in Potential II, remember that this pattern is old-fashioned and used in the written language. It doesn't show that something is literally impossible, but that since the conditions don't match up, the possibility is slim to none. With non-volitional verbs the interpretation changes slightly to more of "it shouldn't/can't be that...".

26. 期待しえないことだ。

It's something that you can't anticipate.

27. 忘れ得ぬ日

A day I can never forget

28. 過酷事故は かこくじこ げんりじょう
原理上 起こりえない。

Severe accidents in theory can't occur.

Compare and Contrast

All of these endings show impossibility in the forms ～かねる, ～きれない, and ～えない, but let's see how well they can be used in a situation of stating one's actual abilities.

29.

A: 韓国に来てどのくらいですか。

B: 半年です。

A: 韓国語はどの程度話せますか。

B: まだ十分話 {○ せません・△ しきれません・X しえません・X しかねます} 。

From this data we can see that these endings cannot simply be used to show capacity.

The situation is not saying that you can't speak a certain quantity of something completely. The situation is asking for your competency of the language itself. So, ～きれない is not correct.

Now, consider the following.

30. 田中が犯人だと断定できましたか。

Could you conclude that Tanaka is the criminal?

31.

Response 1: いえ、彼が犯人だとは断定できません。

Response 2: いえ、彼が犯人だとは断定しきれません。

Response 3: いえ、彼が犯人だとは断定しえません。

Response 4: いえ、彼が犯人だとは断定しかねます。

In this case, all four responses are correct, but they are all slightly different. In the first response, you are objectively stating that it is impossible to decide. In the second situation, you state that you can't 100% call him the criminal because there is still some doubt. In the third response, you can't say that he is the criminal given the surrounding circumstances. It is also very uncommon to use this in 話し言葉. The fourth response implies that you refrain from stating definitively that he is the criminal.

With the last comment, you can see how ～かねる can be used in polite contexts in denying/rejecting things.

32. いろいろ考慮しましたが、お引き受けしかねます。

I've thought hard on this, but I cannot undertake it.

So, even in situations where all are possible, there will be differences as defined thus far. They are all used in showing that one can't decide one way or another, as demonstrated by the criminal example.

生徒が本当に分かっているのかどうか判断し {きれない・えない・かねる} 。

I can't determine whether or not the students really understand.

They can also be used in situations where because of a certain reason or cause, you can't do something or it is extremely difficult to do something. The fine details, of course, are predicated on the pattern you choose.

33. 大きすぎて、把握^{はあく}し {きれない・えない・かねる} 問題だ。

It's a problem too big that I cannot fully grasp.

Remember that ～かねる implies that the speaker has a feeling of reluctance, which is part of the reason why they “can’t”. Again, as for ～えない, a consensus of the various circumstances can’t be made. So, in this example that means that the speaker can’t grasp certain parts due to conflicting issues.

Words Used

It is now time to examine what kinds of words these items are frequently used with to even further distinguish them.

X～きれない: Used with verbs concerning with degree, quantity. It is also used with volitional verbs in regards to recognition and decision. Ex. 数える, 押さえる, 対処する, 理解する, 等.

34. 彼のアリバイ説明で納得しきれないところがあります。

There are parts I’m not completely convinced in his alibi’s explanation.

X～えない: Used with volitional verbs in concern with recognition, progress, and remarking. It is not used with simple action verbs like 見る, 食べる, 飲む, 等. Verbs it is used with include 預期する, 期待する, 達成する, 等. It can also be used with non-volitional verbs such as ある, 存在する, 起こる, 等.

35. そんなことはありえないでしょう。

Isn’t something like that impossible?

36. 理解し得ない感情

Feelings that one cannot understand

37. 金にならないものは評価され得ない。

Something that won't make money is cannot be assessed.

38. 客観的中立メディアなど存在し得ない。

An objective, neutral media cannot exist.

X～かねる: It too is used with volitional verbs of decision but also agreement, and it is also used in a lot of other expressions given its sense of reluctance. Ex. 理解する、決める、耐える、等.

39. すぐには決めかねます。

I can't decide immediately.

40. げきつう た うめ
激 痛 に耐えかねて 呻 く。

To not be able to bear the great pain and moan.

41. 先週、夫の ぎゃくたい
虐 待 に耐えかねて、花子は実家に帰った。

Last week, unable to stand her husband's abuse, Hanako returned to her parent's house.

第234課: Relation and Non-Relation: ~いかん、~にもかかわらず、~もかまわず、~をものともせず (に)、~をよそに、~をめげず (に)、& ~ならいざしらず

Although it may seem while you're reading this lesson that all of these grammar points are the same, please pay attention to when, with what, and how they are used.

~いかんだ

い かん is a noun and means "circumstances", "regards to", or "based on". It doesn't use の to follow other nouns, and it may also be used as an adverb to mean "in what way?". This pattern is used when a situation is decided or changed according to how something is. It attaches to words with various differences or breadth. What follows after are sentences with meanings of various changing possibilities and or commitment.

Frequency Note: Regardless of how this word is used, its frequency in the spoken language is low but not impossible.

Examples

1a. 成否は君の努力いかんにかかっている。(やや書き言葉的)

1b. 成果は君の努力にかかっている。

1c. 成果は君の努力次第だ。(もっと自然)

1d. 成功は努力いかんによる。(書き言葉)

The outcome will depend on your efforts.

2a. 結果は君の決定いかんだ。

2b. 結果は君の決定次第だ。(More natural)

The outcome depends on your decision.

3a. 結果いかんでは次のレベルに行けます。

3b. 結果次第では次のレベルに行けます。 (More natural)

Based on your results, you can go to the next level.

4a. 成績いかんで、大学に入学できるよ。

4b. 成績次第で、大学に入学できるよ。 (More natural)

Based on your grades, you may able to go to college.

Phrasing Note: As you can see, this usage can be very similar to 次第だ. 次第だ is more natural in the spoken language.

5. ^{りしゅうとうろくしゃすう}履修登録者数 ^{じゅこうしゃちゅうせん}いかんでは、^{じゅこうしゃちゅうせん}受講者抽選を行わなければならないかもしれない。

Depending on the number of people who register, we might have to select the class members.

6. 今日の検査の結果いかんで入院するかしないかを決めるのだそうです。

It sounds that the decision to be hospitalized depends on today's findings.

～いかににかかわらず・～いかにによらず・～いかを問わず

～いかにに[よらず・かかわらず] and いかを問わず mean "without regards to...". This pattern should be used to show that there is no relation/influence. Like above, いかに attaches to words with various range/breadth, but the patterns here are then followed by something that won't be affected/influenced. They are very 固い expressions.

漢字 Note: いかに is rarely written as 如何.

Examples

7. 内容のいかんにかかわらず、これを行わない。(固い言い方・法律の文章)

Without regards to content, (we) will not do this/carry this out.

8. 理由のいかんを問わず、例外を認めません。(固い言い方)

Without regard to reason, I will not recognize exceptions.

9. 当社は学歴・年齢・過去の実績のいかんを問わず、^{しよにんきゅう}初^い任^ち給^つは一律です。

Regardless of one's academic background, age, or accomplishments, at our company, one's initial salary is uniform.

10. 理由のいかんによらず、殺人は許されないことである。

Regardless of the reason, murder is unforgivable.

11. 如何ともし難い。

Impenetrably difficult/There is nothing for it (we can do)

12. 年齢(如何)に関わらずここには入れない。

You can't enter here regardless of your age.

~にもかかわらず

Having already seen it, you probably already know that this phrase should mean "although/despite/without regards". Unlike all the other speech modals in this lesson, this one is pretty straightforward.

13. 彼は英語が読めるにもかかわらず話せない。

Although he can read English, he can't speak it.

14. 彼は年にもかかわらず非常に活動的だ。

He is very active notwithstanding his age.

15. ^{きり}霧^{われわれ}にもかかわらず我々は散歩に出かけました。

Despite the fog, we went for a walk.

16. 悪天候にもかかわらず、パーティーを開きました。

We had a party despite that there was bad weather.

17. 晴雨にかかわらず

Fair or foul

18. 彼女の努力にもかかわらず

In spite of her exertions

19. 医師の努力にもかかわらず、お母さんはガンで死んでしまいました。

Despite the doctor's efforts, mom ended up dying from her cancer.

Orthography Note: Cancer is normally spelled in either かな syllabary. However, it can be spelled in 漢字 as 癌.

20. アメリカでは年齢や性別にかかわらず自由があります。

People have freedom in America regardless of things such as age or sex.

漢字 Note: Although this pattern should be spelled as either 拘（わ）らず・係（わ）らず, 関（わ）らず can be used when the pattern is used to mean "without relation/regard to...". This has been extended by many to be used whenever, so must people just write it in ひらがな to prevent confusion.

～もかまわず

This is used when you do something without bothering with something that you usually do.

21. 男は服が濡れるのも構わず、池に落ちた子供を引っ張り上げた。

The man pulled out the child that fell in the lake without regard to getting his clothes wet.

22. 彼女は、化粧が落ちるのも構わず顔を拭いた。

She wiped her face without worrying about make-up coming off.

23. 最近は人目も構わず、食べ歩きしている人をよく見かける。

One sees a lot of people these days eating while walking without any regard about being noticed.

～をものともせず（に）

This pattern is used to show that one overcomes and acts despite a damage that would otherwise destroy one's aspirations. It is used to mark the overall bravery of an individual, not oneself.

24. 今年 80 歳になる森田さんは、足腰の痛みをものともせず、若い人の指導に励んでいる。

Mr. Morita who is turning 80 this year is striving to guide the youth despite his leg and loin pains.

25. 周囲の反対をものともせず、ひたすら意志を通した。

In disregard of the opposition around (him), (he) earnestly carried out his will.

26. 祖母は強かった。癌の宣告をものともせず、最期まで明るく振舞った。

My grandmother was strong. Despite her cancer diagnosis, she was bright until the very end.

27. 彼は病気をものともせず試合に勝ったよ。

In spite of his illness, he won in the tournament.

28. この会社は不況をものともせず、順調に売り上げを伸ばしている。

This company, despite the recession, is extending its profits favorably.

～をよそに

This pattern is used to show that one acts without the least care whether something is unrelated or not to oneself. よそ itself either means "outside one's family/group" or "another place".

29. 人々の反対の声をよそに、政府は新しい法律を^{しこう}施行しました。

Without considering the disapproval voice of the people, the government enforced the new law.

30. それを移せば、テレビが置ける。

If you'll move that, I can place a TV (there).

31. 子どもをよそに親は飲み会ばかりしていた。

The parents went only to drinking clubs while disregarding their children.

32. 余所に泊まる。

To lodge at another family's place.

33. 住民たちの^{こうぎ}抗議行動をよそに、^{きち}軍事基地の建設計画が進められている。

Without regard to the resident's protests, the plans for the military basis construction are going forward.

34. 彼女は周囲の反対をよそに、^{きけん}危険な仕事を続けた。

She continued to do the dangerous job despite the opposition.

～をめげず（に）

This is very similar to ～をものともせず in the sense that it is used after something bad, usually words of illness or misfortune, but this is more literary and far rarer. However, the potential for it to show up on something like the JLPT n1 is still possible.

35. 彼女が病気にもめげずに頑張ることがみなを^{こぶ}鼓舞させるのです。

It's inspiring that she perseveres despite her illness.

Word Note: めげる = 弱気になる; ^{くじ}挫ける.

36. 彼は ^{たびかさ} 度 重 なる不幸にもめげずにまだやる気が残っている。

He still has the fighting spirit despite perpetual misfortunes.

～ならいざしらず

This pattern means that if X is the case, something might be so, but since the circumstances are completely different, so are the results. It often follows words of extremes like 神、大昔、赤ん坊、ヒマラヤ、etc. What follows is something opposite of it, showing a sense of dissatisfaction or astonishment.

37. 安いホテルならいざしらず、^{いちりゅう} 一流 ホテルでこんなにサービスが悪いなんて許せない。

If it were a cheap hotel, that's one thing, but such horrible service at a first class hotel is unacceptable.

38. ヒマラヤ ^{とざん} 登山 をするのならいざしらず、その辺の山へ行くのにそんなに ^{じゅうそうび} 重装備 でなければいけないのか。

If you were climbing the Himalayas, that's one thing, but you have that heavily equipped just to go to the mountain around here?

39. 3歳の子供ならいざしらず、大人がこんなことを知らないなんておかしい。

A three year old is one thing, but an adult not knowing something like this is beyond strange.

第235課: Occasion: ～うえで, ～際に, ～折に, ～際して, ～に当たって, ～に先立って, ～を前に (して), ～を控えて, ～に臨んで, & ～に面して

There are several phrases in Japanese that relate to "on the occasion of", but never are so many phrases in Japanese completely interchangeable. They do look similar. Writing style and nuances aid in distinguishing them. Don't worry, though. Even if you get a lot of red after reading this lesson, at least your paper will be decorated.

～ (の) うえで

～ (の) うえで attaches to the 連体形 of verbs or to nouns to give a meaning of "on the occasion of". Following it, a discussion concerning a point of concern is expected. Giving an explanation of a circumstance, it shows opinion/thought on an issue. When giving a meaning of ～ときに, ～際に and ～に際して become possible as well.

1. 研究を続けるうえで、中国に留学したほうが良いと判断した。

I have concluded that it is best for me to study abroad in China on the basis of continuing my studies.

2. 時間を守るということは、仕事 {を} する うえで ^{さいていげん} 最低限 のマナーである。

Being punctual in the process of work is the minimum of manner.

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント by ^{いちかわやすこ} 市川保子.

3. 住宅ローンを利用したいと思っているのですが、借りる {うえで・際 (に) は・に際しては} どのようなことに注意したらよいでしょうか。

I want to utilize a home loan, but on the occasion of borrowing, what sort of things would be good to pay attention to?

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント by ^{いちかわやすこ} 市川保子.

～ (の) 際に

～（の）際（に） is like above in that it means “on the occasion of”. 際 grammatically behaves like any other noun. It is a rather hard and ceremonious phrase, and it has the nuance of coping well when encountering a particular incident.

4. 就任の際には、是非式に参加してください。

By all means, please participate in the ceremony on inauguration.

5. イースト菌はパンを ^{ふく}膨 ^{さようざい}らませる際の ^{さようざい}作用 ^{さようざい}剤 ^{さようざい}だ。

Yeast is an agent that makes bread rise.

6. 地震の際はガスの ^{もとせん}元 ^{もとせん}栓 ^{もとせん}を閉めること。(Stern; 年齢的にも立場的にも上の人の言い方)

In case of an earthquake, turn off the gas at the main outlet.

～際に VS ～折に

～際に	Shows a limit to one extraordinary time than other situations.
～折に	Shows an opportunity that happens by a stroke of luck.

Remember that ～際に is used a lot as a formal version of ～とき, being used a lot in polite commands ～折に is very respectful and used a lot in letters and in set phrases such as 折りに触れて (on opportunity). If used in the spoken language, the speaker is most certainly old. Neither are appropriate in regular-place situations like ～とき is in the spoken language. Consider the following examples.

7. 出発の際に ^{てんこ}点 ^{てんこ}呼 ^{てんこ}をとるから、全員、遅れないように、集合すること。

Since I will take roll call on our departure, everyone fall in so as to not be late!

8. お ^{いとま}暇 な折にでも、お読みいただけましたら、^{こうじん}幸 甚 に存じます。（手紙文）

I would be so obliged if you were to read this even during your spare time.

9. ひとしお ^{ざんしょ}残 暑 の厳しき折、くれくれもご自愛くださいますように。（手紙文）

All the more in this heat of late summer, be sure to take good care of yourself.

Citation Note: These last three examples are from 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

10. 一昨日、古本屋に寄った {際・折りに}、注文しておきましたわよ。

I ordered it [when/on the opportunity of] [I stopped/stopping] by at the old book store two days ago.

11. 見ない {〇とき・X 際・X 折} も、テレビを消してね。

Turn off the TV even when you're not watching it.

～に際して

～ に際して has the nuance of “in facing a certain circumstance, on the occasion of that…”. It is rather formal and is often used in the preface of a salutation message. Having said this, though, there are instances where it can be interchanged with ～際に. In such a case, you are merely switching out something that is more so just a very formal fashion of saying ～とき.

Formality Note: Of course, there are the variants ～に際し ～に際しまして

12. 出発に際して、一言ご挨拶申し上げます。

I will give a word of salutations when we depart.

13. 入学 {～に際して・の際に} ^{きふきん}寄 附 金 が要ると聞いているんですが、本当ですか。

We have been hearing that a donation is needed on admission, but is that true?

14. この度の震災に際しまして

On the occasion of this earthquake disaster

Grammar Note: ～うえで is more “static” in showing abstract static processes than even ～に際して. You will see later in this lesson how static versus dynamic makes in comparing these phrases with ～に当たって. In this sense, ～うえで is perfect in situations where one is giving an explanation to the listener.

15a. 協 議 書 を交わすに際して、^{きょうぎしょ か} 互 恵 平 等 ^{ごけいひようどう} の原則を確認しておきたい。

15b. 協議書を交わすうえで、互恵平等の原則を確認しておきたい。

On exchanging agreements, I want to confirm the principles of mutual impartiality.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

16.

ドアを開けると、吉田は部下を従えて、妙に媚びるような表情で立っていた。

「昨日の被疑者^{マルヒ}なんですが、森井さんじゃないと、話したくないと言い張っとるんです」
挨拶もそこそこに、吉田は昨日の青年について語り始めた。彼は、事情聴取に際して、是非とも勲に会いたいと言っているのだという。

「冗談じゃない、俺はもう警察とは無関係の人間だ」

「ところが、被害者^{マルガイ}にも来てもらってるんですけど、そっちの方も、そうなんです。

『あのおじさんになら話す』ってね」

When he opened the door, Yoshida with his men was standing with a look like he was trying to oddly curry favor.

"About yesterday's suspect, he insisted that if it's not Mr. Morii, he wouldn't want to talk."

With some salutations, Yoshida began to talk about the youth from yesterday. He, on the occasion of the police interview, [the suspect] said that he by all means wanted to meet with Isao.

"No joke, I'm no longer a person involved with the police anymore"

"On the contrary, we've had the victim come too, and that person's the same, "If it's the old man, I'll talk".

警察隠語 Police Lingo

This passage from 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ introduces some rather interesting police jargon. 被疑者 and 被害者 are typically read as ひぎしや and ひがいしや respectively, but the author decided to use the police terminology instead, given that one speaker is a current officer and the other is an ex-officer. Aside from these words, there are several other words used by policemen that are of benefit of you to know, especially if you like watching Japanese cop films.

警察用語	一般語	警察用語	一般語	警察用語	一般語
ヤサ	家	害者	被害者	PM	警察官
PC	パトカー	タタキ	強盗	レツ	共犯者
アカイヌ	放火	H	ヘロイン	シャブ	覚醒剤
飛ぶ	逃げる	デカ	刑事	ハコ	交番

For more words, see <http://sumim.no-ip.com/wiki/1167>.

～に当たって

There is also interchangeability with ～に際して and ～に当たって in situations when A is positively received. For instance, just like the first example with ～に際して, you can also see something like the following.

17. 開会に {あたって・あたりまして・際し・際しまして}、一言ご挨拶申し上げます。

On the occasion of opening session, I will give a word of salutations.

18. 年頭に {あたって・際して} の今年の抱負は、何よりも禁煙、ただ禁煙あるのみ。

My ambition for this year marking the beginning of it is above all is not smoking, simply no smoking.

Usage Warning: A sentence like the last one would not be used in the spoken language. Due to the formality and direct tone of the speech modals, such phrases would be limited to journals or soliloquies where such statements are expected.

However, their exact meanings cause them to not be 100% interchangeable.

A にあたって (の)	The time right before A starts/Before the realization of a basis time B
A に際して (の)	The same time as A starts/The same time as the basis time B

For this comparison, more grammar-study terms are used to show the full implications of these two speech modals. The first simply states that there is a time that coincides with A. This time precedes A, and B is some defined time to happen and is not realized. However, with ～に際して these time are in unison.

Consider the examples we've seen with them. So, even when they're interchangeable, this clear distinction holds. So, consider the example when giving salutations at departure.

19. 出発に際して一言ご挨拶申し上げます。

You can vision the people leaving still giving their farewells as they, say, drive off or board a plane. Now, what would you end up saying if you rephrased it with に当たって?

20. 出発に当たって一言ご挨拶申し上げます。

After all, there are very similar situations using words like 開会 where they are interchangeable. So, one would think that 出発 would be OK as well. It would, but you then describe a situation more like giving farewells right before departure. However, there are instances where one or the other is only right because of this minor detail.

21. 受^{じゅけい}刑^{しや}者は、処^{しよけい}刑^に際し、牧^{ぼくし}師^{ざんげ}に懺悔^{ざんげ}することが許されている。→ にあたり X

Convicts are allowed to repent to a pastor on their execution.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

漢字 Note: 懺 is not a 常用漢字.

22. 明日の試合出場にあたって、チーム全員はすでに一^{いちがん}丸^{まる}となっている。

All of the team members are in a body for the occasion of the game appearance tomorrow.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

Formality Note: As to be expected, ～に当たり (literary) and ～に当たりまして (very respectful) exist.

Another thing to note is that ～にあたって is dynamic whereas ～に際して is static. ～にあたって comes from 当たる, so a meaning of “coping/grasping with” is hidden. 際, which is also read as きわ in other instances, refers to when you have no choice but to put up with an extraordinary time of some sort.

23. 実験にあたっては、事故を起こさないように注意してください。

Please be careful to not cause an accident on the experiment.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

24. 実験に際しては、事故の起こらないように注意してください。

Please be careful to make sure that an accident is not caused during the experiment.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

Notice how the implications of these sentences change. The first sounds like the speaker is giving a verbal warning before a potentially risky experiment, but the second sounds like it is a more indirect yet important advice written down for during the experiment.

More Examples

25. 話の終わりに当たって、皆様方のご協力に感謝いたします。

Lastly, I want to thank all of you for your cooperation.

26. 発電所の建設に当たって多くのしょうがい障 害に出くわす。

To meet many difficulties in building a power plant.

27. この施設^{しせつ}を利用するに当たって注意すべきこと！

You must be careful when utilizing this facility!

28. 別れに際して泣いた。

I cried at our parting.

29. 妻の死に際して

On the death of my wife

Phrase Note: ～に当たらない, on the other hand, is similar to "no" as in not hitting a certain degree.

30. きょぜつ 拒絶 は驚くに当たらなかった。

The refusal was not a surprise.

31. 驚くには当たらないと言わぬばかりに。

As if to say there is no use getting alarmed.

～に当たって VS ～うえで

～ うえで is extremely indicative of the written language, which is not a characteristic of ～にあたって. For reiteration, ～うえで is used when stating a situation where “an important A, in the course from before you start it and till it ends, B may occur” and there is a “point of interest/necessary condition” that follows (the B).

Take the first example sentence of this lesson into second consideration.

32. 研究を続けるうえで、中国に留学したほうがいいと判断した。

I have concluded that it is best for me to study abroad in China on the basis of continuing my studies.

The event A is “continuing one’s studies”. The B can't be just a statement of explanation. Rather, it must be a point of concern: 注意点、問題点, 重要ポイント, 必要条件, etc.

Style Note: As far as the distinction between 話し言葉 and 書き言葉 in regards to this usage of ～うえで, it's not that it is a complete 0%/100% divide. In circumstances such as speaking to a professor, very formal, more literary like expressions are certainly more common when spoken as there is an academic atmosphere. This, though, essentially blurs the divide, does it not?

33.

A: 先生、論文を書くうえで、どのようなことに注意したらいいでしょうか。

B: まず、今までにどこまで研究されているかをしっかりと ^{つか} 掴 むことだね。

From 中級日本語文法と教え方のポイント.

Here, Student A asks what to pay attention to in [writing his/her dissertation] (A). The 問題点 of writing the dissertation is the B (necessary condition/important contingency). The professor responds by stating that first he/she needs to fully grasp what he/she has studied up to that point. Other important things to notice in the dialogue are underlined.

34. 実験する {○ にあたって・X/△ うえで}、^{きけんぶつ} 危険物の ^{あつか} 扱いには、十分に注意してください。(話し言葉)

On the experiment, be careful enough in the treatment of hazards.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

35. 実験するうえで、^{かき} 下記の ^{やくひん} 薬品の取り扱いには、特に注意してください。(書き言葉)

On the experiment, pay special attention to the handling of the following chemicals.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

Although the first sentence meets the grammatical needs of using ～うえで, it is very unnatural at best because of style conflict. When rephrased to fix this, the unnaturalness goes away. Another major grammatical difference is that ～うえで is not limited to special circumstances like ～に際して and ～にあたって are. In such case, ～うえで becomes the only option, and ask a consequence, is even common in the spoken language in this regard.

36. 数のうえでは ^{あつとうてき} 圧倒的な状態だ。

It's an overwhelming situation concerning the numbers.

37. 十分に事件を 勘 案 ^{かんあん} したうえで返事します。

I will reply after sufficiently considering the matter.

38. 年齢を重ねていくうえで、忘れてならないのは、友への感謝であろう。

As you age, what one must not forget is admiration towards friends.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

Curriculum Note: More peculiarities in a grammatical notes about ～うえで will be discussed in further detail later in IMABI, in which these examples will be seen again for deeper coverage.

～に先立って

Just with ～にあたって, you can see ～に先立って in situations such as the following.

39. 開会に先立ちまして、一言ご挨拶申し上げます。

In advance of the opening of session, I will give a word of salutations.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

A に先立って B gives a meaning of “carrying out B in the stage before the start of A, which is important and different than the norm”. Thus, it is seen a lot in speeches and articles. It is only used in situations where there is a “temporal ranking” of some sort. There is some sort of ritual order being expressed between A and B. Thus, the time before A and B is comparatively much larger than when using ～に当たって.

Given the meaning of 先立つ, to precede, it can be used to refer to the passing of someone when used in the passive.

40. 最愛の妻に先立たれた。

I was died on by my beloved wife.

Nuance Note: The translation has a more morbid tone than the original.

～を前に（して） & ～を控えて

These phrases are quite similar to each other, and they are even interchangeable when expressing a situation right before an event. However, they differ in two crucial aspects.

B～を前に(して)A	Marks the realistic moment before the beginning of an event.
B～を控えて A	Marks a psychological moment before with relative disregard to time.

Both are indicative of the written language and both describe a third person. If the speaker becomes the subject, then the speaker becomes the object of description.

Base Note: The 連体形 of these phrases are ～を前にした and ～を控えた respectively.

41. 筆記試験を終え、面接試験を{まえにした・控えた} ^{おうぼしゃ きんちょう} 応募者は緊張した面持ちだ。

Finishing the written examination, the applicants have a nervous face before the interview examination.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

42. 期末試験を控えて学生は忙しそうだ。

The students seemed busy with the final exam at hand.

The next sentence demonstrates that 控える doesn't have to be used like above. It also has the meaning of "to hesitate/hold off". Interchanging it,

then, with ～を前に is then solely dependent on the logicity of the events and time.

43. 入試を一年後に {○ 控えて・X 前に (して) } ようやく ^{せけんな}世間並みの ^{じゅけんせい}受験生らしくなった。

After of holding off the entrance exam, I have finally become like a normal examinee.

From 日本語類義表現 使い分け辞典 by 泉原省二.

There are also instances when they are used with place, in which they are never interchangeable and therefore may even appear in the same sentence.

44. 彼の新居は、海岸をまえに、後ろに ^{さんみゃく}山脈を控えた高台に位置していた。

His new home was placed on top of an overlook with mountain chains close in the back and the shore before it.

～に臨んで & ～に面して

To finish off this lesson, consider the following speech modals: ～に臨んで, ～に面して.

A に臨んで	On the occasion of participation in a positive/negative A...
A に面して	On the occasion of an extreme, negative situation A faced...

They are basically interchangeable in emergency situations. A に臨んで, however, shows that one is participating in an event A, whether it being present in that scene, going to such place, or forwarding oneself on.

Oppositely, ～に面して shows that one is suddenly or passively faced with a situation. So, with crisis situations concerning things like war, failure, etc., it is often the case that the former would demonstrate a strong person in spite of the crisis and the latter would give images of a weak person in the upset.

Base Note: The 連体形 of these phrases are ～に臨んだ and ～に面した respectively.

45. 母親の急死に {臨んで・面して}、それまで仲のよかった兄たちは、いさか^{いさか} 諍^{いさ} いを始め
た。

In facing our mother's sudden death, my older brothers who had been cordial up till then began a quarrel.

46. 経済的危機に {○面しても、X 臨んでも}、冷静に適切な行動のとれる人を尊敬しています。

I respect those that take the appropriate actions calmly even while facing economic crisis.

47. 第一試合に {○臨んで・X 面して}、緊張を隠しきれなかった。

I couldn't completely hide my nervousness in facing the first match.

48. 緊急事態に {臨めば臨む・面すれば面する} ほど、非^ひ 凡^{ぼん} な力を発^は 揮^{つき} する者がいる。

There are people that exercise extraordinary abilities the more they face state of emergencies.

49. 難に臨んで 遽^{にわ} かに 兵^{へい} を鑄^い る

Literally: To cast soldiers hastily in facing a crisis.

Phrase Note: This is a set phrase coming from the concept of making weapons quickly after a war has started. In a practical sense, it refers to situations where one doesn't make it in time even if you hurriedly prepare after an incident has started.

In the locational sense, the difference is from the speaker's position. With the former, you are looking down at a vast space from above. With the latter, you are seeing before one's eyes a space expanding on the front sides. So, no

matter if you interchange them, the speaker's visual position and the vertical direction of the scenery is different. Note, though, that when deviating from pin-pointing direction, のぞむ is spelled as 望む to signify actually looking down.

50. そのホテルは、瀬戸内海に臨んで、高台に立っている。

The hotel faces the Seto Inland Sea and stands on the height.

51. その高層ビルは、海に面して、遊歩道に立っている。

The high rise building faces the ocean and stands on the boardwalk.

52. 街を望む。

To look down at the street/town.

～に足る	～に依存	～に値する	～に及ぶ
------	------	-------	------

～に足る

～に足る expresses "to be worthy of" or "to be enough". 足る may also be an ending showing worth or quantity. 足る for the most part has been replaced by 足りる. 足りる may also show that something is "sufficient" and "enough". ～に足る・足りる may show something is "worth...". In the negative both show lack and may be used in insults.

1. 衣食足りて礼^{れい}節^{せつ}を知る。

Only when basic needs for living are met can people spare the effort to be polite.

2. 短い言葉で足りるところに長い言葉を使うのは豊^{ほう}富^ふな知識の^{しるし}印^しだ。

Using a long word when a short word is enough is a sign of manifold knowledge.

3. 脳たりん。

You simpleton.

4. 3千円必要だが半分足りない。

I need 3,000 yen but I lack half of it.

5. 君達全員に足るだけの食糧があります。

There is enough food for all of you.

- 6a. 言い足りない = Not say enough.

- 6b. 言う必要がない = It's not worth saying.

7. あの新作は論ずるに足りません。

It's not worth arguing with the new plan.

8. 政府は取るに足りない ^{こうもく} 項 目 を予算から ^{けず} 削 らざるを得ないでしょう。

The government probably has no choice but to cut frivolous items from the budget.

～に依存

依 存 means "dependence" and is used with に as a verb to mean "to depend on". Its most correct reading is いそん. However, the amount of people who read it as いぞん is growing. This is especially the case when it is used as a verb in 依存する.

9. 大国の経済力に依存する小国がたくさん存在しています。

Many small countries that depend on the economic strength of major powers exist.

10. その町の経済は農業に依存している。

The village's economy depends on agriculture.

11. 彼の ^{えんじょ} 援 助 に依存するな。

Don't depend on his help.

12. 成功は方法に依存します。

Success depends on the method.

～に値する

This phrase means "to be worthy of". It is equivalent to 価値がある.

13. あのウェブサイトは見る {に値する・価値がある} 。

That website is worth seeing.

14. あの4歳の子供は大人でも見るに値する絵を描いたよ！

That four year old child drew a picture worthy of adult appreciation.

～に及ぶ

～に及ぶ is found after both nouns and the 連体形 of verbs to show that either a certain final step has at last become so. In the negative, it shows that there is no need for the said action in follows.

15a. 言うにや及ばない。(古風)

15b. 言うまでもない。

15c. 言うには及ばない。

It's not necessary to say so.

16. 彼は長ずるに及んで文才を現した。(書き言葉)

He finally revealed his literary talent in excelling.

17. 犯行に及んだ。

It has finally become an offense.

18. この^ご期に及んで何をいうのか。(ちょっと固い)

It's a little late to mention that.

19. 礼には及びません。

Don't mention it.

20. 折り^{かえ}返し電話をかけていただくには及びません。

There's no need for you to call me back.

中心

中心 refers to the center of something, and を中心に means "centered on".

1. 駅を中心に商店が並んでいます。

Shops are lined up and centered around the train station.

2. 今日の会議では海外展開を中心に議論をしましょう。

Let's discuss overseas expansion as the center topic at today's meeting.

3. 市の中心部に住んでいます。

I live in the center part of the city.

4. 金が議論の中心だ。

Money is the heart of controversy.

5. 議論の中心点

The central point of the discussion

上

As a basic noun, 上 means "top/surface/above". In 上に it is used as the native version of 以上に.

1.	の上 shows something in concern with X.
2.	のうえに it shows the basis for something to be established--upon.
3.	した・のうえで means "after" or "as an effect of".
4.	したうえに and な・のうえに mean "in addition to".
5.	Aのうえに（も） A shows the seriousness of the degree of something.
6.	かくなるうえは and する・したうえは mean "since it became this such".

- | | |
|----|--|
| 7. | の上 is after the calling name of a superior or the wife of an aristocrat. |
|----|--|

Usage Note: 上 may also be used as a suffix when placed after family members and is used in respect to a superior's family.

Orthography Note: Notice the usages below where its left in かな.

Examples

6. 風船が上へ上へと昇った。

The balloon went up and up.

7. 空の上から下界を望む。

To see the world from the sky.

8. 母上

Mother (of a superior)

9. 坂の上に足跡が残っています。

There are footprints remaining on the surface of the slope.

10. 数のうえでは圧倒的な状態だ。

It's an overwhelming situation concerning the numbers.

11. 今日の繁栄は国民の努力の上に築かれているはずです。

Today's prosperity should be being built upon the efforts of the people.

12. 十分に事件を勘案したうえで返事します。

I will reply after sufficiently considering the matter.

13. 忙しいうえに給料まで安い。

In addition to being busy, everything to my wages are low.

14. ご協力頂けるとは好都合のうえにも好都合でございます。

Receiving your cooperation is beyond expedient.

15. かくなるうえは覚悟を決めよう。

As it has become this, let's prepare for the worst.

16. この上ともよろしくお願いします。

Please treat me kindly from here on.

17. 二条院の上。

Nijouin!

18. 無職であるうえに、家もない。

If you're unemployed, you also don't have a house.

分

分 is a tough character to learn how to read correctly. Although ぶん isn't all that difficult, it does present a challenge. After a number, we know that ～分 is used in fractions. For example, 8分の6 = 6/8.

It can also mean "amount" or "degree" as in "one's lot". It is this definition that may cause an advanced student to become confused. In the pattern ...分だけ it means "in proportion to", being based off of the latter meaning. The use of だけ is optional, but its appearance could be enough to throw you off.

Examples

19. 彼は飲んだ分だけ、吐いちゃった。

He ended up throwing up just as much as he drank.

20. 皿は洗ったぶんだけきれいに見えるってわけじゃないよ。

It's not that the dishes look just as clean as they were washed.

21. 君の分はこれだけだ。

Your share is just this.

22. 高く登った分だけ、落ちたとき痛い。

The higher you climb, the harder you fall.

23. この分では終わらないだろう。

At this rate we won't finish.

Table of Contents

～相応

相応 means "suitable/fit/just" and follows other nouns to show the fitting nature of something. Translation can sometimes be tricky.

1. 彼女は年齢相応に見えない。

She does not look her age.

Meaning Note: The above phrase is in reference to maturity and not appearance.

2. 政府は収入不相応の支出をすべきではない。

The government should not spend beyond its means.

3. それ相応の賞賛を受ける。

To receive deserved praise.

代り

代わり means "substitute", お代わり means "seconds", and の代わりに means "instead".

4. 彼は鋸の代わりに剣を使ってみた。

He tried to use a sword as a substitute for a saw.

5. 私は市長の代わりに挨拶をしました。

I greeted them in replacement of the mayor.

6. お代わりをください。

Seconds please.

7. 代わりに誰か来るんですか。

Is anyone else coming?

8. 代わりに電話に出てよ。

Answer the telephone for me.

9. お辞儀の代わりに、アメリカ人は握手をするという。

They say that Americans shake hands instead of bowing.

10. 誰に彼の代わりができるだろうか。

Who could possibly take his place?

11. 岩がベッド代わりになった。

The rock turned into a substitute for a bed.

12a. お金は健康の代わりというわけではありません。

12b. 健康はお金には代えられない。(Better)

It's not to say that money is a substitute for health.

13. 代わりにあなたに行ってほしい。

I wish that you would go instead.

經由

經由 either shows how one transits or does something "via" or "by way of" something. So, it either refers to travel or method.

14. バンコクを經由してインドへ行く。

Go to India via Bangkok.

15. パリ經由でアテネへ飛ぶ。

Fly to Athens via Paris.

16. 彼女は香港經由で帰国しました。

She returned to her home country via Hong Kong.

17. ベーリング海峡を經由してアジアから北アメリカへ渡ったといわれている。

It is said that (they) crossed over to North America from Asia by way of the Bering Strait.

18. 議案は審議会を経由して上程される。

For a measure to be introduced via the inquiry commission.

19. このバスは六本木経由の東京駅行きですか。

Does this bus go to Tokyo Station via Roppongi?

Geography Note: Roppongi is a district of Tokyo. It houses many foreign embassies, and holds the Roppongi Hills which is a mega-complex with office space, apartments, shops, restaurants, cafés, movie theaters, museum, hotel, TV studio, etc.

Table of Contents

第239課: Nominal Phrases III

This is the last lesson about important nominal phrases. Most of them are related to each other, so that will make things easier.

至極	極み	至り	万一	ゆかり
----	----	----	----	-----

至極

As a noun, 至極 shows an "extremity" of something. As an adverb, it means "extremely" or "exceedingly".

1. 至極便利な電気器具ですね。

This is an extremely convenient electric appliance, isn't it?

2a. 滑稽至極

2b. 滑稽の極み (More natural)

The extremity of ridicule

3a. 恐縮至極

3b. 恥ずかしさの極み (More natural)

The extremity of shame

4. 至極当然である。

To be exceedingly obvious.

極み

極み is a noun meaning "sublime", "extremity", and "height" and shows the utmost. This word is typically not used in speaking.

5. 絶望の極みに ^{おちい} 陥る。

To fall into the height of despair.

6. 興奮の極み

The utmost of excitement

7. ここで断念するのは^{いかん}遺憾の極みだ。

Abandoning here is the height of regret.

8. ^{ぜいたく}贅 沢 の極みの生活をする。

To live a lifestyle of utmost luxury.

至り

至り either means "the utmost" or "result".

9. ^{ふしまつ}不 始 末 は ^{わかげ}若 氣 の ^{はんせい}至りと ^{はんせい}反 省 しております。

(物事において) 不始末であったことは、私の若気の至りです。

Carelessness is reflecting on the stupidity of my youth.

10. ^{どうけい}ご 同 慶 の至りに存じます。

I offer you mutual congratulations.

11. ^{きょうしゅく}恐 縮 の至りです。

I am sorry to the utmost.

万一

万 一 expresses that something rarely happens, but there is a possibility of the otherwise. It may be translated as "by some chance/possibility". It may also be used as an adverb.

12. 彼に万一のことがあれば

If anything happens to him

13. 我々は万一を考えなければならぬ。

We must think and prepare for the worst.

14. 彼は万一の場合に備えた。

He prepared for contingencies.

15. 万一遅れたら、先に行ってくださいね。

If there is the chance that you could be late, please go earlier than (planned), alright?

ゆかり

ゆかり, in 漢字 as 縁, means "affinity", but it can also show that something or someone is related to some place. It is this usage that catch people off guard.

16. ^{そうせき} 漱石 ゆかりの地

Place in connection with Soseki

17. ^{ぶんごう} 文豪 ゆかりの地

Place in connection with a literary legend

**第240課: Locational: ~渡る/渡す, ~出る, ~上がる/上げる, ~入る/入れる, ~下がる/下げる, ~おり
る/おろす, ~落ちる/落とす, & ~回る/回す**

This lesson is about the compound verb endings of direction. Not everything is common, but it is important for you to understand things that you may come across.

～渡る

One of the most unique things about the verb 渡る is its usage in に渡せられる・渡らせ給う, which are rare, literary alternative ways to express ある and いる in honorific speech. In compound verbs after the 連用形 of a verb to show the extent of a perimeter over a large area. Lastly, when used in a transitive sense, it is replaced with its transitive pair 渡す.

1. あの人^{ひと}は美男^{びなん}に渡らせられる。(Literary)

He is a beautiful man.

2. 空^{そら}が晴れ渡った。

The sky is clear.

3. しろ^{しろ}城^{しろ}を明け渡すな。

Do not surrender the castle.

4. あくま^{あくま} たましい^{たましい} 魂^{たましい}を売り渡すのは おろ^{おろ} 愚^{おろ} かなことだ。

Selling your soul to the devil is a foolish thing to do.

5. はんじ^{はんじ} 判事^{はんじ}は判決をそろそろ言い渡すだろう。

The judge will probably pass a sentence soon.

6. インターネット中に知れ渡っている。

To be well-known throughout the internet.

7. しゅくほう^{しゅくほう} 祝砲^{しゅくほう}が {鳴り渡る・とどろ^{とどろ} 轟^{とどろ} く}。

For gun salutes to resound.

～出る

～出る expresses that something is going out and is, with few exceptions, intransitive. Unlike ～出す which expresses great emphasis that doesn't have to infer direction, ～出る always does.

8. いたい っ たいば
遺 体 から突き出ている 刃

A sword protruding from a body

9. あふ た
溢 れ出る血が土に溜まった。

The flowing blood pooled on the ground.

10. わ
涙が湧き出た。

Tears welled up.

11. 彼は外へ走り出た。

He ran outside.

12. かいてい せきゆ う
海 底 から石 油 が浮き出た。

Oil stood out from the sea floor.

13. たま
目の 玉 が飛び出るような値段だよ。

It's a price that can make your eyeballs pop out!

～上がる & -上げる

上がる and 上げる may be used in compound verbs to show that things are being lifted/raised. As we have learned, 上がる is intransitive and 上げる is transitive. ～上がる and ～上げる may also show the completion of something.

14. 浮き上がっているように見えませんか。

Does it not appear that they're standing out? (As in being visible)

15. そんなにでかすぎる岩持ち上げれるのかい？ (Rude)

Can you even lift such a humongous rock?

16. スーツケースを引き上げる。

To lug suitcases up.

17. 彼はボールを投げ上げた。

He threw the ball up into the air.

18a. メモに書き上がる。 (More formal)

18b. メモに書いてある。

To be written up in a note.

19. しょうひん お
商 品 の値段を押し上げる。

To boost product prices.

20. しゃめん は
斜 面 を這い上がる。

To crawl up a slope.

21. ぶき
武器を取って立ち上がる。

To take up arms.

22. やれやれ、新たな難問が持ち上がったのー。 (Old person)

Oh my, a new problem has come up.

～入る & ～入れる

～入る and ～入れる are the intransitive and transitive verbal pairs for "to enter". In compound verbs they refer to something completely done or done deeply or ardently.

23. みかた
味 方 に引き入れる。

To win over.

24. 恐れ入りました。

I am much obliged.

25. 痛み入る。

To be greatly obliged.

26. ^{みごと}見事な能力に感じ入る。

To be greatly impressed by astounding abilities.

27. ^は恥じ入りました。

I was ashamed.

28. ^た絶え入るような顔

A dead looking face

29. 私たちは買い入れるペースを ^{きゅうげき}急激に上げています。

We are suddenly raising the pace of purchasing.

30. 赤ちゃんが寝入っているうちに両親は買い物に行った。

The parents went shopping while the baby was in a deep slumber.

31. 立ち入ったことを聞くようだが。

If I'm not being too inquisitive.

32. 立ち入り禁止

Keep Out

33. ^{くうらん}空欄に書き入れる。

To fill in blank spaces.

34. 意見を聞き入れる。

To accede an opinion.

35. 新しい ^{ほうしん}方針を取り入れるつもりはない。

There is no plan to bring in a new policy.

～下がる & ～下げる

下がる and 下げる are the verbal pairs for "to hang down/fall" and are intransitive and transitive respectively. The nuances of the verbs that are created with ～下がる and ～下げる are negative.

36. あいつは引き下がるだろう。

He will probably back down.

37. 彼らは { 訴願・不服申し立て・^{そがん ふふく}異議^{いぎ}申し立て } を引き下げた。

They pulled down the petition.

38. ^た垂れ下がってる ^{つらら}氷柱 は明日落ちるだろうな。

The hanging icicles will probably fall tomorrow.

39a. 言ったことを取り下げるはずだ。？

39b. 言ったことを { 取り消す ^{てっかい}撤回する } はずだ。○

You should retract what you said.

Word Note: 取り下げる should be used in reference to things like documents/written statements.

～おりる & ～おろす

Meaning "to go down/drop", おりる and おろす are used in compound expressions to show a sense of going down, but a negative emphasis is not always the case. おりる is typically written as 降りる and おろす is typically written as 下ろす.

40. ^{ぶたい}舞台 から引き下ろす。

To pluck someone down from a stage.

41. 東京を見下ろす。

To look down at Tokyo.

Word Note: 見下ろす can be used literally and metaphorically.

42. 私の友達は小説を書き下ろしました。

My friend wrote a new novel.

Nuance Note: This suggests that your friend is a professional novelist.

43a. さんちょう 山 頂 から駆け降りる。

43b. 山を駆け下りる。

To run down the peak of a mountain.

44. ま 舞い降りてきた。

It came flying down.

45. 強風が吹き下ろしていた。

A strong wind was blowing down.

～落ちる & ～落とす

落ちる and 落とす are the verbal pairs for "to fall/drop" and are intransitive and transitive respectively. These verbs show a downward sense of direction in a compound verb.

46. この世に生れ落ちなくてよかったのに。

If only I had not been born in this world.

47. 焼け落ちるのにほんの五分もかからなかったぞ。

It only took a mere five minutes to burn down.

48. 俺の皿から すべ 滑り落ちちまった。(Mature male; vulgar)

It slipped from my plate.

49. 彼が水を はら 払い落とした。

He shook off the water.

50. {見落とされた・見過ごされた} のかな。

I wonder if it was overlooked.

51. 銀行口座から引き落とす。

To charge from one's bank account.

52. くだもの
果 物 を振り落とそう。

Let's shake some fruit off.

53. 家を 崖 から突き落とすのは 危 ないよ。

Pushing a house off of a cliff is dangerous.

～回る & ～回す

回る and 回す are the verbal pairs for "to turn/rotate" and are intransitive and transitive respectively. When used in compounds, they show movement while doing something. ～回る can be seen attached to both intransitive and transitive verbs, but ～回す is limited to transitive verbs. It is to be expected that a nuance difference is present when both ～回る and ～回す can be used. You will see this more clearly in the examples below.

54. あちこちを駆け回る。

To run around here and there.

55. 仕事を探し回るつもりがあるのか。

Do you have any intentions of looking about for a job?

56. 自分の周りを見回した方がよいです。(ちょっと古風; Formal)

It is best to look around one's surroundings.

57. 私は新車を 駐 車 場 に乗り回したいです。

I want to ride around a new car in a parking lot.

58. 警備員は ^{りんばん} 輪 番 で見回ります。

The guards patrol in rotations.

Nuance Note: This infers that there are a lot of guards patrolling in rotation. You may consider using 交代で instead of 輪番で.

59. 犯人を ^お 追 回 す。

To chase about a criminal.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with -渡る.
2. Create a sentence with -出る.
3. Compare and contrast -出る and -出す.
4. Compare and contrast the usages of -上がる and -上げる.
5. Create a sentence with -下がる.
6. Create a sentence with -おろす.
7. Create a sentence with -落ちる.
8. Show nuance differences between verbs with -回る and -回す.
9. Create a sentence with -おりる.
10. Create a sentence with -回す.

第241課: Final Endings: ~こける, ~さす, ~倦む/倦ねる, ~逸れる, ~成す, & ~古す

These will be the final set of endings that you'll have to grow through. This is time for celebration.

~こける

こける means "sink/collapse in". ~こける means that something continues on for a long time.

1. 眠りこける。

To sleep deeply.

2. 笑いこける。

To laugh heartily.

~さす

~さす either shows that you stop in the middle of something that you have just started or that something is being delayed that has been going on.

3. 彼は演説の途中で言いさしてしまった。

He accidentally broke off in the middle of his speech.

- 4a. 読みさす嫌いがある。

- 4b. 読むのを途中でやめる嫌いがある。

I have a habit of leaving books half-read.

5. 歌詞を忘れたから歌いさしなきやいけなかった。

Since I forgot the lyrics, I had to stop in the middle of singing.

Word Note: ～さす comes from 止す.

途中

途 中 means "during" and is a noun. It can refer to being on the way to somewhere or something not yet completed and is in a state of progress. In the above sentences, it was followed by being stopped mid-way.

6. 買い物に行く途中で・・・

In the middle of going to go shopping...

7. 演奏を途中でやめる。

To end a performance midway.

8. 来る途中で事故がありました。

There was an accident on my way.

～倦む・倦ねる

～倦む・倦ねる follows the 連用形 and shows that something is too much for somebody or that one is tired of something. The verb and the resultant verbs are intransitive.

9. 考え倦んだ結果、私は辞職します。

As my plans haven't shaped out, I will resign.

10. 待ちあぐむ。

I can no longer wait.

11. 攻めあぐねる。

To lose the fighting initiative.

～逸れる

逸れる means "to stray" and -逸れる shows that "one has missed out on something". It is also more emphatic as ～っぱぐれる.

12. 逸れた羊を捜し求めていた。

I searched for the stray sheep.

13. 取りはぐれた宝石

Jewelry missed taking

14. 僕はデザートを食いつぱぐれちゃった。

I ended up missing out on desert.

15. 行きはぐれる。

To miss out on going.

～成す

成す has a few related meanings, of these are "to form", "to do", "to accomplish", "to establish", "to give birth to", etc. In compound verbs it shows a meaning of intention and deliberate action.

16. 織り成した人生模様

Interwoven facets of life

17. 思いなしか。

Maybe it's my imagination?

18. 我々は彼を指導者と見なした。

We looked at him as our leader.

～古す

古す means "to wear out" and is attached to the 連用形 to create compound verbs that depict that "time and time again, X loses its newness". Two common verbs that you will see this ending used with are 着る "to wear" and 言う "to say".

19. 着古して大分擦り切れてた。

It was worn-out and quite threadbare.

20. あのおやじー、いつも使い古した言葉をいって使い古した帽子を被ってんのさ。（碎けた）

That old guy's always saying worn-out phrases and is always wearing worn-out hats.

21. 着古しの上着だな。（Masculine）

That's an old worn-out jacket, isn't it?

22. ちょっと言い古されてるが、光陰矢のごとしは本当だよ！

It's a little cliché, but time really does fly like an arrow.

Usage Note: 言い古す is always seen in the 受身形.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with -こける.
2. Create a sentence with -さす.
3. Create a sentence with -逸れる.
4. Create a sentence with -成す.
5. Create a sentence with -古す.

第242課: Advanced -べき Phrases: ～べくもない, ～べからず・ざる, ～べく, ～べくして, & ～べし

～べきだ is actually an evolved form of the auxiliary ～べし. With that said, we will first look at the bases which were neglected the first time to make the different forms of it found in more advanced/rarer usages easier to make and use.

The Bases of ～べし

The modern form of ～べし is ～べきだ. Now it is important to see what the bases are for this auxiliary because rarer/archaic usages employed today use them.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
べから-	べく-・べかり-	べし	べき・べかる	べけれ-	存在しない

Conjugation Note: It's usually only used with verbs, but when no it shows a strong sense of "should". -べし should follow the かる-連体形 of 形容詞 and the copula as なる for 形容動詞 and nouns. As for ～べきだ, it should follow 形容詞 like in あたらしくあるべきだ and after the copula である for 形容動詞 and nouns.

漢字 Note: The auxiliary can rarely be seen written as 可し.

～べくもない

～べくもない is used to show that there is absolutely no possibility in something you hope could happen. You just don't have the means even if you try. This is interchangeable with できるわけがない and できるはずがない.

1. 将来、東京大学の教授になろうなんて望むべくもない。

There's no way that I could ever become something like a Tokyo University professor in the future.

～べからず・ざる

～べからず, the negative form of -べし is primarily used today to make negative imperatives. When used in ～ざるべからず with ～ざる being the 連体形 of the classical negative auxiliary ～ず, it means "must" in the same way ～なければならぬ is used today but with more of a command sense to it. At other times, it might be used to show incapability of something, especially with verbs like 許す (to forgive). In this usage it is usually seen in the べからざる-連体形. ～べからず can also be used like ～べくもない, but this would have to be quite archaic for it to have any importance.

2. 予測すべからざる事態。

A situation that one cannot predict.

3. ^{しば}芝に入るべからず。

Keep off the grass.

4. ^{はね}羽なければ空をも飛ぶべからず。(ちょっと古風)

Since you have no wings, you can't even fly in the sky.

5. 天皇を^{おも}重んぜざるべからず。(Archaic)

One must honor the emperor.

6. 「^{さわ}触るべからず！」 (Old-fashioned)

"Do not touch!"

てんのう ^{おも}天皇を重んぜざるべからず。(Archaic)

One must honor the emperor.

Note: The above pattern ～ざるべからず is equivalent to ～なければならぬ. This is an archaic pattern, and you would only see it in things like proverbs or sayings today.

^{さわ}「触るべからず！」 (Old-fashioned)

"Do not touch!"

～べく & ～べくして

The べく-連用形 may be used similarly to ために to mean "in order to", being quite formal. It is placed after the 連体形. It may be translated as "in trying to". This is far more formal, and it is seen all the time in informative books, but you hardly ever hear it in spoken Japanese.

7. 早く帰るべく、^{じゅんび}準備をし始めた。

In trying to go home early, I started making preparations.

8. 我々は、将来を担うべく努力することを誓います。

We vow to endeavor to bear the future.

～可くして

- "It's only natural as". The same verb must be repeated for this usage!
- Followed by an antithetical statement, it means "even if it's possible to".

9. これは勝つべくして勝った試合です。

This is only natural that it's a match that we were going to win.

10. するべくして、するべからず。(Old-fashioned)

Even though you can do it, you should not do it.

11. その教科書を読むべくして理解しがたい。(Old-fashioned)

Even if you can read the textbook, it is hard to understand.

12. この^{せつ}説は言うべくして行うべからず。(Old-fashioned)

Even if you can say the theory, you shouldn't carry it out.

13. 負けるべくして負けた。

It's only natural that we lost.

- "It's only natural as". The same verb must be repeated for this usage!
- Followed by an antithetical statement, it means "even if it's possible to".

これは勝つべくして勝った試合です。

This is only natural that it's a match that we were going to win.

するべくして、するべからず。(Old-fashioned)

Even though you can do it, you should not do it.

その教科書を読むべくして理解しがたい。(Old-fashioned)

Even if you can read the textbook, it is hard to understand.

この^{せつ}説は言うべくして行うべからず。(Old-fashioned)

Even if you can say the theory, you shouldn't carry it out.

負けるべくして負けた。

It's only natural that we lost.

〜べし: Command

This is rarely seen, but it is of the same mindset as the other usages. It's forceful, and it has the same effect for the affirmative as 〜べからず does for the negative.

14. 辞職すべし。

Resign!

第243課: The Verbs かかる & かける

The verbs かかる (intransitive) and かける (transitive) are by far two of the most extensively used verbs in Japanese. Aside from the specific かかる and かける being discussed in this lesson, there are also other homophonous "かかる" and "かける" verbs.

The Independent Verbs かける・かかる

Transitivity Note: Note that the translations take advantage of the lack of morphologically distinct transitive and intransitive forms for most verbs in English. When there needs to be clarification, notes will be provided.

漢字 Note: These verbs are typically written in ひらがな. 掛ける・掛かる is typically alright. When there is another spelling common for a particular nuance, this will be evident in the examples and noted.

1. To hang; sit; weigh on; attach/wear.

1. 出口に注意の標識をかけたので、災害があったら、安全に逃げられるだろう。

Since we hung a warning sign at the exit, if there were a disaster, people could escape safely.

2. 空に美しい虹が懸かることは神の意の印の一つであるという。

They say that a beautiful rainbow hanging in the sky is one of the signs of God's will.

3. ローマ帝国では罪人が十字架に架けられた。

Sinners were hung on crosses in the Roman Empire.

4. 山の頂上に白雲がかかっていた。

White clouds wrapped around the tops of the mountains.

5. 調査委員会に圧力が掛かった。

Pressure hung over the investigation commission.

6. 心配をかけてごめんね。

Sorry for making you worry.

7. 優勝がかかっているぞ。(Masculine)

Victory is at our reach!

8. ハンドルに手を掛ける。

To sit one's hand on a handle.

9. 積荷がずしりとかかっていたから、どんどん腕が痛くなってきた。

The pain was quickly getting worse because of the load weighing down on my arms.

10. 重心を失って左足に躓きかけてしまう。

To end up weighing down and stumbling on one's left foot (by) losing one's balance.

11. 彼は眼鏡を掛けた。

He wore glasses.

12. 試験のことなど歯牙にもかけないやつだな。

He's a guy that pays no attention to stuff like the exam, isn't he?

漢字 Note: Usually in かな. Most commonly written in 漢字 as 掛ける・掛かる. For a true physical sense of "to hang/be hung", use 架ける・架かる. 懸ける・懸かる gives a sense of hanging over.

2. To do with a tool of some sort; only a usage of かける.

13. エンジンをつける。

To start an engine.

14. 午前6時に目覚まし時計をかけた。

I set an alarm for 6 A.M.

15. 一晩中ラジオの音がかかっていた。

The sound of the radio was going on all night long.

16. CD をかける。

To play a CD.

17. 袖にミシンをつける。

To use a sewing machine on a sleeve.

18. 清掃員が廊下に掃除機をかけたが、生徒は一週間でまた汚した。

Although the janitor vacuumed the hallway, the students made it messy again in just a week.

19. 両手に手錠がかかった。

The cuffs were locked on both his hands.

20. 戸に鍵をかけたか。

Did you lock the door with the key?

3. In 目に掛かる meaning "to keep in one's eyes". In honorifics, it is the humble form of 見る. And, にお目に掛かる is an honorific equivalent of お会いにする.

21. 半弓を似て目にかかる敵を射て

Shoot the enemy in one's eyes resembling a small bow

From 鷗外

22. お初にお目にかかります。

It's a pleasure to meet you.

4. Without seeing a resolution and the mind unsettled. In a transitive sense, it is closest to not forgetting anything.

23. 今日一日中、試験の結果のことが気にかかっていたんだ。

The results of the exam hung in my mind all day long.

24. いつも私のことを心に懸けて下さってありがたいことです。

I am grateful that you always kept me in mind.

25. 思いを懸ける。

To burden with thought.

漢字 Note: Often written with 懸ける・懸かる.

5. To span; to straddle; wrap around.

26. 多摩川に鉄橋を架ける。

To build a steel bridge over the Tama River.

27. 本州・四国間に橋が架かっている。

A bridge spans between Honshu and Shikoku.

28. アオカケスが軒下に巣をかけることが多い。

Blue jays often build nests in the overhangs of roofs.

29. 泥棒に縄をかけたよ。

I bound the rope on the burglar!

30. 肩に襷をかける。

Idiom: To exaggerate one's circle in a conversation.

漢字 Note: Excluding the last two examples, this usage is usually spelled with 架ける・架かる.

6. To fictionalize; perform.

31. 芝居小屋を掛ける。

To fictionalize theater.

32. 公園に芝居がかかっている。

Drama is being played in the park.

33. 忠臣蔵がかかっている。

A play based off of the 47 ronin is being played.

7. To squirt; to pour spices on; cover; set on fire (which is covering fire over something).

34. この料理の最後の手順はフライにソースをかけることだ。

The last thing in making this dish is putting sauce in the fry pan.

35. 庭木に水をかけましたか。

Did you squirt water on the garden trees?

36. 埃が頭にかかった。

Dust dropped onto my head.

37. クラッシュドレッドペッパーのかかったスパゲッティはおいしい！

Spaghetti with red pepper poured on it is delicious!

38. 日本では布団をかけて寝ますよ。

In Japan, you sleep on a futon.

39. 我々は敵の城に火をかけた。

We set the enemy's castle on fire.

8. To offer words.

40. 彼に後ほどお礼の電話を掛けさせていただきます。

I will give him a telephone call of gratitude.

41. 声をかけたが、まだ聞こえなかったようだ。

I raised my voice, but it looks like he still couldn't hear.

42. 若旦那からお座敷がかかりました。

A gathering was made from the young master.

Cultural Note: A 座敷 was a gathering one was invited to perform as a geisha.

43. 発破をかける。

To motivate someone with harsh words.

9. A skill is done on an opponent well. Deceiving and trapping are good examples.

44. 王女に魔法をかけよう！

Let's put a spell on the queen!

45. 睡眠術に掛かる。

To be under hypnosis.

46. ペてんにかけて金品を奪う。

To trick and mug.

47. 詐欺に（引っ）かかった。

I was tricked in a fraud.

48. いのしし
猪 をかける。

To trap a wild boar.

49. 逃走犯を検問にかけた。

I trapped an escapee in examination.

10. To wish for divine help.

50. 合格できますようにと神様に願を懸けました。

I prayed to God in order to pass.

51. 望みをかける。

To wish for hope.

漢字 Note: 懸ける is the most common spelling.

11. To cost time, expenses, labor; to tax.

52. 完成までに二年かかったうえに、十億円かかった。

It cost two years and a billion dollars by completion.

53. 出入時には保護関税がかかる。

There is a protective tariff during exporting.

54. 所得税をかける。

To impose an income tax.

55. 12日朝からは、復旧作業が始まっているということですが、発電所の安全確認などには時間がかかりそうだとのことです。

Restoration efforts are said to be starting from the morning of the 12th, but the confirmation of safety of the power plants will take time.
From NHK following the 2011 earthquake.

12. ～にかけて（は） : See Lesson 177.

13. In "鼻にかける" meaning "to boast" or in "鼻にかかる" referring to hanging in the nose.

56. 自分の日本語の能力を鼻にかける。

To boast about one's Japanese skills.

57. 先生の声が風邪で鼻にかかって聞き苦しかったよ。

The teacher's voice hanged in his nose due to a cold and was unpleasant to hear.

14. To come to.

58. 道路が湖畔にかかる辺りで新車が故障したみたいだ。

It looks like a new car is broken-down coming near the bank passing the road on the lake shore.

59. 勝負は終盤にかかってとても緊迫した展開となりました。

The match came to its final stage and became a very tense development.

15. To be a part; undertaken in; only a usage of かかる.

60. 映画の創作にこれからかかるとしたら、どんなことをするだろう。

If I were to be a part in the production of a movie, what kind of things would I do?

61. 整理にかかっている。

To be engaged in organizing.

62. 今すぐ準備にかかれ。

Be getting prepared right now!

63. 明日の仕事にかかるまでしばらく休もう。

Let's sleep for a while until we undertake in tomorrow's work.

16. To be produced due to an effect.

64. 髪にパーマをかけた。

I got a perm in my hair.

65. 仕事にエンジンがかかった。 (Idiomatic)

To get back to normal in one's job.

66. 磨きをかけることはいいことです。

Polishing up (one's skills) is always a good thing.

17. にかけて shows the "to" that you swear "to".

67. 神にかけて誓った。

I swore to God.

68. 神仏に懸けて誓うのはよくないです。

Swearing to God is bad.

漢字 Note: Either spelled as 懸ける or 賭ける, but the latter spelling is the most common.

18. To carry out something while prepared to lose; only a usage of かける.

69. 威信を賭けて戦うのは賢い決意だというわけではありません。

Fighting through with one's dignity is not a wise decision.

70. 一発逆転を懸ける。

To turn the tables around.

71. ポーカーに沢山の金を賭ける。

To gamble a lot of money in poker.

72. 雨が降る降らないに昼飯をかけるのは子供っぽいゲームじゃないか。

Isn't betting your lunch on whether it's going to rain or not a childish game?

漢字 Note: 賭ける is the most important spelling.

19. In "...てかかる" meaning "to cope with".

73. 敵を嘗めてかかる。

To deal with an enemy putting him down.

74. 心してかかることが肝心です。

Things you carefully cope with are crucial.

20. In "にかかる" following the 連用形 of a transitive verb meaning "to do...as an action of starting out".

75. 弱いと見るとすぐさま ^{おど}脅しにかかるのは自然な反応ではないか。

Isn't starting to threaten someone immediately when you see them as being weak a natural reaction?

76. 引き止めにかかったが、どうしても応じなかったんだ。

I started to restrain (him), but I didn't get (him) to comply in the long run.

Usage Note: This usage is not used to show habit and is used to show a temporary action.

21. In "(よ) うとかかる", a stronger version of "(よ) うとする".

77. 彼はあの手この手で説得しようとかかってきたが、結局説得できなかったよ。

He tried to persuade us this way and that, but he couldn't persuade us (about) anything well.

22. To fight against; only a usage of かかる.

78. 不良が突っかかってきた。

A delinquent charged at me.

79. 者ども、掛かれ！

Men, fight!

23. To receive medical care or a doctor's examination.

80. すぐにお医者さんにかかりなさい。

Please have a doctor see you immediately.

81. 重症ですから、すぐ医者にかかるべきですよ。

Because it's a serious illness, you should see a doctor soon.

24. To sell at an auction; only a usage of かける。

82. 競売にかける。

To hold auction.

25. To adopt legislation or measures; bind an agreement.

83. 事件を裁判にかけます。

We will give a judgment in the case.

84. 案件を会議に懸けました。

We adopted the matter in question in the meeting.

85. 毒殺事件が裁判にかけられた。

A judgment was given in the poisoning case.

86. 自分の生命に保険をかけるのはとても大切なのです。

To get an insurance agreement for one's own life is very important.

漢字 Note: 懸ける・懸かる is most appropriate. However, it is usually written in ひらがな.

26. To carry traits or tendencies; only a usage of かかる。

87. 青みのかかった緑色

Blue-tinged green

88. 彼は凄みのかかった顔で睨み付けた。

He glared at me with a ghastly look.

27. To dispose of oneself.

89. 自らの手にかける。

To kill oneself with one's own hands.

90. 敵の手にかかる。

To be disposed of by the enemy's hand.

28. "To be concerned", "be the work of", or "to concern". Only a usage of 係る.

91. 止利仏師の制作にかかった仏像でございます。

This is a Buddhist statue in the image of the works of Toribusshi.

92. 賜杯の行方は大名の活躍に係っている。

The whereabouts of the Emperor's cup is controlled by the great efforts of the Daimyo.

93. 試合の成否は努力いかに係っている。

The outcome of the contest depends on your effort.

94. この副詞の意味は文末の動詞に係っている。

The meaning of this adverb is linked to the verb at the end of the sentence.

29. To give a ball an extraordinary rotation; only a usage of かける.

95. 打球に回転をかける。

To have one's ball spin.

30. To multiply; only a usage of かける.

96. $8 \times (\text{かける}) 2$ は 16。

8 times 2 equals 16.

31. To overcharge; only a usage of かける.

97. 定価に二倍をかけて売る。

To buy at two times the standard price.

32. To pay bills regularly; only a usage of かける.

98. 保険金をかけている。

I'm paying insurance.

33. To crossbreed; only a usage of かける.

99. 雌馬に口バをかける。

To breed a female horse with a donkey.

34. To play on words; only a usage of かける.

100. 『秋風ぞ立つ』の『秋』に『飽き』をかける。

To imply "weariness" in the "autumn" of "rise autumn wind".

The Suffix -かかる

1. Same as usage 27 from earlier with the only difference being that it attaches itself to nouns instead.

101. あいつは左がかった意見を持ってるね。

That guy has a leftist opinion, doesn't he.

2. Shows the possession of color traits.

102. オレンジがかった赤い色

An orange tinted red color

103. 黒みがかった紺色

A black tinted navy blue

104. 娘はむらさきと白の細かい矢がすりのきものに、^{えんじ}臙脂がかったむらさきの袴をはいていた。

She was wearing a fine white and purple arrow feather kimono atop a rouge-tinged hakama.

From 不死 by 川端康成.

罹る

This "かかる" verb means "to catch a disease" or "to be caught in a problem".

105. いとこは食中毒に罹った。

My cousin got food poisoning.

106. 結核に罹ると、ときどき命の危険がある。

When you get tuberculosis, there may be a risk to your life.

107. 放射線を浴びて、原子病に罹ってしまう。

To contract radiation sickness from radiation.

The 連体詞 斯かる

斯かる is the classical version of このような.

欠ける

This "かける" verb is intransitive, and its transitive form is 欠く.

1. For a part of a sold item to break off; to chip.

108. 机の縁が欠けた。

The edge of the desk got chipped.

109. コーヒーカップの取っ手が欠けてしまったから、滴がじんわりと漏れてるよ。

Because the coffee cup's handle accidentally got chipped, drops are slowly leaking.

2. To be missing.

110. グループのメンバーの三人が欠けている。

Three people are missing out of the group.

111. この取扱説明書は5ページ欠けています。

There are 5 pages missing in this user's manual.

3. To lack; to be negligent toward.

112. 攻撃は決め手に欠けたから、失敗した。

Because the attack lacked a decisive move, it failed.

113. 最新記録に一秒欠ける。

To lack 1 second of a record.

114. 1 ドルから一セント欠ける。

To lack a cent from a dollar.

4. To wane.

115. 満月が段々円形でなくなるのは常識だ。

A full moon waning gradually losing in round shape is common knowledge.

翔ける

This "かける" verb is transitive and means "to fly through the heavens".

116. 魂魄が天空を翔ける。

Souls fly through the heavens.

駆・駈ける

This "かける" verb has two usages related to each other and is transitive. It either means "to dash" or "to fly through the sky".

117. 神風が大空を駈けた。

Divine wind flew through the skies.

118. 時空を駆ける。

To dash through time and space.

119. 虎が熱帯林を駈けた。

The tiger dashed through the tropical forest.

The Potential Form of Verbs

Finally, to end this lesson, かける may also be the potential form of the verbs to write 書く, to scratch 搔く, and to draw 描く.

120. 漢字で書けない。

I can't write in Kanji.

121. 美しい絵が描ける。

To be able to draw a beautiful picture.

Table of Contents

Exercises

Ah! There are so many usages! As you are more than likely overwhelmed with the information, this exercise section will be a nice break. Just summarize how the main verbs かかる and かける are used. Then, write a paragraph at least 5 sentences of different usages for each. So, you will have a total of 10 sentences.

第244課: むしろ, かねて, さもないと, 況して/況や, たとえ, 強いて, 敢えて, 一旦, & 殊更

In this lesson we will focus on some important adverbs that deserve special attention.

むしろ	かねて	さもないと	たとえ	一旦	強いて、敢えて、殊更
-----	-----	-------	-----	----	------------

むしろ

むしろ means "rather". It can be seen in the following patterns.

B (という)より(も)むしろ A	A rather than B
A というかむしろ B	A...,no, B
B というよりもむしろ	not so much B as A

The segments of the sentence should show parallelism. When you use むしろ with -たい, the translation becomes "prefer" or "would rather". Instead of むしろ, you may see かって and いっそ which mean "on the contrary" and "better yet/still more" respectively.

1. 彼女は歌手というよりもむしろ女優です。
She is an actress rather than a singer.
2. 僕は外車よりもむしろ日本製の車を買うんだ。
I buy Japanese-made cars rather than foreign cars.
3. えー、あの子供は利口というか、いや、むしろ天才というべきだ。
Eh, that kid is bright, no, a genius.
4. あまり好きじゃなかった。それどころかむしろ^{にく}憎んでさえいた。
I didn't really like it. Rather, I just detested it.
5. 辛い思いをするよりは いっそ死んだ方がましだ。
I would rather die than hold (those) painful memories.

6. 海岸へ行くよりむしろ遊園地へ行きたい。

I'd rather go to the amusement part rather than go to the beach.

7. パーティーに行くよりむしろ家にいたい。

I'd rather stay inside than go to the party.

8. むしろこちらのほうがいいと思います。

I think rather that this would be good.

9. ^{かえ}却って良かった。

It was rather good.

Orthography Note: むしろ can be rarely seen written in 漢字 as 寧ろ.

かねて

かねて means "previously". かねてから means "has always been" and is used with the progressive past tense. ^{か が}兼ね兼ね is another adverb that may be used instead of かねて. You should not replace かねてから with かねがねから. Another equivalent phrase is 前以て.

10. 以前から痛んでいた。

It has always hurt.

11. 兼ねて（から）お伝えしたように

As we have informed you before

12. 前以て備える。

To prepare beforehand.

13. 次回は前以て電話していただけますか。

Could you please phone ahead next time?

14. あらかじめ聞き及んだ名所を訪れればよい。

It would be good for you to visit the name and address you heard of before.

15. お名前はかねて（から）伺っております。（Honorific）

I have heard your name before.

16. かねがね望んでいたことが本当に実現した。

The thing that I have been hoping for actually happened!

17. お噂はかねがね {伺って・承って} ありました。（Honorific）

I have already been told about the rumor.

Orthography Note: かねて can seldom be seen written in 漢字 as 予て.

さもないと

さもないと in a literal sense means "if you do not do so", but it is normally simply translated as "or (else)/otherwise". It may also be seen as さもなくば and さもなければ.

18. 出て行け。さもないと警察（を）呼ぶぞ。

Get out. If you don't, I'll call the police!

19. 7時半までに出なさい。さもなければ、電車で遅れますよ。

Leave (the house) by 7:30. Or else, you'll be late to your train.

20. そうせよ！さもなくば必ずや命を失おう。（Old-fashioned）

Do it! If not you will surely lose your life.

21. 水を溜めよ。さもないと、^{かんばつ} 旱 魃 が起こったときに、^{のど かわ} 喉 が 渴 いて死んでしまうよ。

Save up water. Or else, if a drought were to occur, you could dehydrate and end up near to your death.

況して・況や

^ま況して (や) and ^{いわん}況や mean "much less", and they must be used with the negative. It is normally written in かな.

22. あいつは日本語を読むことすらできない。ましてや書いたり話したりできるわけがない。

He can't even read Japanese, much less write it or speak it.

23. 小走りもろくにできない。^ま況して走れるわけがない。

She can hardly jog, much less being able to run.

24. 先生「今回のテストの平均点は 60 点でした。」

A くん「お前 70 点以上いった？」

B くん「まさか。平均点すら届かなかったよ。ましてや 70 点なんて夢のまた夢だよ」

Sensei: "The average for this test was 60"

A-kun: "Did you get over a 70?"

B-kun: "No way, I couldn't even make the average, much less get a 70 which is like a hopeless dream"

25. 敵でも困っていたら助けます。ましてや味方なら当然です。

I would help an enemy if her were to be in distress, much more a friend.

26. いわんや子供には無理だ。

It's useless much less with kids.

たとえ

In 漢字 as 仮令 and also seen as たとい in older texts, たとえ is used in the following patterns to mean "no matter" and "even though/so". It may also be seen in "たとえ...たとしても" which means "if any/if I should".

たとえ...ても	たとえ...volitional + と(も)	たとえ...にせよ
----------	-------------------------	-----------

27. たとえ雨が降っても出かけるぞ。

I'll go out even if rains.

28. あなたがたとえ何をしようとも支持しよう。

I will support you no matter how you do.

29. たとえ何があろうとやります。

I'll do it no matter what.

30a. 両者の間には、たとえあったとしてもごく^{わず}僅かしか、相違はありません。

(Literary)

30b. 両者の間には、たとえあったとしてもごく僅かしか、違いはありません。

(Spoken)

There is little if any difference between the two.

31. たとえ冗談にせよ、傷つけるようなことはいうべきじゃないよ。

Even if it's just a joke, you should not say hurtful things.

32. たとえ殺されても信念は曲げられない。

Even if if I were killed, my faith could not be taken away.

33. たとえどんなことがあったとしても

No matter what

34. たとえどんなに腕がよくても、試験に（は）合格しなければならないよ。

No matter how good you are, you must still pass the exam.

Word Note: たとえ may also be replaced by 縦^よしんば. This word, though, is rare.

35a. 縦しんば失敗したとしても後悔はしない。

35b. たとえ失敗したとしても後悔はしない。 (More natural)

35c. もし失敗したとしても後悔はしない。

Even if I were to lose, I will have no regrets.

一旦

一旦 can either mean "temporarily; for the present" or "once". In the first case it shows that some action or progress is currently halted. In the second case it is used at the start of a conditional clause to show an action that is necessary to bring about a certain result.

36. いったん始めたらやめてはいけません。

Once you've begun, you mustn't quit.

37. 一旦は中止と決まっていた。

It has been decided that we will halt temporarily.

38. 一旦の楽しみ

A fun time

Pronunciation Note: As a noun it can be used in the sense of "once" as in "a time". The pitch is when it's a noun is on いった. When it's an adverb, the pitch is on ったん.

強いて、敢えて、殊更

^し強いて, ^あ敢えて, and ^{ことさら}殊更 are very similar phrases that need to be addressed together. 強いて is like "by force". This makes sense because it comes from the verb 強いる which means "to force". 敢えて is "to dare/venture". Lastly, 殊更 is "intentionally".

39. 強いて言えば

If I'm forced to say something

40. 強いてと仰るなら

If you insist

41. 敢えてもう一度やる覚悟があるのか？

You dare have the courage to try again?

42. 敢えて反対意見を述べた。

He ventured an objection.

43. 私は行くことを強いられました。

I was compelled to go.

44. {あえて・強いて} 送ってくれなくてもいいよ。

You don't have to bother driving me home.

45. 大統領をあえて非難するつもりはないです。

I wouldn't dare criticize the president.

46. 彼は {殊更・わざと} 嫌がらせをしていた。

He was intentionally harassing others.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence using むしろ.
2. What is the overall difference between むしろ and adverbs such as かえって and いっそ?
3. Create a sentence using かねてから.
4. Create a sentence using さもないと.
5. Create a sentence using 況や.

第245課: Tendency: 嫌いがある, が早いか, が最後, & そばから

In this lesson we will learn about speech modals concerning tendency.

嫌いがある

嫌い means "to hate"--it is treated as a 形容動詞 instead of as a verb in Japanese--and is followed by がある to show what someone or something has a **tendency of doing**. As the word suggests, this is not a good tendency. This tendency has to be somewhat bad, so it doesn't work with phrases like ぎりぎり間に合う.

1. 依存症の嫌いがあること

To have a tendency of dependence.

2. その生徒は遅刻する嫌いがありました。

That student had a tendency to be late.

3. 彼は酒を飲みすぎる嫌いがある。

He has a tendency of drinking too much sake.

4. 人には自分の聞きたくないことは耳に入れないというきらいがあるのではないか。

Isn't there are tendency that what one doesn't want to hear doesn't get heard?

5. 彼女は優しいですが、無意識に人を傷付けることを言うきらいがある。

She's nice but, she has a tendency to say things that hurt people without knowing it.

6. 人間は年を取ると、他の人の話を聞かなくなる嫌いがある。

When humans get older, they have a tendency of not wanting to listen to other people.

が早いか

が早いか is best translated as "the instant". Basically the same as the noun 瞬間(instant). The situation in question **must not be of one's control**. It has also become limited to actions done by people. The actions also have to be logically related to each other. が 早いか can be used with the non-past or the past tense. However, the former is the most common and some speakers may not like it with the past tense.

7. 彼女は先生を見るが早いか、逃げ出しました。

She started running away the instant she saw the teacher.

8. 「飲んでみよう」と言ったが早いか、彼は全て飲んでしまった。

The instant I said, "Let's try drinking it", he completely drank it all.

9. 言うが早いかやってしまった。

No sooner said than done.

10. 弟は、口に押し込んだが早いか、玄関を出ていった。(△)

My brother left the house just as soon as he shoved it down in his mouth.

11. 初級者向けの IMABI の教科書は店頭で並べられたが早いか、すぐに売れていきました。

The IMABI textbooks for beginners flew off the shelves the instant they were put up in front of the store.

12. ベルを聞くが早いか、生徒達は教室から飛び出していった。

The instant they heard the bell, the students dashed out of the classroom.

The verb must be one that describes something of an instant. It's not a verb that entails a longer period of time. When you see, ask, arrive, etc. that is 瞬間的. The part of the sentence that comes after is unexpected. Again, this pattern must not be used to show the speaker's wants or intentions.

が最後

Although 最後 means "last", が最後 shows that once some starts doing something, there is no end to their action in sight. Due to this, it is very similar to 一旦 (いったん) meaning "once". However, 一旦 doesn't always have the implications of nonstop.

13. 飲みだしたが最後、止められなかった。

Once I started to drink it, I couldn't stop.

14. 入ったが最後二度と出てこられなくなる場所に行ったことがありますか。

Have you ever gone to a place where once you entered, you became unable to leave (because it was so awesome)?

15. いったん始めたら、止めてはならない。

Once you start, you must not quit.

16. いったん封を切ると、返品できません。

Once you break the seal, you can't return it.

そばから

そばから describes an event that repeatedly happens right over again, plain and simple. So, no matter what you do, right when you do it, something messes it up, and this cycle keeps repeating itself. So, it's usually a bad thing. It's usually used with the non-past form of a verb, but the past tense is also acceptable.

17. 返事を書いているそばからランスさんが次々とメールを送ってくる。まあ、日本語の勉強に非常に熱心ですね。

Every moment I write a response, but each instant Lance sends a new e-mail one after another. Well, he's very earnest in his Japanese studies.

18. 妹が掃除するそばから散らかすから、もう諦めたくまりました。

My little sister messes the room up (repeatedly) as soon as I clean it up, so I've become tired of doing it.

19. IMABI は漢字が多くて大変ですね。調べたそばから新しい漢字がいつも出てきます。もっとシンプルな漢字でだけ書かれていたらいいのに。

It's hard that IMABI has a lot of Kanji, isn't it? The moment I look one up, new Kanji always show up. If only it were written with just simple Kanji.

20. 習うそばから忘れてしまうので、ぜんぜん新しい単語が覚えられない。

Since as soon as I learn it I forget it, I can't learn any new words.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence using 嫌いがある.

2. Create a sentence using が早いか.

3. Create a sentence using そばから.

4. Contrast が早い with やいなや.

第246課: Incidental: がてら, かたがた, かたわら, & ついで

All of these items have a common theme, but don't let this confuse you! Pay attention to how these items are exactly used, and see if you can come up with a chart to differentiate them. Then, compare your chart to the one that ends this lesson.

がてら

～がてら either attaches to the 連用形 of a verb or to a noun. ～がてら shows that **while you're doing something, you're also taking the opportunity to do something else.** So, whatever it attaches to, there should be some sense of **movement** implied.

～がてら is primarily used with nouns that express an action of movement such as walking or shopping. Unlike ～ながら, ～がてら doesn't indicate that two things are simultaneous. In both cases, though, the two actions are happening in the same time period.

～がてら shows that things are happening in a **relatively close time span**. This is rather old-fashioned, so you probably will not see it often. However, it does show up in writing and the JLPT 1, so you still need to know what it is.

Examples

1. 散歩がてら友達と話し合う。

While taking a walk, I talk with my friend.

2. 散歩がてら買い物に行く。

While taking a walk, I go shopping.

3. 駅に行きがてら郵便局に立ち寄ります。

While going to the train station, I'll drop by the post office.

4. 教会に行きがてら、おじさんの家に寄ってきた。

While I went to church, I went to visit my uncle (on the way).

5. 散歩がてらちょっとピーマンを買いに行ってきます。

I'll get some peppers on my walk.

6. 外に行きがてら、手紙を出してきてくれない？

Can't you send out this letter as you go outside?

7. 友だちを駅まで送りがてら本を返してきた。

I returned a book back to my friend while I sent him to the train station.

8. 運動がてら犬の散歩に出かけたっけ。

You said you took the dog on a walk in exercising?

Grammar Note: When using a noun that can be made verbs by adding する, you shouldn't attach がてら to the 連用形. So, rather than ever saying 運動しがてら, simply use 運動がてら.

9. 暖かい日の^{ひるすぎ}午^か過^か食後の運動がてら水仙の水を^か易えてやろうと思って洗面所へ出

て、水道の^{せん}栓^{ねじ}を^{ねじ}回していると、その看護婦が受持の^{へや}室^{へや}の茶器を洗いに来て、例の通

り^{あいさつ}挨拶^{しゅでい}をしながら、しばらく自分の手にした^{はち}朱^{はち}泥^{はち}の鉢と、その中に盛り上げら

れたように^{ふく}膨^{たまね}れて見える^{たまね}珠^{たまね}根を眺めていたが、やがてその眼を自分の横顔に移して、この前御入院の時よりもうずっと御顔色が好くなりましたねと、三カ月前の自分と今の自分を比較したような批評をした。

Past noon on a warm day, I thought about watering the daffodil on going to exercise and went to the washroom, and when I had twisted the water nob, the nurse had come to wash the tea utensils of the room she was in charge of, and as she gave regular greetings, she gazed at the reddish-brown pot in my hand and the bulbs that seemed swollen up like they had been piled in there, but she finally

moved her glance to my profile and gave the comment, “Your complexion has really improved lately since you came in the hospital”, which seemed to be a comparison of me now and three months ago.

From 変な音 by 夏目漱石.

暖かい日の午過(ひるすぎ)食後の運動がてら水仙の水を易(か)えてやろうと思って洗面所へ出て、水道の栓(せん)を捩(ねじ)っていると、その看護婦が受持の室(へや)の茶器を洗いに来て、例の通り挨拶(あいさつ)をしながら、しばらく自分の手にした朱泥(しゅでい)の鉢(はち)と、その中に盛り上げられたように膨(ふく)れて見える珠根(たまね)を眺めていたが、やがてその眼を自分の横顔に移して、この前御入院の時よりもうずっと御顔色が好くなりましたねと、三カ月前の自分と今の自分を比較したような批評をした。

Past noon on a warm day, I thought about watering the daffodil on going to exercise and went to the washroom, and when I had twisted the water nob, the nurse had come to wash the tea utensils of the room she was in charge of, and as she gave regular greetings, she gazed at the bulbs, which looked swollen up like they had been piled in the flower pot that I held in my hand, but she finally moved her glance to my face and gave the comment, “Your complex has really improved lately since you came in the hospital”, which seemed to be a comparison of me now and three months ago.

Fr

Some usages of ～がてら, given that it has passed its heyday, may be questionable. If it is a situation seemingly not completely within one's free will, it can sound unnatural. In the following case, it would be natural if the meeting is most important to you and you just had to go on a 出張 for your own comfort.

10a. イギリスへの出張がてら、地球環境会議に出席しました。

10b. イギリスへの出張（の）ついでに、地球環境会議に出席しました。

On the occasion of going on a business trip to England, I attended a global environment meeting.

To reiterate, if there isn't a sense of moving, ～がてら becomes ungrammatical and you would have to use something else like ついでに (see below) or rephrase the sentence entirely.

11a. 食事がてらこの間話していた映画でも見に行こう。○

11b. 食事がてらこの間話していた映画でも見よう。X

Let's go see the movie we've been talking about recently while out to dinner.

12. 散歩がてら（に）行って来よう。

I'll come by way of going on a walk.

Particle Note: You can also rarely see がてらに. This explicitly establishes a sense of direction/movement.

かたがた

～か たがた: attaches to nouns. "Previously" or "on the occasion/same time as". It is mainly used with verbs related to movement such as 行く. Essentially, you do a certain thing on the occasion of tending to another prerogative. As you will see, this is typically only used in 敬語 in the form of あいさつ文. It can still be used in the sense of ～がてら by older speakers, which still makes it old-fashioned.

13. お礼かたがたご機嫌伺いをしてきましょう。

Let's go come and make an inquiry on good times for their previous gratitude to us.

14. 見舞いかたがた手伝いに行った。

On the occasion of inquiring on (him), I went to give some help.

15. お近くにお越しの節は、お遊びかたがた、お立ち寄りください。

Please stop by when you are near while on your excursion.

16. ご挨拶かたがたお宅に伺います。

I will come to your house as I give my salutations.

17. 散歩かたがた

On the same time as my walk

Usage Note: This suffix is normally replaced with something like ついでに in the spoken language.

漢字 Note: かたがた may also rarely be written as 旁（々）.

かたわら

Literally meaning "beside", 傍ら is after the 連体形 of verbs or the nominal form of a verb to show simultaneous action and is equivalent to "一方で…と同時に". 傍ら is often used with time frames that are much broader. This pattern implies that the first action is the primary action and the second is something that is also occurring in parallel with the first.

If you were to turn this into a verbal expression, they would all turn to "連用形+ながら". かたわら is used a lot in the written language whereas ~ながら would be used in the spoken language. The former is used a lot in regards to protagonists in described the lifestyle background of them in novels. If a description was given for a character to only appear once, ~ながら would be used. The pattern Xは動詞+人の+かたわらで is also literary, and it is used in describing condition, but it is only describing place of activity. In this manner, the distance between X and A (動詞+人) is like the following with the right being larger: そば → 隣 → 横 → かたわら.

Exercises

18. 道のかたわらで

Beside the road

19. 彼女は高校の数学の教師の傍ら、バレーボール部の^{かんとく}監督をしています。

While she is a high school mathematics teacher, she is at the same time the volleyball department manager.

20. 私はスペイン語を習う傍ら、韓国語を習うことにしました。

Alongside Spanish, I have also decided to study Korean.

21a. 先生たちのかたわらで、彼らの^{そうだんごと}相談事に耳を傾けていた。X

21b. 先生たちのそばで、彼らの相談事に耳を傾けていた。

I was listening to the side of the teachers discussing things.

22. 傍らに人なきがごとし。(Set Phrase)

Act outrageously as if no one is around.

ついで

Written as 次いで, ついで is a conjunction meaning "subsequently". Written as 序で, ついで is a noun meaning "opportunity". Building on this, 序でに means "incidentally".

23. 序でに^{ひとこと}一言 言うておく。

To incidentally give a word about something in advance.

24. 開会式が終わりました。次いで、^{きょうぎ}競技に移ります。

The opening ceremony ended. Subsequently/afterwards, we'll move to the events.

25. 「^{いっしゅん}一瞬の塵」という歌に次いで「ヴェロニカ」というのは僕の好きな歌だよ。

After the song, "Dust of a Moment", my favorite song is called, "Velonica".

26. 序があつたら、これを^{わた}渡しておいてください。

If you have a chance, please send this to him.

～ ついでに is somewhat interchangeable with ～がてら. However, they're not exactly the same. 「A-る・た・動作名詞 (の) + ついでに B」 shows that the speaker does/wants to end up doing B as well in the case that A--a daily task, chore, duty, or obligation--has to be done. Using ～がてら has no such requirements. Rather, ～がてら is more like saying "A という^{せつかく}の機会だから、B もしてみよう".

27a. 図書館へ本を返しに行くついでに、ジョギングする。

27b. 図書館へ本を返しに行きがてら、ジョギングする。

I'll go jogging while I go return the book/books to the library.

28a. 周りの景色を楽しむついでに、山を下りた。X

28b. 周りの景色を楽しみがてら、山を下りた。○

On the occasion of enjoying the surrounding scenery, I descended down the mountain.

When ついでに shows ordinariness, の may be dropped with 動作名詞 in the **spoken language**. Don't do this in writing unless you're writing a dialogue.

29. 登山ついでに、いろんな写真を撮ってみたよ。

I took all sorts of pictures when going mountain climbing.

Although context is crucial, there are instances when it doesn't have to be used with a 動作名詞, but the conditions mentioned above still apply.

30a. お風呂がてら、^{よくそう}浴槽を洗っておいて。X

30b. お風呂ついでに、浴槽を洗っておいて。○

30c. お風呂のついでに、浴槽を洗っておいて。○

When you get a bath, be sure to wash the tub.

31. 居間の^{かべ}壁のついでに、家の^{がいへき}外壁^ぬも塗る。

To paint the outside of the house on the occasion of (painting) the living room walls.

32a. 彼女を見舞^まうついでに、定期^{けんしん}健診^{けんしん}を受けてくる。

32b. 彼女を見舞いがてら、定期健診を受けてくる。

I'll get my regular medical check up on the occasion that I see her.

When reversed, only ついでに is possible because it's something you have an obligation for. In this situation, the order of events is unclear. It's also unclear whether the two events are happening in the same place or not. If in the same place, then the speaker would be taking the checkup in the midst of going to see about her.

It's thought to be that the two events are taking place at basically same time. However, when strictly speaking, taking the latter action as the standard point of time, one can express whether or not it is before, after, or at the same time as A. On the other hand, がてら limits interpretations to just getting both down during the time you're at the same hospital/facility.

When the non-past tense is used before ついでに, A and B can either be happening at the same time or B happens before A. When the past tense is used before ついでに, N happens after A.

33. 友達の家へ行くついでに、海岸で泳いだ。

I swam in the ocean on the occasion of going to my friend's house.

Note: The swimming can be simultaneous to going to your friend's house or before.

34a. こっちへ来るついでに、土産^{みやげ}を買ってきてほしいんだけど。

34b. こっちへ来たついでに、土産を買ってきてほしいんだけど。X

You want someone as they are to come over to get a souvenir. Why on Earth would you want a souvenir from your own place anyway? Is that even a possible usage of the word 土産? No! In reality, speakers, even when B is after A, will use the non-past with ついでに because of the previous statement that the two actions are usually deemed as happening basically at the same time. This practical interchangeability, though, is in regards to 瞬間動詞.

35. かびん
花瓶を壊すついでに、それらの皿も壊しといてくれないか？

While you destroy the vase, can't you also break those plates?

Consider the following where the opposite situation holds: flipping them potentially makes ついでに ungrammatical. It just so happens that the following sentences don't have this problem as both directions are logical. The meanings of these phrases are summarized below, so don't think that all of these mean the same things.

36a. 実家に帰るついでに遊んできた。○

36b. 実家に帰ったついでに遊んできた。○

36c. 実家に帰りがてら、遊んできた。○

36d. 遊ぶついでに、実家に帰ってきた。○

36e. 遊んだついでに、実家に帰ってきた。△

36f. 遊びがてら、実家に帰ってきた。○

がてら VS ついでに VS かたわら VS かたがた VS ながら

Hopefully you've seen a lot of differences and overlap between these phrases. So, to summarize, here is a chart to act as your cheat sheet on how to distinguish.

Phrase	Characteristics of A	Importance	Time Ordering	Period
--------	----------------------	------------	---------------	--------

A+ながら+B	Ordinary	$A \leq B$	Same time	One scene
A+かたわら+B	Ordinary	$A > B$	Parallel	Long time
A+かたがた+B	Unordinary	$A = B$	Same time	Short time
A+ついでに+B	Obligatory	$A > B$	Before or after or same	Short time
A+がてら+B	Pleasure	不明	Same time	Short distance

Table of Contents

第247課: The Particles やら, なり, & きり

In this lesson we will learn about the adverbial particles やら, なり, and きり. Some of them have usages that have different classifications. So, always be careful.

The Particle やら

The Adverbial Particle やら

This particle is rather interesting. Some phrases such as どうやら shown below in sentences are used all of the time. However, when used to list things vaguely (usage 2), it is not so common and generally mainly found in books. Despite this, it is not impossible to hear someone say it every now and then because it is more emphatic than typical means of expression.

- Shows uncertainty
- やら lists things very vaguely and emphatically. May be rude as it should not be used in reference to someone above you.
- とやら shows obscurity without any particularity.

Examples

1a. 雨が降るのやら降らないのやらよく分からない。

1b. 雨が降るのか降らないのかよく分からない。（もっと一般的な言い方）

I don't know whether it's going to rain or not rain.

2. どうやら^{るす}留守のようです。

It looks like they're somehow not at home.

3. えっと、英之とやらだったかな。（ちょっと失礼な言い方）

Uh, it was a person called Hideyuki.

4. どうやら一荒れ来そうだ。

It looks like we're going to have a storm.

5. モウリさんはどうやら置いてきたものが多いらしかった。わたしは、一つか二つしか、置いてきたものはない。その一つ二つでさえ持て余しているのだから、モウリさんの疲れかたをや、だろう。

Mouri somehow seemed to have come with a lot of things. As for me, I've only came with one or two things. Since even those one or two things are hard to deal with, I guess you could say that's her way of fatigue.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

Particle Note: をや is a combination of the case particle を and the adverbial particle や. It is more common in things like 漢文訓読. It is often seen with いわんや (Let alone)、～において～をや. The phrase itself is a rhetorical device used to add a sense of lament. So, with the example, the author choice it to give the impression that the speaker might get fatigued thinking about his partner's things.

The Final Particle やら

Questions oneself with a sense of uncertainty. This is **rarely** used nowadays. The variant patterns in the first example apply for the second as well, but they are meant to show you how this has been absorbed by other speech patterns.

6a. 彼は勝った（の）やら。 (May sound old to some)

6b. 彼は勝った（の）かな（あ） (一般的な言い方)

6c. 彼は勝ったのかしら。 (Feminine)

6d. 彼は勝ったんだろうか。 (Somewhat masculine)

I wonder if he won.

7. 行ったやら。 (古風)

I wonder if he went.

8. 私もどれほど安堵^{あんど}しましたことやら。 (Literary)

Oh how I was relieved too.

From 光の雨 by 立松和平.

The Particle なり

The Adverbial Particle なり

1. In "A なり B なり" meaning "either...or...". B may be a question word hinting at other options. This is normally replaced by other things. In this case, though, it's not necessarily old-fashioned.

9a. 俺なりあんたやりが行かなきゃ。 (Masculine)

9b. 俺かあんたが行かなきゃ。 (Masculine)

Either I or you have to go.

10. だい しょう
大 なり 小 なり欠点はある。

There is either a fault in being big or in being small.

Sentence Note: Ex. 10 is more common as it is a common expression.

11a. フランスなりどこなりへ引っ越したらいい。

11b. フランスかどこかに引っ越したらいい。 (Better choice)

It would be nice to move to France or somewhere.

2. A more literary variant of ～なければ～ほど.

12. 「なんで君はある金全部を使ってしまうの」とユキヲは言うのだが、どうやって金の始末をうまくすればいいのか、私には見当もつかないのだ。少なければ少ないなりに、多ければ多いなりに、私はいつでもぴたりと使いきってしまう。体が、あり金にあわせて^の伸びたり^{ちぢ}縮んだりするような感じだった。

Yukio asks "why do you end up using all the money?", but I can't guess on how to dispose of the money well. Whether it be less or more, I always completely use it up. I felt as if my body stretched and contracted with [how much] money I had.

From 溺れる by 川上弘美.

3. Shows an example with the implication of the possibility of other options.

13.

A くん「どこか海外に行きたいかな。」

B くん「なんか西洋の空気を感じたいな。」

A くん「じゃ、ヨーロッパへなり行きましょう。」

A: I kind of want to go overseas.

B: I'd like to feel the West and what not.

A: Let's go to somewhere like Europe.

14. 運動するなりしてみてもどうか。

How about trying to drive or something?

なりと

This is a very interesting combination particle that has several usages. In its first usage, it sets up something as a bare minimal condition, making it essentially a humble でも. This usage, though, has become quite old-fashioned. Some exceptions to this include 何なりと which is used frequently.

15. 何なりとお申し付けを

Whatever I instruct...

16. よろしかったらお茶なりと召し上がってください。

If it's all right, please have something like tea.

17. どうなりと好きにせよ！ (Rude , old-style command)

Do what you'd like!

Speech Note: Using something humble like this in a command results in a rather rude command.

In other contexts, it can show that one may choose voluntarily, but this doesn't always have to be in nice contexts. It can also be used in the pattern AなりとBなりと and function just like なり above. It may be seen as など, which is somewhat dialectical and very old-fashioned, and なりとも.

18. 死ぬなり(と)生きるなり(と)勝手にしろ。

Whether you die or live, do whatever you want.

19. 願わくは一言なりとも知らせてほしゅうございます。(すごく古い言い方)

I wish to be informed at least one word.

The Conjunctive Particle なり

After the 連体形 of a verb, it shows that something is done as soon as something else is done. So right when someone does something, they do something next in sequence to the first action. The subject is normally third person, and the subject is the same in both clauses. The second part has a little sense of unexpected strong will.

20a. 宿題を済ませるなり、すぐに彼らはインターネットを使った。

20b. 宿題を済ませるとすぐに彼らはインターネットを使った。(More natural)

They used the Internet as soon as they finished their homework.

21. 彼は帰るなり、トイレに行った。

He went to the bathroom as soon as he got home.

22. 社長は入ってくるなり、大声で怒鳴りました。

As soon as the company president came in, he shouted in a big voice.

After the past tense, it shows a situation that is still in play as another action begins. There shouldn't be any movement involved by the individual.

23. 机の椅子に座ったなり、眠ってしまった。

I feel sleep in my desk chair.

The Suffix -なり

-なり may attach to nouns to give a meaning of "like". It may attach itself to nominals or the 連体形 of adjectives to show that something is appropriate. It may also be after the 連用形 of verbs to be like まま (as is).

24. 彼は親の言いなりになった。

He did as his parents told (and never changed).

25. 道なりに行く。

To go along the road.

26. 私なりに努力します。

I will put effort into it a way that suits me.

27. 体を弓なりに反らす。

To lean one's body back in an arch-like shape.

The Adverbial Particle きり

きり is generally used to limit things. In this sense, it is just like だけ. The sense of limitation is stronger. Consider this. だけ comes from 丈. But, きり comes from 切り. With this alone, you can see how they would have slightly different nuances.

きり may also follow ～た followed by a negative expression to refer to something that has not surpassed a limit meaning "after doing...". It may also be in まる 丸つきり which means "at all" in a **negative potential expression**.

Variant Notes:

1. きり may be seen as つきり a lot in the spoken language.
2. ぎり is an old-fashioned variant.

Etymology Note: This particle comes from the noun 切り, which means "limit" in this instance.

Examples

28. 二人きりで話そう。

Let's talk just the two of us.

29. たった二人きりで国を ^{せいふく} 征 服 した。

The two of them conquered the country.

30. 寝たきりになる。

To become confined to continuously lying down.

31. {座りっきりで・座ったまま（で）・座りっぱなしで・ずっと座って} 仕事を続ける

母はいつも肩が凝^こっている。

My mother who continuously sits down working is stiff in the shoulders.

32. 中国に行ったきり、行^{ゆく}方^えが分からない。

After going to China, we don't know his whereabouts.

33. まるっきり飲めない。

I can't drink at all.

34. もうこれ（っ）きりだよ。

Make this the last time.

35. 俺の手元にあるのは1円これきりだぞ。（男性語）

This is my very last yen.

Literally: The last thing in my hands is just this yen.

36. 二階の彼女の—そして彼のともなる部屋は、通りに向いた窓際に、安い塗^ぬり薬^{ぐすり}の
にお^{にお}い^{そまつ}がする粗^{そまつ}末^{そまつ}な机があるき^きり^りで、その外は灰色の壁^{かべ}と押入れの襖^{ふすま}だけ
だった。

Near the window in her room on the second floor--the room he and she had together--facing the street, there was just a crude desk with the smell of cheap ointment, and aside from that there was only a gray wall and the closet fusuma.

From 死体紹介人 by 川端康成.

37. 「父や母は忙しいからたまにきり来ないだろうがね。よかったら君も泊りがけに来たまえ」（ちょっと古風）

"But my mom and dad don't come but occasionally because they're busy. If it's alright, come stay over".

From 友情 by 武者小路実篤.

Grammar Notes:

1. たまにきり is an instance where this particle can be seen with an adverb, and you can't just replace it with だけ.
2. ～たまえ is now old-fashioned and normally used by middle aged men and older in various situations, of which none are polite to say the least. However, given that the book in which this sentence is from was published in 1920, the users would be of the same generation. This is a clear instance of a generational shift.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence using the adverbial particle やら.
2. Create a sentence using the final particle やら.
3. Create a sentence using the adverbial particle なり.
4. Create a sentence using the conjunctive particle なり.
5. Create a sentence using the adverbial particle きり.

第248課: 連体詞

連体詞 are simply adjectival words that are stuck in the 連体形 or are modifier phrases treated as a single unit.

There are also 連体詞 that come from two defunct classes of 形容動詞: ナル形容動詞 and タル形容動詞, which still possess functional 連用形, に and と respectively. They can be viewed as adjectives with just dormant bases. In some expressions, their former past as completely functional adjectives can be more obvious. These words, though, will be discussed later on.

連体詞

Below is a chart of most of the 連体詞 in Japanese followed by example sentences. This list is not exhaustive, and the defunct adjectival classes are discussed later in this lesson.

Big	大きな	Every	あらゆる
Funny	おかしい	Mere	ほんの
Small	小さな	Eternal	長・永の
New	新たな	A certain	或る
Considerable	大した	Pretending	素知らぬ
Unthinkable	とんだ	Unexpected	ひよんな
Remaining	残んの	This	こな
Odd	異な	Reckless	大それた
Considerate	心有る	Improper	あらぬ
Following	明くる	Unknown	見知らぬ
Untiring	飽くなき	Various	色んな
Last	去んぬる	Only (thing)	ものの
Reasonable	無理からぬ	Useless	言われぬ
Past	往にし	Strange	奇しき

Usage Notes:

1. All adjectival *こそあど* words are 連体詞. Many 連体詞 are created from classical grammatical items.
2. Many of these are uncommon and rather archaic.
3. 無理からぬ comes from the からぬ from よからぬ, the classical negative attribute form of よい, attached to 無理.

Examples

1. 色んな文書を ^{そろ}揃える。
To arrange various documents.
2. 大きな亀 ^{きれつ}裂が入っている。
There is a large crack (in the wall).
3. 無理からぬ話ですね。
It's a reasonable story, isn't it?
4. ^く奇しき出来事
A strange incident
5. ^あ明くる日
The following day
6. ものの見事に
With great success
7. ^そ素知らぬ顔
A pretending face
8. あらゆる努力をして新たな計画を ^ね練った。
With every effort he created a new plan.

9. ひょんなことから明くる日の出来事が大きな問題になった。

From sheer chance the following day became a serious problem.

10a. ^{なが}永の別れとなった。

10b. 永遠の別れとなった。(More spoken and also more common)

It became an eternal separation.

11. ^あ飽くなき欲望がありますね。

You sure have a persistent desire don't you?

12. ^{のこ}残んのお月を見よ。(雅語)

Look at the remaining moon.

13. ウォルマートにはありとあらゆる品物が^{なら}並んでいます。

Everything that you can think of is at Walmart.

14. 心ある市民の^{いか}怒りをかうなんて^{あくぎょう}悪行だ。

Buying the hatred of sensible citizens is an evil act.

15. 新たな^{ぼうけん}冒険が始まる。

A new adventure begins.

16. 彼はあらゆる努力を尽くした。

He made every effort.

17. ぼんやりとあらぬ方を見やる。

To vaguely gaze at an improper way.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What is a 連体詞?

2. What base are 連体詞 stuck in?
3. What are some common origins of 連体詞?
4. Are 連体詞 able to conjugate?
5. Create a minimum of 5 sentences using 連体詞.

第249課: The Particles **ども**, & **だの**

In this lesson we will learn about the conjunctive particles **ども**, and **だの**.

The Particle **ど (も)**

ど (も) is attached to the 已然形 of verbs to mean "even though". As for **だ**, use either **であれど (も)** or **なれど (も)**. This will be very old-fashioned with some exceptions.

1. 行けども、行けども、砂ばかりだった。 (普段)

Even though we went and went, there was only sand.

2. そう言えども、彼は「あんたは何も言わなかった」と言い張った。

Even though I said so, he claimed "you didn't say anything".

3. しかし、結果は一そう悪く、待てど暮らせど何の返事も無く、自分はその ^{しょうそう}焦燥と不安のために、かえって薬の ^{りょう}量を ふやしてしまった。

But, the result was even worse, and having waited and not received a response of any sort, I ended up increasing my dosage all the more out of impatience and anxiety over it.

From 人間失格 by 太宰治.

Particle Note: 言えども and であっても may all be replaced by the conjunctive particle **たりとも**.

4. 一瞬たりともおろかにはできぬ。

You can't even neglect it even for a moment.

The Particle **だの**

The particle **だの**, similar to other particles such as **と**, **や**, and **とか**, enumerates parallel things. For the most part, its usage implies that the sentence is not completely enumerating all interrelated/parallel things, and in doing so, it usually

has negative connotations. It is more correct, though, to say that rather than labeling these sentences as having a negative nuance, we can say that it is typically used for certain things that the speaker doesn't wish for and or have some sort of psychological distance.

The pattern ～だの～だの is used with two or more nouns, adjectives, or verbs, and other case particles may be found after the final instance of だの. If you can only think of one thing and wish to use ～だの, ～だのなんだの would have to be used to avoid sounding unnatural. It's also important to note that dropping any だの is ungrammatical.

Examples

5. 大学に入ると、教科書だの定期券だのを買わなければならない。

When you enter college, you have to buy textbooks, a commuter pass, and so on.

6. 十歳の息子に 아이폰だのパソコンだのとうるさくせがまれて困ってます。

I'm troubled over the fact that I'm being pestered by my 10 year old son for an iPhone, computer, and who knows what all.

7. 書類だの本だのが ^{さんらん}散 乱 している。

Things such as documents and books are scattered.

8. 目のつけどころが素晴らしいだの文章の構成が ^{すぐ}優 れているのだと、自分でも信じられないような褒め言葉が並 んでいるのはわけがわからない。

These accolades lined up that even I myself can't believe like the focal points being wonderful and the sentence structure being superb are incomprehensible.

9. まずいだのきらいだのと、あんたは文句ばかり言ってるんだよ。(Masculine; vulgar)

All you're ever complaining about is how bad it tastes and how much you hate it.

10. つら 辛 いだの面白くないだの、文句ばっか言うのよ！(Feminine)

All you ever complain about is stuff like it being miserable or uninteresting.

11. その国では、^{しんどう}神 童 だの天才だのと呼ばれる才能ある子供たちは、^{ようしょうき}幼 少 期 から ^{すで}既にエリート教育を ^{さず}授 けられ、成長するに伴いその能力を ^{ぞんぶん}存 分 に開花させていくらしい。

In that country, children with talent that are considered prodigies or geniuses are already given elite education from early childhood, and along with growth, their potential is fully opened to their content.

From 日本教育 121 号 in an article by 鈴木智美.

12. ^{じっしひ}実 施 費 が高すぎるだの、非実用的だのといわれますが、それでも私は X 議長の ^{せいさく}政 策 を支持しております。

Though it is said that the implementation costs are too high or that it is not practical, I am still in support of Chairman X's policy.

13. 大学に入ると、教科書だの定期券だの必要なものを買わなければならない。

When you enter college, you have to important things such as textbooks and a commuter pass.

Grammar Note: Notice that 教科書 and 定期券 are examples of 必要なもの. The three phrases are treated as being of the same grammatical "case/function", and given their relationship, no additional particle is needed.

14. 最近の中学生は、iPhone だの ^{たんまつ} 端末 タブレットなどを欲しがるそうだ。

Junior high students these days apparently wish for iPhones and other tablet devices.

Particle Note: The pattern ～だの～だの may change to ～だの～など under the condition that the pair of words are in the same "category". As categorization of things widely varies from person to person, there is variable opinion on grammatical acceptance of this change, which is even more apparent with more complex examples than this. However, the default pattern is always correct so long as you are using だの correctly in the first place.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence using the particle ども.
2. Create a sentence using the particle ど.
3. Create a sentence using the particle だの.
4. Compare and contrast the particles や and だの.

第250課: The Auxiliary Verb ～ず I

～ず is a Classical Japanese auxiliary verb that is still infrequently used in Modern Japanese. Its use in Modern Japanese is old-fashioned, but it is often used within sentences for poetic effects. ～ず is also in a several grammatical structures and set phrases. Set phrases, after all, is where you can expect to find archaisms in any language. Given its archaic status, it is mainly seen in 書き言葉.

The Auxiliary Verb ～ず

The function of ～ず is to show negation. This means that it is going to follow the 未然形 of verbs. However, because it is older, it follows the original 未然形. So, for verbs whose 未然形 may have changed over the centuries, it is still the original one that is used with ～ず.

Though extremely infrequent and almost entirely limited to set phrases, given that it has the potential to be attached to the 未然形 of adjectives, the following chart will show how to conjugate with it for both verbs and adjectives.

Class	Example Verb	未然形	未然形 + ず
一段 Verbs	見る	見-	見ず
五段 Verbs	学ぶ	学ば-	学ばず
サ変 Verb	する	せ-	せず
カ変 Verb	来る	来 (こ) -	来ず
形容詞	少ない	少なから-	少なからず
形容動詞 (Most Rare)	華麗だ	華麗なら-	華麗ならず

～ず also has three sets of bases, and as a consequence, a rather complicated history behind them. However, luckily for you, only the 連体形 ～ぬ and ～ざる and the 連用形・終止形-ず are ever used today.

The 連体形 ～ぬ is used quite a lot, although it is typically limited to set phrases or more literary settings. It can also be used as the 終止形. ～ん comes from this usage. However, ～ない is said to derive from ～なふ, which came into being in northern Japanese dialects during the classical period. The ざる-連体形 is even more limited, and it is typically only seen in set phrases. However, it does find itself in the phrase ～ざるを得ない.

～ずに is just like ～ないで. ～ず as the 連用形 can also function like ～なくて. However, the form ～ずに is going to always be equivalent to ～ないで.

Examples

1. 連絡が取れず、心配しました。(Somewhat formal)

Without having contact, I got worried.

Grammar Note: The above sentence uses ～ず in the 連用形.

2. 分らず屋 (Set Phrase)

An obstinate person.

3. 人知れず焦がれる。

To inwardly yearn for.

Word Note: 人知れず literally means "without it being known to people".

4. 新都はいまだ成らず。(Classical)

The new capital is still not completed.

From the 方丈記.

5. 絶えざる不安 (Archaic/old-fashioned)

Anxiety that won't cease

6. 見ざる聞かざる言わざる・見猿聞か猿言わ猿 (Set Phrase)

See no evil, hear no evil, speak no evil.

Phrase Note: This expression is usually turned into a pun about monkeys, especially the ones that enter 温泉 in Japan.

7a. やる瀬ぬ X

7b. やる瀬 (が) ない O

Helpless

Grammar Note: やるせぬ comes from an over-generalization of ~ぬ.

8. 彼は知らずに側にいた。

He was by my side without knowing it.

9. 生き急がずに、ときには立ち止まってあたりを見回すのもいいよ。

It's also good to just stop once and awhile and look around and not live one's life so fast.

10. 何も書かん。(Slang; dialectical)

I won't write anything.

11. それは開いた口が塞がらぬことだ。(ちょっと古風)

That's a jaw-dropping situation.

12. **取りも直さず**やりくりが大変になるということだ。(Set phrase)

Which is to say, managing will become challenging.

13. 怖いものもあらず。(Archaic)

To not even have things one is scared of.

14a. 好まし**からざる**状態 (古風な書き言葉)

14b. 好まし**くない**状態 (話し言葉)

An unfavorable situation

15. 瀧野は金彌の片足を拾い上げて、土踏ま**ず**を握んだ。

Takino picked up one of Kanaya's legs and gripped her foot's arch.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

16. 雪を積らせぬためであろう、湯槽から溢れる湯を俄づくりの溝で宿の壁沿いにめぐらせてあるが、玄関先

では浅い泉水のように広がっていた。

It must be because they don't allow snow to pile up, but the hot water flowing from the tubs was made to encircle the inn along the walls in a makeshift ditch, and it stretched like shallow spring water at the entrance.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: せぬ is not しない in this sentence. Rather, 積らせぬ is a negative form of the causative form of 積る.

17. それにしても、さっき、吉田と向き合った自分は、いかにも惨めに見えたことだろうと思うと、言いしれぬ侘しさが心を冷やしていく。

Even so, as I thought how wretched I, who had been face to face with Yoshida, a while ago, indescribable dreariness cooled my mind off..

From 冷たい誘惑 by 乃南アサ.

18. このため石井委員長は、「内閣が取った措置は参議院予算委員会をぐろう愚弄するものであると同時に、憲法の精神に反しており、断じて

ように内容認するわけにはいかず、予算委員長として政府にもうせい うなが猛省を促す」と批判した

うえで、委員会をきゅうけい休憩にしました。

As so, Chairman Ishi'i put the committee on recess upon criticizing that "the measures that the cabinet took mock the House of Chancellors Budget Committee and at the same time are against the spirit of the constitution, and being absolutely impossible to approve, as the budget chairman, I urge to the government to reconsider seriously".

From NHK わ区割り法案 参院否決と見なす動議提出 2013年6月24日

Part of Speech Note: Set expressions like 土踏まず have gone from being verbal in nature to referring to the none that it represents this. This word means "arch of the foot".

19. だが、さしのべられる手に応えた**向こうみず**がいた。

But, there was a foolhardy person that responded to the hand extended.

From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

Word Note: In the sentence above, 向こう見ず is used as a noun, and in other contexts it can act as a 形容動詞.

20. だから心**ならずも**、最後の大事な仕事を片づけることができなかったのだ。

Against his heart's intentions, however, he couldn't finish the final, important job.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

Phrase Note: ならずも is a combination なり, the Classical copula, + ず + も, which also follows ず in other set phrases such as 図らずも (unexpectedly).

21. 君はなんといってもただの未成熟な、寸**足らず**の幻想にすぎないわけだからね。

No matter what you may say, it's because you're no more than a lacking, immature illusion.

From 海辺のカフカ by 村上春樹.

Phrase Note: 寸足らず is a set phrase that functions as a 形容動詞 or attribute that takes の. 寸 is a traditional unit of measurement equivalent to 3.03 cm. ~足らず is a suffix that means "just under", and it gives a strong sense of lacking as the verb 足る in the negative suggests. In this sentence, 寸足らず stresses the inferiority of the addressee.

22. 村は ^{ちんじゅ}鎮 ^{すぎばやし}守の ^{かげ}杉林の陰に半ば隠れているが、自動車で十分**足らず**の停車場
^{とうか}の灯火は、寒さのためぴいぴいと音を立てて ^{こぼ}毀れそうに ^{まばた}瞬いていた。

The village was half hidden by its Shinto shrine grove, and the lamplight from the

train station under ten minutes away by car flickered and made a great noise due to the cold like it was going to give way.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

23. 細かい手の器用^{きよう}なさばきは耳に覚えていず、ただ音の感情が分かる程度の島村は、こまこ駒子^{こまこ}にはちょうどよい聞き手なのであろう。

Her fine, clever hand movements couldn't be felt, but Shimura, who could only understand the emotion to the sound, was surely just the right listener to Komako.

From 雪国 by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: Typically, いる + ず is おらず, which utilizes the humble form to prevent the phrase from sounding odd, but the form いず still exists. This use is rather rare, so it is best for you to not use it. However, it does exist. So, don't get confused when it does appear.

24. 宴会では半玉が太鼓を叩いて踊らねばならぬので、その五六人がこの家へ入らぬ日はなく、時折の滞在の間に、瀧野は彼女等の顔を見覚えてしまっていた。

Since young geisha's have to beat taiko and dance at banquets, there wasn't a day those five, six people didn't come in this house, and while they stayed occasionally, and Takino ended up remembering their faces.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

25. この家へ来なければお茶を引いていると芸者の言うのが、満更お世辞でないほど、町へ来るお客の大半はここ一軒に取られてしまうのだとすると、女中の言葉も全く信じられぬではなかった。

If you suppose that the majority of the guests that come to the town are taken in this one place to the point that what the geisha said about if she didn't come to this house that she was on break is not completely flattering, one couldn't completely disbelieve the maid's words too.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: Notice how the 連体形-ぬ is functioning as a nominal without the aid of の.

26. わが信ずる運命を^{たむ}手向け、死によって^{かた}互みの悲劇を理解しようがために、こりずまに剣を交わして戦ったのだ。

Offering the destiny I believed in, I incorrigibly fought and crossed swords in order to understand the mutual tragedy by death.

From ^{かるのみこ}軽王子と^{そとおりひめ}衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

Grammar Note: The ま in こりずま is a suffix used to show a certain condition.

27. 問うは^と一^{いつとき}時の恥^{はじと}問わぬは^{まつだい}末^{はじ}代の恥。(Proverb)

It is better to ask and be embarrassed than not ask and never know.

28. 小六が帰りがけに茶の間を覗いたら、御米は何にも^{しず}に、長火鉢に寄り掛かっていた。

As Koroku was about to go home, he took a glance around the living room, and Oyome was leaning against an oblong brazier doing nothing.

From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Dialect Note: We can assume that しず to is an old, dialectical variant of せす to.

29. きつからず緩からずで休憩をするところを見つけられず、辿った道を振り返った。

Though (the journey was) neither harsh or smooth, having not been able to find a place to rest, I turned around to where I had come.

30. 天を恨みず人を尤めず

To not spite heaven and fault no one; to recover by reflecting on oneself

Conjugation Note: 恨む・怨む used to be a 上二段 verb. What this means is that the bases of conjugation alternated between i and u. So, the 未然形 would have

been うらみ. Because it looked like a 五段 verb, it eventually became one. Thus, in Modern Japanese, 怨まず exists. However, set phrases cannot be changed.

Speech Modals with -ず

～ずに and ～ずにいられない

～ずに and ～ずにいられない mean "without" and "can not help but..." respectively and are formed with the 連用形-ず-. ～ず にはいられない variants include ～ずにはすまない, ～ずにはおかない, and ～ずにはすまさない. For more information on how these phrases, click the link for the coverage in regards to their 話し言葉 forms.

31. 勉強せずに、受験したから、落第しちゃった。

Because I took the exam without studying, I ended up failing it.

Grammar Note: You must use the 未然形-せ- of する.

32. 心配せずにはいられない。

I couldn't help but worry.

33. 懲らしめてやらずにはおかない。

I couldn't help but give him punishment.

34. 怒らせずにはすまないでしょう。

You probably can't help but get angry, right?

35. 泣き出さずにはすまさない。

I can't help but cry profusely.

～ずと

～ずと is a variant of ないでも and is often seen in the set phrase 言わずと知（し）れた. It is classical, so it would only be seen in such set phrases in the spoken language. Otherwise, it would be limited to writing styles and situations suitable for 古語的な書き言葉.

36. 言わずと知れたことだ。

It's an obvious thing.

37. 文句を言わずと話を聞け。

Listen even if you don't argue.

～に過ぎず

This is merely a form of ～に過ぎない, which is used to show that something doesn't even pass a certain extent.

38. したがって、現代かなづかい論者の一人である吉川幸次郎博士が、日本語は発音をそのままに表記し得ることを大きな特徴とし、かつその表記法の歴史は、この特徴を生かしつつ発展して来たと述べていることを引用し、発音をそのままに表記し得ることは、とりもなおさず表音式であり、表音文字＝表音式であって、現代語に基づくことと表音式との差は五十歩百歩に過ぎず、現代かなづかいが、もともと表音的性格を有している仮名の線を、さらに徹底せしめたものであってみれば、現代かなづかいは表音式だと言い切ってさしつかえないと思うと述べている福田発言は、正しい判断と言ってよい。

Consequently, Professor Yoshikawa Koujirou, who is one advocate of Modern Kana Orthography, cites that as for Japanese, as a big characteristic of being able to transcribe pronunciation and stating that that transcription's history capitalized and came to develop on this characteristic, being able to describe pronunciation as is, which is to say that it is a phonetic system, phonetic characters = phonetic system, there being a scant difference between basing it on the Modern Language or a phonetic system, Fukuda's statement which states his belief that "if Modern Kana Orthography tries to be something that furthermore completes the line of Kana which originally possesses a phonetic nature, Modern Japanese Orthography without objection should be called a phonetic system" may be judged correct. From 国語国字の根本問題 By 渡部晋太郎.

The main reason for choosing such a long sentence is that it shows how sentences in Japanese can get larger and larger the same way they can in English. Also, there are several uses of ～ず.

39. あやつは一介の庶民にすぎぬものだ。(ちょっと古風)

He is no more than a mere commoner.

～に忍びず

～に忍びず means "cannot stand to". It is synonymous to に～耐えられない. ～に忍びない is another more common form. Both forms have ～ず and ～ない follow the 未然形. It is not しのば- in this case because the original 二段活用動詞の 未然形 is used.

40. 見るに忍びぬ ^{さんじょう} 惨 状 だった。

It was a sight too gruesome to stand seeing.

41. 物を捨てるのは忍びない。

I can't stand throwing things away.

42. 捨てるには忍ばないと、彼はポケットに ^い 入れた。

Not able to stand throwing it away, he put it in his pocket.

～を問わず

1. To ask someone about something, to inquire, to question.
2. To raise an issue, to bring to account; to accuse of.
3. To question about whether that much ability or price.
4. を問わず means "without regard to" and is often with いかん.

43. 指導者の真価が問われている。

The mentor's true value is being questioned.

44. 彼は理由のいかんを問わず、激怒（げきど）していた。

Without regards to reason, he was inflamed with rage.

45. 男女を問わず、カダフィーが反乱軍を皆殺ししている。

Without regards to men and women, Qaddafi is massacring the rebel forces.

46. 強盗罪に問われる。

To be accused of theft.

47. 民意を問う。

To question the popular will.

～ずじまい

This is a particularly odd expression. As you can imagine by looking at it, it is simply expressing a circumstance of ending up not doing something. This is actually occasionally used in the spoken language, and it is often treated as creative language. It is rather unique that voicing occurs with しまい.

48. 食べてしまおう、言えずじまい。

I'll eat (them) all, not able to say a word.

From Chocolate Prayer by DIV

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What base does -ず follow?
2. Create a sentence with -ず being in the Ren'youkei or Shuushikei.
3. Create a sentence with a speech modal utilizing -ず.
4. Create a sentence using the third column of bases of -ず.
5. Create a sentence using -ぬ, the evolved form of -ず.

Advanced II

第251課: The Causative III: ～かす Verbs

第252課: さ入れ言葉

第253課: Prefixes

第254課: Native Suffixes I: Nominal I

第255課: Native Suffixes II: Nominal II

第256課: Native Suffixes III: Adjectival & Adverbial

第257課: Native Suffixes IV: Verbal

第258課: Sino-Japanese Suffixes I

第259課: Sino – Japanese Suffixes II

第260課: Suffixes of Appearance: ～だらけ, ～まみれ, ～ずくめ, ～めく, ～げ, & ～気

第261課: Slang る Verbs

第262課: Honorifics VI: Irregular Verbs II

第263課: ク語法

第264課: The Causative IV: ～しめる & ～させ給う

第265課: Interrogatives IV: Rare Words

第266課: 擬声語 IV: From Chinese

第267課: The Auxiliary ～たる: ～たるや, ～たるもの, & ～たりとも

第268課: 美化語

第269課: The Particles とて & とも

第270課: The Particle して

第271課: Dialectical 自他動詞

第272課: The Particle つ

第273課: The Particle しき

第274課: Punctuation

第275課: Romanization Systems

第276課: Abbreviations

第277課: 音訓 (ON & KUN Readings)

第278課: 送り仮名

第279課: 四つ仮名

第280課: 変体仮名

第281課: 名乗り

第282課: 部首

第283課: 国字

第284課: 当て字

第285課: 旧字体 & 新字体

第286課: 略字 & 幽霊字

第287課: Phonology I: Basic Information

第288課: Phonology II: Pitch (高低アクセント)

第289課: Phonology III: 連濁

第290課: Phonology IV: 露出形 VS 被覆形

第291課: Phonology V: 撥音添加 & 撥音化

第292課: Phonology VI: 促音化

第293課: Phonology VII: サ行と八行の揺れ

第294課: Etymology

第295課: 和製英語

第296課: 幼児語

第297課: Verlan (倒語)

第298課: 敵性語禁止

第299課: Idioms IV: 四字熟語

第300課: Idioms V: 諺

第251課: The Causative III: ～かす

The next wave of verbs that are transitive but created from a causative element are verbs ending in the suffix ～かす. The first thing that comes to mind when seeing these two sounds together is カス (scum). This is a very useful insult, but leaving jokes aside, this lesson will be about a somewhat productive ending that you will inevitably come across most frequently in casual situations.

The majority of verbs with ～かす are rougher/stronger phrases limited to casual contexts, but this is not the case for all of them. The frequency of this suffix depends on the dialect, but Standard Japanese has plenty of examples for us to study.

～かす

When confronted with examples of verbs ending in the suffix ～かす, some think that is a casual ending of recent origin. In reality, though, verbs with it have existed for as long as Japanese has been written down. The かす we see appears to derive from the transitive form of できる, できかす. This verb comes about from simply adding す to deki-. できかす is equivalent to うまくやる. If speakers misinterpreted this as inserting a か before す, then this explains its appearance in other verb forms.

Next we have the similar looking しでかす, which is used in almost completely contrary situations of contriving and failing. Although しでかす is most often written as 仕出かす in 漢字, it may also be spelled as 為出かす. The original meaning of しでかす was し(い)だす. This verb, which still exists as しだす, means "to start to do something". The intransitive form of 出す is 出る. This makes it more obvious that か is what was inserted. From here, we have a motivation for inserting か into other verbs.

For the most part, か optionally appears in transitive forms to create a rougher expression. The vulgar nature of カス as in the noun should not be ignored as a motivation for most of the examples being rough in nature today as folk etymology can do wonders.

Rarely is it an integral part of the phrase in Standard Japanese, but such examples do exist (寝かす, 唆す). However, its appearance in a variety of words throughout the language's dialect suggests that かす has indeed been used as a rather productive ending. Whether or not it has a causative meaning or is used to simply make a transitive verb depends on the individual verb. If a verb with かす has no 自動詞形, it's fair to say that the form has since disappeared.

More Example Words

1. また同じ失敗をやらかしたくない。

I don't want to make the same mistake again.

Word Note: 遣らかす is a ぞんざいな言い方 for やる and is generally fully written in ひらがな. It may also be a rough way of saying 食べる・飲む, but this is really rare and unheard of to many.

2. 内緒にしてたんだけど、コロラド州にいたときに、大麻を 1 服やらかしたんだ。

I've kept it as a secret, but when I was in Colorado, I smoked a joint of weed.

3. 真面目な話を茶化してごめんなさい。

I'm sorry for making a joke out of something serious.

Spelling Note: 誤魔化す・胡麻化す are both 当て字.

4. おちゃらかすんじゃないです。

I'm not making a joke of anything.

5. 部屋を散らかさないで。

Don't mess up the room.

Word Note: 散らかす can be viewed as the transitive form of 散らかる, but it is often interchangeable with 散らす. Both 散らす and 散らかす can be used as supplementary verbs to describe rough, random, and or disorderly conduct. 散らかす has a rougher feeling. It fits very well when making a mess of things.

6. ゴミを撒き散ら（か）す人がいっぱいいる。

There are a lot of people who scatter trash.

7. 魔法を駆使して群がる敵を蹴散ら（か）そう。

Let's scatter our gathering enemies by commanding our magic.

8a. お茶碗うるかしといて。（北海道弁）

8b. お茶碗冷やしといて。（茨城弁）

8c. お茶碗浸しといて。

Soak the tea cups.

方言 Note: 冷やす means to "cool down", but in some regions it oddly means 浸す (to soak). In 北海道, we can find the ～かす verb うるかす for 浸す. This appears to come from the verb 潤す (to moisten). 冷やかす either sounds somewhat archaic, slangish, or dialectical for the meaning of "to cool down", but it is frequently used with the meaning "to ridicule", undoubtedly from the original sense of the word.

使い分け Note: 冷やかす is very similar to からかう and 茶化す. All of these words are used for describing when you say something to amuse oneself that makes someone mad, embarrasses and or troubles someone. からかう can mean "to ridicule" towards non-human things and via actions other than words, which is not the case for 冷やかす and 茶化す.

語源 Note: 茶化す's origin is uncertain, but it does have other forms like おちゃらかす and ちゃらかす and can be viewed as a ～かす verb. Some think that it is

from チャルメラ (an oboe used at ramen stands) turned into a verb by using チャ. Some think it is merely a contraction of 茶と化す (to turn into something of ridicule). This use of 茶 to mean "ridicule" comes from 茶にする which started from meaning "to take a break" to "to make fun of". This could still be the origin even with the other forms because if people were to then treat 化す as ～かす and know it should be used with the 未然形, ちゃらかす would naturally come about. Regardless of origin, these '～かす verbs' are relatively new.

9. あんた、人の話をおひゃらかすなよ。 (Dialectical)

Don't be ridiculing what others are saying.

10. 全く犯罪を行う意思がない人を唆すことは教唆犯となります。

Alluring someone with absolutely no criminal intent is criminal instigation.

Form Note: 唆す does not have a 自動詞. Neither does 見せびらかす, 誑かす, or ちょろまかす.

11. 誑かされる人が存在する限り、哲学はなくなる。

For as long as there are those who are deceived, philosophy will not go away.

12. 教師というのは知識をひけらかしているわけではないのだ。

It's not that a teacher is flaunting knowledge.

13. あの人は、質問をほとんどはぐらかした。

That person dodged almost all of the questions.

14. 人の目を盗んでちょろまかす。

To deceive and steal without being noticed.

15. ちょっとあいつをだまくらかしてやれ。

Swindle that guy!

16. 弟はまた宿題を途中まで（やって）ほったらかしたよ。

My little brother left his homework half-done again.

17. 人前で自分の富を見せびらかす。

To show off one's riches in front of others.

18. 赤ん坊を寝かす。

To lay a baby down.

Table of Contents

第252課: さ入れ言葉

There are few instances in Japanese grammar where さ gets inserted for apparently no reason. There are three different instances of this in Japanese.

In the Causative

One application of さ入れ言葉 is found within the causative conjugations. The causative conjugation is believed to be derived from the auxiliary す, which is etymologically the same as する attaching to the 未然形. When used with 一段動詞 and 来る, さ would be inserted, which gives us ~さす・~させる today.

	五段動詞 (読む)		一段動詞 (分ける)
語幹	nom-	語幹	wake-
終止形	nom-u	終止形	wake-ru
使役形	nom-ase-	使役形	wake-sase-

Here, it is clear that the inclusion of さ in the right-hand column is a completely natural and correct. Now, consider what's happening now (at least for a small subset of people).

	五段動詞 (読む)		一段動詞 (分ける)
使役形	? yoma- asase -	使役形	* tabe- sasase -

This is what is now meant by さ入れ言葉 because an unnecessary さ is being inserted. This phenomenon only affects 五段動詞, as you can imagine if it's already occurred in 一段動詞 in the past. Therefore some people have proposed that this phenomenon has come about from an analogical leveling with the causative element "sase" found with 一段動詞.

A few things have recently come to light about the use of さ入れ言葉 in today's society.

1. It is a language change that has begun to increase in usage in recent years.
2. It is in the beginning stages of spreading. It is forecast to increase in an S shape over time.
3. There is a tendency for it to appear in ceremonious speech. The more formal the situation, the more likely it is to be used. It does not appear in idioms or nominalized expressions.
4. Sometimes, there are combinations where a combination may be considered a correct usage of the causative or an instance of さ入れ言葉. For example, consider the word 飛ばす. If treated as a transitive verb pair of 飛ぶ, 飛ばさせる is the logical causative form. If you analyze it as the causative form of 飛ぶ, then this form would be an example of さ入れ言葉. This all depends on whether there is an object for the verb or not. In the following example, it is a clear case of さ入れ言葉.

Ex. ちょっと時間の関係で飛ばさしていただきまして…

I would like to skip through with a small concern of time.

5. It possesses nuances not necessarily found in the “correct usage” of the causative.
6. It is becoming grammaticalized with ～させていただく. It is used with this pattern more than anything else. It is marginally seen with ～てもらう, ～た, ～ない, ～る. However, every other conjugation is not really attested. Thus, it may become the case that さ入れ言葉 will only occur with ～させて {いただく・もらう} within a few decades and potentially become standard. Nevertheless, its usage as a long way to go before it is used equally with the current standard form.
7. It is only used with verbs that imply speaker self-control.
8. It does not appear when double さ would occur.

9. It hardly ever shows up with verbs at or above five morae. This is understandable because if this change is believed to be in the beginning stage, you would expect it to pop up in short but very frequently used verbs.
10. Overall, women use this slightly more than men, which is evidence that this phenomenon is its beginning stage as women are the pioneers of language change. It is important to note, though, that there is a tendency for women to use this more the more formal of a situation they find themselves in, and the opposite trend can be said for men, which is probably due to a prescriptive grammar take on things
11. People born before 1940s don't really use this. People born after this time are progressively using it more. Nevertheless, the percentage of people who use *さ入れ言葉* is still quite small.
12. This pattern is spreading via the 関東地方, but whether it is being spread through people after relocation or it's something being picked up through other means is uncertain.
13. It is most frequent in spontaneous speech. Meaning, if there is any preparation involved in the delivery of a message, it is more likely not going to be used. Thus, there is no trend suggesting that this pattern has started to seep in *書き言葉*. This is further evidence to suggest that it is overall in the beginning stage of diffusion.
14. This pattern is still viewed as an error that should be fixed. However, because it is used to elevate politeness, when it is used, the context requires more elaborate honorific speech. This explains the demographic demonstrations mentioned thus far.

With ～すぎる

With the adjective ない, さ must be inserted. This gives なさすぎる. ~すぎる should attach directly to the stem of ~ない. The inclusion of さ to the auxiliary ~ない to make it more flowing is catching on among some young people, but it is not deemed to be correct Japanese. There may also be cases when ~なさすぎる is inappropriate for pragmatic reasons in particular contexts.

1. 彼は何もできなさすぎる。 △/○

He can't do anything.

Usage Note: できなさすぎる and できなさすぎる do exist in the sense that there are Japanese people who use them, but this particularly instance happens to be in the grey zone for whatever reason.

2. 彼は世間をあまりにも知らなさすぎる。 ○

He knows too little of the world.

Using さ入れ with 少ない or 汚い which naturally have "nai" in the word is not appropriate and would be a misspeak. For words created with the suffix ~ない for emphasis, the use of さ depends on the purpose, but its appearance is of the same vein as its appearance with the auxiliary ~ない.

With ~そうだ

With ~そうだ meaning "to seem", it is obligatory that さ be inserted when used with the adjectives よい and ない. Nowadays, it is common to さ with ない even when it is used as an auxiliary, which is traditionally not correct.

Though percentages of speakers who add さ to these additional words is small, there are natives who attach it to other adjectives only two morae long. For instance, 濃い + そう → 濃そうだ is standard, but a very small minority uses 濃さそうだ. This is no doubt dialectical, but it's fascinating that it exists. Another example is 憂い. This adjective is normally replaced by 物憂い. What's interesting is that さ is often seen inserted when 物憂い is used with ~そうだ. Now, because

of the limited use of 憂い, 憂さそうだ would be hard to attest. So, it is safe to say it practically does not exist. 酸い, now usually 酸っぱい except in set phrase or some dialects, would also fit into this category, but 酸っぱさそうだ is not valid, and it is unclear whether 酸さそうだ is.

Classroom Usage: You should only use さ with 良い and 無い. Although it is linguistically correct to say other instantiations exist, your teachers seek what is thought to be true Standard Japanese. Thus, it is best to avoid things that may be given an X on test.

Table of Contents

第253課: Prefixes

Prefixes, 接頭語, are key into understanding hundreds of phrases in Japanese. If you are unable to find a word in a dictionary, it is probably because the word you are looking for has a prefix or a suffix.

What is a Prefix?

A prefix attaches to the front of words to add a given meaning. Different from suffixes, a prefix will never change the part of speech of a word. In terms of etymology, there are three kinds of nouns in Japanese: native, Sino-Japanese, and loan word. Likewise, this also reflects in prefixes. However, nouns and prefixes are not limited to each other based on etymology.

Prefixes Attached to Nouns & Adjectives

Although there are some that may have a few possible purposes, prefixes are generally one phrase definitions or are taught as such. The chart below illustrates the most common and easy prefixes you will see and should know in Japanese. Definitions of example words should show whether the word is a noun or an adjective.

Prefix	仮名	Meaning(s)	Examples
亜	あ	<ul style="list-style-type: none">To apply to; sub-; semi--ous acid	亜熱帯 (あねったい) Sub-tropics
相	あい	<ul style="list-style-type: none">TogetherAdds a formal nuance to a word.	相等 (あいひと) しい Equal to each other
空き	あき	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Empty	空き缶 (あきかん) Empty can 空き瓶 (あきびん) Empty bottle

幾	いく	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> How many? 	幾久（いくきさ しく Forever
薄	うす	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Light 	薄明（うすあ）かり Dim light
小	お	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small; thin 	小川（おがわ） Brook
御	お	See Lesson 127	
大	おお	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Big; wide; a lot Substantially; utmost Respectfully shows praise 	大違（おおちが）い Completely different
御	お（ん） み	See Lesson 146	
御	おん	See Lesson 146	
過	か	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Excessive 	過保護（かほご） Over-protection
各	かく	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each 	各国（かっこく） Every nation
金	きん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Placed before a money amount 	金 1000 円（きんせんえん） Cash 1000 yen
小	こ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small Shows scorn or hate Around 	小雨（こさめ） Shower 小賢（こざか） しい Smart-alecky
御	ご	See Lesson 146	
再	さい	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Re- 	再選挙（さいせんきょ） Reelection
最	さい	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -est 	最高級（さいこうきゅう） Top-class
純	じゅん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pure 	純愛（じゅんあい） Pure love

準	じゅん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Semi- 	準決勝（じゅんけっしょう） Semifinal
諸	しょ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Every; all 	諸国（しょこく） Every nation
新	しん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> New 	新世界（しんせかい） New world
全	ぜん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All; whole 	全責任（ぜんせきにん） Full responsibility
総	そう	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All 	総利益（そうりえき） Gross profit
第	だい	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Number... 	第3（だいさん） Number 3
大	だい	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A degree, scale, or situa- tion is severe Excellent; high in rank 	大首都圏（だいしゅとけん） Greater metropolitan area
築	ちく	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Years since construc- tion 	築5年 Five years since construction
超	ちょう	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Over- 	超大国（ちょうたいこく） Superpower
当	とう	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This Our 	当問題（とうもんだい） This issue
共	とも	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Together 	共働き（ともばたらき） Both working
初	はつ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A first First in the year 	初霜（はつしも） First frost of the year
反	はん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anti- 	反政府（はんせいふ） Anti- government

半	はん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Half; incomplete; small 	半ズボン (はんずぼん) Shorts
非	ひ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Un-; non-; an- 	非公式 (ひこうしき) In-formal
一	ひと	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One; a little Shows a past time 	一時 (ひととき) A time
不	ふ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Un-; non- 	不必要 (ふひつよう) Unnecessary
無・不	ぶ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Un-; non- 	無意識 (むいしき) Un-conscious
不可	ふか	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Can't do 	不可思議 (ふかしぎ) Mys-terious
古	ふる	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Old 	古本 (ふるほん) Used book 古新聞 (ふるしんぶん) Used newspaper
本	ほん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This Real, true; main 	本店 (ほんてん) Home of-fice
真 (ん・つ)	ま (ん・つ)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Really, genuine; right in the Relating animals 	真ん丸 (まんまる) Per-fect circle
毎	まい	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Each time 	毎年 (まいとし) Every year
豆	まめ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Small 	豆鉄砲 (まめてっぽう) Popgun
丸	まる	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whole; all 	丸キロ (まるきろ) Whole kilogram

御	み	See Lesson 146	
未	み	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not yet; un- 	未完成（みかんせい） In-complete
明	みょう	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The next 	明後日（みょうごにち） The day after tomorrow
無	む	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Un-; non- 	無意味（むいみ） Meaningless
物	もの	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whole thing feeling a certain way 	物悲（ものがな）しい Melancholy
諸	もろ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All; both, together 	諸刃（もろは） Double-edged
手	て	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strengthens meaning of an adjective. 	手厚（てあつ）い Cordial 手強（てごわ）い Formidable 手緩（てぬる）い Lenient
悪	わる	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unpleasant To go overboard 	悪足掻（わるあが）き Useless efforts

Prefixes with Verbs

Unlike for nouns, there aren't that many prefixes that attach to verbs. Of the ones that do exist, there are often variants. Below is a chart that illustrates basically all the prefixes you'll see before a verb in Japanese--there's just not that many of them.

Note: あい- from above may also be used with verbs.

Prefix	仮名	Meaning(s)	Examples
打ち	うち	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A little 	打ち明ける（うちあける） To confide

押し	おし	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To do strongly; to do purposelessly 	押し上げる（おしあげる） To boost
押っ	おっ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> At once; with vigor Strong expression of chasing Completely 	押っつける（おっつける） To force
掻き	かき	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To do all at once 	掻き集める（かきあつめる） To scramble
差し・っ	さし・っ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Completely; positively 	差し伸べる（さしのべる） To reach out
すっ	すっ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strengthens meaning 	すっ飛ぶ（すっとぶ） To rush away
立ち	たち	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strengthens meaning or emphasis 	立ち向かう（たちむかう） To stand up to
突き・っ・ん	つき・っ・ん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strengthens the meaning of an action 	突き刺す（つきさす） To stab
取り・っ	とり・っ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sets up and strengthens one's emphasis 	取り戻す（とりもどす） To recover; get back
引き・っ・ん	ひき・っ・ん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Puts more stress on something 	引き留める（ひきとめる） To keep back
ぶち・ぶっ・ぶん	ぶち・ぶっ・ぶん	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Strengthens the meaning of an action 	ぶち抜く（ぶちぬく） To break in
吹っ	ふっ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To do well vigorously 	吹っ飛ぶ（ふっとぶ） To blow off
罷り	まかり	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To strengthen one's stress on something 	罷り通る（まかりとおる） To be justified

Prefixes for Loanwords

With the influx of foreign expressions, so have the amount of foreign prefixes. Below is a list of some of the most commonly seen prefixes for loan words in Japanese.

Prefix	Meaning(s)	Examples
アンチ	Anti-	アンチテーゼ Antithesis
インター	Inter-	インターセプト Intercept
ウルトラ	Ultra-	ウルトラマリン Ultramarine
エレクトロ	Electro-	エレクトロニクス Electronics
オート	Auto-	オートショー Auto-show
グッド	Good	グッドデザイン Good design
サンタ	Saint	サンタクロース Santa Claus
スーパー	Super-	スーパーマーケット Supermarket
セミ	Semi-	セミプロ Semipro
トリプル	Tri-	トリプルプレー Triple play
ネオ	Neo-	ネオコン Neo-con
ノン	Non-	ノンストップ Nonstop
パン	Pan-	パンアメリカニズム Pan-americanism
プレ	Pre-	プレオリンピック Pre-olympics
ポスト	Post-	ポストモダニズム Post-modernism
マクロ	Macro-	マクロウィルス Macro virus
マイクロ	Micro-	マイクロチップ Microchip
マルチ	Multi-	マルチタスキング Multitasking
ミニ	Mini-	ミニカー Minicar
ギガ	Giga-	ギガバイト Gigabyte
キロ	Kiro-	キログラム Kilogram

デカ	Deca-	デカグラム Decagram
デシ	Deci-	デシミリ Decimeters
テラ	Tera-	テラバイト Terabyte
ナノ	Nano-	ナノメートル Nanometer
ピコ	Pico-	ピコメートル Picometer
フェムト	Femto-	フェムトメートル Femtometer
ヘクト	Hecto-	ヘクトメートル Hectometer

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. In terms of etymology, what are the three kinds of nouns?
2. What may prefixes attach to?
3. Try making your own words out of prefixes and give a definition. Then, check and see if the word is real by using online or book sources!

第254課: Native Suffixes I: Nominal

The next couple of lessons will be about suffixes.

Native Nominal Suffixes 1-25

1. 荒し (あらし) means "troll".

1. 墓荒し

An internet troll

2. 顔 (がお) shows the "face" or "look" of something.

笑い顔	Smiley face	得意顔	Triumphant look	訳知り顔	Know-it-all look
-----	-------------	-----	-----------------	------	------------------

3. 掛かり (がかり) attaches to nouns to show that something is dependent on or resembles something. With verbs it means "with these course of events".

2. 行きがかり上、そうなってしまった。

After going to this course of events, it became so.

3. 一人掛かりでやった仕事だ。

It's only a one-man job.

4. しばい
芝居 掛かりな声

A voice resembling theatre

5. おやが 親 掛 かりの 位 。

A position dependent on one's parents.

6. 神がかり的な能力

Exceptional ability

4. 掛け (かけ) attaches to nouns and the 連用形 of verbs. With intransitive verbs it shows that something is in the middle of something. With nouns, it means "rack".

7. タオル掛け

Towel rack

8. 壊れかけ

In the middle of collapsing

5. 掛け (がけ) with nouns means "to put on". With transitive verbs it shows something is in the middle of doing something. With 一人 (ひとり) , 二人 (ふたり) , etc., it shows how many people can sit. With numbers it means "tenths".

9. ^{たすき}襷 掛け

Tucking up sleeves

10. 帰りがけに店に^よ寄ってきた。

I came by the store on the way home.

11. 10人掛けのソファを見たところ！

I just saw a sofa that could fit 10 people!

12. 定価の6掛けで古本を買いました。

I bought used books 40% off.

13. 7人掛けシート

Seven person seat

Culture Note: In the majority of trains in Japan, seats often sit seven people and three seats separated by doors on both sides of the train is the norm.

6. がし attaches to the 命令形 of verbs to create phrases that push an opinion.

これ見よがし。	Out of display.	聞こえよがしに言う。	Talk at someone.
---------	-----------------	------------	------------------

7. ～方（かた） → Lesson 81.

8. 柄（がら） attaches to nouns to show a suitable condition.

14. 土地柄

Local color

15. ^{じせつがら}時節柄 ^{じあい}ご自愛下さい。

Please take care of yourself during these times.

16. ^{しょうばいがら}商売柄 朝が早い。

The morning is early for the nature of this business.

9. 絡み（がらみ） is used after words expressing age or price to show "about" or "around". And, it's after nouns to show there is a close connection with something.

17. ^{こうせい}厚生がらみの国際的な問題です。

It's an international problem concerning welfare.

18. バッテリーがらみの問題

Problems concerning batteries

19. 1 万円がらみの品物だ。 (ほとんど使われていない)

These are goods around 10,000 yen in worth.

10. 刻み (きざみ) is equivalent to "-毎に" and "-置きに" and means "every...".

20. 五センチ刻み。

Every 5 centimeters.

21. 百円刻みに^{りょうきん}料^{りょうきん}金^{りょうきん}が上がります。

The fee goes up every 100 yen.

11. きて attaches to nouns and shows what is the most...in something.

22. 彼は我が校^わきての^{しゅうさい}秀才^{しゅうさい}です。

He is the brightest student in our school.

23. 当代きての名優。

Great actor of our time.

12. 競 (くら) attaches to the 連用形 of verbs to show some sort of contest.

駆けっ競	Footrace	睨 (にら) め競	Staring contest
------	----------	-----------	-----------------

13. ぐるみ shows that the subject is completely included.

24. 家族ぐるみでその ^{なんもん}難 ^く問 に取り組みました。

The entire family dealt with the difficult problem.

25. 村ぐるみ = 村人が全員で

Forming a crowd

14. くだり, which comes from the word 下り, attaches to names or words of place to show a far distance from a certain reference point. This is not widely used.

26. 青森くだりまで行ってしまった。

I ended up going as far as Aomori.

27. こんな田舎くだりまで、よく来てくださいました。

I'm very grateful that you have come all this way to the country for us.

15. 気 (け) attaches to nouns and the stems of adjectives/verbs to show sensing of a certain condition.

28. ^{いやけ}嫌 気がさしてるぜ。

I'm tired of it.

29. ^{さむけ}寒 気がする。

To feel chilly.

30. ^{どくけ}毒 気に当てられる。

To be overwhelmed.

31. ひとけ
人 気 のない町。

An abandoned town.

16. 子（こ） shows a child of a particular nature. With either nouns or the 連用形 of verbs, it shows a person of a certain occupation. When attached to a place, 子 shows birthplace. This suffix also helps create female names.

32. 明治っ子

A person of the Meiji Period

33. 恵美子

Emiko

34. 彼は売れっ子の作家ですね。

He's a popular writer, isn't he?

17. -っこ is a colloquial version of すること. It's often attached to verbs in the potential form and then followed by ない to **explosively show incapability**. It may also show competition with the 連用形 of verbs, smallness with onomatopoeia, and make slang variants out of common nouns.

35. あいつには分かりっこないな。

He'll never understand.

36. にゃんこ

Kitty cat

37. な
慣れっこになる。

To become used to.

38. 僕は^か駆けっこで一番になった。

I got first in a race.

39. ^{にら}睨めっこしよう！

Let's have a staring contest!

40. ほら、台風が学校をぺしゃんこにしたんだ。

Look, the typhoon leveled the school!

41. 彼には日本語が話せっこない。

He'll never be able to speak Japanese.

42. 歌えっこない！

I can't sing!

43. お腹がマジでぺしゃんこだぞ。

I'm so hungry!

Sentence Note: The last sentence would be most likely used by someone really thin.

Corner	隅 → 隅っこ	Edge	端 → 端っこ	Root 根 → 根っこ
--------	---------	------	---------	--------------

18. ごかし = one is actually planning one's own interests while pretending the other.

44. おためぐかし

Self-aggrandizement under pretense of aiding another

45. 親切ごかし

Acting nice while actually playing the devil's advocate.

19. - 越し means "over" and may be used in a sense of doing something over some sort of distance such as one's shoulders or in a time sense where it shows a condition continuing throughout a given time period.

46. 窓越しに話しかける。

To talk out the window.

47. かたご のぞ こ
肩 越しに 覗 き込む。

To look over one's shoulders.

48. 私たちは10年 {越し・来} の付き合いです。

We've known each other for over 10 years.

20. ごっこ = game of mimicry.

鬼ごっこ	Tag	電車ごっこ	Make-believe train	お医者さんごっこ	Playing doctor
------	-----	-------	--------------------	----------	----------------

21. ごと attaches to nouns showing inclusion in "all".

49. リンゴを ^{かわ}皮 ごと食べる。

Eat the apple with all of the skin.

50. ^{ふく}服 ごと放り込む。

To shovel off all clothes.

51. ^{かせ}枷 ^はごと果てない空へただ飛び立つ。

All of the shackles will just fly away into the endless sky.

22. 沙汰（ざた） is often after nouns and the 連用形 to mean "affair" or "gossip".

色恋沙汰	Love affair	取り沙汰	Current gossip	警察沙汰	Police case
------	-------------	------	----------------	------	-------------

23. 様（ざま） can attach to nouns to show a certain direction. After the 連用形 of a verb, it either shows the course of a condition or action or give a sense of "just as...".

52. ひきよう
卑 怯 な生き様

A cowardly way of living

53. 授業が続け様に 3 つあります。

I have three classes back to back.

54. さか
逆さまの夢へと堕ちる。 (Unvoiced example)

To fall in a backwards dream.

55. きぎ よこざま たお
木々が風で 横 様に 倒 れた。

The trees fell down sideways by the wind.

Reading Note: 横様 = よこざま・よこさま

56. ふ む ざま
振り向き 様に彼をにらみつけた。

I turned and glared at him.

57.

こちよう
「あつ。小 蝶 さんが帰る、小蝶さんが帰る」

かなや よろこ さけ
と、金 彌 はぱつと起き上がって、喜 びいっぱい 叫 びながら部屋を飛び出しざま、
「小蝶さん」

にぎや
賑 かな笑い声に続いて、

雨、雨、降れ降れ

母さんが

じゃ め
蛇 の目でお迎え

うれしいな

ピッチピッチ

チャップチャップ

ランランラン

ようき おさな
陽 氣に調子づいた 幼 い歌声が、玄関の方へ遠ざかって行った。

"Ah! Kocho-san's coming home, Kocho-san's coming home!", Kanami yelled full of joy as she sprang up, and just as she dashed out of the room yelling "Ko-chan", she continued with a lively laughter singing, "

Rain fall, rain fall!

Mom has come to see me with her umbrella

How happy am I!

Splishy splishy splashy splashy

Lalala

", and her warm, young, melodious singing voice went all the way to the entrance.

From 童謡 by 川端康成.

Passage Note: That song is the first part of a famous 童謡 (children's song) called あめふり. The onomatopoeia is rather unique to the song itself, so it is rather difficult to adequately translate them into English.

24. しな attaches to the 連用形 of verbs to mean "at time of doing...".

58. 寝しなに酒を飲むと、ふつかよ二日酔いがかかる。

If you drink sake when you're going to sleep, you'll get a hangover.

59. 出しなに電話がかかってきた。

I got a call on my phone when I was leaving.

60. 泣きしなに転んでしまった。

I fell at the time I was crying.

61. 隣の男は横浜を出しなに薄目をあけてだけで、だらしなく居眠り続けた。

The man right by just halfway opened his eyes leaving Yokohama, and he continued to carelessly doze.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

25. 凌ぎ (しのぎ) = "to tide over" and is idiomatic in translation. It follows nominals.

62. たいくつ 退屈 しのぎ

To kill time

63. その場しのぎの手段で切り抜ける。

To get over at half measures.

第255課 : Native Suffixes II: Nominal II

After this lesson, we will transition to native endings that result in non-nominal phrases.

Native Nominal Suffixes 26-53

26. ～^ず好き follows nouns to describe people that like a certain thing a lot or a character that is liked a lot by people.

1. 夫は外出好きです。

My husband likes to go out.

2. 「あの人は、よく外国旅行をしますね」「よほど^{ぼうけんず}冒険好きなんだろう」
"That person often travels overseas" "He must be quite adventurous"

3. 人好きの^{せいしつ}性質

An amiable personality

27. ～^ずじまい means that something wasn't done and something accidentally ended up happening--しないで終わってしまった。As you can see, it comes from the combination of the old negative auxiliary ^ず and 終い (end) voiced.

4. 結局彼と会わずじまいだった。

I ended up not meeting with him.

28. ～^ず尽く attaches to nouns and the stems of adjectives. It either shows that something relies entirely on something, something has the sole purpose of something, or what something is based off of. Most of the words used with this are uncommon and are becoming restricted to formal writing.

5. 納得ずくで解約する。 (経済)

To dissolve with mutual consent.

6. 腕ずくで強い相手を倒す。

To beat a strong enemy by might.

7a. 算盤ずくで戦う。

7b. 計算ずくで戦う。 (より自然)

To fight calculatively.

8. 欲得ずくで引き受けた仕事ではない。

This is not a job I took on just for gain.

9. 欲得ずくの結婚をする。

To marry for the money.

10. 力ずくで家に押し入る。

To enter a house by force.

11. 腕ずくで押し伏せる。

To hold down someone's arms with brute force.

29. ~^ぜ攻め means "offense/attack" and attaches to nouns to show **bombardment**. In doing so, 攻め becomes voiced as ぜめ.

12. 守りから攻めに転じる一手は賢いのか。

Is switching to the offensive from the defensive a wise move?

13. 次の一手で守りから攻めに転じる！

I'll switch to offensive from defensive with this next move!

14. ひょうろうぜ 兵糧 攻め 敵を こうふく 降伏 させる。

To force surrender with starvation.

15. 質問攻めにする。

To bombard with questions.

16. 我々は広告攻めに^あ遭っている。

We are bombarded with advertisements.

17. 誰もが毎日電子メールに {やられています・^{へきえき}辟易 しています} 。

Everyone is being overwhelmed by e-mails every day.

30. ~だてら shows that something is unfitting of normal quality. This is old-fashioned and essentially not used.

18. 女だてらってよく言われますが、男だてらって言いませんね。

"Unladylike" is used frequently, but we don't say "unmanly-like".

19. 親だてらにいらぬ世話を焼く。(古い言い方)

To meddle unlike that of a parent.

31. ~^た垂れ is a pejorative equivalent to "-ass" and attaches to nouns or adjectives.

20. しみったれ

Stingy a**.

21. 馬鹿垂れ

Dumba**

22. くそったれ

S%*#head

32. ~付 (つ・づ) け may either be attached to the 連用形 of a verb to show what one always does or attached to a day as "づけ" to show a schedule.

23. こちらは行きつけの図書館です。

This is the library that I always go to.

24. 六日付けの^{はつれい}発令

Proclamation for the sixth

25. 掛かり^づ付けの医者

Family doctor

33. ~^づ詰め shows that an action or condition is continuing. Attach to the 連用形 of verbs.

26. 歩き詰めでくたくただ。

I was exhausted due to continuous walking.

27. 立ち詰めで働いていた。

I have been working while continuing to stand up.

34. ~^づ連れ shows a company of people.

28. 旅の道連れ

A traveling companion.

29. 三人連れでいればいい。

It's good to be in groups of threes.

30. 家族連れでハイキングに行く。

To go hiking with one's family in tow.

35. ～手 is attached to the 連用形 of verbs and denotes the action doer.

31. あいつはくどい話し手だな。

He's a windy speaker, isn't he?

32. 彼はいつも ^{ちゅういぶか} 注意 深い聞き手です。

He is always an alert listener.

33. 書き手

Writer

36. ～ ^{どお} 通 し, like ～詰め, shows that something continues as such. It too attaches to the 連用形 of verbs.

34. 雪は夜 ^{よどお} 通 し降り続いた。

It snowed all night long.

35. 立ち通しでした。

I was kept standing.

37. ～^{どお}通り follows nouns meaning "Street/Avenue" or "in accordance with". Do not confuse with ～通し.

36. 彼女の住所はウェスト・パーク通り 6 番です。
Her address is 6 West Park Street.

37. サンセット大通り
Sunset Boulevard

38. 自分の思い通りにする。
To have it one's own way.

39. 求刑の^{けっか}結果だが、^{よそ}予想^{どお}通りだ。
These are the results of the prosecution; it was just as expected.

40. 概ね^{へいじょう}平常^{どお}通りです。
Things are basically just as normal.

38. ～並み means "average/ordinary" As a suffix, it may show a line of similar things such as houses, everything in the same condition, or something of a same level or kind.

41. ウィキペディアはブリタニカ並みに正確だと思います。
I think that Wikipedia is as accurate as Britannica.

42. 軒並みが^{かいめつ}壊滅した。
The row of houses were completely destroyed.

43. 世間並み

Ordinary

44. 山並み（の 輪郭^{りんかく}）が見える。

To be able to see the outline of the row of mountains.

45. 七月並みの気温です。

This is average July temperatures.

46. この種の顔写真は、誰でもひとしなみに指名手配犯のように見せてしまう。

This kind of face photo ends up showing anyone equally like a wanted criminal.

From 火車 by 宮部みゆき.

Word Note: ひとしなみ, spelled in 漢字 as 等し並, is a 形容動詞 made with the combination of 並み and the stem of 等しい

39. ～抜く as a suffix in the form ～抜き means "without".

47. 塩抜きのポテトチップを買えるかな。

I wonder if you can buy potato chips without salt.

48. 砂糖抜きでお願いします。

Without sugar please.

49. 昼飯抜きで仕事をすると、健康を損^{そこ}なってしまう。

If you work without lunch, you'll end up losing your health.

50. しみ^し抜きをする。

To remove stains.

40. ～^ば栄え attaches to the 連用形 of verbs and is used to show a heard or shown advantage. It is limited to the verbs 見る and 聞く.

51. 音楽は聞き栄えがしなかった。

The music was not pleasing to the ears.

52. 彼女は一向に見栄えがしないよ。

She's not anything to look at at all.

53. あのドレスは見栄えがしました。

That dress was much to look at.

41. ～^{ばな}端 attaches to the 連用形 of verbs and means "about to start". Its usage is very limited. The first example is a very common phrase with it, but other than that, it is extremely rare. Use on with things you find it used with.

54. 出端

Moment of departure

55. 寝入りばなに弟が泣き出した。

My little brother began to cry as I was falling asleep.

42. ～^{ばな}っ放し comes from 放す meaning "to unchain". ～っ放し strengthens this meaning by showing how "you leave something...". It's most associated with frequent careless forgetting.

56. テレビをつけっぱなしにするな！

Don't leave the TV on!

57. 私は昨夜テレビをつけっぱなしにして寝てしまった。

Last night I fell asleep leaving the television on.

58. 部屋を出るときは 電 灯^{でんとう} をつけっぱなしにしないようにしてくださいね。

Try not to leave the lights on when you leave the room, OK?

43. ～^ば張り attaches to personal nouns and means "reminiscent of".

59. 雷電張りの空^{そら}模^も様^{よう}だった。

It was weather reminiscent of thunder and lightning.

60. セザンヌ張りの風^{ふう}景^{けい}画^が。

Landscape paintings reminiscent of Cezanne.

61. シェイクスピア張りの文体。

Writing style reminiscent of Shakespeare.

44. ～^び means day. It is sometimes unvoiced.

収集 日	しゅうしゅう び	Collection day	締切 日	しめきりび	Closing day
忌み 日	いみび	Unlucky day (astrol- ogy)	冬日	ふゆび	Winter day
春日	はるひ・はる び	Spring day	誕生 日	たんじょう び	Birthday

45. ~^べ辺 is attached to geographical nouns to mean "-side".

62. 水^{なら}辺に 並 んでいる町。

Towns lining the waterside.

63. 海^べで休日を過ごしたよ。

I spent the holiday at the seaside.

64. あらし ^{おおぶね}がその 大 船 を岸^べへと押しやった。

The storm impelled the big ship to the shoreline.

65. 山^べ

Mountainside

Historical Note: It's interesting to note that some scholars believe this ending is actually an ancient borrowing from Ainu.

46. ~っぺ is used after names to show familiarity, but it can also be used in a hurtful way. It all depends on context. If you're called a 田舎っぺ, that's not a nice thing. These sorts of nuances don't translate well into English, so keep in mind what this stands for.

66. 花っぺ (Nickname for Hanako)

Hana-ppe

67. 太郎っぺ

Taro

47. ～ (っ) ぽ (っ) ち attaches to demonstrative pronouns or numbers meaning "merely but". This ending is very casual, which explains the speech styles of the example sentences.

68. 1 ドルぽっちでは買えねー。(Casual; vulgar)

I can't buy anything with just a dollar.

69. これっぽっちでは足りないもんだ。

This is just merely lacking.

48. ～ ^{まえ}前 attaches to words of number or person to show portion or suitable amount. This suffix oddly does not follow any exception to any counter rules.

70. 一人前になる。

To come to age.

71. 二人前を ^{たい}平 らげる。

To consume food enough for two people.

49. ～向け shows what something is "(intended) for".

72. 初心者向けの IMABI の教科書を買いたい。

I wish I could buy an IMABI textbook for beginners.

73. 日本に住んでいた時は、大人向けの教養番組をいつも見ていた。

When I lived in Japan, I always watched educational programs for adults.

74. 菅総理大臣は ^{いく}幾 つかの全国向けテレビ ^{えんぜつ}演 説 をしました。

Prime Minister Kan made several nation-wide television addresses.

75. 海外向けの^{ほうそう}放送。

A broadcasting for abroad.

76. 高齢者向けの雑誌を読んだことがある？ (Conversational)

Have you read magazines for old persons?

77. 学生のための教科書 VS 学生向けの教科書

Contrast Note: The first sentences implies that the textbook is specifically designed just for students. It could have been an 大人のための教科書, or even a 先生のための教科書, but it isn't. On the other hand, the latter says that it is a textbook "intended for students", but it doesn't necessarily restrict who can use it.

50. ～目 has three usages. It is seen in the pattern "Counter phrase + 目" to create ordinal expressions (#th). You also see it after the 連用形 of verbs to show the point or place of partition in something. The last usage is just as important. In its third usage it is after either after the stem of adjectives or the 連用形 of verbs to show tendency/disposition/degree. Of course, given that there are two usages when after the 連用形 of verbs, you will have to consider the meaning of the verbs themselves to differentiate the usages.

78. 今年の 15 冊目を読みきりました。

I've completely read through my 15th book of the year.

79. このレストランでまったく切れ目のない列ができています。

There is a line with no gaps at all.

80. 縫い目が^{ほころ}綻びる。

For seams to split.

81. 落ち目になる。

For one's fortune to decline.

82. 袂はやや長めであった。

(Her) sleeves were quite lengthy.

From 不死 by 川端康成.

83. 若い女の答えはあいまいだったが、白粉の濃いめの顔を赤らめもしないで、もううしろを見せるとフォウムへ出て行った。

The young woman's answer was vague, but she left to the platform and had already shown her backside doing so without ever having her strongly powdered face blush.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

Exception Note: 濃い + 目 should result in 濃目, but this is very rare. Instead, 濃い目 is used.

51. ～もの, either 物 for things or 者 for people, attaches to the stem of nouns to show things or people "to...".

84. 動物に食べ物を与えないでくださいませんか。

Could you please not give food to the animals?

85. 何か飲み物がほしい。

I want something to drink.

86. 乗り物に酔^よう。

To have travel sickness.

87. この本はためになる読み物です。

This book is good reading.

88. 生き物一つもない。

There is not a living thing.

89. 壊れ物！

Fragile objects!

90. 彼女は本当に働き者だよ。

She is a really hard worker.

91. 彼はまったく^{なま}怠け者だぞ。

He is completely lazy.

92. 聞き物はない。

To not have something worth listening to.

52. ～^や屋 may be added to a type of trade to show a kind of shop. In the same vein, it may also be the end of an alias. As an extension of showing one's trade, it can pinpoint people with certain dispositions like being sarcastic, shy, or what not. In this last case, it is often with the auxiliary ～がる.

電気屋	Electric store	恥ずかしがり屋	Shy person
皮肉屋	Sarcastic person	鈴の屋	Suzunoya (alias)
技術屋	Engineer	寿司屋	Sushi bar

53. ～や is a suffix that attaches to nouns of person to show intimacy.

93. じいや

Gramps

94. 坊やが天使のような表情を持った。

The little boy possessed an angelic expression.

95. ねえや

Sis'

Table of Contents

第256課: Native Suffixes II: Adjectival & Adverbial

There are a lot of endings in Japanese. It is what it is.

Adjectival and Adverbial

～**勝ち**: A 形容動詞 conjugating suffix that shows that "something is prone to happen". Often with a negative tone, it's associated with bad/unwanted tendencies. Though it does have 漢字, it is almost always written in ひらがな.

1. 彼女の小説は退屈になりがちだ。

Her novels tend to become boring.

2. 彼は {怠惰に・怠けて} 走りがちだ。

He tends to laziness.

3. 学生にありがちな間違いじゃない（か）？

Isn't that an error tended by students?

4. あいつは職務を ^{おこた}怠 りがちだ。

That guy tends to neglect his duties.

A similar phrase is ともすると meaning "apt to". It may also be seen as ともすれば.

5. 不注意な政治家はともすると間違いを犯したことにさえ気づかないでしょう。

A careless politician is apt to not even be aware that he has made a mistake.

6. ともすれば怠けぐせが出る。

To be apt to have a lazy tendency.

～**がましい**: attaches to nouns or a verb's 連用形 to show a certain tendency felt vividly.

7. 婚礼の晴れがましい場に臨む。

To attend at a grand wedding ceremony place.

8. 差し出がましいようですが...

I hope it is not too presumptuous of me...

9. おこがましい自称

An impudent purport

10. うら
恨みがましい

Reproachful

11. 言い訳がましい。

Sounds like an excuse.

12. 校長はとても押し付けがましいですね。

The principal is very pushy, isn't he?

13. 恩着せがましいことを言うな。

Don't say such condescending things.

〜がわしい: shows that something or an action has a certain tendency. It is quite rare.

14. みだ
濫りがわしい話じゃないか。

Isn't that such a morally corrupt argument?

〜くさい: attaches to nominal phrases or the stem of adjectives to either show that something has a particular smell or a certain feeling to it.

15. 古臭いな！

That's old-fashioned!

16. 彼は酷くニンニク臭かった。

He smelled like garlic badly.

17. ガス臭いところだね。

This is a gassy smelling place isn't it?

18. 陰気臭い小説

A gloomy novel

〜ぐましい: shows a condition that is starting to appear that attaches to nouns. It is basically exclusive to the noun 涙 "tear".

19. 涙ぐましい努力をしよう。

Let's make a painstaking effort to do this.

〜こい: attaches to nouns and either shows that there is a lot of something included or that a certain nature or situation is extreme. It is often accompanied with a 促音.

20. 脂っこいものを食べない方がいいですよ。

It's best not to eat fatty foods.

21. 彼は本当にしつこい要求をしてばかりいるセールスマンです。

He is salesman that really just makes persistent demands.

22. このシロップは粘っこすぎる。

This syrup is too sticky.

〜たらしい: attaches to nouns and the stems of adjectives to give a strong sense of displeasure. A 促音 is often present when used.

23. 憎たらしそうにすんな。

Don't be hateful.

24. 嫌みったらしい文句

A very obscene phrase

25. 長たらしい演説だった。

It was a lengthy speech.

～ぼったい: attaches to adjective stems or 連用形 of verbs. Something is quite so.

26. 寝不足で まぶた は 瞼 が本間で腫れぼったいさ。

My eyes are like really puffed up from lack of sleep.

27. 厚ぼったい唇あるね。

You have some thick lips don't you?

～めかしい: "something looks like...". Attached to nouns and adjective stems.

28. 予言めかしい。

Sounds like a prediction.

29. 艶かしい声

An amorous voice

30. 古めかしい服装を着る。

To wear old-fashioned clothes.

～か(な)・～やか(な)・～らか(な): Attach to make adjectives that show a nature.

There is a lot of variation as to what gets these and what doesn't. For instance,

though 軽^{かる}やか (non-serious) is a standard example, the forms 軽らか and 軽ろか (much rarer) show up in literature.

31. 仄かな光

Dim light

32. それは定かな事実ではない。

That is not a definite fact.

33. 老人にお辞儀を 慎^{つつ}ましやかにすべきだ。

You should bow reservedly to the elderly.

34. 静かな川の流れが美しい。

The gentle water flow is beautiful.

35. しめやかな葬^{そうぎ}儀^ぎを行う。

To hold a solemn funeral service.

36. 清らかな心身

Pure body and mind

37. 晴れやかで生気がみなぎった顔。

A face bright and full of life.

38. 大らかな性格を持つ。

To have a broad-minded nature.

39. 彼女は高らかに歌い続けた。

She continued to sing her heart out.

40. 海は 穏^{おだ}やかです。

The sea is calm.

41a. 華やかな装い

41b. 派手やかな装い (ちょっと古風)

Gorgeous outfit/apparel

42. つづま
約 やかな文章

A concise composition

43. その目は再び若若しくかがやき、その ^{ほお} 頬 ^{にお} には ^{くれな} 匂 ^い いやかなためらうような ^紅 紅 ^い い
^さ が射した。

Those eyes youthfully glistened and lustrous rouge, as if to hesitant, shined on her cheeks.

かるのみこ そとおひめ
From 軽王子と衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

44. 川の水音のみはとりわけ近く、めずらかな夜の小鳥の ^{さえず} 囀 ^り りかときかれたのだ。

The sound of the river was close among other things, and it sounded like it was the rare, night song of a small bird.

From 軽王子と衣通姫 by 三島由紀夫.

Word Note: めずらか is a rare version of 珍しい, attaching か instead of しい to the root.

Adverbial

～**すがら**: attaches to nouns. It may show that something is amid or that there's nothing else but X.

45. 雨は夜もすがら降り続いた。

The rain continued to rain throughout the night.

46. 彼は京都までの道すがら思い出話した。

He reminisced about being along the way Kyoto.

47. 身すがら = 身一つ

Just oneself

48. 手すがら

Nothing else but one's hand

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create example words and sentences with the suffixes covered in this lesson.

第257課: Native Suffixes IV: Verbal

Native verbal suffix endings attach to nouns to create new verbal phrases. Some originate from independent verbs while others are purely constructive endings.

～がかる	～がる	～ぐむ
～さびる	～染みる	～立つ
～つく	～付く	～付ける
～ばむ	～張る	～びる
～ぶる	～めかす	～めく
～やく	～やぐ	

Verbal Suffixes

～ぐむ: something is appearing which had been within something. So, it is used with many physical attributes.

1. 柳の木々が^め {芽ぐみ・芽吹き}、降り積もった雪が解けてきた。

The willows and all the trees began to sprout as the snow piles melted.

2. 氷^と解け去り^さ 葦^{あし}は^{つの}角^つぐむ。

Ice melts as the reeds sprout forth.

3. ^{あざわら}嘲^{あざ}笑^{わら}われて涙ぐんだ。

I was moved to tears from being scorned at.

4. 君の目が涙ぐんでいるようです。

Your eyes are watery.

～さびる shows that something behaves like something. It is very rare.

5. かみ・かん やしろ
神 さびた 社

A temple of age and divinity

6. おきな
翁 さびる

Behaving as an old man

～染（じ）みる: often in a negative fashion, either shows that something is stained with something or something is quite felt as such.

7. 汗染みた。

It got a sweat stain.

8. 子供じいた真似をするな。

Don't act childish.

9. 彼の顔は何となく標本じみて見えた。

His face for some reason or another appeared to be like a specimen.

10. 年寄り染みた

Characteristic of aging

11. 油染みた

Oil-stained

12. 二階が 診 察 室 に待合室、下は 技 工 室 のあの 金 槌 や、 金 をのばすローラーや、ガラスの炎や、エンジンなんかの、神経質な工場じみた音に加えて、小さい子供が四人もあり、おまけに でんしゃどおり 電 車 通 だった。

To the second floor there was an examination room and a waiting room, and below, in addition to the iron hammer, metal roller, glass fire, engine, and what not neurotic factory-like noises, there were four small kids, and to make matters

worse, it was a street with a tram.

From 死体紹介人 by 川端康成.

～（だ）つ: characteristics of something in terms of condition and state.

13. やおちょう
八百長 レースだと観衆が殺気立った。

The spectators seethed in rage that it was a rigged race.

14a. 鳥肌立つ。

14b. 鳥肌が立つ。（Natural）

To have goosebumps.

～つく: attaches to onomatopoeic words to show a certain kind of condition.

15. 外国でまごついたことがある？

Have you gotten confused at a foreign country?

16. むかついてくる。

To get ticked off.

17. 画面がちらつく。

For the screen to flicker.

18. 俺の決心がぐらついちまった。（Used by somewhat older men）

My determination shuddered.

19. 小雨がまだぱらついてる。

Rain is still sprinkling.

～付（づ）く : shows inseparability or that you cannot part from a certain thing or condition.

20. インターネットづいてんのよ。（砕けた女性語）

You're really hooked to the internet.

21. 色づいてくのが分かったんだ。(Casual)

I knew things were going to start turning.

22. 調子付いている。

Things are going well.

23. おじけ
怖 気 づいて逃げると！？

Running away for fear!?

24. 木が根付く。

For trees to take root.

～付（づ）ける grants a certain condition.

25. 納税者に義務付ける。

To obligate the taxpayers.

26. もう一度やってみろと力づけました。

I encouraged him to try it again once more.

27. 我々は基準として位置づけております。

We are positioning it as standard.

～ばむ shows that a certain condition appears or holds a certain quality.

28. この黄ばんだ紙は本当に古くなってきたな。

This yellow paper has really become old, hasn't it?

29. ^{けしき}気色ばむ。

To miff one's anger.

30. むしむしして汗ばむ。

To feel warm and sweaty.

31. 俺の ^{わき}腋の下がじっとり汗染みた。

My armpits are damp and sweaty.

～張る: persists something and shows that a tendency is even more remarkable.

32. あまり ^{よくば}欲張らないで。

Don't be so greedy.

33. そんなに ^{かくば}角張っては ^{きゅうくつ}窮屈だよ。

Being so ceremonious is quite constraining.

34. 四角張らずに

Without formality

35. 格式ばる。

To conform to formalities.

36. あまり気張るな。

Don't strain yourself.

～びる: is attached to nouns or 形容詞 to show that something is in some sort of condition.

37. 古びた。

Worn-out.

38. 大人びて見える。

To look adult-like.

39. ありゃ ^{ひな}鄙 ^{とうじば}びた 湯 治 場や。 (Dialect; old people)

That over there's a beat-down health spa resort.

～ぶる: attaches to nouns and the stems of adjectives. "Pretending/acting as such".

40. 偉ぶる。

To swagger.

41. もったいぶるなよ。

Stop making it such a big deal.

42. 学者ぶる。

To pretend to be a scholar.

～めかす: is the verbal form of ～めかしい. It shows that you make something out to be...

43. 冗談めかす。

To be (half) in joke.

45. きらめ
煌 かせたあの夜空。

The brightened night sky.

46. ほの
仄 めかしただけだ。

I only suggested.

～やく: attaches to onomatopoeic phrases to show that one takes on a certain behavior.

47. ささや
耳元で 囁 く。

To whisper in the ears.

48. つぶや
僕は彼にそっと 呟 いた。

I gently muttered it to him.

～やぐ: attaches to nouns and the stems of adjectives to show that something takes on or behaves to fit a certain appearance.

49. 華やいだ雰囲気。

A cheerful atmosphere.

50. 若やいだ声ですね。

You have a young sounding voice, don't you?

51. 物々しく鮮やいで

Brilliantly and ostentatiously

第258課: Sino-Japanese Suffixes I

Not all of Sino-Japanese suffixes will be mentioned in this lesson. Although this may look like it's a ton of information, you have actually seen the majority of these endings already.

The Suffixes

-員 (いん) is an employee of some sort.

1. 参議院議員

Member of the House of Councilors

2. 審判員

Umpire

-下 (か) = "under the(...of)"

3. 独裁者が首都を戒厳令下に置いた。

The dictator put the capital under martial law.

4. 香港は中国の支配下にある。

Hong Kong is under the control of China.

-化 (か) = -ization

5. 情報化

Computerization

6. 貿易の自由化をする。

To deregulate trade.

7. 学術用語が一般化して意味が広がることが多い。

There are many cases of technical terms that generalize and widen in meaning.

-外（がい） = Outside. This is used in more specialized vocabulary.

8. そちらは私の権限外でございます。

That is outside my authority.

9. 普通外

Out of the ordinary

-街（がい） = Street

10. ロサンゼルス日本人街

Japanese street in Los Angeles

-加減（かげん） = Tendency

11. 湯加減はどう？

How's the bath water?

12. 酒のいい飲み加減

Sake at the best temperature

-格好（かっこう） = Around...years old

13. 30 格好の指導者

A leader around 30 years old

-間 (かん) = Between. It is used with location words like cities and nations.

14. 東京・大阪間の本線はどちらでしょうか。

Where is the main line between Tokyo and Osaka?

15. 国際間の緊張を緩和することは不可能だ。

Lessening of international tensions is impossible.

16. 林間学校

Open-air school

-感(かん) = Sense

17. 劣等感との和解は簡単にはかなわない。

A compromise with inferiority is simply unbearable.

18. あの男は清潔感がある。

That man has a sense of cleanliness.

-巻 (かん) = Volume (of a book)

19. ブリタニカの第10巻

The 10th volume of the Britannica

-観 (かん) = Point of view

20. 日本人観

The Japanese point of view

-癌 (がん) Cancer

21. 乳癌

Breast cancer

-儀 = In regards to/as for (with pronouns, people's names, or nouns associated with them).

22. 私儀 (わたくしぎ)

As for me

Word Note: This is a very humble expression that refers to oneself.

-気 (ぎ) = -like nature

23. 商売気) のない実業家は存在するのでしょうか。

I wonder a non-profit motivated businessman exists?

-級 (きゅう) = Level; grade; degree; class

24. 第一級の博士

A first class professor

-強 (きょう) = A little more than

25. 昨日の余震は震度五強だった。

Yesterday's aftershocks were a little more than 5 (degrees magnitude).

-狂 (きょう) = Fan(atic)

26. 大の相撲狂じゃない。

I am no big sumo fanatic.

-県（けん） = Prefecture (Excluding Hokkaido, Kyoto, Osaka, and Tokyo)

27. 兵庫県は日本の 43 県の一つである。

Hyogo Prefecture is one of Japan's 43 ken-prefectures.

-圏（けん） = Bloc (sphere)

28. 木星の大気圏の外観を見ると大赤斑が確認できる。

If you look at the surface of the atmosphere of Jupiter, you can confirm a Great Red Spot.

29. 関東一円が暴風圏に入る見込みです。

It is projected that all of the Kanto district will enter the storm zone.

Word Note: This 一円 means "the whole area", not "one yen".

-券（けん） = Ticket

搭乗券	Boarding pass	入場券	Admission ticket	航空券	Plane ticket
乗車券	Railroad ticket	会員券	Membership card	割引券	Coupon

-権（けん） = Right

30. 選挙権

The right to vote

-腱（けん） = Tendon

31. アキレス腱は足にある。

The Achilles' tendon is in the leg.

-家（け） = Name of a family

32. 徳川家は有名なのです。

The Tokugawa Family is famous.

-系（けい） = Lineage; system

33. アフリカ系移民によってアメリカの文化はよほど豊かになりましたよね。

By African immigrants American culture has greatly become enriched, hasn't it?

34. 太陽系は9つの惑星と彗星などが含まれる。

The solar system includes things such as the nine planets and smaller satellites.

35. 小型の動物は循環系を持たないものが多い。

There are a lot of small sized animals that do not possess a circulatory system.

-御 = Adds a sense of reverence

36. 姪御さん

Someone's niece

37. 殿御は女性から男性に対して敬ってという語である。

Gentleman is a phrase said to respect males from women.

Word Note: 殿御 is old-fashioned.

38. 「親御」とは他人の父母の敬称でございます。

"Oyago" is a respectful title of someone's father and mother.

-湖 (こ) = Lake

39. 琵琶湖は日本で最大の面積と貯水量を誇り様々な種類が生息している。

Lake Biwa boasts the largest area and water capacity in Japan and various species inhabit it.

-公 (こう) = Title that either shows respect, affection, or scorn.

菅公	Great Mr. Kan	熊公	Mr. Bear	先 公	Teacher (deroga- tory)	ポリ 公	Cop (deroga- tory)
ワン 公	Mr. Doggy	エテ 公	Mr. Mon- key				

-工 (こう) = Person of a particular trade

40. 父は配管工です。

My dad is a plumber.

-号 (ごう) = Number/edition

41. 台風 2 号は那覇を襲ったということです。

Typhoon No. 2 hit Naha.

42. コロコロの 6 月号は来週に発行されるはずです。

The June issue of CoroCoro is supposed to be issued next week.

-座 (ざ) = Constellation; name of theater

43. 歌舞伎座は2013年に再び開かれる予定です。

The Kabukiza Theater will be reopened in 2013.

44. こぐま座は小北斗七星とも呼ばれる。

Ursa Minor is also called the Little Dipper.

-山 (さん・ざん) = Mount; mountain

45. 富士山は活火山 (かっかざん) である。

Mount Fuji is an active volcano.

-酸 (さん) = Acid

46. 蟻酸を扱う際に注意しなければいけないのだ。

You must be careful when you are dealing with formic acid.

-三昧 (ざんまい) = "luxury" and is used in idiomatic expressions. It is usually used in positive contexts.

47. ぜいたく
贅 沢 三昧

Living in luxury

48. 読書三昧でした。

It was a reader's paradise.

49a. 刃物三昧に及ぶ。(不自然)

49b. 刃物沙汰に及ぶ。(自然)

To amount to a knife fight.

Phrase Note: The first option is rather strange. This is likely due to a mistranslation from a Western text into Japanese. However, this phrase may be seen used creatively in contexts where there is a luxury to be had with an array of 刃物.

-市 (シ) = City

50. 釜石市が津波で破壊されてしまった。

Kamaishi City was destroyed by a tsunami.

-誌 (シ) = Magazine

51. 週刊誌

Weekly magazine

-死 (シ) = Death

52. 自然死

Natural death

-師 (シ) = Skilled worker; Reverend

53. 美容師に髪を結ってもらう。

She has her hairdresser do her hair.

-視（し） = View

54. 採算を度外視する。

To neglect profit.

-弱（じゃく） = A little less than. The opposite of 強.

55. 地震は六弱の強さでした。

The earthquake was a strength of a little less than magnitude 6 (on the Shindo scale).

-衆（しゅう） = The masses

56. 旦那衆

Gents

-相（しょう） = Minister

57. 外（務）相

Foreign minister

-賞（しょう） = Prize

58. ノーベル賞を与える。

To give the Nobel Prize.

-省（しょう） = Ministry

59. 厚生労働省は日本の行政機関であります。

The Ministry of Health, Labor, and Welfare is a governmental body of Japan.

-症（しょう） = Disease

60. 感染症

Infectious disease

-商（しょう） = Dealer

61. 美術商

Art dealer

-州（しゅう） = State; province

62. アラスカ（州）は寒すぎるじゃん？

Isn't Alaska too cold?

-宗（しゅう） = Sect

63. 天台宗は大乗仏教の宗派の一つで、法華經に基づいた。

The Tendai sect is a faction of Mahayana Buddhism and is based off of the Lotus Sutra.

第259課: Sino-Japanese Suffixes II

Adding more suffixes to your vocabulary will greatly help your vocabulary skills.

More Suffixes

-城（じょう） = Castle

1. 姫路城は兵庫県にあります。

Himeji Castle is in Hyogo Prefecture.

-状（じょう） = State; condition

2. 液状

Liquid state

-上（じょう） = "from...point of view". At times it may also mean "on" as in on something.

3a. iPad 上で Flash Player が作動できません。

3b. iPad では Flash Player が作動できません。

Flash Player doesn't work on the iPad.

4. 立場上言えない。

I cannot say in relation to the situation.

5. 歴史上

From a historical point

6. 隕^{いんせき}石 が落ちたせいで地球上の色々な動物が絶滅した。

Many animals have gone extinct on the Earth due to meteorites.

7. 健康上の理由で、彼が退職するという旨の連絡をしました。

On reasons in terms of health, he gave a message to the effect that he'll resign.

8. 法律上

In the eyes of the law

9. 実際(上)

In practice

10a. 構文上

10b. 文の構成上

As a matter of sentence structure

-性 (せい) = -Ness

11. 安全性

Safeness

-製 (せい) = Made in

12. 日本製の車は安全ですよ。

Japanese made cars are safe.

-制 (せい) = System (of order)

13. 私は交替制で働いています。

I'm working in a shift.

-世 (せい) = Era; epoch

14. エリサベス 2 世はアイルランドをご訪問なさいました。

Elizabeth II visited Ireland.

15. 洪積世にある大陸の形は現在とほぼ同じである。

The shape of the continents were about the same in the Diluvial Epoch.

-星（せい） = Star

16. 南十字星

The 4 brightest stars of the Southern Cross.

-前（ぜん） = Before. Stiff and literary.

紀元前	B.C.	使用前に	Before usage
-----	------	------	--------------

-然（ぜん） = -like. It is very uncommon.

17. 学生然

Student-like

-千万（せんばん） = Exceeding

無礼千万	Extremely rude	笑止千万	Quite absurd
------	----------------	------	--------------

-層（そう） = Layer; stratum

18. 溶岩層を見たことがありますか。

Have you seen a lava bed?

-著（ちょ） = Written by

19. この本は宮部みゆき著です。

This book is written by Miyabe Miyuki.

-庁（ちょう） = Office; agency

官公庁	Public offices	金融庁	Financial Service Agency
-----	----------------	-----	--------------------------

-調（ちょう） = Meter; style

20. 七五調

Seven-five meter

-艇（てい） = Boat

21. 魚雷艇

Torpedo boat

- 的 = -ic. Makes things 形容動詞. Whether to use it or not is a hard question. For instance, 基本の and 基本的な are both possible, but the latter is more abstract. Whether something should be stated more concretely and abstractly is going to differ in context and among speakers. What makes this more confusing is that the absence of な with 的 is not always certain, but it usually happens in jargon and or long formal phrases. It is also important to note that 的の is old-fashioned, and if you read anything earlier than World War II, you will encounter it.

22. 水深は比較的に浅い。

The water level is relatively shallow.

23. 私的に

Personally

Speech Note: The above phrase is not proper, but it is becoming increasingly more common.

24. 経済的な自動車

An economical vehicle

25. 「行くわ」というと、女性的に聞こえる。

If you say "iku wa", it sounds feminine.

-都(と) = Capital prefecture

26. 東京都

Tokyo Prefecture

-党(とう) = Political party

27. 民主党の調査

A Japanese Democratic Party investigation

-島(とう) = Island

28. 硫黄島(いおうとう)

Iwo Jima

-塔(とう) = Tower

29. テレビ塔

Television tower

-堂(どう) = In the names of important buildings such as temples, shrines, the legislature, etc.

30. 国会議事堂は立法府の建物だ。

The Diet Building is the building of the legislature.

-道（どう） = In Hokkaido Prefecture

31. 北海道

Hokkaido Prefecture

-派（は） = Faction

32. 正統派

Orthodox faction

-版（ばん） = Edition

33. パリ版

Paris edition

-犯（はん） = Crime

34. 殺人犯

Homicide

-判（はん） = Product size

35. 大判（おおはん）

Large size

-班（はん） = Group; crew

36. カメラ班

Camera crew

-藩 (はん) = Clan

37. 竜野藩

Tatsuno Clan

-費 (ひ) = Bill/expenses

医療費	Medical bill	材料費	Material cost	生活費	Living costs
-----	--------------	-----	---------------	-----	--------------

-妃 (ひ) = Queen

38. 皇太子妃

Crowned princess

-票 (ひょう) = Vote

39. 浮動票じゃないか。

Isn't it a floating vote?

40. 反対票を投ずる。

To give a no vote.

Word Note: 投ずる is normally 投じる.

-表 (ひょう) = List; table

予定表	Schedule	通知表	Report card	周期表	Periodic table
視力検査表	Eye chart	九九表	Multiplication table	時刻表	Time table

-病（びょう） = Sickness

高山病	Altitude sickness	風土病	Endemic disease	放射線病	Radiation sickness
心臓病	Heart disease	肺病	Lung disease	接触伝染病	Contagious disease

-府（ふ） = Metropolitan prefecture (Osaka and Kyoto)

41. 大阪府

Osaka Prefecture

-風（ふう） = Style

42. フランス風の料理が大好きですよ。

I love French food.

-風情（ふぜい） = Worthless person

43. 私風情にはもったいないでしょう。

A worthless person like me is unworthy of this, right?

-補（ほ） = Assistant

44. 書記官補

Assistant secretary

-法（ほう） = Law

労働法	Labor law	国際法	International law	交通法	Traffic law
行政法	Administrative law	禁酒法	Prohibition	連邦法	Federal law

-魔（ま） = Freak

45. インターネット魔

Internet freak

-放題（ほうだい） = "a state left to continue as is" or "...as much as you want".

46. 2000 円で食べ放題です。

Eat as much as you want for 2,000 yen.

47. 荒れ放題の庭だね。

That's an overgrown garden with weeds, isn't it?

-余（よ） = Over

48. 日本に二ヶ月余、滞在するつもりです。

I plan to stay in Japan for over 2 months.

-楼（ろう） = Tower

49. 摩天楼

Skyscraper

-領（りょう） = Territory

50. アメリカ領

American territory

-料（りょう） = Fee

原稿料	Contribution fee	サービス料	Service fee	通行料	Toll
診察料	Doctor fee	保険料	Insurance premium	授業料	Tuition fee

-量（りょう） = Amount

51. 読書量が多い。

To read a lot.

52. 降雨量

Rainfall

-力（りょく） = Power

53. 原子力委員会

The Atomic Energy Commission

Word Note: -会 is another suffix meaning "meeting; group; commission".

-類（るい） = Kind

菌類	Fungus	地衣類	Lichens
----	--------	-----	---------

Table of Contents

第260課: Suffixes VI: Appearance: ~だらけ, ~まみれ, ~ずくめ, ~めく, ~げ, ~みどろ, & ~気味

There are several suffixes in Japanese that represent states of appearance.

~だらけ

~だらけ attaches to nouns to describe how something is **riddled with** something. ~だらけ may be used with both physical and psychological items. There is

an extent to how you can use this though. Things like ^{こんらん}混乱だらけ would be wrong. This is because it should be used with things that are either physical or dealing with (emotional) phenomenon and not a "state". Rather than 混乱だらけ, consider phrases like ^{ろうばい}すごく狼狽している or ^{どうよう}とても動揺している.

1. 彼女は（口を開けば）{不平・不満} {ばっかり言ってる・だらけだ} な。

She's full of complaints isn't she?

2. パソコンは ^{ほこり}埃 {かぶっていた・だらけだった} 。

The desktop was covered in dust.

3. ^{こうかい}後悔だらけ

Covered in regret

4. ^{きず}傷だらけ

Covered in injuries

5. 血だらけになった ^{さつじんはん}殺人犯 ^には ^ば逃げ場がなくなって ^{じさつ}自殺したそうだ。

They say that since the murderer covered in blood didn't have a place to run away, he committed suicide.

~塗れ

～まみれ comes from ^{まみ}塗れる which means "to be covered with". Similar to ～だらけ ～まみれ shows how something is **completely covered** in something. Unlike ～だらけ, ～まみれ is **solely used with physical objects**. However, there is a trend to use ～まみれ with things that have a "physical persona". This, though, is metaphoric. Creating metaphors in any language causes rules to become more flexible.

6. ^{いたい}遺体は血^{まみ}れだったということです。

It is said that the corpse was completely covered in blood.

7. メキシコ ^{わん}湾は {辺り一面} ^{じゅうゆ}重油 {埋め尽くされました・まみれになりました}。

The Gulf of Mexico became completely covered in heavy oil.

8. 彼はただの ^{ざせつまみ}挫折^{まみ}塗れのやつだけだ。

He's just completely covered in failure.

～尽くめ

～づくめ shows that something is "completely...". It is normally either attached to nouns of colors or こと. There is, though, a condition that whatever it attaches to that the context is in relation to human intent.

A similar ending is ～づくし. It means "all sorts of". Here, the human intent condition is non-existent. In writing, using づ instead of ず is OK. This is just a conflict between Old and New orthographies that has just been left to the individual to decide.

Examples

9. 人が黒尽くめでした。

The person was completely black.

10. いい事づくしの人

A person full of good luck

11a. 白づくめで抗議してる人は ^{せつとうざい} 窃盗罪で ^{うった} 訴えられた人達だ。

11b. 抗議をしている、白づくめの人達は、窃盗罪で ^{うった} 訴えられた。

The people protesting dressed in white were accused of theft.

～めく

～めく shows what something looks like or what condition something becomes, and it may follow nouns, adverbs, or the stem of adjectives and verbs. The closest translation for ～めく is "to show signs of". Although all tenses are possible, ～めく is **normally only used in the non-past or past tense**. Depending on the verb, there may be more options. For instance, うごめく can be seen in things like the progressive.

To be astir	ざわめく	To flash	閃く	To be mysterious	謎めく
To glimmer	仄めく	To color	色めく	To be spring-like	春めく
To wriggle	うごめく	To flourish	時めく	To be autumn-like	秋めく

Grammar Note: When attached to verbs, the new verb is often seen contracted and then written differently. ～めく is most often used with nouns and 形容動詞.

12. 教室は ^{こうふん} 興奮で ^{ざわ} 騒めいた。

The classroom stirred with excitement.

13. 庭の ^{かえで} 楓 が色めくのは本当に美しいですね。

The changing in colors of the maple trees in the garden is really beautiful, isn't it?

14. {うわあ・ああ}、{もぞもぞ動いてる・^{うごめ} 蠢 いてる} 虫（がいる）！

Ah, a wriggling worm!

15. 彼は今を時めく歌手・有名人です。

He is one of the most prosperous singers/famous people of the time.

16. ^{なぞ} 謎 ^{ようす} めいた 様子 をしている。

To have an air of mystery.

17. 謎めいた ^{ようそう} 様 相 を 呈 する。

To be in a situation covered in mystery.

18. 冬めいてきた。

It became winter-like.

19. 陽光に川面が煌めく。

The river surface glistens in the sunlight.

20. **どよめいて**、人々が飛びのく。一人の背中が飛鳥にぶつかった。はね飛ばされて、壁に肩をぶつける。さらにはね返って**よろめき**、あやうく転びかけたときだった。

Making a stir, people jumped back. A person's back hit Asuka. Being sent flying, she hit her shoulder on the wall. In addition, it was when she had bounced back, staggered, and dangerously started to tumble.

From 野生の風 by 村山由佳.

～みどろ

～みどろ is a less common alternative to the suffix ～まみれ to show things being covered in something.

21. 血みどろの遺体

A bloody corpse

22. 汗みどろの労働者

A sweat covered laborer

～気

～げ conjugates as a ^{けいようどうし}形容動詞. Used to show a sense of true appearance, it describes something with intense fervor and emotion. Lastly, ～げ may be attached to the stem of adjectives and to nouns.

23. 悲しげに泣く。

Cry while being sad all over.

24. 均衡予算を黙殺するのは大人げない。

Ignoring the balanced budget proposal is childish.

25. 彼は何か言いたげな顔をしていた。

He had the face of wanting to say something.

26. 「今も新しい戦争が僕らを追っかけて来ているのかもしれないし、僕らのなかの前の戦争が、亡霊のように僕らを追っかけているかもしれないんです。」と修一は憎さげに、「お父さまこそ、あの娘がちょっと変わっているから、ひそかに魅力を感じて、妙な考えをくどくどもってまわってらっしゃる。女がほかの女とどこかちょっとちがっているだけで、男はつかまるのですからね。」

"A new war may have come its way to chase after us even now, but the war of the past within ourselves may be chasing after us like a departed spirit", and Shuichi continued odiously with "And you, of course, Father inwardly feel a mystique since she's changed a little, and you're going about stuttering long-winded,

strange thoughts. That's man is just something that it's caught up with the small differences one woman has with other women."

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

27. 菊子是不審げに信吾を見て、そして顔を赤らめた。

Kikuko looked strangely at Shingo and then blushed.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

Grammar Note: ～げ is almost never used with verbs. ～げ is closest to ～そうだ, but ～そうだ lacks the emotional emphasis. As emotional emphasis is very important, it is used with nouns that we aspire to be and adjectives that express our emotions.

～気味

ぎみ
～気味 is seen after either a noun or the 連用形 of a verb. It shows a visible indication or slight feeling and is often used in a negative context. Common translations include "sign of", "on the...side", and "slight".

28. 彼は疲れ気味だ。

He has the signs of fatigue.

29. 彼は太り気味だ。

He's a little on the heavy side.

30. 今朝はちょっと風邪気味だ。

I have a slight feeling of a cold this morning.

Word Note: ～味 comes from 気味, which means "sensation" or "tendency".

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with -だらけ.
2. Create a sentence with -まみれ.
3. What is the -だらけ and -まみれ?
4. Create a sentence with -ずくめ?
5. Create a sentence with -めく.
6. Create a sentence with -げ.
7. Create a sentence with -気味.
8. -まみれ is interchangeable with にまみれた. Create a sentence with にまみれた.
9. Give an example of -げ, and then explain its emotional aspects.

第261課: Slang る Verbs

Although most of these words come from the last **forty years** or so, it has been a trend in Japanese to create new verbs by just attaching る to nouns, contractions of nouns, or contractions of other phrases, to create new verbs. They tend to break several rules in the process, but that's what makes them ever more interesting.

To clarify what this lesson includes, it is an exhaustive of such words that have been made in the last 100 years or so. As such, not all of these are used. These are all generally treated as slang, so it is still best to use the expressions on the far right column. There is also differences in the frequency of these phrases depending on region.

Curriculum Note: Although this section will eventually include far more details about these words, have fun looking at all of these words.

The Words

The most peculiar verbs of all are those that have る attached to them in slang. Below is a rather exhaustive list of these words. They are all supposed to in theory be conjugated as 一段 verbs, because they are slang involving adding る attached to a stem, if you find a non-一段 conjugation for any of them, don't be surprised. In fact, a lot of these are 五段 verbs.

In fact, the conjugation power of many of these verbs is not to the full extent as a normal verb. That is because of their recent origin.

事故る	じこる	To get in an accident	Slang for 事故に遭う
退治る	たいじ る	To exterminate	Slang for 退治する
皮肉る	ひにく る	To speak sarcastically	Slang for 皮肉をいう

愚痴る	ぐちる	To complain	Slang for 愚痴をいう
駄句る	だくる	To make horrible poems	Slang for つまらない句を作る
ラグる	らぐる	To lag	Slang for ラグがある
サボる	さぼる	To be truant/play hooky	Slang for 仕事を怠ける
ミスる	ミスる	To make a miss	Slang for ミスを犯す
写メる	しゃめ る	To take a picture with cell- phone and e-mail it to some- one.	Slang for 写メールを撮る
ポシャる	ぼしゃ る	To fizzle out	Slang from シャッポを脱ぐ
パニクる	ぱにく る	To get in a panic	Slang for 頭がパニックになる
寝ぼる	ねぼる	To oversleep	Slang for 寝坊する
デコる	でこる	To decorate	Slang for 飾りつけをする
きょどる	きょど る	To act suspiciously	Slang for 挙動不審な行動を取る
デマる	でもる	To say baseless lies	Slang for 根拠のない噂話をす る
ハモる	はもる	To create harmony	Slang for ハーモニーを作る
ファブる	ふあぶ る	To use febreze	Slang for ファブリーズを吹き付 ける
ピヨる	ぴよる	To be knocked out and see stars	Slang for ふらついている活動不 能状態になる
脂る	やにる	To smoke	Slang for タバコを吸う
ヤグる	やぐる	To be witnessed cheating	Slang for 浮気現場を目撃される
ラリる	らりる	To be high on a thinner	Slang for シンナーで酔ったよう なふらふら状態になる

ミソる	みそる	To reach one's thirties	Slang for 三十代になる
ロンゲる	ろんげ る	For a guy to grow his hair out	Slang for 男性が長髪にする
はぶる	はぶる	To leave out	Slang for 仲間外れにする
ハミる	はみる	To leave out	Slang for 仲間外れにする
拉致る	らちる	To abduct	Slang for 拉致する
モナる	もなる	To commit adultery	Slang for 不倫をする
ルンペる	るんぺ る	To become a vagrant	Slang for 浮浪者になる
ペリる	ペりる	To have a shameless attitude	Slang for 図々しい態度を取る
ボコる	ぼこる	To gang up on someone	Slang for 袋叩きにする
ブチる	ぶちる	To break a promise	Slang for 約束を破る
凸る	でこる	To charge at	Slang for 突撃する
凸る	とつる	To charge at	Slang for 突撃する
ビビる	びびる	To get cold feet	Slang for おじけづく
チャリる	ちゃり る	To ride a bicycle	Slang for 自転車に乗る
フィニる	ふいに る	To finish something	Slang for 物事を終わらせる
ポチる	ぽちる	To click purchase and buy	Slang for 購入ボタンを押して買 う
ポニョる	ぽによ る	To get fat; watch "Ponyo on the Cliff" and act like Ponyo	Slang for 太る; 「崖の上のポニ ョ」を見てからポニョのような行 動をする
バビる	ばびる	To be really surprised	Slang for 非常に驚く
オケる	おける	To go do karaoke	Slang for カラオケに行く

パシャる	ばしゃる	To take a photograph	Slang for 写真を撮る
テクる	てくる	To have a technique	Slang for テクニックを持っている
デリバる	でりばる	To take delivery	Slang for 出前を取る
デリる	でりる	To delete; take delivery	Slang for 削除する; 出前を取る
バクる	ばくる	To catch a criminal; to steal an idea	Slang for 犯人を捕まえる; アイデアを盗む
テンパる	てんぱる	To be rushed; to lose flexibility	Slang for 焦る; 余裕がない状態になる
直る	ちよくる	To confess right when you meet	Slang for 会ってすぐ告白する
ギコる	ぎこる	To be addicted to the Internet	Slang for ネット中毒になる
チョメる	ちょめる	To have sex	Slang for 性交する・男女が仲よくする
コスる	こする	To cosplay	Slang for コスチューム・プレイをする
赤る	せきる	To exchange info on an infrared system	Slang for 赤外通信で情報交換する
タヒる	たひる	To die; be extremely tired	Slang for 死ぬ; 非常に疲れている
ダビる	だびる	To give a copy to the media	Slang for メディアへコピーする
即る	そくる	To have sex with a girl you just picked up	Slang for ナンパした女性と会ったその日に性交に及ぶ
ダブる	だぶる	To double; repeat grade level	Slang for 重複する; 留年する
チクる	ちくる	To tell-tale	Slang for 告げ口（を）する

だきよる	だきよる	To compromise	Slang for 妥協する
駄弁る	だべる	To chat endlessly	Slang for 駄弁を弄する
ザビる	ざびる	To be a person with thin hair	Slang for 髪が薄い人である
ジャズる	じゃずる	To enjoy jazz	Slang for ジャズを楽しむ
ジモる	じもる	To go to one's hometown for fun	Slang for 地元で遊ぶ
シケる	しける	For the economy to be bad	Slang for 景気が悪い
ビ二る	びにる	To go to a convenience store	Slang for コンビニエンスストアに行く
サンダる	さんだる	To go to a convenience store late at night	Slang for 深夜コンビニエンスストアに行く
腰る	こしる	To chicken	Slang for 腰が引ける
チキる	ちきる	To chicken	Slang for 怯える。
サクル	さくる	To delete; come home quickly; sacrifice	Slang for 削除する; さくっと帰る; 生贄にする
ぐれる	ぐれる	To be delinquent	Slang for あてが外れる
キャピる	きゃぴる	To be flippant like a girl	Slang for 若い女性のようにはじける
ゲトる	げとる	To get what one wants	Slang for ほしいものを手に入れる
ケミる	けみる	To have good chemistry	Slang for ハーモニーを織り成す
呉儀る	ごぎる	To cancel a commitment right before it	Slang for 直前に約束をキャンセルする
雑魚る	ざこる	To lose one's honor/charm	名誉・魅力がなくなる。
グダる	ぐだる	To be exhausted	Slang for グダグダだ

ダグる	だぐる	To be dead tired	Slang for ぐったりする
パくる	ぱくる	To pick up ladies	Slang for ナンパする
タクる	たくる	To ride a taxi	Slang for タクシーに乗る
ハイカる	はいか る	To be in Western fashion	Slang for 西洋風の格好をする
ガスる	がする	To be misty; to go to Gasto	Slang for 霧がかかる; ガスとで 飲食する
亀る	かめる	To be late	Slang for 遅れる
過疎る	かそる	To depopulate; hair to thin out	Slang for 過疎化する; 髪の毛が 薄くなる
トラバる	とらば る	To trackback	Slang for ブログのトラックバッ クをする
バグる	ばぐる	For bugs to break out	Slang for 虫が発生する
ウ二る	うにる	For ones head to be all con- fused	Slang for 頭が混乱になる
ブログる	ぶろぐ る	To blog	Slang for ブログを利用する
小田急る	おだき ゅうる	To ride the Odakyuu Line	Slang for 小田急線に乗る
イモる	いもる	To be frightened	Slang for おじけづく
エダる	えだる	To work with no rest	Slang for 不眠不休で働く
アムる	あむる	To copy Amuro Namie fash- ion; to sell Amway products	Slang for 安室奈美恵のファッシ ョンを真似する; アムウェイ商品 を売る
ふぁぼる	ふぁぼ る	To favorite something on Twitter	Slang for Twitter のつぶやきを お気に入り登録する

アサヒる	あさひ る	To fabricate	Slang for 捏造する
ヤフる	やふる	To surf on Yahoo	Slang for ヤフーで検索する
ビる	びる	To surf on MSN live search	Slang for MSN ライブサーチで 検索する
MSN る	えむえ すえぬ る	To surf on MSN live search	Slang for MSN ライブサーチで 検索する
ライブサ ーチる	らいぶ さーち る	To surf on MSN live search	Slang for MSN ライブサーチで 検索する
リバる	りばる	To become free; to puke from drinking	Slang for 解放する; 飲みすぎて 嘔吐する
アジる	あじる	To agitate	Slang for 扇動する
無視る	むしる	To ignore	Slang for 無視する
ディスる	でいす る	To disrespect	Slang for 軽蔑する・罵る・貶す
告る	こくる	To confess	Slang for 告白する
チャーる	ちゃー る	To go to a coffee shop	Slang for 喫茶店に行く
ラーめる	らーめ る	To go eat ramen	Slang for ラーメンを食べに行く
ググる	ぐぐる	To google	Slang for グーグルで検索する
テロる	てろる	To terrorize	Slang for 暴力に訴えてことを成 す
マクる	まくる	To go to Mc. Donalds	Slang for マクドナルドに行く

マクドル	まくど る	To go to Mc. Donalds (West Japan)	Slang for マクドナルドに行く
マヨる	まよる	To put mayonnaise (on)	Slang for マヨネーズをかける
ファミる	ふぁみ る	To go a family restaurant	Slang for ファミリーレストランに行く
サダハる	さだは る	To keep on at it even in one's fifties	Slang for 中年になってもがんばる
小林る	こばや しる	To do something refreshing	Slang for すかつとしたことをする
アピる	あぴる	To appeal to (コギャル語)	Slang for アピールする
ネグる	ねぐる	To neglect	Slang for ネグレクトする
江川る	えがわ る	To sacrifice others without hesitation	Slang for 犠牲にしてはばからない
田淵る	たぶち る	To be chubby	Slang for 太り気味
野暮る	やぼる	To do something thoughtless	Slang for 野暮なことをする
スタバる	すたば る	To go to Starbucks	Slang for スターバックスに行く
カンコる	かんこ る	To be desolate	Slang for 人が少なく寂れている

Word Notes:

1. For all but the last two words, these are **slang words**.
2. Also, as for Mc. Donalds, it is abbreviated as マック in East Japan and マクド in West Japan.
3. Some slang words are inspired by the names of people such as is the case with 田淵る. 田淵 was the name of a fat character in a manga in the 80s.

Table of Contents

第262課: Honorific Speech VI: Irregular Verbs II

There are several exceptional honorific verbs that have more than one usage. This lesson will focus on such verbs. This lesson covers mostly any meaning that you may find in a dictionary. Dictionaries aren't always up-to-date with things, but usages you'll find here go from samurai-like old-fashioned speech to very common speech. So, there is definitely a lot you can learn about these words. It's just that not all of the information will be practical in conversing in 敬語.

参る

The Intransitive Verb 参る

1. The humble verb form of 行く and 来る, the speaker is generally oneself or someone in one's in-group. 参る is humble, but so is 伺う. The difference between the two is that 伺う should be used when going to the place of the addressee.

1. 今すぐ参ります。

I will come at once.

2. 喜んで参ります。

I would be glad to come.

2. A polite version of 行く and 来る. Notice how it is extended to items.

3. 絶好の機会が参りました。

The ideal chance has come.

4. 電車が参ります。

The train will come.

5. 時間があれば参ります。

If I have time, I will come.

3. In the 命令形 primarily in the speech of samurai, it is a boastful equivalent of 行く or 来る. Or, it may be a solemn variant of 行く or 来る where it is also acceptable in honorific speech as 参られる.

6. 近う参れ。(Classical)

Come close.

4. To make homage to a shrine.

7. (お) 墓にお参りをする。

To visit a grave.

8. (お) 寺へお参りに行きます。

I am going to go worship at the temple.

5. To lose or surrender.

9. まいった。(Not so common anymore)

I'm beat.

10. そう簡単には参らぬぞ。(Old-fashioned)

I won't surrender so easily.

11. 参ったか。(Anime-like; somewhat old)

Do you give up?

6. To be bewildered.

12. 彼女の行儀の悪さには参りました。

I was embarrassed at her awful manners.

7. To be worn down from hardship in mind and body.

13. まいった体

A worn down body

14. こう忙しくて神経がまいった。

I was busy like this and my nerves wore out.

8. To die.

15. とうとうあいつも参った。(Old-fashioned)

Even he finally died.

9. To have one's heart stolen by the opposite sex.

16. 彼女の美しさにすっかり参ったのだな。

I was completely had by her beauty, wasn't I?

10. To suffer from.

17. 風邪でまいっている。(ちょっと古い言い方)

風で苦しい。(More natural)

I'm suffering from a cold.

18. 俺ん足痛えまいとるで。(Dialectical)

I'm suffering from a hurt leg.

The Transitive Verb 参る

It is used at the end of a formal letter to give a meaning of giving the letter to a superior. Or it is used to mean "to service" or "to present to". These meanings are very rare, old-fashioned, and warrior-like phrases. So, they are essentially **no longer used**.

19. 御神酒を参る。(文語的)

To serve sacred wine.

20. 母上様参る (手紙の脇付にする、古めかしい語)
Letter presented to thy mother

The Supplementary Verb 参る

1. "...ていく・くる" in humble speech.

21. さまざまな体験をしてまいりました。
I have come to experience various things.

2. "...ていく・くる" in polite speech.

22. 雨が降ってまいりました。
The rain came.

23. 日増しに暑くなってまいりました。
It has been becoming hotter by the day.

3. In samurai speech in the 命令形 as a boastful word in "...ていく・くる" or as a solemn expression.

24. 一度こちらへ連れて参れ。
Come lead to here once.

伺う

伺う is either the humble form of the verbs "to listen/ask", "to talk to guests" or "to visit/to come". Remember that 伺う is more polite than 参る and should only be used in contexts referring to visiting people and not things.

25. よろしかったら明日伺います。
I will come tomorrow if it is alright with you.

26. 二、三の質問を伺ってもよろしいですか。

May I ask you a couple of questions?

27. 近々渡米される由伺いました。

I heard that you're going to America soon.

28. 早速お話をお伺いしましょう。

I shall listen to your story promptly.

27. 暑中お伺い申し上げます。

I am inquiring about your health in the summer season.

28. 伝言を伺いましょうか。

Shall I take a message?

29. 御用をお伺いしていますか。

Are you being waited on?

30. お宅へお伺いします。

I'm going to come to your house.

仰る

仰る, a contraction of 仰せられる, is the respectful form of the verb いう and may also show what someone's name is. 仰られる is to be avoided, but 言われる is too direct for most honorific situations. 仰せられる is the most polite form of this word. 仰る is sometimes used by females in the 命令形, 仰い.

31. 早く仰い。（やや女性っぽくてあまり使われていない）

Hurry and say it.

32. 礼ですが、お名前は何と仰いますか。

Excuse me, but what is your name?

33. 先生は何と仰っているのですか。

What is the teacher saying?

34. 仰る通りだと存じております。

I think exactly what you say.

35. 総理大臣はこう仰せられました。

The Prime Minister said so.

申す

申す is the humble form of 言う and the more polite version is 申し上げる. However, 申し上げる is not normally used when you are giving respect to those involved in something.

36. 鈴木と申します。

I am Suzuki.

37. 初めまして、私は春木と申します。

Nice to meet you, my name is Haruki.

38. 皆様に心からお礼を申し上げます。

I give gratitude to all of you from my heart.

39. 申し上げておきますが

For your information

40. ここは銀座と申します。 (Might hear in some play)

This is called Ginza.

申 上げる may be a supplementary verb after a noun with the prefixes お - or ご - to make verbs humble. 申す may also do this, but it isn't as humble.

41. お待ちしております。 (一番自然)

お待ち申しております。 (あまり使われていない)

I am waiting.

42. お詫び申し上げます。

I must apologize.

43. お悔やみ申し上げます。

Please accept my condolences.

- 44a. ご相伴申します。 (やや古い言い方)
44b. お相伴申します。 (古い言い方)
44c. お相伴与ります。 (やや珍しい言い方)

I shall be partaking.

It is also possible to see 申す used in boastful and neutral yet polite context. These sentences are old-fashioned and should not be applied into your speech.

45. 名を申せ。 (Old-fashioned)
Say your name.

46. そう申しておらん。 (Old)
I'm not saying such/that.

It is also possible in older texts (古文) to see it as 申される.

47. おぬし、今何と申されたか。 (Classical)
What have you said?

いただく

頂く, aside from honorifics, may mean "to place on top of". It can also be used figuratively to show a title being placed upon someone, but this isn't really common.

48. 彼は頭に霜を頂いた。

His head is covered in frost.

Idiomatic Expression: Refers to people who with age begin to have white hair.

49. 星を頂いて帰る。

To return home with stars on top.

Idiomatic Expression: Particularly used to refer when people come home from work in the night.

50a. 王冠を頂く。(Figurative)

50b. 王冠を被る。(Normal)

To wear a crown.

51. 白く雪を頂いた山頂を眺める。

To gaze at mountain peaks covered in snow.

52. この展望台から、白く雪を頂いた大山が一望できます。

You can see all of the snow-covered peak of Mt. Daisen from this observatory.

53. 遠くに雪を頂いた富士山が見えました。

I was able to see snow-covered Mt. Fuji from afar.

54. ○氏を名誉会長に頂く。(あまり言わない)

To have someone as the honorary president.

もらう

いただく shows favor. It may be used with お- and ご-, which gives an added sense of regular politeness. いただく may also be used to show that one receives something of profitable value without effort. -ていただく is used to show favor and is seen in the patterns ～ていただく, お- verb in 連用形 + いただく, or ご- 漢語 noun + いただく.

55. お暇を頂く。

To receive free time.

56. ご高配を頂く。

To receive good offices.

57. 手伝っていただけませんか。

Could you please help me?

58. 私の事はご心配頂かなくて結構です。

It is alright for you to not trouble over (me).

賜る, however, is much more polite than いただく. However, it is also rarer and sometimes old-fashioned.

59. 結構なお品を賜り、ありがとうございます。

I am so grateful you bestowed us this fine good.

頂戴する is possible in honorifics in limited situations.

60. ご意見を頂戴し、ありがとうございます。

We are thankful for your opinions.

～させていただく is used to show that one is to be allowed the favor to do something.

61. 閉会をさせていただきます。

Allow me to have the privilege of closing (this event).

食べる, 飲む, & 風呂に入る

いただく is often used as the humble form of 食べる 飲む. Being used to mean 風呂に入る is not so common, but it is still possible.

62. いただきますでしょうか。

Shall we eat/drink?

63. では、お先に頂きます。

Alright, then I'll be first (to eat/drink/get in tub).

致す

Of course, not all of these meanings are common or used frequently. 致す is typically used to mean 送る in humble contexts, but it also shows up in many set expressions for which most of the meanings in the left-hand column will be of any relevance. It is the transitive verb pair for 至る・到る, which should help you figure it out when it is used more literally.

Transitive	Intransitive	Supplementary
To sympathize.	Politer form of する	Humble form of する
To do to one's limits.		
To bring about.		
Humble form of する		

64. 何に致しましょうか。

What can I do for you.

65. お手伝いいたしましょうか。

Shall I help you?

66. 私の不徳の致すところです。

It is entirely my fault.

Sentence Note: Of course, Ex. 66 is not meant to be something you would just randomly say. Rather, this is very ceremonious and likely to be used in a very formal situation where elegant use of honorifics is expected of you.

67. 祖国に思いを致す。

To sympathize with one's native country.

68. 力を致す。

To exert one's strength to the maximum.

69. 謹んでお詫び致します。

謹んでお詫び申し上げます。（Even more common）

I humbly apologize.

70. 何をぐずぐずいたしておるのか。（古風で尊大な言い方）

What are you complaining about?

71. あと十分致しますと別府に着きます。

We will arrive in Beppu in another ten minutes.

72. よろしくお願い致します。

Please treat me well.

73. 危うきを見て命を致す。(Proverb/saying)

To give one's life in a crisis.

74. 参上いたせ。(古風で尊大な言い方)

Call on him!

Sentence Note: Such a usage of this verb as seen in Ex. 74 for boastful purposes is essentially 武家言葉.

差し上げる

差し上げる is the honorific form of the giving verbs あげる and やる and is used as a supplementary verb as well. It also has another meaning of "to lift". Although in honorifics it is humble, there are other aspects to Japanese culture that might actually make it rude. This is the case in Ex. 77a below.

75. 高々と差し上げる。

To lift up very high.

76. お茶も差し上げずに失礼いたしました。

I have been very rude for not having given you tea.

77a. 何か飲み物でも差し上げましょうか。(ちょっと失礼)

77b. 何かお飲物はいかがですか。

77c. 何かお飲みになりますか。

Can I get you anything to drink?

78. 先着 100 名様にプレゼントを差し上げます。

We will give a prize to the first 100 people.

79. ご案内して差し上げなさい。

Please guide him.

Sentence Note: The imperative is rarely seen with humble verbs, and when the imperative is used, it essentially makes it polite rather than humble. It would be said out of hearing to someone you are showing respect to.

給う

給う, also pronounced and spelled as たもう, is an old honorific verb meaning "to give". As a supplementary verb, it attaches to the 連用形 to show respect to superiors. In the 命令形, though, it creates a harsh command.

80. 神様の与えたもうた試練

A trial sent by God

81. 止め給え。 (Older guy to inferior/purposely old-fashioned)

Stop it!

82. 黙ってくれたまえ。 (Older guy to inferior/purposely old-fashioned)

Shut up!

83. お褒めのお言葉を給う。(古風)

To give words of praise.

召す

召す is the honorific/respectful form of many different verbs as the chart shows.

Transitive	買う; 呼び寄せる; 風呂を使う; 食う・飲む; 着る・履く; 年をとる; 風邪を引く
Intransitive	乗る; 気に入る

Examples

84. お気に召しましたか。

Are you pleased with it?

85. お風呂を召す。

To use the bathtub.

86. 天国へ召される。

To go to heaven/to be called to heaven.

Word Note: 召される is a slightly more polite version of 召す and may replace なさる.

87. 花を召しませ。

Buy flowers.

88. 浴衣をお召しになる。

To wear a yukata.

Cultural Note: A 浴衣 is a thin kimono worn in the summertime.

89. ご酒はお召しになりますか。

Will you be drinking alcohol?

Word Note: Notice how お酒 is replaced by ご酒 (しゅ) .

90. 彼は風邪を召されました。

He caught a cold.

91. 馬にお召しになる。

To ride a horse.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create four sentence, each for a different meaning of the verb, with 参る.
2. Create a sentence with 致す.
3. Create three sentences with いただく.
4. Create a sentence with 申す.
5. Create a sentence with 仰る.
6. Create a sentence with 伺う.

第263課: ク語法

In Japanese grammar, there is an odd grammatical pattern involving ク. Presumably unrelated to < in adjectival conjugation, the < in this lesson is found in more archaic expressions. All of these expressions grammatically speaking are peculiar, which makes this a very interesting topic to address.

What is this ク?

It is thought that the < to be discussed in this lesson comes from the archaic noun あく, which may be found in Modern Japanese slightly altered in the verb 懂れる, which may still show up in old-fashioned and or dialect speech as あくがれる. It is believed to have been a dummy noun in the same way こと is today. With that being the case, you would expect verbs to be in the 連体形 when used with it. However, because the language then hated sequential vowels so much, there would be various sound changes to reduce the sequence into one vowel.

いう + あく → いわく	する + あく → す らく	安き + あく → 安けく	ぬ + あく → なく
------------------	-------------------	------------------	----------------

There was also an ending for recollection, ～き, that could be used with あく. When in the 連体形, ～き became ～し. However, because it is believed that the i vowel was actually different--transcribed as ĭ--the combination of the two resulted in しく. This あく is also supposed to be the < in いづく (where?).

Usage

As you can imagine its usage in Modern Japanese is rather limited. In fact, it's been a somewhat fossilized state ever since the Heian Period, which was a long time ago. And, you get mistakes in usage such as the following. These mistakes were made early on by speakers and have been passed down as such. All

of the words coined from misuse minus 恐るらくは are used in limited contexts.
 恐らく is actually somehow the current form.

Misuse	Should be	Misuse	Should be
惜しむらくは (Sadly)	惜しまくは	望むらくは (What I wish for)	望まくは
疑うらくは (In doubting)	疑わくは	恐るらくは (Perhaps)	恐らくは

Aside from these phrases from misuse, there are other examples used in Modern Japanese. Below is a somewhat exhaustive list of these phrases.

曰く	In saying; reason	Liter- ary	体たら く	Predicament	Not just 書き 言葉
老いらく	Old age	Liter- ary	すべか らく	By all means	Literary
願わく {は・ ば}	I pray that	Liter- ary	思惑	Speculation; ex- pectation	Not just 書き 言葉

漢字 Notes:

1. すべからく may be written as 須 (ら) く. This is a combination of すべき in its 連体形 すべかる + あく.
2. 思惑's more traditional spelling is 思わく as 惑 in this spelling is 当て字.
3. 願わくは may also rarely be spelled as 希わくは in literature.

Examples

This section will purposely avoid uses of ク語法 no longer relevant to Modern Japanese. Remember that aside from the occasional set phrase and 恐らく that this grammar pattern is very 書き言葉的.

1. 古人曰く勝て兜の緒を締めよ。

The ancient say defeat and fasten the chords of your armor.

Idiom Note: 兜の緒を締めよ also has the meaning of not letting your guard down.

2. 法はすべからく守るべし。

The law ought to be protected.

3. 老いらくの恋

An old man's love

4. 世間の思惑通りには生きていけない。

I mustn't live as the world expects me to.

5. 恐らくあの猫が隣の川に溺れたと思う。

I think that that cat perhaps drowned in the river next to us.

6. なんという体たらくだ！

What a mess you've gotten yourself into!

7. 願わくは一流企業に就職したい。

I pray I get hired into a first class company.

8. 願わくは京都に居を構えたい。

I wish to set up residence in Kyoto.

9. 願わくは御名を尊まれんことを。

I pray that your name be honored.

Word Note: 願わくは is typically used in prayer like expressions, and due to the mistaken form 願わくば, it may sometimes have a meaning closer to 願いが叶うならば.

As is evident in the modern examples, it has lost its productivity as a grammatical pattern for a long time, but you should get a sense at least of what role it once had (presumably in a larger range of expressions).

Table of Contents

第264課: ~しめる & ~させ給う

~ しめる is an old-fashioned causative ending that is still used infrequently in Modern Japanese. Aside from this, the causative endings once were used to show extreme politeness, and this usage is preserved in old-fashioned speech. This lesson will be very short. So, feel grateful.

~しめる

The auxiliary verb ~しめる is **limited** to only a handful of verbs which include する, なす, いう, ある, 知る, and じる/ずる-する verbs. This is not an exhaustive list, but due to its archaic nature, its use is very limited, and it is suggested that you only attempt to use it with verbs you see, how you see it used, and in formal writing.

1. かんきょう 環境 を変化せしめる 要因 は とういん おんしつこうか よういん おんしつこうか 温室 効果 ではない。(書き言葉)

The primary factor of changing the environment is not because of the greenhouse effect.

2. それは、国民の然らしめるところだ。(ちょっと硬い書き言葉)

That is a part where the citizens bring about it.

Variant Note: 然らしめる = そうさせる.

3. 日本語の素晴らしさを世界に知らしめよう。(ちょっと古風)

Let's inform the world of the awesomeness of Japanese.

に言わせ (れ) ば・に言わしめれば to mean "if you ask...". As expected, the latter is more literary.

- 4a. 私に言わせれば、その計画はいい考えじゃないと思います。

- 4b. 私に言わしめれば、その計画はよい考えではないと思っております。(謙譲語: ちょっと古風)

If you ask me, I think that plan isn't a good idea.

知らしめる is occasionally used in Modern Japanese as a strongly nuanced way of saying 知らせる・認知させる.

5. ほら君はのまれている 無責任な言葉を知らしめているだけさ。

Look at you overwhelmed; I'm just making irresponsible remark known.

From DIV 作の「線路」

Another important combination is たらしめる, which is actually equivalent to にする and is the combination of the 未然形 of a classical yet very emphatic copula verb たり and ～しめる. This たり should not be confused with the particle たり, which has a very different origin. You will see this again in future conjugations and grammar points.

6. 我が社を世界のトップたらしめる。(Formal; literary)

We will make our company at the top of the world.

むらやまだんわ ばっすい
読み物: 村山談話の抜粋

7. わが国は、遠くない過去の一時期、^{いちじき} 国策を^{こくさく} 誤り、^{あやま} 戦争への道を^{せんそう} 歩ん
で国民を^{そんぽう} 存亡の危機に^{きき} 陥れ、^{おちい}

しょくみんちしはい ^{しんりゃく} 植民地支配と ^{くにごに} 侵略によって、多くの国々、とりわけアジア ^{しよこく} 諸国の

人々に ^{たい} 対して ^{ただい} 多大の ^{そんがい} 損害と ^{くつう} 苦痛を

与えました。私は、^{みらい} 未来に ^{あやま} 誤 ^な ち無から しめん とするが ^{ゆえ} 故に、^{うたが} 疑うべくも

ないこの ^{れきし} 歴史の事実を ^{けんきよ} 謙虚に

と ^{つうせつ} 受け止め、ここにあらためて ^{はんせい} 痛切な反省の意を表し、心からの ^わ お詫びの気持

ちを ^{ひょうめい} 表明いたします。

また、この歴史がもたらした ^{ないがい}内 ^{ぎせいしゃ}外 すべての犠 牲 者に深い ^{あいとう}哀 悼 の ^{ねん}念 を
ささ
捧 げます。

Our country caused great pain and damage to many countries, particularly to all peoples of Asia, by colonial rule and invasion, driving citizens to a state of life and death crisis by mistaking national policy and walking down a road of war in a period of the not so distant past. In order to rid such mistakes in the future, I humbly accept these irrefutable facts of history, express here again bitter remorse and my heartfelt apology. Again, please accept my sincere and deep condolences to all victims this history brought.

This excerpt from an apology for past human violations by Japan in World War II by ex. Prime Minister Murayama provides insight to well-crafted writing. The passage begins with the Classical attribute marker function of が. 無からしめんとする is a combination 無い, -しめる, the Classical volitional auxiliary verb -む, and とする. Together, the phrase is equivalent to なくさせようとする, which is translated in the passage with が故に as "in order to rid".

Formal, Semi-Classical Text

Below is an excerpt from a piece by 川端康成. This is a report on the mental health of a man who has been charged with the murder of two women. Here below is part of the report, and notice how せしめる used to be せしむる in the 連体形.

8. 「^{ちのうけんさ}智 能 検 査 の成績は ^{きわ}極 めて ^{ゆうりょう}優 良 を示している。一般知識、計算能力、論
理選択、正文、^{じゅうてん}充 填、構文、定義について行いたる成績は、全然標準点と同一である。

記憶力は自己の 経歴^{けいれき}につき誤りなく、記名力の試験は表に示す 如^{ごと}く、対語試験に
おい 於^{おい}て全て正当数を得、殊^{こと}に無関係対語試験に於てさえ完全に再生することを得るは、
けだ 蓋^{けだ}し優良なるものと言わなければならない。

故に記憶、記名の 障^{しょうぎ}礙^{げんたい}は認められず、従って記憶を 減退^{げんたい}せしむる精神的原因を有
しないことを証明するのである。...」

"He has shown great excellence in the I.Q test. In his assessments carried out in
general knowledge, numeric ability, logical choice, official text, loading artillery,
syntax, and defining, he completely meets the standard marks on all these
things.

There is no mistake in his memory about his own record, and his signature test
was as like it appeared on the front, and he got all the right numbers in the anto-
nyms test, and given that he completely play backed his performance on the ra-
ther unrelated antonyms test, one would have to say that he is indeed superb.
Thereupon, no handicaps can be found in his memory or inscription, so we testify
that he doesn't have a mental cause letting down his memory...."

From 散りぬるを by 川端康成.

Word Note: Official text (正文) would have been written in 漢文 at the time.

Grammar Notes:

1. As you should expect, 得るは would be 得るのは in more modern Japanese. At
one time, the 連体形 could allow verbs to be used as nominals just as in the con-
text above.

2. Notice also that the 連体形 of 〜た used to be たる rather than just た.

Extreme Politeness

〜させる, 〜せる, and 〜しめる may show extreme politeness. This usage
is **very rare**, and it is seen frequently in **Classical** texts. The politeness given off

by these endings. and they are often followed by - 給^{たま}う. In Classical Japanese 給^{たま}う is spelled as 給ふ. This is not something you have to remember, but **old** expressions/patterns like this can easily be found in well known set phrases such as the second example. Again, this is found in the written language. You shouldn't use it anymore when speaking.

9. だいたいりょう さわ^{たま} 騒^{たま} が^{たま}せ 給^{たま}う。(とても古風)

The president was also in a panic.

10. み心のままになさ^{しめ}給^{たま}へ。(Classical)

Do at your heart's desire.

11. 神の与えたもうた試練。

A trial from God.

Sound Change Note: ~たまひたり → ~たまうた → ~たもうた.

12. おとど おんさと げんじ きみ^{たま} まかで^{たま}させ 給^{たま}ふ。(Classical)

Lord Genji left for the home of the minister.

From the 源氏物語.

第265課: Interrogatives IV: Rare Words

Interrogatives themselves are not so hard to understand or use. What you may not know is that there are even more less used interrogatives in Japan aside from the simple 誰, 何, いつ, どこ, and 何故.

まれな疑問詞

なんらか

何 ^{なん}らか, also 何 ^{なにがし}某 か, means "any" or "some". Both of these words are quantity words. So, they describe indefinite amounts. 何らか is the most common.

1. 何 ^{なにがし}某 ^{かね}かの 金

A certain sum of money

2. 何らかの ^{えいきょう}影 響 が出る。

To have some effect come out.

3. あなたの ^{もう}申 し立てに何らかの ^{こんきょ}根 拠 がありますか。

Do you have any evidence for your statement?

4. 何らかの ^{てん}点 で

In some way or other

な にがし (某・何某) is a somewhat old-fashioned indefinite pronoun meaning "a certain". It equates in meaning to the Sino-Japanese prefix 某 read as ぼう. 某- can be used after proper nouns, place and time words. It is very similar to ある・或る. ある can be used to refer to something when one has no certainty of the actual matter/thing. When one uses 某-, though, one knows exactly what the subject (matter) is. You just think it is best not to say it. It also sometimes gives

the impression one is hiding information, especially when you overuse it. It goes well with more stiff 書き言葉. However, there are exceptions.

ある国 → 某国	ある日 → 某日	あるところ → 某所	ある雑誌 → 某誌
ある会社 → 某会社	ある先生 → 某教師	ある省 → 某省	ある月 → 某月
あるテレビ局 → 某テレビ局	ある人 → 某氏	あるタレント → 某タレント	ある高校 → 某高校

5. どこぞのなにがし

A certain someone from somewhere

The ら in 何ら is the same as in 彼ら. So, this is essentially the plural form of what. It is used as a more emphatic way of saying なにも. It may be used adverbially and nominally. It is not as common as なにも.

6. 何ら^{ふあん}不安はないよ。

I have no fear.

7. 何ら^{うたが}疑いはない。

I have no doubt.

8. 何らの利益もないよ。

There's no profit/benefit whatsoever.

いずれ

い ずれ, an alternative to どれ, is best translated as either "either", "both", or "sooner or later". These usages are distinguished easily from each

other. If used as an adverb, it means, "sooner or later". If used with a particle such as も, it's like どれも to mean "either/both".

9. いず^{いず} 何^{なん} れ分かるよ。

You'll understand sooner or later!

10. いずれ^{いずれ} あらた^{あらた} 改^{かへ} めて うかが^{うかが} 伺^伺 います。

I will come again in the near future.

11. いずれ^{いづれ} おと^{おと} 劣^{せう} らぬ (Set phrase)

Equally competent

Interrogative Note: Do not get the impression that these are all of the possible interrogatives in Japanese. You will discover more, though more likely rarer, interrogatives as you continue to study Japanese. The examples below are just to show you what more is out there. You don't have to remember this stuff.

いづくんぞ

いづくんぞ, formally and formerly as いづくんぞ, means どうして. The following characters have been used to write it, but only the last is ever seen today: 悪・安・寧・焉。

12. いま^{いま} せい^{せい} 未^み だ^だ 生^{せい} を知らず、焉んぞ死を知らんや。

How would you know death if you've yet to know life?

13. こうし^{こうし} 孔^{こう} 子^し が『未^み だ^だ 人^{にん} に 事^{つか} うること 能^{あた} わず、焉^よ んぞ 能^き く 鬼^い に 事えん。』と曰わく。

Confucius said, "How could you possibly serve the divine well if you can't even serve man well?"

14. えんじゃく こうこく こころざし
燕 雀 安んぞ 鴻 鵠 の 志 を知らんや。

How is that sparrows and swallows have greater will power than large birds?

15. にわとり さ ぎゅうとう
鶏 を割くに焉んぞ 牛 刀 を用いん。

You don't need a butcher's knife to kill a chicken.

16. おうこうしょうしょう しゅ
王 候 将 相 寧んぞ 種 あらんや。

Why would nobles and shogun have seeds? (Any person can achieve through effort and luck)

17. いずくんぞ知らん。(Very old-fashioned)

How would you know?

那边・奈边

18. こ おい こ かいけつ なへん さけ
こゝに 於 て此の問題の重大なることや、その 解 決 の 那 邊 にあるかを 叫 ん
で、 國 民 の注意を喚 起 する 先 覺 者 の 奮 發 努 力 が 甚 だ 望 ましい
しだい
次 第であります。

This is dependent on the much needed strenuous efforts of a pioneer who will alert the public's attention and strongly ask what the most important thing to this problem is and where the solution is.

こくごこくじ ふくながきょうすけ
From 國 語 國 字 問題 by 福 永 恭 助 .

Sentence Notes:

1. 那边 is a rare interrogative equivalent to どこ・どの辺.

2. The example was written before simplification took place. Notice how many characters look different.

如何

如何 is sometimes read as いかん. This is a contraction of いかん. Both words are equivalent in meaning to どんなに. いかん is seen in formal situations, but its usage has continued to go down. いかん is used even less, but it survives in set phrases and in common usage in things like いかんも, which is used to show agreement in the same way as 全く and なるほど.

19. 人間、いかに生くべきか。

How should man live?

20. この件は如何致しましょうか。

What should we do with this case?

Interesting Dialect Phrases

If we include dialectical interrogative phrases, the number of such phrases in Japanese goes up a lot. Some phrases are localized to very small areas, but they're still interesting to look at. Below are phrases from 福島弁. Of these なして, also happens to be used in many other places in Japan. The rest are quite localized to the 東北 Region.

21. え、なして？

Wait, why?

22. なして泣いてるの？

Why are you crying?

The following phrases and translations are taken from the Wikipedia page on Fukushima Dialect.

- なじょうだ、なじよした、なじょんした？ → どうした、どんなだ（県）
 - なじょうする、なじよする、なじょんする？ → どうする？
 - なじょんかして → どうにかして
 - なじよ、なじょう？（う、の部分伸ばす感じで発音する） → どう
 - なじよして、なじょんした？、なじょんして？ → どうした？ どうやって？
 - なじよな → どんな（北、中、南、会）
 - なじょうだが → どうだか（浜、北、南、会）
 - なじょったい → どうだかね（浜、北、中）
 - なじょーにしっぺい → どうしたらよかろう（北、中、南）
 - なじょーも → なんとも（会）

Table of Contents

第266課: 擬声語 IV: From Chinese

There are some onomatopoeia that have entered Japanese through Chinese. They are typically rare, but they feature the mouth radical. The reason why they deserve special attention is that you may not realize at first hand that they're onomatopoeic.

Onomatopoeia from Chinese

In Chinese the large majority of onomatopoeic expressions are made up of 漢字 with the mouth radical 口. Individual characters are often repeated in the same way こそ is repeated in こそこそ. There are also many instances when the characters may be different, but the readings are still very similar. At other times, there isn't any apparent symmetry. However, if we think of English expressions like "kaboom", this doesn't have to be a requirement for something to be onomatopoeia.

Furthermore, we must understand that things Sino-Japanese tend to be literary. Because native onomatopoeia is so natural of spoken speech, we can expect Chinese onomatopoeic expressions to enter Japanese as rather technical words and may not quite be used or viewed as onomatopoeia. Some readily are viewed as such as seen in Ex. 1 and 2.

Nevertheless, it is certain that you will hardly find most of these spoken. These words are important, though, in higher class literature in which even today new Sino-Japanese expressions may be imported. For you as the advanced learner, running into new characters in this section may very well be the most beneficial and important thing to this lesson.

Examples

こ こ こえ
1. 呱呱の 声 をあげる。

To make one's first cry.

かか おおごえ わら つづ
2. {呵呵と・大 声 で} 笑 い 続 ける。

To continue to laugh loudly.

りゅうりょう
3. 嚶 唳 たる音色

Clear and resounding tone/sound

さくさく
4. 高評 嘖 嘖

The resounding of high reputation

きき
5. 嘻嘻として遊ぶ。

To play cheerfully.

りょうりょう
6. 嚶 々 たる響き

A reverberating echo

なんなん だべん ろう
7. 喃 々と駄 弁を 弄 する。

To babble and speak rubbish.

きこくしゅうしゅう
8. 鬼 哭 啾 啾

The groaning of a dead spirit

とつとつ
9. 訥 々

Faltering

For examples that really seem to have lost any sense of being onomatopoeic in Japanese. But if you think about some of them, you can still picture how

they may relate to sound. For instance, 丁寧 (polite), which you will see has another spelling resembling the rest of these words, itself emulates the 'sound' of polite speech.

10. そしゃく
咀 嚼

Mastication

11. ほうこう
咆 哮 をあげる。

To let out a roar.

12. 丁寧・丁寧

Polite

13. かしゃく
呵 責 ・呵 嘖

Accusation

14. たんか
啖 呵 を切る。

To declare defiantly.

15. あうん
阿 吽 の呼吸

The harmonizing, mentally and physically, of two parties engaged in an activity

Etymology Note: 阿吽 in the last example actually ultimately derives from the interjection Ohm from Sanskrit.

第267課: The Auxiliary 〜たる: たるや、たるもの、たりとも

This pesky classical copular auxiliary is still occasionally used in Modern Japanese, and as you would expect, the title really does say all. First, we will discuss the so-called タル形容動詞 that are made with it, see how the true copular role it has manages to get used, and then focus on grammar topics relevant for high level Japanese proficiency tests such as the JLPT n1.

タル形容動詞

This defunct class of adjectival verbs have the limited bases と-連用形 and the たる-連体形. However, with more antiquated grammar, you can see the other bases. So, for completeness, the full base set is given below.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
たら-	たり-・と	たり	たる	たれ-	たれ

Like 形容動詞, the と-連用形 is used adverbially. The exact number of タル形容動詞 still used today is uncertain, but they are in decline. Their attributive base is also typically replaced with とした. However, in more formal writing, these adjectives pop up everywhere. Depending on the adjective, they may have acquired other legitimate attributive forms. For instance, you can use 主な and 主たる (principal/main).

Examples

1a. 主たる理由はこれです。(古風)

1b. 主な理由はこれです。(もっと自然)

The main reason is this.

2. 全然たる狂人

An absolute maniac

3. 然したる相違もない。

There isn't a special/particular difference.

4. {名立たる・有名な} 観光地

A famous tourist spot

5. 面^{めん}前^{ぜん}での嘲^{ちょう}笑^{しょう}は侮^ぶ辱^{じよく}の最^{さい}たるものだ。

Scorn in one's presence is the extremity of insult.

6a. 最たる例 (古風)

6b. 最^{けん}も^{ちよ}顕^{けん}著^{ちよ}な例 (もっと自然)

Prime example

7. 堂^{どう}々^{どう} {たる・とした} 姿^{すがた}

A magnificent figure

8. 断^{だん}固^こ {たる・とした} 決意

Resolute determination

9. 淡^{たん}々^{たん} {たる・とした} 口^く調^{ちよう}で話す。

To speak in a cool tone.

10. 漠^{ばく}然^{ぜん} {たる・とした} 不安

Vague anxiety

11. 眇^{びよう}たる小会社

Insignificant firm

12. 純^{じゅん}然^{ぜん}たる銀行

Pure and simple bank

13. げん たる事実

Harsh fact

14. ゆうゆう おおぞら
悠々たる大空

Endless sky

15. うつぼつ やしん
鬱勃たる野心

Irresistible ambition

Base Note: Though they have no modern 終止形, when the need arises, the old たり-終止形 is replaced with the たる-連体形 followed by だ, giving たるだ.

16. 行政改革は号令のみで旧態依然たるだ。

The administrative reform is merely an order, and the (system) is still as the old state.

Archaism Note: There are still instances where the auxiliary copula verb たり is still used in Modern Japanese. As it is more emphatic, it often serves a role in formal yet serious situations. One instance is 日本よ国家たれ! (Japan, be a nation!) and its derivations.

たるや

This is a usage of above that is rarely seen but is used to emphatically emphasize a topic, and it is derived from the auxiliary たる and the adverbial/bound particle や.

17. その技術たるや、ものすごい。

The technique is terrific!

たるもの (は)

This pattern follows nouns, as you would expect, to show that a certain thing is suitable in situations such as having a certain responsibility or when one is outstanding for a certain role. Remember that what follows should show what form, role, or status something should be in to be what X or what たるもの follows.

18. 社会人たるもの、挨拶や時間を守ることなどができて当然でしょう。

It's only natural for a person of society to maintain salutations and time.

19. 紳士たるもの、強くなければならない。

A gentleman must be strong.

20. 政治家たるものは、失言があってはならない。

Politicians must not make gaffes.

21. 教師たるものは、言動に気をつけなければならない。

Teachers must pay attention to their behavior.

22. 大統領たるものは、^{えいり}鋭利な頭脳を持たなければならない。

A president must hold a sharp mind.

たりとも

The conjunctive particle たりとも is equivalent to "not even" and is interchangeable with と言えども and ではあっても. It is really on the combination of the auxiliary たる + the conjunctive particle とも, which is why it's mentioned here. This pattern should follow a counter phrase that a small or indeterminate number. However, even if the number is one, if the counter phrase implies something big like a year or a ton, then this is not applicable.

23. 一字たりとも許さぬぞ。

I won't allow even a single letter (being wrong).

24. 1 日たりとも忘れたことはありません。

I haven't forgotten even a single day.

25. 一年たりとも X

26. いっしゅん 一瞬^め たりとも気を抜いてはいけないよ。

You mustn't lose focus for even a moment.

27. これからは 1 日たりとも日本語の練習を^{なま}怠^{なま}けてはいけない！

You mustn't slack off your Japanese practice for even a day from now on!

28. 1 円たりとも無駄にしてほしくありません。

I don't wish for even a single yen to be wasted.

29. 1 分たりとも遅れないようにしてください。

Please make it toward you are not late for even one minute.

30. 何人たりとも

Not one at all

Reading Note: 何人 in the last expression can be read as なにびと, なんびと, or なんぴと.

第268課: 美化語

美化語^{びかご} is the embellishment of words. 美化 means "beautification". 美化語, at its basic understanding, is making one's speech sound more refined. 美化語 elevates one's speech to a well-mannered style. Grammatically, it is neither 丁寧語^{ていねいご} "polite speech" nor 敬語. However, it applies to 敬語 but is usually classified as 丁寧語. Several 美化語 phrases have come from traditional women's speech.

The honorific お- is generally added to words regardless of origin. Even foreign loanwords such as ズボン are used with お- in 美化語. Words like 勉強 can either be seen with お- or ご-. This is sure to cause more confusion. For most words, though, the general お- and ご- distinctions are maintained.

お- VS ご-

お- is used with native words and 和製語 (Sino-Japanese words made in Japan such as telephone). ご- is used only with Sino-Japanese words not used with お-. み-, おみ-, and おんみ- are used in words with religious or imperial importance.

お庭	Garden	お天気	Weather
お飲み物	Drinks	お菓子	Sweets
お食事	Meal	お店	Store
お料理	Cooking	ご祝儀	Congratulatory gift
ご機嫌	Mood	ご挨拶	Greeting
ご結婚	Marriage	ご連絡	Contact

When an honorific prefix is used, it may greatly alter the word.

飯 (めし) ⇒ ご飯 (はん)	Rice; meal
汁 (しる) ⇒ お汁 (つゆ)	Soup; broth; dipping sauce*
水 ⇒ お冷	Cold water

うまい⇒おいしい	Delicious
便所⇒お手洗い	Lavatory

*: This definition is specific to お汁.

Note: Other forms of 美化語 include anything that euphemizes a phrase. Another word for this is 雅語. Since they are hard to pinpoint, they will not be discussed. Dictionaries will label 雅語 with 雅.

The Relationship between 美化語 and 丁寧語

丁寧語 utilizes more polite nouns rather than honorific prefixes. In women's speech, however, honorific prefixes are commonly attached to everyday words. In more respectful language, this gender restriction disappears and sentence patterns conform.

1. お水を飲んでください。(美化語)

Please drink water.

2a. お肉をお食べにならないほうがよろしいと思いますわ。(美化語)

2b. お肉をお食べにならないほうがよろしいかと思われます。(敬語)

2c. お肉をお食べにならないほうがよろしいでしょう。(敬語)

I think that it best not to eat meat.

3. ご協力を頂くために

In order to receive your (honorable) cooperation (敬語)

If you overuse 美化語, you may sound sarcastic and pretentious. Some words like おトイレ, おコーヒー, おタバコ may be seen in other settings and in the speech of older women. No single description can make a good generalization of when and when not to do this.

It is rare to see loan words take honorifics, but when they do they normally take お-, but some like おビール and おソース are more common. Also, it is imperative to use these suffixes in reference to things during tea ceremonies.

美化語 from Women's Speech

Lots of words with お- used to only be used by women but are now used by everyone.

おかか	Finely chopped katsuobushi.	お欠 き	Thin, dried, baked mochi
お菜 (かず)	Side dish	おか ら	Tofu residue
お強 (こわ)	Glutinous rice steamed with red beans	おじ や	Rice gruel
おつけ	Soups	おで ん	Oden
お腹 (なか)	Stomach	おな ら	Fart
お萩 (はぎ)	Rice ball coated with red beans	おま る	Potty

The Necessity of 美化語

Some words are almost always accompanied with honorific prefixes while some are always used with them. To find out whether a noun has to have an honorific prefix, you should first see if a word can be looked up in a dictionary without the prefix. If a word is 美化語-sensitive, most dictionaries will tell you.

Definition	Word	仮名	美化語	Always or Usually?
Hot water	湯	ゆ	お湯	Usually
Tea	茶	お茶	お茶	Usually

Rice/meal	飯	はん	ご飯	Always
Ghost	化け	ばけ	お化け	Always
Flattery	世辞	せじ	お世辞	Always
Stomach	腹	はら	お腹*	Always

*: This word must have お- so it can be read as おなか.

4. お湯がこのボイラーから出ます。

The hot water comes out with this boiler.

5. その古い（お）^{しろ}城^ばにはお化けが出るらしい。

It sounds like ghosts appear in that old castle.

6. お^{せじ}世辞を言う。

To give a compliment.

7. その（お）知らせを受け取らなかった。

I didn't receive that notice.

8. お^{せち}節

Osechi (a food served during New Year's)

9. お^{せっかい}節^{かい}介はよせ。

Mind your own business.

10. お腹が痛い。

My stomach hurts.

11. ^{はら}腹^{いちげき}に^く一撃を食らう。

To receive a blow in the stomach.

12. にゅうよくご ゆ なが す
入 浴 後 はお湯を 流 して捨てておいてください。

You must run the (hot) water off after taking a bath.

美化語 and Change of Meaning

At times when an honorific prefix is attached to a word there is a change in meaning. There is usually always a reasonable relationship between the two.

Meaning without お		Meaning with お	
Eight	八つ	Snack	おや つ
Child	子	God's son	み子
Master	主人	Someone's hus- band	ご主 人
Family	家族	Someone's family	ご家 族
Fishing	釣り	Change (coins)	お釣 り
To squeeze	絞 る	Hand towel	お絞 り

Word Note: お ^{しば}絞 り is an example of where an honorific prefix is added to 連用形 of a verb to refer to an object in relationship to the verb.

13. 8つある。

To have eight things.

14. おやつ ^もを持ってきた？

Did you bring a snack?

15. バナナはおやつに入りますか。

Are bananas in the snacks?

Culture Note: This is a cliché question that came about from a period when most schools did not allow snacks on field trips, and if they did, there was a 300 yen budget.

16. 釣りに行きたい。

I like to go fishing.

17. お釣りは結構です。

Keep the change.

18a. 彼女は主人づらをしている。

18b. 彼女は偉ぶっている。(More natural)

18c. 彼女は偉そうにふるまっている。(More natural)

She acts like the boss.

19. ご主人はお元気ですか。

Is your husband all right?

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. In your own words, explain what 美化語 is.
2. What is the danger in using too many honorific prefixes?
3. How do you determine how to read the character 御?
4. Create a sentence using 美化語 in women's speech.

5. Give examples of words where 美化語 changes the meaning of the word.
6. When would men use 美化語?

第269課: The Particles とて & とも

The particle とて is the ancestor of ても and って. Then, we'll end with とも.

The Case Particle とて

The case particle とて is equivalent to と言って・思っ^て, and こととて means "with...being the reason". It is basically the older equivalent of ので・から. It is **rather archaic**. So, many speakers will use other things instead. In fact, it's even hard to find a Japanese person that even knows anything about とて. It is, though, preserved in dramas and what not, things that purposely retain older language.

1. 子供のこととお許し下さい。 (文語)

Please forgive me with this being a childish thing.

2. 先を急ぐとて旅立った。

When I thought to hurry ahead, I set off on my journey.

3. 猿とて竜を殺そうとすれば自分が死ぬのは予想できるだろう。(More emphatic)

Even a monkey would know that you would surely die if you tried to kill the dragon.

- 4a. 不注意のこととて事故に^あ遭った。(Old)

- 4b. 注意不足だったせいで事故に遭った。(Natural)

- 4c. 不注意ゆえ事故に遭った。(Literary)

I had an accident because of my carelessness.

- 5a. ^{ねん}念を入れたこととてよい仕上がりだ。

- 5b. 念を入れただけあって、よい仕上がりだ。

Because we paid attention to detail, it's (now) a good finish.

6a. 山に登るとて出かけた。

6b. 山に登ると言って出かけた。(Natural)

When I said to climb at the mountain, he went out to.

The Adverbial Particle とて

とて is equivalent to だって and であっても and means "even (though)".

7. 犬とてそんなことは分かる。

Even dogs understand such a thing.

8. この事件とて例外ではありません。

Even this case is not exceptional.

9. どのような事件とても例外にはあらず。

There is no exception no matter what the situation.

10. 彼のためとて（何でも）やるというわけではない。

Even if it was for him, it's not to say that I would.

11. 彼女らとてやりたくてやったわけではない。

Even though they wanted to do it, it's not to say that they did it.

The Conjunctive Particle とて

The conjunctive とて may attach to the 終止形 to mean "even if". The combinations -たとて and -だとて become -たって and -だって respectfully in the spoken language. からとて, which is normally replaced with **からといって** or **からって**, means "just because".

12. つか^{あきら} 疲^諦れたからとて めるわけにはいかぬ！

You just can't quit because you're tired!

13. なぐ^殴られたとてかまわない。

It's fine even if it's struck.

14. たとえ反対されたとして、やり^ぬ抜くぞ。

Even if you were to protest, you'd still carry through.

15. 本当かなあ、本当にノー・プロブレムかなあと心配だったのだが、さりとして他に道もないし、とにかくこれからウルデレまで行ってみるしかない。

I worried whether it were so, that there really was no problem; nevertheless, there is no other road, and we had no choice but to try to go from now to Uludere anyway.

From 雨天炎天ーギリシャ・トルコ辺境紀行ー by 村上春樹.

Grammar Note: さり is the 終止形 of an ancient copular structure, which accounts for its odd appearance in comparison to modern structures. さりとして = そうだからといって.

The Conjunctive/Final Particle とも

Phrase	Meaning
どんなに...とも	No matter...
どれだけ...とも	No matter...
Adverb + とも	At the least/most
Repetition of とも	Whether
とも	語尾 emphasizing a strong statement
たとえ + vol. + とも	Even if
...なくともいい・かまわない	Don't mind
Value/degree + とも	At the very

Classification Note: When used as a 語尾 it is classified as a final particle.

16. たとえ雨が降ろうともフットボールをする。

I play soccer even if it's raining.

17. どれだけ時間がかかろうとも、支持します。

I will support them no matter how long it takes.

18. 遅くとも 3 時までに来なさい。(From superior to inferior)

Come here by three at the latest.

19. 少なくとも 10 人は要ります。

We need ten people at the least.

20. 理解されなくともまったくかまわない。

I really don't care if its not understood.

21. 来るとも来ないとも分からない。

I don't know whether he's coming or not coming.

22. そうだとも !

Absolutely!

23. 特に英語を勉強しなくとも、楽勝だろうね。

Particularly English, i's probably a piece of cake for you even if you don't study.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with the case particle とて.
2. Create a sentence with the adverbial particle とて.
3. Create a sentence with the conjunctive particle とて.
4. Replace tote in the examples with modern equivalents.
5. Show how って, たって, and だって relate to とて.
6. Create a sentence with the conjunctive particle とも.
7. Create a sentence with the final particle とも.
8. Create a sentence with the conjunctive particle たりとも.

第270課: The Particle して

The particle して has lost its steam, but it is still important to know how to use it.

The Case Particle して

1. Shows that everyone is doing/being something.

1. みなして考えよう。

Let's all think together.

2. 二人して行事を阻止した。

The two together obstructed the event.

3. 親子四人して出かけてハワイに行った。

The family of four left and went to Hawaii.

4. 兄弟二人して天才だよ。

The two siblings are geniuses.

2. Used with the causative to **mark the performer** of the action. It is frequently used with the auxiliary verb -しめる. It may be used with を.

5. 私をして言わしめれば

If you ask me

6. 師匠を（して）降参させたとは大した腕前だ。

Making the master surrender is a considerable ability.

3. Shows the method by which something **is done "with"**.

7a. 薬して治す。（Classical）

7b. 薬で治す。（Modern）

Heal with medicine.

8a. 御衣して耳を塞ぎ給ひつ (Classical)

8b. 彼女は職服で耳を覆った。 (Modern)

She covered her ears with the robe.

From the 源氏物語

The Conjunctive Particle して

1. Following the 連用形 of an adjective or ～ず, the conjunctive particle して, while affirmative, raises something similar or opposite.

9. 莊嚴にして優美な曲ですね。

It's a song that is solemn at the same time it is elegant isn't it?

10. 簡にして要を得る。

To be brief and to the point.

2. After the 連用形 of an adjective or ～ず, it is equivalent to "being".

11. 若くして名を成した。

I made a name for myself being young.

12. 彼女なくしては生きられない。

I can't live without her.

13. 努力せずして成功はないぞ。

There is no success without putting effort.

にして

にして is equivalent to で or なのに meaning "while". にしては is slightly more emphatic. にしても is like "even if (you) were to)". にしても may also be seen in more forceful contexts as にしろ・せよ. In casual speech, it may be にしたって.

14. 一瞬にして燃え尽きた。

It burned away **at** an instant.

15. いずれにしろ、すぐ戻ってくる。

I'll be back soon **whether or not**.

16. 食べないにしても、もっとやせるようになるというわけではない。

Even if you were to not eat, that doesn't mean you'll be able to get thinner.

17. 夏にしては、よく雨が降りました。

It's rained often **for** summer.

18. リーダーにしてからがこの始末だ。

Even if you're the leader, this is the end result.

Grammar Note: にしてからが is a slightly more contrasting variant of にして.

からして

1. Strengthens the meaning of a starting point.

19. 彼は子供の時分からして優しかった。

He was nice **since** he was a child.

20. 若者の時からして

Since the time...was a youth

21. こんな初歩的なことからして理解できない。

You can't even understand **(from)** such an elementary thing.

22. 言うことからして生意気だよ。

You saying, **for starters**, is impudent.

Grammar Note: よりして may also be used in this way.

2. Shows continued basis of a decision and is equivalent to からみて and からいって--"based on/seeing from".

23. 彼女は顔つきからして、本当に美しいですね。

Starting with her look, she's really beautiful, isn't she?

24. 状況から見て、^{けいざいきき}経済危機だ。

Seeing from the situation, it's an economic crisis.

25. 今の状況からして節電の必要がない。

Based on the current situation, it is not necessary to have brown-outs.

26. あなたの口ぶりからして諦める気があるようだ。

It appears you have intentions of giving up **judging from** your talk.

27. 彼はひらがなからして読めない。

He can't even read Hiragana.

28. ^{たいど}態度からして、^{しっぱい}あいつは失敗したのだろう。

Based on his attitude, he probably failed.

29. ^{てん}どの点からみても^{てんさい}天才だよ。

No matter what you look at, he's a genius.

30. ^{しけん}私見から言って

From my personal opinion

3. Frequently followed by して, から may also strengthen the sense of "much less" when raising the most fundamental thing. In other words, it emphasizes the "not to mention" aspect of something.

31. 先生から（して）そんな^{ふくそう}服装では^{こま}困ります。

Even for a teacher, that kind of attire is bothersome.

32. 学生からそんな^{しせい}姿勢はだめだよ。

That kind of attitude is bad even from students.

なくして

なくして means "if it wasn't for" and is seen after **nouns**.

33. 愛なくして、人間は存在できないだろう。

If it wasn't for love, humans would probably not exist.

34. 苦勞なくして儲けなし。

No pain no gain.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Create a sentence with the case particle して.
2. Create a sentence with the conjunctive particle して.
3. Create a sentence with the combination particle として.
4. Create a sentence with the combination particle にして.
5. Create a sentence with the combination particle からして.
6. Create a sentence with なくして.

第271課: Dialectical 自他動詞

There are several intransitive verb forms unique to specific areas of Japan. There are many verbs with several transitive forms. However, as we have seen in previous lessons, they're all used extensively. They may just not mean the same things. The intransitive verb forms we'll see in this lesson are almost exclusively dialectal. The interesting thing about these words is that they fill in lexical gaps hard to explain away through 標準語. Some of them have weird origins, which makes things even more interesting. We'll even learn about a conjugation unique to only one dialect! Let's begin.

Love Variation!

Because the process of deriving intransitive and transitive verbs is not completely straightforward, there is variation in how you should express transitivity on a case by case basis. Below are some common regional variation that you may encounter. The arrow indicates correct, Standard Japanese.

1. ガムが 靴 ^{くつ} にくつつかっている。 (東北弁) → ガムが靴にくつついている。
Gum is stuck to my shoes.

Form Note: Speakers who use くつつかる use it as a more emphatic version of くつつく. This is one of those words which if you use it, you may not even notice it's dialectal until you realize no one else in the country uses it.

2. 解 ^{かい} が 求 ^{もと} まる。 → 解が求められる・解が ^{ととの} 整 う・解にたどり着く。
For a solution to be solved.

Form Note: 求まる has existed but has fallen out of use except by some people in math. When people hear it for the first time, they are often taken back and think it is grammatically incorrect.

3. 単語が覚わった。 (^{なごや}名古屋～^{ぎふ}岐阜) → 覚えきった。

I got the words down. (memory)

Form Note: This form should be impossible as this would mean that it ultimately derived from 覚える + ある. 覚える shares 思える, and both can be classified as verbs of spontaneity. Other verbs like this include 見える and 聞こえる. They describe things that happen naturally on their own. But, 覚わる, a form which is supposed to be impossible accidentally came about and is used a lot in some areas of Japan. Another word that came about from a similar mistake is 報われる. The verb for "to reward" was 報ゆ. Rather than using the passive ending normally, which results in the modern 報いられる, the verb was analyzed as being 報う instead. Today, 報う, 報いる, 報われる, and 報いられる exist. The spontaneity verbs ended in ゆ in the past as well, so this may have something to deal with 覚わる coming about.

4. ^{きんにく}筋 肉 が ^{きた}鍛 わる。 (名古屋 Area ?) → 筋肉が鍛えられる。

For one's muscles to be built.

5. あごが鍛わった気がする。

I feel like my jaw is hardened up.

6. ロープが ^{こお}凍 って ^{むす}結 ばらない。 → ^{ひだべん}(飛 驒 弁) ロープが凍って結ぶことができない。

The rope froze and I can't get a knot in it.

The Auxiliary Verb ～さる: Anti-Causative/Spontaneous Occurrence

In 北海道弁 and other northern dialects, you may see さる attached to the 未然形 of verbs to create intransitive verb pairs. Examples of this include くっつかさる, 溶かさる = 溶ける, and 終わらさる = 終わる. However, it is not the case that

speakers here don't use the regular intransitive forms. So, what exactly is さる used for? First, let's go over its conjugation.

一段 Verbs	未然形 + らさる	食べらさる
五段 Verbs	未然形 + さる	読まさる

This is actually used to create spontaneity phrases just like 見える. Because these words are intransitive too, this is yet another means of 自動詞化. However, this is completely unique to 北海道弁. This conjugation doesn't exist in any other dialect area. The meaning is along the lines of not intending to do something, but conditions proceed in a way that you find yourself naturally in the situation.

7. この小説は面白くて、どんどん読まされます。

This book is so interesting that I just end up reading more and more of it.

This conjugation is perfect for not implying one's incapability or incompetence when used in the negative ~(ら) さんない. For instance, say your pen doesn't work. If you were to say in Standard Japanese このペンは書けない. It's unclear why you can't use the pen. Is it because the ink is out or because somehow you're too stupid to know how to use the pen? In 北海道弁, you can place all the blame on the natural order of things by saying the following.

8. このペン書かさんない。

This pen won't write.

第272課: The Particle つ

The particle つ has been greatly reduced to hardly nothing in Modern Japanese, but it holds on in certain cases that this lesson will discuss.

The Case Particle つ

The **attributive** case particle つ follows nominals to indicate the possessive and survives in few words such as 目毛・睫（まつげ） "eyelash". If you pay attention really closely to how this is actually used, you'll see that this particle seems to have a locative function as well.

1. 天津神

Heavenly gods

2. たき せ 滝 つ瀬とは川の流れの激しいところだ。

A takitsuse is a place where the current of a river is violent.

3. 天津日嗣

Imperial throne

4. あま 天 つ風

Winds of heaven

5. あきつ 秋 入 梅

Long fall rain

6a. すえ かた 夏の 末 つ 方

6b. 夏の終わり (Modern)

The end of summer

7. 上枝・秀つ枝 (A 雅語)

Upper branch

Word Note: This last example is read as ほつえ. The opposite is 下枝, which although is normally read as したえだ should be read as しずえ as the true antonym. The ず is ultimately the particle つ.

8. おとつい

The day after tomorrow

Word Note: In more standard Japanese, the last word becomes おととい. おとつ
い comes from a sound

change of the Classical Japanese phrase 遠^{をち}つ日^ひ.

9. しかも 天^{あま}日^{つひ}のごとく若くかがやかしく、悩みと憂いが兆しかけた眉は凜々しさを
加え、豊^{とよ}葦^{あし}原^{はらの}中^{なか}国^{つくに}にまた見ることも叶わぬような美しい 壮^{わかも}夫^{もの}であった。

Moreover, he was a beautiful, splendid man that she could never see with the
likes of Toyoashihara no Nakatsukuni, though he was young and bright like the
heavenly sun in addition to the chivalry in his eyebrows which foretold sorrow
and grief.

From 獅子・孔雀 by 三島由紀夫.

Word Note: 中国 is another example of this particle although it's in a name.

10. どのような禍^{まが}津^{つひ}日^もも、わたくし共の恋の樹を枯らす力は有ちませぬ。

No calamitous day could have the power to cut down our tree of love.

From 獅子・孔雀 by 三島由紀夫.

The Conjunctive Particle つ

The conjunctive particle つ shows two repetitive actions. It is normally only seen in set expressions.

11a. 彼は行きつ戻りつしながら待った。

11b. 彼は行き来しながら待った。 (More modern)

He waited while walking to and fro.

12. 矯めつ眇めつ眺める。

To take a good look at something.

13a. 彼はとつおいつ思案する嫌いがある。

13b. 彼はあれやこれや思案する嫌いがある。 (More common)

He has the tendency to ponder over this and that.

14. 夢のなかではいつも父と追いつ追われつして、親雄が殺されるか父が殺されるかした。

In Chikao's dreams it was always a cat chase with his father, and it was either him or his father being killed.

From 獅子 by 三島由紀夫.

15. 浮きつ沈みつ

Floating up and down

16. 御米は依然として、のつそつ床の中で動いていた。

Oyone was still stretching and crouching in her bed.

From 門 by 夏目漱石.

Derivation Note: のつそつ is a contraction of のつつそつ, which is a contraction of のりつ反りつ.

17. 組んず解れつ

Locked in a grapple

Derivation Note: The previous expression comes from a sound change of 組みつ解れつ.

～み can also be seen in the pattern "連用形 of verb + ～み + verb with ～ず + ～み" to show two actions or conditions were being repeated in alternation. This, too, is an **archaism**.

18. 降りみ降らずみ (古語)

From raining to not raining

Table of Contents

[第273課: The Particle しき](#)

The particle しき greatly resembles だけ, but it is no longer used a lot and is very limited in usage.

The Adverbial Particle しき

しき is seen after これ, それ, and あれ to express that something is "only about...much". The particle しき derives from 式 meaning "style". しき is synonymous to the pattern たかが…くらい.

1. これしきだ。

It's just this much.

2. これしきの問題で弱音を吐くな。

Don't whine about such an insignificant problem.

3. たかがそれくらいのもんだから、心配するな。

Don't worry cause it's only just that much.

4. ほんのあれしきのことで驚いてはいけぬぞ。

You mustn't be astonished at such a mere thing as that.

Orthography Note: You may write しき in 当て字 as 式.

Table of Contents

第274課: Punctuation

Text (文章) is made of sentences (文), which make paragraphs (文節). Words aren't spaced, but overall, punctuation is very similar to English. Unlike English, though, there aren't understood guidelines. Punctuation is hardly taught. Most points in this lesson come from the Ministry of Education's suggestions from 1946. To best demonstrate the contents of it, examples provided in it will also be shown here with revised spellings.

Terminology Notes: Punctuation marks = 約物 (やくもの) ; Punctuation = 句読法 (くとうほう)

句点・まる

。 marks the end of a statement/sentence including inversions even in parentheses. However, if it is very simple item, it is omitted. The decision is subjective, but things like 「気をつけて」 don't need 。. You may also see it after parentheses at the end of a sentence.

1. 大雨の影響で三重県内では桑名市で少なくとも7棟の住宅が、菰野町で1棟が床上まで水につかりました。

Due to the effect of heavy rain there are 7 houses at least in Kuwana City inside Mie Prefecture and one house in Komono Town where they are submerged in water above floor level.

2. 来た、来た、あの猫が。

It came, it came, that cat.

3. 「どっちへ。」 「葛飾まで。」

"To where?" "To Katsushika"

4. おいしい、これ。

This is delicious.

5. このことは、すでに第四章で説明した（六十七頁参照）

This is already explained in Chapter 4 (See Pg. 67)

The ピリオド

The ピリオド is used in horizontal writing to separate the parts of a date. Its actual use as a period is extremely, extremely rare because there is 。 .

6. 99.4.5

March 5, 1999

読点（とうてん） & コンマ

The 読点, 、 , is used at the writer's discretion for a number of things. Its main usage is to show a pause. It may also show the separation of numbers. As for numbers, there is the native breakup by powers of four, and then there is the Western way by powers of three. Both are used with the Western way in formal, official business. In horizontal text, the comma may rarely be seen as , .

Above is what you'd need if you quickly want to know information about the Japanese comma. There are actually other guidelines out there, but as mentioned before, many Japanese never study them. Nevertheless, knowing the following information will aid you in your writing.

7. 私は、野球が大好きです。

I love baseball.

8. 二、三〇〇円

Two, three hundred yen

9. 三五六, 五六七, 三五二

356,567,352

10. 出た, 出た, 月が。

It's out, it's out, the moon.

11. 聞いたか、僕のいうことを？

Did you hear...what I said?

As a primary general rule, a comma is placed after a pause in a sentence, with the most obvious place being after dependent clauses. Even if a pause takes the 終止形, 、 is used instead of 。 if the sense of the sentence continues. However, based on other balances in the sentence, 。 may prevail.

12a. 父も喜び、母も喜んだ。

12b. 父も喜んだ、母も喜んだ。

My father and my mother were joyous.

13. この真心が天に通じ、人の心をも動かしたのであろう。彼の事業はようやく村人の間に理解されはじめました。

This devotion lead to heaven, and definitely moved the hearts of people. His work was finally beginning to be understood among the villagers.

There is also something like a half-period called the シロテン. Its use has been proposed and promoted, and in the event of leaving the above sentence as,

14. この真心が天に通じ、人の心をも動かしたのであろう。彼の事業は・・・

it would be perfect rather than the period. The use of シロテン is very limited, but you may see it depending on how much literature you read. is what it looks like. It is essentially a hollowed out comma. Typing it is not an option yet. However, if there were more people willing to use it, that could be changed.

The secondary principal to using the comma is placing it before and after adverbial phrases. However, intonation may cause some the comma to be deleted.

15. 昨夜、帰宅以来、お尋ねの件について（、）当時の日誌を調べて見ましたところ、やはり（、）そのとき申し上げた通りでありました。（敬語）

Last night, after returning home, in regards to matter I was asked, just when I looked through my diary at the time, it was as to be expected just as I had said then.

A comma is meant in Japanese to flow with the context. The context should be easy to process, and so the most important thing to gather is that its use is appropriately controlled with realistic utterance in mind. As such, just as in English, the comma can clarify intended meaning. With that said, its use with conjunctions, interjections, and aizuchi are quite the same.

16. 坊や、お出で。

Boy, come here.

17. また、私は・・・

I, again,...

18. 私は（、）反対です。

I'm against it.

When there is more than one attribute, the first attribute should be marked with a comma.

19. くじゃくは、長い、美しい尾をあおぎのように広げました。

The peacock expanded its long, beautiful tail like a fan.

Of course, let's not forget the comma's use in listing. It's also often placed before the start of 「」. It's also after と、 when text follows rather than a citation verb. Even in listing, though, "unneeded" commas are commonly deleted. This choice is seen with particles like と and も.

20a. 父も母も兄も姉も

20b. 父も、母も、兄も、姉も

Also my father, mother, older brother and older sister

Terminology Note: 読(点) is 、 and コンマ is , .

感嘆符 & 疑問符

Also エスクレーションマーク, a ! is used to show great exclamation.

21. 一体全体！

What on earth!

The 疑問符 (ぎもんぷ)

A 疑問符 or クエスチオンマーク, ?, is used to mark a question emphatically.

The question is normally created by a rise in intonation rather than with the particle か. The mark is usually called ハテナ.

22. えっ、どうのこと？

Huh, what do you mean?

点線

点々 is a line of usually three~five dots that shows the dodging/evasion/significant pause during a conversation. When lengthened to a whole chain, it is then called a 点線, "a line of dots". This is used frequently to show that there is an omission of text afterwards. This is just like in English. This can be seen in connecting chapter titles and page numbers in tables of contents like below.

23. えっと・・・何？

Uh....what?

24. 「それからね・・・・・・いやいや、もうなんにも申し上げますまい」 （ちょっと古風）

"Then,.....no, no, I already don't want to say anything any more".

25. 第百章.....567 ページ

Chapter 100.....Page 567

中線

The 中線, —, which is often longer, is essentially the Japanese version of a dash. As the exact 中線 seen so much in Japanese literature is often not available in typing, it is usually replaced with two dashes (ダッシュ). As far as terminology is concerned, 中線 = ダッシュ. This is only a typographical difference.

The 中線, which is the official term for this punctuation mark, is often used just like a 点線 to show dodging/pause in speech. At the end, then, it would show a lingering effect.

26. 「それはね、——いや、もう止しましょう。」

"That,....no, let's just quit already".

27. 「まあ、ほんとうにおかわいそうに——。」

"Well, [subject] really is pitiful".

In the place of 「」, it may separate text from the main body of the sentence, but it is more detached.

27. これではない——といって起ちあがったのが彼であった。

The one saying that *this won't work* and got up was him.

It may also be used to show spatial/temporal distance. In this sense, it can also function as から～まで.

28. 五分—十分—十五分

Five minutes, ten minutes, fifteen minutes

27. 上野—新橋

Ueno to Shinbashi

It can also be used in the sense of すなわち.

28. 心持—心理学の用語によれば情緒とか気分とか状態意識とかいうのであるが、

Feeling--according to psychological terminology is things like emotion, mood, and situation awareness, but...

It may set things aside for explanatory emphasis, mean "from...to...", and set numbers or names apart in Japanese addresses. It should be written vertically in vertical text.

Caution Note: This has nothing to do with the 長音符 used with かな to show vowel elongation. There is no correlation, and the 長音符 and 中線 are visibly different. — (長音符) VS — (中線・ダッシュ). If you have trouble seeing this, zoom in and notice the curve on the left-hand part of the 長音符. Also, the 長音符 has a different origin. The dash comes from Western orthography, but the 長音符 comes from the right-hand side of 引. The mark was used well before the 明治時代 (Meiji Period).

中点・中黒

The 中黒 may *juxtapose* similar items, act as a decimal, show the date, juncture foreign compound words, and separate titles, names, and positions. It may also be called 中ぽち, 中ぽつ, and 黒丸 (くろまる) .

29. 一四・七

14.7

30. ヒラリー・クリントン

Hillary Clinton

31. 平成一三・五・二六

May 26, Heisei 13 (2001)

32. 安心と信頼・品質をあなたへ

Peace of mind and trust/quality to you

33. 全銀協会長・永易克典

Japanese Banker's Association Head, Katsunori Nagayasu

34. 東京・大阪

Tokyo-Osaka

35. 大阪・京都・神戸

Osaka-Kyoto-Kobe

脇点 & 脇線

The 脇線 is a vertical line that directs the reader's attention a certain part of a phrase or word or the entirety of such.

36. そう考えられる。

The 脇点 (わきてん)

The 脇点 is a comma-like italic punctuation mark in Japanese vertical text that is used to direct some sort of special attention to what it's beside.

37. 「私の推察では、誰かが、姉のスーツケースを自分の席の上の網棚に置いたのだと思います。……………」

My guess is that someone put my older sister's suit case above their own seat.

From 黒い樹海 by 松本清張.

スペース

The space may be used in かな-only text to separate phrases to prevent confusion. It is seen before the beginning of a new paragraph, similar to a tab. Spaces are also left after non-Japanese punctuation marks such as ! . Spaces may also be between names and things in an address or title.

38. スペースは かなのみでの ぶんにつかわれているよ。

Spaces are only used in Kana-only sentences.

39. 何？ 分かりません。

What? I don't understand.

40. 大和銀行 大阪支店

Yamato Bank, Osaka Branch

41. 藤原 恵子

Keiko Fujiwara

Brackets

The 鉤括弧（かぎかっこう） and 二重（ふたえ）括弧

The 鉤括弧 is the true Japanese quotation mark and is seen as 「」 in horizontal texts and is rotated 90° in vertical texts. When quotations are within a quotations, you must use double quotation marks, 『』 .

42. 「こんにちは」

43. 国歌「君が代」

National Anthem "Kimigayo"

44. 「さっきお出かけの途中、『なにかめずらしい本はないか。』とお立ち寄りくださいました。」（尊敬語）

"Just a while ago while heading out, [he] stopped by and [asked] "are there any rare books?".

Typological Note: You may also come across ` ` , which have no particular name and are limited to the use of just using quotations around important phrases.

The " " (引用符) is typically used as quotation marks for short phrases--"so-called". They are also sometimes referred to as ノノカギ.

45. これは有名な"東京タワー"です。

This is the so-called famous Tokyo Tower.

The 丸括弧（まるかっこ）・パーレン・小括弧（しょうかっこ）

() may be used to show readings of characters (although ふりがな is more prevalent). It may also show annotation. In editing, it is used to enclose instructions/signatures. in vertical writing, horizontal ones enclose numbers/letters for sections.

46. 広日本文典（明治三十年刊）

Kounihon Grammar (Published Meiji Period Year 30)

47. （その一）（第二回）（承前）（続き）（完）（終）（未完）（続く）（山田）

(The first)(second time)(continued from)(continuation)(completion)(end)(incomplete)(to continue)(Yamada)

48. (一)

(イ)

(a)

Math Note: In the realm of math, it may show coordinates in geometry, show the argument of a function in programming, show a math matrix, etc.

Reading Note: 丸括弧 is also read as まるがっこ.

Other Brackets

Bracket	Name(s)	Description
[]	角括弧	Its use in literature is almost nonexistent, but it is used in specialized fields in the same way as in English. For instance, it may close a mathematical interval, be seen in chemical formulas, in phonetic transcription, coding, etc.
⟨⟩	山括弧	Used in quantum physics for brackets. You may also see this mark doubled to show readings.
⌈⌋	亀甲括弧・亀の子括弧	Encases abbreviations of some sort and may also be doubled
{ }	波括弧・ブレース・カーリブラケット・カール・中括弧	Encloses words or lines considered to be together.
【 】	隅付き括弧	When white, used to mark 常用漢字 not taught by 6th grade. When black, it encases labeling and may mark 教育漢字. Also called 隅付きパーレン, 太亀甲, and 黒亀甲.

ツナギ

The ツナギ is a =, resembling an equal sign, and is used in the way a hyphen is in English at the end of a line when a word continues onto the next page. This is only seen with Kana text, and even this has fallen out of use. The ツナギテン, ー, is used in the sense of から～まで.

サルハ トウトウ ジブ=
ンガ ワルカッタト ア=
ヤマリマシタ。

The money finally apologized and said that he was the one at fault.

波ダッシュ・波形・波線・によろ

- From...to...
- Separates a title from a subtitle on the same line.
- Replaces dashes
- Indicates origin.
- Can show long vowels emphatically for comic effect.
- Can suggest that music is playing:

Examples

50. あ〜〜〜

Ahhhhhh

51. ♪ 〜

Suggests music

52. フランス〜

From France

53. 5 時〜 7 時

54. 〜概要〜

-Outline-

55. 東京〜大阪

From Tokyo to Osaka

コロン & セミコロン

Colons are used in showing time when using Arabic numerals. A semicolon can be used in place of a ナカテン. This is rare and seen in horizontal text

56. 3 : 4 6

57. 静岡 ; 浜松 ; 名古屋 ; 大阪, 京都, 神戸 ; 岡山 ; 広島を

Ditto Marks

Ditto marks are very important in 漢字 and かな orthography. Ditto mark in Japanese may be:

踊り字	おどりじ	繰り返し符号	くりかえしきごう	重ね字	かさねじ
送り字	おくりじ	揺すり字	ゆすりじ	重字	じゅうじ
重点	じゅうてん	畳字	じょうじ		

Along with this, there are quite a few ditto marks in Japanese.

々・全	どうのじてん	Doubles a 漢字 or compound	時々、部分々々
ゝ	いちのじてん	Doubles a カタカナ; makes sound basic.	ハゝ
ゞ	いちのじてん	Doubles a カタカナ and makes it voiced.	タゞ
ゎ	いちのじてん	Doubles a ひらがな; makes sound basic.	つゎ
ゑ	いちのじてん	Doubles a ひらがな and makes it voiced.	すゑき
ゑ	ふたのじてん	Doubles the reading of a preceding 漢字.	各ゑ
／＼	くのじてん	Looks like < in vertical texts. Doubles previous phrase.	見る／＼
ふゝ	くのじてん	Looks like ぐ in vertical texts. Doubles previous phrase.	離 離 れ れ → 離 ふ れ \

Spelling Note: The second くのじてん voices the first sound of the phrase it doubles.

Miscellaneous Marks

Mark	Name	Description
=	ダブルハイフン・ 下駄記号	Sometimes used instead of a ・ but typically symbolizes non-existence Kanji glyphs.
※	米印・星	Japanese version of an asterisk and is used to show an annotation.
*	アステリスク	English-like version of the asterisk.
ㇿ	しめ	Closes a letter.
♪♪♪♪	音符	Musical notes that suggest melody.
→←↑↓	矢印	Whatever arrows do.
♡ ♡	ハートマーク	Love

The 庵点 (いおりてん)



The 庵点 is used to mark the beginning of a song and is most known for showing the start of a person's line in Noh Theatre.

第275課: Romanization Systems

There have been several systems used to represent Japanese with Latin characters.

IMABI Romanization

There are 50 rules that also deal with punctuation and spacing concerns. However, please note that these rules are still arbitrary in nature and may not reflect Japanese in a completely linguistically correct fashion.

	The Rules of the IMABI Romanization System
1.	Basic sounds are romanized as seen in Lesson 1~3.
2.	Long vowels are written with literal かな equivalence--おう is "ou" and おお is "oo".
3.	ー is romanized as the preceding vowel-- あー is "aa" and えー is "ee".
4.	Glottal stops are double consonants or as a っ at the end of a word.
5.	A sharp change in pitch is shown with an apostrophe. Ex. hono'o (flame).
6.	N' is n unless before a vowel or an n-sound.
7.	拗音 are not "consonant + y" for sh, ch, and j. So, sha, cha, ja, etc.
8.	Particles are separate yet dependent words. So, kon'nichi wa and not konnichiwa.
9.	The particles は, へ, and を are "wa", "e", and "wo" respectfully.
10.	を is wo
11.	Hyphens are optionally used with certain suffixes.
12.	Question marks are used despite the function of the particle ka.
13.	Exclamation points are used to show extreme emphasis.
14.	Numbers are written out in units. For example, 402 is "yonhyaku (400) ni (2)".
15.	Capitalization is used for place and personal names.
16.	Apostrophes separate adjacent double and single like vowels. Ex. jo'ou.
17.	Dz and dj are always romanized as z and j.
18.	Conjunctive particles such as -do, -te, and -tari are not separate.
19.	The particle ne is not followed by a question mark.
20.	The starting letter of an ending of any sort is lower-cased.
21.	!? is only acceptable for an extremely exclamatory question.

22.	A nakaguro is treated as a comma in series.
23.	A single nakaguro in names is disregarded.
24.	A single nakaguro aside from names is synonymous to the particle to or a slash.
25.	No hyphen is used with the auxiliary verb -beshi and is separate.
26.	No hyphen is used with either the suffix or auxiliary verb -rashii and is separate.
27.	言う is "iu" despite the fact that it's pronounced as "yuu".
28.	No apostrophe shows change in pitch in verbal conjugation. For example, kiite.
29.	The particle ので is transliterated as node instead of no de.
30.	Auxiliary verbs separated by a bound particle are separate words.
31.	Hyphens separate independent words put together. For example, yamato-kotoba.
32.	Exclamatory final particles may or may not be followed by an exclamation mark.
33.	A question ending with an ? is not distinguished from one that is not.
34.	Devoicing is never distinguished in Romanization.
35.	Sh is doubled as ssh.
36.	Ts is doubled as tts
37.	Ch is doubled as tch.
38.	Kw and gw are recognized in historical contexts and in foreign transliterations.
39.	かな extensions are transcribed as seen in Lesson 2.
40.	四つ仮名 distinctions are made in dialectology and for Classical Japanese.
41.	Suru is not attached to nouns it makes verbs.
42.	Su is attached to nouns it makes verbs.
43.	Numbers are split apart by units. For example, 5042 is gosen yonjuu ni
44.	-uu ending verbs have the u's separated with an apostrophe. For example, kuru'u.
45.	Numbers are not spaced out when used with counters.
46.	A ～ is not romanized and is kept as ～.
47.	The particle ka is not separated from interrogatives. For example, dareka (someone).
48.	どうも as in thanks is doumo; all other usages are written as dou mo.

49.	ん is n' when it is the contraction of ない but n when it is the contraction of の.
50.	Plant and animal names are written as one word regardless.

Note: See Lesson 2 for the Kana Charts in the IMABI Romanization System.

Kunrei-skiki Romanization

The Kunrei-shiki was promulgated by the Ministry of Education and was repealed and then given stipulated variants for international relationships and then decreed again in 1954. New かな extensions are hard to apply with this system. So, ambiguity is a problem. For example, ティ and チ are both rendered as "ti".

	ア・A	イ・I	ウ・う U	エ・え E	オ・お O	YA ヤ	YU ュ	YO ョ
K	カ・か KA	キ・き KI	ク・く KU	ケ・け KE	コ・こ KO	キヤ・きゃ KYA	キユ・きゅ KYU	キョ・きょ KYO
S	サ・さ SA	シ・し SI	ス・す SU	セ・せ SE	ソ・そ SO	シャ・しゃ SYA	シュ・しゅ SYU	ショ・しょ SYO
T	タ・た TA	チ・ち TI	ツ・つ TU	テ・て TE	ト・と TO	チャ・ちゃ TYA	チュ・ちゅ TYU	チョ・ちょ TYO
N	ナ・な NA	ニ・に NI	ヌ・ぬ NU	ネ・ね NE	ノ・の NO	ニヤ・にゃ NYA	ニユ・にゅ NYU	ニョ・にょ NYO
H	ハ・は HA	ヒ・ひ HI	フ・ふ HU	ヘ・へ HE	ホ・ほ HO	ヒヤ・ひゃ HYA	ヒユ・ひゅ HYU	ヒョ・ひょ HYO
M	マ・ま MA	ミ・み MI	ム・む MU	メ・め ME	モ・も MO	ミヤ・みゃ MYA	ミユ・みゅ MYU	ミョ・みょ MYO
Y	ヤ・や YA	(I)	ユ・ゆ YU	(E)	ヨ・よ YO			
R	ラ・ら RA	リ・り RI	ル・る RU	レ・れ RE	ロ・ろ RO	リヤ・りゃ RYA	リュ・りゅ RYU	リョ・りょ RYO
W	ワ・わ WA	ヰ・ゐ I	(U)	ヱ・ゑ E	ヲ・を O			
					ン・ん N(')			
G	ガ・が GA	ギ・ぎ GI	グ・ぐ GU	ゲ・げ GE	ゴ・ご GO	ギヤ・ぎゃ GYA	ギユ・ぎゅ GYU	ギョ・ぎょ GYO
Z	ザ・ざ ZA	ジ・じ ZI	ズ・ず ZU	ゼ・ぜ ZE	ゾ・ぞ ZO	ジャ・じゃ ZYA	ジュ・じゅ ZYU	ジョ・じょ ZYO
D	ダ・だ DA	ヂ・ぢ ZI	ヅ・づ ZU	デ・で DE	ド・ど DO	ヂヤ・ぢゃ ZYA	ヂュ・ぢゅ ZYU	ヂョ・ぢょ ZYO
B	バ・ば BA	ビ・び BI	ブ・ぶ BU	ベ・べ BE	ボ・ぼ BO	ビヤ・びゃ BYA	ビユ・びゅ BYU	ビョ・びょ BYO
P	パ・ぱ PA	ピ・ぴ PI	プ・ぷ PU	ペ・ぺ PE	ポ・ぽ PO	ピヤ・ぴゃ PYA	ピユ・ぴゅ PYU	ピョ・ぴょ PYO

Other Orthographic Rules

- The particles へ, ハ・は, and ヲ・を are "e", "wa", and "o" respectively.
- Long vowels are represented with a circumflex mark (^).
- ン・ん is n' before y.
- No exceptions to spelling double consonants.

Exceptions for International Purposes

A	I	U	O
くわ KWA			
ぐわ GWA			
		つ TSU	
		ふ FU	
しゃ SHA	し SHI	しゅ SHU	しょ SHO
じゃ JA	じ JI	じゅ JU	じょ JO
ちゃ DYA	ぢ DI	ぢゅ DYU	ぢょ DYO
		づ DU	

Hepburn Romanization

The Hepburn Romanization system, ヘボン式ローマ字, is credited to James Curtis Hepburn who transcribed the Japanese language into English letters. There are three editions.

Note: Rules for long vowels, long consonants, particles, and n' will be discussed during comparison. As for extended かな, the representation is the same as seen in IMABI Romanization.

The First Edition

	ア・A	イ・I	ウ・U	エ・E	オ・O	YA ヤ	YU ユ	YO ヨ
K	カ・KA	キ・KI	ク・KU	ケ・KE	コ・KO	キヤ・KYA	キユ・KYU	キョ・KYO
S	サ・SA	シ・SHI	ス・SZ	セ・SE	ソ・SO	シャ・SYA	シュ・SYU	ショ・SYO
T	タ・TA	チ・CHI	ツ・TSZ	テ・TE	ト・TO	チャ・CHA	チュ・CHU	チョ・CHO

N	ナ・な NA	ニ・に NI	ヌ・ぬ NU	ネ・ね NE	ノ・の NO	ニヤ・にや NYA	ニユ・にゆ NYU	ニョ・によ NYO
H	ハ・は HA	ヒ・ひ HI	フ・ふ FU	ヘ・ヘ HE	ホ・ほ HO	ヒヤ・ひゃ HYA	ヒユ・ひゅ HYU	ヒョ・ひょ HYO
M	マ・ま MA	ミ・み MI	ム・む MU	メ・め ME	モ・も MO	ミヤ・みゃ MYA	ミユ・みゅ MYU	ミョ・みょ MYO
Y	ヤ・や YA		ユ・ゆ YU		ヨ・よ YO			
R	ラ・ら RA	リ・り RI	ル・る RU	レ・れ RE	ロ・ろ RO	リヤ・りゃ RYA	リュ・りゅ RYU	リョ・りょ RYO
W	ワ・わ WA	ヰ・ゐ WI		ヱ・ゑ WE	ヲ・を WO			
					ン・ん N(-), M			
G	ガ・が GA	ギ・ぎ GI	グ・ぐ GU	ゲ・げ GE	ゴ・ご GO	ギヤ・ぎゃ GYA	ギユ・ぎゅ GYU	ギョ・ぎょ GYO
Z	ザ・ざ ZA	ジ・じ JI	ズ・ず DZ	ゼ・ぜ ZE	ゾ・ぞ ZO	ジャ・じゃ JA	ジュ・じゅ JU	ジョ・じょ JO
D	ダ・だ DA	ヂ・ぢ JI	ヅ・づ DZ	デ・で DE	ド・ど DO	チャ・ちゃ JA	チュ・ちゅ JU	チョ・ちょ JO
B	バ・ば BA	ビ・び BI	ブ・ぶ BU	ベ・べ BE	ボ・ぼ BO	ビヤ・びゃ BYA	ビユ・びゅ BYU	ビョ・びょ BYO
P	パ・ぱ PA	ピ・ぴ PI	プ・ぷ PU	ペ・ぺ PE	ポ・ぽ PO	ピヤ・ぴゃ PYA	ピユ・ぴゅ PYU	ピョ・ぴょ PYO

The Second Edition

	ア・A	イ・I	ウ・う U	エ・え YE	オ・お O	YA ヤ	YU ユ	YO ヨ
K	カ・か KA	キ・き KI	ク・く KU	ケ・け KE	コ・こ KO	キヤ・きゃ KIYA	キユ・きゅ KIU	キョ・きょ KIYO
S	サ・さ SA	シ・し SI	ス・す SU	セ・せ SE	ソ・そ SO	シャ・しゃ SHA	シュ・しゅ SHU	ショ・しょ SHO
T	タ・た TA	チ・ち CHI	ツ・つ TSU	テ・て TE	ト・と TO	チャ・ちゃ CHA	チュ・ちゅ CHU	チョ・ちょ CHO
N	ナ・な NA	ニ・に NI	ヌ・ぬ NU	ネ・ね NE	ノ・の NO	ニヤ・にや NYA	ニユ・にゆ NYU	ニョ・によ NYO
H	ハ・は HA	ヒ・ひ HI	フ・ふ FU	ヘ・ヘ HE	ホ・ほ HO	ヒヤ・ひゃ HYA	ヒユ・ひゅ HYU	ヒョ・ひょ HYO
M	マ・ま MA	ミ・み MI	ム・む MU	メ・め ME	モ・も MO	ミヤ・みゃ MYA	ミユ・みゅ MYU	ミョ・みょ MYO
Y	ヤ・や YA		ユ・ゆ YU		ヨ・よ YO			

R	ラ・ら RA	リ・り RI	ル・る RU	レ・れ RE	ロ・ろ RO	リャ・りゃ RYA	リュ・りゅ RYU	リョ・りょ RYO
W	ワ・わ WA	ヰ・ゐ WI		ヱ・ゑ YE	ヲ・を WO			
					ン・ん N(-), M			
G	ガ・が GA	ギ・ぎ GI	グ・ぐ GU	ゲ・げ GE	ゴ・ご GO	ギャ・ぎゃ GYA	ギユ・ぎゅ GYU	ギョ・ぎょ GYO
Z	ザ・ざ ZA	ジ・じ ZI	ズ・ず DZU	ゼ・ぜ ZE	ゾ・ぞ ZO	ジャ・じゃ JA	ジュ・じゅ JU	ジユ・じょ JO
D	ダ・だ DA	チ・ち ZI	ツ・づ DZU	デ・で DE	ド・ど DO	チャ・ちゃ JA	チュ・ちゅ JU	チョ・ちょ JO
B	バ・ば BA	ビ・び BI	ブ・ぶ BU	ベ・べ BE	ボ・ぼ BO	ビャ・びゃ BYA	ビュ・びゅ BYU	ビョ・びょ BYO
P	パ・ぱ PA	ピ・ぴ PI	プ・ぷ PU	ペ・ぺ PE	ポ・ぽ PO	ピャ・ぴゃ PYA	ピュ・ぴゅ PYU	ピョ・ぴょ PYO

Edits

- エ・え and ヱ・ゑ were transcribed as ye.
- ズ・ず and ツ・づ were both changed to dzu.
- ス・す was not transcribed as sz.
- ツ・つ was not transcribed as tsz.
- キャ・きゃ, キュ・きゅ, and キョ・きょ were transcribed as kiya, kiu, and kiyo respectively.
- くわ was transcribed as kwa.

Third Edition: 1887 (Traditional Hepburn/Hyoujun-shiki Roomaji 標準式ローマ字)

	ア・A	イ・I	ウ・う U	エ・え E	オ・お O	YA ヤ	YU ユ	YO ヨ
K	カ・か KA	キ・き KI	ク・く KU	ケ・け KE	コ・こ KO	キャ・きゃ KYA	キュ・きゅ KYU	キョ・きょ KYO
S	サ・さ SA	シ・し SHI	ス・す SU	セ・せ SE	ソ・そ SO	シャ・しゃ SHA	シュ・しゅ SHU	ショ・しょ SHO
T	タ・た TA	チ・ち CHI	ツ・つ TSU	テ・て TE	ト・と TO	チャ・ちゃ CHA	チュ・ちゅ CHU	チョ・ちょ CHO
N	ナ・な NA	ニ・に NI	ヌ・ぬ NU	ネ・ね NE	ノ・の NO	ニャ・にゃ NYA	ニュ・にゅ NYU	ニョ・にょ NYO
H	ハ・は HA	ヒ・ひ HI	フ・ふ FU	ヘ・へ HE	ホ・ほ HO	ヒャ・ひゃ HYA	ヒュ・ひゅ HYU	ヒョ・ひょ HYO

M	マ・ま MA	ミ・み MI	ム・む MU	メ・め ME	モ・も MO	ミヤ・みや MYA	ミュ・みゅ MYU	ミョ・みよ MYO
Y	ヤ・や YA		ユ・ゆ YU		ヨ・よ YO			
R	ラ・ら RA	リ・り RI	ル・る RU	レ・れ RE	ロ・ろ RO	リヤ・りや RYA	リュ・りゅ RYU	リョ・りよ RYO
W	ワ・わ WA	ヰ・ゐ (W)I		ヱ・ゑ (W)E	ヲ・を (W)O			
					ン・ん N(-), M			
G	ガ・が GA	ギ・ぎ GI	グ・ぐ GU	ゲ・げ GE	ゴ・ご GO	ギヤ・ぎや GYA	ギユ・ぎゅ GYU	ギョ・ぎょ GYO
Z	ザ・ざ ZA	ジ・じ JI	ズ・ず ZU	ゼ・ぜ ZE	ゾ・ぞ ZO	ジャ・じゃ JA	ジュ・じゅ JU	ジョ・じょ JO
D	ダ・だ DA	ヂ・ぢ JI	ヅ・づ ZU	デ・で DE	ド・ど DO	チャ・ちゃ JA	チュ・ちゅ JU	チョ・ちょ JO
B	バ・ば BA	ビ・び BI	ブ・ぶ BU	ベ・べ BE	ボ・ぼ BO	ビヤ・びや BYA	ビユ・びゅ BYU	ビョ・びょ BYO
P	パ・ぱ PA	ピ・ぴ PI	プ・ぷ PU	ペ・ぺ PE	ポ・ぽ PO	ピヤ・ぴや PYA	ピユ・ぴゅ PYU	ピョ・ぴょ PYO

Edits

- エ・え and ヱ・ゑ are e and (w)e respectively.
- The w in wi, we, and wo is made optional.
- 四つ仮名 characters become standardized.
- Ky-sounds are no longer exceptions.
- Kw and gw is only recognized in historical contexts.

Modern Hepburn

	ア・A	イ・I	ウ・う U	エ・え E	オ・お O	YA ヤ	YU ュ	YO ョ
K	カ・か KA	キ・き KI	ク・く KU	ケ・け KE	コ・こ KO	キヤ・きゃ KYA	キユ・きゅ KYU	キョ・きょ KYO
S	サ・さ SA	シ・し SHI	ス・す SU	セ・せ SE	ソ・そ SO	シャ・しゃ SHA	シュ・しゅ SHU	ショ・しょ SHO
T	タ・た TA	チ・ち TI	ツ・つ TU	テ・て TE	ト・と TO	チャ・ちゃ CHA	チュ・ちゅ CHU	チョ・ちょ CHO
N	ナ・な NA	ニ・に NI	ヌ・ぬ NU	ネ・ね NE	ノ・の NO	ニヤ・にや NYA	ニユ・にゅ NYU	ニョ・によ NYO

H	ハ・は HA	ヒ・ひ HI	フ・ふ FU	ヘ・ヘ HE	ホ・ほ HO	ヒヤ・ひゃ HYA	ヒュ・ひゅ HYU	ヒョ・ひょ HYO
M	マ・ま MA	ミ・み MI	ム・む MU	メ・め ME	モ・も MO	ミヤ・みゃ MYA	ミユ・みゅ MYU	ミョ・みょ MYO
Y	ヤ・や YA		ユ・ゆ YU		ヨ・よ YO			
R	ラ・ら RA	リ・り RI	ル・る RU	レ・れ RE	ロ・ろ RO	リヤ・りゃ RYA	リュ・りゅ RYU	リョ・りょ RYO
W	ワ・わ WA	ヰ・ゐ (W)I		ヱ・ゑ (W)E	ヲ・を (W)O			
					ン・ん N(')			
G	ガ・が GA	ギ・ぎ GI	グ・ぐ GU	ゲ・げ GE	ゴ・ご GO	ギヤ・ぎゃ GYA	ギユ・ぎゅ GYU	ギョ・ぎょ GYO
Z	ザ・ざ ZA	ジ・じ JI	ズ・ず ZU	ゼ・ぜ ZE	ゾ・ぞ ZO	ジャ・じゃ JA	ジュ・じゅ JU	ジョ・じょ JO
D	ダ・だ DA	ヂ・ぢ JI	ヅ・づ ZU	デ・で DE	ド・ど DO	チャ・ぢゃ JA	チュ・ぢゅ JU	チョ・ぢょ JO
B	バ・ば BA	ビ・び BI	ブ・ぶ BU	ベ・べ BE	ボ・ぼ BO	ビヤ・びゃ BYA	ビュ・びゅ BYU	ビョ・びょ BYO
P	パ・ぱ PA	ピ・ぴ PI	プ・ぷ PU	ペ・ぺ PE	ポ・ぽ PO	ピヤ・ぴゃ PYA	ピュ・ぴゅ PYU	ピョ・ぴょ PYO

Edits

- (W)i and (w)e are essentially i and e respectfully.
- (W)o is based essentially on personal preference.
- ン・ん is no longer ever n- or m.

Compare and Contrast

Changes also occurred in respect to long vowels and long consonants and with n' over time. Because there are no differences between these topics in the three original editions of Hepburn, this discussion will be about Traditional vs. Modern.

Long Vowels

	Traditional	Modern
A	Aa	Ā
I	Ii	Ii
U	Uu	Ū
E+e	E/ee	Ē

E+I	Ei	Ei
O+O	Oo	Ō
O+U	Ou	Ō

Note: For loanwords all vowels are elongated with macrons. Also, common variations exist for O+U. Such variants include "oh", "o", "ou", "oo", and "ô".

Particles

	Traditional	Modern
へ	He	E
は	Wa	Wa
を	Wo	(W)o

Double Consonants

There is no difference between any edition of Hepburn in respect to double consonants. Double consonants are represented normally with sh, ts, and ch doubled as "ssh", "tts", and "tch".

The Uvular Nasal Consonant

ン・ん in Traditional Hepburn is transcribed as m when before a m, b, or p sound. When before an n-sound or a vowel, it is separated from these sounds with a hyphen. In Modern Hepburn, m is replaced with n and an apostrophe is used instead of a hyphen when separated n' from n-sounds and vowels.

Nihon-shiki Romanization

The Nihon-shiki was created by Aikitsu Tanakadate 愛橘田中館 and is the basis for the Kunrei-shiki and is essentially the same minus a few exceptions. These differences are:

- Yotsugana differences are maintained.
- W-sounds are distinguished completely.
- Kw and gw are not changed to k and g.

	ア・A	イ・I	ウ・う U	エ・え E	オ・お O	YA ヤ	YU ュ	YO ヨ
--	-----	-----	-------	-------	-------	------	------	------

K	カ・か KA	キ・き KI	ク・く KU	ケ・け KE	コ・こ KO	キヤ・きや KYA	キユ・きゅ KYU	キョ・きよ KYO
S	サ・さ SA	シ・し SI	ス・す SU	セ・せ SE	ソ・そ SO	シャ・しゃ SYA	シュ・しゅ SYU	ショ・しょ SYO
T	タ・た TA	チ・ち TI	ツ・つ TU	テ・て TE	ト・と TO	チャ・ちゃ TYA	チュ・ちゅ TYU	チョ・ちょ TYO
N	ナ・な NA	ニ・に NI	ヌ・ぬ NU	ネ・ね NE	ノ・の NO	ニヤ・にや NYA	ニユ・にゅ NYU	ニョ・によ NYO
H	ハ・は HA	ヒ・ひ HI	フ・ふ HU	ヘ・ヘ HE	ホ・ほ HO	ヒヤ・ひや HYA	ヒユ・ひゅ HYU	ヒョ・ひよ HYO
M	マ・ま MA	ミ・み MI	ム・む MU	メ・め ME	モ・も MO	ミヤ・みや MYA	ミユ・みゅ MYU	ミョ・みよ MYO
Y	ヤ・や YA		ユ・ゆ YU		ヨ・よ YO			
R	ラ・ら RA	リ・り RI	ル・る RU	レ・れ RE	ロ・ろ RO	リヤ・りや RYA	リュ・りゅ RYU	リョ・りよ RYO
W	ワ・わ WA	ヰ・ゐ WI		ヱ・ゑ WE	ヲ・を WO			
					ン・ん N(')			
G	ガ・が GA	ギ・ぎ GI	グ・ぐ GU	ゲ・げ GE	ゴ・ご GO	ギヤ・ぎや GYA	ギユ・ぎゅ GYU	ギョ・ぎよ GYO
Z	ザ・ざ ZA	ジ・じ ZI	ズ・ず ZU	ゼ・ぜ ZE	ゾ・ぞ ZO	ジャ・じゃ ZYA	ジュ・じゅ ZYU	ジョ・じよ ZYO
D	ダ・だ DA	ヂ・ぢ DI	ヅ・づ DU	デ・で DE	ド・ど DO	ヂヤ・ぢや DYA	ヂュ・ぢゅ DYU	ヂョ・ぢよ DYO
B	バ・ば BA	ビ・び BI	ブ・ぶ BU	ベ・べ BE	ボ・ぼ BO	ビヤ・びや BYA	ビユ・びゅ BYU	ビョ・びよ BYO
P	パ・ぱ PA	ピ・ぴ PI	プ・ぷ PU	ペ・ぺ PE	ポ・ぽ PO	ピヤ・ぴや PYA	ピユ・ぴゅ PYU	ピョ・ぴよ PYO
KW	クワ・くわ KWA							
GW	グワ・グワ GWA							

JSL Romanization

The JSL Romanization created by Eleanor Jorden and introduced in her work *Japanese: The Spoken Language* is heavily based off of the Kunrei-shiki Romanization System but has some important differences.

1. All long vowels are shown with doubling. "Ou" is only seen when they are separate sounds.
2. ŋ is distinguished as ġ.
3. N' is written as n̄.
4. An acute accent is used to denote the first high-pitch mora in a word.
5. A grave accent shows the last high-pitch mora in a word.
6. A circumflex shows the only high-pitch mora in a word.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Summarize the IMABI Romanization System.
2. What is different from the first and second editions of the Hepburn System?
3. What is different from the second and third editions of the Hepburn System?
4. What is different from the Traditional and Modern variants of the Hepburn System?
5. How do the Kunrei-shiki and JSL systems differ from the Nihon-shiki?
6. Romanize the following Japanese words in Kana with each romanization style.

加害 かがい (Assault)	煤 すず (Soot)	新聞 しんぶん (Newspaper)
広報 こうほう (Publicity)	神戸へ こうべへ (To Kobe)	ティー ていー (Tea)
収集 しゅうしゅう (Accumulation)	思う おもう (To think)	観音 かのん (Kwannon)
調教 ちょうきょう (Training animals)	蜜 みつ (Honey)	続く つづく (To continue)

Note: As for the the pitch marks in the JLS system, simply assign them accordingly to how you think they would soon like the most. Be careful with verbs that end with u where the mora before ends in o. This "ou" combination is not pronounced as long o but the two sounds individually.

Cultural Note: Kwannon is the Buddhist deity of beauty.

第276課: Abbreviations

Abbreviations (略語) are very handy when words get lengthy. In fact, the Japanese term for abbreviation is an abbreviation. The non-abbreviated term is 省略語.

略語

The following chart shows the most common methods of abbreviation in Japanese.

Phrases	Words
①First characters of each part only	⑤First part only
②First part only	⑥Last part only
③Last part only	⑦No ん
④First and last part only	

Some abbreviations date back hundreds of years. For example, the 盆 (ぼん) in the Obon Festival is a contraction of 盂蘭盆会 (うらぼんえ) .

When exposed to the West, new phrases were often abbreviated. Examples include ハンカチ from handkerchief and 五輪, which referred to the Berlin Olympics, for the Olympics.

The most commonly abbreviated words are 外来語 and 熟語. Contractions in conjugation and native words exist too. Titles in news reports have extended use of abbreviations. Of course, you will sometimes regional variation such as the contraction of McDonald's (マックドナルド): マック (East Japan) and マクド (West Japan).

Abbreviation	Kana	From	Type	Meaning
全銀協会	ぜんぎんきょうかい	全国銀行協会	①	Japan's Bank Association
米	べい	米国	⑤	America
特急	とっきゅう	特別急行	①	Express train
パソコン	ぱそこん	パーソナルコンピュータ	①	Personal computer
小学	しょうがく	小学校	⑤	Elementary school

東電	とうでん	東京電力	①	Tokyo Electric; TEPCO
ケータイ	けーたい	携帯電話	②	Cellphone
ブログ	ぶろぐ	ウェブログ	③	Blog
エンターテインメント	えんたーていめんと	エンターテインメント	⑦	Entertainment
チョコ	ちょこ	チョコレート	⑤	Chocolate
アイス	あいう	アイスコーヒー	②	Ice Coffee
レイコー	れいこー	アイスコーヒー	①	Ice Coffee (Kansai Variant)
京葉	けいよう	東京千葉	③	Tokyo-Chiba/Keiyou Line
高校	こうこう	高等学校	④	High school
入管	にゅうかん	入国管理局	①	Immigration office
東大	とうだい	東京大学	①	Tokyo University
日経	につけい	日本経済新聞	①	Japan Economic Times
ファミレス	ふぁみれす	ファミリレストラン	①	Family restaurant
ラブホ	らぶほ	ラブホテル	②	Love hotel
テレビ	てれび	テレビジョン	②	Television
OL	おーえーる	Office Lady	①	Office lady
国連	こくれん	国際連合	①	United Nations
ソ連	それん	ソビエト連合	①	Soviet Union
安保理	あんぱり	安全保障理事会	①	Security Council
取引所	とりひきしょ	証券取引所	③	Stock exchange
リハビリ	りはびり	リハビリテーション	③	Rehabilitation
ブル	ぶる	ブルドーザー ブルドッグ ブルジョワ	⑤	Bulldozer; bulldog; bourgeoisie
セクハラ	せくはら	セクシャルハラスメント	①	Sexual harassment

Aside from these sort of abbreviations, there are odd abbreviations of specific phrases. For instance, the phrase 半端なことではない (not half-way) is often abbreviate to 半端ない in casual speech. However, if you don't know both, the abbreviated form is difficult to understand because grammatical items were dropped.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. How is the name for abbreviations in Japanese ironic?
2. How are phrases abbreviated?
3. How are words abbreviated?
4. Give an example of each kind of abbreviation.
5. Search online for Japanese abbreviations and show how they came about.

第277課: 音訓 (ON & KUN Readings)

Due to the unique fixation of 漢字 to Japanese, a complex set of readings with different origins has produced the hardest method of reading 漢字 of all languages that use 漢字. This lesson will delve deeper into the 音訓 puzzle. A firm understanding of how to read 漢字 affects how efficiently you can acquire new words and new characters.

漢字 & Meaning

漢字 are called ideograms, symbols that display meaning. However, their shapes alone don't produce meaning itself. Words are produced by the human mind, and these words are attributed to these highly crafted arrangements of strokes we call 漢字. After all, only a human can understand 水 as water. This 漢字 to Mandarin Chinese speakers has the sound Shuǐ. This is what these people think when they see water and this symbol. However, in Japanese, there is more than one reading to this character. There is the native word for water mizu. There is also the 音読み from Chinese SUI. Both are attributed to 水.

Thus, in Modern Japanese, there are two language units distinguished in reading 漢字. 音, the sounds of characters as borrowed from various stages of Chinese languages, and 訓, native vocabulary attributed to these foreign characters.

音読み

Although the history of 音読み is really complicated and the Japanese sound system has also changed over time, 音読み were in large part assimilated to the existing sound constraints of Japanese. Over time, this system of two kinds of readings, with characters often having more than one of each, has solidified and become what it is today.

As you have encountered numerous times no doubt in your Japanese studies, many 漢字 have more than one 音読み. This is because, as mentioned earlier, they come from different stages of Chinese. All words with 音読み are Sino-Japanese unless simply used for phonetic purposes. For example, although the word 世話 is pronounced as SEWA with 音読み, it is actually a native word.

The Four Kinds of 音読み

There are four kinds of 音読み generally recognized. Unlike other languages utilizing Chinese characters, older readings did not get totally replaced with new ones in Japanese. Rather, they are used together in a complex amalgam. As far as 音読み are concerned, many readings can be guessed on because of phonetics in the characters. As you will see, though, many shifts have occurred in these readings. This has all lead to many characters having the same readings.

呉音: Sounds of Wu

The first wave of readings are called 呉音. These readings are the oldest and come from the Wu Dynasty. They entered Japanese during the 5th to 6th centuries. Many Buddhist and Ritsuryou System (律令) terms have these readings as well as many for basic vocabulary like SAN for 山.

Historical Note: The 律令 was the fundamental set of codes by which constituted in large part the early Japanese political system.

世間	SEKEN	World; society	末期	MATSUGO	Hour of death
男女	NAN'NYO	Men and women	正体	SHOUTAI	True identity
経文	KYOUMON	Sutra	下人	GENIN	Menial
極楽	GOKURAKU	Paradise	正直	SHOUJIKI	Honest

成就	JOUJU	Success	会釈	ESHAKU	Nod; salutation
工夫	KUFUU	Scheme	祇園	GION	Gion
白衣	BYAKUE	White robe	金色	KONJIKI	Gold color
荼毘	DABI	Cremation	供米	KUMAI	Rice offering

Word Notes:

1. NAN'NYO is an old-fashioned reading of 男女.
2. Gion is the entertainment district of 京都.
3. BYAKUE is an old-fashioned reading of 白衣.

There were many alterations to the actual pronunciations used at the time in Wu China. For instance, final -t became -chi such as NICHU for 日. -ng, which didn't exist in Japanese, was dealt with randomly, sometimes being replaced with a back vowel like I or U. Other times, it was dropped altogether. However, in rare instances this final -ng became preserved as a medial g. Ex. SUGOROKU 双六.

Historical Notes:

1. These readings are also sometimes called 対馬音 つしまおん・つしまごえ and 百濟音 くだらおん・くだらごえ because it is said that a Paekje monk by the name of Houmyou 法名 read the Vimalakirti Sutra (維摩經) with 呉音 at Tsushima.
2. Also, it is believed by some due to no actual written evidence that these readings may have actually been Korean alterations to some form of Chinese as they were introduced to the Japanese via the Korean peninsula.
3. Paekje, which is called Kudara by the Japanese, is one of the ancient Korean kingdoms.

漢音 are readings borrowed during the 7th to 8th centuries in the Sui and Tang Dynasties. They were sent to Japan via emissaries. They were heavily propagated as the correct pronunciation of characters. Despite efforts by elites to eradicate 呉音, they could not be taken out of already commonly used daily words with them. Thus, we have many characters to this day with more than one 音読み.

Several systematic changes can be seen when comparing 呉音 and 漢音. The most important phenomenon is denasalization that occurred in Chinese. In this sound change, the latter half of a nasal sound would become an oral sound. This would be reflected over into Japanese in the following ways.

馬	MA → BA	日	NICHI → JITSU	美	MI → BI
---	---------	---	---------------	---	---------

There are exceptional cases where nasal endings were retained during the borrowing process such as NEN for 年.

Another important phenomenon is the devoicing of voiced initials.

定	JOU → TEI	従	JUU → SHOU	勤	GON → KIN
---	-----------	---	------------	---	-----------

It is important to remember that sound changes have also occurred in Japanese. So, these are the modern renderings of the readings. For instance, JOU for 定 was actually traditional spelled in かな as ぢやう. This would have reflected the pronunciation at the time. Also, keep in mind that despite efforts to propagate 漢音, not all such readings were able to displace 呉音.

For instance, the 漢音 of 和 and 話 is KWA, but this reading never made it to the present. Other similar instances did in this k-insertion. For example, 会's E → KAI.

It would take too long to go through every detail for every 漢字. So, we will now switch focus to how 漢音 have become used. The overwhelming majority

of 漢字 have 漢音, and they were further propagated during the Meiji Restoration by being used to coin hundreds of words. Although 吳音 continued to have overwhelming influence in Buddhist texts, there are some instances where certain sects read particular sutras in 漢音. For instance, the 理趣經 of the 真言宗 is read with 漢音. So, the famous starting of sutras 如是我聞 (Thus, I hear) is pronounced as JOSHIGABUN rather than the typical NYOZEGAMON, which uses 吳音.

Example Words:

末期	MAKKI	Closing years; terminal	經世	KEISEI	Conduct of state affairs
文人	BUNJIN	Literary person	土地	TOCHI	Land
幕府	BAKUFU	Shogunate/bakufu	内裏	DAIRI	Imperial palace
女兒	JOJI	Female child	男女	DANJO	Men and women
白衣	HAKUI	White robe	老若	ROUJAKU	Young and old
口頭	KOUTOU	Oral	左右	SAYUU	Left and right
遠近	ENKIN	Far and near	兵隊	HEITAI	Soldier
達成	TASSEI	Achievement	質量	SHITSURYOU	Mass

Word Notes:

1. DANJO is the normal reading of 男女.
2. Notice how the different readings of 末期, まつご and まっき, have different meanings.

3. HAKUI is the normal reading of 白衣.
4. 老若 may also be seldom read with the 呉音 ROUNYAKU.

唐音: T'ang Sounds

Although they weren't actually borrowed during the T'ang Dynasty, 唐音 were borrowed later from the Kamakura to the Edo Periods. They are generally rare and seen mainly in Zen Buddhism, trade, food, and furnishing terminology.

Terminology Note: These sounds are also called 宋音・唐宋音.

布団	<u>FUTON</u>	Futon	納戸	<u>NANDO</u>	Barn
扇子	<u>SENSU</u>	Folding fan	北京	<u>PEKIN</u>	Beijing
南京	<u>NANKIN</u>	Nanqing	瓶	<u>BIN</u>	Bottle
行脚	<u>ANGYA</u>	Pilgrimage	普請	<u>FUSHIN</u>	Construction; community activities
箆笥	<u>TANSU</u>	Dresser	杜撰	<u>ZUSAN</u>	Sloppy
団栗	<u>DONGURI</u>	Acorn	炭団	<u>TADON</u>	Charcoal briquette
餡	<u>AN</u>	Red bean paste	湯麵	<u>TAN-MEN</u>	Tang mian
縐子	<u>SHUSU</u>	Satin	櫨子	<u>CHATSU</u>	Type of lacquerware
杏子	<u>ANZU</u>	Apricot	椅子	<u>ISU</u>	Chair

石灰	<u>SHIKKUI</u>	Plaster	胡散	<u>USAN</u>	Suspicious
胡乱	<u>URON</u>	Fishy	橘飴	<u>KITTON</u>	Mashed sweet potatoes
暖簾	<u>NOREN</u>	Shop entrance curtain	饅頭	<u>MANJU</u>	Manjuu
湯湯婆	<u>YUTANPO</u>	Hot water bottle	看經	KANKIN	Silent reading of sutra
明	<u>MIN</u>	Ming Dynasty	鈴	<u>RIN</u>	Bell
提灯	<u>CHOUCHIN</u>	Paper lantern	茴香	<u>UIKYOU</u>	Fennel

Word Note: SHIKKUI is now normally spelled as 漆喰. 石灰 is typically read with the 漢音 SEKKAI to mean "lime" as in limestone.

慣用音: Traditional Sounds

慣用音 are mishap readings that have somehow changed since being incorporated into Japanese. Important examples include the following.

立	RYUU → <u>RITSU</u>	輸	SHU → <u>YU</u>
攪拌 (Agitation)	KOUHAN → <u>KAKU</u> -HAN	執	SHUU → <u>SHITSU</u>
洗滌 (Washing)	SENDEKI → SEN <u>JOU</u>	涸渴 (Drying up)	KOKUKATSU → <u>KOKA</u> -TSU

慣用音 Classification Controversy

Currently, any reading that deviates from 呉音, 漢音, and 唐音 are considered 慣用音. This means that several different situations are lumped together.

Change Influenced by 訓読み

At times, 音読み were manipulated due to 訓読み. For example, 早速 should be pronounced SOUSOKU but it is instead pronounced as SASSOKU, with the sa- coming from a native prefix seen in words like sanae 早苗 (rice seedlings) and saotome 早乙女 (young woman). There is also 奥意 OKUI (true intention) and 奥地 OKUCHI (hinterland) which should be OUI and OUCHI respectively, but the 音読み OU/IKU has changed to OKU for most speakers. Thus, these extraordinary readings have become labeled as 慣用音.

Changes to Final -フ

Many 音読み in traditional orthography ended in ふ. It is agreed by most scholars that f used to be p in Old Japanese, and eventually became φ by Middle Japanese. Due to this effect, readings such as てふ for 蝶 became ちょう.

Plosive and fricative sounds in the final position were preserved with 促音 in words like 合戦 KASSEN (match; engagement), 入声 NISSHOU (initial tone), and 法度 HATTO (ordinance). On the other hand, these finals were typically replaced with う. Thus, you get many common words like 合成 GOUSEI (synthesis), 甲子園 KOUSHIEN (Koshien), and 入賞 NYUUSHOU (winning a prize). There are also instances where ふ → っ. For instance, 立 RYUU → RITSU, 圧 OU → ATSU, 執 SHUU → SHITSU. These changes from the original readings are still classified in many 漢和辞典 as 慣用音.

音読み Confusion

When a 漢字 has more than one 音読み and they have become specialized for particular meanings and the expected reading is not used, this accidental mis-use of a reading is deemed to be a 慣用音. One of the best examples of this is 罷免 (discharge). 罷 is supposed to be read as HAI when the character is used to mean “to tire” and HI when used to mean “to stop”. Yet, instead of being read as HAIMEN, the word is read as HIMEN. Thus, this usage of HI is classified as a 慣用音.

Readings with Unknown Origins

There are also readings with unknown origins. These readings, despite obviously coming from Chinese variants, are lumped into the term 慣用音.

For example, 茶 is typically read as CHA, but this reading is not a 呉音, 漢音, or 唐音. In order, those readings are actually DA, TA, and SA. So, CHA is classified as a 慣用音. Another odd example is the reading PON for 檣. It is typically believed to be from Taiwanese, and all of its other readings are unknown. Thus, it is classified as a 慣用音.

Lots of Homophones

Due to the fact that so many waves of 音読み have been incorporated into Japanese with heavy simplification due to assimilation into the Japanese sound system, many words sound alike. Just typing こう results in dozens of options. There are a lot of homophones in Mandarin Chinese, but at least there is more variety in its phonology. Thankfully, the majority of homophones are avoided in the spoken language. Of course, there are exceptions. For example, the reading EKI for 駅, 益, 液, 易, and 役 are commonly used.

訓読み

訓 読み have not been immune to change. After all, if a language doesn't change, it's dead. 訓読み are from native words, and the reason they exist is because the Japanese already had their own language when 漢字 were introduced. Although there are plenty of 訓読み that have essentially not changed at all over the course of time such as yama 山 and kusa 草, others like ^{あや}危 うい → ^{あぶ}危 ない have.

Sino-Japanese 訓読み

There are actually some words of Chinese that were borrowed way before 漢字 were, and they are so integral in the language that they are viewed as native words. Important examples include the following.

馬	うま	錢	ぜに	梅	うめ
---	----	---	----	---	----

Number of 訓読み a Character

The number of 訓読み a character usually has also changed over time. As time progressed, most characters have come to have only one 訓読み. However, it still doesn't take much effort to find blatant anomalies like 生, which has lots of readings.

生きる	いきる	To live	生-	な ま-	Raw	生 む	う む	To give birth
生す	むす	To grow (moss)	生 す	な す	To give birth	生 う	お う	To spring up

生 {える・やす}	はえる・はやす	To cultivate	生る	なる	To bear seed	生	き	Undilated
生	うぶ-	Innocent; birth-	生	-ふ	Thick growth			

Just to think, there are more irregularities and 音読み to keep in mind as well.

Kinds of Words with 訓読み

Typically, the majority of 訓読み are used to write independent words, with all of the examples such far being just that.

雨	あめ	雲	くも	日	ひ	火	ひ	喜び	よろこび
歌う	うたう	思い	おもい	高い	たかい	花	はな	鼻	はな

There are some that are etymologically compound words but have since been fixated to the point that they are treated as simple words.

湖	みずうみ	志	こころざし	快い	こころよい	瞼	まぶた
炎	ほのお	橘	たちばな	睫	まつげ	雷	かみなり

There are also instances where several characters have received the same 訓読み. This shouldn't be surprising given how many 漢字 exist. The hardest part about this is that options typically have specific nuances, which causes correct spelling to be more difficult.

はかる	計る・測る・量る・諮る・図る・謀る
とる	取る・捕る・執る・採る・撮る・獲る・摂る・盗る・録る

Today, 訓読み are generally not used to write ancillary words such as particles and other function words. However, there are exceptions and many such words still do have 漢字 spellings.

迄 = ま で	也 = なり	御 = おん・お・み-	程 = ほど	秤 = ばかり	位 = くらい
哉 = か な	幾 = いく -	に就いて = についで	様に = よう に	事 = こと	物 = もの

Word Notes:

1. なり is the Classical copula.
2. ほど, ばかり, and くらい as particles are usually not written in 漢字.
3. 事 and 物 when used for more grammatical purposes are typically not written in 漢字.
4. Other speech modals like について and ように are usually only written in 漢字 in formal writing.

Loanwords with 訓読み

くんよ
訓 読み may also be loanwords and can be as 5 morae long, often caused by compound words as mentioned before. The reason why loanwords may sometimes be classified as 訓読み is because a lot of characters for things like measurements and stuff were coined during the Meiji Restoration. These, thus, would be 国字 (Japanese-made characters) and would otherwise be expected to not have 音読み.

Meters : 「粉(デシメートル)」, 「糲(センチメートル)」, 「耗(ミリメートル)」 — 「糶(デカメートル)」, 「糶 (ヘクトメートル) 」, 「糶(キロメートル)」

Liters : 「𩺰(デシリットル)」、「𩺱(センチリットル)」、「𩺲(ミリリットル)」 — 「𩺳(デカリットル)」、「𩺴(ヘクトリットル)」、「𩺵(キロリットル)」

Grams : 「𩺶(デシグラム)」、「𩺷(センチグラム)」、「𩺸(ミリグラム)」 — 「𩺹(デカグラム)」、「𩺺(ヘクトグラム)」、「𩺻(キログラム)」。「𩺼(トン)」はおまけ。

送り仮名

Many 訓読み have 送りがな requirements. Despite government efforts, though, 送りがな is still rather random for lots of words. For instance, *wakaru* is typically spelled as 分かる. However, it can also be spelled as 分る, 判る, 解る, and 解かる.

Sound Changes

There also readings morphologically limited to certain situations. For instance, vowel shifts when creating compound words often cause many students to mispronounce words because they don't understand them.

For instance, $E \rightarrow A$ and $I \rightarrow O$ are extremely common. They are also important to researchers that suggest Old Japanese had an 8 vowel system.

雨 + 雲 → あま ぐも	手 + 綱 → た づな	手 + 紙 → て がみ	木 + 霊 → こ だま	目 + ゆ + 毛 → ま ゆげ
------------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------------	---------------------

As you can see, there is also voicing (連濁) to keep in mind, and these sound changes may not happen in all compounds as 手紙 suggests.

名乗り

There are also 訓読み called 名乗り that are used in names. A given name could be read in many ways. There are usually readings that are more prominent. The sheer number of 名乗り has actually gone down over time, but it still causes headaches for natives and learners on how to properly read a person's name.

秀吉・秀義・英義・英吉・英喜・秀芳・英良・秀好・秀良・秀泰・栄良・英美・秀房・秀由・秀剛・秀嘉・秀衛・秀佳, etc. = ひでよし

音読み & 訓読み Combined

The large majority of words, 音読み and 訓読み are combined and used together. Furthermore, the majority of words with 音読み are used in compounds (熟語), and the majority of 訓読み are used in isolation or with 送りがな. However, there are instances of 音読み used in isolation, and there are also instances of 訓読み used in compounds.

Aside from this, the main issue is that there are times when they are combined and used together! There are two such instances. The first is when a compound is 音 and 訓 are compounded (重箱読み), and the second is when a compound is 訓 and 音 are compounded (湯桶読み).

重箱読み

重箱 is a multi-tiered box, and it has been used in the word 重箱読み because it is a perfect example of an 音 and 訓 combination. Other examples include the following.

路肩	ROkata	Road shoulder	番組	BANgumi	TV program
木目	MOKUme	Grain of wood	客間	KYAKUma	Parlor
台所	DAIdokoro	Kitchen	茶筒	CHAzutsu	Tea caddy

団子	DANgo	Dumplings	反物	TANmono	Fabric
額縁	GAKUbuchi	Frame	本屋	HON'ya	Book store
残高	ZANdaka	Balance (bank)	新顔	SHINgao	New face
職場	SHOKUba	Work place	役場	YAKUba	Town hall

湯桶読み

A 湯桶 is a pail-like wooden container used to carry and serve hot liquids, and it is used in the word 湯桶読み because it is a perfect example of a 訓 and 音 combination. Other examples include the following.

場所	baSHO	Place	身分	miBUN	Social position
消印	keshi'IN	Postmark	古本	furuHON	Old book
見本	miHON	Sample	夕刊	yuukan	Evening edition
荷物	niMOTSU	Luggage	踏台	fumiDAI	Stool; stepping stone
雨具	amaGU	Rain gear	薄化粧	usuGESHO	Light makeup
高台	takaDAI	High ground	手帳	teCHOU	Notebook
手数	teSUU	Bother	鶏肉	toriNIKU	Chicken (meat)
闇市場	yamiSHIJOU	Black market	湯茶	yuCHA	Hot water and tea
野宿	noJUKU	Sleeping outdoors	大損	ooZON	Major loss
太字	futoJI	Boldface	細字	hosoJI	Small type
冬景色	yukiGESHIKI	Snowy landscape	雪化粧	yukiGESHO	Covered in snow

Table of Contents

第278課: 送り仮名

送り仮名 in its simplest understanding is かな used for conjugational purposes. However, the rules for 送り仮名 are not quite set in stone. Though variant spellings in this regard are disappearing in replace of one spelling, literature is still pervaded with variant spellings.

Natives still show relative inconsistency in the matter. This is because guidelines by the government have not been crafted to the point that they should touch on individual spelling practices.

Resource Note: Much of this information is adopted from the Ministry of Education guidelines for 送り仮名 usage, which can be found at http://www.bunka.go.jp/kokugo_nihongo/joho/kijun/naikaku/okurikana/index.html.

About 送り仮名

In writing words in 漢字 and making clear what reading should be used, it has become orthodox to affix かな. For instance, in order to read 送 as おくる rather than ソウ or even some conjugation like おくらない, る is affixed to it. However, things that do have 漢字 spellings but are replaced with かな, 交ぜ書き, is not called 送り仮名.

Rules for properly using 送り仮名 have been passed by the government, and it wouldn't be surprising if these guidelines were modified again. However, even the preface of the guidelines published in 1973 admits that these rules do not pervasively apply to every aspect of Japanese. For instance, standards in science, the arts, and special fields are immune to having to follow these rules, which is why there have been plenty of mentions of how to address these situations thus far.

However, it is without a doubt that these guidelines do play a substantial role in orthography used in broadcast, official documents, newspapers, etc.

In studying the use of 送り仮名, you must first distinguish words in two groups: those that conjugate and those that don't. Compound words are also important to consider. Though these different faces of 送り仮名 are rather complex, there are basic principles to keep in mind that work for the majority of cases.

Rule 1

If a word conjugates, it will have 送り仮名 affixed.

憤る	いきどお る	To resent	承る	うけたま わる	To undertake; to hear/know (humble)
書く	かく	To write	生き る	いきる	To live
考 え る	かんがえ る	To think	陥れ る	おちいれ る	To trick into; assault (castle); drop into
助け る	たすける	To help	催す	もよおす	To hold (event); feel (sensation)
荒い	あらい	Rough; wild	潔い	いさぎよ い	Gallant; unsullied
賢い	かしこい	Wise	濃い	こい	Thick
薄い	うすい	Thin	主な	おもな	Main

Irregularities

1. Adjectives that end in しい・じい such as 美しい and 凄まじい(terrible) were historically 美し and 凄まじ. So, this is why し・じ haven't been dropped in the spellings.

2: Native suffixes that create adjectives such as か, らか, and やか are also left as 送り仮名.

細かな	こまかな	Fine; detailed	静かな	しずかな	Quiet	暖かな	あたたかな	Warm
平らかな	たいらかな	Level; peaceful	柔らかな	やわらかな	Tender; meek	和やかな	なごやかな	Harmonious
健やかな	すこやか	Vigorous	鮮やかな	あざやかな	Vivid; adroit	穏やかな	おだやかな	Calm; gentle

3: The following words are irregular.

明ら む	あから む	To break dawn	味わ う	あじわう	To taste; savor
哀れ む	あわれ む	To pity	慈し む	いつくしむ	To be affectionate to
教わ る	おそわ る	To be taught	脅か す	おどかす・おびや かす	To menace
関わ る	かかわ る	To be concerned with	食ら う	くらう	To eat/drink (Vul- gar)
異な る	ことな る	To differ	逆ら う	さからう	To defy
捕ま る	つかま る	To be caught	群が る	むらがる	To swarm; gather
和ら ぐ	やわら ぐ	To be mitigated	揺す る	ゆする	To shake; jolt
明る い	あかる い	Bright	危な い	あぶない	Dangerous
危う い	あやう い	Dangerous	大き い	おおきい	Big
少な い	すくな い	Few	小さ い	ちいさい	Small

冷たい	つめた い	Cold	平たい	ひらたい	Flat
新たな	あらた な	New	同じ	おなじ	Same
盛んな	さかん な	Popular; enthusi- astic	平ら な	たいらな	Flat; smooth

Rule 2

Derivations are included in 送り仮名.

1. Conjugations/derivations of verbs.

Derivation	Base Word	Derivation	Base Word	Derivation	Base Word
動かす	動く	照らす	照る	語らう	語る
浮かぶ	浮く	生れる	生む	押える	押す
捕える	捕る	勇ましい	勇む	輝かしい	輝く
喜ばしい	喜ぶ	晴れやかだ	晴れる	及ぼす	及ぶ
積もる	積む	聞こえる	聞く	頼もしい	頼む
起こる	起きる	落とす	落ちる	暮らす	暮れる
冷やす	冷える	当たる	当てる	終わる	終える
変わる	変える	集まる	集める	定まる	定める
連なる	連ねる	交わる	交える	混ざる・混じる	混ぜる
恐ろしい	恐れる	恨めしい	恨む	痛ましい	痛む

2. Words including an adjectival root.

Derivative	Base Word	Derivative	Base Word	Derivative	Base Word
重んずる	重い	若やぐ	若い	怪しむ	怪しい

悲しむ	悲しい	苦しがる	苦しい	確かめる	確かだ
重たい	重い	憎らしい	憎い	古めかしい	古い
細かい	細かだ	柔らかい	柔らかだ	清らかだ	清い
高らかだ	高い	寂しげだ	寂しい	可愛げ	可愛い

3. Things with nouns in them.

Verb	Base Noun	Verb	Base Noun	Verb	Base Noun	Verb	Base Noun
汗ば む	汗	先んず る	先	春め く	春	後ろめた い	後ろ

許容: When there is no worry of being misread, 送り仮名 may be abbreviated as in the following words.

浮かぶ → 浮ぶ	生まれる → 生 れる	押さえる → 押 える	捕らえる → 捕 える
晴れやかだ → 晴や かだ	聞こえる → 聞 える	積もる → 積る	起こる → 起る
落とす → 落す	暮らす → 暮す	当たる → 当る	終わる → 終る
変わる → 変る			

Note: The following words are deemed to follow Rule 1 instead: 明るい・荒い・悔しい・恋しい.

Rule 3

Excluding words dealt with via Rule 4, nouns shouldn't have 送り仮名.

月	鳥	花	山	男	女	彼	何	草	上	下
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Irregularities

1.

辺り	哀れ	勢い	幾ら	後ろ	傍ら	幸い	幸せ	全て	互い	便り	半ば
半ば	情け	斜め	独り	誉れ	自ら	幸い					

2. With the counter つ: 一つ, 二つ, 三つ, 四つ, 五つ, 六つ, 七つ, 八つ, 九つ, 幾つ

Rule 4

Nouns that come from a conjugatable part of speech or those made with the suffixes ~さ, ~み, or ~げ abide by the 送り仮名 spellings of the base word.

動き	仰せ	恐れ	薫り	香り	曇り	調べ	届け	願い	晴れ	当たり	代わり	向かい	狩り
泳ぎ	答え	祭り	群れ	憩い	愁い	極み	初め	近く	遠く	暑さ	大きさ	正しさ	確かさ
明るみ	哀しみ	憎しみ	重み	惜しげ	可愛げ								

Irregularities

The following words do not have 送り仮名.

謡	虞	趣	氷	印	頂	帯	畳	卸	煙	志	恋	次	隣	富	恥	話	光	舞	折	組	肥	並	巻	割	掛
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Note: 送り仮名 is only lost when their verbal sense is lost. Ex. 話し VS 話, 氷り VS 氷.

許容: In the case when there is no worry of a word being misread, 送り仮名 may be dropped in the following fashion for the words below.

曇り → 曇	届け → 届	願い → 願	晴れ → 晴	当たり → 当り	代わり → 代り	狩り → 狩
向かい → 向い	祭り → 祭	群れ → 群	憩い → 憩	答え → 答	問い → 問	

Rule 5

The final mora in adverbs, attributes, and conjugations is usually 送り仮名.

Adverbs	必ず	更に	少し	既に	全く	再び	最も
Attributes	来る	去る					
Conjunctions	及び	且つ	但し				

Irregularities

With more 送り仮名:

明るく	大いに	直ちに	並びに	若しくは
-----	-----	-----	-----	------

With no 送り仮名: 又

Adverbs/Conjunctions from Verbs/Adjectives or + particles:

併せて〔併せる〕	至って〔至る〕	恐らく〔恐れる〕	絶えず〔絶える〕	例えば〔例える〕
努めて〔努める〕	辛うじて〔辛い〕	少なくとも〔少ない〕	互いに〔互い〕	必ずしも〔必ず〕

Rule 6

In regards to compound words excluding those dealt with via Rule 7, 送り仮名 is determined by the individual components' 音訓.

1. Examples of words that conjugate:

書き抜く	流れ込む	申し込む	打ち合わせる	長引く	若返る	裏切る	旅立つ	聞苦しい
薄暗い	草深い	心細い	待遠しい	軽々しい	女々しい	気軽だ	望み薄だ	

2. Examples of words that do not conjugate:

石橋	竹馬	山津波	後ろ姿	斜め左	花便り	独り言	卸商	水煙	目印
物知り	落書き	雨上がり	墓参り	日当たり	夜明かし	先駆け	巣立ち	手渡し	入り江
合わせ鏡	封切り	教え子	生き物	落ち葉	預かり金	寒空	深情け	愚か者	行き帰り
乗り降り	抜け駆け	田植え	飛び火	伸び縮み	作り笑い	暮らし向き	売り上げ	取り扱い	乗り換え
引き換え	歩み寄り	申し込み	移り変わり	長生き	早起き	苦し紛れ	大書き	次々	常々
近々	深々	休み休み	行く行く						

許容: When there is no worry of being misread, 送り仮名 can be dropped in the following fashion in the example words.

書き抜く → 書抜く	申し込む → 申込む	打ち合わせる → 打ち合せる・打合せる
雨上がり → 雨上り	申し込み → 申込み・申込	向かい合わせる → 向い合せる

日当たり → 日 当り	引き換え → 引換 え・引換	立ち居振る舞い → 立ち居振舞い・立ち 居振舞・立居振舞
封切り → 封切	有り難み → 有難 み	呼び出し電話 → 呼出し電話・呼出電話
夜明かし → 夜 明し	暮らし向き → 暮 し向き	移り変わり → 移り vari
入り江 → 入江	飛び火 → 飛火	合わせ鏡 → 合せ鏡
抜け駆け → 抜 駆け	待ち遠しい → 待 遠しい	売り上げ → 売上げ・売上
田植え → 田植	預かり金 → 預り 金	取り扱い → 取扱い・取扱
落書き → 落書	聞き苦しい → 聞 苦しい	乗り換え → 乗換え・乗換
待ち遠しさ → 待遠しさ		

Note: In cases like こけら落とし, さび止め, 洗いざらし, 打ちひも whether either the front or end part of the word is written in かな instead of in 漢字, you should not abbreviate 送り仮名 out.

Rule 7

Compounds may or may not have 送り仮名 according to convention.

1.The first in the guidelines with this rule are particular words of domain in which conventional spelling is recognized.

ア: Names of positions and titles:

関取	頭取	取締役	事務取扱
----	----	-----	------

イ: Handicraft words that end in 「織」、「染」、「塗」、「彫」、「焼」等.

《博多》織	《型絵》染	《春慶》塗	《鎌倉》彫	《備前》焼
-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

ウ; Others:

書留	気付	切手	消印	小包	振替	切符	踏切	手当
仲買	両替	割引	組合	売値	買値	倉敷料	作付面積	請負
借入 《金》	小売 《商》	取扱 《所》	取扱 《注意》	繰越 《金》	乗換 《駅》	取次 《店》	取引 《所》	乗組 《員》
引受 《人》	引換 《券》	《代金》 引換	引受 《時刻》	振出 《人》	待合室	見積 《書》	売上 《高》	貸付 《金》
申込 《書》								

2. Spellings that are generally conventional.

奥書	木立	子守	献立	座敷	試合	字引	場合	羽織	葉巻	番組	番付	日付
水引	物置	物語	役割	屋敷	夕立	割合	合図	合間	植木	置物	織物	貸家
敷石	立場	建物	並木	巻紙	浮世絵	絵巻物	仕立屋					

Notes:

1. Even when the items in 《》 are different, these guidelines still apply.
2. This list is not exhaustive. Therefore, as far as convention may be recognized, similar words are to be dealt with likewise. When it is hard to determine whether Rule 7 should be applied or not, use Rule 6.

Specific Exceptions

Words specifically mentioned in the Cabinet guidelines from words within the bounds of the 常用漢字表, which includes not only lists of general characters but general readings with exceptions.

浮つく The reasoning for this is that the verb comes from the use of a suffix, つく.

お巡りさん This spelling is motivated by convention.

差し支える 立ち退く

Note: Alternatively, 送り仮名 within compound words such as this are often dropped. Thus, 差支える and 立退く. For compounds nouns, all 送り仮名 can be dropped. Ex. 話し合い・話合い・話合.

The following nouns were deemed to not ever have 送り仮名.

息吹	棧敷	時雨	築山	名残	雪崩	吹雪	迷子	行方
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

第 279 課: 四つ仮名

Yotsugana refers to the four Kana シ, チ, ス, and ツ. More strictly speaking, however, it refers to these characters' distinctive pronunciations in Kyoto during the Heian Period. In Modern Japanese, though, how these four are pronounced and used is quite different depending on dialect, and modern spelling changes complicate matters. This lesson will try to take a deeper look into the issue so that you have full control over it.

Curriculum Note: This lesson uses IPA symbols. This lesson is designed as a highly advanced lesson.

The History of the Pronunciation of シ, チ, ス, & ツ

In Kyoto (京都) from the late 12th century to the early 14th century, the unvoiced sounds シ, チ, ス, ツ were pronounced as [ɕi] , [ti] , [su] , and [tu] respectively. ɕ is the Japanese sh sound, which is different in articulation than the English sh, and it has been pronounced as such for essentially all of Japanese's written history. However, the pronunciations of チ and ツ have not been so stable.

チ and ツ were plosives (sounds that **stops** all airflow), like the other t-sounds of Japanese, at the time. The voiced equivalents シ, チ, ス, and ツ were respectively [ɕi] , [di] , [zu] , [du]. Today, the ɕ is the j-sound found inside words. The sounds シ, ジ, ス, and ズ were all fricatives (sounds that force air through a narrow channel). This was audible in Kyoto speech at the time, which is why the distinctions were shown in writing. Had any of these sounds been the same, we would possibly not have some Kana.

Problems with this analysis exist. There are words in which /z/ and /d/ have been interchangeable since the ancient period. This still happens in dialects today. For instance, some speakers of Japanese pronounce 全然 as "denden".

Examples of interchangeability in 四つ仮名 can be found in the word for whale. クジラ and クヂラ can both be found in the Kanchi'in Ruijumeigishō (観智院本『類聚名義抄』) Dictionary of 1251. Also during this time, people in the Kanto Region of Japan were mixing [zu] and [du] and [ji] and [di] in many words. It is believed that the spread of making these four sounds into two pairs of homophonous sounds started there. And, in the Tohoku Region, all four became homophonous to dzu¹¹.

From the early 14th century to the late 16th century, チ, ツ, ヂ, and ヅ became affricated (starting as a stop but releasing as a fricative). This made them [ʑi], [ʑu], [dʑi], and [dʑu] respectively, causing the differences between them narrower. From then on, people would mix up ジ and ヂ and ズ and ヅ. So, although 水 was traditionally spelled as みづ, みず became more common. Likewise, 本寺 is supposed to be ほんじ, but ほんぢ was also used. By the end of the 16th century in places like Niigata, pronunciations had already shifted to the Modern Tokyo pronunciations. However, in places like Kyushu far removed from where these sound changes were taking place, the traditional distinctions were maintained.

From the 17th century to the late 19th century, this trend continued to spread. By the end of the 17th century, チ /dʑi/ became ジ [ʑi] and ツ /dʑu/ became ズ [ʑu] even in Kyoto. However, the current conditional sound changes seen in Modern Tokyo speech started to develop. The affricate pronunciations returned before ん. And, depending on dialect, the affricate pronunciations were used in the word initial position. So, words that traditionally started with [ʑi] were regularly being pronounced with [dʑi] instead.

Certainly by the end of the 17th century, the pronunciations in Tokyo had already become what they are today. So, today ジ = [ʑi], ヂ [dʑi] = , ズ = [ʑu], and ヅ = [dʑu]. u represents the Standard Japanese pronunciation of う, and [u], which is like the English u, is found in other dialects of Japanese. This

will be reflected in the transcriptions throughout this lesson. So, take note of these small details.

Regional Note: Much of this history is centered around Kyoto. Remember that 四つ仮名 started to be confused in other parts of Japan far more quickly. These regions eventually influenced Kyoto speech to bring about the changes mentioned in this discussion. Once the current changes had developed in Niigata and Kyoto, they would then be transplanted into what would become 標準語. Later in this lesson, we will see the paths other dialects took.

Spelling Problems

How these sounds should be written is not easy because of dialectal variation. The first book to standardize 四つ仮名 spellings was the 1695 ^{けんしゅく} 蜆 縮 ^{りょうこしゅう} 涼 鼓 集. The first four characters when read with their native readings are examples of 四つ仮名. 蜆 = 蜆 (kind of clam), 縮み = ちぢみ (shrinkage), 涼み = すずみ (cooling off), and 鼓 = つづみ (hand drum). It proposed maintaining spelling differences, though only the elite and educated would care. What can be seen in the examples, however, is the still standing rule of when a sound is doubled but voiced, you use the 四つ仮名 variant for that sound. So, although 縮み is pronounced as チジミ, you still write it as チヅミ. Why? Well, that's the big question.

Fine, influential people want to maintain a system they've learned and propagated. However, it turns out that even literary geniuses such as 松尾芭蕉 didn't always spell things to standard. You can find him spelling 出づ, the classical form of 出る, as 出ず.

1. ついに ^{みち} 路 ふみたがえて石の巻といふ ^{みなと} 湊 に出ず。

We ended up going the wrong way and entered a harbor called Ishinomaki.

In the Meiji Period, traditional orthography was maintained, but with the turn of the 20th century, 四つ仮名 spelling simplified to じ and ず respectfully, only allowing ぢ and づ used for 連濁 and agreement such as in つづく. However, you can find examples like つまづく (to stumble) being spelled as つまずく, ignoring etymological voicing altogether.

So, should students lose points for writing out 鼻血 as はなじ? I would because it's standardized as such, but does that mean the current system shouldn't be altered? There are two paths that could be taken to resolve the problem.

1. Align spellings to Modern Japanese pronunciation.
2. Revert back to the traditional spellings of 四つ仮名.

Either way, the spellings of many words would be changed, but they would be changed to spellings that have been used in the past and in some cases are still being used. Why should we care, though? Only those that like script reform and debates over orthography would probably care, but it's important to know as 四つ仮名 allows us to study Japanese pronunciation in more detail.

Modern Handling of 四つ仮名

Though the exact pronunciation of 四つ仮名 fluctuates among Tokyo speakers, updates to the government's standard on this have been made as recently as 1986. Though the government's suggestions have no legal bearing on people, traditional distinctions such as 葛 (vine) being くず and 屑 (trash) being くづ have become abandoned. The same goes for 富士 (Fuji) and 藤 (wisteria), which were ふじ and ふぢ respectively.

Even so, we still have はなぢ, おこづかい (allowance), きづく (to notice), and つづく as exceptions, though the reason for why they are spelled that way is systematic and based on etymology. At one point, you could write a doubled voiced sound with ㇿ (this character is an example of an 踊り字), but sadly this easy fix to the problem has not been used frequently since the end of the war.

You still see it in the company name いすゞ, however. This spelling also happens to be easily accessible when typing.

So, what about cases such as つまづく・つまずく? つまづく is a clear combination of 爪 (nail) and the suffix -付く, but in the minds of speakers, the compound origin of this phrase has been lost to the point that both spellings are common. This may seem like a wishy-washy standard, but it is exactly how people decide whether both spellings are allowed for etymologically compound words in which ぢ and づ are produced.

However, what has caused great debate is the blatant ignoring of obvious compounding and using じ and ず anyway. The most egregious example is spelling the suffix ～中 as じゅう instead of ぢゅう. Another bad example is 稲妻 (lightning), clearly made of いな+ づま, being spelled as いなずま.

In Names

As you can imagine, if names can be read in so many different ways and spelled in so many different ways in 漢字, 四つ仮名 in names is rather random. For example, 千津子 is typically read as ちづこ, but some people read it as ちずこ. There isn't any pronunciation difference, and both readings can be used to type the name.

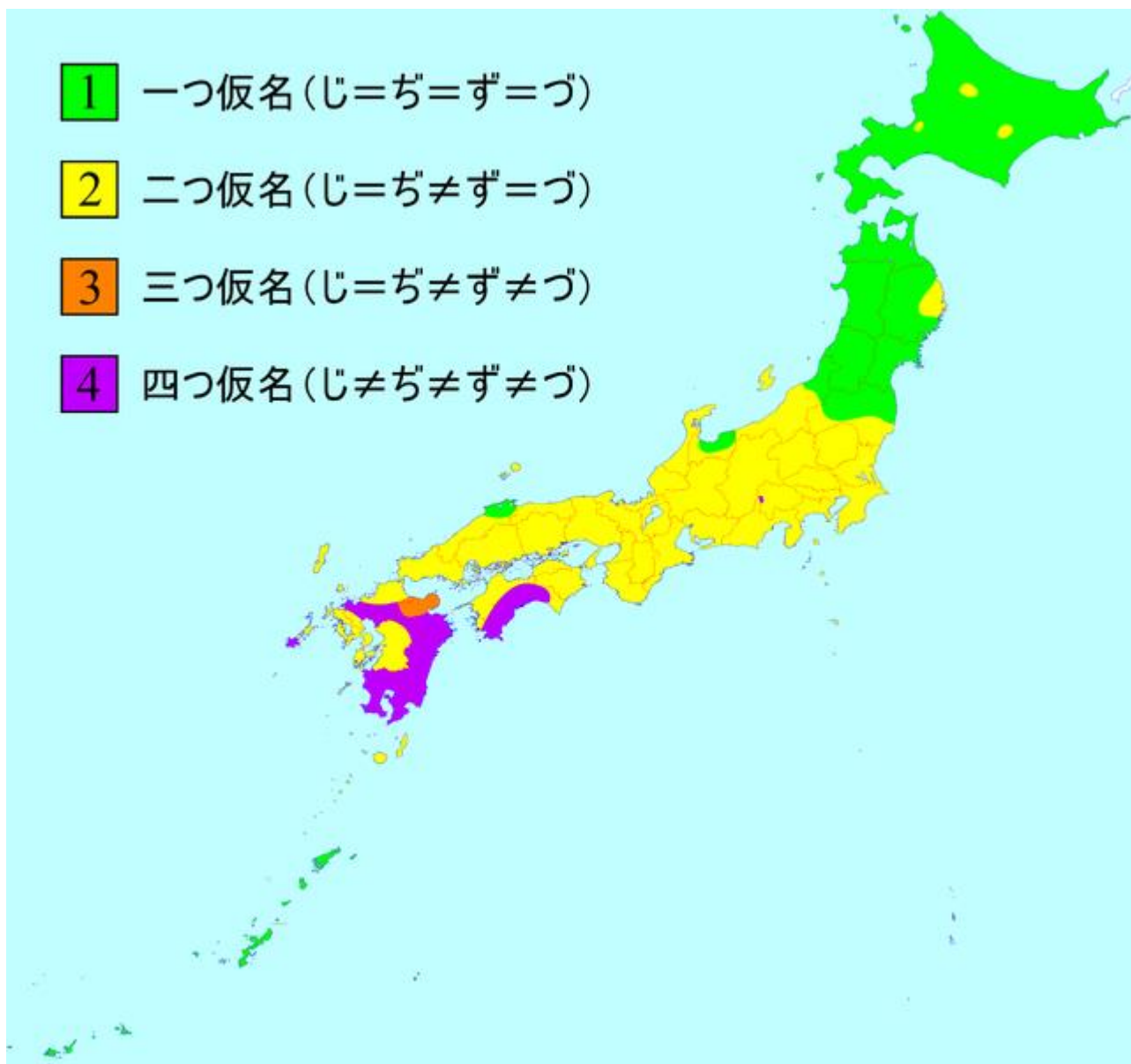
Changing the Spellings of the Readings of 漢字

Though to a degree, this is what's going on above, the most fundamental changes to Japanese script in regards to 四つ仮名 has been the fundamental altering of spellings to じ and ず that were historically ぢ or づ since being acquired from Chinese. For instance, 地 had the readings ぢ and ぢ, being acquired at dif-

ferent times. So, words like 地震 came into Japanese as チシン, not ジシン. Furthermore, the word is still pronounced as チシン. See the problem? The reason for changing the spelling is that the reading チ came in as such and was not a change due to 連濁.

Reality and the Ignoring of Dialectical Pronunciations

Of course, 地 is not the only example. 頭痛 should be づつう and 直に should be ぢきに, but that is just not how they're spelled anymore. This is despite the fact that there are still areas of Japan where 四つ仮名 distinctions are maintained. Even when writing out the dialects of these regions, it is not policy to distinguish them correctly in writing in favor of the standardized spellings.



Picture Notes:

1. This is a distribution based on the speech of older speakers. Many regions marked as other colors have been progressively changing to 二つ仮名弁. It is to note, though, that 一つ仮名弁 still hold strong to various degrees in Tohoku and Izumo. Izumo is the other part of green in the Chuugoku Region (中国地方) to the west of the Kinki Region (近畿地方).

2. The map does a poor job giving clarity to Okinawa, where several other Japanese languages have developed over the centuries. They should not be confused with this phenomenon as other major sound inventory changes have occurred in them, and as you can expect, these changes are not the same. It's just as bad to

assume that those sound changes would be the same as thinking the sound changes in English and German have been the same over time.

Example Words

A lot has been said about what 四つ仮名. You've seen examples of words that have had their spellings changed and why, and you should have a sense as to why some things may have alternative spellings. The chart below will try to compile this information together with many examples so that the facts discussed so far become more concrete.

Word	Spell Change?	Original	New	Word	Spell Change?	Original	New
泉	Yes	いづみ	いずみ	案じる	No	案じる	案じる
味	Yes	あぢ	あじ	言伝て	No	ことづて	ことづて
栗	Yes	しづく	しずく	埋める	Yes	うづめる	うずめる
傷	No	きず	きず	築く	Yes	きづく	きずく
それじゃ	Yes	それぢや	それじや	ずつ	Yes	づつ	ずつ
ネズミ	No	ネズミ	ネズミ	恥	Yes	はぢ	はじ
短い	No	みじかい	みじかい	譲る	Yes	ゆづる	ゆずる
水	Yes	みづ	みず	羊	No	ひつじ	ひつじ
虹	No	にじ	にじ	つづら	No	つづら	つづら*

沈む	Yes	しづむ	しずむ	頷く	Yes/No	うなづ く	うなづく・う なずく
----	-----	-----	-----	----	--------	----------	---------------

*: つづら (wig) may be shortened to づら, making it one of the only examples where づ is allowed at the beginning of a word. Another similar example is 痔 (hemorrhoids), which although is historically and currently spelled as じ, and can be written as ぢ in emphatic instances.

Reverting Back?

Because [ɰi] and [ɰ̥i] are allophones (variants using in specific environments) of the same sound and [ɰw] and [ɰ̥w] are allophones of the same sound in Standard Japanese, these speakers still technically could re-institute previous pronunciations of words to go back to how 四つ仮名 was used. In singing, there is a tendency to affricate ぢ and づ, but aside from this, most speakers are generally unaware that there are seemingly two set of pronunciations in 四つ仮名: the fricative and the affricate pronunciations.

Most people will think 頭痛 as ずつう despite the fact that they probably pronounce it as づつう. People don't tend to notice these things if they aren't contrasting elements. Because these pronunciations no longer contrast words anymore, it's hard for speakers to even notice the definition, much less intentionally re-institute them into words they were once in.

The idea is nice at its surface, but the problem is that those that support re-instituting proper distinctions in pronunciation in 四つ仮名 typically don't know much about linguistics. Nor do they typically accurately describe the actual phonological processes going on. Many are unaware that words used to begin with ヂ and ツ, and they sounded differently than words that begin with ジ and ズ.

It's also not the case that there aren't any examples of ジ and ズ becoming チ and ツ. After all, we have seen already all words beginning in ジ and ズ be pronounced initially with チ and ツ instead in Standard Japanese. And, again, in the day when spelling wasn't standardized, in areas that 四つ仮名 were being heavily confused with each other, you could see words like 鯨 spelled as くじら or くぢら. This suggests not just interchangeability in writing but interchangeability in pronunciation.

Typing Issues

Another problem is typing. To type ぢ and づ, you usually type di and du respectively. When Japanese speakers go from Romaji to Japanese input, they often mess up just like foreigners and type in ji and zu respectively, only to find out that the spelling doesn't show up. As time goes on, however, future IME systems may simply 四つ仮名 input to go along with any potential further simplification of them.

四つ仮名 in Dialects

As has been discussed thus far, 四つ仮名 have been and continue to be pronounced differently in different dialects. As the picture above demonstrates, a dialect could fall under one of four categories in respect to 四つ仮名.

一つ仮名弁: Dialects in which じ = ぢ = ず = づ

二つ仮名弁: Dialects in which じ = ぢ ≠ ず = づ

三つ仮名弁: Dialects in which じ = ぢ ≠ ず ≠ づ

四つ仮名弁: Dialects in which じ ≠ ぢ ≠ ず ≠ づ

標準語 is a 二つ仮名弁, just in case you didn't know. However, as we've seen, there are certain environments that allow for all four distinct pronunciations

to be used. This categorization tells not how exactly they are pronounced but how they are used contrastively. In 四つ仮名弁, these sounds are all used to contrast words. So, the main focus in this section will be to study how exactly 四つ仮名 are pronounced in various dialects of Japanese.

一つ仮名弁

In 一つ仮名弁, there are two ways of saying them all based on specific dialect. If you are a speaker of Kita-ou'u Dialect (far north in Tohoku) or Unpaku Dialect (in Izumo), you pronounce them all as [ɕi]. The vowel is in between い and う as the two vowels merged in this region. If you are a speaker of Minami-ou'u Dialect, you pronounce them all as [ɕu̯]. Because of this, these dialects have been given the stereotypical name ズーズー弁.

四つ仮名弁

The completely opposite of 一つ仮名弁 are 四つ仮名弁. However, even though a dialect may have all four as separate sounds, these separate sounds are not uniformly the same throughout these dialects. Many parts of Kyushu, Kouchi Prefecture (高知県), the south of Nara Prefecture (奈良県南部), and Narada in Yamanashi Prefecture (山梨県奈良田) are all areas with 四つ仮名弁.

In 高知県, dialects may have the following pronunciations: シ = [ɕi], ズ = [zu], ヂ = [di] ~ [dʲi], ツ = [du] ~ [dʲu]. In Kagoshima Dialect (鹿児島弁), シ = [ɕi], ズ = [zu], ヂ = [ɕi], and ツ = [ɕu].

The Oddity of Narada Dialect in Yamanashi Prefecture

Narada is strength with its unique pronunciations: ジ = [ði], ズ = [ðu/dzu/zu], チ = [dzi], ツ = [du/du]. It is also important to note that ツ = [tu] in this dialect. The ð is in English words like "that". These speakers would at least have less difficulty in one sound in English than other Japanese speakers. However, these speakers are dwindling very quickly as many are converting their speech to 標準語 standards.

Narada Dialect is first transitioning into a 三つ仮名弁 with most speakers not distinguishing じ and ぢ, though they may still not be exactly like in Standard Japanese. For the most part, the pronunciation reflects traditional orthography, but there are some words in Narada Dialect in which the sounds have flipped. So, for instance 葛 = 屑 as くず. Although 渦 was うづ, it is rendered as うず, which means it is either pronounced as [uzu], [udzu], or [uðu].

Research Note: To hear sound files of Narada Dialect for this information, see http://home.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/ikonishi/narada/narada_tu&du.html.

三つ仮名弁

三つ仮名弁 are not that common, but some speakers may naturally pronounce 四つ仮名 in this way at times regardless of dialect. Anyway, in these dialects such as 大分弁, ジ = チ, but ズ doesn't sound like ツ, which are [zu] and [dzu] respectively.

二つ仮名弁

As was said before, there is variation even among 二つ仮名弁. In 京都弁 where the allophonous (varying in specific environments) pronunciation rules developed, most speakers now lightly affricate all these sounds except AFTER ん. In recent years due to the contact of peoples from different parts of the country,

and because script reform has gotten rid of the need to notice any traditional differences in pronunciation, most dialects are becoming 二つ仮名弁.

Transcription Note: Symbols in IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) are used in this lesson to make transcription as accurate and easy as possible. To look up glyphs that you don't understand, simply copy and paste the problematic ones into Wikipedia where you can find audio tapes for them.

Table of Contents

第 280 課：変体仮名

In Classical Japanese works there are many かな that may seem very odd to the novice beginner. These かな are called 変体仮名. No, not へんたい as in 変態 but as in 変体.

変体仮名 are simply historical variants of the now standard ひらがな today. So, each mora had several possible ひらがな. The problem was not so in カタカナ as variants were made obsolete early in its development. 変体仮名 came from 万葉仮名, and many 変体仮名 originated from different 漢字.

変体仮名

変体仮名 were made obsolete in 1900 as one of the final reforms of the Meiji Reformation (明治維新). However, they still play a role in calligraphy, billboards, and authentic copies or replications of Classical works. 変体仮名 is also referred to as 異体仮名, making it clear that they can still be viewed as variants used at the author's will. It must be known, though, that not a lot of people know how to read them.

変体仮名 have played a very important role in writing ever since conception. People of the arts could liberally chose to their heart's desire what かな they wished to use, a continuation of the privilege people had when Japanese was still written in 万葉仮名.

変体仮名 are for the most part somewhat evolved forms of 万葉仮名 cursive style characters, from which other standard ひらがな derive from as well. As many 漢字 share the same 音読み, 変体仮名 inevitable came from a lot of characters, and many were made to represent the same sound.

変体仮名 are still seldom used. Many soba restaurant signs remind people of the character's glory-days and martial art centers and centers devoted to the preservation of historical events display them. Expect to see these characters by just going to a battlefield marker.

変体仮名 are not able to be viewed on computers. However, we will study by looking at the characters from this table from <http://www10.plala.or.jp/koin/koinhentaigana.html>

読み	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ	あ・を	い	い	い	い
変 体	阿	𛄠	𛄡	𛄢	𛄣	𛄤	𛄦	𛄧	𛄨	𛄩

[illegible]

ギ	ゲ	ゲ	ダ	ギ	ギ	ギ	ギ	古	故	許
								古	故	許
こ	こ	こ・ ね	こ	こ・ き	こ	こ	こ	こ	こ	こ
許	胡	子	興	期						
ご	ご・ぎ	さ	さ	さ	さ	さ	さ	さ	さ	さ
奥	洵	ぎ	佐	佐	散	散	斜	沙	沙	狭
		左	佐	佐	散	散	斜	沙	沙	狭
さ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ	ざ
差	ぎ	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵
し	し	し	し	し	し	し	し	じ	じ	じ
志	之	之	新	四	斯	事	師			
じ	じ	じ	じ	じ	す	す	す	す	す	す
数	洵	洵	洵	洵	春	春	須	寿	寿	数
					春	春	須	寿	寿	数
す	す	ず	ず	ず	ず	ず	ず	ず	ず	せ
勢	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	洵	勢
数	受									勢
せ	せ	せ	せ	ぜ	ぜ	ぜ	ぜ	ぜ	そ	そ
世	世	聲	瀬	勢	ぜ	ぜ	ぜ	ぜ	楚	曾
そ	そ	そ	そ	そ	そ	そ	そ	そ	そ	そ
曾	曾	所	所	處	處	蘇				
ぞ	ぞ	ぞ	ぞ	ぞ	た	た	た	た	た	た
田	田	田	田	田	多	多	多	堂	堂	田
					多	多	多	堂	堂	田

た	だ	だ	だ	だ	だ	だ	だ	ち	ち	ち
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	ち	ち	𪛗
当								知	知	𪛗
ち	ち	ち	ち	ち	ぢ	ぢ	ぢ	ぢ	ぢ	ぢ
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
遅	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗						
ぢ	ぢ	つ	つ	つ	つ	つ	つ	つ	づ	づ
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
		徒	徒	川	川	津	都	頭		
づ	づ	づ	づ	づ	て	て	て	て	て	て
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	て	て	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
					天	天	亭	帝	帝	伝
て	て	て	で	で	で	で	で	で	で	で
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
転	氏	低								
で	と	と	と	と	と	と	と・け	ど	ど	ど
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
	登	登	東	度	砥	土	斗・計			
ど	ど	ど	ど・げ	な	な	な	な	な	な	な
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
				奈	奈	奈	那	那	那	難
な	な	な	に	に	に	に	に	に	に	に
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
名	南	菜	爾	爾	丹	耳	仁	児	而	尼
ぬ	ぬ	ぬ	ね	ね	ね	ね	ね	ね	ね	ね
𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗
怒	努	驚	禰	禰	年	年	根	熱	音	寝
ね	ね・こ	の	の	の	の	の	の	の	の	の
念	子	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	乃	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗	𪛗

念	子	能	能	能	野	乃	迺	農	農	濃
は	は	は	は	は	は	は	は	は	は	は
む	む	え	桑	桑	冬	冬	わ	ハ	波	婆
者	者	者	葉	葉	盤	盤	盤	八	波	婆
は	は	は	は	は・ う	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば
婆	半	破	芳	羽	む	む	え	桑	桑	冬
婆	半	破	芳	羽						
ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば	ば
冬	わ	ハ	波	婆	婆	半	破	芳	羽	む
ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ
む	む	桑	桑	冬	冬	わ	ハ	波	婆	婆
ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ぱ	ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ	ひ
半	破	芳	羽	ひ	飛	悲	悲	比	非	日
				飛	飛	悲	悲	比	非	日
ひ	び	び	び	び	び	び	び	び	び	び
妣	む	飛	悲	悲	比	非	比	妣	む	飛
妣										
ぴ	ぴ	ぴ	ぴ	ぴ	ぴ	ふ	ふ	ふ	ぶ	ぶ
悲	悲	比	非	比	非	ぬ	布	不	ぬ	布
						婦	布	不		
ぶ	ぶ	ぶ	ぶ	へ	へ	へ	へ	へ	へ	へ
不	ぬ	布	不	遍	弊	弊	辺	辺	倍	幣
				遍	弊	弊	辺	辺	倍	幣
へ	べ	べ	べ	べ	べ	べ	べ	べ	ぺ	ぺ
変	遍	弊	弊	辺	辺	倍	幣	変	遍	弊
変										
へ	へ	へ	へ	へ	へ	ほ	ほ	ほ	ほ	ほ

契	重	重	倍	幣	衰	保	保	保	本	不
						保	保	保	本	本
ほ	ほ	ほ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ	ぼ
扱	存	穂	保	保	保	不	不	扱	存	穂
報	奉	穂								
ぽ	ぽ	ぽ	ぽ	ぽ	ぽ	ぽ	ぽ	ま	ま	ま
保	保	保	不	不	扱	存	穂	海	毎	万
								満	満	万
ま	ま	ま	ま	ま	ま・め	ま	ま	み	み	み
万	万	末	末	麻	馬	真	間	美	美	美
み	み	み	み	む	む	む	む	む・も・ん	む・も・ん	む・も・ん
見	三	微	身	無	舞	舞	牟	无	无	无
め	め	め・ま	も	も	も	も	も	も	も	も・む・ん
免	面	馬	毛	毛	毛	茂	茂	裳	母	无
も・む・ん	も・む・ん	や	や	や・よ	や	や	ゆ	ゆ	ゆ	ゆ
无	无	屋	也	夜	耶	哉	由	由	遊	遊
ゆ	ゆ	よ	よ	よ	よ	よ	よ	よ・や	ら	ら
遊	游	与	与	与	代	余	余	夜	羅	良
遊	游	与	与	与	代	余	余	夜	羅	良
ら	ら	り	り	り	り	り	り	り	り	る
良	良	里	利	利	利	利	理	李	梨	留
良	良	里	利	利	利	利	理	李	梨	留

る	る	る	る	る	れ	れ	れ	れ	れ	れ
る	累	流	類	類	連	礼	礼	礼	礼	麗
ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	わ	わ	わ	わ
路	呂	呂	楼	露	婁	侶	王	和	和	倭
る	る	る	る	る	る	る	る	る	る	る
井	為	為	遺	委	衛	衛	衛	恵	恵	越
を	を	を	を	を	を・あ	ん・む・も	ん・む・も	ん・む・も		
遠	遠	乎	乎	緒	悪	无	无	无		

Try learning 5 a day once you reach IMABI IV and you will be fine. Also, if you are interested in learning the cursive form of characters, this will also greatly lessen the stress of learning *another* writing system.

Origins of 変体仮名

One thing that is important to know and that can greatly help you memorize 変体仮名 is to recognize where they originated. The following chart shows where all かな have derived from. The abbreviations 平, 片, and 変 will stand for ひらがな, カタカナ, and 変体仮名 respectively.

	A			I			U			E			O		
	平	片	変	平	片	変	平	片	変	平	片	変	平	片	変
	安	阿	悪 愛 安	以	伊	意 移 以	宇	有 雲 宇	衣	江	要	於	於		
		阿			伊			右			盈				
					異			憂 鵜 羽		衣	得				
										縁					

<u>K</u>	<u>加</u>		<u>可加嘉</u>	<u>幾</u>	<u>起幾喜</u>	<u>久</u>	<u>具久九</u>	<u>計</u>	<u>介</u>	<u>希</u>	<u>己</u>	<u>古故許</u>
			<u>閑</u>		<u>支</u>		<u>求</u>			<u>斗</u>		<u>胡</u>
			<u>賀我家</u>		<u>木貴期</u>		<u>供俱</u>			<u>計</u>		<u>子興期</u>
			<u>香</u>		<u>記</u>					<u>介遣</u>		
			<u>佳</u>		<u>季</u>					<u>氣</u>		
					<u>季季</u>					<u>稀</u>		
<u>S</u>	<u>左</u>	<u>散</u>	<u>左佐散</u>	<u>之</u>	<u>志之新</u>	<u>寸</u>	<u>春須寿</u>	<u>世</u>		<u>勢</u>	<u>曾</u>	<u>楚曾所</u>
			<u>斜</u>		<u>四</u>		<u>数</u>			<u>世</u>		<u>処</u>
			<u>乍砂狹</u>		<u>斯事師</u>		<u>受</u>			<u>聲</u>		<u>蘇</u>
			<u>差</u>							<u>瀨</u>		
<u>T</u>	<u>太</u>	<u>多</u>	<u>多堂田</u>	<u>知</u>	<u>知千遲</u>	<u>川</u>	<u>徒川津</u>	<u>天</u>		<u>天</u>	<u>止</u>	<u>登東度</u>
			<u>當</u>		<u>地馳智</u>		<u>都</u>			<u>亭</u>		<u>砥</u>
							<u>頭</u>			<u>帝</u>		<u>土斗</u>
										<u>伝</u>		
										<u>轉</u>		
										<u>低</u>		
										<u>弓</u>		
<u>N</u>	<u>奈</u>		<u>奈那難</u>	<u>仁</u>	<u>丹仁爾</u>	<u>奴</u>	<u>怒努驚</u>	<u>禰</u>		<u>禰</u>	<u>乃</u>	<u>能野乃</u>
			<u>名</u>		<u>尼</u>					<u>年</u>		<u>濃</u>
			<u>南菜</u>		<u>而耳兒</u>					<u>根</u>		<u>迺農</u>
										<u>熱</u>		
										<u>音</u>		
										<u>寢</u>		

									念 子		
H	波	八	者葉盤	比	飛悲比	不	婦布不	部	遍	保	保本報
			八		日				弊		奉
			波婆半		非妣				辺		穂
			芳						倍		
			羽						幣		
									変		
M	末		満万末	美三	美見三	武牟	無舞牟	女	免	毛	毛茂母
			麻		微		无		面		裳
			馬真間		身				馬		无
											-
Y	也		屋夜耶	-	以-	由	由遊游	-	衣-	與	与余代
			也								夜
			哉								-
R	羅		羅良	利	里利李	留流	留累流	礼	連	呂	露呂路
					理		類		礼		侶
					梨				麗		楼婁
W	和		王和倭	為井	井為遺	-	宇-	恵	衛	遠乎	越遠乎
					委				恵		緒
											悪

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Using the 変体仮名 charts, make a chart of the Gojuuonzu and for each sound write out the Kanji where 変体仮名 come from.
2. Write out the 変体仮名 for the basic sounds five times each.
3. When were 変体仮名 made obsolete?
4. Where can you still see 変体仮名?

第 281 課: 名乗り

Reading names is extremely difficult. Personal names, surnames, and place names are all very difficult for learners of Japanese and Japanese natives to know how to read properly. Though a lifetime of experience in the language makes the process easier, there is not a foolproof way of being 100% certain 100% of the time. Despite this difficulty, this lesson will attempt to explain various aspects you can find in the readings of names.

Names, though, are truly important to people. The famous author known by the name of 森鷗外 upon his death gave the following statement in his will: 余ハ石見人森林太郎トシテ死セント欲ス。墓ハ森林太郎ノ外一字モホルベカラズ (I wish to die as Iwamijin Mori Rintarou. Do not carve any other letters other than Mori Rintarou on my grave. He was a native of Iwami, a part of present day Chiba Prefecture. His given name was 森林太郎, and he wished to die that way. In Japanese culture a lot of thought is put into a name. Think of this as you learn more about names.

人名用漢字

Though there have been many characters used in name in both Chinese and Japanese for a very long time, in attempts to practically narrow down the number of characters and readings that could be used in names, a list of characters not already in the list of general use characters was created by National Language Committee in 1951. Although it has been updated several times since, it is enforced by the Ministry of Justice.

People can only have the 2136 常用漢字, 861 人名用漢字, and かな in their names. Any character outside of this is considered as a 表外字. Additions to the list are being considered in accordance to requests from parents. The increase of name characters is being done in attempts to increase the list of general use characters. In fact, in 2010 121 characters from the 人名用漢字表 were put into the 常用漢字表. This trend will probably continue as the use of 漢字 is resurging

due to typing technology and people's cultural pride in the use of 漢字 becomes ever stronger.

丑	丞	乃	之	乎	也	云	亘・互	些	亦
亥	亨	亮	仔	伊	伍	伽	佃	佑	伶
侃	侑	俄	俠	侯	俐	倭	俱	倦	倅
僂	傭	儲	允	兔	兜	其	冚	凌	凜・凜
夙	夙	凰	凱	函	劉	劫	勁	勺	勿
匆	匡	廿	卜	卯	卿	厨	厩	又	叡
叢	叶	只	吾	吞	吻	哉	哨	啄	哩
喬	喧	喰	喋	嘩	嘉	嘗	噲	嚙	圃
圭	坐	堯・堯	坦	埴	堰	堺	堵	塙	壕
壬	夷	奄	奎	套	娃	姪	姥	娩	嬉
孟	宏	宋	宕	宥	寅	寓	寵	尖	尢
屑	峨	峻	峻	嵯	嵩	嶺	巖・巖	已	巳
巴	巷	巽	帖	幌	幡	庄	庇	庚	庵
廟	廻	弘	弛	彗	彦	彪	彬	徠	忽
怜	恢	恰	恕	悌	惟	惚	悉	惇	惹
惺	忽	慧	憐	戊	或	戟	托	按	挺
挽	掬	捲	捷	捺	捧	掠	掄	擱	摺
撒	撰	撞	播	撫	擢	孜	敦	斐	幹
斧	斯	於	旭	昂	昊	昏	昌	昂	晏
晃・眈	晒	晋	晟	晦	晨	智	暉	暢	曙
曝	曳	朋	朔	杏	杖	杜	李	杭	杵

杷	枇	柑	柴	柘	柎	柏	桎	柚	桧・檜
栲	桔	桂	栖	桐	栗	梧	梓	梢	柳
梯	桶	梔	栳	梁	棲	棕	椀	楯	楚
楸	椿	楠	楓	椰	櫚	楊	榎	樺	榦
榛	楨・楨	檜	槌	櫟	槻	樟	榧	橘	樽
橙	檣	檀	櫨	櫛	櫓	欣	欽	歎	此
殆	毅	毘	毬	汀	汝	汐	汲	沌	沓
沫	洸	洲	洵	洛	浩	湮	淵	淳	渚・渚
淀	淋	渥	湘	湊	湛	溢	滉	溜	漱
漕	漣	漚	濡	瀕	灘	灸	灼	烏	焰
焚	煌	煤	煉	熙	燕	燎	燦	燭	燿
爾	牒	牟	牡	牽	犀	狼	猪・猪	獅	玖
珂	珈	珊	珀	玲	琢・琢	琉	瑛	琥	琶
琵	琳	瑚	瑞	瑤	瑳	瓜	瓢	甥	甫
畠	畢	疋	疏	皐	皓	眸	瞽	矩	砦
砥	砧	硯	碓	碗	碩	碧	磐	磯	祇
祢・禰	祐・祐	禱・禱	祿・祿	禎・禎	禽	禾	秦	秤	稀
稔	稟	稜	穰・穰	穹	穿	窄	窪	窺	竣
豎	竺	竿	笈	笹	笙	笠	箬	筑	箕
箔	篇	篠	簞	簾	粃	粥	粟	糊	紃
紗	紐	絃	紬	絆	絢	綺	綜	綴	緋
綾	綸	縞	徽	繫	繡	纂	纏	玲	翔
翠	耀	而	耶	眈	聰	肇	肋	肴	胤

胡	脩	腔	脹	膏	臥	舜	舵	芥	芹
芭	芙	芦	苑	茄	苔	莓	茅	茱	苴
茜	莞	荻	莫	莉	菅	董	莖	荀	菩
萌・蒔	萊	菱	葦	葵	萱	葺	萩	董	葡
蓑	蒔	菟	蒼	蒲	蒙	蓉	蓮	蔭	蔣
蔦	蓬	蔓	蕎	蕨	蕉	蕃	蕪	薙	蕾
路	藁	薩	蘇	蘭	蝦	蝶	螺	蟬	蟹
蠟	衿	袈	袴	裡	裯	裳	襖	訊	訣
註	詢	詫	誼	諏	諄	諒	謂	諺	讚
豹	賁	賑	赳	跨	蹄	蹟	輔	輯	輿
轟	辰	辻	迂	迄	辿	迪	迦	這	逞
逗	逢	遙・遙	遁	遼	邑	祁	郁	鄭	酉
醇	醐	醞	醬	釉	釘	釧	銑	鋒	鋸
錘	錐	鑄	錫	鋤	鎧	閃	閏	閤	阿
陀	隈	隼	雀	雁	雛	雫	霞	靖	鞆
鞍	鞞	鞫	鞭	頁	頌	頗	顛	颯	饗
馨	馴	馳	駕	駿	驍	魁	魯	鮎	鯉
鯛	鰯	鱒	鱗	鳩	鳶	鳳	鴨	鴻	鵠
鵬	鷗	鷺	鷺	鷹	麒	麟	磨	黎	黛
鼎									

The following 常用漢字 have 旧字体 variants that are allowed in names.

亞 (亜)	惡 (悪)	爲 (為)	逸 (逸)	榮 (栄)	衛 (衛)	謁 (謁)	圓 (円)	緣 (縁)	園 (園)	應 (応)
櫻 (桜)	奧 (奥)	橫 (横)	溫 (温)	價 (価)	禍 (禍)	悔 (悔)	海 (海)	壞 (壊)	懷 (懷)	樂 (楽)
渴 (渴)	卷 (巻)	陷 (陷)	寬 (寛)	漢 (漢)	氣 (気)	祈 (祈)	器 (器)	偽 (偽)	戲 (戯)	虛 (虚)
峽 (峡)	狹 (狭)	響 (響)	曉 (暁)	勤 (勤)	謹 (謹)	駟 (駟)	勳 (勲)	薰 (薫)	惠 (恵)	揭 (掲)
鷄 (鶏)	藝 (芸)	擊 (撃)	縣 (県)	儉 (儉)	劍 (剣)	險 (険)	圈 (圏)	檢 (検)	顯 (顕)	驗 (験)
嚴 (厳)	廣 (広)	恆 (恒)	黃 (黄)	國 (国)	黑 (黒)	穀 (穀)	碎 (碎)	雜 (雑)	祉 (祉)	視 (視)
兒 (児)	濕 (湿)	實 (実)	社 (社)	者 (者)	煮 (煮)	壽 (寿)	收 (収)	臭 (臭)	從 (従)	澁 (渋)
獸 (獣)	縱 (縦)	祝 (祝)	暑 (暑)	署 (署)	緒 (緒)	諸 (諸)	敍 (叙)	將 (将)	祥 (祥)	涉 (渉)

燒 (焼)	獎 (奨)	條 (条)	狀 (状)	乘 (乗)	淨 (浄)	剩 (剩)	疊 (畳)	孃 (嬢)	讓 (譲)	釀 (醸)
神 (神)	眞 (真)	寢 (寝)	愼 (慎)	盡 (尽)	粹 (粹)	醉 (酔)	穗 (穂)	瀨 (瀬)	齊 (斉)	靜 (静)
攝 (摂)	節 (節)	專 (専)	戰 (戦)	織 (織)	禪 (禅)	祖 (祖)	壯 (壮)	爭 (争)	莊 (荘)	搜 (捜)
巢 (巢)	曾 (曾)	裝 (装)	僧 (僧)	層 (層)	瘦 (瘦)	騷 (騷)	增 (増)	憎 (憎)	藏 (蔵)	贈 (贈)
臍 (臍)	卽 (即)	帶 (帯)	滯 (滞)	瀧 (滝)	單 (単)	嘆 (嘆)	團 (団)	彈 (弾)	晝 (昼)	鑄 (鋳)
著 (著)	廳 (庁)	徵 (徴)	聽 (聴)	懲 (懲)	鎮 (鎮)	轉 (転)	傳 (伝)	都 (都)	嶋 (島)	燈 (灯)
盜 (盗)	稻 (稻)	德 (徳)	突 (突)	難 (難)	拜 (拝)	盃 (杯)	賣 (売)	梅 (梅)	髮 (髪)	拔 (抜)
繁 (繁)	晚 (晩)	卑 (卑)	祕 (秘)	碑 (碑)	賓 (賓)	敏 (敏)	富 (富)	侮 (侮)	福 (福)	拂 (払)

佛 (仏)	勉 (勉)	歩 (歩)	峯 (峰)	墨 (墨)	翻 (翻)	毎 (毎)	萬 (万)	默 (黙)	埜 (野)	彌 (弥)
藥 (薬)	與 (与)	搖 (揺)	様 (様)	謠 (謡)	來 (来)	賴 (頼)	覽 (覧)	欄 (欄)	龍 (竜)	虜 (虜)
涼 (涼)	綠 (緑)	涙 (涙)	壘 (塁)	類 (類)	禮 (礼)					

名乗り

The word 名乗り has several definitions, but before we hone in on the one to be the focus of this lesson, we'll begin by looking at its definitions from the fifth edition of the 広辞苑.

な-のり【名告・名乗】

①自分の名・素性などを告げること。また、その名。特に武士が戦場でおこなうもの。

To tell your name/lineage. Or, that name. Particularly what warriors do on the battlefield.

②売物の名を呼びあるくこと。

To walk around calling out one's things to sell.

③公家および武家の男子が、元服後に通称以外に加えた実名。通称藤吉郎に対して秀吉と名乗る類。

Real name aside from one's alias after attaining manhood for boys of the Imperial Court and military families. The sort seen with labeling oneself as Hideyoshi versus the alias Fujikichirou.

④漢字の、通常の読みとは別に、特に名前に用いる訓。

Kun readings used particularly in names aside from the normal readings of a Kanji.

⑤能や狂言の構成部分の一。登場人物が自己の身分や、そこに来た趣旨などを述べるせりふ。

A compositional part of Noh and Kyogen. Speech made by characters to tell one's status and intentions on coming.

名乗り in this lesson refers to meaning 4, which refers to special 訓読み in personal names and surnames. These readings are those that have been historically attributed to names and are well established readings that people have chosen for names for a long time.

Many names in Japanese, though, are made with just standard readings of characters. In fact, some of the most common surnames are as such.

鈴木	すずき	山田	やまだ	山本	やまもと	山口	やまぐち	川端	かわばた
夏目	なつめ	本田	ほんだ	澤田	さわだ	川崎	かわさき	杉本	すぎもと
加納	かのう	竹中	たけなか	石井	いしい	田口	たぐち	坂本	さかもと
大坪	おおつぼ	田村	たむら	片山	かたやま	辻本	つじもと	石田	いしだ
清水	しみず	細野	ほその	沼田	ぬまた	根本	ねもと	野呂	のろ

Spelling Note: Old characters such as 澤 instead of 沢 is common in names.

Reading Note: 清水, although an irregular reading, also happens to be a common word spelled this way. So, しみず will be treated as a standard reading.

Special readings can be used with other special readings or regular readings. There is no rule that a 名乗り reading must be used with another 名乗り reading. In fact, there is no standardization on the use of 名乗り. 名乗り will be in bold in the following examples.

飯 田	いいだ (Surname)	新 潟	にいがた (Place name)	圭 輔	けいすけ (Personal name)
希	のぞみ (Personal name)	秀 吉	ひでよし (Personal name)	英 雄	ひでお (Personal name)

There is some concern as to how far one can use 名乗り and what should even be considered 名乗り. In Japan parents have complete liberty in how they wish for to read their child's name. However, the overwhelming majority of Japanese believe that parents should only give names to their children that the intended reading can be figured out. Attributing a reading that is not a standard reading or a 名乗り recognized in dictionaries (and most importantly the public) is not popular.

Names of Famous Literary Figures

ペンネーム	読み	本名	ペンネーム	読み	本名
二葉亭四迷	ふたばてい しめい	長谷川辰之助	森鷗外	もり おうがい	森林太郎
与謝野昌子	よさの しょうこ	与謝野志よう	永井荷風	ながい かふう	永井壮吉
正宗白鳥	まさむね はくちょう	正宗忠夫	高浜虚子	たかはま きよし	高濱清
武者小路実篤	むしゃのこうじ さねあつ	々	平塚らいてう	ひらつか らいちよう	奥村明
高村光太郎	たかむら こうたろう	高村光太郎	菊池寛	きくち かん	菊池寛

室生犀星	むろう さいせい	室生照道	佐藤湖鳴	さとう ちょうめ い	佐藤春 夫
金子光晴	かねこ みつはる	金子安和	尾崎士郎	おざき しろう	々
川端康成	かわばた やすなり	々	草野心平	くさの しんぺい	々
井上靖	いのうえ やすし	々	唐十郎	から じゅうろう	大鶴義 英
樋口一葉	ひぐち いちよう	樋口夏子	国木田独 歩	くにきだ どっぼ	国木田 哲夫
夏目漱石	なつめ そうせき	夏目金之 助	田山花袋	たやま かたい	田山録 弥
長谷川時 雨	はせがわ しぐれ	長谷川ヤ ス	北原白秋	きたはら はくし ゅう	北原隆 吉
志賀直哉	しが なおや	々	斉藤茂吉	さいとう もきち	々
宇野浩二	うの こうじ	宇野格次 郎	芥川龍之 介	あくたがわりゅう のすけ	々
宇野千代	うの ちよ	々	山本周五 郎	やまもと しゅう ごろう	清水三 十六
佐多稲子	さた いねこ	佐多イネ	種田山頭 火	たねだ さんとう か	種田正 一
太宰治	だざい おさむ	津島修治	島崎藤村	しまざき とうそ ん	島崎春 樹
三島由紀 夫	みしま ゆきお	平岡公威	大田翔子	おおだ しょうこ	々
吉行淳之 介	よしゆき じゅんの すけ	々	寺山修司	てらやま しゅう じ	々
泉鏡花	いずみ きょうか	泉鏡太郎	石川啄木	いしかわ たくぼ く	石川一

野上弥生	のがみ やえこ	野上やエ	中里介山	なかざと かいざ ん	中里弥 之介
宮本百合 子	みやもと ゆりこ	宮本ユリ	萩原朔太 郎	はぎわら さくた ろう	々
山本有三	やまもと ゆうぞう	山本勇造	横光利一	よこみつ りいち	横光利 一
梶井基次 郎	かじい もとじろう	々	小林多喜 二	こばやし たきじ	々
堀辰雄	ほり たつお	々	坂口安吾	さかぐち あんご	坂口炳 五
中原中也	なかはら ちゅうや	々	壺井栄	つばい さかえ	々
火野葦平	ひの あしへい	玉井勝則	椎名麟三	しいな りんぞう	大坪昇
大岡昇平	おおおか しょうへ い	々	島尾敏雄	しまお としお	々
柳田國男	やなぎた くにお	々	三木露風	みき ろふう	三木操
有島武郎	ありしま たけお	々	葛西善蔵	かさい ぜんぞう	々
広津和郎	ひろつ かずろう	々	原民喜	はら たみき	々

Reading Notes:

1. 志よう = しょう
2. 壮吉 = そうきち
3. 奥村明 = おくむら はる
4. 高村's real name is read as たかむら みつたろう.
5. 菊池's real name is read as きくち ひろし.
6. 清水三十六 is read as しみず さとむ.
7. 君威 = きみたけ
8. 石川一 = いしかわ はじめ.

9. 横光利一's real name is read as よこみつ としかず.

10. 三木操 = みき みさお.

Even though you may never read even one novel of all of these literary figures, at least knowing how to correctly read their names will impress natives as you will inevitably encounter their names being invoked for whatever reason.

Using Rare 名乗り

Using rare 名乗り that still appear in dictionaries may cause problems as well. Consider the character 和, which has the 名乗り reading とし. Even so, it is usually read as わ or かず in names. If you were to name your male child the common name さとし but spell it as 佐和, people may understandably mistakenly read it as the common female name read as さわ, which is normally spelled that way.

This is not to say that ambiguous reading of names isn't a problem, which is why it's so difficult to read the names of people you personally don't know correctly for the first time. Gender ambiguity in names has actually been used by people who change the reading of their name when they get a gender change, and people can also choose to leave the reading of their name ambiguous to have slightly more privacy in their identity.

きらきらネーム

However, there are names called きらきらネーム that are really flashy names with cute (and some would say bizarre readings). For instance, people have named children 光宙 with the reading ぴかちゅう. On this end of the spec-

trum, how to read the name is not necessarily that difficult. Yet, societal consequences for names such as this is highly debated. These names may also be called DQN ネーム.

天響（てい な）	緑輝（さふあ いあ）	火星（まあ ず）	姫凜（ぷり ん）	七音（どれ み）	月（あか り）
希星（きら ら）	陽（ぴん）	神生理（かお り）	星影夢（ぽえ む）	美々魅（みみ み）	姫奈（ぴい な）
園風（ぞふ い）	男（あだむ）	束生夏（ばな な）	晴日（はる ひ）	精飛愛（せび あ）	宝物（おう じ）

止め字

Choosing what the final letter of a name is--止め字--is an important decision, and the decision is highly based on what the previous sound. A lot of parents decide the final character before thinking about the rest of the name they want to give to their child.

止め字 for Girl Names

ア	亜, 明, 愛, 阿, 有, 綾, 安	星愛
イ	衣, 依, 伊, 意	真衣, 優衣
エ	絵, 恵, 江, 慧, 枝, 瑛, 映, 依, 永, 重, 笑, 詠, 栄, 英	千恵, 澄江, 沙恵, 沙絵, 真理江, 真梨恵, 春恵
オ	央, 生, 於, 緒, 桜, 欧	伽緒
オリ	織	香織, 沙織, 詩織
カ	花, 華, 香, 果, 歌, 夏, 加, 馨, 霞, 佳, 鹿, 伽, 茄, 賀, 可, 嘉, 樺	涼香, 穂乃果, 美香, 実夏, 智香, 千香, 麗華, 玲花, 怜香, 玲果, 晴香, 陽香, 舞香,

		麻衣香, 澄香, 純美花
キ	樹, 貴, 輝, 希, 紀, 季, 規, 岐, 記, 起, 姫, 木, 祈, 芸, 黄, 来, 稀, 葵, 綺, 嬉, 伎	沙樹, 早希, 真貴, 美樹, 玉樹
コ	子, 鼓, 湖, 胡, 古, 虹, 瑚	菜々子, 萌子
サ	沙, 紗, 砂, 左, 茶, 彩, 咲, 早, 冴, 採, 嵯, 袈, 磋	美沙, 千紗, 理沙, 莉紗, 茉莉沙
ジ	路	
ス	朱, 寿, 須	
スミ・ズ ミ	澄, 純	伽純
セ	瀬, 勢, 世, 星、 静	
チ	千, 地, 知, 智, 小, 稚	
ツ・ツ	津, 都, 鶴、 通	
ツキ・ツ キ	月	
ト	都, 渡, 登, 富, 音	
ナ	那, 奈, 菜, 南, 名, 七	鈴菜, 鈴奈, 陽菜, 綾奈, 彩那, 絢奈, 佑奈, 夕菜, 優那, 沙奈, 紘奈, 宏奈, 茉奈, 玲菜, 陽菜
ナミ	浪, 波	
ネ	音, 根, 嶺	朱音, 鈴音, 桃音
ノ	乃, 野, 農, 能, 濃	志乃, 知野
ハ	葉, 羽, 波	

ヒ	日, 陽, 斐	
ブ	舞	
ホ	穂, 保, 帆, 步, 朋	奈保, 菜穂, 真帆, 夏帆
マ	麻, 摩, 磨, 万, 茉, 真, 舞, 雅, 満	
ミ	美, 未, 巳, 見, 実, 海, 満, 水, 光, 身, 味, 泉	愛美, 留美, 晴見, 裕未, 聡美
メ	女, 芽	
モ	萌, 望	
ヤ	耶, 矢, 弥, 夜, 也, 野, 椰	
ユ	由, 優, 悠, 友, 愉, 佑, 侑, 有	
ユキ	雪, 幸	
ヨ	世, 夜, 容, 代, 葉, 与, 予, 依, 陽	小夜, 沙世
ラ	良, 羅, 楽	
リ	里, 莉, 理, 梨, 璃, 利, 李, 理, 吏	真理, 万理, 茉莉, 真里, 絵里, 恵理, 絵梨, 衣里, 汐里, 芽里, 優里, 友梨
リン	鈴, 林, 凜	
ル	留, 瑠, 流	
レイ	礼, 怜, 伶, 嶺, 麗, 玲	
ワ	和, 輪, 羽, 環	

止め字 for Boy Names

キ	貴, 輝, 樹	祐樹, 優輝, 航輝
ゴ	吾, 悟	信吾, 真悟, 賢吾, 涼吾
シ	史, 士, 司, 志, 至	靖史, 建志, 忠士, 雅司, 慶至

ジ	自, 二	達自, 浩二
スケ	介, 助, 甫, 輔	大輔, 康介
タ	太, 汰	雄太, 謙太, 隆太, 翔太
ダイ	大	佑大, 航大
タケ	健	剛健
ト	人, 斗, 登	流斗, 勇人, 駿斗, 健人
ドウ	童	義童
ノリ	則, 典, 紀	忠典, 勝紀
ヘイ	平	陽平, 昭平, 哲平, 晃平
マ	真, 馬, 磨	和馬, 優馬, 達馬, 卓磨
ヤ	也, 矢	信也, 徹也, 竜也, 智也
ユキ	之	弘之, 尚之, 敏行, 智之
ラ	羅	森羅
ロウ	郎, 朗	健太郎, 舜太郎, 晃太郎

Classifying Kanji is controversial. The first classification attempt was done by Xu Shen in his work "Shuōwén Jiězì 說文解字", creating the ^{りくしよ}六書. The 六書 is the categorization of characters by 6 principles. There is still great debate on them since his work was so broad.

The 六書

- **Principle I:** Principle I refers to 象形文字. These characters are pictograms that resemble what they mean. It is generally the case that they were more similar to what they represented in the beginning, but due to stylistic alterations and simplifications, these sorts of characters tend to no longer **apparently** resemble what they stand for.
Ex. 日 (sun/day), 月 (moon/month), 山 (mountain), 鳥 (bird), 木 (tree), 魚 (fish), 龍 (dragon)
- **Principle II:** Principle II refers to 指示文字. These characters are compound pictograms, more often referred to as ideograms.
Ex. 一 (one), 二 (two), 三 (three), 上 (above), 下 (below)
- **Principle III:** Principle III refers to 会意文字. These characters are compound ideograms, more complex than those characters classified under Principle II.
Ex. 休 (rest), 森 (forest/grove), 好 (like), 明 (bright), 信 (believe).
- **Principle IV:** Principle IV refers to 形成文字. About 90% of characters are in this type. They are composed generally of two parts: one of a limited set of character (the semantic indicator, often graphically simplified) which suggests the general meaning of the compound character, and another character (the phonetic indicator) whose pronunciation suggests the pronunciation of the compound character.

Ex. 河 (river), 湖 (lake), 流 (flow), 冲 (offing), 江 (inlet). In these characters, the left side provides meaning and the right side provides sound.

- **Principle V:** Principle V refers to 轉注文字. These are 漢字 with common origin that have evolved differently.

Ex. 老 (Old) & 考 (Thought)

- **Principle VI:** Principle VI refers to 假借文字. These rebus characters cover cases where an existing character is used to represent an unrelated word with similar or identical pronunciation

Ex. 自 originally meant "nose" instead of "oneself". The meaning of nose has been given to 鼻. Ex. 萬 is from a pictogram of a scorpion, but through phonetic association with the word for 10,000, it lost its meaning of scorpion.

Ex. 北 = "north" but meant "back", which is now 背.

Ex. 四 originally meant tonsils, but this meaning has been given up to 泗 to mean "sniffle". The original character for four, 𠂇, is no longer used as an effect.

偏旁冠脚








The usage of 部首 is often referred to as "偏旁冠脚 (へんぼうかんきゃく)". This method relies on the fact that there is generally 1 or more different radicals in a character and 4 main locations where the "true" radical may be located. As 90% of all characters are 形声文字, the "true" radical should almost always be apparent. Due to simplification, though, some characters are impossible to categorize appropriately. When such cases exist, you must rely on your knowledge of 旧字体. However, most 新字体 are easily assigned a 部首.

The number of 部首 has been a controversial issue. As the characters evolved, so did their parts. As it is not as if this evolution caused the creation of completely different radicals, we often classify variants of the same thing as a single 部首. It is here where the classification of 部首 is different in China and Japan. In Japan, there is a somewhat agreement classification with 214 distinct 部首.


In listing radicals, there are two accepted steps: counting the strokes of the radical and figuring out the 音読み and listing in a 五十音図 style ordering. For example, a character that has 3 strokes whose radical has an 音読み with the first letter K would be before a character with that same amount of strokes but with the first letter T. Voiced consonants, in dictionaries, are shown after their non-voiced counterparts with the only issue being h. In this case, h is first, b is second, and p is last. When searching for words or characters, you must understand that the small y かな are treated as full characters.


There are some radicals whose strokes may be counted differently depending on one's viewpoint and choice of font. For example, the 部首 瓜, 𠂔, 鬼, and 臣 are considered to have 5, 3, 10, and 7 strokes in Japan respectively but are considered to have 6, 2, 9, and 6 in China respectively. To find the 部首 of a character, a system of different positions has been created to pinpoint where it is normally located.

THE STANDARD PATTERNS






-  偏: The 部首 is on the left. For example, 略's 部首 is 田 and its phonetic is 各.
-  旁: The 部首 is on the right. For example, 艶's phonetic is 豊 and its 部首 is 色.
-  冠: The 部首 is on the top. For example, 歩's 部首 is 止 and its phonetic is 少.
-  脚: The 部首 is on the bottom. For example, 志's phonetic is 士 and its 部首 is 心.
-  垂: The 部首 is on the top and side of a character. For example, 房's 部首 is 戸 and its phonetic is 方.
-  繞: The 部首 is on the side on the bottom of a character. For example, 起's 部首 is 走 and its phonetic is 己.
-  構: The 部首 surrounds the phonetic. For example, 国's 部首 is 口 and its phonetic is 玉.

脚の変形: Irregularities of the Ashi pattern.

-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 is on the top and the bottom. For example, 亘's radical is 一 on the top and the bottom and the phonetic is 日.

-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 is in the middle. For example, 昼's phonetic is 尺 and its 部首 is 日 and 一.

構の変形: Irregularities of the 構 pattern.

-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 surrounds the phonetic with a bottom opening. For example, 間's 部首 is 門 and its phonetic is 日.
-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 surrounds the phonetic with a top opening. For example, 凶's radical is 凵 and its phonetic is ム.
-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 surrounds the phonetic with an opening on the right side. For example, 医's radical is 匚 and its phonetic is 矢.
-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 is only on the top and the right side. For example, 式's radical is 弋 and its phonetic is 工.
-  : In this irregularity, the 部首 surrounds the phonetic only on the sides. For example, 街's radical is 行 and its phonetic is 圭.

The 214 部首

THE 214 BUSHU ACCORDING TO THE 康熙字典 (こうき) 字典

#	Radi- cal	Stroke Number	Name		Popular/Normal Name	Meaning
1.	一	1	一部	いち ぶ	イチ	"One" radical
2.	丨	1	丨部	こん ぶ	たてぼう	"Bar" radical
3.	丶	1	丶部	ちゅ ぶ	テン	"Dot" radical
4.	丿	1	丿部	へつ ぶ	の	"Slash" radical

5.	乙・し	1	乙部	おつ ぶ	おつ、おつによろ、つばり	"Fish-hook" radical
6.	丿	1	丿部	けつ ぶ	はねぼう、かぎ	"Hook" radical
7.	二	2	二部	にぶ	に	"Two" radical
8.	一	2	一部	とう ぶ	なべぶた、け(い)さんかん むり	"Top" radical
9.	人・イ	2	人部	じん ぶ	ひと、にんべん、ひとがし ら、ひとやね	"Person" radical
10.	儿	2	儿部	じん ぶ	にんによろ、ひとあし	"Legs" radical
11.	入	2	入部	にゆ うぶ	いる、いりがしら、いりや ね、にゅう	"Enter" radical
12.	八	2	八部	はち ぶ	はち、はちがしら	"Eight" radical
13.	冂	2	冂部	けい ぶ	けいがまえ、まきがまえ、ど うがまえ、えんがまえ	"Down-box" radical
14.	冖	2	一部	ベき ぶ	わかんむり、ベきかんむり	"Cover" radical
15.	冫	2	冫部	ひよ うぶ	にすい	"Ice" radical
16.	几	2	几部	きぶ	つくえ、きによろ、つくえき によろ、かぜかんむり、かぜ がまえ	"Table" radical
17.	凵	2	凵部	かん ぶ	かんにょろ、うけばこ、した ばこ	"Up-box" radical
18.	刀・リ	2	刀部	とう ぶ	かたな、りっとう	"Sword" radical

19.	力	2	力部	りよ くぶ	ちから	"Strength" radical
20.	勹	2	勹部	ほう ぶ	つつみがまえ	"Wrap" radical
21.	匕	2	匕部	ひぶ	ひ、さじ、さじのひ	"Spoon" radical
22.	匸	2	匸部	ほう ぶ	はこがまえ	"Right-open-box" radical
23.	匚	2	匚部	けい ぶ	かくしがまえ	"Hiding enclosure" radical
24.	十	2	十部	じゅ うぶ	じゅう	"Ten" radical
25.	卜	2	卜部	ぼく ぶ	ぼく、ぼくのと、うらない	"Divination" radical
26.	冂・卩	2	冂部	せつ ぶ	ふしづくり、まげわりふ	"Seal" radical
27.	厂	2	厂部	かん ぶ	がんだれ	"Cliff" radical
28.	ム	2	ム部	しぶ	む	"Private" radical
29.	又	2	又部	ゆう ぶ	また	"Again" radical
30.	口	3	口部	こう ぶ	くち、くちへん	"Mouth" radical
31.	凵	3	凵部	いぶ	くにがまえ	"Enclosure" radical
32.	土	3	土部	どぶ	つち、つちへん	"Earth" radical
33.	士	3	士部	しぶ	さむらい、さむらいかんむり	"Scholar" radical

34.	夕	3	夕部	ちぶ	ふゆがしら、ちかんむり、の またかんむり	"Go" radical
35.	夕	3	夕部	すい ぶ	すいによ、すいにゅう、な つあし	"Go slowly" radical
36.	夕	3	夕部	せき ぶ	ゆうべ、ゆう、た	"Evening" radical
37.	大	3	大部	だい ぶ	だい、だいがしら、だいかん むり	"Big" radical
38.	女	3	女部	じょ ぶ	おんな、おんなへん	"Woman" radical
39.	子	3	子部	しぶ	こ、こども、こへん、こども へん	"Child" radical
40.	宀	3	宀部	べん ぶ	うかんむり	"Roof" radical
41.	寸	3	寸部	すん ぶ	すん	"Inch" radical
42.	小	3	小部	しよ うぶ	しょう、しょうがしら、なお がしら	"Small" radical
43.	尢・尢	3	尢部	おう ぶ	まげあし、だいのまげあし、 おうによ	"Lame" radical
44.	尸	3	尸部	しぶ	しかばね、しかばねかんむ り、かばねだれ	"Corpse" radical
45.	屮	3	屮部	てつ ぶ	てつ、めばえ	"Sprout" radical
46.	山	3	山部	さん ぶ	やま、やまへん	"Mountain" radical
47.	巛・川	3	巛部	せん ぶ	かわ、まがりがわ、さんぼが わ	"River" radical

48.	工	3	工部	こう ぶ	こう、たくみ、たくみへん	"Work" radical
49.	己・ 巳・巳	3	己部	きぶ	おのれ	"Self" radical
50.	巾	3	巾部	きん ぶ	はば、はばへん、きんへん、 きんべん	"Turban" radical
51.	干	3	干部	かん ぶ	ほす、かん、いちじゅう	"Dry" radical
52.	幺	3	幺部	よう ぶ	いとがしら	"Thread" radical
53.	广	3	广部	げん ぶ	まだれ	"Dotted cliff" radical
54.	乚	3	乚部	いん ぶ	えんによろ、えんにゅう、い んによろ	"Long stride" radical
55.	卅	3	卅部	きよ うぶ	こまぬき	"Two hands" radical
56.	弋	3	弋部	よく ぶ	しきがまえ	"Shoot" radical
57.	弓	3	弓部	きゅ うぶ	ゆみ、ゆみへん	"Bow" radical
58.	ㄣ・亅	3	ㄣ部	けい ぶ	けいがしら、いのこがしら	"Snout" radical
59.	彡	3	彡部	さん ぶ	さんづくり、かみかざり	"Bristle" radical
60.	彳	3	彳部	てき ぶ	ぎょうにんべん	"Step" radical
61.	心・ 忄・小	4	心部	しん ぶ	こころ・りっしんべん・した ごころ	"Heart" radical

62.	戈	4	戈部	かぶ	ほこがまえ、ほこづくり、たすき、かのほこ	"Halberd" radical
63.	戸・戶	4	戸部	こぶ	と、とかんむり、とだれ、とびらのと	"Door" radical
64.	手・扌	4	手部	しゅぶ	て、てへん	"Hand" radical
65.	支	4	支部	しぶ	しによう、えだによう、じゅうまた	"Branch" radical
66.	支・攴	4	支部	ぼくぶ	ぼくづくり、ぼくによう、のぶん、しぶん、とまた	"Strike" radical
67.	文	4	文部	ぶんぶ	ぶん、ぶんによろ、ふみづくり	"Writing" radical
68.	斗	4	斗部	とぶ	と、ます、とます	"Dipper" radical
69.	斤	4	斤部	きんぶ	おの、おのづくり	"Ax" radical
70.	方	4	方部	ほうぶ	かたへん、ほうへん	"Square" radical
71.	无	4	无部	むぶ	なし、むによろ、すでのづくり	"Not" radical
72.	日	4	日部	にちぶ	にち、ひへん	"Day" radical
73.	曰	4	曰部	えつぶ	ひらび、いわく	"Say" radical
74.	月	4	月部	げつぶ	つき、つきへん	"Moon" radical
75.	木	4	木部	もくぶ	き、きへん	"Tree" radical
76.	欠	4	欠部	けんぶ	あくび、かける	"Lack" radical

77.	止	4	止部	しぶ	とめる、とめへん	"Stop" radical
78.	歹	4	歹部	がつ ぶ	かばねへん、がつ、がつへん、しにがまえ、いちたへん	"Death" radical
79.	殳	4	殳部	しゅ ぶ	ほこ、ほこづくり、るまた	"Weapon" radical
80.	母	4	母部	ぶぶ	なかれ	"Do not" radical
81.	比	4	比部	ひぶ	ならびひ、くらべる	"Compare" radical
82.	毛	4	毛部	もう ぶ	け	"Hair" radical
83.	氏	4	氏部	しぶ	うじ	"Clan" radical
84.	气	4	气部	きぶ	きがまえ	"Air" radical
85.	水・ 氵・氷	4	水部	すい ぶ	みず・さんずい・したみず	"Water" radical
86.	火・灬	4	火部	かぶ	ひ、ひへん、れんが、れっか	"Fire" radical
87.	爪・𠂇	4	爪部	そう ぶ	つめ、そうによろ、つめかんむり	"Nail" radical
88.	父	4	父部	ふぶ	ちち	"Father" radical
89.	爻	4	爻部	こう ぶ		"Yao" radical
90.	片・𠂇	4/3	片部	しよ うぶ	しょうへん	"Half tree trunk" radical
91.	片	4	片部	へん ぶ	かた、かたへん	"Slice" radical
92.	牙	4/5	牙部	がぶ	きば	"Fang" radical
93.	牛・牜	4	牛部	ぎゅ うぶ	うし、うしへん	"Cow" radical

94.	犬・犴	4	犬部	けん ぶ	いぬ、けものへん	"Dog" radical
95.	玄	5	玄部	げん ぶ	げん	"Profound" radical
96.	玉・王・玉	5	玉部	ぎょ くぶ	たま、たまへん、ぎょくへん、おうへん	"Jade" radical
97.	瓜	5	瓜部	かぶ	うり	"Melon" radical
98.	瓦	5	瓦部	がぶ	かわら	"Tile" radical
99.	甘	5	甘部	かん ぶ	あまい、かん	"Sweet" radical
100.	生	5	生部	せい ぶ	いきる、うまれる、せい、しょう	"Life" radical
101.	用・用	5	用部	よう ぶ	もちいる、よう	"Use" radical
102.	田	5	田部	でん ぶ	た、たへん	"Field" radical
103.	疋	5	疋部	しょ うぶ	ひき	"Bolt of cloth" radical
104.	疒	5	疒部	だく ぶ	やまいだれ	"Disease" radical
105.	𦉳	5	𦉳部	はつ ぶ	はつがしら	"Dotted tent" radical
106.	白	5	白部	はく ぶ	しろ、しろへん	"White" radical
107.	皮	5	皮部	ひぶ	けがわ、ひのかわ	"Skin" radical
108.	皿	5	皿部	べい ぶ	さら	"Plate" radical

109.	目・𠂔	5	目部	もく ぶ	め、めへん	"Eye" radical
110.	矛	5	矛部	ぼう ぶ	ほこ、ほこへん	"Spear" radical
111.	矢	5	矢部	しぶ	や、やへん	"Arrow" radical
112.	石	5	石部	せき ぶ	いし、いしへん	"Stone" radical
113.	示・示	5	示部	しぶ	しめす、しめすへん、ねへん	"Spirit" radical
114.	内	5	内部	じゅ うぶ	ぐうのあし	"Track" radical
115.	禾	5	禾部	かぶ	いね、いねへん、のぎ、のぎ へん	"Grain" radical
116.	穴	5	穴部	けつ ぶ	あな、あなかんむり	"Hole" radical
117.	立	5	立部	りゅ うぶ	たつ、たつへん	"Stand" radical
118.	竹	6	竹部	ちく ぶ	たけ、たけかんむり	"Bamboo" radical
119.	米	6	米部	べい ぶ	こめ、こめへん	"Rice" radical
120.	糸・糸	6	糸部	べき ぶ	いと、いとへん	"Thread" radical
121.	缶	6	缶部	ふぶ	ほとぎ、ほとぎへん、かん	"Can" radical
122.	网・𦉳・𦉳	6	网部	もう ぶ	あみがしら・よんがしら・あ みめ	"Net" radical
123.	羊	6	羊部	よう ぶ	ひつじ、ひつじへん	"Sheep" radical
124.	羽	6	羽部	うぶ	はね	"Wing" radical

125.	老・耂	6/4	老部	ろう ぶ	おいがしら・おいかんむり	"Age" radical
126.	而	6	而部	じぶ	しこうして	"And" radical
127.	耒	6	耒部	らい ぶ	すきへん、らいすき	"Plow" radical
128.	耳	6	耳部	じぶ	みみ、みみへん	"Ear" radical
129.	聿・聿	6/4	聿部	いつ ぶ	ふでづくり	"Brush" radical
130.	肉・月	6/4	肉部	にく ぶ	にく・にくづき	"Meat" radical
131.	臣	6/7	臣部	しん ぶ	しん	"Minister" radical
132.	自	6	自部	じぶ	みずから	"Own" radical
133.	至	6	至部	しぶ	いたる、いたるへん	"Arrive" radical
134.	臼	6	臼部	きゅ うぶ	うす	"Mortar" radical
135.	舌	6	舌部	ぜつ ぶ	した	"Tongue" radical
136.	舛	6・7	舛部	せん ぶ	ます、まいあし	"Oppose" radical
137.	舟	6	舟部	しゅ うぶ	ふね、ふねへん	"Boat" radical
138.	艮	6	艮部	ごん ぶ	こんづくり、ごんづくり、ごん、ねづくり	"Stopping" radical
139.	色	6	色部	しょ くぶ	いろ	"Color" radical

140.	艸・艹	6/3	艸部	そう ぶ	くさかんむり、くさ、そうこ う	"Grass" radical
141.	虎	6	虎部	こぶ	とらがしら	"Tiger" radical
142.	虫	6	虫部	きぶ	むし、むしへん	"Bug" radical
143.	血	6	血部	けつ ぶ	ち、ちへん	"Blood" radical
144.	行	6	行部	こう ぶ	ゆきがまえ、ぎょうがまえ	"Walk enclosure" radical
145.	衣・衤	6	衣部	いぶ	ころも、ころもへん	"Clothes" radical
146.	西・酉 𠂔・西	6	西部	あぶ	にし	"West" radical
147.	見	7	見部	けん ぶ	みる	"See" radical
148.	角	7	角部	かく ぶ	つの、つのへん	"Horn" radical
149.	言・言	7	言部	げん ぶ	ごんべん	"Talk" radical
150.	谷	7	谷部	こく ぶ	たに	"Valley" radical
151.	豆	7	豆部	とう ぶ	まめ	"Bean" radical
152.	豕	7	豕部	しぶ	いのこ、いのこへん	"Boar" radical
153.	豸	7	豸部	ちぶ	むじなへん	"Badger" radical
154.	貝	7	貝部	ばい ぶ	かい、かいへん	"Shell" radical
155.	赤	7	赤部	せき ぶ	あか、あかへん	"Red" radical

156.	走	7	走部	そう ぶ	はしる、そうによ	"Run" radical
157.	足	7	足部	そく ぶ	あし、あしへん	"Foot" radical
158.	身	7	身部	しん ぶ	み、みへん	"Body" radical
159.	車	7	車部	しゃ ぶ	くるま、くるまへん	"Vehicle" radical
160.	辛	7	辛部	しん ぶ	からい	"Bitter" radical
161.	辰	7	辰部	しん ぶ	しんのたつ	"Morning" radical
162.	走・辵	7/3	走部	ちゃ くぶ	しんによ	"Walk" radical
163.	邑・阝	7/3	邑部	ゆう ぶ	おおざと	"City" radical
164.	酉	7	酉部	ゆう ぶ	ひよみのとり、とりへん、さ けつくり	"Wine" radical
165.	采	7	采部	はん ぶ	のごめ、のごめへん	"Distinguish" radical
166.	里	7	里部	りぶ	さと、さとへん	"Village" radical
167.	金	8	金部	きん ぶ	かね、かねへん	"Gold" radical
168.	長	8	長部	ちょ うぶ	ながい	"Long" radical
169.	門	8	門部	もん ぶ	もんがまえ、かどがまえ	"Gate" radical
170.	阜・阡	8	阜部	ふぶ	こざとへん	"Mound" radical

171.	隶	8	隶部	たい ぶ	れいづくり	"Slave" radical
172.	隹	8	隹部	すい ぶ	ふるとり	"Tailed bird" radical
173.	雨	8	雨部	うぶ	あめかんむり	"Rain" radical
174.	青・青	8	青部	せい ぶ	あお	"Blue" radical"
175.	非	8	非部	ひぶ	あらず	"Wrong" radical
176.	面	9	面部	めん ぶ	めん	"Face" radical
177.	革	9	革部	かく ぶ	かわへん、つくりがわ	"Leather" radical
178.	韋	9・10	韋部	いぶ	なめしがわ	"Tanned leather" radical
179.	韭	9	韭部	きゅ うぶ	にら	"Leek" radical
180.	音	9	音部	おん ぶ	おと、おとへん	"Sound" radical
181.	頁	9	頁部	けつ ぶ	おおがい	"Leaf" radical
182.	風	9	風部	ふう ぶ	かぜ	"Wind" radical
183.	飛	9	飛部	ひぶ	とぶ	"Flight" radical
184.	食・食	9/8	食部	しょ くぶ	しょくへん	"Food" radical
185.	首	9	首部	しゅ ぶ	くび	"Neck" radical

186.	香	9	香部	こう ぶ	かおり	"Smell" radical
187.	馬	10	馬部	ばぶ	うまへん	"Horse" radical
188.	骨	10	骨部	こつ ぶ	ほねへん	"Bone" radical
189.	高・高	10	高部	こう ぶ	たかい	"Tall" radical
190.	髟	10	髟部	ひよ うぶ	かみがしら	"Long hair" radical
191.	鬥	10	鬥部	とう ぶ	たたかいがまえ、とうがまえ	"Fight" radical
192.	鬯	10	鬯部	ちよ うぶ	ちょう、においざけ	"Sacrificial wine" radical
193.	鬲	10	鬲部	れき ぶ	かなえ、れき	"Tripod" radical
194.	鬼	10	鬼部	きぶ	おに、きょう	"Demon" radical
195.	魚	11	魚部	ぎよ ぶ	うお、うおへん	"Fish" radical
196.	鳥	11	鳥部	ちよ うぶ	とり	"Bird" radical
197.	鹵	11	鹵部	ろぶ	ろ、しお	"Salt" radical
198.	鹿	11	鹿部	ろく ぶ	しか	"Dear" radical
199.	麥・麦	11	麦部	ばく ぶ	むぎ、ばくによ	"Wheat" radical
200.	麻	11	麻部	まぶ	あさ、あさかんむり	"Hemp" radical

201.	黄・黄	12	黄部	こう ぶ	き	"Yellow" radical
202.	黍	12	黍部	しよ ぶ	きび	"Millet" radical
203.	黒・黒	12/11	黒部	こく ぶ	くろ	"Black" radical
204.	黹	12	黹部	ちぶ	ち、ぬいとり、ふつへん	"Embroidery" radical
205.	黾	13	黾部	ぼう ぶ	べんあし、べん、かえる	"Frog" radical
206.	鼎	13	鼎部	てい ぶ	てい、かなえ	"Tripod" radical
207.	鼓	13	鼓部	こぶ	つづみ	"Drum" radical
208.	鼠	13	鼠部	そぶ	ねずみ	"Mouse" radical
209.	鼻	14	鼻部	びぶ	はな、はなへん	"Nose" radical
210.	齊・斉	14/8	斉部	せい ぶ	せい	"Even" radical
211.	齒・歯	15/12	歯部	しぶ	は、はへん	"Tooth" radical
212.	龍・竜	16/10	竜部	りゅ うぶ	りゅう	"Dragon" radical
213.	龜・亀	16/11	亀部	きぶ	かめ	"Turtle" radical
214.	龠	17	龠部	やく ぶ	やく、ふえ	"Flute" radical

Chart Note: Some variants have been omitted due to the unavailability of the respectful glyphs.

Name Note: If you learn any of the names, you should focus on the popular ones.

Table of Contents

第 283 課：国字 (Japanese-made Kanji)

The development of 国字 is nothing less than fascinating. Despite having already borrowed thousands of 漢字 from mainland China and created its own syllabaries, hundreds of 漢字 have also been made by the Japanese. These 国字, also known as 和(製漢)字, have even at times been sent back to be used in China.

Curriculum Note: There is a resource page with a lot of 国字. This page, however, is coverage concerning 国字 in lesson format.

What are 国字?

国字 have come and gone. By the beginning of the Heian Period (794~1185 A.D), around 400 such characters were recorded in the 新撰字鏡(しんせんじきょう), an early 漢和辞典. Of all the 国字 that have been created, only a relatively small percentage are still extremely important characters. However, this is not meant to disregard those that are important. For instance, 働 was made in Japan and is now used in China to mean “work” as well. It has even acquired its own 音読み ドウ. Another important case is 腺, which surprisingly only has the 音読み セン. It was coined in translating medical texts in Dutch to mean “gland”.

There are have only been 10 国字 in the 常用漢字表: 働 (to work), 畑 (field), 込 (to put into, etc.), 枠 (frame), 搾 (to squeeze), 峠 (mountain pass), 塀 (earthen wall), 枥 (horse chestnut), 腺 (gland), 匆 (monme). The latter was taken out in 2010. There are also others as 人名用漢字 such as 笹 (bamboo grass) and 麿 (phonetic "maro" in names).

The large majority of 国字, though, are not included in these lists as they are in large point used in writing the names of plants and animals. Examples include 鰯 (sardines), 鴨 (snipe), 櫨 (oak tree), 椴 (sawtooth oak), 櫟 (sawtooth oak), etc. A lot of this is due to the fact that there are some things that are just not found in China that are in Japan, so the Japanese felt the need to create characters for these things.

Making 国字

For the most part, 国字 were created with the 六書 principles kept in mind. Here are a few examples.

鱈	Created with the cod fish that can be caught when it's snowing in mind.
榎	Created with the hard Japanese oak tree in mind.
辻	Created with crossroads in a path in mind.
畑	Created with slash and burn agriculture in mind.
霽	Created with rain falling down in mind.
俥	Created with a rickshaw in mind.

Although the majority of 国字 do not have 音読み, there are rare instances where some were made with 漢字 phonetics in mind.

腺	Created with the radical meat plus 泉 (セン). Thus, 腺's sound is セン.
塀	Created with the radical ground plus 屏 (ヘイ).

Some, though, were created by combining characters.

粃	久 (ク) + 米 (メ). Thus, read as くめ. It is seen in names.
磨	麻 has the reading マ, and 呂 has the reading ロ. So, 磨 = まろ. It is seen in names.

国訓

There are even some characters that may also be found in China whose meanings are so different in Japanese that it begs the question whether such characters changed usage once brought to Japan or happened to be made in Japan as well. The two main examples of this are the following characters.

Character	Chinese Meaning	Japanese Meaning
倏	Suddenly	To recollect
鮎	Sheatfish	Ayu fish
藤	Vine	Wisteria
沖	To rinse; minor river	Offing/open water

Important 国字 to Study

Though there are many easily searchable lists of 国字 online, below are the most important ones that you should study. Some of these are far rarer than others. So, the table will label these characters with a scale of 1-10 for importance with 10 being extremely important and 1 being minimally important.

If you are hoping to do well on the most difficult 漢字 tests like the 漢検 1 級, then try learning them all and more. If you want to just know those that show up frequently in literature, you may want to only learn half of them.

国 字	重要 度	意味	音訓	国 字	重要 度	意味	音訓
畑	10	Field	はたけ	働	10	To work	ドウ・はたら(く)
込	10	To put into	こ(む)	枠	10	Frame	わく
峠	10	Ridge	とうげ	搾	10	To squeeze	サク・しば(る)
腺	9	Gland	セン	匂	9	Smell	にお(い)
辻	9	Crossroads	つじ	辻	8	To slip	すべ(る)
雫	8	Raindrop	しずく	凧	8	Kite	たこ
笹	8	Bamboo grass	ささ	俵	8	Rickshaw	くるま
畠	8	Field	はたけ	躰	8	Behavior	しつけ

喰	8	To eat	くら（う）	癢	8	Spasm	シャク
凧	8	Calm; lull	なぎ	鰯	8	Sardine	いわし
鉾	8	Tack	ビョウ	榊	8	Sakaki	さかき
膵	8	Pancreas	スイ	襷	7	Sash	たすき
枺	7	Measure	ます	枺	7	Measure	ます
嘶	7	Chat	はなし	鯰	7	Catfish	なまず
鎗	7	Spear	やり	枥	7	Horse chestnut	とち
褰	7	Skirt; hem	つま	鱈	7	Cod	たら
俣	7	Crotch; fork	また	鱧	7	Sillago	きす
風	7	Wind from mountains	おろし	垢	7	Trash	ごみ
鎗	7	Metal jewelry	かざり	桮	7	Mountain base	ふもと
絨	7	Braid of armor	おどし	磨	7	Maro	まる
座	7	Mat	ござ	逆	6	A lot	とても
鞆	6	Archer arm protector	とも	築	6	Girder	やな
袴	6	Samurai garb	かみしも	砒	6	Oyster	かき
髦	6	To pull out (hair)	むし(る)	搥	6	To pull out (hair)	むし(る)
衍	6	Sleeve length	ゆき	倂	6	Vestige	おもかげ
柺	6	Hemlock	つが	呷	6	Straw bag	かます
粃	6	Unhulled rice	もみ	鷗	6	Snipe	しぎ
鶉	6	Thrush	つぐみ	問	6	To be obstructed	つかえ(る)
杵	6	Woodworker	もく	梶	6	Japanese cedar	すぎ
杵	6	Spindle tree	まさき	榊	6	Grave tree	しきみ

凎	6	Certainly	しかと	杣	6	Timber	そま
鳩	5	Grebe	にお	鵯	5	Grosbeak	いかる
ㄥ	5	Letter ending mark	しめ	忼	5	To endure	こらえ(る)
洩	5	Edge	ふち	鯈	5	Yellow fish; 寿司 eggs	かずのこ
鮓	5	Gizzard shad	このしろ	坏	5	Low ground	あくつ
糶	5	Malt	こうじ	鶇	5	Goldcrest	きくいた
櫟	5	Horse chestnut	くぬぎ	橡	5	Horse chestnut	くぬぎ
栲	5	Reel; skein	かせ	銚	5	Clamp	かすがい
嬬	5	Wife	かかあ	適	5	Good job!	あっぱれ
簀	5	Banner	はた	鰯	5	Japanese smelt	わかさぎ
圪	5	Penstock; sluice	いり	綯	4	Reel; skein	かすり・かせ
鰯	4	Sailfin sandfish	はたはた	鉏	4	Habaki	はばき
簀	4	Temple (clothing)	しんし	纈	4	Tie-dying	コウ
谿	4	Gorge	はざま	𪗇	4	To be joyful	よろこ(ぶ)
鮎	4	Catfish	なまず	栳	4	Colored leaves	もみじ
鮠	4	Flathead	ごり	𪗇	4	Fastener	こはぜ
𪗇	4	Sled	そり	𪗇	4	Sled	そり
鯽	4	Chub; dace	あさり・うぐい	𪗇	4	Udon	ウン
燂	4	Foot warmer	タツ	鶯	4	Eurasian jay	カケス
蛸	4	Shrimp	えび	𪗇	4	At last	やがて
鯨	4	Killer whale	しゃち(ほこ)	𪗇	4	Bamboo whisk	っさら

鰻	3	Lamprey	どじょう	鶺鴒	3	Crested ibis	とき
鮫	3	Anglerfish	アン	鰐	3	Anglerfish	コウ
蛸	3	Abalone	ホウ・あわ び	苴	3	Finish (plaster, etc.)	すさ
鰻	3	Fish trap	えり	谿	3	Ravine	さこ・たに
衛	3	Plover	ちどり	鮠	3	Young striped mullet	すばしり
鶺鴒	3	Crossbill	いすか	鰐	3	Bullhead	かじか
舂	3	Son/brat	せがれ	鮠	2	Charr	いわな
鰻	2	Japanese dace	うぐい	鰐	2	Mackerel scad	むろあじ
𠂔	2	Wide blade knife	なた	煩	2	Big cannon	おおづつ
漁	2	Fisherman	あま	鰐	1	Lizardfish	えそ
裊	1	Awning	ほろ	𠂔	1	The phoneme te	て

第 284 課: あて字

あて字 is a blanket term for irregular readings in Japanese. However, there is a more exact definition of it that separates it from other special cases that this lesson will go in depth in.

熟字訓

Consequently, in using 漢字 to write Japanese, there are plenty of instances in which the set readings of characters are still not efficient to spell particular native words. Thus, to compensate this problem, one solution is to attribute a particular reading of a set of characters for a certain instance, ignoring the phonetic values of the 漢字 chosen. Thus, the characters are chosen for semantic value. This is called 熟字訓 or 義訓.

This, as you would imagine, causes major problems. As we have seen with 国字, many characters had to be created to write the names of fish and what not. The other option chosen that was not mentioned in that lesson was the plethora of 熟字訓 created for the same purpose. Thus, from the perspective of the avid Japanese reader and prospecting Japanese learner, spelling is an arduous task to say the least.

Luckily, very few instances of 熟字訓 are taught in school. Thus, the average number known by even natives is relatively few. So, in the case of literature, they are generally given reading aids. However, due to the sheer number of them, you will and have surely already encountered them.

It must also be noted that not all 熟字訓 are for native words. There are instances of it for loanwords. However, the large majority of examples are still native words.

Native Word Examples

大人	おとな	Adult	時雨	しぐれ	Drizzle	梅雨	つゆ	Rainy season
五月雨	さみだれ	May rain	紫陽花	あじさい	Hydrangea	紅葉	もみじ	Colored leaves
田舎	いなか	Countryside	今日	きょう	Today	今朝	けさ	This morning
昨日	きのう	Yesterday	明日	あす・あした	Tomorrow	去年	こそ	Last year
狗母魚	えそ	Lizardfish	薔薇	ばら	Rose	梔子	くちなし	Gardenia
向日葵	ひまわり	Sunflower	硫黄	いおう	Sulfur	意気地	いくじ	Self-confidence
乙女	おとめ	Maiden	母屋	おもや	Main building	河岸	かし	River bank
風邪	かぜ	A cold	仮名	かな	Kana	為替	かわせ	Exchange
雑魚	ざこ	Small fry	棧敷	さじき	Gallery	素人	しろうと	Novice
玄人	くろうと	Expert	仲人	なこうど	Go-between	若人	わこうど	Young person
数珠	じゆず	Rosary	師走	しわす	12th month	雪崩	なだれ	Avalanche
博士	はかせ	Professor	下手	へた	Bad at	土産	みやげ	Souvenir
木綿	もめん	Cotton	寄席	よせ	Vaudeville	水母	くらげ	Jellyfish

Indigenous Cultural Items Note: Many 熟字訓 are for indigenous/cultural items. Clearly, China wouldn't have had a spelling for them as they wouldn't be Chinese things.

神楽	かぐら	Kagura	出汁	だし	Dashi	太刀	たち	Longsword
祝詞	のりと	Ritual prayer	お神酒	おみき	Sacred sake	大和	やまと	Yamato
相撲	すもう	Sumo	草履	ぞうり	Zori	小豆	あずき	Azuki bean
浴衣	ゆかた	Yukata	竹刀	しな	Fencing stick	手水	ちょうず	Water for washing hands

Classification Note: Although 意気地 and 仮名 happen to have readings the resemble actual readings of the characters, because they are chosen primarily for meaning, they are classified as 熟字訓.

Counter Note: Remember that many counter expressions are irregular in this regard. Consider the days of the month like 一日, 二日, etc. Also consider 一人 and 二人 which are half 熟字訓 because of the -り reading of 人. There's also the important exception for 20 years old, ^{はたち}二十歳.

Archaism Note: こぞ is now an archaism. Also, 師走 is the 12th month of the lunar calendar.

Loanword Examples

煙草	タバコ	Tobacco	燐寸	マッチ	Match
煙管	キセル	Pipe	硝子	ガラス	Glass

洋燈	ランプ	Lamp	麦酒	ビール	Beer
----	-----	------	----	-----	------

外来語 Note: Most loanwords are normally written in カタカナ. However, there are instances where really old loans such as タバコ are frequently written in ひらがな and 漢字. By the end of the Meiji Period, there were already hundreds of loans that were given 漢字 spellings, and they were frequently used up until after World War II. Even so, if you read a lot of literature, you will undoubtedly encounter more example of this. As they are tested to some degree in the upper levels of the 漢検, learning these spellings is not completely trivial. Also, if you read anything from the late 1800s or early 1900s, they obviously show up in large number.

Part 熟字訓

There are also instances where only part of a word is 熟字訓. Again, there are a lot of examples regarding indigenous items, plants, and what not. However, it's important to note that irregular changes to 音読み are also classified as 熟字訓.

日 和	ひよ り	Weather	息子	むすこ	Son	一言 居士	いちげん こじ	Ready critic
笑 顔	えが お	Smiling face	息吹	いぶき	Breath	海原	うなばら	Seabed
浮 気	うわ き	Affair	果物	くだも の	Fruit	心地	ここち	Sensation
清 水	しみ ず	Pure wa- ter	三味 線	しゃみ せん	Shamisen	白髪	しらが	Grey hair
砂 利	じゃ り	Gravel	読経	どきよ う	Sutra chanting	友達	ともだち	Friend

子供	こども	Friend	名残	なごり	Vestige	上手	じょうず	Good at
眼鏡	めがね	Glasses	行方	ゆくえ	Whereabouts	蚊帳	かや	Mosquito net
達磨	だるま	Daruma	八百屋	やおや	Greengrocer	伝馬船	てんません	Sculling boat

Battle with Loanwords

In their heyday, loanwords brought another problem. For the examples we've seen thus far, there weren't Japanese equivalents. But, there have also been borrowings even though Japanese equivalents already existed. So, what better thing to do than attribute the loanword to the existing spellings! This is exactly what happened and the way one knew for sure how to read them was with ルビ. Though the practice is no longer near as common, you'll no doubt find some examples.

北極光	ほっきょくこう	オーロラ	Aurora	郷愁	きょうしゅう	ノスタルジア	Nostalgia
珈琲店	こーひーてん	カフェ	Cafe	火酒	かしゅ	ウォッカ・ヴォッカ	Vodka
接吻	せつぷん	キス	Kiss	情調	じょうちゅう	ムード	Mood
短艇	たんてい	ボート	Boat	並木道	なみきみち	アベニュー	Avenue
裁縫機械	さいほうきかい	ミシン	Sewing machine	唧筒	そくとう	ポンプ	Pump

漢語 → 和語

Although not considered 熟字訓 by some, there is a tendency in writing to impose the native word on the Sino-Japanese word and indicate the intended reading with ルビ.

漢語	和語	漢語	和語
暫時	しばらく	失敗	しくじる
墳墓	墓	生活	暮らし

あて字

あて字 is the use of 漢字 for phonetic purposes only. The meanings of the characters are, thus, ignored. Characters used in this fashion are called 借字. 音読み being borrowed for this are called 音借, and 訓読み being borrowed for this are called 訓借.

There are also words spelled with a mixture of 音借 and 訓借. There is also a strong tendency to choose characters that help with meaning. These may resemble 熟字訓, but 熟字訓 clearly show no relation between the characters and their phonetic values.

Words like this can easily be written in かな. They may also have alternative non-あて字 spellings. Such spellings are common for loanwords, but as you can imagine, there are also plenty of native word examples. There are also 漢語 examples.

Spelling Note: あて字 can also be spelled as 当(て)字 and 宛字.

Native Word Examples

寿司	すし	Sushi	合羽	かつぱ	Raincoat
----	----	-------	----	-----	----------

野良	のら	Wild	波止場	はとば	Pier
出鱈目	でたらめ	Random	滅茶苦茶	めちゃくちゃ	Wreck; absurd
芽出度い・目出度い	めでたい	Auspicious	浦山敷	うらやましく	Enviously
沢山	たくさん	A lot	滅多	めった	Seldom
珍紛漢紛・珍糞漢糞・陳奮翰奮	ちんぷんかんぷん	Non-sense	兎に角	とにかく	Anyway

Loan Word Examples

瓦斯	ガス	Gas	珈琲	コーヒー	Coffee	曹達	ソーダ	Soda
護謨	ゴム	Rubber	羅紗	ラシヤ	Woolen cloth	沙翁	シェークスピア	Shakespeare
倶楽部	クラブ	Club	型録	カタログ	Catalog	場穴	バケツ	Basket
浪漫	ロ（ウ）マン	Romance	咖[喱・哩]	カレー	Curry	亜細亜	アジア	Asia
欧羅巴	ヨーロッパ	Europe	亜米利加	アメリカ	America	加奈陀	カナダ	Canada

Spelling Note: 珈琲 may still be frequently seen on coffee cans, store signs, etc.

Although あて字, because certain loans have been attributed to particular single characters, they are felt to be 訓読み.

頁	ページ	Page	米	メートル	Meter	瓦	グラム	Gram	片	ペン	Pence	釦	ボタン	Button
---	-----	------	---	------	-------	---	-----	------	---	----	-------	---	-----	--------

Country Names

All country names have been given あて字. Some are the same as used in Chinese, and if you watched the 2008 Beijing Olympics, you no doubt saw all of the country names in 漢字. However, there are still many differences as the sound systems of Mandarin and Japanese are quite different.

Some Chinese spellings had great influence. For instance, the spelling for England, 英吉利, begins with 英. So, although the pronunciation of 英吉利 is イギリス, 英 is frequently used in words regarding England. 英語 and 英国 are perfect examples. The first (or second if the first is taken) character of the spellings for the countries are used as abbreviations for them.

アメリカ → 米 ベイ ロシア → 露 □ オーストラリア → 豪・濠 ゴウ
亜米利加 → 米 ベイ 露西亞 → 露 □ 濠 太 刺 利 → 豪・濠 ゴウ

As you would expect, there are often options. There are even あて字 spellings for important international cities such as Paris (巴里). These spellings were more common in the heyday of writing loans in 漢字 at the beginning of the 20th century. But, some remain important. Because these spellings in particular are featured in the upper levels of the 漢検, for those that truly love 漢字, by all means try to learn them all. For the casual, normal Japanese learner, it may help to learn the spellings of some of the most important countries and cities. Wikipedia has a lovely chart with a comparison between the Japanese and Chinese spellings. <http://ja.wikipedia.org/wiki/%E5%9B%BD%E5%90%8D%E3%81%AE%E6%BC%A2%E5%AD%97%E8%A1%A8%E8%A8%98%E4%B8%80%E8%A6%A7>

第 285 課: 旧字体 & 新字体

In 1945 a lot of the most commonly used complex characters were simplified. The now defunct characters are called 旧字体. Ironically, the term has two simplified characters in it. So, the term should be written as 舊字體 to follow old orthography. 新字体, of course, are the resultant simplified forms.

旧字体 and 新字体

Simplification took a more passive role in Japan as only a handful of methods were used to simplify a handful of 漢字. In the following decade after reform, typesets were still not entirely equipped to comply with simplification. So, it is very easy to find publications from the 1950s with 旧字体. 旧字体, because of their lasting cultural impression, similar to 変体仮名, were often referred to as 正字(体), meaning "correct characters". Many felt that 新字体 deserved to keep their 略字 status. In modern usage, 旧字体 can still be seen in personal and geographical names. It is still important to learn 旧字体 because they have been used throughout Japanese literary history.

Making 新字体 a Reality

The major methods used to create 新字体 forms are:

- Unifying variants
- Phonetic replacement
- Part removal
- Cursive script
- Radical Change

Unifying Variants

At times there were variants of a character. For example, 島 could be seen as 嶋, 島 and 島 before reform. The radical in 近 has one dot but originally had two. For characters that are not in the 常用漢字 List, it is still common to see two dots. Other differences between the written and printed

form were resolved in favor of the written form in many other characters such as the 八 change to ヨ in Kanji such as 判.

Phonetic Replacement

A lot of characters classified under the 六書 as 形成文字（けいせいもじ） had their phonetic replaced with another character with the same phonetic without regards to the possible change in meaning in some cases. This allowed many characters to become much simpler. The process continues on in colloquial 略字 handwriting with カタカナ.

旧字体	新字体	ON Reading Used for Simplification
圍	囲	イ
廳	庁	チョウ
膽	胆	タン

Part Removal

Characters often got parts taken out during simplification. Duplicate parts were either reduced completely or considerably simplified to cut down stroke count. Some 旧字体 that were simplified this way became the same as an already existing character. The instances that this is so is far from many, but some like 藝 to 芸 caused problems. The latter character was a character with an 音読み of ウン and is in the name of Japan's first public library, 芸亭（うんてい）.

旧字体	新字体
蟲	虫
壘	塁
縣	県

Cursive Script

漢字 have massive appearance change and stroke reduction when written in cursive/grass script. The resultant script, at times, gave shape to a more solidified and simple 略字 that were made proper in reform.

旧字体	新字体	旧字体	新字体
圖	囙	覺	覺
畫	昼	樂	樂
學	学	青	青

Radical Change

Radical change happened primarily from the use of cursive script. With such a simple change like this, many characters received a reduction in stroke number of as much as 2 or 3 strokes. An example of such radical change would be the change of 神 to 神 where the radical on the left changed to fit its cursive form.

新字体 Extension

Simplification was only applied to standardized 漢字, but it is common to see patterns used in 新字体 affect non-常用漢字 i. 略字 are simplifications that are considered improper but are not uncommon.

旧字体	新字体	旧字体	新字体
潑	澆	曾	曾
櫟	榉	鬱	鬱
鷗	鷗	頰	頰

List of 旧字体

旧字体	新字体	旧字体	新字体
萬	万	與	与
兩	両	竝	並
乘	乗	亂	乱
豫	予	爭	争

亞	亜	佛	仏
假	仮	會	会
傳	伝	伴	伴
體	体	餘	余
併	併	價	価
侮	侮	偽	偽
儉	儉	僧	僧
免	免	兒	児
黨	党	具	具
內	内	圓	円
冊	冊	寫	写
Slashes look like ン	冬	處	処
兇	凶	判	判
Strokes are slashes in 月	前	劍	剣
劑	剂	剩	剩
勵	励	勞	労
效	効	敕	勅
勉	勉	勝	勝
勤	勤	勸	勧
勳	勲	包	包
區	区	醫	医
半	半	卑	卑
單	単	卽	即
釐	厘	嚴	厳
參	参	又	又
雙	双	收	収
敘	叙	臺	台

號	号	吳	吳
土 changed from stake with two lines	周	味、𩚑	和
八 changed to 丿	咲	啓	啓
喝	喝	營	營
嘆	嘆	囑	囑
器、𣪠	器	團	团
圍	囿	圖	囡
國	国	圈	圈
壓	压	坪	坪
墮	墮	塤	塤
壘	壘	塚	塚
鹽、鹽	塩	增	增
墨	墨	壞	壞
壤	壤	壯	壮
聲	声	壹	𡿨
賣	壳	變	变
奧	奥	獎	獎
姬	姬	娛	娛
孃	嬢	學	学
寶	宝	實	実
寒	寒	寬	寬
寢	寢	對	对
壽	寿	專	專
將	将	尊	尊
尙	尚	盡	尽

屈	屈	屬	属
層	層	獄	岳
峽	峽	峯	峰
鳶、嶋	島	Strokes are slashes in 月	崩
巢	巢	卷	卷
帶	帶	歸	帰
幣	幣	平	平
廳	庁	廣	広
廢	廃	廉	廉
廊	廊	弊	弊
辨、瓣、辯	弁	貳	弍
弱	弱	强	強
彈	弾	當	当
徑	径	從	從
德	徳	徵	徴
應	応	戀	恋
恆	恒	惠	恵
悔	悔	惱	悩
惡	悪	情	情
慘	惨	慈	慈
愼	愼	慨	慨
憎	憎	懷	懷
懲	懲	戰	戦
戲	戯	戾	戾
拂	払	拔	抜
擇	択	擔	担
拐	拐	拜	拝

據	拋	擴	抃
學	拳	挾	挾
插	挿	搜	搜
揭	掲	搖	揺
攜、携	携	撮	撮
擊	撃	敏	敏
教	教	數	数
敷	敷	齊	齐
齋	斎	斷	断
既	既	舊	旧
暈	星	晝	昼
晚	晚	晴	晴
曉	曉	暑	暑
曆	曆	朗	朗
朕	朕	Strokes are slashes in 月	朝
條	条	來	来
樞	枢	榮	荣
櫻	桜	棧	栈
梅	梅	Strokes are slashes in 月	棚
檢	検	樓	楼
樂	楽	概	概
樣	様	權	権
橫	横	欄	欄
缺	欠	歐	欧
土 changed to 木	款	歡	歓
步	歩	齒	歯
歷	歴	殘	残

毆	殴	殺	殺
殼	殼	每	每
氣	气	冰	氷
沒	没	澤	沢
淨	净	淺	浅
濱	浜	海	海
淚	涙	清	清
渴	渴	濟	済
涉	涉	澁	渋
溪	溪	氵 + 𠂔 + 曷	渦
溫	温	港	港
灣	湾	濕	湿
滿	満	玄 were separate	滋
瀧	滝	滯	滞
漆	漆	漢	漢
潔	潔	潛	潜
瀨	瀬	燈	灯
灰	灰	爐	炉
點	点	爲	為
燒	焼	煮	煮
犧	犠	狀	状
獨	独	狹	狭
獵	猟	獻	献
獸	獣	瓶	瓶
畫	画	畧	界
畔	畔	畱、𡵓	留
疊	畳	疏	疎

癡	痴	癡	癒
發	発	益	益
盜	盗	讐	監
縣	県	眞	真
研	研	碎	碎
碑	碑	禮	礼
玄 were separate	磁	社	社
祈	祈	祉	祉
祖	祖	祝	祝
神	神	祥	祥
禪	禅	禍	禍
福	福	祕	秘
稱	称	稻	稻
穀	穀	穗	穗
穩	穩	突	突
竊	窃	窗、囟、窓、牕、憲	窓
窮	窮	龍	竜
競	競	節	節
粹	粹	肅	肅
精	精	絲	糸
納	納	終	終
經	経	繪	絵
絕	絶	繼	継
續	続	繇	綿
總	総	綠	緑

緒	緒	練	練
緣	緣	繩	繩
縱	縱	繁	繁
織	織	罐	缶
署	署	翻	翻
者	者	First slash has no line above it	耕
耗	耗	聖	聖
聽	聽	膽	胆
脫	脱	腦	脑
腕	挽	臟	臟
臭	臭	舍	舍
鋪	鋪	藝	芸
莖	莖	莊	莊
著	著	藏	蔵
薰	薰	藥	薬
虛	虚	虜	虜
虞	虞	蟲	虫
蠶	蚕	螢	蛍
蠻	蛮	眾	衆
衛	衛	裝	装
裡	裏	褐	褐
褒	褒	霸	霸
視	視	覺	覚
覽	覧	觀	観
觸	触	譯	訳
證	証	評	評

譽	譽	誤	誤
說	說	讀	讀
請	請	諸	諸
謁	謁	謠	謠
謹	謹	讓	讓
豐	豐	賓	賓
贊	贊	贈	贈
踐	踐	轉	轉
輕	輕	辭	辭
邊	邊	送	送
遞	遞	逸	逸
遲	遲	郎	郎
鄉	鄉	都	都
醉	醉	釀	釀
釋	釈	鐵	鉄
鑛	鉱	錢	銭
鑄	铸	鍊	錬
錄	録	鎮	鎮
厖、厔	長	關	関
鬪	闘	陷	陥
險	険	隆	隆
隨	随	隱	隠
隸	隷	雜	雑
難	難	雪	雪
靈	靈	靜	静
響	響	頻	頻

賴	賴	顏	顏
顯	顯	類	類
飲	飲	馱	馱
驛	馱	驅	驅
騷	騷	驗	驗
髓	髓	高	高
髮	髮	鷄	鷄
麥	麦	黃	黃
黑	黑	默	默
鼻	鼻	齡	齡
龜	龜	剥	剥
𩚑	嗅	嘲	嘲
填	填	彌	弥
抄	抄	曾	曾
溺	溺	煎	煎
瘦	瘦	箸	箸
艷	艷	葛	葛
蔽	蔽	賭	賭
遡	遡	頰	頰
餅	餅	麵	麵

Variant Notes: Radical changes that affected all characters such as 餅 to 餅 in respect to the radical on the left, two dots to one for characters such as 近 have been omitted from the chart. When a character is not supported by UNICODE, a description is given instead.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. When were 旧字体 forms of characters replaced by 新字体?
2. What were the methods used to simplify characters.
3. What problem resulted from some simplified characters?
4. Write out a minimum of 20 旧字体 and then show their 新字体 form next to them.
5. What is another name for 旧字体? What does the name imply?

第 286 字: 略字 & 幽霊字

略字 are unofficial variants of 漢字. 幽霊字 are characters that were supposedly accidentally created in the JIS character sets.

略字

There are typically two meanings of 略字.

1. A generally used character shortened in handwriting.
2. Characters not included in the 常用漢字 list but are simplified with patterns used during script reform.

A very similar term is 俗字. They have circulated quite well but are not deemed proper. These characters may be called 異体字 in 漢字 dictionaries.

EXAMPLES OF 略字

州	卅	The 3 丶 are changed to 一.
属	尸+虫	The 禹 is replaced with 虫.
個	亻	固 is replaced with 口.
薄		專 is replaced with 云. Similar characters are changed likewise.
喜	七 X3	Replaced with three 七.
品	品	Characters with 品 are abbreviated likewise.
機	木+キ	The character may also be abbreviated with the top right part changed to ヰ.
劇	虎+リ	豕 is taken out.
門	冂	This radical change may be applied to other characters.
藤	艸冠+ト	The grass radical + the Katakana ト.
潟	氵+写	Taken from the simplification of 写.
厖	尸+ソ	曾 is replaced with the Katakana ソ.
魔	广+マ	Also the simplification of 摩.
点	卓	灬 is replaced with 大. Also happens to 魚.

鬪	鬥+斗	Two simplifications at once.
第	才	A simplification originating from cursive script.
都		者 is changed to 土+日.
寸		The 丶 is moved to the top right corner.
議	言+ギ	義 replaced with the Katakana ギ.
魚	魚	𩺰 replaced with 一. This can happen with any character.
選		己己 replaced with ツ.
堅		臣 is often replaced with リ.
權	权	Following the simplification made in China.
曜	旺	Pattern is not normally continued in similar characters.
職	𠂔・耳+ム	Patterns are not normally continued in similar characters.
衛		The right half can be replaced with the Katakana ェ.
止	と	This radical may be replaced with the Hiragana と.
經	圣	Also a common practice in replacing 輕.
神		申 replaced with ヤ with 丶 in the lower right.
風		Inner radical may be replaced with two 丶.

Resource Note: There are many more 略字 in existence exclusively used in Japan. However, there will be extreme personal differences, and the mentioning of them here should not be treated as a green light to use them whenever. They should only be used in personal handwriting. For those who wish to see more, visit the following page: <http://hac.cside.com/bunsho/1shou/39setu.html>

幽霊字

幽霊字 are characters found in JIS with uncertain origin, meaning, readings, or any number of these issues. The number of 幽霊字 is uncertain, and because JIS has been expanded since the initial discovery, more are bound to be discovered. It has also turned out that many 幽霊字 are actually 略字. This could give a slight reason to why they may have been added. Below is a chart with characters deemed to be 幽霊字.

埤	ホウ	Break; collapse	
---	----	-----------------	--

壱	テン	Shop	
弼	カ、セイ	No meaning	
罪	ヒ	Be separated	
辻	ねた	Marsh	
裕	ヨウ	No meaning	
粳	ジ、メン、うるち	Gluten-free grain	
螳	ジョウ、もみ	Mantis	
鉗	キョウ、リョウ	Clamp	
駟	シュン、ジュン	Horse's butt	
垆	タイ、ダイ、ぬた	Wetlands	国字
岙	シ、あなど（る）、おろか、みだる、みにく（い）	Ugly; contempt	From a 外字 without —
恣	キュウ、ク	Be contrary; nice	
榜	ケン、まげもの	Wickerwork	A mistake of 榜
煩	おおづつ	Cannon	国字
粃	コ、ロ、ぬか	Rice-bran	
稼	すくも	Chaff	国字
祢	チ、デイ、ネ	Ancestral Shrine	
閏	ギョク、ケイ、ジュン、うるう	Intercalation	A mistake of 閏
鴟	とび	Kite (bird)	
堵	チヨ	Hesitate	A mistake of 蹢
岵	はけ、やま	Mountain	
翮	ウ、とち	Japanese horse chest-nut	
楯	まさ	Straight grain	
磧	いしずえ	Cornerstone	
稭	すくも	Chaff	国字
膾	セツ、そり、ゆき、たら	Snow	国字
軀	たか、やがて	After all	A mistake of 軀
鞞	ケツ、とも	Archer's arm protector	A mistake of 鞞

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Are 略字 used in mainstream text?
2. When are 略字 used?
3. Illustrate how to make some 略字.
4. What are 幽靈字?
5. What are possible reasons why a 幽靈字 is thought to be such?

第 287 課: Phonology I: Basic Information

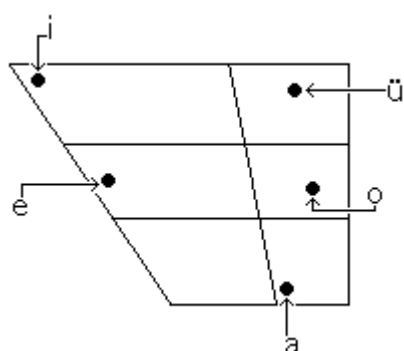
In this first introductory lesson to the study of Japanese phonology, we will go over the vowels in great detail. Though dialectical and historical information create a more correct and bigger picture for Japanese as a whole, we will refrain from focusing on these details at this time and focus primarily on Standard Japanese phonology.

Some new terminology will be necessary to properly study phonology. Another thing that must be understood is that the use of **IPA**--International Phonetic Alphabet--symbols will be necessary in transcribing Japanese at this point. Symbols will be explained, but there will be no wavering in their implementation.

Curriculum Note: This lesson is under the process of being remodeled to only discuss vowels. So, please forgive me for its current status as a stub article.

Vowels

The Japanese vowel space is significantly less complex than any variety of English. If we were to map the Japanese vowel space, it would look like the chart to the left. Now, this chart uses one ad hoc character that is not the typical IPA symbol for it so that you at least know at this point that the Japanese u is still



not the English u.

The Japanese /a/ is rather low like in English, but its pronunciation is a central vowel (though the phonology treats it as a back vowel). The Japanese /i/ is very similar to English. However, there is no lip spreading like there is for English speakers, and because Japanese

phonology has no tense and lax distinction for high vowels like English does (beat vs bit), the actual value of a Japanese /i/ could easily sometimes sound like an "ih" to English speakers.

What do we mean by low and high and front and back? The diagram to the left is a rough representation of the vowel space inside your mouth and the position of your tongue. High vowels are made with your tongue high and the opposite is true for low vowels, and in between are mid vowels. Your tongue is raised to the back for back vowels and in the front for front vowels and in the center for central vowels.

The high-back vowel in Japanese is unrounded and if there is any lip protrusion it is actually lip compression, very similar to the Japanese /w/. [ɯ^β] is the correct IPA notation for this sound. For speakers outside of East Japan, this vowel is actually closer to [u]. Meaning, there is lip rounding and it is then almost identical to the English vowel. However, this is not the case for Standard Japanese spoken in Tokyo and surrounding areas.

Aside from the positions being slightly different, the Japanese /e/ and /o/ are not that much different. Though, one important detail to not overlook is that these vowels are never diphthongized in Japanese. Meaning, when you pronounce them, the vowel quality is maintained and does not shift to another vowel in the vowel space. This is obligatory for many vowels in English but it is forbidden for all vowels in Japanese. This is something that English speakers in particular have a problem with understanding and should be something that you take especial attention to.

Time and Quality

Japanese vowels are usually always pronounced as monophthongs because they essentially remain unchanged. The word "eye" was used as an example to find an equivalent to あ. However, the word "eye" is pronounced as a diphthong and the Japanese vowel is only equivalent to that sound's onset. Diphthongization

does exist to an extent in Japanese. For example, the combination あい is often not so moraic and resembles a diphthong depending on the speaker. To test whether this is true or not, you would have to examine individual speaker variation.

Long vowels are treated as two separate morae. Pitch often rises or falls in long vowels. Vowel sequences are also not spoken as one unit for the same reason. Morae are ideally supposed to be spoken with the **same amount of time**. However, つ, a moraic obstruent, disrupts this and causes a pause and intensification of the following phoneme. Things like the fact it's humanly impossible to exactly say each sound unit with the same time and other things like moraic obstruents, vowel length, and diphthongization make this ideal slightly unrealistic.

Note: Diphthongs exist in certain varieties of Japanese which will not be discussed in this lesson.

Elongation & Nasalization

Vowel length differences create contrast in Japanese. A long vowel is a vowel two morae long. The vowel sequence ei often becomes [e:] in Standard Japanese, and many words spelled with ou are pronounced as [o:] instead. You can find long vowels in words of all sorts of origins.

酢 (Vinegar) VS 吸う (To inhale)	ビル (Building) VS ビール (Beer)	里 (Village) VS 砂糖 (Sugar)
この (This) VS 効能 (Efficacy)	外 (Outside) VS 相当 (Befitting)	木 (Tree) VS 紀伊 (Kii)
炉 (Hearth) VS 牢 (Jail)	血 (Blood) VS 地位 (Position)	二 (Two) VS 二位 (2nd place)

Nasalization

Technically, vowels are natural nasalized to some extent in Japanese before nasal sounds.

ẽɴ = Yen

sẽɴ = Line

tãɴ = Phlegm

jã.ma = Mountain

kãɴ = Can

Table of Contents

Devoicing

High vowels are frequently devoiced in East Japanese dialects including Standard Japanese, though it is a feature almost non-existent elsewhere in Japan. Its restrictions are not that difficult to figure out, but you will need to put some thought into this to understand.

The existence of devoicing of high vowels means that there are two allophones of /i/ and /ʊ^ɸ/. They are represented in IPA as [i, ʊ^ɸ] and [i̥ ʊ̥^ɸ] respectively. The dot you see simply stands for being unvoiced.

kɪ̥ta = North

ki-da = Is a tree

tɕi̥ka.i = Close

ʊmi = Sea

ni.ho.ŋ.go = Japanese language

tsʷ.jʷ = Rainy season

ki.se.tsʷ = Season

ga.sʷ = Gas

haɕi = Bridge

haɕi = Chopsticks

The rule is this.

Low pitch V[+high] → V₀ / C[-voice]____ {C[-voice]}

Getting to the chase, devoicing happens between two unvoiced consonants importantly not in a stressed syllable.

第 288 課: Phonology II: Pitch (高低アクセント)

Accent, a word that is used to describe how groups of people sound, but what is it about an accent that makes communication the way it is? More accurately, an accent is the combination of phonetic properties attributed to each word that a society/group of people goes by. Languages like English have a 強弱アクセント (stress accent).

Languages like Japanese have a 高低アクセント (pitch accent). Regardless of what accent system is employed, such a system aids listeners in determining word boundaries and even the emotional status of the speaker. And, of course, it is very important in distinguishing homophones.

For instance, take for example the funny well known example of how pitch (depth of a sound) helps distinguish word boundaries in Tokyo Dialect. Bolded morae have high pitch.

1. ニ**ワ**ニ**ワ**・ニ**ワ**・ニ**ワ**トリ**ガイ**ル。(庭には2羽鶏がいる。)

L H H L H L L H H H H H H

As pitch contours differ quite systematically based on morae count in Tokyo Dialect, pitch contours aid effectively in determining word boundary. However, you must understand that there are many different accent systems in Japan, a few of which are not even 高低アクセント.

It must also be noted that it is humanly impossible to just go from low to high instantly. These are gradual, natural curvatures. It is the change in pitch over time that people interpret. Although there are many pitch notations in use, for simplicity, bold morae stand for high pitch syllables and those not bold have low pitches. This is, again, all relative to the environment.

Standard Japanese Pitch Accent System



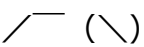
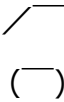
The 4 Pitch Contours

Japanese can't be considered a "tonal language" because pitch accent isn't fundamental to interpretation. Pitch distinctions are no doubt tonal in nature. Unlike Chinese, however, pitch distinctions can't be viewed lexical in the same sense. Rather, Japanese pitch contours rely on rules that take phrasing into account. Distinguishing between tone and pitch accent is something that some people who study tone distinctions think is artificial.

However, this doesn't account for instances when additional items must be attached for any 'tone' difference to be expressed. If this were not the case, Japanese may have decided to preserve tones in words from Chinese, but there is no sign in the thousands of Sino-Japanese words that Japanese speakers even cared or could even distinguish tone distinctions in those words.

Although it helps, pitch accent varies so much across Japan that context is simply the best means of understanding (ambiguous) utterances.

Despite having said this, it is important to know that in the **Standard** Japanese pitch accent system, there are four basic patterns. These rules imply that other elements such as *particles* are added to word segments.

頭高型	The pitch starts high , drops suddenly, then steadily goes down.	
中高型	The pitch rises, reaches a maximum, then drops suddenly.	
尾高型	The pitch rises then drops when it reaches an attached element.	
平板型	The pitch rises from start to end .	

Examples

Rule 1	Rule 2	Rule 3	Rule 4
háɛì (chopsticks)	háɛí (bridge)		haɛi (edge)
ímà (now)	ì má (living room)		
kákì (oyster)	kàkí (fence)		kaki (persimmon)
níhòN' (two long items)	nìhóN' (Japan)		
ámè (rain)			ame (candy)
ásà (morning)	àsá (hemp)		
káɾàsù (crow)	támágò (egg)	otoko (man)	otona (adult)

Curriculum Note: IPA is used in this chart.

東京弁のアクセント型一覧

Kind / Syllable Count			2 Morae	3 Morae	4 Morae	5 Morae
平板式	平板型 0		LH(H) 咲く, 鼻, 腰	LHH(H) 兎, 桜, 赤 い	LHHH(H) 洗濯, 鶏	LHHHH(H) アルコール
	尾高型		LH(L) 犬, 川, 花, 山	LHH(L) 男, 女, 二 人	LHHH(L) 妹, 弟, 極楽	LHHHH(L) お正月
起 伏	中	②		LHL(L) 心, 卵, 絵 本	LHLL(L) 歩いた	LHLLL(L) 不完全
		③			LHHL(L) 湖, 花嫁	LHHLL(L) ありました
	高 型	④				LHHHL(L) 面白い, 暖 まる

	頭高型①	HL(L)	HLL(L)	HLLL(L)	HLLLL(L)
式		雨, 猿, 秋, 窓	命, クラス	大臣, 大き な	アクセント

Terminology Notes:

1. 起伏 = Highs and lows
2. 平板 = Flat

Morae count doesn't change the basic patterns identified at the beginning. However, it is important to understand how these patterns are applied to words of different lengths. Take for instance the difference between 花 and 鼻. Without anything affixed to them, they are completely homophonous. However, when in phrases, they are distinguishable as being LH(L) and LH(H).

Pitch contours in phrases is not necessarily just taking the individual pitch contours of words and putting them together. For instance, the pitch of 咲く is LH(H) and the pitch of 桃 is LH(H). When you say 桃が咲く, the pitch is LHHHH(H) instead of LHHLH(H).

One aspect of 東京弁 is that although particles such as が, は, に, と, や, へ, も, を, から, and しか don't affect the pitch of nouns, の causes a similar assimilation of pitch. For instance, say you have 花 and 桃. The first is 尾高型 and the second is 平板型. However, when used with the particle の, their pitch contours become the same. The particle だけ optionally does the same as の.

3. ハナノヤマ↓ モモノヤマ↓
花の山 桃の山

Notation Note: The down arrow shows a drop in pitch on the following affixed item.

What does this mean for 鼻の山 or 腿の山? Well, that is why puns exist to manipulate rules that cause such things to be possible.

What about particles more than one morae? Except for から, しか, and だけ, the pitch of such particles, which include さえ, すら, だに, でも, のみ, まで, かな, とも, など, なり, のに, ので, and combinations, is determined by the pitch of the noun. If the noun is 平板型, the first morae of the particle is accented. If the noun is accented, then there is no pitch change in the particle.

4. うみでも うりものさえ

Despite there being so much apparently fluidity to pitch in Japanese, there is still innate pitch rules built into the language. Otherwise, how would continuously coined words and compounds be naturally assigned pitch? Of course, this "innate pitch" changes from generation to generation, and it's not completely constant across all Japanese speakers. So, those that say pitch allocation is unpredictable are not right. Pitch is indeed fluid, but it's not quite like a gas.

Systematic Rules for the Patterns

There are rules, after all, to what kinds of words to expect in these patterns. Everything is subject to speaker variation, but the following guidelines will definitely help you sound a lot more like a native speaker.

Rule 1	All こそあど expressions are 平板型.	ここ, それ, あの, こう, ああ
Rule 2	All nouns from 平板型 verbs are also 平板型.	あそび, たたみ, はじめ, たたかい
Rule 3	3 morae names from verbs → 平板型	イサム, シゲル,

Rule 4	When the first part is 3(+) morae or 2(+) 漢字, compounds with the following at the end are 平板型: 色, 組, 型, 玉, 寺 (てら) , 村, 山, 科, 家, 課, 語, 座, 派, 教, 産, 制, 線, 党, 病	血液型, 耳鼻科, 人事課, キリスト教, 心臓病, 政治家
Rule 5	Female names that end in 江, 枝, 恵, 代, 世	良枝, 正世
Rule 6	Male names 3 morae (+) ending in 夫, 男, 雄, 助, 介, 輔, 吉, 作	正夫, 和男, 寿輔 (じゅすけ)
Rule 7	4 morae onomatopoeic expressions with だ, に, or な affixed	ざらざらだ, つるつるに, べたべたな
Rule 8	Nouns from compound verb expressions → 平板型	試合, 立ち入り, 買い戻し, 取り扱い
Rule 9	Interrogative are 頭高型.	だれ, なぜ, いつ
Rule 10	2 morae adjectives from the stems of adjectives → 頭高型	あお, しろ, くろ, あか, ふる
Rule 11	2 morae names → 頭高型	真理, 綾, 哲 (てつ)
Rule 12	3 morae names from adjectives → 頭高型	敦 (あつし) , 清志, 毅 (つよし)
Rule 13	3 morae female names ending in 子 → 頭高型	喜世子, 華子, 千代子

Rule 14	3 morae male names ending in 樹, 吾, 二, 次, 治, 太, 一, 市, 平, 兵衛, 郎 → 頭高型	正樹, 信吾, 真二, 太郎, 四郎,
Rule 15	4 morae male names ending in 助, 輔, 介 → 頭高型 when the second morae is special, having a long vowel, ん, etc.	庄助, 勘助, 泰輔
Rule 16	Onomatopoeia independent or with と → 頭高型	はらはら (と) , でれでれ (と) , とんとん (と) , つるつる (と)
Rule 17	Compound words with the first half at least 3 morae or more than 2 漢字 → 中高型 ending with 子, 歌, 川, 豆, 虫, 器, 区, 市, 府, 部, 員, 駅, 園, 会, 海, 学, 群, 県, 省, 料, 力, 湾	受話器, 千代田区, 子守唄, 世田谷区, 動物園(どうぶつえん)
Rule 18	4 morae (+) male names ending in 彦, 介, 輔, 助 → 中高型	朝彦, 靖彦, 福助, 孝介
Rule 19	3 morae female names ending in 子 with the first morae devoiced → 中高型	菊子, 比沙子, 富貴子, 芙紗子
Rule 20	When verbs with 起伏式 pitch are sent to nouns, the pitch goes to 尾高型. However, if 4 morae (+), the word could also be 平板型 or 中高型.	降る → 降り↓ 帰る (かえる) → 帰り (かえり↓) 集まる (あつまる) → あつまり↓ → あつまり

		→ あつ
	まり	

Notes: Lists are not exhaustive. The best way to look up the pitch of a word is still by looking it up in a pitch accent dictionary. NHK 編『日本語発音アクセント辞典』 is a great choice.

Another thing to consider is 呼称. 呼称 don't fit within the bounds of these 20 rules because their pitch is determined by the pitch of the noun phrase itself, although independently they may have their own pitch accent assigned. For instance, the very important endings ~さん, ~ちゃん, and ~さま are just like most particles. The pitch does not change. If the name is 頭高型, it still is with them. With 君, there is typically no change, but if the name is 平板型, the resulting phrase may become 尾高型. Lastly, titles tend to be accented, but they don't have to be when the surname is accented.

Generational Change

Of course, when options exist, you are simply asking for speaker variation. Even in the 首都圏, there is wide variation, which will only continue to be the case for as long people migrate in and out of the area. As that won't probably ever start, new trends will no doubt have to be written down as the "new rules" perhaps thirty years from now. As a matter of fact, there are many common words in the past century that have had a generational shift in pitch.

言葉	老年層	若年層
赤蜻蛉	あかとんぼ	あかとんぼ
鬼が島	おにがしま	おにがしま
朝日	あさひ	あさひ
若葉	わかば	わかば

熊	クマ↓	クマ
神	かみ↓	かみ
寿司	すし↓	すし
姉	あね	あね
梅雨	つゆ	つゆ
鋤	くわ	くわ
僕	ぼく	ぼく
姪	めい	めい

Conjugation

As we have seen before, what you add to something significantly affects pitch. Are you using a 単純語? A 複合語? Are you using conjugations? What particle are you using? All of this plays a large role in Standard Japanese pitch accent. So far, we have yet to see how conjugations come into play. Again, as was the case with the previous 20 rules, morae count is crucial.

As for the variations of the copula, if the noun/形容動詞 is unaccented, then the resulting phrase is 尾高型. If the noun/形容動詞 is accented, there is no pitch change.

5. 赤です (あかです) 城です (しろです) 雲だ (くもだ) 空港ではありません (くうこうではありません)

Adjectives and verb pitch allocation is quite challenging to say the least. As the number of morae and what endings you are using are all important, information here will be based off of <http://accent.u-biq.org>, which illustrates not only

the pitch allocation of nouns, names, number phrases, etc., but it also demonstrates the pitch accent contours of verbs and adjectives of various morae counts in numerous forms.

拍数	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
2 拍動詞	LH	LH	HL	HL
3 拍動詞	LHH	LHH	LHL	LHL
4 拍動詞	LHHH	LHHH	LHHL	LHHL

Though types may have very similar pitch contours, the class of verb does cause different morae counts with certain conjugations. This accounts for seemingly minor differences. Also keep in mind that there are verbs/compound verbs longer than 4 morae. So, these charts can't account for everything. Given that Japanese is agglutinative (endings attach in chains onto inflectional items), there are numerous possibilities. This first table just accounts for the 辞書形.

Notice how pitch differs with the following forms. See any patterns depending on the ending? These patterns can be used with each other when dealing with long verbal phrases. Regardless of these charts, though, if you are really wanting to have better pitch accent, the best things to do just boil down to having a decent pitch accent dictionary and ear to mimic native speakers. In time, you'll see how this information comes out quite naturally. <http://accent.u-biq.org> is a great online source to learn more!

第 289 課: Phonology III: 連濁

Of all the phonological 'rules' to Japanese that gives learners and natives alike headaches the most, 連濁 is at the top of the list. The fact that it is not 100% known for what it is in Japanese academia may be way there are so many misinterpretations about what it is floating around online. However, what this lesson will try to do is address the phenomenon for what it is and try to outline potential restrictions on it, which is what trips everyone up.

It is believed that voicing came about in Japanese by a reduction of the particle の to n in between things and causing voiced to the next consonant after it.

Voicing in Compounding

When you put two nouns together to create a new noun phrase in Japanese, the first mora of the second element often gets voiced. For instance, if your two nouns are 赤 and 玉, the resulting word is あかだま, not あかたま. There is no fundamental change in meaning to 玉. How it's realized in the resultant phrase is slightly different.

It's extremely easy to find many examples of this voicing phenomenon (有声音化). For instance, consider the following.

赤紙	あかがみ	Red paper; draft paper; callup notice	白酒	しろざけ	Sweet white sake
小皿	こざら	Small plate	板金	いたがね	Sheet metal
生え際	はえぎわ	(Receding) hairline	堀端	ほりばた	Side of a moat
青白 い	あおしろ い	Pale; bluish-white	笑顔	えがお	Smiling face

白髪	しらが	White/grey hair	和毛	にこげ	Downy hair
----	-----	-----------------	----	-----	------------

We see that voicing can occur even when you prefix something to a noun like in 小皿, but it can also show up when the second element is an adjective like in 青白い. 笑顔 shows that the first element may even be truncated (えみ → え), but this doesn't stop the voicing of 顔. However, it's important to know that these things aren't being pointed out for the heck of it. These are merely observations, and you need to understand that little details like this are important to fully understanding a phonological rule as complex as 連濁 is.

For instance, if we look back at 玉 from earlier, we see that it doesn't always become だま in compounds.

替 (え) 玉	かえだ ま	Scapegoat	焼 (き) 玉	やきだま	Hot-bulb
白玉	しらた ま	White gem	金玉	きんたま	Balls (male)
勾玉	まがた ま	Comma-shaped bead	水玉	みずたま	Polkadot
数数玉	ずずだ ま	Rosary bead	赤玉葱	あかたまね ぎ	Red onion

Although not all individual meanings are given for each example word, you should realize that compounding does generate different phrases. You shouldn't just expect 白玉 to mean white ball/bead. In speaking of this word, notice how it is しらたま instead of しろたま, しろだま (though this is an extant form), or しらだま. This, however, is yet another old and complicated phonological sound change.

Another thing that has to be rectified with is the last example: 赤玉葱. Just because you see 玉 inside a word doesn't mean you can read it as だま. In reality, the compound is 赤 + 玉葱. Because there is a voiced sound in 玉葱, the voicing of た is prevented. We'll learn more about this sort of restriction later in this lesson.

There used to be a long standing rule that if the last mora of the first element of the compound were voiced that the first mora of the second element couldn't be voiced. Yet, as this small list of examples shows, it doesn't take much time at all to find exceptions (数数玉).

No 連濁 _/ Initial Word with Voiced Sound

There has been a long standing rule in Japanese that if the final mora in the first element of a compound that 連濁 should not occur in the second element. However, as we've already seen above, there are plenty of examples to this such as 数数玉. Exceptions below are in bold.

萩原	はぎはら	Reedy field	風邪引き	かぜひき	Catching a cold
禍事	まがこと・ まがごと	Ill-omened word	風邪声	かぜごえ	Hoarse voice
風邪気味	かぜぎみ	Touch of a cold	風邪薬	かぜぐすり	Cold medicine
水子	みずご	Stillborn fetus	筆箱	ふでばこ	Pencil box
腕時計	うでどけい	Arm watch	袖口	そでぐち	Cuff; armhole
帯紐	おびひも	Obi strap	革紐	かわひも	Leather strap

Notes:

1. It's not surprising that there are some words that pivot between between regular and exceptions.
2. However, sometimes voicing is obligatory because the second element is used

as a suffix and the reading is fixed. This is the case for 風邪気味, with ～気味 being the suffix.

上清めば下濁る

The title of this section is an old Classical Japanese expression that states that if the top is not voiced that the bottom is. This clearly refers to 連濁, the initial consonant of a latter element of a compound word becoming voiced.

We've seen how this typically works for nouns and sometimes with adjectival phrases, but 連濁 is actually seen in particles that come from nouns such as だけ, ばかり, and くらい.

Before we really start looking at exceptions, we'll take some time to look at a lot of examples that do have 連濁 so that you might be able to see some commonalities.

大和魂	やまとだまし	The Japanese spirit	砂埃	すなぼこり	Cloud of dust/sand
手品	てじな	Trick (魔法など)	星空	ほしぞら	Starry sky
夜空	よぞら	Night sky	青空	あおぞら	Blue sky
舌鼓	したづつみ	Smacking one's lips	後れ毛	おくれげ	Straggling hair
他人事	たにんごと	Other person's affairs	花時	はなどき	Flowering season
唸り声	うなりごえ	Groan; growl	本棚	ほんだな	Bookshelf
手紙	てがみ	Letter	手助け	てだすけ	Help
寝床	ねどこ	Bed	棒縞	ぼうじま	Stripes
人々	ひとびと	People	手袋	てぶくろ	Glove(s)

時々	ときどき	Sometimes	面魂	つらだまし い	Defiant look
丸顔	まるがお	Round face	中底	なかそこ	Insole
道端	みちばた	Road side	居所	いどころ	Whereabouts
炭火	すみび	Charcoal fire	秋口	あきぐち	Start of fall
根絶やし	ねだやし	Extermination	引け時	ひけどき	Closing time
蝙蝠傘	こうもりが さ	Western um- brella	八つ手	やつで	Fatsia
逆剃り	さかぞり	Shaving upwards	出来心	できごころ	Sudden impulse
帰り支度	かえりじた く	Preparing to go home	湯豆腐	ゆどうふ	Boiled tofu
小太鼓	こだいこ	Small drum	湯飲み茶 碗	ゆのみちゃ わん	Teacup
目覚まし 時計	めざましど けい	Alarm clock	返す返す	かえすがえ す	Repeatedly
足早に	あしばやに	At a quick pace	代わる代 わる	かわるがわ る	Alternately
長引く	ながびく	To be prolonged	目立つ	めだつ	To stand out

Notes:

1. 連濁 usually involves native phrases, but as you can see, there are plenty of examples where 連濁 occurs when there is a Sino-Japanese element. However, if you look at all such examples, you see that there is still a native element somewhere.
2. There are times when 連濁 ends up producing an adverbial phrase, and these tend to be bizarre. 足早に is somewhat reasonable, but 返す返す and 代わる代わる involving doubling a verbal expression. These are set expressions, but it's interesting how 連濁 shows up in them.

3. As is the case with the last two examples, 連濁 can also happen in a verbal phrase with the first element being non-verbal.

Lyman's Law

This law, which is attributed to 本居宣長 in Japan and thus usually called 本居宣長の法則 by Japanese people, tries to explain why 連濁 doesn't occur when there is a voiced sound in the second element. The law states that

if the latter consonant of the second element is a voiced obstruent, 連濁 does not occur.

秋風	あきかぜ	Autumn breeze	神風	かみかぜ	Divine wind
鳥籠	とりかご	Bird cage	紙芝居	かみしばい	Picture story show
狐蕎麦	きつねそば	Kitsune soba	一人旅	ひとりたび	Travelling alone
山火事	やまかじ	Forest fire/wild-fire	着物姿	きものすがた	Dressed in a kimono

Exceptions and Issues

One exception is ふん^{じば}縛る (to tie fast). This is because ~ん is thought to make 連濁 easily occur. This is true as we've seen many words so far that seem to point to this fact like 他人事 and 本棚, and these words both have an initial Sino-Japanese element. However, words like 金玉 can't be explained with this law.

What's more, the linguist definition of what a voiced sound does not do much justice to figuring out how this voicing phenomenon works. If we ignore that vowels are voiced because they do not hinder or hasten 連濁, then we need

to think of what sorts of consonants are voiced. Yes, anything with a ` or ° is voiced, but so are n, m, r, y, w sounds and ん.

As for the initial element, voicing is traditionally supposed to hinder 連濁. But, if ~ん 90% of the time hastens it, this causes a big problem aside from the many exceptions mentioned earlier. If these sounds are all supposed to hinder 連濁 if present in the second element, then why are there words like the following?

風車	かざぐるま	Windmill	乱れ髪	みだれがみ	Unraveled hair
山川	やまがわ	Mountain-side river	雪玉	ゆきだま	Snowball
風下	かざしも	Leeward	縄梯子	なわばしご	Rope ladder

連濁 has occurred in speech whether people have been literate or not. So, it's hard to think that the lack of diacritics on phonetically voiced consonants has brought about words like 風車. However, it is possible for these sounds to be the only ones phonologically treated as voiced sounds in the language.

Words like 風下 have no 連濁 because the 'voiced sound' in the final position in the first element prevents it. なわばしご 縄梯子 screws things over, but if you treat 子 as a suffix, then you could say that なわ + はし → なわばし and that 子 is obligatorily read as ご in the same way ~気味 is read as ぎみ.

The suffix excuse is useful for words like 独り子 (ひとりご) meaning "only child". But, in names ~子 is read as こ: やすこ きくこ じゅんこ 保子 菊子 淳子. However, names should be treated separately altogether, which will be looked at again later in this lesson.

~ん → Obligatory 連濁

There are cases that ～ん makes 連濁 obligatory. This goes along well with what has been said thus far about ～ん making 連濁 easier to occur. The cases that seem to be obligatory are counter expressions. Consider the following.

三千	さんぜん	Three thousands	三階	さんがい	Three stories
三軒	さんげん	Three houses	何階	なんがい	What floor?

There are a few problems, though. Reading 三階 as さんがい is the most common way to read this word with differentiating from 三回 (3 times) being the main reason, but さんかい is still a possible reading that some speakers use, and the same goes for 何階 being read as なんかい. This voicing phenomenon has been weakening over time.

1. 昨年暮れ No 連濁

The end of last year

外来語 Hate 連濁

Loanwords typically have no 連濁. Whether both elements are from other languages or one element is from another language, it just doesn't happen. Now, there could be that one exception hidden in the great lexicon of Japanese--which would not be surprising given all the exceptions that do exist with how 連濁 should work--but we will not worry ourselves about it with this restriction.

和風ステーキ	Japanese-style steak	和風トイレ	Japanese-style toilet
カラーテレビ	Color TV	レンタカー	Rental car
肉カレー	Curry with meat	パトカー	Patrol car
真鯿	Brown sole	ダンプカー	Dump truck

Notes:

1. Although 真鯨, read as まがれい, is not a loanword, the point is that although a loanword like カレー may have basically the same pronunciation as a native word like 鯨, 連濁 still doesn't occur in the loanword.
2. This typically applies to 漢語 (Sino-Japanese words) as well, but there are plenty of exceptional words with 連濁. A good example is 胸算用 (rough estimation in one's head) read as むなざんよう.
3. If you were to look through every word used in Japanese, you would find exception to this. For instance, 銀ぎせる (silver cigar pipe) exists, though it would almost certainly be 銀きせる today.

Take for instance, also, the word 株式会社 (corporation), which is read as かぶしきがいしゃ. 株 may very well be a native word, but the rest is Sino-Japanese, yet 会社 is voiced. The easy excuse is to say that 会社 is treated as a suffix, so 連濁 not surprisingly occurs.

However, 式 is also a suffix and there are no examples of it ever becoming voiced as じき. It may be easier to say that another factor that enables 会社 to be voiced here is that it has more affinity as a 'Japanese word'. Thus, 'more Japanese' phonological changes can be expected. In light of the following additional, exceptional examples with the Sino-Japanese word meaning sugar, ^{さとう}砂糖, this is probably the better analysis: ^{かくざとう}角砂糖 (cube sugar), ^{くろざとう}黒砂糖 (brown sugar), ^{こおりざとう}氷砂糖 (rock candy), and ^{しろざとう}白砂糖 (white sugar).

3. In speaking of Sino-Japanese words, there are times when suffixes sometimes get voiced and sometimes don't, and only convention seems to be a feasible explanation for the readings.

案内所	あんないじょ	Information desk	停留所	ていりゅうじょ	Bus/tram stop
裁判所	さいばんじょ	Court(house)	発電所	はつでんじょ	Power plant

Branching of a Compound

When a word has 2(+) parts, voicing occurs depending on the branching constraint of the word. Branching of a word is often very subjective, which doesn't help bring definity to any phonological rule you can draw to explain restrictions on 連濁, but it does help to a degree. Branching essentially refers to where the main meaning of a compound lies. In other words, branching explains where the semantic weight of an expressions falls on.

When a word is left-branched, devoicing may occur at the beginning of the second element. When a word is right-branched, voicing doesn't occur. Of course, there are exceptions to this.

Phrase	Reading	Definition	Branching
目覚まし時計	めざましどけい	Alarm clock	Left
株式会社	かぶしきがいしゃ	Corporation	Left
着物虱	きものじらみ	Body lice	Left
紋白蝶	もんしろちょう	Cabbage butterfly	Right
物差し	ものさし	Ruler	Right
早口	はやくち	Fast-talking	Right
砂原	すなはら	Sandy plain	Right
草原	くさはら	Grassland(s)	Right
絵描き	えかき	Artist	Right
後腐れ	あとくされ	Future trouble	Right
雨降り	あめふり	Rainfall	Right
小鳥	ことり	Small bird	Right

尾白鷲	おじろわし	White-tailed eagle	Right (Exception)
紋切り型	もんきりがた	Hackneyed/stereotypical phrase	Right then left

Notes:

1. Though both 小玉 and 小鳥 have the prefix 小-, because "bead" is already something that is usually of relatively small size, 小- becomes the most important detail in the word and thus makes the word a left-branching word. This also explains why 小部屋 is read as こべや.
2. 偽薬箱 has two possible readings: にせぐすりばこ and にせくすりばこ. However, they don't mean the same thing, and it's because of the branching of the phrase. If the phrase branches leftward (にせぐすりばこ), it means "a box with fake medicine". If the phrase branches rightward (にせくすりばこ), it means "fake medicine-box".
3. How branching works may explain when voicing occurs or doesn't occur with compound verb expressions. If both parts have equal weight, 連濁 doesn't occur and the phrase is treated as a right branching word. If the phrase is left branching and 連濁 consequently occurs. However, there are inconsistencies.

For 着 替える, you can see both きかえる and きがえる. This is reasonable, but as the sense of かえる being more independent in origin fades away, voicing becomes more common and expected. This is why きがえる is the most common reading.

However, there are words like 眠り損なう that is typically read as ねむりそこなう because ~そこなう has been essentially standardized as being read as such. Yet, not all Japanese speakers agree and appear to either have dialectal reasons or reasons based on branching emphasis to say things like the following.

2. 修一の大いびきは間もなくやんだけれども、信吾は眠り**そこ**なった。

Shuuichi's loud snoring stopped before long, but Shingo missed out on sleep.

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

修一の大いびきは間もなくやんだけれども、信吾は眠り**そこ**なった。

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

Dvandva

Dvandva is a fancy word from Sanskrit that refers to two things being conjoined together to represent an "and" relationship between two words. So, though the compound results in one word, the meaning of the phrase is still on the lines of "X and Y". When this is the case for a Japanese compound, 連濁 does not occur, and it can help the reader decide whether to read something as voiced or not with proper context.

山川	やまかわ	Mountains and rivers	足腰	あしこし	Legs and loins
枝葉	えだは	Branches and leaves	雲霧	くもきり	Clouds and mist

An even more interesting word is 目鼻立ち. This expression means "facial features", but the first part, 目鼻, doesn't have 連濁 because of a dvandva relationship. However, the latter part does. So, it's read as めはなだち.

Reading Note: Do not confuse this 山川 with the one earlier read as やまがわ meaning mountain-side river

Onomatopoeia

If you repeat a sound effect, you don't change unvoiced sounds to voiced sounds. You simply repeat as is. Now, there are pairs of onomatopoeia that differ in intensity with voicing indicated higher intensity, but this is clearly not the same thing as 連濁.

さくさく (さく ざく X)	Crispy; crunchy; doing smoothly/clearly	ざく ざく	Cutting up roughly; lots of coins
かさかさ (かさ がさ X)	Rustle; dryness	がさ がさ	Rummaging; rough feeling

Doesn't Matter

Though branching weight being equal may be a reason to explain why some words may either have 連濁 or not with no change in meaning, it is a fact that there are such words like this. Now, it is usually the case that one variant may be more common than the other, but when you consider speaker variation, this point becomes useless in the long run.

親木	おやき・おやぎ	Stock (tree)	根方	ねかた・ねがた	Root; lower part
----	---------	--------------	----	---------	------------------

There are also times like the following that you may find something usually always voiced with 連濁 not be. In this example, being preceded by ん meant nothing.

2. 「さっき、谷崎さんが来ました。八時半**ころ**です。」と夏子は不器用に言った。

Natsuko then awkwardly said, "Tanizaki-san came a while ago. It was around 8:30".

From 山の音 by 川端康成.

Names and 連濁

Names, personal and place names, are hard to read. Just as is the case with spelling and pronunciation of names in English, there is no certainty of how to read names in Japanese. Sometimes 連濁 occurs and sometimes it doesn't. Sometimes a particular reading is the most common for a given name, but you can always meet someone with the "uncommon" reading.

Sometimes voicing helps distinguish place names with the same spelling. Names that are abbreviations of X {の・ノ・乃・之} Y are read with Y unvoiced, but you would have to know the history of the place name in question.

So, practically speaking, 連濁 in names is random, and you just have to learn how to read the names of the people and places you come across one by one. This is what native speakers have to do, so don't feel bad.

高田	たかだ・たかた	Surname	大田	おおた・おおだ	Surname
豊橋	とよはし・とよばし	Place name/surname	旭川	あさひかわ・あさひがわ	Place name
京橋	きょうばし	Place name	鶴橋	つるはし	Place name
任三郎	にんざぶろう	Given name	池田	いけだ・いけた・いげだ	Surname

第 290 課: Phonology III: 露出形 & 被覆形

Along with 連濁, you have probably also noticed that the vowel in a reading changes when used in a compound. For instance, あめ becomes あま in あまぐも. This lesson will try to shed light on this without having to go so deep into the history of Japanese.

露出形 & 被覆形

Last lesson the word 白玉 was brought up. Though it can be read as しろだま, the most common reading in this case happens to be しらたま. The first form of 白 without a vowel change can be called its 露出形, and the form しら- can be called its 被覆形. It turns out that there are three such vowel shifts in many native Japanese words.

i→o	き + かげ → こかげ (木陰・木蔭) <i>Tree shade</i>
e→a	め + ふた → まぶた (瞼・目蓋) <i>Eyelid</i>
o→a	くろ + やみ → くらやみ (暗闇) <i>Darkness</i>

The problem is that positing a rule as to when these sound changes should occur or not is troubling. For instance, 白 is often not read as しら in many compounds such as 白馬 (white horse) and 白熊 (polar bear).

I—O/U

The i that changes to "o" in these words was not pronounced like the modern い. This i vowel will be spelled as ĭ. The 露出形 would end in ĭ, but the 被覆形 could either end in u or o/ə (the other o vowel).

kĭ ぎ + tati たち → kodati こだち (木立) <i>Grove of trees</i>
kĭ ぎ + nə の + ma ま → kənəma このま (木の間) <i>In the trees</i>
tukĭ つぎ + yo よ → tukuyo つくよ (月夜) <i>Moonlit night</i>

pī ひ + teru てる → poteru ほてる (火照る) <i>To feel hot</i>
kutī くち + wa わ → kutuwa くつわ (轡) <i>Bit</i>
kami かみ + agari あがり → kamuagari (神上り) <i>Ascension of a kami</i>

Reading Note: つきよ is now the normal modern reading of 月夜.

Polysynthesis is the chaining of things that can't stand alone in languages like Ainu. Verbal clause indefiniteness and transitive subject avoidance are two main characteristics. This prevents multiple verb doers from being expressed in a word and words themselves have multiple parts.

Why does this have to do with anything happening in Japanese? In the development of the 露出形 from 被覆形, an affix イ had the ability of making something indefinite definite to stand alone. So, one could call the 被覆形 the 抱合形 (polysynthetic form). This affix イ would replace the vowel in the 露出形. So, it's more so a sound replacement and the other way around.

This イ also provides the origin for the 連用形 of verbs. Its presence after the root of a verb has a nominalizing effect and rids it of indefiniteness. For verbs that have a 連用形 that ends in 工, as you will be said again later in this lesson, it ultimately derives from ア + イ. Because Japanese has historically shunned upon vowel sequences, it's also posited that イ is after the 連用形 of 一段 verbs.

The following is an example found in the 古事記 of イ being used to show an "instructive case". In most other situations including this case, it is an emphazier first and foremost.

1.

おさか おほむろや ひとさは
忍坂の大室屋に人多に來入り居り人多に入り居りとも

みつみつ くめ くぶつつ つつ
敵敵し 久米の子が頭槌い石槌い持ち 撃ちてし止まむ

敵敵し 久米の子等が頭槌い石槌い持ち 今撃たば宜し

A lot of people have come to the big cellar in Osaka. Even a lot of people were to enter, are the vigorous Kumebe not going to hit at their enemies with their war and stone hammers? It would be best for the vigorous Kumebe to strike them with their war and stone hammers now!

There are even times when it acts like a subject marker. Does this remind anyone of Korean?

2. 菟原壮士い天仰ぎ

The man Urai looked up at the heavens
From the 万葉集.

This イ got used a lot, as you will continue to see. And, for 沼 (swamp), which is read as ぬま, it didn't need this 露出・被覆 contrast, but the reading ぬみ still existed from イ being attached to it.

E—A

There is a plethora of words with this sound change. Consider the following examples.

掌	たなごころ	Palm	手綱	たづな	Rein
船大工	ふなだいく	Boat-builder	爪弾き	つまはじき	Ostracism
船酔い	ふなよ酔い	Seasickness	爪楊枝	つまようじ	Toothpick
胸算用	むなざんよう	Rough mental estimate	金物	かなもの	Metal utensil
胸毛	むなげ	Chest hair	上の空	うわのそら	Absent-mindedness
声音	こわね	Tone of voice	風上	かざかみ	Windward

酒屋	さかや	Liquor store	風下	かざしも	Leeward
眉毛	まゆげ	Eyebrow	睫 (毛)	まつげ	Eyelash
天の 川	まあのが わ	Milky Way	天の浮 橋	あまのうき はし	Heavenly floating bridge
雨傘	あまがさ	Umbrella	菅原	すがわら	Sugawara (sur- name)
猪苗 代	いなわし ろ	Inawashiro (Place name)	苗水	なわみず	Water for rice nursery

Etymology Note: 天 and 雨 ultimately share origin.

Explaining the Origin of E in Japanese?

It turns out that very few native words actually start with an e-sound. Sure, we have 手, 瀬, 関, 寺, 目, 根, and 江. But, can you think of any others easily? In Old Japanese in the 奈良時代, there were 甲 and 乙 distinctions in other vowels like o, and they would have been treated as separate vowels. However, 工段 instances were always only 乙. Does this suggest the vowel "e" was not originally in Japanese?

It's difficult to initially say this, though, taking 酒 as an example, that さか precedes さけ in origin when you can't read 甘酒 as あまざか. However, it's important to realize that あい → え (ー) in many Modern Japanese dialects. We just need to find a reason for why such a change would have happened centuries ago.

Words like 手綱 and 目蓋 show this /e/ → /a/ sound change in the word initial position. Inside words, we don't see this other forms. So, again, you don't see

something like 白酒 read as しろざか. However, there is 白髪, which is read as しらが instead of しらげ. This, though, appears to be exceptional.

This is when the terms 露出形 and 被覆形 become useful. The form that does not have the affixing of "i" inside compounds is called the 被覆形. The 露出形 represents the affixing, which results in the sound change.

There is also a grammatical aspect to this sound change. Let's consider 甘酒 again. 甘 is the root of an adjective. You can't add a particle to it, and for it to behave as a noun, you would need to affix さ or み to the root. It turns out that the イ used in creating the 露出形 of these words possessed a similar grammatical function.

If you are still doubtful, there are a number of nouns posited to come from this イ attaching to the root of an adjective. 飴 and 岳 are believed to have come from 甘 and 高 respectively. Other evidence for this nominalizing イ is found in 或いは (possibly). When after the 連体形 of verbs, it showed a focus. As for these nouns, however, this would have been a grammatically necessary add-on to be used.

Haven't you ever thought that the かが in 鏡 is related to 影? You would be right. Have you ever noticed that 音 read as ね reminds you of 泣く and 鳴る? These words are already semantically interrelated, and the expression 音を泣く even exists. The な in these words, then, must have become ね through this sound change caused by イ.

Of course, there are typically variations to any given method. There were also times when a consonant was inserted for whatever reason between イ and what it would attach to. This, unsurprisingly, is preserved in several words. For instance, although we may have gotten 毛 from 力 + イ. 力 + m + イ = 髪, another word for hair.

The list of words below also happen to show up in compounds in which there is no longer a 被覆形 because of the dropping of the final mora. Some of these have become new, standalone nouns.

Consonant Insertion in 被覆形	Words with Loss of 被覆形	New Independent Noun(s)?
ハ + s + イ → 端	端数 (はすう) <i>Fraction</i>	葉?, 齒?, 刃?, 端 ○
ア + s + イ → 足	足掻 (あが) < <i>To struggle</i>	No
クス + r + イ → 薬	薬師 (くすし) <i>Doctor (Archaism)</i>	No
ト + r + イ → 鳥	鳥羽 (とば) <i>Toba</i>	No
カタ + t + イ → 形	形見 (かたみ) <i>Memento</i>	形 ○, 肩 ?

There are also a few examples where イ attaches to other things that didn't end in ア and replaced the vowel. This explains the relation between 奥 (inner part) and 沖 (offing). In the 万葉集, you can sometimes see this replacement even when something does end in ア. For instance, ワガ + モコ (my love) ends up being read as わぎもち.

Back then, Japanese didn't like chains of vowels, which would make such sound changes and vowel replacements uncommon. It also means that vowel deletion altogether should be present. For instance, the place name 明石 is read as あかし instead of as あかいし.

There are other instances of vowels being interchanged. For example, 暦 means calendar, so why is it read as こよみ? The こ happens to be the same か as in 四日. Why do you use はた in はたち but はつ in はつか? It's because you remove ア and replace it with ウ. Lastly, 肩 may have very well come from 形, but the かつ in 担ぐ may very well be from 肩 with this sound change.

露出形 in Compounds?

So, what about instances when you can use the 露出形 in a compound? For instance, 風向き can also be read as かぜむき. Even so, かぜむき is actually rarer, and such exceptions can easily come about from centuries since this interwoven phonological phenomenon took root in Japanese. As another example, まなじり and めじり exist for "corner of the eye", but the latter comes about much later. And, the original is still the most common.

Now, we are discussing the relation between the 露出形 and 被覆形 for e→a. Of course there are the other changes. But, these have to be looked at separately. So, be patient.

O→A

This 露出・被覆 relationship is not as common, and it doesn't have anything to do with イ, unlike above for the other two cases. The motivation for the sound change is the same.

白髪	しらが	White/grey hair	暗がり	くらがり	Darkness
----	-----	-----------------	-----	------	----------

Instances of this are scattered in the language, but the most interesting one is しな・しの. This was a general word for a celestial body like the moon and sun, and always practically referred to one or the other. When to use which was maintained following the outlined guidelines, and the word can be spotted in Okinawan languages and in the mainland up to the 8th century.

3. しなてる片岡山に、飯に飢て臥せる、その旅人あわれ。

That poor traveler who is faced down starved of food at Kataoka Mountain, illuminated by the sources of light in the sky.

From a Song by 聖徳太子.

Sometimes, a particular form may be avoided because the resulting word would be homophonous to an existing word. The one example that immediately comes to mind is 白身. This is the white of an egg or the white flesh of certain species of fish. This word is read as しろみ. It is not read as しらみ presumably because this word means louse (虱・蝨).

At times, the use of a different form can change the meaning of the word. This is rather interesting considering that this 露出 and 被覆 relationship is supposed to be a fundamental principle for compounding.

白魚	しらうお = Icefish	しろうお = Ice goby
----	----------------	-----------------

Instances of Loss of 被覆形

There have been some words where the 被覆形 has essentially disappeared from the language. This is not surprising as not all words share this kind of phenomenon.

	露出形	被覆形	Now
身	み	む	み
茎	くき	くく	くき
藻	め	も	も

As the last example shows, the 被覆形 becoming the standalone variant is not unheard of. Of course, there are still examples of rare words where older forms may still be present.

第291課: Phonology V: 撥音添加 & 撥音化

There are two interesting phenomena that deal with ん. ん is known as the 撥音, which interestingly sounds the same as the word for pronunciation, 撥音. Anyway, the topics for this lesson are actually very easy. The first phenomenon, 撥音添加, involves the insertion of ん in phrases mainly before nasal sounds but also other voiced stops. 撥音化 refers to sounds becoming ん. There are obligatory instances of 撥音化 as well as colloquial/dialectical instances of it. Both sound changes involve many phrases with various social stigma added to them. So, this will probably be the hardest thing to grasp about these words.

撥音添加

Long ago, there would not have been any uvular nasal ん in Japanese. As is reflected in older spelling, it no doubt came about from the contraction of む, which was the Japanese equivalent for final nasal consonants in Chinese loans. So, one could imagine that this "mu" in words from Chinese was actually being pronounced as a syllabic m. After all, the script had no way of writing out final consonants or syllabic consonants. It was only until modern spelling reform that む and ん were officially distinguished from each other as only referring to /mu/ and /N/ respectively.

Anyway, most consonants can be made long in Japanese, so the nasal sounds are no exceptions. When this occurs, you get things like みな (Everyone) → みんな. This is usually the first example that comes into mind. However, as you should know, the form みんな has restrictions. For instance, it is forbidden from being used in polite forms such as in みなさん. Take note that さん actually comes from さま and is less polite than it. So, keep this in mind for the next section on 撥音化.

So, we know that there is a general tendency for words with 撥音添加 tend to be less polite. However, the word for kite as in the bird is almost always とんび instead of とび for the majority of speakers. This is interesting because the word

comes from the 連用形 of the verb 飛ぶ and all other similar examples are not treated so kindly as とんび.

There is also the tendency of 撥音添加 being for nasal sounds, but what about other voiced sounds? For instance, in casual/dialectical speech, など can appear as なんぞ. In older language and in some dialects, you can't even still find なんど. It may be tempting to call this 撥音添加, and many people do. However, in Middle Japanese, all voiced sounds had prenasalization. So, it would be best to analyze this words as the prenasalization becoming a fully nasal syllable. など, then, would be the deletion of ん. The same goes for とんび (鳶). How prenasalization came to be a feature of voiced consonants is uncertain for all words, but in these cases, it is clearly not from an intervening の. So, we can't call it 撥音化. Thus, this is just a finer case of 撥音添加.

List of 撥音添加 Examples

The following table will introduce you to the many examples you can find in Standard Japanese and also describe how they are used.

同じ → おんなじ	Colloquial	度 → たんび*	Casual/dialectical
まま → まんま	Colloquial	とび → とんび*	Standard
尖る (to become sharp) → とんがる	Colloquial	くだり → くだり**	Standard but old
クマバチ → クマンバチ***	Standard	黙り → だんまり	Standard
小締まり → こぢんまり (snugly)****	Standard	金 (かな) → 匏 (かな) *****	Standard
こぶ → 昆布 (こんぶ) *****	Standard	すで → すんで*****	Set phrases

すごい → すんごい*	Emphatic	見事 → みんごと	Emphatic
あまり → あんまり	Casual/emphatic	真丸 → 真ん丸 *****	Standard
真中 → 真ん中*****	Standard	真前 → 真ん前 *****	Standard

*: For instances other than double m and n, deletion of nasalization takes place rather than the addition of ん. However, we can still call this 撥音添加 because that's how the forms with ん came about. It's just it appears that voiced stops (other than m and n) came in at the start with pre-nasalization, and it's just that the modern forms without ん are the new forms.

**: くんだり and くだり cannot be treated synonymous anymore and have become separate words. くんだり is a rather emphatic suffix that attaches to place names to show where one is going far off too, and it is now almost never seen in the spoken language.

***: It is not certain whether the ん comes from の or not because it is clearly a compound. However, because not all compounding in Japanese requires the particle の, it is fair to say for this discussion that this word could very well either be an example of 撥音添加 or 撥音化 of の → ん.

****: The first forms of these words no longer exist anymore. 鉋 = plane (for cutting wood).

*****: The etymology of 昆布 is obscure as there are many historical terms for it in both Japan and China. ん deletion is not uncommon, and the mainstream of thought is that こぶ is a dialectical pronunciation brought about by this. If this is the case, then this is not a good example of 撥音添加 because the 音読み of 昆 is コン. Thus, the ん would not derive from the prenasalization of ぶ from an earlier pronunciation.

*****: すんでの所・すんでのこと = very nearly.

*****: ん can be viewed as obligatory in these phrases. まなか exists but is

rarely used. ままる exist as a surname, but it would not be used to mean "perfect circle" as a regular noun without 撥音添加.

撥音化

撥音便

The first major instance of 撥音化 to occur in Japanese is called 撥音便. 撥音便 refers to the 連用形 of 五段・四段 verbs ending in ん・ぶ・む going from に・び・み respectively to ん when used with the particle て and the auxiliary 〜た. This began in the 平安時代 and was here to stay by the 室町時代. It is during the 鎌倉時代 when ん is fully treated as a separate phoneme in Japanese.

ナ行撥音便	死ぬ → 死に + た・て = 死んだ・死んで
バ行撥音便	呼ぶ → 呼び + た・て = 呼んだ・呼んで
マ行撥音便	読む → 読み + た・て = 読んだ・読んで

History and Review of the Pronunciation of ん

Because of the nature of ん, the Japanese syllabic structure is called moraic rather than syllabic. However, there are some dialects in which ん is not moraic and forms CVC syllables. This aids in accent systems sounding more distinct because if ん is syllabic in some dialects and not in others, the dialects which treat it syllabically will allow pitch to rise and fall on it. Those which don't would not be able to do this. Regions of Japan which don't treat ん as a mora include northern 東北 and southern 九州. Treating ん as a mora, though, has existed as early as the late 平安時代. So, it's been around for a long time as such.

Another thing that you must not forget is the assimilation rules that go along with the modern ん.

Before bilabials	ん → [m]	3 枚 = [sammai]
------------------	---------	----------------

Before n or z	ん → [n]	女 = [oŋna]
Before velars	ん → [ŋ]	珊瑚 (coral) = [saŋŋo]
Before vowels, fricatives, and approximants	ん → [ĩ~ɰ~]	単位 = [taĩi]

Word Note: おんな is actually an example of 撥音化 because it comes from をむな.

The Contraction of の

の has been contracted far before the moraic ん ever arrived. In fact, many believe that voicing in compounds is resultant of an intervening の contracting to prenasalization before the voiced consonant. An example of this would be 水. 水 is believed to derive from みのつ (身の津). Then, it contracted to みづ. づ would have been pronounced as [ʰdz].

の → ん examples from more modern Japanese are usually treated as being examples of 口語. In other words, you would most likely not use such contractions in the written language. For instance, んだ would more likely be のだ or のである. If we consider very common examples of this such as こんな (このよな), ここんとこ (ここのところ), 僕んち (僕の家), this statement holds true. こんな, そんな, あんな, どんな may be more likely as they are slightly older than the examples after them, but people still treat them as contraction and do avoid using them in writing.

Word Initial 撥音化

In many dialects, especially in 東北, ん can be seen word initially due to 撥音化. For instance, you may hear うまい pronounced as んめえ. A common example throughout this same region is んだ, which can be viewed as being cognate to うん、そうだ. Note that word initial ん in foreign transliteration does not count as 撥音化.

ラ行 → ん

The most recent form of 撥音化 in Japanese is r-sounds going to ん. ら is frequently seen as ん in colloquial Standard Japanese in the negative. The most common example is 分からない. However, any ら in conjugation can be found seen as ん. The boundaries of ラ行撥音化 are not set in stone. Many feel that any instance of it is bad Japanese and consider such phrases to be 悪い or 汚い. This most likely stems from the fact that rates of usage of ラ行撥音化 are highest in other dialects, some of which that are not thought highly. There are limits to this sound change. For instance, phrases such as 降んなければ・降んなけりゃ (降らなければ) are still quite uncommon.

り → ん is actually seen a lot in onomatopoeia where it is surprisingly accepted without any negative stigma. For example, you have surely heard きちんと a lot, but this actually is a variant of きっちりと. The two are slightly different at times now, but they still come from the same source.

If you've ever heard people say すんな, you know of る becoming ん. This has become so pervasive that some speakers insert ん before な even when the verb doesn't end in る. So, you get things like 叫ぶんな. However, this is yet another sound change that is spreading slowly. So, you can still find people in 東京 who have never heard of this sound change extending into 撥音添加. る → ん in all situations when something follows is rather dialectical, but it does exist. Usage of phrases such as 寝んから (寝るから) and すんと (すると) vary greatly even around the capital according to origin, gender, and age.

れ → ん is generally deemed to be even more dialectical or rough. For instance, けんど is commonly found in Japanese dialects instead of けれど or けど. In 東京弁, you can find the れ in passives and the potential contracted to ん in very colloquial/rough speech. For instance, 来らんない. Though, the potential form competes with ら抜き. So, 来らんない is not as common as 来れない.

Table of Contents

第 292 課: Phonology VI: 促音化

促音添加 (the addition of a 促音) or 促音化 (sokuon-ization) is a feature that has long been associated with 俗語 in Japanese. Of course, slang or local vernaculars have always existed, and this phonological phenomenon that we will discuss in this lesson has a long history with such speech. Of course, the 促音 finds itself in Standard Japanese conjugation today. So, what are the certain environments or factors that have led and continue to govern 促音化? Another interesting thing to consider is the prevalent appearance of 促音 in loanwords.

促音化

The definition of what 俗語 itself means has been in flux as well. By earlier definitions, essentially all spoken conversation today would be considered 俗語. Yet, that is certainly not a majority opinion in today's terms. The changes we see today in Japanese such as いちかい → いったい most certainly belonged to the speech to slang when it first began. Of course, today, just as in conjugation, such consonant gemination is standard in Modern Japanese.

Knowing when a 促音 shows up in 和語 and 漢語 at the morphological and phonological level is not that difficult to figure out. Consider the following examples.

Kind of Word	促音化	Before/No 促音化
和語	会った = met	会う = to meet
漢語	いっぱん (一般) = General	いちもん (一問) = one/first question
オノマトペ	ぽきっと (tree/branch snap noise)	ぽきんと = ditto

In most instances in 和語 and 漢語, we know that 促音化 has been caused due to particular contractions meant for.

ち・つ・く are the three most likely sounds to cause 促音化. This is not to say we do not get others such as き and り affected in words such as 行った (went) and 刈った (cut/mowed).

We can form a rule that states high vowels [i u] are dropped before k, t, s, h/f, and the consonant before them assimilates to that consonant. If the second consonant is an h/f, it changes to a p as h/f do not geminate in Japanese words (excluding loans as we will see later in this lesson).

The Origin of 促音化

Historically speaking, 促音化 is not well recorded. The use of a small つ is a modern fix to the orthography, and previously a regular-sized つ may have been used, and the word may is used as the practice was far from universal. In fact, it is most common overall in Japanese literature to see a long consonant not marked as such. So, even if the writer wrote にき for 日記 (diary), we can still be quite certain that it was pronounced as につき.

Then again, it is agreed upon that at one point, the pronunciation would have started out as being literal to the spelling. Thus, we would get につき with this example. This would make gemination in Japanese far easier. Then again, this could be wrong and speakers may have easily shifted at one point to what it is now as the rule posited above is linguistically plausible and affects classes of sounds. Yes, one particular instance of gemination would have been necessary to trigger this event, but that's a given.

Distribution of 促音化

The distribution of 促音, as has been mentioned earlier, in native or nativized words, has a deep to vernacular speech. For instance, the following words should not have a 促音, but many speakers pronounce them with one anyway. This is because although the pattern is pervasive, there are still areas in the Japanese lexicon that it has not been universally applied.

Word	無促音	促音化	Word	無促音	促音化
水族館 (Aquarium)	すいぞく かん	すいぞっ かん	適格 (Eligible)	てきか く	てっか く
旅客機 (Passenger aircraft)	りよきや くき	りよきや っき	各国 (Every nation)	かくこ く	かっこ く

Any word with 各 can have kaku contracted to kak if the next character starts with a k. However, it's only OK because so many speakers have gotten used to and have begun using this newer pronunciation. The other words are still relatively uncommonly sokuonized outside of Western Japan, but in this part of the country, most people don't use the standard 促音-less pronunciation at all. Of course, this could have a lot to do with honing in on this dialectical difference.

Lesson Note: The following situations involving 促音化 are complicated in regards to social attitude. Some things are strictly slangish/conversational and some things are standard pronunciations. Some forms are even moribund. Thus, these notes will need to be noted on a case by case basis.

Emphatic 促音化

As we see in onomatopoeic words and regular words at times, a 促音 may often be inserted for emphasis, and it's basically always placed in the first mora.

Very	とても → とっても	Latter collo- quial	Nothing but	ばかり → ばっかり	Latter collo- quial
Closely	ぴたり → ぴったり	Both common	Certainly	しかと → しっかりと	Both rare/lit- erary
To urge	せつく → せつつく	Latter most common	Exclu- sively	もはら → もっぱら	Latter only used
As is	まま → ま んま	Latter dialecti- cal	Everyone	みな → み んな	Latter collo- quial
Same	おなじ → お んなじ	Latter collo- quial			

The last three are still examples of gemination. Don't let spelling get the best of you. For others that are not geminated, you see them essentially get geminated with ~ん insertion.

Puzzle/mystery	なぞ → なんぞ	Latter is colloquial and uncommon.
Kite (bird)	とび → とんび	Both are just as common.
Down to	くだり → くん だり	Latter is rare but with a more specific meaning.
Just	ただ → たんだ	Latter is no longer used.
Whenever	たび → たんび	Latter is colloquial/dialectical.
To become sharp	とがる → とん がる	Latter is colloquial

It's also important to note that sometimes the original form ends up no longer being used. This is the case for 専ら, which used to be read as もはら. Remember that Japanese wants h geminated as p rather than h.

In Compound Verbs

One thing that is still considered slang-ish is applying 促音化 to compounds. For instance, 追い, 取り, and the like often get added, but they usually get changed to 追っ and 取っ respectively. So, for instance, an emphatic form of はじめ is おっぱじめ. So, the same sound changes involving the 促音 we see with ～た and ～て is extended to compounding. It's also important to note that gemination may result in ん insertion. However, the process is still the same. Below are more examples.

To poke	突きつく → 突っつく	The first form is not used.
To greatly bind	引き曲げる → ひん曲げる	The base form is not used.
To tie fast	踏み縛る → 踏ん縛る	Both are uncommon.
Grapple	取り組み合い → 取っ組み合い	The first form is not used.
To kick hard	蹴り飛ばす → 蹴っ飛ばす	The latter is colloquial yet common.
To fly/jump forcefully	ぶち飛ぶ → ぶっ飛ぶ	The first form is not used.
To throw away	打ち遣る → うっちゃる	The first is not used, but the latter is dialectal.
To strongly tear	打ち千切る → ぶっ千切る	The first form is not used.
To pitch forward	突きのめる → つんのめる	The first is not used, but the latter is slang.

In Compounds

促音化 is also often emphatically inserted at the boundary between two words in a native compound. This also holds true for when particular suffixes attach to a word. Sometimes it is part of the regular form of the word and sometimes it's not. As this is a lesser extension of 促音化, this is to be expected. Below are some examples.

To leave open	開け放す → 開けっ放す	The latter is colloquial but most common.
All one's	ありたけ → ありったけ	Only the latter is used.
Loving deeply	首丈 → 首っ丈	Only the latter is used.
City slicker	擦れ枯らし → 擦れっ枯らし	The latter is the most common.
Salty	塩辛い → 塩っ辛い	Both are common.
Sugary	甘たるい → 甘ったるい	The latter is colloquial.
Ostracized child/miso scum	みそかす → みそっかす	The latter is colloquial.

Exceptions' Note: Of course, there are also just exceptional cases that 促音化 appears. For instance, ぬすっと (thief) is certainly a contraction, but we don't see all word with びと changed to っと.

促音化 in Loanwords

The remainder of this lesson will investigate the intricate yet rather regular distribution of the very prevalent 促音化 in loanwords.

Though the special timing of mora is not found in English, the 促音 shows up in many loans from English. It often comes about from the stress in the English word, but there are exceptions of this and other motivations (such as mimicking a non-Japanese sound).

ロック (lock/rock)	タップ (tap)	ファックス (Fax)	レッドソックス (Red Sox)
バッハ (Bach)	ゴッホ (Gogh)	ドブラー (Doppler)	タックスイーター (tax eater)
スノ (ッ) ブ (snob)	マックス (max)	キャップ (cap)	プッシュボタン (push button)
ピクニック (picnic)	スタッフ (staff)	アドホック (ad hoc)	フィッシング (fish-ing/phishing)
ハーフ (half (person))	X ハッフ	タフ (tough)	X タッフ
パフ (puff)	X パッフ	サインアウト (sing-out)	X サインアウト
バス (bus)	X バッス	ログアウト (log-out)	X ロッグアウト

What can we make of all these examples? First, let's consider segmental factors in these words. For instance, it's very common to have gemination of p and k, but it is very rare to find geminate b's and g's in loanwords. We do find exceptions in which we do not get geminate k's. Consider words such as アクト (act), ダクト (duct), タクト (tact), etc.

We also find exceptions such as スノッブ of consonants that tend not to geminate get geminated. Though, as this exception also demonstrates, exceptions tend to have a not so exceptional form, in this case スノブ. Then again, geminate h's never appear in the rest of the Japanese lexicon but appear in loanwords like バッハ. Here, a fricative sound non-native to Japanese (and English for that matter) is being conformed as best as possible in the same way it would be replaced by k in English. What we do see is that gemination

As we've seen with バス, loanwords entering Japanese are less likely to have a 促音 if the consonant is an s. Japanese hates having geminate f's too, but it surprisingly allows ssh, which we've seen already in words like プッシュ. Again, that's not to say that there are exceptions. For instance, レッスン (lesson) and ワッフル (waffle) are not just exceptional but also very commonly used words. It appears that if the word ends in ん or れ that this restriction is lifted. So, how do we explain words like スタッフ? If it were three morae, it would be スタッフ.

Most three morae words in Japanese have the accent on the second mora. If this were to happen, this would make the accent system completely contrary to its source stress accent. There are exceptional loans into Japanese like トマト (tomato) and タバコ (tobacco) with completely different pitches, but these are also much older loans relative to スタッフ. If you add the 促音, the problem is resolved. But, couldn't the pitch accent have been arranged in a way that would have been less weird? What if the accent were on the first mora or the stress were flat? It would still be contrary to English, but it would not be out of the norm. After all, there are words like スミス (Smith) and プラス (plus) with accent on the first mora and words such as ブログ (blog) with flat pitch. However, both flat pitch and gemination does not occur. It's as if gemination, accent shift, or pitch leveling are different options that don't mix well.

Though Japanese phonological restraints may trump any foreign word's original pronunciation, lax and tense distinction is maintained well in the borrowing process into Japanese. For instance, if it were not, then we would expect English words like cup" and "carp" to be borrowed in as the same word. However, this is not the case. Rather, we see that they are borrowed into Japanese as カップ・コップ (cup) and カーブ (carp) respectively. If the length of the English syllable were to then end in a 促音, the morae count would exceed three morae, which would be quite long for such a short word in the original language. This is why we don't see something like カーubb.

This sort of avoidance is also connected to the avoidance of diphthongs even when the loanword should have one. For instance, Japanese say ステンレス instead of ステインレス for stainless. The overall idea in loanwords is that the word is almost certainly going to have a higher mora count than the original syllable count. So, eliminating features that would necessarily show up from being picky at sounding like the original language results in a more 'practical' loan. And, as we know, Japanese has no problem reducing things further if the resultant loan is still too long (Ex. バスケットボール → バスケ).

Consider the following words. Do you see a pattern?

キャップ	キャプテン (captain)
ファックス	ファクシミリ (facsimile)
サククス (sax)	サキソフォン (saxophone)
リラックス (relax)	リラクセーション (relaxation)
リッスン (listen)	リスナー (listener)

The words on the left have a 促音 but the words on the right don't. There is certainly a tendency for the 促音 to appear close to the end of the word, and it seems that the complexity and length of the word is another restriction. Of course, these restrictions are relative, but they help to explain what's in front of us for now. A more probable reasoning for the lack of a 促音 in the long words on the right-hand column is that because the environment most suitable for gemination is not at the end of the word, it does not appear.

Japanese does like to have regularity, though. If two syllables in the loanword are considered tense, this gets carried over. So, rather than getting タクス, you get タックス. How much of this has to deal with avoiding sounding like an existing Japanese word should be investigated more in depth.

As far as environmental factors are concerned, it is clear that the issues addressed above are statistically proven to be the case. The exceptions are small

and the principles that we've found are shown to be true more so than they are not. A question that still lingers, though, is why and how do Japanese speakers abide by these? It is definitely the case that in the early stages of rapid borrowing from Western languages that form was not particularly stabilized, and it's also true that in language acquisition that Japanese children do not necessarily spell words with the expected pronunciation. So, if you mess up, don't feel so bad.

Table of Contents

第 293 課: サ行とハ行の揺れ

Have you ever heard し instead of 人, ひ instead of し, or some people always pronouncing ひ as if it were し? You aren't crazy, and this convolution of s and h is found all throughout Japan. This lesson will take a look at this variation to make some sense of it.

S → H? H → S?

S → H appears throughout Japan as it is a very natural sound that occurs in many world languages. It is possible to make some conclusions on where the speakers are who show this sound change in particular words (as it has not progressed to affecting all words with s), but because it is so easy to come about, there are several places in Japan where it has independently developed. This causes things to be more difficult for our studies as it allows for some reasons to show the sound change not fully taking root in the words it has affected. Thus, there is a true 揺れ in pronunciation of these words in Japanese.

Normal but not 'Lazy'

The typical Standard Japanese speaker often considers the sound change s to h a sign of lazy speech as h is easier to pronounce. Although ease of articulation is a motivation for sound change, it is not to say that the people who use this sound change are uneducated or lazy in speech. Thousands of speakers of West Japanese dialects who use 〜へん are not stupid because of this. If they're stupid, it's because of another reason. Below are phrases from various parts of Japan with s → h.

標準語	方言	標準語	方言
捨てる	ふてる (和歌山弁)	そうだな	ほだな (山形弁)

Dialect Note: Phrases are not necessarily limited to any said dialect.

し → ひ

Specifically, し and ひ are thought to be mixed up most frequently. They are very close in articulation, and it is not surprising that there are dialects with し → ひ and dialects with ひ → し or both. This usually only affects certain phrases, but it is fair to say that the scale was traditionally far larger.

標準語	方言	標準語	方言
布団をしく	布団をひく	しちや (質屋)	ひちや (大阪・名古屋・京都・広島・松山)
お七夜	おひちや	しつこい	ひつこい

There are even place names with s to h as part of the official name. 七福旅館 in 鳥取市 is read as ひちふくりよかん and 七宗町 in 岐阜県 is ひちそうちょう.

ひ → し

True 江戸っ子 are known for saying おしさま (お日様)はしがし(東) に昇る or しばち (火鉢) にし (火) を入れる. In reality, though, it would be hard to find anyone who still sounds like this in 東京. It's safe to say that for this part of the country, this is a traditional feature of pronunciation that some people either purposely do or is only used by people in older generations. Nevertheless, this sound change does show up throughout East Japan.

標準語	方言	標準語	方言
おひさしぶりです ね	おしさしぶりです ね	ひやっこ い	しゃっこい・しゃっけ (東北 弁)

Well-Known 関西弁 Examples of S → H

関西 dialects are frequently known as being where "s to h" is most prevalent. This is no doubt due to the fact that it has phrases such as はん (→ さん), へん (from the せん in ません), はる (from the さる in なさる), etc. There are even parts of the region where both へん and せん are used. Sometimes it may be hard to tell what's going on when a phrase is contracted further like in それなら → そんなら → ほんなら → ほな. But, don't let this get the best of you.

1.

標準語: かまわないよ。

関西弁: かまへん、かまへん

2.

標準語: 50 万円、貸してくれない？

関西弁: 50 万円、貸してくれへん？

3.

標準語: それなら買うよ。

関西弁: ほんなら買うわ。

4.

標準語: それから、次に何をするの。

関西弁: へてから、次何すんねん。

No True サ行圈 Or 八行圈

In the end, it's hard to say where the サ行圈 and 八行圈 of Japan is because at the individual dialect level, there are areas like Ibaraki Prefecture where words

may be said with either s or h. In much of North and East Japan, ひ often becomes し. Yet, returning to Ibaraki, you can see す → ひ. In the far north in 津軽弁, s widely becomes h. So, you get へんへ for 先生.

So, it is not as simple as saying anything southwest of Osaka uses h in the stereotypical phrases like へはん or ひちや. If this can appear independently elsewhere in places like Ibaraki, then it shows how natural this sound change is.

出雲弁's Abnormality

関西弁 doesn't have near as much s → h instances as 出雲弁, although most likely did in the past. 出雲弁 is a rather different from the dialects spoken around it. It has phrases like 布団をひく (which is said by many speakers around the country) and oppositely 車にしかれる (for 車にひかれる). Intriguingly, this dialect also allows ひ to become ふ.

5.

標準語: そんならゆきましょか。

出雲弁: ほなゆきまひよか。

6.

標準語: 灯が灯る。

出雲弁: 灯が^ふと^{とぼ}ー。

7.

標準語: 久しぶりだね。

出雲弁: ^{ふさ}久し^さぶーだね。

なさる in West Japan dialects is usually a form of なはる. Consider the chart below.

	未然形	連用衛	終止形	連体形	已然形 仮定形	命令形
共通語	なさら	なさり	なさる	なさる	なされ（+ば）	なされ
関西弁	なはら	なはり	なはる	なはる	なはれ（+ば）	なはれ
出雲弁	なはら	なはい	なは一	なは一	なはら・なはりゃ	なはい

The conjugations for 関西弁 and 出雲弁 are the same aside from the fact that the latter's conjugations have other sound changes.

第 294 課 : Etymology

Most words in Japanese come from one or more of three sources.

大和言葉（やまとことば）

Native words define the language itself. Regardless of the percentage, native words are used extensively. They're very similar looking throughout the Japonic language family.

Meaning	Standard	Okinawan	Amami
Chest	Müne	N'ni	Munĩ
Blood	Tɕi	Tɕi:	Tʃi:
Fog	Kiri	Tɕiri	Kiɭi
Rain	Äme	ʔami	ʔamĩ

IPA/Curriculum Note: Tʃ is more similar to an English "ch". ɭ is a retroflex lateral flap.

Native words suggest that Japanese is an isolate. Some words, though, are similar to Korean. In fact, many deemed native are actually ancient borrowings from Korean and elsewhere. Words like 馬 and 梅 came from China before 漢字. カササギ (magpie) is from Old Korean. クズリ comes from Nivkh. Lots of words come from Ainu. When the 弥生 (ancestors of the Japanese people) came to Japan, they met people called 蝦夷 (えみし・えぞ) . There are no records about these languages, but their descendants are the Ainu. In some Northern Japanese dialects such as 気仙, significant vocabulary comes from them. Many words considered native may be borrowed words from extinct 蝦夷 languages.

As for Modern Japanese native words, most are polysyllabic and CV (consonant-vowel). Japanese grammar for the most part doesn't intermingle items of different etymologies; however, some exceptions exist. For example, する follows Sino-Japanese words to make them verbs. な is added to Sino-Japanese abstract nouns to make them adjectives, and る is often added to words to create colloquial verbs.

Word Note: Surnames for the most part are native in origin, but given names are a different story. As for writing, native words are generally written in 漢字 or ひらがな.

漢語

漢語 (Sino-Japanese words) were borrowed from Chinese readings from several stages of Chinese. Nearly 70% of all Japanese words are 漢語, but they make up only 20% of the most frequently used words. 音読み is the basis of deciding whether a word is of Chinese origin; however, be cautious of 当て字. There are rare exceptions where a 訓読み is actually of Chinese origin: 馬 and 梅.

和製漢語

和製漢語 literally means "Japanese-made Chinese words". At the start of modern innovation, many terms were created with 音読み to describe new things.

Environment	自然	しぜん
Telephone	電話	でんわ
Science	科学	かがく
Dermis	皮膚	ひふ

Some Sino-Japanese words made in Japan even correspond to unique Japanese items.

Manga	漫画	まんが	Judo	柔道	じゅうどう
Tokyo	東京	とうきょう	Japanese paper	和紙	わし
Public bath	銭湯	せんとう	Go (game)	碁	ご
Powdered green tea	抹茶	まっちゃ	Kendo	剣道	けんどう
Geisha	芸者	げいしゃ	Daimyo	大名	だいみょう
Dojo	道場	どうじょう	Haiku	俳句	はいく
Shintoism	神道	しんとう	Shogun	将軍	しょうぐん

Many Sino-Japanese words are the product of putting characters in a Chinese word order and using 音読み to make a more technical term. Of course, there are always the words that are half Sino-Japanese and half native--湯桶読み and 重箱読み.

Meaning	Native		Sino-Japanese	
---------	--------	--	---------------	--

Reply	返り事	かえりごと	返事	へんじ
To get angry	腹が立つ	はらがたつ	立腹	りっぷく
Ninja	忍び者	しのびもの	忍者	にんじゃ
Fire breakout	火が出る	ひがでる	出火	しゅっか

外来語

Foreign loanwords are from modern languages. Preference to use these words is somewhat debatable. Some have no native equivalent. Some have been borrowed because the possible Japanese term is too complicated. For the most part, these words are nouns, but with the aid of grammatical items such as *する*, *な*, and *る*, they may be turned into verbs, adjectives, etc.

At times words have mixed etymology. Foreign expressions in Japanese are often abbreviated. This is so common with English terms that it creates "[和製英語](#)" or Japanese-made English words. These words have diverged from their original appearance, meaning, or both. At times 外来語 are made in Japan to describe a unique thing and are then brought back to the original language as a new phrase. The best example of this is anime.

Common languages where 外来語 may arrive include French, Spanish, Portuguese, German, Dutch, and several primarily Indo-European languages. There are even some 外来語 from modern Chinese dialects.

外来語 are primarily written in カタカナ. There are some older loanwords, though, that may be written in 漢字. More traditional approximations are common. So, many speakers will still call a smart phone a スマートホン rather than a スマートフォン. But, there is a movement in electronic terminology to prefer newer combinations. Nowadays, though, you are more likely to hear the abbreviated form スマホ.

To some speakers, loan words are undesirable. In the realm of technology, words have been coined with normal Japanese processes and borrowing. For example, function keys used to be called 機能キー. Now they're called ファンクションキー. Many speakers would rather use 機能 rather than ファンクション.

外来語	Origin	Meaning	Original Language
アベック	Avec	Romantic couple	French
アイドル	Idol	Pop star	English
アイスクリーム	Ice cream	Ice cream	English
アイゼン	Steigeisen	Climbing irons	German
アニメ	Animation	Anime	English
アンケート	Enquête	Questionnaire	French
アンニュイ	Ennui	Ennui	French
アップ	Upgrade	Upgrade	English
アロエ	Aloë	Aloe	Dutch
アルバイト	Arbeit	Part-time job	German
アルコール	Alcohol/álcool	Alcohol	Dutch/Portuguese
バイク	Bike	Motorcycle	English
バスケ	Basketball	Basketball	English
バター	Butter	Butter	English
ビル	Building	Modern steel building	English
ビール・麦酒	Bier	Beer	Dutch
ボンベ	Bombe	Steel canister	German
ボールペン	Ballpoint pen	Ballpoint pen	English
ボタン	Botão	Button	Portuguese
ブランコ	Balanco	Swing	Portuguese
チンキ	Tinktuur	Tincture	Dutch
ダブル	Double	Double	English
デパート	Department store	Department store	English
ドンマイ	Don't mind	Don't worry about it	English
ドライバー	Driver	Screwdriver	English
ドラマ	Drama	TV drama	English
エアコン	Air conditioning	Air conditioning	English
エクス	Extract	Extract	Dutch
エネルギー	Energie	Energy	German

エレベーター	Elevator	Elevator	English
エロ	Eros	Erotic	English
エステ	Esthétique	Beauty salon	French
ファンファーレ	Fanfare	Music fanfare	German
フロント	Front desk	Front desk	English
ガラス	Glas	Glass	Dutch
ガソリンスタンド	Gasoline stand	Gas station	English
ガーゼ	Gaze	Gauze	German
ゲーセン	Game center	Video arcade	English
ゴム	Gom	Rubber	Dutch
グラス	Glass	Drinking glass	English
グロ	Grotesque	Grotesque	English
ハンカチ	Handkerchief	Handkerchief	English
ハンスト	Hunger strike	Hunger strike	English
ホルモン	Hormon	Hormone	German
ホース	Hoos	Hose	Dutch
ホーム	Platform	Railway platform	English
イエス	Jesus	Jesus	Portuguese
イクラ	икра	Salmon roe	Russian
イメージ	Image	Image	English
インフレ	Inflation	Inflation	English
イラスト	Illustration	Illustration	English
イヤホン	Earphone	Earphone	English
ジュース	Juice	Juice	English
カメラ	Camera	Camera	English
合羽	Capa de chuva	Rain coat	Portuguese
カラン	Kraan	Faucet	Dutch
カラオケ	空 + orchestra	Karaoke	Japanese and English
コーヒー・珈琲	Koffie	Coffee	Dutch
コップ	Copo	A glass	Portuguese

クラブ・倶楽部	Club	Club	English
マーじゃん・麻雀	麻雀	Mahjong	Mandarin Chinese
マンション	Mansion	Condominium block	English
マスコミ	Mass communication	The media	English
メール	Mail	E-mail	English
ミルク	Milk	Milk	English
モテル	Motel	Motel	English
ノルマ	hopma	Quota	Russian
ノート	Note	Notebook	English
OL	Office lady	Female office worker	English
パン	Pão/pan	Bread	Portuguese/Spanish
ペスト	Pest	Black Plague	German
ピエロ	Pierrot	Clown	French
プロ	Professional	Professional	English
プロレス	Professional wrestling	Professional wrestling	English
ライバル	Rival	Rival enemy	Englis
ラッコ	Rakko	Sea otter	Ainu
レントゲン	Röntgen	X-ray	German
リモコン	Remote control	Remote control	English
リンク	Link	Link	English
ロードショー	Road show	Premiere	English
ロマン	Roman	Novel	French
リュックサック	Rucksack	Backpack	German
サービス	Service	Service	English
サボる	Sabotage	To slack off	French
サンドイッチ	Sandwich	Sandwich	English
サラダ	Salada	Salad	Portuguese
セレブ	Celebrity	Rich person	English
刹那	Ksana	Moment	Sanskrit
ソフト	Software	Software	English

ストーブ	Stove	Space heater	English
タバコ・煙草	Tabaco	Tobacco	Portuguese
テーマ	Thema	Theme	German
テレビ	Television	Television	English
トイレ	Toilet	Toilet	English
トナカイ	Tunakkay	Reindeer	Ainu
トランプ	Trump	Playing cards	English
ワンピース	One piece	Single piece dress	English
ワープロ	Word processor	Word processor	English
ヨード	Jod	Iodine	German
ズボン	Jupon	Pants	French

マンションを探す。

To search for an apartment.

Vocab Note: There are two words for apartment, アパート and マンション. An アパート is more like a 1~2 story building with a relatively cheaper rent whereas a マンション would be at least 3 stories.

ペンキを^ぬ塗る。

To paint.

Noun Note: 塗る is paired with ペンキ. 塗る can also mean "to varnish; color; rub".

「パン」という語はポルトガル語から来た。

The word "pan" came from Portuguese.

Chinese Loan Words

Newer readings from Chinese keep coming in from modern Chinese languages. Many words involve food and culture items.

皮蛋（ピータン）はガチョウの卵を灰で包んだ保存食である。

Pi dan is a preserved food of goose egg wrapped in ash.

搾菜（ザーサイ）は中国料理の漬物です。

Szechuan pickles is a pickled food in Chinese cuisine.

ギョーザはとてもおいしいですね。

Gyoza is really delicious, isn't it?

Loan	漢 字	
メンマ	麵 媽	Bamboo shoots boiled, sliced, fermented, dried in salt, and soaked
ラー油	辣 油	Chinese red chili oil
リーチ	立 直	Declaring that one is one tile away from winning in mahjong
ワンタ ン	雲 吞	Wonton

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Find a Japanese publication at least a page long and categorize the words as either native, Sino-Japanese, or foreign.
2. What is another name for 大和言葉?
3. What are 和製漢語?

4. What are 和製英語?
5. What is the main language where foreign words come from?
6. What is the difference of classification of Chinese words borrowed in ON readings and ones borrowed today?
7. Create a sentence with at least two 外来語.
8. How do the cognate phrases of Japonic languages demonstrate the way native words play a major role in Japanese?
9. Describe the phonological phenomena related to 外来語.
10. What role does Sino-Japanese vocabulary play in Japanese?

第 295 課: 和製英語

和製英語 is Japanese-made English. This means that these are going to be expressions that are fully or partly derived from English but may not have the same exact meaning or form as the original English phrase.

和製英語

和製英語 are constantly appearing. Many things that get Katakanaized often end up being very long, and when it gets time to writing them or putting them in some headline, they tend to get shortened. Once the abbreviation sticks, a new word is born that can often no longer look anything like the original phrase. Furthermore, these words can become fully function Japanese words. What does this mean? There are ways of making many of these verbs and adjectives.

ググる = To google マクる = To go to McDonalds サボる = To slack off

One weird instance that causes learners some confusion is on how to say apartment. There are two words for apartment, アパート and マンション. An アパート is more like a 1~2 story building with a relatively cheaper rent whereas a マンション would be at least 3 stories.

Some Japanese speakers, perhaps more so true of older speakers, view these words as unsightly as they are thought of as being words that shouldn't exist because they're corruptions of actual loans. Others think the exact opposite and consider it the beauty of the evolution of language regardless of whether English speakers still understand the phrases or not.

The chart below lists a lot of common 和製英語. ? indicates what an average native speaker of English would think what the word means having not known the origin of the phrase.

Phrase	To English speaker...	Meaning
フリーサイズ	Free size	One size fits all
パソコン	Pass kon	Personal computer
モータープール	Motor pool	Parking lot
ルポ	Rupo	Reportage
ドタキャン	Dotacan	Last-minute cancellation
ナイーブ	Naive	Innocent; sensitive
エンゲージリング	Engage ring	Engagement ring
インキー	In key	Having one's keys locked in one's car
ホーム	Home	Railway platform
ゲーセン	Gay sin	Game center
ワイシャツ	Why shots	T shirt
バックミラー	Back mirror	Rearview mirror
フリーダイヤル	Free dailer	Toll free number
ジェットコースター	Jet coaster	Roller coaster
OL	OL	Female office worker
フリートーク	Free talk	Free conversation
フロントガラス	Front glass	Windshield
ベッドタウン	Bed town	Commuter town
プレイガイド	Play guide	Ticket agency
ドライバー	Driver	Screwdriver; Driver (golf)
チアガール	Cheer girl	Cheerleader
ジーパン	G pan	Jeans and pants
ナイター	Nighter	Night game

ライブハウス	Live house	Live music club
ランニングホームラン	Running home run	Inside-the-park home run
フェミニスト	Feminist	Man who indulges women; feminist
サンドバッグ	Sandbag	Punching bag
ダンプカー	Dump car	Dumper
スキンシップ	Skinship	Close physical contact
サラリーマン	Salaryman	Salaryman/Salary worker
モガ	Moga?	Modern girl
モボ	Mobo?	Modern boy
デッドボール	Dead ball	Hitting a pitcher with the ball
ボールペン	Bowl pen	Ballpoint pen
アニソン	A Nissan	Anime theme song
ロードショー	Road show	Premiere
ソフト	Soft	Software
トレーナー	Trainer	Trainer; sweatshirt
アメフト	A meth toe	American football
ワープロ	Wah pro	Word processor
マジックテープ	Magic tape	Velcro
キャッチホン	Catch hone	Call waiting (from catch phone)
ハンスト	Han stow?	Hungry strike
マスコミ	Mass kami	The media
コンセント	Consent	Electric outlet
プロレス	Proless	Professional wrestling
セクハラ・セクシャルハラスメント	Sexual harassment	Sexual harassment

シュークリーム	Shoe cream	Cream puff (Actually from French)
ガソリンスタンド	Gasoline stand	Gasoline station
コマーシャルソング	Commercial song	Jingle
ノーブランド	No brand	Generic
ドクターコース	Doctor course	Doctor's course (PhD)
着メロ	Receive-mellow?	Ringtone (メロ as in melody メロディー)
フリーター	Freeter?	Freeloader
エアコン	Air con	Air conditioner
スマホ	Smart ho	Smartphone (Abbreviation of
セレブ	Celeb	Celebrity
エンスト	End stow	Engine stop
カーナビ	Car navy	Car navigator
バナリパ	Banaripah	Banana Republic (not everyone would get this)
ワンピ	One pee	One piece
ロン毛	??	Long hair
パワハラ	Power hara	Power harassment (abuse of authority)
シネコン	Shin akon	Cinema complex

Those Needing More Explanation

There are many 和製英語 that deserve special attention.

モーニングサービス: Morning service can be found at Japanese coffee shops where you can find very cheap (500 yen or so) meals containing eggs, toast, and coffee or maybe other things. Similar phrase include バリューセット for value meals in Western chains such as Mc. Donalds.

ターミナルホテル: Hotel that is cheap and very convenient.

ワンルームマンション: A very small room in a high-rise building around 6~8 帖.

シルバーシート: Seats that should be given to elderly people. It may also be called 優先席.

ツーショット: A picture shot of two people.

ペアルック: Look-alike.

セロ (ハン) テープ: Scotch tape. It is not saran wrap.

ガムテープ: Duct tape. Although it sounds like it's tape made out of gum, it isn't.

スズランテープ: Used to often tie up magazines. It may also be used tie up cardboard boxes.

ナイター: This is not a nighter. It is a nightgame. Party time!

パスケース: What you put your boarder pass to something in. Looks like a small wallet.

ミスド: Mr. Donuts.

シュークリーム: This is not shoe cream. It is actually a cream puff.

ファッキン: This is not fucking. It is going to Fast Kitchen.

メロドラマ: This is not melodramatic. It's a soap opera.

スキンシップ: This is physical contact, especially between mother and child.

ドーナツ化現象: This is suburbanization.

コンデンスミルク: This is sweetened condensed milk (加糖練乳). In speaking of milk, Japanese call evaporated milk エバミルク (無糖練乳).

写メール: 写メ for short, is the practice of taking a picture with your cellphone and e-mailing it to someone.

Examples (More to Come)

マイカーで通勤する。

I commute with my own car.

脱サラ (リーマン) をして、事業を興す人が急増しています。

The number of people leaving salary jobs and running their own business is sharply rising.

第 296 課: 幼児語

These words are of great interest. What are some of the first expressions that a Japanese speaker learns? How do these words stay into their personal lexicon? Do they not get said again after childhood until one becomes a parent? In English there are several words like "birdy" or "potty" that get used frequently by children, but they often remain as important euphemisms for the rest of one's lives. This lesson will try to investigate into such phrases that exist in Japanese.

幼児語

Like in English, there are several special phrases used a lot in the conversations of little kids but normally not at all in actual adult conversations. Some are simply used to try to get a small child to speak. Such words are often used to help young children practice making sounds by using words that are relatively easy to say.

One source of child words are onomatopoeia used as a nouns. Some become verb phrases to replace the more difficult actually used phrase.

幼児語	意味	幼児語	意味	幼児語	意味
ニャンニャン・まーお	猫	ワンワン	犬	モーモ ー	牛
ブ（ー）ブ（ー）	自動 車	ポッポ	鳩	コッコ ー	鶏
チッチ	排尿	ワンワン・モーモーす る	四つん這いにな る	ブンブ ン	蜂
チュンチュン・小鳥	ねず み	カーカー	烏	しーし ー	小 便

The repetition of sounds or whole words is also common. Many words contain only certain kinds of sounds. This is assimilation of speech to make things easier to say.

幼児語	意味	幼児語	意味	幼児語	意味
まんま・んま	ご飯	ぶぶ	飲み水	ジージー	祖父
うまうま	うまい	しゅっしゅ	汽車	たっち	立つ
ぺっぺ	汚い	ぱちぱち（する）	拍手（する）	かえっこ	交換する
ピーぽピーぽ	消防車	ぺろぺろ	飴ん棒	ピー	笛
おじょじょ	怖い	じょんじょ・ぞぞ	草履	ぜんぜ	銭
くっく	靴	てて	手	のんの	伸ばす
ぷう	おなら	すいすい	魚	ぼりぼり	おっぱい
キューキュー	救急車	オンモ	表面	バーバー	祖母
おめめ・めんめ	眼	ねんね	就寝・安心毛布	ト（ツ）ト	魚・お父さん・鳥
じじ	字	かんかん	髪の毛	きれきれ	拭く
きしゃぽっぽ	汽車	くさいくさい	大便	まっか（か）	赤い
よしよし	撫でる	ずるっこ	苛める	ぺっ・げ（げ）	吐き捨てる
たんたん	お風呂	ちゃんこ	座る	きれいきれい	洗う
あちち	熱い	ベベ	洋服	はあは	歯

Using ちゃん with onomatopoeia can also be used to refer to animal. For example, ワンちゃん (dog). This kind of abbreviation is common in making nicknames for your friends which can last life times. Some like うんこ for dog crap have become mainstream for all ages. Other words like this include 抱っこ (carrying in one's arms) and おんぶ (carrying on one's back).

高い高い高い: This expression is used when lifting up your kid up and down in the air.

Of course this is not exhaustive. Each household is different. Some people just try to avoid using these phrases with their kids and try to make them say the correct word. To others, they use these phrases to their kids a lot in trying to get them to speak. There is a lot of regional variety in these expressions as well. Many kids often try mimicking what things sound like and use those sounds to call those things.

第 297 課: Verlan (倒語)

The title of this lesson includes a word that you probably have never seen before. To put it simply, this word specifically describes words that have undergone internal inversion. How the word gets inverted may differ from others. In Japanese this is technically referred to as 倒語. Usually, though, it is referred to as 逆 (さ) 読み.

These sorts of readings have existed in Japanese for some time. The purpose of this inversion is to bring about some sort of emphasis. This sort of change is seen in various parts of any language regardless of one's generation. Though the use of these inversions is quite varied, they are generally treated as in-group lingo or 隠語. In Japanese 隠語 typically have negative stereotypes attached to them, and they will almost certainly only be known and used by a small group of people.

These sorts of words become most popular in Japan during the 江戸時代. Examples that were later passed down to the present day as the common word include しだらない (slovenly) → だらしない. Others that didn't quite catch on include words like キセル (tobacco pipe) → セルキ. Other examples like タネ (seed/subject matter) → ネタ ((joke) material/topping of nigirizushi) resulted into words with (slightly) different meanings.

These words got some publicity in the 1980s due to broadcast writers who previously wrote memos to publications (ハガキ職人) utilizing such expressions. A common example at the time was calling 六本木 ギロツボン.

It's also important to note that at an individual level, 逆さ読み come about naturally.

Examples

Below is a list of examples. Over time, notes of usage and example sentences will be added. Some of these words are r-rated words, but they are examples nonetheless of this phenomenon. Thus, they will be noted.

倒語	意味	倒語	意味	倒語	意味	倒語	意味
ロイク	黒人	ナオン	女	チャンカー	お母さん	チャンネー	お姉さん
チャンバー	おばあさん	ザギン	銀座	オカジュー	自由が丘	ワイハ	ハワイ
ジャーマネ	マネージャー	シータク	タクシー	クーイ	行く	ミーノ	飲む
ダータ	ただ	ラーハ	腹	リーヘ	減る	シーメ	飯
ベルター	食べる	マイウー	うまい	チョイモー	もうちょい	シーホー	欲しい
ルーネー	寝る	クリソツ	そっくり	クリビツ	びっくり	テンギョー	仰天
イタオドロ	驚いた	ルナドッホ	なるほど	ビーチ	ちび	ポコチン	ちんぽこ
コーマン	おまんこ	パイオツ	おっぱい	カイデ	でかい	ビーチク	乳首
チャイチ	ちっちゃい	シーアー	脚	ガイナー	長居	ソイホ(ー)	細い
トイフ(ー)	太い	エーケー	毛	チータ	立つ・勃つ	オイニー	匂い
サイクー	臭い	エーハー	屁	ソーク(ー)	糞	メーナ(ーン)	舐める
パイイツ	いっぱい	パツキン	金髪	グラサン	サングラス	マーヒー	暇

ロクブテ	手袋	コバルド	ドル箱				
------	----	------	-----	--	--	--	--

It's also important to note that 逆読み are often used in brand names. Some examples include the following.

HAKUBI C	HAKUBI from 美白	バンキヤ	From 焼きそば	EZAK	From 風邪
----------	----------------	------	-----------	------	---------

More Historic Examples

- **験を担ぐ**: The 験 read as げん actually ultimately comes from an inversion of 縁起. Both this and 縁起を担ぐ exist, and both mean "to be superstitious."
- **デカ**: Police officers who would wear kimono instead of their uniforms in the 明治時代 were called 角袖巡査. This was then abbreviated to 角袖. Then, the middle syllables were dropped and the remaining were flipped to get デカ. This abbreviation was due in part to intermediary inversions such as そでかく and くそでか. It has since become a word meaning "detective".
- **ポシャる**: From シャツポを脱ぐ. This essentially means "to surrender when one throws off one's hat", but this new verb now has a meaning similar to "to fizzle/break down".
- **道路**: Though it isn't from ロード, the thought is still interesting. People have noticed this since the 明治時代, it is still sometimes make people laugh when this is pointed out.

Reading Phrases Backwards

Sometimes some phrases read backwards make sense, but sometimes you get just another sentence. These are often made as brain teasers or jokes.

- **雲雲崖にこんち旅なし**: This makes no sense as is, but when you read backwards, you get a somewhat perverted joke → しなびたちんこに毛がもくもく
- **問屋の米を買いたい買いたい**: This is a little more X-rated. When you read backwards, yet get 痛い痛いおめこのやいと. おめこのやいと means "vagina moxibustion".
- **「予想」は「嘘よ」**: This is just clever.
- **手袋を反対から言っごらん!**: Don't do this or else you'll be hit six times.

Table of Contents

第 298 課: 敵性語禁止

During World War II, due to the fact that Japan was fighting Western powers, loan words of Western inspiration were targets of replacement with Japanese equivalents. If equivalents did not exist, they were to be coined. How far this practice went is controversial. There was no law that fully or partially banned English words. However, there were decrees sent out to broadcasting companies and organizations to rename things.

Some of these words have continued to live on and have helped Japanese further in nuance splitting. Others never made it onward, but this lesson is designed to introduce you to the scope of this language reform.

This lesson is not about why this happened in Japan. Nor is it about what things should be. Rather, this is purely about the words affected or created and their current usage. Although background information will have to be given and words such as "the Japanese Empire" and "wartime" will be used out of necessity, they are by no means employed to be offensive.

軽佻浮薄

This four character idiom essentially means "frivolous and thoughtless". This word was used in reference to English words (and words from other Western languages) in a time the Japanese Empire was in war with these nations, particularly starting in 1940. With this word in mind, it fueled the boycott movement of these words for their 敵性 (inimical character).

From a point of law, there was no rule put in place by the government labeling words of foreign origin as either "軽佻浮薄" and "敵性", and from a practical level, the nation still possessed relations with certain nations and the language had been borrowing words from Indo-European languages since the 1950s. Thus, a reversal of centuries of borrowing (although generally light up until the Meiji Restoration), would essentially be possible as any changes in the lexicon of the

language would be most effectively implemented in primary education to the younger population.

The movement was a natural reaction to the war. So, it didn't have a strong effect. So, in fields such as science, essentially no changes terminology were made. As simple English words as well as 和製英語 had been used before and during the war in not just the media but also by general citizens, it would, again, have been impossible anyway for the effect of English to be fully eliminated. As examples of words that were even used in government publications, シャツ, コンビネーション, チョッキ (from Portuguese meaning vest) never stopped being used.

In fact, although there were attempts by the Ministry of Education to rid of English education in schooling, due to English's role as the lingua franca of the world, it was ultimately left as an optional course of study. That is not to say that some schools went ahead and banned it as an enemy language, but it is not the case that English education or the use of English words--whether when speaking English or Japanese--was ever implemented.

However, there were a few things that were put in place that did influence the use of language in schooling. For instance, "pro-American" phrases were replaced, the use of Western-style dates was made limited*, and phrases felt to be derogatory to Japan were taken out of texts.

As for the second point marked with an asterisk, this has made a lasting impact on Japan. Though the Japanese-style of telling the date has never ceased and has been the most used throughout Japanese history, it is fair to say that before war tensions escalated that the Western calendar as well as customs on telling the date was becoming more and more common. Nowadays, the two systems balance out by being used in specific situations.

This sort of bifurcation is not natural for when one system is quickly replacing an older and more antiquated system. If we relate this to the use of Sino-Japanese and native numbers, we see that the newer Sino-Japanese numbers have been slowly replacing native numbers. So, if customs in using the Western and Japanese calendar were explicitly established in educational texts before the newer system fully took over, then these new conventions would take hold.

It was also not the case that loanwords were banned in military use. For instance, although we will look at baseball terminology later in this lesson, ストライク was still used throughout the war in war related materials when speaking of baseball. The French word スペリー for "searchlight" and ピスト for "cockpit" were very important words at the time.

Some words just couldn't be avoided, and some people including those in comedy and government would use this fact to make puns. For instance, what were people to do about words such as コーヒー (which even had its own 漢字 coined: 珈琲), ウィスキー, エンジン, and レコード? The answer is, of course, nothing.

野球用語

Baseball was loved by many Japanese at the time, but because it was the sport of the enemy and most prized one at that, the terminology for baseball was drastically revised as a means to still play it in a Japanese way. The change in terminology, however, is in fact not as sudden as it may seem. Nor is it evident that this movement was the reason for why the words were changed. This is because terminology began as early as 1890 by the help of 正岡子規, who tried his best to "translate" these phrases.

As these coined words coexisted with the English loans, it would not be a stretch for the Japanese coins to even naturally replace the English. Because baseball organizations were shut down from 1942-1946, this ultimately prevented permanent erasing of the English loans. In fact, some coins such as 野球

early on replaced English loans, which in this case would be ベースボール, which is still not used a lot today.

A strike is a ストライク. However, to avoid using this word, よし#本 was used instead, and the word 正球 was around too. In Modern Japanese, "Strike 1", "Strike 2", and "Strike 3" are ストライク・ストライクツー・ストライクスリー、ユーアーアウト! respectively. If you were to put the number first, you just have a counter expression. A strike out is 三振. Instead of the English, you would hear 「よし、3本それまで!」 or 「よし、退け!」.

On the score board, 振 would be used for strikes, 球 would be used for balls, and 無為 would be for "outs".

A ボール is "ball" in English baseball terminology, too. It was replaced by だめ#つ or 悪球. To say something like two strikes and three balls today, you would say ツーストライクスリーボール.

Below are many more words related to baseball with foreign and Japanese counterparts. A lot of them are still used, and it's most important to know which one's are not used. Those not used anymore will have a triangle next to them. Some words marked with triangles may still be used but not in the realm of baseball.

敵性語	言い替え	敵性語	言い替え
(ファール) ボール	だめ △・圏外 △・もとえ △	アウト	無為 △
セーフ	安全 △	バッテリー	対打機関 △
タイム	停止 △	フェアヒット	正打 △
ファールチップ	擦打 △	バントヒット	軽打 △
スクイズ	走軽打 △	ヒットエンドラン	走打 △

ボーク	疑投 △	ホームイン	生還
フォースアウト	封殺	インターフェア	妨害 △
スチール	奪塁 △	リーグ戦	総当戦 △
コーチ	監督	コーチャー	助令
マネージャー	幹事	アーンドラン	自責点
チーム	球団	ホームチーム	迎戦組 △
ビジターチーム	往戦戦 △	グラブ・ミット	手袋 △
フェアグラウンド	正打区域 △	ファールグラウンド	圏外区域 △
ウイニングショット	決め球	インコース	内角
アウトコース	外角	オーバースロー	暴投
ファールライン	境界線	スリーフィートライン	三尺線 △
プレイヤーズライン	競技者線	コーチャーズボックス	助令区域 △
フライ	飛球	エラー	落球
デッドボール	死球	ピッチャー	投手
バッティングピッチャー	打撃投手	フォアボール	四球
ストッパー	抑え投手	スターティングメンバー	先発選手
ライト	右翼手	レフト	左翼手
センター	中堅手	インフィールド・ダイヤモンド	内野
アウトフィールド	外野	スチール	盗塁
ノーアウト	無死	～アウト	～死
ランナー	走者	ゲームセット	試合終了

スコアリングポジション	得点圏	プレート	投手板
フリーバッティング	打撃練習	ホームラン	本塁打
フルベース	満塁	ホームベース	本塁
ファースト（ベース）	一塁	セカンド（ベース）	二塁
サードベース	三塁		

Word Notes:

1. 一塁, 二塁, and 三塁・サード can be short for 一塁手, 二塁手, and 三塁手 respectively. These are, of course, referring to the basemen.
2. 本塁 may also mean "main fort" outside of baseball.
3. スタメン is a newer 和製英語 for スターティングメンバー used frequently today.
4. 内野 and 外野 may sometimes respectively be abbreviations of 内野手 and 外野手.
5. フォースアウト may be abbreviated to フォース today.

Umpire Language

三振アウト	それまで！	ボール	一つ、二つ、三つ、四つ塁へ	フェアヒット	よし
ファールボール	だめ	セーフ	よし・安全	アウト	退け
ボーク	反則	インフィールドフライ	内野飛球		

Other Sports

The most important changes in the name of sports are below. None of these coined terms are used anymore with exception to 送球 and 打球 which instead mean "throwing a ball" and "batting/batted ball". Use the 音読み of these characters to read. The only exceptions to this are 雪滑 and 氷滑. So, use the 訓読み for these two words.

敵性語	言い替え	敵性語	言い替え	敵性語	言い替え
ラグビー	闘球	ゴルフ	打球・芝球	ハンドボール	送球
クロール (Crawl)	速泳	アメリカンフットボール・ 米式蹴球	鎧球	スキー	雪滑
スケート	氷滑				

Other Kinds of 敵性語の言い替え

For areas in which few words were changed, newer Japanese words held on more frequently.

地名	日本アルプス	中部山岳	Both still used in different contexts.
地名	パールハーバー	真珠湾	Both still used.
地名	シンガポール	昭南島	Latter only used in reference to this period.
放送	ニュース	報道	Both used. Latter used a lot in compounds.
放送	臨時ニュース	臨時報道	Latter is more formal.
放送	アナウンサー	放送員	Both used. Latter is more 書き言葉的.
放送	レコード	音盤	Latter more 書き言葉的.
放送	マイクロホン	送話器	Latter rare and old-fashioned.

交通	ロータリー	円交路	Latter not used. 環状交差路 used formally today.
交通	プラットホーム	乗車廊	Latter no longer used.
飲食物	サイダー	噴出水	Latter now means "spouting water".
飲食物	コロッケ	油揚げ肉饅頭	Latter no longer used.
飲食物	カレーライス	辛味入汁掛飯	Latter no longer used.
飲食物	キャラメル	軍糧精	Latter no longer used.
飲食物	フライ	洋天	Latter no longer used.
動物	カンガルー	袋鼠	Latter no longer used.
動物	ライオン	獅子	Both used today.
植物	チューリップ	鬱金香	Latter rarely seen.
植物	シクラメン	カガリビソウ	Both still used.
植物	コスモス	秋桜	Both still used.
植物	カスタービン	支那油桐	Latter still seldom used.
植物	ヒヤシンス	風信子	Both still used. Latter can be read as ふうしんす.
植物	プラタナス	鈴懸の木	Both still used.
音楽	サクソホン	金属製曲がり尺八	The latter would just make people laugh.
音楽	トロンボーン	抜き差し曲がり金真鍮喇叭	The latter would just make people laugh.

音楽	バイオリン	提琴	Literary but not used.
音楽	コントラバス	妖怪的四弦	The latter is not used.
音楽	ピアノ	洋琴	The latter is more common in literature than 提琴.
音楽	ドレミファソ ラシド	ハニホヘトイロハ	Latter not used.
髪	パーマ	電髪	Latter not used.
科学	酸素マスク	与圧面	The latter is no longer used.

Table of Contents

第 299 課: Idioms IV: 四字熟語

四字熟語 literally means "four character compound word". Technically, the term refers to all words made up of four characters. In a narrow-sense, the word refers to four character set expressions. That is what we will be discussing. For academic punctuality, the term "四字成語" is preferred because it means "four character set phrase". However, most people refer to them as "四字熟語". Due to their origin, most can also be called "四字漢語".

What is an Idiom?

Japanese people will easily tell you that the following is a set phrase.

弁慶の泣き所

べんけい
弁 慶 means "strong man" and 泣き所 means "place where one cries". Together, the phrase refers to the shin. If you are kicked in the shin, even if you are a strong man, you are going to cry.

Idioms are rated by "idiomaticity"--how idiomatic something is. Every Japanese person knows しめんそか 四面楚歌 (to be surrounded by enemies on all four sides) and はらんばんじょう 波瀾万丈 (stormy and full of drama). Phrases like 大学教育 (college education) are non-idiomatic. The idiomatic ones, though, are important to entrance exams in Japan, and they're often used in showing off to other people.

Again, the term normally refers to such words that deviate from a literal direct translation. Some compounds create a problem. For example, many idioms in Japanese have been introduced through direct translation.

A 四字熟語	教室崩壊	きょうしつほうかい	Destruction of the classroom
A Generic Idiom	冰山の一角	ひょうざんのいっかく	Tip of the iceberg
Idiom of the Body	鼻の差で	はなのさで	By a nose

To the English speaker, these expressions are no doubt idiomatic. As for the typical 四字熟語, they are not 'deviant' from the original definition. Most 四字熟語 come from Buddhist texts/Chinese literature.

It is to note that non-idiomatic (four character) expressions can over time obtain an idiomatic usage. 一時停止, which means "suspension", can now describe a guy stopping traffic because he won't go.

The 6 Sources

1. From modern society-- 官官接待 "bureaucrats entertaining bureaucrats using public funds".
2. Made in Japan, many are reading with 訓読み--手練手管 (てれんてくだ) "art of coaxing".
3. From Chinese literature--臥薪嘗胆 (がしんしょうたん) "enduring unspeakable hardships for the sake of vengeance".
4. Buddhist terminology--四苦八苦 "the four and eight kinds of suffering"
5. The insertion of 之 which has been used in neo-classical and Chinese-style Japanese literature in place of の. These phrases are arguably not 四字熟語
6. From 訓読, the process of reading 漢文. So, they're Classical Japanese sentences fit to Chinese syntax and pronunciation. These phrases are often considered anachronistic. As such, they tend to not be in dictionaries.

At times, 四字熟語 originating from Chinese have deviated in meaning. 七転八倒 (しちてんぱつとう) means "writhing in agony" in Japanese and "very confused" in Chinese. There is also obvious significant phonetic deviation.

Analysis of 64 四字熟語

You aren't required to memorize them all, but they are great practice. There isn't a particular ordering of the idioms.	黒風白雨 (こくふうはくう) Black-wind-white-rain 1. Sudden rain shower in a dust storm
一刀両断 (いっとうりょうだん) One-sword-both (sides)-cut into	高山流水 (こうざんりゅうすい) Tall-mountain-running-water

1. To cut in two with a single blow
2. To take drastic measures

色即是空（しきそくぜくう）

Rupa-in other words-there is-vanity

1. All is vanity

Note: 色 (rupa) means all things have shape

手前味噌（てまえみそ）

My-miso

1. Self-flattery

Note: 手前 is used with its humble first person pronoun definition.

付和雷同

ふわらいどう

Attach-peace-thunder-same

1. To follow people blindly.

暖衣飽食（だんいほうしょく）

Warm-clothes-tired of-eating

1. Well-fed and well-dressed
2. Being blessed materially

Note: May also be written as 煖衣飽食.

一期一会（いちごいちえ）

One-time-one-meet

1. Once in a lifetime (encounter)

Note: Of Japanese in origin

美人薄命（びじんはくめい）

Beauty-person-thin-life

1. A beautiful woman is destined to die young
2. Beauty and fortune seldom go together
3. The beautiful die young

1. Beauty of nature
2. Beautifully played music
3. Tall mountains and rushing water

花鳥風月

かちょうふうげつ

Flower-bird-wind-moon

1. The beauties of nature

三々五々（さんさんごご）

Three-three-five-five

1. In small groups

一望千里（いちぼうせんり）

One-hope-thousand-ri

1. Sweeping expanse

五風十雨（ごふうじゅうう）

Five-wind-ten-rain

1. Halcyon weather/times

九死一生（きゅうしいっしょう）

Nine-deaths-one-life

1. Narrow escape from death

五十知命（ごじゅうちめい）

Fifty-wisdom-life

1. At 50 one comes to know the will of Heaven

Note: This is a Confucius saying.

朝雲暮雨（ちょううんぼう）

Morning-clouds-evening-rain

Sexual liaison

三千世界（さんぜんせかい）

Three-thousand-worlds

1. The whole universe

月下氷人 (げっかひょうじん)

Moon-under-ice-person

1. Matchmaker; go-between

唯我独尊 (ゆいがどくそん)

Only-self-alone-honor

1. Self-righteousness

2. Holy am I alone

二股膏藥 (ふたまたごうやく)

Two-sides-salve

1. Double-dealer

2. Moving back and forth between two sides in a conflict

Also read as ふたまごうやく, and it is Japanese in origin.

一石二鳥 (いっせきにちょう)

One-stone-two-birds

1. Killing two birds with one stone

Note: Originally an English expression.

呉越同舟 (ごえつどうしゅう)

Go-Etsu-same-boat

1. Bitter enemies in the same boat by fate

Note: From a Chinese story where Go and Etsu were old rivals that toppled the vessel when they had to be together, which in turn made them have to save each other.

順風満帆 (じゅんぷうまんぱん)

Gentle-wind-full-sails

1. Smooth sailing; everything going smoothly

悪因悪果 (あくいんあつか)

Evil-cause-evil-result

1. You reap what you sow

Note: Originally from Buddhist scriptures.

一文半銭 (いちもんはんせん)

One-mon-half-sen

1. Meager sum of money

一文不通 (いちもんふつう)

One-sentence-block

Totally illiterate

一陽来復 (いちようらいふく)

One-sun-return

The return of spring

一利一害 (いちりいちがい)

One-profit-one gain

1. Advantage and its disadvantage

一挙一動 (いっきょいちどう)

One-action-one-move

1. One's every move

一死報国 (いっしほうこく)

One-death-patriotism

1. Dying for one's country

浅学非才 (せんがくひさい)

Shallow-learning-no-ability

1. Lack of learning and ability

円満具足 (えんまんぐそく)

Satisfactory-completeness

1. Complete, tranquil, and in harmony

再三再四 (さいさんさいし)

Re-three-re-four

1. Repeatedly

人心一新 (じんしんいつしん)

Person-heart-one-new

1. Complete change in public sentiment

弱肉強食（じゃくにくきょうしょく）

Weak-meat-strong-eat

1. Survival of the fittest
2. Laws of the Jungle

寂滅為樂（じゃくめついらく）

Loneliness-destroy-to do-happiness

1. Freedom from one's desires
2. Nirvana is true bliss

Note: Originally from Buddhist scriptures

色恋沙汰（いろこいざた）

Sensual-love-affair

1. Love affair
2. Romantic entanglement

醉生夢死（すいせいむし）

Drunken-life-dream-death

1. Idling one's life away
2. Dreaming away one's life accomplishes nothing significant

十人十色（じゅうにんという）

Ten-people-ten-colors

1. To each his own
2. So many people, so many minds
3. Everyone has his own interests and ideas

朝三暮四（ちょうさんぼし）

Morning-three-evening-four

1. Being preoccupied with immediate superficial differences without realizing that there is no difference in substance

Note: From a story where a monkey feeder would feed a monkey three horse chestnuts in the morning and four in the evening and switched it around because he got mad.

一心同体（いっしんどうたい）

One-heart-same-body

1. One in body and soul

一路平安（いちろへいあん）

One-road-security

Bon voyage

一路順風（いちろじゅんぷう）

One-road-gentle-wind

1. Everything going well

心機一転（しんきいつてん）

Heart-move-turn

Change in attitude

意気投合（いきとうごう）

Spirit-congeniality

1. Find a kindred spirit

才子多病（さいしたびょう）

Genius-child-many-diseases

1. Talented people tend to be delicate
2. Men of genius tend to be of delicate health

九牛一毛（きゅうぎゅういちもう）

Nine-cows-one-hair

1. A drop in the ocean

一衣帯水（いちいたいすい）

One-clothes-obi-water

1. Being separated by a narrow stretch of water

清風明月（せいふうめいげつ）

Pure-wind-bright-moon

1. Refreshing breeze and the bright moon

異体同心

いたいどうしん

Different-body-different-mind

1. Being of one mind; acting in one accord/perfect harmony

会者定離

えしゃじょうり

Meeting-person-always-separates

1. Those who meet must part

Note: Originated from Buddhist scriptures

生者必滅

しょうじゃひつめつ

Living-people-certainly-die

1. All living things must die

Note: Originated from Buddhist scriptures

我田引水

がでんいんすい

Own-field-draw-water

1. Self-seeking

2. Feathering one's own nest

3. Drawing water for one's own field

Originated from the rich agrarian society of old China and Japan.

五里夢中

ごりむちゅう

Five-ri (2.44 miles)-fog-inside

1. Totally at a loss; in a fog

古色蒼然

こしょくそうぜん

Old-color-blue-is

1. Antique-looking

2. With the patina of age

純一無雜（じゅんいちむざつ）

Pure-one-no-disarray

1. Pure in heart

下意上達（かいじょうたつ）

Lower idea-advance

1. Conveyance of lower class opinions to the powers that be

急転直下（きゅうてんちよっか）

Sudden-change-directly-under

1. Suddenly and precipitately

悠々自適（ゆうゆうじてき）

Leisure-leisure-self-capable

1. Otium cum dignitate

2. Living a life of leisure and dignity

海千山千（うみせんやません）

Ocean-thousand-mountain-thousand

1. A sly old dog of much worldly wisdom

Note: Japanese in origin

乾坤一擲（けんこんいつてき）

Universe-one-off away

1. Play for all or nothing

厚顔無恥（こうがんむち）

Heavy-face-no-shame

1. Brazen and unscrupulous; shameless

傍目八目

おかめはちもく

Side-eye-eight-eyes

1. A bystander's vantage point

2. Onlookers of a game see more than the actual players do

羊頭狗肉

ようとうくにく

Sheep-head-dog-meat

1. Crying wine and selling vinegar; using a better name to sell inferior goods

2. Extravagant advertisement

Additional 四字熟語

一分一厘	いちぶいちりん	Not even a bit
一網打尽	いちもうだじん	Wholesale arrest
暗雲低迷	あんうんていめい	Dark clouds hanging low
曖昧模糊	あいまいもこ	Ambiguous
惡戦苦闘	あくせんくとう	Hard struggle
一瞬絶句	いつしゅんぜっく	Rendered speechless for a moment
一生懸命	いっしょうけんめい	With all one's might
一心不乱	いっしんふらん	With heart and soul
一体全体	いったいぜんたい	What on earth?
迂闊千万	うかつせんばん	Very careless
宇宙開闢	うちゅうかいびやく	Since the dawn of time
容貌端正	ようぼうたんせい	To have handsome and clean-cut features
有史以来	ゆうしいらい	Since the dawn of history
和洋折衷	わようせっちゅう	A blending of Japanese and Western styles
和光同塵	わこうどうじん	Wise men softening their light while with the mundane world
老少不定	ろうしょうふじょう	Death comes to old and young alike
劣弱意識	れつじゃくいしき	Inferior complex
縷々綿々	るるめんめん	To go on and on in tedious detail

流転生死	るてんしょうじ	The cycle of transmigration
風声鶴唳	ふうせいかくれい	To be frightened by the slightest noise
風林火山	ふうりんかざん	Swift as wind, quiet as forest, fierce as fire, and immovable as mountains
武運長久	ぶうんちょうきゅう	Continued luck in the fortunes of war
複雑多岐	ふくざつたき	Labyrinthine
表裏一体	ひょうりいつたい	The two sides of the same coin
比翼連理	ひよくれんり	Perfect conjugal harmony between husband and wife
百人百様	ひやくにんひゃくよう	So many men, so many ways
眉目秀麗	びもくしゅうれい	Having a handsome face
飛耳長目	ひじちょうもく	Being well-versed on something
煩悶懊惱	はんもんおうのう	Anguish
万緑一紅	ばんりよくいつこう	One red flower standing out in a sea of green vegetation
万事承知	ばんじしうち	Being well aware of
八方美人	はっぽうびじん	A woman who looks beautiful from all angles
拈華微笑	ねんげみしょう	Heart-to-heart communication
如是我聞	によぜがもん	Thus I hear
如露如電	によろによでん	Existence is as incorporeal as the morning dew or flash of lightning
南無八幡	なむはちまん	I beseech your aid against my enemy!
内剛外柔	ないごうがいじゅう	Being gentle on the outside but tough on the inside
土崩瓦解	どほうがかい	Complete collapse
道聽塗說	どうちようとせつ	Shallow-minded mouthing of secondhand information
鬪志満々	とうしまんまん	Brimming with fighting spirit
東西古今	とうざいここん	All times and places
桃紅柳緑	とうこうりゅうりよく	The beautiful scenery of spring
同工異曲	どうこういきよく	Different in appearance but the same in content
天網恢恢	てんもうかいかい	Heaven's vengeance is slow but sure

恬淡虚無	てんたんきよむ	Rising above the trivia of life and remaining calm and selfless
天真流露	てんしんりゅうろ	Manifestation of one's natural sincerity
天地晦冥	てんちかいめい	The world is covered in darkness
天空海闊	てんくうかいかつ	The open sky and serene sea
天下泰平	てんかたいへい	Peaceful and tranquil
痛快淋漓	つうかいりんり	To be extremely delightful
痴話喧嘩	ちわげんか	Lover's quarrel
跳梁跋扈	ちょうりょうばっこ	Evildoers being rampant and roaming at will
寵愛一身	ちょうあいっしん	To stand highest in one's master's favor
忠言逆耳	ちゅうげんぎやくじ	Good advice is harsh to the ear
躊躇逡巡	ちゅうちょしゅんじゅん	Hesitation and vacillation
魑魅魍魎	ちみもうりょう	All sorts of weird creatures
着眼大局	ちゃくがんたいきよく	To take a broad view of things
智慧不惑	ちえふわく	A wise man never wavers
知行合一	ちこうごういつ	The doctrine of the unity of knowledge and action
单刀直入	たんとうちょくにゅう	Going right to the point
男尊女卑	だんそんじょひ	Male domination of women
多岐亡羊	たきぼうよう	Truth is as hard to find as a sheep lost in a vast plain
大漁貧乏	たいりょうびんぼう	Impoverishment of fisherman due to a bumper catch
大胆巧妙	だいたんこうみょう	Bold and clever
大山鳴動	たいざんめいどう	A big fuss over nothing
大器晚成	たいきばんせい	Great talents mature late
則天去私	そくてんきよし	Following heaven and abandoning self
造反有理	ぞうはんゆうり	To rebel is justified
先憂後樂	せんゆうこうらく	Hardship now, pleasure later
戰々恐々	せんせんきょうきょう	To be filled with trepidation

絶体絶命	ぜったいぜつめい	Desperate situation
切磋琢磨	せつさたくま	Cultivating one's mind by studying hard
世上万般	せじょうばんばん	Everything in this world
青天白日	せいてんはくじつ	To be cleared of all charges
正邪善悪	せいじゃぜんあく	Right and wrong
政權亡者	せいけんもうじゃ	One who is obsessed with political power
醉眼朦朧	すいがんもうろう	With drunken eyes
垂涎三尺	すいぜんさんじゃく	Avid desire
衰退一途	すいたいいつと	Being on the wane
頭寒足熱	ずかんそくねつ	Keeping the head cool and the feet warm
人馬一体	じんばいつたい	Unity of rider and horse
心頭滅却	しんとうめつきやく	Clearing one's mind of all mundane thoughts
神色自若	しんしょくじじゃく	Perfect composure
心身一如	しんしんいちによ	Body and mind as one
辛酸甘苦	しんさんかんく	Hardships and joy
支離滅裂	しりめつれつ	Incoherent
諸行無常	しょぎょうむじょう	All worldly things are transitory
四面楚歌	しめんそか	To be surrounded by enemies on all sides
生者必滅	しょうじゃひつめつ	All living things must die
純真無垢	じゅんしんむく	Pure and innocent
秋風落莫	しゅうふうらくばく	Forlorn and helpless
遮二無二	しゃにむに	Recklessly
詩人墨客	しじんぼっかく	Poets and artists
残念無念	ざんねんむねん	What a pity!
昨非今是	さくひこんぜ	Complete reversal of values

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. How do the definitions of 四字熟語 match up with the Kanji used to write them?
2. The order of characters in most 四字熟語 reflect Chinese syntax (SVO) rather than Japanese syntax (SOV). Show how this is true with examples.

第 300 課: Idioms V: 諺

諺 (ことわざ) , proverbs, are often short sayings, 言い習わし. A proverb shows some sort of virtue, a common truth that anyone can relate to. A proverb may also show moral, satire, truth, and a whole array of important cultural items in a short and concise way. Free translation is often needed to make them sensible to English speakers. You don't have to be Japanese to learn Japanese proverbs. This is a bigoted argument that you should never listen to. If you're human and are capable of acquiring new information, you can learn Japanese proverbs.

The first sentence of each example will be in Japanese script. The second will be the same sentence in かな. The third sentence shows the literal translation and the fourth sentence shows the idiomatic or general translation. If anymore information needs to be made about a given expression, a fifth line will be used.

漢字 to learn this week: 鳶、鰹、鷺、鷗、鱒、髭、麴、宏、蜃、禽、磨、蟻、雹、豹、脈、藁、虻、蝦、蕊、葱

諺

案ずるより生 (う) むが易し。

Giving birth is easier than worrying about it.

Fear is often greater than the danger.

天は自ら助くるものを助く。

Heaven helps those who helps themselves.

鰻 (うなぎ) の寝床。

Sleeping grounds of eels.

Long/thin building or room.

全ての道はローマに通ず。

All roads lead to Rome.

門前市 (もんぜんいち) をなす。

To produce a market outside a gate.

To have a constant stream of visitors.

他人の飯を食う。

To eat another's person's feed.

To experience the hardships of the world everyday.

情けは人の為ならず。

Kindness is not for others.

Compassion is not for other people's benefit.

見ぬが花。

The thing that does not see is the flower.

1. Reality can't compete with imagination.
2. Prospect is often better than possession.

寝耳に水

Water in the ears when one is asleep

Unexpected and shocking

一年の計は元旦にあり。

Sum of the year is at New Year's.

The whole year's plans should be made
on New Year's.

魚心あれば水心

If a fish has the mind of being one with
the water, the water also has the mind
of being one with the fish
If you scratch my back, I'll scratch
yours.

一を聞いて十を知る。

Hear one and know ten.

To understand it all from only one part.

猫に小判。

A koban to a cat.

1. Cast pearls before swine.
2. Give valuable to someone who doesn't value it.
3. Caviar to the general.
4. Really big waste of resources.

Cultural Note: A koban is an oval coin used in
currency in Japan made either of gold or silver.

餅は餅屋

As for mochi, a mochi store.

Leave things to the experts.

宵越しの金を持たぬ。

To not have the money to pass the evening.

To spend one's money as quickly as one earns
it.

青年重ねて来たらず。

Prime years don't return.

You're only young once.

腐っても鯛（たい）

Even if it rots, (it's still a) sea bream

If something has value, it doesn't mat-
ter what shape it's in.

石の上にも三年

Three years on top of a rock

Persistence leads to success.

李下瓜田（りかかでん）

A melon field below a plum tree.

Leave no room for scandal.

三つ子の魂百まで

The spirit of a three year old until 100

As the twig is bent, so grows the tree.

かわいい子には旅をさせよ。

Make pretty kids take trips.

Have kids experience challenges of
life.

漁夫の利

A fisherman's profit

Profiting while others fight

毒をもって毒を制す。

To use poison against poison.

To fight fire with fire.

宝の持ち腐れ

A held jewel rotting

Unused possessions

尻切れトンボ

A dragonfly with its ass cut off

Unfinished business

七転び八起き。

Seven falls and stand up on eight.

1. Keep trying when life knocks you down.
2. Always rise after repeated failures.

ペンは剣よりも強し。

The pen is mightier than the sword.

どんぐりの背比べ。

Comparing the height of acorns.

To have no outstanding characteristics.

言わぬが花。

The thing that does not speak is the flower.
Silence is golden.

すずめの涙

A sparrow's tear

A very small amount

焼餅焼くとて手を焼くな。

Don't burn your hand even when
you're making yakimochi.

Don't be susceptible to folly because of
jealousy.

李下の冠を正さず。

Not correcting a crown below a plum tree.
To avoid the appearance of evil.

腹八分目に医者いらず

You don't need a doctor if your stom-
ach is only 8/10ths full.

It's best to eat in moderation.

出る杭は打たれる。

The stake that sticks out will get hammered.
The nail that sticks out gets hammered down.

知らぬが仏。

The one who does not know is Buddha.
Ignorance is bliss.

笑う門には福来（きた）る。

Good fortune comes in the laughing gate.
Good fortune and happiness will come to the
home of those who smile.

猿も木から落ちる。

Even monkeys fall from trees.
1. Everyone makes mistakes.
2. Pride comes before a fall.

諸刃の剣

A double-edged sword

火のないところには煙は立たぬ。

Smoke doesn't rise from a place that
doesn't have fire.

Where there is smoke, there is fire.

藪を突付いて蛇を出す。

Poke through a bush and a snake will come
out.

1. To stir up trouble for oneself.
2. Let sleeping dogs lie.

豚に真珠。

A pearl to a pig.

Cast pearls before swine.

鶴の声

A crane's voice

A powerful voice decides an argument

月夜に提灯（ちょうちん）。

A paper lantern in a moonlit night
Superfluousness

井の中の蛙大海を知らず。

The frog in the well doesn't know of the
great ocean.

A person who is ignorant of the world.

馬の耳に念仏。

A sutra in a horse's ear.

A nod is as good as a wink to a blind man.

泥棒を捕らえて縄を縛（な）う。

Catching a thief and tying him up.

Hastening to do something after an in-
cident.

人は見かけによらぬもの

Don't judge people by their looks.

花より団子。

Dumplings than flowers.

1. To prefer substance over style.
2. People are more interested in the practical
over the aesthetic.

井の中の蛙（かわず）大海を知らず。

A frog in a well doesn't know of the big ocean.

1. To know nothing of the world.
2. Used to encourage someone to get a wider
perspective.

鳴く猫はねずみを捕らぬ。

Loud cats don't catch mice.

Empty vessels make the most sound.

濡れぬ先の傘。

The dry end of an umbrella.

Better safe than sorry.

弘法（こうぼう）にも筆の誤り。

Even Koubou made mistakes with the brush.

Anyone makes mistakes.

Even experts have their shortfalls.

Note: Koubou, posthumous name, was a Bud-
dhist priest famous for his calligraphy.

縁側の下の力持ち。

A strong person underneath the veranda.

Someone of great assistance in the background.

ローマは一日にして成らず。

Rome wasn't built in a day.

口は禍の元。

The mouth is the source of disaster.

良薬口に苦し。

Good medicines tastes bitter in the mouth.

Good advice is hard to swallow.

借りてきた猫。

A borrowed cat.

Being quiet and meek.

住めば都。

If residing, the capital.

Wherever you live, you come to love it.

多々益々弁ず。

The more, the better.

河童も川流れ。

Even an excellent swimmer can get carried down a river.

Even Homer sometimes nods.

Everyone makes mistakes.

蚤（のみ）の夫婦

A flee couple

寄らば大樹の陰

Look for a big tree for shade.

目には目を、歯には歯を。

An eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth.

河童の川流れ。

A kappa swept away by the river.

Even experts screw up.

石橋を叩いて渡る。

Hitting a stone bridge and crossing.

Safety on top of safety.

立つ鳥跡を濁さず。

It is common courtesy to clean after yourself.

蓼（たで）食う虫も好き好き。

Even knot-weed eating insects have various tastes.

There is no accounting for taste.

喉元（のどもと）過ぎれば熱さを忘れる。

If it passes the throat, you forget the heat.

Danger past and God forgotten.

時は金なり。

Time is money.

人のふり見て我がふり直せ。

Watch other's actions, and fix one's

A couple in which the woman is taller
than the man

上には上がある。

There is a top on the top.

There's always someone better than
you.

石の上にも三年。

On top of a stone for three years.

One who endures wins through perseverance.

落花（らっか）枝に帰らず。

A fallen blossom doesn't go home to its branch.

What's done is done.

沈む瀬あれば浮かぶ瀬あり。

If the current sinks, it will rise again.

Life has its twists and turns.

為せば成る。

If you do, it will happen.

You can do anything you have your
mind set on doing.

乞食を三日すればやめられぬ。

If you beg for three days, you won't be
able to quit.

Once a good-for-nothing, always a
good-for-nothing.

急がば回れ。

If hurried, go around.

Slow and steady wins the race.

own.

One man's fault is another's lesson.

生兵法（なまびょうほう）は大怪我の基
（もと）。

Crude tactics is the source of great
blunders.

A little learning is a dangerous thing.

隣の芝生は青い。

The next door lawn is green.

The grass is always greener on the other side.

隣の花は赤い。

The flowers next door are red.

Grass is always greener on the other
side.

郷（ごう）に入っては郷に従え。

When entering a village, obey it.

When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

焼け石に水。

Water on burning rocks.

Something bound to fail due to inade-
quacies.

男心と秋の空。

A man's heart and the autumn sky.

Both a man's heart and the autumn sky are
fickle.

玉に瑕（きず）

A flaw on a gem

When in a hurry it is faster to take a roundabout.

噂をすれば影（がさす）

Shadows if you gossip

Speak of the Devil

前門の虎、後門の狼

A tiger at the front gate and a wolf at the back gate.

Out of the frying pan, into the fire.

弘法筆を択ばず。

Koubou doesn't choose the brush.

An expert doesn't blame his tools.

A bad workman always blames his tools.

早起きは三文の得。

Waking up early gets you three mon.

The early bird catches the worm.

年寄りの冷や水。

An old person's cold water.

Old people acting reckless.

来年のことを言えば鬼が笑う。

Demons laugh if you talk of next year.

No one knows what tomorrow brings.

光陰（こういん）矢の如し。

Time is like an arrow.

Time flies.

二階から目薬

Eye drops from the second floor

Something that can't be done no matter what.

駄目で元々

Nothing to lose

仏の顔も三度

The buddha's face thrice

To try the patience of a saint.

痘痕（あばた）も笑窪

Pockmarks and dimples

Love is blind.

匙（さじ）を投げる。

To throw the space.

To throw in the towel.

鴨が葱（ねぎ）をしょってくる。

A duck comes back with a leek on its back.

A stroke of luck.

無い袖（そで）は振れぬ。

Can't wave without a sleeve.

A man can't give what he doesn't have.

濡れ衣を着せる。

To make someone wear wet clothes.

To make someone innocent look guilty.

一寸先は闇。

A sun inward is darkness.

The future is unpredictable.

身から出た錆

Rust from the blade

What goes around comes around.

捕らぬ狸の皮算用をするな。

Don't count the tanuki skins that you haven't caught yet.

Don't count your chickens before they're hatched.

Note: A tanuki is an indigenous animal in Japan that looks like a raccoon.

過ぎたるはなお及ばざるが如し。

Doing too much is the same as doing naught.

Doing too little and too much are equally bad.

転石苔（てんせきこけ）を生せず。

A rolling stone gathers no moss.

1. Those who are active make progress.

2. Those who frequently change jobs can't be successful in life.

塵（ちり）も積もれば山となる。

When even dust piles up, it becomes a mountain.

1. Little things add up.

覆水盆に返らず。

Spilled water doesn't go back to the tray.

It's no use crying over spilled milk.

終わりよければ全てよし。

All's well that ends well.

泣き面に蜂（はち）。

A bee to a crying face.

1. One misfortune comes after another.

2. Misfortunes never come alone.

3. When it rains, it pours.

叩けば埃が出る。

If you strike it, dust will come out.

Everything has flaws.

頭隠して尻隠さず。

To hide your head but not your ass.

To fail to cover up all your bad deeds.

虻蜂（あぶはち）取らず

Neither catching the horsefly nor the bee.

To accomplish nothing.

犬猿の仲。

The relationship between dogs and monkeys.

Natural enemies.

挨拶（あいさつ）は時の氏神（うじがみ）

Arbitration is time's god.

Arbitration is a gift from the gods.

2. Little and often fills the purse.
3. Many a little makes a nickle.

損して得取る。

Take a loss, then take a gain.

One step back, two steps forward.

三度目の正直

The third's honesty

Third time's a charm.

釈迦に説法

Teaching Buddhism to Buddha

An idiot trying to teach a know-it-all

脳ある鷹（たか）は爪（つめ）を隠す。

A hawk with talent hides its claws.

1. Still water runs deep.
2. A wise man keeps some of his talents hidden.
3. The one who knows most often says the least.

頭を隠して尻（しり）を隠さず。

Hiding one's face but not one's ass.

Don't expose your weak spot when protecting yourself.

三人寄れば文殊の智慧（ちえ）。

If three gather, Manjusri wisdom.

Two heads are better than one.

Buddhism Note: Manjusri is the bodhisattva of Wisdom.

千里の道も一歩から

A journey of a thousand miles starts
with one step

惚れてしまえば痘痕（あばた）も笑窪。

There are scars and dimples even when falling
in love.

She who loves an ugly man thinks him handsome.

Love is blind.

堪忍袋の緒が切れる。

For the string of a tolerance bag to
snap.

To be out of patience.

麻の中の蓬（よもぎ）。

Mugwort inside hemp

People become like those around
them.

朱に交われば赤くなる。

If you mix something with red, it too
will become red.

People become like those around them.

絵に描いた餅（もち）。

Rice cake drawn in a picture.

A pie in the sky.

門前の小僧習わぬ経を読む。

A novice before a gate reading an untaught sutra.

1. To learn something without being taught it.
2. You learn, without realizing it, from what is

溺れる者は藁（わら）をも掴む。

A drowning person will even grasp
straw.

仏の顔も三度。

Even the face of Buddha three times.
To try a saint's patience.
There are limits to one's patience.

悪妻は六十年の不作。

A bad wife is the bad harvest of sixty years.
A bad wife is the ruin of her husband.

触らぬ神に祟りなし。

An undisturbed god
doesn't wreak havoc.
Let sleeping dogs lie.

悪事千里を走る。

Running from a wicked deed 1000 ri.
1. Ill news runs apace.
2. Bad news travels fast.

枯れ木も山の賑わい

Dead trees are also a mountain's liveli-
ness

Dead trees are better than no trees.

猫も杓子（しゃくし）も

Even cats and bamboo ladle.
Anybody; anything.

旅の恥は掻き捨てて。

Get rid of the humiliation of travel.
Once over the border you can do anything.

around you.

3. A young monk outside the gate can read su-
tra he has never studied.

前事を忘れざるは後事の師なり。

Not forgetting the past is the teacher of
the future.

秋茄子（あきなす）は嫁に食わすな。

Do not feed autumn eggplant to your wife.
Autumn eggplants will reduce fertility and give
a woman the chills.

備えあれば憂いなし。

If you're prepared, there need to be no
worry.

袖振り合うも他生（たしょう）の縁。

Sleeves waving together is even karma from a
past life.
Even a chance acquaintance is preordained.

猫の首に鈴をつける。

To put a bell on a cat's neck.
Don't talk about doing the impossible.

糠（ぬか）に釘（くぎ）。

A nail in rice bran.
All is lost that is given to a fool.

餅は餅屋。

Rice cake at a rice cake store.
Every man to his trade.

青雲の志。

The will of a blue sky.

Lofty ambitions.

雲泥の差。

Separation between clouds and mud.

A vast difference.

初心忘るべからず。

We mustn't forget our beginner's spirit.

二足の草鞋（わらじ）。

Two pairs of sandals.

Having two different jobs.

猫を追うより皿を引け。

Take away the plate rather than chase the cat.

Attack the root of a problem.

小人閑居して不善を為す。

Small people in free time do vice.

An idle brain is the devil's shop.

二兎を追う者は一兎をも得ず。

He who chases two rabbits won't catch one.

Do what you can accomplish rather than wasting your energy at trying to do the impossible.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Relate the literal meanings of proverbs to their actual definition(s) for at least 10 different expressions.
2. Use the internet to search for Japanese proverbs and give literal definitions and more idiomatic explanations when either or are not given.
3. Annotate and explain at least 15 proverbs mentioned in this lesson. What do you notice about the cultural implications from them?

4. Religion and core values to a society are often shown in proverbs and short sayings. Show how this is so in Japanese.
5. A lot of sayings in Japanese originate from agriculture. Show this is true with Japanese proverbs.

Classical Japanese

- 第 301 課: Introduction to Classical Japanese
- 第 302 課: Historical かな Orthography
- 第 303 課: Parts of Speech & Basic Syntax
- 第 304 課: The Copula Verbs にあり (なり) & とあり (たり)
- 第 305 課: Adjectives I: ク & シク
- 第 306 課: Adjectives II: ナリ & タリ
- 第 307 課: Regular Verbs I: 四段
- 第 308 課: Regular Verbs II: 上一段 & 下二段
- 第 309 課: Regular Verbs III: 上二段 & 下二段
- 第 310 課: Irregular Verbs I: サ変 & 力変
- 第 311 課: Irregular Verbs II: ラ変 & ナ変
- 第 312 課: The Auxiliary Verb 〜ず II
- 第 313 課: The Auxiliary Verbs 〜き & 〜けり
- 第 314 課: The Auxiliary Verbs 〜ぬ & 〜つ
- 第 315 課: The Auxiliary Verbs 〜たり & 〜り
- 第 316 課: Nouns & Pronouns
- 第 317 課: Numbers XI: ひふみ
- 第 318 課: Adverbs
- 第 319 課: Conjunctions
- 第 320 課: Interjections
- 第 321 課: Demonstratives
- 第 322 課: The Particles が & を
- 第 323 課: The Particles に, にて, & へ
- 第 324 課: The Particles より & から
- 第 325 課: The Particles の & と
- 第 326 課: The Particles て, して, & で
- 第 327 課: The Particles つつ & ながら
- 第 328 課: The Particle ば
- 第 329 課: The Particles と, とも, ど, & ども
- 第 330 課: Combination Particles with もの
- 第 331 課: Bound Particles
- 第 332 課: Adverbial Particles
- 第 333 課: The Auxiliary Verb 〜らし

第 334 課: The History of ～ます

第 335 課: 万葉仮名 Introduction

第 336 課: Okinawan Script

第 301 課: Introduction to Classical Japanese

What is Japanese? Where did it come from? How has it changed? These are the three questions that you should ask yourself as you learn about Classical Japanese. The term "Classical Japanese" as used here is very broad. Essentially, it's referring to *anything written in Japanese from the 万葉集 until the development of pre-modern Tokyo Dialect*. This spans many centuries and language stages. As such, you should not take anything for granted. Always assume that things will not be exactly the same.

Going backwards in time from the present, before Early Modern Japanese, there was Late Middle Japanese, and before that there was Early Middle Japanese. Before Middle Japanese there was Old Japanese. The history of Japanese before this time can never be definitively known because no written materials or speakers from that time have survived to the present. However, what can be done is a deep study of the Japanese lexicon to see where Japanese might possibly descend from.

Ever since Western-style linguistic studies have been introduced in Japan, it has been assumed for several decades that Japanese should be classified as an Altaic language, which should then share origin with the Uralic languages. Other languages posited to be in this family include Finnish and Hungarian.

However, it is almost unanimously believed by most linguists that such connections are unsubstantiated, leaving Japanese to be classified as an isolate. What is certain from etymological analysis is that Japanese has taken a lot of words from various groups as it has developed, and it continues to do so. This will be a challenge for you as you study Classical Japanese as it is the lexical (word) changes that will cause the most headaches, not the grammatical differences.

In showing interest in wanting to learn about Classical Japanese, you have decided to go far beyond the typical understanding of Japanese known by most of

its native speakers. Most people take their native languages for granted. The great history and culture that makes it what it is often gets neglected. This section assumes that you have a decent background in Modern Japanese. So, once you are acquainted with different spellings and pronunciations, you will be quickly given lines of text from actual works. Childishly small sentences are rarely preserved, so you are going to have to be acquainted with *what people did write*.

Elements of いまび: 古典語

The information introduced is for advanced students of Modern Japanese to learn about Classical Japanese to experience a deeper understanding in literary texts. It also provides the basis to study dialectology as modern dialects evolved differently from Classical Japanese.

Sentences will be in 万葉仮名 if the text was originally in it. It will then be followed by a 漢字-かな line with Historical Kana Orthography. For all other texts, examples will be written with 漢字-かな. Although 変体仮名 were actually used, as they cannot be typed, we just have to keep their existence in mind. As for the use of 旧字体, if they are used, you should realize that they are. As for punctuation, artificial punctuation is put in place. **Romanization will be seldom used.** You should have a pretty strong knowledge in 漢字 by now. If you don't, you shouldn't be reading about Classical Japanese in the first place. You can see 表外字 and 外字 in classical works. As the readings will always be given, you should not fret over this.

HISTORICAL PERIODS

To be fully ready, you need to become familiar with the major historical periods of Japan as well as major Classical Japanese works.

奈良時代	Nara Period	710-784
平安時代	Heian Period	794-1185
鎌倉時代	Kamakura Period	1185-1333
南北朝時代	North and South Courts Period	1336-1392
室町時代	Muromachi Period	1392-1573
戦国時代	Warring States Period	1477-1573
江戸時代	Edo Period	1600-1867
明治時代	Meiji Period	1868-1912

Historical Note: Pay attention when notes are given that indicate time period. In order to prevent anachronistic mistakes, it is crucial that you take this seriously.

IMPORTANT CLASSICAL WORKS

	歴史仮名遣い	現代仮名遣い	Date(s)
万葉集	まんえふしふ	まんようしゅう	456-760
古事記	こじき	こじき	712
竹取物語	たけとりものがたり	たけとりものがたり	890
古今和歌集	こきんわかしふ	こきんわかしゅう	905
伊勢物語	いせものがたり	いせものがたり	905

土佐日記	とさにつき	とさにつき	935
大和物語	やまとものがたり	やまとものがたり	951
宇津保物語	うつほものがたり	うつほものがたり	967-984
落窪物語	おちくぼものがたり	おちくぼものがたり	Late 10th Century
蜻蛉日記	かげろふにつき	かげろうにつき	974-995
大鏡	おほかгам	おおかがみ	850-1025
枕草子	まくらのさうし	まくらのそうし	1000-1017
映画物語	えいぐわものがたり	えいがものがたり	1028-1037
源氏物語	げんじものがたり	げんじものがたり	1008-1021
更級日記	さらしなにつき	さらしなにつき	1060
今昔物語集	こんじやくものがたり しふ	こんじゃくものがたり しゅう	Early 12th Century
堤中納言物語	つつみちゅうなごんもの がたり	つつみちゅうなごんもの がたり	Late 12th Century
小倉百人一首	をぐらひやくにんいつ しゅ	おぐらひやくにんいつ しゅ	Late 12th Century
新古今和歌集	しんこきんわかしふ	しんこきんわかしゅう	1205
宇治拾遺物語	うぢしふゐものがたり	うじしゅういものがたり	1212-1221
平家物語	へいけものがたり	へいけものがたり	1219-1243
徒然草	つれづれぐさ	つれづれぐさ	1331
浮世物語	うきよものがたり	うきよものがたり	1661
奥の細道	おくのほそみち	おくのほそみち	1702

These are not the only texts where examples will be pulled from. It is just that these documents are the most important.

Conclusion

Japanese is still Japanese. A lot of the vocabulary and syntax of Classical Japanese are readily understandable. Yet, there are also a lot more native words as well as vocabulary that has fallen into archaic usage. The parts of speech are the same, but the way that they are used is quite different in many instances, especially inflectional items. We will spend most of our time studying the inflectional parts of speech. Just looking at a single passage of the 源氏物語 may overwhelm you, but if you truly go through it slowly, you will still find things in common with the present.

As this section assumes that you know a lot of Modern Japanese, it is also imperative that you make sure that you are confident in your skills.

第 302 課: Historical かな Orthography

This lesson will introduce you to historical かな usage and what it tells us about Japanese. The language has been changing ever since its inception. Many words/phrases have been or are homophonous. This is a primary source of confusion in understanding historical orthography correctly.

Curriculum Note: IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) spelling will be used in this lesson to transcribe Japanese words. There will also be corresponding Japanese text.

Historical Kana Orthography

Historical Kana usage (れきしかなづか (歴史仮名遣い)) was the orthography system used up until Kana simplification in the early 1900s. Historical Kana orthography typically refers to Kana spelling standards from when they were first established in the Heian Period to the early 1900s. Spelling variation and bad spellers during all of this time does cause orthography to be even more difficult to understand.

In addition to odd spellings with existing Kana, in original texts, you will also encounter obsolete Kana, which are called 変体仮名・異体仮名. However, due to the fact that they can't be typed without the aid of special programs, they are typically ignored in studying Historical Kana Orthography.

The Traditional 五十音図

Below is the traditional 五十音図. This, again, does not include variant Kana that would have existed for these basic sounds. However, see if you can find Kana in this chart that have become obsolete and are not shown in modern renderings of this table. Lastly, as pronunciation has changed over the centuries, no sound correspondences will be given in this chart.

あ	い	う	え	お
か	き	く	け	こ

さ	し	す	せ	そ
た	ち	つ	て	と
な	に	ぬ	ね	の
は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ
ま	み	む	め	も
や		ゆ		よ
ら	り	る	れ	ろ
わ	ゐ		ゑ	を

Chart Note: Notice that ゐ and ゑ are obsolete. They will be looked at more closely later in this lesson.

Vowel Pronunciation 上古日本語～現代日本語

Old Japanese

まんようがな
万葉仮名 is the predecessor of かな. This is the basis, then, for the Kana spellings to come once subsets of the 漢字 that composed 万葉仮名 were simplified to create Kana. As far as what 万葉仮名 can tell us about Old Japanese (上古日本語; 347~794 A.D?) pronunciation, to most scholars, the system suggests that during and some time before the Nara Period, Japanese had approximately 8 vowels. As this would simplify into the 5 vowel system of today, the original vowel structure would leave an impression on the language's vocabulary and burgeoning spelling system.

Below is Poem 707 from the 万葉集, a compilation of poems in Old Japanese that begin the literary history of Japanese. Notice also that unsimplified Kanji are used. Using resources if necessary, try matching the Kanji with the Kana associated with them. In going through this example, consider the following questions.

Question 1: What can you discern from this one example how 万葉仮名 was used?

Question 2: Are there any apparent archaic grammar structures that you can point out?

Question 3: What Kanji are unsimplified? How can you tell?

万葉仮名: 思遣 爲便乃不知者 片埤之 底曾吾者 戀成尔家類 注
土埤之中

歴史仮名遣い: お もひやる すべのしらねば かたもひの そこにぞあれば こひなりに
ける Potential Pronunciation: Omopiyaru subenos(h)iraneba katamopino soko ni
zo are pa kopi narinikeru Note: This does not take into account different o and e
vowels that more than likely existed at the time.

Middle Japanese

It is generally believed that the vowels "e" and "o" up until Early Middle Japanese (中古日本語; 794~1185 A.D?) were pronounced as [je] and [wo]. This is demonstrated in transliterations done in the mid-1500s by the first foreigners from Europe to transcribe Japanese. Consider place name spellings such as Yedo for Edo, the original name of Tokyo.

This is also verified by remote dialects in various parts of Japan. There are still 東北 dialects that retain the sound [je]. For instance, in ^{つがるご}津軽語, which has evolved so much that it is often deemed its own language, you see examples such as はやい → はーいえ [ha:ye]. Though this can be accounted for the vowel combination /a.i/ contracting to /e/, therefore producing /ye/, it is not an isolated example.

In Middle Japanese, the vowel combination /a.u/ contracted to [ɔ:], which is like the o in the American English pronunciation of "bore". This suggests that there were still two o sounds for quite some time despite what spelling might suggest. It's just that one was preserved in a diphthong, which would then simplify to [o:].

The differences between Middle and Modern Japanese pronunciation can be summarized with this table. The arrows indicate what the original pronunciation(s) have become in Modern Japanese. As we do not have time machines, transcriptions for Middle Japanese are merely highly probable guesses on how they did originally sound.

え = /je/, /e/ → [e]	えう = /e.u/ → [jo:]	お = /wo/, /o/ → [o]	あう = /ɔ:/ → [o:]	おう = /o.u/ → [o:]
------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

Other Vowel Notes:

1. The vowel a was likely more like the o in "stock" rather than the a in "car" as it is today for much of Japanese history.
2. It is also not certain whether u was ever compressed in the same way it is in Standard Modern Japanese pronunciation before modern times.

Long Vowels

Long vowel contrast in Modern Japanese is extremely important, but it's important to realize that at one point in Japanese history, there was no such system in the sense that there is today. Many long vowel spellings are simplifications. These unsimplified spellings tell us what previous pronunciations were and what changes occurred to lead to modern pronunciations.

For instance, in the chart below, you see the old spellings of long vowel combinations. It also shows probable pronunciations of them.

Combina- tion	Pronunciation at In- ception	Late Middle Japa- nese	To- day	Modern Spelling
あふ	[apu] ?	[ɔ:]	[o:]	おう

あう	[a.u] ?	[ɔ:]	[o:]	おう
おふ	[opu] ?	[(w)o:]	[o:]	おう
おう	[o.u] ?	[(w)o:]	[o:]	おう
うふ	[upu] ?	[u:]	[ɯ:]	うう
ゆふ	[jupu] ?	[ju:]	[jɯ:]	ゆう
いふ	[ipu] ?	[ju:]	[jɯ:]	ゆう
いう	[i.u] ?	[ju:]	[jɯ:]	ゆう*
えふ	[epu] ?	[jo:]	[jo:]	よう
えう	[e.u] ?	[jo:]	[jo:]	よう

Chart Note: Again, vowel pronunciation in particular environments in far older stages of Japanese is largely uncertain. Thus, the first column of pronunciations is greatly simplified. For clarity, the second column starts at the 室町時代.

*: The one exception is the verb 言う, which is spelled in a somewhat old-fashioned way although it was originally spelled as いふ.

Sino-Japanese words greatly influenced Japanese pronunciation. The Chinese languages from which these words came did affect the vowel structure of Japanese. To what extent the Japanese assimilated these sounds to the existing phonology system and to what extent these words had on later developments to Japanese phonology are uncertain. Nevertheless, it is safe to say that thanks to Chinese, Modern Japanese has heavy short-long consonant and vowel contrasts.

Consonant Pronunciation 上古日本語～現代日本語

Consonants tend to not change much over time, but over the course of 2,000 years, significant shifts can be seen. Unless there is significant evidence for consonants having different pronunciations in Old Japanese than Early Modern Japanese, no column will be provided for Old Japanese. As for the Modern Japanese columns in the charts, know that the pronunciations chosen are based off of

Standard Japanese pronunciation, and these pronunciations may not reflect the pronunciation of natives from other parts of Modern Japan.

S-Sounds

	Old Japanese	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
さ	[ʃa/sa]	[sa]	[sa]	[sa]
し	[ʃi/si]	[ʃi]	[ɕi]	[ɕi]
す	[ʃu/su]	[su]	[su]	[suw]
せ	[ʃe/se]	[ʃe]	[ɕe]	[se]
そ	[ʃo/so]	[so]	[so]	[so]

Symbol Note: ʃ is the sh-sound found in English.

Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling	Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling
最終	Final	さいしふ	さいしゅう	鈴	Bell	すず	すず
然う斯う	This and that	さうかう	そうこう	底	Bottom	そこ	そこ

T-Sounds

	Old Japanese	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
た	[ta]	[ta]	[ta]	[ta]
ち	[ti]	[tʃi]	[tɕi]	[tɕi]
つ	[tu]	[tʰu]	[tʰu]	[tʰw]
て	[te]	[te]	[te]	[te]

と	[to]	[to]	[to]	[to]
---	------	------	------	------

In Old Japanese, we see that there were no variant pronunciations of t. The modern pronunciations emerge after the Nara Period.

The only significant note of Old Kana Orthography that contrasts Modern Kana Orthography in respect to t-sounds is that つ at one point started to represent the 促音 (っ) with the onset of contractions that have led to the existence of the 促音. However, distinguishing it from a つ standing for "tsu" is difficult.

The size distinction between つ and っ was not standardized until simplification. ち・ひ・り → つ was first, and there is evidence that people did pronounce this contraction as "tsu" rather than making the next sound a double consonant. Eventually, though, this contraction did result in double consonants. Knowing what things have become, then, becomes essential.

Word	Mean- ing	Old Spelling	New Spelling	Word	Mean- ing	Old Spelling	New Spelling
日記	Diary	につき	につき	手	Hand	て	て
血汐	Blood	ちしほ	ちしお	東京	Tokyo	とうきやう	とうきょう

H-sounds

	Old Japanese	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
は	[pa]	[ɸa]	[ha]	[ha]
ひ	[pi]	[ɸi]	[hi/çi]	[çi]
ふ	[pu]	[ɸu]	[hu?/ɸu]	[ɸɯ]
へ	[pe]	[ɸe]	[he]	[he]
ほ	[po]	[ɸo]	[ho]	[ho]

[ɸ] came from Old Japanese /p/, the ancient pronunciation. [ɸ] would then become /h/, except in the sound ɸ. However, it is not certain whether ɸ ever did become /hu/ in any variety of Japanese or not.

By Late Middle Japanese, when these sounds were inside of a word, /ɸ/ became [w]. An exception to this is へ, which had become [(j)e] by this time but would have at one point been pronounced [we]. Another thing to know is that /wu/ never existed, so /ɸ/ would have been dropped entirely. See 笑ふ below.

Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling	L.M.J Pronunciation
川	River	かは	かわ	[kawa]
宵	Evening	よひ	よい	[jo(w)i]
笑ふ	To laugh	わらふ	わらう	[waɾau]
潮	Tide	しほ	しお	[ɕi(w)o]
縄	Rope	なは	なわ	[nawa]
帰る	To go home	かへる	かえる	[ka(y)eru]
顔	Face	かほ	かお	[ka(w)o]

Historical Notes:

1. As Early Modern Japanese came closer to fruition, え, ゑ, and へ became e all together and the distinctions that they once had become either dialectical or obsolete.
2. It is not clear to what extent and when the sounds wi, we, and wo were used. So, this is why most w's are in parentheses in the Late Middle Japanese pronunciation column.
3. Medial w's originating from /ɸ/ which came from /p/ are only preserved with [wa]. Thus, 川 is still [kawa] and not [ka:].
4. There are some compound words like 河原 [kawara], which is a contraction of kawa and hara with the medial h of hara being pronounced as a w. For most compound verbs, though, the は行 → わ行 sound change has disappeared.

Palatal-Sounds

There are no small y-sound かな. So, all of the palatal sounds that are now written with it were originally spelled with full-sized かな. Whether or not a y-かな was used or not depends on the sound changes leading to long vowels mentioned at the beginning of this lesson.

Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling	Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling
行者	Devotee	ぎやうじや	ぎょうじや	客	Guest	きやく	きゃく
勅	Decree	ちよく	ちよく	屏風	Folding Screen	びやうぶ	びょうぶ
憂鬱	Depression	いううつ	ゆううつ	万葉集	Man'youshuu	まんえうしふ	まんようしゅう

R-sounds

ら	り	る	れ	ろ
---	---	---	---	---

The exact pronunciation of r is not certain. Even in Modern Japanese, there are plenty of varying pronunciations, none of which are used to contrast meaning in any words. But, it is fair to assume that the r-sounds of older stages of Japanese had all or some of the allophones, /ɾ/, /r/, /ɻ/, and /r/, found in Modern Japanese.

W-sounds

It is not certain whether the exact manner of pronunciation of /w/ in older stages of Japanese was the same as it is today. However, it is certain that the ㄅ行 has had significant change over the centuries.

	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
わ	[wa]	[wa]	[wa]
ゐ	[wi]	[(w)i]	[i]*
ゑ	[we]	[(y)e]	[e]*
を	[wo]	[wo]	[(w)o]

*: ゐ and ゑ have been substituted in Modern Japanese with い and え respectively. They are only seen in purposely old-fashioned spellings, especially in place and personal names.

を started many words in Classical Japanese and it is not certain if it was pronounced as wo or o. ゑ was in many words and was pronounced as [(j)e]. The y sound is retained depending on how far back in time you go. Words with ゐ, as the chart implies, were probably pronounced as wi until Late Middle Japanese.

Word	Mean- ing	Old Spelling	New Spelling	Word	Mean- ing	Old Spelling	New Spelling
声	Voice	こゑ	こえ	井戸	Well	みど	いど
笑む	To smile	ゑむ	えむ	参る	To come	まゐる	まいる
男	Man	をとこ	おとこ	鷲	Eagle	わし	わし

The Uvular ん

The uvular nasal consonant N' appeared in the Heian Period due to the influence of Sino-Japanese words. This sound in Modern Japanese has various pronunciations depending on what it is followed by. It is often mispronounced by students as [n], which ignores this property of ん along with the fact that it is moraic. So, it is pronounced with the same amount of time as any other かな.

In Classical Japanese, ん was most likely pronounced across the board as a syllabic [m]. It was written as either む or ん, with the original pronunciation for

both being [mu]. む was either [mu] or [m] depending on context. Over time, [m] would change into the various pronunciations in Modern Japanese (Lesson 193).

It is believed that the origin of [N] was caused by sound changes in words like emperor てんわう, which would have likely been pronounced as [temuwa.u] at one point. Then, it would become [te.m.wɔ] and then eventually [ten:o:].

Sokuon 促音

Double consonants started to appear in Late Middle Japanese and were either never written out or written with a full-sized つ. Below is a Modern Japanese example of Old Orthography.

いまだ夢多くして、異國の文學にのみ心を奪はれて居つたその頃の私に、或日この古い押し花のにはほひのするやうな奥ゆかしい日記の話をしてくだすつたのは松村みね子さんであつた。

It was Matsumura Mineko who one day told me, who was just enchanted in foreign literature and still had many dreams, of this elegant and scented like an old pressed flower diary.

From 姨捨記 by 堀辰雄.

Voiced Sounds

G-Sounds

	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
が	[ga]	[(ⁿ)ga]	[ga]
ぎ	[gi]	[(ⁿ)gi]	[gi]
ぐ	[gu]	[(ⁿ)gu]	[gɯ]
げ	[ge]	[(ⁿ)ge]	[ge]

ご	[g]o	[(ⁿ)go]	[go]
---	------	----------------------	------

Chart Note: The superscript n before g in the Late Middle Japanese columns denotes pre-nasalization.

Pronunciation Note: G within words in Modern Japanese may alternatively be pronounced as [ŋ].

Z-Sounds

	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
ざ	[za]	[(ⁿ)za]	[za]
じ	[ʒi]	[(ⁿ)ʒi]	[ʒi]
ず	[zu]	[(ⁿ)zu]	[zɯ]
ぜ	[ʒe]	[(ⁿ)ʒe]	[ze]
ぞ	[zo]	[(ⁿ)zo]	[zo]

Symbol Note: ʒ stands for the English j sound.

D-Sounds

	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese
だ	[da]	[(ⁿ)da]	[da]
ぢ	[dʒi]	[(ⁿ)dʒi]	[(d)ʒi]
づ	[dzu]	[(ⁿ)dzu]	[(d)zɯ]
で	[de]	[(ⁿ)de]	[de]
ど	[do]	[(ⁿ)do]	[do]

Distinguishing Yotsugana (四つ仮名), じ・ぢ・ず・づ, was very important in Classical Japanese pronunciation. Though their pronunciations have slightly changed over the centuries, it is not until Modern Japanese that we see the great simplification in their pronunciations, which has rendered じ and ぢ and ず and づ respectively homophonous.

Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling	Word	Meaning	Old Spelling	New Spelling
火事	Fire	くわ ぢ	かじ	恥	Embar-rassment	は ぢ	はじ
人知	Knowledge	じ んち	じんち	数	Number	か ず	かず
上手	Good at	じ やうず	じょうず	鬘	Wig	か づ ら	かずら
続く	To con-tinue	つ づ く	つづく	地盤	Stronghold	ぢ ばん	じばん

B-Sounds

B-sounds are the same as in Modern Japanese. However, there is evidence that there was pre-nasalization before b in Late Middle Japanese. So, as you should have already noticed by now, voiced sounds were more than likely systematically pronounced with pre-nasalization.

KW/GW-Sounds

Old Spelling	Early Middle Japanese	Late Middle Japanese	Modern Japanese	New Spelling
くわ・ぐわ	[kwa/gwa]	[kɰa/gɰa]	[ka]	か
くゐ・ぐゐ	[kwi/gwi]	[ki/gi]	[ki]	き
くゑ・ぐゑ	[kwe/gwe]	[ke/ge]	[ke]	け
くを・ぐを	[kwo/gwo]	[ko/go]	[ko]	こ

As you can see, only kwa and gwa remained in Late Middle Japanese. Even these sounds would disappear by Modern Japanese in most dialects, which is why these unique spellings were ultimately erased.

For a relatively extremely example, consider the following words with the same Modern Japanese pronunciation but different traditional 仮名 spellings.

公道	こうだう	Public road; justice	行動	かうどう	Action
講堂	くわうだう	Auditorium	高堂	かうだう	Your beautiful home
坑道	かうだう	Tunnel	香道	かうだう	Incense smelling ceremony
黄道	くわうだう	Ecliptic	黄銅	くわうだう	Brass

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Show instances where pronunciation of かな differ from Modern Japanese in Classical Japanese.
2. What かな become obsolete in 現代仮名遣い.
3. What role does 四つ仮名 play in Classical Japanese?
4. What role does 四つ仮名 play in Modern Japanese?
5. What rules were scrubbed in the change from Historical to Modern Kana Orthography?
6. How were palatalized sounds written in Classical Japanese?
7. What long vowel combinations in 歴史的仮名遣い were actually long palatalized sounds?
8. Research what the historical spellings were for 後胤, 行員, 公印, and 光陰.

第 303 課: Parts of Speech & Basic Syntax

Way back in [Lesson 6](#) we learned about the ten major aspects that define Modern Japanese. These principles come into play in Classical Japanese as well. However, this does not mean that Japanese did not behave differently. As you will continue to see throughout the lessons to come, a lot of change has occurred in Japanese over the two thousand or so year it has been written down.

The 10 Major Aspects in Classical Japanese

Classical Japanese is referred to as 文語 or 大和言葉. These terms, though, are not exactly the same. The first refers to older Japanese prose and can refer to words that may still be used in Modern Japanese but in very literary contexts. For the purpose of these lessons, it will refer to texts written in Japanese before the 明治時代. 大和言葉 often refers to the language before the influx of loanwords from Chinese, but it may also refer to "native words". To be more linguistically correct, the terms Old Japanese, Early Middle Japanese, Late Middle Japanese, Early Modern Japanese, and Modern Japanese will be used to more accurately define which language an example sentence is written in.

1: The basic word order of Classical Japanese is SOV. Other aspects of word order are more or less the same as in Modern Japanese.

2: Just like Modern Japanese, the ordering of phrases in a sentence is based upon a hierarchy of importance determined by the speaker. This is why, just like Modern Japanese, Classical Japanese is said to be a macro-to-micro language.

1. おほかた ものの音には ふえ ひちりき つね 常 に聞きたきは びわ わごん 琵琶 和 琴

With the sounds of most things are the (elements of the) flute and hichiriki. What I always want to hear are the and koto.

From the 徒然草.

3: Classical Japanese relatively has more inflectional endings than Modern Japanese. A single auxiliary verb in Modern Japanese may correspond to several different ones in Classical Japanese. The use of bases has also changed slightly for some endings. Also, the overall frequency of all the bases is much higher in Classical Japanese than today.

4: The eleven parts of speech of Modern Japanese are slightly more complex in Classical Japanese. Nouns tend to have little change. However, the original pronunciation, meaning, and frequency of usage may be different on an individual bases. For instance, pronouns continue to come and gone in the language.

Verbs and adjectives are more complex as there are nine and four classes respectively instead of five and two respectively as there is in Modern Japanese. As for the other parts of speech, similar changes in form, meaning, and usage have changed on a case by case basis. Otherwise, the overall structure of Japanese has remained constant over time.

Part of Speech		Inflectional?	Lesson(s)
Nouns	名詞	No	145
Pronouns	代名詞	No	145
Verbs	動詞	Yes	133, 136-140
Adjectives	形容詞	Yes	134
Adjectival Verbs	形容動詞	Yes	135
Particles	助詞	No	151-160?
Auxiliary Verbs	助動詞	Yes	141-144, 163-168?, 172-177?, 184-190?
Interjections	感動詞	No	149
Conjunctions	接続詞	No	148

Attributives	連体詞	No	171?
Adverbs	副詞	No	147

5: In regards to etymology, the majority of words in Classical Japanese are of native origin. However, when you begin to turn back the clock of time, you start running into problems as to what is truly native or not. For general purposes in this curriculum, traditional classifications of words will be looked at first. If any important doubt of a word's etymology status is important to a discussion, it will be appropriately noted.

Foreign words, which at this time would have primarily been from Chinese in the form of the thousands of Sino-Japanese words, mainly come into play in Middle Japanese. However, they were not completely absent in Old Japanese texts. Sino-Japanese words would over time heavily influence the phonology of Japanese as well as the grammar in some respects.

6: Dialects have always existed, and they are present even in the 万葉集. As there is only a limited amount of written material and because the birthplaces of the authors of the poems are largely unknown, there isn't much to say about dialectical features of Old Japanese as there is for Modern Japanese. However, attested dialectal differences will frequently become important in future discussions. .

The speech levels of Classical Japanese have a different feel than in Modern Japanese. Honorifics becomes more important and more organized as time goes by as well as vulgar speech.

7: There are no articles nor number in Japanese.

8: There are words in Classical Japanese just as in Modern Japanese that were used by a particular sex.

9: Quality in emotion and sound certainly mirror to what is the case today. Dialects as well as isolated villages likely had distinct pitch as well as intonation patterns.

10: Punctuation is inconsistent and different depending on time period.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What does every sentence in Classical Japanese have?
2. What is the word order of Classical Japanese?
3. What is the language of Japan in the Classical Period referred to as?
4. How are the parts of speech in Classical Japanese more different and more difficult than in Modern Japanese?
5. 幽玄 (いうげん) "mystery and depth" is what kind of word in terms of etymology? How frequent is its category in Classical Japanese?
6. The auxiliary verb ず becomes ん when attached before a nominal phrase. What does this demonstrate?
7. Below is a simple Classical Japanese sentence. What is different?

山いと高し

やまいとたかし

Modern Japanese: 山がとても高い。

8. The Modern Japanese form of the Meireikei ends in -ろ, but the Classical Japanese form of the Meireikei ends in -よ. Modern Standard Japanese is based off of the Tokyo Dialect. Most Classical Japanese text is based off of the dialect region

of the Kansai Region. If told that these differences have always been the case, what does this mean overall?

第 304 課: The Copula Verbs にあり(なり) & とあり(たり)

The copula なり may be archaic, but this hasn't stopped anyone from using it from time to time. You will also see another copula verb, たり, that was used to follow nominals. Also, unlike the modern である, all of the bases are used for the copula verbs in Classical Japanese.

にあり (なり)

The copula verb なり comes from the fusion of the case particle に and the ラ-変 irregular verb あり "to be". The bases of the copula verb are as follows.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
なら-	なり・に-	なり	なる	なれ-	なれ

Before we learn about the differences between the two 連用形 bases, we will take a look at the six bases of conjugation.

未然形: The 未然形 is the "*irrealis form*" and is associated with endings that indicate actions that have **not** yet taken place: negation, desire, and hypothesis.

連用形: The 連用形 is the "*continuative form*" and is used with endings that indicate actions that are **in the process** of being carried out and the verb is either taken or taking place. This is why the 連用形 is used with conjunctive particles such as て and auxiliary verbs that express tense and politeness.

終止形: The 終止形 is the "*terminal form*" and is used to mark the end of a complete sentence. Actions are in the present if and only if there is not a temporal noun that tells otherwise. The 終止形 may still be followed by final and interjectory particles.

連体形: The 連体形 is the "*attributive form*" is used when you want to use something as a **participial** when modifying a nominal phrase with an inflectional part of speech. So, as all endings have a 連体形, any state of time and purpose is possible. It is also used as the nominalized form of a verb.

已然形: The 已然形 is the "*hypothetical form*" but is viewed as the "perfective form" in Classical Japanese because it is with conjunctive particles such as ば to show reason. Thus, unlike now the 已然形 typically describes actions that have **already occurred**.

命令形: The 命令形 is the "*imperative/command form*": this is pretty much explanatory.

Using なり

なり's first usage is to act as the copula. It creates a declarative sentence. In the なる-連体形 it either shows location or name. When showing location, it indicates the place or direction that something is "located" at. This equivalent to にある. When showing name, it is equivalent to the Modern という. This last usage appeared in the 漢文訓読 style of writing during the 江戸時代.

1. 吉野尔有 夏實之河乃 川余杼尔 鴨曾鳴成 山影尔之豆

かは かはよど
吉野にある 夏実の 河 の 川 淀 に 鴨ぞ鳴くなる 山影にして

In the river pool of the Natsumi River in Yoshino, you can hear ducks cry in the shadowy mountains.

From the 万葉集.

Orthography Note: Notice in the 万葉仮名 that basic words such as 山影, 鴨, and 川 are written semantically whereas almost everything else is written phonetically.

2. この 西なる 家 には いへ なにびと 何 人 の住むぞ。

What kind of person lives there as for this house located in the west?

From the 源氏物語.

Morphology Notes: この is not viewed as a single word in Classical Japanese. The particle ぞ is used as a **rhetorical** final particle.

The なり-連用形 is typically used, but there are two major instances where it isn't. With the particle て, に is used.

3. 誰 たれ もいまだ都なれぬほどにて え見つけず。

It was a time when no one was still used to the capital and none could find it.

From the 更級日記.

Grammar Notes:

- なれぬ is the verb なれる "to get used to" with ～ず in the ぬ-連体形.
- なり is again seen in the に-連用形 with て to show parallelism and is then followed by the pattern for negative potential in Classical Japanese, え...-ず.

4. 父はなほ人にて 母なん 藤 原 なりける。

The father was a normal person, and the mother was a Fujiwara.

From the 伊勢物語.

Grammar Notes:

1. In this sentence, にて is the に-連用形 of なり with て, and なりける is the なり-連用形 of なり with the recollection auxiliary verb けり in the ける-連体形.
2. Although sentences should end in the 終止形, there has always been a trend to end with the 連体形 for special emphasis which eventually lead to the fusion of the two bases.

Unlike Modern Japanese, conjugation is not as straightforward, and there are more auxiliary verbs. The primary thing that you should notice in the example sentences in this lesson is how the copula verbs are used in terms of **meaning** and **bases** and what they are used with. With that in mind, consider the following additional examples.

5. 天地之 分時從 神左備手 高貴寸 駿河有 布土能高嶺乎 天原 振放見者 度日之 陰毛隠比 照月乃 光毛不
あめのつち かみ たふと するが ふじ たかね あま さ
見 天 地 の別れし時ゆ 神 さびて 高く 貴 き 駿 河 なる富士の高 嶺を 天 の原振り放
け見れば 渡る日の影も隠らひ
照る月の光も見えず

Looking afar into the wide sky at Mount Fuji of Suruga, which has been a highly exalted and divine peak since the division of heaven and earth, you cannot even see the shining moon light for even the shadow of the passing sun is hidden.

From the 万葉集.

Word Notes:

1. There is no Sino-Japanese word in this poem. Although read as てんち today, 天地 was read with 訓読み as あめつち.
2. The particle ゆ is an old case particle meaning "from".
3. 天の原 is a 雅語.
4. 振りさく is a somewhat archaic verb equivalent to 遥かに仰ぐ.
5. The verb 隠らふ, 未然形 of 隠る (the Classical form of 隠れる) + the auxiliary verb -ふ, shows that the place is repetitively covered by clouds.
6. 我が敵は我にあり。
My enemy is myself.

7. たましきの ^{みやこ}都 ^{むね}のうちに ^{なら}棟 ^{いらか}を ^{あらそ}並 ^{いや}べ ^{よよ}薨 ^{世々}を ^{へる}争 ^{高き}へる ^賤しき人のすまひは ^へつ ^つ
を経て盡きせぬものなれど

^{たづ}これをまことかと ^{いへ}尋 ^{めれば} 昔ありし ^家は稀なり。

In the jewel-strewn capital the houses lined up with the abodes of the noble and base competing with their roof tiles pass the generations everlastingly; however, when you ask if this is true, houses (that appear) from long ago are (actually) rare.
From the 方丈記

Word Note: たましき is an epithet word that embellishes 都 which is used here to refer to 京都.

Particle Note: なれど is the 已然形 of なり with the conjunctive particle ど.

Historical Note: なり became だ as such. にて gave rise to で by first dropping the vowel "i", which led to voicing of で. As voiced sounds were believed to have had pre-nasalization, it would have been treated as a single mora. Thus, で was born. Once あり changed to ある, である was formed. Then, である contracted to だ in the East and じゃ in the West. When 東京 became the capital, 東京弁 became standard and so did だ.

As for です, etymology is a little unclear. It's clear that the で must have derived from にて, but the latter element has been interpreted in two primary ways. One theory of thought suggests that the predecessor of です was でございます, which is easy for Modern Japanese speakers and learners alike to understand. If one knew that ござんす was used a lot in the Edo Period in East Japan and that dialects in this region of Japan are known for truncating long phrases drastically, this relation is quite logical.

Another theory that is more fancy proposes that the predecessor is actually で候. 候, which is rendered as そうろう in Modern Orthography and さうらふ in Old Orthography, was a particularly formal auxiliary used primarily in texts now understandably called 候文. There are truncated forms of 候 such as そろう. However, there needs to be a reason for why it is further truncated and why a vowel change happened after the truncation. Vowel changes on the individual word level are not uncommon in Japanese dialects. So, this is not impossible. However, the fact that です has been "spoken language" makes it implausible from a social linguistic standpoint to be from で候.

The Copula Verb たり

The copula たり, from the particle と + あり, appeared in the 平安時代 and was often used to emphasize the qualities of someone. It originally appeared in 漢文 and eventually become more influential in 軍記物 (warrior narratives), 説話 (anecdotes), and 和漢混淆 (Japanese-Chinese mixed style). The bases of たり are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
たら-	たり・と-	たり	たる	たれ-	たれ

The 連用形 to is seen when used to make adverbial phrases. This is still this case in Modern Japanese with words such as 堂々と (magnificently).

Like なり, たり may be used for showing declaration. There are also four important patterns that involve たり when it is used in the 連体形.

...たると...たると を問（と）はず	No matter which regardless of	Like どちらであっても関係（かんけい）なく in Modern Japanese.
....たるや	Speaking of...	Strongly emphasizes something
....たる者（もの）	those who are (in the capacity of)	Describes someone with the exquisite qualities of something regardless of how long he or she was as such.
何（なん）たる	What	Either used in astonishment or just as 何である.

Examples

けうし わいろ えうきう
8. 教師たる者が賄賂を要求するとは！

A person in the capacity of a teacher seeking a bribe!

じゆんしゆ
9. 団体、または、公人たると私人たるとを問わず 遵守すべき。

(This) body, again, regardless of whether you are an officeholder or a private citizen, you should comply.

Modern Application Note: This example is an example how Classical Japanese grammar can still be applied today. So, the second line for かな shows it in 歴史仮名遣い simply for exposure.

10. その姿たるや、実に悲惨なものだった。

Speaking of the appearance (of it), it truly was a pitiful thing.

11. 君たれども 臣 たれども、だかひにこころざし深く 隔 つる思ひのなきは

Whether you are the lord or the vassal, if it were not feelings that mutually one's motives are deeply distant

From the 十訓抄 (The Miscellany of Ten Maxims)

Nuance Change Note: 君 in Classical Japanese means "lord" and not the informal you as it does

today. The opposite of 君 is 臣 which is an old term that is equivalent to the modern 家臣, which is less degrading.

12. しかるを 忠 盛 備 前 守 たりし時

Well, when Tadamori was the Governor of Bizen

From the 平家物語.

Name Note: 備前 was a former province of Japan and is now a part of Okayama Prefecture.

13. その 故 にはいにしへ清盛公 未だ安芸守たりしとき

The reason is that long ago when Lord Kiyomori was still the Governor of Aki

From the 平家物語.

Name Note: 安芸 is the former name of the 広島県.

14. かの 隆 海 律 師 の 魚 つりの 童 とありけるとき

When the Buddhist Priest Ryuukai was a child working in fishery

From the 今昔物語.

15. 五 日 のあかつきに せうとたる人 ほかより来て

On the dawn of the fifth day people that were brothers came from other places

From the 蜻蛉日記.

16. 清盛 ちやくなん 嫡 男 たるによって そのあと 其 跡 をつぐ

Since Kiyomori was the first son, he inherited that position.

From the 平家物語.

Word Note: 跡 is used to refer to inheritance, which is why it is translated as "position".

HISTORICAL NOTE: Once the copula だ became the main copula verb, both なり and たり fell out of use. たり, as mentioned earlier, is sometimes used in modern contexts as the auxiliary verb -たる in some lasting patterns.

Archaism Note: There are still instances where the auxiliary copula verb たり is still used in Modern Japanese. As it is more emphatic, it often serves a role in formal yet serious situations. One instance is 日本よ国家たれ! (Japan, be a nation!) and its derivations.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Make a chart of the bases of the copula なり.
2. Make a chart of the bases of the copula たり.
3. Create a sentence with たるや.
4. In the following example sentence, find the copula verb and tell what base it is in.

はやても龍の吹かするなり

はやてもりうのふかするなり

Note: The copula verb is used like the Modern Japanese "no da" in the sentence above.

5. When did たり first appear and in what kind of writing?
6. How is 何たる used?

第 305 課: Adjectives I: ク & シク

Adjectives in Modern Japanese are either 形容詞 or 形容動詞. 形容詞 today are actually the simplified result of two kinds of adjectives: ク and シク ending 形容詞. In this lesson you will learn how to conjugate and use these two classes of Classical Japanese verbs and also how they are different from each other.

ク活用形容詞

ク活用形容詞 get their name from the fact that their 連用形 is く-. ク adjectives are known for describing physicality. Things like shallow 浅し, black 黒し, etc. are all ク活用形容詞. So what's different about Modern 形容詞 and ク活用形容詞? First, we need to understand what Modern 形容詞 are.

In Modern Japanese

In Modern Japanese 形容詞 are all adjectives that end in ~い and that can naturally be conjugated without assistance from だ. The bases of 形容詞 are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
かる	く・かり	い	い	けれ	かれ

The かる-未然形 is used with the volitional ~う. In actually, ~う attaches to the から-未然形, the true 未然形. Remember, the combination あ+う becomes pronounced as "おお". When spelling reform took place, the spelling became おう. The two 連用形 are actually the **remnants** of an entire two base system from Classical Japanese. The 終止形 and 連体形 are the **same** in Modern Japanese, and the 命令形 is almost **never** used.

In Classical Japanese

In Classical Japanese ク活用動詞 circumference only adjectives that end in ~し, that can naturally be conjugated into two sets of bases without the assistance of the copula なり, and that have meaning that is specific to physicality. There are two bases of ク活用動詞: く stem and かり stem. The two sets of bases of ク活用動詞 are:

	＜ stem	かり stem
未然形	X	から
連用形	＜	かり
終止形	し	かり*
連体形	き	かる
已然形	けれ	かれ*
命令形	X	かれ

The ＜ stem bases are the original bases, and かり stem bases are あり + the ＜-連用形. When this finally gave way in the 平安時代 to produce the かり stem bases, bases became available for 形容詞 with a ㄅ変 irregular conjugation--あり was an irregular verb. So, before the 平安時代, only ＜ stem conjugations existed. As most of Classical Japanese literature was written from the 平安時代 and afterward, you need to know how they differed.

The ＜ stem bases are with conjunctive particles such as て and do as well as with nominals, but the かり stem bases are not. **The かり stem bases are used with auxiliary verbs**, but the ＜ stem bases are not. Before the 平安時代, あり was used to compensate the limitations of the ＜ stem bases, the true reason why the かり stem bases formed.

The から-未然形 is used for negation, volition, or desire. Before the 平安時代, you had to use ある in the negative after the ＜-連用形. In Classical Japanese the 終止形 and 連体形 are different. As for the 已然形, it is viewed as the perfective form because it is used with endings such as ば. ば wasn't used like today until the 室町時代 and centuries went by before it became only used like today. In Classical Japanese the 命令形 is actually used.

*: The かり stem 終止形 and 已然形 are **only** used for two adjectives which are considered exceptions because of this. These adjectives, 多し and 無し, which may also be referred to as 多かり and 無かり, are seen with these かり stem conjugations often in writings from the 平安時代 onward in poetry, tales, and other sorts of writing.

Summary

- I. Modern 形容詞 end in ～い and account for all adjectives that can naturally conjugate whereas ク活用形容詞 end in ～し and account for adjectives of physicality that can naturally conjugate .

- II. The bases are significantly different between Modern 形容詞 and ク活用形容詞.
- III. The 終止形 and 連体形 are not the same in Classical Japanese.
- IV. The 未然形, 已然形, and 命令形 are used slightly different between the two eras.

使用例

1. 所も変はらず 人も多かれど いにしへ見し人は ^{にさんじふにん} 二 三 十 人 が中にわづかにひとりふたりなり。

Places too don't change, and although there are many people, of the 20 or 30 people that I have seen in the past, there are (now) merely one or two.

From the 方丈記.

Grammar Note: The particle が before なか is used in Classical Japanese as the possessive case particle.

2. ^{いらか} 萱 ^{いや} を争へる高き 賤 しき人のすみひは

The houses of both the noble and the base competing with their roof tiles

From the 方丈記.

3. 消えずといへども ^{ゆふ} タ を待つ事なし。

Even if (the dew) doesn't vanish, there is never a case where it waits for evening.

From the 方丈記.

4. ^あ 目も當てられぬこと多かり。

There are many things that one couldn't cast one's eyes on.

From the 方丈記.

5. この吹く風は よきかたの風なり。

This wind that is blowing is wind from a good direction.

From the 竹取物語.

6. よからぬ物

Things that aren't good

7. 上は ^{さやまき} 鞘 ^ぬ 巻 の黒く塗りたりけるが

As for the surface, it was varnished black with a sayamaki.

From the 平家物語.

Definition Note: A 鞘巻 is a part of a short sword.

8. 善かれ。

Be good!

Archaism Note: Sometimes old forms of adjectives show up in Modern Japanese phrases. For instance, the usage of the 連体形 as a nominal form is very common in set phrases such as proverbs even today.

9. 弱きを助け、強きを挫く。

Help the weak, and crush the strong.

シク活用形容詞

シク活用形容詞 in Modern Japanese are 形容詞 that **end in しい or じい**. These adjectives are typically subjective. These also tend to have different meanings than now. For example, をかし in Classical Japanese is equivalent to "zestful", but its modern form おかしい means "funny". The bases of シク活用形容詞 are the same as ク活用形容詞 with the only difference being that -し is present. This, of course, is -じ whenever the adjective ends in -じ.

Stem	未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
く	X	しく	し	しき	しけれ	X
かり	しから	しかり	X	しかる	X	しかれ

Common シク活用形容詞 in Classical Japanese include the following.

いみじ	Extreme	同じ (おなじ)	Same
嬉し (うれし)	Happy	ゆかし	Attractive
正し (ただし)	Correct	美し (うつくし)	Pretty

Grammar Note: 同じ has two alternative 連体形 aside from the かり-stem 同じかる, おなじ and おなじき. The first is used in 和文 (classical) texts while the second is used in 漢文.

使用例

10. ゆめうれしからず。

I would not be happy at all.

From the 土佐物語.

11. また、これに同じかるべし。

Again, it should be the same as this.

From the 徒然草.

12. さりければ おとど 大臣 いときよらに すをがさね 蘇 芳 襲 などきたまうて きさき 后 の宮にまゐりたまうて
みん おほむせうそこ
院 の 御 消 息 のいとうれしく

侍りてかくいろゆるされて侍こと などきこえ給ふ。

With that the reason, the minister was very elegant and handsome, and he wore suoagasane and came to the palace of the empress and said he was very happy to receive a message from the retired emperor and that he was allowed to wear the restricted colors.

From the 大和物語.

Cultural Note: 蘇芳襲 were layered clothes with light brown on front and dark red underneath.

13. いみじううれしかりしものかな。

What an extremely pleasant thing it was!

From the 枕草子.

Contraction Note: いみじう is a contraction of いみじく.

14. 柳などをかしこそさらなれ それもまだまゆにこもりたるはをかし。

It's needless to say that the (blossoming of the) willow tree is zestful, and the willow tree still covered in a cocoon(-like bud) is also zestful.

From the 枕草子.

15. おもしろく咲きたる さくら 櫻 を長く折りて 大きな かめ 瓶 にさしたるこそをかしけれ。

Picking up beautifully blossomed cherry blossoms and placing them in a big vase is precisely zestful.

From the 枕草子.

16. うれしきもの まだ見ぬ物語の一を見て いみじうゆかしとのみ思ふが 残り見いでたる。

Pleasing things. You looked at a volume of a story you still hadn't read, and just as you were thinking that it was only extremely attractive, you found the remaining volume.
From the 枕草子.

17. 同じ心ならん人としめやかに物語して をかしき事も 世の ^{はかな} 儚き事も うらなく言ひ慰まんこそ
うれしかるべき

にさる人あるまじければ つゆ違はざらんと向ひみたらんは たゞひとりある心地やせん。
If there is a person of the same heart, I will solemnly talk (with that person) about the zestful things, the vain things, and if we certainly comfort (each other) without hiding things it will be a happy thing. But, without there being supposed to be such a person, in order to not differ even slightly with one and other, if we confront each other, we will have the feeling of one.

From the 徒然草.

だざいふ
18. 同じき三年 太 宰 大 弐になる。

He became the Daini of the Dazaifu in the same third year.
From the 平家物語.

Important Contraction Rules

The k in the き・しき-連体形 and the k in the く・しく-連用形 is sometimes dropped in Classical Japanese. As for the contraction in the 連体形, this is how the modern form of 形容詞 developed. The contraction in the 連用形 is maintained in many dialects today. As for the 連用形 contraction, be cautious in pronunciation as 歴史仮名遣い applies.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Conjugate the シク活用形容詞 口惜し (くちをし) meaning "regrettable" into its bases.
2. Conjugate the ク活用形容詞 青し (あおし) meaning "blue" into its bases.
3. What do most ク活用形容詞 describe?

4. What do most シク活用動詞 describe?

5. Illustrate the difference between the 終止形 and 連体形 and show what they became in Modern Japanese for both types of adjectives.

第 306 課: Adjectives II: ナリ & タリ

Adjectives in Classical Japanese look similar to their modern counterparts, but the differences in the usage of bases is quite different. ナリ型形容動詞 are cognate to Modern Japanese 形容動詞. タリ型形容動詞 are cognate to 連体詞 that end in ~たる are adverbs that are end in to.

ナリ型形容動詞

形容動詞 can be created by adding ~か, ~やか, and ~らか to more morphemes that for the most part all appear to have been nominal phrases. The original nouns are normally not used, but these adjectives make up the majority of 形容動詞 in Modern Japanese and ナリ型形容動詞 in Classical Japanese.

Another important ending used to make 形容動詞 is ~げ. Of course, there are other 形容動詞 that don't end in these sounds. In fact, these endings are only for native words. So, there are a ton of Sino-Japanese words that can be used adjectivally, just as in Modern Japanese.

One of the main differences that you will notice about ナリ型形容動詞 is that the bases are different and that the adjectives are used differently altogether. Rather than saying ばかじゃない you would say ばかならず. The bases for 形容動詞 all have a ラ変 conjugation. This means that they have the same conjugation as the irregular Classical Japanese verb あり. Below are the bases.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
なら	なり・に	なり	なる	なれ	なれ

Similar to 形容詞, the に-連用形 is used with conjunctive particles and may be used adverbially. Since all but one base is a ラ変 conjugate, the なる-連体形 may follow nominals whereas the かる・しかる-連体形 cannot.

Curriculum Note: Tenses and politeness for Classical Japanese have not been covered yet.

Examples

ちやう あひだ いへ おほ
1. 三、四 町 を吹きまくる 間 に、こまれる 家 ども、 大 きなる小さきも、一つとして破れざるはなし。

There was not a single house big or small not destroyed in the fire that blew away three, four

towns.

From the 方丈記.

Grammar Notes:

1. ども is used frequently to pluralize items in Classical Japanese.
2. The 連体形 can be used to show nominalization.
3. ざる is the 連体形 of the negative auxiliary verb -ず.

しづ

2. 心も 静 かならず。

The heart is unsettled.

From the 徒然草.

くれなゐ

3. あまねく 紅 なる中に

Throughout the completely red sky

From the 方丈記.

4. 心おのづから静かなれば

Since the heart was naturally quite,

From the 徒然草.

Particle Note: The particle ば is seen after the 已然形 in Classical Japanese to mean "since".

はげ

5. 風 烈 しく吹きて 静かならざらし夜 いぬ ばかり みやこ たつみ い
戌 の時 許 都 の 東 南 より火出で来て

いぬゐ

西 北 に至る。

In the night at around eight o' clock where the wind blew fiercely and did not settle down, a fire came from the southeast of the capital and went northwest.

From the 方丈記.

Contraction Note: The modern contraction rules of Modern Japanese are not reflected throughout the Classical Japanese era.

Auxiliary Note: The auxiliary verb ~き, in the し-連体形, shows retrospective past.

Word Note: いぬゐ is an old word for northwest as well is たつみ for southeast.

6. 心は ^{えん}縁 にひかれて移るものなれば ^{のど}閑 かならずでは ^{ぎやう がた}道は 行 じ 難 し。

Since one's heart is something that can be dragged and changed into another, if one's mind is not quite, it is difficult to practice.

From the 徒然草.

Contraction Note: ～では is the contraction of ～ずには.

7. つれづれなるままに

Just as at one's leisure

From the 徒然草.

8. 中 ^な御 ^か門 ^ど京 ^{きやう}極 ^{ごく} のほどより大きな ^{つじ}風 ^{かせ} 起こりて

A large wind from Nakamikado Kyougoku occurred, and

From the 方丈記.

Meaning Notes:

1. ほど as a noun in Classical Japanese can mean "direction".
2. Remember that the particle より can be used to mean "from".

9. いみじく静かに ^{おほ}やけ ^{おん}ふみ ^み公 に 御 文 たてまつり給ふ。

She offered the letter to the emperor very quietly.

From the 竹取物語.

10. これをまことか ^{たづ}尋 ぬれば、昔ありし家は ^{まれ}稀 なり。

When I asked if this was true, I (was told that) old houses were rare.

From the 方丈記.

Classical Form Note: The verb 尋ねる is 尋ぬ in Classical Japanese.

11. なかなか ^{やう}が ^{ゆう}様 変 はりて 優 なるかたもはべり。

It was rather eccentric, and it was also elegant.

From the 方丈記.

敬語 Note: はべり is the honorific form of あり (to be) and is used here as an honorific variant of the copula.

Evolution Note: Not all ナリ型形容動詞 became 形容動詞 in Modern Japanese. Some became -なる ending 連体詞.

タリ型形容動詞

There are not that many タリ型形容動詞 in Classical Japanese, and there are not that many that have survived as 連体詞 in Modern Japanese. タリ型形容動詞 come from Sino-Japanese compounds. These kind of adjectives were rarely ever seen in 平安時代 works, but they became very frequent in military tales and 江戸時代 Chinese-style writing. Below are the bases for タリ型形容動詞.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
たら	たり・と	たり	たる	たれ	たれ

Base Note: These bases are also ラ-変 conjugate, and the 連用形 are used just as before with the other adjectival classes.

Examples

12. さつさつとよをわたるべし。

You should get along in the world refreshingly.

From the 副王百羽.

りやうふうさつさつ よ ば
13. 涼 風 颯々 たりし夜なか半に

In the middle of the night with a refreshing cool breeze

From the 平家物語.

ばうばう だいさうげん
14. 茫々 とした大 草 原

An expansive large grassland

わうきう ぐわいくわくべうべう そのうちくわうくわう
15. 王 宮 の体を見るに、外 郭 渺々 として、其 内 曠々 たり。

Looking at the state of the lord's palace, the outer walls appear unending, and the grounds within are expansive.

From the 平家物語.

すで もうろう
16. 已 に 朦 朧 たり。

It is already misty.

くわうりやう
17. 荒 涼 たるその景色

The bleak landscape

From 或る女 by 有島武郎.

しげふちまんまん かいしやう ゑんけん
18. かの 滋 藤 漫 々 たる 海 上 を 遠 見 して

The aforementioned Shigefuji looked afar over the vast sea.

From the 平家物語.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Conjugate 索々（さくさく）たり meaning "rustling" into its bases.
2. What did most ナリ型形容動詞 become. Give an example.
3. How do you decide what 連用形 to use in respect to adjectives?
4. Conjugate 清（きよ）らなり meaning "beautiful" into its bases.

第 307 課: Regular Verbs I: 四段

Verbs are by far the most difficult part of learning Classical Japanese. For those that have excelled in controlling the inflectional parts of speech in Modern Japanese, there will be a lot of initial struggle in getting used to Classical Japanese conjugation.

One of the most obvious differences about verbs in Classical Japanese is that there are more verbal classes than there are in Modern Japanese. In Modern Japanese there are 上一段, 下一段, 五段, サ変, and 力変 verbs. In Classical Japanese there are 上一段, 下一段, 上二段, 下二段, 四段, サ変, 力変, ㇿ変, and ナ変 verbs.

These verbal classes all differ in how their bases look and in the frequency that they appear. Later, we will learn how these 9 verbal classes condensed to the 5 that exist today. For the mean time, we will begin coverage of Classical Japanese verbs with the 四段 class, the predecessor of the modern 五段 class.

We are looking at the Japanese language over a period of 1000+ years. It would be anachronistic if not completely wrong to assume verbs never changed classes. For now, it is up to you to learn how to identify the class of a verb, conjugate any given verb into its bases, and recognize the modern equivalent of a given verb that you have. The material will be given to you in order to figure this out.

四段活用動詞

四段 verbs are the most common kind of verbs in Classical Japanese, and it is still so today. 四段 verbs are called such because they have a four-grade conjugation. Meaning, they have four different vowel grades. In other words, out of the six bases, at least one of them ends with one of four vowels. These four vowels, in other of the bases, are a, i, u, e, and e. Below are the bases for 四段 verbs with the verb 逢ふ.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
逢は	逢ひ	逢ふ	逢ふ	逢へ	逢へ

- むさし くに まど
1. 武蔵の國まで感ひ歩きけり。

He walked and wandered about as far as Musashi Province.
From the 伊勢物語.

Grammar Note: ～けり shows recollection.

- みやこ
2. けふは 都 のみぞ思ひやらるる。

I found myself turning my thoughts to just the capital today.

From the 土佐日記.

Grammar Notes:

1. ぞ is used in Classical Japanese as a bound particle where it is very emphatic.
2. ～るる is the 連体形 of the auxiliary verb ～る, the predecessor of the Modern Japanese ～れる.
3. 風も吹きぬべし。

The wind will also blow for sure.

From the 土佐日記.

Grammar Note: ～ぬ is similar to "end up" and is used frequently with ～べし (should).

4. 夏は郭公を聞く。

I listen to the cuckoo in the summer.

- なんぢ
5. 汝、よく聞け。

Listen well you !

From the 今昔物語集.

6. 我は、さやは思ふ。

Do I think that way?

From the 徒然草.

Grammar Note: さ is like そのように in Modern Japanese and や is used here to make an emphatic rhetorical question.

- ひとたびこゑ
7. 今一度 聲 をだに聞かせ給へ。

No, let me hear your voice at least one time.

From the 源氏物語.

8. 鳴く鹿の聲聞く時ぞ秋はかなしき。

Oh when I hear the voice of the crying deer, autumn is just sad!

From the 古今和歌集.

Grammar Note: The 連体形 may end a sentence instead of the 終止形 for emphasis. It is this that causes the confusion between the two and the inevitable fusing of them.

9. 信濃奈流 須我能安良能尔 保登等芸須 奈久許恵伎気婆 登伎須疑尔家里

しなの すが あらの
信濃なる 須賀の 荒 野 に ほととぎす 鳴く聲聞けば 時すぎにけり

In the vast Suga Plain of Shinano, when I heard the call of the cuckoo, I felt that time had passed.

From the 万葉集.

Grammar Notes:

1. The particle ば may be used like the particle to in Modern Japanese to mean "when".
2. The combination ～にけり is ～ぬ and ～けり put together. ～ぬ in this case shows the perfective--なってしまう.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Conjugate 思ふ into its bases.
2. Conjugate 聞く into its bases.
3. Conjugate 知る with -ず.
4. Conjugate 読む with the auxiliary verb -ども.
5. Complete the phrase with the right base of the verb.
人こそ知__。
6. What are Yodan verbs called in Modern Japanese?

第 308 課: Regular Verbs II: 上一段 & 下一段

上一段 and 下一段 verbs are very large verbal classes in Modern Japanese. In Classical Japanese, however, there are only around 11 of them when excluding compound verbs. As we will see in 第 258 課, the 二段 classes collapsed and became 一段 verbs.

上一段活用動詞

上一段 verbs are called such because they have an upper one-grade conjugation. In other words, their stem ends in い. Let's use the verb 見る to illustrate the bases.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
み	み	みる	みる	みれ	みよ

Form Note: Notice how the 命令形 is みよ and not みろ. This is because みろ was used in Eastern Japan and did not become standard until 東京弁 became the basis for 標準語.

All of these verbs are compounds or different meanings of the words ひる, いる, みる, きる, みる, and にる. There are less than 20 of such verbs.

鑄る	いる	To cast	射る	いる	To shoot
沃る	いる	To dows	着る	きる	To wear
煮る	にる	To boil	似る	にる	To resemble
簸る	ひる	To winnow	干る	ひる	To dry up
嚏る	ひる	To sneeze	試みる	こころみる	To attempt
見る	みる	To see	顧みる	かえりみる	To look back
後ろ見る	うしろみる	To look after	用ゐる	もちゐる	To use
居る	ゐる	To sit	率る	ゐる	To lead

Examples

ふちなみ

1. 春は 藤 波 を見る。

We look at the waves of wisteria in the spring.

From the 方丈記.

みたま

From the 竹取物語.

1. The pattern な...～そ makes a negative command. そ is the non-voiced form of ぞ and was commonly used from the 奈良時代 to the 平安時代初期.

3. また、いさゝかおぼつかなく覚えて、頼むにもあらず、頼まずもあらで、案じみたる人あり。

From the 徒然草.

1. ～たる in this sentence functions like the modern pattern ～ている. This usage is still common in certain dialects today.

4. まして、明らかならん人の、 まど 惑 へる我等を見んこと、 てのひら うへ 掌 の 上 の物を見んが如し。

From the 徒然草.

いを
5. 魚 と鳥とのありさまを見よ。

From the 方丈記.

さは
6. その 澤 のほとりの木の陰におりゐて、

They got (their horses) and sat down in the shade of a tree on the edge of the marsh, and

they...

From the 伊勢物語.

下一段活用動詞

There is only one 下一段 verb in Classical Japanese. The single verb is 蹴 (け) る meaning "to kick". What is odd is that it is a 五段 verb in Modern Japanese. Its bases are shown below and is followed by example sentences.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
け	け	ける	ける	けれ	けよ

Base Note: The 命令形 is けよ because the r in the modern 命令形 was and still is a feature of Eastern Japanese dialects. As Classical Japanese is predominantly written in Western Dialects, it wasn't until the capital was moved to 東京 when the shift occurred.

てんやく すけ け
7. かの 典 薬 の 助 は蹴られたりしを

That assistant director of the Medical Ministry was kicked, and
From the 落窪物語.

Grammar Note: The particle を in this sentence is a final particle that shows exclamation.

しり
8. この 尻 蹴よ。

Kick these buttocks!
From the 宇治拾遺物語.

かしら
9. 頭 蹴われ

Their heads were kicked and split open, and
From the 平家物語.

まり
10. 鞠 を蹴る事か。

Do you mean kick the football?
From the 浮世物語.

すまふ
11. 尻蹴んとする 相 撲
The sumo wrestler trying to kick the buttocks
From the 宇治拾遺物語.

蹴れども
12. 蹴れども
Even though you don't kick

いつそく
13. さと寄りて 一 足 づつ蹴る。
He quickly approached and kicked with each foot.
From the 落窪物語.

まりこがわ
14. 円 子 川 蹴ればぞ波はあがりける。
When I kicked through Mariko River, a wave rose.
From the 源平盛衰記.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. List the 上一段 verbs in Classical Japanese.
2. What is the only 下一段 verb in Classical Japanese.
3. Where is the source for the plethora of 一段 verbs in Modern Japanese?
4. Conjugate the verb 用ゐる into its bases.
5. Contrast the bases of 蹴る in Modern Japanese to Classical Japanese.
6. Conjugate 蹴る and 居る with the auxiliary verb む・ん.
7. Conjugate 見る with the auxiliary verb けり.

第 309 課 : Regular Verbs III: 上二段 & 下二段

In this lesson we will learn about 二段 verbs. There are several single mora verbs as well as verbs that end in ゆ and づ. As the two classes of 二段 verbs look the same in the 終止形, you will have to memorize what class a verb is in, which is easy when you know what a given verb is in Modern Japanese. 上二段 and 下二段, each of which are only different in what two vowels are involved in their bases as the names suggest, have become 上一段 and 下一段 verbs respectively in Modern Japanese.

上二段活用動詞

There are a lot of 上二段 verbs in Classical Japanese. These verbs are those that end in -iru as 上一段 verbs in Japanese. Unlike Modern Japanese verbs which can only end in 9 certain morae, 二段 verbs can end in any う-vowel かな. There are three verbs in particular that are y-row verbs.

老ゆ	おゆ	悔ゆ	くゆ	報ゆ	むくゆ
----	----	----	----	----	-----

The upper two-vowel grade conjugation for 上二段 verbs consists of the verbs i and u. Below are the bases of 上二段 verbs illustrated by the verb 落つ meaning "to fall".

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
おち	おち	おつ	おつる	おつれ	おちよ

Examples

1. 清見が関を過ぐ。

We pass the barrier at Kiyomi.

From the 十六夜.

2. 木の葉の落つるも、まづ落ちて芽ぐむにはあらず。

As for the falling of the tree leaves, it's not that they fall and then bud.

From the 徒然草.

3. たけき者もつひには滅びぬ。

Even the brave will eventually parish.

From the 平家物語.

4. おのづから、このほど過ぎば、見直したまひてむ。

Naturally, if one passes this period, one will no doubt look over it again.

From the 源氏物語.

Grammar Note: ～てむ is the combination of the auxiliary verb ～つ and the auxiliary verb ～む to in this situation to show speculation with confidence.

5. むなしく過ぐる事を惜しむべし。

You should regret passing your life in vain.

From the 徒然草.

6. はやく過ぎよ。

Pass it quickly!

From the 枕草子.

7. 良頼の ^{ひやふゑのかみ} 兵衛督 と ^{まう} 申し ^{いへ} 人 ^{さじき} の 家 を 過ぐれば、それ 棧 敷 へ 渡り給ふなるべし。

When we passed the house of a person named Hyouenokami of Yoshiyori, he was supposed to have just passed the balcony.

From the 更級日記.

下二段活用動詞

下二段 verbs are those that now end in -える. There were even verbs like 得(う) "to get" and 経(ふ) that were only one mora long. The distinction between its bases and its stem is blurred. You can find 下二段 verbs that end in any う-vowel かな. This at times makes it hard to distinguish them from 四段 verbs. However, 四段 verbs, just like in Modern Japanese, only end in う, く, す, つ, ぬ, む, る, ぐ, or ぶ. Below are the bases of 下二段 verbs with the verb 植う.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
うゑ	うゑ	うう	ううる	ううれ	うゑよ

Examples

8. 雨降り日暮る。

The rain fell, and the sun set.

From the 奥の細道.

せきもり
9. 心かしこき 関 守 侍りと聞こゆ。

They say that there is a clever barrier guard.

From the 枕草子.

いさ
10. 諫 めをも思ひ入れず

Not even trying to accept counsel

From the 平家物語.

11. 都を出でて

We left the capital

From the 平家物語.

Base Note: The bases for a verb like 出づ are 出で、いで、いづ、いづる、いづれ、and いでよ.

あした ゆふべ
12. 朝 に死に、 夕 に生まるるならひ

The pattern of dying in the morning and being born in the evening

From the 方丈記.

13. 近き火などに逃ぐる人は、「しばし」とやいふ。

Do people fleeing a nearby fire say, "wait a minute"?

From the 徒然草.

と
14. 日も疾く暮れよかし。

May the sun set soon!

From the 今昔物語集.

Particle Note: The particle かし creates great emphasis and frequently follows the 命令形.

けふ
15. かくて今日暮れぬ。

Thus, today came to an end.

From the 土佐日記.

Grammar Note: ～ぬ shows the perfective.

Exercises

1. What did 二段 verbs become in Modern Japanese?
2. How did 二段 verbs evolve to what they are today?
3. Give the bases for 上二段 verbs.
4. Give the bases for 下一段 verbs.
5. Give the bases for 下二段 verbs.
6. Conjugate the 下二段 verb 経 (ふ) meaning "to pass (time)" into its bases.
7. Conjugate 捨つ with the endings べし, む, and ど.
8. Conjugate 恥づ into its bases and then use it with the noun 事.
9. Categorize the following verbs.

Verb	Class
呼ぶ (よぶ)	
飢う (うう)	
得 (う)	
老ゆ (おゆ)	
思う (おもう)	
過ぐ (すぐ)	
居る (ゐる)	
出づ (いづ)	
強ふ (しふ)	
告ぐ (つぐ)	
朽つ (くつ)	
見る (みる)	

10. For the verbs mentioned in exercise 9, give the modern form of the verb. If it is already modern, say so.

第 310 課: Irregular Verbs I: サ変 & 力変

The verbs する and 来る have always been irregular. The first thing to know is that they were once ず and 来 respectively. Their meaning have changed little, so we don't have to worry about much semantic change.

サ行変格動詞

The primary verb in this irregular verbal class is ず. Its bases are by no means normal, and it can be used in both transitive and intransitive contexts. As a transitive verb, it's like "to do". In intransitive contexts, it's like "to exist" or "to occur".

The other verb in this class is おはす, which is a very honorific verb meaning "to be/go/come". Like in Modern Japanese, ず may attach to (Sino-)Japanese nouns to create 'new' verbs. At times, it may be voiced as ず. When the 終止形 and 連体形 became the same for verbs, ずる and じる became possible 終止形 for these "ず-ず verbs". The verbs that end in -つする when する attaches to a (Sino-)Japanese word ending in する may also have つ contracted in Classical Japanese. However, it is debatable when the contraction started to reflect in the spoken language.

Originally, ず was the only サ変 verb. As it is such a dynamic word, it just had to be added to other words to create even more verbs. So, when did ず become する? This change started to take place as early as the end of the 平安時代; both ず and する hence began being used as interchangeable 終止形. The bases for サ変 verbs are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
せ	し	ず	する	すれ	せよ

Bases Notes:

1. The alternative 未然形 and 命令形 that are present in Modern Japanese are due to the evolution of the bases.
2. As you can see, the 連用形, 連体形, and 已然形 are the same. When the 未然形 became し, it caused the 命令形 to take the form of しろ, which is essentially like the 命令形 of an 一段 verb. せい comes from the contraction of せよ itself.

Examples

- けふ みやづか
1. 今日にのぼりて 宮 仕 へをせよ。

Go to the capital and serve for the imperial court!

From the 大和物語.

- これたか みこ まう
2. 昔、 惟 喬 の親王と 申 す親王おはしましけり。

Long ago, there was a prince named Prince Koretaka.

From the 伊勢物語.

- そで か
3. 昔の人の 袖 の香ぞする。

It had the scent of the sleeve of a person from the past (whom I knew very well).

From the 古今和歌集.

4. 死なむ薬も何かはせむ。

What would I do with death preventing medicine?

From the 竹取物語.

- おに い き
5. 鬼 のやうなるもの出で來て殺さむとしき。

Things that looked like demons came out and tried to kill us.

From the 竹取物語.

- らん
6. いとどあはれとご 覽 じて。

(The emperor) looked with increasing pity (on the Kiritsubo consort).

From the 源氏物語.

- こゑ く
7. 人々あまた 聲 して來なり。

It sounds as if a lot of people are coming and raising their voices.

From the 宇治拾遺物語.

Grammar Note: The auxiliary verb 〜なり shows aural supposition in this example.

- つまど はな
8. 妻 戸 をやはらかい 放 つ音すなり。

It sounds like (someone) quietly opened up the chamber doors.

From the 堤中納言物語.

ひとまつむし

9. 秋の野に 人 松 蟲 の聲すなり。

You can hear the voice of the pine cricket while waiting for someone in the autumn fields.

From the 古今和歌集.

Grammar Note: It is common to have two homophonous words intended at the same time. This is the case with the word まつ in the above example sentence.

あさ ゆふ たけ

10. われ 朝 ごと タ ごとに見る 竹 の中におはするにて知りぬ。

I know because she was inside the bamboo I had looked at each and every morning and evening.

From the 竹取物語.

ながあめ

11. 曇 雨 、例の年よりもいたくして。

The long rains were more intense than in usual years.

From the 源氏物語.

力行変格動詞

The only verb throughout the history of the Japanese language that has been a 力変 verb is 来る. In Classical Japanese, its 終止形 was 来. For the most part, its translation is on the lines of "to come" or "to visit". The bases for 来 are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
こ	き	く	くる	くれ	こ（よ）

The bases for the most part are very similar to what they are in Modern Japanese. The contraction of 来よ, of course, lead to the modern 来い-命令形.

もろこしぶねき

12. かの 唐 船 来けり。

That Chinese boat came.

From the 竹取物語.

く かり
13. 春來れば 雁 かへるなり。

Since spring has come, I hear the wild geese returning.
From the 古今和歌集.

14. ひとびとたえずとぶらひにく。

People endlessly came to visit.

Grammar Note: You may have noticed that the 終止形 can be used to represent the past tense. This is actually also so in Modern Japanese, although the practice is not that common outside of literature. So long as the **context** has temporal words that suggest anything but the present or future tense, auxiliary verbs are not necessary to show the preterit.

15. 山の方より人あまた來る音す。

A sound was made from many people coming from the direction of the mountain.
From the 更級日記.

こ
16. 秋風吹かむをりぞ來むとする。

I'll come when the autumn winds blow.
From the 枕草子.

こ ん こ
17. 「その兒こち率て來よ。」

Bring that kid here!
From the 大和物語.

たつ くび かへ く
18. 龍 の 頸 の取りえずは 歸 り來な。

If you are unable to obtain the jewel from the dragon's neck, do not come back home!
From the 竹取物語.

Grammar Note: ~ずは is like しないなら and may also be seen as ~ずば or ~ずんば.

あひだ くに こ
19. かた時の 間 とて、かの 國 よりまうで來しかども

Thinking that it would be but for a short time, I came from that country, but...
From the 竹取物語.

20. 春過而 夏來良之

春過ぎて夏來たるらし。

It seems that spring has passed and summer has come.

From the 万葉集.

21. 世にある物ならば、この國にも持てまうで來^きなまし。

If it were something that existed in the world, they would've brought it and come to this country also.

From the 竹取物語.

Grammar Note: ~まし, which follows the 未然形, shows counter-factual speculation in this example.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Compare and contrast the bases of ず and する.
2. Compare and contrast the bases of 来 and 来る.
3. What would 信じる be in Classical Japanese and what would its bases be?
4. True or False: The ず-終止形 and する were interchangeable from as early as the 奈良時代.
5. Conjugate the following verbs into their bases.

愛す 拝す おはす 来 音す

6. True or False: ず and する are only limited to being attached to Sino-Japanese nouns to create 'new' verbs.
7. Create a simple sentence with ず. You may model your sentence after any of the examples given in this lesson.
8. Why has the verb "to do" been so dynamic throughout the history of the Japanese language? Is this not also the case in other languages?
9. What are the conditions needed to use the 終止形 as the preterite?
10. Conjugate ず and 来 with the auxiliary verbs -む, -て, and -べし.

第 311 課: Irregular Verbs II: ラ変 & ナ変

There are four basic ラ変 irregular verbs in Classical Japanese: あり, をり, はべり, and いまそがり. And, there are two ナ変 irregular verbs: 死ぬ and 往ぬ.

ラ行変格動詞

ラ 変 verbs that we have already seen before include あり, をり, and はべり before. あり is the primary ラ変 verb and is also a supplementary verb that tends to fuse with other things. をり is an alternate variant of ある. は^はべり, a contraction of 這^はいあり, means "to serve a superior" and is very honorific. It too can be used as a supplementary verb. Another ラ変 verb is いまそがり, a contraction of いま^{いま} 座^かす処あり, which means "to be" and is very honorific.

These verbs end in い rather than う in the 終止形 to signify a state of existence and or continuing state as do ある and いる in Modern Japanese. These verbs became 四段 verbs during the 鎌倉時代 when the 連体形 began to replace the 終止形 altogether.

あり means "to be" and does not necessarily have the animate v. inanimate object distinction as its modern form ある does. As it is the most common of the four ラ変 verbs, we will use it to demonstrate the bases of ラ変 irregular verbs. Below are its bases.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
あら	あり	あり	ある	あれ	あれ

Notice how the conjugations for ラ変 irregular verbs are almost identical to that of 四段 verbs as both have a four-vowel grade.

Examples

- よしかげ きりど わき
1. 義 景 は、切 戸 の 脇 にかしこまりてぞはべりける。

Yoshikage waited by the side of the side door and was ready to be of service.
From the 増鏡.

みかど まう
2. その 帝 のみこたかい子と 申 すいまそがりけり。

There was a child of that emperor called Takaiko.

From the 伊勢物語.

ちちはは
3. 月の都の人にて、 父 母 あり。

I am a person of the capital of the moon, and I have a father and mother.

From the 竹取物語.

くに
4. この 國 にある物

Something that exists in this country

From the 竹取物語.

5. いづくにもあれ

Where it may be

From the 徒然草.

6. さすがに住む人のあればなるべし。

As expected, it is definitely because there are people living there.

From the 徒然草.

ゆゑ
7. 深き 故 あらん。

There is a probably a deep reason.

From the 徒然草.

をとこ
8. 昔 男 ありけり。

There was a man long ago.

From the 伊勢物語.

9. 世の中にある人

A person who exists in the world

From the 古今和歌集.

ゆふがほ まう
10. かの白く咲けるをなん「 夕 顔 」と 申 しはべる。

That flower blooming white is called the "evening face".

From the 源氏物語.

ふたり はべ
11. 二人して打たんには、侍りなむや。

If two people were to hit (the dog), would it still live?

From the 枕草子.

じんりん
12. 人倫にあらず。

One would not be human.

From the 徒然草.

のこ
13. かかる所に住む人、心に思ひ残すことはあらじかし。

A person living in this kind of place would probably not have anything to regret.

From the 源氏物語.

14. 立礼杼毛 居礼杼毛

を
立てれども居れども

Whether standing or sitting

From the 万葉集.

Modern Remnant Note: You can still find あり as is in a few set phrases like ぼうちゅうかん 忙中閑あり which means "to enjoy a moment of relief through one's work".

Further Study Note: Other ラ変 verbs formed by the fusing of あり with other things to consider

さ しか
include 然り "to be like" and 然り "to be so".

ナ行変格動詞

The two ナ変 verbs in Classical Japanese are 死ぬ and 往ぬ, which mean "to die" and "to go" respectively. Their bases are just like 四段 verbs with exception to the 連体形 and the 已然形. In fact, this class eventually dissimulate quickly starting in the 江戸時代. We will use the verb 死ぬ to illustrate the bases.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
しな	しに	しぬ	しぬる	しぬれ	しね

Examples

15. 死なば 一 所 で死なん。
いつしよ

If we are going to die, let's die in one place.

From the 平家物語.

16. 北の方、憎 し、とく死ねかしと思ふ。
にく

The principal wife thought, "Despicable, die quickly!"

From the 落窪の細道.

17. 焰 にまぐれてたちまちに死ぬ。
ほのほ

They are engulfed in the flames and immediately die.

From the 方丈記.

18. 水におぼれて死なば死ね。

If we're going to drown in the water, let's die!

From the 平家物語.

19. 「往ね」といひければ
い

Since she said, "Leave",

From the 大和物語.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What is the significance of ラ変 verbs ending in い?
2. What differentiates ラ変 and 四段 verbs?
3. What differentiates ナ変 and 四段 verbs?
4. When did the ナ変 class begin to disappear?
5. What is いまそがり a contraction of?
6. Give the bases of 居り.

7. Create a simple sentence with 死ぬ.
8. What is the only 五段 verb still used today that ends in -ぬ?
9. Give the bases for 往ぬ.
10. When did the 終止形 and the 連体形 begin to fuse for あり?

第 312 課: The Auxiliary Verb ～ず II

～ず is still used infrequently in Modern Japanese, howbeit typically in archaic expressions and set phrases. In this lesson, we will finally learn all about the auxiliary verb ～ず so that we can better understand Classical Japanese!

The Auxiliary Verb -ず

The auxiliary verb ～ず follows the 未然形 to show the negative. This is the *easiest* part about it. ～ず has **three sets of bases**. This is the *hardest* part about it. Throughout this lesson we'll study ～ず by using the chart below. The base sets will be referred to by their respective 連用形.

未然形	な	X	ざら
連用形	に	ず	ざり
終止形	X	ず	X
連体形	ぬ	X	ざる
已然形	ね	X	ざれ
命令形	X	X	ざれ

The first base sequence of the negative auxiliary verb was な-, に-, X, ぬ-, ね-, and X. The な-未然形 and the に-連用形 faded away and the 連用形 was replaced with ～ず. This in turn became the 終止形. A third set of bases was created with the fusion of ～ず with あり. The base sets are interchangeable. For example, ～ぬ and ～ざる are both common.

Temporally speaking, although ず ultimately comes from にす, Old Japanese already had ず as the 終止形. The third column most definitely appears later on in Middle Japanese.

The に- Bases

The な-未然形 was used in the speech modal ～なくに, which meant "because...isn't". It was also a 語尾 meaning "how...isn't?".

- まつ き みやこ のべ わかなつ
1. み山には 松 の雪だに消えなくに 都 は野辺の若 菜 摘みけり。

As even the snow on the pine trees hasn't disappeared in the mountains, the (people in the) capital gathered young greens from the fields!

From the 古今和歌集.

Nuance Note: The prefix み- in this poem is used as a beautifier.

The に-連用形 was used in the **Nara Period** (奈良時代) in the same way as the modern ~なくて.

2. 去方乎不知 舍人者迷惑

とねり
行くへを知らに 舍 人 はまどふ

Not knowing the way to go, the low-ranking officials working for the nobility wander about.
From the 万葉集.

Culture Note: A とねり was a low-ranking official who worked for the nobility.

3. たづきを知らに

Not knowing the livelihood

The 連体形 and the 已然形 weren't lost like the 未然形 and 連用形.

4. 人こそ知らね。

Though people don't know.

Grammar Note: The particleこそ has the following verb be in the 已然形 in Classical Japanese.

みやこ
5. 京 には見えぬ鳥なれば

Since it was a bird not seen in the capital

From the 伊勢物語.

Grammar Note: The 連体形 is used because the verb 見ゆ, the Classical form of 見える, is used as negative participle.

やえむぐらしげ やど さび
6. 八 重 律 茂 れる 宿 の 寂 しきに人こそ見えね秋は来にけり

Although you could see no person in the loneliness of the lodge thickened with mixed weeds,
autumn ended up coming.

From the 新日本古典文学大系.

Grammar Note: This sentence is in the 連体形 because of the particleこそ. Don't mind other Classical grammar items.

7. いとやむごとなき 際は きは にはあらぬがすぐれて時めき 給 たま ふありけり

The person didn't have very high regards in status and found favor in particular.
From the 源氏物語.

Grammar Note: The 連体形 is used with conjunctive particles such as が.

8. 人の歌の 返 しかえ しとすべきをえ 詠みよ え 得ぬ ころもと 心 許 なし

You should respond quickly to a person's poem, and when you're unable to write one, it
(the situation) is precarious.
From the 枕草子.

Grammar Note: え...-ず is the negative potential. The 連体形, 読み得ぬ, modifies the noun ほど.
The particle を in this sentence is interchangeable with the particle が.

9. 法師ばかり ほうし うらや 羨 ましからぬものはあらじ

Nothing/none is probably as unenviable as a priest.
From the 徒然草.

The ず- Bases

How did はず come from n-sounds? The incomplete first column of bases is the primary reason for the evolution that brought forth three sets of bases. To make a 終止形, the 連用形 combined with す, the Classical する, to create 〜にす which became 〜んす which became 〜んず which became はず. はず's 連用形 and 終止形 are still very important in Modern Japanese grammar.

10. 連絡が取れず、心配しました。

Without having contact, I got worried.

Grammar Note: The above sentence uses はず in the 連用形.

11. 分らず屋 (Set Phrase)

An obstinate person.

12. 君や来し行きけむ思ほえず こそ

Did you come? Did I even go? I can't think naturally.
From the 伊勢物語.

しんと な
13. 新 都 はいまだ成らず。

The new capital has still not materialized.

From the 方丈記.

じひ じんりん あら
14. 慈悲の心なからむは 人 倫 に 非 ず

If someone didn't have a heart of compassion, he wouldn't be human.

From the 徒然草.

Grammar Note: ～ず follows the verb あり (ある in Modern Japanese) normally.

あ わか そで しらたま
15. 飽かずして 別 る 袖 の 白 玉

The white jewel of your sleeve which parted from you despite being unsatisfied.

From the 古今和歌集.

あくしよ し
16. 悪 所 におちて死にたからず

I don't want to die falling into a dangerous place.

From the 平家物語.

17. つゆまどろまれず

I couldn't doze off at all.

From the 日本古典文学大系.

18. 昔のごとくにもあらず

It's not even like it was in the past.

From the 大和物語.

た みづ
19. ゆく川の流れは絶えずしてしかももとの 水 にあらず

The flowing of the passing water is endless at the same; moreover, it is not the original water.

From the 徒然草.

たれ
20. 住まずして 誰 かさとりむ

Without living there, who would understand (the pleasure)?

From the 大和物語.

あ こよひあ
21. 逢はずして 今 宵 明 けなば春の日の長くや人をつらしと思はん

Without meeting, and then the evening ending up dawn, I will surely think of you as long as a
spring day as being cruel.

From the 古今和歌集.

The ざり- Bases

The ざり- bases came from the fusion of ず- and the supplementary verb あり. The ざり- bases are interchangeable with the other sets but become prevalent in later Classical texts.

At the point of inception, the first and second base sets were essential one as "X, ず-, ず, め, ね-, X". Both 連用形 were acceptable with ざり- being preferred. The 連体形 were completely interchangeable. As for the 已然形, ね- was preferred when used with bound particles and ざれ- was preferred when used with an ending.

In the 室町時代 the め-連体形 became an interchangeable variant of the 終止形. ~ぬ eventually replaced ~ず as the negative auxiliary verb and evolved into ~ん in the West and into ~ない in the East. When this happened, all of the bases were scrubbed for 形容詞 bases.

Examples

きのふけふ
22. つひにゆく道とはかねて聞きしかど 昨 日 今 日 とは思はざりしを。

I had heard before of the path we will eventually go, but I didn't think that it would be yesterday or today!

From the 古今和歌集.

23. 絶えざる不安

Anxiety that won't cease

24. 何も書かん。

I won't write anything.

ゆめ し さ
25. 夢 と知りせば 覚めざらましを

If I had known that it was a dream, I would've never woken up.

From the 古今和歌集.

26. 山高きと知らず。

To not know the mountain is tall.

27. 怖いものもあらず。

To not even have things one is scared of.

28. 自らの信条を吐露せざれ。

Express one's beliefs.

Speech Modals with 〜ず

〜ずに & 〜ずにはいられない

〜ずに and 〜ずにはいられない mean "without" and "cannot help but..." respectively and are formed with the ず-連用形.

29. 勉強せずに、受験したから、落第してしまった。

Because I took the exam without studying, I ended up failing it.

Grammar Note: You must use the せ-未然形 of する for all Classical Japanese auxiliary verbs.

29. 心配せずにはいられない。

I couldn't help but worry.

こ
30. 懲らしめてやらずにはおかない。

I couldn't help but give him punishment.

31. 霞立 長春日乃 晩家流 和豆肝之良受

かすみた はるひ く
霞立つ 長き 春 日 の 暮れにける わづきも知らず

I also don't know of the moon setting in the overshadowing long spring day.

From the 万葉集.

おこ
32. 怒 らせずにはすまないでしょう。

You probably can't help but get angry, right?

33. 泣き出さずにはすまさない。

I cannot help but cry profusely.

Variation Note: ～ずにはいられない variants include ～ずにはすまない, ～ずにはおかない, and ～ずにはすまない.

～ずは・ずば・ずんば

The main usage of ～ずは is to show negative hypothesis and is equivalent to しないなら in Modern Japanese. So, ～ずは means "if...had not". In the late 奈良時代 it was also used like ～ずに to mean "without...". In the medieval era ～ずは was seen as ～ず（ん）ば.

こけつ い こし え
34. 虎 穴 に入らずんば虎子を得ず。

Nothing ventured, nothing gained.

Literally: Without entering the tiger's den, you won't get the tiger's cub.

こうふく
35. 降 伏 せずば、命はない。

If you don't surrender, you will not live.

きじ う
36. 雉 も鳴かずば撃たれまい。

If the green pheasant doesn't cry, let's not shoot.

かうし い こ
37. まろ格子 上げずば道なくてげにえ入り来ざらまし

If I hadn't raised the lattice, there would have been no path and it would have truly not have been able to come in.

From the 源氏物語.

38. 行かずばなるまい。

We have no choice but to go.

Grammar Note: ～ずばなるまい is the predecessor of ～なければならない.

まこと
39. 火に焼かむに焼けずはこそ 真 ならめ

When we try to burn it by fire and it cannot burn, it's definitely the real thing.

From the 竹取物語.

～ずて

The speech modal ～ずて means "not..." and is equivalent to ～ないで.

40. 麻都我延乃 都知尔都久麻掾 布流由伎乎 美受弓也伊毛我 許母里乎流良牟

いも こも を
松が枝の土に着くまで降る雪を見ずてや 妹 が 隠 り居るらむ

How could you not see the snow that falls up to the earth of the pine tree branches and stay indoors dear?

From the 万葉集.

41. 比等未奈能 美良武麻都良能 多麻志末乎 美受弓夜和礼波 故飛都々遠良武

われ こ を
人皆の見らむ松浦の玉島を見ずてや 我 は恋ひつつ居らむ

Not looking at Matsu'ura no Tamashima that everyone is said to see, I was homesick.

From the 万葉集.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Illustrate the bases of -ず.
2. What base does -ず follow?
3. Create a sentence using the first column of bases of -ず. Use the example sentences in this lesson to model your sentence.
4. How did -ず come about?
5. Create a sentence with -ず being in the 連用形 or 終止形.
6. Create a sentence with a speech modal utilizing -ず.
7. Create a sentence using the third column of bases of -ず.
8. Create a sentence using -ぬ, the evolved form of -ず.
9. Create a sentence with -ずんば.

第 313 課: The Auxiliary Verbs ～き & ～けり

The auxiliary verb ～き indicates (personal) past and shows direct recollection. However, the auxiliary verb ～けり indicates hearsay past and shows transmitted recollection.

The Auxiliary Verb -き

～き indicates a past that is distant and separate from the present; ～けり looks retrospectively at the past. This, though, is speculative and not necessarily the case in each instance. However, this is typically how it is described. So, this site will go with the traditional explanation.

～き has an irregular conjugation and follows the 連用形; however, when used with サ変 or 力変 verbs, it may instead follow the 未然形. Its bases are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
せ	X	き	し	しか	X

Conjugation Note: ～き neither has a 連用形 nor a 命令形, and it is rarely ever seen in the 未然形.

Examples

きやう

1. 京より下りし時に、みな人、子どもなかりき。

When we left the capital, no one had children.

From the 土佐日記.

きのふけふ

2. つひにゆく道とはかねて聞きしかど昨日今日とは思はざりしを。

I had heard before about the path that we go in the end, but I didn't think that it would be yesterday or today.

From the 古今和歌集.

かたとき あひだ

こ

へ

3. 片時の間とて、かの國よりまうで來しかども、かく、この國にはあまたの年を経ぬるになむありける。

Thinking that it would be momentary, I came from that country, but I ended up like this in this country spending several years.

From the 竹取物語.

Particle Note: The bound particle なむ in the example above is used for emphatic purposes.

おに い
4. 鬼 のやうなるもの出で來て殺さむとしき。

Demon like things came out and tried to kill us.

From the 竹取物語.

ひとよ ちりはい
5. 一 夜 のうちに 塵 灰 となりにき。

In one night, (the buildings) ended up becoming dust and ashes.

From the 方丈記.

6. よべもすずろに起きあかしてき。

Somehow or other, I also got up last night and ended up staying up until dawn.

From the 源氏物語.

じやうず くわんげん たま
7. 和歌の 上 手 、 管 弦 の道にもすぐれ 給 へりき。

He had been a master of poetry, and he had also excelled in music.

From the 大鏡.

かたゆ すゑ
8. きし 方 行 く 末 も知らず海にまぎれむとしき。

Not knowing the direction I had come from nor where I was going, it seemed that I'd get lost.

From the 竹取物語.

まゐ
9. 雨のいたく降りしかば、え 参 らずなりにき。

Since the rain fell hard, I wasn't able to visit.

From the 大和物語.

げんじ きみ
10. この寺にありし 源 氏 の 君 こそおはしたなれ。

They say that Lord Genji, who was at this temple, came.

From the 源氏物語.

Fossilization Note: You can still see this auxiliary verb in a few expressions in Modern Japanese

あ まさ
such as in 在りし日 which means "the olden days". Another one is 聞きしに 勝 る which means "to go beyond one's expectations".

The Auxiliary Verb -けり

～けり follows the 連用形 and has a ラ-変 conjugation. As said before, it is important in showing hearsay past and direct past (recollection perspective). ～けり also has an exclamatory element to it where it can be viewed as the modern だったな. This, in turn, can show discovery. Both of these functions can overlap, especially in poetry. Its bases are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
けら	X	けり	ける	けれ	X

Conjugation Note: The bases are limited for the same reasons the bases for ～き are.

Examples

11. 行かずにけり。

I ended up not going.

From the 伊勢物語.

か えだ からす く
12. 枯れ 枝 に 烏 のとまりけり秋の暮れ。

A crow has stopped on a withered branch, an autumn evening!

From 芭蕉.

13. むかし、をとこ、身はいやしくて、いとなき人を思ひかけたりけり。

They say that long ago there was a man who was of low status who fell in love with a person of high status.

From the 伊勢物語.

14. このをとこ、かいまみてけり。

This man ended up looking through the hedge (at the sisters).

From the 伊勢物語.

15. その人の名忘れにけり。

I ended up forgetting that person's name.

From the 伊勢物語.

とまり
16. 「ここやいどこ」と問ひければ、「土佐の 泊 」と言ひけり。

When I asked, "Where is this place", they said, "The landing at Tosa".

From the 土佐日記.

17. その人、ほどなく失せにけりと聞き 侍 りし。

I heard people say that person passed away before long.

From the 徒然草.

18. 見渡せば 柳 やなぎさくら 櫻 をこきまぜて 都 みやこ にしき ぞ春の 錦 なりける。

When I looked across the willow and cherry blossom trees mix together, the capital was a brocade of spring!

From the 古今和歌集.

19. わたりし時は 水 みづ ばかり見えし田どもも、みな刈りはててけり。

I found that even the rice fields that had appeared filled with water when I came here had all been completely harvested.

From the 更級日記.

20. 今は昔、 竹 たけとり おきな 取 の 翁 といふものありけり。

Now in the distant past, it is said that there was a person called "Old Man the Bamboo Cutter".

From the 竹取物語.

21. うちおどろきたれば、夢なりけり。

When I suddenly woke up, I realized that it was just a dream!

From the 更級日記.

22. 昔、 男 をとこ ありけり。身はいやしなから、母なむ宮なりける。

It is said that long ago there was a man. While his status was low, his mother was a princess.

From the 伊勢物語.

23. まことかと聞きて見つれば、 言 こと は かざ の葉を 飾 れる玉の枝にぞありける。

He listened, wondering if it was real, and when he looked closely, he discovered that it was a jeweled branch.

From the 竹取物語.

24. 仁 和 のみかど、みこにおはしましける時に、人にわかなたまひける 人 にん な おほむ 御 うた。

An honorable poem from when Emperor Ninna was a prince and bestowed young herbs on a

person.

From the 古今和歌集.

25. 野を見れば春めきにけり。

When I look at the wild field, it has become spring-like.

From the 拾遺集.

こよひ じふごや

26. 今夜は十五夜なりけり。

Tonight is the fifteenth night!

From the 源氏物語.

こゑ ぬえ

27. 鳴く声、鶴にぞ似たりける。

The crying voice resembled that of the nue.

From the 平家物語.

あうくわ

28. 櫻花咲き染めにけり。

The cherry blossoms have blossomed and tinted.

そうじやう

29. その根のありければ、きりくひの僧正といひけり。

Since that tree stump was there, people called him "Archbishop Tree Stump".

From the 徒然草.

ほふしうちじ

30. 一來法師打死にしてんげり。

Priest Ichirai ended up dying in battle.

From the 平家物語.

をのこ

31. 在原なりける男。

The man who was of the Ariwara Clan.

たなばた

32. 七夕まつるこそなまめかしけれ。

Celebrating Tanabata is indeed elegant.

From the 徒然草.

くちなは おほみがは
33. 蛇 をば 大 井 川 に流してけり。

He ended up throwing the snake into the Ooi River.

From the 徒然草.

Historical Note: ～けり came from the combination of the ～き and あり.

Modern Remnant: ～けり survives in poetry today. The particle け actually comes from ～けり. It can also be seen in けりをつける meaning "to put an end to". It can also strength the verb 因る in よりけり to mean "depend on".

34. ことと次第によりけりだ。

That all depends.

35. 話は条件によりけりだよ。

The discussion all depends on the conditions.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Describe the difference between -き and -けり.
2. What base(s) does -き follow?
3. What base(s) does -けり follow?
4. Create a simple sentence or phrase with -き.
5. Create a simple sentence or phrase with -けり.
6. List the bases for -き.
7. List the bases for -けり.
8. The 未然形 is seldom used for both き and けり. Why?
9. The 連用形 and 命令形 are not used for both き and けり. Why?
10. こしかば, what base of the verb and auxiliary verb is used in this expression?

第 314 課: The Auxiliary Verbs ～ぬ & ～つ

No, this lesson is not about the negative auxiliary verb ～ぬ that follows the 未然形. Rather, this lesson is about auxiliary verbs that show the 完了形 (perfective), ～ぬ and ～つ.

The perfective refers to an action that has been realized or completed . ～ぬ and ～つ are parallel in basically every way and have the same usages. What makes them different is that ～ぬ is used intransitively and ～つ is used transitively. They both follow the 連用形.

The Auxiliary Verb ～ぬ

The auxiliary verb ～ぬ shows that an action not only has been completed but was also of natural occurrence. It may also show certainty where it is often followed by other auxiliary verbs that show intention or speculation such as ～べし (should). ～ぬ may also show back-and-forth parallel action like the particle たり today.

～ぬ conjugations as a ナ変 verb. Its bases are below.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
な	に	ぬ	ぬる	ぬれ	ね

Examples

- くれなゐ あうぎ しらなみ うへ うき しづ ゆ
1. みな 紅 の 扇 の日いだしたるが、 白 波 の 上 にただよひ、 浮 きぬ 沈 みぬ揺られ
ければ

Since the fan with the sun drawn with gold in the crimson land floated on top of the white wave and swayed while floating and sinking

From the 平家物語.

- みね さくら
2. 嶺 の 櫻 は散りはてぬらむ。

The cherry blossoms at the peak have probably completely scattered.

From the 新古今和歌集.

- ふね
3. 舟 こぞりて泣きにけり。

Everyone at once ended up crying in the boat.

From the 伊勢物語.

Grammar Note: ～にけり is a common combination with ～ぬ. Crying is intransitive, but it is also something that people do.

4. さか 盛 りにならば、ようぼう ようばう 容 貌 もかぎりなくよく かみ 髪 もいみじく長くなりなむ。

When I reach my prime, my features will be exceedingly good, and my hair will also no doubt become extremely long.

From the 更級日記.

5. よる い 晴れたる空は 夜 に入りて雨となりぬ。

The bright sky went into night, and it ended up raining.

By 田山花袋.

6. きよみ せき けぶりあふにやあらむ、清 見 が 関 の波も高くなりぬべし。

I wonder if the ocean spray will raise a lot. The waves in Kiyomigaseki will surely get high.

From the 更級日記.

7. は はべ 果たし 侍 りぬ。

It was finally carried out.

From the 徒然草.

You should expect ～ぬ to follow intransitive verbs, passive auxiliary verbs such as ～る and ～らる. There is no volition as everything occurs naturally on its own, the true definition of being intransitive. Keep this in mind because ～つ will share ～ぬ's three usages but differ in how it is used.

The Auxiliary Verb ～つ

As stated earlier, ～つ is the same as ～ぬ with the exception that it is used with transitive verbs. ～つ generally indicates deliberate action. Like ～ぬ, it can be in various patterns to show confidence. As they show confidence, they are never followed by negative auxiliary verbs. ～つ does survive today as a conjunctive particle in set phrases such as 矯めつ眇めつ. ～つ has a 下二段 conjugation and has the following bases.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
て	て	つ	つ	つれ	てよ

Examples

8. そこに日を暮らしつ。

They ended up passing the day there.

From the 更級日記.

そうづ

9. 僧 都、乗っては降りつ、降りては乗っつ。

The priest went aboard, fell off, and came aboard.

From the 平家物語.

10. 年ごろ思ひつること

What I had been thinking for years

From the 徒然草.

やぶ

11. とまれかうまれ、とく 破 りてん。

Whatever the case may be, I will definitely tear it up.

From the 土佐日記.

Contraction Note: とまれかうまれ is a contraction of とまれかくまれ.

12. この事をばまづ言ひてん。

This should end up being said above all.

From the 徒然草.

まど

13. 命限りつと思ひ 惑 はる。

I couldn't help but panic thinking, "my life has definitely come to an end".

From the 更級日記.

ひめ

14. なよ竹のかぐや 姫 とつけつ。

He ended up naming her Shining Princess of Supple Bamboo.

From the 竹取物語.

ロシア

つひ

15. これにて魯西亜より帰り来んまでの 費 えをば支えつべし。

With this, he should end up sustaining the wasteful expenses up to coming home from Russia.

By 鷗外.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Give the bases of -つ.
2. Give the bases of -ぬ.
3. What is different about -ぬ and -つ.
4. How would you express the perfective in Modern Japanese?
5. What would be a good definition of -てん・てむ?
6. Explain the elements of the example sentence 果たし侍りぬ.
7. How is the usage of emphasis and certainty enumerated more clearly in respect to -ぬ and -つ?
8. Back-and-forth action began to be a declining usage of -ぬ and -つ. What takes that role today? Give an example.
9. Translate the following.

雪のうちに春はきにけり。
10. 日も暮れぬ。What function of what auxiliary verb was used?
11. 散りぬ and 散らしつ differ how?
12. -ぬ and -つ generally follow verbs based on transitivity. But, there are some verbs such as 出づ (いづ) "to leave" and 寝ぬ (いぬ) "to sleep" where both are OK. However, there is a nuance difference. What would this be?

第 315 課: The Auxiliary Verbs ～たり & ～り

The auxiliary verbs ～き and ～けり are about recollection. ～ぬ and ～つ are about the perfective. The auxiliary verbs ～たり and ～り are about results, continuation, and the past tense. ～たり is the ancestor of ～た, the all for one ending that replaced all of these endings. Although ～り came first, we will start this discussion by talking about the most important of two endings, ～たり.

The Auxiliary Verb ～たり

～たり comes from ～てあり. In Modern Japanese, there is a difference between ～てある, ～ている, and ～た. However, in Classical Japanese, ～たり served all three of these purposes. ～たり first appeared way back in the 奈良時代, when the ending -り was prevalent for the same functions ～たり has. So, why did ～たり come to be? It is because ～り could only follow 四段 and サ変 verbs. As no such restriction was placed on ～たり, it led to its prevalence after the 奈良時代, resulting in ～た dominating over several other endings relating to the past.

～た began being used as early as the 鎌倉時代. However, it took until the 江戸時代 for the continuative and resultative functions of ～たり to be replaced by ～てある and ～ている. Now, let's go into more detail about what these functions are.

First and foremost, the bases of ～たり, which follow a う変 conjugation, are as follows.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
たら	たり	たり	たる	たれ	たれ

The Six Functions of ～たり

- I. **Continuative:** This is "-ing" in English and ～ている in Modern Japanese.
- II. **Resultative:** This is "has been" in English and ～てある in Modern Japanese. This indicates that someone has already done something and that the result continues.
- III. **Past Tense:** This is "-ed" in English and ～た in Modern Japanese.
- IV. **Back-and-forth:** This is classified as a conjunctive particle usage in Modern Japanese.
- V. **Future realization:** "when...occurs".
- VI. **Urgent Command:** This is now also carried out by ～た in Modern Japanese.

Examples

1. ひと よろひ いだ い しづ
みな 人 はおもき 鎧 のうへに、おもき物を負うたり、抱 ひたりして入ればこそ 沈 め。

On top of their heavy armor, they were bearing heavy things on their backs and holding them in their hands, so when they entered the water they sank.

From the 平家物語.

Sound Change Note: Two noticeable sound changes can be found in this sentence. ~たり follows 負う instead of 負ひ-, which is still common for ~た after similar verbs in Western Japan, and it follows 抱ひ- instead of 抱き-. This sound change is still used for all 五段 verbs that end in < in Modern Japanese. Also, the particle こそ makes the verb of the clause/sentence it is in in the 已然形.

2. 橋をひいたぞ。

They pulled up the bridge!

From the 平家物語.

3. いづくにもあれ、しばし旅立ちたるこそ、目覚むる心ちすれ。

When one is on a trip for a while, it doesn't matter where as one will certainly feel being awakened.

From the 徒然草.

4. うへ さやまき
上 は 鞘 巻 の黒く塗りたりけるが

As for the surface, it was varnished black with a sayamaki.

From the 平家物語.

5. おもしろく咲きたる さくら を かめ
おもしろく咲きたる 櫻 を長く折りて 大きな 瓶 にさしたるこそをかしけれ

Picking up beautifully blossomed cherry blossoms and placing them in a big vase is precisely zestful.

From the 枕草子.

6. うり ちご かほ
瓜 にかきたる 稚児の 顔

The face of a child scratched onto a melon

From the Makura no Soushi.

7. さあ、どいたり、どいたり。(Old-fashioned Modern Japanese example)

Well, move it, move it!

The Auxiliary Verb ～り

As ～り is much older than ～たり, it never evolved in usage to be able to show parallel action nor future realization. ～り comes from あり, which attached itself to the 連用形 of verbs. This caused a merging of "-i+a" which lead to "e". It was then treated as an auxiliary verb that followed the 已然形・命令形 of 四段 verbs as well as the 未然形 of サ変 verbs. It was very common in works from the 奈良時代 such as the 万葉集.

～り wasn't completely abandoned however. It still survived in Japanese-Chinese style writing. ～り has the same resultative, continuative, and past tense functions as ～り. It's just that its lack of versatility in the kind of verbs that could follow is what caused its demise overall. The bases of ～り are:

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
ら	り	り	る	れ	れ

ちようでふ
8. 事すでに 重 畳 せり。

This has already piled up.

From the 平家物語.

9. おごれる心

Proud heart

From the 平家物語.

しかばね
10. 生ける 屍

Living corpse

こぞ ことし
11. 去年焼けて、 今 年 作れり。

(A house) burned last year, and this year it has been built again.

From the 方丈記.

こうゑん あひだ ことり いこ
12. 公 園 の木の 間 に小 鳥 をあそべるをながめてしばし 憩 ひけるかな。

Oh how I rested for a while looking at the small bird playing in the trees in the park.

By 石川啄木.

13. 金野乃 美草刈草 屋杼礼里之 兔道乃宮子能 借五百礮所念 (原文)

か ふ うぢ みやこ かりいほ
秋の野の、み草刈り草、宿れりし、宇治の宮 処の、仮 廬 し思ほゆ。

I remember the thatching of the roof with grass only from the autumn field of the temporary inn we stayed at in the capital.

From the 万葉集.

14. 宇良々々尔 照流春日尔 比婆理安我里 情悲毛 (原文)

はるひ ひばり
うらうらに、照れる 春 日 に、雲 雀 上がり、心悲しも。

On a spring day when the sun is shining gently, my heart is sad though the skylark dances above.

From the 万葉集.

Spelling Note: Notice the usage of 々 above in how the first doubled 宇 and the second doubled 良.

15. 人を遣りて見するに、おほかた逢へる者なし。

He sent a man and made him look, but there wasn't a single person who had met (the demon).

From the 徒然草.

Modern Remnant Note: This item can be found alive in the set phrase 至れり尽くせり, which means "most gracious", using the particle の to be used as an attribute.

16. 至れり尽くせりの持て成し

Most gracious hospitality

Exercises

1. Give the bases of -たり.
2. Give the bases of -り.
3. What is the difference between the copula verb たり and the auxiliary verb -たり? Illustrate.
4. Why did -り get replaced by -たり.
5. Why is it that you think -た replaced all of the other endings related to the past?
6. Think of the functions of -たり and -り. How are they differentiated in modern grammar?
7. Translate the following.

吉野の里に降れる白雪

8. Detail the sound changes discussed in this lesson.
9. What are -ぬ and -つ used to represent?

第 316 課: Nouns & Pronouns

Nouns and pronouns are probably the most familiar and easy aspects of Classical Japanese. There are two main sources of vocabulary in Classical Japanese: Sino-Japanese words and native Japanese words. Native words are much more common, and it is only as time progresses that Sino-Japanese words begin to make a big chunk of the lexicon. Keep this in mind.

Nouns

There are still four kinds of nouns in Classical Japanese as there is in Modern Japanese: proper, common, numerical, and nominal.

Proper	The names of people and places.
Common	Represent the human experience by representing objects and ideas.
Numerical	Numbers and counter phrases, of which are slightly different from today.
Nominal	Nouns with a nominalizing effect due to weakened literal meaning.

Note: Spelling and pronunciation are often different, of these differences time period places an important role. Also, common nominal nouns that Classical Japanese and Modern Japanese share are: こと, ため, ところ, もの, やう, よし, ゆゑ, and わけ.

As numbers are going to be discussed separately in Lesson 146, the following chart will only have examples of the other three kinds of nouns.

故 (ゆゑ)	Therefore	江戸 (えど)	Edo	源氏 (げんじ)	Genji
無常 (むじやう)	Impermanence	雨 (あめ)	Rain	水 (みづ)	Water
小野小町 (おののこまち)	Ono no Komachi	少納言 (せうなごん)	Shounagon	聲 (こゑ)	Voice
三笠の山 (みかさのやま)	Mount Mikasa	夕顔 (ゆふがほ)	Evening face	頸 (くび)	Neck

Examples

ほどへ
1. 程 経て
After time has passed
From the 徒然草.

うめ
2. いつしか 梅 咲かむ。
I wish that the plum would bloom as soon as possible.
From the 更級日記.

ありあけ
3. 月は 在 明 にて
The moon was that of dawn,
From the 奥の細道.

たま いづもをが
4. いざ 給 へ、出 雲 拜 みに
Well, please come, in order to make a pilgrimage to Izumo.
From the 徒然草.

Pronouns

There are quite a few pronouns in Classical Japanese that are no longer used in Modern Japanese, at least not in modern contexts. Below are the pronouns of Classical Japanese categorized by person with notes on how they are used.

Person?	漢字	歴史仮名遣い	Usage
First	我・吾	われ	Refers to oneself.
First	我・吾	わ	Original first person pronoun. Seen a lot in 我が.
First	我輩	わがはい	A haughty word that literally means "my fellows" but normally refers to just oneself.
First	某	それがし	Used by 江戸時代 samurai.
First	妾	わらは	A humble I. It was often used by samurai women.
First	豫・余	よ	A little pompous. Used only in the singular form.
First	朕	ちん	Used only by the Emperor.
First	仇家人	あだかど	Like おたく, it refers to one's house, but it is used to refer to oneself.

First/Sec- ond	己	おのれ	Either a humble I or a hostile second person pronoun.
First	麿	まろ	Used since the 平安時代.
First	あっし	あっし	Used a lot by men in the feudal period; slang.
First	拙者	せっしゃ	Used by samurai and upper class merchants in the feudal age in humiliation.
First	僕	やつがれ	A humble I.
First	みな (人)	みな(ひと)	Everyone
First	身共	みども	We; similar to 我ら.
First	吾人	ごじん	We
Second	君	きみ	Lord; compare to how it is used now.
Second	御前	おまえ	Honorific you; compare to how it is used now.
Second	貴様	きさま	Honorific you to nobility; compare to how it is used now.
First/Sec- ond	手前	てまえ	A humble I or a somewhat condescending you.
Second	御主	おぬし	Used towards people below one's status.
Second	其方	そなた・その ほう	Used towards people below one's status.
Second	汝	なんぢ	Thou
Third	彼	かれ	He
Third	彼女	かのじょ	She
Third	誰	た(れ)	Who

Usage Note: Second person pronouns are more frequently used in Classical Japanese as their usages were honorific rather than insulting. This, of course, changed over time. So, it is still the case that a person's name was better to use.

Historical Note: Other pronouns like 私・わたくし (from the word private) and あなた (literally that direction) can still be seen. 俺 could also be used as a second person pronoun, and ore itself was neutral and it was the second person pronoun usage that was used contemptuously. This is because ore is a contraction of 己!

Demonstratives: Demonstratives such as こちら, そちら, and あちら (comparable to こなた, そなた, and あなた) are used as pronouns in Classical Japanese as well. In fact, これ can also mean "that person" and 彼 could also mean "that thing".

Pluralization: 我, 君, お前, 貴様, 手前, 彼, and 彼女 are commonly pluralized. The same suffixes for pluralization are used, but 〜ども is more common.

5. かれは、人の許し聞こえざりしに。

No one gave their approval of that person.

From the 源氏物語.

こ われ い
6. 君や来し 我 や行きけむ思ほえず。

Did you come? Did I go? I don't remember.

From the 伊勢物語.

よろひ
7. みな 鎧 の袖をぞぬらしける。

Everyone wet the sleeves of their armor!

From the 平家物語.

たれ
8. 誰 もいまだ都慣れぬほどにて、え見つけず。

Since it was a time when no one was yet used to the capital, they were not able to find it.

From the 更級日記.

9. これはみかたぞ。

I am an ally!

From the 平家物語.

あ
10. わが宿は道もなきまで荒れにけり。

My lodge has grown wild to the point where there is no longer a road.

From the 古今和歌集.

ごじん
11. 吾 人 の関知するところにあらず。

It is not of our concern.

12. 君ならで誰にか見せん。

If not to you, to whom would I show?

From the 古今和歌集.

13. 君も臣もさわがせ給ふ。

Both the lord and the retainers panicked.

From the 平家物語.

14. 私が二階にゐることを必ずいふまいぞ。

Never say that I am on the second floor.

From the 冥土の飛脚.

なんぢ
15. 汝 殺すなかれ。

Thou shalt not kill.

それがし
16. 某 にお任せください。

Allow me to do this.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. 汝 was once なむち. Show how it changed over time.
2. How is 貴様 different from what it was in Classical Japanese?
3. How is お前 different from what it was in Classical Japanese?
4. 俺 comes from what?
5. How are demonstratives used as pronouns?

第 317 課: Numbers XI: ひふみ

Before Sino-Japanese words were introduced to 和 (ancient Japan), there were only native numbers. Counters still existed, but some of them looked different. Counters were limited to native numbers before the flood of Sino-Japanese words into Japanese.

Although Sino-Japanese numbers and counters have been used for much of written history, it has only been the case fairly recently counter phrases became so difficult to read. Sino-Japanese numbers were used with Sino-Japanese counters. So, even 400 would have been しひゃ

く, which can be seen in Modern Japanese in the set phrases しひゃくよしゅう 四 百 余 州 (all of China; literally "approximately 400 provinces") and しひゃくしびょう 四 百 四 病 (every kind of disease; literally "four hundred four" diseases)

Native Numbers 0~99,999

Many people are surprised to find out that native numbers could actually reach from 0~99,999. Whether it was actually used that far is debatable and highly unlikely, but the patterns are there to reach that high.

The number 0 was represented with the word なし, literally meaning "nothing", and 99,999 would be ここのよろず ここのほ ここのそ あまり ここの. Of course, when **counting things**, these numbers had to be used with native counters. The basic native counter to count things as well as the basic numbers can be summarized as follows.

	Number	Counter Phrase
0	なし	なし
1	ひと	ひとつ
2	ふた	ふたつ
3	み (い)	み (い) つ
4	よ (を)	よ (を) つ
5	いつ	いつつ
6	む (ゆ)	む (ゆ) つ
7	なな	ななつ
8	や (わ)	や (わ) つ
9	ここの	ここのつ

10	とを	とを
11	とをあまりひと	とをあまりひとつ
20	はた	はたち
30	みそ	みそぢ
40	よそ	よそぢ
50	いそ	いそぢ
60	むそ	むそぢ
70	ななそ	ななそぢ
80	やそ	やそぢ
90	ここのそ	ここのそぢ
100	もも	もも
200	ふたほ	ふたほ
300	みほ	みほ
400	よほ	よほ
500	いつほ	いつほ
600	むほ	むほ
700	ななほ	ななほ
800	やほ	やほ
900	ここのほ	ここのほ
1000	ち	ち
2000	ふたち	ふたち
3000	みち	みち
4000	よち	よち
5000	いつち	いつち
6000	むち	むち
7000	ななち	ななち
8000	やち	やち
9000	ここのち	ここのち
10000	よろづ	よろづ
20000	ふたよろづ	ふたよろづ

30000	みよろづ	みよろづ
40000	よよろづ	よよろづ
50000	いよろづ	いよろづ
60000	むよろづ	むよろづ
70000	ななよろづ	ななよろづ
80000	やよろづ	やよろづ
90000	ここのよろづ	ここのよろづ

Origin Notes: You can skip this if you have no interest in etymology. For those that find it interesting, have fun.

1. Without a counter, numbers were originally disyllabic words.
2. The sounds in parentheses would drop out and or stay in some words. For instance, むゆか (six days; sixth day of the month), survives in Modern Japanese as むいか.
3. It is posited by some that 5 was originally just い and that つ was added to make it disyllabic, but the sense of the word being two morphemes was lost, which gave way for ひとつ to be formed.
4. A rather interesting theory as to the ultimate origin of many Japanese numbers is that 2, 6, 8, and 10 descend from Austronesian languages, and because the pairs <1 2>, <3 6>, <4 8>, and <5 10> appeared to have interchangeable function in the ancient period and the origins of these pairs coincide with each other, it's very plausible. If you go back to these numbers, you can still see that these pairs resemble each other, with only the last pair being more different than the rest.

Below is a chart summarizing this theory. This theory is more generous to meaning changes.

	日本語の数詞	南祖の対応形	意味
1	$\phi it\grave{a}$	*isa	1
2	ϕuta	*isa	2
3	mi < *miy < *miyi	*telu	3
4	yə < *yəw < *yəwə	*empat	4
5	itu < *yi	*lima	5

6	<i>mu, mui, muyu</i>	<i>*telu</i>	3
7	<i>nana</i> (鼻音重複形)	<i>*isa</i>	1
8	<i>ya <.*yaw < *yawa</i>	<i>*empat</i>	4
9	<i>kəkənə</i>	<i>*genep</i>	数が揃った
10	<i>təwo</i>	<i>*sa(ŋ)puluq</i>	1 つの 10
20	<i>ɸata</i>	<i>*pasan</i>	対
百	<i>-ɸo, momo</i> (鼻音重複形)	<i>*puluq</i>	10
千	<i>ti</i>	<i>*ribu</i>	千
万	<i>yərədu</i>	<i>*(n)teReb</i>	万, 豊か

Chart Note: 南祖 stands for Southern Austronesian reconstruction used in this theory.

Transcription Note: y is not written in IPA as j.

Citation Note: This is from Pg 171 of 川本崇雄's 南から来た日本語.

5. There's also the problem of Japanese-related numerals being found in recovered 高麗語, which would have been spoken in the Korean peninsula. This further complicates the problem, but that's what happens when all your evidence goes away into the abyss of history.

6. For those that think Japanese is Altaic in origin, the number 4 is their friend because they think よ comes from dər. 7 is akin to the Proto-Manchu word *nadan 8 is then akin to the Manchu word japkun. The biggest problem that these people have is that they can't get anywhere close to accounting for the entire number system. Despite lack of evidence and hard to follow sound correspondences, the previous theory covers far more territory.

Counters

As far as counters are concerned, the exceptions found in Modern Japanese with Sino-Japanese endings are the same for the most part. For example, the counter for people is -人 (にん) for Sino-Japanese numbers and ~人 (たり) for native numbers. ~人 is ~人 (り) for ひと (1). In Modern Japanese, the native counter is normally only used for 1-2, but in Classical Japanese there was no such restriction. Native counters can be used with any native number, except 0 of course and likewise Sino-Japanese counters with Sino-Japanese numbers.

There are some counters that are noticeably **different**. For example, the counter for year is とせ instead of とし. The counter for days was ～か too, but it was used with any number. For example, 100 days was ももか. The exceptions with ～か were minus small changes. つ found in some can't be attested throughout history because つ wasn't written until much later. But, they were probably pronounced with them. 6 days (of the month) and 7 days (of the month) in particular were むゆか and なぬか instead of むいか and なのか respectively.

Examples

- ぢしようよとせみなづき みやこうつ
1. また、治承四年水無月のころ、にはかに都遷りはべりき。

Again, around the sixth month and fourth year of the Jishou Era, there was a sudden capital move.

From the 方丈記.

- みやこはじ さが てんわう おんとき
2. おほかた、この京の初めを聞けることは、嵯峨の天皇の御時、都と定まりにける

よさい
より後、すでに四百余歳を
経たり。

To begin with, as for hearing about the rise of Heiankyou, it has already been four hundred years since the capital was determined in the reign of Emperor Saga.

From the 方丈記.

- じふいちにち
3. 十一日の月もかくなむとすれば

When the moon of the eleventh day was about to disappear

From the 伊勢物語.

4. 八雲やくも
Eight/a lot of clouds

- なぬかのひ
5. 同じき七日

On the same seventh day of the month

From the 平家物語.

6. 一坏乃 濁酒乎 可飲有良師

ひとつき にご
一杯の 濁 れる酒を飲むべくあるらし。

It seems better to drink a cup of cloudy sake.

From the 万葉集.

はべ
7. 二人して打たんには、侍 りなむや。

If two people hit (the dog), would it still live?

From the 枕草子.

むゆか
8. 六 日、きのふのごとし。

The sixth. The same as yesterday.

From the 土佐日記.

つかさ くらゐ おも しゅくん ひとひ と うつ
9. 官 ・ 位 に 思 ひをかけ、主 君 のかげを頼むほどの人は、一 日 なりとも疾く 移 ろ
あま ご うれ を
はむとはげみ、時を失ひ世に 余 れて期する所なきものは、愁 へながら止まり居り。

People who pinned their hopes on people of rank and relied on their favor, even for a day quickly try to use their energies to move, and people who were left behind by society and had nothing to hope for stay put and complain.

From the 方丈記.

Reading Note: 一日 could also be read as ひとひ in the ancient period. Although つひたち and いちにち existed as well, this reading could also be used to mean "the other day" or "all day". The latter reading is actually acceptable today in more so written Japanese, but it is normally replaced with 終日 or 一日中.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. Give the Sino-Japanese numbers from 1-10 in 歴史仮名遣い.
2. Give the native numbers from 1-10 in 歴史仮名遣い.
3. Show a counter phrase different from Modern Japanese.

4. What is 101 in the native set of numbers?

第 318 課: Adverbs

Adverbs, as you will find, are pretty much how they are in Modern Japanese. Many patterns, however, have changed or have lost currency over time. Nevertheless, don't let this get in the way of your understanding them.

副詞

The Japanese way to classify adverbs involves four categories.

Condition Adverbs	With verbs of condition.
Degree Adverbs	Shows degree.
Syntax Agreement Adverbs	Agrees with conjugation/particles.
Instruction Adverbs	Shows instruction.

Condition adverbs are used with verbs whereas degree adverbs are used with adjectives. These are the easiest to use and to recognize. Consider とても (very) as an example.

When an adverb requires a sentence to be in a certain conjugation, it will always be a syntax agreement adverb. Another word for this is "correlated". Correlated adverbs are found in very common combinations. The instruction adverbs are similar, and we will look at them later.

Where Adverbs Come From

This, though, causes a lot of ambiguity on what constitutes an adverb as far as where they come from. All adverbs in Japanese come from another part of speech.

- **True Adverbs:** These adverbs are those that are purely adverbs and are found as such in the dictionary.
- **Varying Part of Speech:** Some adverbs are used adverbially, but are classified as other parts of speech when used differently.
- **From Grammatical Nouns:** Most of these nouns are temporal nouns that describe time such as "now" and "today". They can either be used as nouns or adverbs. Counter phrases are also great examples.
- **From Adjectives:** The 連用形 of adjectives can also be used as adverbs. For ナリ型形容動詞 you use the に-連用形, for タリ型形容動詞 you use the と-連用形, for ク活用形容詞 you use the く-連用形, and for シク活用形容詞 you use the しく-連用形. These adverbs are normally

translated with "-er" or "-ly". All adjectives may be changed into adverbs in Japanese whereas this is not the case in English.

- **From the Gerund of Verbs:** Verbs in the gerund can sometimes be used to make adverbs too. For example, 初めて can be used to mean "for the first time."
- **From Suffixes:** Suffixes such as すら in 夜もすら (all night) can make adverbs.
- **Onomatopoeia:** There is a lot of variety in onomatopoeia just as in Modern Japanese.

Correlated Adverbs

The majority of this lesson will be about what is not the same as in Modern Japanese. You already know the 連用形 of adjectives can be used adjectivally, and since the process is the same, you just need examples of Classical Japanese sentences with them. Many of the most common Japanese adverbs in Modern Japanese are common in Classical Japanese too.

Correlated Adverb Combination Categories

- Negative
- Prohibition
- Interrogative
- Hypothetical
- Desiderative
- Appropriateness
- Suppositional

Warning Note: Some of the endings will not be familiar, but just focus on the adverbs. It will help you tremendously if you can remember the full patterns though.

Set-Up Note: In order for better memorization, categories will be mixed. They will be labeled.

Important Common Combinations (Not Exhaustive)

Pattern	Type	Meaning
え...ず	Negative	Cannot
努 (ゆめ) ...な; ゆめ...ず	Prohibition; negative	Absolutely not; by no means

など...連体形	Interrogative	Why?
たとひ...とも	Hypothetical	Even if
願はく...む	Desiderative	What I wish for is
たへて...ず	Negative	Not at all
よも...じ	Negative	It can't be
なんぞ...連体形	Interrogative	Why?; what kind of?
いかばかり...らむ	Suppositional	How...it must be
な...そ・ぞ	Prohibition	Do not!
さだめて...む	Without a doubt	No doubt

Examples

すべか

1. 須らく約束は守るべし。

You ought to keep your promise(s).

2. 安志比紀乃 夜麻保登等藝須 奈騰可伎奈賀奴 (原文)

あしひきの山ほととぎすなどか来鳴かぬ。

Why doesn't the mountain cuckoo come and sing?

From the 万葉集.

3. けだし至言なり。

I dare so it's a wise saying.

4. 山主者 盖雖有 吾妹子之 将結標乎 人将解八方 (原文)

やまもり わぎもこ しめ
山 守はけだしありとも、我 妹 子 が結ひけむ 標 を人解かめやも

Even if by some chance the mountain guard were to be there, I wonder if a person could untie the sign you (my daughter) fastened?

From the 万葉集.

お い

5. なほ奥つ方に生ひ出でたる人、いかばかりかはあやしかりけむを。

As a person who grew up in a far region of the country, how queer I must have been!

From the 更級日記.

6. いかで月を見ではあらん。

How is it that you not look at the moon?

From the 竹取物語.

7. 念仏に勝る事 ^{さうら}候 ^{まう}ふまじとはなど 申し給はぬぞ。

Why don't you say that it is unlikely that it is superior to chanting the name of Buddha?

From the 徒然草.

8. 月な見給ひそ。

Do not look at the moon.

From the 竹取物語.

9. 春の鳥な鳴きそ鳴きそ。

Do not sing spring bird, do not sing.

By 北原白秋.

10. 誰もいまだ都慣れぬほどにて、え見つけず。

Since it was a time when no one was yet accustomed to the capital, they weren't able to find it.

From the 更級日記.

11. むべなるかな。

It is quite plausible.

12. あの国の人を、え戦はぬなり。

It is said that one cannot fight the people of that country.

From the 竹取物語.

13. 願はくは幸多からんことを。

What I wish for is a lot of happiness.

Grammar Note: ～む is often contracted to ～ん in the 連体形.

14. ^{たけ}猛 心つかふ人もよもあらじ。

A person with a bold heart could not possibly exist.

From the 竹取物語.

15. 昔ながらつゆ変はることなきも、めでたきことなり。

Though there is not a thing at all changed from the past, it is still auspicious.

From an unnamed author.

16. ゆめ疑うことなかれ

Absolutely do not doubt.

ふゆが

17. さて 冬 枯 れのけしきこそ、秋にはをさをさ劣るまじけれ。

Well, a withered winter landscape would not certainly be at all inferior to that of autumn!

From the 徒然草.

More Adverbs

This section will serve to show you more examples of adverbs used in Classical Japanese contexts. You should be very familiar with these adverbs, and if you are not, you can probably find them in Modern Japanese texts as well.

18. いかにせまし。

What should I do?

From the 堤中納言物語

19. 毎度ただ得失なく、この一矢に定むべしと思へ。

Each time do not think of hitting or missing, just think that you will certainly hit if with a single arrow.

20. え読みえぬほども心もとなし。

When you cannot compose a poem, it is nerve-racking.

From the 枕草子.

21. その沢にかきつばたいとおもしろく咲きたり。

In that swamp, irises were blooming very beautifully.

From the 伊勢物語.

22. なべて心柔らかかに、情けあるゆゑに、人の言ふほどのこと、けやけくいなびがたくて、よろづえ言ひ放たず、

心弱くことうけしつ。

Since in all respects they are gentle in heart and have compassion, it is clearly hard for them to

deny someone's favor, and without being able to assert all the circumstances, they ended up timidly took it upon themselves.

From the 徒然草.

23. 夜もすがら月を眺む。

To gaze at the moon all night.

24. ほのぼのと春こそ空に来にけらし。

Spring seems to have come faintly to the sky.

From the 新古今和歌集.

25. ちと承らばや。

I would like to hear a little bit (about it).

From the 徒然草.

26. いつしか咲かなむ。

I want the plum tree to bloom quickly!

From the 更級日記.

Even More Adverbs

漸う	やうやう	Gradually	いとど	いとど	All the most
最も	もつとも	The most	全て	すべて	All
極めて	きはめて	Extremely	臈て	やがて	Presently; immediately
終日	ひねもす	From morning to night	恐らく	おそらく	No doubt
縦しや	よしや	For example	定めて	さだめて	No doubt

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. いかが...べき means "how (should one)?" Create a simple sentence with this.
2. Create a simple sentence with an adverb from an adjective. Make sure your verb or adjective is correctly

3. What kind of adverb would さばかり (that much) be?

4. Find an example in Modern Japanese with the adverb いと "very".

5. な...そ is replaced by what in Modern Japanese?

6. え泳がず would mean?

7. Translate the following into either English or Modern Japanese.

たとひ耳鼻こそ切れ失（う）すとも

8. Translate the following into either English or Modern Japanese.

願はくは桜のもとにて死なむ。

9. Translate the following into Modern Japanese.

とても寒し。

第 319 課: Conjunctions

This lesson will hopefully be much easier than the syntax we've been looking at thus far. Conjunctions are pretty much used the same as they are today in Classical Japanese. Some have changed in spelling, appearance, or have been replaced by other words. The most difficult ones will more than likely be the ones that you have never seen before. Try not to let this get the best of you though.

接続詞

Conjunctions, again, are **dependent non-inflected** words that connect things together. Conjunctions in Japanese can be categorized by the following six main types. By no means is the exclusive, and you may find that some words can have more than one interpretation depending on how it is used.

Function	漢字	かな
Parallelism	並行	へいれつ
Alternation	代替	だいがえ
Addition	添加	てんか
Change	転換	てんかん
Concession	逆接	ぎやくせつ
Sequence	連続	れんぞく

Many conjunctions in Japanese originate from different grammatical parts of speech. Many of these include some sort of verb or adverb which are fixated to a particle. Then, they are treated as one word. We have already studied adverbs such as **されど** (however). **されど** comes from the **ラ変** verb **さり**, which comes from the contraction of **さあり**. **さり** means "to be that way". The conjunctive particle **do** means "though", and together it expresses the word "however; nevertheless; be that as it may".

This next section will involve examples. The conjunction(s) in the examples will be made bold for identification along with their definitions in the translation. This will help you realize how they are supposed to be used in context.

Conjunctions in Context

1. 枝の長さ七尺、**あるいは** ^{ろくしやく}六尺。

The length of the branch is **either** seven **or** six shaku.

From the 徒然草.

Meaning Note: A 尺 is equivalent to 30.3 cm.

2. ゆくの ^{かは}河 の流れは絶えずして、**しかも** ^{みづ}もとの 水 にあらず。

The flowing of the passing water is endless, yet **moreover** it is not the original water.

From the 方丈記.

3. **さらば**ゆるさむ。

Then, I will let you go.

From the 紫式部日記.

4. まして**その外**、数へ知るに及ばず。

Besides, you can't much less count (the houses).

From the 方丈記.

5. 力を尽くしたること少なからず。**しかるに**、^{ろく}禄 ^{たま}いまだ ^{たま}賜 はらず。

The strength we expended wasn't small. Even so, we still haven't received our stipends.

From the 竹取物語.

6. 朱雀院 ^{すざくいん}**ならびに** ^{おん}村上の 御 をぢにをはします。

He was the uncle of the retired Suzaku Emperor and Emperor Murakami.

From the 大鏡.

7. **さて** ^{ふゆが}冬 枯 れのけしきこそ、秋にはをさをさおとるまじけれ。

Well, a withered winter landscape would not certainly be at all inferior to that of autumn!

From the 徒然草.

8. 淀 ^{よど}みに ^{うか}浮 ぶうたかたは、**かつ**消え、**かつ**結びて、久しくとどまりたる ^{ためし}例 なし。

As for the bubble afloat on the pool, on the one hand, just as one thinks it disappears it reappears, and there is never a case where it is ever the same shape. |

From the 方丈記.

みちのく

9. 陸奥のしのぶもぢずり誰ゆゑに乱れそめにしわれならなくに

Like the clothing pattern "Shinobumojizuri" weaved in Michinoku, whom is it **hence** that it has begun to be tussled, although it is not because of me.

From the 百人一首.

まゐ

なにごと

10. そも、参りたる人ごとに山へ登りしは、何事もありけん、ゆかしかりしかど、神へ参るこそ

ほんい

本意なれと思ひて、山までは見ずとぞ言ひける。

"Even so, all the people coming to worship climbing the mountain thought 'did something happen? We were eager to know, but worshipping the god(s) is our primary goal', and they did see up to the mountain" said (the priest).

From the 徒然草.

Table of Contents

Examples

1. Create a sentence with しかし (however)

2. Create a sentence with しかして (moreover)

3. Create a sentence with したがって (therefore; as a result).

4. なほ is just like its modern なお. What two usages does it have, which are classified as different parts of speech? Look through this lesson and see which was used. Then, differentiate it with a simple example of the other in Classical Japanese to the best of your ability.

5. Translate the following sentence into English.

はかばかしき後見しなければ、事あるときは、なほ抛り所なく心細げなり。

はかばかしきうしろみしなければ、ことあるときは、なほよりどころなくころぼそげなり。

Hints: The particle し provides emphasis. Also, なければ in Classical Japanese means "since not have".

第 320 課: Interjections

In Classical Japanese there are a lot of interjections that are no longer used today. However, they are by no means difficult words to remember. You can even find some that are still used today. "Aa!", for example, is pretty universal.

Curriculum Note: This lesson will not cover interjectory particles. They will be discussed later when we look at the wide range of final particles in Classical Japanese.

Classical Japanese Interjections

In these example sentences, notice how the interjections are used in the sentence. The interjections will be pointed out in bold.

1. **いな**、さもあらず。

No, that's not the way.

From the 竹取物語.

Word Note: いな can still be used as an interjection today; however, it is usually accompanied with slightly older speech patterns such as the auxiliary verbs ~ぬ and ~まい.

2. **のうのう**われをも舟に乗せて賜はり給へ。

Hey you there, please allow me to board the boat as well.

From the Noh Play 隅田川.

Word Note: のうのう is onomatopoeic and is still seen as a 擬声語 meaning "carelessly". It is used in this context to get the attention of the boat, perhaps being careless for not seeing him wanting to get on board?

Kanji Note: 舟 denotes a smaller vessel.

3. **あな**、うらやまし。

My! How enviable.

From the 徒然草.

Word Note: あな is still used as an interjection in some parts of Japan.

4. **しかし**か、さ ^{はべ}侍りことなり。

Yes, yes, that is quite so.

From the 大鏡.

Word Note: しかしか is the modern equivalent of そうそう.

むき

5. 無期ののちに「えい」といへたりければ

Since he responded "yes" after an indefinitely long time

From the 宇治拾遺物語.

Word Note: えい can still be used in this fashion. However, it is normally spelled as ええ because えい is used as an interjection when you're doing something with a lot of resolution.

6. あないみじのおもとたちや。

Ah! What wonderful women.

From the 枕草子.

7. これ乗せて行け、具して行け。

Hey, go pick them up and take them along!

From the 平家物語.

Word Note: これ can still be used in this same fashion.

まう

8. やや、もの 申 さむ。

Hello, I have something that I would like to speak about.

From the 大鏡.

Word Note: やや is like today's もしもし.

9. すは、しつることを。

There, we did it!

From the 平家物語.

10. あつばれ、よからうかたきがな。

Ah, it would be nice if there were a good opponent.

From the 平家物語.

11. いかにかうつつか。

Well, is this a dream or is this reality?

From the 平家物語.

12. いで、いと ^{きやう}興 ^{らうしや}ある事いふ 老 者 かな。

Well, aren't you old men that say such interesting things!

From the 大鏡.

13. あはやと目をかけて飛んで掛かるに

Wow, just when I had my eyes on it and sprang...

From the 平家物語.

Word Note: This interjection survives as the adverb あわやと which can be found in expressions like "あわやというところで" meaning "just in time".

14. 「さはれ、道にても」などといひて、みな乗りぬ。

He said something like, "Still, but even in the road (isn't it fine)?", and everyone ended up riding.

From the 枕草子.

15. ^{なんと}すはや宮こそ 南 都 へ落ちさせ給ふなれ。

There! It looks like the palace is to flee to the southern capital (Nara).

From the 平家物語.

16. ^{ほふりん}まことや、法 輪 は近ければ

Yes that's so, and since Hourin (Temple) is close,

From the 平家物語.

17. ^めなんでふ、さやうのあそび者は、人の召ししたがうてこそ ^{まゐ}参 れ。

No kidding, that prostitute is called upon by people and comes.

From the 平家物語.

Table of Contents

Exercises

1. What is an interjection?

2. いさ = いいえ. Translate the following into English or Modern Japanese.

いさ、人のにくしとおもひたりしが

3. を was an interjection meaning "はい". Make a sentence with it.

4. あなめでたや = ?

5. いざ is in Modern Japanese too. What does it mean, and how is it used?

第 321 課: Demonstratives

Demonstrative words can't be simply defined as starting with these four sounds in Classical Japanese. So, we will simply refer to them as 指示詞, which means "demonstratives".

The Four Dimensions

There are four different types of 指示詞. This is just like in Modern Japanese; it's just appearance that doesn't make this clear sometimes. These four types differ in terms of distance because they are, again, demonstratives.

1. Close to the speaker
2. Close to the listener(s)
3. Far away from both the speaker and listener(s)
4. Indeterminate

However, it is never this simple. For example, when referring to something that is not concretely there, there are three words for that: その, あの, and かの. The first is used when something is unfamiliar to the listener, the second is used when both are familiar, and the third is used when neither the speaker nor the listener are familiar with what's being talked about. We see little details like this in Classical Japanese as well.

Conditions of 指示詞

No single theory can completely explain the usages of 指示詞. Distance is not the only factor. 我 refers to oneself rather than like そなた to mean "you" because of the distance factor, but distance alone doesn't explain the rather complex usages of そ and あ words.

First, you must look at the sphere of influence of the speaker and listener. Say you're taunting someone to hit you. You tell them to hit you "here". The person you're taunting responds, "hit you where, here?" "Yes, there". In the first instance, ここ would be used. Speaker B would use どこ then ここ. You would then respond with そこ. ここ shows one's realm of control. ここ used by Speaker B shows his/her realm of influence, the place where you're going to be punched. If you turn your back around, you're going to be hit somewhere on your backside. Now, it is out of your control and you're probably going to get what you deserve.

If that was the only condition, any abstract application of これ or それ would be ungrammatical. However, this is not the case at all. Thus, a dimension of experience must be accounted for. こ and あ words relate to direct experience whereas それ is indirect (in respect to the listener's knowledge or sense). This explains the usage of "that" mentioned earlier.

This leads to even more things to consider. Essentially, there are two kinds of usages of 指示詞. They are either based on the scene (現場指示) or on context (文脈指示), with the last being the hardest one to interpret.

	現場指示	文脈指示
こ	What the speaker has influence over.	As if it is managed by the speaker.
そ	Creates an indirect experiential scene.	Necessarily indirectly experienced object.
あ	No influence over something now .	Direct experience by the speaker in the past .

指示代名詞

As the title says, this section is about demonstrative pronouns. This section will be dominated by a chart with notes and examples after it. More Japanese is to be implemented in charts, so get ready.

	こ	そ	あ	か (方向・場所・他人)	不定称	わ (自分)
限定	こ (れ)	そ (れ)	あ (れ)	か (れ)	たれ (人) いづれ (もの)	わ (れ)
場所	ここ	そこ	あそこ あしこ あすこ あこ	かそこ かしこ	いづこ いづく	
場所周辺	ここら ここいら	そこら そこいら	あ (そ) ころ あすころ あそこいら		どこら どこいら	
指定	この	その	あの	かの	いづれの	われの わが
限定指定	これの	そのの	あれの	かれの	どれの	
方向	こち	そち	あち		いづち いづかた	

方向周辺	こちら	そちら	あちら			
指定方向	このち	そのち	あのち	かのち	どのち	
時					いつ	
尊称	こなた	そなた	あなた	かなた	どなた	
蔑称	こやつ	そやつ	あやつ	かやつ	どやつ	

Usage Notes:

1. The れ in the first row is not seen most often in older works.
2. The use of か words for 3rd person is limited. We all know that 彼 means "he" in Modern Japanese, but this is a rather recent development. Words such as かれ and かなた could originally also refer to other people.
3. -ら is like "-abouts". Before the arrival of どこ, いくこ・いくく was just used for the indefinite column.
4. The second person pronoun 其(し) also existed.
5. Of course, not all of these originate at the same time, and not all of them have survived to the present. All of this comes with the course of language. However, when you see one of these, you should have a pretty good idea what it's being used for. Again, some of these are ancient.
6. The words かすか and かそけし share origin with かしこ.
7. In Modern Japanese これの, それの, あれの, and どれの are not used as alternatives to この, その, etc. They are very limited. かれの VS かの is more productive. The difference can be ascertained from the chart. The first is now used to mean "his". The second is used to mean "that" which is distant/unfamiliar to both the speaker and listener(s).
8. この, その, etc., were deemed as two words put together, a demonstrative word + の.
9. こなた、そなた、Etc. could also be used as direction words.
10. For those that can be used as pronouns, the 1st person pronouns such as こちら can refer not necessarily to oneself but someone in one's in-group just like in Modern Japanese. So, rather, you can view the demonstratives こちら and そちら referring to one's in-group and out-group respectively.
11. Of course, there are other demonstratives in Japanese. Another includes 遠近(をちこち), which is equivalent to あちらこちら.

Examples

1. あの 男、^{をのこ} ^よ ^{こち} 寄れ。

Man over there, come here!

From the 更級日記.

2. わが ^{いもうと} 妹 ^{ども} ども

My own sisters

From the 源氏物語.

3. 知らず、^し ^う ^し ^{ひと} ^き ^さ 生まれ死ぬる 人、^{いづかた}より来たりて、^{いづかた}へか去る。

I know not where people who are born and die come and go.

From the 方丈記.

4. 原文：箆毛與 美箆母乳 布久思毛與 美夫君志持 此岳尔 菜採須兒 家吉閑名 告<紗>根 虚見津 山跡乃國者
押奈戸手 吾許曾居 師<吉>名倍手 吾己曾座 我<許>背齒 告目 家呼毛名雄母

訓読：箆もよみ箆持ち 堀 串 もよみ堀 串 持ち ^こ ^{こも} ^{ふくし} ^{ぶくしも} ^{おか} ^{なつみ} ^こ ^{いへき} ^の
この 岳 に 菜 摘ます児 家 聞かな 告らさね

そらみつ ^{やまと} ^{くに} ^わ ^ゐ ^{われ} ^{いま} ^わ ^の
大 和 の 国 は おしなべて 我れこそ居れ しきなべて 我れこそ 座 せ 我れこそば 告らめ

いへ ^な
家 をも名をも

Hey, young girl with the basket, the wonderful basket, and the hand shovel the wonderful hand shovel picking grasses, tell me where you live but not its name. For I rule all of the land of Yamato filled with the spirits of the Gods. Though I rule everything, show me where you're from, your house and your name.

From the 万葉集.

5. かの花は失せにけるは。

That flower has ended up disappearing!

From the 枕草子.

Word Note: か words are weaker in their demonstrative nature, and かの can be interpreted as being "usual/certain", which would make this sentence all the more exclamatory.

6. 誰か知らまし。

Who would know?

From the 古今和歌集.

7. **それ**を見れば、三寸ばかりなる人。

When he looked at it, it was a person of around three sun.

From the 竹取物語.

Word Notes: A 寸 is approximately three centimeters. Also note that it is often easy to translate それ as "it", but remember in Japanese that these demonstrative words have a dimension of distance in their interpretation.

8. 生きとし生けるもの、**いづれか**歌を詠まざりける。

Of all living things, which does not recite poetry?

From the 古今和歌集.

Word Note: 生きとし生けるもの is actually still used as a set phrase today.

9. 「**これ**なむ都鳥」と言ふを聞きて

Hearing him say, "This is the capital bird"...

From the 伊勢物語.

10. **こち**へおはいりあそばせ。

Please come in here.

From the 菅原伝授手習鑑.

11. **そこ**に日を暮らしつ。

They ended up passing the day there.

From the 更級日記.

Word Note: Even self-reflexive pronouns like おのれ・おのが are demonstrative pronouns.

Demonstrative Adverbs

Demonstrative adverbs have much more variation. Today, there is こう, そう, ああ, and どう. However, way back when, there was かく, さ, しか, と, and いか along with many other expressions based off of them, many of which are still used today.

Expressions

漢 字	意 味	変化	表現
--------	--------	----	----

斯 く	こ う	かく → かう → こ う	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • かくして = こうして • かく+ある → かかる = こういう
然	そ う	さ → さう → そう	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • さほど = それほど • さにあらず = そうではない • さ+ある → さる = とある・或る • さ+あらば → さらば = そうしたら；さようなら • さ+あれば → されば = それでは；だから
し か	そ う		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • しかして = そうして • しか+あるに → しかるに = そうであるのに • しか+あるべく → しかるべく = 適当に • しか+あれども → しかれども = そうであるけれども • しか+あらば → しからば = それなら • しか+あれば → しかれば = そうであるので
と	あ あ		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • とかく = ああだったりこうだったり • とにかくにも = ああでもこうでも；いずれにしても
い か	ど う		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • いかに = どのように、どう • いかばかり = どれほど

Not all phrases are simple translations to modern Japanese. Some are worded differently today. There are also many phrases with 指示副詞 + あり in Classical Japanese. Some of these become 連体詞, 接続詞, and other 副詞.

Examples

12. いかばかり恥ずかしう、かたはらいたくも候ふらむ。

How embarrassing and awkward it must have been.

From the 平家物語.

13. 命は天に在り。然れば時を待つのみ。

Life is in heaven. So, we must only wait for that time.

By 福沢諭吉.

14. しかるに禄いまだに賜はらず。

Even so, we still haven't received our rewards.

From the 竹取物語.

Table of Contents

第 322 課: The Particles が & を

To begin coverage with particles in Classical Japanese, we'll start with perhaps the two easiest to relearn in Classical Japanese.

が

An amazing feature of が in Classical Japanese is that it is for most of its history interchangeable almost completely with の as a case particle. Yes, even の was seen for the function of marking the subject. Another odd thing was that the simple sentence did not need が. This is because in the ancient period this usage didn't exist. The first usage of が was to mark an attribute like の. From there it began being used as a subject marker, and then it started taking on conjunctive usages.

Remember that a case particle shows some sort of relationship between the preceding NOMINAL phrase that it modifies and the rest of the sentence. Have you noticed that they are always nominal phrases? Well, what may cause you confusion with Classical Japanese is how these particles seemingly follow right after a verb. However, the 連体形 was able to be used as a nominalized part of speech. Thus, the only difference here is how this relation is marked. This phenomenon is called 連体形の準体法. It is no longer done today for the most part. However, you can still see things like ~するのがいい. Even then the pattern is considered old-fashioned.

Just as が can mark the subject (主格), it can also mark an attribute just like の

れんたいしゅうしょくかく
(連 体 修 飾 格). There are still cases where が does this today. This usage is very common in place names, and it is seen in older expressions like 我が国. As far as names are concerned, you might not recognize that its が because it is often spelled as ケ. For example, think of

せきがはら
places like 関ヶ原, which was where a crucial battle in 1600 marked the start of the

とくがわばくふ
徳川幕府.

Two other usages that differ from Modern Japanese are showing an implied nominal, similar to what の can do today, and show apposition (同格). This usage is rather odd from appearance if you were brand new to Classical Japanese. It should not be confused as "but". Remember that all of the usages up to now are classified as case particle usages. After all, the conjunctive usages were the last to evolve, as is the case for other particles as well.

Examples

きよみ せき す

1. 清見が関を過ぐ。

We pass the barrier at Kiyomi.

いざよひ

From the 十六夜.

こ いぬ に

2. すずめの子を、犬きが逃がしつる。

Inuki let the baby sparrow escape.

From the 源氏物語.

3. 君之行 氣長成奴 山多都祢 迎加将行 待尔可将待 (原文)

け むか

君が行き日長くなり山たづね 迎へ行かむ待ちにか待たむ

It's been a while since he left. I wonder if he will cross the mountains to visit, or is he waiting as is?

From the 万葉集.

とねり

4. 舎人が寝たる足を狐にくわる。

The feet of the servant who was asleep were eaten by a fox.

From the 徒然草.

くわんおん

5. 観音、我ガ身ヲ助けたまへ。

Kannon, please save me!

From the 今昔物語集.

The Conjunctive Particle が

Similar to the conjunctive particles を and に that you will learn about later in this lesson, this が can be used to mean "but/although" like it still does in Modern Japanese, or, like in Modern Japanese, it can be used to show a sequential connection.

きよもりこうそのころ だいなごん
6. 清盛公其比 いまだ大納言にておはしけるが、大きに恐れ騒がれけり。

At the time, Minister Kiyomori was still a senior counselor, and he gained quite a lot of attention.

From the 平家物語.

しらびやうし
7. 昔よりおほくの白拍子ありしが、かかる舞はいまだ見ず。

There have been many shirabyoushi dancers from the past, but we had never seen this kind of dance.

From the 平家物語.

を

Most of what を does should not be big news. Like today it marks direct objects. This, though, is not deemed as much of a grammatical necessity is today. It is often dropped just as it is in Modern Japanese.

With intransitive verbs it can mean "through" as in through a point of transit as we ll as show point of origin meaning "from" as in 脇道に入る. Of course, these definitions are rather vague. It can be used in situations like showing the surroundings through which something is being done, show an event or place one isn't at like in 授業を休む, the time through which one spends in a certain condition, like in 時を経る. It can also be used with the causative. All of these examples are in Modern Japanese, but they're usages that were also used in Classical Japanese. Notice that all but the first were used with intransitive verbs.

There are a few usages of を that are not so in Modern Japanese. There are two patterns such patterns.

Pattern	Modern Equivalent
Nominal + を + Adjective stem + み	...が...なので
Nominal + を + Verb in 連用形 + に (て)	...を...として

...を...み

This pattern shows cause or origin. It is rather old. In fact, most of the occurrences of this pattern were in the 奈良時代. Many sources actually classify this as an interjectory particle. A problem with this theory is how similar み is to a 連用形 of a verb. Although you can't just make a

verb out of any adjective by sending it to the stem and adding む, there are some that appear to be made as such. For example, 惜しい = regrettable and 惜しむ = to regret. It's not uncommon for a language to have a construction be limited. So, when you treat み as a 連用形, it makes the pattern a lot easier to remember.

Particle Note: Remember that を+は = をば. This combination is extremely common in Classical Japanese. In some dialects this pattern resulted in the object marker becoming ば altogether, having dropped the initial を. This is extremely common in dialects of 九州.

Examples

8. そこに日を暮らしつ。

They ended up passing the day there.

From the 更級日記.

9. 渚乎無美 葦辺乎指天 多頭鳴渡 (原文)

あしなべ たず
渚を無み 葦 辺 をさして 鶴 泣き渡る

Since the tideland was gone, the cranes cried and flew, aiming for the reed shore.

From the 万葉集

10. 秋の田のかりほの いほ とま ころもで
庵 の 苫 を荒みわが 衣 手 は露にぬれつつ。

Since the autumn rice field's temporary thatch is rough, my robe sleeves are drenched in dew.

From the 百人一首.

11. かたじけなき おんこころ
御 心 ばへの、たぐひなきを頼みにて、まじらひたまふ。

She entered the court relying on the unprecedented depth of the affections (of the Emperor).

From the 源氏物語.

Particle Note: The particle の shows apposition here just like が here, showing that かたじけなき and たぐひなき are both in reference to 御心ばへ.

12. はる こけ
遙 かなる 苔 の細道をふみわけて

Cutting through the long moss covered path

From the 徒然草

13. 奥浪 邊波安美 射去為登 藤江乃浦尔 船曾動流 (原文)

なみへなみしづ いさ
沖つ 浪 邊 波 静 けみ 漁 りすと藤江の浦に舟ぞ動ける

The waves in the offing and the surging waves were calm, so when I attempted to fish, my
fishing boat got stuck in Fujie Bay.

From the 万葉集.

14. 空をも飛ぶべからず。

They couldn't fly in the air.

From the 方丈記.

Particle Note: Notice that the combination をも, which is now considered quite old-fashioned, is, as to be expected, very common in Classical Japanese.

けん
15. 偽りても 賢 を学ばんを、賢といふべし。

A person who deceives yet studies the wise should be called wise.

From the 徒然草.

ゆふがほ
16. かの白く咲けるをなん「夕 顔」と申しはべる。

That (flower) blooming white is called the "evening face".

From the 源氏物語.

Particle Note: As you can see, there is some sort of noun that is implied before を. This is a common property of 連体形の準体法.

か
17. 頼朝が首をはねて、わが墓の前に懸くべし。

Cut off Yoritomo's head and hang it in front of my grave!

From the 平家物語.

18. 在管裳 君乎者将待 打靡 吾黒髪尔 霜乃置萬代日 (原文)

なび わ
在りつつも君をば待たむ打ち 靡 く吾が黒髪に霜の置くまでに

I will wait for you all the time as is up until my waving hair has white mixing with the black.

From the 万葉集

19. 秋田之 穂上尔霧相 朝霞 何時邊乃方二 我戀將息 (原文)

ほへき あさかすみいつへ
秋の田の穂の上に霧らふ 朝霞 何処邊の方にあが恋ひ止まむ

The morning mist draped over the ripened ears of corn in the autumn field: when will my love, which is like the mist which will never clear, ever cease?

From the 万葉集.

20. 居明而 君乎者將待 奴婆珠能吾黒髪尔 霜者零騰文 (原文)

ぬばたま
居明かして君をば待たむ 烏珠の吾が黒髪に霜は降るとも

I will wait as is till dawn, no matter if the dew falls into my black hair.

From the 万葉集.

Orthography Note: Since を was commonly in nouns and could start words and be inside words, do not confuse word boundaries. So, をとこ = 男 and is one word.

The Conjunctive Particle を

Here is a usage unlike anything in Modern Japanese of を. を = のに as a conjunctive particle in Classical Japanese. It follows the 連体形 and can be used to show causation, concession, or sequence. These usages are all interchangeable with the conjunctive particle に. Both conjunctive particles emerged in the 奈良時代 but became in full use in the 平安時代. This usage of を already began to fade away by the 室町時代. and now the concession usage of these particles survives with the particle のに.

ここち
21. 名を聞くより、やがて面影は押しはかるる 心地するを、見る時は、かねて思ひつるままの顔したる人こそなけれ。

If you hear the name, you'll be able to guess the person's features automatically, but when you actually see the person, he is not going to look like the person that you had thought.

From the 徒然草.

たつ
22. わが弓の力は強きを、龍あらば、ふと射殺して、首の玉は取りてむ。

Since the power of my bow is strong, if there is a dragon, I'll immediately shoot and kill it, and I'll definitely get the jewel in its neck.

From the 竹取物語.

ある おのてうふう わかんらうえいしう
23. 或 者、小 野 道 風 の書ける 和 漢 朗 詠 集 とて持ちたりけるを、ある人、

ごさうでん
「御 相 伝 浮ける事には侍らじなれども、四条大納言選ばれたる物を、道風書かん事、時代や違ひ
はべ
侍 らん。...」

It seems that a certain person had Ono Toufuu's Wakan Rouei Shuu, but as another person said,
"although it isn't that there is no proof in this that it's Toufuu's writing, doesn't Toufuu writing
about something compiled by Shijou Dainagon conflict time periods?..."...
From the 徒然草.

わらひとつかね ふ
24. 藁 一 束 ありけるを、夕べにはこれに臥し。

He had a bundle of straw, and in the evening he slept on it.
From the 徒然草.

おほとなぶら
25. 大 殿 油 消えにけるを、ともしつくる人もなし。

The light burned out, but there was no one to relight it.
From the 源氏物語.

The Interjectory Particle を

This を is just like よ.

ばかり
26. いか 許 かはあやしかりけむを。

How countrified I must have been!
From the 更級日記.

27. 夢と知りせばさめざらましを。

If I had known it was a dream, I wouldn't have woken up!
From the 古今和歌集.

28. 如此許 戀乍不有者 高山之 磐根四巻手 死奈麻死物呼 (原文)

いはね ま
かくばかり恋ひつつあらずは高山の 磐 根 し枕きて死なましものを

If I'm going to feel love sick like this, then I'd rather make a pillow of the rock on that tall

mountain and die!
From the 万葉集.

Table of Contents

第 323 課: The Particles に, にて, & へ

You can't just assume that particles are completely the same in Classical Japanese. Although all three of these particles are very similar to what they are in Modern Japanese, there are quite a few things that make a big difference. For example, where's で? It evolves from にて. So, way back when, に showed all of the functions now allotted to just で!

に

Just as in Modern Japanese, 𐤀 has a lot of usages! In Classical Japanese it has both case and conjunctive usages. Let's start with what's different.

1. It can be used like the particles *で* and *にて* to show the location of an action. It may also show method by which something is done as well as cause. All of these usages have been given to *で* in Modern Japanese. In Modern Japanese you would be counted wrong for this. However, for a very long time up until and even a while after the contraction of *にて* to *で* was made, *に* was still used in this way.

かはぎぬ まこと
1. この 皮 衣 は、火に焼かむに焼けずはこそ、 真 ならめ。

When we try to burn this leather robe with fire and it doesn't burn, then it's probably the real thing.

From the 竹取物語.

Particle Note: Remember the 連体形の準体法? This examples why に is after 焼かむ. The implied noun is 時.

2. 在京荒有家尔 一宿者 益旅而 可辛苦 (原文)

都なる荒れたる家にひとり寝ば旅にまさりて苦しかるべし

Sleeping by myself in my ruined home in the capital is perhaps more trying than sleeping in travel.

From the 万葉集.

3. 烏玉之 夜之深去者 久木生留 清河原尔 知鳥數鳴 (原文)

お　　かはら
ぬばたまの夜の更けゆけば久木生ふる清き川　原に千鳥しば鳴く

As the pitch black night grew late, the plovers constantly chirped at the pure riverbank where

the hisaki grows.

From the 万葉集.

Word Note: It's not exactly known what plant the 久木 was.

2. The conjunctive particle に is interchangeable with the conjunctive particle を. As we learned in that lesson, this に can be used to show causation, concession, as well as sequence. The usages in order in Modern Japanese are ので, のに, and が respectively.

4. 命のあるものを見るに、人ばかり久しきはなし。

When you look at things that have life, nothing (lives) as long as people.

From the 徒然草.

3. So, what are all of those usages in Modern Japanese that are in Classical Japanese? The most important usage still in this time is doing all of what we learned way back in Lesson 19. Although most of this is the same, some things have been expanded upon, so don't just glance through it.

に **compensates the establishment of an action or state**. に shows deep establishment. In doing so, it plays this role in many crucial situations. It is for the most part equivalent to "at". The following five points describe に very well.

- Shows the place of where a state (of action) deep establishment. It may show the **place of existence or occurrence** or **person of possession** (彼には子どもがいる) .
- Shows **destination/direction/target!** It's the **indirect object** marker as well.
- Shows the **effect, condition, state, or goal of an action**. Verbs like "to become" come to mind. This may also show pretext. For example, "you make your hands **as** a pillow". It is also the "as" of comparison and capacity.
- Shows the **standard of action, condition, or state**. Ex. "to lack **in** creativity".
- Shows **what brings about some sort of measure, feelings, situation, or work**.

More specifically, other applications of all of this that you have to keep in mind are how it is used with the passive and causative to mean "by". Of course, you can't forget how it is used to show time of action.

Examples

あした

5. 朝 に死に、夕べに生まるるならひ。

The pattern of dying in the morning and being born in the evening.

From the 方丈記.

6. 葦北乃 野坂乃浦従 船出為而 水嶋尔将去 浪立莫勤 (原文)

葦北の野坂の浦ゆ船出して水嶋に行かむ浪立つなゆめ

Let's set sail from Ashikita's Nozaka Inlet to Mizushima. Waves, never roll!

From the 万葉集.

7. 狩りに往にけり。

He went hunting (with falcons).

From the 伊勢物語.

8. 白波の上にただよひ

Since it floated on top of the white waves

From the 平家物語.

Historical Note: Remember that the copula verb なり comes from にあり.

9. まことかと聞きて見つれば、言の葉を飾れる玉の枝にぞありける。

He listened, wondering if it was real, and when he looked, he found that to his surprise that it was a jeweled branch decorated with words!

From the 竹取物語.

10. 妹之家毛 繼而見麻思乎 山跡有 大嶋嶺尔 家母有猿尾 (原文)

おほしま ね いへ
妹が家も継ぎて見ましを大和なる 大 島 の嶺に 家 もあらましを

(If we can't meet), at least it would be nice to see your house. If only my house were on top of the peak of the great island of Yamato(, then I could always see your house).

From the 万葉集.

11. 京に入り立ちてうれし。

We were happy to enter the capital.

From the 土佐日記.

よど
12. 淀 みに浮かぶうたかたは

Bubbles floating in a pool (of water)

From the 方丈記.

にて

This particle can follow both nominals and the 連体形. It is the ancestor of で. It is the combination of the case particle に and the conjunctive particle て. Just like で can be used to indicate place of action, means of action, what something is made of, age, cause, and condition. In showing condition it is often like として. When used as a conjunctive particle, it is just like ので. Remember that there was no need to have something nominalize verbs because of 連体形の準体法. で first appears in the Late 平安時代. However, it was probably in local vernaculars much earlier. Whatever you do, don't confuse it with the て form of なり.

13. 後生でだに悪道へおもむかんずる事のかなしさよ。

Ah, the sadness of heading toward hell even in the next life!

From the 平家物語.

14. 芝の上にて飲みたるもをかし。

Drinking on top of the grass is also charming.

From the 徒然草.

15. 應還 時者成来 京師尔而 誰手本乎可 吾将枕 (原文)

帰るべく時はなりけり都にて誰が手本をか我が枕かむ

I at last may go home, but whose sleeves of someone in the capital shall I sleep on for I no longer have a wife.

From the 万葉集.

16. いみじう寂しげなるに、

He seemed very lonesome, but

From the 源氏物語.

へ

There is nothing different about this particle. One thing that you should keep in mind, though, is that originally it was meant to indicate movement going (far) away. However, it has ever since the 平安時代 been used with any direction like it is used today. The particle most likely comes from the noun 辺.

17. 住む館より出でて、舟に乗るべき所へ渡る。

We left the fort where we had lived and crossed to the place where we were to board a boat.
From the 土佐日記.

Table of Contents

第 324 課: The Particles より & から

There should be little surprise about these particles. Not much has changed. Both follow the same kinds of words: nominal and things in the 連体形. They even share most usages with each other. より came first, and から was once a noun. We will begin by looking at より first.

The Case Particle より

より can mean "than". However, it can also be used just like から to show point of origin—"from". This can also be used to show point of transit. This usage today is quite formal, but it was far more commonplace in classical times.

1. みそかなる所なれば、門^いよりもえ入^{わらは}らで、^{ついで}童^づべの踏^みみあけたる^築地^ののくづれより通^ひひけり。

In order to not be seen and not being able to enter from the gate, he went back and forth through a tumbled part of an earthen wall that children had tread upon and opened.
From the 伊勢物語.

2. 大^{おほつ}津^{うらど}より浦^こ戸^ををさして漕^ぎいづ。

From the 土佐日記.

3. その人、かたちよりは心なむまさりたりける。

As for that person, her heart was superior to her looks.

From the 伊勢物語.

4. 前^{まへ}より行^ゆく水^{みづ}をば、初瀬川といふなりけり。

The water that passes through the front is called the Hatsuse River.

From the 源氏物語.

5. もとより友とする人ひとりふたりしていきけり。

He went out together with one, two people that were his friends from the beginning.

From the 伊勢物語.

6. いづくより来^きつる猫^{ねこ}ぞと見るに

While I was looked and thinking where the cat turned up from,

From the 更級日記.

あづまぢ みち は おく かた お い
7. 東 路 の 道 の果てよりも、なほ 奥 つ 方 に生ひ出でたる人

A person who has grown in a more remote place than the end of the road of Azuma.

Word Note: Azuma is an old name for the 関東地方.

Method

It used to also be used just like で to show method.

かち
8. ただ一人、徒歩よりまうでけり。

(He) made a pilgrimage alone by foot.

From the 徒然草.

よりほかに

よりほかに is also still used to mean “except for” or “aside from”.

ゆふぐ と
9. ひぐらしの鳴く山里の 夕 暮 れは風よりほかに訪ふ人もなし。

Except for the wind, no one visits on evenings when the cicadas sing in the mountain villages.

From the 古今和歌集.

Phrasing Note: As you can see, 人もなし was quite acceptable in Classical Japanese.

Reason

You can also see より showing reason. Some people think that this is a conjunctive usage.

つはものどもあまた具して山へ登りけるよりなむ、その山をふじの山とは名付けける。

The mountain was named "the mountain rich in soldiers" due to many being sent and having climbed it.

From the 竹取物語.

As Soon As

より can also mean "as soon as", which is a usage that is not used today. It is just like やいなや.

10. 名を聞くより、やがて面影は推しはからるる心地するを。

As soon as one hears the name, one immediately imagines the face.

From the 徒然草.

Historical Note: より was extensively used in the 平安時代. It most certainly shares origin with other particles from the ancient period which include よ, ゆ, and ゆり.

The Case Particle から

Like より, から can also follow nominals and the 連体形. They share many functions. から can be used to show point of origin, means, passage, rapid sequence, and show reason. This reason function would eventually expand into the conjunctive particle we know and use all the time today in the medieval period.

One other grammar point that is special about it was the combination からに, which was truly the predecessor of the conjunctive particle as this could show cause as a result of something, just like today, and also show the meaning of "even if" and rapid sequence. Today, the grammar point からには, which means "so long as".

Examples

11. 浪の花沖から咲きて散り来めり。

The flowers of the waves appear to bloom offshore and then come shatter on the shore.

From the 古今和歌集.

12. 月夜好三 妹二相跡 直道柄 吾者雖來 夜其深去來 (原文)

月夜良み妹に逢はむと直道から我は来れども夜そ更けにける。

A moonlit night is good. Down a straight path I came to meet my wife though night had fallen.

From the 万葉集.

13. 浪の音の今朝からことに聞こゆるは春の調べやあらたまるらむ

I wonder if the waves heard this morning have put in order the start of spring and its new tune?

From the 古今和歌集.

14. 惜しむから恋しき物を 白雲の立ちなむ後はなに心ちせむ

As soon as I regret something, I longing for it. Right after the white clouds depart, what kind of feeling does one have?

From the 古今和歌集.

15. 吹くからに秋の草木のしをるればむべ山風邪をあらしといふらむ。

As soon as the wind blows, the grasses and autumn trees wither; consequentially, one can indeed say that the mountain wind is a storm.

From the 古今和歌集.

Historical Note: から actually has its roots as a nominal phrase, and examples can be found occasionally used as such in the 万葉集.

第 325 課: The Particles の & と

This lesson will be about the particles の and と as they were used in Classical Japanese.

The Case Particle の

The case particle の has been interchangeable with が from the onset. Although this is so, it appears that が was originally limited to noun phrases with an emotional connection, particularly human nouns. This leaves everything else to の. This can explain why even today Japanese say 我が国, although 我の did exist at one point when this distinction faded away.

They were both used as attribute markers and after the subject(s) of a sentence. Differentiating between these two different usages is a matter of looking at the logical relationships found in the sentence. If the next word is the object of the sentence but の is clearly after the subject, then you wouldn't interpret it as the attribute marker の.

Examples

1. 思ひあまり出でにし ^い魂 ^{たま}のあるならん。

It must have been my soul that ventured out in an excess of love...

From the 伊勢物語.

2. 山崎の橋見ゆ。

The Yamazaki Bridge appeared.

From the 土佐日記.

3. 秋芽者 可咲有良之 吾屋戸之 浅茅之花乃 散去見者 (原文)

秋萩は咲くべくあらし 吾がやどの浅茅が花の散りゆく見れば

There is no doubt that the clovers have bloomed. If you look at the cogon grass flowers that have scatter in my yard...

From the 万葉集.

4. 風のをとにぞおどろかれぬる。

It is by the sound of the wind that I find myself startled.

From the 古今和歌集.

5. 久方のひかりのどけき春の日にしづ心なく花の散るらむ。

In this spring day with the sun beaming tranquilly, why have the cherry blossoms not yet calmed?

From the 古今和歌集.

6. ^は山の端に日のかかるほど、住吉の浦を過ぐ。

When the sun reached the edge of the mountain, we passed through the Sumiyoshi Bay.

From the 更級日記.

7. ^{をんな}女^{ちやうじやう}の女らしからざる、男^{頂上}の男らしからざる、共に天然の道に背きて醜き事^{なり}なり。

Women not acting like women, men not acting like men, both contrary to nature, are the zenith of ugly things.

By 幸田露伴.

8. 雪のおもしろう降りたりし^{あした}朝^{ふみ}、人のがり言ふべき事ありて^文をやる^{ふみ}とて、雪のこと何とも言は

^{かへりごと}ざりし返^{おほ}事に、この雪いかを見ると、一筆のたまはせぬほどのひがひがしからむ人の^仰せらるること、聞き入るべきかは。

On a morning when the snow fell elegantly, I had something to say to a certain person, and in writing the letter, I in the reply to which I mentioned nothing of the snow, how must one even comply to such a request from an unrefined, perverse person who doesn't even ask about what one thinks of this snow!?

From the 徒然草.

Just like in Modern Japanese, の can stand in the place of another nominal. This usage remains a very important function in Japanese and can become very context dependent quickly.

9. 草の花なでしこ。唐のはさらなり、大和のもいとめでたし。

As for grass flowers, the pink (are the best). The Chinese ones go without saying.

The Japanese ones are also very splendid.

From the 枕草子.

A usage that is not seen any more is showing apposition, the indication that the subject of the preceded phrase and that of the following are the same. This is replaced in Modern Japanese with **であって** or **(もの) で**.

10. 白き鳥の、^{はし} 嘴 と脚と赤き、^{しぎ} 鴨 の大きさなる、^{みづ} 水 の ^{うへ} 上 に遊びつつ魚を食ふ。^く

It was a white bird, and it had a red beak and legs; this bird, which was as big as a snipe, was eating fish as it played on top of the water.

From the 伊勢物語.

Other usages that you might find is in making similes just like **のような**. A usage that has been limited to rarer 美化語・雅語 speech but was far more common in Classical Japanese was the usage of **の** after the stems of adjectives. This was far more productive. Compare the first two examples and then the rare modern examples. This grammar pattern is a relic now and was actually more common some 100 years ago in literature.

11. 露の命、はかなきものを朝夕に生きたるかぎりあひ見てしがな。

Life like dew, oh how I would like to watch and confront this vain thing till death.

From the 続後撰集.

12. 逢ふと見て ことぞともなく 明けぬなり はかな**の**夢の 忘れがたみや

I met the person (in a dream), and it was like the night broke oh too soon. That vain dream is a memento to make me remember that person.

From the 新古今和歌集.

13. 永の別れ

Eternal separation

14. 愛しの君へ

To you, my dear

15. 麗しの富士

Lovely Mt. Fuji

The Case Particle と

Just like in Modern Japanese, the case particle **と** can be used to show actions done "with" someone as well as parallel items--"and". For the "and" function, it is often seen in the pattern X

と Y と rather than just X と Y. It also has the citation function, and the citation verb is often dropped. Just like Modern Japanese, it shows the result of change with verbs like 成る.

いを

16. 魚 と鳥とのありさまを見よ。

Look at the appearance of the fish and birds.

From the 方丈記.

17. 「よさり、このありつる人たまへ」と。

(He) said, "take this person from a while ago (into my room) once it becomes night!".

From the 伊勢物語.

18. 唐土とこの國とは、言異なるものなれど

Although the languages of China and this country differ

From 土佐.

19. 「長き御世にもあらなん」とぞ、思ひはべる。

She thought, "May she have long life".

From the 源氏物語.

20. 野干玉之夜者須柄尔此床乃比師跡鳴左右嘆鶴鴨 (原文)

ぬばたまの夜はすがらにこの床のひしと鳴るまで嘆きつるかも

All throughout the pitch-black night I sighed to the point that the floor rang sharply.

From the 万葉集.

21. 声絶たず鳴けや鶯ひととせに再びとだに来べき春かは。

Cry and don't stop bush warbler! If spring went by now, there wouldn't be another time this year!

From the 古今和歌集.

Sentence Note: Ex. 21 shows how that even way back when と could be after an adverb like 再び in a sentence with negative implications.

22. 遊士跡吾者聞流乎屋戸不借吾乎還利於曾能風流士 (原文)

遊士とわれは聞けるを屋戸貸さず吾を還せりおその風流士

Although you heard that I was a man of elegance, you didn't lend me lodging and made me go home, saying I was a foolish, elegant man.

From the 万葉集.

Reading Note: 遊士 and 風流士 are both read as みやびを in this poem.

23. 一声にあくると聞けど郭公まだ深き夜の月に鳴くなり。

I've been hearing that voice since dawn broke, but even still in the deep of night,
the cuckoo cried because of the moon light.
From the 続後拾遺.

Usage Note: Starting in the 鎌倉時代, と often became used after the 連体形 as in Ex. 23.

と may also be used like へのように often with verbs like 聞こゆ. You can also see it used like として. It can also be used to show a comparison.

24. 笛の音のただ秋風と聞こゆ。

The sound of the flute sounds just like the autumn wind.
From the 更級日記.

25. 奥波 来依荒磯乎 色妙乃 枕等巻而 奈世流君香聞 (原文)

沖つ波来寄る荒磯をしきたへの枕とまきて寝せる君かも

Oh you who are sleeping making a pillow of the reef coast which the offing waves are washing over
From the 万葉集.

26. 中 〃 尔人跡不有者酒壺二成而師鴨酒二染嘗 (原文)

なかなか人にとあらずは酒壺に成りにてしかも酒に染みなむ

I would like to turn into a sake jar without being a rash person so I can be immersed in as much sake as I want.
From the 万葉集.

Development Note: と+あり → the copula auxiliary verb たり after the 平安時代.

とて

と, often in the form of とて, with a citation verb implied with とて, can be used to show objective.

27. 牟佐々婢波 木末求跡 足日木乃 山能佐都雄尔 相尔来鴨 (原文)

むささびは 木末求むと あしひきの 山のさつ男に あひにけるかも

The giant flying squirrel was aiming to climb to the tips of big trees and got found by a hunter.
From the 万葉集.

28. からすの寝所へ行くとて、みつよつ、ふたつみつなどとびいそぐさへあはれなり。

Just the sight of the crows, three or four, two or three, and such, hurrying for a rest place is moving.

From the 枕草子.

29. 山吹はあやなな咲きそ花見むと植ゑけむ君がこよひ来なくに。

The kerria mustn't bloom in vain, though the one who planted and aimed to see the flowers won't come tonight.

From the 古今和歌集.

連用形 + と

と can be seen after the 連用形 of a verb and then be followed again by that verb to give a meaning of "without exception". This usage is still commonly seen in the phrase 生きとし生けるもの (all living things).

30. 生きとし生けるものいづれかうたをよまざりける。

Every living thing, which will not recite a song?

From the 古今和歌集.

31. 家の中にありとあるもの、声を調へて泣かなしむ。

All in the house massing their voices together bewailed.

From the 平家物語.

Origin Note: The particle と has its roots as an adverb in phrases like とある (a certain) and とかく (apt to; anyhow; this and that).

第 326 課: The Particles て, して, & で

This lesson is about three important conjunctive particles in Classical Japanese. Be cautious of what they follow and how they are used because everything is not like now.

て, して, & で

Both て and して follow the 連用形. して is often seen after ず and auxiliaries and so is て. They can show sequential ordering and imply reasoning in a causal relationship. In Modern Japanese して can still show an existing condition--の状況で. This is often seen with adjectives. て had this function too. Just as in Modern Japanese, て can be seen in the middle of the 連用形 and a supplementary verb to connect the two together.

1. 珠匣 見諸戸山矣 行之鹿齒 面白四手 古昔所念 (原文)

たまくしげみもろとやま

玉櫛笥 見 諸 戸 山 を行きしかばおもしろくしていにしへ思ほゆ

When you go through Mimoroto Mountain, it seems to be like the mystic, distant ages of the gods.

From the 万葉集.

Word Note: 玉櫛笥 is an epithet attached to Mimoroto Mountain, which is in 奈良県 with the modern spelling of 御室処山.

たれ

2. 住まずして 誰 かさとらむ。

Without living there, who would understand?

From the 方丈記.

3. 老いらくの命のあまり長くして君にふたたび別れぬるかな。

In my old age that has become too long, it seems that I have parted from your majesty again.

From the 千載集.

4. 或は露落ちて花残り。

Sometimes, the dew falls and the flowers remain.

From the 方丈記.

こよひ

5. あはずして 今 宵 明けなば春の日の長くや人をつらしと思はん。

If we don't meet and this evening turns to dawn, I'll probably think of you as a cold person for

a long time, as long as a spring day.

From the 古今和歌集.

みなづき ゆふがほ

6. 六 月 のころ、あやしき家に タ 顔 の白く見えて、蚊遣火ふすぶるもあわれなり。

About the sixth month, the yugao (flower) appears white in poor residences and the smoldering of the mosquito burners is also very moving.

From the 徒然草.

7. 目二破見而 手二破不所取 月内之 楓如 妹乎奈何責 (原文)

目には見て手には取らえぬ月の内の桂のごとき妹をいかにせむ

What ever shall you do, you who can't hold onto and draw near like the katsura trees on the moon that one can see yet can't obtain.

From the 万葉集.

ちうじやう

8. 中 将 病いと重くしてわづらひける。

The middle captain was in pain being severely ill.

From the 大和物語.

9. 春過而 夏来良之 白妙能 衣乾有 天之香来山 (原文)

春過ぎて夏来るらし しろ 白 たへの衣乾したり天の香具山

It appears that spring has passed and summer has come because Mount Kaguyama is said to dry pure white clothing in summer.

From the 万葉集.

せつぽふ

10. 説 法 いみじくして、みな人なみだを流しけり。

Since the sermon was so powerful, everyone shed tears.

From the 徒然草.

11. これを皇子聞きて、「ここらの日ごろ思ひわび侍る心は、今日なん落ちぬぬる」とのたまひて、返し、わが袂今日乾ければわびしさのちぐさの数も忘れぬべしとのたまふ。

The prince upon hearing this said, "for a long time my heart has been bitter, and today it is at rest", and in ode to this he said, "and (the feelings towards Princess Kaguya and my wet sleeves from the sea), it has dried today, so the endless number of pain I have naturally forgotten".

From the 竹取物語.

Translation Note: Always remember that things are deleted out because of the context of the overall piece. It is reiterated in translation as to not make the sentence sound disjoint.

When used with the negative or a sentence with negative implication, て and して may show a concession, which is only an application of the reasoning function stated above.

12. 都の人は、ことうけのみよくて、^{まこと}實なし。

Though the people of the capital are good at just accepting things, they don't have sincerity.
From the 徒然草.

奈良時代: A Case Particle て?

The ancient dialects of 東国方言 in the 奈良時代 did noticeably use て as a case particle with the same function(s) of と and can be found extremely rarely in the 万葉集. This, though, is a matter of regional vowel sound changes in words and not suggestive of the origins of the conjunctive particle て begin discussed here. The one example in question comes from it being used after the 命令形 of a verb used with the citation function.

13. 知々波々我 可之良加伎奈弓 佐久安<例弓> 伊比之氣等<婆>是 和須礼加祢<豆>流 (原文)

な さ けとば
父母が頭かき撫で幸くあれて言ひし 言 葉 ぜ忘れかねつる

My parents caressed my head and told me to be able-bodied, and that I just cannot forget.
From the 万葉集.

This is evidence that during the 奈良時代 in 東国, o-sounds often changed to e-sounds. Thus, this explains ぜ being used rather than ぞ・そ and why 言葉 was けとば instead of ことば. Therefore, we can assume with certainty that this is the reason why と → て in this example. Try not to think of the Modern Japanese contraction of という → (っ) て as the contraction of this for much of Classical Japanese was actually てふ, which would have eventually become pronounced as ちょう by no later than the 1700s.

It is also important to note that we would not have such examples of these ancient dialects had it not been for 防人 (さきもり) existing from this region. Thus, the poet was actually being stationed as a protector and he is referring to his parents telling him to be safe and strong in order for him to eventually come safely home.

～ずて

～ずて = ～ないで. The grammar is quite parallel. ～ずて can be then contracted to the conjunctive particle で. Therefore, don't mistake it for something is.

14. 君ならで誰にか見せん。

If not to you, to whom would I show?

From the 古今和歌集.

15. 老いもせず死にもせずして

Without knowing aging or death

From the 難波の浦島五郎の物語.

16. 麻都我延乃 都知尔都久麻弓 布流由伎乎 美受弓也伊毛我 許母里乎流良牟 (原文)

松が枝の土に着くまで降る雪を見ずてや妹が ^{こも}を 隠 り居るらむ。

Dear, how could you not see the snow that has reached the pine branches and be indoors?

From the 万葉集.

17. さらに潮に濡れたる衣をだに脱ぎかへなでなん、こちまうで来つる。

Without even changing his clothes completely soaked in sea water, he visited here.

From the 竹取物語.

18. 橘之 蔭履路乃 八衢尔 物乎曾念 妹尔不相而 三方沙弥 (原文)

たちばな かげ みち やちまた おも いも
橘 の 蔭 踏む 路 の 八 衢 に物をぞ 念 ふ 妹 にあはずて

Not meeting you, I worry as if I were going back and forth on a fork in the road covered by tachibana.

From the 万葉集.

19. 丹生乃河 瀬者不渡而 由久遊久登 戀痛吾弟 乞通來祢 (原文)

丹生の河瀬は渡らずてゆくゆくと恋痛し吾が背いで通ひ來ね

Oh brother, I have an earnest yearning; come here hastily without crossing the Nyuu Rapids.

From the 万葉集.

20. 難波渦みじかき葦のふしのまも逢はでこの世をすぐしてよとや

Just a node length of a Naniwa reed away would be fine, yet you say you'll spend this life

without me?

From the 新古今和歌集.

～ては

Similar to its usage in ～てはいけない in Standard Japanese, ～ては was used to make a conditional statement under preceding conditions. Aside from this, it is used in the pattern X ては Y ては in which X and Y stand for verbs meaning "constantly...and...".

21. さりともうち捨ててはえ行きやらじ。

Even so, if you abandon me, you will not probably be able to go (to the other world).

From the 源氏物語.

22. 月満ちては欠け、物盛りにしては衰ふ。

The moon constantly becomes full and fades, and as such things constantly flourish and deteriorate.

From the 徒然草.

23. これぞ求め得てさうらふ。

I sought and found this.

From the 徒然草.

History

て comes from the 連用形 of the perfective つ. When this function was lost, て was then able to show connection between phrases. て, as would be expected due to its origin, is thought to establish that in a sequence that the continuative statement it modifies is completed.

24. もろとんにしもわらいてき。

We laughed together (about it).

From the 蜻蛉日記.

25. はや船出してこの浦を去りね。

Hurry and take out your boat and leave this shore!

From the 源氏物語.

What all can て follow?

In looking at the various usages of て, it's hard to say that all of its usages truly come from the auxiliary つ and that all of them truly are conjunctive particle usages. For instance, what do you call it when it attaches to adverbs such as *かくて* (このように), *などて* (なぜ), and *さて*.

Word Note: *なぜ* is the result of a contraction of *などて*.

This leads to the question of what does て actually attach to. For the て that attaches to the 連用形 of a conjugatable part of speech (verbs, adjectives, auxiliaries), it not only attaches to just these things but it can subsequently follow something with continuative modifying words. This is what leads to the problem of going so far as to say that there are indeed usages that can't be called conjunctive anymore. It is suffice to say that the course of modernization of these various usages is remarkable.

Examples

26. 乎等賣良我 多麻毛須蘇婢久 許能尔波尔 安伎可是不吉弓 波奈波知里都々 (原文)

もすそ
をてめらが 裳 裾 びくこの庭に秋風吹きて花は散りつつ

The flowers scatter constantly by the blowing autumn wind in this yard in which young women play as they hold up the hems of their skirts.
From the 万葉集.

くほ
27. 池めいて 窪 まり水漬ける所あり。

There is a place where like a lake the earth sinks and water soaks in.
From the 土佐日記.

28. やまとうたは人の心を種としてよろづのことはとぞなれりける。

Waka is akin to the source of a person's heart and thence from it is an endless amount of words.
From the 古今和歌集.

In the first two examples, it is without a doubt that we are dealing with the conjunctive て. Although it is not necessarily wrong to say the same for *として*, the verbal quality of *し* from *す*

essentially gets fossilized and the whole expression is best thought of as a separate particle of its own. This is why we treat it as a compound particle expression today.

て VS して

When following adjectives as well as the particles と and に, て was used and is still used a lot. However, して was far more prevalent in 漢文・訓読 styled writing. The fact that these expressions still exist with huge overlap with just differences on when and why they're used today is still evidence of how they were so interchangeable in Classical Japanese.

Sound Changes

Sound changes become more common as time progresses and first show up in the 平安時代. When followed by マ行バ行四段動詞, it would get voiced and be preceded by the 撥音, ん. Ex. 飛ぶ → 飛びて → 飛んで. This sound change would eventually extend to ナ変動詞 in the 室町時代.

活用	時代	音便現象
マ行四段動詞	平安時代～現代日本語	読む + て → 読みて → 読んで
バ行四段動詞	平安時代～現代日本語	喜ぶ + て → 喜びて → 喜んで
ナ変動詞	室町時代～現代日本語	死ぬ + て → 死にて → 死んで 往ぬ + て → 往にて → 往んで

Grammar Notes:

1. In the 江戸時代, <て begins to sometime take the form <って, and this is still occasionally done in Modern Japanese.
2. て would follow the k-drop changes of the 連用形 for adjectives but not for the かり-stem bases!

活用	時代	音便現象
ク形容詞	平安時代～現代日本語（方言のみ）	固く + て → 固くて → 固うて

シク形容 詞	平安時代～現代日本語（方言の み）	新しい + て → 新しくて → 新しいて
形容詞	江戸時代～現代日本語	新しい + て → 新しくて → 新しく（つ・っ） て

Pronunciation Notes:

1. The resultant combination of あう → おー even today in certain dialects, and likewise いう sounds as ゆう.
2. Remember that the 促音 spelling wasn't standardized until Modern times.

Examples

かへりごと

29. その 返 事 はなくて、屋の上に飛ぶ車を寄せて

Having no response, he approached the cart flying to the top of the building...

From the 竹取物語.

さんずん

30. 三 寸 ばかりなる人、いとうつくしうてゐたり

A percent of just three sun was sitting in a very cute figure.

From the 竹取物語.

31. 内輪の茶書こそ。。。おもしろくッていいけれど

Our tea ceremony book is certainly.....interesting, but...

From 滑・八笑人

形容動詞: に+て & と+して

Also note that the combination に+て, with this に being the 連用形 of the copula なり, would give rise to the case particle で with the same functions it has today. You also see this for ナル形容動詞. For タル形容動詞, though, you must use として--と being the 連用形 of the copula たり--instead of とて.

との

32. 殿 も渡り給へる程にて、「かくなむ」と女別当御覽ぜさす。

Genji too when he came, saying "in these circumstances", met with the head lady.

From the 源氏物語.

かいまんまん

けぶり

がが

33. 南を望めば、海 漫々として、雲の波、煙 の浪深く、北をかへりみれば、また山岳の峨々たるより、

りうすい

百尺の 瀧 水 みなぎり落ちたり。

When you gaze to the south, the sea spans endlessly, the clouds undulate, the (volcano) smoke deeply heaves, and when you look back to the north, again from the steep mountain you can see water flowing down from a big waterfall.

From the 平家物語.

Historical Note: At the end of the 室町時代, にて began being contracted to で, and にても would become でも, and just like today, では would become じゃ. The original forms from then on became part of the literary language. The conjunctive で that arose in phrases like それで (there-upon) was here to stay by the 江戸時代.

と+て

34. 「のたまひしに違はましかば」とて、この花ををりてまうできたるなり。

Thinking that it was contrary to what (Princess Kaguya) had said, he dressed up and came to her.

From the 竹取物語.

第 327 課: The Particles つつ & ながら

These particles even in antiquity were still almost the same. So, hopefully this will be one of the easiest lessons concerning Classical Japanese.

The Conjunctive Particle つつ

The conjunctive particle つつ follows the 連用形 of a verb to show repetitive or continuous action or simultaneous action. This latter usage is shared with ながら, which eventually replaces it altogether in the spoken language by the 室町時代. You may sometimes see it combined with the perfective め (につつ). This is still used in some schools of poetry. Also be aware that this can be seen at the end of a sentence where an auxiliary like たり or り would be to give a big emotional pull. This is seen a lot in 和歌.

1. 春花能 宇都路布麻泥尔 相見祢婆 月日餘美都追 伊母麻都良牟曾 (原文)

春花のうつろふまでに相見ねば月日よみつつ妹待つらむぞ

Since we won't meet till the spring flowers have scattered, my wife will wait as she counts the days.

From the 万葉集.

2. 於保吉宇美能 美奈曾己布可久 於毛比都 毛婢伎奈良之思 須我波良能佐刀 (原文)

大き海の水底深く思ひつつ裳引きならしし菅原の里

Oh Sugawara Village with the foot of the mountains drawn and flat, I adore as deep as the bottom of a great sea.

From the 万葉集.

3. 野山にまじりて竹を取りつつ、よろづの事に使ひけり。

Repeatedly entering the fields and hills and gathering bamboo, he used it for thousands of things.

From the 竹取物語.

4. 多都多夜麻 見都 古要許之 佐久良波奈 知利加須疑奈牟 和我可敞流刀尔 (原文)

龍田山見つつ越え来し桜花散りか過ぎなむわが帰るとに

I wonder if the cherry blossoms I came to see as I cross Tatsuta Mountain will fall while I'm not home.

From the 万葉集.

5. 角障経 石村毛不過 泊瀬山 何時毛将超 夜者深去通都 (原文)

いはれ
つのさはふ 磐 余 も過ぎず泊瀬山いつかも越えむ夜は更けにつつ

Still having not passed Iware, and though the night is already going to get late, I wonder when
I'll cross Hatsuse Mountain?
From the 万葉集.

Word Note: つのさはふ is an epithet word for 磐余.

The Conjunctive Particle **ながら**

The particle **ながら** comes from the combination of the ancient attribute marker **な**, which is still seen fossilized in some words such as 水底 from above, and **から**, which was once a noun as has been demonstrated from passages from the 万葉集.

Like **つつ**, it can be used to show simultaneous action, but in doing so it might also show a concessive connection. **ながら** can and does follow nominals often. In doing so, it shows that something is in the same state as it has been. The not-so-common meaning of "all" came about during the 平安時代.

Orthography Note: You can sometimes see this particle spelled as 乍 (ら) .

Examples

1. 波利夫久路 應婢都々氣奈我良 佐刀其等邇 天良佐比安流氣騰 比等毛登賀米授 (原文)

針袋帯び続けながら里ごとに照らさひ歩けど人もとがめず

Lowering a needle bag on the waist, I walked and showed off through each town, and no one
could find fault.
From the 万葉集.

2. さざなみや滋賀の都は荒れにしを昔ながらの山桜かな。

The capital of Shiga has been ravaged, but the mountain cherry blossoms are blowing just as
in the distant past!
From the 千載集.

3. 身はいやしなながら、母なむ宮なりける。

Though his position was low, his mother was a princess.
From the 伊勢物語.

4. 膝元に置きつつ、食ひながら文をも読みけり。

Placing it at the foot of his knees, he ate while lecturing over the texts.

From the 徒然草.

5. 取りつきながら、いたう睡りて、落ちぬべき時に目を醒ます事、度々なり。

While clinging, he went into a deep sleep, and he frequently woke right as he was about to fall down.

From the 徒然草

Table of Contents

第 328 課: The Particle ば

The particle ば in Classical Japanese is far from what it is like today. In Modern Japanese we know it as one of the "if" expressions, in fact the strongest of the four options. How and when did it get this way?

To look at the history of this particle we first need to address the obvious. If you only knew Japanese grammar and orthography at a bare minimum, you would probably think that ば and は look so much like each other that they had to have a common origin. Your hunch would be right. It is unclear when this voicing occurred and made the two particles contrastive, but if we consider their usages in the larger spectrum of the history of the Japanese language, there are more similarities. After all, は can be contrasting structures as well as hypotheticals, ~てはいけな
い.

Focusing on everything starting from the written record, we will divide the usages of ba according to what base was involved. Unlike any ending you've seen, this particle went after two different bases, and it took centuries for only one to be the victor, the 已然形. This particle in Classical Japanese could be after the 未然形 and the 已然形. Both were conjunctive, but they clearly reflected the original purposes of the two bases respectively.

After the 未然形

You would be surprised to know that there are a handful of archaisms that utilize this grammar structure. とあらば is not just some random typo. This reflects the original usage of showing hypothesis. A hypothetical statement just like a negative statement refers to an event that is not realized. The only difference between the two is simply nuance. So, if you view the 未然形 as "the base for unrealization", things should begin to make a lot more sense.

As stated, you often see this pattern in old expressions, proverbs, etc. These are the obvious places to look for how things were once used constructively. You can't simply replace 急げば with 急がば without someone telling you that you're either wrong or extremely old-fashioned.

Examples

1. いつわりのなき世なりせばいか許人の事の葉うれしからまし。

If this were a world without falsehood, how pleasing would people's words (like yours) be!
From the 古今和歌集.

とみ
2. 若し 急 の事有らば、この袋の口を解きたまへ。

If there is an emergency, undo the mouth of this bag.

From the 古事記.

かたち
3. 盛りにならば、容 貌 も限りなくよく、髪もいみじく長くなりなむ。

If I reach my prime, my looks will be without comparison, and my hair will become very long.

From the 更級日記.

しゅぎやう
4. 徳をつかんと思はば、すべからく、まづその心づかひを 修 行 すべし。

If you intend to obtain virtue, you ought to definitely first discipline the heart.

From the 徒然草.

5. 君為 手力 織在衣服 斜 春去 何色 摺者吉

たちから す よ
君がため 手 力 疲れ織りたる衣ぞ春さらばいかなる色に摺りてば好けむ。

This is a kimono that I've threaded by my hands for you. In spring, what color shall we dye it in?

From the 万葉集.

Base Note: よけ is what an ancient <-stem 未然形 would have looked like for adjectives. The conditional here would be translated with the particle たら today. This kind of usage where the conditional and temporal usage to be discussed seem to be mixed would eventually lead them to become one by the 室町時代.

6. 笑わば笑え。

If you're going to laugh, laugh!

7. 死なば諸共

We die together.

Literally: If we are today, all together.

8. 遠慮会釈もあらばこそ (Archaism using the strong negative pattern ~あらばこそ =あろうはずもなく)

Indeed not even with the thought of consideration for the others...

After the 已然形

When after the 已然形, ば shows causation (since) or means "when". This is still a part of the properties of the conditional ば. When something will happen, then something Y is going to generally happen.

9. 命長ければ、辱多し。

When you're life is long/if you live long, you have a lot of shame.

From the 徒然草.

10. 老いぬればさらぬ別れのありといへばいよいよ見まくほしき君かな。

Since they say when we grow old an unavoidable parting awaits, I want to see you all the more!

From the 伊勢物語.

11. はべる所の焼け侍りにければ

Since the place where I was ended up burning

From the 枕草子.

第 329 課: The Particles と, とも, ど, & ども

Although the title may suggest that this lesson is going to be very complicated, it'll actually be quite easy. You are essentially looking at only two different topics.

The Conjunctive と (も)

These are both conjunctive particles that follow the 終止形 of verbs but the 連用形 of adjectives, and the shorter version is a rarer alternative and should not be confused with the conditional conjunctive particle と in Modern Japanese. Both show hypothetical concession and equate to "though" or "even if". The usage of this particle became quite restricted in the spoken language after the 江戸時代, but even in Modern Japanese, there are instances like 少なくとも (at the least) and 遅くとも (at the latest) where it is still quite productive. However, given that the shortened form was already uncommon in Classical Japanese, it is unlikely that you'll ever see it in Modern Japanese.

1. 玉藻刈 海未通女等 見尔将去 船梶毛欲得 浪高友 (原文) たまも あま
玉 藻 刈る海人をとめども見に行
ふなかぢ
かむ 船 楫 もがも波高くとも

If only there were a boat or turret to go see the fishermen's daughters harvesting seaweed.
From the 万葉集.

- ちとせ
2. 千 年 を過ぐすとも、一夜の夢の心ちこそせめ。 (原文)

Even if a thousand years were to pass, it would undoubtedly feel like a dream of a single night.

From the 徒然草.

3. 消えずはありとも

Even if they're still there and not yet disappeared...

From the 古今和歌集.

- ふ
4. よろづ代経とも色はかはらじ。

Even if ten thousand generations passed, its color would probably not change.

From the 古今和歌集.

5. さはありとも、などか宮仕へをしたまはざらむ。

Even so, why aren't you doing your court service?

From the 竹取物語.

6. 花の色は霞にこめて見せずとも香をだにぬすめ春の山風

Although there's no help but hiding the flower colors with mist, at least steal their scent!

From the 古今和歌集.

7. 穂に出でたりとかひやなからん。

Even if it were to come into ear, it would probably be to no avail.

From the 蜻蛉日記.

8. さと人のことは夏ののしげくともかれ行くきみにあはざらめやは。

Even if the rumors of the villagers were to grow rampant like the summer grass, would I not be able to stand seeing you who runs away from (those rumors)?

From the 古今和歌集.

9. 尔保杼里乃 於吉奈我河波半 多延奴等母 伎美尔可多良武 己等都奇米也母 (原文)

にほ鳥の息長川は絶えぬとも君に語らむ言尽きめやも

Even if the Okinaga River were to cease, would the words I want to speak to you ever run out!?

From the 万葉集.

Noun Note: にほ鳥・鴛鳥 means "grebe" and is an epithet word.

10. わが身は女なりとも敵の手にはかかるまじ。

Though I may be a woman, I shall not fall into the hands of the enemy.

From the 平家物語.

Word Note: It was also common to see the verb 見る shortened to just 見 with と (も) .

11. 往廻 雖見将飽八 名寸隅乃 船瀬之濱尔 四寸流思良名美 (原文) 行き還り見とも飽かめやも名寸隅

の船瀬の浜にしきる白波 Going and coming, no matter how much I see, will I ever get tired of seeing them, the white wave incessantly crashing into the Nakisumi Harbor's bay? From the 万葉集.

The Conjunctive ど (も)

Although it still exists in Modern Japanese, the conjunctive ど (も) , which attaches to the 已然形 of a conjugatable part of speech and is quite productive just as much in either variant, it is largely replaced in Modern Japanese with け (れ) ど (も) , which is clearly けり+ど (も) . This also means "although" but it creates a direct concession from existing conditions. So, it is never hypothetical.

12. 残るといへども明日に枯れぬ。

Although they say that it remains, it ends up withering in the morning sun.

From the 方丈記.

13. かくて明けゆく空の気色、昨日にかはりたりとは見えねど、ひきかへめづらしき心地ぞする。

As for the sky's appearance such as this with the day breaking, although one can't see that it has really changed since yesterday, one can certainly feel refreshed at heart.

From the 徒然草.

14. つる くもみ
鶴 は、いとこちたきさまなれど、鳴く声の 雲 井 まで聞こゆる、いとめでたし。

Though the crane has a very overbearing appearance, it is very admirable that its singing voice can be heard as far as the clouds.

From the 枕草子.

15. 男、血の涙を流せども、とどむるよしなし。

Though the man shed tears of blood, there was no way to keep her (alive).

From the 伊勢物語.

16. よきほどにて出で給ひぬれど、なほ事ざまの優におぼえて、物のかくれよりしばし見ゐたるに、妻戸を今少し

おしあけて、月見るけしきなり。

At the right moment, the person came out, though I was in awe of the home, I looked in cover and saw the lady of the house from the gazing at the moon with the door opened.

From the 徒然草.

Historical Note: As far as frequency is concerned, starting in the 平安時代 the particle ど became associated with women's literature and ども became associated with 漢文-style writing. By the 鎌倉時代, ど essentially disappeared leaving only ども, which by the 室町時代 was almost completely replaced with けれども as is the case to this day.

第330課: Combination Particles with もの

Just like in Modern Japanese, there are combination particles with もの and they are all conjunctive particles. The particles to be discussed in this lesson are ものを, ものから, ものの, and ものゆゑ (に) .

ものを, ものから, ものの, ものゆゑ (に)

Although some have come and gone or changed in nuance, back in Classical Japanese, these four combination particles did the same thing. So, don't let this be a reason to be confused. All of these particles follow the 連体形. they all may show a concession based on existing conditions. So, they mean "although". Though ものを and ものの survive today with modified nuances, you have to think in more simplistic terms for this. That should be easy enough to do.

1. 鳴く声も聞こえぬものの悲しきは忍びに燃ゆる螢なりけり。

Although I couldn't hear their cries, the sad things were the fireflies hidden and burning.
From the 詞花集.

2. 都出でて君に会はむと来しものを来しかひもなく別れぬるかな。

Although I left the capital, there was no avail in thinking about meeting you, and we ended up parting.
From the 土佐日記.

3. いつはりと思ふ物から今さらにたがまことをか我はたのまむ

Although I think that (that person's word) is a lie, who's truth am I to entrust in now?
From the 古今和歌集.

4. 頼まぬものの恋ひつつぞ経る。

Though I rely on you, I pass time longing for you.
From the 伊勢物語.

うつせみ

5. 空 蟬 の世の人ごとのしげければわすれぬもののかれぬべらなり。

The rumors of the world are so annoying; though I'll never forget, I may naturally leave them behind.
From the 古今和歌集.

6. 雖念 知僧裳無跡 知物乎 奈何幾許 吾戀渡 (原文)

思へどもしるしも無しと知るものを何かここたく我が恋ひ渡る

Although I think of you to know avail, why is that I still long for you like this?

From the 万葉集.

7. 春の野に若菜つまむと来しものを散りかふ花に道はまどひぬ。

I came for young greens in the spring field, but scattering flowers blew and obscured my path.

From the 古今和歌集.

8. 将来云毛 不来時有乎 不来云乎 将来常者不待 不来云物乎 (原文)

来むと言ふも 来ぬ時あるを 来じと言ふを 来むとは待たじ 来じと言ふものを

You say you'll come and don't, but I wait not for you to say you won't since you may as you won't.

From the 万葉集.

9. 和我由恵尔 於毛比奈夜勢曾 秋風能 布可武曾能都奇 安波牟母能由恵 (原文)

我が故に思ひな瘦せそ秋風の吹かむその月逢はむものゆゑ

Please don't grow thin thinking of me as I shall moon which the autumn wind does blow.

From the 万葉集.

10. 毎年尔 来喧毛能由恵 霍公鳥 聞婆之努波久 不相日乎於保美 毎年謂之等之乃波 (原文)

ほととぎす

年のはに 来鳴くものゆゑ 霍公鳥 聞けばしのはく 逢はぬ日を多み

Every year when I hear the cries of the cuckoo as they come singing, I get this unexplainable feeling. There are too many days I can't meet them.

From the 万葉集.

11. 月は在明にて光をさまれるものから、不二の峰幽かに見えて。

The moon was that of dawn, and since the light was in check, Mount Fuji's peak appeared faint.

From the 奥の細道.

12. ふるさとにあらぬ物からわがために人の心のあれてみゆらむ。

You may say a man's heart is not in his hometown, but why is it that his heart goes to ruin for me?

From the 古今和歌集.

Historical Note:

1. ものを is a combination of the noun もの and the interjectory--not the case particle--を. This explains why even in Modern Japanese it can be seen as a final particle showing a concessive exclamatory statement. Though not normally the case anymore, it did at one point become a causal connector similar to the conjunctive が during the 江戸時代. Nowadays, it shows concession with a sense of the speaker's discomfort and or dissatisfaction.

13. よど河のよどむとひとは見るらめど流れてふかき心あるものを。

(You probably think that I haven't been coming and going a while),

although just like that Yodo River's current is deep I too in my heart think much of you with no end.

From the 古今和歌集.

14. 雀の子を、犬 君 が逃しつる、伏 籠 の中に、こめたりつるものを。

Inuki let the baby sparrow escape even though I had kept it in the cage!

From the 源氏物語.

15. かたみこそ今はあだなれこれなくばわするる時もあらましものを。

This memento is a resentment that has hurt me even up till now. If I just didn't have it, I would have time to forget that person.

From the 古今和歌集.

2. ものから came into existence during the 奈良時代 was one of the first phrases where から became a true conjunctive particle. As から became used even more heavily in the spoken language, it eventually made people confused to the point that it turned into a particle with similar meaning to ので. Today you would just use から or ので.

16. 心をぞわりなき物と思ひぬる見るものからや恋しかるべき。

I thought that emotion was irrational. Since I've met you, I feel such longing; is this supposed to be?

From the 古今和歌集.

3. ものの got to survive unscathed into Modern Japanese. It's not used frequently, but you see it often in literature.

4. ものゆゑ (に) has such a good ring to it, yet the only place it has is in 古典. It too could be used to show reason like から. In fact, it can be seen doing this way back in the 万葉集.

Table of Contents

第 331 課: Bound Particles

Bound particles (係助詞) might as well be called emphatic particles. Most of them have become adverbial and or final particles. Their functions range from emphatic to interrogative usages, and this is often determined by careful attention to context.

Bound particles require that the final verb phrase in their clause to be in a particular form. Most require the final verb phrase to be in the 連体形 because, as we've seen, that can make verbs function as nominalized phrases in Classical Japanese.

Though the particles discussed in this lesson may not be exhaustive in accounting for all such particles in Classical Japanese, it will enable you to have a decent understanding of the some times very complex grammar rules that go with them.

The particles to be discussed are the following:

Particle	The Fixed Base	Function(s)	Final Usages?
は	終止形	Topic Marker	Yes
も	終止形	Parallel listing	Yes
や (は)	連体形	Doubt/question	Yes
か (は)	連体形	Doubt/question	Yes
ぞ	連体形	Emphasis	Yes
なむ・なん	連体形	Emphasis	Yes
こそ	已然形	Strong emphasis	Yes

Grammar Note: These particles have such a strong role in binding sentences in a certain form that even in their absence, when other elements that would be used in concert with them are showing doubt or a rhetorical question, as is an important usage for particles like *ぞ*, *なむ*, *や*, and *か*, the sentence may still be seen bound in the 連体形. No wonder the 終止形 and 連体形 merged.

は

The particle *は* is as you should certainly know is extremely important in Modern Japanese. However, there was a point in time where it was not used, and it has taken centuries for the *が* VS *は* rivalry to get to its present form. In fact, the thing that rivaled *は*, which shows known information, was *も*, which could present new information. Where did this particle come from? It

likely has origin with the particle ば, but it is certain that by the 平安時代 its usages had become greatly varied and increasingly more complex.

So, we know that it marks the topic. This topic is emphasized and often made distinct from other things, which is why we still often translate it into English with "as for". This topic is what the explanation/predicate is going to be about. It can be used with parallel items to show comparison and or contrast. Of course, it still has the role of highlighting the negative.

As you saw from above, it can also be used with other bound particles, and it can also be used as a final particle. That's right. Although modern orthography changes doesn't make this obvious, the adverbial は and final particle わ of Modern Japanese are from the same thing. When it comes at the end, the verb has to go to the 連体形, which is the common trait for bound particles.

Grammar Note: Remember from previous lessons that は can attach to an adjective 連用形 or -ず to create a hypothetical situation, and ず+は often makes ず(ん)ば. Also remember that を+は = をば.

Examples

1. 古京はすでに荒れて、新都はいまだ成らず。

The old capital has already been ravaged, and the new capital has still not been materialized.
From the 方丈記.

2. 人妻尔 言者誰事 酔衣乃 此紐解跡 言者孰言 (原文)

た こと
人妻に言ふは誰が 言 さ衣のこの紐解けと言ふは誰が言

Who calls for me, a married woman? Who says I untie the cords of my cloth and sleep together?

From the 万葉集.

3. 其願空しかるべくは、道にて死ぬべし。

If such a request proves hopeless, I shall die en route!

From the 平家物語.

4. なにもなにも小さきものはみなうつくし。

Of everything small things are particularly adorable.

From the 枕草子.

かうし い
5. まろ格子上げずば道なくてげにえ入り来ざらまし。

If I hadn't raised the lattice, there would've been no path and I would have not been able to come.

From the 源氏物語.

6. 法師ばかり羨ましからぬものはあらじ。

There is probably no less enviable than a monk.

From the 徒然草.

まこと
7. 火に焼かむに焼けずはこそ 真 ならめ

When we try to burn it by fire and it cannot burn, it's definitely the real thing.

From the 竹取物語.

8. かの花は失せにけるは。

That flower has ended up disappearing!

From the 枕草子.

9. とまらしなよもの時雨のふるさとゝなりにしならの霜のくちはゝ (原文)

とまらじな四方の時雨の古郷となりにしならの霜の朽ち葉は

It won't stop. In Nara the showers pour every which way, and the oak leaves fall and rot in the dew.

From the 院百首.

Word Note: [降る里 and 古里] and [奈良 and 檜] are overlapped together respectively.

10. 古里となりにし奈良の都にも色はかはらず花は咲きけり。

Even in the old capital Nara, without change in color, the flowers had bloomed.

From the 古今和歌集.

11. 悪所に落ちては死にたからず。

We don't want to die falling into a bad spot.

From the 平家物語.

12. 居明而 君乎者将待 奴婆珠能吾黒髪尔 霜者零騰文 (原文)

ぬばたま
居明かして君をば待たむ 烏 珠 の吾が黒髪に霜は降るとも

I will wait as is till dawn, no matter if the dew falls into my black hair.

From the 万葉集.

Base Note: Although we say that it is paired with the 終止形, there are sentences with it that are in the 命令形, where it is cut off in the 連用形, or ends in a nominal (体言止め). This is all still the case in Modern Japanese.

も

The particle も is like "too/also" and can show listing of things that are new information. Or, it shows that what it follows is not limited in the situation to it alone. In being such, も can be seen in adverbial phrases showing an outer limit or minimal desire, which it still does today.

13. 山川 水陰生 山草 不止妹 所念鴨 (原文)

みかげ やますげ や
山河の水 陰に生ふる 山 菅 の止まずも妹がおもほゆるかも

Like the mountain sedge growing on the waterside in the mountain, I think of you nonstop.
From the 万葉集.

14. 限りなく遠くも来にけるかな。

How far we have come endlessly!

From the 伊勢物語.

15. 熟田津尔 船乗世武登 月待者 潮毛可奈比沼 今者許藝乞菜 (原文)

熟田津に船乗りせむと月待てば潮もかなひぬ、今は漕ぎ出でな

The tide too has improved while I waited for the moon while boarding in Nikita Harbor. I now sail!

From the 万葉集.

16. 長き御世にもあらなん

May (she) have long life!

From the 源氏物語.

17. 月だにも雲のいづくに夏の夜のやみはあやなし曙の空。

Even the moon somewhere in the clouds colors the darkness of the summer night--daybreak.
From 順徳院.

18. 京極の屋の南むきに、今も二本侍るめり。

There are apparently two trees still on the south side of the Kyogoku residence.
From the 徒然草.

19. 花ちれる水のまにまにとめくれば山には春もなくなりけり。

When the flowers scattered afloat the river, spring ended went away in the mountains.
From the 古今和歌集.

も can be very emotive, and it was used as a final particle in the 奈良時代.

20. 富等登藝須 奈保毛奈賀那牟 母等都比等 可氣都々母等奈 安乎祢之奈久母 (原文)

霍公鳥 なほも鳴かなむ 本つ人 かけつつもとな 吾を音し泣くも

Oh cuckoo cry still; I think of the person passed away and in that vestige I cry and weep.
From the 万葉集.

21. 樂浪乃 國都美神乃 浦佐備而 荒有京 見者悲毛 (原文)

樂浪の 国つ御神の うらさびて 荒れたる都 見れば悲しも

The heart of the kami of Sasanami has withered, and the ravaged capital ruins are sad to behold.
From the 万葉集.

When in もぞ and もこそ, it can show that something can't be--するといけない.

22. 烏などもこそ、見つくれ。

It must not be that something like a crow would find it.
From the 源氏物語.

23. 玉の緒よ 絶えなば絶えね ながらへば 忍ぶことの 弱りもぞする。

If this life shall cease, may it cease. If I live on like this, my secret love will be known to all.
From the 新古今和歌集.

や (は)

や (は) can show doubt and (rhetorical) question. When in the middle of a sentence it no doubts binds the final verb in the 連体形. However, as will be evident in the examples, the 終止形 can indeed be used when や is in the final position of a clause.

24. 龍田河もみぢみだれて流るめり渡らば錦なかや絶えなむ

The Tatsuda River seems to flow with colored leaves. If I cross, the brocade may be severed in half.

From the 古今和歌集.

25. 忘哉 語 意遣 雖過不過 猶戀

忘るやと物語りして心遣り過ぐせど過ぎずなほ恋ひにけり

Wondering if I would forget, I avert my mind with gossip, but I still can't go by my love (for you).

From the 万葉集.

26. 冬ながら空より花の散りくるは雲のあなたは春にやあるらむ。

As for flowers falling from the sky while it's winter, does that mean spring is beyond the clouds?

From the 古今和歌集.

27. 宵のまに身を投げはつる夏虫は燃えてや人に逢ふと聞きけむ。

I wonder if the summer bugs that burned in the night heard they could meet their loved ones by throwing themselves into the flames?

From the 伊勢物語.

28. 秋の田の穂の上を照らす稲妻の光の間にも我や忘るる。

I will not forget you even when lightning brightens the tops of the ears of rice in the autumn field.

From the 古今和歌集.

29. さくら花春くははれる年だにも人の心に飽かれやはせぬ。

Cherry blossom, even in years when spring is long, would you scatter without having satisfied man? Bloom to your heart's desire!

From the 古今和歌集.

Grammar Note: やは...～ぬ = Why don't you... (showing want of the speaker as well)

30. 光やあると見るに、蛍ばかりの光だになし。

When she looked wondering if there were light, there wasn't even the light of a firefly.

From the 竹取物語.

31. 古 人尔和礼有哉 樂浪乃 故京乎 見者悲寸 (原文)

古の 人に我れあれや 樂浪の 古き都を 見れば悲しき

Aren't I not a person of the old; when I look at the old capital of Sasanami, I'm sad without reason.

From the 万葉集.

Grammar Note: や can also be after 已然形 to show a rhetorical question directed at oneself.

32. ちはへて春はさばかりのどけきを花の心や何いそぐらむ

Although spring is calm like this every day, why do the hearts of the flowers hurry and try to scatter?

From the 後撰和歌集.

Word Note: ちはえて comes from a verb with the meaning of stringing along a rope and is used here adverbially to express continuing to be so.

33. 多知之奈布 伎美我須我多乎 和須礼受波 与能可藝里尔夜 故非和多里奈無 (原文)

立ちしなふ君が姿を忘れずは世の限りにや恋い渡りなむ。

Without forgetting your great appearance will certainly go on loving you all my life.

From the 万葉集.

Grammar Note: This なむ is the 未然形 of the auxiliary ~ぬ + the volitional auxiliary ~む.

34. 保等登藝須 許々尔知可久乎 伎奈伎弓余 須疑奈<无>能知尔 之流志安良米夜母 (原文)

霍公鳥 ここに近くを 来鳴きてよ 過ぎなむ後に 験あらめやも

Cuckoo come cry closer. Now that after you pass by, is this not an omen?

From the 万葉集.

Grammar Note: ~めやも is a combination of the auxiliary ~む, which shows conjecture in this pattern, and the bound particles や and も. The pattern is used to rhetorically bring up conjecture or well with an added sense of exclamation and is equivalent to ~だろうか、いや、そんなことはないなあ.

Variant Note: This can be seen as やも in the 奈良時代.

35. 土也母 空応有 萬代尔 語続可 名者不立之而 (原文)

土やも 空しかるべき 万代に 語り継ぐべき 名は立てずして

Should a man end in vain? Without his name passed down for generations?

From the 万葉集.

Warning Note: Do not confuse this with the interjectory particle や.

か (は)

The bound particle か (は) may also show doubt and (rhetorical) question. かは was also originally かも in the 奈良時代. When in the middle or at the end of a sentence, it requires that the final verb be in the 連体形.

36. 幾世へてのちか忘れむ散りぬべき野辺の秋萩みがく月夜を

Will you forget years later? (Show) the moonlit night upon the autumn clover covered field.

From the 後撰和歌集.

37. いづれの山か天に近き。

Which mountain is closest to the heavens?

From the 竹取物語.

38. 何をか奉らむ。

What shall I give you?

From the 更級日記.

39. 安之我良乃 夜徹也麻故要弓 伊麻之奈波 多礼乎可伎美等 弥都々志努波牟 (原文)

足柄の 八重山越えて いましなば 誰れをか君と 見つつ偲はむ

When you pass over the eight folds of mountains in Ashigara, who will we look at to remember you?

From the 万葉集.

40. くひなのたたくなど、心細からぬかは。

At such times when the marsh hen knocks, are people free of uncertainty?

From the 徒然草.

41. 何事ぞや。童べと、腹だち給へるか。

What happened? Did you quarrel with the children?

From the 源氏物語.

ぞ

The particle ぞ is quite emphatic as it is in Modern Japanese and originally started out as そ. It often shows anxiety and when it is at the end of a sentence, depending on the context, it can either show a strong declaration or a strong question. It is often at the end of a sentence preceded by the citation particle と with a verb such as 言ふ implying that the said verb is there in the 連体形 as it would otherwise stipulate given that it is a bound particle.

Particle Note: ぞ frequently follows case, adverbial, and conjunctive particles to emphasize their roles.

Examples

42. 人はいさ心もしらずふるさとは花ぞ昔の香ににほひける

You know not the feelings of others, but at home, the flowers smell the same as in the past.
From the 古今和歌集.

43. みな鎧の袖をぞぬらしける。

Everyone wet the sleeves of their armor!
From the 平家物語.

44. なく雁のねをのみぞ聞くをぐら山霧たちはるる時しなければ

All I hear are the cries of geese! That's because the mist never clears at Mount Ogura.
From the 新古今和歌集.

45. 吉野なる夏実の川の川淀に鴨ぞ鳴くなる山影にして

In the pool of the Natsumi River in Yoshino, the ducks are singing hidden in the mountain's shadow.
From the 万葉集.

46. 門よくさしてよ。雨もぞ降る。

Close the gate well! It might rain!
From the 徒然草.

47. 見る人もなき山里の桜花ほかの散りなむのちぞ咲かまし。

Cherry blossoms, in the mountain village with no one to see you, if you could bloom after all

else has, that would be good...

From the 古今和歌集.

48. 人所見 表結 人不見 裏紐開 戀日太 (原文)

人に見ゆる上は結びて人に見えぬ 下 紐 開けて 恋ふる日ぞ多き

Doing the cord of the coat that people can see but opening the cord of the underclothes that people can't see, the days that I long are many!

From the 万葉集.

49. あれは、何ものぞ。

Who is that?

From the 平家物語.

50. 川霧のふもとをこめて立ちぬれば空にぞ秋の山は見えける。

Since the river midst has shrouded the base, the mountain of autumn appeared to float in the sky.

From 宇治拾遺物語.

51. 飼ひける犬の、暗けれど主を知りて飛び付きたりけるとぞ。

They say that the dog that he had raised, though it was dark, knew his master jumped on him.

From the 徒然草.

52. 恋しとはたが名づけけむことならむ死ぬとぞただに言ふべかりける。

"Longing" is surely a word someone named. "To ie", though, should have never been coined.

From the 古今和歌集.

Historical Note: ぞ actually started out as a final particle but acquired bound particle usages in becoming more emphatic.

なむ・なん

The particle なむ・なん shows emphasis and like ぞ it can be after the citation と with a verb in the 連体形 abbreviated such as 言ふ. The particle first started out in the form なむ. It quickly became associated with casual speech and was frequently used in dialogues and stories.

53. 橋を八つわたせるによりてなむ八橋といひける。

It is exactly because they laid eight bridges that they call it Eight Bridges.

From the 伊勢物語.

54. 物なん心ほそくおぼゆる。

Everything seems so depressing.

From the 竹取物語.

55. もののあはれも知らずなりゆくなん、浅ましき。

Sure enough, one becomes no longer aware of the pathos of things. How base!

From the 徒然草.

56. ただ今なむ、聞きつけ侍る。

I heard about it just now!

From the 源氏物語.

Particle Note: Although the bound particle なむ is rarely seen at the end of a sentence, when it is, it should not be confused with the desiderative final particle なむ, which means "I wish that..." and attaches to the 未然形. Perhaps it is this exact confusion that resulted in it rarely being at the end. When no verb is at the end of a sentence, though, it appears. After all, the source of confusion, connecting to a verb, is deleted.

57. 舞人を宿せる仮屋より出で来たりけるとなん。

Sure enough, it's said that (the fire) came from the temporary dwelling housing the dancers.

From the 方丈記.

こそ

こ そ creates strong emphasis and when in the middle of the sentence it binds the end into the 已然形. It's often at the end of a sentence, but it is normally not directly preceded by a verb, so the form that is preceded by it is determined from the rest of the sentence. This can get tricky, which is the lovely trait that bound particles have when they're not in the middle of a sentence.

Like the others, it can be at the end of a sentence where the final verb is dropped, leaving it to imply the verb that is dropped. It can also show hailing after a person's name. This is just an

application of its overall use of showing strong emphasis. This, strong emphasis, though, may at times show a concession. This can be determined when the two clauses, the one with *こそ* and the one that follows, seem to be counter to each other. You wouldn't, then, interpret the particle as meaning "certainly" but "although". Even still, the same degree of emphasis is maintained.

Exercises

58. 大かた、萬のしわざは止めて、暇あるこそ、めやすく、あらまほしけれ。

It is generally desirable and seemly to quit one's myriad of doings and have leisure.

From the 徒然草.

59. さらにこそ信ぜられね。

I absolutely cannot believe it!

From the 大鏡.

60. みつ潮のながれひる間を逢ひがたみみるめの浦に夜をこそ待て。

Since meeting is hard until the tide dries, I will wait through the night to meet you at Mirume Bay.

From the 古今和歌集.

61. 敵にあふてこそ死にたけれ。悪所に落ちては死にたからず。

We want to die facing the enemy! We don't want to die falling in a bad spot.

From the 平家物語.

62. これは龍のしわざにこそありけれ。

This was definitely the doing of a dragon.

From the 竹取物語.

第 332 課: Adverbial Particles

All of the particles that will be discussed in this lesson are those that you should already know from Modern Japanese. Essentially little has changed, which will hopefully make this an easy lesson. The particles that will be studied in this lesson are the following.

まで	など	し (も)	ばかり
のみ	だに	すら	さえ

The Particle **まで**

As you know, the particle **まで** created some sort of extent, and this is rather concrete, even when it is dealing with unexpected degree as opposed to other phrases like **にかけて**. As is the case in Modern Japanese, this particle may follow noun phrases and the **連体形**. Just like in Modern Japanese it can be paired with either the particles **から** or **より** to create "from...to...".

1. 明くるより暮るる**まで**、東の山ぎはを眺めて過ごす。

From the time the sun came up till it went down, I passed the time by gazing at the edge of the eastern hills.

From the 更級日記.

2. 夜更くる**まで**酒飲み物語して、あるじの親王、酔ひて入りたまひなむとも。

The Prince of the household drank and talked until night and was completely drunk as he tried to enter (his bedroom).

From the 伊勢物語.

3. 武蔵の國**まで**惑ひ歩きけり。

He walked wandering as far as Musashi Province.

From the 伊勢物語.

4. わが宿は道もなき**まで**荒れにけり。

As for our house, it has been overrun to the point that the road has disappeared.

From the 古今和歌集.

5. 朝ぼらけ有明の月と見る**まで**に吉野の里に降れる白雪

It's the white snow piled up in Yoshino village to the point that one mistakes it for the moon at dawn's light shining across.

From the 古今和歌集.

The Particle など

The particle など first appeared in the 平安時代. Its primary function is to show example(s), implying similar items of such group are included as well. However, just as in Modern Japanese, it may just be used primarily to soften the sentence.

6. 雨など降るもをかし。

It is also charming when the rain and such falls.

From the 枕草子.

7. いみじうつくしきちごの、いちごなど食ひたる。

Extremely kids ate strawberries and such.

From the 枕草子.

8. いざ、いと心安き所にて、のどかに聞こえむなど語らひ給へば...

Since (Genji) said such things as "Well, let's talk all relaxed somewhere very comfortable",...

From the 源氏物語.

9. 闕伽棚に菊紅葉など折り散らしたる、さすがに住む人のあればなるべし。

The chrysanthemums and colored leaves bent and scattered on the water offering board is no doubt because people are living there.

From the 徒然草.

10. 大人、童、下衆なんど、かたちよし。

The adults, children, and low class people and such have beautiful appearances.

From the 宇津保物語.

11. 車の音すれば、若き者どもの覗きなどすべかめるに

It looked like the young (lady) attendants were looking for an opening of such when there was noise from a cart, but...

From the 源氏物語.

The Particle し (も)

Up until the 平安時代, the particle し was seen in all sorts of positions in a sentence, but it quickly became more commonly seen in combinations such as し...ば... or combined with bound particles. This is where the form しも comes to play, which is sometimes classified as a bound particle with there being も. The particle is quite emphatic and singles out a single item from a list

of things, and thus, it is very limiting. Just like in Modern Japanese, this means it's perfect for strengthening a negation.

12. 今し、かもめむれみてあそぶ所あり。

Right now, there is a place where the seagulls are gathering and playing.

From the 土佐日記.

13. 折りしも雨風うしつづきて、心あわただしく散りすぎぬ。

The rain and wind unfortunately continued, and (the cherry blossoms) restlessly ended up scattering away.

From the 徒然草.

14. 飛鳥川の淵瀬常ならぬ世にしあれば

Since this is the world just like the rapids and abysses of the Asuka river ever changing

From the 徒然草.

15. 心には月見むとしも思はねどきには空ぞながめられける。

Though in my heart, I didn't have any thought of looking at the moon, in my sorrow I found myself gazing at the sky.

From the 後拾遺集.

The Particle ばかり

Just like in Modern Japanese, the primary usage of ばかり is to show approximation. This approximation deals with numbers, place, age, time, weight, etc. It can also show degree/extent. The use of "just", which is also found in Modern Japanese, began in the 平安時代. This is pretty distinguishable from the other usage because it wouldn't be used with a "counter/quantity noun".

Now, the intense repetition usage found in things like 鳴いてばかりいる in Modern Japanese started out in the 鎌倉時代 as a final particle usage, but now it is the most important usage, with its use for "just" as a means of restriction being almost entirely given to だけ and its approximation usage fighting with くらい over minute semantics (Lesson 83).

Origin Note: The particle ばかり comes from the verb 計る. If you know that はかり・秤 means a "scale/weighing machine" even to this day, you can see the direct correlation it has with its fundamental meaning of showing approximation, which all of its other usages evolved from over time.

Sound Change Note: Starting in the 江戸時代, the particle underwent dialectical sound changes, of which some have survived into Modern Japanese as slang/colloquial variants. Those that are important include ばかり, ばかりし, ばかり, and ばかり.

Base Note: ばかり goes after the 終止形 for approximation usages but after the 連体形 for limitation usages.

Examples

16. 廣瀬河袖衝許 浅乎也 心深目手 吾念有良武 (原文)

広瀬川袖つくばかり浅きをや 心深めて我が思へるらむ。

Just like the Hirose River being so shallow that my sleeves are wet,
I wonder why I'm taking it so deep to the heart.

From the 万葉集.

17. 如此許恋乍不有者高山之磐根四巻手死奈麻死物乎 (原文)

かくばかり恋ひつつあらずは高山の磐根し枕きて死なましものを

Without yearning and suffering this much,

I want to end up dying upon the rocks as my pillow in that tall mountain.

From the 万葉集.

18. されど、なほ夕顔という名ばかりはをかし。

But after all, only the name of the evening face is charming.

From the 枕草子.

19. 頸もちぎるばかり引きたるに。

They pulled (his head) to the extent that his neck was almost torn off.

From the 徒然草.

20. 卯のときばかりにふねいだす。

We set out on the boat around the Hour of the Rabbit.

From the 土佐日記.

21. 人しれずおつる涙のつもりつつ数かくばかりなりにけるかな。

As my tears in secret piled up, I ended up at the point of writing down the number of tears in vain.

From the 拾遺和歌集.

22. 命あらば逢ふよもあらん世の中になど死ぬばかりおもふいぞ。

If I had life, I would probably have a time of being able to meet that person, but even so,
why does my heart fret as if I'm going to die?
From the 金葉集.

Word Note: 世の中 in this passage has both the meaning of "male-female relationship" and "longevity". This adds to the modern translation as referring to the speaker and the partner as well as the twist on "life".

23. 吾屋前 芽子花咲有 見来益 今二日許 有者将落 (原文)

我が屋戸の萩が花咲けり見に来ませいま二日ばかりあらば散りなむ

The ogi flowers have bloomed at my yard. Come see them! Won't they scatter away in two days?
From the 万葉集.

24. 有明のつれなく見えし別れより暁ほど憂きものはなし。

Nothing is better than the dawn from the day we parted as the dawn moonlight shined coldly above.
From the 古今和歌集.

25. かぞふれば年の残りもなかりけり老いぬるばかり悲しきはなし。

When you count, there is no remaining years. There is nothing more said that getting old.
From the 新古今和歌集.

26. 今来んと言ひしばかりに長月のありあけの月を待ちいでつるかな。

I wait for the moon of the dawn of the ninth month saying it will show now, but will it emerge?
From the 古今和歌集.

The Particle のみ

The particle のみ during the 奈良時代 was used far more frequently than ばかり, but ever since it has lost its steam, and even in Modern Japanese were it has survived to, it is used in a limited fashion in more literary/formal situations. Its use, just like today is to show "limitation" meaning "only". Up until the 平安時代, it would be placed before particles like を and に, but the order switched to をのみ and にのみ respectively, as is the case to the present day.

27. ただ浪の白きのみぞ見ゆる。

The only thing that was visible was the white of the waves.

From the 土佐日記.

28. 秋の夜も名のみなりけり逢ふといへば事ぞともなく明けぬるものを。

The fall night was in name only. If I were to meet (my lover), I wish this night would end oh so soon.

From the 古今和歌集.

29. 筑波祢尔 可加奈久和之能 祢乃未乎可 奈伎和多里南牟 安布登波奈思尔 (原文)

筑波嶺に かか鳴く鷲の音のみをか 泣きわたりなむ 逢ふとはなしに。

Like the eagles crying at Tsukubane, I too shall cry for I can no longer see that child.

From the 万葉集.

30. 花は盛りに、月はくまなきをのみ見るものかは。

Should we look at the moon only when it is clear or at flowers only at their peak?

From the 徒然草.

The Particles だに, すら, & さえ

Except for some particle details, the original coverage of these particles almost completely applies here as well.

だに was used a lot in the 奈良時代 to primarily show minimal desire (せめて...でも), and then afterwards it began being used to show minimal example, eventually replacing すら. However, as we know, in Modern Japanese さえ took over all of them.

すら was used in the ancient period too, in which it showed minimal example. So, at least in the 奈良時代, the two particles weren't really confused in function with each other. There wasn't even any true consistency on how it was used with case particles. Combinations like をすら, すらを, すらに, にすら, etc. were all common. At one point it also appeared as そら, and managed to survive into Modern Japanese by being consistently used in writing.

さえ is slightly different in that it can mean "on top of that" and show minimal example. "Minimal example" in Modern Japanese can appear as できさえ (も) to distinguish the usages. It came from the verb "to add", 添ふ. This shouldn't be a surprise. It too was used in the ancient period. With the similar roles of だに, すら, and さえ, it's not surprising that they'd be confused with each other and that one would become used more than the others as a result.

Examples

31. 今一度聲をだに聞かせ給へ。

Now let me hear your voice at least once.

From the 源氏物語.

32. かたみに打ちて、男をさへぞ打つめる。

They took turns hitting each other, and it appears that they even hit the men!

From the 枕草子.

33. 昇らんをだに見送り給へ。

At the very least, watch me ascend.

From the 竹取物語.

34. 言不問 木尚妹興兄 有云乎 直独子尔 有之苦者 (原文)

言問はぬ木すら いも せ ひとりご
妹 と兄ありとふをただ 独 子 にあるが苦しさ。

They say that even the mute tree has sisters and brothers; oh how hard it must be as an only child!

From the 万葉集.

35. ひとつ子にさへありければ、いとかなしうし給ひけり。

In addition, since he was the only child, (the mother) was even more saddened.

From the 伊勢物語.

36. 星の光だに見えず暗きに。

It was dark and even the light of the stars wasn't visible.

From the 更級日記.

37. 人所寝 味宿不寝 早敷八四 公目尚 欲嘆 (原文)

は
人の寝る 味眠は寝ずて 愛しきやし 君が目すらを欲りて嘆くも。

Having not had sweet sleep with someone, my dear, I sigh desiring at least a glimpse of you.

From the 万葉集.

第 333 課: The Auxiliary Verb ～らし

As you would imagine just by the name of this auxiliary that this is the predecessor to ～らしい. Just as it is used now, ～らし is an evidential modal that shows supposition based on good reason and or objective evidence. This is why it is translated as "it appears that". In many instances, it is much like ～に違いない. Aside from notes concerned examples and abbreviations, this explanation right here pretty much covers this item.

～らし

As mentioned earlier, this is an evidential. Evidentials are phrases found in the world's languages that define where information comes from. There are arguably more obvious evidentials in Japanese, of which are all classified as auxiliary verbs. One thing to note is that ～らし has special conjugation rules in Classical Japanese.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
X	X	らし	らし	らし	X

Base Note: The 已然形 is used when there is a bound particle. This is how you can distinguish it from the 終止形 and 連体形.

It would be a mistake to use らしき, and it would be a mistake to use it as a 形容詞. So, in some ways, the usage of this has evolved to become more variable in Modern Japanese. However, one thing that could be done with ～らし that cannot be done with ～らしい is that with ラ変 conjugating items, the ～る in the 連体形 may be dropped when ～らし is attached.

けり+らし	→	けるらし	→	けらし	あり+らし	→	あるらし	→	あらし
なり+らし	→	なるらし	→	ならし	新し + らし	→	新しかるらし	→	新しからし

Examples

1. 暮去者 小倉乃山尔 鳴鹿者 今夜波不鳴 寐宿家良思母 (原文)

夕されば小倉の山に鳴く鹿は今夜は鳴かず い寝にけらしも

When it comes night, the deer that always cry at Mt. Ogura are not crying tonight. They must have fallen asleep.

From the 万葉集.

ひととせ

2. 百年に 一 年 たらぬつくも髪我を恋ふらし面影に見ゆ。

The old woman almost 99 years old is definitely missing me. In my eyes I vividly see her image.

From the 伊勢物語.

もみぢ

3. この川に 紅 葉 葉流る奥山の雪消の水ぞ今まさるらし。

As far as the colored leaves flowing in this river, it now definitely appears that the water from the snow melting from the remote mountains is increasing.

From the 古今和歌集.

4. 白雲のこのかたにしもおりゐるは天つ風こそ吹きて来ぬらし。

The white clouds descending and trailing this direction definitely appears to be because of the wind blowing from the heavens.

From the 大鏡.

つついつつつ

5. 筒 井 筒 井 筒 につけしまろがたけ過ぎにけらしな妹見ざるまに。

When comparing statures with me and the round well curb, it definitely appears that I have surpassed it in height...during the time I haven't met you.

From the 伊勢物語.

6. これに稲つみたるをや、いな船といふならし。

It appears that they call this boat that rice is loaded in the "rice boat".

From the 奥の細道.

7. 竜田川 もみぢ葉ながる 神奈備の 三諸の山に しぐれ降るらし。

The colored leaves flow in the Tatsuta River. Based on this, it appears that a scattered shower fell at the holy Mimoro Mountain upstream.

From the 拾遺集.

8. 久方之 天芳山 此夕 霞霏微 春立下 (原文)

ひさかたの天の香具山 このゆふべ霞たなびく春たつらしも。

This evening on Heavenly Kaguyama, the mist is trailing. It seems that spring has arrived.

From the 万葉集.

9. 和我多妣波 比左思久安良思 許能安我家流 伊毛我許呂母能 阿可都久見礼婆 (原文)

我が旅は久しくあらしこの我が着る妹が衣の垢つく見れば (万葉集・一五-三六六七)

It appears that my trip has gone long. When you look at the robe of my wife that I'm wearing

being covered in dirt...

From the 万葉集.

10. 春過而 夏来良之 白妙能 衣乾有 天之香来山 (原文)

春過ぎて夏来たるらし 白栲の衣ほしたり 天の香具山

It definitely appears that spring has passed and summer has arrived.

They are drying the white hemp robes at Heavenly Kaguyama.

From the 万葉集.

11. 春過ぎて夏来にけ(る)らし。

Spring has passed and summer appears to have definitely arrived.

Sentence Note: This sentence is a later variant of the same phrase found in the 万葉集.

Exercises: Correctly put together the following adjectives with らし.

1. 重し

2. 寒し

3. 熱し

4. 美し

5. をかし

Translate the following into English and Modern Japanese.

1. 蟬の声聞こゆ。夏来たるらし。

第 334 課: The History of ～ます

～ ます is used in Modern Japanese as a very essential auxiliary verb to express politeness. It has its prescriptive restrictions of not having a 連体形, and not showing up until the end of an independent clause, but these restrictions of which are not really adhered today have never existed as we learn. We will start by looking at 参らす, its ultimate source.

From 参らす To ます

The 補助動 参らす・進らす appears in the middle of the Early Middle Japanese period (794-1185 A.D.). However, because the words 奉る, 聞こゆ, and 申す were used in the same way, it wasn't until the end of the Early Middle Japanese period (中古日本語) that it became prevalent. Its meaning was the same as the Modern Japanese お…申し上げる, which makes it very humble.

1. たすけまゐらせんとは存じ ^{さうら}候へども

Though I will help you….

From the 平家物語 九 (End of 12th century).

2. 今日すでに離れ参らせなんす。

Today I bid you my goodbye.

From the 平家物語.

3. 薩摩守のたまひけるは、「年ごろ申し承つて後、おろかならぬ御事に思ひ参らせ候へども、この二、三年は京都の騒ぎ、国々の乱れ、しかしながら当家の身の上のことに候ふあひだ、疎略を存ぜずといへども、常に参り寄ることも候はず。

The words of the Governor of Satsuma were, "After having since been taught by you (on Waka) several years ago, I have not thought you to be foolish, but in these two, three years, there has been the uproar in Kyoto and unrest throughout the provinces, and as this all involves our house, though by no means meaning to be discourteous to you, I could not always visit.

From the 平家物語.

4. ^{めのと}乳母の女房、せめても心のあられずさに、走り出でて、いづくをさすともなく、その辺を足にまかせ

^{あり}て泣き ^{たかを}歩くほどに、ある人の申しけるは、「この奥に ^{ひじりもん}高 雄 といふ山寺あり。その ^聖、文

^{がくぼう}覚 房 と申す人こそ、鎌倉殿にゆゆしき大事の人に思はれ ^{じやうらふ}参らせておはしますが、 ^上 臈 の

おんこ おんでし

御 子 を 御 弟 子 にせんとて、欲しがらるなれ」と申しければ、うれしきことを聞きぬと思ひて、母上

いちにん お
にかくとも申さず、ただ 一人 高雄に尋ね入り、聖に向かひたてまつて、「血の中より生ほしたて参ら
おんいのち
せて、今年十二にならせたまひつる若君を、昨日武士に捕られて候ふ。御 命 乞ひうけ参らせたまひ
て、御弟子にせさせたまひなんや」とて、聖の前に倒れ伏し、声も惜しまず泣き叫ぶ。まことにせんかたな
げにぞ見えたりける。

The wet nurse brooded over the situation, lost her composure, and ran away with no particular direction in mind. But, while she was walking in tears having gained her maturity walking still in the vicinity, one person said, "There is a temple in the mountains in the interior called Takao. I heard that the priest there by the name of Mongakubo was pressured by the Kamakura Palace to apprentice the son of a high ranking court lady." The wet nurse thought she had heard a good report, and without saying anything to her mother, she went alone to inquire the priest at Takao and said, "The prince which I have raised from birth who has turned twelve this year has been captured yesterday by militants. I beg of you to have his life spared and make him your apprentice", which then she fell down before the priest and cried and shout with no reluctance. She truly could not be helped.

From the 平家物語.

Grammar Note: The final instance of 参らす is the last usage mentioned below.

The Independent Verb 参らす

As an independent word, 参らす became a humble word with the meaning of 献上する・差し上げる・奉る. It comes from the combination of the verb 参る and the サ変 conjugating honorific ending ~す. The verb, though, was actually normally treated as a 下二段 verb as demonstrated by the following bases.

未然形	連用形	終止形	連体形	已然形	命令形
せ	せ	す	する	すれ	せよ

おほんふみ
5. 薬の壺に 御 文 そへてまゐらす。

I will present (the emperor) the medicine jar along with (Princess Kaguya's) letter.

From the 竹取物語 (10th century).

This meaning is used in a way that 参らす, despite being composed of two parts, was treated as being a single word. You will need to consider this once we see the other two competing meanings of 参らす.

The Causative Usage and 尊敬 Usage?

As an independent verb, 参らす also had the causative meanings of making visiting (the palace) and serving/giving. If translated into Modern Japanese, it would be one of the following verbs depending on context: 参上させる・参内させる・差し上げさせる・奉仕させる。

6. 急ぎまゐらせて御覧するに

When (the Emperor had the young prince) rush and come to court and see,
From the 源氏物語 (1008 年).

7. 待ちいで給ひて、加持まゐらせむとし給ふ。

Waiting on the faith healer, I'll have an incantation performed.
From the 源氏物語 (1008 年ごろ).

When this す was used for 尊敬, it would be accompanied with たまふ. Thus, you get まゐらせたまふ. See the passage of the wet nurse above for an example of this 参らす. You must be careful not to confuse these two other 参らす with the one which evolved into a 補助動詞 which lead to ～ます as it is this one which may be viewed as a single word. With contexts like above, you shouldn't have trouble differentiating the three usages.

Late Middle Japanese: まらする

Even after Late Middle Japanese (1185-start of the 17th century), 参らす was still frequently used. When it changed to まらする, the 連用形 まらし came about and まらする was both the 連体形 and 終止形. At the end of Late Middle Japanese, its original independent meaning of being a humble verb for 差し上げる disappeared, and by the end of Early Modern Japanese, まらする's meaning had completely shifted to showing politeness, and this of course leads directly to ～ます with the intermediary steps of まっする and まする.

8. この金をまらせん。

I will give this money.
From the 蒙求抄.

9. ともかくも頼みまらする。

Anyway, I will make the request.

From the 虎明狂.

10. ソレガシモ子供ヲ引キ具シテヤガテ参リマラセウズル。

I'll have the child accompany me and go before long.

From the 天草本平家.

Grammar Note: うずる is the 連体形 of the auxiliary うず which is a contraction of むず. It has the same function as the modern auxiliary 〜う. It dropped out of use in the 江戸時代.

まする Brings Confusion

With the creation of まする, it was confused frequently with the existing ます's from ^{いま} 坐す and ^{もう} 申す. With the meanings being so similar, conjugations were also confused. At one point, 〜ます that we know today had the 未然形 まさ- due to the confusion. まする used to be both the 終止形 and 連体形, but then it exclusively became the 連体形 and ます became the 終止形. Of course, today, 〜ます is now both the 終止形 and 連体形. As for the 命令形, it at one point acquired the form 〜ませい. If you read a lot of older texts pre-war, you can even see 〜まし. Other conjugation differences includes the usage of ますれば, which was limited to letter correspondences. Otherwise, ましたら was the most prevalent form for the 假定形.

11. お美事にござりまする。

How splendid.

12. 天に（い）まします神よ

Oh Lord which art in heaven

13. このようにお断り申し上げます。

In this manner I decline.

14. 振り返ってみまするに、数々の山を乗り越えてまいりました。

When I looked back, I saw that we had passed over several mountains.

Citation needed

Today, まする and ますれ are very old-fashioned and if you were to use them, you would not just sound weird but very 堅苦しい. As for other conjugations, 〜ませぬ is the predecessor of

～ません, and in some regions even to this day, the form ～ませず is present. The form ～ません would have traveled to Eastern Japan once it formed.

Table of Contents

第 335 課: 万葉仮名 Introduction

Chinese characters were designed for the Chinese language to represent native words. Applying them to very different languages would require altering the script. The script of Modern Japanese is a final product of a successful application of the Chinese script to a completely different language. The Modern Japanese mixed script is composed of 漢字 and 仮名.

This script would not be possible without the invention of the original Japanese script 万葉仮名. This script is similar to the modern script in its use of both semantic and phonetic spellings. The phonetic use of 漢字 enabled Japanese to be written with the Chinese script for the purpose of writing Japanese and not Chinese. However, I propose that writers of 万葉仮名 made use of the meanings of 漢字 for semantic play in otherwise completely phonetic spellings. Therefore, meaning was a fundamental component of the script that made a framework for phonetic spellings.

This lesson is an introduction into the script based on my beginning research in this study on the semantic purpose of phonetic spellings in 万葉仮名.

万葉仮名

万葉仮名 was used to write Old Japanese, which had around eighty-nine syllables with V or CV structure. Each character would either match up to an individual morpheme or individual syllable. Old Japanese had an eight vowel system composed of a, i, ī, e, ē, o, and ō. We will use this common representation of Old Japanese vowels, though they may not be best representative of the actual pronunciation of them. A subset of 漢字 could be used arguably interchangeably for a given syllable. However, basic lexemes were often spelled semantically. For example, *umi* “sea” was usually spelled with 海, the kanji for ocean.

Watabe (1998) gives the analysis that 万葉仮名 was purely phonetic with minor instances of semantic spelling. According to Watabe, ideographic 漢字 were used to write Japanese phonetically by sacrificing entirely the semantic values of those characters. If a concept had only one associated character, then reading ambiguity could arise due to multiple readings. Watabe’s asser-

tion hinges on two flawed assumptions. The first assumption is that phonetic spellings had no semantic relation at all to the words they represented. The second assumption is that reading ambiguity was a problem, and thus a motivation for phonetic spellings. I will first show how Watabe's assumption about phonetic spellings is false.

Watabe gives the character 君 meaning "you" as an example of why purely phonetic spellings with no meaning were necessary. In his opinion, 君 (you) could be read as *kimi*, *anata*, or *omae* because they were all words for "you". As a result, writers would have devised phonetic spellings to disambiguate readings. According to Watabe, the spellings 岐美, 吉民, and 伎美 were created with no semantic relation to the word *kimi*. Looking at the first spelling 岐美, the characters literally mean "crossroads of beauty". People referred to with *kimi* at the time had divine roles.

So, in light of the actual meaning of *kimi*, 岐美 may be thought of as a reasonable artistic spelling of the word. In the second spelling, 吉民 literally means "fortunate citizen", which can be viewed as a reasonable artistic spelling of *kimi* focusing on the wealthy status of the individual. The third spelling 伎美 literally means "skill and beauty", which may also be viewed as a qualification of the majestic role of someone referred to with *kimi*. Thus, these three spellings demonstrate that the meanings of these characters may not have been ignored in phonetic spelling but may have been taken into account for semantic play.

Watabe's second assertion is that 君(you) had a three-way reading ambiguity between *kimi*, *anata*, and *omae*. Watabe claims that alleviating such reading ambiguity was a strong motivation for phonetic spellings. However, this assertion is fundamentally flawed. Watabe assumes that these three words all had the meaning of a grammatical second person pronoun. In reality, *kimi* had the meaning of "ruler", and the words *anata* and *omae* would have been direction location words in Old Japanese. Furthermore, if semantic spellings were hard to read, then the semantic spelling of *kimi* as 君 would not show up six times in Volume One of the 万葉集. Also, his assertion would not explain words such as *kimi* having multiple semantic spellings. This is proven with the fact that *kimi* is most frequently semantically spelled as 王 meaning "king".

Note: The 万葉集 is the largest corpus of 万葉仮名 composed of 4,516 poems written in Old Japanese by multiple authors who lived from 347 to 759 A.D.

The spellings of *kimi* exemplify how great of a role semantics had in the script. When words were written phonetically, the meanings of the characters chosen added a sense to the word that would otherwise be absent. In fact, as is mentioned by Bentley (2001), though the sys-

tem does employ phonetic spellings, 万葉仮名 glyphs were chosen in a way that would avoid unpleasant semantics. This would be evidence for writers capitalizing on semantic play and provides additional evidence that the writers were aware of what the characters meant.

If the phonetic part of the script was free from semantics, then characters would be used in complete disregard of meaning. Consider, though, the following poem from the 万葉集. Bold characters stand for 漢字 used semantically and underlined characters stand for 漢字 used phonetically.

1)

Poem 1

籠毛與 美籠母乳 布久思毛與 美夫君志持 此岳尔 菜採須兒 家告閑 名告紗根 虛見津 山跡乃國者 押奈戸手
吾許曾居 師吉名倍手 吾己曾座 我許背齒 告目 家呼毛名雄母 (Hatuse-nō-asakura-nō-miya-ni-mi-yo-siramesi-si-Sumera-mikoto n.d.)

Ko-mō-yō mi-ko moti pukusi-mō-yō mi-bukushi mo- kō-nō-woka-ni na tum-as-u ko ipe nor-as-e na nor-as-an-e sora mit-u yamatō-nō kuni-pa os-i-nabe-te ware kōsō wor-e sik-i-nab-e-te ware kōsō mase wa-ni-kōsō-pa nora-me ipe-wo-mō na-wo-mō.

Hey, young girl picking grasses with the basket, the wonderful basket, and the hand shovel the wonderful hand shovel, tell me where your house is but not its name. I rule all of Yamato which abounds with the spirits, and though I rule everything, I ask that you tell me about your house and your name.

Approximately 44% of the characters used in this poem are semantic spellings, but the remaining 56% cannot be considered strictly phonetic. How these phonetic spellings are not used in complete disregard of meaning is exemplified with 毛與. 毛與 is the first phonetically spelled phrase in this poem with two conjoined particles, neither of which have Chinese equivalents. The first particle, *mō*, would have had no 漢字 for a direct semantic spelling, and only two 漢字 in the script had the phonetic value *mō*. In this poem, both spellings, 毛 and 母, are found. It is hard to believe that the writer avoided repetition for aesthetic purposes because 毛 shows up three times in this poem for the particle *mō*. In fact, all instances of 毛 stand for the particle *mō* in Volume One of the 万葉集, which is evidence that a link was made between the character and the particle *mō*.

After the king addresses the female listener, the particle *mō* appears with the spelling 母. Although 母 literally means “mother”, words referring to mother and daughter were frequently used as endearment words for women in general. Thus, the usage of 母 here may be viewed as a semantic play between the homophonous particle *mō* and noun meaning mother.

Looking at the other words written phonetically in Poem One, similar semantic plays with kanji are made with words that cannot be written semantically due to the agglutinative nature of Japanese. Thus, in **押奈戸手** *os-i-nabe-te* and **師吉名倍手** *sik-i-nab-e-te*, both referring to ruling, characters with semantic ties to ruling such as 戸 (household), 手 (hand), and 師 (master) are implemented. Rather than a random allotment of characters based on sound, the spellings exemplify a crafty adaptation of Chinese script to Japanese while maintaining the meaning of 漢字.

The poem below is written by another ruler. The same formatting as before is used to distinguish semantic and phonetic kanji for ease of identification.

2)

Poem 375

吉野尔有 夏實之河乃 川余杼尔 鴨曾鳴成 山影尔之弓 (Yupara-nö-opo-kimi n.d.)

Yösino-ni ar-u natumi-nö kapa nö kapa-yodo-ni kamo sö nak-u nar-u yama-kage-ni-s-i-te

In the river pool of the Natsumi River in Yoshino, you can hear ducks cry in the shadowy mountains.

Most of this poem is written semantically, and the argument can be made that the writer chose characters that best fit for the meanings of the words written phonetically. Consider the following. 成, meaning ‘become’, was used primarily to write the native Japanese word *naru* ‘become’. It is used for the copula *nari* here because it is the only kanji with the disyllabic reading *nar-u*.

The “do” in *yodo* (pool of water) also seems to be spelled without an apparent reason as the character 杼 meaning “acorn” is used. *Yodo* in Modern Japanese is spelled semantically as 淀. However, due to 淀 being rare, it was likely unknown to the author. Furthermore, the author clearly attempted to spell *yodo* semantically because he chose 余 meaning “exceeding” for the syllable *yo*. A *yodo* refers to a pool of water from a stream, and can thus be viewed as an excess of water. Considering the other 漢字 read as “do” in 万葉仮名, the rest are more detached than 杼 to “pool of water”: 騰 (advancing), 藤 (wisteria) and 特 (particular). For a semantic spelling, 騰 would actually be the worst spelling as water in a *yodo* is stagnant and not rushing. Thus, due to script limitations, it appears writers struggled to find the right character to choose in light of meaning.

There have been two ways thus far 万葉仮名 has been shown to take meaning into account in phonetic spellings. The first is purposeful semantic play on characters. The second is choosing the next best character for when there is not an appropriate character available to write things

clearly semantically. As mentioned earlier, some words which have semantic spellings may still be spelled phonetically. If this is so, possible motivations related to semantic word play would need to be found to say that phonetic value was not the primary motivation for spelling in 万葉仮名. With that said, consider the following poem.

3)

Poem 28

春過而 夏来良之 白妙能 衣乾有 天之香来山 (Emperor Jitō n.d.)

Paru sug-i-te natu k-i-tar-u-ras-i shiro-tapē-nō koromo hos-i-tar-i amē-nō kaguyama

It definitely appears that spring has passed and summer has arrived. They are drying the white hemp robes at Heavenly Kaguyama.

Mount Kaguyama is a very important mountain. Its name is of Ainu origin. Despite this being a good reason for phonetic spelling, this does not appear to be the case. As 来 does not have the reading *gu*, the character cannot be for phonetic value. Although 香 has the sound *ka*, its meaning of fragrance is likely the main motivation for having been chosen. As the poem suggests, there was a tradition of people going to Kaguyama to dry clothes. As *siro-tapē* was white hemp, which takes great craftsmanship to make, character play on emphasizing this talent could explain the choice of 能 (ability) for the particle *nō*.

The semantic spellings 乃 and 之 appear in this poem, but they don't appear in attribute phrases about Mt. Kaguyama was one of several holy mountains with important complex rituals. As 能 (ability) consistently appears in attributes for these mountains, it seems to have been conventionalized as a means of emphasizing the importance of these mountains. To show how this was conventional rather than a random spelling, consider the same use of 能 (ability) in another poem.

4)

Poem 317

天地之 分時從 神左備手 高貴寸 駿河有 布土能高嶺乎 天原 振放見者 度日之 陰毛隱比 照月乃 光毛不見 (Yamabē-nō-akabito n.d.)

Amē-nō tuti-nō wakar-e-si toki-yu kami-sabi-te taka-ku taputo-ki suruga-nar-u puzi-nō taka-ne-wo ama-no para puri-sakē mi-re-ba watar-u pi nō kagē-mō kakur-a-pi ter-u tuki-nō pikari-mō miē-du

Looking afar into the wide sky at Mount Fuji of Suruga, which has been a highly exalted and divine peak since the division of heaven and earth, you cannot even see the shining moon light for even the shadow of the passing sun is hidden.

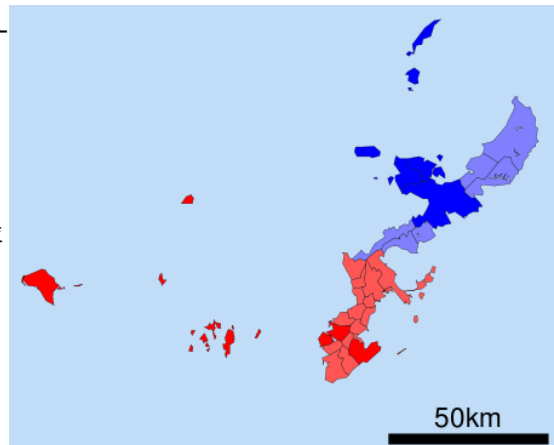
This poem has 能 after *puzi* meaning “Mount Fuji”. Fuji is a name of Ainu providence with unknown meaning, and so the phonetic spelling here including the symbol for cloth 布 and warrior 士 were probably chosen out of confusion as to what the word meant. Just like Mount Kaguyama, though, due to the mountain’s great importance, 能 (ability) was chosen to emphasize the importance of Mount Fuji. More examples are needed to see the extent to which certain character plays were conventionalized, but these two poems both use 能 (ability) for *nō* show that such semantic plays were being employed.

In this essay, 万葉仮名 has been demonstrated to be deeply tied to the semantic values of 漢字. Despite the fact that phonetic spellings arose due to the immense differences between Japanese and Chinese, authors chose characters for phonetic spellings while keeping semantics in mind. Had these writers merely wanted a phonetic system for words that could not be spelled semantically, there would not be evidence of semantic play in phonetic spellings.

Table of Contents

第 336 課: Okinawan Script

Okinawan, うちなーぐち (沖縄口), is a Japonic language spoken by nearly 100,000 people in and around the main island of Okinawa. It is also spoken in the islands in the near vicinity which includes Kerama Islands (慶良間諸島), Kume Island (久米島), Tonaki Island (渡名喜島), Aguni Island (粟国島), Oh Island (奥武島), Hamahiga Island (浜比嘉島), Henza Island (平安座島), Miyagi Island 宮城島, and Ikei Island (伊計島). For the purpose of this discussion, Okinawan will be referred to as うちなーぐち (uchinaaguchi).



As with any language, each community's dialect is slightly different from the others. The main dialect of うちなーぐち is the Shuri-Naha variant, but one area of Okinawa is said to have speakers of another separate Japonic language called Kunigami (国頭語). This dialect used to be de facto language of the Ryukyuan Kingdom since the reign of King Shoh Shin (尚眞).

Despite what the majority of Japanese people think, うちなーぐち is indeed a separate language, although it undoubtedly has common origin with Japanese.

ウチナーグチの表記

うちなーぐち is and has traditionally been written with a mix of 漢字 and ひらがな in ways very similar to Japanese spoken on the mainland.

A little after ひらがな had established in other places of Japan in the 8th~9th centuries A.D, it was passed down to the Ryukyuan Kingdom during the reign of King Shuten (舜天王) in the early 1200s. Due to proximity with China, there's no doubt that the people of Okinawa had contact with 漢字 earlier than this time.

It took a while for ひらがな to disseminate, but very famous works such as the おもろさうし, which was published in the 1500s as a compilation of song and poetry, were created in the kingdom's heyday. Due to Japanese influence, more 漢字 became used in everyday life. However, as was the case in other parts of the Japanese archipelago, access to 漢字 education was limited to wealthy individuals.

The oldest attestation of 漢字かなまじり in うちなーぐち is found inscribed on the たまうどうん ひのもん
玉 陵 の 碑 文, which was made in the year 1501.



Once Okinawa was invaded by the Satsuma Han (薩摩藩) of Japan in 1609, うちなーぐち ceased to be the language of administration. It was replaced by Japanese and 漢文, which was still used in bureaucratic situations. うちなーぐち as a literary language would still flourish until the Meiji Restoration, in which strict language reform was enacted to eradicate local dialects. Okinawa's incorporation into the Japanese prefectural system in 1879 spelled doom for うちなーぐち as a written language until American intervention in 1945 following the end of World War II.

When うちなーぐち is written, カタカナ is avoided because it gives a "foreign nature" to the nature deemed prejudicial to うちなーぐち speakers. Sadly, however, because it has undergone any sort of standardization, there are only ad hoc ways of spelling the language, none of which are truly satisfactory as you will soon see.

Sound Issues

As should be expected, うちなーぐち underwent sound changes Japanese did not. Consequently, this means that the ひらがな syllabary is not adequate in writing every possible contrastive phoneme in うちなーぐち.

One major difference between the two languages is the use of glottal stops before vowels. In Japanese it is typically the case that word initial vowels are preceded by a glottal stop. For example, 音 and 夫 are pronounced as [ʔoto̞] and [ʔoto̞] respectively. The contrasting feature is consonant gemination, and the existence or absence of a glottal stop does not result in unnatural speech. In fact, glottal stops unilaterally never show up within utterances. So, この音 would be rendered as [ko̞no̞ ʔoto̞].

In うちなーぐち, these two words are respectively [ʔutu] and [utu]. The glottal stop is a contrastive phoneme in うちなーぐち. Thus, it appears regardless of whether it is at the beginning or in the middle of an utterance. How can this be represented in ひらがな, which makes no such distinction?

Professor Funadzu Yoshiaki (船津好明) devised a modified ひらがな syllabary with new Kana to fit うちな—ぐち. One problem, however, is the fact that all うちな—ぐち speakers know Japanese. Issues have been raised concerning the use of existing characters for different purposes than in Japanese. Nevertheless, his system, which is called 新沖縄文字 (New Okinawan Letters), is progressively becoming more popular. Oddly enough, though, his orthography only applies to ひらがな.

The vowel Kana look like this in his new orthography. The column in red shows the vowels with an initial glottal stop. The lower column shows the vowels without a glottal stop.

あ	い	う	え	お
	い	ち	え	を

One problem is that を in Japanese may refer to the sound /wo/. Using it for /ʔo/ is problematic for this bilingual community. Also, the lower column is never used for non-glottal vowels within words by orthographic convention. Also, although /a/ is possible, it only shows up inside words.

ʔ does not occur inside words. So, no distinction is felt to be necessary. Thus, though ʔ may not be present, the upper column and not the lower is used. You would need to know word boundaries to know when い corresponds to /ʔi/ and when it corresponds to /i/.

For a community that seeks to save its language from dying out, not having a one-to-one phoneme correspondence is the biggest criticism of this system. However, the idea was that using too many new characters may turn off monolingual Japanese speakers most likely to use the new orthography.

Long Vowels

Another issue is how to write long vowels in うちな—ぐち. Not that Japanese is completely standardized on this front either, but the use of — to lengthen vowels has been deemed by some to be a somewhat derogatory.

Substituting small sized Kana—あ, い, う, え, お—is implemented by some speakers. However, another motivation by some is based on differences in opinion as whether うちな—ぐち syllable structure should be treated as syllabic or moraic. Nevertheless, it is most common regardless of orthography to represent long vowels with —.

Competing Orthographies

There are four orthographies that have come about to write うちなーぐち, but all have come short from a true standardized means of writing うちなーぐち.

慣習的な表記法 (Historic Orthography): This a more conventional usage of ad hoc spellings found throughout Okinawa and shares most features with the other competing orthographies.

協議会による表記法 (Council Orthography): This orthography was proposed by the 沖縄方言普及協議会 (Council for the Dissemination of Okinawan Dialect).

琉球大学の表記法 (University of the Ryukyus Orthography): This is not meant to be used by actual people for writing in うちなーぐち. Rather, it implements only カタカナ and is meant for phonetic transcription.

新沖縄文字 (New Okinawan Letters): As been said before, this system was created by 船津好明. He devised it and first publicly used in his textbook on うちなーぐち called 美しい沖縄の方言. We will first see how the vowels and semi-vowels of うちなーぐち are written in these competing orthographies.

音	慣習	協議会	琉球大学*	新沖縄文字
[i] (initial)	い	ゆい	𐄇	い ^ゝ
[u] (initial)	う・をう	をう	ヲウ	を ^ゝ
[e] (initial)	え・いえ	ゆえ	エ	え ^ゝ
[o] (initial)	お・を・うお	を	ヲ	を ^ゝ
[ʔa] (initial)/[a] (elsewhere)	あ	あ	ア	あ
[ʔi] (initial)/[i] (elsewhere)	い	い	イ	い
[ʔu] (initial)/[u] (elsewhere)	う	う	ウ	う
[ʔe] (initial)/[e] (elsewhere)	え・いえ	え	イエ	え
[ʔo] (initial)/[o] (elsewhere)	お・うお	お	オ	お
[ja] (initial)	や	や	ヤ	や
[ju] (initial)	ゆ	ゆ	ユ	ゆ
[jo] (initial)	よ	よ	ヨ	よ
[ʔja] (initial)/[ja] (elsewhere)	や	つや	イヤ	や ^ゝ
[ʔju] (initial)/[ju] (elsewhere)	ゆ	つゆ	イユ	ゆ ^ゝ

[ʔjo] (initial)/[jo] (elsewhere)	よ	っよ	イヨ	よ
----------------------------------	---	----	----	---

Note: In the system developed by the University of the Ryukyus, 𐄇, ヲウ, エ, and ヲ are always used to stand for [i], [u], [e], and [o] regardless. Thus, イ, ウ, イエ, オ are never used inside words.

拗音

We will now look at the consonant-(glide)-vowel Kana symbols used in the four orthographies. However, labialized sounds will be left for last.

慣習	+a	+i	+u	+e	+o	+ja	+ju	+jo
k	か	き	く	け	こ	きゃ		
g	が	ぎ	ぐ	げ	ご	ぎゃ		
s	さ	し [ɕi]	す	しえ [ɕe]	そ	しゃ [ɕa]	しゅ [ɕu]	
dz	ざ	じ	ず	ぜ	ぞ			
dʒ	じゃ	じ	じゅ	じえ	じょ			
t	た	てい	とう	て	と			
d	だ	でい	どう	で	ど			
tɕ	ちゃ	ち	ちゅ	ちえ	ちょ			
ts		つい	つ					
n	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	にゃ	によ	
h	は	ひ [çi]	ふ [ɸu]	へ [ɕe]	ほ	ひゃ [ɕa]	ひゅ [ɕu]	ひょ [ɕo]
b	ば	び	ぶ	べ	ぼ	びゃ	びゅ	びょ
p	ぱ	ぴ	ぷ	ぺ	ぽ	ぴゃ	ぴゅ	
m	ま	み	む	め	も	みゃ	みゅ	みょ
r	ら	り	る	れ	ろ			

Usage Notes:

1. This system particularly doesn't allow for the distinction between /dzi/ and /dʒi/.

2. Notice how this language lacks a lot of sound combinations that Japanese allows, but also note the sounds that it allows that Japanese does not.

協議会	+a	+i	+u	+e	+o	+ja	+ju	+jo
k	か	き	く	け	こ	きゃ		
g	が	ぎ	ぐ	げ	ご	ぎゃ		
s	さ	し	す	しえ	そ	しゃ	しゅ	
z	ざ	じ	ず	ぜ	ぞ			
dz	じゃ	じ	じゅ	じえ	じょ			
t	た	てい	とう	て	と			
d	だ	でい	どう	で	ど			
tɕ	ちゃ	ち	ちゅ	ちえ	ちょ			
n	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	にゃ	にゅ	
h	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	ひゃ	ひゅ	ひょ
b	ば	び	ぶ	べ	ぼ	びゃ	びゅ	びょ
p	ぱ	ぴ	ぷ	ぺ	ぽ	ぴゃ	ぴゅ	
m	ま	み	む	め	も	みゃ	みゅ	みょ
r	ら	り	る	れ	ろ			

Usage Note: This system has the same problems as the previous orthography.

琉球大学	+a	+i	+u	+e	+o	+ja	+ju	+jo
k	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	キャ		
g	ガ	ギ	グ	ゲ	ゴ	ギャ		
s	サ	シ・スイ	ス	シエ・セ	ソ	シャ	シュ	
z	ザ	ヅィ	ズ・ヅ	ゼ	ゾ			
dz	ジャ・チャ	ジ・ヂ	ジュ・チュ	ジエ・チエ	ジョ・チョ			
t	タ	ティ	トゥ	テ	ト			
d	ダ	ディ	ドウ	デ	ド			
tɕ	チャ	チ	チュ	チエ	チョ			
ts		ツイ	ツ					

n	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ニャ	ニュ	
h	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	ヒャ	ヒュ	ヒョ
b	バ	ビ	ブ	ベ	ボ	ビャ	ビュ	ビョ
p	パ	ピ	プ	ペ	ポ	ピャ	ピュ	
m	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ミャ	ミュ	ミョ
r	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ			

Usage Note: This system allows for better transcription of dialectical pronunciation and sounds found in loanwords.

新沖縄文字	+a	+i	+u	+e	+o	+ja	+ju	+jo
k	か	き	く	け	こ	きゃ		
g	が	ぎ	ぐ	げ	ご	ぎゃ		
s	さ	し	す	せ	そ	しゃ	しゅ	
z	ざ	じ	ず	ぜ	ぞ			
dz	じゃ	じ	じゅ	じえ	じょ			
t	た	て	と	て	と			
d	だ	で	ど	で	ど			
ts	ちゃ	ち	ちゅ	ちえ	ちょ			
n	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	にゃ	にゅ	
h	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	ひゃ	ひゅ	ひょ
b	ば	び	ぶ	べ	ぼ	びゃ	びゅ	びょ
p	ぱ	ぴ	ぷ	ぺ	ぽ	ぴゃ	ぴゅ	
m	ま	み	む	め	も	みゃ	みゅ	みょ
r	ら	り	る	れ	ろ			

Usage Note: Rather than relying on combination of large size and small size Kana to represent sounds like to (てい), this system turns these combinations into a single Kana. Though they're only fusions of who they would otherwise be written, it gives a fairer representation of the phonemic structure of うちなーぐち. Either way, though, both writing small Kana (小書き) and modifying the Kana change the vowel of the character similarly to abugida writing systems.

唇音

Now we need to see how the labialized sounds are represented in these four orthographies.

	慣習	協議会	琉球大学	新沖縄文字
ɰa	わ	わ	ワ	わ
ɰi	うい	うい	エイ	ゐ
ɰe	うえ	うえ	エ	ゑ
ʔɰa	わ	っわ	ウワ	ゐ
ʔɰi	うい	っうい	ウヰ	ゐ
ʔɰe	うえ	っうえ	ウエ	ゑ
kɰa	くあ・くわ	くわ	クワ	く
kɰi	くい	くい	クヰ	く
kɰe	くえ	くえ	クエ	く
gɰa	ぐあ・ぐわ	ぐわ	グワ	ぐ
gɰi	ぐい	ぐい	グヰ	ぐ
gɰe	ぐえ	ぐえ	グエ	ぐ
ɸɰa	ふあ	ふあ	ふわ	ふ
ɸɰi	ふい	ふい	ふい	ふ
ɸɰe	ふえ	ふえ	ふえ	ふ

撥音

We also have to keep into account the uvular nasal sound found in Japanese, which is deemed by most scholars on Okinawan orthography to exist in うちなーぐち as well, though the assimilation rules are not exactly the same as Japanese. However, none of these rules are needed to represent this sound as these variant pronunciations are merely allophones not accounted for in the spelling, regardless of the orthography chosen.

	慣習	協議会	琉球大学	新沖縄文字
N	ん	ん	ン	ん

ʔN	ん	っん	ッン	ん
----	---	----	----	---

Unlike Standard Japanese, うちなーぐち allows words to begin with ん, which is moraic/syllabic just as in Japanese. So, as should be expected, ʔN is possible and used, though this will be naturally hard for natives of Japanese to pronounce.

This last system is becoming progressively more popular and used, perhaps due to its use in a widely known textbook promoting the use of うちなーぐち. Whichever orthography you choose, so long as you realize that the pronunciation of Kana are for うちなーぐち rather than Japanese, getting used to using Kana differently in these manners should not be difficult.

Conventional spellings are the most ad hoc spellings and most likely to not give due justice to the actual pronunciation of the language. Due to the desire by native speakers to preserve their language, it is likely that the newest orthography developed by Professor Funadzu will continue to be used more frequently.

Use of 漢字

Like Japanese, うちなーぐち has its own Sino-Japanese and native readings used for reading 漢字, but it is very important to understand how these readings are to be written in Kana for the majority of texts in うちなーぐち will have reading aids due to the lack of formal education for mixed script usage in the language. Texts are far more frequently left mainly in Kana for うちなーぐち because of this.

Consider the following text, which is the lyrics to the popular folk song 童神（わらびがみ）, with a rather ad hoc, conventional spelling that is still most prevalently found in Okinawa. The readings of words not the same in Japanese are given in parentheses to the side of 漢字.

天(ていん)からの恵(みぐ)み 受きてい此(く)ぬ世界(しげ)に
 生まりたる産子(なしぐわ) 我身(わみ)ぬむい育(すだ)てい
 イラヨーヘイ イラヨーホイ
 イラヨー 愛(かな)し思産子(うみなしぐわ)
 泣くなよーや ヘイヨー ヘイヨー
 太陽(ていだ)ぬ光受きてい
 ゆーいりよーや ヘイヨー ヘイヨー
 まさ勝さあてい給(たぼ)り

夏(なとう)ぬ節(しち)来りば 涼風(しだかじ)ゆ送(うく)てい
 冬ぬ節(しち)来りば 懷(ふちゆく)に抱(だ)ちよてい

イラヨーハイ イラヨーホイ
イラヨー 愛(かな)し思産子(うみなしぐわ)
泣くなよーや ヘイヨー ヘイヨー
月(とうき)ぬ光受きてい
ゆーいりよーや ヘイヨー ヘイヨー
大人(うふっちゅ)なてい給(たぼ)り

雨風(あみかじ)ぬ吹ちん 渡り此(く)ぬ浮世(うちゅ)
風(かじ)かたかなとてい 産子(なしぐわ)花(ばな)咲かそ
イラヨーハイ イラヨーホイ
イラヨー 愛(かな)し思産子(うみなしぐわ)
泣くなよーや ヘイヨー ヘイヨー
天の光受きてい
ゆーいりよーや ヘイヨー ヘイヨー
高人(たかっちゅ)なてい給(たぼ)り

Resources:

<http://lince.jp/hito/okinawamap/kouza/ukouza/>

www.mahoroba.ne.jp/~gonbe007/hog/shouka/warabigami.html

第01字: 第1課

第02字: 第2課

第03字: 第3課

第04字: 第4課

第05字: 1st Grade Kanji

第06字: 2nd Grade Kanji (160)

第07字: 3rd Grade Kanji (200)

第08字: 4th Grade Kanji

第09字: 5th Grade Kanji (185)

第10字: 常用漢字 Kokuji

第11字: 国字

第12字: Kanji Lists: Jouyou, Jinmeiyou, Hyougaiji

第1課: 一, 日, 本, 二, 三, 人, 火, 四, 木, 川, 花, 王, 山, 月, & 水

In every 漢字 lesson on the site, you will be introduced to fifteen characters. There is a lot that you should study to "know" any given 漢字. Things that should be considered include the following.

- You know what it looks like and can distinguish it from others.
- You know how to write it legibly following the stroke order. Sometimes there are options.
- You know what the general meaning(s) of the characters are.
- You know what the important readings of the character and the meanings that they might specify. You also know about very important exceptional readings.

Though the IMABI 漢字 curriculum will be somewhat independent from the language curriculum, both curriculums will address 漢字 acquisition in a progressive manner. Each lesson assumes that you will spend on average a week to truly get down the fifteen characters introduced. This gives you sufficient time to go through the language related lessons and 漢字 practice. You can couple what you learn here with other websites such as WaniKani.

Before we begin, since there are so many resources out there already for 漢字, this site will endorse the usage of jisho.org for looking up the stroke orders because it has the most standard stroke order for basically all characters in its database.

This page details what you should learn about the following Kanji: 一, 日, 本, 二, 三, 人, 火, 四, 木, 川, 花, 王, 山, 月, and 水. Now, let's get started!

一

This is perhaps the easiest character ever. That's at least what I think. You make a line from left to right. You're done! This character comes from a pictograph. Some say its of an extended finger, but I think it's just a line probably first scratched on a wall, in the dirt, or on the shells of the poor tortoises used as the templates for writing in Ancient China.

It may be easy to write, but it isn't the easiest of ALL in regards to how to read it. It has both ON and KUN readings as well as certain readings found in names. You aren't expected to learn the readings for names, but there are just some names that come up all the time just like Ashley or Michael.

オンよみ: イチ、イツ

くんよみ: ひと-

Note: A hyphen denotes that a reading is used as a constructive element in other phrases and is not used in isolation by itself.

イチ is the most important reading and is the word for the number one. It is generally in most words. However, when the sense of "one" is used in a less concrete manner in words like uniformity (キンイツ), the other ON reading イツ is used. The other reading is used in native counter phrases. Since this has not been taught at this point in IMABI, you just need to look at the example words.

Note: All ON readings will be given in カタカナ and all KUN readings will be given in ひらがな. You are not responsible for other characters not taught at this point. So, for now, you're just responsible for 一.

Example Words

There is already a lot of vocabulary used in the lesson text. However, the more vocabulary you know, the more useful the grammar and 漢字 that you are learning will become.

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
一月	イチガツ	January	均一	キンイツ	Uniformity
一回	イッカイ	One time	一言	イチゴン	One word
一言	ひとこと	Utterance; a word	一緒	イッショ	Together
一雄	かずお	Kazuo (name)	一目	ひとめ	Glimpse

Notes:

1. There are important sound changes in some kinds of expressions. This is what explains why イチ becomes イツ in "one time".
2. Nuances will be sorted out and discussed as we progress. As you know more Japanese grammar, example sentences will also be incorporated.

日

This came from a pictograph of a sun with dot in the middle. Circular strokes in 漢字 have become much more rigid and boxy over the centuries. This is harder to read, but it's not that bad. It can mean sun, but it can also mean day, which makes sense because the "day" starts whenever the sun rises.

It has four strokes, not five. Its readings are as follows.

オンよみ: ニチ、ジツ

くんよみ: ひ、-か

ニチ is the most common reading that you will encounter. It can also be used in words in reference to Japan, even the name itself! If you had to guess the reading in a word, guess this one. ジツ is used when it's not the first character of a word, but that doesn't mean ニチ could be used. It just really depends on the word. ひ means "day" or "sun". It is a very important word and is also in compound words. -か is used as a counter word for "days" of the month. You will not be responsible for this until Lesson 31.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
日本	ニホン・ニッポン	Japan	休日	キュウジツ	Holiday
日記	ニッキ	Diary	日曜日	ニチヨウビ	Sunday
日の出	ひので	Sunrise	日付	ひづけ	Date

Notes:

1. Refer back to the lesson text for the differences in the readings for Japan.
2. Note that in the word for Sunday that the くんよみ is voiced because it is used as a suffix in the names of the week. This is the case for all of them. Refer to Lesson 31.

本

本 is much easier to read. You'll see why. It has several meanings and you can find words for them all. By itself it's usually used to mean "book". It can also be used in words to mean "this" or refer to the truth of something. It can even count things that are long and cylindrical. Lastly, it can be used to mean "root" as in the root of something.

This character comes from the more simple character 木 (tree) which we'll see later for this lesson, and the line is the base of the tree. After all, the roots go below the ground in most cases. All of these added meanings evolved from this. After all, trees are long and cylindrical for the most part. They can be cut and used as paper to make books. The others are stretches.

オンよみ: ホン

くんよみ: もと

もと is used to mean root and ホン is all of the above.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
本屋	ホンヤ	Bookstore	本日	ホンジツ	Today (formal)
根本	ねもと	Root	根本	コンポン	Root (of things)

Note: ねもと is broad in usage but the other reading コンポン is restricted as stated.

二

One was one line and two is two lines. Like that was hard...not. Thankfully, though, 二 is easier to read than 一. It only has two readings. One is for Sino-Japanese (words from ON readings) and the other in native words. Both readings are just used to mean two.

オンよみ: 二

くんよみ: ふた-

Americans may say "cheese" to get people to smile for a camera, but Japanese people say にー! It's quite fitting. This is also where the Katakana 二 comes from.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
二月	ニガツ	February	二つ	ふたつ	Two things
二心	ニシン・ふたごころ	Duplicity	二十	ニジュウ	Twenty

三

One was one line, two was two lines, and three is not surprisingly three lines. People are so predictable. The readings behave the same way just like for two. One is in Sino-Japanese words and the other is in native words.

オンよみ: サン

くんよみ: み-

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
三月	サンガツ	March	三つ	み(っ)つ	Three things

人

This character reminds me of a person doing the splits. This is a good mnemonic because the character actually means "person". It may be easier to write, but it's not easier to read. Many people struggle to figure out which ON reading to use.

オンよみ: ジン、ニン

くんよみ: ひと、-たり、-り

ジン is in words for people/humans. ニン can be rarely seen as a stand alone word to refer to one's character. It is also seen in words for people that have a certain role. It is also used in words for counting people. The readings -たり and -り are very restrictive counter readings that you'll learn about soon. ひと is the word for person.

Examples

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
人間	ニンゲン	Human being	日本人	ニホンジン・ニッポンジン	Japanese person
住人	ジュウニン	Resident	人柄	ひとがら	Character/personality
人口	ジンコウ	Population	人工	ジンコウ	Man-made

火

This is supposedly from a stylized pictograph of flames, but do you know what it really looks like? It looks like someone's being burned at the stake. 人 is person, the sparks being the evidence that the person is on fire. This really shouldn't be surprising as people have definitely been being put to the stake throughout history. As you can guess, this character means "fire".

オンよみ: カ

くんよみ: ひ, ほ-

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
火あぶりになる	ひあぶりになる	To burn at the stake	火山	カザン	Volcano

火花	ひばな	Sparks	花火	はなび	Fireworks
火影	ほかげ	Firelight	火曜日	カヨウビ	Tuesday

四

Common sense has to fail you somewhere, so it might as well be for the number four because it's unlucky after all. That's because its ON reading is homophonous with the word for death. Four did used to be expressed with four lines...if only...

四 used to mean breath. The inner part looks like the tonsils and 口 is the mouth. That seems reasonable enough. So, why does it mean four!? The most likely reason is that the shape is an approximation of four fingers being able to fit in the mouth. Obviously the person that started using it in this way continued to suck on his fingers throughout adulthood.

オンよみ: シ

くんよみ: よん, よ

I say よん. People from the Kansai region and a lot of older people say シ. よ is used in words, and you'll just have to learn when the ん is dropped. You'll see some examples of this in Lesson 7.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
四月	シガツ	April	四日	よっか	Fourth day of the month
四次元	よじげん	Fourth dimension	四つ角	よつかど	Crossroads

木

This symbol really does look like a tree.

オンよみ: モク、ボク

くんよみ: き、こ-

ボク are both pretty common モク. It really does take knowing quite a few words to get a feel about guessing between the two. き is, of course, the word for "tree".

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
木刀	ボクトウ	Wooden sword	木曜日	モクヨウビ	Thursday
木陰	こかげ	(Tree) shade	樹木	ジュモク	Arbor
立（ち）木	た（ち）き	Standing tree	木材	モクザイ	Timber

川

This character means "river" and comes from a pictograph of water flowing between two banks.

オンよみ: セン

くんよみ: かわ

Examples

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
川口	かわぐち	River mouth	河川	カセン	Rivers
川辺	かわべ	Riverside	川端	かわばた	Riverbank

Note: 河川 is a more special and specialized word, which is why it uses オンヨミ. The first character actually also means river, and it is not uncommon for two Chinese characters with similar meaning to be used together to make a more formal word. Normally, you'd just say 川 for rivers or repeat the word as 川々 (かわがわ).

花

花 means "flower". The top part is the radical for grass and comes from 艹. 化 is the character for change. Thus, a change in state of a plant. This refers to the budding of a flower.

オンよみ: カ

くんよみ: はな

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
花見	はなみ	Blossom viewing	花弁	カベン・はなびら	Petal

花瓶	カビン	Vase	花々	はなばな	Flowers
----	-----	------	----	------	---------

王

This means "king". It is three connected with the force of 1 (person). This is technically wrong because it actually came from a pictograph that looked more like a battle ax. Whatever the case may be, it's very easy to read.

オンよみ: オウ

くんよみ: おおきみ

The first reading is almost always used. The second is the original word for king, but オウ, though Sino-Japanese, is used in isolation for this.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
女王	ジョオウ	Queen	王国	オウコク	Kingdom

山

It looks like a mountain; it means "mountain".

オンよみ: サン、ザン

くんよみ: やま

サン is more common and can be used as a suffix to mean "Mount". Don't disregard the other ON reading, though, because we've already seen one important word with it--火山.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
冰山	ヒョウザン	Iceberg	富士山	フジサン	Mount Fuji
山形県	やまがたケン	Yamagata Prefecture	山男	やまおとこ	Mountaineer

月

This character comes from a pictograph of a crescent moon. It can mean "moon" or "month".

オンよみ: ガツ、ゲツ

くんよみ: つき

ガツ is typically used for just the names of the months of the year and ゲツ is the most common.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
月光	ゲツコウ	Moonlight	五月	ゴガツ	May
月夜	つきよ	Moonlit night	三日月	みかづき	New moon

Exception Note: 五月雨（さみだれ） = Early summer rain.

水

The symbol for water comes from a pictograph of a river. This seems reasonable enough.

オンよみ: スイ

くんよみ: みず

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
雨水	あまみず	Rainwater	海水	カイスイ	Seawater
水曜日	スイヨウビ	Wednesday	水星	スイセイ	Mercury

Table of Contents

第2課：雨, 左, 右, 音, 五, 六, 七, 八, 九, 十, 女, 男, 国, 大, 小

Exception Note: Example words with exceptional readings will be in bold.

雨

The dots are raindrops. The 巾 looking thing resembles the act of falling from the clouds, and the top line symbolizes the heavens. This is simple enough. Most pictographs are thankfully still somewhat straightforward.

オンよみ：ウ

くんよみ：あめ、あま-、-さめ

The オンよみ is used in compounds excluding native compound words. Usually you can tell the difference because the former are usually either more technical or have an easier/native way of saying it whereas the native words are not so technical. あめ means rain and is homophonous with candy. In standard accent the pitch is on the first mora for rain. あま- is a sound change in the majority of native words that start with it. -さめ is likewise as a suffix.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
雨雲	あまぐも	Rain cloud	雨量	ウリヨウ	Rainfall
雨上がり	あめあがり	After a rainfall	小雨	こさめ	Drizzle
五月雨	さみだれ	Early summer rain	時雨	しぐれ	Scattered rain; late autumn rain
梅雨	つゆ・ばいう	Rainy season	雨水	あまみず	Rainwater

左

工 means work. The rest is the left hand. This character means "left".

オンよみ：サ

くんよみ：ひだり

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
左右	サユウ	Left and right	左手	ひだりて	Left hand

左派	サハ	The "left"	左側	ひだりがわ	Left side
----	----	------------	----	-------	-----------

右

Be careful. The initial stroke is the vertical one. This change distinguishes it as the right hand from the left hand seen previously. 𠂔 is a mouth. It used to mean verbal support, but this has been given to another character based off of it, 佑. So, it's an example of a rebus character. Since most people put things in their mouth with their right hand, it eventually became used to mean right hand and then simply to just right.

オン読み: ウ、ユウ

くん読み: みぎ

The first reading is usually seen when it is the first character in a compound. Then, ユウ is typically used when it's the second. However, ユウ can still be used in the front of a word to show the original meaning of assistance. Thus, you can see how the history and development of a character goes hand in hand to why certain readings are assigned. The different オン読み, of course, come from different stages of the Chinese languages. Thus, when new characters were introduced, so were new readings and developed meanings from the mainland.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
右派	ウハ	The "right"	極右	キョクウ	Extreme right
右文	ユウブン	Respect for literary culture	右手	みぎて	Right hand

音

The button is a mouth and a tongue with the symbol for stand, 立, on top to symbolize sound.

オン読み: オン、イン、ノン

くん読み: おと、ね

Usually, オン is the most common オン読み. ノン is a sound change seldom used when the previous character starts with a ん. イン, on the other hand, is often seen when the second part of a compound. However, there are many words made by using the first and foremost reading as a suffix for sound. The difference between おと and ね is that the first means "sound/noise" and the

latter is more specific to "tone".

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
発音	ハツオン	Pronunciation	母音	ボイン	Vowel
子音	シイン	Consonant	足音	あしおと	Sound of footsteps
音色	ねいろ	Tone (quality)	英音	エイオン	English pronunciation

五

5 used to just be five lines. Alas, a thread-like pictograph has always been a substituted and eventually reached its current form.

オンよみ: ゴ

くんよみ: いつ-

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
五月	ゴガツ	May	五つ	いつつ	Five things
五月雨	さみだれ	Early summer rain	五月晴れ	さつきばれ	Fine early summer weather

六

This came from a clenched fist, which was an apparent means of expressing six in ancient China. A much more helpful interpretation is looking at the button, which means eight (八), and the top and doing 8 minus 2.

オンよみ: ロク

くんよみ: む (つ)

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
六月	ロクガツ	June	六つ	む (つ) つ	Six things

七

This character was favored long ago for seven for phonetic reasons due to its simplicity.

オン読み: シチ

くん読み: なな、なな (つ)、なの-

なの-, rarely seen as なぬ-, is used in the word for the 7th day of the month, 七日.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
七月	シチガツ	July	七日	なのか	Seventh day of the month
七つ	ななつ	Seven things	七夕	たなばた	The Star Festival

八

This was used to represent eight because it is easily divisible, which makes sense given the shape of the character.

オン読み: ハチ

くん読み: や、や (つ)

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
八月	ハチガツ	August	八つ	や (つ) つ	Eight things
八日	ようか	Eighth day of the month	お八つ	おやつ	Snack

九

This is a pictograph of a bent elbow and was a means of expressing 9. Thus, it means 9.

オン読み: キュウ、ク

くん読み: ここの (つ)

キュウ is generally preferred because ク is homophonous to 苦 (suffering). However, there are instances where only one of the readings is acceptable.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
九人	キュウニン・クニン	Nine people	九月	クガツ	September
九大	キュウダイ	Kyushu University	九つ	ここのつ	Nine things

十

The symbol for ten, 十, came from a pictograph of a sewing needle and was used as a substitute for the more complex character 拾. The original character for "ten" is still used on currency.

オンよみ: ジュウ

くんよみ: とお

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
十月	ジュウガツ	October	十日	とおか	Tenth day of the month
十重	とえ	Tenfold	二十歳	はたち	Twenty years old
十回	じゅっかい・じっかい	Ten times	二十日	はつか	Twentieth day of the month

Note: 十回's readings are explained by sound changes that happen for endings such as 回 that are used as counter words (Lesson 7).

女

The character for woman comes from a pictograph of a kneeling woman with arms stretched forth. Obviously we can see what men have thought of women for centuries...

オンよみ: ジョ、ニョ、ニョウ

くんよみ: おんな、め

ジョ is the most prevalent in compounds. The others are now seen only in words that are no longer politically correct due to demeaning nuances towards women. As for native words, め is in a lot of compounds. おんな is the word for woman.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
------	---------	---------	------	---------	---------

女性	ジョセイ	Woman	女人	ニヨニン・ジョニン	Woman
女の子	おんなのこ	Girl	女神	めがみ	Goddess
女房	にようぼう	Wife	海女	あま	Woman diver
巫女	みこ	Female medium	女将	おかみ	Landlady
貴女	あなた	You (Female)	彼女	かのジョ	She

Notes:

1. 女人 is basically no longer used. 女性 is the most politically correct word for woman. 女房 is not the most preferred word for wife. 妻（つま） is.

2. あなた is almost never written in 漢字, but when it is, you have several options.

男

This character is composed of the characters for strength 力 and field 田. It is used to mean "man". It sounds logical enough.

オンよみ: ダン、ナン

くんよみ: おとこ、お

ダン is generally used in compounds, and ナン is generally used to indicate the order of birth of sons. おとこ means "man". お is a rather elegant reading seen in some words and names.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
男性	ダンセイ	Male	長男	チョウナン	Oldest son
男の子	おとこのこ	Boy	益荒男	ますらお	Brave man

国

The original form of this character was 國. 或 shows an area and the surrounding radical is an enclosure. So, this gives the meaning of a country/region. It used to refer to individual domains in feudal Japan. Now it is used in the full sense of country or region in some words. The complicated part got replaced with jewel 玉. Many people wonder why during simplification king 王 wasn't used instead.

オンよみ: コク

くんよみ: くに

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Reading
四国	シコク	Shikoku	国家	コツカ	Nation
島国	しまぐに	Island nation	国々	くにぐに	Nations

Note: As you've probably noticed by now and seen in the lesson text, the first mora in the second element of a native compound word is often voiced. This can't normally happen if the second element has a voiced sound in it. This generalization accounts for most instances.

大

This is a pictograph of someone trying to make themselves look as big as possible.

オンよみ: タイ、ダイ

くんよみ: おお (きい・きな)

ダイ is the most common, but both ダイ and タイ are common in compounds. ダイ can be used as an independent word to mean large (size). It also doesn't help that both ダイ and おお can be used as prefixes. It's really best to learn on an individual basis for this character.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
大国	タイコク	World power	大体	ダイタイ	Generally
大学	ダイガク	College	大手	おおて	Major companies
大和	やまと	Yamato (old name of Japan)	大人	おとな	Adult

小

This is from a pictograph of three small dots. These small dots symbolize being small.

オンよみ: ショウ

くんよみ: ちい (さい・さな)、こ-、お-、さ-

The difference between こ- and お- is that the first is used to show something is less in size or quality while the latter shows that something is nice/little. さ- is seen in some words to show elegance.

Example Words

Word	Reading	Meaning	Word	Reading	Meaning
大小	ダイショウ	Large and small	小鳥	ことり	Small bird
小川	おがわ	Brook	小百合	さゆり	Lily
小豆	あずき	Adzuki bean	小波	さざなみ	Ripples

Table of Contents

第3課: 人, 土, 円, 字, 天, 車, 中, 鳥, 魚, 足, 子, 目, 口, 手, & 耳

To help you remember 音 from Lesson 2, 音よみ will be how ON reading(s) will be spelled. Rare readings will be marked with ▽. Exceptions will be noted with ●.

人

This person means person because it comes from a standing person. It takes a lot of interesting shapes in other characters. For instance, it's the feet looking part in 児 (infant). It's the roof part to 会 (to meet). And, it's the left side to characters like 個 (piece).

音よみ: ジン, ニン

くんよみ: ひと, -り

When to use ジン and ニン is very difficult for many students. The first is used in nationality, but it's also used constructively in Sino-Japanese words to mean "person". This is problematic because ニン has this meaning too; however, this latter reading is most often used to show occupation and character of people. It is also used as a counter for people after 3 people. The latter reading is the oldest reading, so when you see words like 人間 (ニンゲン), you know that from the reading alone that it's an older word. How old a word is a last resort, but generally speaking, what has been mentioned thus far can help tell you which reading to use most of the time.

As for the native readings, -り is a native counter for people, and it is used for 1 person and 2 people.

人生	じんせい	(Human) life	人情	にんじょう	Empathy; human nature
人出	ひとで	Turn-out	人数	にんずう	Number of people
人類	じんるい	Mankind	一般人	いっばんじん	Ordinary person
案内人	あんないにん	A guide person	住人	じゅうにん	Resident
人口	じんこう	Population	一人	ひとり	1 person; alone
二人	ふたり	2 people	三人	さんにん	3 people
人柄	ひとがら	Character; personality	人声	ひとごえ	Voice

土

This character is from a pictograph of a lump of dirt. It eventually came to look like a plant growing from the earth, but it is sadly not the origin of the character.

音よみ: ド、ト

くんよみ: つち

The first 音よみ is the most common, but it actually came about from a mistaken change of pronunciation from the second one, which is really rare. However, the words with ト tend to be very common.

土曜日	どようび	Saturday	土地	とち	Ground
土着	どちゃく	Indigenous	粘土	ねんど	Clay
領土	りょうど	Territory	土煙	つちけむり	Cloud of dust
土間	どま	Earth floor	土橋	どばし・つちはし	Earthen floor
土佐	とさ	Tosa	土砂	どしゃ	Earth and sand
土産	みやげ ●	Souvenir	土筆	つくし ●	Horsetail (plant)
土竜	もぐら ●	Mole (animal)	土手	どて	Bank (river)

円

円 used to be 圓. The encasement represents roundness, and the inside part is from a pictograph of a round kettle, and it reinforces the sound for the word "round" in Chinese. This character would then be adapted to mean yen in Japan, and due to yen's association with bank-teller windows, the character was simplified to look like one.

音よみ: エン

くんよみ: まる (い) , まろ (やか) , つぶ (ら) 、 まど (か)

ま ろやか, an adjective, may refer to something being round, but it may also describe mild/mellow flavor. つぶら is another adjective and also means round, but it also infers that the object is also cute. まどか is also an adjective and means round or tranquil. Except まるい, these adjectives are rather uncommon in the spoken language, but they are more refined.

円貨	えんか	The yen currency	円顔	まるがお	Round face
円周	えんしゅう	Circumference	円満	えんまん	Amicable

字

This is the character for character. The top roof has a child underneath it, and this can be interpreted as an emblem of education and the written word. In Chinese it can sometimes mean

to nourish, but the figurative associated with children proliferation and the complication that comes about this is just as bad as 漢字.

音読み: ジ

くんよみ: あざ, あざな

あざ actually refers to a section of a village. あざな is an even rarer and worthless reading that refers either to a Chinese courtesy name or a nickname, but nickname is usually あだな.

数字	すうじ	Numeral	赤字	あかじ	Deficit
字引き	じびき	Dictionary	英字	えいじ	English letter
活字	かつじ	Printing type	黒字	くろじ	Balance

天

The heavens is definitely something that man has looked upon with the head up high, which is really how this character came about. In Japanese "the heavens" may not necessarily have religious connotations, but if it does, it should be obvious. It can also just mean "sky", but this is typically the case in compounds.

音読み: テン

くんよみ: あま-

The くんよみ is not all that common because native words in relation to the heavens are usually not all that common.

天国	てんごく	Heaven	天使	てんし	Angel
天皇	てんのう	Emperor	晴天	せいてん	Clear day
曇天	どんてん	Cloudy day	天つ風	あまつかぜ	Heavenly wind

車

This is from an abbreviation of a pictograph of a long-shafted two-wheeled chariot, and although cars typically have four wheels, it has been changed in meaning in modern times to mean car. Before the age of the car, it would refer to carriages. Before the age of carriages, it referred to oxcarts.

音読み: シヤ

くんよみ: くるま

電車	でんしゃ	(Electric) train	車いす	くるまいす	Wheelchair
自動車	じどうしゃ	Vehicle	自転車	じてんしゃ	Bicycle
新車	しんしゃ	New car	車庫	しゃこ	Garriage

中

This means "center/middle". It's a pretty straightforward pictograph.

オンヨミ: チュウ

くんよみ: なか、あ（たる・てる）▽

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
中国	チュウゴク	China; Chugoku (Region of Japan)	Not チュウコク!
真ん中	まんなか	The very middle	
中立	チュウリツ	Neutrality	Think Switzerland (スイス)
中学校	チュウガッコウ	Junior high	
中年	チュウネン	Middle age	
中型	チュウがた	Medium size	Not なかがた!
中心	チュウシン	Center	The heart of...

鳥

Gotta love birds. After all, they are the surviving dinosaurs. This character comes from a pictograph of a bird. Exceptional readings come from あてじ. So, this character is pretty straightforward on how to read.

オンヨミ: チョウ

くんよみ: とり

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
鳥居	とりい	Shinto shrine gate	A nostalgic symbol of Japanese traditional beliefs
野鳥	ヤチョウ	Wild bird	
白鳥	ハクチョウ	Swan	Swans are white birds.

海鳥	うみどり	Seabird	
雌鳥	めんどり	Hen	
雄鶏	おんどり	Rooster	

魚

This is fish.

オンヨミ: ギョ

くんよみ: さかな、うお

The latter くんよみ comes from the original word for fish and the second acquired the meaning much later on. Both are used frequently, but a specific reading may be needed in compound words.

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
魚市場	うおいちば	Fish market	
魚屋	さかなや	Fish store	
金魚	キンギョ	Goldfish	
大魚	タイギョ	Big fish	
人魚	ニンギョ	Mermaid	
小魚	こざかな	Small fish	
雑魚	ざこ	Small fry	Exceptional reading

足

This is a pictograph of a foot and a knee cap, and so logically this is used to mean leg/foot.

オンヨミ: ソク

くんよみ: あし、たりる

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
足音	あしおと	Footsteps	
足元	あしもと	The foot of	
足跡	あしあと・ソクセキ	Footmark	

満足	マンゾク	Satisfaction	Not マンゾク.
足りる	たりる	To be sufficient	

子

子 is from a pictograph of an infant in swaddling clothes.

オンヨミ: シ、ス

くんよみ: こ

The ス reading occasionally pops up.

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
子供	こども	Child	
子音	シイン	Consonant	
太子	タイシ	Crown Prince	
様子	ヨウス	Appearance	
椅子	イス	Chair	
帽子	ボウシ	Hat	
利子	リシ	Interest	As in finance.
息子	むすこ	Son	One's son.
梯子	はしご	Ladder	
玉子	たまご	Egg	Usually spelled as 卵.
障子	しょうじ	Paper sliding-door	Exceptional reading.
餃子	ギョウザ・ギョーザ	Gyoza dumplings	Usually in カタカナ.
螺子・振子・捻子	Screw	As in a screw	Usually in ひらがな. Also s

目

This is a pictograph of a titled eye, and it means "eye". Thankfully that was straightforward.

オンヨミ: モク、ボク

おんよみ: め、ま-、-め

モ ク is used in most Sino-Japanese words with this character. In rarer instances where the character is used to refer to attitude, ボク might be used. ま- is usually used as a prefix in native words, but it can be used in isolation in the phrase 目のあたり (right before one's eyes).

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
注目	チュウモク	Attention	Pay attention!
目下	モッカ	At present	Somewhat formal
目下	めした	Junior	Junior as in inferior. Don't confuse with モッカ
面目	メンモク・メンボク	Prestige	Options...lovely
目蓋	まぶた	Eyelid	蓋 = lid
効き目	ききめ	Efficacy	-目 can indicate ordinal numbers, border, degree, or role.
役目	やくめ	Role; duty	Ditto
切れ目	きれめ	Rift; gap	

口

This is a pictograph of a mouth wide-open, and lo and behold it means mouth. It is perhaps one of the most straightforward characters aside from 一, 二, and 三. It looked a little bit more like 𠂇 in Korean at the onset. As words come out of people's mouth, it can also symbolize speech.

音読み: コウ, ク

くん読み: くち

The first 音読み is the most prevalent, and the latter is an older and less frequently used reading.

一口	ひとくち	Sip; nibble; a word	出口	でぐち	Exit
口語	こうご	Spoken language	口座	こうざ	Bank account
口説	くぜつ	Lovers' fights	口説く	くどく	To persuade; seduce
口調	くちょう	Tone of voice	入口	いりぐち	Entrance

手

This is from a pictograph of a hand with all fingers out but one bent. When seen in other characters it becomes 才 like in 持 (to hold). As you can guess, this is the character for hand.

音よみ: シュ
くんよみ: て、た-

手段	しゅだん	Means; measures	手繰る	たぐる	To pull/draw in
手首	てくび	Wrist	手綱	たづな	Rein
手の平	てのひら	Palm	手の甲	てのこう	Back of one's hand
手腕	しゅわん	Ability	手本	てほん	Model; example
下手	へた ●	Bad at	上手	じょうず ●	Good at

耳

This looks like an ear, and that's exactly what it means. See, some characters can be completely straightforward.

音よみ:
くんよみ: みみ

耳鼻	じび	Ear and nose	耳障り	みみざわり	Hurting one's ears
耳鳴り	みみなり	Tinnitus	耳ピアス	みみぴあす	Ear piercing

第4課: 空, 田, 竹, 心, 気, 上, 下, 犬, 夜, 朝, 馬, 牛, 金, 海, & 虫

With each set of Kanji that you learn, it will feel like you've become even less blind when looking at Japanese text. Some of the characters in this lesson have a lot of readings, and you're not expected to get them all down now, but you do need to be aware of that they exist.

空

The top of this character is 穴 (hole), which is on top of 工 (construction). The 工 gives the sound of the character, but it is also re-enforces the concept of opening for construction opens a whole new world of man's architecture.

The modern meaning of "sky" is an extension on previous meanings because it would seem more obvious to think that there is some roof over a hole that has been dug. If you think about how old these basic characters are (as old as 6,000 years), you shouldn't be surprised that this would be a representation of early human dwellings, and similar structures still exist throughout Southeast Asia.

But, with the fact that there is still this concept of "opening", if there is open space but the space is contained, this would mean the space is "empty". This "emptiness" can lead to being used for contexts such as vanity, hollowness, and so on. However, the most important meaning "sky" came about from the fact that the central vaulted area in these early dwellings was extended to the sky.

音読み: クウ

くんよみ: そら, から, あ (く・ける) , す (く), うつ (ろ) , むな (しい) , うろ ▽, あだ ▽

There are a lot of くんよみ, and as you can imagine, they hone down on specific meanings of 空 discussed above. そら is the word for sky. から mean empty, and the best word to remember this is 空手 because many of you already know that karate means empty hand.

あ (く) is a verb that has various means related to being "open/empty/vacant". あ (ける) is the transitive version of this verb, which means it would be used in contexts like "to empty something".

す (く) is similar and usually limited to expressions like being hungry. うつ (ろ) is an adjective that means "blank/vague". むな (しい) is an adjective that means "empty/in vain". うろ is a cavity in a something like a tree. Lastly, あだ is an adjective meaning "frivolous/vain", but this is pretty uncommon.

空間	くうかん	(Air) space	青空	あおぞら	Blue sky
空路	くうろ	Air lane	空席	くうせき	Vacant seat
空頼み	そらだのみ	Wishful thinking	空箱	からばこ	Empty box
空夢	そらゆめ	Fictitious dream	空（き）家	あきや	Vacant house
空（き）缶	あきかん	Empty can	空き腹	すきはら	Empty stomach

田

This is a pictograph of rice paddy fields.

音読み: デン

くん読み: た

水田	すいでん	Water-filled paddy fields	油田	ゆでん	Oilfield
田畑	たはた	Fields	田舎 ●	いなか	Countryside

竹

The character derives from a pictograph of the stems of small bamboo with poky leaves, and it eventually got expanded to refer to bamboo in general.

音読み: チク

くん読み: たけ

爆竹	ばくちく	Firecracker	竹の子	たけのこ	Bamboo shoot
竹林	ちくりん	Bamboo forest	竹刀	しなない ●	Bamboo sword

心

This comes from a pictograph of a heart, unlike ♥. When in other characters, it usually looks like the left side of 快 (pleasant).

音読み: シン

くん読み: こころ、うら ▽

こころ refers to one's heart in an emotional sense. The physical/medical word for heart is in the word bank below.

心臓	しんぞう	Heart	真心	まごころ	Sincerity
中心	ちゅうしん	Center; core	心得	こころえ	Hint; dos and don'ts
心寂しい	うらさびしい	Lonesome; forlorn	心音	しんおん	Sound of a heartbeat

気

気 used to be written as 氣 and is composed of 气 (vapor) and 米 (rice). This character means "spirit", but it's far more different than anything in English. This word happens to be used in hundreds and hundreds of idioms that you will learn over the course of your Japanese studies. This 'spiritual' force can refer to the source of one's life/vitality/consciousness/temperament/feeling/interest.

However, in compounds it can refer more explicitly to vapor related things such as gas and breath.

音よみ: キ、ケ

天気	てんき	Weather	電気	でんき	Electricity
空気	くうき	Air	季節	きせつ	Season
寒気	さむけ	Chill	火の気	ひのけ	Heat of fire

上

This character used to be written like 𠂇, but the upper stroke was as long and in the same location as the modern character, and the vertical line was added so that it would no longer be confused with 二. It's a good thing because students already have a hard time distinguishing 二 and 𠂇 (ni in Katakana) from each other.

This character means "above/up/top", and it sadly has a lot of readings that are for the most part all used rather frequently.

音よみ: ジョウ, ショウ ▽

くんよみ: うえ, うわ-, かみ, あ (がる・げる), のぼ (る)

上下	じょうげ	Up and down; rise and fall	川上	かわかみ	Upstream
上人	しょうにん	Holy priest	上り下り	のぼりおり	Ups and downs
上る	のぼる	To ascend	上がる	あがる	To rise

上げる	あげる	To raise	上着	うわぎ	Jacket
-----	-----	----------	----	-----	--------

下

This character once looked like 三 without the last line. It means down/below/under, but it is extremely difficult to know how to read because it has so many readings. You almost have to take each word at a time, and it's unluckily one of those characters that utilize all readings to a decent extent. Furthermore, you have to address exceptions and alternative readings in words meaning different things.

音読み: カ, ゲ

くんよみ: した, しも, もと, さ (がる・げる) , くだ (る・す) , お (りる・ろす),

地下	ちか	Underground	下さい	ください	Please
下車	げしゃ	Getting off a train	下	した	Under/below
風下	かざしも	Leeward	法の下	ほうのもと	Under the law
下手	へた ●	Bad at	下りる	おりる	To descend
下す	くだす	To make a decision	下がり目	さがりめ	Drooping eyes

犬

This comes from a pictograph of a dog, and obviously millennia of years have done a number on it.

オンヨミ: ケン

くんよみ: いぬ

Word	Reading	Meaning	Notes
子犬	こいぬ	Puppy	Also spelled as 仔犬.
犬小屋	いぬごや	Kennel	
番犬	バンケン	Watch dog	
盲導犬	モウドウケン	Guide dog	盲導 = Leading the blind
犬死にする	いぬじにする	To die in vain	

Note: いぬ in a derogatory and wild sense can be written as 狗; when referring to the Zodiac of the Dog, use the character 戌.

夜

This character used to more clearly show a form of moon with a variant of 亦 (again). The character means night.

音読み: ヤ

くん読み: よる, よ

夜景	やけい	Nightscape	今夜	こんや	Tonight
夜	よる	Night	夜明け	よあけ	Daybreak
夜昼	よるひる	Day and night	夜中	よなか	Middle of the night
夜空	よぞら	Night sky	十六夜 ●	いざよい	

朝

朝 used to be 朝, and if you were to go back in time far enough, you would see that the right-hand side is actually not a moon, but it's a representation of a river. This gave meanings that would eventually be retained in 潮 to mean "tide", adding water for clarity as the right-hand radical did become interpreted as the moon later on, which lead to its use to refer to the Imperial Court.

This character, though, typically means day because people speculated in ancient times that the sun and moon were the sources of light, and if you look closely in the left-hand part of it, you'll see that sun 日 is springing through plants, which you typically see connected horizontally but in this case is bifurcated vertically by another radical.

音読み: チョウ

くん読み: あさ

朝日	あさひ	Morning sun	朝廷	ちやうてい	Imperial court
朝刊	ちやうかん	Morning edition	朝市	あさいち	Morning market
朝礼	ちやうれい	Morning assembly	朝夕	あさゆう	Morning and evening

馬

This comes from a pictograph of a horse, but it may help to think of it as a carriage with the four dots as horse feet.

音よみ: バ

くんよみ: うま, ま, め

The くんよみ actually ultimately come from Chinese, and this has only been realized nowadays.

馬	うま	Horse	馬乗り	うまのり	Horse riding
馬鹿	ばか	Idiot	河馬	かば	Hippopotamus
馬力	ばりき	Horsepower	競馬	けいば	Racehorse
駿馬	しゅんめ	Swift horse	絵馬	えま	Votive picture
馬銜	はみ ●	Bit mouthpiece	馬草	まぐさ	Fodder

牛

This character comes from the pictograph of a cow's head with horns. This is cow. Muu!

音よみ: ギュウ

くんよみ: うし

牛肉	ぎゅうにく	Beef	牛乳	ぎゅうにゅう	Milk
牛	うし	Cow	和牛	わぎゅう	Japanese beef

金

The roof and the top horizontal line represents some sort of covering element, and below is 土 (ground) plus dots meant to represent golden nuggets. This character, then, as you can imagine means "gold", but it has also been widened in meaning to mean money and metal in general. After gold is the money that most people would rather have, and it is a metal.

音よみ: キン, コン

くんよみ: かね, かな-

The latter 音よみ is not as common.

金	きん	Gold	(お) 金	(お) かね	Money
金色	きんいろ・こんじき	Gold (color)	金網	かなあみ	Wire netting
金曜日	きんようび	Friday	金持ち	かねもち	Rich person

海

Japan is surrounded by the **sea**. The left side of the character has the 三水 radical, which adds the meaning of water. In this instance, it seems to try to capture all the drops of water in the sea. The right hand side means "every", and it also happens to be the phonetic element of the character.

音読み: カイ

くん読み: うみ

日本海	にほんかい	The Sea of Japan	海がめ	うみがめ	Sea turtle
海辺	うみべ	Seaside	海軍	かいぐん	Navy
海月	くらげ ●	Seashell	海原	うなばら ●	The deep
海象	せいうち ●	Walrus	海女	あま ●	Woman shell diver

虫

This character means insect/bug, but it used to be 蟲. 虫 existed, but it was a different character with different readings.

虫 comes from a pictograph of a snake and specifically referred to a pit viper, which is now expressed with 虺. Its reading was キ. 蟲 started out as referring to all living things. Its reading has been チュウ, and unsurprisingly, this original meaning can be found. Over time, the two characters got confused with each other and eventually ended up being narrowed mostly to insects. However, many people still view it as meaning anything that's not an animal, bird, or person. This is why this character is the radical for many reptiles and fictional beasts.

音読み: チュウ

くん読み: むし

むし also has other meanings in Japanese. There are expressions like 虫が知ら^しせる that means "to forebode" in which the word refers to something inside someone controlling the emotion/mental state of the individual.

昆虫	こんちゅう	Insect	虫歯	むしば	Decayed tooth
虫けら	むしけら	Worm	害虫	がいちゅう	Harmful insect
寄生虫	きせいちゅう	Parasite	爬虫類	はちゅうるい	Reptile

Table of Contents

1st Grade Kanji

The readings of characters are given below. Also, each character contains its general meaning. This does not mean each individual reading is a word for that. This is a large misconception out there. ON readings are the Chinese readings of characters mainly used in compounds. They are almost never seen as individual words. Unless if you see it, don't worry about it. However, contrast to this, KUN readings are always words. But, please be careful and look up their correct meanings as many KUN readings can be given to an individual character. Note, ON readings will be given in Katakana and KUN readings will be given in Hiragana.

THE CHARACTERS (80)

#	Kanji	Meaning	ON	KUN
1	一	One	イチ、イツ	ひと
2	右	Right	ウ、ユウ	みぎ
3	雨	Rain	ウ	あめ、あま-
4	円	Yen, Circle, Round	エン	まる、まる (い)、つぶ (ら)、まろ (やか)
5	王	King	オウ	
6	音	Sound	オン、イン	おと、ね
7	下	Down	カ、ゲ	した、しも、もと、くだ (る・さる)、さ (がる)、お (りる)
8	火	Fire	カ	ひ、ほ
9	花	Flower	カ	はな
10	学	Learn	ガク	まな (ぶ)
11	気	Spirit	キ、ケ	
12	九	Nine	キュウ、ク	ここの (つ)
13	休	Rest	キュウ	やす (む)
14	金	Gold, Money	キン、コン	かね、かな-
15	空	Sky, Empty	クウ	そら、から、あ (<)、むな (しい)、す (<)、うつ (ろ)、あだ
16	月	Moon, Month	ゲツ、ガツ	つき

17	犬	Dog	ケン	いぬ
18	見	See	ケン	み (る・せる・える)
19	五	Five	ゴ	いつ (つ)
20	口	Mouth	コウ、ク	くち
21	校	School	コウ	
22	左	Left	サ	ひだり
23	三	Three	サン	み (つ)、みっ (つ)
24	山	Mountain	サン、ザン	やま
25	子	Child	シ、ス	こ、ね
26	四	Four	シ	よん、よ (つ)、よっ (つ)
27	糸	Thread	シ	いと
28	字	Letter	ジ	あざ
29	耳	Ear	ジ	みみ
30	七	Seven	シチ	なな
31	車	Vehicle	シャ	くるま
32	手	Hand	シュ	て
33	十	Ten	ジュウ	とお
34	女	Woman	ジョ、ニョウ、ニョ	おんな、め
35	小	Small	ショウ	こ-、お-、ちいさ (い)
36	上	Up	ジョウ	うえ、うわ-、かみ、のぼ (る)、あ (がる・げる)
37	森	Woods	シン	もり
38	人	Person	ジン、ニン	ひと
39	水	Water	スイ	みず
40	正	Correct	セイ、ショウ	まさ、ただ (しい・す)
41	生	Life	セイ、ショウ	なま、い (きる)、う (む)、は (える)、き、ふ、む (す)、お-
42	青	Blue	セイ、ショウ	あお
43	夕	Evening	セキ	ゆう

44	石	Stone	セキ、シャク、 コク	いし
45	赤	Red	セキ、シャク	あか
46	千	Thousand	セン	ち
47	川	River	セン	かわ
48	先	Previous, Tip	セン	さき
49	早	Early, Fast	ソウ、サツ	はや (い)
50	足	Leg, Sufficient	ソク	あし、た (りる)
51	村	Village	ソン	むら
52	大	Large	ダイ、タイ	おお (きい)
53	男	Man	ダン、ナン	おとこ
54	中	Middle	チュウ	なか、あ (てる)
55	虫	Bug	チュウ	むし
56	町	Town	チョウ	まち
57	天	Heaven	テン	あま-
58	田	Rice Field	デン	た
59	土	Earth	ド、ト	つち
60	二	Two	ニ	ふた (つ)
61	日	Sun, Day	ニチ、ジツ	ひ、-か
62	入	Enter	ニュウ	はい (る)、い (れる・る)
63	年	Year	ネン	とし
64	白	White	ハク	しろ
65	八	Eight	ハチ	や (つ)、やっ (つ)
66	百	Hundred	ヒャク	もも
67	文	Text	ブン、モン	ふみ、あや
68	木	Tree	ボク、モク	き、こ-
69	本	Book	ホン	もと
70	出	Exit, Emerge	シュツ	で (る)、だ (す)
71	名	Name	メイ、ミョウ	な
72	目	Eye	モク、ボク	め、ま-

73	立	Stand	リツ、リュウ	た（つ）
74	力	Strength	リョク、リキ	ちから、りき（む）、つと（める）
75	林	Forest	リン	はやし
76	六	Six	ロク	む（つ）、むっ（つ）
77	草	Grass	ソウ	くさ
78	玉	Ball	ギョク	たま
79	竹	Bamboo	チク	たけ
80	貝	Seashell	バイ	かい

Table of Contents

2nd Grade Kanji (160)

#	Kanji	Meaning	ON	KUN
1	引	Pull	イン	ひ (く)
2	雲	Cloud	ウン	くも
3	遠	Distant	エン	とお (い)
4	何	What?	カ	なに、なん
5	科	Course	カ	
6	夏	Summer	カ、ゲ	なつ
7	家	House	カ、ケ	いえ、や、うち
8	歌	Song, Sing	カ	うた、うた (う)
9	画	Picture	ガ、カク、 エ	
10	回	Turn	カイ	まわ (る・す)
11	会	Meet	カイ、エ	あ (う)
12	絵	Picture	カイ、エ	
13	外	Outside	ガイ、ゲ	そと、ほか、はず (す)
14	間	Space	カン、ケン	あいだ、ま
15	顔	Face	ガン	かお
16	汽	Steam	キ	
17	記	Account	キ	しる (す)
18	帰	Return	キ	かえ (る)
19	牛	Cow	ギュウ	うし
20	魚	Fish	ギョ	さかな、うお
21	京	Capital	キョウ、ケ イ	みやこ
22	強	Strong	キョウ、ゴ ウ	つよ (い)
23	教	Teach	キョウ	おし (える)、おそ (わる)
24	近	Near	キン	ちか (い)
25	形	Shape	ケイ、ギョ	かたち、かた

			ウ	
26	計	Measure	ケイ	はか（る）
27	元	Origin	ゲン、ガン	もと
28	原	Plain	ゲン	はら
29	戸	Door	コ	と
30	古	Old	コ	ふる（い）、いにしえ
31	午	Noon	ゴ	うま
32	後	After	コウ、ゴ	うしろ、あと、のち、おく（れる）
33	語	Talk	ゴ	かた（る）
34	工	Work	コウ、ク	
35	広	Wide	コウ	ひろ（い）
36	交	Mix	コウ	ま（じる）、か（わす）
37	光	Light	コウ	ひかり、ひか（る）
38	考	Consider	コウ	かんが（える・え）
39	行	Go	コウ、ギョ ウ、アン	い（く）、ゆ（く）、おこな（う）
40	高	High	コウ	たか（い）
41	黄	Yellow	コウ、オウ	き（いろ）
42	合	Meet	ゴウ、カツ	あ（う・わせる）
43	谷	Valley	コク	たに、や
44	国	Country	コク	くに
45	黒	Black	コク	くろ
46	今	Now	コン、キン	いま
47	才	Talent, Years old	サイ	
48	作	Make	サク、サ	つく（る）
49	算	Count	サン	
50	止	Stop	シ	と（まる・める）、や（める）
51	市	City, Market	シ	いち
52	思	Think	シ	おも（う・い）
53	紙	Paper	シ	かみ

54	寺	Temple	ジ	てら
55	時	Time	ジ、シ	とき
56	室	Room	シツ	むろ
57	社	Shrine	シャ	やしろ
58	弱	Weak	ジャク	よわ (い)
59	首	Neck	シュ	くび
60	秋	Autumn	シュウ	あき
61	春	Spring	シュン	はる
62	書	Write	シヨ	か (く)
63	少	A Little	ショウ	すこ (し)、すく (ない)
64	場	Place	ジョウ	ば
65	色	Color	シヨク、シ キ	いろ
66	食	Eat	ショウ、ジ キ	た (べる)、く (う)
67	心	Heart	シン	こころ
68	新	New	シン	あた (しい)、あら (た)
69	親	Parent	シン	した (しい)、おや
70	図	Plan	ズ、ト	はか (る)
71	数	Number	スウ、ス	かず、かぞ (える)
72	西	West	セイ、サイ	にし
73	声	Voice	セイ、ショ ウ	こえ、こわ
74	星	Star	セイ、ショ ウ	ほし
75	晴	Clear	セイ	は (れる)
76	切	Cut	セツ、サイ	き (る)
77	雪	Snow	セツ	ゆき
78	船	Ship	セン	ふね、ふな-
79	前	Before	ゼン	まえ
80	組	Group	ソ	くみ、く (む)

81	走	Run	ソウ	はし（る）
82	多	Many	タ	おお（い）
83	太	Fat	タイ、タ	ふと（る・い）
84	体	Body	タイ、テイ	からだ
85	台	Stand	ダイ、タイ	
86	地	Ground	チ、ジ	
87	池	Lake	チ	いけ
88	知	Know	チ	し（る）
89	茶	Tea	チャ、サ	
90	昼	Noon	チュウ	ひる
91	長	Long	チョウ	なが（い）、た（ける）
92	鳥	Bird	チョウ	とり
93	朝	Morning	チョウ	あさ
94	通	Commute	ツウ	とお（る・す）、かよ（う）
95	弟	Younger Brother	ダイ、テイ、デ	おとうと
96	店	Store	テン	みせ、たな
97	点	Point	テン	つ（く）、とも（す）、さ（す）
98	電	Electricity	デン	いなくま
99	刀	Sword	カタナ	かたな
100	冬	Winter	トウ	ふゆ
101	当	Apply, Hit	トウ	あ（たる・てる）
102	東	East	トウ	ひがし
103	答	Answer	トウ	こた（える・え）
104	頭	Head	トウ、ズ	あたま、かしら
105	同	Same	ドウ	おな（じ）
106	道	Road	ドウ、トウ	みち
107	読	Read	ドク、トク	よ（む）
108	南	South	ナン	みなみ
109	馬	Horse	バ	うま、ま

110	売	Sell	バイ	う（る・れる）
111	買	Buy	バイ	か（う）
112	麦	Wheat	バク	むぎ
113	半	Half	ハン	なか（ば）
114	番	Number	バン	つが（う）
115	父	Father	フ	ちち
116	風	Wind, Style	フウ	かぜ
117	分	Minute, Divide, Understand	ブン、フ ン、ブ	わ（かる・ける）
118	聞	Hear, Ask, Listen	ブン、モン	き（く・こえる）
119	米	Rice, America	ベイ、マイ	こめ
120	歩	Walk	ホ	ある（く）、あゆ（む）
121	母	Mother	ボ	はは、かあ
122	方	Direction	ホウ	かた
123	北	North	ホク、ボク	きた
124	毎	Every	マイ	-ごと
125	妹	Younger Sister	マイ	いもうと
126	明	Bright	メイ、ミョ ウ、ミン	あか（るい）、あ（ける・かす・かり・く・く る・け）、さや（か）、あき（らか）
127	鳴	Non-human Cry	メイ	な（く）
128	毛	Hair	モウ	け
129	門	Gate	モン	かど
130	夜	Night	ヤ	よる、よ
131	野	Field	ヤ	の
132	友	Friend	ユウ	とも
133	用	Use	ヨウ	もち（いる）
134	曜	Day of the week	ヨウ	
135	来	Come	ライ	く（る）、こ（ない）、き（たる・たす・ます）
136	楽	Music, Pleasure	ラク、ガク	たの（しい・しむ）
137	里	Village	リ	さと

138	理	Reason	リ	ことわり、
139	話	Speech, Talk	ワ	はなし、はな（す）
140	万	Ten Thousand	マン、バン	よろず
141	細	Thin	サイ	ほそ（い）、こまか（い）
142	丸	Circle, Round	ガン	まる（い）
143	直	Direct	チョク、ジ キ	す（ぐ）、ただ（ちに）、なお（す・る）
144	矢	Arrow	シ	や
145	線	Line	セン	
146	自	Oneself	ジ、シ	みづか（ら）
147	内	Inside	ナイ、ダイ	うち
148	園	Garden	エン	その
149	岩	Rock	ガン	いわ
150	海	Sea	カイ	うみ
151	肉	Meat	ニク	しし
152	羽	Feather	ウ	はね、は、わ
153	活	Active	カツ	い（きる）
154	弓	Bow	キュウ	ゆみ
155	公	Public	コウ	おおやけ
156	角	Corner, Horn	カク	かど、つの
157	兄	Older Brother	キョウ、ケ イ	あに、にい
158	姉	Older Sister	シ	あね、ねえ
159	週	Week	シュウ	
160	言	Word, Say	ゲン、ゴン	い（う）、こと

Table of Contents

3rd Grade Kanji (200)

#	Kanji	Meaning	ON	KUN
1	悪	Evil, Bad	アク、オ	わる (い)
2	安	Ease, Cheap	アン	やす (い)
3	暗	Dark	アン	くら (い)
4	医	Medical	イ	い (やす)
5	意	Will, Mind	イ	
6	育	Raise	イク	そだ (つ・てる)
7	員	Member	イン	
8	院	Institute	イン	
9	飲	Drink	イン	の (む)
10	運	Carry	ウン	はこ (ぶ)
11	泳	Swim	エイ	およ (ぐ)
12	駅	Station	エキ	
13	横	Side	オウ	よこ
14	屋	Store	オク	や
15	温	Warm	オン	あたたか (い)
16	化	Change	カ、ケ	ば (ける)
17	荷	Load	カ	に
18	界	Area	カイ	さかい
19	開	Open	カイ	ひら (く)、あ (く・ける)
20	階	Story, Floor	カイ	きざはし
21	寒	Cold	カン	さむ (い)
22	感	Feeling	カン	
23	館	Large Building	カン	やかた、たて、たち
24	岸	Shore	ガン	きし
25	起	Wake Up	キ	お (きる)、た (てる)
26	期	Period	キ、ゴ	
27	客	Guest	キャク、カク	

28	究	Investigate	キュウ	きわ（める）
29	急	Hurry	キュウ	いそ（ぐ）
30	級	Grade	キュウ	
31	宮	Palace	キュウ、グウ、ク	みや
32	球	Sphere	キュウ	たま
33	去	Past	キョ、コ	さ（る）
34	橋	Bridge	キョウ	はし
35	業	Profession	ギョウ、ゴウ	わざ
36	曲	Bend, Song	キョク	ま（がる・げる）、くせ
37	局	Office	キョク	つぼね
38	銀	Silver	ギン	しろがね
39	苦	Painful	ク	くる（しい・しむ）、にが（い）
40	具	Equipment	グ	そな（える）
41	君	You	クン	きみ
42	係	Involvement	ケイ	かかり
43	軽	Light	ケイ	かる（い）、かる（やか）
44	血	Blood	ケツ	ち
45	決	Decide	ケツ	き（まる・める）
46	研	Hone	ケン	と（ぐ）、みが（く）
47	県	Prefecture	ケン	
48	言	Word, Say	ゲン、ゴン	い（う）、こと
49	庫	Storehouse	コ	くら
50	湖	Lake	コ	みずうみ
51	向	Turn, Face Towards	コウ	む（く・ける・こう・かう）
52	幸	Happiness	コウ	さいわ（い）、しあわ（せ）、さち
53	港	Harbor	コウ	みなと
54	号	Number	ゴウ	
55	根	Root	コン	ね
56	祭	Festival	サイ	まつ（る）、まつり
57	細	Thin	サイ	ほそ（い）、こま（かい）

58	仕	Serve	シ、ジ	つか（える）
59	死	Die	シ	し（ぬ）
60	使	Use	シ	つか（う）
61	始	Begin	シ	はじ（まる・める）
62	指	Finger	シ	ゆび、さ（す）
63	歯	Tooth	シ	は
64	詩	Poem	シ	うた
65	次	Next	ジ、シ	つぎ、つ（ぐ）
66	事	Thing	ジ、ズ	こと、つか（える）
67	持	Hold	ジ	も（つ）
68	式	Ceremony	シキ	
69	実	Fruit, Truth	ジツ	み、みの（る）
70	写	Copy	シャ	うつ（る・す）
71	者	Person	シャ	もの
72	主	Lord, Master	シュ	ぬし、おも
73	守	Protect	シュ、ス	まも（る）
74	取	Take	シュ	と（る）
75	酒	Alcohol	シュ	さけ、さか-
76	受	Receive	ジュ	う（ける）
77	州	Province, Sandbank	シュウ	す
78	拾	Ten, Gather	ジュウ、シュウ	ひろ（う）
79	終	Finish	シュウ	お（わる・える）
80	習	Learn	シュウ	なら（う）
81	集	Gather	シュウ	あつ（まる・める）
82	住	Reside	ジュウ	す（む）
83	重	Heavy, Fold	ジュウ、チョウ	かさ（ねる・なる）、おも（い）、え
84	所	Place	ショ	ところ
85	暑	Hot (Weather)	ショ	あつ（い）
86	助	Help	ジョ	たす（ける・かる）
87	昭	Bright	ショウ	

88	消	Extinguish	ショウ	け(す)、き(える)
89	商	Trade	ショウ	あきな(う)
90	章	Chapter	ショウ	
91	勝	Win	ショウ	か(つ)、まさ(る)、すぐ(れる)
92	乗	Ride	ジョウ	の(る・せる)
93	植	Plant	ショク	う(える)
94	申	Say	シン	もう(す)
95	身	Body	シン	み
96	神	God	シン	かみ、かん、こう
97	深	Deep	シン	ふか(い・める)、ふ(ける)
98	進	Advance	シン	すす(む・める)
99	世	World	セイ、セ	よ
100	整	Arrange	セイ	ととの(う・える)
101	全	Whole	ゼン	まった(く)、すべ(て)
102	送	Send	ソウ	おく(る)
103	息	Breath	ソク	いき
104	族	Family	ゾク	やから
105	他	Other	タ	ほか
106	打	Hit	ダ	う(つ)
107	対	Vs.	タイ、ツイ	
108	待	Wait	タイ	ま(つ)
109	代	Generation, World, Fee	ダイ、タイ	か(わる・える)、よ、しろ
110	第	Grade, Order	ダイ	
111	題	Title	ダイ	
112	炭	Coal	タン	すみ
113	短	Short	タン	みじか(い)
114	着	Arrive, Wear	チャク	つ(く)、き(る)
115	注	Pour	チュウ	そそ(ぐ)、さ(す)、つ(ぐ)
116	柱	Pillar	チュウ	はしら
117	丁	Block	チョウ、テイ	ひのと

118	帳	Register, Drape	チョウ	とばり
119	調	Adjust, Investigate	チョウ	しら（べる）、ととの（える）
120	直	Direct, Fix	チョク、ジキ	なお（る・す）、す（ぐ）、ただ（ち）
121	追	Chase	ツイ	お（う）
122	定	Establish	テイ、ジョウ	さだ（める）
123	庭	Garden	テイ	にわ
124	鉄	Iron, Steel	テツ	くろがね
125	転	Turn, Tumble	テン	ころ（げる・がる・がす・ぶ）
126	都	Capital, Metropolis	ト、ツ	みやこ
127	度	Times, Degree	ド、タク	たび、たんび
128	投	Throw	トウ	な（げる）
129	島	Island	トウ	しま
130	湯	Hot Water	トウ	ゆ
131	登	Climb	トウ	のぼ（る）
132	等	Etc., Equal, Class	トウ	ひと（しい）
133	動	Move	ドウ	うご（く）
134	童	Child	ドウ	わらべ、わらわ
135	農	Farming	ノウ	
136	波	Wave	ハ	なみ
137	配	Distribute	ハイ	くば（る）
138	畑	Field		はたけ、はた
139	発	Discharge	ハツ、ホツ	た（つ）、あば（く）
140	反	Anti, Oppose	ハン、タン	そ（る）
141	坂	Slope	ハン	さか
142	板	Board	ハン、バン	いた
143	皮	Leather	ヒ	かわ
144	悲	Sad	ヒ	かな（しい・む）
145	美	Beautiful	ビ	うつく（しい）
146	鼻	Nose	ビ	はな
147	氷	Ice	ヒョウ	こおり

148	表	Surface	ヒョウ	おもて、あらわ（す）
149	秒	Second	ビョウ	
150	病	Illness	ビョウ、ヘイ	やまい、や（む）、いたつき
151	品	Goods	ヒン	しな
152	負	Defeat, Bear	フ	ま（ける・かす）、お（う）
153	部	Part	ブ、ベ	へ
154	服	Clothes	フク	
155	福	Good Fortune	フク	
156	物	Thing	ブツ、モツ	もの
157	平	Even	ヘイ、ビョウ	たい（ら）、ひら（たい）
158	返	Return	ヘン	かえ（す・る）
159	勉	Strive	ベン	つと（める）
160	放	Release	ホウ	はな（す・つ）、ほう（る）
161	味	Taste	ミ	あじ、あじ（わう）
162	命	Life	メイ、ミョウ	いのち
163	面	Face, Mask	メン	おもて、おも、つら
164	問	Ask	モン	と（う）
165	役	Service	ヤク、エキ	
166	薬	Medicine	ヤク	くすり
167	由	Reason, Means	ユウ、ユ	よし
168	油	Oil	ユ、ユウ	あぶら
169	有	Exist	ユウ、ウ	あ（る）
170	遊	Play	ユウ、ユ	あそ（ぶ）
171	予	Prior	ヨ	かね（て）
172	洋	Ocean, Western	ヨウ	
173	葉	Leaf	ヨウ	は
174	陽	Sun	ヨウ	ひ
175	様	Situation	ヨウ	さま、ざま
176	落	Fall	ラク	お（ちる・とす）
177	流	Flow	リュウ、ル	なが（れる・す）

178	旅	Trip	リョ	たび
179	両	Both	リョウ	
180	緑	Green	リョク、ロク	みどり
181	礼	Bow	レイ	
182	列	Line	レツ	つら（なる・ねる）
183	路	Road	ロ	じ、みち
184	和	Peace	ワ、オ	やわ（らぐ）、なご（やか）
185	倍	Double	バイ	
186	区	Ward	ク	まち
187	委	Committee	イ	ゆだ（ねる）
188	央	Center	オウ	
189	漢	Han China	カン	
190	宿	Inn	シュク	やど（る）、やど
191	真	Truth	シン	ま
192	相	Mutual	ソウ、ショウ	あい-
193	想	Idea	ソウ、ソ	おも（う）
194	速	Speed	ソク	はや（い）、すみ（やか）
195	筆	Writing Brush	ヒツ	ふで
196	練	Train	レン	ね（る）
197	昔	Old Days	セキ	むかし
198	豆	Beans	トウ、ズ	まめ
199	羊	Sheep	ヨウ	ひつじ
200	箱	Box	ソウ	はこ

Table of Contents

4th Grade Kanji

#	Kanji	Meaning	ON	KUN
1	士	Samurai	シ	さむらい
2	不	Un-, Dis-	フ、ブ	
3	夫	Husband	フ、フウ	おっと
4	欠	To lack	ケツ	か (く、ける)
5	氏	Mr., Clan	シ	うじ
6	民	People	ミン	たみ
7	史	History	シ	
8	必	Necessarily	ヒツ	
9	失	To Lose	シツ	うしな (う)
10	包	To Cover	ホウ	つつ (む)、くる (まる)
11	末	End, Tip	マツ、バツ	すえ
12	以	Way about	イ	もっ (て)
13	付	To attach	フ	つ (く、ける)
14	令	Command	レイ、リョウ	
15	加	To add	カ	くわ (える、わる)
16	司	Official(s)	シ	つかさど (る)
17	功	Merit	コウ、ク	いさお
18	札	Card	サツ	ふだ
19	辺	Side, around	ヘン	へ、ほとり、わたり、あた (り)
20	印	Symbol	イン	しるし
21	争	War, protest	ソウ	あらそ (う)、あらが (う)
22	仲	Relationship	チュウ	なか
23	伝	To transmit	デン	つた (う、える、わる)、つ、づたい
24	共	Together	キョウ	とも、ども
25	兆	Million, omen	チョウ	きざ (す)
26	各	Every	カク	おのおの、おの
27	好	To like	コウ	い (い)、よ (い)、す (き)、この (む)

28	成	To become	セイ、ジョウ	な（る、す）
29	灯	Light	トウ	ひ、あかし、ともし（び）、とも（す、る）
30	老	To get old	ロウ	お（いる）、ふ（ける）
31	衣	Clothing	イ	きぬ、ころも
32	求	To ask	キュウ	もと（める）
33	束	Bundle	ソク	たば、つか
34	兵	Soldier	ヘイ、ヒョウ	つわもの
35	位	Degree	イ	くらい、ぐらい
36	低	Low	テイ	ひく（い）
37	児	Child	ジ	こ、やや
38	冷	Cold	レイ	ひ（え、や）、つめ（たい）、さ（ます）
39	別	Different	ベツ	わか（れる）
40	努	Effort	ド	つと（める）、ゆめ
41	労	Labor	ロウ	いたつき、ねぎら（う）、いたわ（しい、る）
42	告	To warn	コク	つ（げる）
43	囲	To encircle	イ	かこ（う、む）
44	完	Complete	カン	
45	改	Renew	カイ	あらた（まる・める）
46	希	Rare	キ	まれ（な）、こいねが（う）
47	折	Time, bend	セツ	お（る、れる）
48	材	Material	ザイ	
49	利	Profit	リ	き（く）
50	臣	Subject	シン、ジン	
51	良	Good	リョウ	よ（い）、い（い）
52	芸	Art	ゲイ	
53	初	Beginning	ショ	はつ、うい、うぶ、はじ（める、まる）
54	果	Carry out	カ	は（たす、てる）、おお（せる）、はか

55	刷	Print	サツ	す（る）
56	卒	Soldier	ソツ、ソ	
57	念	Sense	ネン	
58	例	Example	レイ	ため（す）
59	典	Rule, law	テン	のり
60	周	Perimeter	シュウ	まわ（り）、あまね（く）
61	協	Cooperate	キョウ	
62	参	Come, three	サン	まい（る）
63	固	Hard, solid	コ	かた（い、まる、める）
64	官	Officials	カン	つかさ
65	底	Bottom	テイ	そこ
66	府	Prefecture	フ	
67	径	Perimeter	ケイ	みち
68	松	Pine tree	ショウ	まつ
69	毒	Poison	ドク	
70	泣	To cry	キュウ	な（く）
71	治	To heal	チ、ジ	なお（す）、おさ（まる、める）
72	法	Order, law	ハウ、ハツ、ホ、 ホツ	のり、のっと（る）
73	牧	Pasture	ボク	まき
74	的	Target	テキ	まと
75	季	Season	キ	
76	英	Superior	エイ	はなぶさ
77	芽	Bud	ガ	め
78	単	Unit	タン	ひとえ
79	省	Ministry	セイ、ショウ	はぶ（く）、かえり（みる）
80	変	Change	ヘン	か（わる、える）
81	信	Believe	シン	
82	便	Service, facility	ベン、ビン	よすが、たよ（り）
83	軍	Army	ガン	

84	勇	Brave	ユウ	いさ (む、ましいい)
85	型	Type, model	ケイ	かた
86	建	Build	ケン	た (つ、てる)
87	昨	Last-	サク	
88	栄	Flourish	エイ	はえ (る)、さか (える)
89	浅	Shallow	セン	あさ (い)
90	胃	Stomach	イ	
91	祝	Celebrate	シュク	いわ (う)
92	紀	Chronicle	キ	
93	約	Promise	ヤク	つづ (める)
94	要	Need	ヨウ	い (る)、かなめ
95	飛	Fly	ヒ	と (ぶ)
96	候	Sign, serve	コウ、	そろ、そうろ (う)
97	借	Lend	シャク	か (りる)
98	倉	Storage	ソウ	くら
99	孫	Grandchild	ソン	まご
100	案	Plan	アン	
101	害	Injure	ガイ	
102	帯	Belt, obi	タイ	お (びる)、は (く)
103	席	Seat	セキ	
104	徒	Follow	ト、ズ	あだ、かち、ただ、むだ、いたずら (に)
105	拳	Give, cite	キョ	あ (げる、がる)、こそ (る)
106	梅	Plum	バイ	うめ
107	残	Leave	ザン	のこ (す、る)
108	殺	To kill	サツ	ころ (す)、そ (ぐ)、あや (める)
109	浴	To bathe	ヨク	あ (びる)
110	特	Special	トク	
111	笑	To laugh	ショウ	わら (う)
112	粉	Powder	フン	こな、こ

113	料	Fee	リョウ	
114	差	Difference	サ	さ (す)
115	脈	Pulse	ミヤク	
116	航	Voyage	コウ	
117	訓	Lesson	クン	
118	連	Stanza, companion	レン	つら (なる、ねる)、つる (む)、つ (れる)
119	郡	County	グン	こおり
120	巢	Nest	ソウ	す
121	健	Healthy	ケン	すこ (やか)、すく (よか)
123	側	Side	ソク、	がわ、そば、はた、かたわ (ら)
124	停	Stop	テイ	と (まる、める)
125	副	Vice-	フク	そ (う、える)
126	唱	Recite	ショウ	うた (う)、とな (える)
127	堂	Hall, temple	ドウ	
128	康	Healthy	コウ	
129	得	Get	トク	え (る)、う (る)
130	救	To rescue	キユウ	すく (う)
131	械	Machine	カイ	
132	清	Pure	セイ、シン	きよ (い)、さや (か)、す (む)
133	望	Hope	ボウ、モウ	のぞ (む)、もち
134	産	Give birth to	サン	む (す)、う (む)
135	菜	Vegetable	サイ	な
136	票	Vote	ヒョウ	
137	貨	Currency	カ	
138	敗	Loss	ハイ	やぶ (る、れる)
139	陸	Land	リク、ロク	おか
140	博	Gain	ハク、バク	
141	喜	Joy	キ	よろこ (ぶ)
142	順	Order	ジュン	したが (う)

143	街	Town	ガイ	まち
144	散	Scatter	サン	ち（る、らかす）
145	景	Background	ケイ、ケ	
146	最	-est	サイ	もっと（も）
147	量	Weight	リョウ	はか（る）
148	満	To fill	マン	み（たす、ちる）
149	焼	To burn	ショウ	や（く）
150	然	Duly	ゼン、ネン	しか（る、し）、そ（う）、さ（る）
151	無	Not	ム、ブ	な（い）
152	給	Supply	キュウ	たま（う）
153	結	Tie	ケツ	ゆ（う）、むす（ぶ）
154	覚	Remember	カク	おぼ（える）
155	象	Elephant, figure	ゾウ、ショウ	かたど（る）
156	貯	Save	チョ	たくわ（える）、た（める、まる）
157	費	Expense	ヒ	つい（やす）
158	達	Reach, plural	タツ	たち
159	隊	Band, force	タイ	
160	飯	Meal, rice	ハン	めし
161	働	To work	ドウ	はたら（く）
162	塩	Salt	エン	しお
163	戦	War	セン	たたか（う）、おのの（く）、そよ（ぐ）
164	極	Extreme	キョク、ゴク	き（まり）、きわ（まる）
165	照	Shine	ショウ	て（らす、る、れる）
166	愛	Love	アイ	いと（しい、む）、まな
167	節	Section, point	セツ、セチ	ふし、よ
168	続	To continue	ゾク	つづ（く）
169	置	To put	チ	お（く）
170	腸	Intestines	チョウ	はらわた
171	辞	To quit	ジ	や（める）、いな（む）

172	試	To test	シ	ため（す）、ころ（みる）
173	歴	Record, history	レキ	へ（る）
174	察	Investigation	サツ	
175	旗	Flag	キ	はた
176	漁	Fishing	ギョ、リョウ	あさ（る）、すなど（る）
177	種	Seed	シュ	たね
178	管	Pipe	カン	くだ
179	説	To preach	セツ	と（く）
180	関	Connection	カン	せき、かか（わる）
181	静	Quiet	セイ、ジョウ	しず（か、まる）
182	億	100 Million	オク	
183	器	Vessel	キ	うつわ
184	賞	Prize	ショウ	ほ（める）
185	標	Sign	ヒョウ	しるし、しる（す）
186	熱	Hot	ネツ	あつ（い）
187	養	Nurture	ヨウ	やしな（う）
188	課	Lesson	カ	
189	輪	Wheel	リン	わ
190	選	To choose	セン	えら（ぶ）、よ（る）、え（りすぐる）
191	機	Occasion, machine	キ	はた
192	積	Product, accumulate	セキ	つ（もる）
193	録	Record	ロク	
194	観	To watch	カン	み（る）
195	類	Kind	ルイ	たぐい、たぐ（う）
196	験	Test	ケン、ゲン	ため（す）、しるし
197	願	Want	ガン	ねが（う）
198	鏡	Mirror	キョウ	かがみ
199	競	To compete	キョウ、ケイ	きそ（う）、せ（り）
200	議	Legislation	ギ	

Table of Contents

5th Grade Kanji (185)

#	Kanji	Meaning	ON	KUN
1	久	Long time	キュウ、ク	ひさ (しい)
2	仏	Buddha; France	ブツ、フツ	ほとけ
3	仮	Temporary	カ、ケ	かり
4	件	Case	ケン	くだん
5	任	Duty	ニン	まか (せる)
6	似	Resemble	ジ	に (る)
7	余	Surplus; myself	ヨ	あま (る)、あんま (り)
8	価	Price	カ	あたい
9	保	Preserve	ホ、ハウ	たも (つ)
10	修	Discipline	シュウ	おさ (まる・める)
11	俵	Bag	ヒョウ	たわら
12	個	Unit	カ、コ	
13	備	Equipment	ビ	そな (える・わる)、つづさ (に)
14	像	Statue	ゾウ	
15	再	Repeat	サイ、サ	ふたた (び)
16	刊	Publish	カン	
17	判	Judgement	ハン、バン	わか (る)
18	制	Law; rule	セイ	
19	券	Ticket	ケン	
20	則	Rule	ソク	のっと (る)
21	効	Effect	コウ	き (く)、なら (う)
22	務	Task	ム	つと (める)
23	勢	Forces	セイ、ゼイ	いきお (い)
24	厚	Heavy	コウ	あつ (い)
25	句	Clause	ク	
26	可	Should	カ	べ (く・き・し)
27	営	Occupation	エイ	いとな (む)

28	因	Cause	イン	ちな（む）、よ（る）
29	団	Group	ダン、トン	かたまり、まる（い）
30	圧	Pressure	アツ、エン、オン	おさ（える）、へ（す）、お（す）
31	在	Exist	ザイ	あ（る）
32	均	Average	キン	ひと（しい）
33	基	Basis	キ	もと（づく）、もとい
34	報	Report	ホウ	むく（いる）
35	境	Border	キョウ、ケイ	さかい
36	墓	Grave	ボ	はか
37	増	Increase	ゾウ	ふ（える・やす）、ま（す）
38	夢	Dream	ム	ゆめ
39	妻	Wife	サイ	つま
40	婦	Lady	フ	
41	容	Contain	ヨウ	い（れる）
42	寄	Send; collect	キ	よ（る）
43	富	Wealth	フ、フウ	とみ、と（む）
44	導	Guidance	ドウ	みちび（く）
45	居	To be	キョ、コ	い（る）、お（る）
46	属	Genus	ゾク	やから
47	布	Cloth	フ	ぬの
48	師	Instructor	シ	
49	常	Ordinary	ジョウ	つね、とこ
50	幹	Tree trunk	カン	みき
51	序	Preface	ジョ	ついで、つい（で）
52	弁	Speech; petal; divide	ベン、ヘン	わ（ける）、わきま（える）、はなびら
53	張	Stretch	チョウ	は（る）
54	往	Go	オウ	い（く）、ゆ（く）
55	復	Restore	フク	また
56	徳	Virtue	トク	

57	志	Aspire	シ	こころざし、こころざ（す）
58	応	Reply	オウ、ノウ、ヨウ	こた（える）、あた（る）
59	快	Pleasant	カイ	こころよ（い）
60	性	Gender	セイ、ショウ	さが
61	恩	Goodness; favor	オン	
62	情	Emotion	ジョウ、セイ	なさ（け）
63	態	Condition	タイ	わざ（と）
64	慣	Accustom	カン	な（れる・らす）
65	承	Acquiesce	ショウ	うけたまわ（る）
66	技	Skill	ギ	わざ
67	招	Invite	ショウ	まね（く）
68	授	Grant	ジュ	さず（かる・ける）
69	採	Take	サイ	と（る）
70	接	Connect	セツ	つ（ぐ）
71	提	Propose	テイ、チョウ、ダイ	さ（げる）
72	損	Loss	ソン	そこな（う）、そこ（ねる・なう）
73	支	Support	シ	つか（える）、ささ（える）、か（う）
74	政	Government	セイ、ショウ	まつりごと
75	故	Cause; reason	コ	ゆえ
76	敵	Enemy	テキ	あだ、かたき、かな（う）
77	断	Refuse	ダン	ことわ（る）、さだ（める）、た（つ）
78	旧	Old	キュウ	ふる（い）、もと
79	易	Easy; divination	イ、エキ	やさ（しい）、やす（い）
80	暴	Violence	ボウ、バク	あば（れる・く）
81	条	Clause; stripe	ジョウ、チョウ、テキ	すじ
82	枝	Stick	シ	えだ
83	査	Investigate	サ	
84	格	Rank	カク、キャク、コ	

			ウ、ゴウ	
85	桜	Cherry blossom	オウ、ヨウ	さくら
86	検	Examination	ケン	しら（べる）
87	構	Build	コウ	構（える・う）
88	武	Military	ブ、ム	たけし
89	比	Compare	ヒ	くら（べる）
90	永	Eternity	エイ	なが（い）
91	河	River	カ	かわ
92	液	Liquid	エキ	
93	混	Mix	コン	こ（む）、ま（じる・ぜる・ざる）
94	減	Decrease	ゲン	へ（る・らす）
95	測	Measure	ソク	はか（る）
96	準	Conform; semi-	ジュン	なぞら（える）、のり
97	演	Act	エン	
98	潔	Pure	ケツ	いさぎよ（い）
99	災	Disaster	サイ	わざわ（い）
100	燃	Burn	ネン	も（える・やす・す）
101	版	Edition	バン、ハン	
102	犯	Offense	ハン、ボン	おか（す）
103	状	Form	ジョウ	
104	独	Alone; Germany	ドク、トク	ひと（り）
105	率	Percentage	リツ、ソツ、シュ ツ	ひき（いる）
106	現	Appear	ゲン	あらわ（れる・す）、うつつ
107	留	Halt; stop	リュウ、ル	とど（まる・める）、と（まる・める）
108	略	Outline	リヤク	はかりごと、はか（る）、ほぼ
109	益	Benefit	エキ、ヤク	ます
110	眼	Eye	ガン、ゲン	め、まなこ
111	破	Break	ハ	やぶ（る）
112	確	Certain	カク、コウ	たし（か・かめる）

113	示	Display	シ、ジ	しめ（す）
114	祖	Ancestor	ソ	
115	禁	Prohibit	キン	
116	移	Move; shift	イ	うつ（す・る）
117	程	Extent	テイ	ほど
118	税	Tax	ゼイ	
119	築	Construct	チク	きず（く）
120	精	Purity; vitality	セイ、ショウ	
121	素	Element	ス、ソ	もと
122	経	Pass	ケイ、キョウ	た（つ）、へ（る）、たていと
123	統	Governing	トウ	す（べる）
124	絶	Sever	ゼツ	た（つ・える・やす）
125	綿	Cotton	メン	わた
126	総	All	ソウ	す（べて）、すべ（て）、ふさ
127	編	Knit; edit	ヘン	あ（む）
128	績	Results	セキ	
129	織	Weave	シキ、シヨク	お（る）
130	罪	Sin	ザイ	つみ
131	群	Group	グン	むら、む（れる）
132	義	Righteousness	ギ	
133	耕	Plow	コウ	たがや（す）
134	職	Work	シヨク、ソク	
135	肥	Fertile	ヒ	こ（える・やす）、ふと（る）
136	能	Ability	ノウ	
137	興	Interest	キョウ、コウ	おこ（す・る）
138	舌	Tongue	ゼツ	した
139	舎	Cottage	シャ、セキ	やど（る）
140	術	Technique	ジュツ	すべ
141	衛	Protection	エイ、エ	
142	製	Manufacture	セイ	

143	複	Duplicate	フク	
144	規	Standard	キ	
145	解	Understand; solve	カイ、ゲ	さと（る）、わか（る）、と（く・かす・ける）、ほど（く・かす）
146	設	Prepare	セツ	もう（ける）
147	許	Permit; forgive	キヨ	ゆる（す）
148	証	Proof	ショウ	あかし
149	評	Evaluation	ヒョウ	
150	講	Lecture	コウ	
151	謝	Apologize	シャ	あやま（る）
152	識	Knowledge	シキ	し（る）、しる（す）
153	護	Protect	ゴ	まも（る）
154	豊	Abundant	ホウ、ブ	ゆたか（な）、とよ
155	財	Wealth	ザイ、サイ、ゾク	たから
156	貧	Poor	ヒン、ビン	まず（しい）
157	責	Blame	セキ	せ（める）
158	貸	Lend	タイ	か（す）
159	貿	Exchange; trade	ボウ	
160	賀	Congratulations	ガ	
161	資	Capital; assets	シ	もと
162	賛	Praise	サン	たた（える）
163	質	Substance	シツ、シチ、チ	ただ（す）、たち、もと
164	輸	Transport	ユ、シュ	
165	述	State; mention	ジュツ	の（べる）
166	迷	Lost	メイ	まよ（う）
167	退	Resign	タイ	しりぞ（く・ける）、ひ（く）、の（く・ける）、ど（く）
168	逆	Opposite	ギャク、ゲキ	さか（らう）
169	造	Make	ゾウ	つく（る）
170	過	Exceed	カ	す（ぎる・ごす）、あやま（つ）、よ（ぎる）

171	適	Capable	テキ	かな（う）
172	酸	Acid	サン	す（い）
173	鉱	Ore	コウ	あらがね
174	銅	Copper	ドウ	あかがね
175	銭	Sen (.01 ¥)	セン	ぜに
176	防	Defend	ボウ	ふせ（ぐ）
177	限	Limit	ゲン	かぎ（る）
178	険	Steep	ケン	けわ（しい）
179	際	Side; edge	サイ	きわ
180	雑	Random	ザツ、ゾウ	まじ（る・える）
181	非	Un-; non-	ヒ	あら（ず）
182	預	Leave	ヨ	あず（かる・ける）
183	領	Territory	リョウ	
184	額	Forehead; amount	ガク	ひたい
185	飼	Reer (animals)	シ	か（う）

Table of Contents

常用漢字

1st Grade

一 九 七 二 人 入 八 力 十 下 三 千 上 口 土 夕 大 女 子 小 山 川 五 天 中 六 円 手 文 日 月 木 水 火 犬 王
正 出 本 右 四 左 玉 生 田 白 目 石 立 百 年 休 先 名 字 早 氣 竹 糸 耳 虫 村 男 町 花 見 貝 赤 足 車 学 林
空 金 雨 青 草 音 校 森

2nd Grade

刀 万 丸 才 工 弓 内 午 少 元 今 公 分 切 友 太 引 心 戸 方 止 毛 父 牛 半 市 北 古 台 兄 冬 外 広 母 用 矢
交 会 合 同 回 寺 地 多 光 当 毎 池 米 羽 考 肉 自 色 行 西 来 何 作 体 弟 図 声 壳 形 汽 社 角 言 谷 走 近
里 麦 画 東 京 夜 直 国 姉 妹 岩 店 明 步 知 長 門 昼 前 南 点 室 後 春 星 海 活 思 科 秋 茶 計 風 食 首 夏
弱 原 家 帰 時 紙 書 記 通 馬 高 強 教 理 細 組 船 過 野 雪 魚 鳥 黄 黒 場 晴 答 絵 買 朝 道 番 間 雲 園 数
新 樂 話 遠 電 鳴 歌 算 語 読 聞 線 親 頭 曜 顔

3rd Grade

丁 予 化 区 反 央 平 申 世 由 氷 主 仕 他 代 写 号 去 打 皮 皿 礼 両 曲 向 州 全 次 安 守 式 死 列 羊 有 血
住 助 医 君 坂 局 役 投 対 決 究 豆 身 返 表 事 育 使 命 味 幸 始 実 定 岸 所 放 昔 板 泳 注 波 油 受 物 具
委 和 者 取 服 苦 重 乗 係 品 客 県 屋 炭 度 待 急 指 持 拾 昭 相 柱 洋 畑 界 発 研 神 秒 級 美 負 送 追 面
島 勉 倍 真 員 宮 庫 庭 旅 根 酒 消 流 病 息 荷 起 速 配 院 悪 商 動 宿 帳 族 深 球 祭 第 笛 終 習 転 進 都
部 問 章 寒 暑 植 温 湖 港 湯 登 短 童 等 筆 着 期 勝 葉 落 軽 運 遊 開 階 陽 集 悲 飲 歯 業 感 想 暗 漢 福
詩 路 農 鉄 意 様 緑 練 銀 駅 鼻 横 箱 談 調 橋 整 葉 館 題

4th Grade

士 不 夫 欠 氏 民 史 必 失 包 未 未 以 付 令 加 司 功 札 辺 印 争 仲 伝 共 兆 各 好 成 灯 老 衣 求 束 兵 位
低 児 冷 別 努 勞 告 困 完 改 希 折 材 利 臣 良 芸 初 果 刷 卒 念 例 典 周 協 参 固 官 底 府 径 松 毒 泣 治
法 牧 的 季 英 芽 卑 省 変 信 便 軍 勇 型 建 昨 栄 浅 胃 祝 紀 約 要 飛 候 借 倉 孫 案 害 帯 席 徒 拳 梅 残
殺 浴 特 笑 粉 料 差 脈 航 訓 連 郡 巢 健 側 停 副 唱 堂 康 得 救 械 清 望 産 菜 票 貨 敗 陸 博 喜 順 街 散
景 最 量 満 焼 然 無 給 結 覚 象 貯 費 達 隊 飯 働 塩 戦 極 照 愛 節 続 置 腸 辞 試 歴 察 旗 漁 種 管 説 関
静 億 器 賞 標 熱 養 課 輪 選 機 積 録 観 類 験 願 鏡 競 議

5th Grade

久 仏 支 比 可 旧 永 句 圧 弁 布 刊 犯 示 再 仮 件 任 因 団 在 舌 似 余 判 均 志 条 災 応 序 快 技 状 防 武
承 価 舍 券 制 効 妻 居 往 性 招 易 枝 河 版 肥 述 非 保 厚 故 政 査 独 祖 則 逆 退 迷 限 師 個 修 俵 益 能
容 恩 格 桜 留 破 素 耕 財 造 率 貧 基 婦 寄 常 張 術 情 採 授 接 断 液 混 現 略 眼 務 移 経 規 許 設 責 険

備嘗報富屬復提檢減測稅程絕統証評賀貸貿過勢幹準損禁罪義群墓夢解豐資鉞預飼
像境增德慣態構演精縈綿製複適酸錢銅際雜領導敵暴潔確編贊質興衛燃築輸績講謝
織職額識護

6th Grade

亡寸己干仁尺片冊收処幼疔穴危后灰吸存宇宅机至否我系卵忘孝困批私乱垂乳供並
刻呼宗宙宝届延忠拈担痒枚沿若看城奏姿宣專卷律映染段洗派皇泉砂紅背肺革蚕值
俳党展座從株将班秘純納胸朗討射針降除陞骨域密捨推探濟異盛視窓翌腦著訪訊欲
鄉郵閉頂就善尊割創勤裁揮敬晚棒痛筋策衆装補詞貴裏傷暖源聖盟絹署腹蒸幕誠賃
疑層模穀磁暮誤誌認閣障劇榷潮熟蔵諸誕論遺奮憲操樹激糖縱鋼廠優縮覽簡臨難臧
警

Secondary School

乙了又与及丈刃凡互弔井升丹乏屯介冗凶刈匹厄双孔幻斗斤且丙甲凸丘斥仙凹召巨
占囚奴尼巧抔汁玄甘矛込弋朱吏劣充妄企仰伐伏刑旬旨匠叫吐吉如妃尽帆忙扱朽朴
汚汗江壮缶肌舟芋芝巡迅垂更寿励含佐伺伸但伯伴吳克却吟吹呈壑坑坊妊妨妙肖尿
尾岐攻忌床廷忍戒戾抗抄扞把拔扶抑杉冲沢沈没妥狂秀肝即芳辛迎邦岳奉享盲依佳
侍侮併免刺劾卓叔坪奇奔姓宜尚屈岬弦征彼怪怖肩房押拐拒拋拘拙拓抽抵拍披抱抹
昆昇枢析杯梓欧肯毆況沼泥泊泌沸泡炎炊炉邪祈祉突肢肪到莖苗茂迭迫邸阻附齐甚
艸衷幽為盾卑哀亭帝侯俊侵促俗盆冠削勅貞卸厘怠叙咲垣契姻孤封峽岬弧悔恒恨怒
威括挟拷挑施是冒架枯柄柳皆洪淨津洞牲狭狩珍某疫柔碎窃糾耐胎胆胞臭荒莊虐訂
赴軌逃郊郎香剛衰畝恋俟倒倣倅倫翁兼准凍劍剖脅匿栽索桑唆哲埋娛娠姬娘宴宰宵
峰貢唐徐悅恐恭惠悟惱扇振搜揅捕敏核棧栓桃殊殉浦浸泰浜浮淚浪烈畜珠畔疾症疲
眠砲祥称租秩粹紛紡紋耗恥脂朕胴致般既華蚊被託軒辱唇逝逐逋途透酌陷陣隻飢鬼
劑竜肅尉彫偽偶偵偏剩勘乾喝啓唯執培堀婚婆寂崎崇崩庶庸彩患慘惜悼悠掛掘揭控
据措掃排描斜旋曹殼貫涯渴溪洩淑涉淡添涼猫猛獬瓶累盜眺窰符粗粘粒紺紹紳脚脱
豚舶菓菊菌虚蚩蛇袋訟販赦軟逸逮郭醉穢釣陰陳陶陪隆陵麻斎喪奥蛭偉傘傍普喚喫
圈堪堅墮塚堤塔塤媒婿掌項幅帽幾廐廊彈尋御循慌愔愉惑雇扉握援換搭揚搖敢曉晶
替棺棋棚棟款欺殖渦滋湿渡湾煮猶琴置罍疎痘痢硬硝硫筒粧絞紫絡腕葬募裕裂詠詐
詔診訴越超距軸遇遂遲遍酢鈍閑隅随焦雄雱殿棄傾傑債催僧慈勸載嗣嘆塊塑塗獎嫁
嫌寬寢廉微慨愚愁慎携搾掇搬暇楼歲滑溝滯淹漠滅溶煙煩雅猿猷痴睡督碁禍禪稚繼
腰艇蓄虞虜褐裸触該詰誇詳營賊賄跡踐跳較違遣酬酪鉛鉢鈴隔雷零靴頑頒飾飽鼓豪
僕僚曆塾奪嫡寡寧腐彰徵憎慢摘概雌漆漸漬滴漂漫漏獄碑稻端箇維綱緒網罰膜慕誓
誘踊遮遭酵酷銃銘閼隱需馭馱髮魂鍊緯韻影銳謁閱綠憶穩稼餓壞懷嚇獲獲渴轄憾飲
環監緩艦還鑑輝騎儀戲擬犧窮矯響驚凝緊襟謹綵勲薰慶憩鷄鯨擊懸謙賢顛顧稿衡購
壘懇鎖錯撮擦暫諮賜璽爵趣儒襲醜獸瞬潤遵償礁衝鐘壤孃讓釀錠囑審薪震髓澄瀨請

籍潜織薦遷鮮繕礎槽燥藻霜騷贈濯濁諾鍛壇鑄駐懲聽鎮墜締徹撤膳踏騰鬪篤曇繩濃
霸輩賠薄爆縛繁藩範盤罷避賓頻敷膚譜賦舞覆噴墳憤幣弊壁癖舖穗簿縫褒膨謀墨撲
翻摩登魔爾魅霧默躍癒諭憂融慰窯謠翼羅賴欄濫履離慮寮療糧隣隸靈麗齡擁露藤誰
俺岡頃奈阪韓弥那鹿斬虎狙脇熊尻旦閭籠呂龜頰膝鶴勾沙須椅股眉挨拶鎌淒謎稽曾
喉拭貌塞蹶鍵膳袖漬駒剥鍋湧葛梨貼拉枕顎苛蓋裾腫爪嵐鬱妖藍捉宛崖叱瓦拳乞呪
汰勃味唾艷痕諦餅瞳唄隙淫錦箸戚妬蔑嗅蜜戴瘦怨醒詣窟巾蜂骸弄嫉罵璧阜埼伎曖
餌爽詮芯綻肘麓懂頓

牙咽嘲臆挫溺侶井瘍僅謀柵腎梗瑠羨耐畿畏瞭踪析蔽茨慄傲虹捻臼喻菱腺桁玩冶羞
惧舷貪采堆煎斑冥遜旺麵璃串填箋脊緻辣摯汎憚哨汜諧媛彙恣聘沃憬抄訃

Table of Contents

Kokuji 国字

Kokuji 国字 or Wasei Kanji 和製漢字 (和字) are Kanji that were created in Japan. Most only have KUN readings, but there are some that have ON readings according to their phonetics. Some were even made to represent things of the West, making some Kokuji only have ON readings. Many are rare, but some are very important.

漢字	音	訓	名乗り	意味
ㄨ		しめ		Sign used to end a letter.
俣		また	ばた	Crotch; thigh; fork
倂	テイ	おもかげ		Vestige; image; looks; remnant; trace
俚		くるま		Rickshaw; jinrikisha
働	ドウ	はたら (く)		To work
価		さいぶつ		Historically a different character than the 価 in 価格
凧		いかのぼり、 たこ		Kite
凧		こがらし		Cold wintry wind
凧		なぎ、な (ぐ)		Calm; lull
匁		もんめ、め		Monme ÷ 3.75 grams
ム	シ、ボ ウ、ム	わたくし、ご ざ (る)		I
匂		にお (う)	おり、こう、さぎ	Smell; glow; insinuate; stink; fragrant
呷		かます		Straw bag
呷	シャク	フィート		
啗		さそ (う)	さそう、さそざき	To invite; to entice
喰		く (う)、く (らう)	じき	To eat; to drink; to receive a blow
噸	トン			Tonnage
噺		はなし		Talk

囃	ソ	しょう		Used in place names
垠		いり		Floodgate; sluice; pen-stock
坏		あくつ	しも、はい、あく う、あくち、あぐ つ、あつく	Low-lying ground
屾		まま		Steep slope
垚	タイ、 ダイ	ぬた		Wetlands; swamp; muddy fields
垆		さこ		
圯		いけ、いげ、 がけ		Cliff
埭		あくつ、た お、たわ、と うげ		Low ground; mountain pass; ancient kuni
圯		ごみ		Garbage
塙	ヘイ、 ベイ			Wall; fence
塙		あま		Title of a Noh play
甥	ドウ、 ナン、ノ ウ	めおと、たわ む（れる）		Loud talking
嬬		かかあ、かか		Vulgar term for wife
圯		たな、なた		Used in proper names
岬		ゆり		Level spot part-way up a mountain
峯		くら		Shrine in a mountain
峠		とうげ		Mountain peak; mountain crest; crest; climax; mountain pass
𡵓	テ			Used only as a phoneme
𡵓		こら（える）		To endure
杣		いり		Floodgate; sluice; pen-stock
杣	モク	もく		Woodworker
杜	ズ、	もり、やまな		Grove; woods

	ト、トウ	し、ふさ (ぐ)		
栂		かば、ももじ		Birch; maple
杣		そま		Woodcutter; lumber; wood; timber
枠		わく		Frame; bounding-box; framework; spindle; spool
枡		ます		Measuring box
枡		ます		Measuring box
檜		すぎ		Cryptomeria; Japanese cedar
枹	フ、ホ ウ	ならのき、ば ち、ほ、もみ じ		Drum/gong stick; type of tree
榧		まさ、まさ き、まさめ		Spindle tree; straight grain
榊		なぎ		Type of evergreen tree
榿		たふ、たぶ、 たぶのき		Type of evergreen camphor tree
榧		つが、とが		Hemlock
栲		とち		Horse chestnut
栲		とち		Stable; horse chestnut; kind of oak
榎		ふもと、ふむ と		Base of a mountain
栲		くぬぎ、くに ぎ		Oak used for charcoal
栲		くぬぎ		Oak used for charcoal
榊	クデ	ぬで		Japanese sumac
椀		はんぞう		Container used for pouring water
榊		しで		Type of deciduous birch
榊		さかき		Sacred Shinto tree
榧		むろ		Needle juniper
榧		ほくそ		Hokuso tree

檜		かし		Evergreen oak
檜	キ		じす、よし	Japanese storax; used in proper names
檣		かし		Oak; mooring pole
槽		たら		Snow
櫟		つき		Keyaki; zelkova tree
桙		かせ		Reel
栂		もみじ		Maple
櫛		しきみ		Japanese star anise
鯉		すばしり		A young striped mullet
耜		むし（る）		To pick; to pluck; to tear
搔		むし（る）		To pluck out hair
撈		むし（る）、 むしりと （る）		To pluck; to pick; to tear
扱	サ	さて、さ （す）		Now; well
汙		ぬた、ねた		Wetlands
浴	エキ			Historically a different character than the 浴 in 浴びる
燂	タツ			Foot warmer
𣎵		デカグラム		Decagram
𣎵		キログラム		Kilogram
𣎵		トン		Ton
𣎵		デシグラム		Decigram
𣎵		ミリグラム		Milligram
𣎵		ヘクトグラム		Hectogram
𣎵		センチグラム		Centigram
畎		けさ		Surplice
畑		はたけ、は た、ばたけ	かま、まま	Field; farm; garden; one's specialty; patch
畠		はた、はたけ	はな	Field; farm; garden

癩		しゃく		Spasm
裕		はざま	さこ、はざ	Gap; gorge; ravine
砵		かき		Oyster
汙		デカリットル		Decaliter
汙		キロリットル		Kiloliter
𪗇		ミリリットル		Hectoliter
𪗇		デシリットル		Deciliter
𪗇		ヘクトリットル		Hectoliter
𪗇		センチリットル		Centiliter
筈		うつぼ		Quiver
笹		ささ	さ、さき、しの、 じね	Bamboo grass
築	リョウ	やな		Fish-trap; weir
旗	キ	はた		Flag
𪗇		ささら		Bamboo whisk
粃		もみ		Unhulled rice
条		くめ		Used in proper names
粃		すくも		Chaff; rice hulls
糶		こうじ		Malt
糶		すくも		Chaff; rice hulls
料		デカメートル		Decameter
料		キロメートル		Kilometer
耗		ミリメートル		Millimeter
𪗇		ヘクトメートル		Hectometer
𪗇		センチメートル		Centimeter
緘		おど（す）		To braid armor
綯		かすり、かせ		Reel; skein

纒	ウン			A method of dyeing
縋		かすり		Splashed pattern dyeing or weaving
纈	コウ		はな	Tie-dyeing
𪛗		しかと、しか		Certainly
臍	セツ	ゆき、たら、そり		Snow
腺	セン	すじ		Gland
膺	チツ			Vagina
肱		ひかり		This character is historically a different character from the 肱 in 膀胱
𪛗		そり		Sled; sleigh
蓆	ザ	ござ		Mat
芒	コウ、ボウ、モウ	すすき、のげ、のぎ		Beard grain; pampas grass
莨	ロウ	たばこ		Tobacco
范		やち、やら		Bog; wetlands
縵		かつら		A surname
𪛗	ホウ	あわび		Abalone; dry fish
𪛗		に		Used in a surname
𪛗		うば、えび		Shrimp
𪛗	リ	あさり		A kind of bivalve
𪛗	ジョウ	もみ		Mantis; toad
𪛗		ほろ		Awning; cover; hood; top
𪛗 𪛗		かみしも		Samurai garb
𪛗		ゆき		Sleeve length
𪛗		つま		Skirt
𪛗		たすき		Sash
𪛗	ジョウ	しかと、おきて、おおせ		Command

躰		せがれ		Social position
躰		しつけ、しつ (ける)		To train; to discipline
躰		やが (て)		Soon; presently; shortly; before long; in the course of time; in due time; no more than; all but; after all; almost
轉		そり		Sleigh; sled
辻		すべ (る)		To slip; to slide
辻		つじ		Crossroad; street corners
込		こ (む)		To enter; to be crowded; to be included
迎		とても	とて	Very; some way or another
谷		さこ、せこ、 はざま		Ravine; valley
適		あっぱれ		Bravo; good job
鉞	エツ	まさかり		Battleaxe
鉞	カ	にえ		Holmium; pattern on a sword blade
鉞		はばき		Piece of metal encircling the base of a Japanese blade
鉞		びょう		Rivet; thumbtack
鎗		かざり		Metal jewelry
鉞	ブ	ブリキ		Metal plate
鉞		はばき		Piece of metal encircling the base of a Japanese blade
鎡		かすがい		Clamp
鎡		かすがい		Clamp
鎡		やり		Spear; javelin
問		つか (える)		To be obstructed
閑		ゆ (る)、ゆ (れる)		To pan for gold; to shake while rinsing
霽	ダ	しずく		Raindrop; trickle; drop
鞆		とも		Brazier

𩺰		こはぜ		Clasps
風		おろし		Wind from mountains
鰻	ウン	うどん		Udon
𩺰	ヘイ、 ヒョウ	ひらめ		Flatfish; flounder
鰌		かじか		Bullhead
鰯		このしろ		Gizzard shod
鰐	カイ、 ガイ、ゲ	はえ、はや		Dace
鰺		あさり、うぐ い		Dace; chub; short necked clam
鰯		かずのこ		Yellow fish eggs in sushi
鮭	カイ、 ケイ	さけ、しゃ け、ふぐ		Salmon
鰪		ごり、こち、 まて、めばる		Bullhead; flathead; rockfish; razor clam
鰯		ぼら、おおぼ ら		Redlip mollet
鰻		どじょう		Lamprey; louch
鰯	シ、ソ ウ	ぶり、はま ち、かます		Yellowtail
鰯	リュ ウ、ル	ぼら		A type of fish
鰻	コウ			Angler-fish
鰻	ケン	かつお		Bonito
鰻		こち		Flathead
鰻	ネン	なまず		Fresh-water catfish
鰻		なまず		Fresh-water catfish
鰻		しゃち、しゃ ちひこ		Killer whale
鰻		いわし		Sardine

鯰		はたはた		Sand-fish
鰯		はたはた		Sand-fish
鱈	セツ	たら		Codfish
鱧		きす		Sillaginoid
鯢長		はも		Conger; see eel
鯢		こち		Flathead
鰺		しいら		Mahimahi
鯢針		さより		Japanese halfbeak
鰯細		きす		Sillaginoid
鵲		かけす		Eurasian jay
鶺鴒		とき		Japanese crested ibis
鴟		しぎ		Snipe
鴒		にお		Grebe
衛		ちどり		Plover
鴟	チョウ	とび		Kite bird
鶺鴒		いかる、いかるが		Japanese grosbeak
鶺鴒	ツ、トウ	つぐみ		Thrush
鶺鴒	ジャク	ひわ		Green-finch;light yellow green
磨		まろ	ま	I; you
炆	セキ			A kind of chinaware
煩	コウ	おおづつ		Cannon

Table of Contents

Kanji Lists: Jouyou, Jinmeiyou, Hyougaiji

In 2010, the Ministry of Education in Japan authorized a new Jouyou Kanji List. This list consists of 2,136 and includes 196 characters as well as the deletion of 5 previously classified Jouyou Kanji. For those that may believe that the Jouyou Kanji list was enough, think again. The amount of characters you may still see in literature still exceed the list. Plus, you should still learn characters that have been taken off the list. All of these characters that have been added should be given even extra devoted attention because they will become institutionalized by the 2015 academic year in Japan.

Characters Added to the Jouyou Kanji List in 2010

媛怨鬱唄淫咽茨彙椅菱畏嵐宛顎曖挨韓鎌葛骸蓋崖諧潰瓦牙苛俺臆岡旺艷稽憬詣熊
窟串悞錦僅巾嗅臼畿龜伎玩挫沙痕頃駒傲乞喉梗虎股舩鍵拳桁隙呪腫嫉叱鹿餌摯恣
斬拶剝柵埼塞采戚脊醒淒裾須腎芯尻拭懂蹴羞袖汰遜捉踪瘦曾爽邈狙膳箋詮腺煎羨
鶴爪椎涉嘲貼耐緻綻旦誰戴堆唾鍋謎梨奈那井貪頓析瞳藤賭妬填溺諦阜訃肘膝眉斑
阪汎汜箸剥罵捻虹勾喻閻弥冶麵冥蜜枕昧勃頰貌蜂蔑壁餅蔽脇麓籠弄呂瑠瞭侶慄璃
藍辣拉沃瘍妖湧柿哺楷睦釜錮賂毀勾

JOUYOU KANJI 常用漢字 * Characters that have been moved to separate pages have been taken off this list

亡寸己干仁尺片冊収処幼庁穴危后灰吸存宇宅机至否我系卵忘孝困批私乱垂乳供並
刻呼宗宙宝届延忠拊担拝枚治若看城奏姿宣專卷律映染段洗派皇泉砂紅背肺革蚕值
俳党展座従株将班秘純納胸朗討射針降除陞骨域密捨推探濟異盛視窓翌腦著訪訊欲
郷郵閉頂就善尊割創勤裁揮敬晩棒痛筋策衆装補詞貴裏傷暖源聖盟絹署腹蒸幕誠賃
疑層模穀磁暮誤誌認閣障劇榷潮熟蔵諸誕論遺奮憲操樹激糖縦鋼廠優縮覧簡臨難臍
警乙了又与及丈刃凡勺互弔井升丹乏勾屯介冗凶刈匹厄双孔幻斗斤且丙甲凸丘斥仙
凹召巨占囚奴尼巧払汁玄甘矛込弍朱吏劣充妄企仰伐伏刑旬旨匠叫吐吉如妃尽帆忙
扱朽朴汚汗江壯缶肌舟芋芝巡迅亜更寿励含佐伺伸但伯伴呉克却吟吹呈壺坑坊妊妨
妙肖尿尾岐攻忌床廷忍戒戾抗抄扱把拔扶抑杉冲沢沈没妥狂秀肝即芳辛迎邦岳奉享
盲依佳侍侮併免刺効卓叔坪奇奔姓宜尚屈岬弦征彼怪怖肩房押拐拒抛拘拙拓抽抵拍
披抱抹昆昇枢析杯杵欧肯毆況沼泥泊泌沸泡炎炊炉邪祈祉突肢肪到莖苗茂迭迫邸阻
附齐甚帥衷幽為盾卑哀亨帝侯俊侵促俗盆冠削勅貞卸厘怠叙咲垣契姻孤封峽峠弧悔
恒恨怒威括挟拷挑施是冒架枯柄柳皆洪浄津洞牲狭狩珍某疫柔碎窃糾耐胎胆胞臭荒
荘虐訂赴軌逃郊郎香剛衰畝恋俟倒倣倅倫翁兼准凍剣剖脅匿栽索桑唆哲埋娛娠姫娘
宴宰宵峰貢唐徐悦恐恭恵悟悩扇振搜挿捕敏核棧栓桃殊殉浦浸泰浜浮涙浪烈畜珠畔
疾症疲眠砲祥称租秩粹紛紡紋耗恥脂朕胴致般既華蚊被託軒辱唇逝逐遞途透酌陷陣

隻飢鬼劑菴肅尉彫偽偶偵偏剌勘乾喝啓唯執培堀婚婆寂崎崇崩庶庸彩患慘惜悼悠掛
掘揭控据措掃排描斜旋曹殼貫涯渴溪洩淑涉淡添涼猫猛獬瓶累盜眇窰符粗粘粒紺紹
紳脚脫豚舶菓菊菌虚蚩蛇袋訟販赦軟逸逮郭醉穢釣陰陳陶陪隆陵麻齋喪奧壘偉傘傍
普喚喫圈堪堅墮塚堤塔塤媒婿掌項幅帽幾廢廊彈尋御循慌惰愉惑雇扉握援換搭揚搖
敢曉晶替棺棋棚棟款欺殖渦滋濕渡灣煮猶琴曷罍疎痘痢硬硝硫筒粧絞紫絡脹腕葬募
裕裂詠詐詔診訴越超距軸遇遂遲遍酢鈍閑隅随焦雄雱殿棄傾傑債催僧慈勸載嗣嘆塊
塑塗獎嫁嫌寬寢廉微慨愚愁慎携摔搥搬暇楼歲滑溝滯淹漠滅溶煙煩雅猿猷痴睡督碁
禍禪稚繼腰艇蓄虞虜褐裸触該詰誇詳嘗賊賄跡踐跳較違遣酬酪鉛鉢鈴隔雷零靴頑頒
飾飽鼓豪僕僚曆塾奪嫡寡寧腐彰徵憎慢摘概雌漆漸漬滴漂漫漏獄碑稻端箇維綱緒網
罰膜慕誓誘踊遮遭醇酷銃銑銘閱隱需馭馱髮魂鍊緯韻影銳謁閱緣憶穩稼餓壞懷嚇獲
穫渴轄憾飲環監緩艦還鑑輝騎儀戲擬犧窮矯響驚凝緊襟謹綵勲薰慶憩鷄鯨擊懸謙賢
顛顧稿衡購壘懇鎖錯撮擦暫諮賜璽爵趣儒襲醜獸瞬潤遵償礁衝鐘壤孃讓釀錠囑審薪
震錘髓澄瀨請籍潛織薦遷鮮繕礎槽燥藻霜騷贈濯濁諾鍛壇鑄駐懲聰鎮墜締徹撤膳踏
騰鬪篤曇繩濃霸輩賠薄爆縛繁藩範盤罷避賓頻敷膚譜賦舞覆噴墳憤幣弊壁癖鋪穗簿
縫褒膨謀墨撲翻摩磨魔爾魅霧默躍癒諭憂融慰窯謠翼羅賴欄濫履離慮寮療糧隣隸靈
麗齡擁露媛怨鬱唄淫咽茨彙椅菱畏嵐宛顎曖挨韓鎌葛骸蓋崖諧潰瓦牙苛俺臆岡旺艷
稽憬詣熊窟串惧錦僅巾嗅臼畿龜伎玩挫沙痕頃駒傲乞喉梗虎股肱鍵拳桁隙呪腫嫉叱
鹿餌摯恣斬拶剝柵埼塞采戚脊醒淒裾須腎芯尻拭懂蹴羞袖汰遜捉踪瘦曾爽邈狙膳箋
詮腺煎羨鶴爪椎涉嘲貼耐緻綻旦誰戴堆唾鍋謎梨奈那井貪頓析瞳滕賭妬填溺諦阜訃
肘膝眉斑阪汎汜箸剝罵捻虹勾喻閻弥冶麵冥蜜枕昧勃頰貌蜂蔑壁餅蔽脇麓籠弄呂瑠
瞭侶慄璃藍辣拉沃瘍妖湧柿哺楷睦釜錮賂毀勾

JINMEIYOU KANJI 人名用漢字

丑丞乃之乎也云亘 - 亘些亦亥亨亮仔伊伍伽佃佑伶侃侑俄俠俟俐倭俱倦倖僂傭儲允
兎兜其冴凌凜 - 凜凜凜凜凱函劉劫勁勾勿勾匡甘卜卯卿厨厩又叡叢叶只吾吞吻哉哨
啄哩喬喧喰喋嘩嘉嘗噲噲圃圭坐堯 - 堯坦埴堰堺堵塙塚壬夷奄奎套娃姪姥婉嬉孟宏
宋宕宥寅寓寵尖尤屑峨峻峻嵯嵩嶺巖 - 巖己巳巴巷巽帖幌幡庄庇庚庵廟迴弘弛彗彥
彪彬徠忽怜恢恰恕悌惟惚悉惇惹惺忽慧憐戊或戟托按挺挽掬捲捷捺捧掠掬擗擗撒撰
撞播撫擢攷敦斐幹斧斯於旭昂昊昏昌昂晏晃 - 晃晒晋晟晦晨智暉暢曙曝曳朋朔杏杖
杜李杭杵杷枇柑柴柘柏枉柚桧 - 檜桼桔桂栖桐栗梧梓梢柳梯桶梃栌梁棲棕椀楯楚
梢椿楠楓椰檣楊榎樺桼榛楨 - 楨槍槌檉楓樟榎橘樽橙檣檀櫨櫓欣欽歎此殆毅毘毳
汀汝汐汲沌沓沫洸洲洵洛浩湮淵淳渚 - 渚淀淋渥湘湊湛溢混溜漱漕漣滯濡瀕灘灸灼
烏焰焚煌煤煉熙燕燎燦燭燿爾牒牟牡牽犀狼猪 - 猪獅玃珂珈珊珀玲琢 - 琢琉瑛琥琶琵琶
琳瑚瑞瑤瑳瓜瓢甥甫畠畢疋疏皐皓眸瞥矩 砮砥砧硯碓碗碩碧磐磯祇祢 - 禰祐 - 祐禱 -
禱祿 - 祿禎 - 禎禽禾秦秤稀稔稟稜稷 - 稷穹穿窄窪窺竣豎竺竿笈笄笮笠筈筭篇篠
簞簾粲粥粟糊紃紗紐絃紬絆絢綺綜綴緋綾綸縞徽繫繡纂纏矜翔翠耀而耶耽聰肇肋肴

胤胡脩腔脹膏臥舜舵芥芹芭芙芦苑茄苔莓茅茱茸茜莞荻莫莉菅董菖荀菩萌 - 萌萊菱
葦葵萱葦萩董葡蓑時菟蒼蒲蒙蓉蓮蔭蔣蔦蓬蔓蕎厥蕉蕃蕪薙蕾路藁薩蘇蘭蝦蝶螺蟬
蟹蠟衿袈袴裡袞裳襖訊訣註詢詡誼諏諄諒謂諺讚豹賁賑赴跨蹄蹟輔輯輿轟辰辻迂迄
辿迪迦這逞逗逢遙 - 遙遁遼邑祁郁鄭酉醇醐醞醬釉釘釧銑鋒鋸錘錐鑄錫鋤鎧閃閨閭阿
陀隈隼雀雁雛雫霞靖鞞鞍鞢鞣鞭頁頌頗顛颯饗馨馴馳駕駿驍魁魯鮎鯉鯛鰯鱗鳩鳶
鳳鴨鴻鵠鵬鷗鷺鷥鷹麒麟厖黎黛鼎

Kyuujitai Variants of Jouyou Kanji Accepted in Jinmeiyou Kanji List

亞 (亜) 惡 (悪) 爲 (為) 逸 (逸) 榮 (栄) 衛 (衛) 謁 (謁) 圓 (円) 緣 (縁) 園 (園) 應 (応)
櫻 (桜) 奧 (奥) 橫 (横) 溫 (温) 價 (価) 禍 (禍) 悔 (悔) 海 (海) 壞 (壊) 懷 (懷) 樂 (楽)
渴 (渴) 卷 (巻) 陷 (陥) 寬 (寛) 漢 (漢) 氣 (気) 祈 (祈) 器 (器) 僞 (偽) 戲 (戯) 虛 (虚)
峽 (峽) 狹 (狭) 響 (響) 曉 (暁) 勤 (勤) 謹 (謹) 駟 (駟) 勲 (勲) 薰 (薰) 患 (患) 揭 (掲)
鷄 (鶏) 藝 (芸) 擊 (撃) 縣 (県) 儉 (儉) 劍 (剣) 險 (険) 圈 (圈) 檢 (検) 顯 (顕) 驗 (験)
嚴 (厳) 廣 (広) 恆 (恒) 黃 (黄) 國 (国) 黑 (黒) 穀 (穀) 碎 (碎) 雜 (雑) 祉 (祉) 視 (視)
兒 (児) 濕 (湿) 實 (実) 社 (社) 者 (者) 煮 (煮) 壽 (寿) 收 (収) 臭 (臭) 從 (従) 澁 (渋)
獸 (獣) 縱 (縦) 祝 (祝) 暑 (暑) 署 (署) 緒 (緒) 諸 (諸) 敘 (叙) 將 (将) 祥 (祥) 涉 (渉)
燒 (焼) 獎 (奨) 條 (条) 狀 (状) 乘 (乗) 淨 (浄) 剩 (剩) 疊 (畳) 孃 (嬢) 讓 (譲) 釀 (醸)
神 (神) 眞 (真) 寢 (寝) 愼 (慎) 盡 (尽) 粹 (粹) 醉 (酔) 穗 (穂) 瀨 (瀬) 齊 (齊) 靜 (静)
攝 (摂) 節 (節) 專 (専) 戰 (戦) 織 (織) 禪 (禅) 祖 (祖) 壯 (壮) 爭 (争) 莊 (荘) 搜 (搜)
巢 (巢) 曾 (曾) 裝 (装) 僧 (僧) 層 (層) 瘦 (瘦) 騷 (騷) 增 (増) 憎 (憎) 藏 (蔵) 贈 (贈)
臟 (臓) 卽 (即) 帶 (帯) 滯 (滞) 瀧 (滝) 單 (単) 嘆 (嘆) 團 (団) 彈 (弾) 晝 (昼) 鑄 (鋳)
著 (著) 廳 (庁) 徵 (徴) 聽 (聴) 懲 (懲) 鎮 (鎮) 轉 (転) 傳 (伝) 都 (都) 嶋 (島) 燈 (灯)
盜 (盗) 稻 (稲) 德 (徳) 突 (突) 難 (難) 拜 (拝) 盃 (杯) 賣 (売) 梅 (梅) 髮 (髪) 拔 (抜)
繁 (繁) 晚 (晩) 卑 (卑) 祕 (秘) 碑 (碑) 賓 (賓) 敏 (敏) 富 (富) 侮 (侮) 福 (福) 拂 (払)
佛 (仏) 勉 (勉) 步 (歩) 峯 (峰) 墨 (墨) 翻 (翻) 每 (毎) 萬 (万) 默 (黙) 埜 (野) 彌 (弥)
藥 (薬) 與 (与) 搖 (揺) 樣 (様) 謠 (謡) 來 (来) 賴 (頼) 覽 (覧) 欄 (欄) 龍 (竜) 虜 (虜)
涼 (涼) 綠 (緑) 淚 (涙) 壘 (塁) 類 (類) 禮 (礼) 曆 (暦) 歷 (歴) 練 (練) 鍊 (鍊) 郎 (郎)
朗 (朗) 廊 (廊) 錄 (録)

HYOUGAIJI 表外字

啞啞蛙鴉埃挨靄軋夷韋帷菱彙飴謂闕尹咽殷淫隕于迂鬱云暈穢曳洩裔穎穎嬰翳腋曰
怨冤袁婉焉筵厭閭嚙鳴嘔甕襖謳鶯鸚佻呵苛迦訛訶跏嗶瑕窩蝸鍋顆訝蛾衙乖迴徊漬
鞋諧咳漑骸鎧喀廓攪攪愕萼諤鰐絃閼鯉奸串旱咸姦宦悍桓涵嵌鉗澗翰諫瞰檻灌翫
頷癌几卉耆悸揆毀諱徽櫃妓魏蟻麴麴吃屹拮謔仇咎邱柩躬嗅舅炬渠噓墟遽櫟勾怙竟
僑矯缺櫃疆棘鬚僅饒狗惧軀懼窟彛偈荊珪畦脛瘞詣褻閨頸髻蹊鮭睨戟抉妍虔喧腓臉
齟齬呿眩諺姑狐股涸菰壺跨糊齧亢叩尻吼肛杭咬垢狡肱崗喉蛤鉤敲宰膠籌蕘糠藁鮫

塢曠毫傲濠囁啣剋哭鵠乞痕渾禪嗟磋挫柴犀賽鰓炸簣紮餐霰攢斬懣址祀屍屎柿恣祠
翅舐疵趾硯嗜滓幟摯嘴熾髭贅峙痔餌蛭嫉膝洒奢閤杓綽娶腫鬚呪聚襦帚酋羞箒皺讐
揉絨戍薯諸抒鋤妾逍廂椒鈔睫蛸鉦誦漿蕭踵聳鍾囁擾攘饒蜀蝕禡沁呻宸疹蜃滲鉞鞞
塵儘筍崇睥雖隋隧芻趨鮐井蜻臍潑鯖脆贅脊晰泄屑浙啜楔截苫陝腺煽箋箭賤蟬癬喘
狙疽甦鼠遡齟炒叟蚤葱搔搔笋瘡踪艘薈甌藪躁囁竈鰲仄杣樽佗咤拿荼唾驛腿頰鐸襍
燧疸啖蛋毯痰憚譚雉蚰緞脰胄蛛誅疇躊佇楮瀦蹻吊趙鈔嘲謀抄鎚剝掟逞啼碇鄭薙諦
蹄溺轍迥唸篆囀澱臀禿妬屠賭疼淘蕩鄧濤檣櫓禿瀆咄貪邇菲涅捏撚膿囊爬罵臺胚徘
牌稗猥帛剝粕駁瀑捌撥潑醱筏跋嘶汜叛袞槃攀屁砒脾痺鄙誹臂媚薇靡逼謬憑屏屏牝
憫鬢訃俯腑孵鮒巫諷祓扮糞井井聘斃袂僻壁襞蔑扁騙哺呆彷彿苞庖逢芒茫虻榜膀鉞
謗吠勃梵邁枿枿俣曼瞞饅鬘鰻蜜鵠暝麵麵豚粿悶擲爺鑪喻揄愈榆猷飫孕拗涌痒熔瘍
蠅沃萊埒拉辣瀾爛鸞狸罹籬戮慄榴劉瘤聊寥蓼熒屢蛉螭櫟礫轢鯁躒潏滬廬蘆弄牢
榔瘻藕臘隴蠅籠聾肋勒漉麓歪猥隈毘碗碗彎穹

Table of Contents